PVRCHAS PILGRIMES

IN FIVE BOOKES.

The fixth, Contayning Nauigations, Voyages, and Land-Discoueries, with other Historicall Relations of AFRICA.

The feuenth, Nauigations, Voyages, and Discoueries of the Sea-Coasts and In-land Regions of Africa, which is generally called Ethiopia: by Englishmen, and others,

The eighth, Peregrinations and Trauels by land in Palestina, Natolia, Syria,

Arabia, Persia; and other parts of SIA.

The ninth, Peregrinations, and Discouries by Land, of Assyria, Armenia, Persia, india, Arabia, and other In land Countries of Asia, by Englishmen and others; Moderne and Ancient.

Thetenth, Prateritorum, or Discoueries of the World, specially such
sin the other Bookes are omitted.

The Second Part.

Unus Deus, Una Veritas.



LONDON

LONDON
Prated by William Stansby for Henrie Fetherstone, and are to be fold at his shop in
Pauls Church-yard at the signe of the Rose.

0 4).



PILGRIM

les Phase casting of the

The state of the

. คำได้ ได้เกาะเลย<mark>์นี้ มีหลังสีสีค่าการหลุก 25 เกรียบโลก ก็ไ</mark>ด้ เกาะเลย์สีคากัดใช้ ใช้เป็นเกรียบใหญ่ เลยียน คำได้การในเลยี



TO THE HIGH

ANDMIGHTIE

PRINCE,

GEORGE,

Duke, Marquesse, and Earle of Bycking Ham, Viscount Villishs, Baron of Whaddon, Lorl High Admiral of England, Justice in Syro of all his Majesers & Forests, Parkes, and Chaes beyond Treet.

MASTIR of His MAIESTIES Horfe, KNIGHT of the met Noble O ad er of the Garter, and One of His Maiesties most Honorable Printe



Auing presented to the Princes Highnesse a World of Histories composed into a Historie of the World, f durst not set saile with so great a Fleet of Sea-voyages (a principall part thereof) before f became humble Sutor to Your Grace for license from the Admiraltie. Pardon this

presumpton, which Your Greatnesse requireth, Your Goodnesse inuitethind the nature of the Worke exacteth. His Maiestie, the reath of our nosthrils, the Life and Rule of our actions, but by many graces otherwise, and by exemplarie dedication, tasht Others Bookes there to seeke delightsome shaddow, where is gaue so glorious light.

Neber may any Name stand so neere That of His Highnesse, occially in a Booke of Sea and Land Trauels, as His who bath beene so late and faithfull a Traneller with Him by Sea and Land; Nor the Kings bonor (here armed at) bee more welcome to any then the Kings Friend, whom the King will honour; Nor can acts of Nauigation bee any where more fatable then to a Noble mind, now fring bis best and bleft thoughts on discouring a neeter passage to the remoter World, and under whose Charge the Naue Royall more flourisheth theneuer. By some of Yours also the Author was encouraged to undertake this great worke, which now therefore returneth to your Grace, as that Sea whence the Springs first flowed. May it please your Graces taste (more from such employments cannot be expected) to incite inferior appetites: and I hope that to such sweetnesse of Nature, this Historie of Nature will not be altogether distastfull. God Almightie blesse and profer your Grace, and all your Loyall services to His Maiestie, with increase of Dinine, Royall, and Princely fauour.

Your Graces

SAMVEL VRCHAS



NAVIGATIONS, VOYA GES, AND LAND-DISCO.

VERIES, WITH OTHER HI-

STORICALL RELATIONS

OF AFRIKE.

THE SIXTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Observations of Africa, taken out of IOHN LEO his nine Bookes, translated by Master * Pory, and the most remarkable things hither transcribed.

* In divers places the translation is

Collections out of the first Booke of IOHN LEO, touching the People, Tribes, Languages, Sealons, Vertues, Vices, and other more generall considerations of Atrica.



farre as the Delarts of Gaoga.

RICA is called in the Arabian Tongue Iphrichia, of the Whythis pare word Faraca, which fignifieth in the faid Language to divide; of the World but why it should be so called, there are two opinions; the first was so named is this: namely, because this part of the World is divided from some low teaching.

Europa by the Mediterran Sea, and from Asia by the River Others divided from the source of the world is divided from the source of the world in th of Nilus. Others are of opinion, that this name of Africa uideitfrom was derived from one Ifricus the King of Arabia Falix, who is Ala by the fad to have beene the first that ever inhabited these parts. Red Sea. This Ifricus waging waragainst the King of Affria, & being Afia profite diat length by him driven out of his Kingdome, paffed with his fla folkewife whole Armie ouer Nilsu, and to conducting his troupes well- Afrea was the

wind Armie ouer vium, and to conducting ints outpress wetter of reasons to ward, made no delay till he was come vito the Regionlying named the about Carthage. Hence it is that the Arabians doe imagine the Country about Carthage only a picell party. and the Regions lying Westward thereof, to comprehend all Africa. Africa (if we may give credit vnto the Writers of that Nation, being men of Learning, and amongst the most skilfull Cosmographers) beginneth Southward at certaine Rivers isluing forth of a Lake Ancients, to in the Defart of Gaoga. East-ward it bordereth vpon the River Nilm. It extendeth North- facent with 60 ward to that part of Egypt, where Nilus at feven mouthes dischargeth his streames into the the African Mediterran Sea: from whence it stretcheth Westward as farre as the Straights of Gibraster, Authors and and isbounded on that part with the vtmost Sea-towne of all Libya, called Now. Like 16th 10th

wife the South part thereof abutteth vpon the Ocean Sea, which compaffeth Africa Linoft as The bester of Africa.

The bester of Africa.

The bester of Africa.

The bester of Africa.

Ness.

Q999 3

The duffion of Africa. Wey unly cal which lyeth betweene the Red. Indian. Scas:iovned

* Non.

Our Authours affirme, that Africa is divided into foure parts, that is to fay, Barbaria, Numidis, Libra, and the Land of Negros. Barbaria taketh beginning from the Hill called Meier, which is the extreme part of all the Mountaines of Atlas, beeing distant from Alexandria almost three hundred miles, It is bounded on the North-side with the Mediterran Sea, stretching thence to Mount-Meies aforefaid, and from Mount-Meies extending it felfe to the Streights of Gibralier. West-ward it is limited with the said Streights, from whence wind ng it selle out Atlantic, and of the Mediterran Sea into the mayn Ocean, it is inclosed with the most Westerly point of Ar-Mediterran las: namely, at that Westerne Cape which is next vnto the Towne called Messa. And Southward it is bounded with that fide of Atlas which lyeth towards the Mediterran Sea. This is with a necke of Land to A- the most not le and worthy Region of all Africa, the Inhabitants whereof are of a browne or 10 tawny colour, being a civill people, and prescribe wholsome Lawes and Constitutions vnto themfelues.

> The second part of Africa is called of the Latines Numidia, but of the Arabians Biledulgeride this Region bringeth forth Dates in great abundance. It beginneth East-ward at the Citie of Eloacat, which is an hundred miles diffant from Egypt, and extendeth West as far as the Towne of * Nun, flanding youn the Ocean Sea. North-ward it is inclosed with the South-side of Atlas. And the South part thereof bordereth upon the fandy Defarts of Libia. All the Arabians doe vitally call it the Land of Dates: because this onely Region of Africa beareth Dates.

The third part called of the Latines Libya, and of the Arabians Sarra, (which word fignifieth a Defart) beginneth Ealtward at that part of Nilm which is next vnto the Citie of Eloacat, 20 and from thence runneth West-ward as farre as the Ocean Sea, North-ward it is bounded with Numidia, South-ward it abutteth upon the Land of Negros, East-ward it taketh beginning at the Kingdome of Gaoga, and stretcheth West-ward even to the Land of Gualata, which borde-

reth voon the Ocean Sea. The fourth part of Africa which is called the Land of Negros, beginneth East-ward at the

of is in lofed with the Defart of Libra, and the South part, which is vnknowne vnto vs. with the Ocean Sea: how beit the Merchanis which daily come from thence to the Kingdome of Tombuto, have fufficiently described the fituation of that Country vnto vs. This Land of Negros hath a mightie River, which taking his name of the Region, is called Niger this River ta- 30 keth his originall from the East out of a certaine Defart called by the fore-faid Negros, Sew. Others will have this River to spring out of a certaine Lake, and so to runne Westward till it ex-

Kingdome of Gaoga, from whence it extendeth Weft as faire as Gualata. The North part there-

onerateth it felfe into the Ocean Sea. Our Colmographersaffirme, that the faid River of Niger is derived out of Nilm, which they imagine for fome certaine space to bee swallowed up of the Earth, and yet at last to burst forth into such a Lake as is before mentioned. Some others are of opinion, that this River beginneth West-ward to spring out of a certaine Mountaine, and so running East, to make at length a huge Lake : which verily is not like to be true; for they viually faile West-ward from Tombuto to the Kingdome of Ginea, yea, and to the Land of Mellialio; both which in refrect of Tombuto are fituate to the West; neither hath the faid Land of Negros any Kingdomes comparable, for heautifull and pleasant loyle, with those which adjoyne with the bankes of Niger. And here it is to be noted, that (according to the opinion of our Cosmogra-

phers) * that Land of Negros by which Nilus is faid to runne (namely, that part of the World which firetcheth East-ward even to the Indian Sea, some Northerly parcell whereof abutteth upon the Red Sea, to wit, the Country which lyeth without the Gulfe of Arabia) is not to bee called any member or portion of Africa; and that for many reasons, which are to bee found in the procedle of this Hifferie fet downe more at large: The faid Country is called by the Latines Ethiopia. From thence come certaine religious Friers feared or branded on the face with an not Iron, who are to be seene almost ouer all Europe, and specially at Rome. These people haue an Emperour, which they call Prete Gianni, the greater part of that Land being inha-

bited with Christians. Howheit, there is also a certaine Mahametane among them, which is faid to possesse a great Dominion.

A divition of

" Habat. · Wanz. Tremizen.

Barbarie is diffinguished into foure Kingdomes : the first whereof is the Kingdome of Marothe foure force co; which is likewife divided into feven Regions or Provinces; namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula. the named parts territorre of Maroco, Ducoala, Hazcora, and Tedles. The second Kingdome of Barbarie called Fez, comprehendeth in like fort feuen Regions within the bounds thereof; to wir, Temefre, the Territory of Fez. Azgara, * Elabat, Errif, Garet, and * Elcanz. The third Kingdome is called * Telenfin, and hath three Regions under it, namely, the Mountaines, Tenez, and Algezir. The fourth Kingdom of Barbarie is named Tunis; under which are comprized foure Regions, that is to fav. Bugia, Constantina, Tripolis in Barbarie, and Ezzaba, which is a good part of Numidia. Burgis hath alwayes beene turmoyled with continual warres; because sometimes it was subject 60 voto the King of Tunis, and sometimes againe voto the King of Tremizen. Certaine it is that euen vatill these our dayes, this Bugia was a Kingdome of it selfe, and so continued, till the principall Citie of that Region was at the commandement of Ferdinande the King of Castile, taken by one Peter of Nauarre.

This is the basel part of all Africa; neither will our Cosmographers vouchfase it the name The dississon of a Kinedome, by reason that the Inhabitants thereof are so farie distant a funder; which you of Namida. or a Anguone, by teach that which followeth. Teffet a City of Numidia, containeth about Teffet. foure hundred families, and is in regard of the Libyan Delart, foured from all places of habitation almost three hundred miles; wherefore this second part is thought by divers not to bee worthy the name of a Kingdome. Howbeit we will make some relation of the habitable parts of Numidia; some whereof may not vintely bee compared with other Regions of Africa, as for example, that of Segelmess, which territorie of Numidia lyeth ouer against Barbarie; likewrite Zeb, which is fituate against Bugin, and the figniorie of Biledulgerid, which extendeth vn-10 to the Kingdome of Tunis. Referuing therefore many particulars for the second part of this Historie, we will make our entrie and beginning at those places, which lie vpon the West of Numidia : the names whereof be thefe; Tesset, Guaden, Ifren, Hacca, Dare, Tabelbelt, Todga, Fercale, Segelmesi, Benigumi, Fighig, Tegua, Tsabu, Tegorarin, Mesab, Tegort and Guarghela. The Region of Zeb containeth five townes, towit, Pefcara, Elborb, Nesta, Taolac and Deufin: lo many Cities likewise hath the territories of Biledulgerid; namely, Teozar, Capbela, Nefreoa, Elebamid and Chalbie : and from hence Eastward are found the liles of Gerbe , Garion, Mesellata, Mestram, Teoirraga, Gademis, Fizza, Ausela, Birdeon and Eloncat. These are the names of the most famous places of all Numidia, being bounded (as is faid before) Westward vpon the

The Description of Africa.

Ocean Sea, and Eastward with the River of Nilus. These Defarts have not as yet any certaine name amongst vs, albeit they be divided into five A discription

CHAP. I. S. J.

These Detarts name nor as yet any certains name amongs to a most they be changed income of the Lipses 20 parts, and receive all their denomination from the inhabitants which dwell you them, that is Delars, which to fay, from the Namidians, who are in like fort themselves divided into five parts also, to wit, lie between the People or Tribes called Zanega, Ganziga, Terga, Leuta and Berdesa. There bee likewife Numidiand certaine places, which take some proper and particular name from the goodnesse and badnesse of the Land of the foile; as namely, the Defart of Azabiad, to called for the drought and vnfruitfulnelle of that Negari place : likewife Hair , albeit a Desart, yet so called for the goodnesse and temperature of

Moreover, the land of Negros is divided into many Kingdomes: whereof albeit a great part A division of be vnknowne vnto vs, and removed farre out of our trade; wee will not with thanding make the land of Nebe vnknowne vnto vs, and remodued rarre out or our trade; were win intervitnitating make grainsofeue-relation of those places, where wee our felues have aboad, and which by long experience are rallkingdoms. growne very familiar vnto vs : as likewife of fome other places, from whence Merchants wied

30 to travell vnto the same Cities wherein my selfe was then resident; from whom I learned right well the flate of their Countries. I * my felfe faw fifteene Kingdomes of the Negror : how- * low Les traheit there are many more, which although I faw not with mine owne eies, yet are they by the welled our beit there are many more, which although I law hot with mille owne cate, yet are they by the fifteene King.

Negros fufficiently knowne and frequented. Their names therefore (beginning from the Weit, domes of the domes of the and in proceeding Eastward and Southward) are these following: Gualata, Ghinea, Melli, T.m- land of Netral buto, Gago, Guber, Agadez, Cano, Casena, Zegzeg, Zansara, Guangara, Burno, Gaoga, Nube. Thele fitteene Kingdomes are for the most part situate voon the River Niger, through the which Merchants viually trauell from Gualata to the City of Alcair in Egypt. The iourney in- Cairo. deede is very long, but yet fecure and voyd of danger. All the faid Kingdomes adjoyne one

vpon another; ten whereof are separated either by the River Niger, or by some fandie desart : 40 and in times past each one of the fifteene had a feuerall King, but now at this prefent, they About the are all in a manner subject vnto three Kings onely : namely , to the King of Tombuto , who is yette 1516, Lord of the greatest part; to the King of Borno, who governeth the least part, and the residue is in subjection vnto the King of Gaoga: howbeit, he that possesseth the Kingdome of Ducala hatha very small traine attending upon him. Likewise these Kingdomes haue many other Kingdomes bordering vpon the South frontiers of them : to wit, Bito, Temiam, Dauma Medra. and Gorban; the Gouernors and Inhabitants whereof, are most rich and industrious people, great

louers of Iustice and equitie, albeit some leade a brutish kind of life.

Our Cosmographers and Historiographers affirme, that in times past Africa was altogether Of the habitadifinhabited, except that part which is now called the Land of Negros : and most certaine it is, tions of direct difinhabited, except that part which is now cancer the Land of Negro. and most extended and of the gas to that Barbarie and Numidia were for many ages deflitute of Inhabitants. The tawnie people nifection of of the faid Region were called by the name of Barbar, being derined of the Verbe Barbara, this word which in their tongue fignifieth to murmure : because the African tongue foundeth in the eares Barbar. of the Arabians, no otherwise then the voyce of Beasts, which veter their founds without any accents. Others will have Barbar to be one word twice repeated, for somuch as Bar in the Arabian tongue fignifieth a Delart. For (fay they) when King Iphricus being by the Affrians or Athiopians driven out of his owne Kingdome, travelled towards Egypt, and feeing himfelfe fo oppressed with his enemies, that he knew not what should become of him and his followers, he asked his people how or which way it was possible to escape, who answered him Bar-Bar, 6c that is, to the Defart, to the Defart : gluing him to vnderstand by this speech, that he could have

no fater refuge, then to croffe ouer Nilus, and to flee vnto the Delast of Africa. And this reason feemeth to agree with them, which affirme the Africans to bee descended from the people of Arabia foclix.

A distinct

The tayone Moores are divided into fue fenerall People or Tribes : to wit , the Tribes call d Zanbari, Mulmud, Zeneti, Hacari and Gumeri. The Ir be of Mulmudi inhabit the Westerne ewell you the bouth part of the faid Mountaine, and upon all the inward plaines of that Re-Territorie of Morceco. The Tribe of Gamers peffelle certaine Mountaines of Barbarie, dwelli gon the tides of those Mountaines which he over against the Mediterran Sea : as likewise they are Lords of all the River called in their language Ref. This River bath his Fountaine neere part all the ferefaid people had their habitations and tents in the plaine fields; every one of which favoured their owne faction, and exercif. dall labours necessary for mans life, as common among them. The Governours of the Countrey attended their droves and flocks: and the Citizens applyed themfelues victofome manuall Art, or to husbandry. The faid people are divided into five hundred feverall families, as appeareth by the Genealogies of the Africans . Author

Thearreemét or vari ti of t cAren lang age. dq.el imarig. Africas lan-A abile.

SANCA.

G .ber. Nubun.

A thike bro-

B barier.

Of the dealis the Citie of

Africa. Humen, * Hachs.

Tunis. Сазтаван.

Language.

of Granada. ti-cir coming int Africa.

fraction Tribes part of Mount Atlas, from the Province of Hea, to the River of Sernan. Likewife they " Gamaralis gion. Their Mufmude have four Provinces under them : namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, and the unto the fire gits of Gibraltar, and thence runneth Ealiwards to the Kingdome of Tremizen. However a called by the Latines (efanta. Thefe two tribes or people have fewerall habitations by themcient Coting felix s: the other three are differfed confufficely over all Africa: howbeit, they are like fiftangra; he- 6.14- gers, inferrned one from another by certaine properties or tokens, maintaining continuall warre ma, or Martina among themselves, especially they of Numedia. Out of all which it is endent, that in times they restry in white of is one Ibnu Rachu, whom I have oftentimes read and perufed. Some writers are of opi-African Hills- nion, that the King of Tombuto, the King of Melli, and the King of Agadez fetch their origi- 20 nall from the people of Zanaga, to wit, from them which inhabite the Defart, The for fald flue families or people, being divided into hundreds of progenies, and having

innumeral le habitations, doe not with flanding vie all one kind of language, called by them A. quel Amaria, that is, the noble tongue : the Arabians which inhabit Africa, call it a barbarous tongue; and this is the true and naturall language of the Africans. Howbeit it is altogether di Frent from other languages, although it hath divers words common with the Archive tone ... Y. a, all the Gumeri in a manner and most of the Hacars speake Arabian , though corrupily; which (Huppole) came fifthere pon to palle, for that the faid people have had long acq aintance and convertation with the Arabians. The Negros have divers languages among the : felues, among which they call one Sungai, and the same is current in many Regions; as namely, in Gualata, Tombuto Gomea, Melli and Gago. Another language there is among the Negros, which they call Guber; and this is rife among the people of Guber, of Cano, of Calena. Bornelinguage. Of Perzegreg, and of Guangra. Likewite the Kingdome of Borne hath a peculiar kind of speech, altogether like vnto that, which is vied in Gaoga. And the Kingdome of Nube hath a language of great affinitie with the Caldean, Arabian and Egyptian tongues. But all the Sea-townes of Africa, from the Mediterran Sea to the Mountaines of Atlas, Speake broken Arubian. Except the Kingdome and Towne of Maroco, and the in-land Numidians bordering upon Maroco. Fez and Tremizen: all which, yie the Barbarian tongue. Howbeit, they which dwell over against Tunis and Tripoli, speake indeeds the Arabian language; albeit most corruptly.

Of that Army which was fent by Califa * Cimenthe third , in the fourthundred yeere of are in a sixing the Hegeira, there came into Africa fourthore thousand Gentlemen and others, who having subdued fundry Provinces, at length arrived in Africa : and there the Generall of the Whole At my called ' Hucha Hiban Nafich remained. This man built that great City which is called of vs . Alcair. For he flood in feare of the people of Tunis, left they should betray him, mifdoubting also that they would procure aide out of Sierly, and so give him the incounter. Wherefore with all his treature which he had got, he transled to the Defart and firme ground, diffant from Caribing about one hindred and twenty miles, and there is he faid to have built the City of * Aleair. The remnant of his Souldiers he commanded to keepe those places, which were most fecure and fit for their defence, and willed them to build where no rocke not fortification was, Which being done, the Arabiane began to inhabit Africa, and to differle themselves among the Africans, who, because they had beene for certaine yeeres subject voto the Romans or Comprison of Italians, vied to speake their language; and hence it is, that the naturall and mo hir-tongue of the Arabians, which hath great affinitie with the African tongue, grew by little and little to be corrupted; and fo they report that thefe two Nations at length conjoyned themselves in . The Morrer one. Howbeit the Arabians vitially doe blaze their Pedigree in daily and trivial Songs, which c. flome as vet is common both to 'vs, and to the people of Barbarie alfo. For no man there is, O she Arabi-as walco dwel in 'en's and ample, A a'ian, Barbarian, or facilike.

The Mahametan Pricks alwayes forbad the Arabians to passe over Nilus with their Armies and Tents. Howheit in the foure hundred yeere of the Hegera we reade, that they were per- 60 mitted to to doe by a certaine factious and f hitmaticall * Califa: because one of his Nobles had ton Parisch. rebelled against him, whirping the City of Carraoan, and the greatest part of Barbarie. After the death of which Rebell, that Kingdome remained for some yeares vinto his pottericie and tamily; whose jurisdiction (as the African Chronicles report) grew so large and strong in the

CHAP. I. S. I. Gehoar a flane by condition. Cairo built by Gehoar.

time of Eleain (the Mahumetan Califa and Patriarch of Arabia) that hee lent vinto them one Ghora flaue Gebars, whom of a flaue he had made his Counfellor, with an huge Armie. This Gebars condustry whom of a flaue he had made his Counfellor, with an huge Armie. Informed that hee pierced by condition conducted all Namidia and Barbarse. Informed that hee pierced conducted all vato the Region of Sus, and there claymed most ample Tribute : all which being done, he retur- par barie, Naned backe vnto his Califa, and most faithfully surrendred vnto him what societ hee had gained midia, Egit, from the Enemy. The Califa feeing his prosperous successe, beganne to aspire vnto ereater Ex. and Syrae ploits. And Gehear most firmely promited, that as hee had recoursed the Westerne Dominion vnto his Lord, so would be likewise by force of Warre most certainly restore vnto him the Countries of the East, to wit, Egypt, Syria, and all Arabia; and protested moreover that with to the greatest hazard of his life, he would bee avenged of all the invaries offered by the Family of Labhus vnto his Lords Predeceffors, and would reueft him in the Royall Seate of his most famous Grand-fathers, great-grand-fathers, and Progenitors. The Califa liking well his audacious promife, cauted an Armie of fourelcore thouland Souldiers, with an infinite fumme of mo- Caprobuilt, cafney and other things necessary for the Warres, to bee delivered vnto him. And so this valiant led Akbair, ney and other things necessary for the warrare, to be considered his Troupes through the Delarts of founder of and tout containing only product of the state of the stat ria. Howbeit he could not as yet hold himselfe secure; fearing least the Califa of Bagdet would cle, o the Exria. Howbert he could not as yet note immente fecure; realing that the bad left to keepe Baronicke termiaffayle him with an Army out of Affa, and leaft the Garrifons which he had left to keepe Barnation, barie, should be constrayned to forfake those conquered Provinces. Wherefore he built a Citie, and caused it to be walled round about. In which Citie he left one of his most truthe Captaines,

with a great part of the Army; and this Citie hee called by the name of Alchair, which afterward by others was named Cairo. This Alchair is faid daily fo to have increased, that no Citie of the World for buildings and Inhabitants was any way comparable thereunto.

Moreouer, Califa Eleain arriving at Alchan, and beeing most honourably entertained by his Sernant Gehoar, (who had written for him to come) began to thinke voon great affaires, and hauing gathered an huge Armie, resolued to wage battell against the Califa of Bagdet. In the meane leason he that was appointed Vice-Roy of Barbarie, compacting with the Califa of Bagdet, veelded himfelfe and all Barbarie into his hands. Which the Califa most kindly accepted. and ordayned him King ouer all Africa. But Califa Eleain hearing this newes at Alchair was wonderfully afflicted in minde. Howbeit there was one of his secret Counsellors a very lear-30 ned and wittie man, who feeing his Lord fo fad and penfine; I affare you, faid he, if you please to take mine aduife, that I will forth-with procure you fuch an Armie, as shall give you great ftore of money, and yet notwithstanding shall doe you good service also. The Califa beeing fome-what emboldened at these speeches, asked his Counsellout how this might possibly bee brought to effect : My Lord (layth his Counfellor) certaine it is , that the Arabians are now growne fo populous, and to fo great a number, that all Arabia cannot contayne them, fearcely will the yeerely increase of the ground suffice to feed their Droues, and you see with what great famine they are afflicted, and how they are destitute not onely of habitations, but even of vicituals and fustenance. Wherefore if you had heretofore given them leave, they would long ere this have invaded Africa. And if you will now licence them fo to do, doubt you not, but that you shall receive of them an huge Masse of Gold. This counsell could not altogether satisfie the Califa his minde : for he knew right well that the Arabians would so waste all Africa, as it should neither be profitable for himselfe, nor for his Enemies. Notwithstanding, seeing that his Kingdome was altogether endangered, he thought it better to accept those summes of money which his Counfellour promised, and to to be reuenged of his Enemie, then to lose both his Kingdome and Gold all at once. Wherefore he permitted all Arabians, which would pay him Duckats apiece, freely to enter Africa; conditionally that they would flew themfelies most deadly Enemies vnto the treacherous King of Barbarie. Which libertie being granted vifto them, it is reported that ten Tribes or Families of Arabians, being halfe the people of Arabia Deferta, came immediately into Africa; vnto whom certaine Inhabitants of Arabia Fielix so joyned themselves, infomuch that there were found amongst them about fitte thousand perfore able to beare Armes : their women , children, and cattell were almost innumerable the Scorie whereof Ibna Racha, the most diligent Chronicler of African Affaires (whom wee haue before mentioned) fetteth downe at large,

These Arabians having traversed the Defart betweene Agret and Barbarie, first laid fiege vnto Tripolis a Citie of Barbarie, which being ouercome, they flue a great part of the Citizens. the refidue escaping by flight. Next of all they encountred the Towne of Capes, which wis by the rendue elections of night. At length they befreged Cairaoan also, howbeit the Citizens being them taken and vanquished. At length they befreged Cairaoan also, howbeit the Citizens being then Tribes of fufficiently prouided of victuals, are laid to have indured the fiege for eight monethes : which 60 being expired, they were conftrayned to yeeld : at what time there was nothing in Carraoah uad Africa.

but wofull flaughters, hideous out-cryes, and present death. This Land the Afabians divided Ibnu Rache a among themselves, and began to people and inhabit the same; requiring in the meane frace samous Haftlarge Tributes of the Townes and Prouinces subject vnto them. And so they possed all Afra- riographics.

The tayone Moores are duided into fue ignerall People or Tribes : to wit , the Tribes cold d Terretorie of Morocco. The Tribe of Gumers pelielle certaine Mountaines of Barbarie, dweltizens applyed themfelues victofome manuall Art, or to husbandry. The faid people are divided

rian.

The atteemes or vivi ti of t c A.r.c n lang age. Aquel imarig. April 47 lan-A abile.

Sunca.

Giber. Nubun.

Arabike bro-

B brie.

the Citie of Africa. Hu men. Hacha.

* Carraoan, · Carraean.

Language,

ers waich dwel in ten s and their coming Mattenetan Patrierch.

Zanhagi, Mulmud, Zoseti, Hacari and Gumeri. The Tribe of Mulmudi inhabit the Westerne frence Tribes part of Mount Atlas, from the Province of Hea, to the River of Serman. Likewife they frence Tribes well won the South part of the faid Mountaine, and sponall the inward plaines of that Re-Street Street gion. These Mufmids have four Prounces under them : namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, and the his on the tides of the fe Mountaines which he cour against the Mediterran Sea : as likewise they are Lords of all the River called in their language Rif. This River hath his Fountaine neare unto the fire gits of Gibraltar, and thence runneth East wards to the Kingdome of Tremizen. Tremger cal-led by ne a called by the Latines Cafiria. Thefe two tribes or people have feuerall habitations by themcient Colmo felir s : the other three are differfed confundingly over all Africa : howbeit, they are like firangra; he did gers, safterned one from another by certaine properties or tokens, maintaining continuall warre among themselves, especially they of Numdia. Out of all which it is evident, that in times pan all the forefaid people had their habitations and tents in the plaine fields : every one of which favoured their owne faction, and exercifed all labours necessary for mans life, as common among them. The Gouernours of the Countrey attended their droves and flocks; and the Ciinto five hundred fenerall families, as appeareth by the Genealogies of the Africans, Anther Thus Rock on whereof is one Ibon Rachn, whom I have oftentimes read and perufed. Some writers are of opidirectifits nion, that the King of Tombuto, the King of Melli, and the King of Agadez fetch their origing nall from the people of Zanaga, to wit, from them which inhabite the Defart. The forefald flue families or people, being divided into hundreds of progenies, and having immunerable habitations, doe not with flanding vie all one kind of language, called by them A-

anel Amaria, that is, the noble tongue : the Arabians which inhabit Africa, call it a barbarous tongue; and this is the true and naturall language of the Africans. Howbeit it is altogether di erent from other languages, although it hath divers words common with the Arabian tongue, Yea, all the Gumeri in a manner and most of the Hacars speake Arabian , though corruprly; which (I fur poie) came first here pon to passe, for that the said people have had long acq aistance and convertation with the Arabians. The Negros have divers languages among the reclues, among which they call one Sungai, and the same is current in many Regions; as namely, in Gualata, Tombuto Gomea, Melli and Gago. Another language there is among the Negros, which they call Guber; and this is rife among the people of Guber, of Cano, of Calena, Barolinguage. of Perzegreg, and of Guangra. Likewile the Kingdome of Borno hath a peculiar kind of speech. altogether like vnto that, which is vied in Gaoga. And the Kingdome of Nube hath a language of great affinitie with the Caldean, Arabian and Egyptian tongues. But all the Sea-townes of Africa, from the Mediterran Sea to the Mountaines of Atlas, Speake broken Arabian. Except the Kingdome and Towns of Maroco, and the in-land Numidians bordering vpon Maroes, Fez and Tremizen; all which, we the Barbarian tongue. Howbert, they which dwell over against Tunis and Tripoli, peake indeeds the Arabian language; albeit most corruptly. Of that Army which was fent by Califa . Cimen the third, in the four hundred yeere of

are inarbiting the Hegira, there came into Africa four effore thousand Gentlemen and others, who having tubdued fundry Provinces, at length arrived in Africa: and there the Generall of the whole At my called ' Hucha Hiban Nafieb remained. This man built that great City which is called of vs . Alexir. For he itood in feare of the people of Tunis, left they should betray him, mifdoubting also that they would procure aide out of Sierly, and so give him the incounter. Wherefore with all his treasure which he had got, he translled to the Defart and firme ground, distant from Carthage about one handred and twenty miles, and there is he faid to have built the City of " Aleair. The remnant of his Souldiers he commanded to keepe those places, which were most secure and fit for their defence, and willed them to build where no rocke not fortification was. Which being done, the Arabiane began to inhabit Africa, and to disperse themselnes among the Africans, who, because they had beene for certaine yeeres subject vinto the Romans or Correction of Italians, which to speake their language; and hence it is, that the natural and mo hir-toneue of the Arabians, which hath great affinitie with the African tongue, grew by little and little to be corrupted and to they report that these two Nations at length conjoyned themselves in one. Howbest the Arabians visually doe blaze their Pedigree in daily and trivial Songs, which coffeme as vet is common both to 'vs, and to the people of Barbarie alfo. For no man there is, be he never to bate, which will not to his owne name, adde the name of his Nation; as for example, A a' i.m., Barbarian, or face like.

The Mahametan Prices always forbad the Arabians to passe ouer Nilus with their Armies and Tents. Howbeit in the fourehundred yeere of the Hegena we reade, that they were per- 60 mitted to to doe by a certaine factious and this maticall * Califa: because one of his Nobles had rebelled against him, winrping the City of Carraoan, and the greatest part of Barbarie. After the death of which Rebell, that Kingdome remained for fome yeares vinto his policitie and family; whole jurisdiction (as the African Chronicles report) grew follarge and strong in the

time of Eleain (the Mahumetan Califa and Patriarch of Arabia) that hee fent vinto them one Gehear, whom of a flaue he had made his Counfellor, with an huge Armie. This Gehear condu-Gring me his Armie Westward, recouered all Numidia and Barbarie. Infortuch that hee pierced by conducted all wato the Region of Sus, and there claymed most ample Tribute : all which being done, he returned backe vnto his Califu, and most faithfully surrendred vnto him whatsoeuer hee had gained midia, Epit, from the Enemy. The Califu feeing his profperous successe, beganne to aspire vnto greater Ex. and Syr.a. pleits. And Gehoar most firmely promited, that as hee had recourred the Westerne Dominion vnto his Lord, so would be likewise by force of Warre most certainly restore vnto him the Countries of the East, to wit, Egypt, Syria, and all Arabia; and protested moreouer that with to the greatest hazard of his life, he would bee avenged of all the invaries offered by the Family of Labbus vnto his Lords Predecesfors, and would reuest him in the Royall Seate of his most famous Grand-fathers, great-grand-fathers, and Progenitors. The Califa liking well his audacious promife, caufed an Armie of fourelcore thousand Souldiers, with an infinite fumme of mo- care built, calney and other things necessary for the Warres, to bee delivered vnto him. And so this valiant led Akbair, and flout Chieftaine being prouided for warfare, conducted his Troupes through the Defarts of Gibbar the first Egypt and Barbarie; and hauing first put to flight the Vice-Califa of Egypt (who fled vnto El- Carocalliethe wir the Califa of Bagdet) in short time lie subdued very easily all the Provinces of Beppr and Sy- Arabeck Arciria. Howbeit he could not as yet hold himfelfe fecure; fearing least the Califa of Bagdet would cle, o the Exaffayle him with an Army out of Affa, and leaft the Garrifons which he had left to keepe Bar- onice tembers, should be confirmed to forfake those conquered Proninces. Wherefore he built a Citie, namon, and caused it to be walled round about. In which Citie he left one of his most trustice Captaines, with a great part of the Army; and this Citie hee called by the pame of Alchair, which afterward by others was named Cairo. This Alchair is faid daily fo to have increased, that no Citie

of the World for buildings and Inhabitants was any way comparable thereunto.

Moreover, Califa Eleain arriving at Alchar, and beeing most honourably entertained by his Semant Geboar, (who had written for him to come) began to thinke vpon great affaires, and hauing gathered an huge Armie, retolued to wage battell against the Califa of Bardet. In the meane feason he that was appointed Vice-Roy of Barbarie, compacting with the Califa of Bag-

det, veelded himselfe and all Barbarie into his hands. Which the Califa most kindly accepted, and ordayned him King over all Africa. But Califa Eleain hearing this newes at Alchair was

wonderfully afflicted in minde. Howbeit there was one of his fecret Counfellors a very lear-30 ned and wittie man, who feeing his Lord fo fad and penfine; I affure you, faid he, if you pleafe to take mine aduife, that I will forth-with procure you such an Armie, as shall give you great ftore of money, and yet notwithstanding shall doe you good service also. The Califa beeing fome-what emboldened at their speeches, asked his Counsellout how this might possibly bee brought to effect : My Lord (tayth his Countellor) certaine it is , that the Arabians are now growne fo populous, and to io great a number, that all Arabia cannot contayne them, scarcely will the yeerely increase of the ground suffice to feed their Droues, and you see with what great famine they are afflicted, and how they are destitute not onely of habitations, but even of vicituals and fustenance. Wherefore if you had heretofore given them leave, they would long ere this have invaded Africa. And if you will now licence them fo to do, doubt you not, but that you shall receive of them an huge Masse of Gold. This counsell could not altogether satisfie the 40 Califa his minde: for he knew right well that the Arabians would so waste all Africa, as it should neither be profitable for himselfe, nor for his Enemies. Notwithstanding, seeing that his Kingdome was altogether endangered, he thought it better to accept those summes of money which his Counfellour promifed, and to to be reuenged of his Enemie, then to lofe both his Kingdome and Gold all at once. Wherefore he permitted all Arabians, which would pay him Duckats apiece, freely to enter Africa; conditionally that they would flew themselves most deadly Enemies vnto the treacherous King of Barbarie. Which libertie being granted vrito them, it is reported that ten Tribes or Families of Arabians, being halfe the people of Arabia Deferta, came immediately into Africa; vnto whom certaine Inhabitants of Arabia Full's 50 ioyned themselves, infomuch that there were found amongst them about fiftie thousand versons

able to beare Armes : their women , children, and cattell were almost innumerable the Storie whereof Ibna Racha, the most diligent Chronicler of African Affaires (whom wee haue before mentioned) fetteth downe at large, These Arabians having traversed the Delart betweene Agree and Barbanie, first laid fiege

vnto Tripolis a Citie of Barbarie, which being ouercome, they flue a great part of the Citizens, the residue escaping by flight. Next of all they encountred the Towne of Capes, which wkbv the renduc excaping by night. At length they befreged Cairaoan alfo; howbeit this Citizens being them taken and vanquished. At length they befreged Cairaoan alfo; howbeit this Citizens being then Tribes of fufficiently prouided of victuals, are laid to have indured the fiege for eight monethes : which 6C being expired, they were conftrayned to yeeld : at what time there was nothing in Carraoan und Africa. but wofull flaughters, hideous out-cryes, and present death. This Land the Afabians divided 16nw Rache a among themselves, and began to people and inhabit the same; requiring in the meane space samous Hose large Tributes of the Townes and Provinces Subject vnto them. And so they posseled all Afra- riographet.

King lofe;b.

ca, vitill fuch time as one lofeph the sonne of leffin attayned to the Kingdome of Marocco. This Joseph was the first King of Marocco, who endeauoured by all meanes to advance the friends and kindred of the late deceased King of Africa vnto the Kingdome; neither did hee ceale vitill he had expelled all the Arabian; out of Cairaoan. Howbert the Arabians possessed the Regions thereabout, giving themselves wholy to spoiles and robberies : and the friends of the faid deceafed King could beare rule but in certaine places only. Afterward fucceeded in the Kinedome of Marocco one Manfor, who was the fourth King and Prelate of that Mahumetan Sect which was called Muschedm, This man, albeit his Grand-fathers and great Grand-fathers

had alwaves favoured the Posteritie and friends of the forelaid deceased African King, and had rad atwayes randomed the Louise deurled altogether how to oppose himselfe against them, 10 and to viurpe all their authoritie. Wherefore making a fayned league with them, wee reade, that he provoked the Arabians against them, and so very easily overcame them. Afterward Marfor brought the greatest part of the Arabians into the Westerne Dominions of Africa: vnto the better fort of whom he gaue the Habitation of Duccala and Azgara, and vnto the baterremnant he bequeathed the polletion of Numidia. But in processe of time hee commanded the Numidian flaues to be fet at libertie, and fo in deleight of the Arabians, hee caused them to

inhabit that part of Namidia which he had allotted vinto them. But as for the Arabians of Azga-74 and of certaine other places in Barbarie, hee brought them all vider his subjection. For the Arabians out of Defarts are like filbes without water: they had indeed often attempted to get into the Defarts; but the Mountaines of Atlas, which were then peffelled by the Barbarians, hin- 20 dred their passage. Neither had they libertie to passe over the Plaines, for the residue of the Barbarians were there planted. Wherefore their pride being abated, they applyed themselues wnto Husbandry, having no where to repose themselves, but onely in Villages, Cottages, and Tents. And their miserie was so much the greater, in that they were constrayined yeerely to disburse vato the King of Marocco most ample Tribute. Those which inhabited Duccala, because they were an huge multitude, easily freed themselves from all Tribute and Imposition.

A great part of the Arabians remayned still at Tunis, for that Manfor had refuled to carrie themalong with him : who, after the death of the faid Manfor, grew to bee Lords of Tunis, and so continued, till they refigned their Gouernment vnto the people called Abu-Haf; vpon condition that they should pay them halfethe Reuenues thereof ; and this condition hath remayned firme enen yntill our dayes. Howbeit, because the Arabians are increased to such innumerable fivarmes, that the whole Reuenues are not fufficient for them, the King of Tunis most juffly alloweth fome of them their duties, to the end they may make secure passage for Merchants, which indeed they performe without moleftation or hurt of any. But the relidue which are deprised of their pay, betake themselves wholy to robberies, thefts, slaughters, and such other monftrous outrages. For thefe, lurking alwayes in the Woods, no fooner fee any Merchant approching, but find enly they breake forth, deprining him of his goods and life allo rinfomuch that now Merchants dare not pale that way but with a Garrilon of fafe-conduct. And so they pade sometimes to their great inconvenience. For they are notwithstanding constrayned to guevato the forefaid Arabians, which are in pay with the King of Tinns, great fummes of money; and are likewise oftentimes so in danger of Robbers, that they lose both their goods

The Arabians which inhabit Africa, are divided into three parts : one part whereof are called Cachin, the second Hilel, and the third Machil. The Cachin are divided into three Nations OF Tribes ; to wit, the Tribes of Etheg, Sumait, and Sahid. Moreover, Etheg is divided into three Families that is to fay, the Family of Delleg' Elmuntefig, and Subair : and thele are dispersed into many Regions. Hilel are derived into foure Generations; to wit, the people of Benibemir, of Rieb, of Sussen, and of Chusain. The Family of Benibemir, is divided into the Linages of Huroum, Huchen, Habrum and Muffim. The Tribe of Kieh, are diffributed into the Kindreds called Denead, Snaid, Afgeg, Elebyrub, Enedri, and Garfam; which Kindreds posses many Dominions. Machil have three Tribes vinder them : to wit, Mastar, Hutmen, and Hassan, 50 Maffariate divided into Ruchen, and Selim; Hutmen into Elhasi and Chinan; and Hassin into Dewingen, Deumanfor, and Deuinubaidulla. Deubeffen is diffinguished into the Kindreds called Dulein, Berbun, Vodein, Racmen and Hamram; Denimanfor inco Hemrun, Menebbe, Husein, and Albahassin; and lattly, Denihubaidulla, into Garag, Hedeg, Teleb, and Geoan. All these doe in a manner posselle unnumerable Regions; infomuch that to reckon them vp at large, were a matter not onely difficult, but almost impossible.

The Tribe Cachin.

Etbeg.

The most noble and famous, Arabians were they of the Family of Etheg, vinto whom Almanfor gave the Begisns of Duccella and of Tedles to inhabit. These Arab and even till our times haus beene put to great diffreile and hazard, partly by the Portugall King, and partly by the King 60 of Fez. They have at all oportunities, if need should require, a hundred thousand Soulciers sit to beare Aranes, agreat part whereof are Horiemen. The Arabians called Sumait, enioy that part of the Librar Delart which lyeth ouer against the Delart of Tripoly. These make often incasions into Barbarie, for they have no places allotted them therein, but they and their Camels doe perpetually remaine in the D-farts. They are able to leuie fourefcore thousand fouldiers, the greatell part being footmen. Likewile the Tribe of Sabid doe inhabite the Defart of Libya: and Sabid. thele have had alwaies great league and familiaritie with the King of Guargala. They have such abundance of cattell, that they doe plentifully supply all the Cities of that region with flelh, and that especially in Summer-time, for all the Winter they thir not out of the Defarts. Their num. her is preceded to about a hundred and fittle thouland, having not many Horlmen among them. The Tribe of Delice possesse divers habitations; howbeit, Cefaris containeth the greatest part Dilee. of them. Some alto inhabit upon the frontiers of the Kingdom of Bugia, who are faid to receive Tremger. a yearely flipend from their next neighbours. But the least part of them dwell upon the field-

10 country of Actes, upon the borders of Mauritania, and upon some part of mount Atlas, being Subject vinto the King of Fex. The people of Elmuntefig are seated in the Province of Azgar, Elmuntefig. and are colled by the later writers Elealuth. These also pay certaine yearely tribute vnto the King of Fez, being able to furnish about eight thousand Horsemen to the warres. The Kindred of Sobur doe inhabit not farre from the Kingdome of Gezeir, being many of them under the pay Sober. of the King of Tremizen, and are faid to enjoy a great part of Numidia. They have more ordefie. three thouland most warlike Horsemen. They possessellelikewise great abundance of Camels; for which cause they abide all Winter in the Defarts. The remnant of them occupieth the Plaine which lieth betweene Salaand Meener. These have huge droves of Cartell, and exercise themfelues in Husbandrie, being confirmined to pay some yearely tribute vnto the King of Fex. They have Horlemen, who, as a man may fay, are naturally framed to the warres, about foure thousand

Hillel, which are also called Benibamir, dwel upon the frontiers of the Kingdome of Tremizen Of the people and Oran. These range up and downe the Defare of Tegorarin, being in pay under the King of of Hilleland of Tremisen, and of great riches and power; infomuch that they have at all times in a reading for their habithe warres fixe thousand Horsemen. The Tribe of Hurua possesse onely the borders of Mustucanim. These are sauage people, giving themselves wholly to spoyles and robberies, and alienating their minds from the warres. They never come forth of the Defarts ; for the people of Barbarie will neither allow them any places of habitation, nor yet any flipend at all: Horiemen they haue to the number of two thouland. The Kindred of Huchin are next neighbours vinto theregion of Melian, who receive certaine pay from the King of Tunis. They are rude and will people, and in very deed eltranged from all humanitie: they have (as it is reported) about fifteene
30 hundred Horiemen. The Tribe of Habru inhabit the region lying betweene Oran and Mushu- Habru:

ganim: these exercise Husbandrie, paying yearely tribute vnto the King of Tremizen, and being fearceable to make one hundred Horfemen. The people called Muffen, possesse those Defarts of Mafila, which extend onto the Kingdome Mufim.

of Busia. Their likewife are given onely to theft and robberie; they take tribute both of their owne records and of other regions adjoying vito them. The Tribe of Recebinhabit those defarts Riceb. of Libys, which border upon Configurations. These have most ample Dominions in Numidia, being now divided into fixe pares. This right famous and warlike Nation receiveth Hipend from the King of Twis, having five thousand Horsemen at command. The people of Swaid enjoy that De- swaid. fart, which is extended vnto the Signiorie of Tonez. Thefe have very large posteriors, receiving the fine of the King of Tremizer, being men of notable dexteritie, as well in the warres, as in all other consertation of life. The Kindred of Ageg dwell not altogether in one place for part. Age, of them inhabit the region of Greet, among the pool called Henrica and the reliable polled that part of Deceale, which letch nece with a part of Theor Elebrate dwell upon that Elebrate. portion of Helin which is fituate in the Plaine of Sahidim, having the people of Heab tributarie vinto them, and being a very vincinill and barbarous people. The people called Enedriare feated in Enedrit the Plaine of Heab : but the whole region of Heab maintaineth almost foure thousand Horsemen, which not with standing are unfit for the warres. The people of Garfa have fundry Manti- Garfa. ons: neither have they any King or Gouernour. They are disperled among other Generations, and especially among the Kindreds of Manebbi and Hemram. These conusy Dates from Segel-50 mell's to the Kingdome of Fez, and carry backe againe from thence fuch things as are necessarie

for Sevelmels. The people called Ruche, who are thought to be descended from Mastar, doe possesse that de- Of the Tribe fart, which lieth next vinto Dedes and Farcula. They have very fmall dominions, for which cause of Macini. they are accounted no whit rich; howbeit, they are most valiant fouldiers, and exceeding fixed Radie, of foote; infomuch that they effecte it a great diffrace, if one of their footemen be variquified by two horsemen. And you shall find scarce any one man among them, which will not outgoe a Switzeropie. very fwift horse, be the journey never so long. They have about five hundred Horseman, but most warlike Footemen, to the number of eight thousand. Selms inhabite upon the River of selim. Dara, from whence the range up and downe the Defarts. They are endowed with great riches, carrying every yeare merchandize vinto the Kingdome of Tombuto, and are thought to be in high Troffickto fauour with the King himfelfe. A large jurisdiction they have in Darbs, and great plentie of Ca- Tombato, mels: and for all opportunities of warre they have ever in a readinesse three thousand Horsemen.

756 Elbafit.

Chinan.

Denibeffen.

The Tribe of Elhafis dwelleth upon the fea-coast, necre unto Messa. They doe arme about fine hundred Horsemen, and are a Nation altogether rude, and vnacquainted in the warres. Some part of them inhabiteth Azgara. Those which dwell about Meffa, are free from the yoke of superioritie; but the others which remaine in Azgar, are fubiced to the King of Fez. The Kindred of Chinan are dispersed among them, which before were called Elealuib, and these also are subsect vnto the King of Fez. Very warlike people they are, and areable to fet forth two thousand Horlemen. The people of Desibeffen are divided into the Kindreds of Dule m, Bunbun, Vode, Deuimanfor, and Deulhabaidulla. Duleimare connectant in the Delarts or Libja with the African people, called Zanhaga. They have neither dominion, nor yet any stipend; wherefore they are very poore, and given to robberie: they travell vnto Dara, and exchange Cattell for Dates with To the inhabitants there. All brauerie and comlinesse of appartell they vtterly neglect; and their number of fighting men is ten thousand, foure thousand being Horlemen, and the residue Footemen. The people called Burban, possesse that part of the Libyan Defart which adiovned vnto

Burbun.

Sus: They are a huge multitude, neither have they any riches befides Camels. Vnto them is subiect the Citic of Teffet, which scarce suffeeth them for the maintenance of their Horses, being but a few. The people of Vode enjoyeth that Defart, which is fituate betweene Guaden and Gualata. They beare rule ouer the Guadennes, and of the Duke of Gualata they receive yearely tribute, and their number is growne almost infinite: for by report, they are of abilitie to bring into the field almost threescore thousand most skilfull souldiers; notwithstanding, they have great want of Horses. The Tribe of Racmen occupie that Delart which is next vnto Hacha: they have verie 20

large possessions, and doe in the Spring-time visually travell voto Tesses; for then alwaies they have formwhat to do with the inhabitants there. Their people fit for Armes are to the number of twelve thouland, albeit they have very few Horlemen. The Nation of Hammun inhabit the Defarts of Tazanost, exacting some tribute of the inhabitants there, and with daily incursions likewife moleiting the people of Nun. Their number of fouldiers is almost eight thousand. The Generation of Debemrum, which are faid to derive their pedigree from Deumanfor, in-

The people defeended of Desamation. Debemrum.

Menebbe.

Hulein,

habit the Defart ouer against Segelmess, who continually wander by the Libran Defarts as farre as Ighid. They have cributarie vnto them the people of Segelmeffe, of Todgaran, of Tebelbelt, and of Dava. Their foile yeeldeth fuch abundance of Dates, that the yearely increase thereof is sufficient to maintaine the malthough they had nothing elle to line on. They are of great fame in 30 other Nations, being able to turnish for the warres about three thousand Hor emen. There dwell likewise among these certaine other Arabians of more base condition, called in their language Garfa Efeeb; which notwithstanding hauegreat abundance of Horses, and of all other Cattell. The people of Menebbe doe almost inhabite the very fame Defart, having two Provinces of Numidia vn.ler them ; to wit, Margara, and Retebbe. Thefe also are a most valiant Nation, being in pay vinder the Province of Segelmes, and being able to make about two thousand Horsmen. The Kindred of Husein, which are thought to be descended of Desimanfor, are seated voon the Mountaines of Atlas. They have in the faid Mountaines alarge jurifdiction, namely, divers Cattles every where, and many most rich and flourithing Cities, all which, they thinke, were giuen them in old time by the Vice-royes of the Marini: for as soone as they had wonne that 40 Kingdome, the Kindred of Husein affoorded them great aide and service. Their dominion is now Subject vinto the Kings of Fez and of Segelmess. They have a Captaine, which for the most part resideth at the Citie, commonly called Garfeluin. Likewise they are alwairs in a manner, trauering of that Delart, which in their language is called Eddara. They are taken to be a most rich and honest people, being of abilitie to furnish for the warres about fixe thousand Horsemen. Among thefe, you shall oftentimes find many Arabians of another fort, whom they vse onely to be their feruants. The Tribe of Abulhafein doe inhabit part of the forefaid Defart of Eddara, howevita very small part; the greatest number of whom are brought vnto such extreme milery,

Abulhufein.

The of-fpring o Denibubai-Gharras.

Hedeg. Thelab.

" A'zer. Algo i, the neit of Sca. Horners, cage of vn. elcan : Birds and place of

that they have not in those their wild tents sufficient suftenance to live vpon. One Generation of the people of Denihubaidulla are those which are named Gharrag: these 50 enioy the Delarts of Benigonsi and Fighig, having very large possessions in Numitia. They are flipendaries vnto the King of Tremizen, who diligently endeuoureth to bring them to peace and tranquillitie of life; for they are wholly giuen to theft and rebbene. In Summer-time they viually repaire vnto Tremizen, where they are thought for that featon of the yeare to fettle their abode : their Horlemen are to the number of foure thousand, all which are most noble warriours. The Kindred of Hedeg possesse a certaine Debrt neere vnto Tremizen, called in their owne language Hangad. These have no stipend from any Prince, nor yet any jurisdiction at all, rapine and stealth is onely delightfull vnto them; they prouide onely for their family and themselves, and are able to let forth about fine hundred Horlemen. The Tribe of Theleb inhabite the Plaine of ' Algezer; these have often vagaries over the Defarts vnto the Province of Tedgear. Vnto 60 them were subject in times past, the most famous Cities of Algezer and Tedelles : howbest in these our dayes they were recovered agains from them by Earbaroffa the Turke; which leste could not but greatly griene and moleit their King. It is reported moreover, that at the fame time, the principall of the faid people of Theleb were cut off. For strength and cuming in chi-

nairie they were inferiour to no other Nation; their Horfeman were about three thousand. The Tribe of Geboan inhabite not all in one place : for part of them you may find among the people of Guarag, and the residue amongst the people of Hedeg; and they are vinto them no other. Great. wife then their feruants, which condition they notwith finding most patiently and willingly full mit them telues vinto. And here one thing is to bee noted by the way; to wit, that the two filmit themselves vinto. And here one thing is to bee noted by the way; to wit, that the two forenamed people called Schathin and Hilesare originally Arabians of Arabia Defarta, and think called Geb a themselves to be descended from I small, the sonne of Abraham. And those which we called Ma- and Hiller and Hiller and chil, came first forth of Arabia Falix, and derive their pedigree from Saba. Before whom the ic aded from Mahumetans preferre the former, which of Ifmael are called Ifmaelites. And became there hath Ifmae', the base 30 alwaies been great controuerfie among them, which part should bee of greater Nobilitie, they some of have written on both fides many Dialogues and Epigrams, whereby each man is wont to blaze The diabitant the Renowne the Vertues, Manners, and laudable Cuitomes of his owne Nation. The ancient cilled Machi, Arabians, which were before the times of the Ismaelnes, were called by the African Historiogta- descended of phers Arabi-Araba; as if a mar should fay, Arabians of Arabia. But those which came of Saba, Ifmael, they call Arabs Mus-Araba; as if they should fay, Arabians ingrafted into the land of Arabia, or Arabians accidentally, because they were not originally bred and borne in Arabia. And them which afterward came into Africa, they name in their language Mustchgeme, that

CHAP.1. S.1. Manners and customes of the Africans. Their attire. &c.

not onely their speech, but their manners also are most corrupt and barbarous. These are (friend-20 ly Reader) the particulars, which for thele ten yeeres my memorie could referue, as touching the originals and discritics of the Africans and Arabians; in all which time I remember not, that euer Iread, or faw any Historie of that Nation. He that will know more, let him have recourfe

is, Barbarous Arabians; and that because they joyned themselnes vnto strangers, infomuch that

vnto Hibnu Rachuthe Hittoriographer before named.

Those fine kinds of people before rehearled, to wit, the people of Zenega, of Ganfiga, of Terga, The manners of Leuta, and of Bardeon, are called of the Lasins, Numide : and they live all after one manner, that and cuitomes is to fay, without all law and civilitie. Their garment is a narrow and bafe piece of cloth, wherewith fearce halfe their body is couered. Some of them wrap their heads in a kind of black cloth, The people of as it were with a fearfe, such as the Turkes vie, which is commonly called a Turbant. Such as will Numidia, be differred from the common fort, for Gentlemen weare a lacket made of blew Cotton with Their active, 30 wide fleetes. And Cotton-cloth is brought vnto them by certaine Merchants from the land of

Negros. They have no beasts fit to ride upon, except their Camels; unto whom Nature be- Camela tweene the bunch standing upon the hinder part of their backes and their necks, hath allotted a place, which may fitly ferue to ride vpon, in itead of a faddle. Their manner of riding is most ridiculous. For fometimes they lay their leggs acrosse vpon the Camels necke; and fometimes againe (hauing no knowledge nor regard of thirrops) they rest their feete vpon a rope, which is Riding. call ouer his shoulders. Instead of spurres, they vie a truncheon of a cubites length, having at the one end thereof a Goade, wherewith they pricke onely the shoulders of their Camels. Thole Camels which they yie to ride you, have a hole bored through the griffles of their note, in the which a ring of leather is fastened, whereby as with a bit, they are more eatily curbed and ma-40 ffred; after which manner I have feene buffles vied in Italie. For beds, they lie vpon mats made of fedge and bulruftes. Their tents are concred for the most part with course chamlet, or Beds and with a harsh kind of Wooll, which commonly groweth vpon the boughes of their Date- sents.

As for their manner of living, it would feeme to any man incredible what hunger and fearer- Woollgrowtie this Nation will indure. Bread they have none at all, neither vie they any feething or ro- Palmetre. thing; their foode is Camels milke onely, and they define no other dainties. For their break-fast Miscrable diet. they drinke off a great cup of Camels milke: for supper they have certaine dried flesh sleeped in butter and milke, whereof each man taking his share, eateth it out of his fift. And that this their meate may not stay long undigested in their stomacks, they sup off the foresaid broth wherein 50 their fielh was fleeped : for which purpole they vie the palmes of their hands as a most fit instrument framed by nature to the same end. After that, each one drinks his cup of milke, and fo Naturalldish,

their supper hath an end. These Numidians, while they have any store of milke, regard water nothing at all, which for the most part hapneth in the Spring of the yeare, all which time you shall find some among them that will neither wash their hands nor their faces. Which seemeth not altogether to be valikely; for (as we faid before) while their milke lafteth, they frequent Slouins. not those places where water is common : yea, and their Camels, to long as they may feede vpon graffe, will drinke no water at all. They fpend their whole dayes in hunting and threuing : Occupation, for all their indeauour and exercise is to drine away the Camels of their enemies ; neither will they remaine about three dayes in one place, by reason that they have not passure any longer

of for the fullenance of their Camels. And albeit (as is aforefaid) they have no civilitie at all, nor Pollicyany Lawes prescribed vnto them; yet have they a certaine Governour or Prince placed over them, vnto whom they render obedience and due honour, as vnto their King. They are not only ignorant of all good learning and liberall Sciences; but are likewife altogether carelelle and defittute of vertue: infomuch that you shall find fcarce one amongst them all, which is a man of

CHAP, I, S. I.

758 indrement or counfell. And if any injuried partie will goe to the Law with his adjustfarie, hee must ride continually fine or fixe daies before he can come to the speech of any sudge. The Na-I adg s. tion hath all learning and good difciplines in such contempt, that they will not once vouchtare to goe out of their deferts for the study and attaining thereof : neither, if any learned man shall Learning. chance to come among them, can they loue his company and convertation, in regard of their most mie and deteffable behaniour. Howbeit, if they can find any judge, which can frame himfelfe to live and continue among them, to him they give most large yearely alle wance. Some allow their Judge a thousand ducates yearely, some more, and some leffe, according as themselves thinke good. They that will feeme to be accounted of the better fort, court their heads (as I faid before) with a piece of blacke cloth, part whereof like a vizard or maske, reacheth downe ouer their ro faces, couering all their countenance except their eyes; and this is their daily kind of attire. And to often as they put meate into their mouthes, they remove the faid maske; which being Manner of done, they forthwith couer their mouthes againe, alleaging this fond reason: for (fay they) as it is volcemely for a man after he hath received meate into his flomacke, to vomit it out of his mouth againe, and to cast it upon the earth; even so it is an undecent part to eate meate with a mans mouth vncouered. The women of this Nation be groffe, corpuler, and of a swart complexion. They are fattest upon their breft and paps, but flender about the girdle-flead. Very civill they are, after their manner, both in speech and gestures : sometimes they will accept of a kisse; but who so tempteth them farther, putteth his owne life in hazard. For by reaton of iealouse, you may see them 20 [ca]oulie. daily one to be the death and destruction of another, and that in such sauage and brutish manner, that in this case they will shew no compassion at all. And they seeme to bee more wise in this behalfe then divers of our people, for they will by no meanes match themfelies vnto an harlot. The liberalitie of this people hath at all times been exceeding great. And when any trauellers may palle through their drie and defart Territories, they will never repaire vito their tents, neither will they themselves trauell upon the common high way. And it any Caravan, or multitude of Merchants will palle those Delarts, they are bound to pay certaine Custome vnto the Prince Merchants. of the fail people, namely, for every Camels load, a piece of cloth worth a Ducat. Vpon a time I remember, that trauelling in the companie of certaine Merchants ouer the De-The Authouts fart called by them Araoan, it was our chance there to meete with the Prince of Zanaga; who, 20 after he had received his due custome, inuited the said companie of Merchants, for their recreation, to goe and abide with him in his tents foure or fine dayes. Howbeit, because his tents were too farre out of our way, and for that wee should have wand; ed farther then we thought good, esteeming it more convenient for vs to hold on our direct course, we refused his gentle offer, and for his courtefie gaue him great thankes. But not being fatisfied therewith, he commanded that our Camels should proceede on forward, but the Merchantshe carried along with him, and gane Camels and them very fumptuous entertainement at his place of abode. Where we were no fooner arrived, Offriches vied but this good Prince caused Camels of all kinds and Offriches, which he had hunted and taken for victuals. by the way, to bee killed for his houshold prominion. Howbert, wee requested him not to make fuch daily flaughters of his Camels; affirming moreover, that we never yied to eate the flesh of Princelyface. a golt Camell, but when all other victuals failed vs. Whereunto hee aniwered, that he should 40 deale vacually, if he welcommed it worthy and to feldome-feene ghefts with the killing of smal Cattell onely. Wherefore hee wished vs to fall to such provision as was set before vs. Heere might you have feene great plenty of rolled and fodden flesh : their rosted Offriches were brought to the Table in wicker platters, being featoned with fundry kinds of Herbes and Spices. Their bread maile of Mill and Panicke was of a most sauorie and pleasant taste: and alwaies at Bread of the end of dinner or tupper we had plentie of Dates, and great store of Milke serued in. Yea, this Millet. bountifull and noble Prince, that he might fufficiently thew how welcome wee were vnto him, would together with his Nobilitie alwaies beare vs company : howbest, we ever dined and supped apart by our felues. Moreouer, hee cauled certaine religious and most learned men to come 50 Religious vnto our banquet; who, all the time wee remained with the faid Prince, vfed not to enteany bread at all, but fed onely upon flesh and milke. Whereat we being somewhat amazed, the good Prince gently told vs, that they all were borne in such places, whereas no kind of graine would grow : howbeit, that himfelfe for the enter ainement of strangers, had great plentie of Corne laid up in flore. Wherefore he bade us to be of good cheere, taying, That he would eate onely of Places without fuch things as his owne native foyle affoorded : affirming moreover, that bread was vet in vie among them at their feaft of Paffeouer, and at other feafts all o, whereupon they yied to offer facrifice. And thus we remained with him for the space of two dayes; all which time, what wonderfull and magnificent cheare we had made vs, would feeme incredible to report. But the third day, being defirous to take our leaue, the Prince accompanied vs to that place where wee 60 ouertooke our Camels and companie tent before. And this I dare most deepely take mine cath Bountifull on that we fpent the faid Prince ten times more, then our Coftome which he received came to. hospitalitic. We thought it not amiffe here to fet downe this Hiftorie, to declare in fome fort the courtche and liberalitie of the faid Nation. Neither could the Prince aforefaid understand our language,

ner we his ; but all our speech to and fro was made by an interpreter. And this which we have here recorded as touching this nation, is likewife to be evidentood of the other four Mations about mentioned, which are dispersed ouer the residue of the Numidian Delarts. The Arab ansas they have fundrie mantions and places of abode, to dot they live after a di-The manners

The Arabans, as they have rundre mantions and places or above, to the trey rule arter a unamble ters and findry manner. The b which inhabite between e Numidia and Libya leads a most mile or the draitest rable and diffrested lite, distering much in this regard from those Africans, whom we all rmed to which inhabit dwell in Libra. How best, they are farre more valiant then the faid Africans, and vie common-Aika, ly to exchange Camels in the land of Negros: they have likewife great frore of Hories, which in Arabeavalour, ly to exchange Camels in the land of Negror: they have like whe great five of Flories, which in the rede Europe they call Hories of Barbarie. They take wonderfull delight in hunting and puriting of Barbaries. 10 Deare, of will Alies, of Offriches, and finch like. Neither is here to be omitted, that the greater tes are brid. part of Arabians which inhabite Numidia, are very witty and conceited in penning of verfes; Arabian Poems wherein each man will decypher his loue, his hunting, his combates, and other his worthy acts: and Verfee, and this is done for the most part in rime, after the Italian manner. And albeit they are most liberally minded, yet dare they not by bountifull giving make any thew of wealth; for they are daily oppressed with manifold inconveniences. They are apparelled after the Numidians tashi - Asparelle on faring that their women differ fomewhat from the women of Numidia. Those Defarts which they doe now emoy, were wont to be posselled by Africans: but the Arabians with

their Armie inuading that part of Africa, draue out the naturali Numidians, and referred the Defarts adjoyning upon the Land of Dates, unto themselves: but the Namidians began to in- Bileda's crid. 20 habite those Delarts which border upon the land of Negros. The Arabians which ewell betweene Mount Atlas and the Mediterran fea, are farre wealthier then these which weenow speake of, both for costlinesse of apparrell, for good horse-meate, and for the statelinesse and beautre of their tents. Their Herles also are of better shape, and more corpulent, but not so switt as the Horses of the Numidian Delart. They exercise Husbandry, and have great increase of corne. Their droues and flockes of Cattell be innumerable, intomuch that they cannot inhabit one by another for want of patture. They are formewhat more vile and barbarous then those which inhabit the Defarts, and yet they are not altogether deititute of liberalitie: part of them which dwel in the territory of Fez, are fablect vinto the King of Fez. Those which remaine in Marocco and Duccala have continued this long time free from all exaction and tribute; but to toone as

30 the King of Portugall began to bear rule over Azafi and Azamor, there began also among them Portugale also the King of Portugal began of the being affailed by the King of Portugall on the one fide, and by in Afra; the first and civill warre. Wherefore being affailed by the King of Portugall on the one fide, and by opening of the King of Fez on the other, and being oppressed also with extreme famine and icarcitie of that The dr hans veere, they were brought vinto fuch inferry, that they freely offered themfelues as flanes vinto offerthemthe Portugals, fabritting themselves to any man, that was willing to relieue their intolerable falues flows hanger: and by this meanes scarce one of them was left in all Duccala.

Moreouer, those which possesse the Defarts bordering vpon the Kungdomes of Tremizen and would release Turis, may all of them (in regard of the reit) be called Noblemen, and Gentlemen: For their Go-hunger, pernours receiving every years great revenues from the King of Tunis, druide the same afterward among their people, to the end they may a loide all differd : and by this meanes all differtion is 40 eichewed, and peace is kept firme and inniolable among them. They have notable dexteritie

and cupning both in making of Tents, and in bringing vp and keeping of Horses. In Summertime they vitally come neere unto Timis, to the end that each man may provide himfelf of bread. armour, and other necessaries; all which they carrie with them into the Defarts, remaining there the whole Winter. In the Spring of the years they apply themfelues vinto hunting, infomuch that no beaff can escape their pursuite. My felfe (I remember) was once at their tents, to Their hunmy no little danger and inconvenience, where I faw greater quantitie of Cloth, Braffe, Yron, and ting Copper, then a man shall often times find in the most rich ware-houses of some Cities. Howbeit no truft is to be given vinto them; for if occasion ferue, they will play the thieues most flily and cunningly; notwithstanding, they feeme to carrie some shew of cualitie. They take great de- Honeity. 50 light in Poetrie, and will you must excellent verfes, their lang lage being very pure and el. gant. Poetry. Irany worthy Post be found among them, he is accepted by their Gouernours with great honor

and liberalitie; neither would any man eafily believe what wit and decencie is in their ver-Their women (according to the guife of that countrie) goe very gorgeoutly attired: they Warra

weare linner Gownes and blacks, with exceeding wide fleenes, oner which fometimes they caft a Manule of the fame colour, or of blow, the corners of which Mantle are very artificially fatiened about their shoulders with a rine fluer clope. Likewife they have rings hanging at their eares, which for the most part are made of filter: they weare many rings also upon their fingers Moreour, they visally whate about their thighes and ankles certaine scarfes and rings, after the 60 fathion of the Africans. The vicous their faces with certaine maskes, having onely two lists for their eyes to people one at. If any man chance to meete with them, they prefer by had

their face, paring by him with the aboven, apr is be fome of their Allies or Kindrolks; the visco them the fall virus of those them is inspecified as there any vie of the faid maske to long as they be in prefence. There And may, an they tracell any fourney (as they oftentimes dow) this

f tribeir women upon certaine laidles made handformely of wicker for the fame purpose, and failned to their Camels backes, neither be they any thing too wide, but fit onely for a woman to it in. When they goe to the wars, each man carries his wife with him, to the end that she may cheare up her good man, and give him encouragement. Their Damiels which are unmarried, do whally point their faces, brefts, armes, hands, and fingers with a kind of counterfeit colour which is accounte is most decent custome amongst them. But this fashion was first brought in by these Arabians, which before we called Africans, what time they began first of all to inhabite that region; for before then, they never vied any false or glezing colours. The women of Barbarie vie not this fond kind or painting, but contenting themseluts onely with their naturall hiew they regard not fuch fained ornaments: howbeit fometimes they will temper a certaine 10 colour with henf-dung and fafron, wherewithall they paint a little round foot on the bals of their cheekes about the bredth of a French Crowne. Likewise betweene their eye-browes they make a triangle, and paint upon their chinnes a patch like unto an cline leafe. Some of them alto doe paint their eye-browes: and this custome is very highly esteemed of by the Arabian Poets, and by the Gentlemen of that countrie. How beit, they will not vie their fantalticall ornaments about two or three dayes together; all which time they will not bee seene to any of their friends, except it be to their husbands and children : for these painting seeme to be great aliurements vinto luft, whereby the faid women thinke themselves more trim and beauti-

The life of the Arabians in the Defarts betweene Barbarie and Egypt is full of milerie and ca- 20

The Arabians

of Perialay

pawne vnto the Sicilians

750

in the Defarts Jamitie : for the places where they inhabite, are barren and unpleasant. They have fome neere Eggs. Rere of Camels and other Cattell: howbeit, their fedder is fo fearee, that they cannot well fuitaine them. Neither shall you find ouer all the whole region any place fit to beare corne. And if in that Defart there be any villages at all, which wie to husband and manure their ground: vet reace they small commoditie thereby, except it bes for plentifull increase of Dates. Their Camelsand other of their Cattell, they exchange for Dates and Corne; and fo the poore Hufbandmen of the forefaid villages have fome small recompence for their labours: notwithstanding, how can all this fatisfie the hunger of fuch a multitude ? For you shall daily fee in Sicilia great numbers of their fonnes laid to pawne; because when they have not wherewithall to pay for the Corne which they there buy, they are confirmined to leave their fonnes behind them, as pledges of future payment. But the Sicilians, if their money bee not paid them at the time antheir fonnes to pointed, will chalenge the Arabians sommes to be their slaves. Which day being once past, if any father will redeeme his child, hee must disbutse thrice or four times so much as the due debe Cruellfamine, amounted vnto : for which cause they are the modernotable thicues in the whole world. If any frangerfall into their hands, depriving him of all that he hath, they prefently carry him to Sisilvand there either fell or exchange him for Corne, And I think, that no Merchants durft at any time within these hundred yeares arrive for trafficks take upon any pers of their coast. For when they are to passe by with merchandize, or about any other weightire affaires, they eschew that region fur hundred miles at the leaft. Once I remember, that I my felfe, for my better fecuntie, and to a coule the danger of those mischieuous people, went in companie with certaine Merchants, who in three thips tailed along their coatt. Wee were no focuer cipied of them, but forthwith they came running to the there, making tienes that they would traffiq to with vs to our great advantage. Howbeit because we durk not repose any trust in them, none of our companie would depart the ship, before they had deliuered certaine piedges vinto vs. Which being done, we bought certaine Eunuclis, or gelded men and good fore of butter of them. And fo immediately weighing our ankers, we betooke vs to flight, fearing left wee should have been met withall by the Sicilian and Rhodian Pirates, and been spoiled not onely of our goods, but of our liberties allo. To be flort, the faid Arabians are very rude, forforme, begginly, leave, and hungerstarted people having God (no doubt) alwaies difficated against them, by whose vengeance they

Miferable people.

daily fuffaine fisch grieuous calamities.

You thall find many among the Africans which line altogether ashe pheards or drovers life, 50 inhabiting upon the beginning of mount Alla, and being outperfea here and there over the lame Mountaine. They are conftrained alwaies to pay tribute eit er to the King of the fane region where they dwell, or elfe to the Arabians, except those onely which inhabite Timefra, who are free from all forren superioritie, and are of great power. They speake the same kind of language that other Africans doe, except fome tew or them which conserie with the inhabitants of the Citie called Vrbs (which is neere vinto Tunis) who speake the Arabian tongue. Moreouer, there is a certaine people inhabiting that region, which duideth Numidia from Turis. Thele oftentimes wage warre against the King of Timis bimielte, which they put in practice not many yeares fince, when as the faid King his forme r arching towards 60 them from Constantina with an Armie, for the demanding of such tribute as was due vinto him, fought a verie unfortuna e battell. For no fooner were they adultified of the Kings fonne his approach, but forthwith they went to meete him with two thouland Hostemen, and at length vanquished and flew him at vnawares, carrying home with them all the furniture, bag,

The ouer throw and death of the King of Tax's

and have age, which he had brought forth. And this was done in the yeare of Mahamers Hegira ols. From that time their Fame hath beene ipred abroad in all places. Yea, many of the King of Tunis his Subjects revolted from their King vnto them; infomuch that the Prince of this People is growne for puffant, that fearcely is his equal! to be found in all Africa. The ancient Africans were much addicted to Idolatrie, even as certaine of the Perfuse are at The Fairh and

this day : forme of whom worthing the Sunne, and others the Fire, for their gods. For the faid Religion of the Africans had in times past magnificent and most stately Temples built, and dedicated as well ancient Africans to the honour of the Sunne as of the Fire. In these Temples day and night they kept Fire kind. led, giving diligent heed that it might not at any time be extinguished, even as we reade of the Fire worthin. 10 Roman Veffail Virgins: all which you may reade more fully and at large in the Persian and Afri- ned. can Chronicles. Those Africans which inhabited Libya and Numidia, would each of them worthip forme certaine Planet, vinto whom likewise they offered Sacrifices and Prayers. Some others of the Land of Negros worthin Guighimo, that is to fay, The Lord of Heaven. And this found point of Religion was not delivered vnto them by any Prophet or Teacher , but was in-

fixired, as it were, from God himfelfe. After that, they embraced the Icvillo Law, wherein they are faid to have continued many yeeres. Afterward they professed the Christian Religion. and continued Christians, vitill such time as the Mahametan Superstition prevailed; which came to palle in the years of the Hearing 208. About which time certains of Mahumets diffiples to bewitched them with eluquene and deceivable speeches, that they allured their weake 20 minds to confent vinto their opinion; infomuch that all the Kingdomes of the Negroes adjoyning vnto Libra received the Mihumetan Law. Neither is there any Region in all the Negros No Childian ning with Libre received the Milmonton Law. Institute is used any neground at an array of the Land, which that in rate visible any of Ordinary at all. At the faine time link as were found to among the week be lever, Christian, a of the African Religion, were thin every man or them. However thing the thing the state of the African Religion, were thin every man or them. However thing the state of the state of the African Religion, were thin every man or them. However thing the state of the state

which dwell neere ento the Ocean Sea, are all of them very grode Idolaters. Howbeit af. nithment of terward, civill diffentions arding among them, neglecting the Law of Mahumet, they flow God for their all the Priefts and Governours of that Region. Which turnult when it came to the eares many siddle all the Priests and Go temours or that region, which cannot shall be deather to which Monwit, those which were resolved from the Califa of Bazdet, and severely punished their milde-flers Africa

C H A P. 1. €. I.

Those Writers which record the Histories of the Arabians doings are all jointly of opinion, well as of the that the Africans were wont to vie onely the Latine letters. The Arabians have no Hifterie of natural Done-African matters, which was not first written in Latine. They have certaine ancient Authors, lies and owho writ partly in the times of the Arrians, and partly before their times, the names of all thers (which which are cleane forgotten. But when as those which rebelled against the Califa of Bagder (as had this good is afor (laid) got the upper hand in Africa, they burnt all the Africans bookes. For they were to yeeld yether of opinion, that the Africans, to long as they had any knowledge of Naturall Philotophie, or learned labors of other good Arts and Sciences, would every day more and more arrogantly contemne the The domainst Law of Mahumet. Contrariwile, some Historiographers there are which affirme, that the Afri- ter pressived cans had a kind of letters peculiar vnto themselves; which notwithstanding, from the time the Vandali 40 wherein the Italians began first to inhabite Barbarie, and wherein the Christians fleeing out of making way Listle from the Gothes, began to Libdue those Prouinces of Africa, were vetterly abelished and to Alahamet. taken away. For it is likely that a People vanquished should follow the customes and the lett- and threaters ters all of their Conquerours. And did not the fame thing happen to the Persians, while the of the Atreass. Arabians Empire flood: For certaine it is, that the Perfians at the fame time lost those letters The Africans which were peculiar vnto their Nation; and that all their bookes, by the commandement of vied in times the Mahumetan Prelates, were burnt; leaft their knowledge in naturall Philosophie, or their palt none of their kind of or their idelatrons Religion might moone them to contemne the precepts of Mahumet. The letters but the like also (as we showed before) befell the Barbarians, when as the Italians and the Gothes viut-Roman kiters. ped their Dominions in Barbarie; which may here (Thope) fuffice the gentle Reader. Howhe- *Perhaps he 50 it this is one of doubt, that all the Sea-Cities and Inland-Cities of Barbarie doe vie Latine letters onely, whenever r they will commit any Epitaphs, or any other Verles or Profe vnto po- Salah, 118861. Herrie. The consideration of all which former particulars hath made me to be of opinion, that with, and othe Africancin times past had their owne proper and peculiar letters, wherein they definited their their doings and explaits. For it is likely that the Romans, when they first fubdued these Pro- Sciencequite tinces as C t querours vitally doe) veterly spoiled and tooke away all their letters and memorie, and effail lifted their owne letters in the flead thereof; to the end that the fame and line the flow caunour of the Roman Proplem got there onely be continued. And who knoweth not that the modified very lame attempt was practited by the Gother upon the flately buildings of the Romans, and homes of the by the Arabi mes a garn the Montments of the Persans. Concerning those nine handred very, Free as to be 60 Wherein the Afric no what the Litters of the Arabians, Ibnu Rachich, a mood digent Witt rat bouned.

Africa, oth miles Cl randomedelargely dispate; whether the Africans curr had any peaks kins or writing or no. And at last he concludes hithe affirmatine part; that they had the (favt the) who he ier coveth this, mov as well dinye, that they had a Language piculian vinto themfelties. For it cannot be that any People should hade a proper kind or Speech, and

The Moun-

exceeding

All the Region of Barbarie, and the Mountaines contained therein, are subject more to cold fine and landy
places in 47-4
In all the laid Mountaines there grow abundance of Fruits, but not fo great plentie of Corne. The Inhabitants of thele Mountaines line for the greatest part of the yeere vpon Barley Bread. The Springs and Rivers if hing forth of the faid Mountaines, representing the qualitie and tafte of their native foyle, are somewhat muldie and impure, especially upon the confines of Mauritania. These Mountaines likewise are replenished with Woods and loftie Trees, and are greatly flored with Beafts of all kinds. But the little Hills and Valleys lying betweene the forefaid 10 Mountaines and Mount Atlas are farre more commodieus, and abounding with Corne. For they are mosstened with Rivers springing out of Aslas, and from thence holding on their course to the Mediterran Sea. And albeit Woods are somewhat more scarce upon these Plaines, yet are they much more fruitfull, then be the plaine Countreys fituate betweene Aslas and the Ocean Sea, as namely, the Regions of Maroco, of Duccala, of Tedles, of Temesna, of Azgara, and the Countrey lying towards the Straights of Gibraltar. The Mountaines of Atlas are exceeding cold and barren, and bring forth but small store of Corne, being woody on all sides, and engendring almost all the Rivers of Africa. The Fountaines of Ailas are even in the midst of Summer extremely cold; so that if a man dippeth his hand therein for any long space, he is in great danger of loing the fame. Howbeit the faid Mountaines are not to cold in all places: 20 for fome parts thereof are of fuch mille temperature, that they may be right commodiously inhabited : yea , and fundry places thereof are well flored with inhabitants; as in the iccond part of this present discourse we will declare more at large. Those places which are destitute of Inhabitants be either extremely cold, as namely, the same which lie ouer against Mauritania: or very rough and unplealant, to wit, those which are directly opposite to the Region of Teme[na. Where notwithtan ing in Summer time they may feed their great and small Cattell, but not in Winter by any meanes. For then the North wind fo furiously rageth, bringing with it such abundance of Snow; that all the Cattell which till then remaine upon the faid Mountaines and a great part of the People alfo are forced to lofe their lines in regard thereof : wherefore who foeder hath any occasion to trauaile that way in Winter time, chuleth rather to take 30 his Journey betweene Mauritania and Numidia. Those Merchants which bring Dates out of Mod wonder - Norman for the vie and feronce of other Nations, fet forth visally upon their lourney about the end of October: and yet they are oftentimes so oppressed and ouertaken with a sodaine fall of Snow, that hardely one man among them all escapeth the danger of the tempest. For when it

beginned to inow over night, before the next morning not onely Carts and Men, but even the

very Trees are to drowned and ouerwhelmed therein, that it is not possible to finde any men-

f ble boomer as bout Occour

and Nouemo.

The extreme danger of Snow which Ichn Leo himfelfe escaped. tion of them. Howbeit the dead Carkaffes are then found, when the Sunne hath melted I my felfe alfo, by the goodnesse of Almightie GoD, twice escaped the most dreadfull danger of the forelaid Snow; whereof, if it may not be tedious to the Reader, I will here in few words make relation. V pon a certaine day of the forefaid moneth of Ochober, transling with a 40 great companie of Merchants towards Atlas, wee were there about the Sunne going downe weather-beaten with a most cold and snewy kind of Hayle. Here we found eleuen or twelue Horie-men (Arabians to our thinking) who perswading vs to leave our Carts and to goe with them, promifed vs a good and fecure place to lodge in. For mine owne part, that I might not feeme altogether vnouvill , I thought it not meet to refuse their good offer; albeit I shood in doubt lest they went about to practise some mischiefe. Wherefore I bethought my selfe to hide vp a certaine fumme of gold which I had as then about me. But all being readie to rice, I had no leafure to hide away my Coyne from them; whereupon I fained that I would goe eafe my felfe. And so departing a while their companie, and getting me vnder a certaine Tree, whereof I tooke diligent notice, I buried my money betweene certaine flones and the roote of the faid Tree. And then we rode on quietly till about mid-night. What time one of them thinking that he had stayed long enough for his Prey, began to otter that in words which secretly he had conceined in his mind. For he asked whether I had any money about me or no? To whom I answered, that I had left my money behind with one of them which attended the Carts, and that I had then none at all about me. Howbeit they being no whit fatisfied with this answer, commanded me, for all the cold weather, to strip my selfe out of mine apparell. At length when they could find no money at all, they faid in lefting and fcoffing wife, that they did this for no other purpole, but onely to see how strong and hardy I was, and how I could endure the cold and temperatuous featon. Well, on we rode, feeking our way as well as wee could that carke 60 and difmail night; and anone we heard the bleating of Sheepe, coniecturing thereby, that wee were not tarre diffant from some habitation of people. Wherefore out of hand we directed our courte thitherwards : being confirmed to leade our Horles therow thicke Woods , and our steepe and craggie Rockes, to the great hazard and perill of our lines. And at length after many

Danger by thirst. A deare price for a cup of water. CH AP.I.

Jabours, wee found Shephear Is in a certaine Caue: who, having with much paines brought their Cartell in there, had kindled a leftie fire for themselves, which they were confirmined, by reafon of the extreme cold, daily to fit by. Who understanding our companie to be Arabians, fearelatibe first that we would doe them some mischiefe: but afterward being perswaded that we were driven thither by extremitie of cold, and being more secure of vs, they gave vs most friendly entertainment. For they fet bread, fielh, and cheefe before vs, wherewith having ended our Suppers, we laid vs along each man to fleep before the fire. All of vs were as yet exceeding cold, but especially my selfe, who before with great horrour and trembling was stripped starke naked. And so we continued with the laid shepheards for the space of two dayes: all which naked. And to technique by realon of continual Snow. But the third day, in foone as they Cominual To time we could not fet forth, by realon of continual Snow. faw it leave fnowing, with great labour they began to removue that Snow which lay before Snow. the doore of their Caue. Which done, they brought vs to our Horses, which wee found well prouided of Hay in another Caue, Being all mounted, the shepheards accompanied vs some part of our way, shewing vs where the Snow was of least depth, and yet cuen there it touched our Horsebellies. This day was so cleere, that the Sunne tooke away all the cold of the two

At length entring into a certaine Village neere vnto Fez, wee vnderstood, that our Carts dayes going before. which palled by, were ouer-whelmed with the Snow. Then the Arabians leeing no hope of re- Vakind kindcompense for all the paines they had taken (for they had defended our Carts from Theeues) neffe. carryed a certaine Iem of our Companie with them as their Captine, (who had loft a great 20 quantitie of Dates, by reason of the Snow aforefaid) to the end that he might remayne as their

Prisoner, till he had satisfied for all the residue. From my selfe they tooke my Horse, and committed me vnto the wide World and to Fortune. From whence, riding vpon a Mule, within three dates I arrived at Fez, where I heard dolefull newes of our Merchants and Wares, that they were call away in the Snow. Yea, they thought that I had beene destroyed with the rest; but it feemed that God would have it otherwise.

Now, having finished the Hiftorie of mine owne misfortunes, let vs returne vnto that Difcourle where we left. Beyond Atlas there are certaine hot and dry places moy flened with very

few Rivers, but those which flow out of Atlas it selfe: some of which Rivers running into the Rivers dryed Rivers dyed Libran Defarts are dryed up with the Sands, but others do ingender Lakes. Neither shall you find up by sands, in these Countreyes any places apt to bring forth Corne, notwithstanding they have Dates in

30 abandance. There are also certains other Trees bearing fruit, but in so small quantitie, that no increase nor gaine is to be reaped by them. You may fee likewise in those parts of Numidia which border vpon Libja, certaine barren hils destitute of Trees, vpon the lower parts whereof grow nothing but unprofitable thornes and fhrubs. Among it thefe Mountaines you shall find no Rivers nor Springs, nor yet any waters at all, except it be in certaine Pits and Wels almost vnknowne vnto the Inhabitants of that Region. Moreouer, in fixe or feuen dayes journey they have not one drop of water, but fuch as is brought vinto them by certaine Merchants vpon Camels backs. And that especially in those places which lye vpon the mayne Road from Fez to Tembute or from Tremizen to " Agad. That icerney likewife is very dangerous which is of late found " Agade, 40 out by the Merchants of our dayes from Fez to Alcair ouer the Defarts of Libya, were it not for an huge Lake in the way, vpon the bankes whereof the Sintes and the Goranites doe inhabit.

But in the way which leadeth from Fez to Tombuto are certaine Pits environed either with the hides or bones of Camels. Neither doe the Merchants in Sommer time paffe that way without Danger by great danger of their lives: for oftentimes it falleth out, when the South-wind bloweth, that all thirft, those Dits are flopped up with fand. And so the Merchants when they can find neither those Pits, nor any mention thereof, must needs perish for extreame thirst: whose carkailes are afterward found lying feattered here and there, and feorched with the heat of the Sunne. One reward found lying feattered here and there, and forched with the next of the Sunnit. One to medie they have in this case, which is very itrange for when they are so grievally oppressed medie vield by with thirst, they kill forth-with some one of their Camels, out of whose bowels they wring the African

30 and expresse some quantitie of water, which water they drinke and carrie about with them, till Merchant to they have either found ibme Pit of water, or till they pine away for thirt. In the Defart which queach their they call Azaoad, there are as yet extant two Monuments built of Marble, upon which Mar-thirft, ble is an Epitaph engramen, rignifying that one of the faid Monuments represented a most rich Merchant, and the other a Carrier or transporter of Wares. Which wealthfull Mer- A Merchant chant bough: of the Carrier a cup of water for ten thousand Ducats, and yet this precious confravned water could fuffix neither of them; for both were confirmed with thirft. This Defirt likewife by extern water could fuffix neither of them; for both were confirmed with thirft. This Defort likewife by extern contayneth fundry kinds of bealts, which in the fourth part of this Diffeourfe concerning Lidys, should be a confirmed by the confirmed by and in our Treatile of the beatls of Africa, we will discourse of more at large.

od in our Treatile or the beatts of Aprica, we will uncourse of more at large.

The Land of Negross entreame hot, having some store of moy sture also, by reason of the Riof water. uer of Niger running through the midit thereof. All places adiopning vpon Niger dos mighti- The fine cole ly abound both with Cattell and Come. No Trees I law there but only certaine great ones, led Ones. bearing a kindel bieter fruit like voto a Chestinut, which in their Language is called Gorove.

LIBVI.

765

Corns Cur cumbers. Onions

Likewife in the fame Regions grow Cocos, Cucumbers, Onions, and fuch kinde of herbs and fruits in great abundance.

There are no Mountaines at all either in Libya or in the Land of Negros : howevit divers Fennes and Lakes there are; which (as men report) the mundation of Niger hath left behind it. Neither are the woods of the faid Regions altogether defittute of Elephants and other ifrance

beatts; whereof we will make relation in their due place.

Who expendit and whitefor feites enforce thet upon. Cheries ripe in A prill.

Throughout the greatest part of Barbarie storms and cold weather begin commonly about imprellions & the midft of October. But in December and Ianuary the cold groweth fome-what more flarpe in all places : howeit this happeneth in the morning onely, but fo gently and remiffely, that no i. ubicctvito; man careth greatly to warme himfelfe by the fire. February feme-what mitigateth the cold of To Winter, but that to inconstantly, that the weather change in sometime fine and sometime sixe times in one day. In March the North and West winds visually blow, which cause the Trees to be adorned with bloffomes. In April all fruits attaine to their proper forme and fhape infomuch that of May they gather their figs : and in mid-lune their Grapes are ripe in many places. Likewife

The feations of Cherries are commonly ripe about the end of of Apull and the beginning of May. In the midft their Peares, their fweete Quinces, and their Damafcens attayne vinto fufficient ripenelle in the monethes of June and July. Their Figs of Autumne may be gothered in Aug of; howbest they neuer haue fo great plentie of Figs and Peaches, as in S. ptember. By the middle of August they viually begin to dry their Grapes in the Sunne, whereof they make Rafins. Which is they cannot finish in September, by reason of unleasonable weather, of the r Grapes as then vingathered 20

they vie to make Wine and Must, especially in the Province of Rifu, as wee will in our place The Olives of fignific more at large. In the midfl of October they take in their Honey, and gather their Pomgranates and Quinces. In November they gather their Olives, not climing up with La ders nor plucking them with their hands, according to the cultome of Europe; for the Trees of Man-

ritaria and Cafarea are to tall, that no Ladder is long enough to reach vinto the fruit. And therefore their Olines being full ripe, they climbe the Trees, beating them off the boughes with certaine long Poles, albeit they know this kind of beating to be most hirsfull vinto the faid Trees. Sometimes they have great plentie of Olives in Africa, and fometimes as great flarcicie. Cer-

taine great Olive-trees there are, the Olives whereof are eaten ripe by the Inhabitants because Pleasant faring they are not so fit for Oyle. No years ! Is out to be so vinfeasonal le, but that they have three 30

monethes in the fpring alwayes temperate.

They begin their fpring upon the fifteenth day of February, accounting the eighteenth of ing plenue or May, for the end thereof : all which time they have most pleasant weather. But it from the five and twentieth of Aprill, to the fifth of May they have no raine fall, they rake it as a figne of ill lucke. And the raine-water which falleth all the time aforefaid they call Nailan, that is, man ter bleffed of God. Some flore it up in Veffels, most religiously keeping it, as an holy thing. Their Summer latter till the fixteenth of August; all which time they have most hot and cleere weather. Except perhaps some showres of raine fall in July and August, which doe so infect the Aire, that great plague and most pestilent Feners ensue thereupon; with which plague whosheuer is infected, most hardly escapeth death. Their Autumne they reckon from the seventeenth 40 of August to the fixteenth of November; having commonly in the monethes of August and September not fuch extreme heate as before. How beit all the time betweene the fifteenth of August and the fitteenth of September is called by them the furnace of the whole yeare, for that it bringeth Figs Quinces, and fuch kind of fruits to their full maturitie. From the fifteenth of November they beginne their winter-featon, continuing the same till the fourteenth day of February. So foone as Winter commeth, they begin to till their ground which lyesh in the

Forty dayes of Plaines : but upon the Mountaines they goe to plough in October. The Africans are most cerextreme heate tainly performed that every years contavneth furtie extreme hot dayes, beginning upon the twelfth of Iune; and ago ne to many cayes extreme cold, beginning from the twelfth of December. Their Agricollis are upon the fixteenth of March, and the fixteenth of September. 50 For their Solitita they account the fixteenth of June and the fixteenth of December. These rules they doe most strictly obf rue, as well Husbandrie and Naugation, as in frarching out the houses and true places of the Planets : and these industrious, with other such like they teach their young children first of all,

The Peafants . Aftrologie.

Many Countrey-people and Husbandmen there be in Africa, who knowing (as they fav) neand valuaned user a Letter of the Booke, will not with standing most learned by dispute of Astrologie, and al-Jeage most profound reasons and arguments for themselves. But we attoeuer skill they have in the Art of Africagie, they first learned the same of the Latines : yea, they give those very names vnto their Moneths which the Linies doe.

Moreourr, they have extant among them a certaine great Booke divided into three Volumes. 60 which they call. The Treasurie or Store house of Hubandry. This Booke was then translated out of Latine into their Tongue, when Manfor was Lord of Granada. In the faid Treasure are all things contayned which may feeme in any wife to concerne Husbandry; as namely, the

changes and varietie of times, the manner of fowing, with a number of fulch like particulars, which (I thinke) at this day the Lather Tongue it felte, whereout thefe things were full translated, Joth not contayne. Whathe er either the Africans or the Mahumetans have, which feemeth to apportaine in any wife to their Law or Religion, they make their computation thereof altogether according to the courfe of the Moone.

Their years is divided into three hundred fittle foure dayes: for voto fix: Monethes they al-15 that is day es, and vato the other fixe but rane and twentie, all which beeing added into one the Australia. Jamme doe produce the number aforefaid : wherefore their yeare different clearen daies from the A resear.

yeare of the Latines. They have at diners times Festivall Dayes and Faits.

10 About the end of Autumne, for all Winter, and a great part of the Spring they are troubled Winds. with boyilerous winds, with Haile, with terrible Thunder and Lightening iyea then it howeth much in some places of Barbarie. The Easterne, Southerne, and South-easterne winds blowing in May and fune, doe very much hort there: for they spoyle the Corne, and hinder the fruit from comming to ripenedle. Their Cornel kewife is greatly appayred by Snow, especial- The yeares dily fach as faller) in the day time, when it beginnerh to flowre. Vpon the Mountaynes of dely fach as fallers in the day time, when it beginners to nowre. Veon the atomicaynes of 21 feelows onely; for their Winter continueth from October to wron the Aprill; and from Aprill to O Sieber they account it Summer: neither is there any day throughout the whole years, wherein the tops of those Mountaines are not coursed with Snow. In No. where midia, the years runnerh away very (wiftly : for they reape their Corne in May, and in Octo-20 bertiney gather their Dates : to: from the midft of September , they have Witter till the be-

ginning of Ianuarie. But it September falleth out to be raynie, they are like to lose most part

of their Dates.

All the fields of Numidia require watering from the Rivers; but if the Mountaynes of Atlas hane no raine fall upon them, the Numidian Rivers waxe dry, and fo the fields are defitute of watering. Oct ber being deflitute of raine, the Husbandman hath no hope to cast his feed into the ground; and he delpayreth likewife, if it raine not in Aprill. But their Dates profper more without raine, who reof the Numidians have greater plentie then of Corne. For albeit they have some store of Corne, yet can it scarcely suffice them for halfe the yeere. Howber, if they haue good increase of Dates, they cannot want abundance of Corne, which is fold vnto them

30 by the Arabians for Dates. If in the Libran Delarts there fall out change of weather about the midit of October; and if it continue rayning there all December, Lanuary, and some part of February, it is wonderfull what abundance of graffe and milke it bringeth forth. Then may you find diners Lakes in all piaces, and many Fennes throughout Libya; wherefore this is the meetest time for the Barbarie Merchants to trauell to the Land of Negros. Heere all kind of fruits grow fooner tipe, if they have moderate showers about the end of July. Moreover, the Land of Negros receiueth by raine neither any benefit, nor yet any dammage at all. For the River Niger together with the water which falleth from certaine Mountaynes doth fo moyften their grounds, that no places can be denifed to be more fruitfull : for that which Nilms to Egopt, the fame is Niger to the Land of Negros : for it increafeth like Nilm from the fifteenth of lune the The increase

foace of fortie dayes after, and for io many againe it decreafeth. And io at the increase of Ni- of the Ruer ger when all places are over-flowne with water, a man may in a Barke paffecuer all the Land of o. Niger and Negros, albeit not without great perill of drowning, as in the fift part of this Treatife we will Notice

declire more at large.

All the people of Barbaric by vs before mentioned line vnto fixtic fine or feventic yeares of The length age, and few or none exceed that number. Howbeit in the ferefaid Mountaynes I faw some and the tracife which had lived an hundred yeares, and others which fiftened themfelders to bee clder; whole large was molt healthfull and lathe. Yes force you field be I been a few force from the first. age was most healthfull and Little. Yea, some you shall find heere of four-feere yeares of age, who are fuffic ently firong and able to exercise Husbandy, to drefle Vines, and to feme in the

Warres; infomuch that yong men are oftentimes inferior vinto them. In Namidie, that is to lost and lyes 10 fay, in the Land of Dates, they line a long time : howbeit they lole their Teeth very foone, and decayed, their Eyes waxe wonderfull drame. Which infirmities are likely to be incident vinto them, first because they continually feel upon Dates, the sweetnesse and natural qualitie whereof doth by little and little pull out their Teeth; and fecondly, the dust and sand, which is tossed up and downe the Ayre with Eafterne windes entring into their Eyes, doth at last minerally weaken and spoile their eye-light. The Inhabitants of Libra are of a thorter life; but those which are most ftrong and healthful I among them line oftentimes till they come to three fcore yeares;

albeit they are flender and leane of bedie. The Negros commonly like the shortest time of all the rest : howbest they are alwayes strong. What kill doof and luftie, having their Teeth found even till their dying day : yet is there no Nation under Hot. Difface, he and futtie, naturing their Teeth found even the their dying day, yet is there in Factor food and futtien are too ten more prone to Venery winto which vice also the Lityrans and Numidians are too too much also subject visco.

dicted. To be thort, t e Barbarians are the weaked prople of them all. The children, and fometimes the ancient women of this Region are fibiest vinto hallnesse or unnaturall theoding of haire; which difease they can hardly be cured of. They are likewise oftentimes troubled with the head-ache, which vivally afficteth them without any ague joyned

therewith, Many of them are tormented with the tooth-ache, which (as fome thinke) they are the more subject vato, because immediately after hot pottage they drinke cold water. They are oftentimes vexed with extreame paine of the flomacke, which ignorantly they call, the name of the heart. They are likewise daily molefted with inward gripings and infirmities oner their whole bodie, which is thought to proceed of continuall drinking of water. Yea, they are much subject vnto bone-aches and gowts, by reason that they sit commonly upon the bare ground, and neuer weare any shooes voon their feet. Their chiefe Gentlemen and Noblemen prouggowtie oftentimes with immoderate drinking of Wine and eating of daintie meates. Some with eating of Oliues, Nuts, and fuch course fare, are for the most part infected with the

Those which are of a fanguine complexion are greatly troubled with the cough, because that in the Sprin-leason they fit too much voon the ground. And voon Fridayes I had no small sport and recreation to goe and see them. For vpon this day the people flocke to Church in great numbers to heare their Mahumetan Sermons. Now if any one in the Sermon-time fils a neezing, all the whole multitude will neeze with him for company, and fo they make fach a noife, that they neuer leane, till the Sermon be quite done; fo that a man shall reape but little know-

ledge by any of their Sermons.

The French Difeafe.

the French Pox

was brought

into Africa.

Hernia or the

Numida:

Sermons.

If any of Barbarie be infected with the Difease commonly called the French Poxe, they dye thereof for the most part, and are seldome cured. This Disease beginneth with a kinde of anguish and swelling, and at length breaketh out into Sores. Ouer the Mountaines of Atlas, and 20 throughout all Namidia and Libya they scarcely know this Difease. Insomuch that oftentimes the parties injected trauell forth-with into Numidia or the land of Negros, in which places the Aire is so temperate, that onely by remayning there they recour their perfect health, and returne home found into their owne Countrey : which I faw many doe with mine owne eyes; who without the helpe of any Phylician or Medicine, except the foresaid hollome aire, were reftored to their former health. Not so much as the name of this malady was ever known vnto the Africans, before Ferdinand the King of Castile expelled all Iemes out of Spaine; after the returne When and by of which lewes into Africa, certains vnhappie and lewed people lay with their Wines; and fo at what meanes length the Difease spread from one to another, ouer the whole Region : infomuch that scarce any one Family was free from the fame. Howbeit, this they were most certainly perswaded of, 30 that the same Dilease came first from Spaine; wherefore they (for want of abetter name) doe call it, The Spanish Poxe. Notwithstanding at Tunis and ouer all Italy, it is called the French Difeafe. It is fo called likewise in Agypt and Syria: for there it is vied as a common Prouerbe Difeate called of Carling ; The French Poxe take you. Amongst the Barbarians the Difease called in Latine Hernia is not fo common; but in Egypt the people are much troubled therewith. For some of the Egyptians have their Cods oftentimes fo twollen, as it is incredible to report. Which infirmitie is thought to be so common among them, because they eate so much Gumme, and Salt Cheefe. Some of their children are subject vnto the falling ficknesse; but when they grow to any flature, they are free from that Difeate. This falling fickneffe likewise possesseth the women of Barbarie, and of the Land of Negros; who, to excuse it, fay that they are taken with a Spirit. 40 In Barbarie the Plague is rife every tenth, fifteenth, or twentieth yeare, whereby great numbers of people are confirmed; for they have no cure for the fame, but onely to run the Plague-fore with certaine Ointments made of Armenian Earth.

In Numdia they are in ected with the Plague scarce once in an hundred yeares. And in the Land of Negros they know not the name of this Difeale : because they never were subject menia. Plague rare in

Those Arabians which inhabit in Barbarie or vpon the Coast of the Mediterran Sea. are The commendable actions greatly addicted unto the studie of good Arts and Sciences: and those things which concerne and vermes of their Law and Religion are effeemed by them in the first place. Moreover, they have beene heretofore most studious of the Mathematikes, of Philosophie, and of Astrologie : but these 50 Mathematikes Arts (as it is aforefaid) were foure hundred yeares agoe, veterly deffroyed and taken away by Prieftshonou- the chiefe Profesiors of their Law. The Inhabitants of Cities doe most religiously observe and reuerence those things which appertaine vnto their Religion : yea, they honour those Doctors Superflitions, and Priefts, of whom they learne their Law, as if they were pettie gods. Their Churches they frequent very diligently, to the end they may repeat certaine prescript and formall Praiers; most superilitiously periwading themselves that the same day wherein they make their praiers, it is not hwfull for them to wash certaine of their members, when as at other times they will wash their whole bodies.

Moreover those which inhabit Barbarie, are of great cunning and dexteritie for building and for Mathematicall Inuentions, which a man may easily conjecture by their artificiall Workes. 60 Most honest people they are, and deflitute of all fraud and guile; not onely imbracing all implicitie and truth, but also practifing the fame throughout the whole course of their lines; albeit certaine Latine Authors, which have written of the lame Regions, are farre otherwise of opinion. Likewise they are most strong and valiant people, especially those which dwell upon the

CHAP.I.S.I. Moores, a people of great sidelisie. Their grauisie, modeslie. 767

Mountaines. They keepe their commant most fasthfully; informuch that they had rasher die them. The Mose of

na a group of an are group of the world is fo fubic the thought of the control of put up any diffrace in the behalfe of their women. So delirous they are of Riches and Honour, put vp any unguace in the country of them. They trauel in a manner ouer the whole World that therein no other people can go beyond them. They trauel in a manner ouer the whole World Merchandife: to exercise Traffike, For they are continually to be seene in Agypt, in Arbiopia, in Arabia, Persia, Indea, and Turkie: and whitherforuer they goe, they are most honourably effected of : for none of them will professe any Art, valesse hee lath attained vato great exactnesse and persection therein. They have alwayes beene much delighted with all kind of civilitie and modelt behau-

10 our 1 and it is accounted hatnous among them for any man to vttet in companie, at y Barrate or Granite. our and it is accounted manous among mental any man of the attention, any manue of confidence of the state of perion. If any youth in presence of his Father , his Vn.le , orany other of his Kindred, doth ing or talke ought of loue matters, he is deemed to be worthy of gricuous punishment. Whatfoe uer Lad or Youth there lighteth by chance into any companie which discourieth of Loue, no fooner heareth nor understandeth what their talke tendeth unto, but immediately he withdraw-

Thole Arabian which dwell in Tents, that is to fay, which bring vp Cattell, are of a more The Arabians eth himselse from among them. liberall and civill disposition: to wir, they are in their kind as deuout, valiant, patient, courte- and their verous, hospitall, and as honest in life and conversation as any other people. They be most faithfull wes. observers of their word and promise: insomuch that the people, which before we said to dwell 20 in the Mountaines, are greatly itirred up with emulation of their Vertues. Howbeit the faid Mountainers, both for Learning, for Vertue, and for Religion, are thought much inferiour to the Numidians; albeit they have little or no knowledge at all in natural Philosophie. They are reported likewise to be most skilfull Warriours, to be valiant, and exceeding louers and practifers of all humanitie. Alio, the Moores and Arabians inhabiting Libya are Iomewhat cuill of behautour, being plaine dealers, void of difimulation, fautourable to Strangers, and louers of

Those which we before named white, or tawnie Moores, are most stedfast in friendship: as likewife they indifferently and fauourably effeeme of other Nations: and wholy indeauour themselves in this one thing, namely, that they may leade a most pleasant and iocund life. Moreoutside a mean one come, country, one cony may reade a most pressant and occural life. More-court, they maintaine most learned Professor of liberall Arts, and such men as are most demout to the Patrician Number subtractions and the men as are most demout. in their Religion. Neither is there any people in all Africa that lead a more happie and honou-

able life. Neuer was there any people or Nation 10 perfectly endued with vertue, but that they had foreiaid driv. their contrary faults and blemithes : now therefore let vs confider, whether the vices of the decentare fab fricars doe surpasse their vertues and good parts. Those which we named the Inhabitants of the ied vato. Cities of Barbarie, are somewhat needle and conetous being also very proud and high-minded, and wonderfully addicted unto wrath; infomuch that (according to the Prouerbe) they will deeply engraue in Marble any injurie be it neuer fo small, and will in no wife blot it out of their membrance. So talticall they are and word of good manners, that scarcely can any stranger ob- Vindicative, taine their familiaritie and friendling. Their wits are but meane, and they are fo credulous, Rude, taine their familiaritie and friendling. Their wits are but meane, and they are fo credulous, Rude, taine their familiaritie and friendling, which are told them. So ignorant are they of natu-

rall Philosophie, that they imagine all the effects and operations of nature to be extraordinarie

They observe no certaine order of lining nor of Lawes. Abounding exceedingly with choler, they fpeake alwayes with an angry and lowd voice. Neither shall you walke in the day- quartelomer time in any of their streets, but you thall see commonly two or three of them together by the eares. By nature they are a vile and bale people, being no better accounted of by their Gouernours then if they were Dogges. They have neither Indges nor Lawyers, by whose wildome and counfell they ought to be directed. They are veterly Ynskilfull in Trades of Merchandize, being destitute of Bankers Money-changers: wherefore a Merchant can doe nothing among

50 them in his absence, but is himselte constrayned to goe in person, whithersoeuer his Wares are carryed. No people voder Heauen are more addicted vnto conetife then this Nation : neither is Conetons there (I thinke) to be found among them one of an hundred, who for courtefie, humanitie, or denotions fake, will vouchfafe any entertainment voon a stranger. Mindfull they have alwayes beene of injuries, but mottorgetfull of benefits. Their mindes are perpetually poll-fled with Ingratefull. vexation and Brite, fo that they will feldome or never thew themselves tractable to any man; the cause whereof is apposed to be; for that they are so greedly addicted vnto their fifthy lucre, that they never could at ayne vntoany kind of civilitie or good behaviour.

60 The Shepheards of that Region line a milerable, t. ylicme, wretched and beggerly life : they Shepheards, are a rude people, and (as a man may fay) borne anabled to heft, deceit, and brutish manners. Their young men may goe a wooing to divers Mandes, this fach time as they have speed of a wife. Yea, the fatuer of the Maide most friendl welcommeth ber Suiter, fo that I thinke scarce any Mariages. Noble or Gentleman among them can chule a Virgine ror his Spoule: albeit, fo foone as any

Irreligion.

woman is married, the is quite for faken of all her Suiters; who then feeke out other new Paramours for their liking. Concerning their Religion, the greater part of these people are neither Mahumetans, Iemes, nor Christians; and hardly shall you find so much as a sparke of Pietie in any of them. They have no Churches at all nor any kind of Prayers, but being ytterly eftranged from all golly denotion, they leade a fanage and beaftly life : and if any man chanceth to bee of a better disposition (because they have no Law-givers nor Teachers among them) hee is constrained to follow the example of other mens lives and manners.

Robberie,

All the Numidians being most ignorant of Naturall, Domesticall, and Common-wealth matters, are principally addicted vnto Treaton, Trecherie, Murther, Theft and Robberie. This Nation, because it is most flauish, will right gladly accept of any service among the Barbarians, To be it never to vile or contemptible. For some will take upon them to be Dung-farmers, others to be Scullions, some others to be Oitlers, and such like seruile Occupations. Likewise the Inhabitants of Libraliue a brutish kind of life; who neglecting all kinds of good Arts and Sciences, doe wholy apply their minds ynto theft and violence. Neuer as yet had they any Religion, any Lawes, or any good forme of living; but alwaies had, and ever will have a most miferable and diffressed life. There cannot any trechery or villanie be invented so damnable, which for lucres fake they dare not attempt. They spend all their dayes either in most lewd practices. or in hunting, or elfe in warfare; neither weare they any shooes nor garments. The Negros likewife leade a beafily kind of life, being veterly destitute of the vse of reason, of dexteritie of wit and of all Arts. Yea, they to behave themfelues, as if they had continually lived in a For- 20 rest among wild beasts. They have great swarmes of Harlots among them; whereupon a man may eafily conjecture their manner of liging; except their congertation perhaps bee fomewhat more tolerable, who dwell in the principall Townes and Cities : for it is like that they are fomewhat more addicted to Civilitie.

Q. II.

Collections of things most remarkable in IOHR LEO bis second Booke of the Historie of Africa.

The Map of the Kingdome of Marocco, or Maruccos.



CHAP.1.S.2. Entertainment of Strangers. Temples and Hospitals.

Eginning at the Welt part of Africa, we will in this our Geographicall Historie pro-

ted Eastward, cin we come to the Order is bounded Westward and Northward. The Region of with the maine Ocean, Southward with the Mountaines of Alla, and Eastward Has lying vewith the River which they call Estitudo. This River springeth out of the foresaid Mountaine, on the West discharging it selfe at length into the River of Terifft, and dunding Heafrom the Province next, parcof Africa.

The Region of Hea is an vicuen and rough foile, full of rockie Mountaines, fladie Woods, and Christall Streames in all places; being wonderfully rich, and well stored with Inhabitants. 10 They have in the faid Region great abundance of Goats and Affes, but not fuch plentie of Sheep,

Oxen, and Horles. All kind of Fruits are very fcarce among them. oven, and Horles. All kind of Prints are very learce among them.
This People for the most part eareth Barly-bread vulcauened, which is like pather vinto a Their Pood.

Cake, then to a Loafe : this Bread is baked in a kind of earthen Baking-pan. The greatest part of them are clad in a kind of cloth Garment made of Wooll after the man- Their Antirea ne of a Couriet, called in their Language, Elebif, and not valide vato those Couriets or.

Blankers which the Italians lay upon their Beds. In these kind, of Mantles they are a them. felues; and then are they girt with a woollen girdle, not about their walle, but about their hips. You may eafily discerne which of them is married, and who is not: for an yamarried, man must alwayes keepe his Beard shauen, which, after hee bee once married, hee fuffereth to man murt awayes keepe nis near unaurn, which, arece nee one marines, inc. pinceted to 20 grow at length. The laid Region bringeth forth no great plentic of Horfes, but those that it. Horses and odth bring forth, are so nimble and full of mettall, that they will climbe like Cats our the steep, there has he had been the steep. and craggie Mountaines. These Horses are alwayes vnshod: and the People of this Region, wie to till their ground with no other Cattell , but onely with Horres and Affes. You shall here find great store of Deere, of wild Goats, and of Hares. No good learning not liberall Arts are here to be found; except it be a little skill in the Lawes, which fome few challenge vnto themfelies: otherwise you shall find not so much as any shadow of vertue among them. They have Gauterizing, neither Physician nor Surgeon of any learning or account. But if a disease or infirmitie befallany of them, they presently seare or cauterize the ficke partie with red hot Irons, guen as the

Italians vie their Hories. Howbeit fome Chyrurgians there are among them, whole dutie, and 30 occupation consisteth onely in circumciting of their male Children. Whologier will travell into a forraine Countrey must take either a Harlot, or a Wife, or a religious man of the contrary

part, to beare him companie. They have no regard at all of Luftice.

part, to ocare mm companie. They make no regard and the same and beginning and large, Tolenflowed Plaine, which they inuitoned with a loftic Well, built of Bricke and Lime. In this Citic there, the Citic and are no Innes, Stoues, nor Wine-tauernes : fo that whatfoeuer Merchant goes thither, mult Ecke, Hea out some of his acquaintance to remaine withall: but if hee hath no friends nor acquaintance in the Towne, then the principall Inhabitants there call lots who should entertaine the strange Merchant: infomuch that no Stranger, be he neuer fo meane, shall want friendly entertainment, Their manner but is alwaies sumptiously and honourably accepted of. But wholoeser is received as a Grieff, of entertain 40 mult at his departure bestow some gift vpon his Host in token of thankfulnesse, to the end fice ning Strangers may be more welcome at his next returne. Howbeit if the faid Stranger be no Merchant, hee may chuse what great mans house he will to lodge in, being bound at his departure to no recompence nor gift. To be short, if any Beggar or poore Filgrim passe the same way, he hath some fuffenance prouided for him in a certaine Hospitall, which was founded onely for the reliefe of poore people, and is maintained at the common charge of the Citie. In the middeff of the Citie Their Tempks

itands an ancient Temple, being most sumptuously built, and of an huge bignesse, which was thought to be founded at the very same time when as the King of Maroco bare rule in those places. This Temple hath a great Cifterne standing in the midst thereof, and it hath many Priests and fuch kind of People which give attendance thereunto, and flore it with things necessarie. In this Citie likewise are divers other Temples, which, albeit they ere but little, yet be they moft cleanly and decently kept. There are in this Citie about an hundred Families of Iewer. My lefte Tedness forfafaw this Citie veterly ruined and defaced, the Wal's thereof being laid even with the ground, the Portugalis.

the Houses being destitute of Inhabitants, and nothing at that time to be there seene, but onely the nefts of Rauens and of other Birds. All this I faw in the 920. yeere of the Hegeira. Vpon the foot of an hill eighteene miles Eastward from Tednest, stands a Towne called by Tecukin a the Africans Teculests, and containing about one thousand Housholds. Here also is to be seene Towne of Hisa a most stately and beautifull Temple; as likewise foure Hospitals, and a Monasterie of Religious persons. The Inhabitants of this Towne are farre wealthier then they of Tednest: for they

haue a most famous Portypon the Ocean Sea, commonly called by Merchants, Goz. They have 60 likewife great abundance of Corne and Pulfe, which grow in the fruitfull fields adiacent. It was destroyed by the Portugals, 1514.

The Citie of Hadecchis being fituate vpon a Plaine, standeth eight miles Southward of Tecn-Hadecchis a letb: it containeth feuen hundred Families: and the Walls, Churches, and Houses throughout Towne of Hee, this whole Citic are all built of Free-stone. They have certaine yearely Faires or Marts, wher-

This

Barbari me.

770

Ilasagghera This Towne is fituate vien the top of a certaine high Mountaine which is diffant eight Towas of Hea. miles to the South of Hadecchie: it confliteth of about two hundred Families. They are at contimiall war with their neighbours, which is performed with fuch monftrous bloud-shed and manflaughter, that they delere rather the name of Beafts then of Men. They have neither Judges. Priests; nor Lawyers, to prescribe any forme of living among them, or to governe their Common-wealth : wherefore fuffice and honestie is quite banished out of their habitations. These Mountaines are altogether deflitute of Fruits: howbeit they abound greatly with Honie, 20 which fertieth the Inhabitants both for Food, and for Merchandize to fell in the neighbour-Wax cafe away Countries. And because they know not what service to put their Waxe vnto, they cast it forth, together with the other excrements of Honie. No People under Heauen can be more wicked.

by dull ignotreacherous, or lewdly addicted, then this People is.

Itsfeedit a The Towne Tesegalit being situate upon the top of a certaine high Mountaine, and natural-Towne of Her. ly enuironed with an high Rocke in stead of a Wall, containeth more then eight hundred Fami-Teyent deftroi- lies. It is diffant from Teyent Southward about twelve miles, and it hath a River running by it, ed by the Por- the name whereof I haut forgotten. About this Towne of Tejegdelt are most pleasant Gardens togais, 1513.
and Orchards, replenished with all kind of Trees, and especially with Walnut-trees. The Inhabitants are wealthie, having great abundance of Horles, neither are they conftrained to pay 30 off linguages. habitants are wealthie, halling great abundance of Flories, heither are they contrained to pay Theourtede of any Tribute vnto the Arabians. There are continuall Warres betweene the Arabians and them, the Citizens and that with great blou! hed and man-flaughter on both parts. The Villages lying neere vnof to grade to to Telegale! doe Vitally carrie all their Graine thirther, left they should be deprived thereof by wasts Strah. the Enemie, who maketh daily invodes and invalions your them. The Inhabitants of the forefaid Towne are much addicted vnto curtefie and ciu litie; and for liberalitie and bountie vnto Strangers, they will fuffer themselves to be inferiour to none other. At every Gate of Telegodelt stand certaine Watch-men or Warders, which doe most louingly receive all In-commers, enquiring of them, whether they hatte any friends and acquaintance in the Towne, or not If they haue none, then are they conducted to one of the best Innes of the Towne, and hauing had entertainment eliere, according to their degree and place, they are friendly difinified: and what-toener his expences come to, the Stranger payes nought at all, but his charges are defrayed out of the common Purfe. This People of Teferdelt are jubicet also vnto icalouse : howbeit they are most faithfull keepers of their promise. In the very midt of the Towne stands a most beautifull and stately Temple, whereunto belong a certaine number of Mahumetan Priests. The most ancient Citie of Tagtesi is built round , and standeth upon the top of an Hill : on

the fides whereof are certaine winding steps hewen out of the hard Rocke. It is about fourteene

miles diftant from Telegdelt. By the foot of the faid Hill runnes a River, whereout the Women

of Tagtefs draw their water, neither have the Citizens any other drinke : and although this Riuer be almost fixe miles from Tagtesis, yet a man would thinke, looking downe from the Citie

out of the Rocke, in forme of a paire of Staires, is very narrow. While I was in that Countrey.

there came such a swarme of Locusts, that they denoured the greatest part of their Cornes which

were as then ripe: infomuch that all the upper part of the ground was couered with Locusts.

vpon it, that it were but halfe a mile distant. The way leading vnto the faid River being cut 50

of the Citic of Tagtefs.

Locufts.

The Towne of Eitdeuet.

Which was in the yeere of the Hegera 919. that is, in the yeere of our Lord 1510. Fifteene miles Southward from Tagtefs ftands another Towne called Endeuer. In the faid Towne are Iene; of all Occupations : and some there are which afterne, that the first Inhabitants of this Towne came by naturall descent from King Danid: but so soone as the Mahumetan Religion had infected that place, their owne Law and Religion ceased. Here are great flore of most cunning Lawyers, which are perfectly well seene in the Lawes and constitutions Learned Men. of that Nation: for, I my ielfe faw a very aged man, who could most readily repeat a whole Volume written in their Language, called by them Elmudevuana, that is to say, the Bodie of the 60 whole Law. The faid Volume is divided into three Tomes, wherein all difficult questions are diffolned: together with certaine Counfels or Commentaries of a famous Author, which they

CHAP.I.S.2. An Apostata and pestiferous Mahumetan Preacher.

This Culebra Elmaridas is a Castle built upon the top of a certaine high Mountaine, having Cules at El-1115 CHITCHE LABORATION IS A COLLECTION OF A C round about it duers other Mountaines of a like neighti, which are enumered with erigine meaning and Rocks and lung Woods. There is no paling who this Cattle, but onely a certaine narrow path of Displaces of the Control of the Cont voon one fide of the Mountaine. By the one fide thereof funds a Rocke, and voon the other C. die of fice. fide the Mountaine of Tefegdelt is within halfe a mile, and it is diffant from Endeuer almost eighteen emiles. This Caille was built even in our time by a certaine Apoflata, or renouncer of egitzene mues. 1 ms Catte was ome euen mour time toy a certaine a poitata, or renouncer of Apriliferous the Mahametavreligion, called by them Homan Seigf; who being first a Mahametav Preacher. the remainment rengering a courty in a great number of Disciples and Sectaries, whom hee had Preacher.

drawn to be of his opinion, certain new points of religion. This fellow feeing that he preuailed to 10 with his Diciples, that they elterned him for some petty-god, became of a falle Preacher a most cruell typent, and his government lasted for twelve yeares. Hee was the chiefe cause of the defruction and raine of the whole Province. At length he was flaine by his owne wife, because he had vnlawfully lien with her daughter which the had by her former husband. And then was his peruerie and lewed dealing laid open vitto all men: for hee is reported to haue been vtterly ignorant of the lawes, and of all good knowledge. Wherefore not long after his deceate, all the inhabitants of the region gathering their forces together, flew enery one of his Difciples and falle Secturies. Howbeit, the Nephew of the fad Apostata was left aline; who atterward in the fame Castile endured a whole yeares stege of his adversaries, and repelled them, infomuch that they were constrained to depart. Yea, even untill this day he molesteth the people of Hea, and those which inhabite neere vnto him, with continuall warre, liuing upon robberie and spoile; 20 for which putpole he hath certaine Horlemen, which are appointed to watch and to purite trauellers, sometimes taking Cattell, and sometimes men captilles. He hath likewise certaine Gunners, who, although trauellers be a good diffance off (for the common high-way standeth almost a mile from the Cattle) will put them in great feare. Howbert, all people doe so deadly hate

him, that they will not fuffer him to till one foote of ground, or to beare any Jominion without him, that they will not fuffer him to till one foote of ground, or to beare any Jominion without lighted and the fail Mountaine. This man hath cauled his Grandfathers body to be honourably buried in his Telebra are Caftle, furfering him to be adered of his people, as it he were a God. Passing by that way upon a here omitted

certaine time, I escaped their very bullets narrowly. The greatest part of the people of Hea dwelleth vpon mountaines, some whereof being cal- The Inhabiled Idenacal (for io are they named) inhabite vpon that part of Ailas, which firetcheth it felie tans of the from the Ocean Sea Eastward, as farre as Igilingigil; and this ridge of mountaines divideth Hea in Hea. 30 from Sus. The breadth of this mountaine is three dayes journey. It is replenished with inhabitants and country Villages. Their ordinarie food is Barly, Goates-flesh, and Hony. Shirts they weare none at all, nor yet any other garments which are fowne together; for there is no man Needles nor among them which knoweth how to vie the needle : but fuch apparell as they haue, hangeth vied. by a knot upon their shoulders. Their women weare filter rings upon their eares, some three, and Rings and forme more. They have filter buttons of fo great a feartling, that each one weigheth an ounce, wherewith they failen their apparell vpon their shoulders, to the end it may not fall off. The nobler and richer fort of people among them weare filter rings vpon their fingers and leggs: but fuch as are poore, weaterings only of iron or of copper. There are likewise certaine Horses in this Region, being to final of thature and to fwift, as it is wonderfull. Here may you find great plentie of wild Goats, Hares, & Deere, and yet none of the people are delighted in hunting. Many fountaines are here to be found, and great abundance of trees, but especially of Walnut-trees. The greater part of this people liueth after the Arabians manner, often changing their places of habitation. A kind of Daggers they vie, which are broad and crooked like a wood-knife; and their Swords are as thicke as Sithes, wherewith they mow Hay. When they goe to the warres, they carrie three or four hunting Toyles with them. In all the faid mountaine are neither Iudges, Priests, or Temples to be found. So ignorant they are of learning, that not one among them elther loueth or embraceth the same. They are all most lewd and wicked people, and apply their minds vnto all kind of villanie. It was told the Seriffe in my presence, that the forestald moun-

taine was able to affoord twentie thousand fouldiers for a neede. This mountaine allo is a part of Allas, beginning from the mountaine last before mentioned, The Mountaine and extending it felie Eaftward for the space of about liftie miles, as farre as the mountaine of D. menfera. Nifff, in the Territorie of Maroco; and it divides ha good part of Heatrom the Region of Sus befor named. It aboundeth with inhabitants, which are of a most barbarous and sauage disposition. Horfesthey lane great plentie : they goe to warre oftentimes with the Arabians which border upon them; neither will they permit any of the faid Arabians to come within their Dominions. There are no Townes nor Caffles upon all this mountaine: howbeit, they have certaine Villages and Cottages, wherein the better fort doe hide their heads. Great flere of Noble-60 men or Gouernours they have in all places, vnto whom the refidue are very obedient. Their ground yeeldeth Barly and Mill in abundance. They have everie where many fountaines, which

being dispersed over the whole Province, doe at length is a into that Ruer, which is called in their language Siffur. Their appared is somewhat decent; also they possesses quantitie of Flority of Iron. Iron, which is from thence transported into other places; and these people are well guen to

Corrown that is Scripture-

thrift and good husbandrie. Great numbers of Jewes remaine in this Region, which line as ftipendarie fouldiers vinder divers Princes, and are continually in Armes; and they are reputed and called by other Ienes in Africa, Carrann; that is to fay, Heretikes. They have flore of Boxe, of Maftick, and of high Walnut-trees. Vnto their Argans (for fo they call a kind of Olives men; for they which they have) they put nuts; out of which two fimples they expresse very bitter Oyle. admitted not vising it for a fance to some of their meates, and powring it into their lampes. I heard duters of the traditions, their principall men auouch, that they were able to bring into the field fine and twenty thoufand most expert fouldiers.

Of the Moun-

This mountaine is not to be accounted any part of Atlas: for it beginneth Northward from taine of Iron, the Ocean and Southward it extendeth to the River of Tenfift, and divideth Heafrom Duccala 10 commonly and Maroco. The inhabitants are called Regraga. V pon this hill are waste Defarts, cleare Fountaines, and abundance of hony, and of Oyle Arganick, but of Corne and Pulse great scarcitie, vnleffe they make prouision thereof out of Duccala. Few rich men are here to bee found, but they are all most deposit and religious after their manner. Voon the top of this mountaine are many Hermites, which live onely youn the fruites of certaine trees, and drinke water. They are a nioft faithfull and peaceable Nation. Whofoeuer among them is apprehended for theft or any other crime is forthwith banished the countrey for certaine yeares. So great is their simplicitie, that what foeuer they fee the Hermites doe, they effeeme it as a miracle. They are much oppressed with the often inuations of their neighbours the Arabians; wherefore this quiet Nation choose rather to pay yearely tribute, then to maintaine warre.

The Region

Now comes the Region of Sm to be confidered of being fituate beyond Allas, over against the Territorie of Hea, that is to fay, in the extreme part of Africa. West ward it beginneth from the Ocean Sea, and Southward from the Sandie Defarts : on the North it is bounded with the vemost Towns of Hes; and on the East with that mightie River whereof the whole Region is named. Wherefore beginning from the West, we will describe all those Cities and places which shall feeme to be worthy of memorie. Three small Townes were built by the ancient Africans upon the Sea shoare (each being a

mile diffant from other) in that very place where Ailas takes his beginning: all which three

Of the Towne

are called by one onely name, to wit, Meffa; and are inuironed with a wall built of white stones. Through these three runneth a certaine great River, called Sm, in their language: this River in 20 Summer is so destitute of water that a man may easily without perill passe over it on soote; but it is not fo in the Winter-time. They have then certaine small barkes, which are not meete to faile upon this River. The place where the foresaid three Townes are situate, aboundeth greatly with Palme trees neither have they in a manner any other wealth; and yet their Dates are but of fmall worth, because they will not last aboue one yeare. All the inhabitants exercise husbandry, especially in the moneths of September and Aprill, what time their River encreaseth. And in May their Corne groweth to ripenesse. But if in the two foresaid moneths the River encreafeth not according to the wonted manner, their haruest is then nothing worth. Cattell

Dates which one yeare.

Holy Temple, Great ftore of Whales.

Superstitious

greatneffe.

An,ber.

are very scarce among them. Not farre from the sea-side they have a Temple, which they greatly efteeme and honour. Out of which, Historiographers fay, that the same Prophet, of whom their great Mahamet foretold, should proceed. Yea, some there are which sticke not to affirme. 40 that the Prophet Ionas was call forth by the Whale vpon the shoare of Mel's, when he was fent to preach unto the Minimites. The rafters and beames of the faid Temple are of Whales bone. And it is a vivall thing amongst them, to see Whales of an huge and monstrous bignesse cast vp dead upon their sheare, which by reason of their hugenesse and strange deformitie, may terrifie and aftonish the beholders. The common people imagine, that, by reason of a certaine secret power and vertue infused from heaven by God vpon the said temple, each Whale which would Iwim paft it can be no meanes escape death. Which opinion had almost perswaded me, especially when at my being there, I my felfe faw a mighty Whale cast vp, vnlesse a certaine Iew had told me, that it was no fuch flrange matter : for (quoth he) there lie certaine rockes two miles so into the Sea on either fide, and as the Sea moues, fo the Whales moue alfo; and if they chance to light vpon a rocke, they are easily wounded to death, and so are cast vpon the next shoare. This reason more pregarled with me, then the opinion of the people. My selfe (I remember) being in this Region at the same time when my Lord the Seriffo bare rule ouer it, was inuited by a cer-A Whales Rib taine Gentleman, and was by him conducted into a Garden, where he shewed me a Whales rib of fo great a fize, that lying vpon the ground with the conuexe or bowing fide vpward, in manner of an arch, it refembled a gate, the hollow or inward part whereof aloft we could not touch with our heads, as we role voon our Camels backs: this rib (he faid) had laine there aboue an hundred yeares, and was kept as a miracle. Here may you find vpon the fea-shore great store of Amber, which the Portugal and Fellan Merchants fetch from thence for a verie meane price : for they scarcely pay a Duckat for a whole ounce of most choise and excellent Amber. Amber (as 60 fome thinke) is made of Whales dung, and (as others suppose) of their Sperma or Seede, which being confolidate and hardned by the Sealis cast vpon the next shoare.

Tegent containeth foure thousand families, and standeth not farre from the River of Sm. The

CHAP.I.S.2. The situation and estate of the Region of Maroco.

foyle adjacent is most fruitfull for graine, for Barly, and ter all kind of Pulse. They have here likewife a good quantitie of Sugar growing; howbert, because they know not how to presse, botto f Suand trim it they cannot have it but blacke and vinfavorie: wherefore fo much as they can sparre, gen. they fell vnto the Merchants of Maroce, of Fez, and of the land of Negros. Of Dates likewife they have plentie; neither vie they any mony besides the Gold which is digged out of their own native foile. The women weare vpon their heads a piece of cloth worth a duckat. Silver they have none, but fuch as their women adorne themselves with. The least Iron-coine vied amongst Iron Coyne, them, weigheth almost an ounce. No fruites take plentifully vpon their soile but onely Figes, Grapes, Peaches, and Dates. Here is that excellent Leather dreffed, which is called Leatrer of Cordonan

Grapes, Peaches and Dates. Here is that excentent Detailed whether of the Duckats, and at Fez for eight. That Margen; twelthe hides whereof are here fold for fixe Duckats, and at Fez for eight. That Margen. part of this Region which lieth toward Atlas hath many Villages, Townes, and Eamlets: but the South part thereof is vtterly destitute of inhabitants, and subject to the Arabians, which border upon it. In the midft of this Citie standeth a faire and stately Temple, ATemple which they call The greatest, and The chiefest, through the verie midst whereof they have caused through which a part of the forefaid River to runne. The inhabitants are flerneand vicinili, being fo continuation ally exercifed in warres, that they have not one day of quiet. Each part of the Citie hath a feuerall Captaine and Gouernour, who all of them together doe rule the Common-wealth: but their authoritie continueth neuer aboue three moneths, which being expired, three other are

The Towne of Tarodant built by the ancient Africans, containeth about three thousand hous- Tarodans.a holds. For when the Family of Marin governed at Fez, part of them also inhabited Sus, and in Towne of Sus. those dayes Sus was the seate of the King of Fez his Vice-roy. All authoritie is committed vinto their Noble, or principall men, who governe foure by foure, fixe moneths onely.

Teds being a very great Towne, and built many yeares agoe in a most pleasant and fertile Teds, a Towne place by the Africans, containeth moe then foure thousand samilies; it is diffant from Tarodant of Sun. Fastward thirtie miles, from the Ocean fea fixtie miles, and from Allas twentie. Here groweth great abundance of Corne, of Sugar, and of wild Woad. You shall find in this Citie many Store of Sugar Merchants, which come out of the land of Negros for trafficks fake. The Citizens are great lo- and of Wood. uers of peace, and of all civilitie: and they have a flourishing Common-wealth. The whole Ci-

30 tie is gouerned by fixe Magistrates which are chosen by lots: howbeit, their gouernment lasteth for fixteene moneths onely. The River of Sm is diffant three miles from hence. Here dwell many Iewes, which are most cunning Gold-smuths, Carpenters, and such like Artificers. They haue a very stately Temple, and many Priests and D ctors of the Law, which are maintained at the publike charge. Every Mundy great numbers of Arabians both of the Plaines, and of the Mountaines come hither to Market.

In all Sm there is no Citie comparable vnto that which is commonly called Taganost, for it The Citie of containeth aboue eight thouland housholds; the wall thereof is built of rough stones. From the Tagenoft.

Ocean it is diftant about threefcore miles, and about fiftie miles Southward of Atlas : and the report is that the Africans built this Civie. About ten miles from this place lieth the River of 40 Sus : here are great store of Arcificers and of shops, and the people of Taganoft are divided into three parts. They have continuall cutill warres among themselves, and one part have the Arabians alwaies on their fide; who for better pay will take part fometime with one fide, and fometime with the contrarie. Of C. rne and Cat.ell here is great abundance; but their Wooll is exceeding course. In this Citie are made certaine kinds of apparell, which are viually carried for merchandize once a yeere to Tombuto, to Gualata, and to other places in the land of Negros. Their Market is twice enery weeke: their attire is fomewhat decent and comely: their women are beautifull: but their men are of a tawnie and fwart colour, by reason they are descended of blacke fathers, and white mothers.

The Mountaine Hanchifa beginneth Westward from Allas, and from thence stretcheth al- The Mounso most fortie mile as Eastward, The inhabitants of this Mountaine are such valiant foot-men, that taine of Hanone of them will encounter two Horsemen. The foile will yeeld no Corne at all but Barly; chifa. howbeit hony there is in great abundance. With fnow they are almost at all times troubled:but how patiently and strongly they can endure the cold, a man may easily ghesse, for that the whole yeare throughout they weare one fingle garment onely.

The Mountaine Ilalem beginneth Westward from the Mountaine aforesaid; on the East it The Mounabutteth vpon the region of Guzula, and Southward vpon the Plaines of Sus. The inhabitants lem. are valiant, having great store of Horses. They are at continuall warre among themselves for certaine Siluer mines; fo that those which have the better hand, digge as much Siluer as they Mines of Silver as they can, and distribute to every man his portion, vntill such time as they bee restrained from digging

60 by others. The region of Maroco beginneth Westward from the Mountaine of Nefisa, stretching East- The situation ward to the Mountaine of Hadmer, and Northward even to that place where the most famous and estate of Risers of Tonff and Asfimal meete together that it to fay, you the Eath-border of Has. This lite region of region is in a manner three fquare, being a most pleafant Country, and abounding with many

SIII 3

crones and flocks of Cattell: it is greene every where, and most fertile of all things, which ferne for foole, or which delight the fences of finelling or feeing. It is altogether a pl. me country.

Vpon a certaine hill of Atlas named Ghedmin standeth a rowne, which was built (as some report) by the ancient Africans, and called by the name of Teneffa, being a most firing and defemille place, and being diffant about eight miles Eaftward from the riner of Affinnall. At the foot of the fad hill lists a moit excellent plaine, which, were it not for the lewe thestift Arabans, would yeeld an incomparable crop. And because the inhabitants of Tenessa are deprived of this notable commodity, they till onely that ground which is upon the ide of the mountaine, and which lieth between the towns and the river. Neither doe they enjoy that gratin; for they yearely pay unto the Arabians for tribute the third part of their corne.

The new gamobia

Vyon the top of a certaine high mountaine was built in our time a most large and impregnable Fort being inuironed on all fides with divers other mountaines, and called by the inhabitants New Delgumuba. Beneath the faid mountaine springeth Affinnall, which word fignifieth the African tongue, the River of Rumor, because that breaking foorth by the fide of the hill with a monstrous noile, it maketh a most deepe gulte, much like vnto that, which the Italians call Inferro di Trvolt. The faid Fort containeth almost a thousand families. They have alwayes beene great louers of civility, and have worne neat and decent apparell; neither shall you find any corner in the whole towns which is not well peopled. In this towns are plentic of Artificers, for it is but fiftie miles from the City of Maroco.

Voon a certaine part of Atlas flandeth a Citie called Imizmizi. Westward it is distant from 20 new Delgumuha about fourteene miles : and this citie the Arabiam are reported to have built. Neere vnto this Citte lieth the common high way to Guzula ouer the mountaines of Ailas, being commonly called Burris, that is, A way frewed with feathers : because inow falls often therevpon, which a man would thinke rather to be feathers then inow. Not farre from this towne likewife there is a very faire and large plaine, which extendeth for the space of thirtie miles, euen to the territory of Maroco. This most fertile plane weeldeth fuch excellent corne, as (to my remembrance) I neuer faw the like. Saying that the Arabians and fouldiers of Maroco doe fo much moleft the faid plane countrey, that the greater part thereof is defittute of the inha-

A moft exact

This noble City of Maroco in Africa is accounted to be one of the greatest cities in the world. 29 description of It is built upon a most large field, being about fourteene miles diffant from Aslas. One loseph the some of Tesfin, and king of the tribe or people called Luntuna, is reported to have beene the famous City of Marco asist founder of this Citie, at that very time when he conducted his troupes into the region of Marco wis 100 years co, and fetled himselfe not fare from the common high-way, which firetcheth from Agmeg ouer the mountaines of Allas, to those defarts where the forelaid tribe or people doe visially inagoe, uer the mountaines of 22.666, to these details worderfull workmanship : for all their boil-habite. Heere may you behold most dately and wonderfull workmanship : for all their boildings are fo conningly and artificially contribed, that a man cannot early deferibe the fame. This huge & mighty City, at fuch time as it was governed by Hali the fon of King Iofeph, contained me then one hundred thousand families. It had four and twenty gates belonging therto, and a wait of great frongth and thicknes, which was built of white flone and lime. From this City the river of Tenfife lieth about fixe miles diffant. Heere may you behold great abundance 49 latramesbe- of Temples of Colledges, of Bath-stones, and of Innes, all framed after the fallion and custome of that region. Some were built by the King of the tribe of Luntuna, and others by Elmnachidin civil broyles, his fuccesfor: but the most curious and magnificent Temple of all, is that in the midn of the City which was built by Hali the rift King of Maroco, and the forme of logish atcrefaid, being commonly called the Temple of Hali ben Isfeph. Howbeit one Abdul-Mumen which fucceeded him, to the end he might otterly abolish the name of Hali, and might make himselie onely famous with posterity, caused this stately Temple of Maroco to be razed, and to be reedified somwhat more fumptuously then before. Howbert he joit not onely his expences, but failed of his purpole also : for the common people even till this day doe call the faid Temple by the first and

Margain times pail contained about 100000. it is likely to have beene much preater. one plague is fail to haue c infumed 700000.per-Foolish emu-

Likewile in this City not farre from a certaine rocke was built a Temple by him that was the fecond vsurper ouer the kingdome of Maroco: after whose death his nephew Manfor enlarged Manfor the king of Marson, the faid Temple fiftie cubits on all fides and adorned the fame with many pillars, which he commanded to be brought out of Spaine for that purpofe. Vnder this Temple he made a Citlerne Aftitely Tem-or valle as bigge as the Temple it felfe; the roofe of the faid Temple be courted with lead; and at every corner he made leaden pipes to commay raine water into the Cifferne underneath the Temple. The tarret or freeple is built of most hard and well framed flone, like vinte Veftafian his Amphirheatrum at Rome, containing in compaffe moe then an hundreth elles, and in height exceeding the fleeple of Bononia. The flaires of the faid turret or fleeple are each of them mine 60 handfuls in breadth, the vemoti fide of the wall is ten, and * the thickness of the turret is has The faid turret hath feuen lofts, vnto which the staires ascending are very lightleme : for there are great itore of windowes, which to the end they may give more light, are made breadwithin then without. Vpon the top of this turret is built a certaine foire or pinnacle rifing

CHAP.I. S. 2. Causes of the decay of Maroco, Elmaheli a factious preacher.

tharpe in forme of a fugar-leafe, and containing fine and twenty elles in compate, but in height being not much more then two ipeares length: the faid ipire hath three lofts one aboue another. unto every of which they afcend with wooden ladders. Likewife on the top of this foire flandeth a golden halfe moone, vpon a barre of Iron, with three spheares of gold under it; which golderhalfe moone, vpon a barre of Iron, den fisheares are fo fastened vinto the said iron but that the greatest is lowest, and the least higheil, it would i make a man giddie to looke downe from the top of the turret ; for men walking on the ground, be they neuer to tall, feeme no bigger then a child of one yeere old. From hence like wife may you plainely elerie the promontery of Azaphi, which notwithflanding is an hundreth and thirtie miles diffiant. But mountaines (you will fay) by reason of their huge bignesse 10 may calily be seene a farre off: howbest from this turret a man may in cleere weather most easily fee fitte miles into the plaine countreys. The inner part of the faul Temple is not very beautifull. But the roofe is most cunningly and artificially vaulted, the timbers being framed and let together with fingular workmanship, so that I have not seene many fairer Temples in all Italr. And albeit you shall hardly find any Temple in the whole world greater then this, yet it is very meanly frequented; for the people doe neuer affemble there but onely vpon fridayes. Year a reat part of this City, especially about the aforesaid Temple lieth so desolate & void of inhabitants, that a man cannot without great difficulty paffe, by reason of the ruines of many houses lying in the way. Vnder the porch of this Temple it is reported that in old time there were almost an Great flore of the way. Vinder the porch of this Temple it is reported that in old time there were amort and bookes mold hundreth shops of fale-bookes, and as many on the other sideouer against them; but at this time to be told time to be told I thinke there is not one Book-feller in all the whole City to be found. And fearcely is the third in Maroco.

20 part of this City inhabited. Within the wals of Maroco are Vines Palme-trees, great Gardens, and most fruitfull Corne- State of it fields : for without their wals they can till no ground, by reason of the Arabians often inrodes. 1526. Know ye this for a certainty, that the faid City is growen to vntimely decay and old age : for fearcely fine hundreth and fixe yeeres are part, fince the first building thereof, for asmuch as the foundations thereof were laid in the time of Tofeph the some of Tesfin, that is to fay, in the foure hundreth twentie and fourth yeere of the Hegeira. Which decay I can impute to none other Caules of the cause, but to the injurie of continuall warres, and to the often alterations of Magistrates and of decay of Mathe common-wealth. After King lofeph inceeded his fonne Hali, and the fonne of Hali was ordained gouernour after his fathers decease. In whose time sprung vp a factious crue, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan Preacher named Elmahelt, being a man both borne and brought Elmahelt a fa-

was follopped and reftrained, that he was forced with a few fouldiers, which remained yet a-

line, to flee Eastward to the mountaines of Atlas. But Elmaheli not being fatisfied with expelling his true Soueraigne out of his owne Kingdome, commanded one of the Captaines called Ab-

dul Mumen, with the one halfe of his armie to purfue the diffrested King, while himself with the

other halfe laide fiege to Maroco. The king with his followers came at length vnto Oran, hoping

there to have renewed his forces. But Abdul Mumen and his great armie pursued the faid King

fo narrowly, that the Citizens of Oran told him in plaine termes, that they would not hazard

among the rockes and flones, by certaine which dwelt neere vinto the place. Wherefore Abdul

Mumen having gotten the victorie, returned in triumphant manner toward Maroco, where the

foretaid Elmibeli was deceated before his commning, in whote place Abdil was choten King

cell, which was a new invention in the law of Mahumet. This Abdul Mumen having belieged 50 the Citie of Maroco for the space of an whole yeere, at last ouercame it : and killing Ifaac the

onely forme of King Abraham with his owne hand, he commanded all the fouldiers, and a

good part of the Citizens to be thine. This mans posteritie raigned from the fine hundred fix-

teenth, to the fixe hundred fixtic eight yeare of the Hegeira, and at length they were dispellested

of the Kingdome by a certaine King of the Tribe called Marin. The family of Marin after the

40 themselues for him. Wherefore this vnhappie King being vtterly driven to dilpaire, set his

we in the mountaines. The faid Elmaheli having levied a great army, waged warre against A-chous presbraham his foueraigne Lord. Whereupon King Abraham conducting another armie against him, had margeilous ill jucceffe : and after the battell ended, his passage into the City of Maroco

Queene on horle-backe behind him, and fo in the night time road foorth of the Citie. But per- The milerable ceining that hee was discried and knowen by his enemies, he field foorthwith vnto a certaine death of Abrarocke standing upon the fea-sh are : where, fetting spurs to his horse-side, he cast himstelfe, his Maroto and of most de re sponie, and his horse downe headlong, and was within a while after found slaine his Queene,

and Mahmmetan Prelate ouer the fortie disciples, and tooke ten persons to be of his priny coun- New See.

faid Kings decease bare rule till the yeere of the Hegeira, feuen hundreth eightie and fine. The principall court of this family was holden for the most part at Fez ; but ouer Maroco were ap- Infact yeers, pointed Vice-roves and D-puties : informed that Fee was continually the head and Metropoli- Maroco reco-6c tan Citie of all Mauritonia, and of all the Westerne dominion. In the faid City of Maroco is a most impregnable Castle, which, if you consider the bignes, the fremacy. walls, the towres, and the gates built all of perfect marble, you may well thinke it to be a City C. fle. rather then a Carlie. Wit unthis Caffle there is a flately Temple, having a most loftie and high A flarely iew

fleeple, on the top whereof itan leth an halfe moone, and under the halfe moone are three golden ple

Three estion

A great Col-

followers one bigger then another, which all of them together weigh one hundreth and thirty thousand ducates. Some Kings there were, who being allured with the value, went about to take downe the faid golden ipheares : but they had alwayes some great misfortune or other. which hindred their attempt: Likewife the faid Castle containeth a noble Colledge, which hath thirtie Hals belonging thereunto. In the midft whereof is one Hall of a maruellous greatneffe, wherein publike Lectures were most folemnely read, while the studie of Learning flourished among them. Such as were admitted into this Colledge had their victuals and apparell freely sinen them. Of their Profesiours some were yearely allowed an hundred, and some two hundred Duckars, according to the qualitie of their profession : neither would they admit any to heare Dickets, according to the quality understood what belonged to those Arts which they professed. 10 The wals of this beautifull Hall are most flately adorned with painting and carving , especially of that Hall where Lectures were woont publikely to be read. All their Porches and vaulted Roofes are made of painted and glittering fiones, called in their Language Ezzullein. fuch as are vet yfed in Spaine. In the midit of the faid building is a most pleasant and cleare Fountaine, the wall whereof is of white and polished Marble, albeit low built, as in Africa for the most part fuch wals are. I have heard that in old time here was great abundance of Students, but at my being there I found but fine in all: and they have now a most senselesse Professour, and one that is quite void of all humanitie.

Moreouer, the forefaid Caitle (as I remember) hath twelue Courts most curiously and artificially built by one Manfor. In the first lodged about five hundred Christians, which carryed 20 Croile-bowes before the King whither joeuer he went. Not farre from thence is the lodging of the Lord Chancellour and of the Kings Prime Countell, which House is called by them, The House of Affaires. The third is called, The Court of Victorie; wherein all the Armour and Munition of the Citie is layed vp. The fourth, belongeth to the great Mafter of the Kings Horfe, Vpon this Court three Stables adioyne, each one of which Stables will contain two hundred Horses. Likewise there are two other Offleries, whereof one is for Mules, and theother for an hundred of the Kings Hories onely. Next vnto the Stables were two Barnes or Garners adioyning in two feuerall places, in the lower of which Barnes was layed Straw, and Barley in the other. There is to another most large place to lay vp Corne in, every Roome whereof will containe more then three hundred Bushels. The couer of the said Roome hath acertainehole whereunto they ascend by staires made of stone. Whither the beasts laden with Corn e being come, they powre the faid Corne into the hole. And so when they would take any Corne from thence, they doe but open certaine holes below, fuffering fo much Corne to come forth as may ferue their turnes, and that without any labour at all. There is likewile a certaine other Hall, where the Kings Sonne, and the Sonnes of Noblemen are instructed in Learning. Then may you behold a certaine foure-square building, containing diners Galleries with faire Glasse Windowes, in which Galleries are many Histories most currously painted : heere likewife the glattering and gilt Armour is to be feene. Next vnto this building is another, wherein certaine of the Kings Guard are lodged : then followes that wherein State-matters are discusfed : whereunto adio; neth also another, which is appointed for Ambassadors to conferre with the Kings Prizie Counfell in. Likewise the Kings Concubines and other Ladies of Honour haue a most convenient place assigned them : next vnto which standeth the Lodging of the Kings Sonnes. Not farre from the Catle wall, on that fide which is next vato the fields, may you behold a most pleasant and large Garden, contayning almost all kind of Trees that can bee na-

Moreover, there is a sumptious and stately Porch built of most excellent square Marble : in the midst whereof standeth a Piller with a Lion very artificially made of Martle, out of the mouth of which Lion issueth most cleere and Christall water, falling into a Cisterne within the Porch : at each corner of the faid Porch flandeth the Image of a Leopard framed or white Marble, which is naturally adorned with certaine blacke spots : this kind of parti-coloured Marble is no where to be found but onely in a certaine place of Atlas, which is about an hundred and 50 fiftie miles distant from Maroco. Not farre from the Garden stands acertaine Wood or Parke walled round about : And here I thinke no kind of wild beatts are wanting : for heere you may behold Elephants, Lions, Stagges, Roes, and fuch like: howbeit the Lions are separated in a certaine place from other beafts, which place even to this day is called The Lions Den. Wherefore fuch Monuments of Antiquitie as are yet extant in Maroco, albeit they are but few, doe This King cal. notwithstanding sufficiently argue, what a Noble Citie it was in the time of Manfor.

At this present all the Courts and Lodgings before described lye veterly woyd and desolate : led Manfor, was At this prefent all the Courts and Lodgings before use in the Sand Horfess do lye in that Court, beware whom except perhaps fome of the Kings Offlery which tend his Mules and Horfess do lye in that Court, which we faid euen now was to lodge Archers and Crosse-bow-men : all the residue are left for 60 the Fowles of the Aire to neffle in. That Garden which you might have named a Paradife in old time, is now become a place where the filth and dung of the whole Citie is call forth. Where the faire and stately Librarie was of old, at this present there is nothing else to be found, but Hens, Doues, and other fuch like Fowles, which build their Nests there. Certaine it is, that

the foresaid Mansor, whom we have so often mentioned, was a most puissant and mighty Prince: for it is well knowne that his Dominion stretched from the Towne of Mell's to the Kingdome of Tripolis in Barbarie, which is the most excellent Region of Africa, and to large, that a man The huge Deof Tripolis in Barbarie, which is the morrextenent region of Tripolis in Barbarie, which is the morrextenent region of Tripolis in Barbarie, which is of can hardly trauell the length thereof in fourescore and ten dayes, or the breadth in fifteene. This King Manser. Manfor likewife was in times past Lord of all the Kingdome of Granada in Spaine. Yea, his Dominion in Spaine extended from Tariffa to Aragon, and ouer a great part of Castilia and of Portwall, Neither did this Iacob, furnamed Manfor, only poffesse the foresaid Dominions, but also his Grand-father Abdul Mumen, his father Ioseph, and his Sonne Mahumet Enastr, who beeing vancrified in the Kingdome of Valentia, loft threefcore thousand Souldiers, Horsemen and The Christians To Footmen: howheit himselfe escaped and returned to Maroco. The Christians being encouraged happies succession with this victorie, refrayned not from Warre, till, within thirtie yeares space, they had wonne against the all the Townes following, to wit, Valentia, Denia, Alcauro, Murcia, Cartagera, Cordona, Sinil- Mortes, lia, Iaen, and Vbeds. After which vnhappie warre fucceeded the decay of Maroco. The faid Mabumet deceating, left behind him ten Sonnes of a full and perfect age, who contended much about the Kingdome. Hereupon it came to passe, while the Brethren were at discord, and assayled each other with mutuall warres, that the people of Fez called Marini, and the Inhabitants of other Regions adjacent; began to vierpe the Gouernment. The people called Habduluad enjoyed Tremizen, expelling the King of Tunis, and crdayning fome other, whom they pleased,

in his ftead. Now have you heard the end of Manfor his Progenie and Successors. The King-20 dome therefore was translated vnto one Iacob the Sonne of Habdulach, who was the first King of the Family called Marin. And at length the famous Citie of Maroco it felfe, by reason of the Arabians continual out-rages, fell into most extreme calamitie : so great is the inconstancie of allearthly things. That which we have here reported as touching Maroco, partly wee faw with our owne eyes, partly we reade in the Historie of one Ibnu Abdul Malich, a most exact Ibnu Abdulan Chronicler of the Atlaires of Maroco.

The Towne of Agmet built of old by the Africans vpon the top of a certaine hill which beThe Towne of ginneth almost from Atlas, is distant from Maroco about foure and twentie miles. In times Agmet. past, when Muachdin was Prince thereof, it contayned more then fixe thousand Families: at what time the people were very civill, and had fuch plentie and magnificence of all things, that 20 many would not flicke to compare this Towne with the Citie of Maroco. It had on all fales most pleafant Gardens, and great ftore of Vines, whereof tome grew vpon the Mountaine it felfe. and others on the Valley. By the foot of this Hill runneth a faire River, which fpringing forth of Atles falleth at length into Tenfift. The field which lyeth neere vnto this River is faid to be fo fruitfull, that it yeeldeth every yeere fiftie fold increase. The water of this River looketh al-

Howbeit the Citie of Agmet, which I have now described vnto, hath at this day no other Thedesolation Inhabitants but Woolnes, Foxes, Deere, and fuch other wilde beafts. Except onely at my being there I found a certaine Hermite, who was attended vpon by an hundred persons of his owne Sect : all of them were well-horied, and did their best endeuour to become Gouernours and 40 Commanders, but their forces were infufficient. With this Hermite I staied (as I remember) for the space of ten dayes, and found one amongst his followers, with whom I had old acquaintance, and familiaritie : for we were certaine fellow-students together at Fez, where beeing of one 1em Lee Ruflanding and senioritie, we heard that Booke of the Mahumetan Religion expounded which is deneat Fer. commonly called the Epiffle of Nenfefi.

Hauing before described all the Cities and Townes of Maroco, it now remayneth that wee The Mounbriefly declare the fituation and qualitie of the Mountaines there. Wherefore wee will beginne taine of Niffe. with the Mountaine of Nififa, from whence the Region of Maroco it felfe beginneth Westward, and is thereby divided from the Province of Hea. The faid Mountaine hath great flore of Inhabitants; and albeit the tops thereof are continually couered with Snow; yet doth it 50 yearely affoord maruellous increate and abundance of Barley. The rude people there are so de-

flitute of all humanitie and civill behaviour, that they doe admire not onely all Strangers, but also doe even gaze and wonder at their apparell. I my selfe remayned two dayes among them, in which space all the people of the Towne came flocking about mee, greatly wondring at the white Garment which I wore (being fuch as the learned men of our Countrey are viually clad in) so that enery one being delirous to handle and view this Garment of mine, in two dayes it Learned men was turned from white to blacke, and became all greafie and filthy.

At the bounds of Nififa, a certaine other Mountaine called by the Inhabitants Semede, taketh whitehisoriginal : and these two Mountaines are separated by the River of Sefiana. Semede extendeth East-ward almost twentie miles, the Inhabitants whereof are most base and witlesse peo-60 ple. Great flore of Springs and Fountaines are here to be found; the Snow is perpetuall; all good Lawes, Civilitie and honestie are quite banished from hence, except perhaps the people be mooued thereunto by the aduice of some stranger, whom they find to be of a modest and sober disposition. Here being entertayned by a certaine religious man of the same place (who was had in great reputation by the people) I was confirmyned to eate of fuch groffe meats as the faid

people are accustomed vnto, to wit, of Barley meale mingled with water, and of Geatt-field, which was extremely tough and hard by reason of the stalenesse and long continuance. After Supper we had no other Bed but the bare ground to lye vpon.

The next morning being readie to take Horse, and defrous to depart, fiftie of the people came about me, laying open each man their Caufes and Suites vnto me, as our people vie to do before a Judge. Vnto whom I answered, that I had never in all my life either knowne or heard of the manners and cultomes of that Region. Forth-with comes one of the chiefe men among it them. affirming that it was their cultome neuer to difmiffe any Stranger, till hee had both heard and throughly decided all the Quarrels and Controveriles of the Inhabitants. Which words he had flayed to no found y territor and no flayed to no found y territor and no for nine dayes, and fo many nights, longer to abide the penuric and materie of that Region.

Moreouer, my trouble was the greater, for that, in fuch abundance of Suites and Affaires, there was not one man prefent, which could fet downe fo much as a word in writing; wherefore I my felie was fayne to play both the ludge and the Notarie. Vpon the eight day they all of them promifed to bestow some great Reward vpon mee.

Wherefore the night following feemed vnto me a yeare long : for I was in good liepe, the next morrow to have received a maffe of Gold from my Clients. So foone as the next day began to dawne, they placed me in a certaine Church-porch : whither, after an vivall and fhort Prayer ended, each man full reuerently prefented his gift vnto me. Herefome offered me a Cocke, others brought me Nuts and Onions, and some others bestowed a handfull of Garlicke upon me. 20 The principall and head-men amongst them presented mee with a Goat; and so by reason that there was no money in all the faid Mountayne, they proffered mee not one farthing for my paines: wherefore all the faid gifts I bequeathed vnto mine Hoaft for his worthy entertayning of me. And this was all the notable reward which I reaped in regard of fo great and intollerable paines. All things being thus difpatched, they fent fiftie Horfamen to accompany and guard me from Theeues in that dangerous way.

This Mountaine of Senfana taketh his beginning where Semede endeth, out of which springand sourcem eiled sources, ein a certaine River, having one name with the faid Mountaine from whence it proceedeth. Neuer were the tops of this Mountaine seene destitute of Snow. The Inhabitants leade a brutish and fauage life, waging continuall waste with their next Neighbours : for which purpose they 20 vie neither Swords, Jauelins, nor any other Warlike Instruments, but onely certaine Slings, out of which they discharge stones after a strange and wonderfull manner. Their victuals consist of Barley, Honey, and Grates fleih. In the lame Mountaine great multitudes of Irmes exercifing Handie-crafts, doe inhabit : likewise they make Sope, Iron-hookes, and Horse-shoces. Diuers Masons are here to be found also. They build their wals of no other matter but onely of rough from and lime, and the roofes of their houses they wie to couer with thatch: neither have they any other kind of lime or brickes. They have among them also abundance of learned men and of skilfull Lawyers, whose counsell they yea at all times. Among whom I found some. whohad heretofore beene my fellow-students at Fez, and for our old acquaintance sake, gaue me tams serves, who mad references extertaynment; and, to the end I might escape the danger of Theeues, they G amess area conducted me a good part of my way.

The Mounmi tid. Hawieta.

Neuer did I fee (to my remembrance) an higher Mountayne, then that which the Africans

Many Tewer exerciting divers Handie-crafts doe here inhabit, and doe yearely pay vnto the Governour of this Mountayne great fummes of money. As concerning Religion, they follow them especially which are called Carrain. The top of this Mountayne is continually coursed with Snow. When I first beheld this Motntayne, I thought it had beene Cloudes, so great is the height thereof. The fides of this Mountayne being altogether destitute of Herbs and Trees, are in many places stored with excellent white Marble, which the people might digge, and make a good commoditie thereof, were they not fo fluggifh and fo ignorant in hewing and polithing of the same. In this place are many Pillars and Arches which were most artificially and 50 famptuoully built by those mightie Princes whom were have often before made mention of : which Pillars they would have vied for the building of Water-conduits, had they not beene hindered by the violence of warres.

Guzzu'a.

per Mines.

This Region is exceeding populous: Weltward it abutteth upon Ilde a Mountayne of Sus; Northward it ionneth vato Allas, and Eastward it firetcheth vato the Region of Hea. It is inhabited with fauage and fierce people, being most needle of money, and yet abounding great-Iron and Cop- ly in Cattell. Great flore of Copper and Iron is here digged out of Mines, Great Villages they haue, which contains many of them, more then a thouland Families a piece. They have neyther King nor Gouernour to preferibe any Lawes ento them : but every one is his owne Cap- 60 taine and Commander; whereupon they are at continuall warres among themselves, neither wars in Gaz- haue they any truce at all, but three dayes onely eutry weeke; during which time enery man may fately and freely bargaine with his Enemie, and may trauell whener hee litterh. But thefe Weekly Truces dayes of Truce being past, the wretched people of this Region des continually commit most

horrible flaughters. The forefaid dayes of truce a certaine Hermite appointed vnto them, whom they honoured and reuerenced like a god. This Hermite with one eye, Imy felfe faw, and found him to be a trufty, fincere, courteous, and most liberall person. Once every yeere they have a Venerable him to be a truity, incere, courteous, and more interior of Merchants be neuer fo great)

Hermite.

Faire of two months long: all which time (though the number of Merchants be neuer fo great)

Free enterthey give free entertainment voto all fuch as either bring wares with them, or come thither to tainement for fetch away their wares. When the time of their Faire approcheth, they foorthwith make Merchants. truce, and each faction appointeth a Captaine ouer an hundred fouldiers, to the end they may keepe themselues in safety, and may defend their said Faire from the inuasion and iniury of all lewd persons. If any offence be committed, the Captaines immediately give sentence vpon the Io guilty person : and whosever be consisted of theft, is foorthwith slaine like a brute beast, and Cruellexehis theenes carkaffe is throwne out to bee denoured of dogges, wilde beafts, and rauenous cutions,

CHAP.I.S.2. Hermite honorable. Sodomie punished, Great grapes.

Manji was built by the Africans, and standeth upon the shore of the Ocean sea, containing Of the Region foure thousand families: inhabitants there are great store, being for the most part very vacinil of Ducata, in. and barbarous. In times past there dwelt many lewes in this Towne, which exercised divers which is a tag and barbarous. In times past there dwelt many Tewes in this 10 whe, which extended there and the reft
Handi-crafts, Their foyle is exceeding fertile; but so graffe is their owne vnskilfulnesse and negfollowing: ir ligence, that they know neither how to till their ground, to fow their Corne, or to plant Vine-

The Towne Centumputes is built vpon a rocke of excellent marble: in the Suburbes whereof A.H.920, by 20 are certaine caues, wherein the inhabitants vie to by up their Come : which is there fo wonder reason of civil fully preferred, that it will continue an hundreth yeares without any ill faudur or corruption. Of the number of which caues, refembling pits or wels, the Towne it felt is called Centum putei. fisme the king The inhabitants are of small reckoning or account, having no artificers dwelling among them but being at a Str.

staine level.

Azamur, a Towne of Duccala, was built by the Africans upon that part of the Ocean fea-Perceals about shore, where the River of Ommirabih difemboqueth, being distant from Elmadma Southward, 2- this time bout thirtie miles. Very large it is, and well inhabited, and containeth to the number of fine brought a new thousand families. Here doe the Portugall Merchants continually reside. The inhabitants are sacconthe very civill, and decently apparelled. And albeit they are divided into two parts, yet have they Townes of 30 continual peace among themselues. Pulse and Corne they have great plentie, though their these parts as Gardens and Orchards bring forth nought else but figs. They have such plentie of fishes, that Leshimselse,

they receive yearely for them sometime fixe thousand, and sometime seven thousand duckats. And their time of fishing dureth from October to the end of Aprill. They vie to frie fishes in a centum putei. And then time to me the companies are the companies and the first part of the companies any other cycle to put into their lampes. The lewer compounded with the King of Portugall, to declare the compounded with the King of Portugally the compounded with the compounded wit veeld the Citie to him, on condition, that they should sustaine no iniurie) with a generall con- *Or Marbea. fent opened the Gates vnto them: and fo the Christians obtained the Citie, and the people went Traine Oyle. to dwell part of them to Sala, and part to Fez. Neither doe I thinke that God for any other Aroma wenne cause brought this calamitie vpon them, but onely for the horrible vice of Sodomie, whereunto by the Porto the greatest part of the Citizens were so notoriously addicted, that they could scarce see any Sodomie: young stripling, who escaped their lust.

The Greene Mountaine is of an exceeding height, beginning Eastward from the River of Om- taine. mirabib, and extending Westward to the Hills, called in their language Hafara; and it divideth The fruit cal-Duccala from some part of Tedles. Likewise this Mountaine is very rough and full of Woods, liest Fruits affoording great flore of Acornes and Pine-apples, and a certaine kind of red fruit which the Africane. Italians commonly call Africano. Many Hermites also doe inhabite vpon this Mountaine, li- Religious uing with no other kind of victuals, but fuch as the Woods yeeld vnto them: for they are about Hermin. fine and twenty miles distant from all Townes and Cities. Here are great store of fountaines and of Altars built after the Mahametan fashion, and many ancient houses also erected by the

Tagedast is built upon the top of a certaine high Mountaine, having foure other high Moun- Tagedash taines round about it. Betweene which foure Mountaines and the faid Towne, are divers most large and beautiful Gardens replenished with all kind of fruits: Quinces here are of an incredible bigneffe. Their Vines dispersing themselves upon the boughes of trees, doe make most pleasant Grapes of Bowers and Walkes; the Grapes whereof being red, are for their bigneffe called in the language bigneffe. of that people, Hennes egs. They have here great abundance of Oyle, and most excellent Hony; Whitehoney. fome of their Hony being white, and some yellow. This Towne hath many fountaines about it, which ioyning into one streame, doe serue for many Water-mils thereabouts. Here are likewife great flore of Artizans, who exercise themselves onely about things necessary. The inha-60 bitants are somewhat civill, their women are most beautifull, being most gorgeously decked with

filter lewels. Their Oyle they carry ynto the next Cities Southward of them on this fide At-Las: but they fend their Leather vnto Fez and Mecnafa. Their Plaine is almost fixe miles long, the foyle being most fruitful for Corne:in regard whereof, the Townesmen pay certaine yearely tribute vnto the Arabians. This Towne hath Judges, Priests, and a great number of Gentlemen.

the Pertue ale

780 Elgiumuba.

Neere vnto the forefaid Towne, within fine miles, flandeth Elgiumuba. It was in our time built you the top of an high Mountaine, and containeth to the number of five hundred families. besides somany families comprised in the Villages of that Mountaine. Here are innumerable Springs and Fountaines, and most pleasant and fruitfull Garders in all places. Here are likewise Walnut-trees huge and tall. The little Hills enuironing this Mountaine, doe yeeld Barly and Olives in great abundance. In the faid Towne are great numbers of Artizans, as Smiths, Leatherdreffers, and fuch like. And because they have here notable Yron-mines, they make vlentie of Horfe-shooes.

In the Mountaine of Tenuenes, being but fixteene yeares old, I trauelled with mine Vncle. Ambaffadour from the King of Fez to the King of Tombuto; and the Prince here gaue mee in recompence of Arabia Veries wherewith I presented him, fiftie duckats, and a good Horle. Tefza, the chiefe Towne of all Tedles, was built by the Africans vpon the tide of Mount At-

Tofta. Marbie wals.

lu, some fine miles from the Plaine. The Towne-walls are built of most excellent Marble, which is called in their language Tefes, and hereupon the Towne was so called likewise. Heere doe reside most rich Merchants of all sorts : of lewes here are two hundred families, who exercise Merchandise and divers other trades. And heere you shall finde many Outlandish Merchants which buy from hence certaine blacke Mantles with hoods, commonly cailed Ilbernus : of these there are great numbers both in Italy and Spaine. They have Golden Coine without any Image or superscription: their apparell is desent; and their women are beautifull and of good behauiour. In this cowne are divers Mahumeian Temples, and many Priests and Judges. The King recei- 20 ueth from that City, euen at this present twenty thousand Ducats for yearely tribute.

extorted 84000, Ducats of the Citizens & more from one Iem. The Mountain called Magran. Thefe people

tion like the Tartari.

Somewhat beyond the foresaid Mountaine of Seggheme Standeth Mount Magran. Southward it bordereth vpon the Region of Farcali, neere vato the Lybian delart : Weitward it beginneth at Seg sheme, and extendeth Eastward to the foot of Mount Dedes. It is continually covered with thow. The inhabitants have fuch abundance of fmall & great cattell that they cannot long remaine in one place together. They build their houses of the Barke of certaine trees. the roofe whereof dependeth on flender sparres, fashioned like vnto the hoopes inuironing the lids of fuch Chefts or Trunks, as the women of Italy, when they trauell, carry vpon their Mules. So likewise these people transport their whole houses vp and downe by the arength of Mules, till they have found a fit place of aboad; where, fo foone as they arrive, they plant their favd houses, remaining there with their wholefamilies, fo long as they have graffe sufficient to feede their cattell. Howbeit all the spring time they settle themselues in one place, making certaine low Stables or Cottages, and covering them with the boughs of trees, which ferue for their cattell to lie in a nights : and to the end that the cold may not pinch them ouermuch, they kindle certaine huge fires neere vnto their faid Stables , whereupon fometimes the wind fo violently drineth the fire, that vnleffe the cattell escape by flight, they are in great danger to be confirmed: and as their houses are destitute of walls, so are their Stables. They are continually molested and haunted with Lions and Woolues. In their apparell and customes they wholly agree with the foresaid people of Seggheme, saving that these have houses of Barke and Wood, and the other of Stone. I my felfe, in the nine hundreth and feuenteenth yeere of the Hegeira, was in this Mountaine, as I trauelled from Dara to Fez. The high and cold Mountaine of Dedes greatly aboundeth with Fountaines and Woods.

Westward it beginneth at Mount Magran, extending thence almost as far as the Mountaine of

A description

Adefan; and Southward it bordereth vpon the plaines of Todga. The length thereof is almost fourescore miles. Vpon the very top of this Mountaine there was a City built in ancient time, whereof a few ruinous Monuments are to be seene at this present; namely, certaine walles of white Stone, wherein are divers letters and words graven, which the inhabitants themselves Soiffe Efacati doe not understand. Many are of opinion, that this City was built long agee by the Romanes: howbeit I my selfe could neuer finde so much affirmed by an African writer, nor yet the City it felfe mentioned. Sauing that Seriffo Esfacalli in a certaine Story of his maketh mention of Tadf, which feath is never two Seglowiff, and Data: but the declareth now whether it be 50 built you Mount Dedec or no. Howbert for mine owne part I thinke it to be the very fame: for there is no other City in the whole Region. The inhabitants of Dedes are in very deed most base people; of whom the greater part dwell in Caues under the ground; their food is Barly and Or Sale-pe- Elbafid, that is to fay, Barly meale fodden with water and falt, which we mentioned before in our description of Hea: For heere is nothing but Barly to be had. Goates and Asses they have in great baundance. The Caues wherein their cattell lodge are exceedingly full of * Nitre: fo that I verily thinke if this Mountaine were neere vnto Italy, the faid Nitre would yearely be worth fine and twenty thousand Ducats. But such is their negligence and vinskillfulnesse, that they are truely ignorant to what purposes Nitre serueth. Their garments are so rade, that 60 they scarce couer halfe their nakedneile. Their houses are so loathsome, being annoyed with the stinking finell of their Goats. In all this Mountaine you shall finde neither Castle nor walled Towne: when they build an house, they pile one from vpon another without any morter at all, the roofe whereof they make of certaine subbish, like as they doe in some places of Sife and FabCHAP.1.S.3. Trecherous, Theenish, Slauish and Slutsish people.

briano: the residue (as we have said) doe inhabite in Caues, neither saw I euer, to my remembrance, greater swarmes of fleas then among those people. Moreouer, they are trecherous and frong theeues, so given to stealing and quarrelling, that for one wakind word they will not on-It contend, but feeke allo the destruction one of another. They have neither Judge, Priest, nor any honeit Gouernour among them. No Merchants refort vnto them : for being given to continual idlenesse, and not exercising any trades or handie-crafts, they have nothing meete for Merchants to buy. If any Merchant bring any wares into their Region, vnleile he be fafe conducted by their Captaine, he is in danger to be robbed of altogether. And if the wares ferue not for their owne necessary vies, they will exact one fourth part of them for custome. Their wo-10 men are most forlorne and sluttish, going more beggerly apparelled then the men. So continuall and flauish are the toiles of these women, that for misery, the life of Asses is not comparable to theirs. And, to be briefe, neuer was I so weary of any place in all Africa, as I was of this : howbeit in the yeere of the Hageira, nine hundred and eighteene, being commanded by one, to whom I was in duety bound, to trauell vnto Segebneffe, I could not choose but come this way.

> ò. III. Collections of things most remarkable in IOHN LEO bis third Booke of the Historie of Africa.



He kingdome of Fez beginneth Weltward at the famous river Omminabih, and exten- A most exact deth eastward to the river Mulnia; Northward it is enclosed partly with the Ocean, deficition of deth eathward to the ruter notations; Northward to be encoused party with the Mediterranties. The faid Kingdome of Fees; duited into team of Fees and party with the Mediterranties. The faid Kingdome of Fees; duited into team of Fees and Publishers. Transform, the Territory of Fees, Augus, "Ethabet, Erna, Garet, and "Heba". * Elchauz : euery of which Prouinces had in old time a feuerall Gouernour : neither indeed hath * Chango. the City of Fex alwayes beene the Kings Royall Seate, but being built by a certaine Mahumetan Chenz. Apostara, was gouerned by his posteritie almost an hundred and fiftie yeeres. After which time

the familie of Marm got the upper hand, who here fetling their aboad, were the first that ener called Fez by the name of a Kingdome.

Of Temelae one or rise Prominces of

Westward it beginneth at the River Ommirabib, and stretcheth to the River Burgorag Eastward; the South Frontire thereof bordereth voon Atlas, and the North voon the Ocean Sea. It is all ouer a plaine Countrey, contayning in length from the West to East almost fourescore miles, and in breadth from Ailas to the Ocean Sea about threefcore. This Prouince hath ener almost beene the principall of the feuen before named : for it contained to the number of forty great Townes, befides three hundred Cafiles, all which were inhabited by Barbarian Africana In the three hundred three & twentieth year of the Hegeira, this Prouince was by a certaine he-A dangerous retike against the Mahumetan Religion, called Chemin the sonne of Mennall, treed from paying 10 of tribute. This bad fellow perswaded the people of Fez to yeeld no tribute nor honour vnto their Prince, and himfelfe he professed to be a Prophet : but a while after he dealt not onely in matters of Religion, but in common-wealth affaires alfo. At length waging warre against the

King of Fez (who was himselfe then warring with the people of Zenete) it to befell, that a leasue was concluded betweene them, conditionally that Chemin should enjoy Temeline, and that the King should contain himselfe within his Signicrie of Fez, so that from thencefoorth neither should molest other. The faid Chemim governed the Province of Temeline about five and thirtie veeres and his fucceffours enioyed it almost an hundred yeeres after his decease. But

King Iofeph haung built Maroco, went about to bring this Prouince under his subjection. Wher-Differences in upon he fent fundry Mahumetan Doctors; and Priefts to reclaime the governour thereof from his herefie, and to perswade him, if it were possible, to yeeld vnto the King by faire meanes. Whereof the inhabitants being aduertifed, they confulted with a certaine kiniman of the forefaid Gouernour, in the Citie called Anfa, to murther the King of Maroco his Ambassadours : and so they did. Soone after leuying an army of fifty thousand men, he marched towards Ma-

roco, incending to expell thence the family of Luntuna, and lofe; b their King. King lofepb hearing of this newes, was driven into wonderfull perplexity of mind. Wherefore preparing an huge and mighty army, he ftayed not the comming of his enemies : but on the fudden within

three dayes, having conducted his forces over the River of Ommirabib, he entred Temefne, when as the foresaid fifty thousand men were so dismayed at the Kings army, that they all passed the River Buragrag, and to fled into Fez. But the King so dispeopled and wasted Temefre, that 30 without all remorfe he put both man, woman, and child to the fword. This army remayned in

The horrible defolation of the Region eight dayes, in which space they so razed and demolished all the Townes and Cities thereof, that there scarce remaine any fragments of them at this time. But the King of Fezon the other fide hearing that the people of Temefre were come into his Dominions, made a truce with the Tribe of Zenete, and bent his great army against the said Temesnites. And at length having found them halfe familhed neere vnto the River of Buragrag, he io stopped their passases on all fides, that they were conftrained to run vp the craggie mountaines and thickets. At last being environed with the Kings forces, some of them were drowned in the River, others were throwne downe headlong from the rockes, and the refidue were miferably flaine by their enemies. And for the space of ten moneths there was such hauocke made among the Temesnites. 40 that a filly remnant of them was left aline. But King Joseph Prince of the Luntunes returned foorthwith to Maroco for the repayring of his forces, to the end he might bid the King of Fez a battell. Howbeit Temefre being bereft of her people, was left to be inhabited of wilde bealts. Neither had that Prouince any new Colony, or supply of inhabitants, till that about one hundreth and fifty yeeres after, King Manfor returning from Tunis, brought thence certaine ofrabians with him, vnto whom he gaue the possession of Temesne. And these Arabians enjoyed the faid Province for fifty yeeres, till fuch time as King Manfor himselfe was expelled out of his Kingdom: & then were they also expelled by the Luntunes, & were brought into extreme milerie. Afterward the Kings of the family of Marin bestowed the faid Province vpon the people of Zenete and Haoara. Hence it came to passe that the faid people of Zentete & Haoara, were al. 50

fury of the King of Maroco. From which time they have peaceably enjoyed Maroco, and now they are grown in leffe then an hundred yeers fo mighty, that they fland not in feare of the Kine of Fez. For they are able to bring threefcore thousand horsemen into the field, & haue two hindred Castles at their commaund. My selfe had great familiarity and acquaintance with them, and therefore I will not slicke to record all memorable things which I saw among them.

And a Towne

This famous Towne was built by the Romanes vpon the Ocean Sea shoare, Northward of Atlas fixtie, Eastward of Azamur fixty, and Westward Rebat forty miles. The Citizens thereof were most civill and wealthy people : the fields thereto adjoyning are exceeding fruitfull for all kind of graine : neither doe I thinke, that any Towne in all Africa is for pleasant fituation comparable thereto. The plaine round about it (except it be to the Sea Northward) is almost 60 fourescore miles ouer. In old time it was fraught with stately Temples, rich ware-houses and shops, and beautifull palaces: which the monuments as yet remaining doc jufficiently toffise. They had also most large and faire gardens, out of which they gather great abundance of fruit,

especially

waves great friends vnto the Marin family, and were thought to have defended them from the

especially of Melons, & Pome-citrons even at this day : all which are perfectly ripe by mid-Aprill. So that the inhabitants viually carry their fruits vnto Fez, by reason that the fruits of Fez are not so soone ripe. Their attire is trim and decent, and they have alwayes had great traffique with the Portugals and the English. Likewise they have many learned men among them. But English trasis now defolate and destroyed by Portugals.

This great and famous Towns was built not many yeers ago by Manfor the King & Mahu
Mis destroyed

tan Parriak of Marses ween the Ocean See those Process Feet

Into great and ramous 10 whe was beautiful man many years agony remains to raining to Patrials of Marees, year the Ocean Sea theore, By the East part thereof numerate the River to yime Perial Research in the Patrials of Marees, where more and the theore discharges his falled purp the mains Sea. The scale where Buragras before-named, and there dischargeth it selfe into the maine Sea. The rocke whereon Adeleristion this Towne is founded, standerh neere the mouth of the faid River, having the River on the one of Redst.

10 fide thereof, and the Sea on the other. In building it much refembleth Maroco, which Manfor willed to be a patterne thereof : fauing that it is a great deale leffe then Maroco. Some fay that the reason why it was built in this place was, for that King Mansor possessing the Kingdome Who King of Granada, and a great part of Spaine befides, and confidering that Maroco was fo farre diltant, Manfor built that if any warres should happen, he could not in due time send new forces against the Christi- the Towne of ans, determined to built fome Towne vpon the Sea shoare, where he and his army might re- Sea shoare. maine all fummer time. Some perswaded him to lie with his army at Centa a Towne vpon the Atreights of Giblaltar : but Marfor feeing that by reason of the barrennes of the soile he could not maintain an army Royall for three or foure moneths in the Town of Centa, he caused this Town of Rebat in short space to be erected, & to be exceedingly beautisted with Temples, Colledges, Palaces, Shops, Stoues, Hospitals, and other such buildings. Moreouer, on the South side without

20 the wals he cauled a certaine high Tower like the Tower of Maroco to be built, fauing that the winding staires were somewhat larger, insomuch that three horses a-breast might well ascend vp: from the top whereof they might elrry flips an huge way into the Sea. So exceeding is the height thereof, that I thinke there is no where the like building to be found. And to the end that greater store of Artificers and Merchants might hither from all places make refort, he appointed, that every man according to his trade and occupation should be allowed a yeerely flipend, whereupon it came to passe that within few moneths, this Towne was better stored with all kind of Artificers and Merchants, then in any Towne in all Africa besides, and that because they reaped a double gaine. Heere vsed Mansor with his Troupes to remaine from the beginning of Aprill, till the month of September. And whereas there was no water about the Conduits of Town meet to be drunke (for the Sea runneth ten miles vp into the River, and the wels likewife fresh water 12. 30 yeeld fakt-water) Manfor cauled fresh water to be conucied to the Towne by certaine Pipes miles. and Channels, from a fountainetwelue miles distant. And the Conduits hee made arch-wife,

like vnto the Conduits of Italy in many places, and specially at Rome. So soone as the said water-conduit was derived vinto the Towne, he cauted it to be divided and fent into fundry places, as namely, some pipes thereof to the Temples, some to the Colledges, others to the Kings Palace, and the rest into the common Cisternes, throughout all the City. Howbeit arter King Manfors death this Towne grew into fuch decay, that scarce the tenth part thereof now remaineth. The faid notable water-conduit was vtterly fordone in the warre betweene the Marin

familie and the successors of Mansor.

Also King Manfor caused Sella to be walled round about, and built therein a faire Hospitall, Sella. & a stately Palace, into which his fouldiers might at their pleasure retire themselues, Here likewise heerected a most beautifull Temple, wherein he caused a goodly Hall or Chappell to be set Where King wife heerected a most beautiful I temple, wherein he caused a goodly man or chappen to be let work which was curioully carued, and had many faire windows about it and in this Hall (when he buried. perceiued death to feaze vpon him) he commanded his fubiects to burie his corps. Which being done, they laid one Marble-stone ouer his head, and another ouer his feete, whereon fundry Epitaphes were engrauen. After him likewise all the honourable personages of his family and blood, choose to be interred in the same Hall. And so did the Kings of the Marin family, so long as their Common-wealth prospered. My selfe on a time entring the same Hall , beheld there thirty Monuments of noble and great perforages, and diligently wrote out all their Epitaphes:

this I did in the yeere of the Hegera nine hundred and fitteene. SC In Thagia is visited the Sepulchre of one accounted for a most holy man, who is reported in Sepulchrevithe time of Habdulmumen, to have wrought many miracles against the furie of Lions : where- fited for sexe upon he was reputed by many as a great Prophet. I remember that I read in a certaine writer of of Lions. that Nation commonly called Etdedle, a whole Catalogue of the faid holy mans miracles: which whether he wrought by Arte-magicke, or by some wonderfull fecret of nature, it is altogether vaccertaine. Howbeit his great fame and honourable reputation is the cause why this Towne is fo well fraught with inhabitants. The people of Fez having folemnized their Easter, do yeere- Pilgrimage ly frequent this Towne to visite the faid Sepulchre, and that in such huge numbers, that you farre and free

60 would esteeme them to be an whole armie; for every principall man carries his Tent and other necessaries with him : and so you shall see sometime an hundred Tents, and sometimes more in that company. Fifteene dayes they are in performing of that Pilgrimage; for Thagia standeth from Fex almost an hundred and twenty miles. My selfebeing a child, went thither on Pilgrimage oftentimes with my Father; as likewife being growen vp to mans estate, I repai-

The Territory * Or Celia

red thither as often, making supplication to bee deliuered from the danger of Lions. Weitward it beginneth at the River of Buragrag, and stretcheth Eastward to the river called Inquen : which two Rivers are almost a hundred miles distant alunder. Northward it bordereth ypon the Riner * Subu, and Southward vpon the foote of Atlas. The foile both for abundance of Corne, Frants, and Cattell feemeth to be interiour to none other.

The buildings of Sella carry a thew of Antiquity on them, being Artificially carued and stately supported with Marble pillars. Their Temples are most beautifull, and their are shops built vnder large Porches. And at the end of every row of thops is an Arch, which (as they fay) is to duide one occupation from another. And (to fay all in a word) here is nothing wanting, which may be required either in a most honourable City, or a flourishing Common-wealth. Mcreouer 10 hither refort all kind of Merchants, both Christians and others. Heere the Genowayes, Venetians, English and low Dutch vied to traffique. The grounds adjoyning vpon this Towne are fandy : neither are they fit for Corne, but for Cotten-wooll in divers places very profitable. The inhabitants, divers of them doe weave most excellent Cotten. Heere likewise are made very fine Combes, which are fold in all the Kingdome of Fez, for the Region thereabout yeeldeth great plenty of Boxe, & of other wood fit for the same purpose. Their government is very orderly and discreet even vntill this day : for they have most learned Judges, Vmpires, and deciders of doubtfull cales in Law. This Towne is frequented by many rich Merchants of Genoa, whom the King hath alwayes had in great regard; because he gaineth much yeerely by their traffique.

by Sabid.

The City of Fex befreged for feuen yeers (as I take it) Could rather

In the time of Abufaid the last King of the Marin family, his Coulin, called Sabid, was taken by 20 Habdilla the King of Granada; whereupon by letters he requested his Cousin the King of Fez to warres mound fund him a certaine fumme of money, required by the King of Granada for his ransome. Which when the Fessan King refused to yeeld vnto, Habdilla restored his prisoner to libertie, and fent him towards Fez to destroy both the City and the King. Afterward Sabid, with the helpe of certaine wilde Arabians belieged Fez for feuen yeeres together ; in which space most of the Townes, Villages, and Hamlets throughout the whole Kingdome were destroyed. But at length fuch a Peltilence inuaded Sabids forces, that himfelfe, with a great part of his army, in the "nine hundred and eighteenth yeere of the Hegeira, died therof. Howbeit those desolate Towns neuer received from thenceforth any new inhabitants, especially Fanzara, which was given to certaine Arabian Captaines, that came to affile Sabid. Whatfocure commodity arifeth out of Banishi redoundeth to the Prietls of the principall Mahameten Temple in Fee, and it amounten halmost yeeredy to twenty thousand Dukats. Heere also in times past were most large, pleasant, and freitfull Gardens, as appeareth by the Monuments and reliques thereof, howbest, they were like other places, laid waste by the warre of Sabid. The Towne it selfe remaineth destitute of inhabitants an hundred and ten yeeres ; but as the King of Fez returned home from Duccala, he commanded part of his people to inhabite the fame : albeit their inciuilitie made them loth fo

Fez was built in the time of one Aron a Mahumeran Patriarke, in the yeere of the Herei-

certaine hereticke against the Religion of Mahumet. But why it should so be called, some are of opinion, because when the first foundations thereof were digged, there was found some quanti-

ra one hundreth eighty and fine, and in the yeere of our Lord seuen hundred eightie sixe, by a

Fez the prinall Barbarie, and of the founders thereof.

Idris the fuft founder of

ty of Gold, with mettall in the Arabian language is called Fez. The Founder of this City was one Idris, being the forefaid Aron his neere kinfman. This Idris oughtrather to have beene an Mahumetan Patriarke, because he was nephew vnto Hali the Coulin-german of Mabumet, who married Falerna, Mahumets owne daughter, fo that Idris both by Father and Mother was of Mahimets Linage : but Aron being nephew vnto one Habbus the Vncle of Mahamet, was of kinred onely by the Fathers fide. Howbeit both of them were excluded from the faid Patriarkship for certaine causes mentioned in the African Chronicles, although Aron vsurped the same by deceit. For Arons Vncle being a most cunning and crafty man, and faining himselie to beare greatest fauour vnto the family of Hali, and to be most delirous, that the Patriarkship should light thereon, sent his Amba sadours almost throughout the whole world. Whereupon the dignity was translated from Vmene to Habdulla Seffee the first Patriarke. Which, Umeue being informed of, waged warre against the family of Hale, and so prevailed, that some of them he chased into Asia, and some into India. Howbeit, an ancient Religious man of the same family remained still aliue at Elmadina, who being very old, no whit regarded the dignity. But this ancient fire left behind him two fonnes, who when they were come to mans citate, grew into so great fauour with the people of Elmadm, that they were chafed thence by their enemies; the one being taken and hanged; and the other (whose name was Idris) escaping into Mauritania. This Idris dwelling upon Mount Zaron, about thirtie miles from Fez, gouernul not onely the Common-wealth, but matters of Religion also : and all the 60 Region adjacent paid him tribute. At length Idris deceasing without lawfull issue, left one of his maydes big with child, which had beene turned from the Gothes Religion to the Moores. Being delinered of her fonne, they called him after his Fathers name, Idris. This child the inhabitants chaifing for their Prince, caused him to be most carefully brought vp : and as he grew in

veres, to the end they might trayne him up in feates of Chinalrie; they appointed one Ralid yeares, to the end say missing a most valiant and skilfull Captaine to initruct him. Infomuch, that while hee was but fifteene Idrit his great veeres of age, he grew famous for his valiant Acts and Stratagems, and beganne wonderfully to valour at his inlarge his Dominions. Wherefore his Troupes and Family increasing every day more and more, teene yeares of he fet his minde upon building of a Citie, and changing of his habitation. And fo hee fent for age. ne ier in samme sport oudding et a Critis auf ougging et mid all places in the Region, at laft cuming builders into all Nations, who haung uligently perided all places in the Region, at laft mace choice of that where the Citie of Fee. now standers. For heere they found great store mace choice of the where the Citie of Fee. now standers. of Fountaines, and a faire Riuer, which springing forth of a plaine not farre off, runneth pleafantly almost eight miles amidit the little Hils, till at length it casteth it selfe voon another 10 plaine. Southward of the place they found a wood, which they knew would be right commodious for the Towne. Here therefore youn the East banke of the said River, they built a Towne contayning three thousand Families: neither omitted they ought at all which might bee required in a flourishing Common-wealth. After the decease of Idris, his Sonne erected another

Towne directly ouer against the foresaid, on the other side of the River. But in processe of time either Towne fo increased, that there was but a small distance betweene them : for the Gouernours of each laboured might and mayne to augment their owne Iurifdictions. An hundred and fourescore yeeres after, there fell out great diffention and Civill warre betweene these two Cities, which by report continued an hundred yeeres together. At length lofeph King of Mareco of the Luntune Family, conducting an huge Armie against 20 both thele Princes, tooke them Prisoners, carryed them home vnto his Dominions, and put

them to a most cruell death. And he so vanquished the Citizens, that there were slaine of them thirtie thousand. Then determined King Ioseph to reduce those two Townes into firme vnitie and concord : for which cause, making a bridge ouer the River, and beating downe the wals of either Towne right against it, he vnited both into one, which afterward he divided into twelve Regions or Wards. Now let vs make report of all such memorable things as are there to bee

feene * at this day. A World it is to fee, how large, how populous, how well fortified and walled this Citie is. A most exact The most part thereof standeth vpon great and little Hils : neither is there any plaine ground description of but onely in the midft of the Citie. The River entreth the Towne in two places, for it is divi-30 ded into a double branch, one whereof runneth by new Fez, that is, by the South-fide of the Towne, and another commeth in at the West-fide. And so almost infinitely dispersing it selfe into the Citie, it is derived by certaine conduits and chanels vnto every Temple, Colledge, Inne, Hospitall, and almost to every private house. Vnto the Temples are certaine square conduits adjoyned, having Cels and Receptacles round about them; each one of which hath a Cock, whereby water is conneyed through the wall into a Trough of Marble, From whence flowing into the Sinkes and Gutters, it carryeth away all the filth of the Citie into the River. In the midft of each square conduit standeth a low Cisterne, beeing three Cubits in depth, foure in breadth, and twelve in length: and the water is conveyed by certaine Pipes into the foresaid fquare conduits, which are almost an hundred and fiftie in number. The most part of the hou-40 fes are built of fine brickes and stones curiously painted. Likewise their bay-windowes and portals are made of parrie-coloured bricke, like vnto the stones of Maiorica. The Roofes of their Houses they adorne with Gold, Azure, and other excellent Colours, which Rooses are made of

wood, and plaine on the top, to the end that in Summer-time Carpets may be fored upon them. for here they vie to lodge by reason of the exceeding heate of that Country. Some houses are of two and some of three Stories high, whereunto they make fine staires, by which they passe from one roome to another vnder the same roote: for the middle part of the house is alwayes open or vincouered, having some Chambers built on the one side, and some on the other. The Chamber doores are very high and wide: which in rich mens houses are framed of excellent and carued wood. Each Chamber hath a Preffe curiously painted and varnished belonging thereun-50 to, being as long as the Chamber it felfe is broad : fome will have it very high, and others but fixe handfuls in height, that they may fet it on the Tester of a Bed. All the portals of their

houses are supported with bricke Pillars finely playstered ouer, except some which stand voon Pillars of Marble. The Beames and Transomes vpholding their Chambers are most curiously painted and carued. To some houses likewise belong certaine square Cisternes, contayning in breadth fixe or feuen Cubits, in length ten or twelue, and in height but fixe or feuen handfuls; being all vncouered, and built of brickes trimly playstered ouer. Along the sides of these Cisternes are certaine Cockes, which conuay the water into Marble Troughs, as I have seene in many places of Europe. When the foresaid Conduits are full of water, that which sloweth ouer, runneth by certaine secret pipes and conveyances into the Cisternes: and that which over-

60 floweth the Cifternes, is carryed likewise by other passages into the common Sinkes and Gutters, and fo into the River. The faid Cifternes are alwayes kept fweete and cleane, neyther are they couered but onely in Summer-time, when Men, Women, and Children bathe themselves

Moreover, on the tops of their houses they vivally build a Turret with many pleasant roomes Tttt 3

therein, whither the women for recreations fake, when they are wearle of working, return themfelues from whence they may fee wel-nightal the Citie cuer.

Of Mahametan Temples and Oratories there are almost seven hundred in this Towne, fiftie ne num er and first perie whereof are moit frately and Limptucusly built, saung their Conduc's made of Marble and oarith Mira. ther excellent hones vinknowne to the Iralians; and the Chapiters of their Pillars bearnificialmeas Teaples Iv adorned with painting and carning. The tops of these Temples, after the rashion of Christian Churches in Europe, are made of Iovies and Plankes : but the pauement is coursed with Mars which are fo cumningly fewed together that a man cannot fee the breadth of a finger vacamered. The wals like wife on the inner fide are lined a mans height with fish Mats. Moreouer, each Temple hath a Turret or Steeple, from whence certaine are appointed with a lowd 10 voice to call the people at their fet-time of Prayer. Every Temple lath one onely Priest to lay Service therein; who hath the bestowing of all Revenues belonging to his owne Temple, as occation requireth : for thereby are maintayned Lampes to burne in the night, and Purters to kilepe the doores are paid their wages out of it, and foll kewife are they that call the people to ordinarie Prayers in their ght seaton : for those which cry from the faid Towres in the day time have no wages, but are onely released from all Tributes and Exactions.

The chiefe Mahametan Temple in this Towne is called Carmen, beeing of so increcible a Temple of fee, biggeste, that the circuit thereor and of the buildings longing vincit, is a good mile and a hilfe about. This Temple hath one and thirtie gates or portals of a wonderfull great neffe and height. The Roofe of this Temple is in length one hundred and fiftie, and in breadth about fourercore 22 Florenine Cubits. The Turret or Steeple, from whence they are amayne to aften ble the people together, is exceedingly high: the breadth whereof is topported with twertie, and the length with thirtie Pillars. On the East, West, and North-fides, it hath certaine Walkes or Galleries, fortie Cubits in length, and thirtie in breadth. Voder which Gallenes there is a Cellor Storehouse, wherein Oale, Candles, Mats, and other fuch necessaries for the Temple are lavel up. Euery night in this Temple are burnt nine hundred Lights; for every arch hath a feuerall Lampe, especially these which extend through the mid-quire. Some Arches there are that have one hundred and twentie Candles a piece : there are likewife certaine Braffe Candleftickes fo great and with fo many Sockets, as they will hold each one fifteene hundred Candles : and these Candieflickes are reported to have beene made of Bels, which the King of Few in times past tooke 20 from Christians.

Pulmer and preaching.

About the wals of the faid Temple are divers Pulpits, out of which those that are learned in the Mahametan Law initruct the people. Their Winter Lectures beginne preient's after Sunrife, and continue the space of an houre. But their Summer Lectures hold on from the Sunne going downe, till an houre and a halfe within night. And here they teach as well Morall Pai-Informing as the Law of Mahamer. The Summer Lectures are performed by certaine private and coloure persons ; but in Winter such onely are admitted to read, as bee reputed their greatest Clerkes. All which Readers and Proteficurs are yearely allowed most liberall Stipends. The Priest of this great Temple is encoyned onely to read Prayers, and faithfully to diff bute almes among the poore. Every Festivall day he bestoweth all such Corne and Money as he hath in his custodie, to all poore people according to their need.

The Treaturer or Collector of the Reuenues of this Church bath every day a Ducket for his pay. Likewise he hath eight Notaries or Clerkes under him; euery one of which gavnething Duckars a moneth; and other fixe Clerkes who receive the rent of housesohors, and other fixeh places as bilong to the Temple, having for their wages the twentieth part of all such Rents and Duties as they gather.

Moreover, there belong to this Temple twentie Factors or Bavlies of Husbandry , that without the Citie wals have an eye to the Labourers, Ploughmen, Vine-rlanters, and Gardiners, and that prouide them things necessarie; there gaine is three Duckats a moneth. Not faire from the Citie are about twentie Lime-kils, and as many Bricke-kils, furning for the reparation of their Temple, and of all houses thereto belonging.

The Regenues Temple, and bestowed.

The Resenues of the faid Temple daily received, are two hundred Duckars a dan; the better halfe whereof is lavd out you the particulars aforefaid. Also if there bee any Temples in the Citie deflitute of living, they must all be mauntayined at the charges of this great Temple : and then that which remayneth after all expenses, is bestowed for the behocteof the Commonwealth; for the people receive no Revenues at all. In our time the King commanded the Pried of the faid Temple to lend him an huge fumme of money, which he never repayed agains.

Colledges of

Moreover, in the Citie of Fee are two most stately Colledges, of which cities roomes are adorned with curious painting; all their beames are carried, their wals conditing both or Marble and Freettone. Some Colledges heere are which contaying an hondred thadies, fame more, 60 and some fewer, all which were built by divers Kings of the Marie Family. One there is among the rest most beautifull and admirable to behold, which was erected by a certaine King called Habn Henon. Here is to be seene an excellent Fountaine or Marcle, the Carerne whereof contavneth two Pipes. Through this Colledge runneth a little threame in a most decreared

pleafant chanell, the primmes and edges whereof are workmanly framed of Marble, and stones of Maiorica. Likewise heere are three Cloysters to walke in, most curiously and artificially made, with certaine eight square Pillars of divers colours to support them. And betweene Pillar and Pillar the arches are beautifully ouer-cast with Gold, Azure, and divers other Co-Jours; and the Roofe is very artificially built of wood. The fides of these Cloysters are so close; that they which are without cannot fee fuch as walke within. The wals round about as high as a man can reach, are adorned with Play ier-worke of Materica. In many places you may find certaine Verles, which declare what yeare the Colledge was built in, together with many E-

grams in the Founders commendation. The Letters of which Verfea are very great and black, to fo that they may be read a farre off. This Colledge gares are of Braffe most curiously carued, and foresthe dooresattificially made of wood. In the Chappell of this Colledge standeth a certaine Pulpit mounted nine stayres high, which staires are of Iuorie and Ebonie. Some affirme, that the King having built this Colledge, was defired to know how much money hee had fpent in building it; but after he had perufed a leafe or two of his Account-booke, finding the lumme of fortie thousand Duckats, he rent it afunder, and threw it into the foresaid little River, adding this Sentence out of a certaine Arabian Writer: Each precious and amiable thing, though it A Colledec costeth deare, yet if it be beautifull, it cannot choose but bee good cheape : neither is any thing of too cost 480000 high aprice, which pleaseth amans affection. Howbeit a certaine Treaturer of the Kings, making Duckars the a particular account of all the fail expenses, found that this excellent building stood his Master in foure hundred and eightie thousand Duckars. The other Colledges of Fez are somewhat like 20 vnto this, having every one Readers and Profellors, some of which read in the forenoone, and

fome in the atternoone. In times past the Students of these Colledges had their apparell and victuals allowed them for feuen yeares, but now they have nothing gratis but their Chamber.

For the warre of Sahid destroyed many possessions, whereby Learning was maintayned; so The suppress. that now the greatest Colledge of all hath yeerely but two hundred, and the fecond but an on of Learhandred Duckats for the maintenance of their Professors. And this perhaps may bee one reaning and learfon, among many, why the gouernment not onely of Fez, but of all the Cities in Africa, is fo ned men, a

Now these Colledges are furnished with no Schollers but such as are strangers, and line of the Citie Almes: and if any Citizens dwell there, they are not aboue two or three at the most. The uernment 30 Professor being readie for his Lecture, some of his Auditors readeth a Text, whereupon the faid Professor dilateth, and explayneth obscure and difficult places. Sometimes also the Schollers dispute before their Protestor.

Many Hospitals there are in Fez, no whit inferiour, either for building or beautie, vnto the A description forcsaid Colledges. For in them whatsoeuer strangers came to the Citie were entertayned at of the Hospithe common charge for three dayes together. There are likewife as faire and as fately Holpi-tals in the Suburbes. In times part their wealth was maruellous great; but in the time of Sabads. Fre, warre, the King flanding in need of a great fumme of money, was counfelled by some of his greeche Courtiers to fell the Livings of the faid Hospitals. Which when the people would in Livings beno cale yeeld vinto, the Kings Oratour or Speaker, perfwaded them that all those Linings were longing to

40 guen by his Maielties Predeceffours, and therefore (because when the warres were ended, they Holpirals should soone recouer all againe) that it were farre better for them by that meanes to pleasure their Soueraigne, then to let his Kingly Estate fall into so great danger. Whereupon all the faid Livings being fold, the King was prevented by vntimely and fudden death before he could bring his purpole to effect : and so these famous Hospitals were deprived of all their mainte-

The poore indeed and impotent people of the Citie are at this day relieued; but no strangers are entertayned, faue only learned men or Gentlemen. Howbeit there is another Hospitall for the reliefe of ficke and difeased strangers, who have their dyet onely allowed them, but no Physician or Medicine : certaine women there are which attend vpon them, till they recouer

50 their former health, or dye. In this Hospitall likewise there is a place for frantike or distracted persons, where they are bound in strong Iron Chaines; whereof the part next vnto their walkes is strengthened with mightie beames of Wood and Iron. The Gouernour of these distracted persons, when he bringeth them any sustenance, hath a Whip of purpose to chastise those that offer to bite, strike, or play any mad part.

Likewise this Holpitall hath many Roomes for the Purueyors, Notaries, Cookes, and other Officers belonging to the ficke persons; who each of them have some small yeerely stipend. Isha Leo inhis Being a young man, I my felie was Notarie heere for two yeeres, which Office is worth three youth a Nota-

In this Citie are moe then an hundred Bath-floues very artificially and flately built; which yeares togethough they bee not of equall bigneffe, yet are they all of one fashion. Each Stone hath four ther. Halls, without which are certaine Galleries in an higher place, with fine or fixe staires to ascend Their Bathes vinto them: here men put off their apparell, and hence they goe naked into the Bath. In the and bathing.

midft they alwaies keepe a Cifterne full of water. First therefore, they that meane to bathe themselves, must passe through a cold Hall, where they vie to temper hot water and cold together, then they goe into a roome fomewhat hotter, where the fernants clenfe and wash them: and last of all, they proceede into a third Hot-house, where they sweate as much as they thinke good. The fire that heateth their water is made of nought elie but beafts dung : for which purpole many boyes are set on worke to run vp and downe to Stables, and thence to carrie all the dung, and to lay it on heapes without the Towne-walles; which being parched in the Sunne for two or three moneths together, they vie for fuell. Likewise, the women haue their Stoues apart from the men. And yet some Hot-houses serue both for men and women, but at fundrie times, namely, for men from the third to the fourteenth houre of the day, and the relidue for IQ women. While women are bathing themselves, they hang out a rope at the first entrance of the house, which is a figne for men, that they may then proceede no farther. Neither may husbands here be permitted to speake with their owne wines; so great a regard they have of their honeftie. Here men and women both, after they have done bathing, vie to banquet and make merrie with pleafant Musicke and finging. Young Striplings enter the Bath starke naked without any fhame, but men couer their privities with a linnen cloth. The richer fort will not enter the common Bath but that which is adorned and finely fet forth, and which ferueth for Noble-men and Gentle-men. When any one is to be bathed, they lay him along vpon the ground, anointing him with a certaine oyntment, and with certaine instruments doing away his filth. The richer fort hauea Carpet to lie on, their head lying on a woodden Cushion, couered with the same Carnet. Likewise, here are many Barbers and Chyrurgions which attend to doe their office. The most part of these Baths pertaine to the Temples and Colledges, yeelding vnto them a great fumme of money for yearely rent: for some give an hundred, some an hundred and fiftie Duckats a yeare. Neither mult I here omit the Festivall-day which the Servants and Officers of the Bathescelebrate; who with Trumpets and Pipes calling their friends together, goe forth of the Towns, and there gather a wild Onion, putting it in a certaine brazen veffell, and covering the fame with a linnen cloth wet in Lee: afterward with a great noise of Trumpets and Pipes, they

The Innes

taine an hundred and twenty, or moe Chambers apiece. Likewife, each one hath a Fountaine, together with Sinks and Water-pipes, which make avoidance of all the filth. Neuer, to my remembrace, did I fee greater building, except it were the Spanish Colledge at Bologna, or the Pallace of the Cardinall di San Giorgio at Rome; of which Innes all the Chamber-doores have 40 Walkes or Galleries before them, And albeit the Innes of this Citie are very faire and large, yet they affoord most beggerly entertainement to strangers; for there are neither Beds nor Couches for a man to lie vpon, vnlesse it be a course Blanket and a Mat. And if you will have any victuals, you must goe to the Shambles your selfe, and buy such meate for your Host to dreffe, as your ftomack ftands-to. In these Innes certaine poore Widdowes of Fez, which have neither wealth nor friends to fuccour them are relieved : fometimes one and fometimes two of them together are allowed a Chamber; for which courtefie they play both the Chamberlaines and Cookes of the Inne. The Inne-keepers of Fez being all of one Family, called Elchena, goe apparelled like Women, and shaue their Beards, and are so delighted to immitate Women, that they will not onely counterfeite their speech, but will sometimes also sit downe 50 and spin. Each one of these hath his Concubine, whom hee accompanieth as if she were his owne lawfull Wife; albeit the faid Concubines are not onely ill-fauoured in countetenance, but notorious for their bad life and behauior. They buy and fell wine fo freely, that no man controles them for it. None refort hither but most lewd and wicked people to the end they may more boldly commit vilany. The very company of these Inne-keepers is so odious, and

folemnely bring the faid Onion vnto the Hot-house doore, and there they hang it vp in the lit-

in times past, when they were destitute of Lawes and civilitie, to offer, and that the same custom

hath remained till this very day. The like is to be seene even among Christians, who celebrate

many Feafts, wherof they can yeeld no reason. Likewise, every African towne had their peculiar

Feast, which, when the Christians once enjoyed Africa, were veterly abolished and done away. In this Citie are almost two hundred Innes, the greatest whereof are in the principall part of

the Citie necre vnto the chiefe Temple. Euery of these Innes are three stories high, and con-

tle brazen veffell or Lauer, saying, That this is a most happy boading, or signe of good luck vnto their Stoue. Howbeit, I suppose it to be some such Sacrifice, as the ancient Morres were wont

The Mills Like vnto our Horfe-mills. pations,the

into the Burse, nor into any Bath. Neither yet are they permitted to refort vnto those Innes which are next vnto the great Temple, and wherein Merchants are vitally entertained, In this Citie are Mills in foure hundred places at least. And every of these places containeth fine or fixe Mills; fo that there are some thousands of Mills in the whole City, Euery Mill stan. 60 deth in a large roome vpon fome ftrong piller or polt, whereunto many Country-people vse to refort. All the said Mills pertaine either to the Temples or Colledges.

deteltable in the fight of all honeft men, learned men, and Merchants, that they will in no wife

vouchfafe to speake vnto them. And they are firmely enjoyined not to enter into the Temple.

Each trade or occupation hath a peculiar place allotted thereto, the principall whereof are

CHAP.I.S.2. A description of the Occupations, Shops, and Markets in Fez. next vnto the great Temple : for there first you may behold to the number of for referre Notaries or Scriueners thops, whereof fome toyne vpon the Temple, and the refidue fland ouer against Scriueners. them : every of which Shops hath alwaies two Notaries. Then Westward there are about thirthem: energy of which Shops have the Shops merchants which buy Shopes and Buskins of the Bookfellers. the Stationers of Bookers and fell them agains to the Citizens, inhabite on the Southfide of the Temple; and Shoo-merext ynto them, fuch as make Shooes for children onely, their Shops being about fiftie. On the chants. East-side dwell those that sell vessels, and other commodities made of brasle. Ouer against the Brassers. great Gate of the faid Temple flands the Fruit-market, containing fiftie Shops, where no kind Fruiterers. of fruit is wanting. Next vnto them stand the Waxe-merchants, very ingenious and cunning 10 workmen, and much to be admired. Here are Merchants factors likewise, though they bee but few. Then followes the Herbe-market, wherein the Pome-citrons, and divers kinds of greene Herb-women, Boughes and Herbes doe represent the sweete and flourishing Spring, and in this Market are about twenty Tauernes: for they which drinke Wine, will shrowd themselues under the shadie and pleafant Boughes. Next vnto them stand the Milke-fellers: I thinke there passeth Milk-fellers. fearce one day ouer their heads, wherein they otter not fine and twentie tunnes of Milke. Next wnto these are such as sell Cotton, and they have about thirtie shops: then follow those that sell Cotton.

wnto these are such as sell Cotton, and they have about third most a thermone, Ropes, Halters, and such other hempen commodities. Then come you to the Girders, Rope-sellers, riempe, Ropes, Marcels, and Leather-bridles embrodered with filke: next their shops ad Gridlers. iovnethat make Sword-scabberds and Caparifons for Horses. Immediately after dwell those Salars. 20 that fell Salt and Lime; and vpon them border an hundred Shops of Potters, who frame al kind Potters of earthen vessels adorned with divers colours. Then come you to the Sadlers Shops: and next Sadlers. of all to the itrecte of Porters, who (as I fuppole) are about the hundred; thefe Porters have the Porters of Confull or Gouernour, who carry weeke allotteth vnto part of them fome fet bufineffe. The Confull or Gouernour, who euery weeke allotteth vnto part of them fome fet businesse. The gaine which redoundeth thereof, they put into a Coffer, dividing it at the weekes end among them, which have wrought the same weeke. Strange it is to consider how exceedingly these Porters loue one another: for when any of them decealeth, the whole company maintaineth his widow and fatherlesse children at their common charge, till either she die, or marrieth a new his widow and the children they carefully bring vp, till they have attained to some good Art or oc-

cupation. Next vnto the Porters companie dwell the chiefe Cookes and Victuallers. Here also Cookes. 30 flands a certaine square house couered with Reed, wherein Pease and Turnep-rootes are to bee fold, which are so greatly esteemed of in Fez, that none may buy them of the country people at the first hand, but such as are appointed, who are bound to pay tole & tribute vnto the Cu90mers; and fearcely one day paffeth, wherein moe then fine hundred facks of Peafe and Turneps Peafe and are not fold. On the North-fide of the Temple is a place whither all kind of Hearbs are brought Turneps. to make Sallets withall : for which purpose there is fortie Shops appointed. Next whereunto Sallet shops: is the place of Smoke, so called, by reason of continual smoke : here are certaine Fritters or Fritterers. Cakes fried in Oyle, like vnto such as are called at Rome, Pan Melato. They roste their slesh not vpon a fpit, but in an Ouen: for making two Quens one ouer another for the same purpose, in Rolling in

the lower they kindle a fire, putting the flesh into the vpper Ouen when it is well het; you Ocens, 40 would not beleeve how finely their meat is thus rofted; for it cannot be spoiled either by smoke or too much heate : for they are all night rofting it by a gentle fire, and in the morning they fet it to fale. The forefaid Steakes and Fritters they fell vnto the Citizens in fo great abundance, that they daily take for them moe then two hundred Ducats; for there are fifteene Shops which fell nothing elfe. Likewise, here are sold certaine Fishes and fielh fried, and a kind of excellent fauorie bread, taffing somewhat like a Fritter; which being baked with Butter, they neuer eate but with Butter and Honie. Here allo are the feete of certaine beafts fodden, wherewith the Trice-wines. Husbandmen betimes in the morning breake their faft, and then hie them to their labour. Next vnto thefe are fuch as fell Oyle, Salt, Butter, Cheefe, Olines, Pome-citrons and Capers: their Vidualers, shops are full of fine earthen veilels, which are of much greater value then the things contained

50 in them. Then follow the Shambles, confifting of about forty Shops, wherein the Butchers cut Shambles their flesh a pieces, and sell it by weight. They kill no beasts within the Shambles, for there is a place allotted for this purpose neere vnto the River, where having once dressed their fleth, they fend it to the Shambles by certaine feruants appointed for that end. But before any Butcher dare fell his flesh vnto the Citizens, he must carrie it to the Governour of the Shambles, who so foone The Governor fell his fielh vnto the Citizens, ne mult carrie it to the Gouernour or the Sham ores, which flow togeof the Shamas he feeth the fielh, he fets downe in a piece of paper the price thereof, which they flow togebles in Eq. ther with their meate vinto the 'people; neither may they in any case exceed the faid price. Courtedoor Next vnto the Shambles standeth the Market where course cloathes are fold, which containeth at least an hundred Shops: the said cloth is delivered vnto certaine Criers (which are about threefcore in number) who carrying the cloth from Shop to Shop, tell the price thereof. Then

60 follow their Shops that feowre and fell Armour, Swords, Jauelings, and fuch like warlike infline Armorers. ments, Next vnto them fland the Filhmongers, who fell most excellent and great Fish. Next Filmongers, vnto the Fishmongers dwel such as make of a certaine hard Reed, Coopes and Cages for Fowless their Shops being about fortie in number : for each of the Citizens vieth to bring vp great flore of Hennes and Capons. And that their houses may not be defiled with Honnes-dung, they keeps Cag-makes.

Sopers. Mea'emen.

them continually in Coopes and Cages. Then follow their Shops that fell liquide Sope, Neve of all are certaine of their Shops that fell Meale, albeit they are diversly disperied throughout the whole Citie. Next vnto them are such as fell Seede-graine and Seede-pulse. Then are there tenne Shops of them that fell Straw. Next them is the Market where Thread and Hemne is to be fold, and where Hempe vieth to bee kempt : which place is built after the fashion of great Houses, with foure Galleries, or spare-roomes round about it : in the first whereof they fell Line nen-cloth, and weigh Hempe : in two other fit a great many women, having abundance of falethread which is there fold by the Criers.

Tankarters. Taylors.

Landerers.

Let vs now come to the West part, which stretcheth from the Temple to that Gate that lead deth to Mechafe. Next vnto the Smokie place before mentioned, their habitations directly to fland that make Leather-tankards to draw water out of Wells, of whom there are some foureteene Shops. Vnto these adioyne such as make Wieker-vessels, and other, to lay vo Meale and Corne in : and these enion about thirty Shops. Next them are one hundred and fifty Shops of Taylors. And next the Taylors are those that make Leather-shields, such as I have often jeene brought into Europe. Then follow twenty Shops of Landresses or Washers, being people of a base condition; to whom the Citizens that have not Maids of their owne, carry their Shirts and other foule linnen, which after few dayes are restored vnto them so cleane and white as it is wonderfull. These Landresseshaue divers Shors adjoyning together in the same place: but here and there throughout the Citie are about two hundred Families of fuch persons. Next vnto the Landresses are those that make Trees for Saddles; who dwell likewise in great numbers 20 Eastward right in the way to the Colledge founded by King Abubinan. Vpon these adjoyne about forcie thops of fuch as worke Stirrops, Spurres, and Bridles, to artificially, as I thinke the

like are not to be feene in Europe. Next Handeth their ffreete, that first rudely make the faid Stirrops, Bridles and Spurres. From thence you may goe into the streete of Sadlers, which couer the Saidles before mentioned threefold with most excellent Leather; the best Leather they lay vppermost, and the worst beneath, and that with notable Workmanship, as may bee feene in most places of Italy: and of them there are moe then an hundred Shops. Then follow their long Shops that make Pikes and Launces. Next standeth a Rocke or Mount, having two Walkes thereupon; the one whereof leadeth to the East-gate, and the other to one of the Kings Palaces, where the Kings Sifters, or some other of his Kindred are visually kept. But this is by 20 the way to be roted, that all the foresaid Shops, or Market, begin at the great Temple.

Of the Station or Burfe of Merchants

The Burse you may well call a Citie, which being walled round about, hath twelue Gates, and before euery Gate an Iron-chaine, to keepe Horses and Carts from comming in, The said Burie is divided into twelve feuerall Wards or parts: two whereof are allotted vnto fuch Shoomakers as make Shooes onely for Noblemen and Gentlemen, and two also to Silke-merchants, or Haberdathers, that fell Ribands, Garters, Scarfes, and fuch other like ornaments; and of these there are about fiftie Shops. Others there are that fell Silke onely for the embrodering of Shirts, Cushions, and other such furniture made of Cloth, possessing almost as many Shops as the former. Then follow those that make Womens Girdles of course Wooll (which some make of Silke) but very groffely, for I thinke they are moe then two fingers thicke, fo that they may ferue almost for Cables to a Ship. Next vnto these Girdlers are such as fell Woollen and Linnen-cloth 40 brought out of Europe: which have also Silke-stuffes, Caps, and other like commodities to sell. Hauing passed these, you come to them that sell Mats, Mattrailes, Cushions, and other things made of Leather. Next adioyneth the Customers Office; for their Cloth is sent about by certaine Criers to be fold, who before they can paffe, must goe to the Customers to have the faid Cloth fealed, and to pay Toll vnto the Customers. Criers here are to the number of fixtie, which for the crying of every Cloth have one * Liardo allowed them. Next of all dwell the Taylors, and that in three feuerall streetes. Then come you to the Linnen-drapers, which fell Smocks and other apparell for women : and these are accounted the richest Merchants in all Fez, for their wares are the most gainefull of all others. Next vnto these are certaine Woollen garments to be fold, made of such Cloth as is brought thither out of Europe. Euery after-noone Cloth is fold in this place by the Criers, which is lawfull for any man to doe, when necessary occasion vegeth him. Last of all is that place where they vie to fell wrought Shirts, Towels, and other embrodered works; as also where Carpets, Beds, and Blankets are to be fold.

Next vnto the faid Burle, on the Northfide, in a streight lane, stand an hundred and fifty Grocers and Apothecaries Shops, which are fortified on both fides with two strong Gates. These other fradef. Shops are garded in the night-feason by certaine hired and armed Watchmen, which keep their men and Ar- flation with Lanthornes and Mastines. The faid Apothecaries can make neither Sirrups, Oyntments, nor Electuaries : but fuch things are made at home by the Physicians, and are of them to be bought. The Physitians houses adioyne for the most part vnto the Apothecaries : howbeit, 60 very few of the people know either the Physician, or the vie of his Physick. The Shops here are fo artificially built and adorned, that the like (I thinke) are no where elfe to be found. Being in Iobs Leo was at Tauris, a Citie of Persia, I remember that I saw divers stately Shops curiously built under certaine TauminPerfia. Galleries, but very darke, fo that (in my indgement) they be far interiour vnto the Shops of Fez.

Next the Apothecaries are certaine Artificers that makes Combes of Boxe and other wood. Comb makers Fastward of the Apothecaries dwell the Needle-makers, possessing to the number of fifty shops Then follow those that turne Iuory, and such other matter, who (because their craft is practised Turners. by fome other Artizans) are but few in number. Vnto the Turners adioyne certaine that fell Mede Sope and Broomes: who dwelling next vnto the Thread-market before mentioned, are fearce twenty hops in all: for the relidue are disperied in other places of the City, as we will Voholiters. hereafter declare. Amongst the Cotten-merchants are certaine that sell ornaments for Tents nercatter occurre. Annuage the Fowlers, who, though they be but few, yet are they flored with Poulters, and Beds. Next of all stand the Fowlers, who, though they be but few, yet are they flored with Poulters. all kind of choice and dainty Fowles: whereupon the place is called the Fowlers market. Then

To come you to their shops that sell Cords and Ropes of Hempe : and then to such as make high Coorke-flippers for Noblemen and Gentlemen to walk the areets in, when it is foule weather: Corkflippere, these Corke-flippers are finely trimmed with much filke, and most excellent vpper leathers, so that the cheapest will cost a Ducat, yea some there are of ten Ducats, & some of fine and twenty Ducats price. Such flippers as are accounted most fine and costly are made of blacke and white Mulberie-tree, of blacke Walnut-tree, and of the Iujuba tree, albeit the Corke-flippers are the most durable and strong. Vnto these adioune ten shops of Spanish Moores, which make Crosse- Crosse-bowes bowes : as also those that make Broomes of a certaine wilde Palme-tree, such as are dayly brought out of Sicilie to Rome. These Broomes they carry about the City in a great basket, ei. Broome-men. ther felling them, or exchanging them for Bran, Ashes, or old Shooes: the Bran they fell agains

to Shepheards, the Ashes to such as white Thread, and old Sheoes to Coblers. Next vito them are Smithes that make Nailes; & Coopers which make certain great vessels in forme of a bucket, Smithes. having Corne-measures to sell alto: which measures, when the Officer, appointed for the same Coopers. purpole, hath made triall of, he is to receive a farthing a-prece for his fee. Then follow the Woolmen-Wooll-chapmen, who having bought wooll of the Butchers, put it foorth vnto others to

be foowred and washed : the Sheepe-skinnes they themselves dresse : but as for Oxe-hides they belong to another occupation, and are tanned in another place. Vnto these adiovne such as make certaine Langols of Withs, which the Africans put vpon their horses feet. Next of all are the Brasiers: then such as make Weights and Measures; and those likewise that make in- Weights and firuments to carde Wooll or Flaxe. At length you descend into a long freet, where men of di- Measures. 30 uers occupations dwell together, fome of which doe polish and enamell Stirops, Spurres, and Enamellers. other fuch commodities, as they receive from the Smithes roughly and rudely hammered. Next Fabric whom dwell certaine Cart-wrights, Plow-wrights, Mill-wrights, and of other like occu-

rations. Diers have their about by the Rivers fide, and have each of them a most cleere Foun-Diere taine or Cisterne to wash their Silke-stuffes in. Ouer against the Diers dwell makers of Bulwarkes or Trenches, in a very large place, which being planted with shady Mulberrie-trees is Farriers, exceeding pleafant in the Summer time. Next them are a company of Farriers, that shooe Mules and Horses; and then those that make the Iron-worke of Croffe-bowes. Then follow Smithes that make Horle-shooes; and last of all, those that whire Linnen-cloth: and here the west part Whitsters. of the City endeth, which in times paft (as is afore faid) was a City by it felfe, and was built af-

40 ter the City on the East fide of the River.

The fecond part of Fez, fituate Eastward, is beautified with most stately Palaces, Temples, A Description Houses, and Colledges; albeit there are not so many trades and occupations as in the part before of the lecond described. For here are neither Merchants, Taylors, Shoo makers, &c. but of the meaner fort. partor Fez. Heere are notwithstanding thirty shops of Grocers. Necre vnto the wa'les dwell certaine Grocers. Bricke-burners and Potters: and not farre from thence is a great Market of white Earthen Vel- Farthen velfels, Platters, Cups, and D.shes. Next of all stands the Corne-market, wherein are divers Gra- fels. naries to lay vp Corne. Quer against the great Temple there is a broad street paued with Brick, Commanket round about which divers handi-crafts and occupations are exercifed. There are I kewife many other trades diverfly disperfed over this East part of the City. The Drapers and Grocers have Drapers. certaine peculiar places allotted vnto them. In the East part of Fez likewife there are fine hun-

dred and twenty Weauers houses, very stately and sumptuously built : having in each of them Weauers. many worke-houses and Loomes, which yeeld great rent vnto the owners. Weauers there are (by report) in this City twenty thousand, and as many Millers. Moreover, in this part of Fez Millers, are an hundred shops for the whiting of thread; the principall whereof being situate upon the River, are exceedingly well furnished with Kettles, Cauldrons, and other such vessels : here are likewife many great houses to fawe wood in, which worke is performed by Christian captiues, Sawyers. and whatfocuer wages they earne, redoundeth vnto their Lords and Mafters. These Christian Christian Christian captines are not fuffered to reif from their labours, but onely vpon Fridayes, and vpon eight feue- inestisanty. rall dayes of the yeere befides, wheron the Moores feaths are folemnized. Heere also are the

60 common stewes for Harlots, which are fauoured by great men, and sometime by the chiefe Gouernours of the City. Likewise there are certaine Vintners, who are freely permitted to keepe Harlots, and to take filthie hire for them. Heere are also moe then fixe hundred cleere Four- Srewes. taines walled round about and most charily kept, every one of which is severally conveyed by Vintnesse certaine pipes vnto each House, Temple, Colledge, and Hospitall : and this Fountaine water is Fountaine

Riners dried

accounted the belt: for that which commeth out of the River is in Summer oftentimes dried vo: opin Summer, as likewife when the Conduits are to be clenfed, the course of the River must of necessitie bee turned out of the City. Wherefore enery family vieth to fetch water out of the faid Fountaines. and albeit in Summer-time the chiefe Gentlemen vie River-water, yet they will often call for Fountaine-water, because it is more cooleand pleasant in taste. But in the Spring-time it is nothing to. Thele Fountaines have their Originall for the most part from the West and South, for the North part is all full of Mountaines and Marble Rockes, containing certaine Caues or Cels. wherein Corne may be kept for many yeeres; of which Caues some are so large, that they will hold two hundred bushels of Corne. The Citizens dwelling neere those Caues, and such as posfelle them, do fufficiently maintaine themselues in taking yeerely euery hundred bushell for rent. 10 The South part of East Fee is almost halfe destitute of Inhabitants; howbeit the gardens abound with Fruits and Flowres of all forts. Euery Garden hath an house belonging thereunto, and a Christall-fountaine enuironed with Rofes and other odoriferous Flowres and Herbes : fo that in the Spring-time a man may both fatisfie his eyes, and folace his mind in visiting this part of

Gardans.

the City : and well it may be called a Paradife, fithence the Noblemen doe here refide from the Aings Palaces, moneth of Aprill till the end of September. Westward, that is, toward the Kings Palace, standeth a Caille built by a King of the Luntune Familie, resembling in bignesse an whole towne : wherein the Kings of Fez, before the faid Palace was built, kept their Royall residence. But after new Fez began to be built by the Marin Kings, the faid Cattle was left onely to the Gouernor of the City, Within this Cafile flands a flately Temple built (as aforefaid) what time it was 20 inhabited by Princes and Nobles, many places being afterward defaced and turned into Gardens: howheit certaine houses were left vnto the Gouernour, partly to dwell in, aud partly for the deciding of controuerlies. Heere is likewife a certaine Prison for captiues supported with many pillars, and being to large, that it will hold (as divers are of opinion) three thousand men. Neither are there any feuerall roomes in this prifon : for at Fez one prifon ferueth for all. By this Castle runneth a certaine River very commodious for the Governour.

thifon.

Of the Magi-

In the City of Fez are certaine particular Judges and Magistrates : and there is a Gouernour firmes, the ad-that defineth civill controveries, and giveth tentence against Malefactors. Likewise there is a minifiration Indge of the Canon Law, who hath to doe with all matters concerning the Mahametan Reliof luftice, and of Inflice, and of the apparell gion. A third ludge there is allo, that dealeth about marriages and discrements, whole autorities to heare all witnesses, and to giue sentence accordingly. Next vnto them is the high Aduocate, vnto whom they appeale from the fentence of the faid Iudges, when as they doe either militake themselues, or doe ground their sentence vpon the authoritie of some inferiour Doctor. The Gouernour gaineth a great lumme of money by condemning of parties at feuerall times. Their manner of proceeding against a Malefactor is this : hauing given him ment of male- an hundred or two hundred stripes before the Gouernour, the Executioner putteth an Ironfaftors in Fez, chaine about his necke, and so leadeth him flarke-naked (his prinities onely excepted) through all parts of the City : after the Executioner followes a Serieant, declaring vnto all the people what fact the guilty person hath committed, till at length having put on his apparell againe, they carry him backe to prison. Sometimes it falleth out that many offenders chained together are led about the Citie : and the Gouernour for each Malefactor thus punished, receiveth one Ducat and one fourth part; and likewife at their first entrance into the Gaole, he demands of each one a certaine ducty, which is paid particularly vnto him by divers Merchants and Artificers appointed of purpole. And amongst his other livings, he gathered out of a certaine Mountaine feuen thousand Ducats of yeerely Renenue : so that when occasion serueth, he is at

his proper costes to finde the King of Fez three hundred horses, and to give them their

dy Knaues.

Those which follow the Canon law have neither stipend nor reward allowed them : for it is forbiddenby the Law of Mahumet, that the Iudges of his Religion should reape any com-No Officer by moditie or Fees by their Office; but that they should line onely by reading of Lectures, and by M. humets Law their Priefthood. In this faculty are many Aduocates and Proctors, which are extreme idiots, 50 and veterly voyd of all good learning. There is a place also in Fez whereinto the Judges vie to cait the Citizens for debt, or for some light offence. In all this City are foure Officers or Ser-But four Ser- ieants onely; who from midnight till two a clocke in the morning doe walke about all parts of ieants in Fex! the Citie; neither have they any flipend, but a certaine Fee of fuch Malefactors as they lead and those bau- about in chaines, according to the qualitie of every mans crime; moreover, they are freely permitted to fell Wine, and to keepe Harlots. The faid Gouernour hath neither Scribes nor No Notaries, Notaries, but pronouncethall fentences by word of mouth. One onely there is that gather th Customes and Tributes over all the City, who daily payeth to the Kings vse thirty Ducats. This Tribute, Scar- man appointeth certaine lublitutes to watch at every Gate, where nothing, be it of neuer fo 60 chers & exerte. finall value, can paffe before some Tribute be paid. Yea, sometime they goe foorth of the City to meet with the Carriers & Muliters upon the high wayes, to the end they may not conceale nor clotely convey any merchandize into the City. And if they be taken in any deceit, they pay double. The let order or proportion of their Custome is this, namely, to pay two Ducats for the

worth of an hundred: for Omx-stones, which are brought hither in great plentie, they pay one the Shambles hath alwaies twelve men wayting vpon him, and oftentimes heerideth about the Citie to examine the weight of bread, and finding any bread to faile of the cuewaight, he caufirst to Easter to be beaten with cudgels, and to beeled in contempt vp and downe the Citie.

The Citizens of Fez goe very civilly and decently attyred, in the Spring time wearing Garments made of out-landish cloth : ouer their Shirts they weare a lacket or Cassock beeing narrow and halfe-flexued, whereupon they weare a certayne wide Garment, close before on the breft. Their Caps are thinne and fingle, like vinto the Night-caps yeed in Italie, lauing that they 10 couer not their eares : the fe Caps are couered with a certaine Skarfe, which beeing twice wreathed about their head and beard, hangeth by a knot. They weare neither Hole nor Breeches, but

in the Spring time when they ride a lourney, they put on Boots:mary, the poorer fort have onein the opting time when that called, Barnefft, and a most course Cap. The Doctors or liberess. and ancient Gentlemen weare a certayne Garment with wide fleeues, somewhat like to the Gentlemen of Venice. The common fort of people are for the most part clad in a kind of course white cloth. The women are not altogether vnseemely apparelled, but in Summer time they weare nothing fane their Smockes onely. In Winter they weare such a wide fleeued Garment, being close at the brest, as that of the men before mentioned. When they goe abroad, they put on certaine long Breeches, wherewith their legges are all conered, having al-20 lo, after the fashion of Spria, a Veile hanging downe from their heads, which couefeth their while bolies. On their faces likewife they wearea Maske with two little holes, onely for their eyes to peepe out at. Their eares they adorne with golden Eare-rings, and with most precious Lewels : the meaner fort weare Eare-rings of Siluer and gilt only. Vpon their armes the Ladies and Gentlewomen were golden Bracelets, and the refidue Silver, as likewise Gold or Silver-

rings upon their legs, according to each ones estate and abilitie. ngs vpon enerrings, according to their victuals and manner of eating. The common fort fet Their manner on the pot with fresh meate twice enery weeke : but the Gentlemen and richer fort enery day, of cating and and as often as they lift. They take three meales a day : their Break-fast confistent of certaine drinking. Fruits and Bread, or else of a kind of liquid Pap made like vnto Frumentie: in Winter they

go fup off the Broth of falt flesh thickned with courfe meale. To dinner they have Flesh, Sallets, Cheefe, and Olives : but in Summer they have greater cheere. Their Supper is easie of digestion, confifting of Bread, Melons, Grapes, or Milke : but in Winter they have fodden flesh, together with a kind of meate cailed Cufcuju, which being made of a lumpe of Dow is fet first vpon A kind of meat the fire in certaine Veffels full of holes, and afterward is tempered with Butter and Pottage. called Cufusion. Some also vie often to have Roste-meat. And thus you see after what fort both the Gentlemen and common people lead their lives : albeit the Noblemen fare somewhat more daintily : but if you compare them with the Noblemen and Gentlemen of Europe, they may feeme to be milerable and base fellowes; not for any want or scarcitie of victuals, but for want of good manners and cleanlineste. The Table whereat they sit is low, vncouered, and filthy : feates they have 40 none but the bare ground, neyther Kniues or Spoones but only their ten Talons. The faid Cufcufu is fet before them all in one only Platter, whereout as well Gentlemen as others take it not with Spoones, but with their Clawes fine. The meate and pottage is put all in one Dish; out of which every one raketh with his greafie fifts what hee thinkes good: you shall never see

Knife vpon the Table, but they teare and greedily denoure their meate like hungry Dogges. Neyther dot, any of them defire to drinke before he hath well stuffed his panch; and then will he jup off a cup of cold water as bigge as a Milke-bowle. The Doctors indeed are somewhat more orderly at meales: but, to tell you the very truth, in all Italie there is no Gentleman fo meane, which for fine Dyet and flately Furniture excelleth not the greatest Potentates and 1 ords of all Africa.

As touching their Marriages, they observe these courses following. So some as the Maydes Themanner of Father hath elpoufed her vnto her Louer, they goe forth-with like Bride and Bridegroome to folemnizing Church, accompanyed with their Parents and Kinsfolkes, and call likewife two Notaries with Marriages. them, to make record before all that are present of the Couenants and Downie. The meaner fort of people viually giue for their Daughters Dowrie thirtie Duckats and a woman-flaue of fifteen Duckats price; as likewise a parti-coloured Garment embroydered with Silke and certaine other Silke Skarfes, or lags, to were vpon her head in stead of a Hood or Veile; then a paire Portion and of fine Shooes, and two excellent paire of Startups; and lastly, many prettie Knackes curious-housheldstuffe, ly made of Siluer and other Metals, as namely, Combes, Perfuming-pans, Bellowes, and fuch other Trinkets as Women haue in estimation. Which beeing done, all the Ghests present

66 are inuited to a Banquet, whereunto for great Dainties is brought a kind of Bread fixed and tempered with Honey, which we have before described; then they bring Rost-meat to the boord, all this being at the Bridegroomes coft : afterward the Brides Father maketh a Banquet in like firt. Who if he bestow on his Daughter some apparell besides her Dowrie, it is accountesta point of liberalitie. And albeit the Father promifeth but thirtie Duckats onely for a Downe, yet will helometimes bestow, inapparell and other Ornaments belonging to Wo-

men, two hundred, yea fometimes three hundred Duckats befides. But they fildome give an House, a Vineyard, or a field for a Dowrie. Moreouer vpon the Bride they bestow three Gownes made of coffly cloth; and three others of Silke Chamlet, or of some other excellent Stuffe, They rise her Smockes likewife curiously wrought, with fine Veiles, and other embroydered Vefures : as alio Pillowes and Cultions of the best fort. And besides all the former gifts, they hellow eight Carpets or Couerlets on the Bride, foure whereof are onely for feemelineffe to foread youn their Prefles and Cupboords : two of the courfer they vie for their Beds; and the other two of Leather to lay voon the floore of their Bed-chambers. Also they have certaine Rues of about twentie els compafe or length; as likewise three Quilts beeing made of Linnen and Woollen on the one fide, and stuffed with flocks on the other fide, which they vie in the night 10 in manner following. With the one halfethey couer themselves, and the other halfe they lav under them : which they may eafily doe, when as they are both waies about ten ells long. Vnto the former they adde as many Couerlets of Silke very curiously embroydered on the vpper-side. and beneath lined double with Linnen and Cotton. They bestow likewise white Coursets to vie in Summer-time onely; and laftly, they bellow a Woollen hanging divided into many parts, and finely wrought, as namely, with certaine pieces of gilt Leather; whereupon they fowe lags of partie-coloured Silke, and vpon every lagge a little Ball or Button of Silke, whereby the faid hanging may for Ornaments fake bee fastened vnto a wall.

Italians mifta-Petching home the

Here you see what be the Appurtenances of their Dowries; wherein some doe friue so much to excell others, that oftentimes many Gentlemen have brought themselves vnto Pouerty 20 thereby, Some Italians thinke that the Husband bestowes a Dowrie vpon his Wife; but they altogether miffake the matter.

The Bridegroome being readie to carry home his Bride, causeth her to be placed in a woodden Cage or Cabinet eight fquare couered with Silke, in which shee is carryed by Porters, her Parents and Kinstolkes following, with a great noyfe of Trumpets, Pipes, and Drummes. and with a number of Torches; the Bridegroomes Kinfmen goe before with Torches, and the Brides Kinsfolkes follow after: and fo they goe vnto the great Market place, and having passed by the Temple, the Bridegroome takes his leaue of his Father-in-law and the reft, hying him home with all speed, and in his Chamber expecting the presence of his Spouse. The Father, Brother, and Vicle of the Bride leade her vito the Chamber-doore, and there deliver her with 20 one confent vnto the Mother of the Bridegroome : who, as foone as the is entred, toucheth her foot with his, and forth-with they depart into a feuerall roome by themselves. In the meane feafon the Banquet is comming forth : and a certaine woman flandeth before the Bride-chamber doore, expecting till the Bridegroome having defloured his Bride, reacheth her a Napkin flavned with blond, which Napkin the carryeth incontinent and theweth to the Gheffs , prochyming with a lowd voyce, that the Bride was euer til that time an vnfpotted & pure Virgine. This woman together with other women her Companions, first the Parents of the Bridegroom, and then of the Bride, doe honourably entertayne. But if the Bride be found not to be a Virgine, the Marriage is made fruilrate, and shee with great disgrace is turned home to her Parents.

But to foone as the new marryed man goeth forth of the house (which is for the most part on the seuenth day after the Marriage) hee buyeth great plenty of fishes, which hee causeth his Mother or fome other woman to cast youn his Wives feet; and this they, from an ancient Superfitious cuftome take for a good boding. The morrow after a company of women goe to dreffe the Bride, to combe her Lockes. and

Cufforms of

to paint her Cheekes with Vermillion; her hands and her feet they dye blacke, but all this Minstrelfie and Painting presently loseth the fresh line; and this day they have another Banquet. The Bride they place in the highest Roome that she may be seene of all. The same night, which was spent in dancing, there are prefent at the Bridal-house certayne Minstrels and Singers, which by turnes fometimes vie their Instruments and sometimes Voyce-musick : they dance alwayes one by one. and at the end of each Galliard they bestow a Largesse vpon the Musicians. If any one will The Marriage honour the Dancer, he bids him kneele downe before him, and having fastened pieces of money of Widdowes. all ouer his face, the Musicians presently take it off for their fee. The women dance alone without any men, at the noyfe of their owne Musicians. All these things vie tobee performed when the Bride is a Mayde. But the Marriages of Widowes are concluded with leffe adoe. Their cheere is boyled Beefe and Mutton, and stewed Hens, with divers iuncating Dishes among. In fread of Trenchers, the Chefts being ten or twelve in number, have so many great round Platters of wood fet before them. And this is the common cuftom of Gentlemen and Merchants. The meaner fort present their Ghests with certaine sops or bruesle of Bread like vnto a Pancake, which being dipped in flesh-pottage, they eat out of a great Platter not with Spoones but with their fingers onely : and round about each great Platter stand to the number of ten ort welue persons. 60

Likewise they make a solemne Feast at the Circumcision of their male children, which is cision of their vpon the seventh day after their birth; and at this Feast the Circumcisor, together with all their Friends and Kinsfolkes is prefent : which being done, each one, according to his abilitie, befloweth a Gift voon the Circumcilor in manner following. Euery man layes his money vpon a Lads face which the Circumcifor brought with him. Whereupon the Lad calling enery one by his name, giueth them thankes in particular; and then the Infant beeing circumcifed, they frend that day with as great iollity as a day of Marriage. But at the birth of a Daughter they

CHAP.1. S.3.

Now not to much a lateral Fex there have remayned certaine Relikes of Feff nuall Dayes inflitted Of their Rices Among the people of FexAmong the people of rece there may be certaine ceremonies which themselves ynder of old by the Ch islians, whereupon they vie certaine ceremonies which themselves ynder of left will be compared to the compa of old by the Christmas even they eate a Sallet made of divers Hearbs: they feeth likewife and their manthat night all kind of Pulic, which they feede vpon for great dainties. Vpon New-yeeresday ner of mourthe children goe with Maskes and Vizards on their faces to the houses of Gentlemen and Mer- sing for the chants, and have Fruites given them for finging certaine Carols or Songs. When as the Feath dead. chants, and have Fruites guien them for mignig certainte Cartons of Songs. With a series Cart Reliques of Ic of Saint John Baptift is hallowed among Christians, you shall here fee all about great flore of Christians Cefires made with Straw. And when their childrens teeth begin to grow, they make another feast remonics obcalled, according to the Latines, Dentilla. They have also many other Rites and Customes of Di- scrued among uning, or Southfaying, the like whereof I have feene at Rome, and in other Cities of Italy. As the steeres: uning, or Southlaying, the like whereof I naue seene at nome, and in other Cities of Inal. As some of which touching their Feat's prescribed by the Mahametan Law; they are at large set down in that seeme also to

briefe Treatife which we have written concerning the same Law. The women nating by death loft their husbands, fathers, or any other of their deare friends, from the Heaaffemble forth-with a great multitude of their owne Sexe together, who ftripping themselues then. out of their owne attire, put on most vile sack-cloth, and defile their faces with much durt : then S. Niebelia. out or then owne attice, but a womens attire, bringing great foure-square Drums with them, at Abooke loft. 20 the noyle of which Drums the women-mourners ting a Funerall-long, tending as much as may Their funerals. be, to the commendation of the partie deceased; and at the end of enery Verse, the said women veter most hideous shrikes and out-cries, tearing their haire, and with much lamentation beating their cheekes and brefts, till they be all-imbrued with bloud; and fo thefe Heathenish superstitions continue for feuen whole dayes together. At which feuen daies end they furceafe their mourning for the space of forty daies, and then they begin anew to torment themselves for three daies together in manner aforefaid: howbeit, these kinds of Obsequies are observed only by the baser people, but the Gentlemen and better sort behave themselves more modestly. At this time all the widowes friends come about her to comfort her, and fend divers kinds of meats vnto her: for in the mourning-houle they may dreffe no meate at all, till the dead corps bee carried forth. 20 The woman her felfe that loofeth her husband, father, or brother, neuer goeth forth with the funerall. But how they wash and buriethe dead corps, and what super titions they vie there-

about, you shall find recorded in my little Treatife about mentioned. The Citizens vie most of all to play at Chesse, and that from ancient times. Other Games Their manner there are also, but very rude, and vied onely by the common people.

here are alto, but very rude, and vied onely by the common people.

In Fez. there are divers most excellent Poets, which make Verses in their owne Mother-Chesseylay. tongue: most of their Poems and Songs intreate of Loue. Euery yeare they pen certaine Ver- Or the African fes in the commendation of Mahumet, especially upon his Birth-day: for then betimes in the Poets. morning they refort vnto the Palace of the chiefe Judge or Gouernour, afcending his Tribunall Mahamete morning they refort vinto the Palace of the chiefe indeed of Gournous, according his Thomas Birth-day. feate and from thence reading their Verses to a great audience of people: and he whose Verses Rewards for 40 are most elegant and pithy, is that yeare proclaimed Prince of the Poets, But when as the Kings Poets in Fet. of the Marin Family prospered, they vied to inuite all the learned men of the Citie vnto Honer all eries their Palace; and honourably entertaining them, they commanded each man in their hearing to omne four in recite their Verles to the commendation of Mahumet : and hee that was in all mens opinions cenduntur ad esteemed the best Poet, was rewarded by the King with an hundred Duckats, with an excellent flusio giorid. Horse, with a Woman-slaue, and with the Kings owne Robes wherewith hee was then apparelled : all the rest had fifty Duckats apiece given them, so that none departed without the Kings liberalitie : but an hundred and thirtie yeares are expired fince this custome, together with the Maietie of the Fezzan Kingdome decayed.

Of Schooles in Fez for the instructing of Children, there are almost two hundred, every one Adescription of which is in fashion like a great Hall. The Schoole-masters teach their Children to write, and of the Gramreade not out of a Booke, but out of a certaine great Table. Euery day they expound one fentence in Fee of the Alcoran: and having read quite through, they begin it againe, repeating it fo often, till Two hundred they have most firmely committed the same to memorie: which they doe right well in the Schooles. space of feuen yeeres. Then reade they vnto their Scholers some part of Orthography : how- The Akoran heir both this and the other parts of Grammar are farre more exactly taught in the Colledges, heart, then in their triviall Schooles. The faid Schoole-mafters are allowed a very small stipend; but when their Boyes haue learned some part of the Alcoran, they present certaine gifts vnto their Maiter, according to each ones abilitie. Afterward fo toone as any Boy hath perfeetly learned the whole Alcoran, his Father muiteth all his sonnes Schoole-fellowes vn-

60 to a great Banquet: and his fonne in coffly apparell rides through the streete vpon a gallant Horse, which Horse and apparell the Gouernour of the Royall Citadell is bound to lend him. The rest of his Schoole-fellowes beeing mounted likewise on Horse-backe accompany him to the Banqueting-house, finging divers Songs to the praise of God, and of Mahumer. Then are they brought to a most sumptuous Banquet, whereat all the Kinsfelies of the forefaid Vuuu 2

haue remained

CH AP.I. \$.3.

Torches on birth-day.

foresaid Boyes Father are vitally present : every one of whom bestoweth on the Schoole-mather some small gift, and the Boyes Father gives him a new suite of apparell. The said Scholers likewife vie to celebrate a Feast vpon the birth-day of Mahamet, and then their Fathers are bound to fend each man a Torch vnto the Schoole : whereupon euery Boy carrieth a Torch in his hand, some of which weigh thirtie pound. These Torches are most curiously made, being adorned round about with divers fruits of Waxe, which being lighted betimes in the morning. doe burne till Sun-rife; in the meane while certaine Singers refound the prayfes of Mahumet: and fo foone as the Sunne is vp, all their folemnitie ceafeth: this day vieth to be very gainefull vnto the Schoole-masters, for they fell the remnant of the Waxe vpon the Torches for an hundred Duckats, and sometimes for more. None of them payes any rent for his Schoole: for all to their Schooles were built many yeeres agoe, and were freely bestowed for the training up of youth, Both in these common Schooles, and also in the Colledges they have two dayes of recreation every weeke, wherein they neither teach nor studie.

The For-Dininers

Now let vs speake of the Fortune-tellers and Dininers, of whom there is a great number, and three kinds. For one fort vieth certaine Geomanticall figures. Others powring a drop of Oyle into a viall or glaffe of water, make the faid water to be transparent and bright, wherein, as it were in a mirror, they affirme that they fee huge fwarmes of Deuils that refemble an whole Armie, some whereof are trauelling, some are passing ouer a River, and others fighting a Land-battell, whom when the Diuiner feeth in quiet, he demandeth fuch questions of them as he is defirous to be refolued of; and the Deuils gue them answere with beckning, or with some gesture 20 of their hands or eyes; so inconsiderate and damnable is their credulitie in this behalfe. The forefaid Glaffe-viall they will deliver into childrens hands fearce of eight yeeres old, of whom they will aske whether they fee this or that Deuill. Many of the Citie are fo befotted with thefe vanities, that they fpend great fums upon them. The third kind of Diuiners are Women-witches, which are affirmed to have familiaritie with Deuils : some Deuils they call red, some white, and fome blacke Deuils: and when they will tell any mans fortune, they perfume themselues with certaine Odours, Laying, That then they possesse themselves with that Devill which they called for :afterward changing their voyce, they faine the Deull to speake within them : then they which come to enquire, ought with great feare and trembling aske these vill and abominable Witches such questions as they meane to propound; and lastly, offering some see vnto the Deuill, they depart. But the wifer and honester fore of people call these women Sabacat, which in Latin fignifieth Fricatrices, because they have a damnal le custome to commit valawfull Venerie among themselues, which I cannot expresse in any modester termes. If faire women come vnto them at any time, these abominable Witches will purne in lust towards them, no otherwise then lustie Younkers doe towards young Maides, and will in the Deuils behalfe demand for a reward. that they may lie with them : and to by this meanes it often falleth out, that thinking thereby to fulfill the Deuils command they he with the Witches. Yea, fome there are, which being allured with the delight of this abominable vice, will defire the company of these Wiches, and faining themselves to be ficke, will either call one of the Witches home to them, or wil send their husbands for the same purpose : and so the Witches perceiving how the matter stands, will say, That the Womanis poilefied with a Deutl, and that she can no way be cured, vales she be admitted into their fociety. With thele words her filly husband being perswaded, doth not only permit her so to do, but makes also a sumptuous banquet vnto the damned crew of Witches : which being done, they vie to dance very strangely at the noyfe of Drums: and so the poore man commits his false wife to their filthy disposition. Howbeit, some there are that will soone conjure the Deuill with a good cudgell out of their wives: others faining themselves to be possessed with 2 Deuill, will deceme the faid Witches, as their wines have been decemed by them.

lasin Fez.

Fricatrices.

Cabaliffs.

In Fez likewise there are a kind of Juglers, or Conjurers called Muhazzimin, who of all others Ofthe Conius are reported to be most speedie casters out of Diuels. And because their Negromancie sometimes taketh effect, it is a wonder to see into what reputation they grow thereby: but when they cannot cast forth a Deuill, they say, It is an Airie Spirit. Their manner of adjuring Deuils. is this: First, they draw certaine Characters and Circles vpon an ash-heape, or some other place; then describe they certaine fignes vpon the hands and fore-head of the partie possessed, and perfume him after a strange kind of manner. Afterward they make their Inchantment or Conjuration, enquiring of the Deuill, which way, or by what meanes he entred the party, as likewife what he is, and by what name he is called; and laftly, charging him to come forth. Others there are that worke by a certaine Cabalifficall rule, called Zairagia: this rule is contained in many Writings, for it is thought tobe Naturall Magique: neither are there any other Negromancers in all Fez, that will more certainely and truly refolie a doubtfull question : howbeit, their Art is exceeding difficult, for the Students thereof must have as great skill in Astrologie, as in Cabala. 60 My felfe in times past having attained to some knowledge in this facultie, continued (I remember)an whole day in describing one figure onely : which kind of figures are described in manner following. First, they draw many circles within the compasse of a great circle: in the first cirsle they make a crosse, at the foure extremities whereof, they fet downe the foure quarters of the

World, to wit, East, West, North and South: at each end of one of the faid crosse lines they note either Pole : likewife about the circumference of the first circle, they paint the foure Elements: then divide they the fame circle and the circle following into foure parts, and every fourth part they divide into other feven, each one being diftinguished with certaine great Arabian Characters, to that every Element containeth eight and twenty Characters. In the third circle they fet downe the feuen Planets; in the fourth, the twelue Signes of the Zodiack; in the fitth, the twelve Latine names of the moneths: in the fixth, the eight and twentie Houses of the Moone: in the feuenth, the three hundred fixty fine dayes of the yeare; and about the connexitie thereof, the foure Cardinall or principall Windes. Then take they To one onely letter of the question propounded, multiplying the same by all the particulars aforenamed, and the product or imme totall they divide after a certaine manner, placing it in some roome, according to the quality of the character, and as the Element requireth

wherein the faid Character is found without a figure. All which being done, they marke that figure which feemeth to agree with the forelaid number, or fumme produced, wherewith they proceed as they did with the former, til they have found eight and twenty Characters, whereof they make one word, and of this word the speech is made that resolueth the question demanded: this speech is alwaies turned into a verse of the first kind, which the Arabians call Eshavil, conthis speech is alwaise turned into a vette of the first kind, which the Arabian Tongue, fissing of eight Stipites, and twelte Chards, according to the Meeter of the Arabian Tongue, Arabian of eight Stipites, and twelte Chards according to the Meeter of the Arabian Tongue, Arabian Grammer, And the Verse constituing Grammer wite thereof we have intreated in the last part of our Arabian Grammer, And the Verse constituing Grammer wite. whereor we have instanced in the party of those Characters, comprehendeth alwaies a true and infallible answer vnto the question pro-20 pounded, resoluting first that which is demanded, and then expounding the sense of the question Les.

it selfe. These Practitioners are neuer found to erre, which causeth their Art of Cabala to bee had in great admiration : which although it bee accounted Naturall, yet neuer faw I any thing that hath more affinitie with supernaturall and Diuine knowledge. I remember that I saw in a certaine open place of King Abulunan his Colledge in Fez, vpon a floore paued with excellent fmoothe Marble, the description of a figure. Each side of this floore or court was fifty ells long, and vet two third parts thereof were occupied about the figure, and about the things pertaining thereto: three there were that made the description, euery one attending his appointed place. and they were an whole day in fetting it downe. Another fuch figure I faw at Tunis, drawne by one that was maruelous cunning in the Art, whose father had written two volumes of Commentaries or expositions vpon the precepts of the same Art, wherin who soeuer hath exact skill. 30 is most highly esteemed of by all men. I my selfe neuer saw but three of this Profession, namely,

one at Tunic, and two other at Fez: likewife I have feene two Expolitions vpon the precepts Bookes of that of the faid Arte, together with a Commentarie of one Margian, father vnto the forefaid Cabalift Art. which I faw at Tunis: and another written by Ibnu Caldim the Historigrapher, And if any were defirous to fee the Precepts and Commentaries of that Art, he might doe it with the expence of fiftie Duckats : for layling to Tanis, a Towne neere vnto Italy, hee might have a fight of all the particulars aforefaid. I my felfe had fit oportunitie of time, and a Teacher that offered Digination of all the particulars aforeignd. I my telle had ne oportunitie or time, and a Teacher that our red and Southfay to inftruct me gratis in the same Art: howbeit, I thought good not to accept his offer, because ing forbidden the faid Art is forbidden and accounted hereticall by the Law of Mahumet: for Mahumets Law by the Law of affirmeth all kind of Divinations to be vaine, and that God onely knoweth fecrets, and things to Mahomet. 40 come: wherefore iometimes the faid Cabalifts are imprisoned by the Mahametan Inquisitors.

who cease not to persecute the Professors of that Art. Here also you may find certaine learned men, which will have themselves called Wizards, and Ofcertaine Morall Philosophers. They obserue certaine Rules which Mahumes neuer prescribed. By some Rules and its they are accounted Catholique, or true Mahumetans, and by others they are holden for heretiks: howbeit, the greatest part of the common people reverence them as if they were Gods, not of the common people reverence them as if they were Gods, not of the common people reverence them as if they were Gods, not withstanding they commit many things volumefull and forbidden by the Mahumetan Law; as Law. namely, whereas the faid Law forbiddeth any loue-matters to be expressed in any musicall Dit - Divers Mahuties, or Songs, these Moralists affrme the contrary. In the forelaid Mahumetan Religion are a metan setts. great number of Rules or Sects, every of which hath most learned Patrons and Protectors. The

50 foresaid Sect sprang vp fourescore yeares after Mahumet, the first Author thereof being called Elbesen Ibnu Abilhasen, and being borne in the Towne of Basora: this man taught his Disciples and followers certaine Precepts, but Writings hee left none behind him. About an hundred yeares after there came another notable Doctor of that Sect from Bagaded, called Elharit Ibnu Efed, who left volumes of Writings vnto his Disciples. Afterward those that were found to be his followers, were all condemned by the Mahumetan Patriarkes and Lawyers. Howbeit. fourescore yeares after, that Seet began to reuiue againe vnder a certaine famous Professor, who drew after him many Disciples, vinto whom he published his Doctrine. This man at length, and 60 all his followers, were by the Patriarke and Lawyers condemned to die. Which he understanding, wrote forthwith vnto the Patriarke, requesting that he might be licenced to dispute with the Lawyers, as touching his Doctrine, of whom if he were conunced, he would most willingly fuffer death ; otherwise that it would be against al equity, that so many innocents should perish vpon an vniust acculation. The Patriarke thinking his demand to be reasonable, condekended Wholly Y uuu 3

wholly thereunto. But when the matter came to disputation, the partie condemned, soone put all the Lawyers to filence. Which when the Patriarke perceived, he reuoked the fentence as vniuft, and caufed many Colledges and Monasteries to be erected for the faid partie and his followers. After which time this Sect continued about an hundred yeeres, till the Emperour Malufach of the Turkift race came thither out of Afia the greater, and destroyed all the maintainers thereof. Whereupon some of them fled vnto Cairo, and the rest into Arabia, being differred here and there for the space of twenty yeares, till the reigne of Cafelfab, Nephew vnto Malicfach, Nidam Elmule, one of his Counfellers, and a man of an high fornt, being addicted vnto the faid Sect, to restored, erected, and confirmed the same, that by the helpe of one Elgazzuli, a most lear-Sect, to retored, erected, and committee the fame argument a notable Worke, divided into feuen parts) he ned man (who had written of the fame argument a notable Worke, divided into feuen parts) he reconciled the Lawyers with the Disciples of this Sect, conditionally, that the Lawyers should be called Conferuers of the Prophet Mahumer his Lawes, and the Sectaries Reformers of the Bagdes lacked fame. This concord lasted betweene them, till Bagaded was sacked by the Tartars; which beby the Tartan. fell in the yeare of the Hegeina 756 at what time those Sectaries fo increased, that they swarmed almost ouer all Africa and Affa. Neither would they admit any into their focietie, but fuch as were very learned, and trained vp in all kind of liberall Sciences; to the end they might the better defend their owne opinions, and confute their aduerlaries : but now adayes they admit allkind of rude and ignorant persons, affirming all sorts of learning to be needlesse; for the holy spirit (say they) rewealeth the knowledge of the truth vnto such as are of a cleane heart; and they alleage many reasons for the confirmation of this their opinion, though not very forcible. Wherefore despising their ancestors Rites, and the strict observations of the Law, they addiet themselues to nought else but delights and pleasures, feasting often, and finging lascinious Songs, Sometimes they will rend their garments, either alluding thereby to the Veries that they fing, or being mooued thereunto by their corrupt and vile disposition, saying falsely. That they are then rausshed with a fit of dinine loue : but rather impute it to their abundance of meat, and gluttony. For each one of them will denoure as much meate, as may well suffice three. Or (which is more likely) they otter those passionate clamours and out-cries, because they are instamed with valawfull and filthy luft. For fometimes it happeneth that fome one of the principal of them, with all his Scholers and Disciples, is inuited to the marriage of some Gentleman, and at the beginning of the banket they will rehearfe their denout Orizons and Songs, but fo foone as they are rifen from the Table, the elder of the companie being about to dance, teare their garments: and if any one in the middeft of their dancing, that hath drunke immoderately, chanceth to fall downe, he is taken up forthwith by one of the Scholers, and too too laterniously kissed.

Of divers other Rules

Whereupon this Prouerbe grew among the people of Fez, The Hermits banques. Which they vie in reproch of those Matters, that make their Scholers their Minions. Amongst these Sects there are some, that have not onely a divers Law, but also a different beliefe from the refidue; whereupon by fome others they are called Heretikes. Some there are also which hold, that a man by good Works, by Fasting, and Abstinence, may attaine vnto or the insertedulity the nature of an Angell, which good Works, Fastings, &c. doe (say they) so purge and free the mind from all contagion of cuill, that by no meanes it can finne any more, though it would never fo faine. Howbeit, they thinke themselves not capable of this felicitie, before they ascended thereunto by the degrees of fiftie Disciplines or Sciences: and although they fall into sinne before they be come to the fiftieth degree, yet they fay that God wil not impute that finne vnto them. These fellowes indeed in the beginning led a most strict life, and do even macerate and consume themselues with fasting : but afterward they give themselues to all licentiousnesse and pleasure. They have also a most seuere forme of living set downe in foure Bookes, by a certaine learned man of their faction, called Essebrauar de Sebrauard, and borne in the Citie of Corasan. Likewise there was another Authour called Ibnul Farid, that described all their Religion in witty Verses, which being fraught with Allegories, feemed to intreate of nought but Loue: wherefore one Elferani expounded the faid Verles with a Commentarie, and thereout garhered the Canons and Orders of the Sect, and shewed the degrees to the attainement of felicitie. Moreouer, the faid Verses are so sweet and elegant, that the maintainers of this Sect will sing and repeate none other in their Banquets : for these three hundred yeeres no Author hath so adorned their language as the faid Ibnul. These Sectaries take the Heauens, the Elements, the Planets, and the fixed Starres to be one God, and that no Law nor Religion is erronious: for enery man(fay they) may lawfully worship that which his mind is most addicted to worship. They thinke that all the knowledge of God was infused into one man, whom they call in the language Elcorb; this man, they fay, was elect by God, and was made equall in knowledge to him. Forty there are among them called all by the name of Elamed, which fignifieth in our language, a block, or flock of a tree: out of this number, when their Elcoth deceafeth, they create another in his roome, 60 namely, seuenty persons that have the authority of election committed vnto them. There are likewise seuen hundred fixty fiue others (whose names I doe not well remember) who are chosen into the faid electors roomes, when any of them decease. These seuen hundred fixtie fine being bound thereunto by a certaine Canon or Rule of their Order, are constrained alwaies to goe

vnknowne, and they range almost all the world ouer in a most vile and beggerly habite, so that a man would take them for mad men, and estranged from all sense of humanitie: for these lewde militreants under pretence of their religion, run like rogues naked and fauage throughout all Africa, having so little regard of honestie or shame, that they will like brute beasts rawish women in publike places; and yet for footh the grosse common people reuerence them as men of wonderfull hallinede. Great fivarmes of these filthie Vagabonds you may see in Tunis, but many more in Egyp, and especially at Alcair, where as in the Market called Bain Elcafrain, I saw one of these Horrible vil-Egypt, and especially at Zilian, where as in the prefence of much people, defloure a most beautifull wo-horrible bladman as the was comming forth of the Bath: which being done, the fond people came flocking neffe,

CHAP.I.S.3. Horrible villanie. Cabalifts and other Sects.

10 about the faid woman, friuing to touch her garment as a most holy thing, faying, That the Adulterer was a man of great fanchitie, and that he did not commit the fin, but onely feemed to commit it : which when the filly cuckold her husband vnderflood, he shewed himselie thankefull to his falfe God with a folemne Banquet, and with liberall giunng of Almes. The Magistrates of the Citie would have punished the Adulterer, but they were in hazard to be flaine of the people for their labours, who (as is before faid) adore these Varlets for Saints, and men of singular holinelle. Other more vilanous acts I iaw committed by them, which I am ashamed to report. Likewischere is another fort of men, which wee may fiely call Cabalifts. These fist most

flricity, neither doe they eate the flesh of any living creature, but have certaine meates and gar-inne other ments allotted vnto them: they rehearfe like wife certaine fet-prayers appointed for every houre Socis. 20 of the day and for the night, according to the varietie of dayes and moneths, and they vie to car- Pythagreeur, rie about certaine square Tables with characters and numbers engraven therein. They faine or Esman. themselues to have daily conference with the Angels of whom they learne (they say) the know-ledge of all things. They had once a famous Doctor of their Sect, called Boni, who was Author Boni. of their Canons, Prayers, and Square Tables. Which when I saw, mee thought their Profession had more affinitie with Magique then with Cabala. Their Art was divided into eight parts, whereof the first was called Elumba Enormita, that is, the demonstration of light, the which contained Prayers and Fastings. The second called Semful Meharif, that is, the Sunne of Sciences, contained the forefaid fquare Tables, together with their vie and profit. The third part they call Sirry Lasmei E.chusne; this part contained a catalogue of those ninetie nine Vertues, which 30 (they fay) are contained in the names of God, which I remember I faw at Rome in the custodie of a certaine Venetian Iew. They have also a certaine other Rule, called Snvach, that is, the Rule of Hermites: the Professors and followers whereof inhabit Woods, and solitarie places; neither have they any other food, but fuch as those wild Defarts will affoord: the convertation of these

tie. But if I should take vpon me to describe the varietie of Mahumetan Sects, I should digresse too farre from my present purpose. He that desireth to know more of this matter, let him reade ouer the booke of Elefacit, who discourseth at large of the Sects belonging to the Makumetan Scuenty two

ouer the booke of Elefacini, who discourists at large of the Seels belonging to the Makametan Scuenty (woo Religion, the principal) whereof are seuentie two, entry one of which defend their opinions to mind it religion between and good, and such as a man may artaine shustion by. At this day you shall find but two of Makametan of Makametan and Makamet 40 principall Sects onely, the one of Listari being dispersed over all Africa, Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and Turkie: the other of Imamia, which is authorized throughout the whole Kingdome of Persia, and in certaine Townes of Corafan; and this Sect the great Sophi of Perfia maintaineth, infomuch that all Afia had like to been destroyed thereabout. For whereas before they followed the lect of Lelbari, the great Sophi by force of Armes established his owne of Imamia; and yet one onely Scot firetcheth ouer all the Mahanetans Dominions.

Heremites no man is able exactly to describe, because they are estranged from all humane socie-

Moreover, in the Citie of Fez there are certaine men called Eleanefin, who supposin gto finde Offuchas treasure voder the foundations of old houses, doe perpetually search and delue. These grosse fel- search for treature vnder the foundations of old houses, doe perpetually learch and defile. These ground treatures lowes when to refort vnto certained dennes and caues without the Citie-walles, certainely perin Feet fixading themselves, that when the Romans were chased out of Africa, and driven into Batica or

50 Granads in Spaine, they hid great abundance of treasure in the bowels of the earth, which they could not carry with them, and so enchanted the same by Art-Magique, that it can by no meanes be attained vnto but by the same Art ; wherefore they seeke vnto Inchanters to teach them the Art of digging up the faid treasures. Some of them there are that will stedfastly affirme, that they faw Gold in this or that Caue: others, that they faw Silver, but could not digge it out, by reason that they were destitute of Perfumes and Enchantments fit for the purpose; so that being seduced with this vaine opinion, and deeply deluing into the earth, they turne vpside-downe the foundations of Houses and Sepulchers, and sometimes they proceede in this manner tenne or twelve dayes journey from Fez: yea, to fond they are, and to befotted, that they effeeme those Bookes that professe the Art of digging of Gold, as divine Oracles. Before my departure from 60 Fez, thefe fantafticall people had chofen them a Confull and getting licence of certaine owners to digge their grounds, when they had digged as much as they thought good, they paid the faid owners for all dammages committed.

In this Citie likewise there are great store of Alchymists, which are mightily addicted to that Of the Alchyvaine practice: they are most base fellowes, and contaminate themselves with the steame of miss of re-Sulphur,

Sulphur, & other Rinking fmels. In the evening they wie to assemble themselves at the great Temple, where they dispute of their false opinions. They have of their Arte of Alchymie many Bookes written by learned men, amongst which one Geber is of principall account, who lived an Giber an Al. hundred yeeres after Mahamet, and being a Greeke borne, is faid to have renounced his owne Religion. This Geber his workes and all his precepts are full of Allegories or darke borrowed specches. Likewile they have another Author, that wrote an huge Volume of the same Arte, intituled by the name of Attogrebi: this man was fecretary vnto the Soldan of Bagaded, of whom ABooke write we have written in the lives of the Arabian Philosophers. Also the Songs or Articles of the said ten by toba Leo Science were written by one Mugarribi of Granada, whereupon a most learned Mamuluch of Damasco wrote a Commentary : yet so, that a man may much more easily vinderstand the Text 10 then the expolition thereof. Of Alchymits here are two forts; whereof the one feeke for the Eliffer, that is, the matter which coloureth braffe and other Metals; and the other are connerfant about multiplication of the quantities of Metals, whereby they may conueniently temper the same. But their chiefest drift is to coine counterfeit money ; for which cause you shall see most of them in Fez. with their hands cut off.

Philofophers.

In this City likewise there is a great swarme of base people, such as there Italians commonly Inchanters of call Cisermatori: thele fing toolish Songs & Rimes in all the streets of the City. & broching meere trifles with the Muficke of Drums, Harpes, and Citterns, they fell vnto the rude people certaine scrowles or briefe Charmes in stead of presentatives. Vnto these you may adde another kinde of reffule people of one Family and disposition with the former, who carry dauncing 20 Apes up and downe, and have their Neckes and Armes all entwined with crawling Snakes. These also professe Geomancy, and perswade women that they can foretell them their fortune. Likewise they carry stone horses about with them, which for a certaine Fee, they will let others have to cover their Mares. Their Gentlemen are very flately and high minded, and will have little or no familiarity at all with the Citizens : fo likewife the Doctors and Iudges of principall account will admit but few vnto their acquaintance. This City it selfe is most beautiful and right commodiously situate; where albeit in winter time the streets are so mirie, that you cannot walke in them without startups, yet they let passe such abundance of water out of their Conduits, that all the filth is washed cleane away. Where Conduits are wanting, they carry all the durt in Carts vnto the next part of the River.

forefaid City

Without the wals of this City Weitward flandeth a Suburbe containing almost five hunof the Suburbs dreth Families, the houses whereof are but meane, and the Inhabitants base, as namely divers of Camels, Water-bearers, and Cleauers of Wood for the Kings Palace. Yet heere you may finde diners shops, and all kinds of Artificers. Heere likewise dwell all the Charmers and Roguish Minstrels before named; as also great swarmes of sluttish and nithie harlots. In the principall freet of this Suburbe, you shall find certaine Caues most Artificially hewen out of excellent Marble, wherein the Noble men of Fez were wont to lay up their Corne : for the least of them will containe more then a thousand Measures of Corne, there being aboue an hundreth and fifty of them in all, but now they lie waste and open, insomuch that divers fall into them at vnawares, for which cause their brims are inurroned with wals. Heere enery one may play the Vintner and the Bawd; so that this Suburbe may justly be called the sinke of Fez. From the twentieth houre you shall see none at all in their shops: for then every man runs to the Tauerne to disport, to spend riotously, and to be drunken. Another Suburbe there is allotted vnto the Lepers, of whom there are two hundreth Families: thefe leprous perfons have a Governour, which gathereth certaine yeerely Reuenues from the Noble men, and taketh fuch care of the faid Lepers, that they want no necessary thing. He is bound by his Office to discharge the City of all leprous persons, and to compell all such as hee understands to be infected with that dilease, to depart into the foresaid Suburbs. If any Leper chanceth to die without issue, part of his goods are imployed to the common benefite of the Lepers, and part fall to the Gouernours share : but if he hath children, they inioy his goods. Many fields there are without the City, which have been given by certaine Noblemen for

The habitation o Lepers in Fezand their Gouernour.

A Descrip on mon place of ftone. When any Noble man or any principall Citizen deceaseth, they lay one stone ouer his buriall without head, and another ouer his feet, whereon wfed to be engrauen some Epitaph, with the day

The Sepul-Kings of Fex. New Fex.

Booke, I gaue vnto the Kings Brother. The manner of their Epitaphs is divers, fome tending to confolation, and others to forrow. Northward of the City vpon a certaine high Hill stands a Palace, wherein are the Monuments of divers Marin Kings, being most Artificially hewen out of Marble with Epitaphs vp- 60 on them, so that I cannot condignely expresse the Maiestie and Beauty thereof,

the buriall of the dead. Vpon their Sepulchers for the most part they lay a long three-square

and yeere when the party deceased. I my selfe bestowed much labour in gathering of Epitaphs,

which I faw both about Fez and in other places of Barbary; all which being fet downe in a

King Iacob the Founder divided New Fez into three parts, whereof the first contained his Royall Palace, and divers Noblemens houses, vato every one of which he allotted a most pleafant Garden. Not farre from his Palace he built a most stately and sumptuous Temple. In another part of this Citie hee built a large and faire Stable for the Kings Horses to stand in. Then alio he caufed other Palaces to be creeted for his Captaines and principall Courtiers. From the West gate to the East he appointed the Market place, the distance betweene which Gates is a mile and an halfe, and on both fides he placed Artificers and Merchants shops.

In Fez, neither Ring nor any other lewell or Commoditie can bee made of Silver or Gold, Gold-miths. before the Metall be fealed, for the Offenders are most fenerely punished. And the Mettall being sealed, whatsoeuer is made thereof is weighed as if it were money. The greatest part of Gold-smiths dwelling in new Fex are lewes, who carry their Vessels of Gold and Silver vntoa certaine place of old Fez, negre vnto the Grocers shops, and there fell them. For in olde Fez 10 neither Gold nor Silver is coyned, nor any Mahametans are suffered to bee Gold-smiths, because they have Vfurers among them, which will fell any piece of wrought Siluer or Gold dearer then the waight requireth; albeit the same priviledge is by the Governours of the Citiegranted wnto the lewes. Some there are also that onely make Plate for the Citizens, who are payed hire lewes. onely for their worke. That part of the Citie which the Kings Attendantsor Guard once polfessed, is now inhabited by lewes : for now a dayes the Kings vie no such Guard.

The lewes indeed first dwelt in old Fee, but upon the death of a certaine King they were all robbed by the Moores: whereupon King Abujabid caused them to remoone into new Fez, and Their conby that meanes doubled their yearely Tribute. They therefore even till this day doe occupie a tempt. long ffreet in the faid new Citie, wherein they have their Shoppes and Synagogues, and their an number is maruellously increased ever fince they were driven out of Spaine. These Iewes are had in great contempt by all men, neyther are any of them permitted to weare shooes, but they make them certaine Sookes of Sea-rushes. On their heads they weare a blacke * Dulipan, and if any will goe in a Cap, he must fasten a Red cloth thereunto. They pay vnto the King of Fee monethly foure hundred Duckats. At length, within the space of an hundred and forty yeares this new Citie was enuironed

with most impregnable wals, and adorned with Temples, Colledges, Palaces, and other such

building as ferue to beautifie a Citie, fo that I thinke there was more bestowed in garnishing of Engins for the the Citie, then in building of the wals. Without the Citie-wals are built many huge Wheeles convayance of or Engins, for the conuaying of River-water over the faid wals into Cifternes, from whence it water. or buguns, to the company of the Temples, Gardens, and Palaces. The faid Wheeles were built not fully an hundred yeares past, before which time water was brought ynto the Citie by a certayne Conduit, from a Fountayne ten miles diftant. Of which artificiall Conduit a certaine Genouese, being then in great fauour with the King, is reported to have beene the Author : but the Wheeles (they fay) were invented by a Spaniard : and in them there is maruellous cunning Workmanship: for to the conuayance of so huge a quantitie of water, each Wheele is turned about but four and twentie times onely in a day and a night. To conclude, here are but few Gentlemen in this Citie, except fuch as attend vpon the Court, for the refidue are bale and Mechanicall people: but such as carry any shew of honestie, doe so hate and disdayne the Kings Courtiers and Gentlemen, that they will by no meanes vouchfafe to marrie

40 their Daughters vnto them. Among tall the Princes of Africa, I neuer read of any that was created by the common fuf- The fathions frages and confent of the people vnto his Kingdome or Princedome, or that was called from a and customes ny itrange Prouince or Citie to beare rule. Also by the Law of Mahamet no man may beare viedin the ny itrange Prounce or Citie to beare rule. Allo by the Law of Pransmet its final may beate Kings Gourt. any Secular Authoritie, which may be called lawfull, faue onely the Mahametan Patriarkes No Elective and Prelates: howbeit the faid Patriarkes Authoritie decreasing daily more and more, the Ring-Princes in 4leaders of fuch people as ranged vp and downe the Defarts, began to inuade places inhabited frica; chosen by and civilized, and by force of Armes, against Mabamets Law, and maugre his Prelates, to or- the peopledayne fundry Princes : As for example in the East, whereas the Turkes, Cordians, and Tartars, No Rules Mahave vsurped dominion over such as were not able to repell them. So likewise in West parts Prelies. so frit the Families of Zeneta and Luntuna, then the feditious Mahumetan Preachers, and afterward the Family of Marin got the vpper hand. Howbeit, the Family of Luntuna is reported to have ayded the Westerne Regions, and to have released them from the furie of the seditious

unto Gouernment by Hereditarie Succession or by Election of the people, or of the Nobilitie. But the Prince himselfe when he feeles death seazing upon him, calleth about him all his Peeres and Nobles, and bindeth them by Oath, to establish his Sonne, Brother, or any other whom he most fauoureth, in his Kingdome. But they after the Princes decease neglecting their This was be-Outh, will choole any other whom they lift, And this is ordinarily the Election of the King of fore the Xoffe 6 Fez who, fo foone as he is proclaymed King, chooleth forth-with fome one of his Nobles to be Family prehis Chiefe Counsellour, and on him he bestoweth the third part of all his Kingly Revenues. Then usyled, chooleth another to be his Secretarie, Treasuror, and High Stemard of his Houlhold. Then is Themanner of created the Cuptaine of the Horfemen appointed for the Kings Guard, and these Horfemen with their Horses line most commonly in the fields

their Hories live most commonly in the fields.

Heretikes, wherein they shewed themselves Friends and not Enemies : but afterward their ty-

ranny began to shew it selfe. And this is the reason why they doe not now a dayes attayne

Laftly.

802

Larry, he appointeth a new Governour over every Cute, vinto whom all the Tributes and Renames of the lame place redound, with condition that as often as any warres betyde, hee thall maintavine a certayne company of Horles to the Kings femice. After a while also hee placeth cenav. Deputes and Commissioners over his people inhabiting the Mountaynes, and over the Arabians tablect vinto him. The Governours of Cities chiefly administer Iulice, according to the canonic of the place. Some there are also appointed by the King to collect all the Tributes and Kenerages of his Kingdome, and daily to pay the same vinto him. Likewise there are others cirofen, whom they call in their Language, Keepers or Guardians, and vnto every one of thefe the circlen, whom they can in their Language, except to the King greeth force Cartle or Village, whereby hee may procure his owne may ntenance, and bee able to flrue the King in time of warre.

Moreover, the King of Fee mayntayneth a Troupe of Light Horfemen, who folong as they ferge the King in his Campe, have their Dyet allowed them out of the Kings Prousion ; but in time of peace, he findeth them Corne, Butter, and pouldered fielh for the whole yeare, but money they have very feldome. Once a yeare they are apparelled at the Kings coft; neither doe they proudle for their Hories either within the Citie or without, for the King furnisherh them with all necessaries. Those that give attendance to their Horses are Christian Captines, which go frackled in oreat Chaines and Fetters. But when the Armie remodueth any whither, the faid Christians are carryed upon Camels backes. Another Officer there is that giveth attendance onely to the Camels, Aligning certaine Pattures vnto the Heardfmen, and dividing fields among them, and making fuch promision for the Kings Camels, as himfelfe shall thinke expedient. Each Camel-driver hath two Camels, which are laden with the Kings Furniture, according to the appointment of the Governour. Likewise the King hath a certaine Purueyor or Stemard, whose office is to prouide, keepe, and diffribute Corne both to the Kings Houshold and to his Army. This man in time of warre hath ten or twelue Tents to lay vp Corne in , and every day with change of Camels he lendeth for new Corne, least the Army should be unprouided of victuals : he hath alio Cookes at his command.

Moreouer, there is a Gouernour, or Maiter Groome of the Stables , who provideth for the Kings Horfes, Mules, and Camels, and is furnified with all necessaries by the Steward. There is another also appointed, Ouer-feer of the Corne, whole dutie it is to prouide Barley and other Prouender for the beafts : and this man hath his Scribes and Notaries about him, who diligently 30 fet downe all particular expenses, for they must give up a perfect account unto the chiefe Steward. They have also a certaine Captaine over fiftie Horsemen, which Horsemen may well bee called Par (ninants, for they are fent by the Secretarie in the Kings name to doe his businesse. Likewife the Fezzan King hath another Captaine of great name, being as it were, Governour of bis Guard, who in the Kings name, may compell the ludges to doe luftice, and to put their fentences in execution. This mans authoritie is fo great, that fometimes he may commit principall Noblemen to Ward, and may feuerely punish them, according to the Kings commandement.

Micreouer, the faid King hath a most trusty Chancelor, who keepeth the great Seale, and writeth and froneth the Kings Letters. He hath alib a great number of Footmen, the Gouernour of whom accepteth and diffmiffeth whom hee thinkes good, and giveth to every one wages accor- 40 ding to his agilitie and defert. And whentoeuer the King commeth in place of Judgement, the fail Gouernour alwayes attendeth voon him, and is in a manner his High Chamberlaine, Alfo there is another that taketh charge of the Carriages and Baggage of the Armie, and causeth the Tents of the Light Horlemen to be carryed up and downe on Mules, and the Tents of the other Souldiers on Camels. There are likewise a Company of Ensigne-bearers, who in marching on a Journey carry their Colours wrapped up; but he that goeth before the Armie hath his Banner displayed, and of a great height. And every one of the faid Standard-bearers know. eth most exactly alwayes, fords of Rivers, and paffages thorow Woods, wherefore they are for the most part appointed to guide the Army.

The Drummers (of whom there are great store in the Kings Hoft) play upon certagne Drums 50 of Braffe as bigge as a great Kettle, the lower part whereof is narrow, and the upper broad, being courred with a skinne. These Drummers ride on Horseback, having alwayes on the one side of their Horses a great waight hanging downe, to counterpoize the heavinesse of their Drums on the other fide. They are allowed most switt Horses , because the Moores account it a great disgrace to loofe a Drumme. The faid Drummes make fuch a loude and horrible novfe, that they are not onely heard a farre off, but also strike exceeding terrour both upon men and Hories, and they are beaten onely with a Buif-pizzle. The Musicians are not maintayned at the Kings charge, for the Cities are bound at their coils to fend a certaine number of them to the warres, who, according to their demeanour in the warres, are admitted or not admitted vnto the Kings Table. This King bath allo a certaine Master of Ceremonies , . tho sitteth at his feet in the Senate Houle, and commandeth each man to fit downe, and to speake according to his dignitie. 60

All the Mayde feruants in the Kings Family are Negro-flaues, which are partly Chamberlaines, and partly Wayting Maydes. And yet his Queene is alwayes of a white skinne. Likewise in the King of Fee his Court are certaine Christian Captines, being partly Spanish, and partly Portugall women, who are most circumspectly kept by certaine Eunuches, that are Ne-

CHAP.I.S.3. The Reuenues, Progresse, and Warfare of the King of Fez.

The King of Fex hash very large Dominions, but his Reuenues are finall, to wit, scarce three The King of hundreth thouland Duckats, the hit part whereof redoundeth not to the King : for the remain. Fee his Reusder is divided into fundry portions, as wee have before fignified. Yea, the greater part of the nucs that final faid Reuenues is payelin Corne, Cattle, Oyle and Butter, all which yeeld but small store of money. In some place they pay a Duckat and one fourth part, Tribute for every Acre, but in other places a whole Family payeth but to much. In some other Regions each man aboue fif-10 teems yeares of age payeth as much Tribute alfo. Neither are the people of this great Citie more vexed with any thing then with paying of their Tributes and Impositions. Heere also is to be noted, that the Malamustan Governours (the Priests onely excepted) may not exact grea- Tribute how ter Revenuer then those that Mabiener hath allotted vinto them, namely, of every of their fubiects which pofferfeth an hundred Duckats in ready money, they are to have two Duckats and

an halte for yeerely Tribute. halte for yeerely Fribute.

Euery husbandman likewife is bound to pay for Tribute the tenth part of all his Corne. And Mahametan all the faid Tributes he appointed to be paid vnto the Patriarke, who should bestow that which Princes bewas superfluous for the Prince to haue, vpon common vies; namely, for the releeuing of poore cantethey impotent people and widowes, and for maintaining of warres against the enemie. But fince the were Pricits, Patriarkes began to decay, the Princes (as we have before-faid) exercifed tyrauny. For it was and by his law 20 not sufficient for them to exact all the forenamed Tributes, and riotously to consume the noncother. fame, but allo to vige people vinto greater contributions; fo that all the Inhabitants of Africa are so oppressed with daily exactions, that they have scarcely wherewithall to feed and appaare so oppressed with daily exactions, rell themselves : for which cause there is almost no man of learning or honesty, that will seeke any ac- Note: quaintance with Courtiers, or will insuite them to his Table or accept any gifts (bee they never fo preti-

out) at their hands : thinking that what former goods they have me gotten by thefe and bribery. The King of Fez continually maintaineth fixe thousand Horsemen, fine hundreth Crosse- The King of The King of Fee Gambany Harquebuhers, being at all allipse prepared for the warres, who in time of Feehis Guirdbeece, when the King goeth on Progretie, lie within a mile of his person; for being at home in peace, when the King goeth on Progrette, its within a mut or ais person; for some its more in Free, he needed not so frong a Guard. When he wageth water against the Arabasas that between Free, he needed not for throng a Guard. When he wageth water against the Arabasas is equivalent of the Arabasas is equivalent to the contract of the contract of the Arabasas is equivalent to the contract 30 his Subicots, who at their owne cofts find him a great army of men better trained to the wars,

then his owne Souldiers before-mentioned. The pompe and Ceremonies of this King are but meane, neither doth he willingly viethem, but onely vpon Festivall dayes, and when meere necessitit requireth. When the King is to ride foorth, the master of Ceremonies signifieth (o much vnto certaine Herbengers or Poltes, whereupon the Herbengers give notice thereof vnto the Kings * Parents, vnto his Nobilitie, his Senators, Captaines, Guardians, and *Orkinfolk-Gentlemen, who presently arrange themselves before the Palace gate. At the Kings comming foorth of the Palace, the Herbengers appoint vnto each man his place and order of riding, First and fore-most go the Standard-bearers, next the Drummers, then followeth the chiefe Groome of the Stable with his feruants and family ; after him comes the Kings penfioners , his Guard,

40 his mafter of Ceremonies, his Secretaries, his Treasurer, and last of all his chiefe Judge and his Captaine Generall, at length comes the King accompanied with his principall Counfeller, or with some other great Peere. Before the King also ride certaine Officers belonging to his person, whereof one carries his Sword-royall, another his Shield, and the third his Crosse-bow. On each fide of him march his Foot-men, one carrying a payre of Stirups, another the Kings Partizan, the third a covering for his Saddle, and the fourth a halter for his horfe. And so soone as the King is dilmounted, they foorthwith couer the Saddle, and put the forefuld halter vpon his Horse-head. Likewise there is another footman that carrieth the Kings Pantofles most Artificially wrought. After the King followeth the Captaine of the footmen, then the Eunuches, the Kings Family, the light Horsemen, and last of all the Crosse-bowes and Harquebusiers. The 50 apparell of the King is then very moderate and plaine : infomuch that a man knew him not , he

would thinke him to be absent : for the attendants be farre more sumptuously attired. Moreo- No Mahameter uer no Mahumetan King or Prince may weare a Crowne, Diademne, or any fuch like ornament crowned. vpon his head, for that is forbidden by the law of Mahamet. When the King lyeth with his The King of army in the fields, first his owne great tent is pitched in a foure-square forme like vnto a Castle, Fechismanner each fide of the faid square being hity elles in length. At every of the foure corners flandeth a little sharpe Turret made of Cloth, and a gallant Spheare on the top which glistereth like gold. This Royall Panilion hath foure gates, enery one of which is kept by Eunuches. Within the 60 find Paulion are contained divers other tents, among which is the Kings lodging, being framed in fisch wife, that it may eatily bee remooued from place to place. Next vitto it it and the Tents of the Noblemen, and of such as are most in the Kings fauour ; then the lodgings of the principall Guard being ma le of Goats-skinnes, after the Arabian fashion ; and in the midt or all

stands the Kings Kitchin and his Pantry. Not farre from hence the light Horsemen have their

abode, who all of them are victualled out of the Kings Store-house, notwithstanding their attire be very bale. Next of all are the Stables, wherein their Hories are maruelous well tended. Without this circuit keepe fuch as carry the Tents and the Kings Furniture from place to place. Here are also Butchers, Victualers, and fuch like, All Merchants and Artificers that refort hither take up their abode next vito the Tent-carriers: fo that the Kings Pauillion is pitched like a strong City, for it is so enuironed with the lodgings of the Guard, and with other Tents adiovning, that there is very difficult passage to the King. Round about the said Royall Pauillion, there are certaine appointed to watch and ward all night long, howbeit, they are base and vnarmed people. In like fort there is a watch kept about the Stables, but sometime so negligently . that not onely fome Horles haue beene folne, but there haue beene found enemies in the Kines owne 10 Paullion, that came to murther him. The King liueth the greatest part of the yeere in the fields. both for the lafegard of his Kingdome, and also that he may keepe his Arabian subjects in obedience; and fometimes he recreateth himselfe with hunting, and sometime with playing at xerific to peep Cheffe. Iknow right well how tedious I have beene in the description of this Citie: but beforth, which caute it is the Metropolitan not onely of Barbarie, but of Africa, I thought good most particulative obtained

Fer and Mare co, oc. and At roce the principallCi-

Hunting of

the King of

larly to decypher enery parcell and member thereof. This Mountaine beginneth from the Plaine of Esais lying ten miles distant from the Citie of Fez ; Westward it extendeth thirty miles, and is almost ten miles broad. This Mountaine is all courted with wafte and Defirt woods, being otherwife ftill flored with Oliues. In this 20 Mountaine there are of Sheepe-folds and Caffles, to the number of fiftie, and the Inhabi-

rants are very wealthy, for it standeth betweene two flourishing Cities, that is to lay, Fez on the East, and Mecnase on the West. The women weave Woollen cloth, according to the custome of that place, and are adorned with many filter Rings and Bracelets. The men of this Mountaine are most valiant, and are much given to pursue and take Lyons, whereof they fend great flore vnto the King of Fee. And the King hunteth the faid Lyons in manner following: In a large field, there are certaine little Cels made, being fo high, that a man may frand Lyons visdby veright in them : each one of these Cells is shut fast with a little doore; and containe within every of them an armed man, who opening the doore prefents himfelfe to the view of the Lyon : then the Lyon feeing the doores open, comes running toward them with great furie, but the doores being that againe, he waxeth more furious then before; then bring they foorth a Bull 30 Fight betwire to combate with the Lyon, who enter a fierce and bloody conflict, wherein if the Bull kill the Lyon, that dayes foort is at an end; but if the Lyon get the victory, then all the armed men. being ordinarily twelue, leape foorth of their Cels, and inuade the Lyon : each one of them has uing a lauelin with a pike of a cubite and a halfe long. And if these armed men seeme to be too hard for the Lyon, the King cauteth their number to be diminished ; but perceiuing them too weake, the King with his company from a certaine high place, where he standeth to behold the sport, kill the Lyon with their Crosse-bowes. And oftentimes it falleth out, that before the Lyon be flaine, some one of the men dies for it, the residue being fore wounded. The reward of those that encounter the Lyon is ten Ducats apeece, and a new garment : neither are any admitted vnto this combat but men of redoubted valour, and fuch as come from Mount Zelagi: but 40 Gualilia Town those that take the Lyons first are inhabitants of Mount Zarhon.

This Towne when the Scismatike Idris came into this Region, he began to repaire Gualili, and to replant it to with Inhabitants, that within short time it grew very populous : howbeit after his decease it was neglected by his sonne, being wholy addicted (as is before said) vnto the building of Fez. And yet Idris lieth buried in this Towne, whose Sepulchre is visited with great reverence almost by all the people of Barbary, for he is as highly esteemed as if he had been some Patriarke, because he was of the linage of Mahumet.

The Towns colled Pietra RoTa.ortha Red Sea. Tame Loons. The Cattle of

Pietra Roffa, is a small Towne built by the Romanes vpon the side of the foresaid Mountaine. beeing so neere the Forrest, that the Lyons will come daily into the Towne and gather vp bones in the streets, yea, they are so tame and familiar, that neither women nor children area- 50

Shame is an ancient Castle built at the foot of the said Mountaine neere vnto the high way from Fez to Mecnafe: and it was called by this name, because the Inhabitants are most shamefully addicted to couetife, like vnto all the people theresbouts. In old time it is reported that a certaine King palled by, whom the Inhabitants of the Caltle invited to dinner, requesting him to change the ignominious name of the place : which when the King had condefcended vinto, they caused, according to their custome, a company of Rams to be slaine, and certaine bladders and veffels to be filled with milke, to ferue for the Kings breakfast the morrow after. But because the faid vessels were very large, they consulted together to put in halfe milke and halfe wa-National expel- ter, hoping that the King should never perceive it. The day following, albeit the King was not very halfy of his breakfast, yet, his feruants veging him thereunto, he perceived the milke to be 60

Las furca licet.

halfe water; whereat imiling, he faid: Friends, that which nature bath given, no man can take away. About Agla keepe great store of Lyons, but they are by nature to tearefull, that they will sie of a prouerbe, at the voyce of a child: hence commeth the Prouerbe for ite in Fez, A Lyon of Agia, which they apply vnto such a one as maketh great bragges, and is but a meere Dastard. The great Citie of Azzilla called by the Africans Azella, was built by the Romanes vpon A description

the Ocean Sea shoure, about seventie miles from the Streights of Gibraltar, and an hundred and of the Cive of fortie miles from Fez. It was in times past subject vnto the Prince of Septa or Centa, who was drille. tributary to the Romanes, and was afterward taken by the Gothes, who established the said Prince in his former Gouernment: but the Mahametans wanne it in the yetre of the Hegeira 94. and held the same for two hundred and twenty yeeres, till such time as the English at the perfuvation of the Gother befreged it with an huge Armie; and albeit the Gother were Enemies to the English, because themselves were Christians, and the English worshippers of Idols, yet 10 the Gather perfiwaded them to this attempt, hoping by that meanes to draw the Mahumetons out of Europe. The English having good fucceste tooke the Citie, and so wasted it with fire and The taking of out of Europe. The English mannes 50 to that it remayned almost thirtie yeeres void of Inha-free flowed, that scarce one Citizen escaped, so that it remayned almost thirtie yeeres void of Inha-free flowed by the English. But afterward when the Mahametan Patriarkes of Cordona were Lords of Mauritania, it Danes which

was againe re-edified, and by all meanes augmented, enriched and fortified. The Inhabitants infelted Engwere rich, learned, and valiant. The fields adjacent yeeld Graine and Pulse of all forts ingreat land, Germent, were rich, learned, and valuant. The helds adjacent yeard Graine and Fune or all forts in great abundance, but because the Towne standerhalmost ten miles from the Mountaynes, it fullay-lie inthose neth great want of wood; howbeit, they have coles brought them from Harais, as is aforelaid. times and In the yeere of the Hegeira \$82, this Citie was fuddenly surprized and taken by the Portugals, comming from 20 and all the Inhabitants carried prisoners into Portugall, amongst whom was Mahumes the King England about and all the Inhabitants carried priloners into rorugau, amought whom was remomented that time bea-of Fez that now is, who together with his Sifter being both children of feuen yeeres old, were ten by Alfred, taken and led captine. For the Father of this Mahumet feeing the Pronince of Habut renol of October 1 from him, went and dwelt at Arzilla, the very same time, when Eserif a great Citizen of Fez, English. hauing flaine Habdulac the laft King of the Marin Family, was by the fauour of the people ad- Artilla teken named vnto the Fezzan Kingdom. Afterward, one Saie Abrabeing pricked forward with ambi- by the Postananced vines to the conquer the Citie of Fez, and to make himselfe King; howbeit, Efferif by Habbulae the the adule of a certaine Counsellor of his, being Coulin vnto Seic, vanquilled and put to flight 120 King of the the faid Suic to his great difgrace. Moreouer, while Efferif had fent his faid Counfellor to Temefna, to pacifie the people of that

30 Prouince being about to rebell, Saio returned, and having for one whole yeere belieged new Fez. with eight thousand men, at length by Treason of the Townelmen hee easily wanne it, and compelled Efferif with all his Family, to flye vnto the Kingdome of Tunio. The fame time therefore that Saic befieged Fex, the King of Portugall (as is aforefaid) fending a Fleet into Africa, took Arzilla, and then was the King of Fee that now is with his yong Sifter, carryed captiue into Portugall, where he remayned seuen yeeres, in which space hee learned the Portugall Language most exactly. At length, with a great summe of money his Father ransomed him out of Portugall, who afterward being advanced to the Kingdome, was by reason of his long continuance in Portugall, called King Mahumet the Portugall. This King afterward attempted very often to be auenged of the Portugals, and to recouer Arzilla. Wherefore fuddenly encountring 40 the faid Citie, he beate downe a great part of the wall, and entring the breach, fet all the captine Moores at libertie. The Christians retyred into the Castle, promising within two dayes to Reade Hain veeld vnto the King. But Pedro de Nauarro comming in the mean feafon with a great Fleet, they lib.s. derebus compelled the King with continual discharging of their Ordnance, not onely to relinquish the Sessin, Eman. Citie, but also to depart quite away with his whole Armie; afterward it was so fortified on all fides by the Portugals, that the faid King attempting often the recourse thereof, had alwayes 100m Leo ferued the repulle. I my felfe feruing the King in the forefail expedition, could find but five hundred the King of Fer of our company flaine. But the warre against Arzilla continued from the yeere of the Hegeira in his warresa-914. to the yeere 921.

The great and ancient Citie of Tangia, called by the Portugals, Tangiara, according to the fond The Citie of opinion of fome Historiographers, was founded by one Sedded the fonue of Had, who (as they Tangata fay) was Emperour over the whole World. This man (fay they) determined to build a Citie, which for besutie might match the Earthly Paradife. Wherefore, hee compafied the same with wals of Braffe, and the Roofe of the Houses hee couered with Gold and Silver, for the building whereof he exacted great Tributes of all the Cities in the World. But the Classical and appround Authours affirme, that it was built by the Romanes vpon the Ocean Sea shoare, at the same time when they subdued the Kingdome of * Granada.

Septa, called by the Latines, Civitas, and by the Portugals, Seupta, was (according to our most Thegreat Ciapprooued Authors) built by the Romanes upon the Streights of Gibraliar, beeing in olde time tie of Signit. the head Citie of all Mauritania; wherefore the Romanes made great account thereof, infomuch

60 that it became very civill, and was throughly inhabited. Afterward it was wonne by the Gother, who appointed a Gouernour there, and it continued in their posseison, till the Mahnmetans inuading Mauritania surprized italio. The occasion whereof was one Iulian Earle of The entrance Septa; who being greatly insuried by Roderigo King of the Gothes and of Spaine, joyned with of the Moores the Infidels, conducted them into Granada, and caused Roderigo to lose both his life and his King- into Granada Xxxx

Marin Family.

* Or Cooks

of Gibralian

twelue miles

Without the Citie are divers faire Villages and Granges, especially in that place which for the abundance of Vines is called, The Vineyards: howbeit, the fields are very barren and fruitles. for which cause their Corne is exceeding deere. Both without and within the Citie there is a pleasant and beautifull prospect to the shoare of Granada upon the Streights of Gibraltar, from whence you may differne liuing creatures, the distance being but twelue miles. Howbest this from Septabut famous Citie not many yeeres fince was greatly afflicted by Habdulmumen the King and Patriarke : who having surprized it, razed the buildings , and banished the principall Inhabitants thereof. And not long after it instayned as great damage by the King of Granada, who thefides the foresaid harmes) carryed the Nobles & chiefe Citizens Captines into Granada. And lastly, in the vecre of Mahumet his Hegeira 818. being taken by a Portugall Armada', all the Citizens so did abandon it. Abu Sahid being then King of Fez, and a man of no valour, neglected the re-Abu Sahal King couerie thereof: but in the midft of his dancing and disport being advertised that it was lost, he of Feet and his would not so much as interrupt his vaine pastime: wherefore by Gods inst judgement, both himselfe and his fixe Sonne were all flaine in one night by his Secretarie, in whom hee reposed fingular truit, because he would have defloured the faid Secretaries Wife. These things came to palle in the yeere of the Hegeira 824.

Seam : aken by fixe Sonnes flaine all in

> Afterward, the Kingdome of Fez being eight yeeres destitute of a King, a Sonne of the murthered King whom he begot of a Christian woman, and who the same night that his Father was flaine fled vnto Tunis, succeeded in the Government : this was Habdulac, the last King of the Marin Family, who likewise (as is aforesaid) was slaine by the people.

Three core

Morres flaine.

Vpon the Monntaine Quadres, was borne one called by them Hellul: this Hellul atchieued 30 many worthy exploits against the Spaniards; the History whereof is set downe partly in verse and partly in profe, and is as rife in Africa and Granada, as is the Storie of Orlando in Italie. But at length in the Spanish warre (wherein Ioseph Enesir King and Patriarke of Maroco was vanquished) this Hellul was flaine in a Castle of Catalonia, called by the Moores, The Castle of the Eagle. In the same battell were flaine threescore thouland Moores, so that none of them elicaped faue the King and a few of his Nobles. This was done in the yeere of the Hegera 609. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1160. From thenceforth the Spaniards had alwayes good fuccesse in their warres, so that they recovered all those Cities which the Moores had before ta-

This ancient Towne built vpon the Mediterran Sea shoare, and called by the Spaniards, Velle: 40 wife called Vel- de Gumera, contayneth about fixe hundred Families. Heere is also a very stately Temple to bee les de Gumera. feene. Water for drinke is exceeding scarce among them, for they are all constrayned to refort vnto one Pit or Well, being in the Suburbes, neere vnto the Sepulchre of a certayne man, that was in times past very famous among them. Howbeit in the night it is dangerous to fetch water from thence, because it is so full of Bloud-suckers or Horse-leeches. They have such abundance of fish, that one man alone is not able to draw up a Net; wherefore who focuer will affift the Fishermen in that businesse, are rewarded with good store of fishes for their labour : yea, fometimes they will freely bellow fishes upon such as passe by. They salt the foresaid Sardelle, and fend them to the Mountaines to be fold. In this Towne there is a long street inhabited with lewer, wherein dwell fundry Vintners that fell excellent Wines. So that in calme euenings the Citizens vie to carry Wine aboord their Barkes in the Sea, and to ipend their time in

> Ferdinando King of Spaine taking a certaine Iland within a mile of the Towne, built a Fort thereon, and so planted it with Ordnance and Souldiers, that neyther their Temples nor themfelues walking in the ffreets were free there from, but were daily flaine. Wherefore the Gouernour of the Towne was confrayned to crave aide from the King of Fez, who fent out a great Armie against the Christians; but they were partly taken, and partly slaine, so that very few escaped backe vnto Fez. The Christians kept this Ile almost two yeeres and then it was betrayed by a falle trecherous Spaniard (who flue the Gouernour of the Ile, because hee had taken 60 his Wife from him) into the Moores posselsion, and all the Christians were slaine : not a man of them escared, saue onely the Spanish Traytor, who in regard of his Treason was greatly rewarded, both by the Gouernour of Bedis, and also by the King of Fez. Being at Naples I heard the whole relation of this matter from a certaine man that was prefent at all the former

A Caue or hole that continually casteth po fire. CHAP.I. \$.3.

Exploits, who faid, that they were done about the yeere of our Lord 1 5 20. In Mount Benguazeual, there is a certaine Towne indifferently well peopled, and furnished A cauc or hole an Acount Designate that, there is a certain of the fields belonging manuelloully abound with Grapes, that perpendicular with all kind of Artificers; where the fields belonging manuelloully abound with Grapes, that perpendicular with all kind of Artificers; where the fields belonging manuelloully abound with Grapes, the control of the fields belonging manuelloully abound with Grapes, the control of the fields belonging manuelloully abound with Grapes, the control of the fields belonging to the fields belo Onnes, and Pome-citrons, all which are fold at Fez: heere are likewife great flore of Linnen lycallethyp Weauers, and many Judges and Lawyers. They have also a good Market, whereunto the Inhabitants of the Neighbour Mountaynes refort. Vpon the top of this Mountayne there is a certaine Caue or hole that perpetually caffeth vp fire. Some wondring greatly at the matter, haue cast in wood, which was suddenly consumed to ashes : I my felse neuer faw the l.ke Miracle in any other place, fo that a great many thinke it to be hel-mouth.

10 In Mount Beni Mefgalda are many Doctors of the Mahumetan, Law, and divers inferiour Students : who put the Inhabitants to great damage. Themselves for footh , will drinke wine, and yet they perswade the people that it is vnlawfull for them to drinke it, albeit some doe give them little credit. The Inhabitants of this Mountayne pay in respect of others no great Tribute, and that perhaps, because they maintayne the forelaid Doctors and Students.

In my time the King of Spaine lent a great Armie against Melela in Garet : before the arrivall whereof the Townesmen sent vnto the King of Fez for ayde, who making warre as then against the people of Temesna, could tend but small forces to succour them. Which the Townesmen being aduertised of, and fearing least their small forces would proue too weake for the Spaminds great Armada, they tooke all the bagge and baggage that they could carrie, and fled vnto the Mountaynes of Buthoia. Howbert, the Captaine of the Feffan Souldiers, both to bee reuen-20 ged vpon the Townelmens cowardize, and also to leave nothing for the Spaniards to enioy,

burnt downe all the Houses, Temples, and Buildings. This was done in the yeare of the He-geria 896. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1487. But the Spaniards, for all they found the Citie to wasted, would not depart thereupon, but first built a strong Castle, and afterward by Melidaenioied little and little repayred the Towne wals, and by that meanes have kept possession thereof even by the Spinitill this day. They tooke also Chasasa.

The Prouince of Garet is divided into three parts: the first whereof contayneth the Cities The extreme and Townes, the fecond the forefaid Mountaynes, (the Inhabitants whereof are called Bottom) part of the and Townes, the fecond the Deferte which becoming Northward at the Medicarran Co. and the third comprehendeth the Defarts, which beginning Northward at the Mediterran Sea,

and extending South to the Defart of Chanz, are bounded Westward with the foresaid Mountaynes, and Eastward with the River of Mulnia. The length of these Desarts is fixtie miles, 30 and the breadth thirtie. They are unpleasant and dry, having no water but that of the River Muluia. There are many kinds of beafts in this Defart, fuch as are in the Libian Defart next vnto Numidia. In Summer time many Arabians take vp their abode neere vnto the River Mulsite; and so doe another kind of sierce people called Batalifa, who possesse great abundance of Horfes, Camels, and other Cattell, and maintayne continuall warre against the Arabians that

The Towne of Dubdu was in possession of one Mahamet who beautified it exceedingly with flore of faire houses and buildings : likewise, he greatly all ered and reformed the gouernment of this Towne; and shewed such extraordinary courtese vnto all Strangers, that hee grew very

Moreover, the faid Mahamet confulted how to get Tezza from the King of Fez, and offered The great Moreover, the faid Mahumet confulted how to get Texas from the King of rea, and offered courtefeed great matters to the performance of his intent: and that he might the ealther attayne his purpose, he determined to goe to the Market of Tezza in a simple habite, and to to make an assault ward strangers vpon the Captaine of the Towne: for he hoped that a great part of the Townesmen, whom heeknew to bee his friends, would affilt him in that enterprize. Howbeit this practice was at length discourred vnto the King of Fez (which King was called Saich, and was the first of the Family of Quattas, and Father vnto the King that * now reigneth) who presently assembled * 1526, an huge Armie, and marched of purpose against Dubdu, vtterly to destroy it: and so comming vnto the foot of the Mountayne hee there encamped. The people of the Mountayne having gathered an Armie of fixe thousand men, hid themselves craftily behind the Rockes, suffering

50 their Enemies to ascend by certayne difficult and strait passages, from whence they were sure they could hardly escape, and so at length they brake forth on the sodaine and encountred their faid Enemies being weary of ascending; and because the way was very troublesome and narrow, the King of Fez his Souldiers could not endure their allaules, but beeing constrayned to give backe, were moe then a thouland of them throwne downe head-long and flaine. In this skirmish were slaine in all to the number of three thousand Fessas Souldiers : and yet the King not being difnayed with fo great an ouer-brow, prepared forth-with a band of fine hundred Croffebowes, and three hundred Harquebuziers , and determined to make a new affault upon the Towne. But Mahumet feeing that he could no longer withfland the King, refolued to go himfelfe

Vato him, that he might, if it were possible, obtaine peace, & to release his Country from the fary ci the Enemy. Wherefore putting on the habit of an Ambaffador, he went & deliuered a Letter with his own hand voto the King. Which the King having perufed, asked him what he thought concerning the Gouvener of Dubdu! Mary I think (quoth Mahumet)he is not well in his wits, in XXXX 2

that he goeth about to reful your Maiestie. Then said the King, if I had conquered him, (as I hope to do within these few daies) I would cause him to be dismembred and torne in peeces. But what if he should come hither (faith Mahamer) to submit himselfe, and to acknowledge his offence: might it then please the King to admit him into fauour? Then the King answered : I sweare vnto thee by this my head, that if he will come and acknowledge his fault in manner as thou haft faid, I will not onely receive him into favour, but will espouse my daughters vnto his fonnes, and will bestow most ample and Princely dowries upon them. But I am sure, being diftracted of his wits (as thou haft faid) that he will by no meanes come and fubmit himfelfe. Then faid Mahumet: he would foone come (I affure you) if it pleafed the King to protest this for a certaintie vnto the Nobles. I thinke (faid the King) it hath beene fufficiently protefled IO and affirmed, fithence I have bound it with a folemne oath in the prefence of these foure; for here fland my chiefe Secretary, the Generall of my Forces, my Father in-law, and the chiefe Judge and Patriarke of Fez; the testimony of which foure may well fatisfie you. Whereupon Mabunct humbly falling at the Kingsfeete : loe, heere the man (quoth he) that submiffely acknowledgeth his fault, and craneth the King gracious pardon. With that the King himielie lit-ted him from the ground, embraced him, and faluted him with friendly speeches. Then caused he both his daughters to be called, which he bestowed vpon Mahamets sounces: all which being done, he removed his armie from that Mountaine, and returned conquerour vnto Fez. This was done in the veere of the Hegeira 904, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1495. And in the veere of the Hegeina 921. I my felte was at the City of Dubdu, where I was most curreously entertained by the forefaid Mahumet.

Texza was built by the Africans, fine miles from Mount Aslas, being distant from Fex fiftie.

in the way from Garet to Chafafan. It contained in times past about five thousand families: the

Tegs or Teggs. from the Oceanan hundred and thirty, and from the Mediterran Sea feuen miles. and standing

buildings of this Towneare not very stately, except Noblemens Palaces, Colledges, and Temples , which are somewhat beautifull. Out of Atlas springeth a little River which runneth through the chiefe Temple of this Citie : and sometimes it falleth out, that certaine people bordering you the Citie:vpon some quarrel with the Citizens will cut off this River from the Citie, and turne the course thereof some other way, which breedeth great inconveniences vnto the Citizens: for then they can neither build houles, nor get any water to drinke, but onely 30 corrupt water which they take out of certaine Ciffernes, for which cause they are often confirained to make a league with those borderers. This Citie both for wealth, civilitie, and abun-Huge Temple. dance of people, is the third Citie of all the Kingdome, and hath a greater Temple then that of Fez : heere are likewise three Colledges, with divers Bath-stones , and a great number of Hospitals. Each trade and occupation bath a feuerall place in this Citie, like as they have in Fez: the Inhabitants are of a more valiant and liberall disposition, then they of Fez : here are also great ftore of learned and rich men : and the fields adiacent are exceeding fruitfull. Without the Citie walls are very large Plaines, and many pleasant streames, that serue to water their Gardens which are repleinfied with all kind of fruits : here are abundance of Vines also yeelding very fweet Grapes, whereof the lewes (being fine hundreth Families) make excellent wine, fuch as 40 I thinke all Africa scarce affoordeth better. Imy selfe was acquainted in this Citie with a certaine aged fire, whom the Townesmen adored as if he had beene a god : he was merueilous rich both in Fruits, Grounds, and other Commodities, which the people bestowed vpon him in great abundance. The Citizens of Fez vied to come fiftie miles (for to farre is Fez diffant) onely

to vilite the faid old man. My felfe conceived some great opinion of this aged fire : but after I

had feene him, I could find no fuch fuperexcellency in him, faue onely that he deluded the fond

Mount Beri

Ieffeten.

people with strange deuises.

The Mountaine of Beni Iessenten is subject vnto the Gouernour of Dubdu, being inhabited with most base and beggerly people. Their houses are made of Sea-rushes, and so likewise are their thoses made of fuch rushes when they trauell any Journey, where by a man may conie- 50 Sture the miserable estate of this people. The Mountaine yeedeth nought but panicke, whereof they make bread and other victuals: but at the foot thereof are certaine Gardens replenished with Grapes, Dates, and Peaches. Their Peaches they cut into foure quarters, and casting away the Nuts or Stones, they dry them in the Sunne, and keepe them an whole yeere, which they effeeme for great dainties. Vpon this Mountaine are Iron-mines : and they frame their Iron in manner of horse-shooes, which serueth them sometimes in stead of money, whereof they have great want in this Mountaine, volleffe the Smithes by their Arte keepe this money in ftore: who, besides horse-shooes, make certaine daggers with blunt points. Their women weare Iron-rings upon their fingers and eares for a great brauery, but they are more basely apparelled then the men, and remaine continually in the woods, both to keepe Goats, and to gather fewell. They have neither civilitie nor learning, but live after a brutish manner without all discretion 60

This woodie Mountaine is full of Pine-trees and Fountaines. Their houses are not made of flone, but of Sea-rushes, so that they may easily be remooued from place to place, which is very commodious to the Inhabitants, for every firing they leave the Mountaine and defeend into the Vallies, from whence about the end of May they are expelled by the Arabians, which inhabite the Defarts: who by reason of their abundance of Goats and other Cattell, for faking the had Defarts, feeke vnto the Fountaines and mostly places; but in winter, because their Camels tard Delarts, terre vino the roundaines and moveds, and warme Regions. In this Mountaine are fo impatient of cold, they refort vino the woods, and warme Regions. In this Mountaine are 10 imparient of constitute, and Apes. And from the faid Mountaine runneth a certaine parts and ftreame of water with fuch violence, that I have seene a stone of an hundred pound weight car- Apes. ried with the force thereof : and here Subu taketh his beginning, which is the greatest River of

10 The Inhabitants of Mount Beni lafea are rich, and civill people: it flandeth so neere the Mount Beni Mountaine Selelge, that they are onely separated with the foresaid River : and to the end they 1-sign may easilier passe from one Mountaine to another, they have made a certaine strange bridge in A wenderfull the midft, and that in manner following : on either fide fland certaine Posts, through the bidge, which runner ha rope vpon a truckle or pulley, vnto which rope is faftened a great basker, that will containe ten persons, and that in such fort, that so often as they will passe ouer to the oppolite Mountaine, they enter into the basket, and drawing the rope whereon it hangeth, they are easily carried aloft in the aire ouer the River by the helpe of the foreigid pulleyes, but sometimes with great hazard of their lines, especially if the basket or the rope be worne in any places yea, and the distance of place is often an occasion of great terrour. In this Mountaine there is 20 great flore of cattell, but little wood. It abounderh likewife with most excellent fine wooll, whereof their women make cloth comparable vnto filke, which is fold at Fez for a great price.

There is no memorable thing in all Sofres Towne, faue onely a certaine Temple, through the Here also is great plenty of oyle. midst whereof runneth a large River; and at the doores standeth a Fountaine of most pure

In the Forrests about this Towne, as also about Mezdaga, are marneilous store of Lyons, being Tame Lyons. not very hurtfull, for any man may drive them away with a little flicke.

At the same time while the Africans were as yet Idolaters, they had a Temple standing The Towne necre vnto Ham Lifans, whither at certaine times of the yeere, reforted in the night great mulLifans, so titudes of people both men and women: where having ended their facrifices, they yield to put out their lights, and every man to commit adultery with that woman which he first touched. Sacrima facts.

But the women which were present at this abominable sport, were forbidden to lie with any man for a yeere after : and the children begotttn in the faid adultery, were kept and brought vp by the Priest of the Temple, as being dedicated to facred vies.

Vpon Mount Centopozzi are great store of most ancient buildings, neere vnto the which there Mount Cento. is a hole or drie pit of lo great a depth, that the bottome thereof can in no wife be feene. Into this Partie pit some mad fellowes will haue themselues let downe by ropes, carrying a Candle or Torch in their hands: and beneath, they fay, it is divided into many roomes, and as it were, chambers; and last of all, they come to a most large place hewen out of the Rocke with Instruments, and

40 compafied about as it were with a wall, in which wall are fouredoores, which lead to other more narrow places, where, they fay, that Fountaines of Springing water are. And sometimes it falleth out that fome miferably end their lines here : for if their lights chance to be blowen out with any fudden blaft of wind, they can by no meanes find the place where the rope hangeth, but are there constrained to die for extreame famine. It was told me by a certaine Nobleman of Fez., that there were ten persons, who being desirous to see the wonders of this pit, and being prepared for the same purpose, went first three of them downe, who when they were come to the foresaid foure doors, two of them went one way, & the third went alone another way. And being thus divided, after they had proceeded almost a quarter of a mile, there came great swarmes, of Bats flying about their lights, infomuch that one light was put out ; at length; being come to the fpringing fountaines, they found there certaine white bones of men, and fine or fixe Candles, whereof some were new, and others were old and worne with long lying there : but ha-

uing found nothing but water in the faid Fountaines, they returned backe agains the same way that they came : and they had scarce gone halfe way, but their owne light also was blowen out with a fudden blaft. Afterward feeking earneftly vp and downe, and being weary of many falles that they caught among the Rockes, they found that there was no hope of returne: wherefore in this desperate case committing themselves with teares into the hands of God, they vowed, if they once escaped this danger, never to adventure any more. They that stood at the Caues mouth being ignorant of their companions milhap, expected their returne, and hauing staid ouer long, at length they let downe themselues by the rope, and began with lights to fecke their fellowes, making a great noise, and at length found them heavy and sad. But the

third, who was wandring up and downe those darke places, they could by no meanes finde, wherefore leaving him, they returned foorth of the Cauc. And he that was left behind heard at length a noyse like the barking of little dogges, and shaping his course toward them, he found immediatly foure strange, and (as it should seeme) new-borne beasts, after which followed the

LIB. VI.

* The beaft

Damme, being not much valike to a shee-wolfe, saving that she was bigger: wherefore hee began exceedingly to feare; howbeit, there was no danger, for being about to flee, the beaft came towards him, tawning gently vpon him with her taile. And fo at length, after long feeking. he found the holes mouth with great ioy, and escaped the danger : for within a while he faid, that he began to fee fomeglimmering of light, as they doe which have long been in the darke. But after a certaine time this Caue was filled with water vp to the top.

The Mountaine of Rauens called Gunaigell Gherben.

Cunaise! Gherben, standeth very neere the former, and is full of Woods and Lions. Here is no Citie, nor any other place of habitation, perhaps by reason of the extreme coldnesse of the place. From this Mountaine runneth a certaine little River : and here is a Rocke of an exceeding height, whereupon keepe infinite iwarmes of Crowes and Rauens, which fome thinke to haue 10 been the occasion of the name of this Mountaine. Sometime the terrible Northerly winds bring fuch abundance of Snow vpon this Mountaine, that fuch as travell from Numidia towards Fex. loofe their lives thereby, as hath been fignified in the first Booke. Every Summer the Arabiane next inhabiting, being called Beni Effen, viually refort vnto this Mountaine, in regard of the coole water and pleasant shadowes, notwithstanding they know it to bee haunted with oreat store of Lions and Leopards.

There lyeth a way neere the towne of Vmen Giunaibe, which a man may not passe without dancing and leaping, vnlesse he will fall into an Ague: the certainty whereof I have heard many

Domesticall and tame Serpen:s.

Dancing way,

The Inhabitants are a most lewde and villanous generation, being wholly addicted to theft 20 Of Mount Ziz. and robberie. They are at continuall diffention with the Arabians, and practife daily mischiefes and inconveniences against them, and to the end they may prouoke them to greater furie. they will fometimes throw their Camels downe headlong from the top of fome high Mountaine. In these Mountaines there happeneth a certain ftrange and incredible matter, for there are Serpents fo familiar with men, that at dinner-time they wil come like Dogs and Cats, and gather vo the The like is recrums ynder the Table, neither will they hurt any body, vnlesse they bee offered some injurie.

ò. IIII.

The most remarkable things of IOHNLIO, in his fourth Booke of the Historie of Africa.

Lasland.

His Kingdome beginneth Westward from the Rivers of Zha and Muluia: Eastward it bordereth vpon the great River, Southward vpon the Defart of Numidia, and Northward vpon the Mediterran Sea. This Region was called by the Romans. Celaria, and was by them inhibited : howbeit, after the Romans were expel-

led, it was fully possessed by the ancient Governours thereof, called Bien Habdulgnad, and being a generation of the Family of M graus. And it remained vnto them and their fucceffors three hundred yeeres, vntill fuch time as a certaine mighty man, called Ghannse 2000, the fonne of Zeijen, tooke possession thereof. His posteritie changing at length their ancient name, were called Beni Zeijen, that is, the Sons of Zeijen : and they enjoyed this Kingdome for the space almost of three hundred and eighty yeares. At length the Kings of Fez of the Marin Family greatly molested them, so that those ten Kings which succeeded Zeijen were some of them vnfortunate in battell, some flaine, some taken Captiue, and others expelled their Kingdome and chafed to the next Mountaines. Neither were they free from vexation of the Kings of Tunis : howbeit, the Kingdome of Telensin remained still to this Familie, and they continued in peace for almost an hundred and twenty yeares, being endamaged by no forren power; fauing that one Abu Feris King of Tunis, and his sonne Huimen, made them to pay tribute for certaine yeares vnto Tunis, till the decease of the said Hutmen. This Kingdome stretcheth in length co from East to West three hundred and eighty miles; but in breadth from North to South that is, from the Mediterran lea, to the Delarts of Numidia not aboue five and twenty miles: which is the occasion that it is so often oppressed by the Arabians inhabiting the Numidian Desarts. The Kings of Telentin haue alwaies entieuoured by great gifts to gaine the good will and friendthip of the Numidians, but they could never fatishe their infatiable couetice. A man shall seldome travell fafely through this Kingdome : howbeit, here are great flore of Merchants, perhaps either because it adjouns th to Numidia, or else for that the way to the land of Negros lieth through it. It hath two most famous and frequented Hauen-townes, the one called * Horam, and the other * Marfa Eleabir, whither vie to refort great flore of Genouefes, and Venetians. But afterward both these Townes were taken by Don Ferdinando the Catholike King, to the great inconvenience of 60 all this Kingdome: for which cause the King then reigning, called Abuchemmen, was expelled his Kingdome, and put to flight by his owne fubicets: afterward Abuzeigen was reflored to the Kingdome, who had for certaine yeares been imprisoned by his Nephew Abuchemmen : howbeit, he enjoyed the Kingdome but a very fhort space : for he was at length miserably staine by

Numidi.ors conetife.

Or Gras. Or MerfalCHAP.I.S.3. Abuchemmeu restored to bis Kingdome, by Charles the fifth. Sti

Barbarossa the Turke, who conquered the Kingdome of Tremizen by force of warre. Whereof Abuchemmen, that was expelled by his owne lubiects, having intelligence, fent to crave aide of the Emperour Charles the hith, whereby he hoped to recouer his Kingdome. Which requelt be- King or the Emperour Charles the fitth, whereby he noped to recour mix a migrounce. Which require the armeter ing granted, he leuted a puttant Armie, and made warre against B arbur off, and having druten him his Kingdome. ing grantes, it is the standard out, he recovered his Kingdome, and feuerely punished them that had conspired his banishment. by the Empe-And then he gaue the Spanis fouldiers their pay, sent the Captaines home with great rewards, 101 Chaila and allowed Charles the Emperour a large yearely reuenue fo long as heliued. After his decease the fifth, fucceeded his brother Habdulla, who neglecting the league made before betweene the Emperor and his brother, and relying upon Solyman the great Turke, refused to pay any more tribute unto

10 the Emperour Charles, and hath kept possession of the Kingdome, till * this present. The greater * 1 5 2 6. part of this Region is vntilled, drie, and barren, especially towards the South. Howbert, the sea coast is somewhat more fertill. The territorie adiacent to the Citie of Telensin is full of woods, faving that the Westerne part towards the Sea is mountainous. Likewise, the Regions of Tenez and Alger containe Mountaines abounding with all kind of commodities. In this part are but few Cities and Castles; howbeit, it is a most fruitfull and bleffed place as we will hereafter de-

This barren, dry, and vntilled Defart, being vetterly destitute of Water and Wood, is situate The Defart of vpon the Welterne frontier of the Kingdome of Telensin, and extendeth in length fourescore, Great store of and in breadth almost liftie miles. Here are great store of Roes, Deere, and Offriches.

This ancient Towne built by the Romans, while they were Lords of Africa, standeth vpon a The Citical 20 large Plaine, almost two miles from a certaine Mountaine, and about twellie miles from the Me- led Net Ryma, diterran Sea, and neere vnto it runneth a little River. The Historiographers of those times report, that this Towne was in all respects built after the fashion of Rome, whereupon they say, it borrowed the name : for Ned in the Arabian tongue fignifieth , like. The Wall of this Towne is as yet to be feene: but all the ancient buildings of the Romans are to destroyed, that now there fearcely remaine any ruines thereof. It began in fome places to be repaired and reedified anew, but nothing comparable to the former buildings. The fields adjacent are exceeding fruitfull, and containe many Gardens replenished with such trees as beare Carobs (being a fruite like ynto Callia Fiftula) which in the Suburbs they vie for food. This Towne is indifferently well inhabited, especially with Weauers, who make great store of Cotton-cloth, and are free from all tri-

Tlenfin, is a great Citie, and the Royall feate of the King; and then it was an honou- The great Cia rable and well-gouerned Citie: howbeit, Ioseph King of Fez continually molested it, and tieo Telenfor, with an huge Armie belieged it for feuen yeares together. This lofeph having built a Fort upon led Tremiron. the East fide of the Towne, put the besieged Citizens to such distresse, that they could no longer endure the extreme famine : wherefore with one accord they all went vnto their King befeeching him to have compassion vpon their want. The King, to make them acquainted with his daintie fare, which he had to supper, shewed them a dish of sodden Horse-flesh and Barly. And then they well perceived, how little the Kings estate was better then the estate of the meanest Citizen of them all. Soone after the King having procured an assembly, perswaded his people that it was much more honourable to die in battell for the defence of their Countrie, then to 40 live fo milerable a life. Which words of the King fo inflamed all their minds to the battell, that the day following they resolued to encounter the enemie, and valiantly to fight it out. But it fell out farre better for them then they expected; for the same night King Iefeph was shine by one of his owne people : which newes being brought vnto the Citizens, with greater courage they marched all out of the Towne, eafily vanquishing and killing the confused multitude of their enemies; after which vnexpected victorie, they found victuals sufficient in the enemies Campe to relieue their long and tedious famine. About fortie yeares after, the fourth King of Fez of the Marm Familie, called Abulbefen, built a Towne within two miles Westward of the Citie of Telenfin. Then hee besieged Telenfin for thirty moneths together, making daily and fierce affaults againit it, and euery night erecting some new Fort, fo that at length the Fezzan 50 forces next vnto Telensin easily entred the Citie, and having conquered it, carried home the King thereof Captine vnto Fez, where he was by the King of Fez beheaded, and his carkale was caft forth among the filth of the Citie: and this was the fecond and the greater damage that Te-

lenfin fustained. After the decay of the Marin Familie Telenfin began in many places to bee re- beheaded. paired, and replenished with new inhabitants, infomuch that it increased to twelve thousand

Families. Here each Trade and Occupation hath a peculiar place, after the manner of Fez, sauing that the buildings of Fez are somewhat more stately. Here are also many, and beautifull Temples, having their Mahumetan Priests and Preachers. Likewise here are five Colledges most Temples and 60 fumptuously built, some by the King of Telensin, and some by the King of Fez. Here also are Colledges, flore of goodly Bathes and Hot-houses, albeit they have not such plentie of water as 18 at Fez. Also here are very many Innes built after the manner of Africa: vnto two of which Innes the Merchants of Genoa and Venice doe vitally refort.

Agreat part of this Citie is inhabited with Iewes, who were in times past all of them excee-

812

Or Turbant, ding rich : vpon their heads they weare 2 * Dulipan, to diftinguish them from other Citizene : but in the yeare of the Hegeira 923, vpon the death of King Abuhabdilla, they were all fo robbed and looyled, that they are now brought almost vnto beggerie. Moreouer, in this Citie there are many Conduits, the Fountaines whereof are not farre from the Citie walles, fo that they may easily be stopped by any forren Enemie. The Citie wall is very high and impreenable. having five great Gates upon it, at everie one of which there is placed a guard of Souldiers, and certaine Receivers of the Kings Custome. On the South-fide of the Citie standeth the Kings Palace, enuironed with most high Walls, and containing many other Palaces within it, which are none of them deflitute of their Fountaines and pleafant Gardens: This Royall Palace hath two Gates, one leading into the Fields, and the other into the Citie, and at this Gate standeth the Captaine of the Guard. The Territorie of Telensin containeth most pleasant habitations, whither the Citizens in Summer-time vie to retire themselues: for besides the beautifull Pa-Pleasant place, stures and cleare Fountaines, there is such abundance of all kind of fruits to delight both the eyes and taile, that to my remembrance I neuer faw a more pleafant place: their Figges they yfe to drie in the Sunne, and to keepe vntill Winter: and as for Almonds, Peaches, Melons. and Pome-citrons, they grow here in great plentie. Three miles Eastward of this Citie are diuers Mills upon the River of Seffif; and some other there are also not far from the Citie upon the Mountaine of Elealha. The South part of the Citie is inhabited by Ienes, Lawyers, and Notaries: here are also very many Students, and Professors of divers Arts, which have maintenance allowed them out of the five forenamed Colledges. The Citizens are of foure forts, to wit, some 20 Artificers, fome Merchants, other Schollers and Doctors, and all the refidue Souldiers. The Merchants are men most just, trustie, liberall, and most zealous of the common good, who for the most part exercise traffique with the Negros. The Artificers line a secure, quiet, and mer-

rie life. The Kings Souldiers being all of a comely personage, and of great valour, receiue ve-

rie large and liberall pay, for they are monthly allowed three pieces of the Gold-covne of Te-

lensin, which are worth three Italian Duckats, and one second part. All Students before they

attaine to the degree of a Doller, live a bare and miserable life : but having attained thereunto.

they are made either Professor, or Notaries, or Priefts. The Citizens and Merchants of this Citie

Schollers.

are foneate & curious in their apparel, that fomtimes they excel the Citizens of Fez in braucrie-The customs AWonder it is to see how stately and magnificently the King of Telensia behaueth himselfle:

and sites elso for no man may see him, nor be admitted to parle with him, but onely the principall Nubles of his Court, each one of whom are affigned to beare Offices according to their place and dignitie. In this Court are fundry Offices and dignities, and the Kings Liemenant being principall Officer, allotteth vnto each one fuch places of dignitie, as may bee correspondent to their honour : and this Lieutenant leuieth the Kings Armies, and sometime cond cheth them against the Enemie. The second, Officer is the Kings chiefe Secretarie, who writeth and recordeth all things pertaiming to the King. The third, is the High Treasurer, who is bound by his Office to receive Tributes and Customes, The fourth, is the Kings Dispensator or Almoner, who bestoweth such liberalitie as the King vouchfafeth. The fifth, is the Captaine of the Kings Guard, who so often as any Nobles are admitted to the Kings presence, conducteth the guarde vnto the Palace Gate.
Then are there other meaner Officers, as namely, the Master of the Kings Stable, the Oner-seer of his Saddles and Stirrops, and his Chiefe Chamberlaine, who giveth attendance onely at fuch times as any Courtiers are admitted vnto the Kings audience. For atother times the Kings Wines, with certaine Christian Captiues, and Eunuches doe performe that dutie. The King sometimes in sumptions and costly apparell rideth vpona stately Steed richly trapped and surnished. In riding hee observeth not much pompe nor many ceremonies; neither indeed doth hee carrie fo great a traine; for you shall scarcely see a thousand Horsemen in his company, except perhaps in time of Warre, when as the Arabians and other people give attendance. His dominions are but flenderly inhabited : howbeit, because the way from Europe to Libiopia lieth through his Kingdome, he reapeth much benefit by the wares that passe by, especially since the time that Orer was furprifed by the Christians.

A paffage from Eurere to .Athievia through the Kingdome of Tremizen. Hisbbed.

Batha. A famous

Hubbed containeth store of Inhabitants, who are for the most part Dyers of Cloath. In this Towne was buried one Sidi Bu Median, being reputed a man of fingular holinesse, whom they adore like a God ascending vp to his Monument by certaine steps. Here is likewise a stately Colledge, and a faire Hospitall to entertaine strangers in ; both which were built by a King of Fez of the Marm Family, as I find recorded upon a certaine Marble ftone.

The Plaine of Batha was ytterly destitute of Inhabitants, till a certaine Hermite with his followers, whom they reuerenced as a man of fingular holineffe, repaired thither. This Hermite in short time grew so rich in Oxen, Horses, and other Cattell, that no man almost throughout the whole Region was comparable vnto him. Neither he nor his followers pay any tribute at all, 60 when as notwithstanding (as I heard of his Disciples) he reapeth yearely eight thousand bushels of Corne, and at this time possesseth fine hundred Horses, tenne thousand small Cattell, and two thousand Oxen; and besides all the former hath yearely sent vnto him from divers parts of the world foure or fine thousand Duckats : so greatly hath the fame of his falle holines

foread ouer all Africa and Afra. Disciples he hath to the number of fine hundred, whom hee maintaineth at his owne cost : neither imployeth he them to ought elfe, but daily to read a few prayers: for which cause many resort vnto him, desiring to be of the number of his Disciples, whom after he hach instructed in certaine Ceremonies, he sendeth them thither from whence they first came. He hath about an hundreth Tents pitched, whereof some are for strangers. others for Shepheards, and the refidue for his owne Family. This holy Heremite hath foure wives, and a great many women-flaves, wearing most sumptuous apparell. His sonnes likewise have their wives and Families : infomuch that the whole Familie of this Heremite and of his fonces containeth five hundred persons. He is greatly honoured by all the Arabians, and by the To King of Telenfin him felfe. My felfe was once delirous to trie what manner of man this Heremite

was : and for three dayes I was entertained by him in the most secret places of his habitation, was : and for times days is was entertained by min. In the more recet places of mis institution, where among the other things, he thewed me certain Bookes intreating of Art-Magique, and of Alchymie: and liee endemoured by all meanes to perfuyade me, that Magique was a most true. and vindoubted Arte, whereby I perceived that himfelfe was a Magician, albeit he neuer vsed nor regarded the Arte, except it were in inuocating of God by certaine names.

Oran containing about fixe thousand Families, and built many yeeres agoe by the Africans The Towns of ypon the Mediterran Sea shoare, is distant from Telensin an hundreth and fortie miles. Heere Oran.

may you fee great store of stately buildings, as namely of Temples, Colledges, Hospitals, Bath-flours, and Innes. The Towne is compafied with most high and impregnable walles, 20 having on the one fide a faire plaine, and on the other fide divers Mountaines. The greatest part of the inhabitants were Weauers, and the residue lived of their yeerely Revenues. The Territorie of this Towne yeeldeth but small store of Corne, so that the Townelmen make all their bread of Barley : howbeit, they are most courteous and friendly to all strangers. This Towne was greatly frequented with Merchants of Catalonia, and of Genoa: and one itreet thereof is at this present called, the streete of the Genousses. They were at perpetuall enmitte with the King of Telenfin, neither would they ever accept of any Governour, but one which received the Kings Tribute. But the Townimen chose one of their chiefe Burgo-mafters to judge of Cases Ciuil and Criminall. The Merchants of the Towne, maintained at their owne costs, certaine Foists and Brigandines of warre, which committed many Piracies vpon the coast of Catalonia, Genifa, 30 Maiorica, and Minorica, infomuch, that Oran was full of Christian Captines. Afterward, Don Ferdinando King of Spaine encountring Oran with a great Armada, determined to release the faid Christians out of Captiuitie: but he had very hard successe. Howbeit, within a few moneths after being ayded by the Biscaines and the Cardinall of Spaine, he tooke Oran. For the Oran taken by Moores isluing foorth with great furie vpon the Christians armie, left the Towne vtterly de- the Spaniaris. flitte of Souldiers, which the Spaniards perceiting, began to assayle the Towne on the other

Towne, and were there put to so great a slaughter, that few of them escaped. Thus was Oran taken by the Spaniards in the yeere of Mahamet his Hegeira 916. Merfalcabir in the Moores language fignifieth, a great or large Hauen; for I thinke there is not The Towne of the like Hauen to be found in the whole world belies: fo that here infinite numbers of Ships Merfalcabir. and Gallies may finde most fafe harbour in any tempestuous weather. Hither the Venetians ships Merfalealin made often refort, when they perceived any temper to approach : and from hence they would forprised by cause all their wares to be transported to Oran in other vessels. This Towne also was at length the Spaniards.

fide ; where being resisted by none but by women , they had easie entrance. Whereupon the

Moores seeing the Christians Banners advanced upon their wals, they returned backe into the

taken by the Spaniards as well as Oran. Brefeb standeth many miles distant from Mustuganin. It containeth great store of Inhabi- Brefeb. tants, which are many of them Weauers. The people of this Towne vie to paint a blacke crosse voon their cherke, and two other blacke croffes voon the Palmes of their hands : and the like Blacke roffes cultome is observed by all the Inhabitants of the Mountaines of Alger, and Bugia: the occaso fion whereof is thought to be this, namely, that the Gothes when they first began to invade these Regions, released all those from paying of Tribute(as our African Historiographers affirme)

that would imbrace the Christian Religion. But so often as any Tribute was demaunded, every man to eschew the payment thereof, would not sticke to professe himselfe a Christian : wherefore it was then determined, that fuch as were Christians indeed, should be diftinguished from others by the foresaid croffes. At length the Gothes being expelled, they all revolted vnto the Mahmuetan Religion; howheit, this cultome of painting croffes remained faill among them neither doe they know the reason thereof. Likewise the meaner fort of people in Mauritania vie to make fuch croiles vpon their faces, as we fee vied by some people of Europe.

Serfell, built by the Romanes upon the Mediterran Sea, was afterward taken by the Gothes; The Towne of 60 and laftly by the Mahumetans. The wall of this Towne is exceeding high, strong, and stately seriel. built , and containeth about eight miles in circuit. In that part of the Towne next vntothe Settly Tam-Mediterran Sea, standeth a most beautifull and magnificent Tempie built by the Romanes, the reinward part whereof confisteth of Marble.

Gezeir, in the Moores language fignifieth an Hand, which name is thought to have beene gi- wile called Al-

Grizer, other-

814

uen voto this Citic, because it lyeth neere voto the Hes of Maiorica, Minorica, and leniza: howheit, the Spaniards call it Alger. It was founded by the Africans of the Family of Mesana, wherefore in old time it was called by the name of Mesgana. It is a large Towne. containing Families to the number of foure thouland, and is enuironed with most stately and impregnable walles. The buildings thereof are very Artificiall and fumptuous : and enery trade and occupation hath heere a feuerall place. Innes, Bath-stoues, and Temples heere are very beautifull; but the stateliest Temple of all standeth vpon the Sea-shoare. Next vnto the Sea there is a most pleasant walke voon that part of the Towne wall, which the waves of the Sea beat upon. In the Suburbs are many Gardens replenished with all kind of Fruits. On the East fide of the Towne runneth a certaine River having many mills thereupon : and out of this River 10 they draw water fit for drinke, and for the feruices of the Kitchin. It hath most beautifull Plaines adioyning vpon it, and especially one called Metteggia, which extendeth forty five miles in length, and almost thirty miles in breadth, and aboundeth mightily with all kinds of Graine. This Towne for many yeeres was subject vnto the Kingdome of Telensin : but hearing that Bugie was also gouerned by a King, and being neerer thereunto, they submitted themselves vnto the King of Bugia. For they law that the King of Telensin could not sufficiently defend them against their enemies, and also that the King of Bugia might doe them great damage, wherefore they offered vnto him a yeerly Tribute of their own accord, and yet remained almost free from all exaction. But certaine yeeres after, the inhabitants of this Citie building for themselves Alter become Gallies, began to play the Pirats, and greatly to molest the foresaid Ilands. Whereupon King 20 Tributary to Ferdinando prouided a mighty Armada, hoping thereby to become Lord of the Citie. Likewile to the King of ypon a certaine high Rocke standing opposite against the Towne, he caused a strong Fort to be built, and that within Gun-shot of the Citie, albeit the Citie walles could not bee endamaged thereby. Wherefore the Citizens immediately fent Ambassadours into Spaine, to craue a league for ten yeeres, vpon condition that they should pay certaine yeerely Tribute; which request was granted by King Ferdinando. And fo they remained for certaine Moneths free from the danger of warre: but at length Barbaroffa haftning to the fiege of Bugia, and hauing wonne one Fort built by the Spaniards, determined to encounter another, hoping if he could obtaine that also, that he should soone conquer the whole Kingdome of Bugia. Howbeit, all matters fell not out according to his expectation; for a great part of his Souldiers being husbandmen, 20 when they perceived the time of fowing corne to approach, without any leave or licence they forfooke their Generall, and returned home to the Plough-taile. And many Tinkes also did the like, so that Barbaross sailing of his purpose, was constrained to breake up the siege. Howbeit, before his departure, he see on fire with his owne hands twelue Gallies, which lay in a Riner but three miles from Bueis. And then with forty of his Souldiers, he retired himselfe to the Castle of Gegel, being from Buqua aboue fixtie miles distant, where hee remained for certains dayes. In the meane while, King Ferdinando deceasing, the people of Alger released themselves from paying any more Tribute : for feeing Barbaroffa to be a most valiant warriour, and a deadly enemy vnto Christians, they jent for him, and choice him Captaine ouer all their Forces : who presently encountred the Fort, but to little effect. Afterward this Barbaroff fecretly murthered the Gouernour of the Citie in a certaine Bath. The said Gouernour was Prince of the A-40 rabians dwelling on the Plaines of Mettegia, his name was Selim Etteumi, descended of the Familie of Telaliba, and created Gouemour of Alger, at the same time when Bugia was taken by the Spaniards: this man was slaine by Barbarosia, after he had gouerned many yeeres. And then Barbaroffa vsurped the whole government of the Citie vnto himselfe, and coined money, and this was the first entrance into his great and princely estate. At all the foresaid accidents I my felfe was prefent, as I trauelled from Fez to Tunis, and was entertained by one that was fent books. Ambassadour from the people of Alger into Spame, from whence he brought three thousand AVo. 18: pet books written in the Arabian tongue. Then I passed on to Bugia, where I found Barbaressa

formed by leting belieging the foresaid Fort : afterward I proceeded to Constantina, and next to Tunis. In the had fent two armies to furprize A'ger; the first whereof was destroyed voon the plaine of Al-

birus, the next ger, and the fecond having affailed the Towne three dayes together, was partly flame, and partof Fursily va. ly taken by Barbaroffa, infomuch, that very few escaped backe into Spaine. This was done in the christian Py. yeere of the Hegeira 922. Tats Medica

The Inhabitants of Medua being themselves vulearned, so often as any learned man comes amongst them, they enter aine him with great honour, and cause him to decide all their controuerfies. For the space of two moneths, while I remained with them, I gained aboue two hundred Dicats, and was to altired with the pleafantnesse of the place, that had not my dutie enforced me 60 The Towne of to depart, I had remained there all the refidue of my life.

meane while I heard that Barbaroffa was flaine a: Tremizen, and that his brother called Cairadin

succeeded in the government of Alger. Then we heard also that the Emperour Charles the fift

Vinto Temendfuft belongeth a faire Hauen, where the Ships of Alger are fafely harboured, for they have no other Haven to commodious. This Towne was at length destroyed by the Goths. taines is omit and the greatest part of the wall of Alger was built with the stones which came from the wall of this Towne. Sect. III !.

The most remarkable things in IOHN LEO his fifth Booke of the Historie of Africa, and a description of the Kingdomes of Bugia and Tunis.

Visia was lubied to the King of Timis, and albeit, for certaine yeares the King of Timis was Lord thereof, yet was it at length recoursed again by the King of Timis, who committed the Gouernment of the Circ was to one of ins Sonnes, both for the tranquillitie of Bugis, and also that no discord might happen among his Sonnes after his decease. Hee left behind him three Sonnes, the eldest whereof was called Habdulhaziz, and vnto him he bequeathed the Kingdome of Busin, as is aforefaid: vnto the second, whose name was Hutmen, hee left the King dome of Tunis : and the third, called Hammare, he made Gouernour of the Region of Dates. This Hammare began forth-with to wage warre against his Brother Hutmen, by whom beeing at length taken in the Towne of Asfacos, and deprined of both his eyes, hee was carryed Captine vnto Tunis, where he lived many yeares blind : but his Brother Human governed the Kingdome of Tunis full forty yeares. The Prince of Bugia beeing most louing and dutifull to his Brother,

20 raigned for many yeares with great tranquillitie, till at length hee was by King Ferdinand of Spaine, and by the meanes of one Pedro de Nauarra, cast out of his Kingdome.

This ancient Citie of Busia was built (as some think) by the Romans, upon the fide of an high A description Mountayne, neere vnto the Mediterran Sea, is enuironed with wals of great height, and most of the great flately in regard of their Antiquitie. The part thereof now peopled contayneth aboue eight thousand Families: but if it were all replenished with buildings, it were capeable of more then foure and twentie thouland Housholds, for it is of a great length. The Houses, Temples , and Colledges of this Citie are most sumptuously built. Professors of liberall Sciences heere are Scholers great flore, whereof some teach matters pertayning to the Law, and others professe naturall Lawyers Philosophie. Neyther Monasteries, Innes, nor Hospitals erected after their manner are heere wan- Philosophers. 30 ting : and their Market place is very large and fayre: their streetes either descend or ascend, which is very troublesome to them that haue any businesse in the Towne. In that part of the Citie next vnto the top of the Mountayne standeth astrong Castle, most sumptiously and beautifully walled: and there are fuch notable Letters and Pictures most artificially carued upon the

Playster-worke and Timber, that they are thought to have cost much more then the building of the wall it felfe.

The Citizens were exceeding rich, and vsed with their Warlike Gallies continually to moleft the Coafts of Spaine; which was the occasion of the vtter ouerthrow of their Citie. For Pedro de Nauarra was fent against them with a Fleet of fourteene Sayles onely. The Citizens being addicted wholy to pleasure and ease, and being terrified with the rumour of Warre, be-40 cause they were neuer exercised therein, were no sooner aduertised of Pedro de Nauarra his approch, but all of them together with their King betooke themselues to flight, and left their Ci. Peake National tie abounding with all kind of riches and wealth, to be spoyled by the Spaniards, so that it was warra. eafily taken, in the yeere of Mahamet his Hegeira 917. Soone after Pedro de Nanarra hauing facked the Citic, built a strong Fort vpon the Seashoare, and repayred another which had lien a long time waste, furnishing them both with Souldiers and Munition.

The Inhabitants of Gegel, have in despight of the Kings of Bugia and Tunis continued al- Necaus. wayes free from Tribute: for that impregnable Mountayne can be surprized by no siege nor encounter of the Enemy, At length they yeelded themselves vnto Barbarossa, who demanded none

other Tribute of them, but onely the tenths of certaine Fruits and Corne. 50 The Inhabitants of Necass are very rich, liberall, and curious in their apparell. Heere is an Hospitall maintayned at the common charges of the Towne, to entertayne Strangers that passe by, Here is a Colledge also, the Students whereof are allowed their Dyet and apparell. Neither is this Towne destitute of a most stately and wel-furnished Temple. Their women are white, having blacke haires and a most delicate skinne, because they frequent the Bath-stones so often. Most of their houses are but of one story high, yet are they very decent, and have each one a Garden thereto belonging, replenished with Damaske Roses, Myrtles, Cammomill, and other herbs and flowers, and beeing watred with most pleasant Fountaines. In thele Gardens likewise there are most flately Arbours and Bowres, the coole shaddow whereof in Summer

time is most acceptable. No man can deny the Romanes to have beene Founders of this Citie, that shall consider the The Citie of great strength, height and antiquitie of the wals, and how curiously they are beset and adorned conflatures. with blacke stones. This Citie standeth upon the South fide of an exceeding high Mountayne, and is enuironed with fleepe Rockes, under which Rockes and within the compafie whereof runneth the River called Sufegmare, fo that the faid deepe River with the Rockes on either fide,

in Granada, having in his travell this way received fome discourtesie, wrote in disgrace of Tebesta certaine Satyricall Verses, which my selfe likewise have thought good here to set downe in the difpraise thereof.

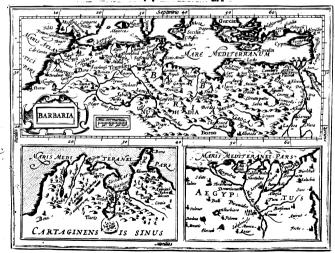
Within this place here's nought of any worth, Sane worthlesse Nuts, which Tebessa affoords. Soft, I mistake, the Marble walles are worth Your earnest view, so are the Christall Foords : But bence are banisht vertues all dinine. The place is Hell, the People worfe then Swine.

In This Eldabag was a most learned and elegant Poet in the Arabian Tongue, and out of measure Satyricall, and bitter in his inuectiues. But to returne to our former purpole, these Tebessians have alwaies rebelled against the King of Tunis, and have slaine all the Governours that he hath sent. Wherefore the King that now is, translling vpon a time towards Numidia, fent certaine Ambaffadours into the Citie, to know how the Citizens flood affected towards him : vnto who m they (in flead of God faue the King) made answere; God faue our Citie walles. Whereat the King waxing wroth, facked the Citie forthwith, beheaded and hanged divers of the inhabitants, and made such hauock, that ever fince it hath remained desolate. This was done in the yeare of the

Hegeira 915. In the Towne of Vrbs, are to be seene fundry Monuments of the Romans, as namely Images of The Towne 20 Marble, and energ where vpon the Walles are fentences in Latin letters engraven: the Towne Walles are most artificially and sumptuously built. This Towne the Gother, being affisted by the man antiquie Moores surprised, when as it contained the chiefe treasure and wealth that the Romans enioved ties. in all Africa. Afterward, it remained for certaine yeares desolate, being at length notwithstan-

ding inhabited anew; yet fo, that it deserueth rather the name of a Village, then of a Towne. We have here given the Reader, with a small generall Map of Barbary and Egypt, a description of the Ruines of Carthage, with the Goletta and Bay of Tunis.

HONDIYs bu Map of Barbaric and Egypt.



ferwith in stead of a Towne-ditch to Confiantina. The North part is compassed with a well of great thicknesse: and there are two extreme narrow passages onely to enter into the Citie, one on the East part, and another on the West. The Citie gates are very large and stately. The on the Last part, and another on the West. The last egaces are very large and stately. The Crite it fell's contayneth aboue eight thousand Families. Buildings it hath very sumptuous, as namely, the Chiefe Temple, two Colledges, three or four Monafteries, and other such like. Here enerry Trade and Occupation hatha feuerall place affigued; and the Inhabitants are right honest and valuant people. Here is likewise a great Company of Merchants, whereof some sell Cloth and Wooll, others fend Oyle and Silke into Namidia, and the refidue exchange Linnen-cloth and other Wares for Slaues and Dates. Neyther are Dates so cheape in any Region of all Barbarie besides. The Kings of Timis vitally commit the Gouernment of Confiamina vnto their 10 Also without the Citie stand many fayre and ancient buildings. About a mile and a halfe eldeft Sonnes.

from the Citie standeth a ceraine criumphall Arch , like vnto the triumphall Arches at Rome, which the groffe common people thinke to haue beene a Caftle, where innumerable Deuils remayned, which (they fay) were expelled by the Mahametans, when they came first to inhabit Constanting. From the Citie to the River they deteend by certaine flaires hewen out of the Rocke; and neere vnto the River standeth a little house so artificially cut out of the mayne Rock, that the Roofe, Pillars and Wals are all of one continued fubflance, and here the women of Con-Hot Baths.

| Hot Baths | Harting with their Linnen. Neere vnto the Citic likewife there is a certaine Bath of hot was a leading the Rockes: in this Bath are great flore of Snalles, which the fond 20.

A fond and fenfeleffe Superfittion.

women of the Citie call Deuils : and when any one falleth into a Feuer or any other Difeafe, they suppose the Snailes to be the Authours thereof. And the onely remedie that they can apply vpon fach an occasion, is this: first, they kill a white Hen, putting her into a Platter with her feathers on, and then very folemnely with Wax-candles they carry her to the Bath, and there leave her; and many good fellowes there are, which fo foone as the filly women haue fet downe their Hensat the Bath, will come fecretly thither, and conuay away the Hens to their owne Kitchins. Somewhat farther from the Citie Eastward, there is a Fountayne of extreme cold water, and neere with it flandeth a certaine building of Marble adorned with fundry Hiecold water, and necrevitors transcent accreame outloing or manote accreament fundry Hieroglyphicall Pictures or Emblemes, such as I have feene at Rome, and at many other places of
Emple. But the common people imagine that it was in times pasta Grammar Schoole, and be30 cause both the Masters and Schollers thereof were most vicious, they were transformed (say

The ancient Townco Bona. Saint Augustine Bishop of

they) into marror.

Bons, was in ancient times called Hippo, where the Reuerend Father Saint Angulfine was once Bishop. It was in processe of time subdued by the Gother, and was afterward surprized and Bishop. It was in processed to the subdued by the Gother, and was afterward surprized and Bishop. burnt to ashes by Humen the third Patriarke after Mahumet, And many yeeres after they built a new Towne within two miles, of the stones that were brought from the ruines of Bona: which new Towne they called Beld Elhuneb, that is, the Citie of the fruit called Zizaphus or Isiuba, by reason of the great abundance of that fruit: the which they vie to dry in the Sunne, and to keepe till Winter. It contayneth almost three hundred Families, and all the houses and buildings thereof are very base, saue one onely Temple which standeth next the Sea. The In-49 habitants are all of an ingenuous disposition, some of them being Merchants, and the residue Artizans. Here is great flore of Linnen-cloth wouen, the greatest part whereof is carryed to

Great store of

Euery Friday they have neere wnto the Towne wals a Market, which is well frequented even till night. Not farre from hence there is a certaine place in the Sea, abounding with great store of Corall : and because the Townesmen know not how to fish for the same, the King of Timis licenfed certaine Merchants of Genoa to fish for it: who in regard of the continual affaults of Pirates, because they could not speed of their purpose, they obtayned leave also of the King to build a Cattle nerve vinto the place - but that the Townelmen would in no cate permit. I aying, that the Growfern times pail took their Townelmen wile, and that it was afterward re- 50 that the Growfer in times pail took their Towne by fuch a wile, and that it was afterward re- 50 that the Growfer in times pail took their Towne by fuch a wile, and that it was afterward re- 50 that the Growfer in times pail took their Towne by fuch a wile, and that it was afterward re- 50 that the Growfer in times pail took their Towne by fuch a wile, and that it was afterward re- 50 that the Growfer in times paid took their Towne by fuch a wile, and that it was afterward re- 50 that the Growfer in times paid to the control of the Growfer in times paid to the Growfer in times p couered againe by the King of Tunis.

The Citic of Tebe fa.

Tebella, compassed with an high wall made of such stones, as are to be seene voon the Colosso at Rome : neither faw I, to my remembrance, any fuch wals in all Africa or Escope; and yet the houses and other buildings are very base. Through part of this Citie runneth a great River: and in the Market, and divers other places stand certaine Marble Pillars, having Epigrams and Sentences with Latine Letters engraven vpon them; there are also other square Pillars of Merble couered with Roofes. The Plaines adiacent, albeit, very dry, yet are they most fruitfull for one courera with resources. The ratiness analysis, mean, very only, yet are they must institute to Corne. Fine miles from hence, grow fuch abundance of Wall-nut-trees, a you would take them to be four thicke Forrest. Neere who this Towne standers a certaine hill full of mighty them to be four thicke Forrest. Caues, wherein the common people fay, that Giants inhabited of old: but it is most euident, that those Caues were digged by the Romanes at the lame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 certaine it is that the stones whereof the Citie wals confist, were taken cut of those Rockes. The Inhabitants are people of a couetous, inhumane, and beaftly disposition; neither will they vouchlafe to looke vpon a stranger insomuch, that Eldabag a famous Poet of the Citie of Malaga

true of Oneen D'ao, which camefrom Plenica in Siria.

Raines of Carthage.

The famous and ancient City Carthage was built at the first by a certaine people that came iner gartes 1 ne ramous and ancient City Caribage was built at the first by a certaine people that came the of tables, out of Syria. But others lay that it was founded by a * Queene. The African Chronicler Ibms * Berlings * Radiables of positions that it was hadden as a state of the state o Barbaria and Capis being taken by the Mahametans, the Inhabitants of them hoth went vnto Caribage, whither the principall Romans and Gothes had retired themselves, who endeauored by all meanes to withstand the Mahumetans: and after many skirmishes the Romans fled to Bons. and the Goils left Carthage for a pray vnto the Mahumetans; to that it remained defolate many yeares after, till a certaine Mahumetan Patriarke, called Elmahdi brought in new Colonies: howbeit, he could scarce furnish the twentith part with Inhabitants. There are to be seene at this day certaine ruines of the Citie walls, till you come to a deepe and large Ciferne. And there remaineth as yet also a certaine Conduit, which conveyeth water to the Citie from a Mountaine thirtie miles diffant, being like vnto the Conduit of the great Palace at Rome. Necre vnto Carthase like wife are certaine great and ancient buildings, the description whereof is out of my remembrance. On the West and South part of this Citie, are divers Gardens replenished with all kind of fruits, which are carried from thence to Tunis in great abundance. The plaines adioyning to this Citie are exceeding fruitfull, though not very large for vpon the North part thereof lieth a Mountaine, the Sea, and the Gulfe of Tunis: on the East and South parts it ioyneth to the Plaines of Benfart. But now this Citie is fallen into extreme decay and milery : Merchants Shops there are not about twenty or fine and twenty at the most : and all the houses of the Towns being scarce fine hundred, are most base and beggerly. In my time here was a stately 20 Temple and a faire Colledge alfo, but no Students were therein. The Townesman, though verie milerable, yet are they exceeding proud withall, and feeme to pretend a great flew of Religion. And the greater part of them are either Gardiners or Husbandmen, and are grieuously op-

The building of cair 2003.

Tunis fubi e & vn:o Abdul-Munen and other Kings of

pressed with the Kings daily exactions. This Citie is called by the Latines, Tunetum, and by the Arabians Turus, which name they thinke to be corrupt, because it fignifieth nought in their language; but in old time it was cal-Citie of Tuest. led Tarfis, after the name of a Citie in Afia. At the first it was a small Towne built by the Africans upon a certaine Lake, about twelue miles distant from the Mediterran Sea. And upon the decay of Carthage, Tunis began to increase both in buildings and inhabitants: for the inhabitants of Carthage were loth to remaine any longer in their owne Towne, fearing least some Armie 30 would have been fent out of Europe: wherefore they repaired vnto Tunis, and greatly enlarged the buildings thereof. Afterward came thither one Hucha Vimen, the fourth Mahumetan Patriarke, who perswaded the Citizens, that no Armie or Garrison ought to remaine in any Sea Townes; wherefore he built another Citie, called Cairaoan, being distant from the Mediterran Sea thirtie and from Tunis almost an hundred miles: vnto which Citie the Armie marched from Tunis, and in the roome thereof other people were fent to inhabite. About an hundred and fiftie yeares after, Cairaoan being facked by the Arabians, the Princethereof was expelled, and became Gouernour of the Kingdome of Bugia: howbeit, he left certaine Kinsmen of his at Timis, who gouerned that Citie. And ten yeares after, Bugin was taken by lofeph, the sonne of Tessin, who gouerned that Citie. Annuelly encountry of the man again by appropriate former to replie with feeing the humanitie of the forefaid Prince, would not expell him out of his Kingdome: but fo 40 long as it remained to the faid Prince and his posteritie, sofeth canfed it to be free from all moleflation. Afterward, Abdul Mumen, King of Maroco, having recovered Mahdia from the Chriflians, marched toward Tunis, and got possession thereof also. And so Tunis remained peaceably vnder the Dominion of the Kings of Maroco, fo long as the Kingdome was gouerned by the faid Abdul, and his some Ioseph, and their successors lacob and Manfor. But after the decease of Manfor, his sonne Mahumet Ennastr made warre against the King of Spaine, by whom being vanqui hed, he fled to Marcco, and there within few yeares ended his life. After him succeeded his brother Ioseph, who was slaine by certaine fouldiers of the King of Telensin. An so vpon the death of Mahumet, and of his brother Tofeph, the Arabians began to inhabite the Territorie of Tunis, and to make often fiedges and affaults against the Citie it felfe : whereupon the Gouernour of Tionis aduertifed the King of Maroco, that vnlelle prefent aide were fent, he must be constrained 50 to yeeld Tunis vnto the Arabians. The King therefore fent a certaine valiant Captaine, called Habduluabidi, and borne in Simil, a Citie of Granada, with a Fleete of twentie Sayles vnto Tunis, which he found halfe destroyed by the Arabians: but so great was his eloquence and wifdome, that he restored all things to their former estate, and received the yearely tribute. After Habdulushudi succeeded his sonne Abu Zachberia, who in learning and dexteritie of wit, excelled his father. This Abu built a Cattle vpon a certaine high place of the West part of Tunis, which he adorned with faire buildings, and with a most beautifull Temple. Afterward, taking his journey vnto the Kingdome of Tripolis, and returning home by the Southerne regions, he gathered tribute in all those places : so that after his decease, he left great treasure vnto his sonne. 60 And after Abn succeeded his sonne, who grew so insolent, that hee would not be subject to the King of Maroco, because hee perceived his Kingdome to decay: at the same time also had the Marin Family gotten possession of the Kingdome of Fez, and so was the Familie of Bens Zeijez possessed of the Kingdomes of Telensin and Granada. And so while all those Regions were

at mutuall diffention, the Dominions of Tunis began mightily to encrease; insomuch, that the King of Tunis marched vnto Telensin, and demanded tribute of the inhabitants. Wherefore the King of Fez, who as then laid fiege against Marboe, craued by his Ambassadors the King of Tunis his friendship, and with great gifts obtained the same. Then the King of Twis returning home Conquerour from Telenfin, was received with great triumph, and was saluted King of all Afric s. becaute indeed there was no Prince of Africa at the same time comparable vnto him. Wherefor e he began to ordaine a Royall Court, and to choose Secretaries, Counsellors, Captaines, and other Officers appertaining to a King; after the very fame manner that was vied in the Court

CHAP.I.S. 5. The King of Tunis , Saluted King of all Africa.

of Marses. And from the time of this King even till our times, the Kingdome of Tunis hath to 10 prospered that now it is accounted the richest Kingdome in all Africa. The faid Kings io ne reigning after his fathers death, enlarged the Suburbs of Tunn with most stately wildings. Without the Gate called Bed Suvaica he built a freete, containing to the number of three hundred Families : and he built another street at the Gate, called Bed el Manera, consisting of more then a thousand Families. In both of these streets dwell great store of Artificers, and in the Areet last mentioned, all the Christians of Times, which are of the Kings Guard, have their abode, Likewife, there is a third freete built at the Gate next vnto the Sea, called Beb el Bahar, and being but halfe a mile distant from the Gulie of Tunss. Hither doe the Genoueles, Venetians, and all other Christian Merchants resort, and here they repose themselves out of

the tumult and concourse of the Moores: and this street is of fo great bignesse, that it contains neth three hundred Families of Christians and Moores; but the houses are very low, and of 20 fmall receit. The Families of the Citie, together with them of the Suburbs, amount almost to the number of ten thousand. This stately and populous Citie hath a peculiar place assigned for each Trade and Occupation. Here dwell great there of Linnen-weaters, and the Linnen that they weate is exceeding fine, and fold at a great price ouer all Africa. The women of this Towne

vice aftrange kind of spinning: for standing vpon an high place, or on the vpper part of the A strange house, they let downe their Spindles at a window, or through a hole of the plancher into a lower kind of spinroome, to that the weight of the Spindle makes the thread very equall and euen. The apparell ning. of their Merchants, Priests, and Doctors is very decent. Vpon their heads they were a Dulipan, which is couered with a great Linnen-cloath: the Courtiers likewife and the Souldiers weare all of them Dulipans, but not courred with Linnen. Rich men here are but few, by reason of the

exceeding scarcitie of all kind of graine : for a man cannot till a piece of ground, be it neuer so 30 neere the Citie, in regard of the manifold inuations of the Arabians. Corne is brought vnto them from other Regions and Cities, as namely, from Vrbs, from Beggi, and from Bona. Some of the Citizens of Tunis haue certaine Fields in the Suburbs walled round about, where they fow fome quantitie of Barley, and of other Corne : howbeit, the foyle is marueilous dry, and standeth in need of much watring : for which purpose euery man hath a pit, whereout with a certaine wheele turned about by a Mule or a Camell, and through certaine conueyances and passages made for the nonce, they water all the vpper part of their ground. Now confider (I pray you) what great crop of Corne can be reaped out of so little a Field, walled round about, and watred by fuch cunning and industrie. Bread they make very excellent, albeit they leave the Bran still among the Flower, and they bake their Loques in certaine Mortars, fuch as the Egyptians vie to beate Flaxe in. In this Citie they have no Fountaines, Rivers, nor Wells of fresh water: but

they all vie raine water taken out of Cifterns, fauing that there is a Fountaine in the Suburbs, from whence certaine Porters bring falt water into the Citie to fell, which they thinke to bee more wholesome and he for drinke then raine water. Other Wells there are that affoord most excellent water, which is referred only for the King and his Courtiers. In this Citie there is one most stately Temple, furnished with sufficient number of Priests, and with rich reuenues. Other Temples there be alto, but not endowed with fo ample reuenues: here are Colle iges likewife and Monasteries built after their manner, all which are maintained upon the common beneuolence of the Citie. There are certaine people in this Citie, whom a man would take to bee di- Madmen, te-

ftracted, which goe bare-headed and bare-footed, carrying stones about with them, and thele are uerence mad 50 reuerenced by the common people for men of fingular holineste. Moreouer, on the behalfe of men. one of these mad fellowes, called Sidi el Dahi; and for the residue of his fond Societie, the King of Tunis built one of the forefaid Monasteries, and endowed the same with most ample reuenues.

All the houses of this Citie are indifferently beautifull, being built of excellent stones, and adorned with much painting and carning. They have very artificiall pargettings or plaifter-works, which they beautifie with Orient colours; for Wood to carue vpon is very scarce at Tunis. The floores of their Chambers are paued with certaine thining and faire flones; and most of their houses are but of one storie high : and almost every house hath two Gates or entrances; one to-60 wards the threet, and another towards the Kitchin and other back-roomes, betweene which Gates they have a faire Court, where they may walke and conferre with their friends. Pouertie constraineth some of their women to leade an vnchast life : they are decently apparelled, and going foorth of the house, they weare vailes or maskes before their faces, like vinto the wo-

men of Fez: for with one Linnen-cloth they couer their fore-heads, and joyne thereto another Тууу 3

which

which they call Setfare: but about their heads they lap fuch fardels of Linnen, as they feeme comparable to the heads of Giants. Most part of their substance and labour they bestew youn Perfumes and other fuch vanities. They have here a Compound, called Lhafis, whereof who iceuer eateth but one Ounce, falleth a laughing, difporting, and dallying, as if he were halfe drunken. and is by the faid Confection maruelloully provoked vnto luft.

Tunic his Court, and of Ceremonies there vied.

So soone as the King of Tunis hath by inheritance attained to his Kingdome, all his Nobles. Doctors, Priests, and Indges, bind themselves by solemne Oath vnto him. Immediatly after any Kings death, his fonne and heire apparent fucceedeth in the Kingdome: then the chiefe Officer of the Court (called the Munafia because he is the Kings Vice-Roy or High Deputie) presenteth himselfe forthwith vnto the new King, and gineth vp an account of all things which hee did 10 while the old King lived : and then at the Kings appointment, everie of the Nobles receive Offices from the Manafid according to their feuerall places of dignitie. Another principall Officer there is called the Mefuare, that is, the Great Commander and Gouernour of the warlike forces: who hath authority to increase or diminish the number of Souldiers, to give them their pay, to leuie Armies, and to conduct the same whither he thinketh good. The third Officer in dignitie. is the Castellan, who with his Souldiers taketh charge of the Castle, and looketh to the safesuard of the Kings owne person : and he allotteth punishments vnto such prisoners, as are brought into the faid Castle, as if he were the King himselfe. The fourth Officer, is the Gouernour of the Citie. whose dutie is to administer Iustice in the Common-wealth, and to punish Malefactors. The fifth Officer, is the Kings Secretarie, who hath authoritie to write, and to give answere in the Kings name : he may open also, and reade any Letters what soener, except such as are sent vnto the Cafellan and Governour of the Citie. The fixth, is the Kings Chiefe Chamberlaine, who is to furnith the Walles with Hangings, to appoint vnto every man his place, and by a Mestenger to affemble the Kings Counfellors; and this man hath great familiaritie with the King, and hath acceffe to speake with him, as often as he pleaseth. The seuenth in dignitie, is the Kings Treasurer. who receiueth all Customes, Tributes, and yearely revenues, and payeth them, with the Kings consent, vnto the Munafid. These are the chiefe Officers vnder the King; of the ref due (left I should seeme tedious to the Reader) I have of purpose omitted to intreate of. I could here make a large difcourie of the Kings vices that now reigneth (at whose hands I confesse my selfe to haue received great benefits) but that is not my purpose at this present : this one thing I can affirme, that he is maruellous cunning to procure money out of his fubicets purses. But he himselfe liueth fometimes in his Palace, and fometimes in Gardens, in the company of his Concubines, Musicians, Stage-plaiers, and such like. When he calleth for any Musician, he is brought in blindfold or hoodwinked in manner of a Hawke.

Mulician

El Mabdia, founded in our time by Mabdi the first Patriarke of Cairaoan upon the Mediterran sea, and fortified with strong Walls, Towers, and Gates, hath a most noble Hauen belonging otherwife cale thereto. Mabdi when he first entred into this Region, fained himselfe in an vnknowne habite to be descended of the linage of Mahumet, whereby growing into great fauour of the people, hee was by their assistance made Prince of Cairaon, and was called El Mahdi Califa: afterward trauelling fortie dayes journey Westward into Numidia to receive tribute due vnto him, he was ta-40 was by the Prince of Segelmeffe, and put in prilon; howbeit, the faid Prince of Segelmeffe being presently moued with compassion toward him, restored him to his former libertie, and was for his good will not long after flaine by him : afterward tyrannizing ouer the people, and perceiuing iome to conspireagainst him, he erected this Towne of Mahdia, to the end hee might there and lafe refuge when need required. At length one Beiezid, a Mahametan Prelate (whom they called the Canallerr, or Knight of the Affe, because that riding continually vron an Aste, hee conducted an Armie of fortie thousand men) came vnto Cairaoan: but Mabdi fled vnto his new Towne, where with thirtie Sayle of ships, lent him by a Mahumetan Prince of Cordons, he fo valiantly encountred the Enemie, that Beiezid and his sonne were both slaine in that battell : afterward returning to Carraoan, hee grew in league and amitie with the Citizens, and fo the 50 gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for many yeares.

Of the great Citic of

The famous Citie of Cairaoan, otherwise called Caroen, was founded by Hucha, who was fent generall of an Armie cut of Arabia Defarta by Hutmen, the third Muhumetan Califa. From the Mediterran Sea, this Citie is diftant fixe and thirtie, and from Tunis almost an hundred miles : neither was it built (they fay) for any other purpose, but onely that the Arabian Armie might fecurely rest therein with all such spoiles, as they wonne from the Barbarians, and the Numidians, He environed it with most impregnable Walls, and built therein a sumptuous Temple, Supported with stately Pillars. The laid Huche after the death of Humen was ordained Prince of Muchania, and governed the same till the time of Qualid Califa, the sonne of Habdul Malic, who as then reigned in Danasco. This Qualid fent a certaine Captaine, called Muse, the ionne of Nofair, with an huge Armie vnto Cairaoan; who having flated a few dayes with his Ar-60 mie not farre from Cairanan, marched Westward, sacking and spoyling Townes and Cities, till hee came to the Ocean Sea shore, and then hee returned towards Cairaean againe. From whence hee fent as his Deputie a certaine Captaine into Mauritaria, who there allo conquered

ARiver of hot water. The Lake of Leavers. CHAP.I.S.5.

many Regions and Cities: infomuch that Mufe being mooued with a lealous emulation, commanded him to flay till himfelfe came. His faid Deputie therefore, called Tarich, encamped himselfe not farre from Andalussa, whither Muse within four moneths cane vnto him with an huge Armie; from whence both of them with their Armies croffing the Seas, arrived in Granada, and fo marched by land against the Gothes. Against whom Theodoricus, the King of Gorbs, oppoing himselfe in battaile, was milerably vanquished. Then the forelaid two Captaines with all good fuccesse proceeded even to Castilia, and ficked the Citie of Toledo. where among I much other treature, they found many Reliques of the Saints, and the very same Table whereat Chrift fate with his bleffed Apofler; which being couered with pure Gold, and Reliquese 10 adorned with great flore of precious stones, was esteemed to bee worth halfe a million of Ducats, and this Table, Mase carrying with him, as if it had been all the Treasure in Spaine, returned with his Armie ouer the Sea, and bent his courfetoward Cairaoan. And being in the meane space fent for by the Letters of Qualid Califa, hee fayled into Egypt: but arriving at Alexandris, it was told him by one Heleian, brother vnto the laid Califa, that the Califa his brother was fallen into a most dangerous disease: wherefore hee wished him not to goe presently vnto Damasco, for feare least if the Califa died in the meane season, those rich and sumptious Spoyles should be wasted and dispersed to no end. But Muse little regarding this counsell, proceeded on to Damasco, and presented all his Spoyles to the Califa, who within fine dayes after deceased. After whom his brother succeeding Califa, deprived Muse of his dignitie, and 20 Substituted one lezul into his toome, whose some, brother, and nephewes succeeding, governed the Citie of Cairagan, till fuch time as the Familie of Qualid was deprined of that dignitic, and one Elasleb was appointed Lieutenant, who governed not the Towne as a Califa: from that time the Mahumetan Califas leauing Damases, remoued vnto Bagaded, as wee find recorded in a certaine Chronicle. After the decease of Elagleb, succeeded his sonne, and the gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for an hundred threescore and tenne yeares, till such time as

they were deprived thereof by one Mahdi ('alifa. But at the same time when Elagleb was Gouernour, the Citie of Cairaoan was fo increased, both with inhabitants and buildings, that a Towne, called Recheda, was built next vnto it, where the Prince with his Nobles vied to re-

maine. In his time also the Ile of Sicilia was wonne: for Elagles sent thither a certaine Cap-cific subdued 30 taine, called Haleama, who built vpon the faid Hand a Towne in stead of a Fort, calling it ac- by the Gouercording to his owne name, Halcama; which name is vied by the Sicilians even till this pre-nour of caifent. Afterward this new Towne was befieged by certaine people that came to aide the Siei- rance, lians. Whereupon one Afed was fent with an Armie, and so the Moores Forces being augmented, they conquered the refidue of Sicilia, by which meanes the Dominions of Carraoan began wonderfully to increase. The Citie of Cairaoan standeth vpon a Sandie and Delart Plaine, which beareth no Trees, nor yet any Corne at all. In this Citie for certaine yeares the studie of the Mahumetan Law mightily flourished, so that here were the most famous Lawyers in all Africa. It was at length destroyed, and replanted againe with new inhabitants, but it could never attaine vnto the former estate. At this present it is inhabited by none but Leather-40 dressers, who send their Leather vnto the Cities of Numidia, and exchange it also for Cloath

A mile and a half to the South of El Hamma beginneth a certain River of hot water to Spring, A River of hot which being brought through the midft of the Citie by certaine Chanels, is fo deepe that it will water. reach up to a mans nauell: howbeit, by reason of the extreme heate of the water, there are but few that wil enter thereinto. And yet the inhabitants vie it for drinke, having fet it a cooling almost an whole day. At length this River not far from the Towne maketh a certain Lake, which The Lake of is called the Lake of Leapers: for it is of wonderfull force to heale the difease of kprofie, and Legers. to cure leprous fores: wherefore neere vnto it are divers Cottages of Leapers, some of whom are restored to their health. The faid water tasteth in a manner like Brimstone, so that it will noso thing at all quench a mans thirt, whereof I my felfe haue had often triall,

Gerbi being neere vitto the firme land of Africa, and confifting of a Plaine and Sandy ground, Of the lie of aboundeth exceedingly with Dates, Vines, Olives, and other fruits, and containeth about eigh. Giris o Zechi,

teene miles in compalle. Old Tripolis built also by the Romans, was after wonne by the Goths, and laftly by the Matheretic this Historic bunnetans, in the time of Califa Hemar the lecond. Which Mahametans having befreged the Go- was taken by pernour of Tripoli like moneths together, compelled him at length to flee vnto Carthage. The Italian Pirotes, Citizens were partly flaine, and partly carried captine into Egypt and Arabia, as the most famous and carried thence to African Historiographer, Ibnu Rachich reporteth.

After the destruction of old Tripolis, there was built another Citie of that name : which Ci- Theold Cite on tie being insironed with most high and beautifull walls, but not very strong is situate upon a of Tripolis. Sandy Plaine, which yeeldeth great flore of Dates. The houses of this City are most stately, in The new Citie respect of the Houses of Tunis; and here also every trade and occupation hath a feuerall place. Earlient. Weauers here are many. They have no Wells nor Fountaines; but all their water is taken Pleney of out of Cifterns, Corne in this Citic is at an exceeding rate; for all the Fields of Ingoli are Doses,

Yyyy 3

CHAP.I. \$,6.

as fandy and barren as the fields of Numidia. In this Citie were many faire Terryles and Col-Lalges built, and an Hospitall also for the maintenance of their owne poore people, and for the entertainment of ftrangers. Their fare is very bale and homely, being onely Belis or Dumplings made of Barley meale: for that Region affoordeth fo fmall quantitie even of Barley, that he is accounted a wealthy man that hath a bushell or two of corne in store. The Citizens are most of them Merchants; for Tripolis Handeth neere vnto Numidia and Tunis, neither is there any Citie or Towne of account betweene it and Alexandria : neither is it farre distant from the Iles of Sicilia and Malta: and vnto the Port of Tripolis Venetian Ships yeerely relort, and bring thither great store of Merchandize. This Citie hath alwayes beene subject vinto the King of Tunis : but when Abulhafen the King of Fez besieged Tunis, the King of Tunis was conftrained 10 with his Arabians to flee into the Delarts. Howbeit, when Abulhafen was conquered, the King of Tunis returned to his Kingdome : but his fubicets began to oppose themselves against him : and fo that Common-wealth was afterward grieuously turmoyled with civill diffensions and warres. Whereof the King of Fez hauing intelligence, marched the fifth yeere of the faid civill warre with an armie against the Citie of Tunis, and having vanquished the King thereof. and constrained him to see vnto Constantina , he io straitly besieged him, that the Citizens of Constantina seeing themselves not able to with stand the King of Fez, opened their Citie sates to him and to all his armie. Whereupon the King of Tunis was carried captive vnto Fez. and was afterward kept a while priloner in the Castle of Septa. In the meane featon Tripolis was by a Genouele Fleete of twenty failes furprifed and tacked, and the Inhabitants carried a- 20 way captine. Whereof the King of Fez being advertised, gave the Genouefes fiftie thousand Ducats, ypon condition, that he might emicy the Towne in peace. But the Genoueles having furrendred the Towne, perceived after their departure, that most part of their Ducats were counterfeit. Afterward, the King of Tunis beeing restored vnto his former libertie by Abuselim King of Fez, returned home vnto his Kingdome, and to the government thereof remained vnto him and his posteritie, till Abubar the sonne of Human together with his young forme was flaine in the Caitle of Tripolis by a nephew of his, who afterward viurped the Kingdome: but he was flaine in a battell which he fought against Habdul Mumen, who presently there won became Lord of Tripolis. After him succeeded his sonne Zacharias, who within a few moneths dyed of the pettilence. After Zacharias, Mucamen the fonne of Hefen, and cou- 20 fin to Zacharias was cholen King; who beginning to tyrannize ouer the Citizens was by them expelled out of his Kingdome : and afterward a certaine Citizen was advanced vnto the Royall Throne, who gouerned very modefuly. But the King which was before expelled, fent an army of Souldiers against Tripolis, who looking the field, were all of them put to flight. Afterward, the King that began to Raigne fo modefelly, prooued a very tyrant, and being murthered by his kinfmen, the people made choise of a certaine Nobleman, leading as then a Heremits life, and in a manner against his will appointed him their Gouernour ; and fo the gouernment of the Citie of Tripolis remained vnto him and his polleritie, till fuch time as King Ferdinando fent Tripalis furpri- Don Pedro de Nauarra against it : who on the studden encountring this City, carried away many captines with him. The Gouernour of Tripolis and his fonne in-law were fent prifoners vnto Messina. Where, after certaine yeeres imprisonment, they were restored by the Emperour Charles the fift, vnto their former liberty, and returned vnto Tripolis, which Towne was afterward destroyed by the Christians. The Cattle of Tripolis being enuironed with most strong

zed by Pedro de Nauarra.

The Mountaines are omitted.

ð. V I.

walles, begin (as I vinderstand) to be replanted with new Inhabitants.

Collections taken out of IOHN LEO his fixt Booke of the Historie of Africa. N Barca they have not any Corne growing at all. But Corne and other necessaries

are brought vnto them by Sea from Sicilia, which that every of them may purchale, they are constrained to lay their fonnes to gage, and then goe rob and risle travellers to redeeme them againe. Neuer did you heare of more cruell and bloody theeues: for after they have robbed Merchants of all their goods and apparell, they powre warme milke

the:ues, Teffet.

The Arabians

of Barca most

cru. Il and

bloody

downe their throats , hanging them up by the heeles upon some tree, and forcing them to cast their gorge, wherein the lewd varlets search diligently for gold, suspecting that the Merchants swallowed up their Crownes before they entired that dangerous Defart. which ancient Towne built by the Numidians, neere vinto the Libyan Defarts, and enuironed

Being about to describe all the Cities and Townes of Numidia, I will first begin with Teffet: 60 with walles of Sun-dried Bricke, deferueth scarcely the name of a Towne; and yet containeth foure hundred Families. It is compaffed round about with fandy Plaines, fauing that neere vnto the Townegrow some store of Dates, of Mill-feed, and of Barley, which the miserable

Townsfinen vie for food. They are constrained also to pay large Tribute vnto the Arabians Inhabiting the next Defarts. They exercife traffque in the land of Negroes and in Guzula, informuch, that they frend most of their time in forren Regions. They are of a blacke colour, and deflitute of all learning. The women indeed teach their young children the first radiments of learning, but before they can attaine to any perfection, they are put to labour, and to the Ploughrayle. The faid women are fonewhat whiter then other women : fome of them get their litayle. The tand women are romewing of wooll, and the refidue fpend their time in idlenesse. Such as are ning by spinning and carding of wooll, and the residue spend their time in idlenesse. Such as are uing by ipinning and carding of wood, accounted richelf in this Region, possesses but very few Cattell. They Till their ground with a Horie and a an Horse and a Camell, which kind of Plowing is observed throughout all Numidia.

Plowing with a Horse and a Camell.

10 Guaden fitnate vpon the Numidian Defart, neere vnto Libia, is Inhabited by most miserable Thevillage of and groffe people. Heere groweth nothing but Dates : and the Inhabitants ar at luch enmitte Guaten. with their neighbours, that it is dangerous for them to goe abroad. Howbeit, they give them- The best calfelues to hunting, and take certaine wilde Beafts called Elamth, and Offriches, neither doe they led Elamth. eate any other flesh. All their Goats they reserve for milke. And these people also are blacke of

The Province of Darabeginneth at Mount Atlas, extendeth it felle Southward by the De. The Province farts of Libia, almost two hundred and fiftie miles, and the breadth thereof is very narrow. All of Dava. the Inhabitants dwell upon a certaine River which is called by the name of the Province. This River fometime to overfloweth, that a man would thinke it to be a Sea, but in Summer it Dara River. fo diminishe h, that any one may passe over it on foot. It so be it oversloweth about the begin- The quality

to unminute in, that any out may paire out it out to the too Region: if not, there followed great thereof.

20 ming of Aprill, it bringeth great plenty vito the whole Region: if not, there followed great thereof.

fearcite of Corne. Vpon the banke of this River there are fundry Villages and Hamlets, and divers Cattles also, which are environed with walles made of Sunne-dried Bricke and Mortar. All their Beames and Planchers confift of Date-trees, being notwithstanding wift for the purpose; for the wood of Date-trees is not solid, but flexible and spungie. On either side of the said Pole from the space of fine or fixe miles, the fields abound exceedingly with Dates, which with good keeping will last many yeeres; and as heere are divers kinds of Dates, so they are sold at fundry prices : for a busheli of some is woorth a Ducat, but others wherewith they feede their Horses and Camels, are scarce of a quarter so much value. Of Date-trees some are male and se- Thestrange male: the male bring foorth flowers onely, and the female fruit: but the flowers of the female properties will not open, valetie the boughes and flowers of the male be toyned vato them: And if they be Palme or Date tree,

30 bee not toyned, the Dates will prooue starke naught, and containe great stones. The Inhabitants of Dara line vpon Barley and other groffe meate; neither may they eate no bread but one_ Bread daintie; ly your Festivall dayes. Their Castles are Inhabited by Gold-smithes and other Artificers, and force all the Regions lying in the way from Tombuto to Fez : in this Province also there are three or foure proper Townes, frequented Merchants and strangers, and containing many Shops and Temples. But the principall Towne called Beni Sabih, and Inhabited with most valiant and liberall people, is divided into two parts, either part having a feuerall Captaine or Gouernour: which Gouernours are oftentimes at great diffension, and especially when they moutten their arable Grounds, by reason that they are so skanted of water. A Merchant they will most courteoully entertaine a whole yeere together, and then friendly dimissing him, they 40 require nought at his hands, but will accept fuch liberality as he thinkes good to bellow vpon them. The laid Gouernours to often as they fall a skirmishing, hire the next Arabians to aide them, allowing them daily halfe a Duca: for their pay, and sometimes more, and giving them

their allowance enery day. In time of peace they trim their Harquebuzes, Hand-guns, and other weapons : neither faw I euer (to my remembrance) more cunning Harquebuziers then at this place. In this Prouince groweth great store of Indico, being an herbe like vnto the wilde Indico. woad, and this herbe they exchange with the Merchants of Fez and Tremsen for other wares. Corne is very scarce among them, and is brought thither from Fez and other Regions, neither haue they any great flore of Goats or Horses, vato whom in stead of Prouender they give Dates, and a kind of herbe also which groweth in the Kingdome of Naples, and is called by the Sc. Neapolitans Farfa. They feed their Goats with the Nuts or Stones of their Dates beaten to Goats fed with

powder, whereby they grow exceeding fat, and yeeld great quantity of milke. Their owne Dates, food is the flesh of the Office and Goats, being vislauory and displeasant in taste. Likewise they she office kill and eate Offriches, the flesh whereof tasteth not much vnlike to the flesh of a dunghill- The Prouincocke, fauing that it is more tough and made of a fironger fmell, especially the Offriches legge: ceso: Seedwhich confliteth of filme flesh. Their women are faire, fat, and courteous : and they keepe divers messes, thenes, flanes which are brought out of the land of Negroes.

This Territory extending it felfe along the River of Ziz from North to South almost twentie The Territory co miles, contayneth about three hundred and fiftie Catiles, befides Villages and Hamlets: three of seguings, of which Cafiles are more principall then the reft. The first called Tenegent, and contilling of a thousand and moe Families, standeth neere vnto the Citie of Sege messe, and is inhabited with great flore of Artificers. The fecond called Tebuhafan, flandeth about eight miles to the South of Tinegent, being furnished also with great numbers of Inhabitants, and fo fr quented with

Merchants, that there is not in that respect the like place to bee found in all the whole Region heides. The third called Mamun, is reforted vnto by fundry Merchants, both lewes and Moores. These three Castles have three severall Governours, who are at great distention among them-

felues. They will oftentimes destroy one anothers Chanels, whereby their fields are watered. which cannot without great cost be repayred againe. They will show the Palme-trees also to the very flockes: and vnto them a company of lewd Arabians affociate themselves. They Coyne both Siluer and Gold money: but their Gold is not very speciall. Their Siluer Coyne weigheth foure graines a piece, eightie of which pieces are esteemed to bee worth one piece of their Gold Coyne. The lewes and Arabians pay excessive Tribute here. Some of their principall men are exceeding rich, and vie great Traffique vnto the Land of Negros: whither they transport Wares of Barbarie, exchanging the same for Gold and Slaues. The Territory of Segelmesse line vpon Dates, except it be in certaine places where some Corne grew. Here are infinite numbers of Scorpions, but no Flyes at all. In Summer time this Region is extremely hot, and then are the Rivers so destitute of water, that the people are constrayned to draw salt water out of certaine Pits. The faid Territory contayneth in circuit about eighty miles, all which, after the deftruction of Segelmesse, the Inhabitants with small cost walled round about, to the end they might not be molested by continuall inrodes of Horsemen. While they hued all at vnitie and concord, they retayned their libertie; but fince they fell to mutuall debate, their wall was razed, and each faction inuited the Arabians to helpe them, under whomby little and little they

bers of Scor-

were brought in fubication. The Towne or The common people together with one of our African Cosmographers, called Bieri. suppose that the Towne of Segelmeffe was built by Alexander the Great, for the reliefe of his ficke and wounded Souldiers. Which opinion feemeth not probable to me : for I could never reade that Alexander the Great came into any part of their Regions. This Towne was situate vpona Plaine neere vinto the Riuer of Ziz, and was enuironed with most stately and high wals, even as in many places it is to be seene at this present. When the Mahumetans came first into Africa. the Inhabitants of this Towne were lubicet vinto the Family of Zeneta; which Family was at length dilpostessed of that authority by King Infeph tie Sonne of Tesfin, of the Family of Luntion. The Towne it selfe was very gallantly built, and the Inhabitants were rich, and had great Traffique vnto the Land of Negros. Here flood flately Temples and Colledges also, and great 30 ftore of Conduits, the water whereof was drawne out of the River by Wheeles. The Ayre in this place is most temperate and holesome, sauring that in Winter it aboundeth with ouermuch

The Caffle of

Vinnelbefen is a forlorne and base Castle, founded by the Arabians also, sue and twentie miles from Segelmefe vron a Delart, directly in the way from Segelmeffe to Dara. It is enuironed with blacke wals, and continually garded by the Arabians. All Merchants that passe by , pay one fourth part of a Duckat for every Camels lode. My felfe travelling this way vpon a time in the company of fourteene lewes, and being demanded how many there were of vs. wee faid thirteene, but after I began particularly to reckon, I found the fourteenth and the fifteenth man amongit vs, whom the Arabians would have kept Pritoners , had wee not aftermed them to bee 40 Mahumetans : howbeit not crediting our words, they examined them in the Law of Mahumet, which when they perceived them indeed to vinderstand, they permitted them to de-

The Castles of Figbig (land vpon a certaine Defart, manuellously abounding with Dates.

The three Castles of Figbig (land vpon a certaine Defart, manuellously abounding with Dates.

The women of this place weane a kind of cloth in forme of a Carpet, which is to fine, that a man would take it to be Silke, and this Cloth they fell at an excessive rate at Fez, Telensin, and other places of Barbarie. The Inhabitants being men of an excellent wit, doe part of them vie Traffigue to the Land of Negros, and the refulue become Students at Fez. and so soon as they haue attayned to the degree of a Doctor, they returne to Numidia, where they are made either Priests or Senators, and proue most of them men of great wealth and reputation. From Segelmele, the faid Cafiles are diftant almost an hundred and fiftie miles Eastward.

This great and large Region of Tegorarin in the Numidian Delart, standing about an hundred and twentie miles Eastward of Tesebit, contayneth fiftie Castles, and about an hundred Villages, and yeeldeth great plentie of Dates. The Inhabitants are rich, and haue ordinarie Traffique to the Land of Negros. Their fields are very apt for Corne, and yet by reason of their extreme drought, they fland in need of continuall watering and dunging. They allow vinto flrangers houses to dwell in, requiring no money for rent but onely their dung, which they ke.pe most charily : yea, they take it in ill part if any ftranger eafeth himselfe without the doores. Flesh is very scarce among them : for their soyle is so dry, that it will scarce nourish any Cattell at all : they keepe a few Goats indeed for their Milkes fake : but the flesh that they care is of Ca- 60 mels, which the Arabians bring vnto their Markets to fell: they mingle their meate with falt lewerexpelled. Tallow, which is brought into this Region from Fez and Tremizen. There were in times past many rich lemes in this Region, who by the meanes of accrtaine Mahumetan Picacher, were at length expelled, and a great part of them flaine by the feditious people; and that in the very

fame yeare when the lewes were expelled out of Spaine and Sicily.

CHAP. 1. S.6. Courteous entertayment of strangers. Deadly Scorpions.

The ancient Towne of Techors was built by the Numidians upon a certaine Hill, by the foot The Towne of The Townser of The Town which River Handeth a draw-bridge. The wall of this Town Technic. was made of free flone and limes, but that part which is next vnto the Mountayne hath inftead of a wall an impregnable Rocke opposite against it: this Towne is distant five hundred miles Southward from the Mediterran Sea, and about three hundred miles from Tegorarim. Families Southward to the number of fine and twenty hundred : all the houses are built of Sunne dryed Hospitalisis Brickes, except their Temple which is somewhat more flately. Heere dwell great store both and love to of Gentlemen and Artificers: and because they have great abundance of Dates, and are destitute strangers. of Corne, the Merchants of Configning exchange Corne with them for their Dates. All stran-

Io gers they favour exceedingly, and friendly diffmife them without paying of ought. They had rather march their Daughters vnto strangers, then to their owne Citizens: and for a Dowry they give some certaine portion of Land, as it is accustomed in some places of Europe. So great and surpailing is their liberalitie, that they will heape many gifts vpon ffrangers, albeit they are fure neuer to fee them againe.

The Gouernour at this prefent called Habdulla, is a valiant and liberall yong Prince, and most courteous vnto frangers, whereof I my felfe converting with him for certayne dayes, had good

This Region is extremely hot, fandie and destitute both of Water and Corne : which wants are partly supplyed by their abundance of Dates. It contayneth to the number of fine Townes

20 and many Villages, all which we purpose in order to describe. Their foyle in Pescara, yeeldeth nought but Dates. They have beene governed by divers The Towne of Princes for they were a while subject vnto the Kings of Tunis, and that to the death of King Pelfara. Humen, after whom succeeded a Mahumetan Priest: neyther could the Kings of Tunis curr fince that time recourt the Dominion of Pelara. Here are great abundance of Scorpions, and it is present death to bee stung by them : wherefore all the Townelmen in a manner depart

into the Countrey in Summer time, where they remaynetill the moneth of Nonember. Not fare from Desses are divers Monuments of Antiquitie like vnto Sepulchres, wherein are found fundry pieces of Siluer Coyne, adorned with certayne Letters and Hieroglyphicall

Figures, the interpretation whereof I could neuer find out. The ancient Towne of Caphfabuilt also by the Romanes, had for certayne yeeres a Gouernour The Towne of of their owne: but afterward being facked by one Hucha a Captaine of Hutmen Califa, the wals thereof were razed to the ground; but the Caille as yet remayneth, and is of great force; for the wall thereof being fiue and twentie Cubits high, and fiue Cubits thicke, is made of excellent flones, like vnto the flones of Vefpafians Amphitheatre at Rome. Afterward the Towne wals were re-edified, and were destroyed againe by Mansor, who having slaine the Gouernour of the Towne and all the Inhabitants, appointed a new Gouernour ouer the fame place. Now this Towne is very populous, all the houles thereof, except the Temple and a few other buildings, being very deformed and base, and the streets are paued with blacke stones, like vnto the ftreets of Naples and Florence. The poore Inhabitants are continually oppressed with the ex-40 actions of the King of Times. In the middeft of the Towne are certaine fquare, large, and deepe Fountaines walled round about, the water whereof is hot and vnfit to be drunke, vnleffe it be fet an houre or two a cooling. The Ayre of this place is very vnholesome, insomuch that the greatest part of the Inhabitants are continually ficke of Feuers. People they are of a rude and illiberall disposition, and vokind voto strangers : wherefore they are had in great contempt by all other Africans. Not farre from this Towne are fields abounding with Dates, Oliues, and Pome-eitrons: and the Dates and Oliues there are the best in all the whole Prouince: heere

Hauing hitherto described all the Regions of Numidia, let vs now proceed vnto the description of Libys, which is divided into fine parts, as we fignified in the beginning of this our Difcourse. We will therefore beginne at the dry and forlorne Desart of Zanhaga, which bordereth Westward vpon the Ocean Sea, and extendeth Eastward to the Salt-pits of Tegaza. Northward it abutteth vpon Sus, Haccha, and Dara, Regions of Numidia; and Southward it Aretcheth to the Land of Negros, adiopning it felfe vnto the Kingdomes of Gualata and Tomhuto. Water is here to be found fearce in an hundred miles trauell, beeing falt and vnfauourie, Water fearces and drawne out of deepe Wels, especially in the way from Segelmelle to Tombuto. Heere are great flore of wilde beafts and creeping things, whereof wee will make mention in place conuenient. In this Region there is a barren Defart called Azaoad, wherein neyther water nor any Habitations are to be found in the space of an hundred miles; beginning from the Well of 60 Azacad, to the Well of Aracan, which is diffant from Tombute about one hundred and fiftie

is likewile most excellent Oyle. The Inhabitants make themselues Shooes of Buckes Lea-

miles. Here both for lacke of water and extremitie of heate, great numbers of men and beaft Heate and Not farre from Agadez, there is found great store of Manna, which the Inhabitants gather Great Here of in certaine little Veffels, carrying it while it is new vnto the Market of Agadez : and this Maria

Manna beeing mingled with water they efteeme very daintie and precious Drinke. They put ir also into their Pottage, and beeing so taken, it hath a maruellous force of refrigerating or cooling, which is the cause that here are so few Diseases, albeit, the Ayre of Tombus and Agadez he most vaholiome and corrupt. This Delart firetcheth from North to South almost three

The refidue of the Libyan Defart, that is to fay, from Angela to the River of Nilm is inhabi-Lengto, Berdos, ted by certayne Arabians and Africans, commonly called Lenata: and this is the extreme Eaand others are omitted. therly part of the Delarts of Libra.

This Region bordering vpon the Ocean Sea, contayneth many Villages and Hamlets, and is The Region inhabited with most beggerly people. It standeth betweene Numidia and Libya, but somewhat 10 of New. necret vnto Libra. Here groweth neyther Barley nor any other Corne. Some Dates here are, but very vnfauourie. The Inhabitants are continually molefled by the Arabians inuafions: and

The Region of Salt Mines. Tombuto.

Berdeen.

fome of them traffique in the Kingdome of Gualata. In the Region of Tegaza, is great store of Salt digged, being whiter then any Marble. This Salt is taken out of certaine Caues or Pits, at the entrance whereof fland their Cottages that worke in the Salt Mines. And these Workmen are all strangers, who sell the Salt which they digge ynto certaine Merchants, that carrie the same vpon Camels to the Kingdome of Tombuto, where there would otherwise be extreme scarcitie of Salt. Neyther haue the said Diegers of Salt any victuals but such as the Merchants bring vnto them : for they are distant from all inhabited places, almost twentie dayes Iourney, infomuch, that oftentimes they perish for lacke of 20 food, when as the Merchants come not in due time vnto them : Moreouer, the South-east wind doth to often blind them, that they cannot liue here without great perill. I my felfe continued three dayes among ft them, all which time I was conftrayned to drinke Salt water drawne out of certaine Wels not farre from the Salt Pits.

The Region uan conducted fcent onely; as arthis prefent the Carauans of Mareco are conducted ouer the Libyer

The Region of

Berdoes, a Region fituate in the midft of the Libyan Defart, and standing almost five hundred miles from Nilus, contayneth three Cafiles and fine or fixe Villages, abounding with most ex-A whole Cara- cellent Dates. And the faid three Castles were discouered eighteene yeeres agoe, by one Hamar, in manner following : the Carauan of Merchants wandring out of the direct way . had 2 certaine blind man in their company which was acquainted with all those Regions: this blind Guide riding foremost upon his Camell, commanded some Sand to be given him at every miles 20 end, by the smell whereof hee declared the situation of the place : but when they were come within fortie miles of this Region, the blind man fmelling of the Sand, affirmed, that they were not farre from some places inhabited , which some believed not, for they knew that they were distant from Egypt foure hundred and eightie miles, so that they tooke themselves to bee neerer vnto Augela. Howbeit, within three dayes they found the laid three Castles, the Inhabitants Defarts to Tom- whereof wondering at the approach of strangers, and being greatly aftonied, presently shut all their Gates, and would give the Merchants no water to quench their extreme thirft. But the Merchants by mayne force entred, and having gotten water fufficient, betooke themfelues againe to their Iourney

Alguechet also being a Region of the Lybian Defart, is from Egypt an hundred and twentie miles distant. Here are three Castles and many Villages abounding with Dates. The Inhabitants are blacke, vile, and couetous people, and yet exceeding rich; for they dwell in the midway betweene Egipt and Gaoga. They have a Governour of their owne, notwithstanding they pay Tribute vnto the next Arabians.

d. VII.

Extracts taken out of IOHN LEO his fewenth Booke of the Historie of Africa, wherein he intreateth of the Land of Negros, and of the Confines of Egypt.

Bichri and Mefbudi.

Vr ancient Chroniclers of Africa, to wit, Bichri and Mefhudi , knew nothing in the Land of Negros, but onely the Regions of Guechet and Cano: for in their time all other places of the Land of Negros were undiscouered. But in the yeere of the Hegeira three hundred and eightie, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan which came unto Barbarie, the refidue of the faid Land was found out, beeing as then inhabited by great numbers of people, which lived a brutish and favage life, without any King, Governour, Common-wealth, or knowledge of Husbandry. Clad they were in skinnes of beafts, neither 60 had they any peculiar wives : in the day time they kept their Cattell; and when night came they rejorted ten or twelue, both men and women into one Cottage together, ving havrie skinnes in flead of beds, and each man choofing I is Leman which hee had most fancie vnto.

Warre they wage against no other Nation, nor yet are defrous to trauell out of their owner

Countrey. Some of them performe great adoration vnto the Sunne-rifing: others, namely the people of Gualata, worthing the fire : and fome others, to wit, the Inhabitants of Guaga , approach (after the Egyptians manner) neerer vnto the Christian Faith. These Negros were The Neeres first subject vnto King loseph the Founder of Marces, and afterward vnto the fine Nations of subject vnto Libya; of whom they learned the Mahumetan Law, and divers needfull handi-crafts: a while 10/10 King of after when the Merchants of Barbarie began to refort vnto them with Merchandize, they learned the Barbarian language also. But the foresaid fine People or Nations of Libya divided this land so among themselves, that every third part of each Nation possessed one Region. Howbe-

it, the King of Tombuto that now raigneth, called Absacre Izchia, is a Negro by birth : this Absacre Izchia, 10 Absacre after the decease of the former King, who was a Lybyan borne, flue all his sonnes, and so vsurped the Kingdome. And having by warres for the space of fitteene yeere conquered many large Dominions, hee then concluded a league with all Nations, and went on Pilgrimage to Mecca, in which Journey hee fo confumed his Treasure, that he was constrained to borrow Acca. great furnies of money of other Princes. Moreour, the fifteen Kingdomes of the land of Negra known to vs, are all finance you the Ruser of Negra, and you other Rusers which fall therinto. And all the land of Negros standeth betweene two vast Defarts, for on the one side ly- Nigr. eth the maine Defart betweene Nionidia and it, which extendeth it selfe vnto this very land: and the South fide thereof adioyneth vpon another Defart, which firetcheth from thence to the maine Ocean : in which Defart are infinite Nations vnknowen to vs. bothby reason of the huge 20 distance of place, and also in regard of the discritic of Languages and Religions. They have no traff que at all with our people, but we have heard oftentimes of their traff que with the Inha-

The Region of Gualata in regard of others is very small : for it containeth onely three great A description bitants of the Ocean Sea shoare. Villages, with certaine Granges and fields of Dates. From Num it is diffant Southward about of the Kingthree hundred, from Tembras Northward fine hundred, and from the Ocean Sea about two hundred miles. In this Region the people of Lubys, while they were Lords of the land of Negros, ordained their chiefe Princely feate : and then great flore of Barbarie Merchants frequented Gualata: but afterward in the Raigne of the Mightie and rich Prince Heli, the faid Merchants leating Gualata, began to refort with Tombute and Gago, which was the occasion that the Re-leating Gualata, began to refort with Tombute and Gago, which was the occasion that the Re-30 gion of Gualata grew extreme beggerly. The language of this Region is called Sungai, and the Inhabitants are blacke people, and most friendly vnto strangers. In my time this Region was conquered by the King of Tombuto, and the Prince thereof fled into the Defarts, whereof the King of Tombute having intelligence, and fearing leaft the Prince would returne with all the people of the Defarts, graunted him peace, conditionally that he should pay a great yeerely Tribute vnto him, and so the said Prince hath remained Tributarie to the King of Tombuto vntill this prefent. The people agree in manners and fashions with the Inhabitants of the next Defart. Heere groweth some quantity of Mil-seed, and great store of a round and white kinde of pulse, the like whereof I neuer saw in Europe; but flesh is extreme scarce among them. Both the This round & men and the women doe so couer their heads, that all their countenance is almost hidden, Heere white pulse is men and the women doe to couer their neads, that an their counterrance is a most indeed the deep is no forme of a Common-wealth, nor yet any Gouernours or Judges, but the people lead a most in the West in the West.

The Kingdome called by the Merchants of our Nation Gheneoa, by the natural Inhabitants A description thereof Gemi, and by the Portugals and other people of Europe Giomes, it and eth in the middle of the King debeween Galdata on the North, Tembats on the East, and the Kingdome of Melli on the dome of Gio South. In length it containeth almost fine hundred miles, and extended two hundred and fifty Weextend the miles along the River, and bordereth vpon the Ocean Sea in the same place, where Ni- Country of ger fallerh into the faid Sea. This place exceedingly aboundeth with Barley, Rice, Cattell, Fi-Guinnie furthes, and Cotten : and their Cotten they fell vnto the Merchants of Barbarie, for cloth of Eu- ther, by applythes, and Cotten and their Cotten they feet who the intercraints on between, in the Coincis of Gold in the repe, for Brazen veffels, for Armour, and other fuch commodities. Their Coincis of Gold in the showen to the So without any flampe or inficiption at all they have certaine Iron-money allo, which they vie the shout and the state of finall value, some pecces whereof weigh a pound, fome halfe a pound, and gions where the state of the state o fome one quarter of a pound. In all this Kingdome there is no fruit to be found but only Dates, knowen. which are brought hither either out of Gualata or Numidia. Heere is neither Towne nor Ca. The natural file, but a certaine great Village onely, wherein the Prince of Ghinea, together with his commodisies Priets, Doctors, Merchants, and all the principall men of the Region inhabite. The walles of their houses are built of Chalke, and the roofes are courred with Strawe : the Inhabitants are their houses are built of Chalke, and the rootes are courred with Strawe: The innaorants are Priests, & Do-clad in blacke or blew Cotten, wherewith they court their heads also but the Priests and Do-dors clothed Cross of their Law goeapparelled in white Cotten. This Region during the three moneths of in white,

July, August, and September, is yeerely enuironed with the overflowings of Niger in manner 60 of an lland; all which time the Merchants of Tombuto conneigh their Merchandize hither in certaine Canoas or narrow Boats made of one tree, which they rowe all the day long, but at night they binde them to the shoare, and lodge themselues vpon the land. This Kingdome was The Prince of subject in times past voto a certaine people of Libja, and became afterward Tributarie voto tubicet in times pattento a certaine people of Liepa, and became atterward i finutarie this king Soni Heli after whom fucceed a Soni Heli Izebia, who kept the Prince of this Region pri-

The Kingdom

The Region of Melli extending it felfe almost three hundred miles along the fale of a River which falleth into Niger, bordereth Northward vpon the Region last described, Southward vp. on certaine Defarts and drie Mountaines, Weltward, vpon huge Woods and Forrests, firetching to the Ocean Sea shoare, And Eastward upon the Territorie of Gago. In this Kingdome there is a large and ample Village containing to the number of fixe thouland or moe Families, and called Melli, whereof the whole Kingdome is fo named. And heere the King hath his place of Refidence. The Region it selfe yeeldeth great abundance of Come, Fleth, and Cotton. Heere are many Artificers and Merchants in all places : and yet the King honorably entertain noth all frangers. The Inhabitants are rich, and have plenty of wares. Heere are great flore of 10 Temples, Priests, and Professors, which Professors read their Lectures onely in the Temples. because they have no Colledges at all. The people of this Region excell all other Negros in wit. civility, and industry; and were the first that embraced the Law of Mahamet, at the fame time when the Vncle of lofeph the King of Maroco was their Prince, and the Gouernment re-

Tembuto is so called of a certaine Towne so called, which (they say) King Mense Suleiman

ther he rideth upon a Camell, which is lead by some of his Noblemen; and so he doth likewise

vinto this King must first fall downe before his feet, and then taking vp earth, must sprinkle it

vpon his owne head and thoulders: which cuftome is ordinarily observed by them that never

causeth their goods to be confiscate. Heere are great store of Doctors, Judges, Priests, and other

learned men, that are bountifully maintained at the Kings coft and charges. And hither are

brought divers Manuferry's or written Bookes out of Barbarie, which are fold for more money

then any other Merchandize. The Coine of Tombuto is of Gold without any flampe or finer-

feription : but in matters of finall value they vie certaine fiels brought hither out of the King-

dome of Persia, foure hundred of which thels are woorth a Duckat : and fixe peeces of their

Golden Coine with two third parts weigh an ounce. The Inhabitants are people of a gentle

and cheerefull disposition, and spend a great part of the night in singing and dancing through 50

mained for a while vnto his posteritie : at length Izobia subdued the Prince of this Region, and The Prince of made him his Tributarie, and to oppreffed him with grieuous exactions, that he was fearce able to maintaine his Family. founded in the veere of the Hegeira 610, and it is fittate within twelue miles of a certaine branch of Niger, all the houses whereof are now changed into Cottages built of Chalke, and conered with Thatch. Howbeit, there is a most stately Temple to be seene, the walles where-

Mells fore-fued by Fach.a. The Kingdom O'Turkum Tomb:to was conquered by ths King of of are made of stone and lime; and a Princely, Palace also built by a most excellent workeman Ma 000 1 589. of Granada. Heere are many shops of Artificers, and Merchants, and especially of such as weave from whence Linnen or Cotten cloth. And hither doe the Barbarie Merchants bring cloth of Europe, All he had for the women of this Region except Mail-fernants goe with their faces couered, and fell all neyeerely Tribere mighty ceffary victuals. The Inhabitants, and especially strangers there residing, are exceeding tich infirms of ina. formuch, that the King that now is, married both his daughters vato two rich Alerchants. nev.Bur the ney, out the cit I wishaue Heere are many welles, containing most sweet water; and so often as the River Niger overfloweth, they conneigh the water thereof by certaine fluces into the Towne. Corne , Cattell, altered that Milke, and Butter, this Region yeeldeth in great abundance : but falt is very scarce heere; for it 30 ftate fince. is brought hither by land from Tegaza, which is fine hundred miles distant. When I my selfe The King of was here. I law one Camels load of Salt fold for eightic Duckats. The rich King of Tombuta Temby ohis daught ... smar- hath many Plates and Scepters of Gold, some whereof weigh one thousand and three hundred pounds; and he keepes a magnificent and well furnished Court. When he travelleth any whirich merchanis Great Scarcity of falcin Tam. when hee goeth to warfare, and all his Souldiers ride vpon Horles. Whofeeuer will fpeake nute which commodity might be fupfaluted the King before, or come as Ambassadours from other Princes. He hath alwayes three thousand Herlemen, and a great number of footmen that shoot poyloned arrowes, attending 40 English Merchants to their voon him. He to leadly hateth all Iewes, that he will not admit any into his Citie : and whatfocult Barbarie Merchants he understandeth to have any dealings with the loves, he prefently gaine.

Iewes hated. Shels wied for Coine like as all the ftreets of the Citie; they keepe great itore of men and women-flanes, and their Towne

Reuerence v.

fed before the

Poyfoned ar-

King of Tom-

is much in danger of fire : at my fecond being there halfe the Towns almost was burnt in five dome of Congo. houres space. Without the Suburbs there are no Gardens nor Orchards at all. Cabra a large Towne built without walles in manner of a Village, standeth about twelve miles from Tombato vpon the River Niger: and heerefuch Merchants as travell vnto the Kingdomes of Ghines and Melli embarke themselues. Neither are the people or buildings of this Towns any whit inferiour to the people and buildings of Tombuto ; and hither the Negros refort in great numbers by water. In this Towne the King of Tombuto appointeth a Judge to decide all controuerlies : for it was tedious to goe thicker to oft as need should require. I my felfe am acquainted with Abu Bacr, firnamed Pargama, the Kings Brother, who is blacke in colour, but most beautifull in mind and conditions. Heere breed many diseases which exceedingly di- 60 minish the people; that by reason of the fond and loathsome mixture of their meates; for they mingle Fish, Milke, Butter, and Flesh altogether. And this is the ordinary food also in Tom-

The great Towne of Gago being vinwalled also, is diffare Southward of Tomburo almost foure. The Icone hundred miles, and enclineth formewhat to the South-East. The houses thereof are but meane, and Kingdome except those wherein the King and his Courtiers remaine. Here are exceeding rich Merchants: and hither continually refort great flore of Negros, which buy Cloath here brought out of Barbarie and Europe. This Towne aboundeth with Corne and Flesh, but is much destrute of Wine. Trees, and Fruites. Howbeit, here is plenty of Melons, Citrons, and Rice: here are many Wells also containing most sweet and wholsome water. Here is likewise a certaine place where slaves are to be fold, especially upon such dayes as the Merchants vie to affemble; and a young slave of fifteene yeares age is fold for fixe Duckats, and fo are children fold alfo. The King of this Regi-Io on hath a certaine private Palace, wherein hee maintaineth a great number of Coucubines and Slanes, which are kept by Eunuches: and for the guard of his owne person, he keepeth a suffici-

ent troope of Horsemen and Footmen. Betweene the first Gate of the Palace and the inner part thereof, there is a place walled round about, wherein the King himfelfe decideth all his fubicats controversies : and albeit, the King be in this function most diligent, and performeth all things thereto appertaining yet hath he about him his Counfellors, and other Officers; as namely, his Secretaries, Treasurers, Factors, and Auditors. It is a wonder to see what plenty of Merchandize is daily brought hither, and how costly and sumptuous all things be. Horses bought in Enrope for ten Duckats, are here sold againe for forty, and sometimes for fifty Duckats a piece. There is not any Cloath of Europe to courfe, which will not here be fold for foure Ducass and Il; Rich fale for

and and if it be any thing fine, they will give fifteene Duckats for an ell : and an ell of the Scarlet Cloth. of Venice, or of Turkie Cloath is here worth thirty Duckats. A Sword is here valued at three or Swords. foure Crownes, and so likewife are Spurs, Bridles, with other like commodities : and Spices alfo are fold at an high rate: but of all other com nodities, Salt is most extremely deare. The reticine Salt deare. of this Kingdome containeth nought but Villages and Hamlets inhabited by Husbandmen and Shepheards, who in Winter couer their bodies with beafts skins; but in Summer they goe all paked faue their privie members : and fometimes they weare vpon their feete certaine shooes made of Camels Leather. They are ignorant and rude people, and you shall scarce find one learned man in the space of an hundred miles. They are continually burthened with grieuous exactions, to that they have fearce any thing remaining to live vpon.

30 Guber standeth Eastward of the Kingdom of Gago almost three hundred miles between which Of the Kingtwo Kingdomes lieth a valt Defart, being much destitute of water, for it is about forty miles dome of Guber. diffant from Niger. The Kingdome of Guber is enuironed with high Mountaines, and contain neth many Villages inhabited by Shepheards, and other Heardsmen. Abundance of Cattell here are both great and small : but of a lower stature then the Cattell in other places. At the inundation of Niger all the fields of this Region are overflowed, and then the inhabitants cast their seed Their manner into the water onely. In this Region there is a certaine great Village containing almost fixe Corne at the thousand Families, being inhabited with all kind of Merchants; and here was in times past the Inundation of thousand ramines, oring minative was flaine by Izchia the King of Tombuto, and his Nigro.

The King of Tombuto, and his Nigro. fonnes were galt, and accounted among the number of the Kings Eunuchs.

He which pleaseth the inhabitants of the Delart best, is sure to be King of Agadez. The re- Gaber flaine by He which pleateth the inhabitants of the Delart bett, is sure to be King of engages. There-fidue of this Kingdome lying Southward is inhabited by Shepheards and Heardimen, who dwel Cottages in certaine Cottages made of boughes, which cottages they carrie about vpon Oxen from place moueable. to place. They erect their Cottages alwaies in the same field where they determine to feede their cattell; like as the Arabians also doe.

The great Province of Cano standeth Eastward of the River Niger almost fine hundred miles. The Pro-The greatest part of the inhabitants dwelling in Villages are some of them Heardsmen, and uince of come. others Husbandmen. Here groweth abundance of Corne, of Rice, and of Cotton. Also here are many Defarts and wild woodie Mountaines containing many Springs of water. In these Woods grow plenty of wild Citrons and Lemons, which differ not much in tafte from the best of all In the midit of this Prouince standeth a Towne called by the same name, the walles and houses

50 whereof are built for the most part of a kind of Chalke, The inhabitants are rich Merchants, and most civill people. Their King was in times past of great puissance, and had mighty troopes of Horsemen at his command; but he hath since been constrained to pay tribute vnto the Kings of Zegzeg and Cafena. Afterward, Ifchia the King of Tombuto faining triendship vnto the two The Kings of foreland Kings treacherously flew them both. And then hee waged warre against the King of less and of Caro, whom after a long fiedge he took, and compelled him to marrie one of his daughters, reftoring him againe to his Kingdome, conditionally that he should pay vnto him the third part of all by individue his tribute : and the faid King of Tombuso hath fome of his Courtiers perpetually refiding at Kingo Tom-Cano for the receit thereof.

Calena bordering Eastward vpon the Kingdome last described, is full of Mountaines, and drie fields, which yeeld not with standing great store of Barlie and Mill-feed. The inhabitants are all extremely blacke, having great notes and blabber lips. They dwell in most forlorne and base Cottages: neither shall you find any of their Villages containing about three hundred Families. And befides, their base estate they are mightily oppressed with famine: a King they had in

of Zests

times past whom the forefaid Ischia slew, fince whose death they have all beene tributarie vn-

The South-east part of Zegzeg bordereth vpon Cano, and it is diftant from Casena almost an hundred and fiftie miles. The inhabitants are rich, and have great traffique vinto other Nations. The Kingdom Some part of this Kingdome is plaine, and the relidue Mountainous, but the Mountaines are extremely colde, and the Plaines intollerably hot. And because they can hardly indure the sharpeneffe of Wincer, they kindle great fires in the midft of their houses, laying the coles thereof vnder their high bediteads, and so betaking themselues to sleepe. Their fields abounding with water, are exceeding fruitfull, and their houses are built like the houses of the Kingdome of Cawater, are executing individual, and their owne in times path, who being flaine by Ifchia (as is aforefaid) 10 they have ever fince beene fabiect vnto the faid Ifchia.

The Region of Zanfara bordering Eathward vpon Zegzeg, is inhabited by most base and Ruflicall people. Their fields abound with Rice, Mill, and Cotton. The Inhabitants are tall in stature and extremely blacke, their vifages are broade, and their dispositions most saluage and brutish. Their King also was staine by Ischia, and themselves made tributarie.

The Region of Zanfara. The King of Zanfara (laine by lachia, and the people mide tributary. of Gungara. Gold. Izchia,

Thele Kingdomes of Guangara adjoyneth South-easterly vpon Zanfara. Southward thereof lyeth a Region greatly abounding with gold. But now they can have no traffique with forren Nations, for they are molested on both sides with most cruell enemies. For Westward they are opposed by Ischia, and Eastward, by the King of Borno. When I my selfe was in Borno. King Abraham having leuted an huge Armie, determined to expell the Prince of Guangara out 20 of his Kingdome, had hee not been hindred by Homar the Prince of Gaoga, which beganne to affaile the Kingdome of Borno. Wherefore the King of Borno being drawne home into his owne Countrey, wasenforced to give over the conquelt of Guangara. So often as the Merchants of Guangara traued into the forefaid Region abounding with gold, because the waves are fo rough and difficult that their Camels cannot goe vpon them, they carry their wares vpon flaues backes; who being laden with great burthens, doe vfually trauell ten or twelue n.iles a day, Yea, fome I faw that made two of those journies in one day : a wonder it is to see what heavy burthens these poore slaves are charged withall; for besides the Merchandize, they carry victuals also for their Masters, and for the Souldiers that goe to guard them.

ctuals allo for their matters, and to the Brown of Borno, bordering Wellward vpon the Province of Guangara, and from thence extending Eastward fine hundred miles, is diffant from the Fountaine of Niger almost an hundred and fiftie miles, the South part whereof adioyning vnto the Defart of Set, and the North part vnto that Defart which lyeth towards Barca. The Inhabitants, in Summer goe all naked fane their prime members which they couer with a peece of leather : but all Winter they are clad in skinnes, and have beds of skinnes alfo. They embrace no Religion at all, being neiligion: yeuve ther Christians, Mahumetans, nor lewes, nor of any other Profession, but living after a brutish manner, and having wives and children in common; and (as I vnderstood of a certaine Merchant that abode a long time among them) they have no proper names at all, but every one is nicknamed according to his length, his fatnesse, or some other qualitie. They have a most puissant named according to instelligeti, instantial prince, being lineally defeeded from the Libyan people called Bardoa. He is at perpetuall enmitie with a certaine people inhabiting beyond the Defart of Sen; who in times past, marching with an huge army of footemen ouer the faid Delart, waited a great part of the Kingdome of Borno. Whereupon the King of Borno fent for the Merchants of Barbarie, and willed them to bring him great flore of Horles: for in this Countrey they wie to exchange Horles for flaues, and to giue fifteene, and sometimes twenty flaues for one horse. And by this meanes there were abundance of horses brought : howbeit, the Merchants were constrained to stav for their flaues till the King returned home conquerour with a great number of Captines, and have norchigi- fatisfied his creditors for their Horfes. The King feemeth to be maruellous rich; for his Spurres, on, bau ngno his bridles, platters, diffies, pots, and other veff-ls wherein his meate and drinke are brought to ms orinies, practers, unines, poes, and the chaines of his Dogs and Houndes are of gold also. so Howbeit, this King is extremely couetous, for he had much rather pay his debts in flaues then

Gaoga bordering Westward upon the Kingdome of Borno, and extending Eastward to the Confines of Nubia, adioyneth Southward vnto a certaine Defart, fituate vpon a crooked and winding part of Nilus, and is enclosed Northward with the frontiers of Agypt. It firetcheth from East to West, in length five hundred miles , and as much in breadth. They have neither The Kingdom humanitie nor learning among them, but are most rusticall and sauage people, and especially shole that inhabite the Mountaines, who goe all naked fauing their printies: Their houles are made of boughes and rafts, and are much subject to burning, and they have great abundance of Cattell, whereanto they give diligent attendance. This Prince greatly honoreth all learned men, 60 and especially such as are of the linage of Mahumet, I my selie being in his Court, a certaine Noble-man of Damiata brought him very rich and royall gifts; as namely, a gallant Horfe, a Turkish Sword, and a Kingly robe, with certaine other particulars, that cost about an hundred and fiftie Duckats at Caro: in recompence whereof, the King gaue him fine flanes, fine Camels,

Izchia.

CHAP.I.S.8. Nilus not nauigable betweene Nubia and Egypt.

fine hundred Ducats of that Region, and an hundred Elephants teeth of wonderfull bigness. nue numered Ducats of that tegron, and any of the Kingdome last described, and stretching from phence vn. The Kindome Nuisia bordering Weltward vpon the kingdome late teachinest, and intercently from pinetre visit of Naisa, is enclosed on the South-fide with the Defart of Geran, and on the North-fide with of of Naisa, to Nilla, is enclosed on the South-fide with the Confines of Egypt. However, the Confines of Egypt. However, the Confines of Egypt. When the Research of the Researc principall Towne of this Kingdome called Dangala, is exceeding populous, and contayneth to twice Nation the number of ten thousand Families. The Kingdome of Nubic is most rich in Corne and Su- and Egypt. gar, which notwithstanding they know not how to vie. Also in the Citie of Dangala there is The rich Comgar, which notwithitanding they know not now to vie. And in the Crite of modities of great plentie of Ciuet and Sandal-wood. This Region aboundeth with Inory likewife, because modities of Nubia. Nobel.

No heere are fo many Elephants taken. Heere is also a most strong and deadly poyson; one graine Most strong whereof being dinided amongst ten persons, will kill them all within lesse then a quarter of an Poyson. houre : but if one man taketh a grain, he dyeth thereof out of hand. An ounce of this Poyson is fold for an hundred Duckats; neyther may it be fold to any but to fortaine Merchants, and whosoeuer buyeth it is bound by an Oath not to vie it in the Kingdome of Nabia. All fuch as buy of this Poylon are constrayned to pay as much vnto the King, as to the Merchant : but if any man felleth Poylon without the Princes knowledge, he is prefently put to death. The people themselves are called Bugiba, and are most base and miserable, and line onely wpon Milke, Butha Camels fieln, and the fielh of fuch beafts as are taken in those Defarts. Some times they receive Tribute of the Gouernour of Suachen, and sometimes of the Gouernours of Dangala. They had once a rich Towne situate voon the Red Sea called Zibid, whereunto belonged a commodious 20 Hauen, being opposite vnto the Hauen of Zidem, which is fortie miles distant from Mecca. But an hundred yeares fince it was destroyed by the Soldan, because the Inhabitants received certaine Wares which should have beene carried to Mecca, and at the sametime the famous Port of Zibid

ò. VIII. Notes of principall things in Iohn Leo his eight Booke of the Historic of Africa.

was destroyed, from whence notwithstanding was gathered a great yeerely Tribute.

HONDIVS bis Map of Egypte



The Kingdom of Rerna. Where no religious fer Ceremonies are, on better notice of fuch parts, alway an observation of and communication with the Deuil is found where men acknowledge no God as in B:efil,&c. Alio Saurecs

Temples &c. The Defart of Fifteene or twentie flaues exchanged for He most noble and famous Prouince of Egypt bordering Westward vpon the Desarts of Barca, Namidia, and Libra; Eastward voon the Desarts lying betweene Egyptit felfeand the Red Sea: and Northward vpon the Mediterran Sea: is inclosed Southward with the Land of the forefaid people called Buyiba, and with the River of Ni-

Egypt foure

lin. It fretcheth in length from the Mediterran Sea to the Land of the people called Bugiha, about foure hundred and fiftie miles: but in breadth it is very narrow; fo that it contayneth long.
The Courie of new she but a small distance betweene both the bankes of Nilm, and the barren Mountaynes bordering vpon the forefaid Defarts, being inhabited onely in that place where Nilm is separate from the faid Mountaynes: albeit, towards the Mediterran Sea it extendeth it felfe fomewhat broader. For Nilm about fourescore miles from the great Citie of Cairo is divided into two Io branches, one whereof running in his Chanell Westward, returneth at length into the mayne freame from whence her tooke his original, and haung passed about threescore miles beyond Cano, it distilled in the control of the other to Rofetto. And out of that which trendeth to Damiata iffueth another branch, which discharging it selfe into a Lake, passeth through a certaine gullet or strait into the Mediterran Sea, you the banke whereof flandeth the most ancient Citie of Teneffe: and this division of Nilm into so many streames and branches causeth Egypt (as I have beforesaid) to bee so narrow.
All this Province is plaine, and is most fruitfull for all kind of Graine and Pulse. There are most pleasant and greene Medowes, and great store of Geese and other Fowles. The Countrey people are of a swart and browne colour : but the Citizens are white. Garments they weare which are strait downe to their wastes, and broad beneath, and the sleeues likewise are strait. They coper their heads with a round and high habit, called by the Isalians a Dulipan. Their shooes are made according to the ancient fashion. In Summer they weare Garments of parti-coloured Cotton: but in Winter they vie a certayne Garment lined with Cotton, which they call Chebre: but the chiefe Citizens and Merchants are apparelled in cloth of Europe. The Inhabitants are of and honest, cheerefull, and liberall disposition. For their victuals they vie a kind of new and extreme falt Cheefes, and fowre Milke also artificially congealed: which fare albeit they account very daintie, yet cannot frangers digeft it, and into euery Dish almost they put sowre

A division of

Since the Mahumetans were Lords of Egypt, it hath beene divided into three parts. For the 30 Region from Carro to Refetto is called the shoare of Errif: and from Carro to the Land of Buoibe it is called Sabid, that is to fay, The firme Land : but the Region adiovning upon that branch of Naus, which runneth towards Damiata and Teneffe, they call by the name of Bechria or Maremma. All Egypt is exceeding fertile : but the Prouince of Sahid excelleth the two other parts for abundance of Corne, Cattle, Fowles and Flaxe; and Maremma aboundeth with Cotton and Sugar. Howbeit, the Inhabitants of Marenma, and Errif are farre more civill then the people of Sahid: because those two Prouinces lye neerer vnto the Sea, and are more frequented by European, Barbarian, and Allrian Merchants : but the people of Sahid have no conuerfation with ifrangers, except it be with a few Æthiopians.

The ancient Pedigree and Originall of the Egyptians. Gento. Mefraim is

The Egyptians (as Mojes writeth) fetch their originall from " Mefraim the Sonne of Chus, 40 the Sonne of Cham, the Sonne of Noe; and the Hebrewes call both the Countrey and the Inhabitants of Egypt by the name of Mefraim. The Arabians call Egypt it felfe Mefre, but the Inhabitants Chibith. And Chibith (they fay) was the man, that first tooke vpon him the Gouernment of this Region, and beganne first to build houses thereon. Also the Inhabitants call themrecorded tobe felues by the same name : neither are there left any true Egyptians , besides a few Christians, which are at this present remayning. The residue embracing the Mahumetan Religion, haue Some of them mingled themselves among the Arabians and the Moores. This Kingdome was governed many yeares by the Egyptians themselues, as namely, by the Kings that were called Tharao, (who by their Monuments and admirable Buildings, feeme to have beene mightie Princes) and alto by the Kings called Ptolomei. Afterward, being fubdued vnto the Romane Empire, this Kingdome 50 fince the comming of Christ was converted vnto the Christian Religion, vnder the faid Romane Gouernment : fince the decay of which Empire, it fell into the possession of the Emperours of Constantinople; who being very carefull to maintayne this Kingdome, were at length deprived thereof by the Mahumetans, under the conduct of Hamrus the Sonne of Hafi being appointed Captaine Generall over the Arabian Armie of Homar, the second Califa or Mahametan Patriarke of that name : who permitting all men to have their owne Religion , required nought but Tribute at their hands. The faid Captaine built vpon the banke of Nilm, a certaine Towne called by the Arabians Fustato, which word fignifieth in their Language a Tabernacle for when he first vindertooke this Expedition, he marched through wild and defart places void of Inhabitants, fo that his Armie was confrayned to lye in Tents. The common people call this Towne Mefre Hatichi, that is to fay, the ancient Citie; in comparison of which Carro may not vn- 60 fitly be called the New Citie.

Neither Cairo nor any place neere vnto it, can by any likelihood challenge that they were at any time inhabited by the ancient Pharaos. But heere it is be noted, that the Nobilitie of the

ancient Egyians dwelt in times patt in the Region of Sabid beyond Cairo, in the Cities of Finns, of Manfelmin, and in other fuch famous Cities. Howbeit, after Egypt was conquered by the Romanes, the Egyptian Nobilitie planted themselues in the Region of Errif, voon the Sea shoare thereof, namely, about the Cities of Alexandria, Rofetto, and other famous Townes retayning as yet the Latine names. Also when the Romane Empire was translated into Greece, the faid Nobilitie still inhabited upon the Sea shoare, the Emperours Lieutenant residing at Alexandria: but after the Mahumetans got the Dominion of Egypt, the foresaid Nobiltie retyred themselves into the in-land, hoping thereby to reape a double commoditie: namely, first, in that they might bee a meanes to pacific the Kingdome on both fides of them; and fecondly, that they might bee to free from the inuations of the Christians, whereof they should have been in danger, had they

remayned any longer upon the Sea Coalf. The Ayre of this Countrey is hot and vnwholesome ; and it rayneth heere very seldome or neuer. And Rame is the cause of many Duscases m Egypt : for in taynic weather some of the E- The qualitie is neuer. And Rame is the came of mono programs, and reuers; and others vinto a firange kinde of the Ayrein Ewelling in ther priuy Members: which fwelling the Physicians impute vnto Salt Cheele and gree, Beefe, which are the common Dyet of the Egyptums. In Sommer time this Countrey is most Kaine vnwholextremely hot, for a remedie of which heat they build in euery Towne certaine high Towres, losses, having one doore aloft, another beneath, right cuer against the houses, through the tops whereof the wind paffing down-ward, doth iomewhat coole and refresh the Ayre: otherwise in re-

20 gard of the intolerable heat of the Sunne it were impossible for any man to line there. Sometime the Pelillence is fo hot among them, effect, illy at Cairo, that fometimes there eye twelse Excrease Petime the Pellilence is so hot among them, especially at Caro, that sometimes there eye two a thousand persons thereof on a day. But with the Freed Poxe, 1 thinke, that no other Countrey ynder Heauen is so molested, nor that contayneth so many people infected therewith. A- Maladie most bout the beginning of Aprill, they reape their Come, and having reaped it, they prefently use in E.pp. thrash the same; neyther shall you see one cate of their Come standing till the twentieth of

ray. The inundation or ouerflow of *Nilus* beginneth about the middeft of Iune, increasing after- The increase of ward for the space of fortie dayes, and for the space of other fortie dayes also decreating : du- Nilas. ring which time all the Cities and Townes of Egypt are like vnto llands, which none can come

30 vnto but by Boats and Barges. At this time also Nibu is very fit to be failed vpon with veffels of burthen; some whereof are so bigge that they will contayine fixe or seven thousand bushels of Come : and some hundreds of Cattell tegether : and in these Vessels they sayle onely Moggie, downe the streame : for against the streame or without the ouer-flowing time they would scarsly passe emptie. The Egyptians according to the increase of Nilus, doe foresee the plentie or dearth of the yeere following: as wee will more at large declare, when wee come to speake of the Iland of Nilus over against the clde Citie, where the inundation of Nulus is measured. Neither is it our purpose in this place particularly to describe all the Cities of Egypt , because our African Writers are of divers opinions thereabout; for some would have Egypt to bee a part of Africa, but others are of a contray minde. Divers there are that affirme, that part of Egyprad-40 ioyning vpon the Defarts of Barbarie, Namidia and Libya, to belong vnto Africa. Some others

afer ibe vnto Africa all those places that border upon the principall and mayne Channell of Ni-Iss : but as for other places, as namely, Marf, Fium, Semenud, Damanhore, Berelles, Teneffe, and Damiata, they thinke them not to be fituate in Africa: which opinion, I my selfe, alto vpon many and great reasons take to be true. Wherefore my purpole is to describe none other Cities but such as stand neere the mayne and principall Channell of Nilus.

The ancient Citie of Bostri built by the Egyptians upon the Mediterran Sea, and standing The Citie of twentie miles Westward from Alexandria, was in times past enuironed with most strong wals, Bofri. and adorned with most beautifull and stately Buildings. At this present, it is compassed with many possessions or grounds bearing Dates, whereof no man taketh charge nor reapeth any 50 commoditie : for when Alexandria was wonne by the Christians, the Inhabitants abandoned

this Citie, and fled towards the Lake called Buchaira. The great Citie of Alexandria in Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great, not without the The great Ciaduife of most famous and skilfull Architects, vpon a beautifull point of Land stretching into the drivin EDIN. Mediterran Sea, and being distant fortie miles Westward of Nilus, was in times past, till it grew fubiect vnto the Mahumetans, most sumptuously and strongly built, as divers and fundry Authors beare record. Afterward this Citie decaying, many yeares together, was deprined of the ancient renowne and honour, and remayned in manner defolate, because no Merchants of Greece nor of any other part of Europe exercised any longer Traffique therein. Howbeit, a certaine craftie Mahametan Partiarke made the nade people believue, that by the Prophelie of Mahamet, most ample Indulgences were granted vnto all fuch as would inhabit the Citie or guard it for certaine

dayes, and would bettow fome Almes for a publike benefit : by which wily ftratageme the Citie was in short time filled with forraine people, which from all places resorted thereunto: by whom were built many houses need vinto the Citie wals, and many Colledges of Students, and divers Monasteries for the reliefe of Pilgrims. Zzzz z

Ancient traf-

figur of the

English vnto

Alexandria.

The Citie it felfe is foure iquare, and hath foure Gates to enter in at : one flanding on the East fide towards Nilus, another on the South fide towards the Lake of Buchaira, the third Weltward towards the Defart of Barca, and the fourth towards the Mediterran Sea and the Hauen: Searchers in whereat stand the Searchers and Customers, which ransacke strangers even to their very shirts: for they demand custome, not onely for wares and Merchandize, but also some allowance in the hundred for all kinde of money. Neere vnto this Citie-walles there are two other Gates alfo. being divided alunder by a faire walke, and a most impregnable Castle, which standeth vpon the S rand or Wharfe of the Port, commonly called Marfa el Bargi, that is to fay, the Port of the Caltle : in which Port ride the principall and best ships, namely, such as come from Venice. Genoa, Raguifa, with other Ships of Europe. For hither refort the English, the Low Dutch, 10 the Rifcaines, the Portugals, and men of all other Nations in Europe for traffique lake. Howbeit, this Port is most vivally frequented by the Ships of Appulia, Sicilia, and of Greece, which

This in I cat rime 1526.

are Turkilh Ships; all which refort into this Harbour to faue them felues from Pyrats, and from tempeltuous weather. Another Port there is also, called Marla Effil Sela, that is to fav. the Port of the Chaine, wherein the Ships of Barbary, namely, those of Tunis and of the lle of Gerbe harbour themselves. The Christians are constrained to pay about the tench part of all wares that they bring in and carry out, but the Mahametans pay but the twentieth part : and whatfoeuer wares are carried by land to Cairo pay no custom at all. And at this present that part of the Citie which is next vnto Cairo, is the most famous and best furnished with Merchandize brought by Merchants from all places of the world. The other parts of this Citie are defittute 20 both of Coulty and Inhabitants: for except one long ffreet, and that part of the Citie next the Hauen which is full of Merchants shops, and inhabited by Christians, the residue is void and detolate. Which defolation happened at that time, when Lewis the fourth, King of France, being reflored to liberty by the Soldan, the King of Cyprus with a fleet, partly of Venetians, and partly king of Cypus, of French-men fuddenly affailed Alexandria, and with great flaughter furprized and facked the fame. But the Soldan comming with an huge armie to refcue Alexandria, to discouraged the Crprians, that they burnt downe the houses thereof, and betooke themselves to flight. Whereupon

Alexandria fur-

Alexandria

flians called

the Soldan repairing the walles, and building a Castle neere vnto the Hauen, the Citie grew by little and little into that estate, wherein it standeth at this present. In the Citie of Alexandria there is a certaine high Mount, fashioned like vinto the place called Testaccio at Rome, whereon, although it hath no natural situation are found diversearthen Veffels of great antiquity. Vpon the top of the faid Mount flandeth a Turret, where a certaine officer is appointed to watch for such Ships as direct their course towards the Citie, who Watch Towers for every thip that he giveth notice of vnto the Customers, receiveth a certain fee: but if he chanceth to fall alleepe, or to be out of the way at the arrivall of any Ship, whereof he certifieth not the Cuffomers, he paieth double for his negligence into the Soldans Exchequer. Vnder each house of this Citie there is a great vaulted Culterne built vpon mighty Pillars and Arches: whereinto Incwater of Nilus at every inundation is conveied vnder the walles of the Citie, by a cerby a fluce into taine wonderfull and most artificiall fluce standing without the Citie it selfe. But these Ciflernes growing fometime corrupt and foule, are often in Summer the occasion of many diseases and infirmities. This Citie flandeth in the midft of a fandy Defart, and is destitute of Gardens 49 and Vines, neither is the foile round about it apt to heare Corne : fo that their Corne is brought them from places forty miles distant. Howbeit, neere the forefaid fluce, whereby the water of Nilus is conucied into the Citie, are certaine little Gardens, the fruits whereof being growen to ripeneffe, are fo vnwholefome, that they breed Feuers and other noyfome difeafes among the Citizens. Sixe miles Westward of Alexandria, among certaine ancient buildings, standeth a pillar of a wonderfull height and thickneffe, which the Arabians call Hemaduffavar, that is to fay, the villar of trees. Of this pillar there is a Fable reported, that Prolemer one of the Kings of Alexandrie built it your an extreme point of land firetching from the Hauen, whereby to the end he might defend the Citie from the inuation of forraine enemies, and make it inuincible, he placed a certaine Steele-glasse vpon the top thereof, by the hidden vertue of which glasse, as many Ships as passed by while the glasse was vncouered should immediately be fet on fire : but the faid glaffe being broken by the Mahumetans, the fecret vertue thereof vanished, and the great pillar whereon it flood was removed out of the place. But this is a most ridiculous narration, and fic for babes to give credite vnto.t this prefent there are among it the ancient Inhabitants of Alexand is many Christians called lacobies, being all of them Artizans and Merchants : thefe Iacobites have a Church of their owne to refort vnto, wherein the body of S. Marke the Evangelift lay in times pait interred, which hath fince beene primily stolne by the Venetians, and carried vnto Venice. And the faid Iacobites pay Tribute vnto the Gouernour of Cairo. Neither is it to be passed over in vience, that in the midst of the ruinous Monuments of Alexandria, there remai- 60 neth as yet a certaine little house built in forme of a Chappell, and containing a Sepulci re much honoured by the Mahumetans, wherein they affirme, out of the authoritie of their Alcoron, that the body of the High Prohpet and King (as they terme him) Alexander the great lieth buri-Fally terranm ed. And thither refort yeerely great multitudes of Pilgrimes from forraine Nations, to a lore and prate: a Saint. reuerencethe faid Sepalchre, and oftentimes do befrow large Almes thereupon.

The Citie of Roletto was built by a flaue of a certaine Mahumetan Patriarke and Gouernour The Citie of of Egypt, you the Eatherne banke of Nolus three miles from the Mediterran Sea, not far from Rafid called by of Egypt, vpon the Latterne Danke of France times the man and the real sea, there is a flately Bath-flow the place where Nilse dischargeth his streames into the faid Sea. Heere is a flately Bath-flow Rosette. alfo, having fountaines both of cold and hot water belonging thereunto, the like whereof for John Leowas at thately and commodious building is not to be found in all Egypt belides. I my felfe was in this Rafid the fame Citie when Selm the great Turke returned this way from Alexandria, who with his private time when Se-Citie when Selim the great Turke returned this way from The and familiar friends beholding the faid Bath-stoue, seemed to take great delight and content. Turke passed

Thebe, at this present, containeth but three hundred Families in all, being most of them very Thebe. 10 flately and fumptuously built. It aboundeth with Corne, Rice, and Sugar, and with certaine fruits of a most excellent taste, called Muse. It is also furnished with great store of Merchants The fruits call and Artificers : but the most part of the Inhabitants are husbandmen : and if a man walke the led Auge. streets in the day-time, he shall see none but trim and beautifull women. The Territorie adiacent aboundeth with Date-trees, which grow fo thicke, that a man cannot fee the Citie, till he approachethnigh vnto the walles. Here grow likewise store of Grapes, Figs, and Peaches, which are carried in great plentie vnto Cairo. Without the Citie there are many ancient Monuments, as namely, pillars, inscriptions in Latine, Greeke, and Egyptian Characters, and wals of a great thicknesse, built of excellent stone, and such a number of rumous places, that this Citie feemeth, in times palt to have beene very large.

The women of Fuor, fortie miles South from Rofecco, line in fo great libertie, that they may Fuor 20 goe whither they will at the day-time, returning home at night, without any controlement of their husbands. The fields adiacent abound greatly with Dates, and neere vnto them there is a certaine Plaine which is very apt for Sugar and Corne : howbeit, the Sugar Canes there Sugar. bring not foorth perfect Sugar, but in flead thereof a certaine kinde of Honie like fope; which they vie throughout all Egypt, because there is but little other Honie in the whole

Quer against the foresaid Citie the River of Nilse makethan Ile, which being situate on an Gegirat Eddehigh place, bringeth foorth all kinde of fruitfull trees except Oliues.

They have a most beautifull Temple at Derette, and the Citizens are exceeding rich for their fay, the golden ground yeeldeth fuch abundance of Sugar, that they pay yeerely vnto the Soldan an hundred Great abunthouland peeces of Gold, called in their language Saraff, for their libertie of making and refis dance of Su-30 ning thereof. In this Citie standeth a certaine great house like vinto a Castle, wherein are their gar.

Press and Caldrons, for the boyling and preparing of their Sugar. Neither did I euer in all my "I twas soone Preffes and Caldrons, for the boyling and preparing or their sugar. Retine and react an after in Less life fee fo many workemen emploied about that businesse, whose daily wages (as I understood time taken by by a certaine publike officer) amounted to two hundred Saraffi.

Cairo is commonly reputed to be one of the greatest and most famous cities in all the whole the Soldens exworld. But leaving the common reports and opinions thereof. I will exactly deferibe the forme tirpate. and effate wherin it now standers. And that I may begin with the Etymologie or derivation of A Description the name, Cairo is an Arabian word, corruptly pronounced by the people of Europe : for the admirable Gitrue Arabian word is El Chabira, which fignifieth an inforcing or imperious Mistreffe. This City tie of Caro. built in ancient times by one Geboar Chetib a Dalmatian flaue (as I have before fignified in the *1516. 40 beginning of my Difcourfe) containeth within the walles not aboue eight thousand Families. The Founder. being Inhabited by Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Merchants that fell wares brought from all other places. The famous Temple of Caire, commonly called, Gemih Hashare, that is to say, the The Temple glorious Temple, was built alloby the forelaid flaue, whom we affirmed to be the Founder of the City, and whole furname was Hafbare, that is to fay, Famous, being given him by the Mahumetan Patriarke that was his Prince. This Citie standeth youn a most beautifull Plaine, neere vnto a certaine Mountaine called Mucatum, about two miles distant from Nilus, and is enuironed with flately walles, and fortified with Iron-gates: the principall of which gates is called Babe Nanfre, that is, the gate of Victory, which Handeth Eastward towards the Defart of the Red Sea; and the gate called Beb Zuaila, being next vnto the old Citie and to Nilm; and 50 also Bebel Futuh, that is to say, the gate of Triumph, standing towards the lake and the fields. And albeit, Cairo aboundeth every where with all kind of Merchants and Artificers, yet that is the principall ffreet of the whole Citie which ffretcheth from the gate of Narfre, to the gate of Zuarla, for in it are built most stately and admirable Palaces and Colledges, and most sumptuous Temples, among which is the Temple of Ginnih Elbechim, the third Schilmaticall Califa of Cairo. Other Temples there are of a maruellous bignes, which to describe in particular. I thinke it superfluous. Heere are many Bath-stones also very artificially built. Next of all is the street called Beinel Cafrain, containing to the number of threefcore Cookes or Victuallers shops, furonified with veffels of Tinne: there are certaine other shops also, wherein are to be fold delicated

waters or drinkes made of all kinds of fruits, being for Noblemen to drinke of, and thele waters Delicate they keepe most charily in fine vessels, partly of glasse, and partly of Tinne: next vnto these are drinks made shops where divers confections of Hony and Sugar, valike vato the confections of Europe, are allkind or to be fold : then follow the Fruiterers shops, who bring out-landish fruits out of Syria, to wit, iruits,

Quinces, Pomegranates, and other fruits which grow not in Egypt: next vnto them are the shops of fuch as fell Egges, Cheele, and Pancakes fried with Oyle. And next of all there is a fireete of the principall Artificers Shops. Beyond which ffreete flandeth a Colledge built by the Soldan. called Ghaseri, who was Ilaine in a battaile against Selim the great Turke. And next vnto the Colledge are diuers rankes of Drapers Shops. In the first ranke there is most excellent out-landifh Linnen Cloth to he fold, as namely, fine Cloth of Cotten brought from Balabach, and Cloth called Mofall, that is, of Ninou, of a maruellous breadth and finenesse, whereof Noblemen and others of account, haue Shirts made them, and Scarffes to weare vpon their Dulipans. Belides these, there are certaine Mercers Shops where the rich Stuffes of Italy, namely, Silke, Damaske. Veluet, Cloth of Gold, and fuch like are to be bought, vnto which Stuffes I neuer faw any comparable (to my remembrance) in Italy, where they vie to be made. Next vnto the Mercers are the Woollen Drapers, which bring Cloth out of Europe, as namely, from Florence, Venice, Flander, and other places. Next of all there are Chamblets to be fold: and from thence the way lieth to the Gate of Zuaila, at which Gate dwell great flore of Artificers. Neere vnto the faid way standeth the famous Burse, called Canen Halis, wherein the Persian Merchants dwell. It is built very stately in manner of a Kings Palace, and is of three stories high beneath it are certaine convenient roomes, whither Merchants for the exchange of rich and could Wares doe refort: for here doe the principal and most wealthie Merchants abide: whose Wares are Spices, precious Stones, Cloth of India, & fuch like. Next vnto the Burse standeth a street of Shops, where al kind of Perfumes, namely, Ciuet, Muske, Amber, and fuch like are to be feld: which commodities are 20 here in fogreat plenty, that if you ask for twenty pounds of Musk, they wil prefently thew you an hundred. Next followeth the fireet of the Paper-Merchants, where you may buy most excellent and smooth Paper: here also are to be fold lewels and precious Stones of great value, which the Brokers carrie from one Shop to another. Then come you to the Gold-Smuhs freete, being inhabited for the most part by lewes, who deale for riches of great importance. And next vnto the Gold-Smithes are certaine streetes of Vpholsters or Brokers, who fell the apparell and rich furniture of Noblemen and other Citizens at the fecond hand, which are dot Cloakes, Coates. Napery, or such like, but things of exceeding price and value: amongst which I my felie once faw a beautifull Paulion embroydered with Needle-worke, and befet with Pearles that weighed fortie pounds, which Pearles being taken out of it, were fold for tenthousand Saraffi. In this Citie also there is a most stately Hospitall built by Piperis the first Soldan of the Mamalucks race: the yearely reuenues whereof amount vnto two hundred thouland Saraffi. Hither may any imnotent or distassed persons resort, and bee well prouided of Physicians, and of all things neceffarie for those that are ficke, who if they chance to die here, all their goods are due vnto the Hofpitall. The Suburbe, called Bed Zuaila, belonging vnto Cairo, and containing about twelve thousand

Families, beginneth at the Gate of Zuarla, and extendeth Westward almost a mile and a halfe :

Southward it bordereth vpon the Palace of the Soldan, and stretcheth Northward for the space

of a mile vnto the Suburbe, called Beb Elloch. Here dwell as many Noblemen and Gentlemen almost, as within the Citie it selfe: and the Citizens haut Shops both here and in the Citie, as 40 likewise many Inhabitants of this Suburbe maintaine Families in the Citie also. Amongst all

the buildings of this Suburbe, the principall is that flately Collecge built by Soldan Hefen, being

of fuch a wonderfull height and great strength, that oftentimes the Colledges have presumed to

rebell against the Soldan, and therein to fortife themselves against the whole Citie, and to dis-

The Suburbe called Gemeh Tailon, confining Eastward vpon the ferefaid Suburbe of Beb

Zmaila, exendeth Westward to certaine ruinous places neere vnto the old Citie. Before the

foundation of Cairo this Suburbe was erected by one Tailon, who was subject vnto the Califa of

Bagdet, and Gouernour of Egypt, and was a most famous and prudent men. This Tailon leaving

the old Citie, inhabited this Suburbe, and adorned the same with a most admirable Palace, and

charge Ordnance against the Soldans Castle, which is but halte a Crosse-bow shot distant.

The Suburbs,

A ftarely

Palace and Temple,

Palace and

fumptuous Temple. Here dwell also great store of Merchants and Artificers, especially such as 50 are Moores of Barbary. The Suburbe, called Beb Elloch, being distant from the Walles of Caire about the space of a mile, and containing almost three thousand Families, is inhabited by Merchants and Artizans of divers forts, as well as the former. Vpon a certaine large place of this Suburbe flandeth a great Palace, and a stately Colledge, built by a certaine Mammaluck, called Iazbach, being Counsellor vnto the Soldan of those times; and the place it felte is called after his name, laz bachia. Hither, after Mahumetan Sermons & deuotions, the common people of Cairo, together with the Bawds and Harlots, doe whally refort; and many Stage-Players also, and such as teach Camels, Asles, and Dogs, to dance; which dancing is a thing very delightfull to behold, and elpecially that of the 60 Affe: who having frisked and danced a while his Master comes vnto him, and tells him with a loud voyce, That the Soldan being about to build some great Palice, must visall the Asles of Care to carry Morter, Stones, and other needlary prouition. Then the Affe falling pretently to the ground, and lying with his heeles vpward, maketh his belly to swell, and closeth his eyes as

if he were starke dead. In the meane while his Master lamenting the missortune of the Asse vnto These Asses the flanders by, earneftly craueth their friendly affiftance and liberalitie to buy him a new Afle, are somewhat the transcers oy, carried y cracked as much money as hee can get; You're much deceived my his Currall, And naming gamers at Land me Alle to be dead: for the hungry Iade knowing his Mafters that plaid his Mafters that plaid his nacefity, hath wrought this fleight, to the end hee might get fome money to buy him Prouen- Prizes all Engder. Then turning about to the Alfe, hee commanderth him with all speed to arise: but the land over. cer. I sen turning about to the nie, the command and beate him neuron much: whereupon, Aff. lyeth starke itll, though hee command and beate him neuron much: whereupon, turning against to the people; Bee it knowne (quoth hee) vnto you all, that the Soldan turning against to the people; Bee it knowne (quoth hee) vnto you all, that the Soldan turning against the soldan turning against the soldan turning against the soldan turning turning the sold the sold turning turni

hath published an Edict or Proclamation, that to morrow next all the people shall goe Io forth of the Citie to behold a Triumph, and that all the honourable and beautifull Ladies and Gentlewomen shall ride upon the most comely Asses, and shall give them Oates to eate, and and Gentiewomen mail the vpon the monetoning Ames and man give them Dates to extend Chriffall water of Nilus to drinke. Which words being ference ended, the Affe fuldenly flarreth from the ground, prancing and leaping for ioy: then his Mafter profecuting ftill his narration; But (faith he) the Warden of our streete hath borrowed this goodly Asse of mine for his deformed and old Wife to ride vpon. At these words the Asle, as though he were indued with humaine reason, coucheth his eares, and limpeth with one of his legges, as if it were quite out of ioynt. Then saith his Master; What, fir lade, are you so in love with faire women? The Ase noting in the defended to lay, yea. Come on therefore Sirra (quoth his Mafter) and teve fee nodding his head feemeth to lay, yea. Come on therefore Sirra (quoth his Mafter) and teve fee among all these pretty Danoiels, which pleafeth your fancie best. Whereupon the Asse going among all these pretty Danoiels, which pleafeth your fancie best. 20 about the company, and cipying some woman more comely and beautifull then the rest, walketh directly vnto her and toucheth her with his head : and then the beholders laugh and crie out

amaine: Loc, the Affes Paramour, the Paramour of the Affe. Whereupon, the fellow that flew- South-faying amaine: Loe, the Anes Paramour, one Paramour of the Ane. Whereupen, the removing the mode all this fport leaping Poor the backe of this Affe fields to flow other place. There is alfoa mode Burdstein kind of Chamerton of logders, which keep certaine little Birds in Cages made after the fallstein kind of Chamerton of logders, which keep certaine little Birds in Cages made after the fallstein kind of the Cages made after the fallstein cages. on of Cupboords, which birds will reach vnto any man with their Beaks certaine skroules, containing either his good or euill successe in time to come. And whosoeuer desireth to know his fortune, must give the Bird an half-penny; which shee taking in her bill, carrieth into a little tortune, muit give the BIMA in BIME permy; A which mee Galang in the Joil, Carriett into a little Boxe, and then comming forth againe, bringeth the fail skroule in her beake. I my lefter had once a skroule of ill fortune given me, which although I little regarded, yet had I more vinfortunes. 30 nate fiscoffe then was contained therein: Also, there are Masters of defence playing at all kind of weapons, and other that fing Songs of the Battels fought betweene the Arabians and Egyptians, when as the Arabians conquered Egypt, with divers others that fing such Toyes and Ballads

The Suburbe called Bulach, standing two miles distant from the Walles of the Citie voon the banke of Nilas, containeth foure thouland Families. Vpon the way lying betweene the Suburbe and this Citie, fland divers Houses, and Mills turned about by the strength of beasts. In this Suburbe dwell many Artificers and Merchants, especially such as sell Corne, Oyle and Sugar. Moreouer, it is full of stately Temples, Palaces, and Colledges : but the fairest buildings thereof stand along the River of Nilm, for from thence there is a most beautifull prospect vpon the Ri-Trains along one made in Acom, no from mente once is a more occurrent prospect you the Ad-ober, and thirther doe the Veffels and Barkes of Nilus refore vato the common father of Cairs, be-ing fituate in this Subarte 1 at which place you shall fee at forme times, and especially in the time ing fituate in this Subarte 1 at which place you shall fee at forme times, and especially in the time of Haruest, about one thousand Barkes. And here the Officers appointed to receive Custome for Wares, brought from Alexandria and Danniata have their aboad : albeit, but little tribute be demanded for the said Wares, because it was paid before at the Port of their arrivall: but those Wares that come out of the firme land of Egypt allow entire custome.

The Suburbe of Carafa built in manner of a Towne, and standing from Mount Muccatima The Suburbe flones cast, and from the Walles of the Citie about two miles, containeth almost two thousand called Charefa-Housholds. But at this day the greatest part thereof lyeth waste and destroyed. Here are many Sepulchers built with high and stately Vaults and Arches, and adorned on the inner side with divers Emblems and colours, which the fend people adore as the facred Shrines and Monuments 50 of Saints, spreading the pauement with sumptuous and rich Carpets. Hither every Friday morning resort out of the Citie it selfe, and the Suburbs, great multitules of people for deuotions

fake, who bestow liberall and large almes.

The Citie Mifrulbetich was the first that was built in Egypt in the time of the Mahumetans, The old Citic, founded by Home, Captaine Generall ouer the Forces of Homer, the fecond Adhesiment Patient Called Mylas-arke vpon the banke of Nilus. refembling a Suburbe hexade it is visualled and a maining to better. arke vpon the banke of Nilus, refembling a Suburbe becaute it is vnwalled, and containing to the number of fine thouland Families. It is adorned, especially by the River Nilm, with divers Palaces and Houses of Noblemen, and also with the famous Temple of Hamre, being of an hige Hamreshage bigneffe, and most stately built. It is also indifferently well prouided of Tradel-men and Artif- Temple. 60 cers. And here flandeth the famous Sepalchre of a Woman, reputed most holy by the Mahu-

metans, and called by them Saint Nafiffa, which was the daughter of one called Zenulhebidm, be. Saint Nafiffa. ing the sonne of Husem, the sonne of Heli, who was Coulen-german vnto Mehumet. The laid Nififa feeing all of her Family to be deprived of the Mahumetan Patriarkship, lett (ufa, a Citie of Arabia Falix, and came and dwelt in this Citie; vnto whom, partly because shee was of the

Colening

Linage of Mahumet, and partly for that the lived an innocent and blameleffe life, the people after her death afcribed divine honours, canonizing her for a Saint. Wherefore the Schifmaticall Patriarcks of her Kindred having got the vpper hand in Egypt, began to build for Nafilla a most beautifull Shrine or Sepulchre, which they adorned also with Silver Lamps, with Carpets of Silke, and fuch like precious ornaments. So great is the renowne of this Nafifa, that there commeth no Mahumeran either by Sea or Land vnto Caire, but he adoreth this Sepulchre, and bringeth his Offering thereunto, as likewise doe all the Mahumetans inhabiting thereabout :informuch that the yearely blations and Almes offered at this Sepulchre, partly for the reliefe of the poore Kinsfolks of Mahumet, and partly for the maintenance of the Priests which keepe the hid Sepulchre, amount ynto one hundred thouland Saraffi; which Priests by fained and coun- 10 terfeit Miracles doe daily delude the minds of the simple, to the end they may the more ensame their blind denotion, and may ftirre them to greater liberalitie. When Selim the Great Tirke wonne the Citie of Caro, his Ianizaries rifling this Sepulchre, found there the summe of fine hundred thousand Saraffi in ready money, besides the Silver Lampes, the Chaines and Carnets : but Selim tooke away a great part of that treasure from them. Such as write the Liues of the Mahumetan Saints, making very honourable mention of this Nafifa, fay, that the was descended of the noble Familie of Heli and that the was most famous for her vertuous and chafte life : but the fond people and the Priest of that execrable Sepulchre, have deuised many fained and super-fittious Miracles. In this Suburbe also, neare unto the River of Nilm, is the Customers Office, for Sepulchresof fuch wares as are brought out of the Prouince of Sabid. Without the walled Citie stand the Magnificent and flately Sepulchres of the Soldans, built with admirable and huge Arches, But in my time a certaine Solden caused a Walke to be built betweene two high Walls, from the Gate of the Citie to the place of the aforesaid Sepulchres, and at the ends of both Walls caused two Turrets of an exceeding height to be erected, for Markes and Directions vnto fuch Merchants as came thither from the Port of Mount Sinai.

The onely

About a mile and an halfe from the faid Sepulchres, in a certaine place called Amalibria, there is a Garden containing the onely Balme-tree, (for in the whole world besides there is not any other tree that heareth true Balme) which Balme-tree growing in the midft of a large Fountaine, and having a short Stocke or Body, beareth leaves like vnto Vine-leaves, but that they are not so and Below obf. long: and this Tree (they fay) would veterly wither and decay, if the water of the Fountaine 30 should chance to be deminished. The Garden is enuironed with a strong Wall, whereinto no man may enter, without the special fauour and licence of the Gouernour,

In the midft of Nilss, over against the old Citie, standeth the He called Michias, that is to fav. The Ile of Measure; in which Ile (according to the Inundation of Nilus) they have a kind of deuice, invented by the ancient Egyptians, whereby they most certainely foresee the plentie or scarcitie of the yeare following throughout all the Land of Egypt. This Iland is well inhabited, and containeth about fifteene hundred Families: youn the extreme point or ende whereof flandeth a most beautiful Palace, built in my remembrance by a Soldan, & a large Temple also, which The manner of is very pleafant, in regard of the coole Streames of Nilm. Voon another fide of the Hand flanmeasuring the deth an house alone by it selfe, in the midst whereof there is a fouresquare Cisterne or Chanell of eighteene cubits deepe, whereinto the water of Nilm is conueyed by a certaine Sluce vnder the 40 ground. And in the midft of the Cifterne there is erected a certaine Pillar, which is marked and called by Plinie diuided into fo many cubits, as the Cifterne it felfe containeth in depth. And you the Gauenteenth of Iune when Nilus beginneth to overflow, the water thereof conveyed by the faid Sluce into the Chanell, increaseth daily, sometimes two, and sometimes three fingers, and sometimes halfe a cubit in height. Vnto this place there daily refort certaine Officers appointed by the Senate. who viewing and observing the increase of Nilus, declare vnto certaine Children how much it hath increated; which children wearing yellow Skarffes vpon their Heads, doe publish the faid increase of Nilus in every streete of the Citie and the Suburbs, and receive gifts every day of the Merchants, Artificers, and Women, so long as Nilus increaseth. The foresaid deuice or experiment of the increase of Nilus, is this that followeth: If the water reachethonely to the fifteenth cubit of the forefaid Pillar, they hope for a fruitfull yeare following : but if it flaveth betweene the twelfth cubit and the fifteenth, then the increase of the yeare will prooue but meane : if it refleth betweene the tenth and twelfth cubits, then is it a ligne that Corne will be fold ten Duckats the bushell : But if it ariseth to the eighteenth cubite, there is like to follow great scarcitie, in regard of too much moysture : and if the eighteenth cubite be surmounted, all Expet is in danger to be swallowed up by the inundation of Nilus. The Officers therefore declare unto the Children the height of the River, and the Children publish the fame in all streets of the Citie charging the people to feare God, and telling them how high Nilus is encreased. And the people being aftoried at the wonderfull increase of Nilus, wholly exercise themselves in Prayers, and gi- 60 ming of Almes. And thus Nilus continueth fortie dayes increasing, and fortie dayes decreasing; all which time Corne is fold very deare, because while the Inundation lasteth, every man may fell at his owne pleasure: but when the eightieth day is once past, the Clerke of the Market appointeth the price of all Victuals, and especially of Corne, according as hee knoweth by the foresaid

CHAP.I.S.8. A solemne Feast. Birds basched after a strange manner.

experiment, that the high and low grounds of Egypt have received either too little, or too much or consenient moysture : all which Cuttomes and Ceremonies being duly performed, there followeth to great a Solemnitie, and such a thundering noyfe of Drummes and Trumpets throughout all Care, that a man would suppose the whole Citie to be turned vpside downe. And then out all Caro, that a man would appear the Courings and Carpets, and with Torch-light, Islan Lee took every Family hath a Barge adorned with rich Courings and Carpets, and with Torch-light, enery rammy many average and confections, wherewith they folace themselves. The the control and furnished with most daintie meates and confections, wherewith they folace themselves. The these notes a SOLDAN allo with all bis Nobles and Courtiers reforteth vnto that Sluce or Conduit, which lade be ore is called the great Conduit, and is compaffed round about with a wall, who taking an Axe in his the? see that hand breaketh the faid wall, and to doe his Nobles and Courtiers likewife : infomuch, that the Conquered Ehand breaketh the tala wan, and to doe instructed the passage of the water, the Ruer of spit, after to same part of the wall being cast downe, which trauch Nilss is fo (wirtly and forcibly carryed through that Conduit, and through all other Conduits led thrice into and Sluces in the Citie and the Suburbes, that Cairo at that time feemeth to be another Venice; Eggs. and then may yourow ouer all places of the Land of Egypt. Seuen dayes and feuen nights to. A soleman gether the foretaid Festivall Solemnitie continueth in Carro; during which space the Merchants Feath of seua and Artificers of the Citie may (according to the cultome of the ancient Egyptiss) confume days for illist. and spend in Torches, Pertumes, Confections, Musicke, and such like iollities, all their gaines that they have gotten the whole yeere past. Without the Citie of Caire, neere vnto the Suburbe of BebZuaila, itandeth the Caitle of the Soldan upon the fide of the Mountain called Mochaitan. This Cattle is enuironed with high and impregnable wals, and contayneth such stately and 20 beautifull Palaces, that they can hardly be described. Paued they are with excellent Marble, on the Roofes they are gilt and cutioully painted, their windowes are adorned with divers colours, like to the windowes in some places of Europe; and their gates be artificially carued and beautified with Gold and Azure. Some of these Palaces are for the Soldan and his Family; others for the Family of his Wife, and the refidue for his Concubines, his Eunuches, and his Guard. Likewife the Soldan had one palace to keepe publike Feafts in; and another wherein to give audience vitto forraine Ambassadours, and to exalt himselfe with great pompe and Ceremonies:

abolished by Selim the great Turke. The Inhabitants of Cairo are people of a merry, iocund, and cheerefull disposition, such as The customes, 30 will promise much, but performe little. They exercise Merchandize and Mechanicall Arts, and fittes, and fallsiyet trauell they not out of their owne natiue loyle. Many Students there are of the Lawes, on so the Chut yet yew of other liberall Arts and Sciences. And their Colledges are continually full of themselves. but very few of other liberall Arts and Sciences. And their Colledges are continually full of Students, vet few of them attayne vnto perfection. The Citizens in Winter are clad in garments of cloth lined with Cotton : in Summer they weare fine thirts; ouer which thirts fome put on linnen garments curioully wrought with filke, and others weare garments of Chamblet, and upon their heads they carry great Turbants couered with cloth of India. The women goe coilly attired, adorning their foreheads and neckes with frontlet and chaines of Pearle, and on their heads they we are a sharpe and slender bonet of a span high, being very precious and rich. The attyre of Gownes they weare of woellen cloth with flrait fleeues, being curioufly imbroydered with the women of

and another all of or the Gouernours and Officials of his Court. But all these are at this present

40 needle-worke, ouer which they cast certaine veyles of most excellent fine cloth of India. They Care. couer their heads and faces with a kind of blacke Skarfe, through which beholding others, they cannot bee feene themselues. Vpon their feet they weare fine shooes and pantofles, somewhat after the Turkib falhion. These women are so ambitious and proud, that all of them disdaine evther to spinne on to play the Cookes : wherefore their Husbands are constrayned to buy vichuals ready drest at the Cookes shops: for very few, except such as haue a great Family, vie to prepare and drelle the r victuals in their owne houtes. Also they vouchfate great libertie vnto their Wines : for the good man being gone to the Tauerne or Victualling house, his Wife trick. The libertic of their Wiles: for the good man being gone to the fauerne or victiming mone, his which was the women of ing vp her felfe in coldy apparell, and being perfumed with tweet and precious Odours, walketh about the Citie to solace her felfe, and parley with her kinsfolkes and friends.

They vie to ride upon Affes more then hories, which are broken to fuch a gentle pace, that they go eatier then any ambling horse. These Asses they couer with most costly Furniture and let them out vnto women to ride vpon, together with a Boy to lead the Afle, and certain Footmen to run by. In this City, like as in divers others, great store of people carry about sundry kinds of victuals to be fold. Many there are also that fell water, which they carry vp and downe in certaine Leather bags upon the backes of Camels : for the Citie (as I faid before) is two miles dirent from Nilm. Others carrie about a more fine and handsome Vessell with a Cocke or Spout of Braffe vpon it, having a Cup of Myrrhe or Christall in their hands, and these sell water for Birds harehed men to drinke, and for every draught they take a farthing. Others fell young Chickens and o- if or advange ther Fowles by mediure, which they hatch after a wonderfull and firange manner. They put, monneria go great numbers of Egges into certayne Quensbuilt vpon fundry lofts, which Quens being me- Eggin

derately heat, will within feuen dayes conuert all the faid Egges into Chickens. Their meafures are bottomleffe, which being put into the basket of the buyer, and filled full of Chickens they lift it vp, and to let the Chickens fall into the basket. Likewife, fuch as buy those Chickens having kept them a few dayes, carry them about to fell againe. The Cookes theps fland

experiment

840

linkes, all

graine and a

Chron. 1579.

Seas of the

open very late : but the shops of other Artificers are shut vp before ten of the clocke, who then walke abroad for their folace and recreation from one Suburbe to another. The Citizens in their common talke vie ribald and filthy freeches : and (that I may passe ouer the rest in filence) it falleth out oftentimes that the Wite will complaine of her Husband vnto the Iudge, that he doth not his dutie nor contenteth her fufficiently in the night feafon, wherupon(as it is permitted by the Mahumetan Law) the women are disorced and maryed vnto other Husbands. Among the Attizans wholeeuer is the first Inventor of any new and ingennous Device, is clad Thereward of in a Garment of cloth of Gold, and carryed with a noyfe of Muficians after him, as it were in

ner and inge triumph from shop to shop, having some money given him at every place. I my selfe once saw nicus deuites. one carryed about with folemne Musicke and with great pompe and triumph, because hee had Io OneMentesca- bound a Flea ma Chaine, which lay before him on a piece of Paper for all men to behold.

Amongst the fundry Sects of Religion in this Citie, there is one Sect of the Moores called and Key and Chenefia : and this Sect liveth vpon Herfe-fielb, fo that their Butchers when they can heare of and Acy and Chaine, of 43- any halting or lame Iade, buy him forth-with, and fet him vp a fatting, and kauing killed him, the faid Sect of Chenefia come and buy up his fielh hand-smooth. This Sect is rife also among the Turkes, the Mamalakes, and the people of Asia; and albeit, the Turkes might freely viethe

which a Flea food before-mentioned, yet doe they not inure themselves thereunto. did draw, and weighed but a

In Egypt and in the Citie of Carro there are permitted foure feuerall Sects, differing each from other both in Canon and Civill Lawes: all which Sects have their originall from the Religion of Mahamet. For there were in times past foure men of singular Learning, who by subtiltie and sharpnesse of wit, found out a way to make particular deductions out of Mahamets generall Fonte scuerali Precepts. So that each of them would interpret the opinions of Mahumet according to their owne fancie, and would every man apply them to his owne proper fense; and therefore they mitted in the must needs disagree much betweene themselnes: howbeit, growing famous among the common people in regard of their divers Canons and Precepts, they were the first Authours and Founders of the faid foure Sects : any one of which whatfoeuer Mahumetan profesieth. cannot resounce the same at his pleasure and embrace another Sect, vollesse heebe a man of deepe Learning, and knoweth the Reasons and Allegations of both parts. Also there are in the Citie of Cairo foure principall Iudges, who give fentence onely vpon matters of great importance : vnder which foure are substituted other inferiour ludges, in every street of the Citie, which de- 30 cide pettie contentions and brabbles. And if the parties which are at controuerfie chance to bee of divers Sects, the Plaintiffe may fummon and convent the Defendant before the Judge of his freet: howbeit, the Defendant may, if he will, appeale from him vnto the highest ludge of all, being placed ouer the foure principall Judges aforelaid, and being gouernour of the Sect, called Essapebra; and this high Judge hath authoritie to difpense withall, or to disanul the Decrees of the foure principall, and of all the other inferiour Iudges, according as hee shall fee cause. Whospeuer attempteth ought against the Canons and Precepts of his owne Religion, is seuerely punished by the Judge of the same Religion. Moreouer, albeit the Priests of the foretaid Sects differ very much, both in their formes of Lyturgie or Prayer, and allo in many other respects, yet doe they not for that diversitie of Ceremonies hate one another, newther yet 40 doe the common people of fundry Sects fall to mutinie and debate: but men indeed of fingulat Learning and much reading conferre oftentimes together, and as in private each man affirmeth his owne Sect to be the best, so likewise doe they confirme their opinions by subtile Arguments, neither may any man under paine of grieuous punishment reproch any of the said four ancient Doctors. And in very deed they all of them follow one & the same Religion, to wit, that which is prescribed in the Canons of Hashari, the principall Doctor of the Mahumetans, which Canons goe for currant ouer all Africa, and most part of Asia, except in the Dominions of the Great Sobbi of Persia; who because he reiecteth the said Canons, is accounted by other Mahumetans an Heretike, and a Schismaticke. But how such varietie of opinions proceeded from the foure Doctors aforefaid, it were tedious and troublesome to rehearse : he that is desirous to know more 50 of this matter, let him read my Commentaries which I have written concerning the Law and Religion of Mahumet, according to the Doctrine of Malich, who was a man of profound Learning, and was borne at Medina Talnabi, where the bodie of Mahumes lyeth buryed : which Doctrine of Malich is embraced throughout all Syria, Egypt, and Arabia: wherewith if any be delighted, let him peruse my foresaid Commentaries, and they will satisfie him to the full. Vpon Malefactors they inflict most grieuous and horrible punishment, especially vpon such

as have committed any heynous crime in the Court. Theeues they condemne to the Halter. A murther committed trecherously they punish in manner following: the Executioners attistants take the Malefactor one by the head, and another by the feet, and then comes the chiefe Executioner with a Two-hand-sword, and cutteth his bodie in twaine, the one part whereof adioyning to the head is put into a fire full of vn-flaked Lime : and it is a most strange and dread-60 full thing to confider, how the same dismembred and halfe bodie will remayne a line in the fire for the space of a quarter of an houre, speaking and making answere vnto the standers by. But rebels or fedicious persons they flea aline, stuffing their skins with bran till they resemble mans shape, which being done, they carry the faid stuffed skins vpon Camels backes through eucry

ffreete of the Citie, and there publish the crime of the partie executed: then which punishment I never fawe a more dreadfull, by reason that the condemned party liveth so long in torment: but if the tormenter once toucheth his nauell with the knife, he presently yeeldeth up the Ghoft : which he may not doe vntill he be commanded by the Magistrate flanding by. It any The Nauell be imprisoned for debt, not having where withall to satisfie the same, the Gouernor of the prison being cut is payeth their creditors, and fendeth them, poore wretches, bound in chaines, and accompanied prefent deaths with certaine keepers, caily to begge almes from fireet to ffreet, all which almes redoundeth to the Gouernour, and hee alloweth the faid prisoners very bare maintenance to line

Moreouer, there goe crying vp and downe this Citie certaine aged women, who (though Women cirthat which they fay in the streets cannot be vinderstood) are notwithstanding injoyined by their cumcised. office to circumcife women according to the prescript of Mahumet: which Ceremonie is not ob-

ferued but in Egypt and Syria.

The dignity and power of the Soldan was in times past exceeding great; but Selim the great Themannetos The dignity and power of the Soldaw was in times part exceeding great; but Selmi the great assumances from the years of Chirif (if I be not deceimed) 1517. Vertry abolified the failed dignity creating the Twiet in the years of the Soldaw. And because it hath beene my hap soldaw, and of anged all the Cultomes and Lawes of the Soldaw. And because it hath beene my hap the order, dethrife to travell into Egypt fince the faid wonderfull alteration befell, I suppose, it will not bee grees and offimuch beside my purpose, if I set downe in this place such particulars as I know to be most cer- eet in his taine true concerning the Court of the Soldan. Vnto this high dignitie was wont to bee cho-Court fen some one of the most noble Mamaluts. These Mamaluts being all Christians at the arit, thrisein Estat. and stoine in their child-hood by the Tartars out of the Province of Circassia, which borde- The Mandales. reth vpon the Euxin Sca, and being fold at Caffa, a Towne of Tancica Cher sonesus, were brought from thence by certaine Merchants vnto the Citie of Caro, and were there bought by the Soldan; who constraining them foorthwith to abiure and renounce their baptisme, caufed them to bee instructed in the Arabian and Turkish Languages, and to bee trained vo in Militarie Discipline, to the end they might ascend from one degree of Honour to another . till at last they were advanced vnto the high dignity of the Soldan. But this Custome whereby it was enacted; that the Soldan should be chosen out of the number of such as were Mamaluks and flaues by their condition, began about two hundred and fifty yeers fithence, when as the Family 30 of the valiant Saladm (whose name was so terrible vnto Christians) being supported but by a

few of the kindred, fell to vtter decay and ruine.

At the same time when the last King of Ierusalem was determined to sacke the Citie of Caire, which also in regard of the floth and cowardize of the Mahametan Califa then raionina ouer it, intended to make it felfe tributarie vnto the same King, the Judges and Lawyers of the Citie with the confent of the Califa, fent for a certaine Prince of Asia, called Azedudin, of the Nation of Curdu(the people whereof live in tents like the Arabians) which Azedadin together with his fonne Saladin, came with an armie of fiftie thousand horsemen. And albeit, Saladin was inferiour in age vnto his Father, yet in regard of his redoubted valour, and fingular knowledge in Military affaires, they created him Generall of the field, and gaue him free liberty to bestow all the Tributes and Reuenues of Egypt, as himfelfe (hould thinke expedient. And so marching at length against the Christians, he got the Victory of them without any bloodshed, and draue them out of Ierusalem and out of all Syria. Then Saladin returning backe with triumph vnto Caire, had an intent to vourpe the Gouernment thereof: whereupon having flaine the Califa his guard (who bare principall fway ouer the Egyptians) hee procured the death also of the Califa himfelfe, being thus bereft of his guard, with a poyfoned cup, and then foorthwith submitted himselfe vnto the patronage of the Califa of Bagdet, who was the true and lawfull Mahumetan Prelate of Cairo. Thus the inrifdiction of the Califas of Cairo (who had continued Lords of that Citie by perpetuall fuccession for the space of two hundred and thirty yeeres) surceased, and returned againe vinto the Califa of Bagder, who was the true and lawfull Gouernour thereof. And so the Schismaticall Califus and Patriarkes being suppressed, there grew a contention 50 betweene Saladin and the Soldan of Bagder, and Saladin made himselfe a soueraigne of Cairo, be-

cause the said Soldan of Bagdet being in times past Prince of the Provinces of Mazandran and Eurizin fituate vpon the River of Ganges, and being borne in a certaine Countrey of Afia, laid claime notwithstanding vnto the Dominion of Cairo, and intending to wage warre against Saladin, hee was restrained by the Tartars of Corasan, who made invasions and inrodes vpon him. Saladin on the other fide fearing least the Christians in reuenge of the foresaid injury would make an expedition into Syria, and confidering that his forces were partly flaine in the former warres, and partly confumed by pettilence, except a few which remained for the defence and fauegard of his Kingdome, began to imploy himselfe about buying of slaves that came

60 from Circassia, whom the King of Armenia by those dayes tooke and sent vnto Cairo to bee The originalk fold : which flaves he caused to abiure the Christian faith, and to be trained up in feats of warre of the Mama and in the Turkish Language, and being the proper Language of Saladin himselfe : and so the said lugs. flaues within a while increased so exceedingly both in valour and number, that they became not onely valiant Souldiers, and skilfull Commanders, but also Gouernours of the whole

Aaaaa

The principall

The Soldans

Amir Caber.

Nai Beffan.

The Ofadar.

The Amiri A-

The Ameralf.

Kingdome. After the decease of Salidin, the Dominion remained vnto he Family one hundred and fifty yeeres, and all his fucceffors oblerved the Cultome of buying these of Circaffia but the Fastily of Saladin growing at length to decay, the flaues by a generall content elected one Piperis a valiant Manaluk of their owne companie to be their sourraigne Lord and Soldan: which Cuitomethey afterward fo inviolably kept, that not the Soldans owne fonne nor any other Mamalink could attaine vnto that high dignity, vnlesse first he had beene a Christian, and had abjured his faith, and had learned also exactly to speak the Circassian and Turkilo Languages. Infomuch, that many Soldans fent their fonnes in their childhood into Circaffin, that by learning the Language and fashions of the Countrey, they might proue in processe of time ht to beare Soneringne authority; but by the diffention of Mahaluks, they were alwayes defeated of their pur-

The Eddaguadare being in dignitie fecond vnto the Soldan, and being as it were, his Vice-rov or Lieutenant, had authoritie to place or displace any Mogistrates or Officers; and maintained a

der the Soldan Family almost as great as the Family of the Soldan him elfe.

The Amir Cabir having the third place of honour, was Lord Generall over the Soldans Militarie Forces; who was by of .e bound to leavy armies against the forraine enemie, especially against the next Arabians, and to furnish the Castles and Cities with convenient Garisons : and allo had authoritie to diffeed the Soldans Treasure, vpon such necessary affaires as hee thought offi er, called

The fourth in dignity after the Soldan called Nai Beffan, beeing the Soldan his Lieute- 20 nant in Syria, and gathering up all the Tributes of Affiria, bestowed them at his owned fa cretion, and yet the Soldan himselfe was to place Garrisons in the Castles and Forts of those Provinces. This Nat Bellan was bound yeerely to pay certaine thousands of Saraffi vnto the Sol-

The fift Magistrate called the Ostadar, was the great Master or Steward of the Palace: whose duetie was to provide apparell for the Soldan, with Victuals and other necessaries for his whole family. And vnto this dignity the Soldan vied to advance fome one of his most ancient, Honourable, and Vertuons Nobles, vndes whose tuition himselfe had in times past beene

ramed vp.
The fixt called the Amiri Achor, was Master of the Horse and Camels; and distributed them

vinto each man in Court, according to his degree. The feuenth Office was performed by certaine principall Mamalukes, being like vnto the Colonels of Europe : euery of whom was Captaine of a thouland inferious Mamaluk; ; and their Office was to conduct the Soldans Forces against the enemie, and to take charge of his ar-

The eight degree of Honour was allotted vnto certaine Centurions ouer the Mamaluk; who were continually to attend upon the Soldan, either when he road any whither, or when he ex-The Amirmia.

ercifed himfelfe in armes. The ninth person was the Treasurer, who made an account vnto the Soldan of all the Tribates and Cultomes of his Kingdome, disburfing money for the daily and necessary expenses of 40

the Soldans Household, and laying up the rest in the Soldans Castle. The tenth called the Amirfileh, had the armour of the Soldan committed to his charge, which being contained in a great Armory was to be scoured, surbushed, and renued at his direction, for

which purpose he had fundry Mamaluks place! vnder him. The eleventh called the Testecana was Matter of the Soldans Wardrobe, and tooke charge of all fuch Robes and Apparch as were delivered vinto him by the Offader or high Steward of the

Houshald; which Robes he distributed according to the appointment of the Soldan; for whomfocuer the Soldan promoted vnto any dignity, him he apparelled alfo. All the faid garments were of cloth of Gold, of Veluet, or of filke. The great Citie of Chanca lituate about fixe miles from Cairo, at the very entrance of the De-

fart lying in the way to Mount Sinai, is replenished with most flarely Houses, Temples, and Colledges. All the fields betweene Cairo and this Citie abound with great plenty of Dates: but from Chanca to Mount Smai, which is an hundred and fortie miles, there are no pl. ces of habitation at all. Through this Citie lie two maine road-wayes, the one leading to Syria, and the other to Arabia. This Citie hath no other water but fuch as remaine in certaine Chanels after the inundation of Nilm; which chanels being broken, the water runneth forth into the plaines, and there maketh a number of small lakes, from whence it is conneighed backe by certaine fluces into the Cifternes of the Citie.

Vpon the fame fide of Nilm, standeth the faire Citie of Munia, which was built in the time of the Mahmmet ans by one Chafib, a Lieutenant and Courtier of the Califa of Bagdet, vpon an 60 high place. Heere are most excellent Grapes, and abundance of all kind of fruit, which albeit they are carried to Cairo, yet can they not come thither fresh and new, by reason that this City is dictant from Caire one undreth and fourescore miles. It is adorned with most stately Temples and other buildings; and here are to be feene at this prefent, fundry ruines of the ancient Egoptian buildings. The Inhabitants are rich, for they travell for their gaine as farre as Gaoga, a Kingdome of the Land of Negros.

At this present there are found at Manf-Losh, certaine huge and high Pillars and Porches. whereon are Verses engrauen in the Egyptian Tongue. Neete vnto Nilis stand the ruines of a flately building, which ieemeth to have been a Temple in times past; among which ruines the Citizens find fometimes Coyne of Siluer, fometimes of Gold, and fometimes of Lead; hauing on the one fide Hielygraphick notes, and on the otherfide the pictures of ancient Kings. The fields adjacent being very fruitfull are extremely scorched by the heare of the Sunne, and much haunted with Crocodiles, which was the occasion (as some thinke) why the Romans abandoned this IO Citie. The Inhabitants are men of indifferent wealth, for they exercise Traffick in the Land of

Azioth founded by the Egyptians upon the banke of Nilus, two hundred and fifty miles from The Citie of Cairo, is most admirable in regard of the hugenesse, and of the varietie of old buildings; and of Atiath. Epitaphes engrauen in Egyptian Letters; although at this present the greatest part thereof lieth defolate. When the Mahametans were first Lords of this Citie, it was inhabited by honourable personages, and continueth as yet samous, in regard of the Nobility and great wealth of the Citizens. There are in this Citie almost an hundred Families of Christians, and three or foure (birches Christians. still remaining: and without the Citie standeth a Monasterie, containing moe then an hundred Monks, who eate neither Flesh nor Fish, but onely Hearbs, Bread and Oliues. And yet haue 20 they dainty Cates without any fat among them. This Monasterie is very rich, and giveth three dayes entertainement to all strangers that refort thither, for the welcomming of whom they

bring vp great flore of Doues, of Chickens, and of fuch like commodities. Ichmin being the most ancient Citie in all Egypt, was built by Ichmin, the sonne of * Mifraim, The Citie of the fonne of Chu, which was the fonne of 'Hen, vpon the Banke of Nilm, next vnto Afia, and "Lisophera" three hundred miles Eastward from Cairo. This Citie the Mahametans, when they first began wife read in to vsurpe ouer Egypt, so wasted and destroyed, for certaine causes mentioned in Histories, that the tenth befides the foundations and rubbish, they left nought remaining : for, transporting the Pillars Chapter of and principall Stones vnto the other fide of Nilm, they built thereof the Citie called Manifes, Genefis, veride.

euen as we will now declare. Georgia was in times past a famous Monasterie of Christians, called after the name of The Monaster Saint George, and being fixe miles diftant from Munfia. It was inhabited by more then two ric called hundred Monkes, who emoying large Territories, Poffettions and Revenues, thewed themselves Georgia. curteous and beneficiall vito strangers; and the ouerplus of their yearely reuenues was fent vito the Patriarke of Cairo, who caused the same to be distributed amongst the poore Christians : but about an hundred yeares agoe, all the Monkes of this Monasterie died of a Pestilence, which A Pestilence, fored it felfe ouer all the Land of Egypt. Whereupon the Prince of Munfia compaffed the faid Monafterie with a Wall, and erected diners houses for Artificers and Merchants to dwell in. And being allured by the pleafant Gardens fituate amidit the beautifull Hills, hee himfelfe went thither to inhabite : but the Patriarke of the lacobites making his mone vnto the Soldan, the Soldan cauled another Monasterie to bee built in the same place, where in times past the old Citie stood; and assigned so much allowance thereunto, as might maintaine thereise

This little Citie of Chian was built in times past neere vnto Nilus by the Mahumetans, The Gicie of which not withfranding is not now inhabited by them, but by the Christians called Incobines, Chies. who employ themselves either in Husbandrie, or in bringing vp of Chickens, Geese, and Doues. There remaine as yet certaine Monasteries of Christians, that give entertainement to Strangers. But Mahametans (befides the Gouernour and his Family) there are none at all.

Barbanda founded by the Egyptiani vpon Nilsus, about foure hundred miles from Gaire, was The Circuit laid to wafte by the Romans, that nothing but the ruines thereof remained, most of which ruines Barbands. were carried vnto Ana, whereof wee will forthwith intreate. Among ft the faid mines are to 50 be found many pieces of Gold and Silver Coyne, and fundry fragments of Smaragds or Em. Emels.

The ancient Citie of Cana, built by the Egyptians upon the banke of Nilus over against Bar. The Citie of bands, and environed with Walls of Sunne-dried Bricke, is inhabited with people of base condition applying themselves water Husbandrie, by which meanes the Citic abounderth with corne. Associated Hither are the Merchandile brought against the streame of Nilus, which are sent from Carro to large mention Meeca: for the diftance from hence ouer the wildernesse vnto the Red Sea, is at least 120 of this Citie. miles, all which way there is no water at all to bee found. And at the Hauen of Cheffir vpon The Hauen of the fluore of the Red Sea, are disers Cottages, whereinto the fail Merchandifes are violate. Coffic 60 And ouer against Choffir on the fall of Affa lieth Lambab, another Hauen of the Red Sea, where at Trauellers going on Pilgrimage to fee the Tombe of Mahumes at Medina, must make their rendeuous or generall meeting. Moreoner, Chana furnisheth Medina and Mecca with Corne, in which places they fuffer great and continuall scarcitie.

Afna in times path was called Siene. Round about this Citie there are to bee seene divers The Citic of A 2 2 2 2

The Chazen-

The Citic of

LIB. VI.

huge buildings, and admirable Sepulchres, together with fundry Epitaphes engrauen both in Egyptian and Latine Letters.

The Ciric of Alluen.

Suzchen.

The great, ancient, and populous Citie of Ashan was built by the Egyptians voon the River of Nilus, about fourescore miles Eastward from Afra. The soyle adjacent is most apt and fruitfull for Corne, And the Citizens are exceedingly addicted vnto the Trade of Merchandife, because the dwell so neere vnto the Kingdome of Nubia, vpon the confines whereof standeth their Citie: beyond which Citie, Nilus differing himfelie over the Plaines through many fmall Lakes, becommeth innauigable. Alfo, the faid Citie standeth neere vnto that Defart, ouer which they travell ynto the Port of Snachen vpon the Red Sea, and it adjoyneth likewife vpon the frontiers of Ethiopia. And here in Summer time the Inhabitants are extremely fcorched with the heate 10 of the Sunne, being of a swart or browne colour, and being mingled with the people of Nubia and Ethiopia, Here are to be seene also many buildings of the ancient Egyptians, and most high Towers, which they call in the language of that Countrey Barba. Beyond this place there is neither Citie nor habitation of any account, befides a few Villages of black people, whose speech is compounded of the Arabian, Egyptian, and Ethiopian languages. These being subject vinto the people, called * Bugiba, live in the Fields after the Arabian manner, being free from the Soldans iurildiction, for there his Dominions are limited.

* Busiba are rhole which in old rime were called Trogio-

And thus much concerning the principall Cities flanding along the maine Chanell of Nilus: Some whereof I saw, others I entred into, and passed by the residue : but I had most certaine intelligence of them all, either by the Inhabitants themselues, or by the Mariners which carried 20 me by water from Caro to Affican, with whom returning backe vnto Chana, I trauelled thence ouer the Defart vnto the Red Sea, ouer which Sea I crossed vnto Iambuth, and Ziddem, two Hauen Townes of Arabia Defarta; of which two Townes, because they belong vnto Asia, I will not here discourse, lest I should seeme to transgresse the limits of Africa. But if it shall please God to youchiafe me longer life, I purpose to describe all the Regions of Asia which I have tranelled : to wit. Arabia Defarta, Arabia Falix, Arabia Petraa, the Afian part of Egypt, Armenia, and some part of Tartaria; all which Countries I faw and passed through in the time of my wouth. Likewise, I will set downe my last Voyages from Fez to Constantinople, from Constantinople to Egypt, and from thence into Italie, in which Iourney I faw divers and fundry Ilands. All which my Trauels I meane (by Gods affiftance) being returned forth of Europe into mine owne 30 Country, particularly to describe; deciphring first the Religion of Europe and Asia which I have feene, and thereunto annexing this my Discourse of Africa, to the end that I may promote the endeauours of fuch as are defirous to know the state of forraine Countries.

δ. IX.

Principalloccurrents in IOHN LEO his ninth Booke of the Historie of Africa. He Elephant keepeth in the Woods, and is found in great numbers in the forrests of the

Land of Negres. They vie to go many in one company, & if they chance to meet with

any man, they either shun him or give place vnto him. But if the Elephant intendeth

to hurt anyman, he casteth him on the ground with his long snout or trunke, and ne-

Of the African ring from the The manner of taking Elephants in * Asby a same trees a round hedge of strong boughes and rafts, leaving a space open on the one side thereof, and Female draw-likewise a doore standing voon the plaine ground which may be lift vp with ropes, whereing libro an inclosed place; and the they can easily stoppe the said open place or passage. The Elephant therefore cominclosed place; aming to take his rest worder the shady atoms. Male fighting: Hunters by drawing the faid rope, and fallening the doored haning imprisoned him, de-with the wilds [cend downe from the trees and kill him main, hand ene in the racane while

ner cealeth trampling vpon him till he be dead. And although it be a mighty and fierce beaft, yet are there great flore of them caught by the Ethiopian Hunters, in manner following. These Hunters being acquainted with the Woods and Thickets where they keepe, vie to make among the fcend downe from the trees, and kill him with their Arrowes, to the end they may get his Teeth, and make sale of them. But if the Elephant chanceth to breake through the hedge, his hinder

led Graffa. "Here is a word wanting

he murthereth is many men as he can find. In Ethiopia the higher, and India, they have other denices * to take the Elephant, which, least I should seeme ouer-tedious. I passe ouer in silence. ropes faftning The Graffa fo fauage and wild, that it is a very rare matter to fee any of them : for they hide themselves among the Defarts and Woods, where no other beasts vie to come; and so toone as legi.
The Beak cali one of them espieth a man, it slieth forthwith, though not very swftly. It is headed like a Camell, eared like an Oxe, and footed like a * : neither are any taken by Hunters, but while they are very young

Camels are gentle and domesticall beafts, and are found in Africa in great numbers, especially in the Defarts of Libya, Namidia, and Barbaria. And thefe the Arabians efteeme to bee their principall possessions and riches: so that speaking of the wealth of any of their Princes, or Gouernours, he bath (fay they) fo many then fands Camels, and not fo many thousand Duckets. Moreouer. CHAP.1. S.9. Three kind of Camels, Camels or Dromidaries, dancing Camels.

Moreouer, the Arabians that possesse Camels line like Lords and Potentates in great liberty. because they can remaine with their Camels in barren Desarts, whither no Kings nor Princes can

bring armies to fubdue them. African Camels farre excell them of Afra; for travelling fortie or fifty dayes together, with- The African out any prouender at all, they are valueden in the evening; and turned loofe into the next fields. Cameis are where they feed vpon Grafe, Brambles, and the boughes of trees; which hardneffe the Camels the beft, of Macannot endure, but when they fet foorth any journey, they must be well pampered and full of flesh. Experience hash taught, that our Camels having travelled laden fifty daves together without any prouender; have so wasted; first, the fielh of their bunches; secondly, of 10 their bellies, and laftly, of their hips, that they have scarce beene able to carry the weight of one hundreth pounds. But the Merchants of Afia give their Camels provender, halfe of them being laden with wares, and the other halfe with prouender, and so their whole Carouan of Camels gooth foorth and returneth home laden: by which meanes they keepe them in good plight. Of Three kinds Camels there are three kinds; whereof the first being called Hugiun, are grosse, and of a tall sta- of Camels. ture, and most fit to carrie burthens, but ere foure yeeres end they grow vnprofitable : after which time every Camell but of meane stature will carry a thousand pounds of Italian weight. When any of the faid Camels is to bee laden, being beaten upon his knees and necke with a wand, he kneeleth downe, and when he feeleth his load sufficient, he nifeth vp againe. And the Africans vie to geld their Camels which they keepe for the burthen, putting but one male

20 Camell among ten femals. The fecond kinde of Camels called Bechets, and hauing a double bunch, are fit both to carrie burthens, and to ride vpon : and there are bred onely in Afia. The third kind called Raguabill, are Camels of a flender and low flature, which albeit they are Camels of a whit to carry burthens, yet doe they not excell the two other kinds in twiftnesse, that in the wond roll whit to carry burthens, yet doe they not exten the two other kinds in whitener, that in the foace of one day they will trauell one hundred miles, and will fo continue ouer the Defarts the trave called for eight or ten dayes together with very little prouender and these doe the principall Arabians Dromidaies. of Numidia, and the Moores of Libra vivally ride vpon. When the King of Tombuso is de rous to fend any message of importance vnto the Numidian Merchants with great celeritie, his post or messenger riding vpon one of these Camels, will runne from Tombato to Darba or Segelmeffe, beeing nine annared miles diffant, in the space of eight dayes at the farthest : but

30 fuch as travell must be expert in the way through the Delarts, neither will they demand lesse then fine hundred Duckats for every journey. The faid Camels about the beginning of the foring inclining to their luft and venerie, doe not onely hart one another, but also will deadly wound fuch persons as haue done them any injury in times past; not forgetting light and eafie ftripes; and whomfoeuer they lay hold on with their teeth, they lift vp on high, and caft him downe againe, trampling upon him with their feete, and in this madde moode they continue fortie dayes together. Neither are they so patient of hunger as of thirst; for they will The Camels abstaine from drinke, without any inconvenience, for lifteene dayes together and if their great shifts. abstaine from drinke, without any inconvenience, for afteene dayes together: and if their greatabstiguides water them once in three dayes, they doe them great hirt, for they are not viually waternence from red but once in fine or nine dayes, or at an vrgent necessity once in fifteene dayes. Moreouer, dinke,

40 the faid Camels are of a gentle disposition, and are indued as it were with a kinde of humaine reason : for when as betweene Ethiopia and Barbarie they have a dayes journey to travell more then their woont, their mafters cannot drive them on, being so tired, with whips, but are faine to fing certaine fongs vnto them; wherewith being exceedingly delighted, they performe their journey with fuch fwiftnesse, that their faid masters are scarce able to follow them. At my beeing in Cairo I faw a Camell dance; which arte of dancing how he learned of his mafter will heere in few words report. They take a young Camell, and put him for halfe an houre How the Catogether in a place like a Bath-stone prepared for the same purpose, the stoore whereof is het melso Cairo with fire : then play they without vpon a drumme, whereat the Camell not fo much in re-learneto gard of the noyle, as of the hot pauement which offendeth his feet, and I freth vp one legge af-dance. ter another in manner of a dance, and having beene accustomed vnto this exercise for the space of a yeere or ten moneths, the then prefent him vnto the publike view of the people, when

as hearing the novie of a drum, and remembring the time when he trode voon the hot floore, he prefendly falleth a dancing and leaping; and fo, vie being turned into a kind of nature, he perpetually observeth the same custome.

The Horses of Barbary differ not in any respect from other Horses : but Horses of the same Barbary or Ara-Iwiftnesse and agilitie are in the Arabian tongue called throughout all Egypt, Syria, Asia, Ara- bian Horses. bia Falie, and Deferta, by the name of Arabian Horses : and the Historiographers affirme, that this kind of wilde Hories ranging up and downe the Arabian Defarts, and being broken and managed by the Arabians ever fince the time of Ismael, have so exceedingly multiplied and in-

on creafed, that they have replenished the most part of Africa: which opinion favoureth of truth, for cuen at this present there are great store of wild Hories found both in the African and Arabian Defarts. And I my felfe fawe in the Numidian Defart a wild Colt of a white colour, and hauing a curled maine. The most certaine triali of their Horses is when they can ouertake the beaft called Lant, or the Offrich in a race : which two, if they be able to performe, they are

845

A aaaa 3

Horfes fed with Camels milke.

effeemed worth a thousand Duckats or an hundred Camels. Howbeit, very few of these Horses are brought up in Barbarie, but the Arabians that inhabite the Defarts, and the people of Living bring vp great numbers of them, ving them not for travell or warfare, but onely for hunting. neither doe they give them any other meate but the milke of Camels, and that twife euery day and night, to the end they may keepe them nimble, lively, and of spare flesh : and in the time of Graffe they fuffer them to feede in Paftures , but then they ride not voon

The wilde Wild Horfes Plate (but of

The wilde Horse is one of those beasts that come seldome in sight. The Arabians of the Defarts take the wild Horse and eate him, saying, that the younger the Horse be, the sweeter is his fiesh : but he will hardly be taken either with Horses or Dogs. In the waters where this 10 are vinal with the baft keepeth, they lay certaine fnares, couring them ouer with land, wherein his foot being the Tortor & at the River of caught, he is intangled and flaine.

The beaft called Lant or Dane in shape resembleth an Oxe, sauing that he hath smaller less. Lpanifib bread, and comlier hornes. His haire is white, and his hoofs are as blacke as let, and he is to exceeding fwift, that no beaft can ouertake him, but onely the Barberte Horfe, as is beforelaid. He is eaflier caught in Summer then in Winter, because that in regard of the extreme fretting heat of the fand his hoofs are then strained and set awry, by which meanes his swittnesse is abated, like as Targets made the swiftnesse of Stagges and Roe-Deere Of the hide of this beast are made Shields and Targets of great defence, which will not be pierced, but onely with the forcible shot of a bullet, but they

The wild Oxeresembleth the tame Oxe, saue that it is lesse in stature, being of a gray or ashcolour, and of great swiftenesse. It haunteth either the Desarts, or the confines of the Desarts. The wild Oxc. And the flesh thereof (they fay) is very fauoury.

The wilde Assessing round either in the Desarts, or vpon the borders thereof, is of an ashcolour. In swiftnesse they are surpassed onely by the Barbary Horses, and when they see a man. they bray out aloud, kicking and wincing with their heeles, and standing stone-still, till one approacheth so neare them, that he may touch them with his hand, and then they betake one approximent to flight. By the Arabians of the Delarts they are caught with Snares, and other Engins. They goe in companies either when they feede or water themschies. Their fiesh is hot and vnfauory, and hath a wilde taile : but being iet a cooling two dayes after it is fodden, it be- 20 commeth very fauory and pleafant.

All the Oxen voon the Mountaines of Africa being tame cattell, are of fo meane a flature. the Mountains that in comparison of other Oxen they seeme to be but Heifers of two yeeres old : but the Mountainers ving them to the plough, fay, that they are strong, and will indure much la-

Adimmain, is a tame beaft, beeing shaped like a Ramme, and of the stature of an Asse, and having long and dangle eares. The L bjans vie these beats in stead of Kine, and make of their milke great ftore of Cheese and Bucter. They have some Wooll, though it bee but short. I my selfe vpon a time beeing merrily disposed, roade a quarter of a mile vpon the backe of one of these beastes. Very many of them there are in the Desarts of Libya, and but fewe in other places : and it is a rare matter to fee one of them in the Numidian 40 field.

The African

There is no difference betweene these Rammes of Africa and others, saue onely in their tayles, which are of a great thickneffe, being by fo much the groffer, by how much they are more fat, to that some of their tayles weigh ten, and other twenty pounds a peece, and they become fat of their owne naturall inclination : but in Egypt there are divers that fed them fat with Bran and Barley, vntill their tayles growe to bigge that they cannot remoone themselues from place to place : insomuch that those which take charge of them are faine to bind little carts voider their tayles, to the end they may have firength to walke. I my felfe faw at a City in Egype called Affor, and standing vpon Nilm, about an hundred and fifty miles so more of the faid Rams tayles that weighed foure-the pounds, and others affrmed, that they had seen one of those tayles of an hundred and fifty pounds weight. All the fat therefore of this beaft confifteth in his tayle; neither is there any of them to be found but onely in Tu-

Huge style.

The Lyon:

The Lion is a most fierce and cruell beast, being burtfull vnto all other beasts, and excelling them both in strength, courage, and crueltie, neither is he onely a denourer of beafts, but of men alfo. In some places one Lyon will boldly encounter two hundred Horsemen. They range without all feare among the flockes and droues of Cattell, and what foeuer heaft they can lay hold on, they carry it into the next Wood vnto their Whelpes : yea, some Lyons there are (as I have before faid) that will vanquish and kill fue or fixe Horsemen in one Company. Howbeit, such 60 Lyons as live vpon the cold mountaynes are not so outragious and cruell ; but the hotter the places be where they keepe, the more rauenous and bold are they, as namely, upon the Front, ers of Temefina, and of the Kingdome of Fez, in the Defart of Angad neere Telenfin, and betweene the Citie of Bona and Tunis, all which are accounted the most famous and herce Lyons in all A-

CHAP.1. S.9. The Leopard, Cinet Cat, Apes, Monkeyes, Baboones, &c.

frica. In the Spring, while they are given to Lust and Venery, they have most fierce and bloudie conflicts one with an other, eight or twelve Lyons following after one Lyoneffe, I have heard many both men and women report, that if a woman chanceth to meet with a Lyon, and (hewmany both men and women tepons, that he would be made to meet writing Lyon, and thew-eth him her printe parts, hee will with crying and roaring, cash his eyes woon the ground and so depart. Beleene it they that lift. But this I am well affired of, that what loeuer a Lyon getteth

in his pawes, though it be a Camell, he will carry it away. The Leopard living in the Woods of Barbarie, will not for all their great strength and cruel-

tie hurt any man, vnlefie it be very feldome, when as they meete with a man in a narrow paffige, and cannot flume him, or when they are checked and prouoked vnto fury : for then they To will flye vpon a man, laying hold vpon his vifage with their talents, and plocking off for much fielh as they can catch, infomuch that fometimes they will crush his braines in pieces. They inuade not any flockes or droues of tame Cattell, but are at deadly feule with Dogges, whom

they will kill and descure. The Mountayners of the Region of Conflamina lunt them on Horfe-backe, flopping all paffages, where they might escape. The Leopard ranging vp an downe, and finding every place to befet with Horsemen that he cannot get away, windeth and turneth himselfe on all fides, and to becommeth a fit marke for the Hunters to discharge their Darts and Arrowes vpon. But if the Leopard chanceth to escape, that man that lets him passe, is bound by an visual custome to inuite the residue of the Hunters vnto a Banquet.

The beast called by the Arabians, Dabub, and by the Africans, leff, in bignesseand shape Thebeast cal-20 refembleth a Woolfe, fauing that his legges and feet are like to the legges and feet of a man. It led Dabab, is not hurtfull vnto any other beaft, but will rake the carkaffes of men out of their graves, and will denoute them, being otherwise an abject and filly creature. The Hunters being acquainted with his Den, come before it finging and playing vpon a Drum, by which Melodic beeing with his legs are intrapped in a ftrong Rope, and so he is drawne out and slaine.

The Cinet Cats are naturally wilde, and are found in the Woods of Ethiopia. The Mer- The Cinet Cat chants taking their young Whelpes or Kittes, feed them with Milke, Branne, and Flesh, and chants raking their young the But their odoriferous Excrement (which is nought elfe but The manner of keepe them in Cages or Grates. But their odoriferous Excrement (which is nought elfe but their fweat) they gather twice or thrice enery day in manner following: first, they drine them gathering Civp and downe the Grate with a Wand, till they liweat, and then they take the faid iweat from uch under their flankes, their shoulders, their neckes, and their tayles: which Excrement of iweat

is commonly called Ciuet. Of Apres there are divers and fundry kinds, those which have tayles, being called in the A. The Apre. frices Tongue, Monne, and those which have none, Babsini. They are found in the Woods of Monkeyes and Massitania, and vpon the Mountaynes of Bugia and Constantina. They live vpon Grass and Baboones. Corne, and goe in great companies to feed in the Corne field, and one of their company which flandeth Centinell, or keepeth watch and ward vpon the borders, when hee efpyeth the Hufbandman comming, he cryeth out and giueth as it were an alarme to his fellowes, who every one of them flee immediately into the next Woods, and betake themselues to the trees. The shee Apes carrie their Whelpes vpon their shoulders, and will leape with them in that fort from one

The Sea Horse is commonly found in the Rivers of Niger and Nilm. In shape it resembleth The Sea Horse an Horse, and in stature an Asse, but it is altogether destitute of haire, It liueth both in the water and voon the Land, and swimmeth to the shoare in the night season. Barkes and Boates laden with Wares and fayling downe the River of Niger, are greatly endangered by this Sea Horse, for often times he ouer-whelmeth and finketh them,

The Sea Oxe being coursed with an exceeding hard skinne is shaped in all respects like vnto The Sea Oxe. the Land Oxe; faue that in bignefie it exceedeth not a Calfe of fixe monethes old. It is found in both the Rivers of Niger and Nilm, and being taken by Fishers, is kept a long time a line out

50 of the water. I my felfe law one at Cairo lead vp and downe by the necke in a Chaine, which (they fay) was taken at the Citie of Afna, flanding upon the banke of Nilus, about four hundred miles from Caire.

In the Libyan Defarts are found very many Tortoyfes as bigge as a Tunne, And Bieri the The Tortoyfe, Cosmographer in his Booke of the Regions and Journies of Africa reporteth , that a certaine man Bieri his Booke being weary of trauelling, alcended to his thinking, vpon an high stone lying in the Defart, to of the Regithe end he might free himselfe from the danger of Serpents and venemous bealts; who having one of Africa. flept foundly thereupon all night, found himselfe in the morning removued three miles from the place where he first lay downe, and thereby understood that it was not a stone but a Tortoyle whereon he reposed himselfe, which lying still all the day long creepeth for food in the night-

60 feafon, but fo flowly, that her pace can hardly be perceived. alon, but to flowly, that her pace can hardly be perceited.

The Crocodile Commonly frequenteth the Rivers of Niger and Nilus, and contayneth in The craft of length twelue Cubits and aboue, the tayle thereof being as long as the whole bodie belides at the Crocodile beit, there are but few of fo huge a bigneffe. It goeth vpon foure feet like a Lizard, neither is it in taking both aboue a Cubit and an halfe high. The tayle of this beaft is full of knots, and the skinne there- men & beaft.

of is so exceeding hard, that no Crosse-bow will enter it. Some prey upon filles onely, bur o-

thers upon beasts and men. Which lurking about the bankes of the River, doe craftsly lay wait

for men and beafts that come the fame way, about whom fuddenly winding their tayles, they

ing into the

draw them into the water, and there denoure them. Howbeit, some of them are not so crossly by nature : for if they were, no Inhabitants could live neere vato the Rivers of Nilus and Niger. In eating they mooue the upper law onely, their neather law being ioyned vito their breftbone. Not many yeeres fithence, paffing vp the River of Nilus towards the Citie of Cana. ftanding in the vpper part of Egypt, foure hundred miles from Caro, on a certaine night whilest we were in the midit of our Iourney, the Moone being ouer-shadowed with Clouds, the Mariners and Passengers all fast a sleepe, and the Barke vnder sayles, I my selfe studying by Candle- 10 light in my Cabben, was called upon by a deuout old man in the Barke, who bestowed the same night in watching and prayer, and faid vnto me, call (I rray you) some of your company, who may helpe me to draw vp this piece of wood floting vpon the water, which will ferue to morrow for the dreffing of our Dinner. My felfe, Sir (quoth I) will come and helpe you, rather then wake any of our company in the dead of the night. Nay (quoth the old man) I will try whether I bee able to draw it vp alone or no. And so when the Barke was neere vnto the Wood, as he supposed, holding a Rope in his hand to cast into the water, hee was soddainly intangled with a Crocodiles long tayle, and was in a moment draw ne vnder the water. Whereupon, I making a fhoute, all the people in the Barke arose, and itr.king sayles we stayed for the space of an houre, diversin the meane time leaping into the water to feeke the man, but altogether in vaine: 20 and therefore all of them affirmed, that he was caught by a Crocodile. As we falled further, we faw great numbers of Crocodiles upon the bankes of the Ilands in the midit of Nilse lyc beaking them in the Sunne with their lawes wide open, whereinto certaine little Birds about the big-Litle Birds By neile of a Thruh entring, came flying forth againe presently after. The occasion whereof was told me to be this: The Crocodiles by reason of their continuall denouring of beasts and fishes, have certaine pieces of flesh sticking fast between their forked teeth, which flesh being putrimouth to pick fied, breedeth a kind of Worme wherewith they are cruelly tormented. Wherefore the faid wormes from Birds flying about, and freing the Wormes, enter into the Crocodiles lawer, to fatisfie their betweenether.

Burts flying about, and freing the Wormes, enter into the Crocodile servering himselfe freed from the Wormes of his teath hunger therewith. But the Crocodile perceiuing himfelfe freed from the Wormes of his teeth. offereth to fluc his mouth, and to deuoure the little Bird that did him fo good a turne, but being hindred from his vngrateful attempt by a pricke which groweth vpon the Birds head, hee is constrayined to open his lawes and to let her depart. The shee Crocodile laying Egges vpon the shoare couereth them with fand; and to some as the young Cro odiles are hatched, they crawle into the River. Those Crocodiles that forfake the River and haunt the Defarts become venemous; but such as continue in Nilm, are del'itute of Poyson. Of these beatts I saw aboue three hundred heads placed upon the wals of Cana, with their Iawes wide open, being of so monstrous and incred ble a bignesse, that they were sufficient to have swallowed vp a whole Cow at once, and their teeth were great and sharpe.

The Dragon.

In the Caues of Atlas are found many huge and monstrous Dragons, which are heavie, of a flow motion, because the midst of their body is grosse, but their neckes and cayles are flender.
They are most venemous creatures, infomuch, that whosoeuer is bitten or touched by them, his flesh presently waxeth fort and weake, neither can be by any meanes escape death.

The Hydra.

The Hydra being flort in proportion of body, and having a flender tayle and necke, lueth in the Libyan Delarts. The poyton thereof is most deadly, so that if a man be bitten by this beast, he hath none other remedy, but to cut off the wounded part, before the Poyfon di perfeth it felfe into the other members.

The creature called Dub.

The Dab living also in the Defarts , resembleth in shape a Lizzard , saving that it is somewhat bigger, and containeth in length a Cubite, and in breadth foure fingers. It drinketh no water at all, and if a man poure any water into the mouth thereof, it prefently dieth. It layeth egges in manner of a Tortoyse, and is destitute of poyson. The Arabians take it in the Defarts: and I my felfe cut the throat of one which I tooke, but it bled a very little. Being flayed 50 and roafted, it tafteth somewhat like a frogge. In swiftenesse it is comparable to a Lizzard, and being hunted, if it chanceth to thrust the head into a hole, it can by no force be drawen out, except the hole be digged wider by the hunters. Having teene flame three dayes together, and then being put to the fire, it ftirreth it felfe as if it were newly dead.

The Guaral is like vnto the former, fauing that it is somewhat bigger, and hath poylon both in the head and tayle, which two parts being cut off, the Arabians will cate it, notwithftanding it be of a deformed shape and vgly colour, in which respects I loathed alwayes to eate the

The Camelion

The Camelion being of the shape and bignesse of a Lizzard, is a deformed, crooked and leane 60 creature, having a long and slender tayle like a Mouse, and being of a slow pace. It is nourished by the Element of Ayre, and the Sun-beames, at the rifing whereof it gapeth, and turneth it his offerred felfe vp and downe. It changeth the colour according to the varietie of places where it comsociae Fiyes, meth, being sometimes blacke and sometimes greene, as I my selie haue seene it. It is at great

enmitie with venemous Serpents, for when it feeth any lie fleeping under a tree, it prefently How the Caenmitte with venemous Serpents, tor when to receive any in including the street, it partently elimethyp the same tree, and looking downe vpon the Serpents head, it voydethout of the limit when the street which is street. mouth, as it were, a long thread of spittle, with a round drop like a Pearle hanging at the end, which drop falling wrong, the Camelion changeth his place, till it may light directly voon the Serpents head, by the vertue whereof he prefently dieth.

849

The Offrich in shape resembleth a Goose, but that the neck and legges are somewhat longer. The Offrich, fo that some of them exceede the length of two cubites. The body of this Bird is large, and the wings thereof are full of great feathers both white and blacke, which wings and feathers being vnit to flie withall, doe helpe the Offrich, with the motion of her traine, to runne a swife 10 pace. This Fowle liueth in drie Defarts, and layeth to the number of ten or twelte Egges in the Sands, which being about the bignesse of great Bullets, weigh fifteene pounds a piece; but the Offrich is of so weak of memorie, that she presently forgetteth the place where her Egges were laid, And afterward the same, or some other Ostrich-hen finding the said egs by chance, hatcheth and fostereth them as if they were certainely her owne : the Chickens are no sooner crept out of the shell, but they prowle up and downe the Defarts for their food : and before their feathers be growne, they are so swift, that a man shall hardly ouertake them. The Offrich is a filly and deate creature, feeding vpon any thing which it findeth, be it as hard and vndigestable as yron. The flesh, especially of their legs, is of a slymie and strong taste: and yet the Numidians vie it for food, for they take young Offriches, and fet them vpa fatting. The Offriches wander vp and downe the Defarts in orderly troopes, so that a tarre off a man would take them to be so 20 many Horsemen, which illusion bath often dismaied whole Carouans.

Or Eagles there are divers kinds, according to their naturall properties, the proportion of Of Fowlers Or Eagles there are divers kinds, according to their natural properties, the proportion of their bodies, or the diversitie of their colours; and the greatest kind of Eagles are called in the the Eagle. Arabian Tongue, Nefir. The Africans teach their Eagles to prey vpon Foxes and Wolues; which in their encounter ceaze vpon the heads of the faid Beafts with their bills, and vpon the backs with their talents, to avoid the danger of biting, But if the Beaft turne his belly vpward, A frangenarthe Eagle will not fortake him, till the hath either peckt out his eyes, or flaine him. Many of our African Writers affirme, that the male Eagle oftentimes ingendring with a shee-Wolfe, begetteth a Dragon, having the beake and wings of a Bird, a Serpents taile, the feete of a Wolfe, and a skin speckled and partie coloured like the skin of a Serpent; neither can it open the eye-lids, and it lineth in Caues. This Monster, albeit my selfe have not seene, yet the common report over

30 all Africa affirmeth, that there is fuch an one.

The Nellr is the greatest Fowle in all Africa, and exceedeth a Crane in bignesse, though the bil. The Fowle necke, and legs are fomewhat shorter. In flying, this Bird mounteth up so high into the Aire, called Nefer. that it cannot be discerned : but at the fight of a dead carkaffe it will immediately descend. This Bird liueth a long time, and I my felfe haue feene many of them vnfeathered by reason of extreme old age: wherefore having cast all their feathers, they returne vnto their nest, as if they were newly hatched, and are there nourished by the younger Birds of the same kind. The Italians call it by the name of a Voture: but I thinke it to be of another kind. They neitle vpon high Rocks, and vpon the tops of wilde and defart Mountaines, especially vpon mount Aslae: and 40 they are taken by fuch as are acquainted with those places.

The best African Hawkes are white, being taken vpon certaine Mountaines of the Numidian Hawkes. Defarts, and with these Hawkes they pursue the Crane, Of these Hawkes there are divers kinds,

Some being vsed to flie at Patridges and Quailes, and others at the Hare.

Parrats there are as big as a Doue of divers colors, some red, some black, and some ash-coloured, Parats or which albeit they cannot so fitly expresse mans speech, yet have they most sweet & shril voices, Poppiniay. Of Locustes there are sometimes seene such monstrous swarmes in Africa, that in slying The Locustes they intercept the Sunne-beames like a thicke Cloud. They denoure trees, leaves, fruites, and all

greene things growing out of the earth. At their departure they leaue egges behind them, whereofother young Locusts breede, which in the places where they are left, will eate and confume all things even to the very barke of trees, procuring thereby extreme dearth of Corne, efpecially in Mauritania. Howbeit, the Inhabitants of Arabia Defarta, and of Libra, esteeme the comming of these Locusts as a fortunate boading: for, seething or drying them in the Sunne, they bruse them to powder, and so eate them.

The greater part of Africa hath none other Salt but fuch as is digged out of Quarries and Of Minerals The greater part of Africa hath none other Sait but fuch as is digged out of charries and and Fruits,
Mines, after the manner of Marble or Free, stone, being of a white, red, and gray colour. Barbarie Rootes: and aboundeth with Salt, and Namidia is indifferently farnished therewith : but the Land of Ne- first of Minegros, and especially the inner part of Ethiopia, is so destitute thereof, that a pound of Salt is there rall Salt fold for halfe a Duckat. And the people of the faid Regions vie not to fet Salt vpon their tables; One pound of On the Maria Augustus and the people of the lad regions vie not to let balt vpon their tables; One pounds of but holding a crum of Sale in their hands, they lick the fame at enery morfell of meate which strengthen they put in their mouthes. In certaine Lakes of Barbarie all the Summer time, there is faire and a Duclat. white fair congealed or kerned, as namely, in divers places neere vnto the Citie of Fez.

Antimonie growing in many places of Africa in the Lead-mines, is leparated from the Lead The Minerall Antimonie growing in many places of Africa in the Lead-mines, is reparated from the Lead-by the helpe of Brimitone. Great plenty of this Minerall is digged out of the bottome of Mount monie. Atlas,

Atlas, especially where Numidia bordereth vpon the Kingdome of Fez. Brimstone likewise is digged in great abundance out of other places of Africa.

Euphorbium is the Luyce or Gumme of a certaine Hearbe, growing like the head of a wilde Thirlie, betweene the branches whereof grow certaine fruites as big in compane as a greene cucumber : after which shape or likenesse, ie beareth certaine little graines or leedes ; and some of the faid fruits are an elle long, and some are longer. They grow not out of the branches of the Herbe, but fpring out of the firme ground, and out of one flag you shall fee sometimes twentie. and sometimes thirtie of them issue forth. The people of the same Region, when the said fruites are once ripe, doe pricke them with their kniues, and out of the holes proceedeth a Liquor, or Inyce much like vnto milke, which by little and little groweth thick and flimy. And fo being to growne thick, they take it off with their knines, putting it in Bladders, and drying it. And the Plant or Hearbe it felfe is full of sharpe prickles. Of Pitch there are two kinds, the one being naturall, and taken out of certaine Stones, which

Of Pitch.

are in Fountaines; the water whereof retained the vnsauorie smell and taste of the same; and the other being artificiall, and proceeding out of the Iuniper or Pine-tree : and this artificiall Pitch I faw made voon Mount Atlas, in manner following. They make a deepe and round furnace with an hole in the bottome, through which hole the Pitch may fall downe into an hollow place within the ground, being made in forme of a little veffell: and putting into the faid furnace the boughes of the forelaid trees broken into fmall pieces, they close vp the mouth of the furnace, and make a fire vinder it, by the heate whereof the Pitch diffilleth forth of the wood, through the bottome of the furnace into the foresaid hollow place; and so it is taken vp and put in bladders or bags.

The Fruit called Man or Mufa.

Musa is a fruit growing vpon a small tree, which beareth large and broad leaues of a cubit long, hath a most excellent and delicate taste, and springeth forth about the bignesse of a small Cucumber. The Mahumetan Doctors affirme, that this was the fruit which God forbad our first Parents to eate in Paradise, which when they had eaten they coursed their nakednesse with leaues of the same fruit, as being of all other leaues most meete for that purpose. They grow in great abundance at Sela, a Towne of the Kingdome of Fez; but in farre greater plenty in the land of Egypt, and especially at Dumiata.

Of Caffia.

The trees bearing Casea are of great thicknesse, having leaves like vnto the Mulberie tree. 30 They beare a broad and white Blossome, and are so laden with fruits, that they are constrained to gather great store before they be ripe, least the tree should breake with our much weight. And this kind of tree groweth onely in Egypt.

The Roote called Taxgargbente.

The Roote Tauzarghente growing in the Westerne part of Africa vpon the Ocean Sea shore, yeeldeth a fragrant and odorsferous smell. And the Merchants of Mauritania carry the same into the Land of Negres, where the people vie it for a most excellent Perfume, and yet they neither burne it, nor put any fire at all thereto : for being kept onely in an house, it weekleth a naturall fent of it felfe. In Mauritaria they fell a bunch of these Rootes for halfe a Duckat, which being carried to the Land of Negros, is fold againe for eighty, or one flundred Duckats, and some-

The Hearbe Addad is bitter, and the Roote it felfe is so venemous, that one drop of the water The Roote cale diffilled thereout, will kill a man within the space of an houre, which is commonly knowne euen to the Women of Africa.

led Sarves

The Roote Surnag growing also vpon the Westerne part of Mount Aslas, is said to be very The Rocce cal- comfortable and preservative vnto the prime parts of man, and being drunke in an Electuary. to ftirre vp venereallluft, &c. Neither mult I here omit that, which the Inhabitants of Mount Atlas doe commonly report, that many of those Damosels which keepe Cattell upon the said Mountaines, have loft their Virginitie by none other occasion, but by making water vpon the faid Roote: vnto whom I would in merriment answere, that I beleeved all which experience had taught, concerning the fecret vertue of the fame Roote, yea, they affirmed moreouer. that 50 forme of their Maidens were to infected with this roote, that they were not onely defloured of their Virginitie, but had also their whole bodies puffed vp and swolne. These are the things memorable and worthy of knowledge, seene and observed by me lobn

Leo, throughout all Africa, which Country I have in * all places travelled quite over : wherein

whatfoeuer I faw worthy the observation, I presently committed to writing; and those things

which I saw not, I procured to bee at large declared vnto mee by most credible and substantiall

perlons, which were themselves eye-witnesses of the same: and so having gotten a fit oportu-

Negros, and

nitie, I thought good to reduce these my Trauels and Studies into this one Volume. For a smende, as men desire to reade later accourtenes, and these my Labours are intended not to the profit and pleasure alone; but to the bonour also of the English Name and Nation, I have added this following Discourse of the late Warres in Barbarie : met pet pursaing them to these Times, but contenting my setse 60 with the beginnings, and some yeares proceedings thereof, the English baning (as you hall see) yea, being no fmall part therein; Que regio in terris noftri non plena laboris; The voluntarie English admentares in the Civill uncivill broiles of Ice-frozen Muscouia , of Sunne-scorched Barbaric, of Turkish and

CHAP.2. S. 1. Remarkable observations of the Kingdome of Barbarie.

Perlian fights by Sea, the Mogols by Land, the Sweden , Polish, Germane, Bohemian, Belgian, and many-beaded Italian Broyles neever home; the Easterne and W. Sterne Indies, the Artike Northerne Circle, and Southermost Africa remote, have really exceeded the fabulous Devices of durifing Fublers, in Knight-Aduentures, the Issues and Occupations of idle braines. As for the mann r of the Scriftan Family, attayning at first to the Barbarian Scepter, and the monstrous Saint-ship and portenthose power of Side Hamet, getting the Kingdome from the Breibren, and of Side Hia which difoffossed him of it and his life, you have more full Relations in my Pulgrimage, with other Occurrents. Here it is more fit to let you heare others Speake then my felfe.

CHAP. II.

Collections of things most remarkeable in the History of Barbarbarie, written by R o. C.

How the Kingdome of Barbarie came to MVLEY HAMET XARIF, the late deceased King, and the course of his government; of his Sonnes and their behaulour. SHECK smilgouernment and imprisonment : HAMErs death.



on the Marcinet, being Labies, were long times Kings of Barbaie:
vntill a plaine Hali some hundred yeeres ago, calling himselfe Mula Hamet Xarif, came out of the Countrey of Dara, (lying beyond the Mountaynes of Aslas) with a great number of Mountayness of Marcinette and Countayness of Marcinette and Countayness of Marcinette and Countayness of Mountayness of bers: these with their strength got Mornecos from the Mareins. And going for mentioned by

ward following the fertilinesses it to the toyle, draw the Mareins out of Fee, get Less which them ward following the fertilinesses the toyle, draw the Mareins out of Fee, get Less than the many ting into his power all the flat Countryes comprized winder she Titles of Sus, Morucos and coloured with the first than the coloured with the Fee, from the hils of Atlas to the Streights of Gibraltar. Being thus growne great, hee would ring against proue himselfea Xarif, that is, one of the Kindred of the Prophet Mahomet , desiring his birth the Christians might be held answerable to his new acquired fortunes: But within a little time after this his both Spaniards might be held aniwerable to his new acquired fortunes: Dut within a first time and Pringits fordaine invasion, Sie rebelling, refuted his Government, wherefore hee fent to the bordering which had Tirkes for ayde, who fulfilled therin his request. Ayded with thele Tirkis auxiliary forces, he fet made (as you forward, and at his entrance into that Kingdome, the Tinkil Souldiers through Treason killed he in Leolarge him, and cut off his head; facked Taradant, and running ouer the whole Countrey, spoyled it entries into him, and cut off his head; lacked Taradam, and running over the whole Country, 190yica is Barban) to 40 by the space of two monethes, which done, they would gladly have returned to Trimasine: yet surpe the fearing their owne strength to returne the same way Hamet had brought them; it was held their State and difbetter course and shorter lourney, to passe ouer the Mountaynes: but the Montayners knowing possesse the this their new done bloudie fact, and leeing them have good flore of pillage, set vpon them, fo former Kings. that few or none escaped their hands, but were all slaine. After this Hamet Xarifs death, who Southt euch that few or none eleaged their nands, but were all name. After this trainer samps death, who in order of raigned some eight yeeres, succeeded his Brother Muley Abdela, having all his life time great time and afwarre with the Marcins, to keepe that his Brother had conquered: he having raigned some fif- faires, this Hiteene yeeresdyed, leaning behind him thirteene Sonnes, the eldest Muley Abdela (who at his steriestly sucentrance to the Kingdome, commanded all his Brethren to be killed :) but the second Brother ceeds the for-Abdeimelech tearing hard mealure, fled prefently upon the death of his Father into Tarkie, mer of Loglor and fo fased his life. The third Brother Males Huma doubton wearant benefits and my first limit for the flesh of the life f 50 and to faired his life. The third Brother Muley Hamet of whom wee are hereatter to entreate, their manner being held a great Church-man, timple and humble spirited, not any way addicted vnto armes, of getting the was spared aliue as lesse teared. The other ten were all put to death in one day at Taradant in Sus, Kandome and where they were kept in their Fathers life time. This Abdels raigned fortic yeeres, and dying, thereit of the left behind him three Scanes. Makes Make left behind him three Sonnes, Muley Mehamet, Muley Sheek, Muley Nasar, Muley Mehamet Pilgrimage Lo. being King, his two young Brethren ranne away into Spaine, the elder whereof named Muley (11.6.a. Sheek is yet living, and thereturned Christian. The younger Brother called Muley Naffer returned into Barbarie, in the fourteenth veere of Muley Hamets Raigne, who dyed at lait. At this Muley Naffars landing in the Countrey of Fez, much people fauoured him and his Title, and two thousand or Muley Sheeks Souldiers (who now liveth, and then governed Fez, for his Fa-60 ther revolted from him to Notar; infonuch, as Muley Sheek was in minde to have fled vnto his

Father, But that Attend Hames Ben lan, being a very wife Captaine, and there placed to helpe Muley Sheek by his countell, who was very young,) kept him from running away : and Muley Nassar with a illatorie warre, with whom if the Souldiers had flayed, hee might peraduenture have gotten the Country. But their Lent approaching, the Souldiers told Naffar, they

would goe keepe their Easter at their owne houses. Whereupon Nasjar, thinking if they were once sone, they would never returne to him againe, would give prefent battaile, and so was this Naffar flaine. Abdelmelech being fecond Brother to Abdela, got fuch fauour in Turkie where he lived, as entering Barbarie with foure thouland Turkifb Souldiers, he got the Kingdome from his Nephew Mehamet the eldeit Sonne of Abdela, and there raigned two yeeres. Muley Mehamet thus deprined of his Kingdome, fled for fuccour to Sebastian then King of Portugall, who came in person into Barbarie, to helpe him with thirtie thousand men; giving battaile, the Moores fled, and the Christians retyred, hoping the Moores would returne, that so the Christians might make the greater flaughter of them. According to this expectation Abdelmelech with his Armie returned, and the Christians charged the foremost of their Horse-men very hotly. Io who would have fled. But fuch was the abundance of Abdelmelechs Horfe-men, following the foreward which were discomfitted, as they could not have field-roome to flye, but were forced to fight it out. This was a bloudie battaile wherein three Kings loft their lives. Don Sebastian King of Portugall : Muley Mehamet vnto whose ayde Schastian came ouer : And Abdelmelech who came out of Turkie being fecond Brother to Abdela; This Abdelmelech left behind him a Sonne yet liuing at this day in Turkie, whose name is Muley Smime. After the death of these two. Abdelas third Brother, Muley Hamet Xarif, was made King, raigned about feven and twentie veeres in great peace and felicitie, vntill he went to take his Sonne Muley Sheck at Fez, where the Father dyed, whose death hath caused all these Warres, as yee may reade hereafter.

Touching this Muley Hamet, I thought good, to infert this Letter of Master Bernhere, the Sonne 20 of that worthy Augustine Bernhere (as I have heard) which is so commended by Master Foxe for his zeale in Queene Maries dayes, in the Historie of Bradford, Carelesse, Glouer, &c.

To his louing Brother Mafter Edward Wright.

His King Muley Hamet is much delighted in the studie of Astronomic and Astrologie, and va-I lust Instruments serving for the course of the Sunne and Moone, that are of rare device, ex- 30 ceedingly. Wherefore your Spheare, your Watch, your Mundane Diall, and your Sextans, your new Magnetical Infrument for Declination, or any Aftrolable that hath somewhat extraordinarie in it will be accepted : and you might fell the same at good prices. Now with the Eagle there gee from bence certaine Ambassadors, and one of them is the Kings Secretarie, named Abdala Waled Anoone, who bath some infight in such matters. This Bearer my friend Master Pate, and Robert Kitchen the Master of the Ship, I thinke, will bring him unto you, unto whom I would have you frew all the varietie of Instruments that you have either in your owne hands , or bane fold and lent to others; that hee may choose some for the Kings wse and his owne. You may shew them also the Draughts and Lineaments of what sour you have in Paper, all which I know, will make them admire and be desirous to have some that they can understand how to use. You may cause to be framed some Instruments in Brasse or Sil. 40 ner, leaving the spaces for Arabique words and figures, yet drawing the Pictures of them in Paper exactly, and festing downe the Latine figures, and the words in Latine, or Spanish, which is farre better: there will be found here that can grave the same in Arabique upon the Instruments having some direction on from you about the matter. Or Abdala Walled being a perfett Pen-man, can fet the Arabique Letters, figures, and words downe very faire; and so any of your Gravers can worke the same in Metall, hauing his Writing before them. Master Cyprian would be a good Interpreter betweene you and them, or Some that understandeth and speaketh both Latine and Spanish, and knoweth what the words of Arte

The experiments Mathematicall of the Load-stone, will content the Ambassadour much. Make no scruple to shew them what you can; for it may redound to your good. I desire to heare more of Mag- 50 neticall workes, and the discouery of the North passage. Write to me thereof, and send any Maps or draughts of infruments, or what you thinke fit about Dyalling , or the course of time, and the motion of the Heauens, which you thinke I can understand : but direct the same either to me , or to one Master Iohn Wakeman, fernant to Mafter Alderman Hamden ; who, though he have fmall skill in fuch things, yet is desirous to see and learne, and can preferre such matters to the view of the King, and his Sonnes, who all are exceeding strictions of matters tending this way : so that if I had skill my selfe, or but some of yo. r Instruments, whereof I could make demonstration for their wse, I could give great content, and be a meanes to pleasure you much. But conferre with Master Pate, and Master Kitchen, who will direct you in this businesse, and from whom you may receive money before hand, for making any instru-

ments that the Ambassadours would have for themselves or the King.

Tour Magnetical Instrument of Declination, would be commodious for a yeerely Voyage, which 60 A Voyage ouer Tour Magneticall Instrument of Declination, would be commodish for a seriety Voyage, which a sandy Sea to some make for the King over a Sandy Sea (wherein they must vie Needle and Compasse) to Gago. Gazofor Gold. If you question about the matter, and shew them some instrument serving for this purpose, it will give great content. Other directions I might adde vnto you; but from the parties about named, you may reCHAP.1.S.1. Great Dominions. Sugar Gardens. English Nation beloved.

ceine the same fully. And thus with my good will, boping and wishing to see you shortly, I take my leane. This 24. of lune, 1600. From the Citie of Maroco.

From Maroco in Barbary.

Your louing Brother in-law, Thomas Bernhere.

Obtaining the Scepter, hee first prouided himselfe of the grauest men hee could find in his Kingdomes, to be Countellors of effate; then of the most experienced, and valiant Souldiers, 10 for Commanders ouer his Campe, and Garrison Townes. And whereas he was Monarch ouer two Nations, the Larbies, and Brebers, he found it requifite to vie a two-fold government. The Larbies dwelling in the most plaine Champion Countrey of his three Kingdomes , Moruecos, The Larbies Larbies dwelling in the most plaine Champion Countrey of his larter Ainguouses, and received, are the dwellage of the ground, fought no alterations, but receiung from him a due forme of inflice, executed plaine the by his Ministers : protecting them from the Montaneirs which are robbers, willingly obeyed his Breters Mouns Regall authoritie, and yeerely payed their tenths toward their Kings maintenance. As for the tainers, Brebers, or Montaneirs, being of an vntamed and fierce disposition, speaking the Tamsfer tongue, which is as much different from the Larbee, as Welch is from our English, dwelling in places by nature defencible, and almost inaccessible : He could not so well gouerne, neither had euer such 20 absolute power over them, nor received the fift pennie of profite from them, as he did from the Alarbier. Therefore he fought by all meanes to diminish their strength of people, drawing The greanes them alwayes into forraigne expeditions, especially into that warre, against the Negres, which or his Domicontinued a long time, t ereby extending his Empire to farre that way, as by Camell it was fixe moneths iourner from Mornesos, to the fartheit parts of his Dominion. Likewife, he vied A Carauanis this people to goe with the Carauans to Gago, to fetch home his yeerely Tribute and Custome, a company of whereby many were confumed in trauelling ouer the Saharas : for any offence or robbery com-, Merchant gowhereby many were contumed in trauenting ouer time sanation and my offence or traderly countries ingrogether mitted by them, his fword should punish severely, that the rest might feare: dividing their for trading. mitted by chem, his work and for trading, for trading, Countrey into feuerall diulions or Cantons, in euery of which he placed an Alkeid, with Soul-with a great diers to iuppresse any sudden vproares, much like our Lientenant set ouer our seuerall Coun-immber of 30 ties, but that the Alfeid is continually refident, and hath greater power in executing Marfield. Horfes, Caties, but that the Allem is community training and get their chiefest mens sannes into his mels and law. And lastly, as pledges of their loyalties, he would get their chiefest mens sannes into his Mules, laden hands, bringing them up in his Court to a more civill and delicate kind of life. He was alwaies of with Commomind to keepe peace with Christendome; with Spaine, who was his next Potent neighbour; but dities, aboue all loued the English Nation, and admired the late Queenes happie Gouernment, willing to entertaine trading with vs. witned his many Letters written to that worthy Lady of happie Memorie, and his Embaffage fent vnto her, Anno 1601. Performed by Abdala Wahad Anowne, and Hamet Alhadg, their great travailer to Mecha, and other places. Toward his fabiects he was not too tyrannicall, but fweetned his absolute power and will,

with much elemencie. By divers wayes he got exceffive store of gold. First, by seeing his tenths truly payd from the Larbeer: Secondly, by trading with the Negro, taking vp the falt at Tegazza, and selling it at Gago, having from thence returne in good gold. Thirdly, by hulbanuing his Maserams, or Ingenewes, where his Sugar Canes did grow, (though now all spoy- Sugar Garled with these warres) for it is sufficiently knowen, all of them about Moruecos, Taradant, dens. and Maeador, were yearely worth vnto him, fixe hundred thousand ounces at the least. I omit his louche tooke in entertaining forraigne Artizans, the reedifying of his house in Moruecos; getting Italian Marbles, the richest that could bee bought for money, and workemen hared from thence at great wages. His sumptuous prouisions for the Sarraile, and maintenance of his. The place from thence at great wages. His sumptuous prouisions for the Sarraile, and maintenance of his. The pace where his where his women, not so much delighting in the sinne, as his predecessors had done before, as to show his where his women, not so much delighting in the sinne, as his predecessors had done before, as to show his where his women. glory, because the fashion of the Countrey is such, to shew their riches and greatnesse vponthat fraile fexe, and their attendances. For his chiefest pleasures were to see the Gallantrie of 50 his kingdome, managing their good Barbarian Steeds, and the Falchons vpon their wing, making faireflights after the Heron : for these sports he was prouided, no man better, from which

he was recalled by certaine discontents, which as clouds fore-runned his owne Sun-let. At the time of his death, he left fine fonnes aline. The eldest Muley Mahemet, commonly Muley Hamet called Muley Sheek, a Title given alwayes to the eldeft of the Kings fonnes : The fecond, Mu- Xanifison es: ley Boferes, which two somes were both by one woman, a Negra, one of his Concubines : the three bift The third fon Muley Sidan, whom he had by one of his wives: The fourth fonne Muley Naffar, warres with who was about the age of nineteene yeers: And the fift, Muley Abdela, about fourteene yeers old cachother for at the time of the old Kings death, and these two last were the lons of two seuerall Concubines, the Kingdom, 60 This deceased King in his life time, had placed his three elder sonnes in several parts of his Kingdome, to governe for him in them, to Muley Sheek his eldest he had given the Kingdome of Fez, which Kingdome hath informer times continually beene allotted by the late Kings of Barbary to their eldelt fonnes: Muley Boferes he placed in his Kingdome of Sus , to Muley Sidan he gaue the Prouine of Tedala, which lyeth in the mid-way betweene Mornecos and Fez: his

two younger sonnes Muley Nassar, and Abdela remained with him in his house, whom he reason of their young yeeres, he had not as yet placed in any part of his Kingdomes. The eldest fonne Muley Sheek in his younger yeeres gouerned Fez, and those parts of Barbarie, with great approbation of his Father, through the Counfell of Balba Mustrepha a Spansib Renegado: which Balba in continuance of time, grew into such fauour with him, that the whole Government of the Kingdome of Fez was wholly by Muley Sheek put in his hands: Whereupon, the Alkieds of the Countrey that were naturall borne Moores, and continual attendants vpon the old King. enuving the greatnesse of the said Basha, raised divers accusations against him: Complaining to the King that he learned Muley Sheek to drinke wine (a thing vnlawfell to the Mocres, being forbidden themby their Prophet Mahomet) and that now having the whole Government of the 10 Kingdome of Fez in his hands, under the Kings fon he purposed after he had pessessed himself of Muler Sheeks Treasure, to flie, and carrie it with him to some parts of Christendome. Which acculations, the old King vpon some probabilities and likelihoods, conceining to be true these AL keids procured at last with him, that he should fend to his sonne Muley Sheck, commanding him to fend the head of the faid Bafba, which command; how foeuer, Muley Sheck (who greatly loued, and fauoured the faid Balba) at the first delayed to performe, yet after divers meslages, the old King fending at the last a principall servant of his, to see the execution done, he was forced much againft his will, to fee tulfilled.

M. Sheck.

In these younger yeeres of Muley Sheek, whilest this Basha was alive, none of the Kings formes was more dutifull to their father then he, neither any of their actions fo contented the old King as his; infomuch, as the whole Kingdomes hope for a fucceflor after the old Kings decease, was onely in Muley Sheck, Whereupon, and by the Kings voluntary motion, all the principall elkeids, and men of Command that were in the Kingdomes, by folemne oath vowed allegeance to Muley Sheek, after the old Kings deceale. And at that time Boferes the fecond fonne, by reason of the great plague in Sm, and other discontents, he received from that rebellious people, stayed not long there, but returned againe to his Father in Moruecos, where he flaved with him vntill his Fathers departure to Fez in September, 1602. Muley Sidan the third fonne, continued in Tedala, (a Prouince fruitfull and scituate in the flat of Barbarie, the mid-way betweene Fez and Mornecos, as I have told you) who governed those parts in great peace and quietneffe, euen in the chiefe times of the tumults that were in the bordering Dominions of his 20 eldest Brother Sheek, (whereof you shall read hereafter) insomuch, that hee was generally commended and liked both of his Father and of all the Kingdome for his gouernment, being strict in feeing the execution of Iuftice to be done in those parts that hee governed, not sparing his Kindred or neerest Followers in those cases: From his infancy hee naturally hated all maner of Threnes whatfoeuer, especially those his robbed by the high-wayes, and without any fayour or mercy feuerely punished them. How foeuer, he carryed himselfevery dutifull to his Father, whilest hee was living, yet from his child-hood he was alwayes of an afpiring and ambitious nature, which could never be brought to subject it selfe to give any awfull respect to his elder Brethren, but to hazard his whole eftate in obtayning the Kingdome, accounting himfelfe his Fathers lawfull heire, in that he was his Fathers eldelt Sonne, which he had by any of his marryed Wiues: In this point, not regarding the custome & Law of the Moores, who in title of 40 Inheritance or fuccession, respect not the mother, whether she be marryed Wife or Concubine bought with money, fo that her Sonne be the eldeft in birth.

Mules Shecks Countrey.

But to return againe to Muler Sheck the Kings eldeft Sonne, who after the death of his Balba Mustenba, (beheaded by his Fathers command) toone shewed vnto all men the want of governwent that was in him afor in his latter times, giving himselfe over to drunkennesse, and other detestable vices, which among it the Moores commonly accompanieth that finne, regarded not at all the gouernment of his Kingdome, but fuffered his feruants, followers, and Souldiers to doe what they would in robbing and spoyling the goods of his honest minded Subjects, without controlment: And through want of Jultice duely executed, his whole Countrey in a flort time fwarmed fo with theeues and robbers by the high wayes, that there was no trauelling through his Dominions but in Caffilas or companies of three hundred & foure hundred persons at a time. and they hardly fomtimes escaped the hands of theeues. The Alarbies, who continue to this day, in Tribes and kindreds, beeing the husbandmen of the Countrey, living in the fields in Tents, by Tilling of the Ground, and breeding up of Cattell, when as they could not quietly gather in, and peaceably enjoy the Come and Fruits of the Ground, denied to pay the King their accustomed duetie : and in the fields followed the courses of Muley Shecks servants in the Citie, in robbing of all paffengers that came within their power. And fuch was the lauishing manner of spending and confuming of his Treasure, that in his humours, hee neither regarded whathe gaue, nor to whom : in so much, that a Iew who was a Musician, and vsed to play before him in his drunken 60 fits. (what with the gifts given him by the Prince, andwhat elfe he got out of his house) had gotten together in money and lewels, (in the space of foure or fine yeeres) to the value of foure

This diffolute life and careleffe government of Muley Sheek, grieved the old King not a little,

hundred thousand Duckats, which is about fortie thousand pound sterling.

especially to see such a change or alteration in him, whose forwardnesse in former times had been the flay of his age, and had mooted him to caufe the Alkeids of the Kingdome, by oath to confirme their alleageance after his owne death. Many wayes he fought to amend what was amife nrme their alreageance are in 30 wife to all in a many to the course of life and more carefull kind of goin those parts, and to draw his sonne to a more strict course of life, and more carefull kind of gournment, as well by his Letters, as by sending divers principall Askeds to be Coansellors vnto him. Yetfuch was the small account he made either of the one or the other, that the old King in the end feeing no amendment, but the estate of that Kingdome to grow daily worse and worse, determined to goe to Fez in his owne person with an Armie, aswell to displace his son. who had denied to come vnto him, vpon his lending for: as also to put in order all matters in to chole parts, which through the ill government of his sonne, were all out of frame. And so about The Kings the beginning of October, 1602. hee fer forwards from Mornecos with an Army of eight thou free free from the beginning of October, 1602. fand Shot, and some five thousand Horse towards Fez, leaving his second some Muley Boseres to gouerne Mornecos and Sm in his absence, vntill his returne; making such speedy iourneys, that he was with his Forces within one dayes journey of Fez, before his sonne Muley Sheek was certainely adulfed of his fetting forth from Mornecos. Who, when he vnderflood of his Fathers being so neere, and himselfe every way vnprouided to refish him, would have sled towards Taillet; but being followed by Bajha Muftepha, he was constrained to take Sanctuarie, withfue Muley Shecktar hundred of his best fouldiers, being very good Shot and well prouided. The old King the Fa- keth Sancia. ther, seeing his sonne take the Printledge of the place (which is much respected in that Country) arie, willed him to come forth, and fubmit himselte to his mercy : But Muley Sheek refused, either obstinate in not obeying, or fearefull he could not render a good account of his fine and twentie yeares gouernment in Fez. Wherefore Muley Hames commanded Mustephasa Basha of Sidans, though then in the old Muleys service, to take three thousand men, and perforce to enter the place; which he performed, bringing Sheek prisoner, and the rest of his company which were Taken there

place; which he performed, but garden would in no wife admit him into his presence, but by force. committed him to the charge and custodie of Basha ludar, one of greatest place about the King,

who carried Sheek to Mickanes, a ftrong Garrison Towne, and there remained vntill the time of his Fathers death, which was some five moneths after.

of his Fathers death which was fome nue monents areer.

The old King in his journey to Fes, againft his eldel fonne, passed by the Pronince of Techlas, stable in The old King in his journey to Ees, againft his eldel fonne, Muley Sidan, whom he commanded is some say he against the commanded in the same say the same say he was a remove his houlhold to Fez, from Sidania (a Citie which he had begun to build in Tedula, and diedof the called it after his owne name) intending to leaue him Vice-roy of thole parts, in the roome of his Plague, which called it after his owne name) intending to leaute him vice-roy of note parts, in the roome of the state that the deleted fonne, whom he purposed to carry with him from Medgens, where he was prisoner to was to hot; that eldet fonne, whom he purposed to carry with him from Medgens, where he was prisoner to was to hot; the many continued to the state of th in August, 1603. he having set all matters in order in those parts of Fez, providing for his returne died in Moreo, to Mornecos, put out his Tents without Fez Gates ; but being abroad, he fuddenly fell ficke, feuen hundred and his fickneffe to fore increased, that on Thursday falling ficke, on Sunday morning being the thousand, in fourteenth of August, 1603. he died.

Fez, fiue hun-

ð. II.

My LEY SIDA & proclaimeth himselfe King in Fez. My LEY Bof ERES in Moruccos. My LBY NASSAR would have done the like in Taradant, but is hindred. The death of NASSAR. Warre betweene SIDAN and Bo-FERES. SHECK fet free. FOKERS employed. The Battell. SIDANS flight. Femds and robberies.

Vier Sidan, by reason his Mother Lilla Isha governed the old Kings House, vnderstood of his Fathers death, before it was noyfed abroad; whereupon hee prefently went forth into his Fathers Camp and Tents, from whence he carried away al fuch Iewels and treasure as he found there. And after his Fathers death, hee caused himselte in Fex to be proclaimed King of Barbarie, as lawfull Heyre of his deceased Father. Lilla lobora, Maley Sidem Mother to Muley Sheek, and Muley Boferes, seeing her eldest Sonne in prison, and void of all proclaimed meanes to helpe himfelfe at that inftant, was not vimindfull of her fecond Sonne Boferes, whom the old King had left to gouerne Mornecos during his absence. To whom shee dispeeded prefently Letters by one of the Kings Eunuchs; who made fuch hafte, that in foure dayes hee came from Fez to his Tents, which were some two leagues from Mornecos, where hee had lien all the Summer before (to avoide the infection of the Plague, which had been that Summer in Macriecot) and with him was his younger Brother Muley Naffer, and his eldeft Brothers Sonne Mu- Muley & sfere cos) and with him was his younger Brother Muley Naffar, and his eldett Brothers Sonne John taketh postession of the Kines on of the Kines on of the Kines and gat possession of the Alcasana, his Fathers House, before the newes of his Fathers death was House,

Bbbbb 2

noyfed

movied abroad, and generally knowne, fearing how the Alkeyds, and people of Morraccos might frand affected vnto him, and knowing that if he had once poffession of the Alcalana, and of his Fathers treature, he had the best part of the Kingdome. And the next da after his entrance. B fraprochime to canled to be published generally thorow the whole Citie, the newes of h.s Fathers death and modal of the canled to be proclaimed King: writing Letters to the Vice-roy of Sus to doe the like and Taradant, the chiefe Citie of that Kingdome; the which he accordingly performed.

Muley Nassar, the fourth sonne of the deceased King, having been all the Summer abroad with his brother Boferes, when now he understood of his Fathers death, tollowed his brother 2 farre off, as though he meant to have entred Morruecos with him ; but comming to the Gates of the Citie, in company with Muler Abdela his Nephew, being sonne to Muler Sheek, with 10 whom he was familiar, conferred with him about their flying into the Mountaines, periwading Mu'ey Abdela, that he might no waies put any truft in Boferes, fince his father and hee were the chiefest impediments, that hindred Boferes from claiming the Kingdom by course of inflice; his Father, Muley Sheek being the old Kings eldeft sonne, and he the eldeft Sonne of his Father. Belides, his Father being in prilon fo neare Fez, where Muley Sidan was, it was to bee doubted, that Muler Sidan had already gotten him into his power, and it might be, had made some agreement with him already, to lowne both against Muley Boferes: which it it should to fall ut, would cause Boferes to deale more cruelly with him But these perswasions moved not Abdela, who rather choic to enter the Citie, and follow his Vncle, on whose curtefie he would relie. Though Naffer fearing how Beferes would deale with him, with all speed fied into the Moun- 20 taines to the Kindred of his Mother, from whence after a few dayes with some eight hundred, or a thouland of those people whom he joined together, he passed into the Plaines of Sus, tending to the Alkeid in Taradant to proclaime him King, or else to suffer him quietly to depart. But the Alkeid having already proclaimed Muley Boferes, withthood him, and hee having no meanes wherewith to pay his fouldiers and people that he had gathered together, was foone left of all, and fo returned againe to his Mothers Kindred, and lived privately there about feven moneths, and then died of the plague, or as some reported, secretly poysoned, was brought to Morrneces, But to returne to Fez and those parts: after the death of the old King (Sider being now

proclaimed King in Fex; Boferes in Morruecos and Sus; and Muley Sheek priloner in Michanes, 30

in the keeping of Balha Indar) the Souldiers being abroad in their Tents, without Fez Gates,

began to be in a muteny, as well for fixteene moneths pay, which the old King owed them, as

alto about their returne to Morruecos, where the most part of them had left their wives and

children. To appeale this mutenie, Muley Sidan fem out of Fez vnto them Alkeid Hamet Mon-

ment as allo a freedy returne to Morrneces with Muley Sidan himfelfe. But Monfore in Read

of pacifying, laboured to increase their mutenous humours, and at last agreed with them sudden-

ly in the night to take vp their tents, and to march with him to Morrincos, alleaging vnto them

both the vicertaintie of Muley Sidans pay, and the imal likelinoo! of any speedy journey hee

meant to take to Morraecos. And being to passe within a little of Mickanes, where the Lasha kept Muley She k prifoner, he wrote vnto the faid Balba to know his inten, which'r he would 40

goe to Morraecos or no with him. To whom the Bafba came, and brought Muley Sheck with

him, whom they brought along as prifoner to Morruecos; and delinered him up to his brother

Boferes, who kept him close prisoner in his House, tome foure or fine moneths, vntill the com-

ming of Muley Sidan against him in battell, by this meanes thinking to have established the whole Kingdome to Muley Befores; who now, belides the polle tion of the Citie of Morruecos,

and his Fathers treature, had brought vnto him the greatest part of his Fathers forces, and his

elder brother pur prisoner into his hands. Maley Sidan being thus decented by Monfore, and

likewife by divers other principall Alkeids (who had fecretly departed from Fez, and left him)

two thousand Shot, and some Companies of Herse to Teaula, aswel to receive from the Alarbies,

those duties which they alwaies pay vnto their King, as also to stop, and returne to Fez, whom-

focuer he should find flying from thence to Mornecos, keeping possession of that Prounce for

his vie. He made likewife great preparations both of Horie and Foot in Fez, to be alwaies readie

to accompany himselfe in person if need should for quire, having with him in Fez of principall

Alkeids, Azus, chiefe Counsellor to the late deceased King, and Lord ouer his Bulemel. Bocrasia,

forthwith dispetded one Mustefa, a Renegado of his owne, whom he had made a Basta, with

Naffars flight and death.

Hames Monfo- fore, their chiere Commander in the old Kings time, to promife them as well content in pay-

uered to Bo-

Muftafa.

Azus. Treasuric,

Absadiks, and divers others. Mules Boferes likewise in Morraecos, fore-flacked no time in making preparation to fend for h against him, fending first Alcaide Gowie with some fixe hundred men to make provision of Corne, and other victuals among it the Alarbies; and after he had certaine news of Muley Sedans 50 forces to be in Tedala, he fent out his Bafta Indar with five thousand Shot, choyce men; twice Pieces of Artilerie, and certaine Companies of Horse to enter Tedala, and to give battell to Muflefa the Generall of Sidans forces, or periorce to drive him out of that Country. At whole com-

CHAP.1.\$.2. English Gunners: Fokers Message: M. Sheck freed.

ming thither, Muffefs feeing himselfe no waies strong enough to encounter with Inday, retyred Sidanis deming thither, naming mention in water hong small states destroyed the foundation of Sukona, thought backe againe with his Armic out of Tedula: and Indar destroyed the foundation of Sukona, thought which Muley Stides at his being in Tedula had begun to build ypon the River of Morbaie, and (which require a mass at ms being in Jessel had begin a bound of providing and called it Salamis, after his owne name) likewife wafted and deftroyed the Country thereabout, at leaft to many of the Kimireds of the Alarbies as he knew to be friends to Muley Siden, or thole that would not acknowledge Boferes for King. Sides understanding what Isadar had done in Tethat would not examine the great preparations that his brother in Morneces daily made to fend out against him, forthwith put forth his Tents, and ioyned together his whole forces, which were fome eight or nine thousand Shot, and some twelve thousand Horse, with two and twentic Pie-10 ces of Artillerie, himfelfe in perion going along with them. And because hee was altogether englished of skilfull Cunners for his Ordnances, he procured from Salie out of certains Eng. Ilb men of warre who at that inflant were there, two English Gunners, to whom he committed the charge of his Artillerie: but by reason of much raine that had fallen, it being in the moneth of Ianuarie, 1604. the ground in many places was so soft, that they could not march with their Artillerie fo fait as need required; fo that his Artillerie neuer came at the battell, which was

thought to be a chiefe cause of his ouerthrow. Whilest these preparations were in hand on either side, Muley Boseres sent certaine Folers, Felers are men Whileft thele preparations were in name on entire use, arrange and the original of good life, held of great estimation amongst the Moores, to his brother Muley Sidam, to treate condition which are only neid or great enumation amongs which are only ons of peace; how beit, after their dispeeding from Monuccos, hee omitted no time and dilli-20 gene in lending forth new Armies and frield tupplies, both of fouldiers and prouif: n, to Inder Lecallities Balba that was in Tedula, and understanding for certaine that his brother Sidan was in the field Hermites; in person (because he himselfe had neuer been inured to travell, and knowing it would bee no other call fmall difcouragement to his fide, and encouragement to the other, that Sides thould be in perform in the field. and no other his equal in Bloud in his Armiero withhold him he according and Saints: fou in the field, and no other his equall in Bloud in his Armie to withstand him) hee concluded they are held acolourable Peace betweene himselfe and his eldest brother Mulo Sbeck, whom vntill that in great reput time hee kept close prisoner in his house, agreeing with him that hee should goe forth into his tarianos time hee kept close prinner in an nome, agreeing with min that the monager to the inbattelly fancitie.

Armie, and toyne with Index to fight against Muley Sidan, whom it hee ouerthrew in battelly M. Sheek (et at hee should enjoy the Kingdome of Fez, and so much of those Easterne parts of Barbarie, as hee libertie, injoyed in their Fathers time : on condition, that at his entrance into Fez, he flould proclaims 30 Muley Deferre King, and himselfe onely Vice-tory, and to full acknowledge his government

there, as derived from Boferes. And to the intent Muley Sheek (hould the better observe these conditions according to their agreement, hee was to leave his eldeft sonne in pawne with Muler Beferes in Moruecos. On these plausible conditions, Muley Sheek was set at libertie, a happie turne for himselfe as hee thought, who neuer looked for any better but perpetuall impri-Jonment, with much miferie. But the truth is, Balba Indar had fecret aduertisement from his Master Beferes (yet not so secret, but it was knowne to Muley Sheek, and closely carried of him by interception of Letters betwixt Moruecos and the Campe in Tedula), that hee should abridge Muley Sheek of any command in the Campe, or matter of counfell in ordering of the Fight; onely shew him to the Souldiers under his Canopie, that the Fexes who were the strength of Sidens Armie, might know Sheek was in the Campe of Beferes, whom they loued in regard partly of his long abode amongst them, but especially of his great liberalitie, or rather prodigalitie, formerly shewed vnto them, which wrought much in their minds at the enfuing battell: and withall the Balba had a speciall charge sent, and his Guard so to watch him, that (if hee got the battell) hee should bring Muley Sheek in Yrons as safe a prisoner from the Campe to Moruecos, as once hee had done from Michanes. But this being discouered. Muley Sheck to shufled his Game, that though Inder won the Field, Muley Sheck escaped vnto Fez, and was louingly entertained of the Citizens, proclaiming himselfe King of Bar-

But returne we to the Fokers, treating about conditions of Peace in Fez with Muley Sidan; Fokers in pedia who by intelligence understood from Morseces of the fresh supplies of Souldiers, daily sent our ed, indpeace 50-by his brother to the Balba, whereby hee greatly suspected those offers of Peace, to bee but a deuice to prolong the time, whilest his whole forces were in a readinesse, and then suddenly to haue come vpon him vnawares, before he should be prouided for him. And therefore hee retorned the Fokers with denials of the offered conditions of Peace, and himselfe thinking to take the oportunitie and advantage of the time, before either his brothers new forces should come to the Balha, or Muley Sheck his eldest brother be fet at libertie. He caused with all diligence to bee Almahalla is gotten together some two thousand Mules and Horses, and vpon euerie Mule to bee set a Campe, two Souldiers with their furniture, and to (without any flay for the rehalling of Tents, or carrying along of his Artillerie with him) to bee with all hafte possible, fent and iowned to

the Almoballa of Alkeid Mustefa which lay hard by the River of Morbaie, in the fight of the Almoballa of B. ha Indar, the River onely betweene them: hee himfelfe likewife in person went along with some seuen or eight thousand of his Horsemen, thinking by this meanes to come with the chiefest and best of his forces vpon Basha Indar, before the Balba should expect him, or before the comming of Muley Sheek, who for his liberalitie Выбыйз

and bounty in former times, was greatly beloued of all the Souldiers both of Fez., and also of Mornecos, But this policie of his herein tooke no place, for Muley Sheek after hee was fet at liberrie, made linch freedie lournies that he came to the Almohalla of the Baha, before the Muter Sidan had certaine intelligence of his libertie, and yet hee entred the Almohalla but on the Tuelday, the battel being fought upon the Friday following. Muley Sidan understanding for certaying that his eldeft Brother was come into the Bafba his Almoballa, thought it no time for him to deferre giving of Battayle, least it should be knowne amongst his Souldiers, (many of whom in former times had ferued the faid! Muley Sheck.) And therefore on Friday the fixt of Ianuary 1604, the Forces of each fide met and joyned together, betweene whom there was no long fight, for upon the difcharging of foure Peeces of Artillery, (which Indar Bafia had with him) tome three or foure times, a great part of the Souldiers of Muley Sidan beganne to flye: except Some choice men which were in that part of the Battayle where the Maley himselfe was : by reason of the resolution of their Commander, continued somewhat longer, but in the end fled when as the Canopie over Muley Sidans head was shot downe with a Piece of Ordnance. At which mischance, and not before, the Muley himselfe began to leave the field; who in the managing of this battayle was some thing to be blamed; for being come to his Campe an houre before day, he should not have delayed two houres and more the present on-set, gazing in his Enemies face, and giving them time to ready themselves to fight, whom otherwise hee might have taken at the disper-view, and his Fezzes whom he halfe mistrutted, no premeditation to revolt or runne away. On Muley Sheeks fide few were flaine, and of Muley Sidans tide the greatest 20 member was fome fixe hundred men.

The three Brethren thus striuing for the Golden Ball of Soueraigntie, Iustice was trodden downe. The Larbees robbed one another, the strongest carrying away all. Quarrels betwixt Families and Tribes, which durft not be talked of in old Muley Hamets time, came to be decided with the Sword. After this battaile all wayes were stopped with Robbers, no trading from the Port Townes to Mornecos, without great firength of men. Muley Boferes (who had the Imperiall (eat) was neither fo fit for action, or to doe Iuftice, as Muley Sidan who had loft the day. And that the Kindred, called Weled Entid, well knew, which prefuming vpon the foft nature of Boferes and their owne strength, which consisted of fifteene thousand horse, foraged up to Morsecor pates, fore-closed all passages for Trauellers, making Merchants goods their prizes : Wheras an exemplary punishment executed vpon them for their robbing in Fez by Muley Sides. whileft he raigned there, made them thinke the Countrey too hot : For Sides commanded Albeid German with two thousand Souldiers in hostile manner, to fall upon the next Direr of Tents belonging to that Tribe, to burne Man, Woman, Childe, Kine, Sheepe, and whatfocuer Vniuft Iuftice. belonged to them, not to spare it vpon his owne life from Fire and Sword, which fully executed and so bloudily, that Muley Siden fighed hearing the true report, yet it made Fez the peaceableft part in Barbarie. But returne we to Sidans fortunes after he loft the field , having the ouerthrow, retyred backe to Fez, and forthwith was Alked Azau (the onely man in the latter dayes of the old King, favored by the whole Countrey) difpeeded towards Mornecos, to treate of a veace, and himlelfe beganne to make head againe to refif fuch forces as should follow him; but before he could bring his forces together againe, newes was brought vnto him that his Brother Muley Sheek, was neere at hand with certain companies of Horle-men, and that the whole Almohalla of the Balha was not farre behind. So that then hee was rather to confider of, and to prouide for his escaping by flight, then any wayes to relift: and having before put some nine hundred thousand Duckats in Allarocha, for the which money he had sent one of his Alkeids atter his returne from the battayle; hee thought it his best course to passe that way, and to take Treafure saken that money along with him, but he was followed so hardly by Alkeid Abdela Wahad, and Alkeid Vmfoud Vmbily, Boferes Servants, that he was forced to flye directly towards Trimifine, and to leave that Treasure behind him which was taken by his Brother Mley Sheck.

In these his frowning fortunes, the most of his Alkeids left him, and amongst others Mumine Bocrafia flying to Morneces, in whom he put no small trust: and more then the Seruants of his house, he had no man of account but torsooke him, onely Alkeid Absadicke, Hado Tabid, and Muslepha; the two latter of them being his houshold Servants, and belonging to him in his Fathers time, left him not in his advertitie: So that any Alkeid of the Cassa or Castes in Barbarie. he had no more then Absadicke, who rather then he would leave him (although allured by the perswasions of his Brother Alkeid Abdela Wahad, and entreated by the teares of his Sonne to returne, both of them then being in the pursuit of Muley Sidan, and in a Playne ouertooke the faid Abfadocke, yet he left his house and children at the mercis of Muley Boferes his Master and Enemie. The Alkeids who followed in pursuite of Muley Siden, followed him fo hard, that befides the treasure of Allarocha, they likewise tooke much of the Muleys Treasure that hee 60 carryed along with him, although with that small company of Horses, which were no more then twentie Horse-men or thereabout, hee returned many times, and fought with those who purfued him, in person, being still one of the foremost in these Skirmishes, vntill Alkeid Vmbilie who purfued him, admiring his refolution, and pittying his miferable effate, requefted his Maiestic to keepe on his way, and saue himselse by slight, he not purposing to pursue him any surther. And so the Muley in this miserable estate (forsaken almost of all) kept on his way to Trimaline a Towne bordering vpon the Turkes, in the Frontiers of the Kingdome of Argiers: and the Alkeids who purfued him, returned againe to Fez.

d. III.

MULEY SHECK proclaymeth himselfe King in Fez. SIDAN goeth to Tafilet, from thence into Sus. Peace concluded betweene M v LEY BOFERES, and MVLEY SIDAN. ABDELA SHECK'S Sonne escapeth Sir ANTHONY SHERLEY'S Embassage, Bountie and State.

Free Muley Sidens flight in this manner, Muley Sheck entred Fez, where hee was 1091 fully received of them, proclaymed himfelfe King, and not Governour under his Broad ther Boferes, And it being in the time of Rummadan, all the Almohallas of Morne- Rummadan, is cor returned home against the Pascha: from whence after the celebration of the Lent.

Feast, they were fent forth to all parts of the Country against the Larbies : among whom weft Feast, they were sent forth to all parts of the Country against the Larbers among whom were Civil combu-as great Civil Warres, as among the Brethren, for in this time of so many Kings, they would stions amongst acknowledge none, or pay duty to any of the three Brethren. Whereupon Hamet Monfore with the Larbies. three thousand Souldiers, was fent into Sm in the moneth of Aprill, 1604. but his men dving of the Plague (which was very hot at that time) and thereby the Larbies little regarding his power, would bring him no victuals, fo that with the remaynder of his men, he was contrayned to returne towards Mornecos, Divers other Almoballas were fent abroad into feverall parts of the Countrey, but in the beginning of June, newes comming of Muley Sidans returns from Trimafine to Tafiles, they were all fent for by Beferes to returne to Morneces, and be soyned to-gether the second time against Maley Sides: who having some few monethes lived about Tri-30 mafine with some fiftie Souldiers, went towards Tafilet, about which part lived the Caffa or Caste of Alkeid Ab sadock (who was Master of the Hawkesto Muley Hames)and brought to

Sidan, of his Cafte some twelve hundred Horses, with which force he entered Tafilet : The Alkeid of Muley Boferes flying to Dara or Draw with his Souldiers. In Tafilet, Muley Sidan Staved some forty dayes, where he viderstood perfectly of the estate of Sm, and had Letters from divers of his Wel-willers there : vnderstanding of Alkeid Hamet Monfores departure from thence : And that the Shebanites which is the greatest Cast in all Barbarie , and the Caste or Cast of the Malers Mother, would not acknowledge Boferes for King, and likewife, how most of all the Casts in Sau desired his comming thither : Whereupon hee prepared what Forces he could there get, to goe into Sus. Muley Boferes vpon the first newes of his Brothers com-40 mine to Tafilet, called in all his Almohallas, and iowning some foure thousand shot of them befides Horse, sent them from Moruecos to Dara, vn.ier the command of his Son Muler Abdelmelech, with whom went divers principall Alkeids, as Alkeid Gowie, Umbilie, and Mumine Bocrafia, who in the first battayle of Muley Sides was a principall man of command on his side, and after his overthrow fled from him to Mornecos, with divers others. The chiefe intent of these Forces was to stop the passages from thence to Sue, which Muley Sidan perceining before . . . the comming of their whole Forces, he passed by Alcatons, where the Horse-men on each side skirmished, the Footmen not being able to come vp, and some slaine of either side, but no man of account lane onely Alkeid Mumine Bocrafia, who as some reported dyed with thirst, beeing Death of Beouer-heated (the battayle beeing fought in the middeft of July) or as others reported, beeing crafia.

so wounded, and returning to his Tent, calling for water, after hee had drunke it prefently dyed; whose death was little lamented or pittyed of the Moores, they faying, hee was justly rewarded for being a Tray tour to Muley Siden his Mafter, who was not onely contented to leave him in his misfortunes, and to flye to his Brother, but also to goe forth into the field against

Muley Sidans Forces were fo fmall, that he was not able to match in strength the Forces of his Enemies, & therefore was constrayned to passe into Sus by the way of the Sabara, and durst not passe by Dram: In which Sands for want of water, both he and his whole company had almost perished, and after much misery indured in that Journey, hee arrived at Aca, where Sidie Country or Abdela Imbark the great Foker dwelleth, the friendship of whom obtayned, hee knew that all Defires of his Brothers Forces could not dispossesse him of the Kingdome of Sm, in such great reverence Smid is that Church-man held in those parts, that the people will obey none, but whom he comman-

He being come hither, the Foker by letters to Muley Boferes, then at Moruecos, procured that there might be a Treaty of peace betweene the two brethren : Whenipon, in August following,

Dwar, is a

Towne of

Treaty of

DCACE.

Beforesand

Anno 1604. Alkeyd Azm was sent to Muley Sidan to Aca, where by the endeuours of the faid Peace conclu- Alkerd and the Faker, a peace was concluded, betweene Muley Beferes and his brothet Mules Sidan, this to inioy the Kingdomeof Sin, and the other the relidue of the Empire, whereupon Sidan peaceably entered Taradans the chiefe City in that Kingdome: vpon whose entrance this ther, Sus which in all former times had beene the most vinquiet and rebellious part of all Barbars. through his execution of Iuftice, became the onely peaceable and well gouerned Countrey of that Kingdome, all other parts of Barbarie, that were vinder the government, and belonging to the other two brethren, as then remaining very vinquiet, and full of all tumults: Neither was his gouernment any way to be milliked, but that scarce setled, he charged the Countrey with greater impositions then his Father euer demanded, insomuch as Sedie Abdela Imbark, who was 10 the onely man that first brought him thither, reprocued his courses and the Mountainers of At-In being good Souldiers, excellent shot, and their dwelling by nature defencible, finding his yoke too heavy, the leffe regarded him or his power; which humour of theirs was nourished by fecret practifes of Boferes, loth that Sidan should either grow great in friends, or treasure. But the Inhabitants of the Plaine and lower Regions felt the smart of his rod, knowing their throats lay at his mercy, when as the Mountainers defended themselues with open armes, and oftentimes gave the new king his hands full. The peace concluded betwixt Boferes and Sidan, by the meanes of Abdela Imbark, and Assa,

the with Counfellor that Berbary hath: we will leaue Sides at Siss, feeking his owner end once more to become Mafter of Morances, and returne to Befores, who was troubled which way to 20 contriue the regaining of Maley Sheek: who like a Bird had broken cage, and was flowen to Fez., making a faire pretence to gouerne but as Vice-roy, yet fecretly practifed with forraine States. either to make them his friends, whereunto he might flie, if Muley Boferes by force should drive him out of Fez, or rather then he would lose footing in Afrike, determined to bring in forraine power, for his aid. Wherefore Boferes fearing a Christian storme which might haile bullets, was carefull to keepe Abdela, Maley Sheek his cloeft son, the fafer to keepe the father furer from do-Abdelse clape, ing mischiefe. But it happened the plague was sharpe in Mornecos, therefore Boferes sent his son Muley Abdelmeleb fome five miles foorth of Mornecos with his Tents , and Muley Shecks fonne with him, but either his keepers were negligent and corrupted, or elfe young Abdela too wilie. for one night he made escape out of the Campe, and having horses ready layd, posted to his Fa- 30 ther at Fez. This gallant being at liberty, sought all meanes to defend his Title, being the cldeft brothers sonne: his stirring spirit and yout heall hope drew all the minds of the Fezzes vnto hims intomuch as Muley Boferes fore afflicted with his cleape, but more with the newes of his preparations, dispeeded Azm vnto Muley Sidan then in Sm, with request he would goe personal. ly to battaile againit Sbeck and Abdels his fonne : Muley Sidar well entertained this mestage, and with all concernent ipeed drawing his owne forces together, came within halfe a dayes iourney of Moruecos, there pitching his Tents, but not determining to hazard his fortune, or trust the price of his owne head under his brothers hands, yet daily he sent letters by his servants of great credite, wherein he was willing to undertake the charge of warre against Abdela, so that he might make choice of Captaines and Commanders, and fuch proportion of Souldiers as 40 he thought fit, to vndergoe an action of fuch import. This proposition was neither liked of Boferes or his Countell, yet making taire weather to Muley Sidan, letters passed from him daily of great loue farced with many complements, much milliking his brothers miffruit, not daring to icopard his person within Mornecos.

Muley Sidan meaning to proue what correspondency his brother Boferes heart carried with his hand framed al tter which was fent as from the chiefest man in those Mountaine Countreys of Atlas, to Muley Boferes, full of duety and services, offering withall to fend him Sidans head, who was encamped within his Countrey, at the foot of the hilles. Answere to this letter was returned with great thankes, and a large reward of gold promited, if a businesse of that high and important service would be performed. When Sidan by this had construed his brothers meaning, 50 he rayled Campe, went to Tafilet, and remained in the Countrey of Dara, gathering in of money and men, after two moneths spent with his brother to no effect at all. Zoferes seeing Sidan departed, and destitute of his helpe for Fez, committed his Campe to Abdelmelech his owne fon, who was to be adulfed by the Counfels of Bafra Indar, Alkeyd Hamet Monfore, Sedy Gowie, and Albert Boterfe (thorow whose hands pasted all businesseof Christian Merchants , so well dispatched, and so good regard thereof taken, that he was well liked of every man for his good dealing.) This Campe being come within a dayes journey of Fez, which is twenty dayes march from Mornecos, there the Souldiers fell to a mutenie, and three thousand of them revolted vnto Sheck, crying openly, Long line Muley Sheck, Hereupon Abdelmelech called a Counfell of warre, wherein it was concluded, though their number were twice as many, to returne without blow giuen backe to Morneces, perceiuing indeed their Souldiers hearts quite alienated 60

Abdelmelech made Gene-

> His retreat. S.An:b.Sherley

About this time being the beginning of October, arrived at Saphia Sir Anthony Sherley, as Ambassadour from the Emperour of Germanie, to the King of Mornecos: his attendance was CHAP.I.S.3. Sir Anth. Sherleys Honorable Ambassage unto many States. better then a private man, though somewhat wanting of the person from whom he was sent, few of note were in his company, being in all about thirteene persons, of euery Christian language one, because he would be fitted for interpretation of tongues. Amongst these was Sir Edwin Rich, whose behaulour was good and well spoken of in every place where he came, not Sir Edwin Rich.

frayning his credite to borrow money, but well prouided to ferue his owne turne, answering to his birth, state, and disbursements for the time. Sir Anthonie then taking the Title of Ambalfadour, during foure Moneths aboad in Safbia, kept open house, inuited all Christian Merchanes daily, both to dinner and fupper: to fopplie his owne turne for money, he got credite of lemes The Ambassato take vp money and pay them in Morruces, but at excelline rate, almost fifty for a hundred, dors bounty,

10 He bought likewise of an English Merchants Factor, being at dinner with him , at two or three words, a thip of a hundred & nxty Tunne, with all her lading being Wheat, paying him in hand two thousand ounces, and if he were not paid the rest of his money within ten dayes after his arrivall in Morruecos, then the buyer to lofe his earnest. But before he went vp., Abdelmelco returning from Fez, by reaton of his Souldiers Treaton, the King of Fez marched towards Morruecos, forme foure dayes sourney, and there gave fiege vnto a Port Towne called Sally, and tooke it, but the Cassle he could not win. So the Alkeydos the Cassle wrote to Muley Boseres, that though the Towne were loft, the Caftle he would keepe for him, if he fent three hundred quarters of Corne to victuall his men, and a fresh supply for ffty Souldiers. Boferes loath to sole the the place, and hearing Sir Anthonie had bought a ship of Corne, writ to Saphie, and willed him to fent his ship to Sallie, and there to valade her Corne for the reliefe of the Castellan, and his 20 Sould ers. Sit Anthone, willing to doe the King a ranour, fent for the Captaine and Merchant of the ship, willed them to goe tor Sallie, and paying them for three hundred quarters draft so that thither they went, but the Castell being yesided before they came, the Captaine and Merchant

landed nestirer men, nor corne, but returned to Saphie. By this time were fent for the Conduct of the Embassador five hundred men, vn, er the command of two Alkeyds : vnto every Souldier Sir Anibonie gave a Turbith as a Linery of his love, which made them respect and honour him exceedingly, insomuch as one of the two Aleyds, not hastining to conduct the Embassador vp to Morraccos, but to provide himself of Cornes to be ing exceeding deare at Morruecos, Sir Anthonie detirous to let forward, and the Soukhurs willing to pleature him, fell to mutenie, in regard of the Alkerds flackneffe, killing two of his men to haft in their mafter forward. After his foure moneths abode in Saphie, wherein his bountie was extraordinary, not to his Countri-men onely, but to Flemift, French, and Spanish, aumired of his Souldiers, he was received into Morrueos with great state, having by the way, as also during his abode in Saphie, divers letters from the King, extolling his honourable endeaours, and

approoued valiantnesse in his farre adventures both by sea and land, not omitting any Courthip His famous to win his love, or make him doubt his welcome.

After two dayes flay in the Citie, the King made preparation for his entertainment at Court, whether he went, futing his followers as well as the flortn fle of time could fuffer, and his credite with the Christian Merchants could affoord, which was good, for two Spaniards were to Spaniards in rapt with admiration of his worth, and by his speeches allured with so strange hope, that they 40 fell in emulation, whether should doe him more services, or helpe him to more money : realo-

nably attended, he rode to Court, not lighting from his horse, where the Kings tonnes viually dor, but roje thorow the Mulmard, (which is the Kings great Hall, wherin most of his Lorse, His flate, Gentlemen, and chiefe fort of people doe attend, when they come to Court) which none that the King himfelfe doth. Being come into the Kings prefence , his Letters of credite were receiued, with great shew of kindnesse, and himselve entertained with all gracious respect, not onely at the Kings hands, but of the principallest men in office or fanour about the Court, and to for that time was dilm fled, the chiefelt men a tending him backe to the place where hee tooke horie. Some fine dayes after, Sir Anthonie Sherler comming to audience, and thinking to hant

50 ridden in as he did before, a chaine was hung croffe the entrance of the Mulbrard, Awtisch he perceining onely done to hinder his paffage, would not alight from his Horfe, but retained backet very diffeontented. This being certified to Boferes, presently three of his chiefest allerds: were His affronce fent to qualifie the matter. But Sir Anthonie tooke the differace not as his owne, but his whole and disconperson he represented, telling the Alkerds, his master the Emperonr, was able and would require tent, the iniury, neither did he feare, though now within the power of Boferes, knowing the greatneffe of him in whole service he was imployed, fo faire surpassing the King of Marrieces, as maugre the prouleft, he would be fetched from thence, and be fully resenged of the least murry done vnto him. The three Alkerds layd the blame vpon the Kings Porter, offering Sir Ambonie the Porters head, if he would have it, to spending an houre to pacifie his choller, and bring 6C him backe, the Porter before his face was fore beaten and imprisoned, neither east after was hee

hindered of riding thorow the Mulhward. During his abode in Morruecos, which was fine moneths, Boferes and he had divers private conferences, as it was generally thought, which way to keepe him in the Kingdoma against his two brethren Sheck and Sidan; as also to give the great Turke a blow to drive him out of Ar-

LIB.VI

30

CHAP.2. \$.4.

Boferes flight. Arich Sword. Treble crueltie.

263

Escape of a

eiers and Tunes, From Mornecos Sir Anthonie departed with great content to himselfe, and good liking of Boferes, of whom he bought two Portugall Gentlemen, for a hundred and fifty thoufand ounces, which amounteth to some ten thousand pound sterling. These two had beene Captines in Mornecos almost fixteene yeeres, the one, sonne to the Vice-roy of the East Indies. the other of a Noble house in Portugall. The first had his relgat thrise sent for to ransome him out of the East Indies, but twife it was taken by the English, once by Flemmings during our late warres with them : the other, his brethren driue him off for his relgar, either to faue fo much money, or notable to pay fo great a fine. To accompany him from the Court to Saphie, was fent one of the Kings Gentlemen Vihers, to whom at his parting, he threw him his Hat which he wore from his head, with a lewell of great value, rewarding largely all the Vihers follow- 10 ers. For his Guard (the wayes being then very dangerous) was lent downe with him, foure ers. For its Guard (the wayes being then very dangerous) was the downle withinin, forthe hundred shot, winder the Command of Alkerd Abdela Sinko, a Portugall Renegago. (which is a Christian turned Moore.) This man, whether by perswalion, or voluntarily, defiring to see his native Countrey, in the night gat aboard of the thip Sir Edwin Rich was in, not Sir Anthonies, the ship presently weighing Ancher, made taile for Spaine, but the other remaining with S. An-

Renegago.

This dealing was taken in ill part, insomuch that five of his men being fent to shoare for certaine prouision which they lacked, were clapped up in prison, and fent in chaines to Mornecos. but afterward released. Sir Anthonie writing to the King, both to cleare himselfe of the fact, and defiring remedie for these his new sustained grievances, seta good shew vpon the matter, staid an foure dayes after the other ship which had carried away the Alkeyd, and would have tarried vntill he had his fine men againe, but that he was written vnto to be gone from an especiall friend a shoare, adulting him he did not wel to ride so long in the Port, divers Flennnish-men of war being abroad, and if any should chance to come in there, as seldome it is without, they finding these two Gentlemen as prize would sease vpon them, and then was there lost thirty five thoufand ounces, which a Merchants Factor had lent Sir Amhonie Sherley to cleare him out of the Country, for which the Factor had the two Portugals bound to pay this debt at their arrinall in Lifton. Vpon this aduertisement he departed, and the next day Boferes sent him a letter, to cleare his men. And fo I returne to the file of my continued History.

Şe IIII.

MVLEY ABBELA goethin person against MVLEY Boffens; driveth him out of Mornecos; Putteth to death BASHA SIDAR, and other Noblemen; SIDAN expelleth him, and killeth three thousand Fezans perfideoufly, required by ABDELA. SHRACIES trechery uniustly punished. SIDAN'S flight. Many Englishmen imployed in thefe warres, and flaine.

Viey Sheek, putting his some Abdels forward to the whole Command of the armie, himselfe meaning to saue one, kept in Alleress three Italiess ships, purposing if matters profeered not well, with Treasure sufficient to goe to Florence: but the battell not fought, his determination altered, for he presently seized all strangers ships which came either to Larach, Salie, or other parts, as also some Merchants ships of Fez, robbing them of their goods, making their Mariners land their Peeces, and all the men either to serue him, or elfe to haue the Iron given them. Heereby he fitted himselfe of Captaines and Souldiers being English, French, and Datch, with seuen and twentie Peeces of Ordnance and shot threunto fufficient. And fo fired the mind of his fonne Abdela, with hope of winning Morne- 50 cos (being of himselfe drunken with the ambitious defire of a Kingdome) that Abdela about the latter end of November 1606 marched to Mornecos with his troupes being some ten thousand horfe and foot, besides his Christian Mariners, whose helpe won him the field, fought some sixe miles Southeast from Mornecos, on the eight of December, 1606. Sheek bore his fonne company no farther then Salie, from whence three houres riding, is a River called Mamora, into which Bay the Italian thips put in : Sheek went thither , and hard by the thips upon the thoare pitched his Tent wherein he lay, part of his Treasure being shipped , himselfe determined there to flay, and expect the event of his sonne, if it passed well with him, then Africke should hold Abdela by help him, otherwise to visite the great Duke of Thuscane, on whose curtesie he much rested. But the 60 Christian Gunners so well observed their times of shooting and placing their Ordnance, as they got Abdela the field, hoping thereby to have obtained both liberty, and pillage, of which most of them poore men failed, as afterward you shall read.

When Sheek heard Abdela had got Mornecos, hee grew careleffe to fend provision or supplie

the wants of his three Italian ships, wherefore, they set sayle from Maniera homewards . taking such Treasure for their pay as were in their cultodies. Beferes lost in this battayle about Bosenshis fixe hundred men, fled into the Citie to faue his Treasure and his women, but for feare of being flight, furprized, durst not tarry to take his Treasure away with him, but in all haste posted toward the Mountaynes, willing the Alkeids and chiefest men of his Court to bring it after him, with the rich Sword, the like whereof is not in the World; committing also to their conduct his Daugh- A rich Sword. ter, and the choy kit of his women, among it whom was the Wife of Ben Walb the Kings Merchant. At the entry of the hils, a Kindred of the Larbies being fine hundred Horse-men, Seized vpon these people, pillaged their Carriages, rifled and dishonoured the women, not sparing Bo-To ferst Daughter, (whom Abdela determined to have marryed, but hearing divers Moores to have Iven with her, and also that the was suspected to have lived in Incest with her Father; after his entrance into Moruccos, he neuer enquired farther after her. The Alkeids beeing well mounted Sanduary, by the swittness of their Horses, returned backe to Merneces, and there tooke Sanctuary. Abdelaypon their submission promised them pardon, on whose Princely word they relying, came Abdes persis forth, the Foker of the place presenting them : But Muley Abdela, whether incited by enuious counfell, or on his owne bloudy minde, putteth them to fecretly to death, that fending all their heads in one Sacke to Fez, for a Present to his Father, Their deaths was not fully knowne in the Citie of Mornicos, before their heads were fet vpon Fez gates. Here was the end of Balba Indar a great Souldier in old Hamets time, a faithfull Commander during his life to Boferes, accompanyed with Sedie Gonie, Alkeid Azus his Sonne, Alkeid Moden the Caffenie, and some

20 foure great men more. This tyranny of Abdels thewed upon these valiant and worthy men; and the spoyle which the Fexces had made a well in robbing the Alkeids houles, as in rifling the Citizens goods, and neffe scarce lasted two monethes : for Sidan resting in the halfe way betweene Maruecos and fidy. Fez, taking oportunitie of this vproare of the Townsfimen, marched toward Marneces on the North-side of the Towne, determining to give present battayle, hearing by the Scowts, that Mules Abdale his Campe was lodged in the great Garden or Orchard called the Almoweste,

being lome two Early miles about. The first right of Sidens approach, the Priloners were to being lome two Early miles about. The first right of Sidens approach, the Priloners were leasted, and Prilones Siden open, so that these men getting libertie, ranne halfe madde vp and downethe Cities, crying, Long line Siden, which troubled the Citizens not a little: And in this voroare, Sidans Faction let into the Citie (at a fecret gate) many of his Souldiers, which made a Sally vpon the Regiment of Zalee, meaning to have surprized Abdelas Campe, but himfelfe comming to the refcue with two thousand men, continued a hot Skirmish against the Sidanians, in which the Christians fought valiantly to recour their Peeces of Artillery which were lost, vntill the Sidanians were forced to retyre. The next day beeing the fine and twentieth of Aprill, Stile none, Abdela remooned towards (Muley Sidan, who was encamped on the North-fide of the Citie, not daring to come on the South-fide, for feare of the shot which galled his men from the Battlements of the Kings House. Therefore he hearing of Abdelas remoue, and inten-40 ding to venture his fortune vpon a present battayle, set forward to meet him with a Regiment of his best Horle: Abdela perceining this, caused his Canoniers to march formost, which could but place fine Peeces of their Artillery in a breft, because the Orchards and Gardens made the Thebartsyle, passages very narrow and strait; where as the Armies should meete, Sidans Horse-men gaue a

very gallant charge, but the Canoniers made them retyre : Which Abdelas Horse-men perceiuing, being encouraged, and too eager of the Chafe, fome thouland Horie galloped before their owne Ordnance, and followed their Enemie close to Sidans Campe, their Peeces of Artillery being drawne after them. Muley Sides well knowing the advantage of the place, feeing his Enemies deprined of the benefit of their great Ordnance, which he most feared, encouraged his 50 men to keepe their ground, and bringing with his owne person fresh supplyes to second them, gane his Aduerlaries the Abdelians to hot a charge, that they were fayne to retyre in great diforder, vpon the mouthes of their owne Artillery. This diffarray perceined by the Christian Gunners, it put them in minde to discharge upon their owne men the Abdelians, helding it better to kill fine or fixe hundred of their owne fide, then to lose the battayle. But the Moore, who was Captayne over the Canoniers and other Commanders, would not fuffer it: Wherefore Arillery tiken the Sidemans following in good order, and very close, tell to the execution with their Swords, Seven or eight

feuen or eight thousand killed, and few to speake on left alive, for what the Souldiers spared, Treble cruelus the Citizens in revenge of their Diforders, Pillages, and Villanies done to their women, berea-60 ned them of their lines, who beeing dead were not fuffered to bee buryed, but lay aboue the ground as a prey to the Dogges and Fowles of the Ayre. Heanie likewife was the Conquerours hand upon the Chrittians which tooke Abdelas part, most of them for their five monethesteruice to Abdela, were either slayne in the fury of battayle, or after had his throat cut. And this

furprized the Artillery, and ilue the men. The flaughter continued forme four houres, betwixt thousand killed

wins the field and Merecco.

Pu ars end.

was the end of them, who had lived in the Streights of Gibraltar, and the Mediterranean Sea. not as Merchants by honest Trading but having committed spoyle ypon divers Sea-faring men. felt the bloudie hand of a barbarous Nation, (as a deferued punishment fent from Gou) to execute Inflice for their manifold committed wrongs and out-rages.

Sanctuary ta-

Perfidious

Famine fol-

crueltic.

This battayle being loft with the greatest bloud-shed that any hath beene since these Warres Siden Miler of beganne, Muley Abdela fled to Fez, a hundred persons of his whole Army not left alive to beare the feld, and him company: And Sidan Master of the field, entred the Citie of Mornecos, having another Mercesor Mer- taske to take in hand ere he could fettle himfelie quietly in his owne Neft. For the Kings House being Caltle-wife builded, and feuered from the Citie with a defencible and a strong wall, lack-House a Castle ing no kind of Munition for the defence thereof, had within it, besides Souldiers of Morne- 10 cas, three thousand Fexees who were not at the last battayle, but left there to guard the place

These presuming on their owne valour and strength of the place, denyed to render it voon a ny termes to Sidan, though they were follicited, during the space of two dayes, by all faire me anes thereunto : Sidan bringing his Artillery to the wals, yet delayed, as loth to deface a building fo ftrong costly, and beautifull; So that in the meane time a Captaine whose house iovned to the wall by stealth with fine hundred men, scaled and wonne the top of the wall, crying, Victory for Muley Siden, which so amazed the Souldiers within, thinking the Forces which were entered farre greater then they were, without more adoe or offering to refift, they tooke Sanctuary in the great Church belonging to the Kings Houle, euery man with his Peece and

belonging to Furniture about him. the Kings

Muler Sidan vpon this, fent Basha Seleman, willing them to deliuer vp their Armes. with promite they should bee pardoned, which presently they did, yeelding and delivering both Swords and Peeces. Thus difarmed, they, filly foules came forth, when prefently after. mellage came from the King to butcher and cut the throats of them all, which was executed. A pittifull matter in my iuagement, formany men yeelding vpon good composition, after fury of battayle, vpon cold bloud to bee made io pittitull'a spectacle: it was bootleffe for them to alleage eyther Law or reason in defence of their lines; such is the misery and slanery of that people, whose goods and lines lyeth alwayes in the will of the King, eyther to saue, or destroy at his

Now is Sidan fetled in Moruecos but scarce secure, for the chiefest men in the Citie wished an alteration, because their King to get their money and wealth to maintayne his owne estate, beganne to picke quarrels with them, making fome who began to speake and repine at his doings, lose their heads. Quoniam Canis mortuus non latrat : The common people whose naturall condition is alwayes to defire Nouelties, wished for a new King, feeling his oppression, and the Famine whereof many dyed, grew carelelle of peace, thinking every change would bring a remedie, when indeed it was like the Incition of an viskilfull Surgeon, not curing the Malady, but making the wound wider. Gangrened, and incurable, Sidan purposing to purge this male-contented humour of the Commonalty, rayled an Army of twelve thousand Foot, and fixe thousand Horse, determining to take Fez. The chiefe men of command over this Army, were these, 40 Balba Mustepha, Alkeid Hamet Benbreham, Alkeid Ally Tahila, Alkeid Gago, and Alkeid Hadoe Tobib, with divers others: Muley Sidan not going in person with this Army, least in his absence Mornecos the Seat of the Empire should revolt. Muley Sheek hearing these newes. went to All groche, there tooke a great Flemmil thin from the Merchants, with all the goods in her, therein shipping his Treasure, determining to runne away, if his Sonne Abdela should lofe Fez. Abdela omitted no time to gather new Forces, to that in small time he thought himfelfe fufficient to meete the Sidanians in open field, and fo he did neere to Wickanes, where the people on Sidans part, milling their King in the field, or any one of the Bloud Royall refused to fight, and in flead of firiking, fell to parley; That if Abdela would pardon them, they would yeeld, and so they did, yet most of them ranne away, except three thousand Morruek 7ns, who 50 prefuming vpon Abdelas gende nature, flayd with him, hoping kind entertaynment into his pay, in stead whereof, Maley Abdela commanded all their throats to be cut granting them onely this fauour : first, to be stripped for fowling their clothes. Thus we may see, mercilesse Sidan butcher poore soules at Moruecos, pittilesse Abdela murder

Faithleffe butcherie,

thefe vntortunate flaues at Mickanes, both verifying the old Prouerbe, Quequid delirant Reges, pleElumeur Achimi. In this battayle were taken betwixt thirtie and fortie Englishmen, who served Muley Sidan as Canoniers, yet not any of that company which ferned Abdela at Mornecos, Thirty or forty when he lost the Citie and field, but other Voluntaries, part of these fled with the bodie of the Engissimen Car Army backe to Moruecos, part were taken, whom Abdela spared, as well in regard of sormer feruices the Nation had done him, as also for the present vie he was to employ them in. This Expedition of Sides comming to to vnlooked a difafter, made him fend forth his Comman-60 ders with divers companyes, to the Alarbies, for fresh supply of Men and Treasure : amongst which as Chiefe was dispeeded Bafba Seleman, Matter of the old Kings Horse for Tafilet, there to

gouerne the Countrey, carrying with him some fifteene hundred Shot, of which fixe hundred were Straceis, people of the King of Chans, or Consoes Countrie, who hath alwaies warres with Straces mu-Algers or Argiers. Thele Straceis were borne in the Mountainesat Aslas, being of a fierce and teny. bloody nature, not respecting the Turtes might or government, no more then the Mountainers of Mornecos, will acknowledge the Soueraigntie of the Barbarian. Some twelue hundred of their had Sidan in his pay halfe part whereof he kept at Moruecos , the other was fent with So-Ijman. These among ft themselves tell into a muteny, neither for want of pay, or ill vsage, but in Their trezdefire to doe a mischiefe, by force cut off the Balbaes head, carrying it with them as a Trophy of cherie;

their victorie, and a fit prefent to win Abdelas fauour, who was then at Fee, whither they went In for intertainement, Sides herewith moved, made Proclamation, that for three moneths what Shracee focuer, Souldier, or any other, were to be found in Moruecos, or eliwhere in his Dominions, should be put to the Sword, and to have it better & more fully executed; it was proclaimed, Bloudy decree that the Man-killer should have the goods of the Shracee so killed, Many rich men of this Nation or Kindred reliant in Mormecos, felt the furie of the Sword, for the folly and foule fault of their Tribe: fuch as could get packing, ran away: others of the better fort, their friends hid them in their houses, yntill Siden scared with newes of Abdelas comming towards him , proclaimed generall pardon for the remainder left aliue, and free passage of trading or comerce for any Shracee, which would venture to Mornecos. Yet few durft come vpon their goodly termes, or those who lay hid in Morsecos, if they were worth any thing flew themselves in publike, for feare this were 20 a pretence to bring the refidue vnto the halter. Those Shraces who were fole causers of this maffacre, being with Abdela at Fez, daily moued him to goe towards Mornecos, vowing enerie man todie in his caufe, and for reuenge of their Wines, Children, and Friends, who had imarted for their lakes. Abdela fomething animated with their offers, yet delayed, knowing his Forces farre interior vnto Sidans, vntill itill vrged by the Shraces; which had brought from the Mountaines some store of their Kindred, very able and resolute men to his aide, he set for wards about the latter end of August, towards Mornecor, determining to give battell once more to Muler Sie den. Of what firength Abdelas Armie confifted, the certaintie is not knowne, but geffed to bee very neere fifteene thouland Horse and Foote.

Muley Sidan was very throng, for befidehis owne Souldiers, the Mornecons aided him with 30 eight thousand men, and divers tribes seat supplies to augment his forces. He had two hundred Two hundred eight thousand men, and differs tribestene inplaces to august it institutes are had two handled English ferue English, the most of them voluntaries, fixtie held Pieces, with st ficient Shot and Powder. Ouer English ferue the English and all the Christians, was Generall Captaine Iohn Giffard, a Gentleman of a worthy Captaine Iohn fpirit, and discended from the ancient and honourable stem of the Giffards in Buckingham-shire. Giffard. Voon his first entertainement and welcome into the Country, Sular bestowed voon him arich Sword valued at a thousand Marks; and a Scarlet Cloake, richly imbroidered with Poarle, fent as a present to Muley Harret, the Kings Eather, from our late Sourraigne of famous memorie A present sent Oueene Elizabeth, belides many other extraordinatie fauours of good value; and often conuerfing familiarly ; yea, sometimes visiting Captaine Giffard at his owne Tent. His entertaine- to Captaine ment was twentie fine findlings per diem, befides many tupplies proceeding from the Kings effart, bedied bountie. With him as fecondary men in charge, was one Mafter Philip Giffard, his nere and Philip Giffard. very deare Kinfman ; Captaine laques, a very valiant Souldier ; Captaine Smith, one of the most Captaine exquifite Enginers in Europe; Captaine Baker, an ancient Britaine Souldier; Captaine Taiter, Captaine Chambers, Captaine Ifack, men euery way able to yndergoe their fee nerall commands. These were daily Ripendaries, at twelve shillings a man, except the two Sea Capraine Captaines, Ifack, and Chambers, who had foure shillings a day, and euerie common Souldier Baker. twelve pence truly payd them. These preparations considered, Muley Sidan had small reason Tailer Faulet, to leave the field, or feare Abdelas forces being nothing in respect of his. But certaine it is, the Chambers. Mules fending for his Wizzards, Soothfavers, willing them to for tell, that he might foreknow, Ifac. the fuccesse of his embattailed Armie. Their answere was ; He should loose the battell, bee dri- Southsaying uen into Sus, within fine moneths should regaine Mornecos, and there during life enjoy the Oracles: inuen men Sar, within me monetus 1900mo regame. Memmeor, and there during life entry the SKingdome. Ypon this anjiwer, bete Maine giving great prefet the ment on a the nature of a fare farmer for her in the server inflictions, commanded. Baffin Maine in the three thousand Soudiers to copiney. The Kings away his Mother, Wints and Challent. For Alleid Haune Bendenbarn all Hala Tabish, become treatment mended the charge of his Treatme, who laded faxtic Mules with, Gold, garding them and the The british.

Muleters, with two thouland of his choylest Shot. Their difpeeded, it may appeare Siden, but housed, and would follow; yet the battels met the 26 of November, 1607 come fixteene miles from the Citie of Merucas, the Canoniers of Muler Sidan, part having in the forefront discharged, their Enemies being somewhat farte off but before they could charge againe, the Enemie was with them. The Shracies did not once dif-60 charges Piece great nor timall, but joyning themschies chose to the Abdelians, charged the Sidamans very fiercely with their Sables, in realinge of Stans tyrannie thowed vpon their Kindreds enraging their minds and courages, or their faithfull promile (which they fought to make good) to Abdela, made them put the Sidemians to flight : or elle it was Sidens feare, that her thould not make good his Soothlayers Prophecie, which made his men to runne away : For at the first

nomers, taken by Abdela.

868

Sbracies de-

encounter, his Moores fell into a dif-array, and prefently into a dishonorable flight: whereupon Sident fight. Muley Siden fled, fent to the English Captaines to be gone, and to Captaine Giff and a good Horse Eng for alour, to faue himselfe. The English returned word, that they came not thither to run, but rather die an honourable death. Captaine Goff and encouraged his men, telling them, there was no hope of victorie, but to prepare and die like men like English men: and then asking for his laques, whom he loued dearely, and taking a Pike in his hand, thought to have rode vnto him, being told hee was not fixefcore from him, and to have died together; but in the way, Captaine Giff and being charged by eight Abdelians, one behind him thor him thorow, and fo was he there flaine. Few of all the English Nation were left aline, the number not exceeding thirtie, and none of the Commanders elcaped, except Captaine Ifack, and Captaine Fankes; of the Moores were not to Sider being gone, as loath to tarry, spend bloud, and win a Field, Abdela got the ground, his

Enemies marched voon, but no great victory, entred Morneces without applaule, or reioyce of the Citizens, some yet feeling his late done injuries, forie for the losse of Sider, who had proued a Tyrant, nor welcomming Abdela vpon hope of amendment, but with policie and patience fieted themlelues to the milerie of the time. Abdela once againe Mafter of Moruecos, got the Kines House but found no treasure to relieue his wants. Great were his promises to reward the time Mafter of Shracies with bountse, and enrich his followers, when the Citie was recoursed: now hee hauing it, there failed of his expectation, and his Souldiers lacking both meate and money : yet to keepe

them itill in hope, and fo in government, it was bruited, the young King had found a Well full of treasure within the House, which Muley Hamet Xarifhad layed vp for a deare yeare: but this good newes quickly vanished, the Well not yeelding water to refresh their fain ing stomacks Therfore the Shraces having releafed their Kindred, recovered their Wives and Children, which had escaped the fury and bloudie Decree of Sidan the last King, they tooke good words and kind viages of Abdela, in lieu of payment, feeing Mornecor neither affoorded them meate, nor Abdela fortune further maintenance, and fo three thousand of them departed at one time. Mules Abdela with the refidue of his forces kept Marneces, laboring by all possible meanes to give his fouldiers content, and keepe them together; fo with much adoe hee lived in Mornecos fome two moneths, during which time, Muley Sides was gathering a fresh Army in Sm.

MVLEY HAMET BOSONNE commeth against ABDELA, and caufeth bim file, to bis Father. Bo FERES like to be taken, flieth to Salie. MVLEY SIDAN commethagainst MV : BY HVMET BOSON RE; who flyeth, and is porsoned by old Azvs. MyLEY SHECK fendeth into Spaine. Some observations of their Policie, and Trade

to Gago.

Vt whilest Abdels and Sides were contribing their owne ends, there arose a storme one Muley Hamet Bosonne, Cousin to the three Brethren which have friven for the Kingdome. This man gathering treature, and temporifing with them all three, fo played their Game, that finding their weakenesse which these quarrels had brought them vnto, woon a ludden feeing his time, went into the Mountaines to his Mothers Kindred, muffered verie neere twenty thouland able men. The Muley being well prouided of treasure, gaue them due pay and large, winning them to his respect and service, so that in lesse then two moneths space,

he got all things in readingfe, descended from the Tollows Mountaines towards Mornecos.
This news brought to Abbela was very vnwelcome, yet (calling his wits and Couniell together) it was concluded confidering the Stracess were gone, his remnant of Souldiers feeble and out of heart and the Offenneau daily fled to Hante Bofone, whole wprifing like a blazing Star drew their eyes vpour him, that Abdels should travell to Fez, which hee might well doe without a guide, having heretofore voon like necessities, often measured the miles : and though hee was determined fo to do, yet a final occasion hastned his journey, for some mile from Abdelas Campe, vpon a Hill on the back-fide of Marsecos, 2 man being feene with a Speare in his hand, and a white linnen upon it as a Floge. Abdda thought Hanse Bosone to be with his whole Forces behind the Hill, when lie was a full dayes march from Mornecos. Therfore in all hafte he tooke vp some of his Tents, but the greater part left standing in a manner, being stared, ran away. And afterward when this matter was discouered, which Abdela held a token of his surprise, it was 60 nothing els but a poore Moore walning his Napery, and for the specdier drying vied this meanes, which terrified Abdela from the feate of his Empire, to Fez, the fafeft place for his abode.

Lylla Ifta, Sidans Mother, hearing of Hamet Bosonnet approch, was perswaded, his mouements were onely to defend her Sonnes right, knowing Bosons of late fauoured Sidens title, comming into his pay, and in person seruing the Muley at the last battaile when Sidan fled into Su. Hereupon the tent divers Captaines, part of her owne Guard, others of her friends and kindred to his and, thinking he would have taken Mornecos for Sidan. But Bosome having entred the Bosomepto Citie peaceably, proclaimed himselfe King, dismissed all Sidans fauourers, which were not wilto be his feruants, who returned to their Lady Mistreffe, certifying her error and their successe: his Treasure he imparted largely to his followers, by ftrong hand defired no mans feruice, but those who were willing. Some thirty English-men remayning, weary of their sustained mesery, and the flate of the Countrey, he gaue them licence to imbarke, and writto the Gouernour of

Saphia to give them their paile, notice whereof being given to the Factor Marine for the English, 10 he disparted them into divers ships with all conveniency, though to his cost and charges; charity to helpe the diffressed soules, and love to his native Countrey, mooning him thereunto. This Muley Hamet Bosonne, during the time of his government was a very good and iust man, offered no discourtesse, or tooke away any mans goods, but paid the Merchants truely for the same, who liked well his current and true dealing.

Bosonnes mother hearing her sonne was setled in Mornecos, brought what strength she could from the Mountaines, and in her way knowing Boferes lodged in a fortreffe, wherennto hee was fled, not to bee well guarded, the befet the house, meaning to take the Muley prifoner, who being void of meanes to refift in the night, made a hole through the wall and fo efcaped prinately to Sale, a Port Towne within the iurildiction of his brother Sheek, where at this day he remaineth.

On the morrow betimes, Bosonnes mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones, Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort, missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Fort missing Bosones mother with her men entered the Bosones mother with her men ent cut off the head of Umfed Benbela, one of his chiefelt feruants and Commanders: then went ged: his cicape the forward to congratulate her formes comming to the Kingdome, being then in Moruecos. But an Empire ill got, is feldome feene of long continuance, for within leffe then two moneths, Muler Sulan came out of Su with a great armie, for whose and Lilla Illa sold her Iewels, and Plate, to furnish her ion with Swords, Pikes, Horsemen, Staues, and other Warl-like Munition. On the other fide Hamet Bosonne prepared to welcome his coufin the Muley Sidan; so about

the beginning of Aprill, 1608. both their Forces met hard by Mornecos where a chiefe of a kinred one Grufe, which came out of Sus, a great wine drinker, alwayes a fauourer of Muley Sidan Grufe; (though little valuing any of the three Kings) prelaming vpon his owne firength and valour, defired the honour, that hee might give charge vpon the enemy with five hundred 30 Horse, which was his owne Regiment, and of his owne kindred : Sidan refuted to grant him his requelt, therefore the Casima tooke his owne leave and gave the enemy a full charge voon the Thebattell, body of his armie, which receiving him very brauely, the Casima and his company were in great danger to be ouerthrowne but Sidan to relecue him, fent fine hundred Horfe-men of his own: fo with their thousand, the Casima broke the ranks of Bosomes battalions, then with their fables fell to execution, vntill the whole campe feeing the field loft, fled towards the Mountaines: thus Sidan without further reliftance entering Mornecos, refting there in quiet three moneths, whe'll Sidan regain Hamet Boson recouering new Forces in July following, presented himselfe before the Citie, thus fting aswel vpon his own strength, as the love of the Civizens: hoping his good and gentle viage

40 when he was amongst them, would have bred a liking in them, of his mild and gentle government; but either the feruile mind of the multitude little respected his fore-passed kindnes, or the feare of Sidan made them loath to fliew any figne of good will; for at his approach no man in the Citie was knowne to draw a fword in his defence. So on the eight of July, Bosonne was discomfitted with the loffe of some thousand men, fled to the Mountaines, where within foure dayes after Alkeid Azus got him poyfoned, hoping thereby to win the fauour of Muley Bosonse poi-

This Azus is aged and fubtill, by his long experience best knoweth the secrets of that state, Alkid Azus. was brought vp vnder Abdela, Muley Hames Xarifs brother, and for his Counsell to Abdela,

willing him either to put out the eyes of Hamet Xarif, or cut his throat, was in danger to hame 50 loft his life when Hamet Xarif came to be King, but the wifedome of the man won fuch respect with Hamet, that of a prisoner, he made him his chiefest Counsellor, and Master of his Treasurie, during whose life time his behaulour was such, as he won great loue among the Commons, Nobility, and many of the blood Royall. When old Hamet died, he was in his Campe neere Fez. and after his death refted all his love vpon Muley Sidan (holding him the prime man and fittest of the three brethren, to rule the Kingdome) vittill both he and Sidy Imbark could not counfell and rule Muley Sidan, for his owne good and benefit of the Common-weale being head-firong, and would take no mans counfell but to his owne liking and hurt. Therefore Sedy Abdela Imbark went to his contemplation at Aca: And Azus to a Castle in the Mountaines, which he had 60 stored with Treasure against a storme, or to refresh the winter of his age, from whence he will not come downe, vntill he see some hope of peace, having at this instant more Treature in his Coffers, then all the three brethren besides, and hopeth to keepe it, being in the midst of his

friends and kindred, and in a place as well fortified as any in Barbary.

How vaine is

full armic of

LIBVI.

CHAP.2. S. 5. Execution of Inflice. Ordinary Indges. Obligations and Bills.

io'n Etias.

Muley Sheck fearefull left Sidens next enterprife would be to rowze him out of Fez, fell in conference with an Italian Merchant, named Iohn Etina, making him his Agent to go into Spain, there to conclude, that if the Catholique King would ayde him with men and money to reconer his right, there should be deliuered vp into his hands, Allaroche, Saly, Alcasar, and other Townes lying fit for his mouth : This negotiation was well entertained. And loba Etina was promifed for his labour in this bulinesse, and bringing it to effect, vpon the deliuerie of the Port Townes, to have yeerely paid him two thousand Duckats during his life. In June, this matter was first mooued; in the latter end of August, seuen Gallions (as was reported) and the Gallies of Naples, in all a hundred fayle, well manned with store of Pioners to rayle Forts, went to Allaroche, thinking to be received, but thirty thousand Alarbees came downe to the shoare, not 10 alowing any fach neighbour-hood, though they hold the Andelnsian halfe their blood. Whether Sir Anthony Sherley was imployed in this service it is not certainly knowen: some

Sir Anthony Sherleves pre-

are of opinion that hee was induced thereunto, because they have formerly heard the King of Spaine hath royally rewarded him for his travailes with Beferer, by giving him the places and pay of two Captaines in the Indies, made him Admirall of the Leuant Seas, and next in place to the Vice-roy of Nagles, having for his entertainement five hundred Duckats a moneth. Without question, he knoweth well the state of that vnbinill and barbarous Nation, having an apprehending and admirable wit to conceine the disposition of any people with whom hee shall The Author added a difconverie, whilest he was amongst them, he behaved himselfe very well toward the better fort, course also of winning credite with them, and gaining the loue of the poorer fort exceedingly, by his larges (for if a Moore or flaue gaue him but a dish of Dates, he should receive a reward'as from an Embut I omit it and referre the perour) and how soener some may hold this a vice, counting him a laussher : yet by this meanes he came to the knowledge of that which otherwise he never should have attained vnto, The Reader to my more credible fame is, Sir Anthonie was not with this Fleet, therefore they sped neuer the bet-Pilgrimage, and proceed to thereports, ter, for had he beene in company, and had command, he would either haue taken footing, or of their Poli- ventered all, fcorning to returne with doing nothing, and so be laughed at.

The Policie of Barbarie.

E Very Kingdome confifteth of men, not of buildings, therefore the Kingdome of Barbary con-30 fifteth of bond and free men: the naturall bond men are fuch as are defoended either from Christians or Negros; the free men are Larbies or Brebers, which may be termed the Valley and Mountaine men. Ouer all, as absolute Monarch is the King, who maintaineth his seat by the fword, and power of Iuflice: the fword men according to their degrees are thus placed.

First, the Muleis, are the Kings children, and all other who are of the blood Royall, are termed by this name. Secondly, Balhas, are Captaine Generals ouer armies. Thirdly, Alkeids be the Lords, fet aswell ouer Garrilon Townes as Countreys, to rule and keepe the people in Subjection. Fourthly, Ferres, Gentlemen who carrie armes, yet lesse Commanders then Alkeids. Fiftly, Babaia, Lieutenant to an Alkeid. Sixtly , Brakbafti , a Sergeant at armes. Seuenthly, Debulhi, a Captaine ouer thirty. Eightly, Romie, the common Souldier of these men 40 of warre, there were kept in daily pay in the old Kings time, to the number of fifty thousand Horsemen : part seruing with the Launce, others with the Speare called Spabaias, and some, especially the Horsemen of Fez, serue with the Crosse-bow on Horse-backe, bending it as they ride, shooting a strong shot and sure : and sixteene thousand foot-men, the Alarbies being fitter for the Horsemen, but the Brebers the stronger footmen, most of them shot.

The chiefest men of Command in the latter times, were these.

TIrft, Alkeid Azu, chiefe Counsellor of State. Secondly, Hamet ben Breham Sefiani, Master of the Horse, and ruler over the Alkeids. Thirdly, Sedi Hamet ben Bouker. Fourthly, Sedi 50 Abdela Wahad Anoune : These two were Treasurers. Fiftly, Alkeid Hamet, a Capatho or Eunuchs, Gouernour ouer the women and Eunuches. Sixtly, Alkeid Mustepha File Master of the Ordnance. Seuenthly, Rifhanan, Admirall ouer the Gallies at Salv.

Note, though these be enobled, taking priority or precedency before others, yet is not this noblenesse hereditary, for the children of these men must claime no honour by birth-right, but what they get by their feruice and honour of their fword , live vnrespected vnlesse they be valiant, and so proouing, the King will take them into his seruice, whereupon by desert, the sonne may obtaine his fathers fortune and honour.

Shecks of Fa-

milies or

Tribes.

There is another title of dignity termed Sbeck, attributed to the chiefe man of every Family or Cast, neither doth the Kings eldest some scorne the title, signifying that he is the prime or best blood of his Royall kindred. Theie Shecks are much respected, because it is the nature of 60 the people, the whole kindred to follow their head : infomuch, as one of these Sheeks can bring into the field ten thousand Horsemen of their owne Cast, or kindred, and some more. So that

it is a matter of great confequence, the King to haue an eye ouer fuch a man, and know how his

tection rettett towards mindetines in tode of master.

The King once in a moneth, on Fridayes in the afternoone after prayers, either in his house affection refleth towards him, either in loue or hatred. or Church litteth to doe Iuftice, hearing complaints or appeales from subalterne Ministers, from whom the grieved persons doe appeale to his Royall person: when the King sitteth, the franger shall have freer accesse to plead his cause before the King, then his owne borne

All inferiour Iudges and Ministers are their Church-men or Talbies, and those are soonest chosen into offices which are of itricktest life, being free from auarice, and such other sames as IO may persert and hinder the course of equitie and instice. The chiefest man for indegement wader the King is Muffie, to whom the party grieved may appeale from any other ordinary ludge. There be three of these men, one in Merueces, another in Fee, the third at Taradani in Sus. The Mustice of Mornecos, fitteth with the King in Indgement, and every Friday in the afternoone by himselfe, to heare and determine causes of the subject and stranger, though hee bee in emment place, he is a poore man, in respect what he might be; it he would fell tultice, and take

The ordinary Iudge fitteth all the yeere long two houres before noone; and two houres after Ordinary none in earry great Towns throughout the three Kingdomes in places one of these ludges, whom not onely the Inhabitants of every Towne and Citie doe repaire, but the Countrey people or Labeer vpon differences come thither to have their causes decided : every one multitell Their manner

20 his owne tale, and plead his owne matter. When both parties have fpoken, then giveth the of indicance. Judge sentence; so that in one day the cause is brought into Court, and the same day ended. If either part haue witnesse to produce, then the Judge giueth three dayes respite to bring them in, which being crought, the aduerie party shall have other three dayes respite to disprove them. And if he can prooue the witnestes either infamous in manners, or given to detectable finne; as Allegations drunkennesse, adultery, or such like : And can prooue the witnes faith not his prayers fixe times gainst witnes duely in foure and twenty houres, then shal he be veterly disabled to beare witnesse, and thus in feuen dayes the longest sute shall be ended. If an Obligation of rather Bill of deht be brought Debes. into Court, the Obligee must either pay the debt, goe to prison, or to pawne the value of the debt, or better; which pawne may be kept in Deposite nine dayes vpon great reason, to fee if the debtor can redeeme statche nine dayes end, if he doth it not, then is it fold, and the party

who should pay the money, must fustaine the losse. As Coadiutors to these Judges, and next in place to them be the Scrivanos, who vpon death Coadiutors to or other remoone are commonly made Judges. Thefe are Tabier which make writings bet weeng the Judges. partie and partie, (hort and plaine, without multiplication of words, and they are of opidion) Abundans castels nocet ; in their Obligatory Bils they put neither Forfeit nor Consistion, has uing for the making thereof two pence Englift, and no more. They wie no long draughts in mateters of purchale, or these tripareite Indentures, with such large and long implicite and explicite Couenants, but thus the people deale in matters of Contracts and Bargaines. I but of jour Manner of a Umeyard, Houfe, Merchandize, at fuch a price, to be paid at fuch a time, calling two honest men, Comurats,

40 whereof one shall be a Talbie, if I can get him, to witnesse this our Bargaine. We foure goe to the Scrivener, who likewife is a Talbie, and have this fet downe in writing, and if our bargaines be for twenty thousand pounds, it is fet downe in ten lines, and the Iultice of the Countrey will allow me my bargaine with as great reason, as if I had a great ingrossed Booke of Corney. ance, as big as the Map of the whole world in the newest Edition.

Next in this nature to these, be the Sterrer, which have small Fees to see the execution of Law Sterrer of Co. an sentence of the Iudge fulfilled; these likewise fetch men to answere their Aduersary, which Courts would delay, and not come before the ludge, eyther voon peruerienesse, or badnesse of their plea, or any other cause whatsoeuer. Wherefore to bee alwayes ready, these are continually atten-

50 dant in the House of the Judge, and wayting vpon him whethersoeuer he goeth. Muttifeb, is an Officer to fee true Weights and Measures ; if any bee faultie, all the Wares Mutifit. in such a mans shop hee giueth to the poore, the party proclaymed an vniust man, and fore

The Hackam, is the Lord Marshall in every City, who indgeth upon life and death, associate Hackam. the party Deli quent is taken, and his offence proued, prefently his throat is cut : Murder there is death, to is manitest Theft, Adultery, likewise proced by very good witnesse: And somtimes it is death for any man to weare a Sword who is not an Officer, yea, though hee bee a Souldier, Other offences according to the necessitie of the time and pleasure of the King, by Proclamation are made death, which the Hackam must fee executed vpon losse of his owne head.

Muckadens, be Substitutes to the Hackam, seeing his judgement fulfilled, and in his absence Auckaden.

Fotors or Saints, dwell in the best places of the Countrey, keepe great Hospitality for all Tra- Fotors. uellers, whither any man come for a night, and be gone in the morning : much good thele die in the Countrey by their example of morall living, and bestowing their owne goods in their inte

87 t

time to helpe the needy and diffrested, comprimiting differences betwixt parties, and repressing all diforders, winning great loue and respect, for their Houses are held Sanctuaries, whose Pris tilledees the King will not violate, but vpon great and weightie reason.

The causes & manners of

The King. Nobility, and Souldiers defire to ferue on Horfe backe, which most commonly they doe, for in any Army there be three Herse for one foot : the King will seldome venture to fight out a battayle, but as you may perceive by the precedent, it was and is the viage amonest the three Brethren, when they meete in a field, who locuer getteth at the first on-fet the aduantage, maketh the other prefently leave the field, and flye watto fome place of firength; they fight with no Armour except a Buffe Ierkin, for the better fort; and a Leather Hide tanned for the meaner, and some Coats of Male, their Armes is a Horle-mans Staffe, Target, and Sword, or a Horfe-mans Peece and Sword,

Deadly feud with the Lar-

The Alarbies serve all voon Horse, will fight forer battayles to maintayne their deadly fend. than in fervice of their King : Infomuch that vpon loffe of any great Lord or Chiefe man of their Bloud, crull battailes have enfued, wherein ten thousand men have beene slayne at one time. and it is their fashion, the fairest Virgin to ride y pon a Camell with a slagge in her hand decked in all pompe to follicite her Kindred to revenge, and goeth foremost in the field, encouraging them to follow a voon which incitement much bloud is foilt, her Kindred as loth to loie their Virgin, and not revenge their injuries: the other fide fritting to winne her and the field, holding that a continuing glory to the feuenth Generation.

When a man is killed, his Tribe feeketh not reuenge only vpon the man which killed the 20 party, but the first man of that Tribe hee meeteth withall, him will hee kill if he can, and so thinketh he hath fatisfied his Kinfmans death.

With the Bre-

The Brebers or Mountayners likewise maintayne this feud, who are most shot and Swordmen, youn the day of battayle their women follow hard behind them, with a colour in their hands, called Hanna : And if they fee any of their fide offer to runne away , or retyre, prefently they will throw fome of this Hanna wpon their clothes, which will flayne, and the party ener after is held for a Coward and a dishonoured Iew. For feare of this Infamy, few fortake the seis : field, but evelier conquer their Enemies, or dye like men , who are presently stripped and buryed by thefe women which follow them.

The trading of the Moores into Guinee and Gago for Gold with the president of Condiumnes to

Me transcription the Neuron, knowing the conquest easie, because the people are vndisciplined in warrecand the profit would be exceeding great by bringing their Gold into his Coun-Effadiuntur ones trey, exchanging for it Sale, and other baier Commodities. And howfocuer cercavite Miners writements ma. had found rich Mines of Gold in the Hils of Atlas, yet hee held it better policy to fetch his Gold farether off; then to digge that which was found in the Centre of his owne Kingdome, fearing if the Mines proued rich, the Golden Ore would draw thither Christian Armes, therefore heef the Nation of all fuch as were the Authors, and gaue the Masters of the Workes death

Dreadfull De-

But to perfect his other Deligne, he chole Indar Balba, fent him with great flore of Souldiers. who entred farre into the Negres Country, depriving them of a great City called Gago, which standeth upon the River of Spage, three hundred Leagues within the firme Land, builded there an Alpandeca for Barbarian Merchants, and a Custome-house for the King. The Merchants Six monether , make it fixe monethes lourney from Moriecos thither, of which, two monethes they patie thorow the Sandy Defarts, where no people dwell, neyther any road way, but directed by Pilots. as thips at Sea, observe the courses of Sunne, Moone, and Stars, for feare of miffing their way: If they lose themselves, they meete with Famine, and dye for lacke of water, whose dead car-* Munniphot Raffes confirme not, but maketh Munna, * or Otema flesh, euery way as Phylicall or Medicinable, as that which commeth from Alexandria. They never travell under two or three hundred in a company : it may be not meeting with water in twelve or fifteene dayes space, but carry embalmed bedies which and water by Gamels, both for them and their beafts to drinke, which failing, to faue their owne hauebeen long lines, they kill their Camelo, and drinke the blood. If the wind blow at North-eaft, they canfince buryed, not vinlade tifeir Camels, leaft the Sands should court them. The Merchandize carried from as in Egypt, esc. Mornecos to the Negros, is much Cloth, Amber Beads, Corall, but the chiefest Commodity is Salt, which is bought at Teguzza, and other places, for foure shillings a Camels lading, which is fixe hundred weight, and payeth at Gage five pounds for Cultome to the King of Barbarie, atterward fold farre within the Countrey to a kind of deformed Negros; who will never be feene 60 in the commerce of trading with the Barbarian, or any stranger: Wherefore they lay their Salt in the fields and leaueth it, then commeth the deformed Negro, and layeth against every mans pricell of Sale, as much of his gold as he thinketh the Sale is worth, and goeth his way, leaving his gold with the Salt : Then returneth the Moore, if he like the gold, taketh it away, if not, detracteth to much from his heape, as he will fell to the Negro for his gold. The Negro returning, if he like the quantity, puttern too more gold, or elie will not barter, but departeth. Yet they feldome missike, for the Moore maketh a rich returne, and his King a full Treasure. Wherefore, the deformed Negro is prayled for the trueft dealing man in the world : the gold which they haue is not coyned, but like small Grauell or Sand gathered after the gluts of raise, in the drie bankes of Mountaines and Rivers.

Touching Voyages of Englishmen to Barbatie, as also Embassages Sent thisber by Queene Elizabeth: likewife touching many English Voyages to Guinny, Benin, and other places on the Continent, and the Hands advoying; with Patents also for those parts: the Reader may; of he please, tertific and fa-10 tiffe bimfelfe in Master Edens, and Master Hackluyes Voyages. English Nauigastons are now admenced to fo great Admensure, and new or remote Discoveries, that I rather hasto to shows ? Let because I thinke it meete to acquaint the Reader with the prefere Stone of the moures pares of Africa : I have adv tuning at morre to acquaint the scauer with two prefers Summ of 100 movers, parts up cattern a council and del byfe following Differentiat. And because Algert is the Whirle parts of thefe Same, the Throne of del byfe following Differentiat. And because Algert is the Whirle parts of the Same, the Throne of Prefs to the of Trade and Stimbs of Slavery; the Cong of vanchance Birds of Prefs, the Habitat tion of Sea-Douils, the Receptacle of Renegations to God, and Traylors to their Country; I have the longer flaned there: both to form the place out of Nicholay; His Maissiries xealous Defigne against them, and Gods goodnesse in two notable Delinerances from them.

As for Ward, or other English, infesting the World from that Hel-month, I was talk to blet these Paperswith foretten Names.

CHAP. III. Maraya a okon v

The African Pollessions of the King of Spaine, and the Turke. The court two contracts

Are and the Color of the Color

The Dominions and Fortresses which the King of Spoine hash vyon the To Takenow lles and mayne Lands of Africa, and of the of Burn, Pa Great Turkes.

Elides Oran, Merfalquibir, Mililla and Pomnon which the King of Spaine posteli sech within the Streights; as likewise, Centa, Tangen, sind Abrail, which by the first of Porngall, he holdesh very neere the Streights of Gibrailan; and Marie He hath fince gan in like fort without the Streights mouth, twenty miles to the South-ward of Arail: he hath along the Coalt of Africk, from Cape de Guer, to that of

Guardafu, two forts of States : for some are immediately under him ; and others are as it were his Adherents. The Hands of Madera, Puerto Santo, the Canaries, the lies of Areuin, of Cabo Verde, the lle Bel Principe, with that of Sant Thomas, and others necre adioyning, are immediately under his Dominton. Their llands are maintayned with their owne victuall, and promition, and yet they have also some out of Emope, as in like manner they fend fome thirther : especially Sugars and Frents, where with the Ile of Madera wonderfully aboundeth, as also with Wine. And the Hand of Sant Thomas likewise hath great abundance of

Thefe States have no incumbrance, but by the English and Frenchmen of Wate. At the 1-30 lands of Arguin, and at Sant George de la Mina, the Portugals have planted Factories in forme of Fortreffes, by meanes of which, they trade with the bordering people of Women and Libya, and get into their hands the Gold of Mandinga, and other phices neere about Among the adherent Princes, the richeft and most honourable, is the King of Comgo, in that his Kingdome is one of the flourishing and pleneifull Countryes in all Athiopias The Portugals have there two Colonies, one in the City of S. Salnador, and another in the Iland Loanda. They have divers rich Commodities from this Kingdome, but the most important is every yeere about five thoufand Slaues, which they transport from thence, and fell them at good round prices in all the Hes and mayne Lands of the West Indies: and for the head of every saue so taken vp, there is & good taxe payd to the Crowne of Portugall.

From this Kingdome one might eatily goe to the Country of Prete lami, for it is not thought to be very farre off : and it doth so abound with Elephants, Victuall, and all other necessarie things, as would bring fingular ease and commoditie to such an enterprise. V pon the Kingdome of Congo confineth Angola, with whose Prince of late yeares, Paulo Dias, a Portugall Captaine, madeswarre, And the principall occasion of this warre are certaine Mines of Silver, in the Moun-

CHAP.4.

Milerie of Christian Slaves in Algiers.

The African Trade might haue been as taines of Cabambe, no whit inferior to those of Potoffi; but by so much are they better as fine Silver goeth beyond that which is bale, and courle. And out of doubt, if the Portugals had effee. med fo well of things neere at hand, as they did of those farther off and remote, and had thither hent their forces wherewith they passed Capo de buena esperança, and went to India, Malaca. and the Malucoes; they had more easily, and with leffe charge found greater wealth; for there are no Countries in the world richer in Gold and Silver, then the Kingdomes of Mandinga. Ethiapia, Congo, Angela, Butua, Toroa, Maticuo, Boro, Quiticni, Monomotapa, Cafati, and Bobenemusi. But humane avarice effeemeth more of another mans, then his owne; and things remote appeare greater, then those necreat hand. Betweene Capo de buena esperança, and Cape Guardain. the Portugals have the Forcreffes of Sena, Cephala, and Mozambique. And by their they con- 10 time Matters of the Trade with the bordering Nations, all which abound in Gold and Iuosie. By these Fortrelles they have special commoditie for their Navigation to the Indies because their Fleetes sometimes winter, and otherwise victuall, and reiresh themselves there. In these parts the King of Melinde is their greatest friend; and those of Quilon, and other Neish. bour flands, are their Tributaries. The Portugals want nothing but menitor befides other flands. which they leave in a manner abandoned, there is that of Saint Lawrence, one of the greatest in all the world(being a thouland two hundred miles long, and foure hundred and fourescore broad) the which, though it be not well tilled, yet for the goodnesse of the soyle, it is apt and fit to be manured, nature having diffinguished it with Rivers, Harbours, and most commodious Baves. Thele States belonging to the Crowne of Portugall, were wont to feare no other, but fuch Sea- 20 forces as may be brought thither by the Turks But the daily going to and fro of the Portugall Fleetes, which coast along vp and downe those Seas, altogether secureth them. In the yeare 1589, they tooke neere vnto Mombaza foure Gallies, and a Galliot, belonging to the Turkes, who were fo bold as to come even thither. But fince the English and Hollanders have traded the Indies, the Portugall affaires have much decaied in those parts, their opposing them turning to fuch effect as you have heard.

The Domini-Great Tucke in

The great Turke post fleth in Africa all the Sea-coast from Velez de Gumera, or (as some hold opinion) from the River Malaia, which is the Eafterne limite of the Kingdome of Fez, even to the Arabian Gulte or Red Sea, except some few places (as namely, Mersalcabir, Melilla, Oran, and Pennon) which the King of Spaine holdeth. In which space before mentioned, are situate 26 fundry of the most famous Cities and Kingdomes in all Barbarie; that is to fay, Tremizen, Alger, Tenez, Bucia, Conflantina, Tunis, Tripolis, and all the Country of Egypt, from Alexandria to the Citie of Afna, called of old Siene, together with some part of Arabia Troglodytica, from the Towns of Suez to that of Suachen. Also in Africa the Grand Signior hath five Vice-royes, called by the names of Beglerbegs or Baffas, namely, at Alger, Tunes, Tripolis, at Miffir for all Egype, and at Smarben for those places which are chalenged by the Great Turke, in the Dominions of Prese lanni. Finaly, in this part at Suez, in the bottome of the Arabian Gulfe, is one of his foure principal Arfenals, or places for the building, repairing, decking, and harboring of his warlike Gallies, which may lie here under couert, to the number of fine & twentie Bottoms.

CHAP. IIII.

The Description of the Citie of Alger, written by NICHOLAS NICHO. LAY, and how it came into the possession of BARBAROSSA, and also of Malta and Tripolie.

Change of



Leer is a Citie in Africa very ancient, first builded by a people of Africa, called Melgana, of whom the tooke her first name : afterwards was called lol. and was the Seate Royal of Juba, in the time when the Romans bare dominion in Africa, in honour of Cafar it was called Inle Cafare; and fince the Moores called it Gezeir Arab Eleagair, which in their Language fignifieth Iles, because she is cituated neere Maiorque-Minorque Ienife, and Fromentierre: but the Spaniards now

doe call her Alger: howbeit, thee is fituated upon the Mediterran Sea, upon the hanging of a Mountaine engironed with ftrong Walls, Ramperds, Ditches, Platformes, and Bulwarks, in forme almost three-iquare; the largenesse which goeth towards the Sea side stretcheth narrow-Iv almost vnto the highest part, whereas there is a great building made in forme of a C tadell, to command the Towns and entrie of the Hauen. As for the buildings being beyond the Pallace Royall, are very faire Houses belonging too particular men, with a great number of Bathes and Cookes houses. The places and streetes are so well ordained, that every one in his Occupation 60 apart : there are about three thousand Hearth-fleeds. At the bottome of the Citie which is towards the North ioyning to the Walles, which are bearen with the Surges of the Sea in a great place, is by great Artifice and fubtill Architecture builded their principall and head Mofquee; and a little below that is the Arcenal, which is the place into which are hailed vp, and trimmed

the Gallies, and other vessels. This Citie is very Merchant-like, for that she is situated upon the Sea, and for this cause marueilously peopled, for her bignesse: she is inhabited of Turkes, Moores, and Itmes in great number, which with marueilous gaine exercise the Trade of Merchandise, and lend out money at Viury. They have two Market dayes in every weeke, to the which refort an infinite number of people of the Mountaines, Plaines and Vallies, being neighbours thereabouts, which do bring thither all forts of Fruits, Corne and Foule, of very cheape price: for I have seene a Patridge fold for a ludit, which is a small piece of Siluer mony, in manner soure square, and is in Furnaces sity value of our mony foure pence and a mite, but true it is that their Partridges be not so big not de- made for br licate as ours are: the Hennes and Chickins be also very good cheape, for that they have in most ding of Chica-Io parts of their Houses Furnaces, made in manner like vato the Hot-houses or Stours of German, in the which with a small heate they doe breed and hatch their Eggs without helpe of the Hen, and therefore it is not to be marueiled at, though they have great plentie of fuch Pullen. They and therefore it is not to Camels and Oxen, which they doe shoo lade, and ride vpon, as vpon Hories. And going through the streetes, because of the multitude of people, which there is Oxenshod marueilous, they goe crying with a loud voyce, Balue; Balue; which is too lay, Beware, beware I have also feene divers Moores mounted on Barbarie Horses without Saddle, Bridle, Stirrops or The Moores do Spurres, lauing onely a string in the mouth to stay them withall. And as for the men, they are ridetheir Spurres, having onely a string in the mouth to itay them without. Amoustor the mention a hories without altogether naked, having onely about their middle part to cover their printies, some piece of a hories without altogether naked, having onely about their middle part to cover their printies, some piece of a hories without white Sarge or Blanket in manner of an apron, and about their head a Linnen cloth rowled, de.

20 Which they bring about and vnder their chin. Their weapons are three Dares or long Iauelins, which they carry in their right hand, and doe Weapons of shoote and throw with wonderfull dexteritie, and vpon their left arme is fastned a large Dagger the Mores. made a little crooked after the fashion of a Wood-knife, which they call Seequin, and vie to hight at hand strokes withall, and to annoy their Enemies comming to the close. The most part of the Turkes of Algier, whether they be of the Kings Houshold or the Gallies, are Christians renied, or Mahumetifed, of all Nations, but most of them Spaniards, Italians, and of Pronence, of the Hands and Coat's of the Sea Mediterran, given all to Whoredome, Sodometrie, Theft, and all other most detestable vices, living onely of rouings, spoyles, and pilling at the Seas, and the Hand, be-

ing about them: and with their practike Art bring daily to Align a number of poore Christians of which they fell with the and other Merchants of Barbarie for flaues, who afterward Christiansin and the Merchants of Barbarie for flaues, who afterward Christiansin and continuous and the statement of the statement which they sen voto one 2020 and other sectionance of Darbons for Bales, who are twat Algior transport them, and fell them where they thinke good, or elfe beating them miferably with Amiferable Haues, doe imploy and conftraine them to worke in the Fields, and in all other vile and abiest Heoftha occupations and feruitude almost intollerable. And therefore it is not to be marueiled at, though Ghristian thele poore Christian Slaues made of it no scruple at all in putting of vs in danger, to set them-

Without the Citie towards the Westare many faire and pleasant Gardens, set and adorned with clivers trees bringing forth fruits of al forts. Amongst other things there be Milons of marueilous goodnesse, and incomparable sweetnesse: they have also another fruite called Pateque, which the Italians call Anguries, being like in bignesse and colour to our greene Citrouilles in Winter, which they eate raw without Bread or Salt, and hath a tafte fo delicate and fweete, 40 that it melteth in ones mouth, giving a water as it were fugred, and ferue greatly to refresh and digelt. About their Gardens are many Wells full of good water, and the ground there abouts, although it is Mountaines and Vallies, is very fertile for fruites and Vines. On the other part towards the East, without the Towne runneth into the Sea a small River called Sano, which ferueth aswell to drinke of, as other commodities, and also maketh many mills to grind. The course of the Sea from the Cape of Marfuz, (where as yet are seene the foundations of the ancient Citie Tipala, which in times past was by the Emperours of Rome honoured in prayse of ancient Citie I paja, which in times pait was by the Emperours or Kome nonoured in prayie or Tipaja and the Country Latine) doth bow and wind like vnto a Croiebow-lath, and all along the Riuer and Citie. the shoare the Mooryh Women and Maiden Slaues of Algier doe goe to wash their Linnen, being commonly whole naked, suring that they we are a piece of Cotten Cloth of some strange colour. 50 to couer their secret parts (which notwithstanding for a little piece of money they will willingly vncouer.) They weare also for an ornament about their necke, armes, and legges, great collers or bracelets of Latten, fet with certaine falle Stones. But as for the Wines of the Turks or

Moores, they are not seene go vncouered, for they weare a great Barnuche made of a Blanket of white, blacke, or violet colour, which couereth their whole body and the head. The second day after our arrivall at Algier, I found the meanes for money, and with faire word too hyre a renyed Spaniard, to conduct and leade me thorow all places that I most desired to fee. So as by his meanes, I faw and learned many things within foure or fine dayes that wee were there in quiet. And namely, brought mee voon a high Mountayne being a mile from the Towne, to fee and behold the fituation of a very fitting and great Tower, beeing builded vpon another Mountayne there neere about, and gently enquiring of him what fittength the Tower might be of the declared vnto me, that the breadth of the Ditches about the fame, was seuenteene brases, saving about the gate and entry into it towards the North, it was only seven fathomes

broad, and two Speares lengths deepe. Moreover, he faid vnto mee, that within the Fortreffe there were nine great cast Pieces, and eighteene other, as well Mynions, as Fawconets, and other; and that in the middest of the Tower there was a Well of very good water, voon the height thereof standing a wind-mill, and another standing without the gates. And that thirrie ordinary Souldiers are committed within it to keepe the lame. And to make fhort, that this Tower was made to none other intent (as also others fince have confirmed) then for the garding and keeping of the Fountayne heads, which from thence are brought and conueved under the

Alger was long time under the Dominion of the King of Telensin, untill such time as they of Bugie chose a new King, vnto whom they gaue and rendred themselues as his Tributarie, be 10 cause he was neeter vnto them then the King of Telensin, and that hee could sooner helpe them (if need were.) But in processe of time, perceiving themselves to be as it were free and out of all doubt : armed certayne (hips to the Sea, with the which they became fuch Coursaires or Pirates that in (hort time they annoyed by their Piracies and Robberies on the Sea, not onely the Coast of Spaine, but also all the Mediterrane Ilands. Which perceiving, Ferdinando the King Catholike fent to Alger a great Armie to affiege them, and for to keepe them in most distresse, caused with a maruellous readinesse a Fort to bee made in a small Iland, which lyeth before the Cities neth the Mores keeping them by that meanes fo ftraightly befieged, that in short time they were constrayned to require a Truce for ten yeeres: Which was agreed vnto them vpon condition of a certayne Tribute, which they payed vntill the death of King Ferdinardo, for then they espying a conuenient time and meanes, to breake the Truce, and to fet them felues at liberty, called vnto them Carradin Barbaroffe, who after the fiege of Bone, retyred to the Caftle of Gegill, flanding in the Coast of the Mediterran Sea, vpon the top of a high Rocke, seventie miles from Busie, who being by them chosen to bee their chiefe Captayne, gaue many fierce affaults vnto the Fortreffe, fo as he put the Spaniards to flight, and incontinent after caused it to bee ruined and pulled downer enen to the foundation. He then feeing fo happie successe of his Enterprize, could no longer Selim flaine by abide to be as companion, but in a Bath trayteroully flue a Prince of Arabie, called Selim: who declared himselfe to be Lord of the Citie.

Ferdinando King Catho-

Afterwards forfaking the name of a Captaine any longer, caused himselfe to bee called King, and covned money under his name, and to well guided his Affaires that in short time after hee to brought all his Neighbours about him to become contributory vnto him. Such was the begin-The King had ning of the magnificent estate of Cariedin Barbaroffe: after whose death, his Brother Harianot complete dene tucceeded him in the Kingdome, and after him his Sonne Caffam, who raigned at the time we arrived there.

power : but they enioyed, To returne to the Discourse of our Nauigation, which I left at the Cape Mataluz, from as this Author faith, a kind of whence (hauing foiourned there a night) wee departed in the morning : the wind was fo contrary that it forced vs to come to an Anchor neere to the Cape Tedele : at which place wee faw within a great Rocke a deepe entrance, being two flight shot long, into the which the Sea en-This Hariadene treth even to the very bottome, where we entred with our Skiffe, even to the halfe way of it: and thinking to passe on further, we found so great a number of strange Mice, that we were con-Captaine, Ad- strayned to turne backe: so were we persecuted. And so for feare they should pisse on our heads 40 mirall of the (their piffe being venemous) we were forced to couer vs, and to wrap our felues in our Clokes. Turker Nauic, This part of the Sea is very full of Mountaynes and great Rockes.

Teddell is a Citie contayning about two thousand Harth-steeds, situated upon the Sea Mediterrane, threefcore miles from Alger at the bottome of a Mountayne, and on the hanging of ftorie which a great Rocke. On the midft of the Mountayne is a little Castle, from the which along goeth a aff. ighted Rome, and was wall fretching to that of the Citie. The Africans first did edifie it, and at this present is inhabited of a people very merry and pleasant. For, for the most part of them they are given to the exercise of the Harpe and Lute. Their principall Craft and Occupation is fishing, and dying of See my Pilgri-Wooles and Cloth, by reason of divers small Brookes very fit for their dyings, which descending mage, 1.6.c.9. from the Mountaynes through divers places of the Towne, iffue into the Sea. The Inhabitants Cape of Tedof the same place are vnder the same Obeysance and Justice that they of Alger are. Leauing the Coast and Towne of Teddell, we bare roome to Sea-wards, and had so good speed, that the foure and twentieth of July in the Euening, we discovered the Citie of Gigers, but even thinking to be neere it, within a moment arose such a sudden Borasque or Flaa, that if our Mariners had Barbarie, most nimbly besturred themselves in taking in of their Sayles, wee had beene in creat danger to dangerous for haue beene all drowned, and immediately faw our Frigat (which was made fast to our Gally) loft before our eyes, because they had not quickly cut the Halser, but all our men were faued by swimming to our Gallies. These Borasques (engendred of a wind, called by the Gracians, Typhon; of Plinie, Vertex or Vertex, but vulgarly Tour billon, or Whirlewind proceed not out of the 60

West, notwithstanding doe often happen in Winter) are very often and dangerous all along

she Coast of Barbarie, and as they come very fuddenly, so are agains soone appealed. Borte of Bone. The twentie fine in the Enening, we arrived at the Port of Bone: where wee being come to CHAP.4. A Church builded. Aflying fifth. Women good fwimmers.

an Anker, the Ambassadour sent to salute the Caddy, which keepeth the towns vpon tribute vn- This Ambassa an Anker, the Ambainaour ient to Janue the Christian, and notwithflanding fivewed him-dor was the der the King of Algo. This Caddy was a renyed Christian, and notwithflanding fivewed him-dor was the der the King of Algo. This Caddy was a renyed Christian, and notwithflanding fivewed him-dor was the der the Aing of earlier. Lines was, for ouer and about the refreshings of field, bread and liberall towards vs, for ouer and about the refreshings of field, bread and ment fent 1:51 fruits which he gaue vs, about supper time sent vnto the Ambassador two great Platters of Ma-by the Front trutes which me game values and proper time that according to their fashion, which was a kinde of Kingto the colique, full of their kinde of meate, dreded according to their fashion, which was a kinde of Kingto the Menules made in Patte with Onions, and fat Pullets with certaine fawces of very good tafte Great Tarless

Bone, anciently called Hippon, of which Saint Augustine hath beene Bishop in times past, e- Bone anciently dified of the Romans vpon the Mediterran Sea, standeth of the one side vpon high and ragged Hippon. 10 Rockes, and there is a very faire and fumptuous Mofquee, vnto which is adioyned the house of the Couldy; but the other fide of the Towne towards the South, and the Valley is figured more lower, and as well within as without accommodated with Wells and good Fountaines. The Houses within it (hauing beene twice saccaged and spoyled by the Sponiards) are cuill builded, and this Towne doth not now contains about three hundred Harthes. The Emperour Charles that the the and this Towne doth not now contains about times must be said to one fide towards the West, a builded there a the firt, after he had subdued the Towne, caused young height of one fide towards the West, a builded there a great Castle to be builded; which commanded of all sides, and did accommodate it with a number of Citternes to gather Water in , for that on this height there is neither Well nor Fountaine. Notwithstanding, thortly after it was rased by the Turkes and Moores, and the Spanis The Spanisals orderdriven out of it: without the City towards the Eaft, is feene a goodly and large Champion the Calle. 20 on Countrey, inhabited and tilled by a kinde of People called Merdez; which Countrey, befides the great quantitie of Corne that it bringeth forth, nourisheth and pastureth in the Valley ple. a great number of Oxen, Kine, Sheepe and other Cattell, so plentifelly, that with their Milke and Butter, not onely the City of Bone is prouided and furnished, but also Times and the lile of Gerbes: there are also about it many faire Garden Plats, plentitully abounding with Dates, Figges, and iweet Mellons. At the beginning of the Valley passe two small Rivers, whereof, the next and greatest hath a Bridge of stone, under the which is a way to an old ruined Church, being betweene two Rocks, which the Moores doe fay to have beene the Church of Saint Au- A Church bail suffine, which made me the more defirous to goe and fee it: Notwithstanding, that a Iew, borne ded by S. 446. in Spaine, being then with me, vied all the meanes he could to perswade mee from it : for the

30 dangers which he faid to be there of the Theeues called Alerbes, which thereabouts doe lye fecretly hid, to intrap them that came thereabouts; by which his remonstrances notwithstanding he could not diffwade me, but that needes he must accompanie mee : and certainely there I found by experience : and vpon the top of a high Mountaine hee shewed me a small troope of thele Alerber starke naked, mounted on horse-backe with their Dartes in their hands, after the fashion of those I saw in Alger : In the Hauen or Roade which lyeth before the Fortresse is found great quantitie of very faire Corrall, which Andre Dorse then had in farme of the King of Alger, for which he raid vito him yeerely great fummes of Money. By chance we found there a Ship of Marfellie conducted by a Curfarie, to gather the fame , who presented winto the Ambassador, many taire and great branches. The next day being the six and twentieth, after 40 Sunne-ser, waying our Ankers, we departed from Bone, and passed from the Gulfe, which continueth about eighteene miles to the Cape of Rofe, and passing further towards the sight of the cape de Rofe. lles De la Gaine, and des Symboles, there flew a Fish into our Gallie, of the length, colour and Gitte and bigneffe of a great Sardm, which before had two great wings, and two leffe behinde; his head Symboles and mouth being great according to the proportion of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the body : this fish is by the Moores called the Control of the Control o led Indole. And having doubled the Cape Bone, the twenty and eight day we arrived at the Ile

This lie of Pantalaree , which by the Ancients was called Paconia , is very Hilly and full of Pantalaree and great Rocks. There groweth great quantitie of Cotton, Capers, Figges, Mellons and Reiciently Parefins : and throughout the llands is full of Cifternes. There are also many small Houses very nice

30 anciently builded within the ground (made like vitto Caues) made by the Moores in the time they posses the lland : along the Sea fide are found Stones being blacke, and gliftering like vnto fine let, and certaine rough Stones. They have no Horfes, but of Oxen great flore, with the which they do labour and till the ground, how well there groweth no Corne. Of which they furnish themselves out of the He or Seedia, vnto which they are subject. But well there groweth certaine other Graine and Herbes of small estimation. There groweth a small Tree like vnto Nerte : which the Moores called, Vere; and the Sicilians, Stince, bringing forth a fmall round truit, which at the first is red, and being ripe, waxeth blacke. Of which , the Inhabitants of the Iland (which are very poore) make Oyle, which they vie as well to but in their Lampes, Oyle made of as to eate and the Women after hauring walhed their heads, doe anoint their haire with it since. 60 to make it grow long and faire : As well the men as women are of nature good Swimmers , as The Women by experience we faw by a woman of the Countrey, bringing a great Basket with Fruit, entred into the Sea, and wimming, brought the same to fell in our Galley. This Iland containeth thirty miles in length, and in breadth about ten miles.

rable wind : that the first day of August, being passed the Ile of Goze, we arrived about the ene-

ning in the Road of Malta, where incontinent we were visited by the Knights Parifot and Vil

legaignon, and of many others of divers Nations. And after the Ambassador had given to vinder-

frand to the great Mafter his comming, the chaines of the Hauen being opened with faluation ac-

customed of the one side and other, we entred into the Hauen, vpon the sides whereof were with

the afore named, divers other Knights come thither in the behalfe of the grand Mafter (of birth

a Spaniard) named Omede, which received, the Ambailador, and prefented vinto him a Mulet.on

which he lighted, and accompanied him to the great Hall of the Castle, where the grand Master

his authorifation, the night approaching, taking his leave returned to his Gallies. The next

day he was by the great Master bidden to a sumptuous dinner, vinto the which all the ancient

and notable Knights of the Religion were also bidden and affembled, and there was openly re-

hearfed, how that certaine dayes before Sman Bafha, Captaine Generall of the Turkes army had

taken and faccaged the Calile of the Towne of Augusta in Sicilia, and that he from thence arri-

uing in a Port of Malta called Mechetto, neere vinto that of the Catile, put his men there on

land to ouer-run, rauish and spoyle all whatsoeuer they should find for their aduantage, which

they executed most cruelly, as such barbarous people in like affaires are accustomed to doe. But

lies of the Religion, who could not abide fuch infolency, and fecretly affembling certaine num-

ber of Souldiers, did by ambushes and other meanes so distresse them, that after having taken and

flaine fuch as fell into his laps, made them to remooue from that place : but notwithstanding aid

not delift of their enterprise: for from thence they went to the Road of S. Paul where they lan-

ded their Ordnance to affrege the City, whereof they got the Suburbs, and framed their Tren-

ches to make the battery. And forfomuch, as they could not atchieue the end of their enter-

prile (by reason as well of the roughnesse of the place being full of Rocks, as seeing their men faile them, dying through extreme heat) they refolued to remoue their fiege, and to imbarke

at advantage. From thence they went to the He of Goze, being very neere and fubicat to the

turall cruelty and is of a Sicilar which in that place had dwelled of long time, and there married

a wife, by whom he had two faire daughters then, being in flate to be married, who feeing his

last calamity approaching, because he would not in his presence see his, wife and his daughters

rauished and violated, and to be brought in shamefull servitude, and to deliver them from all

shame and bondage, having called them into his house, first slew with his sword his two daugh-

ters, and afterwards their mother. And this done, with a Harquebuse and a Crosse-bow bent

counter, afterwards fighting a while with his fword, being incironed with the multitude of the

Turkes, brought himselfe to the end of his most vnhappy life. Behold the summary of the mi-

feries happened through the Turkes in few dayes in the lies of Sicila, Malta, and Goze. After

which things the Baseba caused his army with the whole booty and prey to embarke, and remo-

The fixt of August we came to Tripoli, a City which Charles the fifth had given in keeping to

the Manights of Malta, and then befieged by Sinan Balba. Where having well confidered the

placing of the Campe, the Towne and Castle, we returned to the Bascha, with whom the Am-

baffador talked a while, and in the meane while I went to fee the market of the Turkes (which

vnto those that most offered for them (and last inhaunsers, being permitted vnto those that

bought them (as the ancient Custome of the Oriental Barbarians is) to strip them starke naked,

and to make them goe, to the intent to fee if they have any naturall impediment in their bodies,

visiting afterwards their teeth and eyes, as though they had beene horses, and standing there,

I faw creeping upon the ground a Scorpion of yellow colour, being of length more then a long

finger. The same day the Turker brought their Ordnance and Oabions vnto the Trenches,

which Gabions are made of great Plankes of three inches, which they carry vpon their Gallies

or Shippes to ferug them when they have need of them ; for when they will batter any place,

they fee them in the ground in forme of Baskets, Afterwards being fet in rankes, they hill them with earth, and is a very commodious invention, for the shot which can but slippering passe o-

uer it, and can doe no hurt nor dammage. The Turker having in the night placed their Gabi-

ons, and their Ordnance ready to the Battery, did the next day following being the eight of

August, begin to shoot at the Castle with great furie, which was not left vnanswered, and every

they call Bafar) being hard by where the poore Christians of Sicil, Malta, and Gene, were fold 50

ued the feuen and twenty of July towards Barbary, to affiege the Castle of Tripoli.

le of Maha, which they faccaged, and by decritful composition tooker the Cattle, leading the 30 peopleboth men, women and children as flaues into miferable captimity: being in number fixe

a most valiant and well adusted Knight a Spaniard, named Guimeran, Captaine of one of the Gal-

with divers Knights attended him, and having done reverence vnto him, and declared part of 10

CHAP.4.

Road of S.

878

Gorefacenged themselves with their Ordnance, having slaine, taken and saccaged all that they met withall

Size thousand into the hundred in the hundred in the hundred in the hundred in the hundred and three hundred in the hundred hundred with the waters of Matte, doth recire a History no lefte lamentable then full of dispaire, and vnnadred priloners. A pitifull Hiflory. Aftrange

(as cleane bereft of fences) made towards his enemies, of whom he flew twaine at the first en- 40

Mannerto fearch the Christian flaues that come to be A Scorpion.

houre some slaine,

The belieged fent to the $Ba\beta ia$, if he would receive certains of them to treat of some good accord touching the giuing ouer of the Cattle, whereunto the Bafcha lightly confenting, was in accordiouching and a brane Spaniara, named Guinare, and a Knight of Maiorque, to offer all diligence dispatched a brane Spaniara, named Guinare, and a Knight of Maiorque, to offer an augence are parents of the Artillery and Munition, fo as he would furnish them of which the Bafeha the Cattle with the Artillery and Munition, this to bring them with bagge and baggage fafely to Malta: to whom summarily was answered, that (forafmuch as, as yet they had not deferued any grace, prefuming to be fo bold as to keepe lo small a place against the armie of the highest Prince on the earth) if they would pay the whole charges of the armie, he would gladly agree to the matter proponed, or if they would not thereunto consent (as it became them) that for their recompence, all they within the Io Cattle should continue staues and prisoners: notwithstanding, if they incontinently and without delay, did furrender the place he would exempt out of them two hundreth. Whereupon, the mestengers returning in dispaire of any further grace, was stayed by Drogot and Salaraiz, with flattering words, and fayned promifes, that they would endeuour fo much as in any wife lay in them, to make the Bascha condiscend to a better and more gracious composition: for the y feared that the affreged through dispaire, would resolve (as their extreame refuge) to defend themselves even to the last man. And incontinent went to the Bascha, to declare vnto him his overfight, in refusing those which of their owne voluntary came to surrender themselves into his hands, and that to put them out of doubt and dispayre, hee ought with all mildnesse to agree vnto all that they demanded. For after he had the Catile, and all the men vnder his au-20 thoritie, he might afterwards dispose of them, as he should thinke good. The Bascha finding this counfell good, caused the two messengers to be called againe vnto him, declaring vnto them with fained and diffembling words, that at the inflance and request of Drogot and Salaraiz there present, inclining vnto their request, he did discharge them of all their costs and charges of the armie, (wearing vnto them (the better to deceive them) by the head of his Lord and his owne, inuiolably to observe all that which he had promised vnto them, which they (too easily) beleeued, and forthwith went to declare the fame vnto the Gouernour and others within the The Bascha the better to atchieue to his enterprise, sent foorth after the Deputie aforesaid. a Tirke (one of the most subtill to his mind, that he could choose) to whom he gaue expresse

30 charge to perswade the Gouernour to come with him, to conclude and treat concerning the giuing ouer, and for the vessels which should bee necessary for their conduct to Malia, and that if hee made difficultie to come, he should make a semblance as though hee would remaine there in hostage for him, and that aboue all things hee should have an eye to consider of the strength and affurance of the affreged, and of the disposition of all things there, which the Turke could execute fo finely, that the Gouernour by the countiell of those that had perswaded him to furrender, notwithflanding the realisms of warres, and duetie of his office, forbade him in fuch manner to abandon the place of his charge, resoluted upon so small an assurance of the Bascha, who having rigorously reproached his timerity, faid vnto him: that for somuch as he had given his word, that if he would pay the charges of the armie, he would let them go with bagge Waller feat to 40 and baggage, otherwise hee would discharge but two hundred, whereat Vallier being greatly the Gallies mooned, answered, that it was not that which with the Deputie of the Castle he had agreed vnto: But seeing he would doe none otherwise, that it would please him to suffer him to returne to the place for to haue the aduife and deliberation of the affeged, which he could not obtaine, but it was onely permitted vnto him, to fend backe the Knight that he had brought with him, to make report of these pittious newes vnto the asseged; and on the other party, Vallier was fent to the Gallie with Irons on his legges. They of the Caftle having understood the Premisses, were greatly afraid of the mischiefe, which they perceived approaching to- wite answere wards them, and could take none other resolution, then the next day in the morning earely to of valuer. returne the faid Knight to the Bascha, to know whether they should looke for no better. But as toone as he was come before him, the Gouernour was brought in, of whom the Balcha asked. 50 which of both he would choose, either to pay the expences of the armie, or that he and all they of the Castle would remaine prisoners, to whom he answered, that a slaue had none other authoritie then that which by his mafter was given vnto him, and that having loft, besides his libertie, the power to command if any thing were yet referred in him, could not counfell him to command to agree vnto any thing but that which was concluded with the delegates, which the Bascha hearing, for feare that such an answere should not come to the knowledge of the affreged, and that it should cause them desperately to fight it out, having taken counsell of his Captaines, tooke the Gouernour by the hand, and with a fmiling and diffembling countenance faid vnto him, that without any doubt he would as he had promifed them, fet them at free li-60 berty : and that therefore without fearing any thing, hee would cause them all to come out of the Caitle : but the Gouernour, because he had before beene deceiued, would not trust to his words, but faid vnto him, that he should command him that was come from the Castle, for that he knew they would doe neuer a whit the more for him. So that the Bascha turning towards the Knight, commanded him that he forthwith should goe voto him, and cause them to come

Ddddd

CHAP.5.

fourth : Iwearing vnto them by the head of his great Lord, and his owne, that they should all he delivered and fet at liberty, according to the first conventions agreed upon. Which the Knight beleeuing, went to report vnto them these good newes : which they received with fuch joy, that without any further care or confideration of their miffe-hap to neere, and prepared for them, they ran to the prease with their wines, children, and best moueables, preasing who Faith and pro- should first goe forth. But they were not so soone iffued, but were cleane spoyled, and of the enemies, part of the Knights were fent to the Gallies, and the rest to the Bascha: who beeing by the Knight Vallier admonished of his faith, which hee had twife given, answered, that there was no promife to be kept with dogges, and that they had first violated their Oath with the great Lord, vnto whom at the guing over of the Rhodes, they had iworne that they never would take on armes against the Turkes. The Castle being taken and speyled, and about two hundreth Moores of that Countrey that had ferued the Knights, cut in peeces, with great cries and shouts, rejoycing of their victory, they discharged a great peale of Ordnance.

Tripolidescri-

An Arch tri-

Although the houses and buildings within the Towne be ruined, yet it is inuironed with very faire and strong wals, accompanied with a great number of Turrets, double Ditches and false breaches, and the same are on the three parts inuironed with the sea, and within them are very good Wels and Fountaines. We faw in the middest of the Towne an Arch triumphall of white Marble with foure faces vpon foure pillars of Corinth foure square, being grauen in the Front that looketh towards the East (by excellent Sculpture) a Chariot drawen by two great Griffins, and within it was Victory fitting with two wings : Toward the Well was grauen 2 Chariot, whereupon was fitting Pallas, and about the edge were written divers Romane letters, but were fo ruined, that scarce they were to be knowne. Notwithstanding, by that which can be read, we vinderstand, that they were made in the time of P. Lentulus, which is a good witneffe to beleeue that this City, as before I have faid, was builded by the Romanes. The infide of the Arch was full of divers inrichments, and aboue after the falhion of a foure-square Turret: and two other faces looking towards the North and South, were cut as from the vpper part of the body vnto the girdlestead without any heads, two great figures of the ouercome. All the rest was fet foorth with all forts of weapons in forme of Tropbee, not farre from thence was feene a great foure-square place, inuironed with many great and high Pillars in two rankes, after the manner of a Porch, and neere that are the defiructions of a high Tower, which in times past was a Moore of that Countrey told me) the great Temple or Mosque of the Citie: there are a number more of antiquities ruined. The Chiaous being come was fent by the Balcha. we returned towards the Caftle, but might not at that time enter in all, because the Bascha had giuen commandement, that there should not enter with the Ambassadour aboue fine or fixe at the most, which were Sant Veran de Fleury, de Montenard, Batolomy and the Dragoman, and I : at the entry we met with Morataga and the Captaine which had the charge of the Castle, which canfed vs to be brought your the Rampards, to the end we might the better view and confider of all things, and having feene both aboue and below, we perceived for certaine, that all things were well repaired and furnished, and well appointed with sixe and thirty peeces of Ordnance, as well small as great, and that there was a great number of Pikes, and pots to cast fire, a- bundance of all kind of victuals and other Munitions, a good Well and Fountaine: and that at the time when the fiege was laid to it, there was as well of Knights as Souldiers of divers Nations, about fixe hundred, and the best Gunners of the world, it is an everlasting shame to them that so faint-heartedly surrendred the same vnto those barbarous people without any warlike reason. All which having well considered, with a heavy mind we returned agains to our Gallies, whither incontinent the Bascha fent to defire the Ambassador that the next day he would come to his folemne dinner, which he pretended to make for ioy of his victory, and taking of the Castle, and that he would bring V aller with him, which he would not refuse, thinking by fuch occasion to recouer the rest of the two hundred Knights and Souldiers which were yet to be delinered: and therefore the day following being the fixteenth day of August, 1551. accompanied by the Gouernour Vallier, the Knight de Seur, Cotignac, Captaine Coste, Montenard and me, went towards Bascha, being within the Ditch against the breach of the Castle, where for a magnificency were fet vp two faire Pauillions, the one for him, ioyning vnto a very fairs Fountaine : and the other for the Ambassador and his company : and so soone as he had sent his prefents, as well to the Bafebe, as to others his familiars (which of old time hath beene the manner and custome that they that haue to do With the Babarians must observe) he was brought vnto the Pauillion that was prepared for him, and forthwith ferued with all magnificence, honour and superfluity of meats as well of flesh as fish, diversly dressed according vinto their fashion : and with wines very excellent that they had found within the Caille, and this feruice was done with noyfe of all their inftruments, and by Officers in number aboue one hundred, appa- 60 relled for the most part in long Gownes of fine cloth of Gold, tuffed or figured, and the other of Veluet and Crimfon Damaske, and divers others colours. The Balcha was no fooner let downe, but all the Ordnance of the Gallies, Forths and Galliots of the army (being in all one hundred and forty, befides the great Gallion and two Mahumez) was discharged, with such a noyle and thun-

warre refting

dring, that it feemed the heavens and skies did shake. The table being taken up, the Amballador and Gouernour Valuer entred into the Paullion of the Bafeba, which in the end agreed to deliuer the two hundred men which he had promifed; and moreouer, gaue twenty vnto the Ambaffador vpon promile, that he should cause to be released the thirty Turkes taken at Malia, at the landing of the army. But the most part of them that were deliuered, were Spaniards, Siciliens and Calabres, and few French men: for the most part of them were put to the ranke of criminels for wome: that day were brought into our Gallies, the Coffers of Valler, within which were found certaine apparell, a facke with money, and a tup of filter, the rest which he faid to were round creams apparent, and Crownes; the Tinger had taken away and spoiled : besides, Acreel facti-To two Pavillions which he eftermed worth three hundred Crownes. The Timber having in their fice you the hands an ancient Gunner of the Caffle, named John de Chabas, borne within the Towne of Ro. perion of lobs mance in Daulphine (to the end that their feaft of victory should not be vinfurnished of some facrifice of cruelty) for that with a Canon he had shot off the hand of the Clerke generall of the army, brought him into the Towne : and having cut off his hands and his note, they put him quicke into the ground even to the girdle flead, and there with a cruelty was perfecuted and thot at with arrowes, and in the end for to accomplish the execution of his glorious martyrdom, they cut his throat. About eight a clocke in the eurning, were lighted your all the Gallies, Galliots, Foiths, & other veffels, all along vpon the Tackels, Yeards, and other ropes and poupes; in euery of them about three hundred candles, with cries and flouts accustomed, and found of drums and other instruments. To make an end of all their triumps, they againe discharged all orums and other automotion. To make an error and the artificial to their Ordnance. The next day being the icumentent, the Bafebia lent to be preferred vinto the Ambaifdor a gowine of cloth of Gold tiffed, and with the fame his leaue to depart, which he fo long had defired; and was not received without a prefent given him that brought it, and to diuers other Officers of the Bascha, which on all fides came running one after another, as a fort of Hounds, to have their fee and share in the Game, for they are the most barbarous, couetous, and cruell Nation of the world, and in whom there is neither truth nor fidelity, neuer obferuing the one halfe of that they promife : and yet men must alwayes bee gining to

CHAP. V.

A large Voyage in a lournall or briefe Reportary of all occurrents, happing in the Fleet of ships fent out by the King bis most excellent Maiestie, as well against the Pirats of Algiers, as others ; the whole body of the Fleet, confisting of eighteene Sayle. Sixe of his Maiesties ships, ten Merchants ships, two Pinnaces. Vnder the command of Sir ROBERT MANSEL Knight, Vice-Admirall of England, and Admirall of that Fleet : and a Counsell of Warre appointed by his Maiestie. Written by one employed in that Voyage, formerly published, and heere contracted.



Ir Robert Manfell, Knight. Sir Richard Hawkins, Knight. Sir Thomas Button, Knight. Sir Henrie Palmer, Knight. Captaine Arthur Manwaring, Efquire. Captaine Thomas Loue, Esquire. Captaine Samuel Argall, Esquire. Edward Clerke, Esquire, and Secretary to the Counsell of Warre.

The names of the Captaines, Ships, their burdens, number of men and Ordnance in his Maiesties (ixe Ships.)

Int., Sir Robert Manfell Admirall in the Lyon , burden fixe hundred Tuns, men two hundred and little, Peeces of Braffe Ordnance forty. Secondly, Sir Richard Hamkins Vice-Admirall in the Vantguard, burden fixe hundred and fixtie Tuns, men two hundred and fifty, Braffe Ordnance forty. Thirdly, Sir Thomas Button Reare-Admirall in the Raine-bow, burden fixe hundred and fixtie Tuns, men two hundred and fifty, Braffe Ordnance forty. Fourthly, Captaine Arthur Manuaring in the Constant Reformation , burden fixe hundred and fixtie Tuns , men two hundred and firty, Braffe Ordnance forty. Fiftly, Sir Henry Palmer in the Anthelope, burden 60 foure hundred Tuns, men one hundred and fixty, Braffe Ordnance thirty and foure. Sixtly, Captaine Thomas Lone in the Connertine, burden fine hundred Tun, men two hundred and twenty, Braffe Ordnance fixe and thirty.

Ddddd 2

TIrt, Captaine Samuel Argall in the Golden Phenix, burden three hundred tunnes, men one hundred and twentie. Iron Ordnance, foure and twentie, Secondly, Captaine Christopher Harries in the Samuel, burden three hundred tunnes, men one hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance two and twentie. Thirdly, Sir Iohn Fearne in the Mary-Gold, burden two hundred and fixtie tunne, men one hundred, Iron Ordnance one and twentie. Fourthly, Captaine lobn Pennington in the Zouch Phenix, burden two hundred and eightie tunnes, men one hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance fixe and twentie. Fiftly, Captaine Thomas Porter in the Barberie, burden two hundred tunnes, men eightie, Iron Ordnance eighteene. Sixtly, Sir Francis Tanfield in the Centerion, burden two hundred tunnes, men one hundred, Iron Ordnance two and twentie. Seuenthly, Sir Iohn Hamden in the Prim-rofe, burden one hundred and eightie tunnes, men eightie, Iron Ordnance eighteene. Eightly, Captaine Eusaber Cane in the Hercules, burden three hundred tunnes, men one hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance foure and twentie. Ninthly, Captaine Robert Haughton in the Neptune, burden two hundred and eightie tunnes, men one hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance one and twentie. Tenthly, Captaine Iohn Chidley in the Merchant Bonauenture, burden two hundred and fixtie tunnes, men one hundred and ten, Iron Ordnance, three and twentie. Eleuenthly, Captaine George Raymond in the Reffore, burden one hundred and thirtie tunnes, men fiftie, Iron Ordnance twelue. Twelfthly, Captaine Tho- 20 mas Harbert in the Marmadake, burden one hundred cunnes, men fiftie, Iron Ordnance twelue.

The Fleet thus furnished set sayle in the found of Plimmouth , the twelfth of October in the morning, in the yeare 1620.

The one and thirtieth of October, in the morning wee turned into the Road of Gibraltar, where were riding at anchor two of the King of Spaines ships of warre, the Vice-Admirall of a Squadron with the Kings Armes in his fore-top and another, who fo foone as they perceived vs weighed their Anchors, set sayle, and comming Lee-ward of our Admirall, strooke his slag, saluting him with their small shot and great Ordnance, after haled him with voyces ; our Admirall friking his flag, answered them with voyces, gaue them his Ordnance and small shot, all the Fleet following in order: this done, we faluted the Towne with our Ordnance, the Towne doing the like by answering vs. Our Admirall being at an Anchor, the Spanish Captaine ascompanyed with other Gentlemen, came aboord our Admirall, who told vs that there were great store of Pirats abroad, and that two of the Pirats shippes had fought with seven Spanifb Gallies, and had flaine them foure hundred men , and that they had beene at Steria a small Towne with thirty sayle of ships and ten Gallies, and had taken it, and carryed away divers Prisoners, and that they had threatned to take Gibraltar; there the Admirall fent his ficke men ashoare, having houses and lodgings provided for them, amongst whom was Captaine Iohn Fenner who here dyed.

The second of Nouember, about seuen in the morning, hauing a fresh gale at North-west, and the Admirall with the rest of the Fleet weighed Anchor and standing off, met North the Reare-Admirall of the Spanish Fleet, who faluting vs North his Ordnance and wee stood on our course North-east and by East, being bound for Malhaga. The third, about two in the morning, wee came to an Anchor in Malbaga Road, and about eight of the clocke wee faluted the Towne with our Ordnance and divers Vollies of small shot; here divers Spaniards of account cameaboord our ships whom we kindly entertayned, here we likewise expected Letters but heard not

The fixth, our Admirall dispatched a Gentleman, one Master Iohn Duppa, with Letters to the English Embassador at the Court of Spaine, to let him know of our arrivall and proceedings. This day about eleuen of the clocke, the Fleet weighed Anchor and fet fayle the wind at Northwest. But before wee weighed, our Admirall gaue order to the Fleet to divide themselves into three Squadrons, the Admirall Squadron was kept fixe leagues from the shore, with pendants in the mayne tops for their fignes; the Vice-Admirals Squadron three leagues without him, on his Bow with pendants on his fore-tops; the Reare-Admiral three leagues within him on his quarter with pendants on their Misen tops, whodeulding themselves according to their order steered away East and by South along the illoare, being bound for Allicant.

The feuenth, about fixe in the morning, it being calme, and all the Fleet together, the Admirall tooke in all her fayles, and lay a hull, all the Fleet doing the like", the Admirall put out his flag of generall Councell which was Saint George. Whereupon all the Captaines and Matters repayred aboord him, where it was concluded, and thought meet that two ships of least draught 60 of water, and one Pinnasse should hale the shoare close aboord to see if any Pirats were at an Anchor, eyther in Bayes or Coues, and to free the shoare; here likewise was given a word wherby to know our owne Fleet from others, if any strangers should chance to fall among it vs in the night, the word was Greenwich Tower. The Councell ended, and every man repayred abound

Prizes taken by the Turkes from the Christians. CHAP.5.

his owne shippe, in the evening the whole Fleet in their order sayled alongst towards Cape

The eight and ninth dayes having but little wind, we gayned not much way. The tench, in the morning, falling with the point of Matrill, and having the wind Southerly, the whole

Fleet put into the Road and there anchored. The nineteenth, in the morning, we came to Anchor in Allicant Road, where the whole

Fleet faluted the Towne with their Ordnance, and the Towne vs : heere our Admirall having

prouided houses for his ticke men, as before hee had done at Gibraltar, fent thirty seuen ficke men of his owne ships Company ashoare, here likewise he dispatched a Gentleman, one Master 10 Walter Long to Carthagena, with Letters of aduice; but all this while could receive no fuch Letters as we expected. The five and twentieth, beeing fitted with Wine, Water, and other fuch necessaries as wee

wanted, the wind being Northerly, the whole Fleet fet fayle, leaving behind the Good Will, out of whom our Admirall had taken most of her men to supply his wants for those sicke hee left ashoare, and being under sayle we shaped our course South-west for Algier.

The fauen and twentieth, about ten in the morning, wee came to Anchor in Aleier Road in Acies. feuen and twentie fathome water, out of command of the Towne or Castle, the Admirall and Reare-Admirall wearing white Ancients on their Pocps, the rest of the Fleet wearing no Ancients at all, going in the whole Fleet, faluted the Towne with their Ordnance, but the Towne

The eight and twentieth, our Admirall fent a Gentleman ashore, one Captaine Squibe, with a white flag of Truce in his Boat, to give the Vice-Roy to vnderstand the cause of our comming; hereupon the Vice-Roy fent a Boat aboord our Admirall, with a white flag and foure men in her, one principall man in the Towne who delivered our Admirali, fignifying the Vice-Roy, had receiued command from the Grand Seignior, to vie vs with all respect, and that our men might have the tree libertie of the shoare to buy fresh victuals or whatsoever they wanted; they promifed our Admirall if on the morrow hee would fend any Gentleman of qualitie ashoare with the Kings Mairsties Letters, that vpon the shooting off a Peece of Ordnance, according to our Admirals demand, he should receive sufficient Hostages aboord for his safetie: this night the Pi-30 rats brought in three Prizes, one Femming, the other two Englishmen, the one a Plummonth man. and the other of North Tarmouth.

The third of December, came fixe of the King of Spaines thips into the Road, the Admirall firiking his flag, faluted our Admirall with [mall flot and Ordnance, this done, he came aboord our Admirall in his Boat, and told him hee came in pursuite of certaine Pirats, who had taken divers of their men, who being in a hip of feuen hundred tuns neere Carthagena, in fight with a Tinkill Pirat, had boorded her, entred her men and taken her, had not their owne ship vnfortunately falne on fire with a milchance happing, they were forced to forfake the Turker ship to faue their owne, and so lost both, for being not able to quench the fury of the fire, were forced to yeeld themselnes to the flauery of the Turker to faue their lines, beeing in all three hundred 40 men, whereof thirty perished in the fire. This Spanift Admirall fayling neere the Towne, the Turkes let five feuentie foure great fhot at him , and hee gaue them fome fixteene backe in exchange, but the distance betweene them was so farre, that the shot falling short, no harme was

The fourth, our Admirall received from the Towne an answere of the Kings Letters.

The fixth, after long debating, finding the Turkes perfidious and fickle, as well in detayning our Messenger, who delivered his Maiesties Letters, notwithstanding we had sufficient Hostages for him, as in breaking all other promites : in the end it wasagreed thus, vpon leaving a Confull with them, they would let our Meffenger come aboord againe; whereupon the Admirall fent a common man, well clothed, by the name of a Confull, whom they received with good 30 respect, and sending our Messenger abound, received their owne pledges, and delivered vs some forty poore Captines, inshich they pretended was all they had in the Towne, this was all wee could draw from them. The fewenth, in the morning, our Admirall fenc a Letter with inftruon to our Councell, with another Letter to the Basham, to let him know how ill wee tooke his

perfidious dealing. The eight, in the morning, our Admirall and all the rest of the Fleet weighed Anchor and

The tentle day at night, the wind shifted to the South and East, and so to the East.

The fourteenth, came to Anchor in the Road of Alacotba, on the North fide of the faid Iland, we found this to be a very good place, yeelding vs Wood, Water and Ballast, whereof we 60 had great need, the people very kind courteous, bringing vs great flore of all manner of prouifions which we bought at eafierates, whereby wee supplyed our wants, and relected our ficke men, whereof we had gread flore in our Fleet.

The four and twentieth, in the morning, the Fleet weighed Anchor and fet fayle.

The fine and twentieth, about nine at night, came eight or nine fayle of Timber into our Ddddd 3

Fleet, whom so some as we discouered, we chased them and made shot at them, but by reason in was a darke night, and that they fayled better then our ships, they escaped vs.

The fixe and twentieth, about three in the afternoone, wee put into Alicant Road, hoping there to receive Letters of aduice, elle some newes of a supply of victuals out of England, but

The feuen and twentieth at night the Reare-Admirals Squadron went out to Sea in pursuit of two Turkilb Pirats, who had taken about three houres before two Flemmills thips: the Flemmings quiting their thips, faued them felues in their Boats.

The fourth of Ianuary at night, the Constant Reformation and the Golden Phenix had order to goe to Sea, to feeke two Pirats ships, which we heard were on the Christian shoare. The fifth 10 at night, they returned into the Road againe, but met not with any.

The fixth, the Vice-Admirall with his Squadron fet fayle for Malbaga, to fee if they could heare of any newes of a supply of victuals, or whether the two Princes which were long expected were come thither. The twelfth, Mafter Iohn Duppa came from Carthagena, bringing with him a packet of Letters of aduice sent out of England, bearing date the fourteenth of December, he signified that there was sixe monethes victuals sent out of England, for a supply

of his Maiesties ships, and that they were at Malbaga with the two Pinnasses, this night the Regre-Admirall with his Squadron was fent to Sea to fee if he could meet with certaine Pirats, which we had intelligence of. The thirteenth, the Reformation, the Samuel, and the Restore, put to Sea, to see if they could meet with any Pirats. The eighteenth, the Reformation with the other ships returned into the Road, where we found the Reare-Admirall with his Squadron likewife returned but met no Pirats.

The one and twentieth, there came a Flemmift Boat with fifteene Flemmings in her aboord our Admirall, who being chased by the Turkish Pirats off, of Cape Martine, left their shippe and faued themselves by their Boat, this night was the Inthelope with other ships fent out to to fee if they could meete with them. The foure and twentieth, the Anthelope with the other thips returned into the Road, but met with none.

The five and twentieth, our Admirall beeing invited to the English Confuls house went ashoare, where at his arruall he was entertayned with small shot and Ordnance both from the Towns and Castle, and at night with Fire-workes, running of Horses, shooting of Ordnance, 30 and other sports; this day Captaine lobn Roper was dispatched with Letters for England. The fixe and twentieth, our Admirall returned aboord the Towne, giving him a friendly farewell with their Ordnance.

The feuen and twentieth, the Admirall with the rest of the Fleet set sayle, leaving the Marmeduke behind, whose Captaine and Matter were both sicke ashoare. The eight and twentieth at midnight, we met with seuen sayle of Flemmings ships of Warre, neere Cape Paul, under the command of Captaine Haughton Admirall of Zealand, who the next morning, after he had sa-Inted our Admirall with Ordnance, came aboord in his Boat, he told our Admirall hee had two and twentie ships of Warre under his charge, whom he had divided into Squadrons, imploying them fome without the Streights, and some within. The one and thirtieth, wee came to an anchor againe in Alicant Road.

The first of February, the Reare-Admirall put to Sea with four shippes, to see if he could meet with any Pirats, and this day dyed Captaine Eufaber Cane, Captaine of the Hercules, and the Admirall disposed the command of the same ship to Captaine Alexander Bree, The fifth, the Reare-Admirall returned with the other foure thips but had met none.

The fixth, the wind being Easterly, the Fleet weighed Anchor about midnight, shaping our course for Malbaga, during the time of our staying here we refreshed our sicke men alhoare, hauing convenient houses provided for them in the fields Gardens, with carefull people to attend them prouiding them fuch necessaries as they should need. The Constant, for her part, fent ashore ninetie two persons, who as they recoursed their strength were sent for abourd, yet not withflanding all their care, at their departure they were forced to leaue behind them fortie two defperately ill, the Admirall taking order both for them and others, that they should bee carefully prouided for vntill the Fleets returne.

The fixteenth, came into the Road the Vice-Admirall and his Squadron with the two Pinnaffes which we follong expected out of England, the one the Mercurie, of the burden of two hundred and fortie tunnes, fixtie fiue men, and twentie peeces of Braffe Ordnance, under the command of Captaine Phiness Pet; the other the Spy, of the burden of one hundred and fixtie tunnes, fiftie fiue men, and eighteene Peeces of Braffe Ordnance, under the command of Captaine Edward Gyles: there came also two Merchants ships with a supply of victuals for his Ma-

The eighteenth, the Zouch Phenix , the Hercules, the Neptune, and the Spy put to Sea, with order to ply betweene Gibraltar and Shutte point. The nineteenth, the Anthelope put to Sea, and with those ships which went out the day before, had order to ride in Shutie Road, to see if they could defery any Pirats come into the Streights.

The three and twentieth, the Reare-Admirall put to Sea with flue other thippes, the Golden Phenix, the Samuel, the Centurion, the Marigold, and the Restore, with order to ride in Tanser Bay, where they were to attend the comming in of divers Pirats whom we heard to be without

the Streights mouth. The foure and twentieth, the Anthelope with the rest of the shippes returned, bringing with them a prize being a small Frenchman, which had fiftie Buts of Oylein her, and divers Moores and Iewes, men, women and children, Passengers bound from Tauon to Algier, all the Turkes fauing themselues in their Boat : this day also came into the Road Captaine Gyles Penne, in a ship of Bristoll, from Tituen Road, bringing a Letter from the Mogoden to our Admirall. and two 10 Moores who treated with him concerning the redemption of their people, whom our ships had taken, offering for so many Moores, so many English, whom they held in the Towne as slaues, hauing bought them of the Turkes Pirats. The feuen and twentieth, the Samuel and the Centurion returned into the Road from Tanfer, then also went out the Anthelope, the Zouch Phemx, the Barbarie, the Neptune and the Restore, with order to ride at Shuter, to fee if they could discouer any Pirats comming into the Streights, the wind being Westerly. The eight and twentieth, the wind likewise Westerly, the Reformation having taken in some of the Captines, had order to weigh and fet fayle for Titton, to treat with the Moores, and to take in her company the Samuel, the Bonauenture, and the ship of Bristell, where the same day about noone they came to an Anchor in the Road of Tituon in twelve fathome water, the wind at West.

The fourth of March, Mafter Albfield, Minister of the Reformation dyed, much lamented of the whole company, of whom in the extreame of their fickneffes they had received much comfort. The fifth, having a faire gale at South-east, our Admirall with the rest of the Fleet weighed Anchor, and let layle for Gibraltar, having concluded nothing with the Mogoden. The fixth, wee came to an Anchor in Gibraltar Road, where wee found our Vice-Admirall with his

The thirteenth, we came to an Anchor in Malbaga Road.

The eight and twentieth, about eight in the morning, the Admirall and Reare-Admirall fet

The second of Aprill dyed Captaine Manuaring. The fourteenth, about three in the afternoone wee came to an Anchor in Alicant Road, where wee found our Admirall with the rest of the Fleet : here our Admirall had hyred a Pollacre about the burden of one hundred and twentie 30 tunne, for that the was reported to bee an excellent Sayler, and likewise bought three Brigandines which rowed with nine Oares on a side : hee also hyred a house wherein hee made divers workes for the firing of the thips within the Mould of Algier.

The one and twentieth, we received Letters out of England, by a Post sent from Malhagas fignifying a remaynder of victuals, which wee expected, was arrived at Malhaga. The five and twentieth, about nine in the morning, the whole Fleet fayle for Alicant Road, beeing bound for Firma terra, to supply our wants for wood. The eight and twentieth in the euening, having fitted our felues with wood, we fet fayle for Mayorke to take in water. The nine and twentieth, in the after-noone, we came to an Anchor in Mayorke Road. The Towne of Mayorke is large 40 and well fortified, the people industrious, both men, women and children giuen to labour, louing and courteous to strangers : heere wee found all manner of victuals in plentie and at easie rates. Their chiefe Merchandise are Oyle, Wood, and Cheese, whereof the Countrey affoordeth

The one and twentieth of May, at fixe in the after-noone, we came to an Anchor in Algier They come a Road, order being first given by our Admirall how every ship should berth herselfe.

The ships being come to an Anchor in their orders, our Admirall caused fixe of the Merchants ships presently to weigh, with directions to ply off and on of the Westermost part, keeping as neere the shoare, as conveniently they might, to prevent the comming in of any Pirats betweene the Fleet and the shoare. In the beginning of this night, the Boats and Brigandines appointed It for the affiftance of two shippes, which our Admirall resolved should that night goe into the Mould, and there to fet themselves on fire, being chained and linked to the Pirats ships, repayred aboord our Admirall, there to receive their directions. The manner and preparations for firing of the ships was thus.

First, there were two small ships which we had taken from the Turkes, the one of the barden of an hundred tunnes, the other of fixtie, with great flore of fire-workes in them. There was layd in them plentie of dry Wood, Wood of Ocham, Pitch, Rozen, Tarre, Brimstone and other Materials fit to take fire: they had likewife in them Chaines and Grapnels of Iron to faften themselues to the ships which they were to fire: they had also Boats to bring off their men 60 when they had fired the thips : then were there three Brigandines fitted with fire-bals, buckets of wild-fire, and fire Pikes to make their fire-workes fast vnto the ships: there was also a Gund-lod fitted with fire-workes, Chaines and Grapnels of Iron; the was to goe into the middest of the ships in the Mould, where fastning her to some ship, was to be set on fire. Shee had likewise with her a Boat to bring off her men. Likewise, there were seuen Boates which wee

called Boats of rescue, well filled with armed men, who were to rescue and releeue the Boats of execution, if they should chance to be pursued by other Boats or Gallies at their comming oil. Thele had also hre-workes in them, to fire the ships which rode without the Mould : these Boats being all abourd, the Admirall fent for most of the Captaines and Masters in the Fleet. to admife whether it were fit to attempt it with Boats and Brigandines, in regard it was little wind, and that Westerly, so that it was impessible for the ships to get in. After some deliberation, it was concluded, that it was not fit, for that the fureft and most certaine meanes of firing was by the ships which were to bee made fast to the snippes in the Mould, and to burne with them. Whereupon it was deferred for that time till a fitter opportunitie was offered. The two and twentieth at night, there were like preparations made, but deferred for like reasons. The three and twentieth, in the beginning of the night wee had a fresh gale of wind at South by South-west, continuing the space of two houres or more, with Thunder, Lightning, and fome drops of Raine : the two ships weighed, and with the Brigandines and Boats set forwards towards the Mould, but the wind thirting before they came neere, they were forced also to

The foure and twentieth at night, after a great showre of Raine, wee had the wind out of the Bay at South South-weil, the weather then cleering vp, both the ships and Boats advanced themselves towards the Mould, as before they had done : but comming within leffe then Musket thot of the Moulds head it fell calme, fo that the thips could by no meanes get in, the Boats 20 and Brigandines finding that they were discourred, by reason of the brightnesse of the Moone. which was then at full, and hearing it reported by a Christian Captine which did swimme from the Towne the night before to the fnips, that the Tinkes had left their fhips without guard, fauing one or two in a ship, as fearing no such attempt from vs. And moreover, hearing the Alarum giuen to the Towne by those which kept watch on the walls, with good resolution went on, but wanting wind to nourish and disperse the fire, the fire-workes tooke no effect at all. In this feruice were onely fixe men flaine out-right, foure or fine dangeroufly hurt (which not long after dyed) and some thirteene sleightly hurt, yet notwithstanding, the attempt was given vnder the wals of the Towne, where both small shot and Ordnance played continually vpon them: the hurt done our men was their comming off, for that they were got into the Mould before the Towne was rifen, and beeing in, the thippes in the Mould defended them both from small 30 shot and Ordnance of the Towne, our Boates still keeping the shippes betweene them and

The rest of

this lournall

contayning

&c. is for bre-

uitie,omitted.

Among many English which

fince the ftir-

ring of this

Waspes Nest,

thought fit to

and honour of

Arange deli-

the English:

these two

wee haue

The five and twentieth, there came in foure fayle of Pirates by the Wester-most point of Land, notwithstanding fixe ships were appointed to lye off at that place, for the wind being Westward and a great Current letting to the Eastward our ships were put so farre to lee-ward their returne, that they could not preuent the Pirats comming in betweene the shoare and them, but yet the Bonauen: we loofed to neere, that there paffed fome shot betweene her and the Pirats ships, but no hurt done : this night our Admirall and the whole Fleet weighed Anchor and food off to

The fix and twentieth, the fore-part of the day, the wind was shifting to and fro, from the 40 South-east to the South-west; in the after-noone at South, and South-east hard gale and raynie weather; and at night having the wind shifting at South and South-west, we played off haue bin stung, and on all night by a wind.

The eight and twentieth, we had faire weather the wind Westerly, this night the Bonauenture, and the Hercules put a Pirat ashoare, he having an hundred and thirtie Turkes in her. and glory of God, twelve poore Christians Captines, they were all drowned but twelve Turkes, who got the

shoare by swimming.

The one and thirtieth in the morning, our Boates tooke vp two Genomages Captiues, who aduentured to swimme from the Towne to the ships. They told that the same night our shippes frood off to Sea, there came into the Mould feuen of the best ships belonging to Algier, and that 50 if we had stayed they had fallen into our laps. They likewise told vs, that the Turkes had Boo-Stories of the med vp the Mould, to that it was not possible for eyther shippe or Boate to get into to fire the thips, which were now filled with armed men, befides three Gallies and fifteene Boates which lay continually well fitted without the Mould before the Boome for a Guard, &c.

CHAP. 60

CHAP. VI.

The Relation of the Iacob, a ship of Bristoll, of one hundred and twentie Tunnes. which was about the end of October, 1621. taken by the Turkish Pirats of Argier : and within fine dayes after, foure English youths did valiantly ouercome thirteene of the faid Turkes, and brought the ship to Saint Lucas in Spaine, where they fold mine of the Turkes for Gallie-flanes : with mention of fome other like English adventures.



10

CHAP.6.

Eere the latter end of October last, 1621. aship belonging to the Citie of Briz fell, being about the burden of one hundred and twenty Tuns, was met withall and fet vpon by Turkes or Pirats of Argier, where after a long and sharpe fight (being in the mouth of the Straits of Gibraltar) the English thip being opprest with the multitude of their enemies , was taken, their Ordnance, Cables, Anchors, Sailes, Ship and men pillaged, ransacked, and at the mercy of the inful-

ting Barbarians, who to make their worke the furer, tooke all the English-men out of the ship, 20 except four youths, whole names were, Iohn Cooke, William Ling, David Iones, and Robert Tucker, into which thip the Turkes did put thirteene of their owne men to command the Eng-Lib, and to bring the ship as a prize to Argier; amongst which one of the Pirats was appointed Captaine, being a strong, able, sterne, and resolute fellow.

These foure poore youths being thus fallen into the hands of mercilesse Insidels, began to studie and complot all the meanes they could for the obtayning of their freedomes: First, they confidered the lamentable and miferable effates that they were like to be in, as to be debard for ever from feeing their friends and Countrey, to be chained, beaten, made flaues, and to eare the bread of affliction in the Gallies, all the remainder of their vnfortunate lives, to have their heads share uen, to feed on course dyet, to have hard boords for beds; and which was worst of all, never to

30 be partakers of the heavenly Word and Sacraments. Thus being quite hopeleffe, hapleffe, and for any thing they knew, for ever helpleffe, they fayled five dayes and nights vnder the command of the Pirats, when on the fifth night, God in his great mercy (hewed them a meanes for their wiffed for escape, for in the dead of the night, the wind began to arise, and in short space it blew so stiffe that they were enforced to ftrike both their top Sayles ; and at last, it encreased to fuch a gust or storme, that they must take in their maine Saile, and being vnable to doe it themselues, John Cooke and William Ling did call to the Turkes for helpe : whereupon the Captaine himselfe came to helpe them; who standing by the ships side, betweene the foresaid lohn and David lones , lending his hand to hale in the faile, the faid Iohn and Danid fuddenly tooke him by the breech and threw him o-40 uer-boord, but by fortune hee fell into the bunt of the fayle, where quickly catching hold of a rope, he (being a very strong man) had almost gotten into the ship againe : which low Cooke perceiuing, leaped speedily to the Pumpe, and tooke off the Pumpe brake or handle, and cast it to William Ling, bidding him knocke him downe, which he was not long in doing, but lifting vp the woodden weapon, he gaue him finch a palt on the pate, as made his braines for lake the possession of his head, with which his body fell into the Sea.

An Objection may be made here, why the Turke cried not to his fellowes at first for helpe, or how these things could be done, but the rest of his company must either see or heare it to which Ianswere, that at Sea a Gust, Flaw, or Storme, hath many times a louder voice then a man; befides, when Mariners doe hale or pull any thing, they doe make a noyfe, as it were crying ha 50 weet bale men bale, which with the noyfe of the wind whizzing and hizzing in the shrowds aid cordage, would ouercome and drowne the voice or crie of any man what focuer. Befides, his companions were all busie, some at the mizen, some at the sprit-saile, some to trim the fore-saile, and the night exceeding darke, all these things concurring, and chiefly, God graciously affilting, thus these braue Lads began the businesse luckily.

Nor must I forget Robert Tuckey, who was imployed all this while in a place of maine importance, for he stood at the Helme, and in all the weather guided the Ship; now after the Captaine was thus cashierd, John Cooke ran hastily vp the halfe Decke to the Masters Cabine, neere which, were flanding fix or feuen Turkes, but hee being nothing daunted or discouraged for them, flipt roughly by them, and gat out two good Cuttleaxes, or short Swords, one of which 60 he deliuered to William Ling, with all laying, courage my fellowes and Countrey-men, God itrengthen and affift vs; with that, they laid about them so manfully, that they droue the Turkes from place to place in the Ship, and having courfed them from the Poope to the Forecastle, they there valiantly killed two of them, and gaue another a dangerous wound or two, who to escape the further fury of their Swords, leap'd suddenly ouer-boord to goe feeke his Cap-

raine. Thus foure of the thirteene Turkes being made fure for doing any harme, they chafed and followed the other nine fo close, that they (to faue themselues) being also many of them. fore hurt and wounded, ranne betweene the Ships Decks; whereupon the English men fastned the Deckes to keepe them under: the Turker not knowing how to be reuenged, ran afterward toward the Helme, and vnshipt their Whip-staffe, or as some call it, a Whip-stocke (which is the staffe that a Mariner holds in his hand, when he guides or steeres a Ship) by which meanes the English men were in some distresse, by reason the Sip lay tumbling and rowling vinguided in the raging and boyftrous billowes of the Sea : at last, 10hn Cooke and William Ling got each of them a Musket, which they quickly charged, and went downe where the nine Turkes were, making offers to shoote at them, at which they were much terrified; whereupon they quickly ship'd 10 their Whip-stocke againe, delivering the Helme to Robert Tucker, and then presently they flowed all the Turkes under the Hatches, where they kept them close till the next morning, and then as they had occasion to vie them, they would call vp two or three of them at a time, to bale and pull Sheetes, Tackes, Braces and Boleins, to hoyfe and strike Sayles, or any such necesfary and laborious imployments; in all which, the English made the Torkes attend them, and directing their course for the Port of Saint Lucas in Spaine , they in short time (by Gods avde) happily and fafely arrived at the faid Port , where they fold the nine Turkes for Gally-flaues, for a good fumme of money, and as I thinke, a great deale more then they were worth.

Nor doe I write this to the intent that any man should prefume that their owne strengths, valour or courage, is sufficient to doe these or the like actions, for they are not ordinary, and therefore man is but made the ordinary influment of an extraordinary power, and the tat full attribute fuch things as thefe to the arms of field and bloud, is forgetfull, ingratefull, and in a

See the Hiftory in Hack.

One lobn Fox an expert Mariner, and a good appropued and fufficient Gunner, was (in the raigne of Queene Elizabeth) raken by the Turkes, and kept eighteene veeres in most milerable bondage and flauery, at the end of which time, he espied his opportunity (and God affilting him withall) that hee flew his Keeper, and fled to the Seas fide, where he found a Gally with one hundred and fifty Captine Christians, which hee speedily waying their Anchor, set Saile, and hundred and nrty Lapting Continuous, many states by which meanes, he freed himselfe and a number of poore soules from long and intolerable structude; after which; he said lobus Fox 30 came into England, and the Queene (being rightly informed of his braue exploit) did gracioully entertaine him for her Servant, and allowed him a yeerely Pension.

Captaine Ni hols with a Ship of London, called the Dolphin , fought a long and bloudy fight, with many of the Turkilb men of warre at one time, at which time hee funke fome of them, flew many of their men, and having his owne Ship exceedingly rent and torne with the Enemies great shot, yet at last it pleased God to deliver him from them, so that hee safely arrived at home.

Mafter William Malam of Rotherhith within thefe three yeeres was fet voon by thefe Rouers, and after a long fight, being much hurt by the Ordnance of the Turker (the night comming on) which made the fight to ceale, when the Generall of the Pirates past his word, and bound it with an Oath, that if Mafter Malain would come aboord his Ship all night, that hee should 40 well and fafely bee fet abourd againe his owne Ship the next morning, vpon which word and oath Master Malam went abourd the Turke, and a Merchant with him; but first, before he went, commanded his Mate to watch his opportunitie, and feale away with the Ship in the night, if he could, which fell out as he wished, whereby all the Merchants goods were faued, and the Ship fafely arrived here at London : but in the morning, when the Turkes did perceive the Englift Ship was gone, then would they have put Master Malam and the Merchant that was with him, to death, whereupon he vrged him with his oath and promife, which was, that he should come and goe fafely, and that if a Christian had made him or any man such a promise, and bound it with a vow. hee would have kept his word. And (that for any thing hee knew) his Ship being fo dangeroully hurt by them, might be funke in the night, and not escaped away as he imagined. Now whilf they were in this discorte, prefently came a Salie in fight, which afterward they found to be a small Scottifb Ship bound for England, whom the Turkes quickly tooke, and pillag'd at their pleasure, taking from them their Sailes, Cables, Anchors and all things necessary for their yse or preservation, and having robd a rifled the poore Scot in that manner, they put Mafter Malar and the Merchant into her, to trie their fortunes, either to finke or liwim, but it pleased God, they fafely arrived in the West part of England, where they came home by land (ad and disconfolate, because they could not heare any newes of the Ship: but the same night that hee came home, before day, there was happy tidings brought of the Ships fafe arrivall into the River of Thames.

All their things are true vpon mine owne knowledge, and thefe worthy Mariners that have beene so delivered, doe, and ever did, attribute all the meanes of their deliverance to the mighty hand of God; and they are so farre from taking any of these things to their owne praise or glory, that some of them have ever done their best to suppresse them from being printed. CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

The wonderfull recovery of the Exchange of Briftow, from the Turkish Pirats of Argier, published by IOHN RAWLINS, heere abbreuiated.



Снар.7.

g N the yeere 1621, the first of Nouember, there was one Iohn Rawlins, borne in Rochefter, and dwelling three and twenty yeere in Plansmoth, imployed to the first of Gibraltar, by Matter Richard, and Steuen Treviles, Merchants of Plimmoth, and fraighted in Marke, called the Nicholar of Phimmoth, or the burden of forty Tun, which had also in her company another ship of Phimmoth, called the George Bonauenture of Seurnty Tun burthen, or thereabout, which by reason of

her greatnesse beyond the other, I will name the Admirall; and lobn Rantins Barke shall, if you pleate, he the Vice-admirall. These two according to the time of the yeere, had a faire passage, and by the eighteenth of the same moneth came to a place at the entring of the straits, named Traffleear: but the next morning, being in the fight of Gibraltar, at the very mouth of the straits, the watch deteried fine faile of thips, who as it feemed, vied all the means they could to come neere vs, and we as we had cause, vsed the same means to go as farre from them; yet did their Admirall take in both his top failes, that either we might not suspect them, or that his owne company might come vp the cloier together. At last perceiuing vs Christians, they fell from deuices to 20 apparent discouery of hostility, and making out against vs : we againe suspecting them Pirats, tooke our course to escape from them, and made all the sailes we possibly could for Tirriff, or Gibralter: but all we could doe, could not preuent their approach. For fuddenly one of them came right over against vs to wind-ward, and so fell vpon our quarter : another came vpon our luste, and to threatned vs there and at last all fine chased vs, making great speed to surprise vs.

Their Admiral was called Califater, having upon her maine top-faile, two top-gallant failes, one about another. But whereas we thought them all fine to be Turkilb thips of war, we afterwards vnderstood, that two of them were their prizes, the one a small ship of London, the other of the West-country, that came out of the Quartain laden with figges, and other Merchandise but now fubicat to the fortune of the Sea, and the captinity of Pirats. But to our businesse. Three 30 of these ships got much voon vs, and so much that ere halfe the day was spent, the Admirall who was the best failer, fetent vp the George Bonauenture, and made booty of it. The Vice-admirall againebeing neerest unto the lester Barke, whereof John Ranlins was Master, shewed him the force of a stronger arme, and by his Turkish name, called Villa-Rife, commanded him in like fort to strike his failes, and submit to his mercy, which not to be gaine-faied nor preuented, was quickly done : and fo Rawlins with his Barke was quickly taken, although the Reare-Admirall being the worlt fayler of the three, called Reggiprife, came not in, till all was done.

The same day before night, the Admirall either loth to pefter himselfe with too much company, or ignorant of the commodity was to be made by the fale of English prisoners, or during not to trust them in his company, for feare of mutinies, and exciting others to rebellion; fet 40 twelue persons who were in the George Bonauenture on the land, and divers other English, whom he had taken before, to trie their fortunes in an vnknowne Countrey. But Villa-Rife, the Vice-Admirall that had taken John Rawlins, would not fo dispence with his men, but commanded him and fine more of his company to be brought aboord his ship, leaning in his Barke three men and his boy, with thirteene Turkes and Moores, who were questionlesse sufficient to ouer-mafter the other and direct the Barke to Haroour. Thus they failed directly for Argier; but the night following, followed them with great tempelt and foule weather, which ended not without some effect of a storme : for they lost the fight of Rawlins Barke, called the Nicholas, and in a manner loft themselves, though they seemed sate a shipboord, by fearefull coniecturing what should become of vs: at last, by the two and twentieth of the same moneth, they, or we (chase 50 you whether) arrived at Argier, and came in fafety within the Mould, but found not our other Barke there; nay, though we earneftly inquired after the same yet heard we nothing to our fatisfaction; but much matter was ministred to our discomfort and amazement. For although the Captaine and our ouer-feers, were loth we should have any conference with our Country-men; vet did we aduenture to informe our felues of the present affaires, both of the Towne, and the thipping : fo that finding many English at worke in other ships, they spared not to tell vs the danger we were in, and the mischiefes we must needs incurre, as being fare if we were not vsed like flaues, to be fold as flaues : for there had beene fine hundred brought into the market for the fame purpose, and aboue a hundred hansome youths compelled to turne Turkes, or made subject to more vilder profitution, and all English : yet like good Christians, they bade vs be of good 60 cheere, and comfort our felues in this, that Gods trials were gentle purgations, and these croffes were but to cleanfe the droffe from the gold, and bring vs out of the fire againe more cleare and louely. Yet I must needs confesse, that they a forded vs reason for this cruelty, as if they determined to be reuenged of our last attempt to fire their ships in the Mould, and therefore protefted to spare none, whom they could surprise, and take aline, but either to fell them for mo-

108

First, concerning the first. The Bashaw had the ouer-seeing of all prisoners, who were presented vinto him at their first comming into the harbour, and so chose one out of every eight for a present or fee to himselfe : the rest were rated by the Captaines, and so sent to the Market to be fold; whereat if either there were repining, or any drawing backe, then certaine Moores and Officers attended either to beate you forward, or thrust you into the fides with Goades ; and this was the manner of the felling of Slaues.

Faccrable tor-

Sale of the

Secondly, concerning their enforcing them, either tourne Turke, or to attend their filthines and impieties, although it would make a Christians heart bleed to heare of the same, yet must 10 the truth not be hid, nor the terror left vntold. They commonly lay them on their naked backs niced on the English romake or bellies, beating them so long, till they bleed at the nose and mouth; and if yet they continue constant, then they strike the teeth out of their heads, pinch them by their tongues, and vie many other forts of tortures to conuert them; nay, many times they lay them their whole length in the ground like a graue, and so couer them with boords, threatning to starue them, if they will not turne; and so many even for feare of torment and death, make their tongues betray their hearts to a most fearefull wickednesse, and so are circumcised with new names, and brought to confesse a new Religion. Others againe, I must confesse, who never knew any God, but their cwine ieniuall luits and pleafures, thought that any religion would ferue their turnes, and io for preferment or wealth very voluntarily renounced their faith, and became Renegadoes in de-20 fright of any counfell which feemed to intercept them: and this was the first newes wee encountred with at our comming first to Argier. The 26. of the same moneth, Iohn Rawlins his Barke, with his other three men and aboy,

came fafe into the Mould, and so were put all together to be carried before the Basham, but that they tooke the Owners feruant, and Rawlings Boy, and by force and torment compelled them to turne Turkes: then were they in all feuen English, befides lohn Ramlins, of whom the Basham tooke one, and sent the rest to their Captaines, who set a valuation vpon them, and so the Souldiers hurried vs like dogs into the Market, whereas men fell Hacknies in England, we were toffed yp and downe to fee who would give most for vs; and although we had heavy hearts, and looked with fad countenances, yet many came to behold vs, fometimes taking vsby the hand. 30 fometime turning vs round about, sometimes feeling our brawnes and naked armes, and so beholding our prices written in our breafts, they bargained for vs accordingly, and at last we were all

fold, and the Souldiers returned with the money to their Captaines. John Rawlins was the last, who was fold, by reason of his same hand, and bought by the Captaine that tooke him, even that dog Villa Rife, who better informing himfelfe of his skill fit to be a Pilot, and his experience to bee an ouer-feer, bought him and his Carpenter at very easie rates. For as we afterwards understood by divers English Renegadoes, he paid for Rawlins but one hundred and fiftie Dooblets, which make of English money feuen pound ten shillings. Thus was he and his Carpenter with divers other flaves fent into his ship to worke, and imployed about fuch affaires, as belonged to the well rigging and preparing the fame. But the villanous Turkes 40 perceiuing his lame hand, and that he could not performe so much as other Slaues, quickly complained to their Patron, who as quickly apprehended the inconvenience; whereupon hee fent for him the next day, and told him he was vnferuiceable for his present purpose, and therefore valeffe he could procure fifteene pound of the English there for his ransome, he would fend him vp into the Countrey, where he should never see Christendome againe, and endure the extremity

But see how God worketh all for the best for his servants, and confoundeth the presumption of Tyrants, frustrating their purposes, to make his wonders knowne to the sonnes of men, and releeues his people, when they least thinke of succour and releasement. Whilest Iohn Rawlons was thus terrified with the dogged answere of Villa Rife, the Exchange of Briffon, a ship formerly furprifed by the Pirats, lay all vnrigged in the Harbour, till at last one Iohn Goodale, an English Turke, with his confederates, understanding shee was a good failer, and might be made a proper Man of Warre, bought her from the Turkes that tooke her, and prepared her for their owne purpole: now the Captaine that fet them on worke, was also an English Renegado, by the name of Rammetham Rife, but by his Christen name Henrie Chandler, who relolued to make Goodale Mafter over her; and because they were both English Turkes, having the command notwithflanding of many Turkes and Moores, they concluded to have all English slaves to goe in her, and for their Gunners, English and Dutch Renegadoes, and so they agreed with the Patrons of nine English, and one French Slave for their rantoms, who were presently imployed to rig and furnish the ship for a Man of Warre, and while they were thus busied, two of soon Rawins men, who 60 were taken with him, were also taken vp to serue in this Man of Warre, their names, sames Roc. 60 and Iohn Daues, the one dwelling in Plimmoth, and the other in Fox, where the Commander of this ship was also borne, by which occasion they came acquainted, so that both the Captaine, and the Matter promifed them good vlage, vpon the good fernice they should performe in the

voyage, and with all demanded of him, if he knew of any Englishman to be bought, that could ferue them as a Pilot, both to direct them out of Harbour, and conduct them in their voyage. For in truth neither was the Captaine a Mariner, nor any Tarke in her of fufficiency to dispose of her through the Straites in fecuritie, nor oppole any enemie, that should hold it out brauely against them. Danies quickly replied, that as farre as he understood, Villa Rife would fell Iohn Ramlins his Mafter, and Commander of the Barke which was taken, a man every way fufficient for Sea affaires, being of great refolution and good experience; and for all he had a lame hand, yet had he a found heart and noble courage for any attempt or adventure.

When the Captaine videritood thus much, he imployed Dawies to fearth for Rawlins, who 10 at last lighting upon him, asked him if the Turke would fell him: Russlins fixidenly and wered. that by reason of his lame hand he was willing to part with him ; but because he had disbursed money for him, he would earne something by him, and so prized meat three hundred Dooblets, which amounteth to fifteene pound English; which I mult procure, or incurre forer indurances When Danier had certified thus much, the Turk; a ship-boord conferred about the matter, and the Maffer whole Christen name was lober Goodale joyned with two Tarker, who were conforted with him, and disburfed one hundred Dooblets a piece, and fo bought him of Valla Rife, fending him into the faid thip called the Exchange of Brifton, as well to supervise what had been done as to order what was left undone, but especially to fit the failes, and to accommodate the thin all which Rawline was very carefull and indulgent in not yet thinking of any peculiar plos of deliverance, more then a generall defire to be freed from this Turkif flaverie, and inhumane

By the fewenth of Ianuarie, the ship was prepared with twelve good cast Pieces, and all manner of munition and prouifion, which belonged to fuch a purpose, and the fame day haled out of

the Mould of Argier, with this company, and in this manner.

There were in her fixtie three Turkes and Moores, nine English Slaves, and one French foure Hollanders that were free men, to whom the Turkes promifed one prife or other, and fo to returne to Holland; or if they were disposed to goe backe againe for Araiera they should have great reward and no enforcement offered, but continue as they would both their religion and their cuftomes; and for their Gunners they had two of our Souldiers one English and one Dutch Renegado; and thus much for the companie. For the manner of fetting out, it was as viuall as in other thips, but that the Turkes delighted in the othertons branerie of their Streamers, Banners, and Top-fayles; the fhip being a handfome ship, and well built for any purpose : the Slaves and English were imployed under Hatches about the Ordnance, and other workes of order, and accommodating themselves: all which Iobn Remlins marked, as supposing it an intolerable flauerie to take fuch paines, and be fubiest to fuch dangers, and still to enrich other men and maintaine their voluptuous filthineffe and lives, returning themselves as Slaves, and living worle then then Dogs among ft them. Whereupon hee burft out into thefe, or fuch like abrupt speeches : Oh Hellish slauerie to be thus subject to Dogs! Oh, God strengthen my heart and hand, and fomething shall be done to ease vs of these mischiefes, and deliuer vs from these cruell Mahumetan Dogs. The other Slaues pittying his diffraction (as they thought) bad him foeake 40 foftly left they should all fare the worse for his distemperature. The worse (quoth Rawling) what can be worfe ? I will either attempt my deliuerance at one time, or another, or perish in the enterprise : but if you would be contented to hearken after a release, and iowne with me in the action, I would not doubt of facilitating the fame, and shew you a way to make your credits thrine by some worke of amazement, and augment your glorie in purchasing your libertie, I prethee be quiet (faid they againe) and thinke not of impossibilities : yet if you can but open such a doore of reason and probabilitie, that we be not condemned for desperate and distracted perfons, in pulling the Sunne as it were out of the Firmament : wee can but facrifice our lives, and you may be fure of fecrecie and taciturnitie.

The fifteenth of lanuarie, the morning water brought vs neere Cape de Gatt hard by the fluare. 50 we having in our companie a smal Turkish thip of Warre, that followed vs out of Argier the next day, and now ioyning with vs, gave vs notice of feuen small veffels, fixe of them being Sattees, and one Pollack, who very quickly appeared in fight, and to we made toward them : but having more aduantage of the Pollack, then the reft, and loth to lofe all, we both fetcht her vo. and brought her past hope of recouerie, which when she perceived, rather then she would voluntarily come into the flauerie of these Mahumetans, she ran her selfe a shoare, and so all the men for sooke her; we still followed as neere as we durst, and for feare of splitting, let fall our anchors, making out both our boates, wherein were many Musketeers, and some English and Dutch Renegadoes, who came abourd home at their Conge, and found three pieces of Ordnance, and foure Murthe-

60 rers: but they straightway threw them all ouer boord to lighten the ship, and so they got her off, being laden with Hides, and Logwood for dying, and presently sent her to Argier, taking nine Turkes, and one English Slaue, out of one ship, and fix out of the leffe, which we thought fur-

In the rifling of this Catelagnia, our Turks fell at variance one with another, and in fach a man-Eccee

Chandler a Renegado.

The Turkes querrelland Dark

ner, that we divided our felues, the leffer ship returned to Argier , and our Exchange tooke the opportunitie of the wind, and plyed out of the Streights, which rejoyced Iohn Rawlin; very opportunities the winin, and plyes out of the origins, which tropeed a som Kamilan very much, as refoluting on fome Strategeme, which opportunitie should fertie in the mean-while, the Timer began to murmure, and would not willingly goe into the Mary Granda, as the phrate is amongst them : notwithstanding the Moores being very superstitious, were contented witches carryed to Sea by to be directed by their Hoftes, who with vs, fignifieth a Witch, and is of great account and reputation amongst them, as not going in any great Vessell to Sea without one, and obseruing whatfoeuer he conclude th out of his Dinination; the Ceremonies he vieth are many, and when they come into the Ocean, every fecond or third night he maketh his Coniuration; he beginneth and endeth with Prayer, vsing many Characters, and calling vpon God by divers names : yet at this time, all that he did consisted in these particulars.

Vpon the fight of two great ships, and as wee were afraid the chasing, beeing supposed to bee their dinining. Spanish men of Warte, a great silence is commanded in the ship, and when all is done, the company giveth as great a skrich; the Captaine still comming to lohn Ravlins, and sometimes making him take in all his Layles, and sometimes causing him to hoyse them all out, as the Witch findeth by his Booke, and prefages; then have they two Arrowes, and a Curtleaxe, lying vpon a Pillow naked; the Arrowes are one for the Turkes, and the other for the Christians; then the Witch readeth, and the Captaine of some other taketh the Arrowes in their hand by the heads. and if the Arrow for the Christians commeth over the head of the Arrow for the Twrkes, then doe they advance their fayles, and will not endure the fight, what focuer they fee : but if the Ar- 20 row of the Turkes is found in the opening of the hand vpon the Arrow of the Christians, then will they flay and encounter with any shippe what souer : the Curtleaxe is taken up by some Childe, that is innocent, or rather ignorant of the Ceremonie, and so layd downe againe; then doe they observe, whether the same fide is vppermost, which lay before, and so proceed accor-

They also observe Lunatickes and Changelings, and the Conjurer writeth downe their Sayings in a Booke, groueling on the ground, as if he whifpered to the Deuill to tell him the truth, and so expoundeth the Letter, as it were by inspiration. Many other foolish Rites they have,

whereon they doe dote as foolishly.

Whilethe was buffed, and made demonstration that all was finished, the people in the ship game a great shout, and cryod out, a sayle, a sayle, which at last was discoursed to bee another so man of Warre of Tarker: for he made toward vs, and fent his Boat aboord vs, to whom our Captaine complained, that being becalmed by the Southerne Cape, and hauing made no Voyage, the Tarkes denyed to goe any further Northward : but the Captaine refolued not to returne to Argier, except he could obtayne fome Prize worthy his endurances, but rather togos to Salle, and tell his Christians to victuall his ship; which the other Captaine apprehended for his honour, and so perswaded the Turkes to be obedient vnto him; whereupon followed a pacication amongst vs, and so that Tioke tooke his course for the Streights, and weeput vp North-

ward, expecting the good houre of 10me beneficiall bootie. All this while our flauery continued, and the Tiekes with infulting tyrannie fet vs still on worke in all bafe and ferule actions, adding fripes and inhuman retailings, earn in our greatest labour, whereupon Iohn Ramlins resoluted to obtayne his libertie, and surprize the ship; proudding Ropes with broad speckes of Iron, and all the Iron Crowes, with which hee knew a way, vpon consent of the rest, to ramme vp or tye fast their Scuttels, Gratings, and Cabbins, yea, to flut up the Captaine himfelfe with all his conforts, and fo to handle the matter, that upon the watch-word given, the English being Masters of the Gunner roome, Ordnance, and Powder, they would eyther blow them into the Ayre, or kill them as they aduentured to come downe one by one, if they should by any chance open their Calbins. But because hee would proceed the better in his enterprise, as he had somewhat abruptly discoursed himselfe to the nine Englife flaves, fo he kept the fame distance with the foure Hollanders, that were free men, till finding them comming somewhat toward them, he acquainted them with the whole Conspiracie, and they affecting the Plot, offered the adventure of their lives in the businesse. Then very warily he vindermined the English Renegado, which was the Gunner, and three more his Affociats, who at first seemed to retract. Last of all were brought in the Dutch Renegadoes, who were alfo in the Gunner roome, for alwayes there lay twelve there, five Chr ftians, and feven English, and Dutch Turkes : fo that when another motion had fettled their resolutions, and Iohn Ramlins his constancie had put new life as it were in the matter, the foure Hollanders very honestly, ascording to their promise, sounded the Dutch Renegadoes, who with easie periwasion gaue their consent to so brave an Enterprize; whereupon John Rawlins , not caring whether the Eng-Lifb Gunners would yeeld or no, resolved in the Captaines morning watch, to make the attempt; 60 But you must vinderstand that where the English saues lay, there hung vipalwayes foure or five Crowes of Iron, being still under the carriages of the Peeces, and when the time approached being very darke, because lohn Ramlins would have his Crow of Iron ready as other things were, and other men prepared in their feuerall places, in taking it out of the carriage, by chance, it hit

on the fide of the Peece, making fuch a noyle, that the Souldiers hearing it awaked the Turker, and Daneer of on the nac of the Peece, maning Danger of hade them come downe: whereupon the Botefane of the Tracker descended with a Candle, and discourry. presently searched all the saues places, making much adoe of the matter, but finding neyther Harchet nor Hammer, nor any thing elie to moue fulpition of the Enterprize, more then the Crow of Iron, which lay flipped downe under the carriages of the Peeces, they went quietly vp againe, and certified the Captaine what had chanced, who fatisfied himfelfe, that it was a common thing to haue a Crow of Iron flip from his place. But by this occasion wee made stav of our attempt, yet were resolued to take another or a better oportunitie.

For we fayled fill more North-ward, and Ramins had more time to tamper with his Gun-IO ners, and the reft of the English Renegadoes, who very willingly, when they confidered the matter, and perpended the reasons, gave way vnto the Proiect, and with a kind of toy seemed to entertayne the motiues: only they made a stop at the first on-set, who should begin the enterprize, which was no way fit for them to doe, because they were no slaues, but Renegadoes, and so had alwayes beneficiall entertaynment amongst them. But when it is once put in pra-Ctice, they would be fure not to faile them, but venture their lives for God and their Countrev. But once againe he is disappointed, and a suspitious accident brought him to recollect his spirits anew, and studie on the danger of the enterprize, and thus it was. After the Renegado Gunner, had protested secrecie by all that might induce a man to bestow some beliefe vpon him, he prefently went up the Scottle, but ft yed not aloft a quarter of an houre, nay he came fooner down, Anotherdam 20 & in the Gunner roome late by Rawlins, who tarryed for him where he left him; he was no foo- ger. ner placed, and entred into some conference, but there entred into the placea furious Turke, with his Knife drawne, and presented it to Rawlins his body, who verily supposed, he intended to kill him, as suspitious that the Gunner had discouered something, whereat Rawlins was much moued, and so hastily asked what the matter meant, or whether he would kill him or no, observing his countenance, and according to the nature of iealousie, conceiting that his colour had a passage of change, whereby his suspitious heart, condemned him for a Traytor: but that at more leisure he sware the contrary, and afterward proued faithfull and industrious in the enterprize. And for the present, he answered Rawlins in this manner, no Master, be not afraid, I thinke hee doth but ieft. With that Iohn Ramlins gaue backe a little and drew out his Knife, stepping also to the 30 Gunners sheath and taking out his, whereby he had two Kniues to one, which when the Turke perceiued, he threw downe his Knife, faying, hee did but iest with him. But (as I faid) when the Gunner perceived, Rawlins tooke it foill, hee whifpered fomething in his care, that at last fatisfied him, calling Heauen to witnesse, that he neuer ipake word of the Enterprize, nor ever would, either to the prejudice of the businesse, or danger of his person : Notwithstanding, Rawlins kept the Kniues in his sleeue all night, and was somewhat troubled, for that hee had made fo many acquainted with an action of fuch importance; but the next day, when hee perceived the Coast cleere, and that there was no cause of further feare, hee somewhat comforted him-

All this while, Rawlins drew the Captaine to lye for the Northerne Cape, affuring him, that 40 thereby he should not miffe purchase, which accordingly fell out, as a wish would have it : but his drift was in truth to draw him from any supply, or second of Turkes, if God should give way to their Enterprize, or successe to the victorie : yet for the present the fixth of February, being twelue leagues from the Cape, wee descryed a layle, and presently tooke the aduantage of the wind in chasing her, and at last fetcht her vp, making her ftrike all her sayles, whereby wee knew her to be a Barke belonging to Tor Bay, neere Dartmouth, that came from Auerure laden Tor Ban. with Salt: ere we had fully dispatched, it chanced to be foule weather, so that we could not, or at least would not make out our Boat, but caused the Master of the Barke to let downe his , and come aboord with his Company, being in the Barke but nine men, and one Boy; and so the Mafter leaving his Mate with two men in the same, came himselse with fue men, and the boy vnto vs, whereupon our Turkil Captaine fent ten Turkes to man her, amongst whom were two Dutch, and one English Renegado, who were of our confederacie, and acquainted with the bu-

But when Rawlins faw this partition of his friends, before they could hoyse out their Boat for the Barke, he made meanes to speake with them, and told them plainly, that he would prosecute the matter eyther that night, or the next and therefore whatsoeuer came of it they should acquaint the English with his resolution, and make toward England, bearing up the helme, whiles the Turkes flept, and suspected no such matter: for by Gods grace in his first watch about mid-night, he would flew them a light, by which they might vnderstand, that the Enterprize was begunne, or at least in a good forwardnesse for the execution : and so the Boat was let downe, and they came to the Barke of Tor Bay, where the Masters Mate beeing left (as before you have heard) apprehended quickly the matter, and heard the Discourse with amazement. But time was precious, and not to be spent in disputing, or casting of doubts, whether the Turkes that were with them, were able to mafter them, or no, beeing feuen to fixe, confidering they had the helme of the ship, and the Turker being Souldiers, and ignorant of Sea Affaires, could

not discouer, whether they went to Argur or no ; or if they did, they resolved by Ramlins ex. ample to cut their throats, or cast them ouer-boord : and so I leave them to make vie of the Renegadoes instructions, and returne to Rawlins againe.

The Master of the Barke of Tor Bay, and his Company were quickly searched, and as quickly piliaged, and distinissed to the libertie of the shippe, whereby Rawlins had leisure to entertayne him with the lamentable newes of their extremities, and in a word, of every particular which was befitting to the purpose : yea, he told him, that that night he should lose the fight of them. for they would make the helme for England, and hee would that night and euermore pray for

their good fuccesse, and fafe deliverance. When the Maiter of the Barke of Tor Bay had heard him out, and that his company were 10 partakers of his Storie, they became all filent, not eyther diffident of his Discourse, or afraid of the attempt, but refolued to affift him. Yet to shew himselse an understanding man, hee demanded of Rawlins, what weapons he had, and in what manner he would execute the bufineffe: to which he answered, that he had Ropes, and Iron Hookes to make fast the Scottels, Gratings, and Cabbines, he had also in the Gunner roome two Curtleaxes, and the slaues had fine Crowes of Iron before them : Besides, in the scuffling they made no question of some of the Souldiers weapons: then for the manner, hee told them, they were fure of the Ordnance, the Gunner roome, and the Powder, and to blocking them vp, would eyther kill them as they came downe, or turne the Ordnance against their Cabbins, or blow them into the Ayre by one Stratagemeor other, and thus were they contented on all fides, and resolved to the Enterprize.

The next morning, being the feuenth day of February, the Prize of Tor Bay was not to bee feene or found, whereat the Captaine began to fforme and sweare, commanding Rawlins to Search the Seas vp and downe for her, who bestowed all that day in the businesse, but to little purpole: whereupon when the humour was ipent, the Captaine pacified himfelfe, as conceiting helhould fure find her at Argier : but by the permission of the Ruler of all actions, that Argier was England, and all his wickednesse frustrated : for Rawlins beeing now startled, less hee should returne in this humour for the Streights, the eight of February went downe into the hold, and finding a great deale of water below, told the Captaine of the same, adding, that it did not come to the Pumpe, which he did very politickly, that he might remoue the Ordnance : For when the Captaine askt him the reason, he told him the ship was too farreafter the head : then hee com- 30 manded to vie the best meanes he could to bring her in order: sure then, quoth Rawlins, wee must quit our Cables, and bring soure Peeces of O renance after, and that would bring the water to the Pumpe, which was presently put in practice, so the Peeces beeing vsually madefast thwart the ship, we brought two of them with their mouthes right before the Biticle, and bedaule the Renegadoe Flemmings would not begin, it was thus concluded: that the ship having three Deckes, wee that did belong to the Gunner roome should bee all there, and breake vp the lower Decke. The English slaues, who alwayes lay in the middle Decke, should doe the like, and watch the Scuttels: Rawlins himselfe preuayled with the Gunner, for so much Powder, as should prime the Peeces, and so told them all there was no better watch-word, nor meanes to begin, then vpon the report of the Peece to make a cry and skrich, for God, and King James, and 40 Saint George for England.

When all things were prepared, and every man refolved, as knowing what hee had to doe, and the houre when it should happen, to be two in the afternoone, Rawlins adulfed the Master Gunner to speake to the Captaine, that the Souldiers might attend on the Poope, which would bring the ship after : to which the Captaine was very willing, and vpon the Gunners information, the Souldiers gat themselves to the Pocpe, to the number of twentie, and five or fixe went into the Captaines Cabbin, where alwayes lay divers Curtleaxes, and some Targets, and so wee fell to worke to pumpe the water, and carryed the matterfairely till the next day, which was foent as the former, being the ninth of February, and as God mult haue the prayfe, the triumph

For by that time all things were prepared, and the Souldiers got upon the Poope as the day before : to avoid suspition, all that did belong to the Gunner-roome went downe, and the slaves in the middle decke attended their businesse, so that we may cast up our account in this manner. First, nine English llaues, besides Iohn Ramlins: flue of the Tor Bay men, and one boy, foure English Renegadoes, and two French, foure Hollanders: in all foure and twenty and a boy: fo that litting vp our hearts and hands to God for the successe of the businesse, we were wonderfully incouraged; and fetled our felues, till the report of the peece game vs warning of the enterprite. Now, you must consider, that in this company were two of Rawlins men, James Roe, and John Danies, whom he brought out of England, and whom the fortune of the Sea brought into the fame predicament with their Malter. These were impleyed about no none (being as I said, the ninth of February) to prepare their matches, while all the Twice or at least most of themstood on the 60 Poope, to weigh downe the ship as it were, to bring the water forward to the Pumpe : the one brought his match lighted betweene two spoons, the other brought his in a little prece of a Can: and to in the name of God, the Turkes and Moores being placed as you have heard, and five and

forty in number and Rawlins having proined the Tuch-holes, Iames Roe gave fire to one of the peeces, about two of the clocke in the afternoone, and the confederates vpon the warning, thouted most cheerefully: the report of the peece did teare and breake downe all the Bitickell, and The oase. compasses, and the noise of the slaues made all the Souldiers amased at the matter, till seeing the quarter of the ship rent, and feeling the whole body to shake vnder them: vnderstanding the thip was furprised, and the attempt tended to their vtter destruction, neuer Beare robbed of her whelpes was fo fell and mad : For they not onely cald vs dogs, and cried out, V fance de Lamair. which is as much as to fay, the Fortune of the wars : but attempted to teare vp the planckes. fetting a worke hammers, hatchets, kniues, the oares of the Boate, the Boat-hooke, their curtle-10 axes, and what else came to hand, besides stones and brickes in the Cooke-roome a all which

they threw amongst vs. attempting still and still to breake and rip vp the hatches, and boords of the steering, not delisting from their former execrations, and horrible blasbhemies and

When Iohn Rawlins perceined them so violent, and understood how the slaues had cleared the deckes of all the Torkes and Moores beneath, he fet a guard vpon the Powder, and charged their owne Muskets against them, killing them from divers four-holes, both before and behind, and fo leffened their number, to the ioy of all our hearts, whereupon they cried out, and called for the Pilot, and fo Rawlins, with some to guard lum, went to them, and understood them by their kneeling, that they cried for mercy, and to have their lives faued, and they would come downe, which he bade them doe, and fo they were taken one by one, and bound, yea killed with their owne Curtleaxes; which when the rest perceived, they called vs English dogs, and reviled vs with many opprobrious tearmes, some leaping ouer-boord, crying, it was the chance of war. fome were manacled, and so throwne ouer-boord, and some were shaine and mangled with the Curtleaxes, till the ship was we'll cleared, and our selues assured of the victory.

At the first report of our Peece, and husbburly in the decks, the Captaine was a writing in his Cabbin, and hearing the noyle, thought it some strange accident, and so came out with his Curtleaxe in his hand, prefuming by his authority to pacifie the milchiefe : But when hee cast his eyes vpon vs , and faw that we were like to furprise the ship , he threw downe his Curtleaxe, and begged vs to faue his life, intimating vnto Rawlins, how he had redeemed him from Villa-30 Rife, and ever fince admitted him to place of command in the thip, befides honeft viage in the whole course of the Voyage. All which Rawlins confessed, and at last condeteended to mercy. and brought the Captaine and fue more into England. The Captaine was called Ramtham-Rife, The Villory but his Christen name, Henry Chandler, and as they fay, a Chandlers sonne in Southwarke. Iohn Good-ale, was alfo an English Turke. Richard Clarke, in Turkish, Iafar, George Cooke, Ramdam;

John Browne, Mamme; William Winter, Mustapha befides all the flaues and Hollanders . With other Renegadoes, who were willing to be reconciled to their true Sauiour, as being formerly feduced with the hopes of riches, honour, preferment, and such like deuillish bairs, to catch the foules of mortall men, and entangle frailty in the tarriers of horrible abuses, and im-

When all was done, and the ship cleared of the dead bodies, Iohn Ramlins assembled his men together, and with one confent gaue the praise vnto God, ving the accustomed service on ship- Praise given boord, and for want of bookes lifted up their voyces to God, as he put into their hearts, or re- to God newed their memories : then did they fing a Pfalme, and last of all, embraced one another for playing the men in such a Deliuerance, whereby our feare was turned into ioy, and trembling hearts exhillirated, that we had escaped such ineuitable dangers, and especially the flauery and terror of bondage, worse then death it selfe: The same night we washed our ship, put every thing in as good order as we could, repaired the broken quarter, fet vp the Biticle, and bore vp the Helme for England, whereby Gods grace and good guiding, we arrived at Planmoth, the thirteenth of February, and were welcommed like the recourry of the loft sheepe, or as you read of They arrive in so a louing mother, that runneth with embraces to entertaine her fonne from a long Voyage and England.

escape of many dangers. Not long after we understood of our confederats, that returned home in the Barke of Torbar, that they arrived in Pensance in Corne-wall the eleventh of February : and if any aske after their deliuerance, confidering there were ten Turkes fent to man her, I will tell you that too : the Enent of the next day after they loft vs, as you have heard and that the three Renegadoes had acquainted the other thin-Mailers Mare, and the two English in her with Rawlins determination, and that they themselves would be true to them, and affift them in any enterprise : then if the worst came, there were but feuen to fixe : but as it fell out, they had a more easie passage, then turmoile, or man-slaughter. For they made the Tarkes believe, the wind was come faire, and that they were fayling to

60 Argier, till they came within fight of England, which one of them amongst the rest discovered, faying plainely, that that land was not like Cape Vincent; yes faith he, that was at the Helme, and you will be contented, and goe downe into the hold, and trim the falt ouer to wind-ward, whereby the ship may beare full faile, you shall know and see more to morrow : Whereupon five of them went downe very orderly, the Renegadoes faining themselves asleepe, who prefently

flart vp, and with the helpe of the two English, nailed downe the hatches, whereat the principall amongst them much repined, and began to grow into choller and rage, had it not quickly beene ouerpaffed. For one of them stepped to him, and dasht out his braines, and threw him ouer-boord : the rest were brought to Excesser, and either to be arraigned, according to the punishment of deliquents in such a kind, or disposed of, as the King and Counsell shall thinke meet: and this is the story of this deliverance, and end of Iohn Rawlins Voyage. The AOcrs in this Co. mick Tragedie are most of them aliue; The Tarkes are in prison; the ship is to be seene, and Rawlins himfelfe dare inflife the matter.

The names of the English Renegadoes , which consented, and toyned with the slanes in the reconery of the ship , were these.

Ichard Clarke, the Gunner, called in Turkish, Iafar. George Cooke, Gunners-mate . called R Ichard Clarke, the Gunner, cauca in Interpretation, in Turkish, Mustapha. Iohn Browne, in Turkish, Ramedam. William Winter, Carpenter, in Turkish, Ramedam. Turkifb, Memme. One Dutch Renegado. Foure Dutch flaues. One French flaue. Fine Englifbmen and one boy, taken but three dayes before. Nine English flaues which they tooke with them from Argier. In all foure and twenty men and a boy. Which were all fafely landed at Plimmoth, the thirteenth of February, 1621. They faued aliue the fine and forty Turkes and Moores, the Captaine, one Henry Chandler, borne in South-warke, an English Renogado; and fine Turkes more, who are at this present in Plimmoth Goale, &c.

CHAP. VIII.

Relations of Africa, taken out of Master GEORGE SANDYS his larger discourse observed in his lourney, begun Ann. 1610. LIB. 2.

His Voyage from Rhodes to Alexandria, observations there, of Egypt, in generall, and of Nilus.

I have contra-Red this Hiftory(as o. ther,) for brecity: omitting nothing willingly which the Author faw : in other things commonly refer-

ring the Rea-

rher then a

that which I

Hodes is now inhabited by the Turkes and Iewes : those Christians that be, being Greekes, and not fuffered after Sun-fet to abide in the Citie: the Suburbs whereof are veterly razed. I have heard that all the Monuments, Statues, an inferiptions belonging to the Knights of the Order, are by the Turkes preferued entire, excepting such as the warres had demolished. Heere the Grand Signior main 40 taineth five Gallies. About this Iland, we expected to have met with Pirats, but

were happily deceived. Now having loft the fight of Rhodes, we faw no land vntill the third night after : in the Euening, doubtfully discourring the Coast of Agypt. Fearing the Lee-shoare, all night we bore out to Sea : the lightning ministring vncomfortable light, intermixed with thunder and tempests. The next day we entred the Hauen of Alexandria, newly defamed with a number of wracks, which scattered here and there, did miserably testifie the vnsafe protection of that booke or other Harbour. For not pail two nights before the Northerne winds beating full vpon the mouth of namonate or can a rarrour. For not pair two mights before the Northerne winds beating full you the mouth of the Hauen, with violent Seas droue the fore-moft flips from their Anchors, who falling foule were his guidet. Fer we can thereft, funke all for company, euen two and twenty in number: amongst the rest, that 10 manner of the first substitution of the rest. guides, Fer we write of mens great and warlike thip, called the Red-Lion, but taken the yeere before from the Knights of graupiles,ra-

But before we proceed any further in particulars, meet it is that something be faid of Agypt in generall. The wonderfull fertility of the foile, is rather to bee admired then expressed : in history of places & Regions in this worker times past reputed the granary of the world; informuch as it was not thought possible for the Rom in worker many Empire to fubliff, if not affilted by the affluence of Egypt. The occasion of thet faying of defineth iron Selymus when he had conquered the Country, that, Now he had taken a Farme that would feed his lemoglans. Amongst other commodities which this earth doth yeeld, and are fetcht from hence by forrainers, Sugar, Flaxe, Rice, all manner of Graine, Linnen-cloth, Hides, Salt, But- 60 targo, and Caffia, being now the principall.

Whatfoeuer here is estimable, proceedeth from the munificency of this River ; for progresse, out are in Les and property of all other the most excellent : vnto former ages, though often attempted, (and or others here that by great Potentates) of an undiscouered originall,

Foure miles below Cairo, it decide the into two maine and nauigable branches; that next the Eaft running into the Mid-land Scaby Daminia (hererofore Pelufum:) the other inclining vnto the West, and formerly called Canopus, falleth into the selfe-same Sea a little below Rofesta, making of the richest portion of the Landa triangular Iland, named Delta, in that it beareth the forme of that letter: the fresh water keeping together, and changing the colour of the Salt, farre further into the Sea, then the shoare from thence can be discerned. Two other branches there be that runne betweene their, but poore in waters; besides divers channels cut by the labour of man, for conuciances in the time of the inundation; which also are no small strengthning to the Country. Of those seuen mentioned by Herodotus, and those nine by Ptolomy, these are all that 10 I either law or could heare of. Nor is it a thing extraordinarie for Rivers to lofe their channels, either choaked by themselves, or by the adverse Seas, with beds of Sand, and turned vp gravell refilling their passages. But among it the hidden my steries of Nature, there is none more wonderfull, then is the overflowing of this River; making of a meere Defart (for fuch is Egypt vnwatred by Nilus) the most fruitfull part of the habitable world, little when others are great, and

> Not tide to lawes of other streames; the Sunne When faribest off thy streames then poorest runne. Intemperate beauen to temper, midft of heate ; Vnder the burning Zone bid to grow great. Then Nile assists the world; lest fire should quell The earth: andmakes his bigh-borne waters swell Against the Lions flaming sawes-

their decrease increasing.

Inde etiam leges aliarum nescit aquarum : Nec tumet hybernus quum longe Sole remoto Officijs caret vnda fuis,date iuslus iniquo Temperiem colo,medijs æftatibus exit. Sub torrente plaga,ne terras diffiper ignis Nilus ad ca mundo, contraque accensa leonis Oratumet Lucand. 10.

The earth then burnt with the violent feruour, neuer refreshed with raine (which here falls rarely, and then onely in the Winter) hath helpe from Nilus, most constantly observing his accultomed lealons, beginning to arife with the ariting Sunne on the feuenteenth of Iune; fwelling by degrees untill it mount fometimes foure and twentie cubits, but that the utter-

This yeare * at Cairo it rife three and twentie. About two miles aboue the Citie, at the end of * Hebeganhis This yeare 'at Carro it the three and twentie. About two mines about the Categorium of the Carro it the three and twentie. About two mines about the Categorium of August they cut the bankes; then when afterned with this principal of the Categorium of the Categoriu pall height; before kept in, left that the too timely delage (hould deftroy the fruites of the earth agains in the ere fit to be reaped. At which the Baffa is himfelfe in person (who gineth the first stroke) ac- halfe way be companied with a world of people, rowed in Gallies and Barges of triumpli, and for divers dayes tweene Care feating: the Baffa in the Cattle of Michia, an Iland furrounded with Nile (to called, in that and Rafetta there the Pillar doth stand, by which they observe the increase of the River) others under Pauhons pitched by the shoare, with barbarous solemnities, and generall reioycings. At their returne they are met by those of the Citie, who bestrew their heads with flowers, as the welcome forerunners of that they long wished. They turned in water following them at the heeles; boats now towed, where but now they trampled, filling the duthe trenches and long emptied Cilternes: and a while after courting in many places the superficies of the land, which there then appeareth as a troubled Lake. Aniwerable to the increase of the River, is the plentie or scarcitie of the yeare fucceeding, bringing with it both earth and water into a fandie and thirftie foile, of it felfe vnprofitable: fo that it as well manures as moistens, with the fat and pregnant slime which it lea- Pethaps rather ueth behind it. Vnto which they owe not their riches onely, but themselves, For the plague crasing your which here oft miferably rageth, vpon the first of the flood doth instantly cease: infomuch as Sunnescenwhen fine hundred die at (are the day before, which is nothing rare (for the found keepe companie with the ficke, holding death fatall, and to anoid them irreligion) not one doth die the day and of the day and following. Wherefore no maruell though ignorant and superstitious antiquitie, under the name estewherein

50 of Ofrice adored this River, which affoorded them so many benefits, and such as not apprehended those pare, were thought supernaturall. Thus where covered with water, it is no unpleasant sight tobe- A vulgar exwere thought supernaturant. I has where coursed with water, it is no supernaturally affined go-hold the Townes appearing like little Ilands; the people passing and repassing by boate, and not perincing different perincing supernaturally affirmation. feldome fwimming : who the leffe they fee of their Country, the more is their comfort. About med : as by the midft of September it cealeth to augment: and retiring a moneth after within his proper Aliman Med. bounds, giveth way vnto Husbandrie (the earth vntilled, by throwing the Graine on the mul, Egyp. Lac. 8. and Rice into the water, affoording her first increase) with May decreasing, and then in an arrange melious pentrie of water. To rrow that it proceedesh from a partiall caute, this one shough they, you the ueilous penerie of water. To proue that it proceedeth from a naturall caule, this one, though the toft moftrange, yet true experiment will fuffice. Take of the earth of Egypt adioyning to the River, and nes of Passes preferue it carefully, that it neither come to be wet norwasted; weigh it daily, and you shalf find Merchantle it neither more not lefte heatie vntil the feuenteenth of June at which day it beginneth to grew

it neither more nor lefte heatie viril the feuenteenth of rune, at which day to beginned to give $Bar: \beta \in East$ more ponderous, and augmenteth with the augmentation of the river, whereby they have an $V = \frac{Bar: \beta \in East}{200}$ fallible knowledge of the flate of the Deluge: proceeding without doubt from the humidited and 10's Natot the Aire, which having a recourse through all passible places, and mixing therewith, increases an angas sp the same as it increaseth in moysture. In the tenth and eleventh yeare of Cleopatra, it is by Wri- man

bauecilledmy Pilzrim:gc. Many alocf the things left

CHAP.8.

ters of those times for a certainty affirmed, that the Nilus increased not; which two yeares defest prognosticated the fal of two great Potentates, Cleopatra and Anthony. Many ages before. Callimachus reports, that it did the like for nine yeares together, From the same cause, no question, but that feuen yeares dearth proceeded in the time of Pharao.

It also produceth abundance of Fish, in shape and qualitie much differing from ours: but he reason of the muddy channell, not altogether sauorie nor wholsome.

Palmetrees.

Throughout this Countrey there are no Wines, yet want they none, in that they defire them not. Neither are here any trees to speake of, but such as are planted, and those in Orchards only: excepting Palmes, which delight in Defarts; and being naturally theirs, doe grow without limits. Of these they have plenty, pleasing the eye with their goodly formes, and with diversitie of benefits inriching their owners. Of body ftraight, high, round, and flender (yet visft for buildings) crefted about, and by meanes thereof with facilitie afcended. The branches like Sedges. flit on the neather fide, and ever greene; growing enely on the vypermost height, refemble faire plumes of feathers, which they yearely prune, by lopping off the lowest, and at the top of all by bearing a little of the bole. Of thefethere be male and female, both thrust forth cods (which are full of feeds like knotted firings) at the roote of their branches, but the female is onely fruitfull; and not fo, valefie growing by the male (towards whose varight growth she inclines her crowne) and have of his feedes commixed with hers; which in the beginning of March they no more faile to doe, then to fow the earth at accustomed feasons. Their Dates doe grow like fingers, and are thereof named; not ripe vntill the fine of December, which begin to cod about the 20 beginning of February. They open the tops of fuch as are fruitleffe, or otherwise perisht; and take from thence the white pith, of old called the braine, which they fell vp and downe: an excellent fallad, not much vnlike in tafte, but farre better then an Artichoke. Of the branches they make Bed-fleads, Lattices, &c. of the web of the Leanes, Baskets, Mats, Fans, &c. of the outward huske of the Cod, good Cordage; of the inward, Brushes, &c. such and such like affoord they yearely without empaire to themselues. This tree they held to be the perfect image of a man. and by the same represented him : First for that it doth not fructifie, but by coiture : next. as hauing a Braine, as it were, in the vppermost part; which once corrupted, as man, euen fo it perisheth: and laftly, in regard that on the top thereof grow certaine strings, which resemble the haire; the great ends of the branches appearing like hands stretcht forth, and the Dates as fingers. And because the Palme is neuer to be suppressed, but shooteth vp against all opposition. the boughs thereof have been proposed as rewards for such as were either victorious in armes or exerciles. Wood then is here but scarce in regard of the quantitie; and yet enough, if their vies for the same be considered. For they eate but little fiesh (fresh Cheese, towre Milke made solid, Roots, Fruits and Herbs, especially Colocasia, anciently called the Egyptian Beane, though bearing no Beane, but like the leafe of a Colewort, being their principal fullenance; baking their bread in Cakes on the harth, and mingling there with the feeds of Coriander.) As for cold, they know it not; having sufficient of the refule of Palmes, Sugar-canes, and the like, to furnish them with Wood oldby fuell, answerable to their necessities. But forrainers that feed as in colder Countries, doe buy their Wood by weight, which is brought in hither by shipping. The Gallions also of Constantinople, alwaies goe into the Blacke Sea for timber, before they take their voyage for Cairo. Omit I must not the sedgie reeds which grow in the Marishes of Egypt, called formerly Papyri, of which they made paper; and whereof ours made of rags, assumeth that name. They divided it into thin flakes, whereinto it naturally parteth: then laying them on a table, and moistning them with the gluttinous water of the River, they preft them together, and fo dried them in the Sunne. It is now governed by a Baffa who hath his refidence in Cairo, and commandeth as an absolute Soueraigne; vnder whom are fixteene Sanziacks, and a hundred thousand Spacheis. The revenues of this little Countrie amounting to three Millions of * Shariffes. The Great Tarke having one the Saltam, the (viz. foure hundred thousand disbursed yearely in Sugar and Rice, and sent to Constantinople; the name of Care refidue fent ouer-land with a guard of fixe hundred Souldiers, for feare of the Florentine:) another added where it Million is fpent in payes, and in fetting forth the Carnan vnto Mecha; the third hee hath 50 is coined of for the supportance of his owne estate, and entertainement of his dependents. But this is little in regard of that which was raifed thereof in the reigne of Auletes, who received feuen Millions gold by two or and a halfe of Crownes; much more supposed to have yeelded to the more promident Ro-

"Hauing the

Paper-fedge.

1610.

The Baffas fenere initice.

three Afpers. manes. The Bassa now being, and called Mahomet, is a man well striken in yeares, of a sowre and inflexible nature. At his first entrance hee cut off the heads of foure thousand Spackers, that had borne themselues too infolently, and committed many outrages and extortions. Her sent the great men that bore ouermuch (way vnto Constantinople; those that refused to gor, he caused to be strangled, vsing the aide of the Arabians (who justly hated the other) in all his executions. If 60 a robberie be committed, and the theeues escape, such as are appointed to guard those quarters, do fuffer in their flead; infomuch as often they attach poore innocents when they cannot apprehend the guiltie, to deliuer themselves from punishment : boring holes through the condemneds armes, fretche wide on staues, in which are Candles stucke, that burne downe into the fiesh, and

are led in that manner through the Citie vnto the place of execution. Others are stript of their skinnes, yet liue in horrible torment fo long as the Executioners Steele offends not the Nauell. Druskennesse Drunkennesse is punished with death; and all disorders so sewerely looke into, that I thinke in punished with no other place you shall see to few amongst such a multitude of people. The malice his rigour acath. procured, had caused himselfe to confine himselfe to the Castle for a twelue-month, before our comming to Caire: but his government is fo well approved by the Grand Signior, that to doe him the more honour, he hath given him his daughter in marriage, a childe of foure yeares old, which hath beene folemnized with all possible Ceremonies. One thing more is in him prayfeworthy; that hee will hardly fuffer a Christian to turne Mahometan, either out of the dislike Io of hisowne Religion, or knowing well that they doe it onely for commoditie and prefer-

Drunkennesse punished with death. A nastie people.

Those that now inhabit the Countrey, are for the most part Moores. Turkes there are many, and lewes, which relide onely in Cities. Store of Arabians, and not a few Negroes. Of Chriflians, the native Copies are the most in number : Some Greekes there bee , and a few Arme-

The Egyptian Moores (descended of the Arabians, and understanding each other) are men of The Moore. a meane stature, tawnie of complexion, and spare of bodie, shrill tongued, and nimble footed; naturally industrious, affecting more their profit then their ease; yet know they not how to live of a little, as in nothing riotous. Rather craftie they are then wife; more observant then 20 faithfull, by much more denout then the Turkes in the Mahometan Religion. In Learning they are veterly ignorant. Among ft them none are Noble : few admitted to the Souldiery, (nor fuffered in Townes to weare Weapons) not any to Magistracie. In Cities the best of them exercife Merchandize : rich by meanes of their Trafficke with the Indians; yet that decayed fince our East Indian Voyages: infomuch, as spices brought out of the Lenant heretofore, are now with profit brought thirher by our Merchants. In habit they differ little from the Turkes, excepting Theirapparell, iome of the yonger fort, who weare fide Coates of Linnen (the ancient habit of that Countrey) girt to their walkes, and Towels throwne about their neckes of the fame. Divers of the Necroes weare Vests like Surplices. Those of the poorest, long Garments of Havre, streakt blacke and white; in the winter, fide Coates of Cotten. The Beggers by finging, both get re-30 liefe, and comfort their pouertie, playing withall vpon Drummes which are fashioned like

A number here be afflicted with fore eyes, eyther by the reflecting heate, the falt dust of the Thewomen foyle, or excessive Venerie: for the Pockes is vncredibly frequent amongst them. The women when out of their houses, are wrapt from the crowne of the head to the foot in ample Robes of Linnen, spreading their armes vnderneath to appeare more corpulent : for they thinke it a speciall excellencie to be fat; and most of them are so, so in frequenting the Bannias for certayne dayes together, wherein they vie such dyet and frictions, as daily via confirmeth for effectuall, They couer their faces with black Cypreffe bespotted with red. Their vnder garments of lighter fluffes then the Tweib, not differing in fashion. The better fort weare hoopes of Gold and AO Silver about their armes, and aboue their ancles: others of Copper, with Peeces of Coyne halfe couering their fore-heads, and plates hung about their neckes, &c. Both men and women doe brand their armes for the loue of each other. Divers of the women have I feene with their chinnes diffayned into knots and flowres of blue, made by pricking of the skinne with Needles, and rubbing it ouer with Inke and the Juyce of an herbe, which will neuer weare out againe. They have quicke and easie labour, bearing heretofore often two, and sometimes three at a burthen: those also borne in the eighth moneth huing, rarely if else-where heard of. In the adjoyning Deferts of Saint Macario, a Plant there is, low, leauelesse, browne of colour, branched like Corall, and closed at the top, this in the time of the labour of women, they set in water in some corner of the roome, which strangely displayeth, procuring (as they generally coniecture) easie deliueries. The Countrey people doe follow Husbandry. They are not long in 50 dreffing themselues, being onely wrapt in a ruffet Mantle : nor haue the women any better couerture, hiding their faces with bealtly clouts, having holes for their eyes; which little is too much to see, and abstayne from lothing. Ouer their shashes the men weare rounds of shifned ruffet, to defend their braines from their piercing feruour. A people breathes not more fauage and nastie, crusted with dirt, and stinking of smoke, by reason of the * fuell, and their houses * Stereus logiwhich have no Chimnies. Some of them dwell under beggerly Tents, and those effected of nem. the old Inhabitants.

But the Copties are the true Egyptians, retayining the name of Copties that ancient Citie and The Christians Territorie, a little below, and on that fide the River where once stood Thebes, against the lland called com-60 of the Tenterites. The name fignifieth Privation, so called, for that there Isis cut off a locke of monly and the Hayre, and put on funerall Garments for the death of Ofiris. Others will have them to calcontuptly led in regard of their Circumcition. These, as I faid, are Christians, notwithstanding they are circumcifed, whereof they now begin to bee ashamed; saying, that in the Countrey they are thereunto compelled by the Moores; and in Cities where secure from violence, they vie it not;

fore lacobus (of whom now named, and of whom wee shall speake hereafter) divulged it in

Their Christi-

Patriarke of

Alexandria.

Fasting.

* Alexandria.

000

At this day they professe him to be perfect God and perfect man; yet dare not distinguish his natures, for feare of dividing his person. They baptize not their Children untill fortie dayes old. Presently after mid-night they repayre to their Churches, where they remaine well-nigh vnt:ll Sunday at noone; during which time, they neither fit nor kneele, but support themselves voon crutches. The Priest is veiled and vested in Linnen, having two or three Boyes apparelled alike. cructes, in erriett is venes and venes in a military in the conferre inferiour Orders vpon 10 and sequestred from the rest of the people, to assist him; for they conferre inferiour Orders vpon 10 and sequestred from the rest of the Psalms of Davidat every meeting, with divers parcels of the Old and New Testaments; the latter, as written by Nicomedes: some in the Copticke Language, underftood but by few, most in the Moresco. Often both Priest and people coniovned in Sauage noyfes, to our judgements not articulate. The Priest not seldome eleuating a red cloth (vnder which, I suppose, was the Sacrament) which they administer in both kinds, and giue it to Infants presently after Baptisme. In their Churches they have the Picture of our Sauiour, and the bleffed Virgin; but not ouer their Altars; nor for any thing I could perceive, doe

In certaine Chefts they preserve the bones and ashes of such as have turned Mahometan, and afterward recanted ; for which they have fuffered Martyrdome. At their entrance they kiffe 20 their hands, and lay them vpon one another: the women in grated Galleries separated from the men. Excreame Viction, Prayer for the Dead, and Purgatory, they admit not of. The Romane Church they hold for Hereticall, and reiest all generall Councels, after that of Ephefin. Yet a multitude of late have beene drawne to receive the Popish Religion (especially in Caro) by the industry of Friers, having had the Romane Liturgie lent them from Rome, together with the Bible, in the Arabecke Language. Of Alexandria hath their Patriarke his name, but his abode is in Cairo. Sixedayes journey aboue Cairo vp the River, they have a great Citie, called Saiet; where Christ, with his mother, is faid to have made their abode untill the death of Hered: vnto which, growing old and fickly, they repaire, as defirous to die there : where there is a goodly Church, though fomething ruinous, built by Hellen the mother 30 of Constantine, and confecrated to the bleffed Virgin. They never eate in the day time during the Lent, but on Saturdayes and Sundayes. They weare round Caps, Towels about their neckes, and gownes with wide fleeues of Cloth, and Stuffes leffe ponderous. These line in more subiection then the Moores, by reason of their Religion, and pay yerely a certaine summe for their heads to the Basa. Ignorant in the excellences of their ancestors, but retaining their vices. Some of them professe some knowledge in Magicke, being but Inglers, compared with the former, by whom fuch miracles were effected.

The Lake Mardotis afforded another Hauen vnto the Citie, * then that of the Sea more profitable: by reason of the commodities of India, the Arabian Gulph, and vp-land parts of Agypt, brought downe by the conueniency of that paffage by Channels now vtterly ruined. And 40 the same by a narrow cut was joyned vinto another Lake, farre leffe, and neerer the Sea, which at this day too plentifully furnisheth all Trokie with Salt-peter. Betweene the leffe Lake and the Citie, there passeth an artificiall channell which serueth them with water (for they have no wells) in the time of the deluge, conueyed by Conduits into ample Cifterns (now most of them Fennie for want of vie, an occasion of much fickenesse in the summer) and so preserved vntill the fucceeding overflow. For Alexandria is all built upon vaults, supported with carved pillars one aboue another, and lined with stone; infomuch, as no small proportion thereof lay

concealed in earth, confider we either of the Coast or quantity. Such was this Queene of Cities and Metropolis of Africa: who now hath nothing left her but ruines; and those ill witnesses of his perished beauties; declaring rather, that Townes as well as men, haue their ages and destinies. Onely those wals remaine which were founded (as 50 fomefay) by Ptolomie: one within another, imbatled, & garnished with threescore & eight Turrets ; rather stately then strong, if compared with the moderne. Yet these, by the former descriptions, and ruines without appeare to haue immured but a part of the Citie. After that de-Broyed by the Saracens, it lay for a long time waste, vntill a Mahometan Priest, pronouncing (as he faid, out of Mahomets prophelies) indulgences to fuch as should re-edifie, inhabite, or contribute money thereunto, within certaine dayes, did in a fhort feafon repeople it. But a latter de-Aruction it received by the Cyprus, French, and Venetians, about the time that Lewis the fourth was enlarged by the Sultans, who farprifed the Citie with a maruellous flaughter. But hearing of the approach of the Sultan, (who had railed a great army for their reliefe) deliparing to main- 60 taine it, they fet it on fire, and departed. The Sultan repairing the walls as well as be could, built this Castle that now stands on the Pharm for the defence of the Hauen; and brought it to the state wherein it remaineth. Sundry Mountaines are raised of the ruines, by Christians not

to be mounted; left they should take too exact a survey of the Citie: in which are often found (especially after a shower) rich stones, and medals engraven with the figures of their Gods, and men, with fuch perfection of Art; as these now cut, seeme lame to those, and valuely counter-Eits. On the top of one of them stands a watch-tower, where continual centinell is kept, to gue notice of approaching failes. Of Antiquities there are few remainders: onely Hieroglyhpicall Obeliske of Theban Marble, as hard wel-nigh as Porphir, but of a deeper red, and speckled npicali Occisacio. 1 000000 manior, as natu wee-ingulas 2 00 port, natura a uceper regama specialed Photos Needle, flanding where once frood the Palace of Alexander: and another Photos Needle lying by, and like it, halfe buried in rubbidge. Without the walls on the South-west side of the Citie, on a little hill stands a Columne of the same, all of one stone, eightie sixe Palmes high, and 10 thiry fixe in compasse, the Palme consisting of nine inches and a quarter, according to the meafure of Genos, 2s measured for Zigal Baffa by a Genoues, let vpon a square cube (and which is to be wondered at) not halfe so large as the foot of the Pillar, called by the Arabians, Hemadeslacor, which is, the Columne of the Arabians. They tell a Fable, how that one of the Ptolomies erected the fame in the furtheit extent of the Hauen, to defend the Citie from Nauall incursions : hauing placed a Magicall glaffe of Steele on the top, of vertue (if vncouered) to fet on fire fuch Thips as failed by. But subuerted by them, the glasse lost that power, who in this place re-cre-Red the Columne. But by the Westerne Christians it is called the pillar of Pompey: and is faid to have been reared by Cefar, as a memorial of his Pompeian Victory. The Patriarke of A. Pompei pillar tex andria hath here a house adiopning to a Church, which stands (as they say) in the place 20 where Saint Marke was buried, their first Bishop and Martyr: who in the dayes of Traian, haled with a rope tied about his neck, vnto the place, called Angeles, was there burned for the testimonie of Chrift, by the idolatrous Pagans. Afterward his bones were removed to Venice by the Venetions, he being the Saint and Patron of that Citie. There be at this day two Patriarkes, one of the Greek; another of the Greemeried, the value rial Patriarke of the Coffice and Assi. Two Patriarks one of the Greek; another of the Greemeyes, the Vinuerian Factiane of the Greek; another of the Greek Patriarke now being, is Cyril, a man of approved vertue and learuierte his triarke ning, a friend to the reformed Religion, and opposing the contrary ; saying, that the differences saying. betweene vs and the Greeker, be but shels; but that those are Kernels betweene them and the other. Of whom something more shall be spoken hereafter. The buildings now being, are meane and few, erected on the ruines of the former : that part that lieth along the shoare inha-30 bited onely, the reft desolate : the walls almost quadrangular ; on each side a gate, one opening towards Nilus; another regards Mariotis; the third, the Defarts of Barcha; and the fourth, the Hauen. Inhabited by Moores, Turkes, lewes, Cofices, and Grecions; more in regard of Merchandize, (for Alexandria is a Free Port, both for friend and enemy) then for the conneniency of the place : feated in a Defart, where they have neither Tillage nor Pasturage, except what borders on the Lake; that little, and vnhusbanded; yet keepe they good ftore of Goats, that have cares hanging downe to the ground, which feed amongst ruines. On the Ile of Pharus, now a part of the Continent , there ftands a Caffle, defending the entrance of the Hauen : which hath no water but what is brought vpon Camels from the Cifterns of the Citie : this, at our comming in, as is the vie, we faluted with our Ordnance. As many of vs as came ashoare, Customer 40 were brought to the Custome-house, to have our selves and our valeisas searched: where ten in the hundred is to be paid for what souer we have, and that in kind, onely money payes, but one and a halfe; whereof they take an exact account, that thereby they may aime at the value of returned commodities; then paying eleuen in the hundred more, euen for fuch goods as are in property vnaltered. At so high a rate is this free traffique purchased, the Mahumetan here paying as much as the Christian. The Customes are framed by the lewes, paying for the same vnto A coyne of sil. the Baffatwenty thousand Madeins a day, thirty of them amounting to a Ryall of eight. Wee uer that trables the Alper for lodged in the house of the Prench Conful, vnto whose protection all strangers commit them felties. The Cane lockt vp by the Turky at noones and at nights, for feare that the Pranky should suffer or offer any outrage. The Vice-conful keepes a table for Merchants, he himselfe a 30 Magnifice, leffe liberall of his prefence, then industrious to pleasure ; yea, rather stately then The Vice conproud; expecting respect, and meriting good will: that was a Prieft, and would be a Cardinall; with the hopes whereof, they say, that he feasteth his ambition. By him we were prouided of a

Lanifary for our guard vnto Cairo: his hire, fine peeces of gold, befides his owne diet and his mans,

with prouision of Powder. For our Asses (not inferiour in this Countrey onto horses for trauell)

halfea Shariffe a peece, tor our Camels a whole one. At the gate they tooke a Madein a head,

for our felues and our Asses, to indifferently doe they prise vs : through which wee could not

passe without a Tescaria from the Cades, the principall officer of this Citie.

ð. I I.

ò. 11.

His lourney to Cairo, the things remarkeable there, and by the way.

A Defart. Marrer of

Christall

002

the fecond of February in the afternoone, we undertooke our lourney; paffine through a Defart, producing here and there a few vnhusbanded Palmes, Capers, and a weed called Kall by the Arabs. This they vie for fuel, and then collecting the affect which crusht together like astone, they sell them in great quantity to the Venetion;

who equally mixing the same with the stones that are brought them from Pania by the River of Ticinum, made thereof their Christaline Glasses. On the left hand we left divers ruinous build dings : one faid to have been the Royall manfion of Cleopatra. Beyond which, Bucharis, once a little, but ancient Citie, now onely shewing her foundations, where grow many Palmes which fuffaine the wretched people that line thereabout in beggerly Cottages; where on a Rock flands a Tower, affoording light by night to the failer, the place being full of danger. Anon we paffed by a guard of Souldiers, there placed for the fecuring of that passage, paying a Madein for euerie head. Seuen or eight miles beyond, we ferried ouer a Creeke of the lea. On the other fide stands a handfome Cane, not long fince built by a Moore of Caro for the reliefe of Trauellers, contain ning a quadrangle within, and arched vinderneath. Vinder one of these wee reposed; the stones our beds, our fardels the bolsters. In such like places they vinloade their merchandize, refreshine themselves and their Camels with proussion brought with them, secured from theeves and violence. Giving a trifle for Oyle, about midnight we departed, having here met with good flore of company, fuch as allowed travelling with their matches light, and prepared to receive allonfets. The Moores to keepe themselves awake, would tell one tale a hundred times over. By the way againe we should have paid Caphar, but the benefit of the night excused vs. Travelling along the Sea shoare, and at length a little inclining on the right hand, before day we entred Rosetta. repairing to a Cane belonging to the Frankes. Our best entertainement an vnder-roome, musty. without light, and the vnwholfome floore to lie vpon. This Citie stands upon the principall brance of the Nile, (called heretofore (anophus) which

about some three miles beneath dischargeth it selfe into the Sea. Having here (as at Damiata) his entrance croffed with a barre of Sand, changing according to the changes of winds, and bean ting of the Surges, infomuch, that the lerbies that paffe ouer, are made without keeles, having flat and round bottoms. A Pilot of the Towne there founding all the day long by whose directions they enter, and that so close vnto him, that one leapes out of that boate into the other to receine pilotage, and returneth swimming. The lerbies that can passe ouer this barre, may, if well Or rather in directed, proceed vnto Cairo, Rosetta (called Rasid by the Egyptians) perhaps derined of Ros, the Hungarian. Which fignifieth Rice in the Tu kifb Tongue, and so named for the abundance that it vetereth (they here shealing monethly three hundred quarters) was built by the slaue of an Egyptian Caliph. The houses are all of Brick, not old, yet seeming ancient: flat-rooft, as generally all bee in these hotter Countries (for the Moores vie much to lie on the tops of their houses) jetting over 40 aloft like the poopes of thips, to fliadow the fireets that are but narrow from the Suppes reflection ons. Not small, yet of small defence; being defittute of walls, and other fortifications. I thinke no place under heauen is better furnished with Graine, Flesh, Fish, Sugar, fruites, Rootes, &c.

Raw hides are here a principall commoditie from hence transported into Italy.

Breadthof

Cutofthe

Letting in of the River drawne vp by Buffolo.s.

Elough is their God as we begin, In Gods

The next day but one that followed, we imbarked for Cairo in a Ierbie, vnto which feuen water men belonged, which we hired for twelue Dollars. This Arme of the Nile is as broad at Ro-(etta, as Thames about Tilbury, streightning by little and little : and then in many places fo shallow, that oft we had much adoe to free our felues from the flats that had ingaged vs : the water being euer thicke, as if lately troubled; and pailing along with a mute and vnfpeedy current. Ten miles aboue Rosetta, is that cut of the River which runnes to Alexandria. By the way wee often bought as much Fish for fixe pence, as would have fatisfied twentie. On each fide of the River stands many Townes, but of no great esteeme, for the most part opposite, built partly of Brick, and partly of Mud; many of the poorer houses appearing like Bee-hiues, seated on little Hills throwne vp by the labour of man, to preserve them and their Cattell in the time of the ouerflow. Vpon the bankes all along are infinite numbers of deepe and spacious Vaults, into which they doe let the River, drawing up the water into higher Cifterns, with wheeles let round with Pitchers, and turned about by Buffoloes: from whence it runnes along little trenches, made upon the ridges of banks, and fo is conucied into their feuerall grounds, the Countrie lying all in a levell. The winds blew feldome favourable, infomuch as the poore Moores for most part 60 of the way were enforced to hale up the boate, often wading about their middles to deliver it from the shallowes. At every enforcing of themselves (as in all their labours) crying Elough, perswaded that God is neare them when they name him, the diueil farre off, and all impediments leffened. Of thele it is frange to fee tuch a number of broken perfons, to being my reason

CHAP. 8. \$. Fooles, foolighly admired. Contempt of Christians. of their firong labour and weake food. The pleafant walkes which we had on the shoare, made

ritie of things, there then as forward as with voin lune, who beginne to reape in the ending of aucon. The Sugar Canes ferued our hands for states, and feasted our tastes with their Liquor, By the way we met with Troupes of Horfemen, appointed to cleere thole passages from Theeues. whereof there are many, who also rob by water in little Frigats. Which made our carefull Janiin (for fo are most in their windertaken charges) assisted by two other (to whom wee gaue their

our lingring passage leffe tedious. The fruitfull foyle possetting vs with wonder; and early matu-

paffage, who otherwise would have taken it) nightly so keepe watch by turnes, discharging To their Harquebuses in the cuening, and hanging out kindled matches, to terrifie the Theeues, and testifie their vigilancie. Fine dayes now almost spent since we first imbarked, an houre before Sun-fet we fayled by the Southerne angle of Delta: where the River denideth into another branch, not much inferiour vnto this, the East bounds of that lland (which whether of Asia or Africa is yet to be decided) entring the Sea (as hath beene faid before) below Damiata. Proceeding up the river, bout twifight we arrived at Bolac the Port Town to Carro, and not two miles Bolac. diffant : where every Franke at his landing is to pay a Dollar Leauing our carriages in the Boat, within night we hired fixe Affes with their drivers for the value of fixe pence, to conduct vs vnto Care, where by an Englife Merchant we were kindly entertayned, who fed and houled vs Bountle of an

This Citie is feated on the East fide of the River, at the foote of the rockie mountaine Muc. chant at Caire. 20 tac : winding therewith, and representing the forme of a crescent, stretching South and North Caire described with the adioyning Suburbs, fine Italian miles; in breadth scarce one and a halfe where it is at at the broadest: the walker (if it be walled) rather seeming to belong voto primite houses then otherwise. Yet is the Citic of a marueilous strength, as appeared by that three dayes battell carried through it by Selymus, and maintained by a poore remainder of the Mamalucks. For the freets are narrow, and the houles high-built, all of frone well nigh to the top, at the end almost of each a Gate, which stut (as nightly they are) make enery street as defensine as a Castle. The houses more beautifull without, then commodious within, being ill contriued with comberfome passages. Yet are the roofes high pitcht, and the vppermost high thy open in the middest to let in the comfortable aire. Flat, and plaittred aboue : the walls furmounting their roofes , com-30 monly of fingle bricks (saare many of the walls of the vppermoft flories) which ruined aboue, monty of tingle prices to ate many to fuel after a confused spectacle, and may be compered to a Groue of flourish to such as stand aloft associate accompanies and to men as rand anote already feer and perished Crownes. Their Lockes and Keyes bee of wood; Lockes and ing Trees that have onely feer and perished Crownes. Their Lockes and Keyes bee of wood; Keyes of wood. uen vnto doores that are plated with Iron. But the private buildings are not worth the mentio-

ning, if compared to the publike, of which the Mosques exceed in magnificencie : the stones of many being curiously carved without, supported with Pillars of Marble, adorned with what Art can deuile, and their Religion tollerate. Yet differ they in forme from those of Conftantinople; some being square with open rooses in the middle of a huge proportion, the couered Circle Tarraft aboue : others ftretching out in length, and many fitted vnto the place where they and and, One built (and that the greateft) by Geber, called Gemit Halpare; he beeing named 49 Halpare by the Calipb, which ignified Noble. Or the in this Citie there is reported to bee fuch a number, as paffes beliefe, io that I lift not name it.

Adicyning vnto them are lodgings for Santons, (which are fooles, and mad men) of whom Foolesfoolidswe have spoken already. When one of them dye, they carry his body about in procession with by admired, and great rejoycings, whole foule they suppose to bee rapt into Paradile. Heere bee also divers mad Saints. goodly Hospitals, both for building, reuenue, and attendance.

Next to these in beautic are the Great mens Serraglies. By which if a Christian ride they will Contempt of Next to thele in Deautie are the Great inches services with the best of them) with inpull him from his Asse (for they prohibit vs Horles as not worthy to best ride them) with indignation and contumely. The threets are vnpaued, and exceeding dirtie after a shower (for

3chere it rayneth fometimes in the winter contrary to the receited opinion, and then most subsect to plagues) ouer which many beames are laid athwart on the tops of houles, and couered with Mats to shelter them from the Sunne. The like couerture there is betweene two high Mofques in the principall street of the Citie, vnder which when the Basha passeth, or others of qualitie, they shoot up arrowes, which sticke about in abundance. The occasion of that cuitome I know not. During our abode in the Citie fell out the Feath of their little Byram, when in their Little Byram, private houses they flaughter a number of fleepe; which cut in gobbets, they distribute vnto their flaues and poorer fort of people, befmearing the docres with their bloud : perhaps in imitation of the Passouer.

The Nile (a mile distant) in the time of the inundation, by fundry channels flowes into the 60 Citie. When these channels grow emptie, or the water corrupted, they have it brought them thence-forth from the River by Camels. For although they have many Wels. yet is the water bad, and good for no other vie then to coole the streets, or to cleanse their houles. In the heart of the Towne stands a spacious Caue, which they call the Befessan; in which (as in these at Constantinople) are fold all kind of Wares of the finer fort, felling old things by the call, ot, Who

oines more? imitating therein the Fractions, or imitated by them, Three principall gates there he to this Citie, Beke Naufre, or the Gate of Victorie, opening towards the Radie Sea; Bab Details leading to Nijus, and the old Towne (betweene these the chiefe freet of the Citie doth, extend) and Bebel Fusus, or the Port of Triumph, on the North of the Citie, and opening to the Lake called Elbikie. Three fides thereof are inclosed with goodly buildings, having calleries of pleafure which lettie ouer, fullayried voon Pillars, On the other fide (now a heape of ruines). Stately palace. Rood the stately Paliace of Duline, Wife to the Sultan Cairbent; in which were doores and Jaumes of Juorie; the walles and pauements checkered with discoloured Marble, Columnes of Porphir, Alablafter, and Serpentine : the feelings flourished with Gold and Azure, and inof Porphir, Alabater, and Surphinis to lay downe, almost equals a stone in bardnesse. In 10 a word, the magnificencie was such as could be denised or effected by a womans curiolitie, and the Purse of a Monarch, leuelled with the ground by Selymus, the stones and ornaments thereof were coneyed vnto Constantinople. ..

The Lake both square and large, is but onely a Lake when the River over-floweth; iowned

The Lake.

thereunto by a channell, where the Macres (rowed up and downe in Barges, shaded with Damaskes, and Stuffes of India) accustome to tolace themselves in the evening. The water fallen, Fine Harnests yet the place rather changeth then loseth his delightfulnesse: affoording the profit of fine Harnest uests in a yeare, together with the pleasure, frequented much in the coole of the day. I cannot, forget the injurie received in this place, and withall the inflice. Abused by a beggerly Moore. (for tuch onely will) who then but feemed to begin his knauery, wee were glad to flye vnto another for fuccour, feeming a man of good fort; and by kiffing of his-garment, infinuated into his fauour; who rebuked him for the wrong hee did vs. When croffing vs againe, ere wee had gone Balekomeric, farre, he vied vs farre worse then before: we offering to returne to the other, which he fearing, & good justice, interpoled; doing vs much villary to the mertiment of the beholders, efteeming of Christians as of Dogges and Infidels. At length we got by, and againe complayned. Hee in a maruellous rage made his flaues to purfue him; who caught him, ftript him, and beat him with Rods all a-

long the Levell, calling vs to bee lookers on, and so conveyed him to the place of correction;

Admirable fer- where by all likelihood he had a hundred blowes on the feet to feafon his pattimes. Beyond this tility of fruit, are a number of firagling houses, extending well-nigh to Bolac, which is the Key vnto Cairo, a

Plantans fuppofed fupplane

good Magi. Brates.

Cameleons deferibed at large Towne, and stretching alongst the Ruer; in fashion of building, in some part not much inferiour to the other. Within and without the Citie are a number of delicate Orchards, watered as they doe their fields, in which grow vatiety of excellent fruits; as Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Apples of Paradife, Sicamor figs, and others, (whole barkes they bore full of holes the trees being as great as the greatest Oakes, the fruit no growing amongst the leanes, but out of the bole and branches) Dates, Almonds, Cailia fiftela, (leaned l ke an Alh, the fruit hanging downe like Saulages) Locult, (flat, and of the forme of a Cycle) Gulls growing vpon Tamarix, Apples no bigger then Berries, Plantains that have a broad flaggie leafe, growing in clufters, and inaped like Cucumers, the rind like a Pefcod, folid within, without fromes or kernels, to the tafte exceeding delicious, (this the Mahometans fay was the forbidden fruit; which beeing eaten by our first Parents, and their nakednesse discoursed vito them, they made them Aprons of the leaues thereof) and many more, not knowne by name, nor feene by mee elfe-where : fome bearing fruit all the yeare, and almost all of them their leaves. To these adde those whole fields of Palmes (and yet no prejudice to the vader-growing Corne) of all others most delightfull. In the aforefaid Orchards there are great numbers of Cameleons; yet not eafily found, in that neere to the colour of that whereon they fit. A creature about the bignesse of an ordinary Lizard. His head vapropotionably bigge, his eyes great, and mooning without the writhing of his necke which is inflexible, his backe crooked, his skinne spotted with little tumors, lesse eminent as neerer the belly; his tayle flender and long : on each foot he hath flue fingers, three on the out-fide, and two on the infide flow of pace, but fwiftly extending his tongue, of a maruellous length for the proportion of his body, wherewith he preyes vpon Flyes, the top thereof being hollowed by Nature for that purpofe. So that deceived they be who thinke that they eat nothing, but onely live vpon Ayre; though furely Aire is their principall fullenance. For those that have kept them for a whole yeare together, could never perceive that they fed vpon any thing elfe, and might observe their bellies to swell, after they had exhausted the Ayre, and clofed their iawes; which they expanse against the rayes of the Sunne. Of colour greene, and of a duskey yellow : brighter and whiter towards the belly, yet spotted with blue, white, and red. They change not into all colours, as reported : laid vpon greene : the greene predominates; vpon yellow the yellow : but liid voon blue, or red, or white, the greene retayneth his hue not withitanding; onely the other spots receive a more orient lustre: laid vpon black, they looke black,

yet not without a mixture of greene. All of them in all places are not coloured alike. They are 60

faid to beare a deadly hatred to the Serpent, intomuch as when they espie them basking in the

Sunne, or in the fhade, they will climbe to the ouer-hanging branches, and let downe from

their mouthes a thred, like to that of a Spinsters, having at the end a little round drop, which

fhineth like Quickfiluer, that falling on their heads doth dethroy them : and what is more to be

former feet they will fo direct it, that it shall fall directly. Aloft, and neere the top of the Mountaine, against the South end of the Citie, stands the Caffle once the stately Mansion of the Manslack Sultans, and destroyed by Selymon) ascen- The Caffle. ded vnto by one way onely, and that hewen out of the Rocke; which rifing leifurely with eafie freepes and spacious diffances, (though of a great height) may bee on horse-backe without

difficultie mounted. From the top, the Citie by reason of the Palmes dispersed throughout, apdifficultie mountees. From the copying chief of the product of the reaster dispersed intrognous, appeared most beautifully, the whole Country below Jying open to the view. The Castle for graz, Mables mar-] that it femmes a Citie of it felfer immured with high wals, duided into partitions, and entred by sels. To doores of Iron; wherein are many spacious Courts, in times past the places of exercise. The

ancient buildings all minated, doe onely shew that they have beene sumptious, there beeing ancient continues at numerous one entry new cases are the state of the Sundayes, Mandayes, and Tueldayes the Chamfer as Aduocates, preferring the Suites of their Chenes, Fortie lanizaries he hath of his G ard, attyred like those at Confiantinople, the reft employed about the Countrey, for the most part are not the sonnes of Christians, yet faithfull who fuch as are under their charges, whom should they betray, they not onely lose their lines. but also the pay which is due to their Posteritie. Such is this Citie; the fairest in Twice, ver differing from what it was, as from a body beeing young and healthfull, doth the same growne 20 old and wasted with Difeases.

Now Catroithis great Citie is inhabited by Moores, Turkes, Negroes, lewes, Copies, Greekes. and Armenians: Who are here the poorest, and every-where the honestest; labouring painfully, Armenians. and living feberly. Thele that are not subject to the Time, if taken in warres, are freed from bondage who are, line freely, and pay no Tribute of Children as doe other Christians. This printledge chioy they, for that a certaine Armenian foretold of the greatnesse and glory of Ma-lib.3. bomet. They once were vider the Patriarke of Conflantenople : but about the Herefie of Entrches they fell from his gouernment, and communion with the Grecians, whom they deteff about all other 'rebaptizing fuch as convert to their Sect. They beleeve that there is but one hature in Christ, not by a commission of the dimne with the humane, as Empehes taught, but by a 30 conjunction, even as the foule is royned to the body. They deny the Reall Presence in the Sacrament, and administer it as the Copies doe : with whom they agree also, concerning Purgatorie, and not praying for the dead : as with the Greeker, that the Holy Ghoft proceedeth onely from the Father, and that the dead neither doe nor shall feele joy or torment vntill the day of

Their Patriarke hath his being at Tiberis in Perfia: in which Countrey they line wealthily and in good estimation. There are three fundred Bishops of that Nation; the Priests marry not twice : eat fielh but five times a yeare; and then left the people should thinke it a finne to eate, in regard of their abilinence. They erre that write, that the people abiliaine from all meates prohibited by the Mafacail Law; for Hogges fish they cate where they can, without 40 offence, to the Makometans. They obleme the Lent most strickly, yet eate siesh vpon Fridayes betweene Easter and Whitsontide. As for Images they adore them not. Here they have their Affemblies in obscure Chambers. Comming in (which was on a) Sunday in the after-noone) we found one fitting in the middeft of the Congregation, in habit not differing from the reft, reading on a Bible in the Chaldean Tongue. Anon the Bishop entred in a Hood and Vest of blacke, with a staffe in his hand, to which they attributed much holinesse. First, hee prayed, and then sung certaine Pfalmes, affisted by two or three; after all Jung iountly, at interims praying to themselves : resembling the Turkes in the positure of their bodies, and often proftrations; the Bishop excepted; who erecting his hands stoot all the while with his face to the Altar. The Seruice ended, one after another doe so kiffe his hand, and bestow their Almes, he laying the other on their heads, and bleffing them. Laftly, prescribeth succeeding Fasts and Festivals. Where is to be noted, that they fast upon the

Day of the Natinitie of our Saujour. Here also is a Monasterie of Greeke Coloieros, belonging vnto the capitall Monastery of Saint Greeke Katherine of Mount Sina, from Cairo fome eight dayes journey ouer the Deferts; faid to bee the daughter of King Cofta, a King of Cyprus, who in the time of Maxentine connected many vnto Christ. Tortured on a Wheele, and finally beheaded at Alexandria (where two goodly Pillars of Theban Marble (though halfe swallowed with ruines) preserve the memory of the place,) the was conveyed (as they affirme) by an Angell, and buried in this Mountaine. It hath three tops of a maruellous height : that on the West-fide of old called Mount Horeb, where God ap-62 Peared to Mofes in a bush, fruitfull in pastorage; tarre lower, and shadowed when the Sunne arifeth by the middlemost, that whereon God gaue the Law vnto Mofes. The Monastery stands at the foot of the mountaine, refembling a Castle, with an Iron doore; wherein they shew the Tombe of the Saint much visited by Pilgrims, from whence the top by fourteene thouland steps of ftone is ascended, where stands a ruined Chappell. A plentifull Spring descendeth from thence

and watering the Valley below, is againe drunke up by the thirftie fand. This strong Monastee rie is to entertayne all Pilgrims, (for there is no other place of entertainment) hauing an annuall Resenue of fixtie thousand Dollars from Christian Princes. Of which foundation fixe and twentie other depend, dispersed through divers Countries. They give also daily Almes to the Arabs, to be the better fecured from out-rage. Yet will they not fuffer them to enter, but let ie downe from the Battlements. Their Orchard aboundeth with excellent Fruites : amoneft which Apples, rare in these Countries, transferred from Damasco. They are neither subiest to Pope, nor Patriarke, but haue a Superintendent of their owne, at this prefent in Cairo. Thefa here made vs a collation, where I could not but observe their gulling in of Wine with a deare felicitie, whereof they have their provision from Candy.

During our abode here, a Garuan went foorth with much folemnitiv, to meet and relieue the ereat Caruan in their returne from Meche , which confisheth of many thoulands of Pilerims that trauell veerely thither in denotion and for Merchandize; every one with his bandroll in his hand, and their Camels gallantly trickt (the Alcoran carried voon one, in a precious case covered over with needle-worke, and laid on a rich pillow, inuironed with a number of their chanting Priests) guarded by divers companies of Souldiers, and certaine field peeces. Forty easie dayes Journey it is distant from hence : divided by a wildernesse of land, that lyeth in drifts, and dangerously mooueth with the wind , through which they are guided in many places by

starres, as ships in the Ocean.

Then Care no Citie can be more populous, nor better ferued with all forts of prouision. Here hatch they egges by artificiall heat in infinite numbers , the manner as seene thus briefly. In a parrow entry on each fide flood two rowes of Ouens, one over another. On the floores of the lower they lay the offals of flaxe; over those mats, and upon them their egges, at least fixe thouland in an Ouen. The floores of the vpper Ouens were as rooffes to the vnder , grated oner like Kilnes, onely having runnels in the middle, with covers vnto them. These gratings are coursed with Mats, on them three inches thicke lyeth the dry and pulnerated dung of Camels, Buffoloes, &c. At the hither and farther fides of those vpper Quens are Trenches of Lome : a handfull deepe, and two handfuls broad. In thefe they burne of the forefaid dung, which gineth a smothering heat without visible fire. Vnder the mouthes of the vpper Ouens are connevances for imoke, having round roofes, and vents at the top to flut and to open. Thus lye the Egges in the lower Ouens for the space of eight dayes, turned daily and carefully looks to that the heate be but moderate. Then call they the bad from the good, by that time diffinguishable cholding them betweene a Lampe and the Eye) which are two parts of three for the most part. Two dayes after they put out the fire, and conuey by the passage in the middle, the one halfe into the voper Quens : then shutting all close, they let them alone for ten dayes longer, at which time they become disclosed in an instant. This they practise from the beginning of lanuary vntill the midft of lune, the Egges being then most fit for that purpose; neither are they (as reported) prejudiced by Thunder : yet thefe declare that imitated Nature will neuer be equalled, all of them being in some part defective or monstrous.

Most of the Inhabitants of Carro consist of Merchants and Artificers: yet the Merchants frequent no forrein Marts. All of a Trade keepe their shops in one place, which they shut about the houre of fine, and folace themselves for the rest of the day, Cookes excepted, who keepe theirs open till late in the evening. For few, but fuch as have great Families dreffe meate in their houses, which the men dee buy ready drest; the women too fine fingerd to meddle with houswifry, who ride abroad ypon pleafure on eafie-going Affes, and tye their Husbands to the benevolence that is due; which if neglected, they will complaine to the Magistrate, and procure a Diuorcement, Many practitioners here are in Phylick, inuited thereunto by the flore of Simples brought hither, and here growing, an Art wherein the Egyptians have excelled from the

beginning. Rue whole-

A kind of Rue is here much in requelt, wherewith they perfume themselues in the mornings, not onely as a prefervative against infection, but esteeming it prevalent against hurtfull spirits. So the Barbarians of old accustomed to doe with the Roots of wild Galingal. There are in this Citie, and have beene of long, a fort of people that doe get their livings by the shewing of feats Feats by birds with Birds and Beafts, exceeding therein all fuch as have beene famous among ft vs. I have heard a Rauen to speake so perfectly, as it hath amazed me. They wie both their throats and tongues in vetering of founds, which other Birds doe not, and therefore more fit for that purpole. Seabeer the Father, reports of one that was kept in a Monasterie heard by him; which, when hungry, would call voon Comade, the Cooke, so plainly, as often mistaken for a man. I have seene them make both Degges and Goats to fet their foure feet on a little turned Pillar of wood, about a foot high, and no broader at the end then the palme of a hand, climing from one to two, fet on 60 the top of one another, and so to the third and fourth; and there turne about as often as their

Masters would bid them. They carry also dancing Camels about, taught when young, by set-

ting them on a hot hearth, and playing all the while on an Instrument : the poore beast through

the extremity of heat lifting up his feet one after another. This practife they for certaine moneths together, fo that at length whenfoeuer he heareth the fidule, he will fall a dancing. Affes they will teach to doe fuch tricks, as if posselled with reason: to whom Bankes his horse would

have proved but a Zany. The time of our departure proroged, we rode to Matarea, fue miles North-east of the Citim Matarea, By the way we faw land cast vpon the earth, to moderate the fertility. Here they say, that our Saujour, and the bleffed Virgin, with Iofepb, reposed themselues, as they fled from the fury of Hered, when ohpressed with thirst, a Fountaine foorthwith burt forth at their feet to refresh them. We faw a Well environed with a poore mud wall, the water drawne vp by " Buffolos in- Salazieus tow; them. We faw a Well enuironed with a poore mud wall, the watch dawne by Danji and the second dates to to a little Ciferne; from whence it ran into a lauer of Marble within a small Chappell, by the preport(ashe Moores (in contempt of Christians) spitefully defiled. In the wall there is a little concaue lined faith himselfe with fiveet wood (diminished by affectors of relicks) and smoked with incense in the fole, a secting it) that ftone of Porphyr, whereon (they fay) she did set our Sauiour. Of so many thousand Wells (a from Sunday thing most miraculous) this onely affordeth gustable waters, and that so excellent, that the annone will Monday more than the results of the control when they craffe for any Monday more time to exhauft it, it fendeth foorth of it felfe fo plentialla ffreame, as able to turne an ouer-fall not libeurin Mill. Paffing through the Chappell, it watereth a pleasant Orchard; in a corner whereof there the drawing standeth an ouer-growne fig-tree, which opened (as they report) to receive our Savicur and his Pol water, mother, then hardly eccaping the purfuers; clofing against this purfuer as pair; then against though rigid distilling, as now it remainst. A large hole there is through one of the fides of the learner with thirpst distilling, as now it remainst. dividing, as now it remaineth. A large hole there is through one of the fides of the leaning 20 bulke : this (they fay) no baftard can thred, but shall sticke tast by the middle. The tree is all to be-hackt for the wood thereof, reputed of fourraigne vertue. But I abuse my time, and pro-

noke my Reader. In an inclosure adjoyning, they shewed vs a plant of Balme, the whole remainder of that flore which this Orchard produced, destroyed by the Turkes, or enny of the Icust, as by them reported, being transported out of Iury, in the dayes of Herod the Great, by the commandement of Antonius, at the fuite of Cleopatra; but others fay, brought hither out of Arabia Felix, at the coit of a Saracen Sultan.

The Pyramides viewed, SPHENT and other antiquities. Journey from Cairo to Gaza.

Day or two after, wee croffed the Nilus. Three miles beyond on the left hand left Strange, If the we the place whereupon Good-friday the armes and legs of a number of men ap. dealing be as peare stretched foorth of the earth, to the assonishment of the multitude. This I true as the peare itertched foorth of the earth, to the artoninment of the intittedet. This a telling, have heard confirmed by [briftians, Mahometans, and lewes, as seene upon their

feuerall faiths. An impostury perhaps contriued by the water-men, who fetching them from 40 the Mummes; (whereof there are an vnconfumeable number) and keeping the mystery in Mummes their families, doe sticke them over night in the fand, obtaining thereby the yeer-ly Ferrying ouer of many thousand of passengers. Three or foure miles further, on the right hand, and in fight, athwart the Plaine, there extendeth a causey supported with Arches five Furlongs long, ten paces high, and five in breadth, of fmooth and figured from; built by the builder of the Pyramides, for a passage ouer the soft and unsupporting earth with weighty carriages. Now having ridden through a goodly Plaine, some twelve miles over (in that place the whole breadth

of Egypt) we came to the foot of the Labyan Defarts. Full West of the Citie, close vpon these Desarts, aloft on a Rockie Lewell adioyning to the Valley, stands those three Pyramides (the barbarous Monuments of produgality and vante- Pyramides) 50 glory) fo vinuerfally celebrated. The name is derived from a flame of fire, in regard of their shape; broad below, and sharpe aboue, like a pointed Diamond. By such the ancient did exprefle the original of things, and that formeleffe forme-taking substance. For as a Pyramis beginning at a point, and the principall height, by little and little dilateth into all parts : fo Nature proceeding from one vindeuidable Fountaine (euen God the Soueraigne Effence) recei-

neth divertitie of formes, effused into leverall kinds and multitudes of figures; vniting all in the furreame head from whence all excellencies iffue.

Most manifest it is, that these, as the rest, were the Regall Sepulchers of the Egyptians. The greatest of the three, and chiefe of the Worlds seuen wonders, being square at the bottome, is 60 jupposed to take vp eight Acres of ground. Euery square being three hundred single paces in length, the square at the top conditing of three stones onely, yet large enough for three score to stand upon : afcended by two hundred and fiftie five steps, each step above three feet high, of a breadth proportionable. No ftone so little throughout the whole, as to be drawne by our Carriages, yet were these hewen out of the Troian mountaynes, farre off in Arabia, so called of the Fffff 3



Captine Traine, brought by Menelan into Egyp, and there afterward planted. A wonder how conneyed hither : how fo mounted, a greater. Twentie yeares it was a building , by three hun- 20 dred threefcore and fixe thousand men continually wrought vpon : who onely in Radishes, Garlicke, and Onions, are faid to have confirmed one thousand and eight hundred Talents. By these and the like Insentions exhausted they their Treasure, and employed the people, for feare left fuch infinite wealth should corrupt their Successors, and dangerous idlenesse beget in the Subied a defire of innouation.

Yet this hath beene too great a morfell for Time to denoure; having flood, as may be probably conjectured, about three thousand and two hundred yeares; and now rather old then ruinous: yet the North-side most worne, by reason of the humiditie of the Northerne wind, which here is the moistest. The top at length we ascended with many pauses and much difficultie, from whence with delighted eyes we beheld that fourraigne of streames, and most excellent of Coun- 40 tries. Southward and neare hand the Mannes: a-farre off divers huge Pyramides: each of which, were this way, might supply the repute of a wonder. During a great part of the day it caffeth no shadow on the Earth, but is at once illuminated on all sides. Descending againe, on the Eastfide, below, from each corner equally distant, we approched the entrance, seeming heretofore to have beene closed up, or so intended, both by the place it selfe, as appeareth by the following Picture, and conveyances within.

Into this our Imizaries discharged their Harquebuses, lest some should have skulkt within to have done vsa mischiefe, and guarded the mouth whilst wer entryd, for feare of the wilds Arabs. To take the better footing we put off our shooes, and most of our apparell: foretold of the heate within, not inferiour to a Stone. Our guide (a Moore) went foremost : every one of of ws with our lights in our hands. A most dreadfull passage, and no lesse cumbersome; not about a yard in breadth, and foure feet in height : each stone contayning that measure. So that alwayes itooping, and sometimes creeping', by reason of the rubbidge, we descended (not by staires, but as downe the steepe of a hill) a hundred feet : where the place for a little circuit' enlarged; and the fearefull defeent continued, which, they fay, none ever durft attempt any farther. Saue that a Balla of Caire, curious to learch into the fecrets thereof, caufed divers condemned persons tovindertake the performance; well stored with lights and other prouision; and that some of them ascended againe wel-nigh thirtie miles off in the Deserts. A Fable denised onely to beget wonder. But others have written, that at the bottome there is a spacious Pit eightie and fixe Cubits' deepe, filled at the ouer-flow by concealed Conduits: in the middest a little Hand, and on that 60 a Tombe contayning the bodie of Cheops, a King of Egypt, and the builder of this Pyramis: which with the truth hath a greater affinitie. For fince I have beene told by one out of his owne experience, that in the vttermost depth there is a large square place (though without water) into which he was led by another entry opening to the South, knowne but vnto few (that now



CHAP. 8. \$-3. Their exact and curious building of the Pyramides.

open being that by some order and came up at this place. A turning on the right hand leadeth into a little roome, which by reason of the noysome fauour, and vneasie passage wee refused to enter. Clambering over the mouth of the aforefaid Dungeon, we ascended as you the bow of 40 an Arch, the way no larger then the former, about a hundred and twentie feet. Here we passed through a long entry which led directly forward; fo low, that it tooke even from vs that vaease benefit of stooping. Which brought vs into a little roome with a compast roofe, more long the broad, of polished Marble, whole grant-like smell, halfe full of rubbidge forced our quicke returne. Climing also over this entrance, we ascended as before, about an hundred and twentie feet higher. This entrie being of an exceeding height, yet no broader from fide to fide then a man may fathome, benched on each fide, and clofed about with admirable Architecture, the Marble fo great, and fo cumningly ioyned, as had it beene hewen through the lining Rocke. At the top we entred into a goodly Chamber, twentie foot wide, and fortie in length, the roofe of a manuellou beight; and the ftones fo great, that eight floores it, eight roofes it, eight flagge the ends, and fixteene the fides, all of well wrought Theban Marble. Athwart the roome at the vpper end there standeth a Tombe, vncouered, empty, and all of one stone; brest high, feuen feet in length, not foure in breadth, and founding like a Bell. In this, no doubt, lay the bodie of the Builder. They erecting such costly Monuments, not onely out of a vaine oftentation : but beeing of opinion, that after the diffolution of the flesh the soule should furuine; and when thirtie fixe thousand yeares were expired, againe bee loyned wnto the selfefame bodie, restored vnto his former condition : gathered in their conceits from Astronomicall demonstrations. Against one end of the Tombe, and close to the wall, there openeth a Pit with a long and narrow mouth, which leadeth into an under Chamber. In the walles on each fide of the vpper roome, there are two holes, one opposite to another; their ends not discernable, nor 60 bigge enough to be crept into : footie within; and made, as they fay, by a flame of fire which darted through it. This is all that this huge mafe contayneth within his darkefome entrailes:

Herodotus reports that King Cheeps became so poore by the building thereof, that hee was The Cheeps compelled to profitute his Daughter, charging her to take whatforuer fhee could get : who af-

recting her particular glorie, of her feuerall Customers demanded feuerall stones, with which the erected the fecond Pyramis; farre lesse then the former, smoothe without, and not to be entred. The third which standeth on the higher ground, is very small if compared with the other: vet faith both Herodotss and Strabo, greater in beautie, and of no leffe cost: beeing all built of Touch-stone: difficult to be wrought, and brought from the farthest Athiopian mountaines: but furely not fo; yet intended they to have covered it with Thehan Marble; whereof a great quantitie lyeth by it. Made by Mycerins the Sonne of Cheops; some say, by a Curtizan of Naucretis, called Dorica by Sappho the Poetrelle, beloued of her Brother Caracus, who fraught with Wines, oft fayled hither from Lesbos. Others name Rhodope, another of that Trade: at the first fellow slaue with Eppe the writer of Fables : who obtaying her libertie dwelt in this 10 Citie : where fuch in some fort were reputed noble. But that the should get by whoring such a maile of Treasure, is vncredible.

Some tell a Storie, how that one day washing herselfe, an Eagle snatcht away her shoot and bearing it to Memphis, let it fall from on high into the lap of the King. Who aftonished with the accident, & admiring the forme, forth-with made a learch for the owner throughout all his Kingdome. Found in Naucretis, and brought vnto him, he made her his Queene, and after her

The Coloffia.

death enclosed her inchis Monument. She lived in the dayes of Amalia.

Not farre off from these the Carlow doth stand, vnto the mouth consisting of the natural rocke, as if for fach a purpois aduanced by Nature, the refe of huge fist fitness laid thereon, wrought altogether into the forms of an exhibition woman, and adored heretofore by the 20 Countrey people a manufacture of the property of the feet in compasse, when the whole is but fixtie foothigh, the face is something disfigured by Tree or in ingrastion of the Mages, detecting Images. The fore-faid Author (together with others) doe called Sphra. The vyper part of a Sphrar refembled a Maide, and the lower a Lion; whereby the Egyptians defigured the increase of the River, (and consequently of their riches) then rifing when the Sunne is in Leo and Vago. This but from the shoulders vpward furmounteth the ground, though Play give it a belly, which I know not how to reconcile vnto harmounteen the grounds concept a top good activity. A standard and now to reconcile who the truth, vollette the fand doe coure the remainder. By a Softyme the Egyptians in their Hieroglyphickes prefented an Harlot, having an amiable and alluring face plus withfull the tyramnie, 20 and rapacitie of a Lion; exercised over the poore heart-broken, and voluntarily perishing

The Images of these they also erected before the entrances of their Temples; declaring that fecrets of Philosophy, and facred Mysterie, should be folded in Enigmaticall expressions, separated from the vinderstanding of the prophane multitude.

Fine miles South-east of these, and two West of the River, towards which inclineth this brow of the mountaine, flood the Regall Citie of Memphis: the ftrength and glory of old E. brows of the mountaine, trood the Acquait view of Acampana the Hittingso and gray of old an apply, built by Quées, and called Manpha, by the name of his Daughter, compressed (as they fame) by Natus, in the likeness of a Boll. In this was the Temple of $\sim p'_{p'}$ (which is the same with Ofiris) as Ofiris with Nilus, Bacchus, Apollo, &c.

But why spend I time about that that is not? The very ruines now almost ruinated, yet 40 some few impressions are left, and divers throwne downe, Statues of monstrous resemblances, a fearce fufficient testimonie to shew to the curious feeker, that there it had beene.

This hath made some erromoully affirme old Memphis to have beene the same with new Cair ro: new in respect of the other. But those that haue both seene and writ of the former, report it to have flood three Schoenes about the South Angle of Delta, (each Schoene contaying five miles at the least, and sometimes seuen and a halfe, differing according to their seueral cuflomes) which South-angle is diffant but barely foure miles from Cairo. Besides, these Pyramides appertaining vnto Memphis, affirmed to have flood free miles North-weft of that Citie. standing directly West, and full twelue from this. But the most pregnant proofe hereof are 10 the Mummes, (lying in a place where many generations have had their Sepultures) not farre aboue Memphis, neere the brow of the Libyan Defart, and ftreightning of the Mountaines, from Cairo wel-nigh twenty miles. Nor likely it is that they would so faire carry their dead, having as convenient a place adjoyning to the Cities.

These we had purposed to have seene, but the chargeable guard, and seare of the Arabs, there then folemnizing their festival, being besides to have laine out al night, made vs content our selus with what we had heard; having before seene divers of the embalmed bodies, and some broken vp, to be bought for Dollars a peece at the Citie. In that place are some indifferent great, and a number of little Pyramides, with Tombes of feuerall fashions: many ruinated, as many violated by the Moores and Arabians, who make a profit of the dead, and infringe the priviledge 60 of Sepulchers. These were the graves of the ancient Agyptians, from the first inhabiting of that Country; coucting to be there interred, as the place imposed to contain the body of Ofini.

Vider every one, or wherefocuer lies stones not naturall to the place, by removaing the same, descents are discouered like the narrow mouths of Wells (having holes in each side of the walls

to descend by, vet so troublesome, that many refuse to goe downe, that come thither of purpose) to octorn by years tourselouse, tax many tense of goe downton to mainter of purpose fome well-night ten fathoms deepe, leading intolong vaults (belonging, as should feeme, to particular families) hewe out of the Rocke, with Pillars of the fame. Betweene every Arch the torfes lie rancht one by another, shrowded in a number of folds of linnen, fwathled with bands of the same: the brefts of diuers being stained with Hieroglyphicall Characters. Within their bellies are painted papers, and their Gods inclosed in little Models of stone or mettall, some of the shape of men, in coat-armours, with the heads of Sheepe, Hawkes, Dogs, &c. others of Cats, Beetles, Monkies, and such like. Of these I brought away diuers with mee; such in fimilitude.

CHAP.8.5.3.



A. This with the bead of a Montie or Babon Should feeme by what is faid before, to have beene were S. Anubis, whereof Virgil,

> The Monker-Gods, Anubis barking, buckle With Neptune, Venus, Pallas.

Omnigenumq; deum monfira,& latrator Andis. Contra Neptunum & Venerem, contraq; Minerus, Tela teneire. En.18.

Some fay, he mat the eldest some of Oliris, being signored with the bead of a dogge, in that he game a dagge for his Enseme. Others, that wader this shape they adored Mercurie, on regard of the sagacities of that creature. The Dogge throughout Egypt was wanters ally worshipped; but especially by she Cynopolites.

40 C. Thefe of Sait ded principally worship the sheepe, it should seeme in this forme.

D. This I consessure (bow ever value) bath the bead of a Hawke, being generally worshipped by the Egyptians, under which forme they presented Ositis.

L. I know not what to make of it (for the original is greatly defaced) unlesse it be a Lyon; under

which (hape they adored Ifis.

F. Not fo much as the Beetle, but received Dinine Honours : and why? fee Plutat. in Ilis and Ofiris,

G. The Cat all generally adored : they bonowing such creatures for that their vanquish and run-away Gods tooke on them such shapes to escape the furie of pursuing Typhon.

So The Linnen pulled off (in colour, and like in fubstance to the inward filme betweene the Barke and the bole, long dried, and brittle) the body appeareth folid, vncorrupt, and perfect in all his dimensions : whereof the musculous parts are browne of colour, some blacke, hard as stone-pitch. and hath in Phylicke an operation not valike, though more Soueraigne. In the preparing of thefe, to keepe them from putrifaction, they drew out the braines at the notirils with an inftrument of iron, replenishing the same with preservative spices. Then cutting up the belly with an Libiopian ftone, and extracting the bowels, they clenfed the infide with wine, and ftuffing the lame with a composition of Cassia, Myrrhe, and other odours, closed it againe. The like the poorer fort of people effected with Bitumen (as the infide of their skuls and bellies yet testifie) fetcht from the lake of Afthaines in Imy. So did they with the inyce of Cedars; which by the

60 extreame bitternesse, and ficcative faculty, not onely forthwith subdued the cause of interior corruption, but hath to this day (a continuance of about three thouland yeeres) preserved them vncorrupted. Such is the differing nature of that tree, procuring life as it were to the dead, and death to the living. This done, they wrapt the body with linnen in multitudes of folds, besmeared with Gum, in manner of seare-cloth. Their ceremonies (which were many) persor-

med, they layd the corps in a boate, to be wafted ouer Acherufis, a lake on the South of the Cirie by one onely whom they called Charan, which gaue to Orphess the insention of his infernal Ferri-man : About this lake stood the shady Temple of Heene, with the Ports of Continued Oblision, senarated by barres of brasse, the original of like fables. When landed on the other fide, the body was brought before certaine Judges, to whom if continued of an euillife; they, deprined it of buriall; if otherwise, they fuffered it to be interred as aforefaid. So fuse principal were they in these houses of death, so carefull to presente their carkastes. For somuch as the soule. knowing it felfe by divine inflinct immortall, doth defire that the body (her beloued common on) might inioy (as farre foorth as may be) the like felicitie : gining , by erecting fuch loftie Pyramides and those dues of funerall, all possible eternity. Neither was the losse of this less to feared, then the obtaining coueted.

Returning by the way that we came and having repast the Nilm, we inclined on the right hand to fee the raines of the old Citie adjoyning to the South of Cairo, called formerly Babylon, of certaine Babylonians then fuffered to inhabite by the ancient Egyptian Kings; who builta Castle in the selfe same place where this now standeth, described before, which was long after the Garrison Towns of one of the three Legions, fet to defend this Countrey in the time of the Romanes, and anciently gaue the name of Babylon vnto this Citie below, now called Mifrulbe-tich by the Arabians, laid to have beene built by Omar the fuccessor vnto Mahomes; but surely, rather reedified by him then founded, having had in it fuch flore of Christian Churches as reftified by their ruines. We past by a mighty Cifterne closed within a Tower, and flanding upon 20 an in-let of the Riner, built as they heare fay, at the charge of the lewes, to appeale the anger of the King, incenfed by them against the innocent Christians; who by the removing of a Montaine (the taske imposed upon their faith) converted him unto their Religion, and his displeafure your their accusers. This serverth the Castle with water running along an aquaduct borne wpon three hundred Arches. The raines of the Citie are great, fo were the buildings; amongst which, many of Christian Monasteries and Temples, one lately (the last that stood) throwns by this Baffa (as they fay) for that it hindred his profpect: If fo, he furely would not have gi-uen leave vnto the Patriarke, to rebuild it; for which he was spitefully spoken of by the Moores, as a suspected favourer of the Christian Religion, who subverted forthwith what he had begun, Whereupon the worthy Cerill made a Voyage vnto Constantinople, to procure the Grand Signi- 30 ors Commandement for the support of his purpose, when by the Greeks there, not altogether. with his will, he was chosen their Patriarch, but within a short space displanted (as the manner is) by the bribery of another, he returned vnto Coro. Refides, here is a little Chappell dedicated to our Lady, vnderneath it a grott, in which it is faid that the hid her felfe, when purfued by Hered. Much frequented it is by the Christians, as is the Tombe of Nafiffa (here being) by the Mahometans.

The few inhabitants that here be are Greekes and Armemans : Here we faw certaine great Serraglies, exceeding high, and prope up by butterfles. Thefe they call the Granaries of Jefeb , wherin he hoarded corne in the yeer of plenty against the succeding famine. In all there be festen, three flanding and imployed to the felte fame vie, the other ruined. From thence vp the River for twenty miles space, there is nothing but ruines: thus with the day we ended our Progresse.

Vpon the fourth of March we departed from Caire, in the habites of Pilgrims, foure of vs English, conforted with three Italians, of whom one was a Priest, and another a Physician. For our selues we hired three Camels with their keepers; two to carry vs, and the third for our prouilion. The price we shall know at Gaza, upon the dividing of the great Carvan, answerable to the fuccesse of the journey. We also hired a Copie for halfe a Dollor a day, to be our interpreter. and to attend on vs. Our prouision for fo long a Voyage we bore along with vs , viz. Bifcot. Rice, Raifins, Figs, Dates, Almonds, Olines, Oyle, Sherbets, &c. buying Pewter, Braffe, and fuch like implements as if to fet up house-keeping. Our water we carried in Goat skins. Wee rid in shallow Cradles (which we bought also) two on a Camell, harboured aboue, and covered with linnen, to vexceeding meafie; not to to the people of the Countrys, who fit crofted by which anturall falicity. That night we pitched by Hangia; fome fouretteme miles from the Citic. In the evening came the Captaine, a Tarke, well mounted, and attended on, Here we stayest the next day following, for the gathering together of the Carnen; paying foure Madeins a Camell vnto them of the Village. There as (those elsewhere) doe nightly guard vs. making good whatfoeuer is stolne. Euer and anon one crying Washed, is answered, Elouebby another (countly agnifying one onely God) which pating about the Carnan, doth affure them that all is in fafety. Amongst vs were diners Iowih women: in the extremity of their age yndertaking fo wearisome a journey, onely to die at Ierusalem, bearing along with them the bones of their Parents, Husbands, Children, and Kinsfolke; as they doe from all other parts 69 where they can conveniently. The Merchants brought with them many Negros; not the worst of their Merchandizes. These they buy of their Parents, some thirty dayes journey aboue, and on the West side of the River. As the wealth of others consists in multitudes of cattell so theirs in the multitude of their children, whom they part from with as little pattion; neuer after to

Hanna.

See Les.

be feene of heard of securing more the rice then condition of their flavery. These are defcended of Chus, the Sonne of curied Chan; as are all of that complexion. Not to by reason of thems Corfe their Seed, nor heat of the Climate, Ner of the Seyla, as some have supposed for neither haply, continuing still will other Races int ban Soyle product lack, nor that Race in other Soyles grow to better com-

will other faces in that 50 fe pleases the Curic of Now you 6 home in the Posteritie of Chus.

Black col
plexion : but rather from the Curic of Now you 6 home in the Posteritie of Chus.

Black col
plexion : but rather from the Church Caruan dillodged, and arteuen the next morning pie.

Bildelo. ched at Babele, which is in the Land of Colten. Paying two Madeines for a Camell, at midnight we departed from thence. Our Companions had their Cradles strucke downe through theneeligence of the Camellers, which accident taft wis behind the Caruan. In danger to haueto beene surprized by the Pealants, we were by a Spatie that followed, delivered from that mischiefe. About nine in the forenoone, we putched by Catara, where we payed foure Madeines

Here about, but necree the Nile, there is a certaine Tree, called Alchan, by the Arahs, the Therece Ala leanes thereof being dryed and reduced into powder, doe dye a reddilly yellow. There is yeare ready ly fpent of this through the Turkefb Empire, to the value of fourelcore thouland Sultanies. The women with it doe dye their haire and nayles, some of them their hands and fert; and not as few, the most of their bodies tempered onely with Gamme, and land on in the Burnia, that its may penetrate the deeper. The Christians of Bofna, Valachia, and Ruffia, doe vieit as well as the Mahametans. Trees also here be that doe bring forth Cottens. The next morning before day, we removed and came by nine of the clocke to Salbia, where we over-tooke the reft of the Salbia 20 Caruans all Christians of those Countries riding vpon Mules, and Asses. Who had procured leave to fer forward a day before; defirous to arrive by Palme Sunday at Ierusalem, (this Carvan, flaving ten dayes longer then accustomed, because of certaine prin ipall Merchants) but they

dust not by themselves venture ouer the mayne Deletts : which all this while wee had trented along and now were to pule through. along, and now weers o pale through.

In this beneath is the Lake Sirbones, called by the old Egyptions. the place of Typhone expiration, now Bayron, dissipling Egypt, from Syran, A place to luch as know trong, in the festioner. full of vnfuspected danger. Then two bundred furlangs long, being but narrow, and bordered on each fide with hils of fand, which borne into the water by the winds fo thickned the fame, 30 as nor by the eye to bee diffinguished from the part of the Continuat : by means whereof. whole Armies haus been educated. For the lands near hand feeming firms, a good way one, tred the farther of, and left no way of returning, but with a linguing crueltie swillowed the ingag d : whereupon it was called Barathrum. Now but a little Lake and waxing hale daily : the parlige long fince choaked vp which it had into the Sea. Close to this standeth the Mountaine Cuffin (no other then a huge mole of fand) famous for the Temple of Impiter, and Sepulchee of

Pompey, there obliquely buried by the pietie of a private Souldier; you whom hee is made by Lucan, to bellow this Epitaph:

Here the Great Pompey lyes, fo Fortune pleas'd 40 To infile this flone whom Cafars felfe would have Interr'd, before he should have mile a Graue.

Hic fires eft magnus, placet boc Fortuna fepulchrum Dicere Pempei: quo condi maluit illum Quam terra caruiff, Socci-

A 1.420

Who loft his head not farre from thence by the treacherie and commandement of the vinerates and the same of the vinerates and the vinerates are the vinerates and the vinerates are the vinerates and the vinerates are the vinerate full Ptolomie. His Tombe was sumptuously re-edified by the Emperour Adrian. North hereof lyes Idames, betweene Arabia, and the Sea extending to Indea.

The Suballee of Sahia intitted himfelfe to our Tent, who feeding on fuch prouision as we had. would in conclusion have fed vpon vs; had not our commandement (which flood vs in fourt

would in conclusion have red vpon ws; had not our commandement (which it took ws in fource sharffers) from the Balle of Carbo, and the fauture of the Captaine, by meanes of our Phylician, protected wisotherwile, right or wrong had bin but a filly plea to the charges of our triplicant, protected wisotherwile, right or wrong had bin but a filly plea to the charges are considered as with power. We feture mere all the France that have in the condition, we heard how he had for crued others, and reioviced not a little in being thus fortified against min. The whole Camarfies—the Camar ing now affembled, confifts of a thouland Hories, Nulles and Affes; a the filled had been red Camarfied. The far et the flips of Andria, their Seas are the Deferts. A Creature created for burthen, Sixe hundred weight is his ordinary load; yet will he carrie a thouland. When in lading or valading he lyes on his belly, and will rife (as it is faid) when laden proportionably to his firefigth, nor fuffer more to be laid on him. Foure dayes together hee will well travel without water, for a necoffitie fourteene : in his often belchings thrusting vp a Bladder, wherewith hee moystenetsi his mouth and throat, when in a Journey they cramme them with Barley dough. They are, as fome fay, the onely that ingender backward. Their paces flow, and intollerable hard, beeing 50 Withall vufure of foot, where neuer folittle flippery or vueuen. They are not made to amend

their paces when wearie, with blowes; but are encouraged by Songs, and the going before of their Keepers. A beaft gentle and tractable, but in the time of his Venery : then, as is remembring his former hard vlage, he will bite his Keeper, throw him downe and kicke him : fortie dayes continuing in that furie, and then returning to his former meeknesse. About their neckes they hang certaine Charmes included in Leather, and writ by their Dermifes, to defend them from mischances, and the poyson of ill eyes. Here we paid fine Madeines for a Camell.

Having with two dayes reft refreshed them, now to begin the worlt of their lourney, on the tenth of March We entred the mayne Deferts, a part of Atabiapetros: io called of Petros, the principall Citie, now Rasbalalab. On the North and West it borders on Syria and Egypt, South ward on Arabia Falix and the Red Sea; and on the East it hath Arabia the Defert : a barren and desolate Countrey bearing neither Graffe nor Trees , saue onely here and there a few Palmes which will not forfake these forfaken places. That little that growes on the Earth, is wild Hyfone, wheretwon they doe pasture their Camels, a Creature content with little, whose Milke and fielh is their principall infenance. They have no water that is fweet, all being a meere Will to dernesse of fand. The winds having rayled high Mountaynes, which lye in Drifts, according to the quarters from whence they blow.

About mid-night (the Souldiers beeing in the head of the Caruan) these Arabs affayled one Affaultof wild Rere. The clamour was great, and the Paffengers, together with their Leaders, fled from their Camels. I and my companion imagining the noise to bee onely an encouragement vnto one another, were left alone; yet preferred from violence. They carryed away with them divers Mules and Affes laden with Drugges, and abandoned by their Owners, not daring to flay too long nor cumber themselves with too much luggage, for feare of the Souldiers. These are defcended of Ismael, called also Sarracens of Sarra, which fignifieth a Defert, and faten, to milebit. And not onely of the place, but of the manner of their lives, for Sarrack imports as much as a Thiefe, as now, being given from the beginning vnto Theft and Rapine. They dwell in Tents, which they remoue like walking Cities, for opportunitie of prey, and benefit of pasturage. They acknowledge no Soneraigne, not worth the conquering, nor can they bee conquered, retyring to places impafiable for Armies, by reason of the rolling sands and penurie of all things. A Nation from the beginning vnmixed with others, boafting of their Nobilitie, & at this day hating all Mechanicall Sciences. They hang about the skirts of the habitable Countries; and having robbed, retyre with a maruellous celeritie. Those that are not detected persons, frequent the neighbouring Villages for prouision, and trafficke without molestation, they not daring to intreat them etilly. They are of meane statures, raw-boned, tawnie, having seminine voyces, of a fwift and noyfeleffe pace, behind you ere aware of them. Their Religion Mabi- ametanisme, glorying in that that the Impostor was thir Countriman: their Language extending as farre as that Religion extendeth. They ride on swift Horses (not misse-shapen, though leane) and patient of labour. They feed them twice a day with the milke of Camels, nor are they co steemed of, if not of sufficient speed to ouer-take an Ostridge. Of those there are store in the Deserts. They keepe in slockes, and oft affrighted the stranger Passenger with their searchill firecenes, appearing a farre off like a troupe of Horfemen. Their bodies are too heavie to bee fupported with their wings, which videlife for flight, doe ferue them onely to runne the more speedily. They are the simplest of Fowles, and Symbols of folly. What they find, they swallow, without delight, even flones and Iron. When they have laid their Egges, not leffe great then the bullet of a Culuerin (whereof there are great numbers to be fold in Caire) they leave them, and vamindfull where, fit on those they next meet with. The Arabi catch the young ones, running apace as soone as disclosed; and when fatted, doe eate them, so doe they some part of the Dromedanies, old, and fell their skinnes with the feathers ypon them. They ride allo on Dromedanies, like in finape, but leffe then a Çamell, of a immping gate, and interdible fixed. They will carries a man (yet vanif for butten) a hundred miles a days liuing without water, and with little food fairly

Offridges.

fied. If one of these Arabians undertake your conduct, he will performe it faithfully, neyther will any of the Nation molest you. They will leade you by vnknowne nearer wayes, and farther in foure dayes, then you can trauell by Caruan in fourteene. Their Weapons are Bowes, Darts, Stings, and long lauelings headed like Partifans. As the Turkes fit croffe-legged, fo doe they on their heeles, differing little in habit from the Rustick Emptians.

Ten: A Super-

Fraudes pietatis,

About breake of day we pitched by two Wels of brackish water, called the Wels of Due-dar. Hither followed the Subasse of Salkeia, with the Iewes which we left behind, who would not travell the day before, in that it was their Sabbath. Their Superstition had put them to much trouble and charge; as of late at Tunk it did to some paine. For a fort of them being to imbarke for Salonica, the wind comming faire on the Saturday, and the Master then hoyfing fayles, loth rewarded with to infringe their Law, and as loth to lose the benefit of that passage, to coozen their consciences, they hyred certayne Ianizaries to force them abourd, who tooke their money, made a ieft of beating them in earnest. At three of the clocke wee departed from thence, and an houre before mid-night pitched by the Caffle of Catie, about which there is nothing vegetiue, but a few folitary Palmes. The water bad, infomuch that that which the Cap- 60 taine drinkes is brought from Tina, a Sea-bordering Towne, and twelve miles distant. Threescore Souldiers lye here in Garrison. We paid a piece of Gold for every Camell, and halfea Dollar a piece for Horses, Mules and Asses, to the Captaine, besides, fine Madeines a Camell to the Arabi. It feemeth strange to me, how these Merchants can get by their Wares so far fetcht. and travelling through such a number of expences.

The thirteenth spent in paying of Caphar, on the fourteenth of March by five of the clocke we departed, andrefted about noone by the Wells of Slaues. Hither followed the Gouernour of Catie, accompanied with twenty horse, and pitched his tentbesides vs. The reason why her came with fo flight a Conduct, through a pallage fo dangerous (for there, not long before, a Carrier of three hundred Camels had beene borne away by the Arabs) was for that he was in fee with the chiefe of them, who vpon the payment of a certaine taxe, fecured both goods and paffengers. Of these there were divers in the company. Before midnight we dislodged, and by fixe the next morning, we pitched by another Well of brackish water, called the Wel of the mother of Affar. In the afternoone we departed. As we went , one would have thought the Sea

ther of explain. In the arternoone we depend on the special state of the Nitre. And no doubt, but much of these Desarts haue in times past beene Sea, manifested by the faltnesse of the foile, and shels that lie on the fand in infinite numbers. The next morning by fue of the clocke, we came to Ariffa, a small Castle, enuironed with a few houses: the Garrison confifting of a hundred Souldiers. This place is fomething better then Defart, two miles remoned from the Sea, and bleft with good water. Here we paid two Madeins for a Camell, and halfe as much for our Affes ; two of them for the most part rated vnto one of the other. On the feuenteenth of March, we dislodged betimes in the morning, refting about moone by the Wels of Feare; the earth here looking greene, yet waste, and vinhusbanded. In the evening we departed. Haumy paffed in the night by the Caitle Haniones, by the breake of day they followed vs Haniones; to gather their Caphar; being three Madeins vpon every Camell. The Coun rey from that

20 place pleafant, and indifferent fruitfull. By feuen of the clocke, we pitched clote vnder the Citie of Gaza.

And here we will leave him till our Asian opportunity doth remuite vs: returning now to the more Southerly and Westerly parts of Asia, passing from Nilus to Niger. Onely in the way, we will with our Author touch at Malea an African Iland, and with his eyes observe the

ð. IIII.

Arrivall at Malta, and observations there.

Ow out of fight of Candie, the Winds both flacke and contrary, we were forced to beare Northward of our course, vntill we came within view of Zant, where our Mafter purposed to put in (fince we could not shorten our way) but anon we difcouered fine failes making towards vs; and imagining them to be men of warre, made all things readic for defence. Butto our better comfort, they prooued all English, and bound for Fine English
England; with whom we conforted to furnish the ship with fresh water, and other provisions: sups.

they having supplied our necessities.

they naung tuppites our necessities. So on the fector of the Hauen that lies on the Eafl fide of the So on the fector of Tune being Sunday, we entred the Hauen that lies on the Eafl fide of the 40 Cities of Tatata, which we faluted with eighteene peccess of Ordanace, but we were not fuffered to come into the Cipie (chough eury hip had a neat Patent to flew, that those places from whence they came were free from the infection) nor fuffered to depart, when the wind blew faire : which was within a day or two after. For the Gallies of the Religion were then fetting forth, to make some attempt vpon Barbarie. The reason thereof, left being taken by the Pyrats, or touching vpon occafionac Tripoli, Tunis, or Argire, their defignes might be by compulion, or voluntarily reuesled : nor would they fuffer any Frigat of their owne, for feare of surprisall, to goe out of the Hauen, vntill many dayes after that the Gallies were departed. But because the English were so strong (a great ship of Holland putting also in to seeke company) and that they

incented to make no more Ports: On the fixt of lune, they were licenced to fet faile, the Masters having the night before in their severall long-boats, attended their returns of the great Ma-ster (who had been abroad in his Gallie to view a Fort that then was in building) and welcomed him home with one and twenty peeces of Ordnance.

But no intreaty could get me abroad, choosing rather to vndergoe all hazards and hardnesse whatfoeuer, then fo long a Voyage by fea, to my nature fo irkefome. And to was I left alone on a naked promontory right against the Citie, remote from the concourse of people, without prouision, and not knowing how to dispose of my selfe. At length a little boat made towards me, rowed by an officer appointed to attend on strangers that had not practicke, left others by comming into their company, (hould receive the infection; who carried me to the hollow hanging

of a rocke, where I was for that night to take vp my lodging; and the day following to be conueied by him vnto the Lazaretta, there to remaine for thirty or forty dayes before I could be admitted into the Citie. But befold, an accident, which I rather thought at the first to have been Curioficie of a vision, then (as I found it) reall. My guardian being departed to fetch me fome victuals, laid fittingers. along, and muling on my prefent condition, a Phalucco arriveth at the place. Out of which

there stept two olde women; the one made mee doubt whether shee were so or no, shee drew Greekmothers, her face into formany formes, and with fuch anticke gestures stared vpon me. These two did Greenmonters, bands of the Carpet on the rocke, and on that a table-cloth, which they furnished with varietie of the choycett viands. Anon, another arrived, which fet a Gallant ashoare with his two Amarolaes, attired like Nymphs, with Lutes in their hands, full of disport and forcery. For lietle would they faffer him to eate, but what he received with his mouth from their fingers. Sometimes the one would play on the Lute, whill the other fang, and laid his head in her lap: their false eyes looking upon him, as their hearts were troubled with passions. The attending Hags had no fmall part in the Comedie, administring matter of myrth with their ridiculous moppings. Who indeed (as lafter heard) were their mothers borne in Greece, and by them to brought hither to trade amongst the vamarried fraternitie. At length, the French Captaine for fuch he was, and of much regard) came and intreated me to take a part of their banquet; which my stomacke perswaded me to accept of. He willed them to make much of the Forestier : but they were not to be taught entertainment, and grew fo familiar, as was to neither of our likings. But both he and they, in pittie of my hard lodging, did offer to bring me into the Citie by night (an offence, that if knowne, is punished by death) and backe againe in the morning. Whilest they were vrging me thereunto, my guardian returned; with him a Maltefe, whole father was Impudence of an English man, he made acquainted therewith, did by all meanes dehort them. At length (the Captaine having promifed to labour by admittance into the Citie) they departed. When a good way from thoure, the Curtizans ftript themselves, and leapt into the Sea, where they violated all the prescriptions of modestie. But the Captain the next morning was not vnmindfull of his promite, foliciting the Great Mafter in my behalfe, as he face in Counfell; who with the affent of the great Croffes, granted me Pratticke. So I came into the Citie, and was kindly entertained in the house of the foresaid Maltese, where for three weekes space, with much con-

Malta doth lie in the Lybian Sea, right betweene Tripolis of Barbaris and the South-east anele of Siculia : distant an hundred fourescore and ten miles from the one, and threescore from the other; containing also threescore miles in circuit, called formerly Melita, of the abundance of honey. A Countrey altogether Champion, being no other then a rock couered ouer with earth, but two feet deepe where the deepest; having few trees, but such as beare fruit; whereof of all forts plentifully furnished , to that their wood they have from Sicilia , yet there is a kind of great Thiftle, which together with Cow-dung ferues the Countrey people for fuell, who need not much in a Clime to exceeding hot; hotter by much then any other which is feated in the fame parallell, yet sometimes temperated by the comfortable winds, to which it lies open. Riuers here are none, but fundry fountaines. The foile produceth no graine but Barley, bread made of it, and Oliues, is the Villagers ordinary diet : and with the straw they sustaine their Cattell, Commin-feed, Annis-feed, and honey, they have here in abundancei, whereof they make Merchandize, and an indifferent quantity of Cotten-wooll; but that the best of all other. The inhabitants die more with age then difeases, and heretofore were reputed fortunate for their excellencie in Arts and curious Weauings. They were at first a Colonie of the Phanicians, who ex-ercising Merchandize as farre as the great Ocean, betooke themselues to this lland; and by the commoditie of the Hauen, attained too much riches and honour (who yet retains fome print of the Punicke Language, yet so that they now differ not much from the Moresco) and built in the middest thereof the Citie of Melita (now called old Malia) giving or taking a name from the Iland. Now whether it came into the hands of Spaine with the Kingdome of Sieilia, or won from the Moores by their swords, (probable both by their Language, and that it belongeth to Africa) I am ignorant: but by Charles the fifth it was given to the Knights of the Rhodes.

This order of Knight-hood received their denomination from Iohn the charitable Patriarch of Alexandria, though vowed to Saint lobn Baptist as their Patron. Their first feat was the Hospitall of Saint John in Ierusalem (whereupon they were called Knight-hospitallers) built 10 by one Gerrard, at such time as the Holy land became famous by the successfull expeditions of the Christians; who drew divers worthy persons into that societie, approved by Pope Galasius the second. They by the allowance of Honorius the second, wore garments of blacke, signed with a white croffe. Raymond, the first Master of the Order, did amplifie their Canons ; inftiling himselie, The poore servant of Christ, and Guardian of the Hospitallin Ierusalem. In every Countrey throughout Christendome they had Hospitals, and Reuenues assigned them, with contributions procured by Pope Innocent the second. They were tied by their vowes to entertaine all Pilgrims with fingular humanitie; to fafeguard their passages from theeues and incurfions, and valiantly to facrifice their lives in defence of that Countrey. But the Christians being 60 driven out of Syria, the Knights had the Rhodes affigned them by the Greeke Emperour, (others fay, by Clement the fifth) which they won from the Turke, and loft agains as aforelaid; retiring from thence vnto Malsa. There are of them here feuen Alberges or Seminaries, one of France in generall, one of Amerne, one of Pronince, one of Caffile, one of Aragon, one of Italie, one of

Almany: and an eight there was of England, vintill by Henry the Eighth diffolioid, with what Inflice. I know not. Yet is there one that supplyeth the place in the Biestion of the Great Man fler. Of every one there is a Grand Prior, who lives in great reputation in his Country; and orders the affaires of their Order

Saint Johns without Smith-field, being in times part the Manifor of the Grand Price of Boy-Land, an Irifo-men liming in Napler, and recining a large Pension from the King of Spaint into the control benetither Title. Those that come for the Order are to bring a teffinonic of their Ocnery for All Gants has fixe Defeents, which is to be examined, and approved by the Knightes of Their Platica, the bestig, men, first to remain there a year for a probation. Not are women exempted from the dignitie, and Introversime the a year the home for the Mafterling of Hispe Results, gerhaps, to that the plant, a state women cape-lo mitted by a Statute made in the Mafterling of Hispe Results, gerhaps, to that the plant, a state women cape-ble Ladic was the Author, as they affirme, of their Order; but that there be single showed in raise a shan emoral.

more then I could be informed. The Ceremonies vied in Knighting, are their Field corrying the his hand a Taper of white Waxe, hee kneeleth before the Alear, clothed as a long toole Carment, and debreth the Order of the Ordinarie; Then, in the Name of the Fathde; the Sonne; Ceremonles and the Holy Ghoft, he receiveth a Sword, therewith to defend the Catholike Church , to the of creation. pulse and vanquish the Enemie, to relieue the oppressed, if need should be, to expect him selfer wnto death for the Faith, and all by the power of the Croffe, which by the Croffe hile to defigure red. Then is he girt with a Belt, and thrice frooke ow the shoulders with his Swolk to pair him in mind that for the honour of Christ he is chearefully to fuffer what focuser is pleadons, who

20 taking it of him, thrice flourisheth it aloft as a prouokement to the Aduerlary Vand fotheathers it againe, having wiped it first on his arme, to testifie that thente-forth liet will find vadefied ly. Then hee that gives him Knight-hood laying his hand on his monder, doch exhibit him to be vigilant in the Faith, and to afpire vinto true honour by course jours and landable actions, devel Which done, two Knights doe put on his Spurres guile; to fignific that he thould fourne Gold agdurt, not todoe what were ignoble for reward. And so goes he to Masse with the Faper in his hand, the workes of Pietie, Hospitalitie, and redemption of Captines, being commended unto him, told also of what he was to performe in regard of his Order. Being askell if the bee a free? man, if not iny ned in Matrimonie, if vanowed so another Order, or not of why profession; and if he were resolved to live amongst them, to reutings their injuries; and spid the anthorities of

it he were retoluted to true amongst teem, to returne a teem murres; and must its extraorpers to the 30 Secular Magistracie: Haning answered thereund, byton the received offer, Sombheaut, throwses in this Order, I town to the Admightise Godyn the Origin Mary bis inhusentest. Mit his hand to Salver Their Voni Iohn Baptist, prepended, by the belief of Godes. In this Order, to the windows any thing given among and addited to the belief. With belief promise in: Hatite by made a partaket of their Priviledges and Inhibytones; I granted wints them by three-feet of Reinstein and the Control of the Control o Befides other Prayers, they are commanded to fay a hundred and fiftie Pater authoristity, for fuch as have beene flame in their Warres. They weare Ribands about their neckes with Broise ches of the Croffe, and Clokes of blacke with large white Croffer fet thereinto en the front derr of fine Linnen, but in time of Warre, they weare Crimfon Mandilions , behind and before to croffed, ouer their Armour.

40 They come hither exceeding young, that they may the fooner attayne to a tensmiendament home, (whereof many be of great value) not got by fanous but figureritie; and are to line here for the space of fire yeares (but not necessarily together) and to goe on some Espeditions. If one of them be connicted of a capitall crime, her is first published disgraded in the Church of Saint John where he received his Knight-hood, then ftrangled, and thrown a log into the Sex Degradation in the night time. Euery Nation doe feed by themselnes in their legeral Albergos, and strat and death, the Table like Fryers, but fuch as vion fuite doe get leave to eat apart, have fuite Crownes atlowed them by the Religion yearely as all have free and twentie a piece for appeal!

There are here refident about fine hundred, not to depart without leave, and at many more dispersed through Christendome, who hither repairs wone nearly famous amount according to the control of the co of a fifth part of his substance. There be fixteene of them Counsellors of States and of printete mean pall authoritie, called Great Crosses, who weare Tippets, and Coates also wider their Cloakes; that be figned therewith. Of thefe are the Martiall, the Mafter of the Hofpitall, the Admiral; the Chancelor, &c. When one doth dye another is elected by the Great Matter and his Knights. who give their voyces (if I forget not) by Bullets, as doe the Venetians ; whereby both enale and faction is anoyded. Now, if the Great Mafter fall ficke, they will fuffer no Veffell to goe The Great out of the Hauen, vntill hee bee either recouered, or dead, and another elected, left the Pope Mafter and his should intrude into the Election, which they challenge to be theirs, and is in this manner per-

60 The severall Nations elect two Knights a piece of their owne, and two are elected for the English, from among it themselves these fixteene choose eight, and those eight downominate a Knight, a Priest, and a Fryer-servant (who also weares Armes) and they three thoose the Great Mailer, out of the fixteen Great Croffes. This man is a Pickard borne, about the age of fixtie, and hath gouerned eight yeare. His Name and Title, The Illustrious and most Reverent Prince my Land

From Alofius of Wienian rough, Great Mafter of the Hofpitall of Saint Ichns of Israelson

Prince of Malta, and Goza. For albeit a Fryer, (as the rest of the Knights) yet is he attabloine

Seneraigne, and is brauely attended on by a number of gallant youg Gentlemen. The Clemindre

weare the Cognizance of the Order, who are subject to like Lawer except in military matter.

Old & Malta is feated (as hath beene faid before) in the midft of the lland, you a hill and fat.

those Caftle of Saint Hermer, the first that the Torke bolieged , which after many furious af-

failes, twentiethouland Canon that (whose horrible rearings were heard to Mellina); and the loffe of ten thousand lines, they cooke in the years 1565, in the moneth of line , but to the

There are horase Villages in the Hand, under the command of ten Captaines, and foure Cities.

med like a Scutchian ; held of no great importance, yet kept by a Garrifon Init there isk Grot. where they fay Saint Paul lay when he full ered thipwracke; of great denotion among them.
The refined floud thereof they cast into little Medals, with the Effices of Saint Paul on the inte fide and a Viper on the other, Aguar Dei, and the like : of which they vent flore to the Fore ab Servents non: reinest. They say share being drunke in wine it doth cure the venome of Servents, and withall though therefor many Serpents in the Hand, that they have not the power of hurting although handled, and angred, bereit of their venome suct fince the being here of the Apofile. The other three Cities (at they may all be fo termed) are about eight miles diftant and me much without a Munket (bor rach of other, meere the Eaft-and, and on the North-fide of the lland , where there is a double Hauer divisled by a topgue of speke, which extendeth no further then themen. ueniently large enerance. The East Hauen refembleth the horne of a Stag , the first branch (as uenisaty singe-merance. Long-saur ranges removed in the rolling a state of the frame of the Palmey advocating an excellent harbour for the greatest flippes, and the fecond for Gallier, the pelasticibility for of fresh water, which plasticibility for offices at the vapermost toops there is a Fountayne of fresh water, which plasticibility for offices that doe enter. On the tip, of the forefaid tongue stoops the

ageater glory of the vanquilled, that loffe rather inraging then dif-heartning the remayuder. Now vpon the point of the Promontory which lyes betweene thefe two branches of that Hanen, where the Ships and Gallles have sheir stations, on a steepe rocke stands the Castle of Saint Angels, whose frength appeared in frustrating those violent batteries (being next befiesed by the Turke) whereof it yet boareth the skarres. At the foot of the Rocke are certaine Ganons plantest; that front the mouth of the Hauen: This Caffle is onely divided by a Trench case through the Rocke, from the Burge, a kette Citie which possesses the rest of that Promontory, being all a Rock, hewen hollow within, for their better defence; distoyned by a great deep Ditch from the Land: South of this, and on the next Promontory, flands another Towne, which is called, Le Ifala, on the point thereof a platforme, and at the other end the fisong Fort of Saint Adichael, yet inferiour in firength to chat of Saint Adichael, yet inferiour in firength to chat of Saint Angele. Here remember we the pietie of a Maissus an, descended, no doube of Christian Parentage, and favouring our Religion, who in the sime of the strictest siege, and smallest comfort to the beseged, leapt into the Sea, and mangreall the shorthat was made at him, swamme to this Castle : where first requiring and receiving Baptifine, hee made knowne vnto them the fecrets of the Enemie, adulted how to fruitrate their purposes, and brauely thrust himselfe forward in energy extremitie. But the Knights of the Order stifting one another by their proper valour, io nobly behaved them-felues, that the Tarke began to despaire of faccesse, and evon the rumoured approach of the Christian Succours (which in the best construction by the over-circumspect Vice-Roy of Sicilia had beene dangeroully protracted) imbarqued shem lelues, and departed. But all, fauling Eures and Saint & Angele, reduced into powder, and the returne of the Tarte diffrusted, it was propounded among fithe Knights, to abandon the lland, rather then vainly to repaire, and endenour to detend those samentable runes, the Adversaries vnequal power, and backward ayde of the Christian Princes considered. But it soo much concerned the state of Christendome, (especially of the Countries confining) it being as it were both the Key and Bulwarke thereof, infomuch IT that the Pope, the Floremine, and the reft of the Princes of haly, encouraged them to stay, affifing them with money, and all necessary prominon but especially the King of Spaine, who over and above did fend them three thouland Pioners, leaved in the Kingdome of Naples and Sicilia,

Mafter. Not great, but faire, exactly contriued, and ftrong about all others, mounted aloft, and no where affailable by Land, but at the South end. The walls of the rest doe icyne to the vpright Rocke, as if of one piece, and beaten upon by the Sea. That towards the Land, is but a narrow Isthmes, where the Rocke doth naturally rife, the Ditch without , hewen downersceeding broad, and of an incredible profunditie, strongly flankt, and not wanting what fortifiestion can doe. This way openeth the onely gate of the Cirie, (the other two, whereof one 60 leadeth to Saint Hermes, and the other to the Hauen, being but small Posternes) and hard within are two great Bul warks, planted on the top with Ordnance. At the other end (but without the wall) flunds the Caffle of Saint Horonzo, now stronger then over, whereof (as of that Saint Angel) no French man can be Gouernour. Almost every where there are platformes on

to repaire their old Fortreffes, and begin a new Citie vpon that tongue of Land which divideth

This is called the Citie of Waletta, in the honour of John de Valetta, who then was Great

the two Hauens, now almost absolutely finished,

the walls, well flored with Ordnance. The walls on the infide not aboue fixe foot high, vnimbattald, and sheluing on the outside, the buildings throughout a good distance off both to leaue roome for the Souldiers, and to fecure them from batterie. Neere the South end, and on the West fide, there is a great pit hewne into the rocke, out of which a Port cut vnder the wall into the West Hauen , intended (for yet vnfinished) to haue beene made an Arsenall for their Gallies. (that harbour being too shallow for ships) a worke of great difficulty. The market place is spacious, out of which the fireets doe point on the round. The buildings for the most part vniforme, all of free stone, two stories high, and flat at the top; the vpper roomes of most having out tarraffes. The Great Masters Palace is a Princely structure, having a Tower which overto looketh the whole lland. The chamber where they fit in Counfell, is curiously painted with their fights by Sea and by Land, both forraine and defensiue. The seuen Alberges of the Theseuen Al-Knights, be of no meane building; amongst whom the Citie is quartered. Magnificent is the Church of S, Paul, and that of Saint Johns: the one the feat of a Bilhop, and the other of a Prior. And Saint lobus Hospitall doth merite regard, not onely for the building, but for the entertain- Saint lobus ment there given. For all that fall ficke are admitted thereunto, the Knights themselves there Hospitall lodge when hurt or difeased, where they have Physicke for the bodie, and for the soule also (such as they give.) The attendants many, the beds ouer-ipread with faire Canopies; every fortnight having change of Linnen. Served by the Junior Knights in filter, and every Friday by the Great Master, accompanied with the great Crosses. A service obliged vnto from their first insti-20 tution; and thereupon called Knight-hospitallers. The Issues of late crept into the Citie, who now haue a Colledge a building. Heere bee also three Nunneries; the one for Virgins, another for penitent Whores, (of impenitent here are flore) and the third for their

The barrennesse of this Ile is supplied with the fertilitie of Sicilia, from whence they have their prouision. The Citie is victualed for three yeeres, kept vnder the ground, and supplied with new as they spend of the old. They have some fresh water Fountaines, and the raine that falleth, they referue in Cifternes. Besides the Knights and their dependants, the Citizens and Ilande be within the muster of their forces; in which there are not of living soules about twentie thousand. They keepe a Court of guard nightly, and almost every minute of the night, the 30 watch of one Fort gives two or three tolls with a bell, which is answered by the other in or-

der. The Religion hath onely fine Gallies, and stinted they are, as I have heard, to that number, Their Gallies (if more, they belong vnto private men) and but one thip. The custome is, or hath beene, hauing hung out a flagge, to lend money to all commers that would dice it, if they win, to repay it with advantage ; it lose, to serve vntill their entertainment amounted to that summe. Now the Their expediexpeditions that they make, are little better then for bootie; fometimes landing in the night tions. time on the maine of Africa, and furprifing some village, or scouring along the coasts, take certaine small Barks, which disburdened of their lading and people, they suffer to hull with the weather. For they made good profit of their flaues, either imploying them in their drudgeries. (they having at this instant aboue fifteene hundred of them) or by putting them to ransome. For 40 euer and anon you shall have a little boat with a flag of treaty, come hither from Tripoli, Tunie, or Algers, to agree for the redemption of captives, as doe the Maltefes to those places who are ferned with the same measure. During my abode here, there arrived a Barke, brought in by eight English men, who had for a long time served the Turkish Pirats of Tunis, they bound for Algeirs, tooke weapons in hand, and droue the distrustlesse (being twice as many) into the sterne, kept there by two, whilst the other dressed the sailes for Malia. Among st them there was one, who faving he would never be flaue to a Christian, stript himselfe secretly, propping vp his gowne, and laying his Turbant vpon it, as if still there, and dropt it into the Sea. But the deceiver was deceived by the high land which feemed neerer then it was, and to wearied with fwimming, funke in their fights. The Inquisition would have feized both on their perfons and purchase, because they had served the Insidell: but they were protected by the Great Master (being delirous to ferue him) who will not fuffer their cruell authoritie to enter into the new City. io that they are faine to refide in Burgo.

The Matelles are little lefte Tawnie then the Moores, especially those of the Country, who The people goe halfe clad, are indeed a miserable people; but the Citizens are altogether Frenchisted; the Great Malter, and major part of the Knights being French men. The women weare long blacke foles, wherewith they couer their faces (for it is a great reproach to be frene otherwise) who converse not with men, and are guarded according to the manner of Italy. But the jealous are better secured, by the number of allowed Curtizans (for the most part Grecians) who sit playing in their doores on instruments; and with the arte of their eyes inueagled these continent by vow, 60 but contrary in practife, as if chastitie were onely violated by marriage. They here stirre early and late, in regard of the immoderate heat, and fleepe at noone day. Their markets they

keepe on Sundaves. Now were the Gallies returned with indifferent successe, and yet my stay was proroged by the approaching festivall of their Patron; for vntill that was past, no boat would stirre out of

LIBVI.

CHAP.I.

the Harbour. The Palace, Temples, Alberges, and other principall houses, were stucke round on the outside with lambes, the cuening before : and amongst other folemnities, they honoured the day with the discharge of all their Artilery. The Forts put forth their Banners, and enery Alberge the Entigne of his Nation, at night having Bone-fires before them; five great ones being made in the Court of the Palace; whereof, the first was kindled by the Great Master, the second by the Bishop, the third by the Prior, the fourth and fifth by the Marshall and Admirall. On the foure and twentieth of June, I departed from Malta in a Phalucco of Naples, rowed by fine, and not twice so big as a Wherry, yet will for a space keepe way with a Gally. They vie to fet foorth in such boats as thefe. two houres before Sun-fet, and if they discouer a suspected faile betweene that and night (for the Turkes continually lie there in waite) doe returne againe : if not, they proceed; and by the next morning (as now

The end of the Sixth Booke.

did we) reach the Coast of Sicilia.

NAVI



NAVIGATIONS, VOY-AGES, AND DISCOVERIES OF

THE SEA-COASTS AND INLAND RE GIONS OF AFRICA, WHICH IS GENERALLY

CALLED &THIOPIA: BY ENGLISH. MEN AND OTHERS.

THE SEVENTH BOOKE.

CHAP. L

30 Atrue Relation of Master RICHARD IOBSON'S Voyage, employed by Sir WILLIAM Saint IOHN, Knight, and others; for the Difconerie of Gambra, in the Sion, a fbip of two hundred tuns, Admirall; and the Saint Iohn fifthe, Vice-Admirall. In which they paffed nine bundred and fixie miles vp the River into the Continent, Extracted out of bis large Iournall.



E fet fayle from Grauefend, on Saturday the fift of October, 1620. From Granefend. On the five and twentieth, we departed from Dartmouth, we tayled from Dartmouth to the Ca-

The fourteenth of February, we came to an anchor in Tra- The Katherine mifeo Road, where we found three Frenchmen, and one Flem- herayed ming Francisco a Portugal here d welling was bufie to enquire if we went to Gambra, having a letter as he faid from M.Cramp, who had lately departed thence for Sierra Liena, let forth by the Company. This Portugall fearing just revenge for the ship Portugals taken and men betrayed and murthered by them in Gambra, which trade, had procured a Letter in behalfe of some of his friends. In Gambre.

the River of Borfall we entred, where we tooke a small Boat belonging in part to Hector Namez, the principall in that Treachery and Murther aforefaid and detayned some of his goods therein for fatisfaction, taking thereof a publike Inventorie, that it any other could lay just clayme they might be reflored. This was done by punishing Names, and to terrific others The generall from like trecherous attempts, not without effect. The Portugals were glad they foelcaped, winds, knowing and curfing Numez his villanie. The Portugals which trade here, and inhabit the Riuer are banished men, Renegadoes and baser people, and behaue themselves accordingly.

60 We built a Shallon, and lanched to the two and twentien. The next vary we assist the Riber, and the type spent, anchored againful a litel land on the South-dick from four leagues sp. From October till May, the winds are generally Eatherly, and downe the Riber which much the state of t We built a Shallop, and lanched it the two and twentieth. The next day we fet fayle vp the hindred our course vp the same. We patt vp by tydes, intending to stay at a Towne called Taukeronalle, but over-fhot it in the night, and the next morning were against another Towne foure Tenteronalle.

leagues higher, called Tindobange. Our ship with her Ordnance might here come both sides the Riner.

Here dwelt Emanuel Corfeen a Portugall, which told vs that Mafter Tomfon was killed by one of his Company, and that the rest were in health. It was intended the Sion should stay here. and therefore the Kines Customers were paid, who dwelt some fixe miles from the River, but had his drunken Officers to receize them.

Leaning her with fine and twentie men and boyes. On Wednesday, the nine and twentieth re the Riact. the Saint John and two shallors, we set fayle up the Riuer twelue men in the bigger, with Hen. ry Lone, and thirteene in the leffer with my felfe, which with the Boat towed her vo in calmes.

On the first of December, we came to Pudding Hand, sixteene leagues from the ship. The 10 second, we anchored against a little Creeke which leads into a Towne Mangegar. We went to this Towne, meeting by the way a Portugall, called Bastian Roderigo, who gaue mee an Ounces skinne, On Munday the fourth, the King with his Alcade came abourd, and drunke himfelfe with his Conforts fo drunke, that the Customes were deferred till next day. Henry Lowe agreed for a house, and left there Humfrey Danis, John Blithe, and one Nicholas a prettie youth, which two last dyed there. On the feuenth, we passed thence by a Towne on the North-side called Woller Woller, bigger then any wee had yet feene, and in the after-noone came to an anchor at Caffan (where the Katharine was betrayed) where no Portugall would now be feene. This King is vnder the great King of Bursall. The Aleade shewed vs friendship, and told vs that the Portugals had hired men of that Towne to kill vs as we went up, in some narrower Strights of the 20 River, for feare whereof we could not get any Blackman to goe with vs to be our Pilot and Linguist. This Towne is populous and after their manner warkke. We here had intelligence, that Salt is a good Commoditie aboue in the River, and that within eight dayes there would come a Carauan from Tinda for Salt before this place.

On the fourttenth, we came to a Towne on the South-side, called Pompeton, aboue which dwels no Portugall in this River. Next morning we came to the Port of Ieraconde, two miles from which dwelt Farran a perpetuali Drunkard, but which held his Countrey in greatest awe-Hence Henry Lowe fent a flaue with a Letter to Oranto fixteene miles off, where the English English at dwelt. On the feuenteenth , Matthew Broad and Henry Bridges came to vs by Land, which were exceeding glad after fo long space to see their Countrimen, as we also to heare them re- 30 port their fecuritie amongst those wild people. Broad said, much good might bee done up the River, but that it must be done without delay, the River falling daily. Comming within fixe

Orante.

miles of Oranto we landed and went thither, where Brewer which had beene at Tinda with Tomfor, filled vs with golden hopes. But the neglect of bringing Salt thorough ignorance or emulation was a hinderance. The King of Orante abode on the other fide of the River; his name Summa Tumba, a blind man and subject to the great King of Cantere, We went to him and had a speech made to him of thankfulnesse, for our Countreymens kind vsage; His answere was repeated by the mouth of another, after the fashion of the Countrey : which Ceremonie done, he made haft to drowne his wits in the Aquaite and good liquor we brought him. His Custome

The one and ewentieth, I fent away my Boat, & the next day came abundance of people; fome to fell: all to begge: the King fometimes by his Wife, fometimes by his Daughter, but every day his Sonnes were there, and likewife divers others of the better fort, but Count, from many great persons : which word they vie for commendations. You must return tomething again, or it will be ill taken.

Fernantarfaith. On Christmas day, Ferambra fent vs as much Elephants flesh as one could well carrie, new killed. This Ferambra went foure miles off, and was a friend of our people, and when the Portogals had dealt with the King of Naoy, to kill them all, who fent his forces to performe it. he put himselfe and his people in Armes for their defence, and conveyed them over the River to his Brother, called Bo lobn, and faued their goods. On the one and thirtieth, came the Shallop

Batto.

We being ten white men, went the second of Ianuary from Oranto for Tinda: the first tyde we went to Batto, Bo lobus Towne, and thereagreed with a young Marybucke to goe with vs. Lower emulation hindred vs with delayes, both now and before. On the fixth, Sumaway, King of Bereck under the great King of Cantore, came abourd with his Wife, and begged our courtefie. We tooke in Sanguly, a blacke Boy, who had lived with Master Tomfon, and spake prestie English. On the ninth, we anchored in a vast place both at noone and night, where was a world of Sea-horses, whose pathes where they went on shore to feed, were beaten with tracts as great as London high-way. Next morning we anchored at Maffamacoadum, fifteene leagues from Pereck. On the eleventh, at Benanko. The twelfth, after rockie pallages to Baraconda. 60 The tyde went no further. Beyond were no Townes, neere the River, nor Boates nor people to

On the fourteenth, Bacay Tombo, the chiefe man of the Towne, came a board with his wife, and brought vs a Beefe. We hired another Marybuck, because they are people which may travell freely: & now were ten white and foure blacke, Flauing now the fliestife against vs. we durft not for feare of Rockes in the night, nor could for immoderate heat in the Suns height proceed, but Marjaucter for were forced to chuse our hours in the morning till nine, and after three in the afternoone. We cred persons. were forced to come our money and found about shallow waters, wherein were many Sea Horses by the super, past by walty a small Riuer, and found about shallow waters, wherein were many Sea Horses by the super, past by walty a small Riuer, and found about shallow waters, wherein were many Sea Horses. part by wousy a tilian attent, shows one came swimming by vs dead and stinking, yet the Negros sparts, and are were difpleafed they might not eate him.

were displeased they might not eate min.

On the femericenth, on both fides the River we faw thousands of Baboones and Bronkies. A and Mer. On the lementeenth, on both mes the renter we tar the had full our Canoe before vs to chants.

10, On the eighteeneth, we were forced to enter the River naked, very fearefull of the Blimbos, offo they call the Crocodiles and carry the Beat against the current, and ouer of thorow the fand, beauing and fhouing till we come in deepe water. The nineteenth, we mot with a violent current, that all the firength of fixe Oases could pre-

taile, but a mile in an houre. The twentieth, on the Star-board fide, we had Cahrere River, are like and which hath a faire entrance, where Forman Cabo is the great King. On the one and twentieth, with dames which man a rane entrance, where ever me there is not great range. One was the state of the same fens about to the Montanian cops, where might be precised only Defarts, 'replenished on their fer, with terrible will Bentisymhole routing we heard only night. The Blackes are lo affaild of the and horsless, Bumbos, that they dare not put their hands into the water, divers of them being by eliem water, manes, denoured. Yet did they anoid from vs, whether it were our noise or militrude which canfed it. &c Monkies denoured. Yet did they anoid from vs. whether it were our noile or materials w mericamen it. and Baboones, Some we saw thirty foot long, yet would not come neere vs. On the two and twentieth, wal- Crocodies 20 king on the banke, I espied fixteene great Elephants cogether hard by me. A Blacke with me fell thirty foer

a trembling. The fedge in the place was almost as high againe as our freads; to this we could not taking, the fedge in the place was almost as high againe as our freads; to this we could not taking, the feme till we were within Pittell first of them. We faw diners little puts by their fides. We "Enjang." made an offer to shoot , but the Peece would not off, which they perceiving began to run, in a miles space not so much as einning nor looking behind them; making speed to the Mountaines, like a Deare in the Forrest. The Morres wondred at our adventure. On the three & twentieth, we were faine to enter the water, & by itrength of hand, to carry the boat a mile & a halfe into deeper water. On the foure and eventieth, we towed her, sometimes adding himig by the Boars side, as sholds and trees permitted I and met with one vehement current, overstware broading of the contract of th ken rockes, to that we were forced to hold her by force, till one taking the Anchor on his neck, waded about that quicke fall, and letting it fall, we haled by our halor, and elcaped that gut.

The fine and twenty, troubled with tholds, we heard as we pasted, a guth of water, hidden by the greene trees, with which water we flored our feftick; that of the River being lo ranke with a Muskie water muskie sent of the Crocolliles, as we supposed that it was distatefull; whereas this was plea- distancials fant. One of our Moore, was taken, and like to be loft in a Whitlepoole; notwithstanding, he could fwimme well, had not one of our mentaid hold on him as he rofethe third time, almost feet, from vnder water. On the fixe and veet is we were comforted with the fight of the hill of Tamab, being high rockie land. We fent times Mosses thither with a prefere to the King, mili of romas, occup mgs recent and the made intreating him to come down to vs with prouision, for and to Bucker Samo, a Merchant of Timas, intreating him to come down to vs with prouision, for we had no fielh. Deare and Fowle were plentifull on both fides the River, had we been pro-

40 uided of a good Peece. And the River fish did fo talle of Muske, that (like the water) we could not endure the shoare. I went ashaore to view the River, & might see sometimes twentie Croco-Muskie fish. diles one by another: and in the night, fpecially towards breake of day, they would call one to another, much refembling the found of a deepe Well, and might be early heard a League. We past the sholds, and against Tinda River, recovered steepe water, and saw many Sea Horses, which loue deepe waters. On the thirtieth, we killed an Anthelope bigger then any Windfore Antelope. Stagge, the blood of him drew a world of Eagles, and other Fowle; amongst which came one Stalker, a Fowle higher then a man, which we likewife killed. Prefently after, came our men backe with Bucker Sames brother, and a scruant of the Kings, with Hens. Our Deare was killed in good feafon for their entertainment; the report palling among them current, that with Gun-thunder, 50 our thunder (to they called our Guns) we could kill whatformer we would. They much fearing

the fame, as having never feene or heard it, whereof we made good vie.

On Thursday, the first of February, came Bucker Same with a troupe of forty people, amongst which his wife and daughter. Having tafted of our strong Waters, hee lay drunke aboard that night (he was never fo after) and was ficke the next day. He gaue vs a Beafe, and many of the people brought Goats; Cocks, and Hens, which we bought easily. On Saturday, we began to trade our Salt, which is the chiefe thing they defired; other things they asked for, which we had Salt, chiefe not prouided : flaues (he told vs) were the things they held dearest , for any thing elfe we flould trade. haue, if we would maintaine our comming thither, he would prouide it. We had some Ele-60 phants teeth, Negros Clothes, Cotten Yearne, and some gold of them. We refused to buy Hides,

because we would not lade our Boat downe the River, the water falling every day, which wee kept note of by the shoare. The people came daily more and more to vs, and vpon the shoare they built houles, we also had a house open to trade vnder, so as it seemed like a pretty Towne. Our Blackes went ouer the River, and three dayes after brought other people, which built a Siege

Towns on the other fide the River. And within three dayes there were five hundred, which were a more Sauage people; having breeches of beafts skins, neither had they ever feene any white people before. The women would run and hide themselves when we came neere them at their first comming; but after grew bold to buy and sell with vs. These people likewise were all for Salt. and had Teeth and Hides store. Our Salt was almost gone before they came ; for we had but forty bushels at first.

Bairy Dinks the chiefe was aboard , very defirous we should come againe. On that fide wee faw likewise there was Gold, and those people had familiarity with each other, whereby chiefe man & it feemed they had trade and commerce, by fome higher part of the River.

On the feuenth', the King of Ieliest on Tinda fide, under the great King of Welley, Campo Country, you downe with his Iuddies or Fidlers, which plaid before him and his wines, such being the fathion derthe great of the great ones, These Inddies are as the Irifb Rimers: all the time he eats, they play and fine King of cases. fongs in his pray le, and his anceftors: When they die, they are put in an hollow tree vprishe, and not buried, we gaue him a Prefere, and he a Beefe to vs. and not buried, we gave him a Present, and he a Beefe to vs.

He bought and On the eighth, Bucker Sono would needs be filled the white mans Alcaid; I tooke it kind. fold the fire vs. ly, and put about his necke a firing of Christall, and a double firing of Currill. Bread gaue hima filmer chaine, and with drinking a cup of Rofa-folis, and shooting off fine Muskets, a solemne cry, Aleade, Aleade, was proclaimed: he adding his fidlers musicke, the people also ready with their bowes and arrowes his wife with matts on shoare to attend the folemnity. So soons as he came on shoare, he frankely gaue his nuts to the people, reloycing in this new honor. These at Nos of precinuts are of great account through all the River, and are a great favour from the King : five hunous efteeme. dred of them will buy a wife of a great house. Their taffe is very bitter, but cameth the water He seemeth to presently after, to taste very pleasant. This done, he went to the Kings house, who sate without doores, their fashion being assoone as it is darke, to make a fire of Reed without doores, and the best fort to haue matts, on which to sit downe, and vie their Ceremonies. He placed me by the King, and went himselfe sixe paces off, right before him, and made a speech, which one repeats after him as he speakes, to intreat his kind viage to the white men, The King anone repetts atter nim as nexpeases, to anterest us asset years of the land, and another hold for the Country frend vish like feeeth, giving vs liberty to shoot any thing on the land, and another hold for the Country frend vs. Backer Sees kneeded downe, and gase him thankes, and sent visto him in our behalfer the game to the Country of him that land whereon we were, for vs. for ever. Vpon which words, Bucker Same pulled off his fhirt in token of thankefulnesse, and kneeled downe naked, vntill diners Marybacks with their hands raked up a heape off the ground, upon which he lay flat with his belly, and covered him with the earth lightly from head to heele. Then with his hands he threw the earth round a-In this manner with the earth lightly from head to heele. Then with his hands he threw the earth round athe Kings take bout amongst vs all : after which, the Alexy backer gathered a round heape againe together, and compassing it with a round ring of the same earth, wrote with his singer as much as the round softening to write a non-some companing to write a non-some cooke of that earth into his mouth, and out it forth acame to againe, and then taking both his hands full of the earth, and out two CMarybeke following him you their hands and knees, they came to me where I fate, and threw it unto my lap. This done, he rose up, and two women were ready with clothes to wipe him, and a third woman to with a cloth to fan him, and stepping a little off, he had his best clothes brought him, which he put on, and his sheafeof arrowes about his necke, a bow and an arrow in his hand. He came in againe, and twenty more, with bow and arrowes, after he had gone twice or thrice about, prefenting himselfe by drawing his arrow up to the head, as if he were to shoot, he deliuered them, and fate downe by me. The reft with their bowes and arrowes came one after another, and kneeling at his foot with their faces, from him presented their bowes, as hee did. Then began others to dance after their fashion, at the end whereof they began to make severall speeches,

I shewed this Bucker Same a small Globe , and our Compasse , whereupon he told vs that he had seene with his eyes a Countrey Southward, whose houses were all coursed with gold, the people wearing iron in rings through their lips and eares, and other places, to which place hee told vs it was foure moones trauell. Hee told vs likewise of a people which hee called Ars-Much Gold. becke, who came vnto this Countrey, and would be at a Towne, called Mombar, but fixe dayes iourney from Tinda, the fecond moone after, which was in March. And there was a Town called lage, from whence much gold came, but three dayes iourney from Mombar, whither these Arabeckes went not. More I might have knowne, had not the emulations of my companie hindred, who would not fuffer the blacke boy to let me know what he speake.

be still, and after a shot would leave vs quiet till morning.

(for every one of the better fort will have his speech) wherewith we were weary, and left them

for that night. Our manner was to fet our watch with a Pfalme, which they hearing, would

Some people which came to vs, were of Combaconda, a Towne foure dayes journey thence, 60 which we thinke is Tombuto. A Marjonche was here of Matter Tomfons acquaintance, borne in Tage, which would not company with the people of Tinda, but came to vs, and told vs that many people were comming, but were fent backe by some that returned, and reported our Salt was gone. He offered, if we were past these people, he would vadertake to bring vs to Mombarr

and Gago, We made hafte to be gone; for by our marke the water was funkeaboue fixe inches, promiting to returne in May, when the water increased. We called this place Saints lobus

CHAP.I. Circumcision performed with mirth, musicke and dancing.

On Saturday the tenth of February, we came away, the wind and streame served, but wee durit not fayle for the sholds, nor row by night. On Wednesday at night, having but three miles to Baraconde, by the Moores intreatic wee went thither over Land, and pasted casily in Baraconde fixe dayes downe, what had coft vs twelve dayes labour and trouble. We had a great chafe at an Elephane, wounded and made him flie, but loft him in the high fedge, and after found him in the River, where being that in the eare he turned head on vs, and made vs row off, and leave him

thrice wounded, our Peece failing in the discharge. Munday the nineteenth, we came to Butto, To lobus, Towne, wee had our first Marybucke Circumtifion. and the blacke Boy which spake English, whose age of sixteene yeares was now ripe for their Circumcifion. Hither we came in feafon for that Solemnitie, hearing before we came; shortes; Drummes and Countrey Musicke. The Boy knew the meaning, and told vs it was for cutting of pricker, a world of people being gathered for that purpose, like an English Faire. Vnder euerie great tree, and among all their houses at night were fires without doores, and in especiall places dancing, the Musicall Instruments made with Keyes like vnto Virginals, whereupon one playes with two flickes which have round Balls of leather at the end; about their write Iron Bracelets, They are called Ballardes, and contayne some seuenteene Keyes. The women for Danates. 20 the most part dance with strange bending of their bodies, and ermging of their knees. their legges crooked, the flanders by keeping a time in clapping their hands together to grace the leaners, the flanders, the open above, the special control of the men dance, it is open alone with fash Swords as they weare, naked in his hand, alone.

with which he acteth. About two furlongs from their Houses wader a great free were many fires, and much drumming with great noyle : here they faid were clieft which were out, but would not fuller mee to ming with great notes developed the state of for whom they prounde those of Rice Corne, Beefer, and other flefts readie dreft, which is infor whom they premienting on any accuracy and a state of their source of their source.

The standy decoured. And if he be any applied, he carries formed their source (the vaccimental of the formation and the standard of their source). The standard of the standard of their source of the standard of the with a Beefe, or other belly-timber; and so many dayes after must they be mute, and cannot be enforced to speake. This seemes an illusion of their Priests to exact Circumcition, and the hoarseenforced to speake. I no steemes an aumonus user priests to sake containance, and the mante-nesses of force through they had off their throats in that roating. This roating, shouting and dancing continued all night. We faw our black Boy circumstice, not by a Marginet, but an ordinary fellow hacking off with WRITE as three cuts file primate, holdings the sember in his hand, the Boy neyther holden nor bogost the whole He was carried to the rest, nor would they hand, the Boy neyther holden nor bogost the whole He was carried to the rest, nor would they fuffer our Surgeon to heale him. The people in twentie miles space came in to this Feast with

their proution.

I made hafte backe to Strice, to meete the Tanda Morthants; and on the fixe and twenkieth, Strice, being within two miles of the place. I received a great and dangerous blow by a Sea horf; within indungered our finking, but we made that to flop is welch forme loft; We came to select fourth bore. miles from the water lide, the greatest Towne we faw in the Countrey, higher their which the Portugal Trade not, and from hence carry much Golds the most of the Inhabitants Marybucker, and the Townegouetried by one of them, called Folias Brans. They are flored with Affes and nerall. Slaves, their Merchandize Salt. The chiefe Marybucke dying, there came multitudes of people to his Funerall. Of the Grane-Earth digged for him enery principal! Maribiete, made a Ball mingled with water out of one por, which they effected as a Relike. They lay all fweet frield they can get into the ground with him, and tooke it kindly that the flowed forme. Much Gold is buried with them, of before by themselner maiprimee place, for their wie in mother World? 50 Much finging, or howling, and crying is vied many theyes about the Grane. This recourse with alfo to establish his eldest Sonnein his dignicie, to which many Profeste are fent. I faw among other bealts one Ramme of a havtle Wooltake Goate Sonneslanteed their Fathers , but the Kings Brethren take place biskore the Somaet. The fickhaffe of our men in the Saint lohn, hafter

ned my departure, min, no. 11 or guned ,m d) Contribut vo or a to condition in Sunday the eleventh of March, Lexisted, and on Wednesday same to the Saint John. The next day, I fet forward to the San, and on Saturday dame to Poingean , where the Portuguil made vs good cheere. Hee told want the Deuils giting notice of our beeing 'in' the River, and comming up, which the circumflasteermade probable. On Manday, we came to Coffee, a brill, Deuils or select where the Sion did ride: the Malterand many others dead, and acceptant four able men in the ini to continuali finale e continui e desperatore continui.

Here we lay from the nineteenth of March, to the nighteenth of Aprill, wee weighed and came the next morning to anchor against Walley, Wolley, voider the King of Chiffie. Whiles wee were theze, came a new King from the King of Barfall to take poffellion of the Country, the old King being eieched as the Sonne of a Captime woman, whereas this was right Heire by both

by G. Artus

Dantife and

the fixthpart

o De Bry his

Ind Orient.

The Voyage from the Tel-

fel. Nouember

the firft. 1600.

third, when

they arrived at

Moure, I omit.

Parents, and now comne of age, who now transported himselfe and his ouer the River, to eine place to this new King, which promited vs all kindnesse,

The twentieth, we came to Mangegar, within a mile of which, every Munday is a great concourfe and market, but miferable Merchandize. The last of Aprill, the Saint John came toys. and the fourthof May we fayled downe the Ruer together. From May to October, it blows up the River except in the Ternado, which competer the most part South-east. On the eighmenth, we prepared our Shaftop. On the nineteerth, we fet vp Tents on the shoare. The King of the Countrey called Cambo, came to vs, and was very kind and familiar, promiting all famour. labours of calking and other bulinesse, watching and Musketos, which here exceedingly about ded, did much molest vs. On the ninth, weetterned out of the River. Next morning before to day, we had a violent florme, or Ternado, with Flunder, Lightning, and exceeding flore of taine. This weather is fix quent fress May to September: Wee hat in at Travilee for Workmen, our Carpenters being dead. Thence we hafted home. CHAP I Produce we harted frome.

A description and historicall declaration of the yolden Kingdome of Guinea, otherwise called the golden Coast of Myna, lying in a part of Africa, shewing their beliefe, spinions, traffiguing; barrering, and manner of speech; together with the stuation of the Countrie, Townes, Cottages, and Howfes of the Same; with their Persons and Propositions; Hauens and Rivers, as they are now found our and discourred: all perfettly pieved and curiously discourred. and written by one that half oftentioner beene there, Translated til lanuarvehit ast of Dutch, conferred alfo Dith the Latine

and a second of a Distance, conjectured a figure a second of the second

wait is our maint and Of the Merchanter complete resemblence.

When his way a pure supplied in information must be must be made in the most and the most and the most appear to the first pure south south South South-south-state species of the most proper to the most proper to the most pure must be the species of the most purple to the

Whereby commonly then the pieres on the lained, the problem intercited thinke they are And THE CANAGE THE PROPERTY SECTION OF THE PROPERTY AND THE P other Russ rishest turnishe whit; prints a madel laking the Coulton on her Rusers and Townes, virtually layer and County to the Rusers and Townes, virtually layer some to Capacides, Raimes, and then taken you and gaing chiracumfeeloding by the Capacides. resembles. Bysistor, ilustration not to guerment par Gapterill entry or this Graine. Coalt, but on 19. Height to good again, facility such the dank of the little who had the course by the lands of Ga If feeke to god right finishe so the shoot a trans at largua, mourement course by the laming of coThe Graine neris, and layin South processing the shoot spirit layer the limits did Gogles Fords, leading their
Coalis Ma
commonly on Bagh-bord, or as the wind fructs them, being under ten, nine, or tespic degrees, nigust, fo cal-ted of a kind of the designation of the service she Landonable of the last the victorial Southward by Earl, and by Grope. they that fall upon Saint Amer Sallow counting a willed altered before a last much labour and James 4.5. 1919 Asserted Proposition of One of the Company of the which is because it is no continual finallow, but it if of deepe pits: for in one place without a baugineter factor and a substitute factor of the factor of and to institute and the rest tarte pare of the configurate common various and the state of the configuration of t

it is not a time of Trauadoes, which is in Aprill, May, and Iune, whereof men are in great feare. It tell out fo with vs, that beeing under those highthes, we were twentie dayes driving in a calme, without winning any great highth, and that which we wonne with the Current, the next day we lost it againe with a contrary wind; so that you must beware of the Land in any hand, specially, those that goe to Brasilia, for they must take heed, not to goe too neere the Land, left the calme taketh them : I once found a fhip thereabouts, which thought to fayle to the Bay, de Todos los Santos, and thinking that the treame drave him woon the Coaft of Well All Saints Bays India, fell there voon the Graine Coast, io that hee was forced to goe backe againe, and beeing not able to fall into his right courfe, hee was constrayned to leave it, and in stead of sayling to

10 Brafilia, he was forced to goe to Saint Thomas, to that wnder those highthes, you can doe nothing with the wind, but onely by the current, which alwaies runnes East with the bough.

They that fayle to East India, also shunne this calme as much as possible they may, to get aboue the fand, or rife of Brafilia, for otherwise they must whether they will or not, goe to Cape Taxes Gonfalues, and then fayle along vnder the Equinoctiall Line, at least three or foure hundred miles, before they can get againe into their right courfe, as it happened not long fince to fome of our fhips, which was a great hinderance vinto their Voyage, further having past this See what hapcalme, and towards the Landabout Cape de Lus Palmas, or to fome other places, which you know, pened to the calme, and towards the Land about Cape at the Tambas, of to the Land then eight and then you must hold your course along by the Land, but no neerer to the Land then eight and Heder in Capthen you must note your course along by the Land, but you where the Golden Coast begins, taken to Cape de tres punctus, where the Golden Coast begins, taken Keelings

and where the Hollanders traffique with the Negroes. First, passing the River of Senega, you begin to draw neere to Cape Verde, which is a piece Description of of Land eafily to be knowne, for the first point sheweth it selfe with two hillockes or houels. Cape Ferde, and lyeth farre into the Sea, and on both the North and South-fide thereof lofeth the Land, but Southward from the point, about halfe a mile from the Land, there is an Iland feene, whereon many Fowles breed, and great numbers of Egges are found therein, behind this lland there ly eth a great Rocke, a little separated from the Land. This Iland is very vnsit to rayle shallops on, you may fayle betweene the Land and this Iland, with a ship of three hundred and twentie tuns, but not without great feare, for that there are many Rockes lying under the water, but for the best securitie of ship and goods, it is better to sayle on the West side of the Iland to the other lland, where shallops may be set together, which you may see being right against the first Iland, lying about three miles Southeast from the othersthefe Ilands are not inhabited, and there is nothing to be had in them but great flore of ballast and wood to burne, but for that there is a convenient Valley to make shallops in, therefore those places are much vsed, and are the cause that many ships sayle to them, but on the firme Land there are great store of Negroes inhabiting, which traffique with all Nations.

The Countrey people goe naked, only that they hang a piece of Linnen cloth before their The people & prinie members, but their Gouernours (as Captaines and Gentlemen) are better apparelled their apparell. then the common fort of people, and are well knowne by their Garments to be fuch. They go in a long Cotton Garment close about them like a womans smocke, full of blue stripes, like

feather bed tikes, on their armes they weare many foure-cornerd leather bagges, all glose ioy ned together, and the like vpon their legges, but what is within them, I know not, because they will not let vs fee. About their neckes they weare Beads made of Sea-horse Teeth, and some Corals, or Beades which wee bring them , on their heads they weare Caps of the fame stuffe that their clothes are, they are people that are very industrious and carefull to get their liuings. their chiefest Trade is Husbandry, to sowe Rice and Corne : their great riches is in Cowes, which there are very feath and deare, but further into the Countrey there are great store, for that men lade whole thips full of Salthides at Porta dallia, which they take in exchange or barter for Iron, which place lyeth but feuen or eight miles from Cape Verde. They make very faire Iron worke, and in that Countrey, there is great flore of Iron spent, specially faire long barres, owhereof they are as curious as any man in the World can be, those they vie to make Instruments

of, wherewith to fifth, and to labour upon the Land, as also to make weapons, as Bowes, Arrowes, Aponers; and * Affagagen they have no knowledge of God, those that traff que and are Kind of Darts conversant among frange Countrey people, are civiller then the common fort of people, they fathion at both are very greedie eaters, and no leffe crinkers, and very lecherous, and theeuish, and much addi-ends. cted to vncleanenesse : one man hath as many wives as hee is able to keepe and maintaine.

The women also are much addicted to leacherie, specially, with strange Countrey people, of Their women, whom they are not icalous, as of their owne Countrey people and Neighbours; their Religion is after the manner of Mahomets law, for circumcition and fuch like toyes. They are alfogreat Lyers, and not to be credited, the principall Commodities that men traffique for there, are Commodities,

60 Hides, Amber-greece, Gumme of Arabia, Salt, and other wares of small importance, as Rice, Graine, Teeth, and some Ciuet. The Poringals also dwell there, with other Nations, wherewith they may freely traffique, because they are not subjects to the King of Spaine; and besides, that they are not Mafters of the Councrey, and have no command but over their flaves. The Negroes are under the command of their owne Gouemours, which are called Algaier in their Language, which is a Captain of a Village, for every Village hath his feuerall Algaier, and when

any ship come to anchor there, then the Captaine comes presently aboard with a Canoe, to aske

Anchoridge money, which is commonly three barres of Iron, but of fuch as know not their cu-

frome, they take as much as they can; their bodies are very blacke, and of a good proportion.

When they speake, they put out their neckes, like Turkie Cockes, and speake very fast. They

The course from Cape-Miles are to be underliond Dutch or as the Latin hath leagues leace feu mila

*Neferade R.

028

haue a speech by themselues. Leauing Cape Verde, to faile to the Golden Coast of Myna, the course is best (if the wind will ferue) along by the land, to the place where you will Trafique, and deale with the Negros: from Cape Verde to Rio de Gambra, it is fine and twenty miles, from Rio Gambra to the Baixes of Rio Grande thirty miles, from thence to Sierra Liona, threefcore miles; there is a good place to lie in the Winter time for in the entrie of the River, you have five fathome deepe at the leaft, to and fo for the space of fourteene miles going South-east towards the Roade, you have sixteene, fourteene, twelue, ten, and eight fathome water : from the River of Sierra Liona, to Rio de Galimas, (that is, the River of Hens, because there arne many Hens, and very good cheape, at a Mcfken a neece) fourty miles, from Rio de Galinas to Cape de Monte eighteene miles, the land of Cape de Monte reacheth South-east, and by South, it is a low land, but the Cape is high land, lise a hill, or like a horse necke, with a falling in : from Cape de Monte, to Cape dos Baixos, fiftie miles; from Cape de Baffis to Cape de das Palmas, fiftie miles. These are the three principallest Capes of all the gold Coaft; this Cape lieth under foure Degrees, and is the further land of all the Coast, which reacheth towards the Equinoctiall line, all the land for the most part lieth South-east, and North-west, low ground, sometimes rising, but no high hils to be seene inward 20 to the land : from Cape das Palmas, to Cape de Apollonia, and fo to Cape de tres Punclus fixtie miles, from Cape de Monte, to Cape de Miserade, fixteene miles (this Cape is a high land) from Cape de Miferade to Rio de Ceste, foure and twentie miles, all along hither to you, have good Anchor ground at twelve fathome, the West point is rising land, like to a hill that riseth and sheweth it selfe within the Countrey, when you are North) from it you are then right against Rio de Cester, before in the mouth of the River, there lieth a small Iland, and the Village where you Traffique, lieth a mile vpwards within the River. From Rio de Cestes to Cape das Baixos fine miles, this Capesheweth like a faile, and it is a white Rocke which lieth out into the Sea, being two miles from the Cape you faw, foure and thirty, and fine and thirty fathome water . good Anchor ground , you may hold your course along by the land at two and thirty, 30 three & thirty, and foure & thirty fathome deepe, but go no neere if you defire not to go to the gold Coast, because of stormes, with a wind out of the Sea, as also because of Rockes, and foule ground, that are, and is found to be there, which will rather hurt, then doe you good. From Cape de Baffis to Sanguin three miles, thereis much Graine to be bought, and good Traffque to be made. From Sanguin to Bofoe a mile and a halfe, there also is Traffique; from Bofoe to Sertres two miles, there also you may Traffique, and it is a good place : from Sertres to Botomatwo miles, it is also a good place to Traffique in : from Bottowa to Synno, fiue miles. There also is Traffique ; from Synno to Sonweroboe three miles, from Sonweroboe to Baddoe two miles . from Baddee to Crentwo miles; from Cron to Wappa foure miles; from Wappa to Granchetre two miles: This the French mencall Paris (from Granchetre to Goyana, foure miles, thither there commettereat flore of Graine to fell, and it is a good place to Traffique in with the Negros, from Goyana to Cape de das Palmas three miles, all this from Cape Verde to Cape de das Palmas is called the Graine or golden Coast (otherwise Mellegette) wherein the Kingdome of Mellie is contained, which by visthat are the Netherlanders is called the Graine Coaft: but by others it is called the Coaft of Mellegette : This Kingdome of Mellie. hath an other Kingdome under it, called Bitonni, which lieth not farre from Rio Celles.

The Kingdome of Melle is rich of Corne, Graine, Rice, Cotten, and Flesh, and some Elephants, where by they fell many of their teeth vnto strangers. The inhabitants are mischieuous and cruell, (yet better in one place then in another) alwayes feeking to spoile and intrap ftrangers, that come thither, and cruelly to murther them ; but fome Countri-men are better welcome vnto them then others, and those are Frenchmen, because of their long Traffique 50 into those Countreys. The Portugal's come very little thither , one Countrey men are better entertained in one place then in another, & that by reason they have fometimes swaggred there abouts, and for that cause the Negrosseeke to be reuenged. The greatest Traffique here is Graine, Teeth, and some Rice; other Wares that are there to be had cannot be bartered for in any great quantity, as gold and Teeth, for there is little to be had, but other necessaries for fultenance of man, are there reasonably to be had, and wine of Palme, which they draw out of the trees, is there very delicate, exceeding fweet, and as excellent as any can be found in those Coasts. The Inhabitants are subjects to their Captain, whom they call Taba, and are very submisfive and ready to obey his commandement. The Kings or Captaines of their Villages, are very 60 grave, and rule with great feveritie, holding their subjects in great subjection. Their Language differereth in the one place from the other : but most of them speake a little French, by reason, that they are vied to deale much with the French men , and fo get fome part of their speech, as they on the gold Coast also doe, who likewise speake a little Portugall, by reason also that the Portugalls in times past vied to Traffique much there. They are very expert in husbandry, as to

fome Graine, wherewith they have a great Traffique, they are also very cunning and fine workmen to make many fine things; specially, very faire Canoes or small Scutes, wherewith they also rowe into Sea, which they cut out of a whole tree (like to a Venetian Goudel) which are very fwift to goe; the men haue as many wives as they can maintaine, but they keepe them very fhort, and looke neere vnto them. They are likewise very lealous of their wines: for if they perceine that any of their wines have plaid falle with them, they will feeke great renenge against the partie that hath done them the wrong, and will make warre vpon him, and for that cause, raise all their Countrey, so that the women are not here so common, as on the solden Coast of Mina, and else where. Passing further from Cape das Palmas, you find many Rivers. To where you may barter for great store of Teeth, to Cape de Tres Puntlas, and for that cause it is

called the tooth Coaft. Patting Cape de Apolonia, (which lieth betweene Cape las Palmas, and Cape de Tres Punitas) fine miles further: there lieth a small Castle, but not strong, which is held by the Portugalls. the Willage is called Achombene, and the Castle Ariem, there many Negros dwell, but come feldome abourd our ships that lie there at Anchor, which the Poringalls forbid them to doe. Thus you have read the Description of the Graine or gold Coast, as also the Tooth Coast, and now you shall read of the Coast of Mina. * And first of the Iron people in this golden Coast.

ð. I I.

How they marrie each with other, and what goods their Fathers give with their Children; their House-keeping together; the womans lying in; education of their Children: Their proportions, industrie and conditions.

Hen their children begin to attaine to yeetes of difcretion, and are able to be married to a wife. Then the father leeketh out a wife for his Son, which he thinks wil like his Son well, and yet he neuer faw, nor knew her before, & without wooing each other. Who being thus brought together, the Father gineth nothing at all with his Prouision of a Ion towards houshold; but if he hath gotten any thing himlelfe, by fishing or carrying Merchants wife, aboord the ship, that is his owne to begin houshold withall. But the Brides friends, give the value of fourteene Gulderns in gold with their daughter, for their marriage good : which is to be understood, that if they be any thing worth, then the Father giveth his daughter a Pefo and a halfe of gold, and the mother halfe a Pelo of gold : which after our reckoning altogether, is Portion. halfe an ounce of gold Troy weight, which they give them to buy wine de Palme; to keepe their Bridall withall : for the hath nothing elfe, but that which her Father and Mother smeth her, for the getterh nothing in her youth, as her husband did. And if it be a Kings fonne or daughter, they also give no more with them to their marriage; for it is a common cultome with them to give no more with their daughters in marriage, then they give them as a liberalitie, but when they goe to keepe house, they give them a saue to serve them. Besides this, the Bride in the presence of her friends which come to the Banquet, maketh a promise, and sweareth, to be Riccs of martrue to her husband, and not to vie the bodily company of any other man; but the man taketh riace.

no fuch oath, but is free thereof. Now, if the chanceth to commit whoredome withan other man, either willingly or against Divorce and her will, and that her husband heareth thereof, then he must put her away for it; and the man forseiture.

that hath committed the act, shall forfest to the King foure and twenty Pelos (which after our account is nine ounces) of gold. But if it be a Dutch man, he payeth no fine, because he is a firanger, and knew not whether the woman was married or not, which excufeth him : yet the 50 fault is laid upon the woman that hath done fuch an offence, and the must pay to her husband foure Pelos, or halfe an ounce of gold, because she committed adultery with another man. If fhe hath gotten any thing ; but if the hath nothing, and cannot pay the fine to her husband, it excuseth her not : for if he hath no great fantalie to his wife, or that they have little affection one vnto the other; if he will, he may put her away from him, and as then the band of Matrimonie is broken betweene them, and he may take an other wife when he will.

But if he cannot learne that his wife hath committed fisch a fact; by information of other men, but prefumeth it of himselfe, or sulpecteth that his wife hath faine with any other man, Trialloficahe chargeth her with it, and making her eate certaine Salt; vieth other Ceremonies of their loufie. Idolatrous Fetifos, wherewith the woman knowing her felie to be cleere, and not to have com-60 mitted adultery with an other man, willingly taketh her oath. But knowing her felfe to bee faulty, the dare not take her oath fearing, that if the thould forf weare her felfe, her Feiffe would make her die, whereby oftentimes the wife difcouers ther owne offence, and protureth the mean's to mooue her husband to be desorted from her which chiefely hapnetir by meanes of the Ieloufie; which the man hath of his first wife; for it causeth a great hatred and contention be-

Hhbbh 2

tweene them, because it is a great scandall vnto him, and oftentimes there groweth so great firste about it, that he seeketh to murther the man that doth the fools, and although he hath raid the fine imposed upon him, the married man hath the Printledge to drive him out of the

Polygamy.

930

Further, when they keepe house together, if the man beginneth to thrive, and hath meaner to buy an other wife, he may not buy her without the confent of his first wife, valessehe were at controuerfie with her, and put her away, for fome thing that he could charge her withall : but with her good will he may buy another. He giveth his first wife fixe Englishen of gold. or two, three, foure or fine, as much as he can get, or hath need of, keeping his other wife for his flaue, or to ferue him , or for his Etigufou , or in our Language, his Whore or Concubine , to 10 whom he beareth not to great affection, nor is not fo icalous of her, as of, and to his wife, and those serve for every man, for he may complaine of no man for her, nor cause him to pay any fine for her. His first wife waxing old, and her mind being not so much addicted vnto lust, if he perceineth it, then he cleaneth to his yonger wife, to have his pleature with her, and ever after effeeming most of her, maketh his old wife doe the houshold worke, giving her meat and drinke as long as the lineth, and putteth her not away, but the is forced to ferue the yong wife, and thall neuer trouble her felfe with any thing, but onely to eate and drinke well, to have a care to please her husband, and to doe what locuer he commandet's. Although a man hath as many wives as he is able to keepe, yet all are not of one, but of feue-

wives might doe him more pleasure, they make most of the yongest: and every wife dwelleth in a houseby her selte, although he had ten wives, as many of them have. The wife keepes her husbands money, and when he needeth any, he fetcheth some of her. They eate not one with the other, but either of them alone by themselves; the husband cateth with one of his companions that he dealeth with, or with whom he goeth to Sea : his wines also eate with their friends or neighbours, every one bringing their meat with them, and so make good cheare together, and at evening, the women goe home to their houses againe, and are together but in the day time. The man and wife lie each of them in a feuerall roome, at night, spreading a mat vpon the ground, and lay a wooden stoole vinder their heads, in stead of a pillow, and then making to a little fire of wood, when it burneth they lie downe, with the feles of their feet before it, that the heat thereof might draw out the cold, which they by day have drawne vo into them from the earth (by going bare-footed, esteeming it to be very good for them, which we must also acknowledge. Now, when he hath a defre to vie any of his wives, either he calleth or fetcheth her, and that night helieth with her, & the next day, the goeth to her house againe, where the dwelleth, not once making any of the rest acquainted, what she did that night, or that her husband

rall ages, the one yonger then the other, that they may be the better ferued by their wines. For when the eldelt can doe no more for age, (that he may not want worke) and that the yongest

The Irille doe

Child-birth.

Beds.

liv with her; for then they would be too iealous. Being with child, when their time of deliverance, and bringing foorth of their child into the world commeth, when the is in labour both men, women, maids, yong men & children, run vnto her, and the in most shamelesse manner, is deliuered before them all. I would say much more hereof, but in respect of the credit of women, I will leave it. When the child is borne, she goes to 40 the water to wath & make cleane her felfe, not once dreaming of a moneths lying in, nor of making Candles of Ipocras and other wines, as women here with vs vie to doe; they vie no Nurles to helpe them when they lie in child-bed, neither feeke to lie dainty and foft; but they prefentby take a spoonefull of Oyle, and a handfull of Manigette or Graine, whereof they make a drinke and drinke it vp.

The next day after, they goe abroad in the streets, to doe their businesse, as other women doe. They give their child fich a name, as they thinke good to themselves, and bleffe the same with their Fetiffes, and other witchcrafts, and when time ferueth, circumcife both boyes and girles : at which time they make a great feast, whereof they make great account. But where the women are most shamelesse at the time of the birth of their children . the men in three moneths after, lie not with that wife, nor once have the vie of her body, which nevertheleffe, I thinke they doe not, for any shame or regard that they have, to deale with that woman, but onely because they have other wives enough. They take the yong child as foone as it is borne, and wrapping a cleane cloth about the middle thereof, lay it downe on a mat you the ground, and not in a gradle, and there let it turne and iprawle about, and doe what it will, and when it is two or three moneths old, the mother ties the child with a peece of cloth at her backe, and fo lets it hang there, as the high Dutches wines vie to follow their husbands in the warres. When the child crieth to lucke, the mother cafeth one of her dugs backeward over her shoulder, and forthe childfuckes it as it hangs. The women goe vp and downe from place to place, and still car- 60 Vinge of chil- ry their children in that fort, as lightly, as if they had nothing at their backes, the childs head lies infly when her shoulder, and so the soes shaking of the child most pitifully to behold, whereby we wondered that they brake not the childs iownts, by bearing them in that fort, being fo young, and yet you find very few or no lame persons in those Countreys. They teach their children to goe very young, for they make no reckoning thereof, and fuffer them to creepe and runne abroad when they are very little, and teach them to speake very soone, whereby you find many shildren there among them that can both goe and speake ere they bee a yeare old; and some of them speake fo plainly, that you may viderstand what they say in their Language, for they focake and goe farre kooner then our children doe, which we wondred at, besides this, they are ftrong, fat and well disposed, whereof we will speake hereafter in another place.

The children being a moneth or two old, then they hang a Net about the bodie thereof, like Denillish prea littleshirt, which is made of the barke of a tree, which they hang full of their Fetiflos, as gol- ierustines aden Croffes, itrings with Corall about their hands, feet, and neckes, and their haire is filled full gainst the De-To of fiels, whereof they make great account, for they fay, that as long as the young childe hath will, that Net about him, the Deuill cannot take nor beare the child away, and leaning it off, the Deuill would carrie it away, for they fay, the childe being so little, it would not bee strong enough

to refift the Deuill, but having that Net vpon the bodie, it is armed, and then the Deuill hath no power ouer it the Corals which they hang about the child, which they call a Feriffe, they efterme much, for that hanging such a Fetifo about the childes necke, they fay, it is good against vomiting; the second Fetifo, which they hang about his necke, they say, it is good against falling the third, they fay, is good against bleeding; the fourth, is very good to procure sleepe, which; they hang about the necke thereof, in the night-time, that it may fleepe well; the fift, is good against wild beatts, and the vnwholfomenefle of the Aire, with divers other fuch like Fetiffor, each ha-20 uing a name a-part, to shew what vertue it hath, and what they are good for; and they credibly

belieue them to be good against vomiting, falling, bleeding, (which they presently helps) and for fleeping, they feed their young children with all kind of groffe meates, almost from the first, for when they leave fuckling (they fuffer them not to fuck long) then they beginne to learne the childe to eate of their groffe meates, and to drinke water; when they be vied thereunto, then they take little heed to them, but beate the children lying downe in their house, like Dogges, rooting in the ground like Hogges, whereby it falleth out that the young children foone learne

Euery woman bringeth vp her owne children, and each child knoweth the Mother, and remayneth with her, untill the Father either buyeth it of her, or that it goeth away from the 30 Mother, it oftentimes falleth out, that the Husband taketh the child from the Mother, & felleth it to other men for a flaue. When they begin to goe, they prefently learne to fwimme, and to Colour. runne into the water, and when they are first borne they are not blacke, but reddish, as the Brafilians are; and then by little and little begin to be blacke; and at last , to bee as blacke as Pitch. and growing bigger, run vp and downe like Sauage men, Boyes and Girles together, fighting one with another, taking each others meate from them, and from their child-hood vpwards, begin to be enuious one against the other, and so grow bigger and exercise all kind of villanie and knauerie, their Parents not once teaching them any civilitie, nor shewing them what they should doe, suffering both Boyes and Girles to goe starke naked as they were borne, with their

prinie members all open, without any shame or ciunhtie. They vie to beate and chaften their children most cruelly, striking them with great staues, in fuch fort that we wondred that they did not breake their bones, which they doe not, but for fome great cause (whereby their children respect them much) and for that they beate them cruelly, so that they doe not easily forget it. Other good Discipline they teach them not , but they grow up like wild trees having spent their time thus uncivilly, and beginning to be eight, ten, or twelve yearesold, then their Parents begin to instruct and teach them to do some thing, and to labour with their hands, the Fathers teach their Sonnes to spinne Thred made of barkes of Trees, and to knit Nets, which having learned they goe to Sea with their Fathers to fifh, and when they know how to rowe, and to guide a Boat, then two or three Boyes will goe out to- Arts.

gether in a Canoe or Almadia to fish, and that which they take they carrie to their Parents for 50 food, but when they are eighteene or twentie yeares old, then their Sonnes beginne to deale for themselves, and leave their Fathers, and go and dwell two or three of them together in a house, buying or hyring a Canoe, (which is one of their Boats) and therewith goe to Sea together, and what fift they get they fell for Gold, first, keeping as much as serueth for food for themfelues, with that they fell, they buy a fathome of Linnen cloth, which they hang about their First, apparell. bodies, and betweene their legges, wherewith they couer their prinie members, for then they begin to be shame-faced; whence they proceed further and beginne to deale and traffque with Merchandize, and to carrie it aboord the flup in their Cances, and ferue Merchants to carry them to and from their thips, and so learne to deale with Gold, and to get some thing. After that, beginning to be amorous, and to looke after young Wenches, then they are effected to bee men, 65 which when their Fathers perceiue, they looke them out Wines, and then they marrie, which Wining. they doevery young, to that in those Countries, Children get Children. Touching the Girles, they also begin to worke, and that some-what sooner then the Boyes, they learne to make

Baskets, Mats and fir w Hats of greene Rushes, which they fold with their hands, they also learne to make Caps, Purfes, and apparell made of barkes of Trees, dyed with all kinds of co-Hhhhhh 3

lours, most cunningly done, as if they were fastened together with cords, much to bee wondraat, they also learne to grind their Corne or Millia, and thereof make Bread, which they goe and sell for their Mothers, and bring them the money to buy other meate withall, and whatfoe. uer they get, they give it to their Mothers, who for that (when they marrie) give them some gift, as I have faid before. In this fort the Girles begin to labour, and to learne to doe houshold worke, wherein according to their manner of house keeping, they are very curious, and exceed the men in cunning workmanship.

The men in those Countries are of a very good proportion, with faire members, firong legs.

and members.

and well-shaped bodies, which is easily to be seene, for that they goe almost naked of their bodies, they haueround faces, and no great lips, nor wide mouthes, as the Barbarian Morres haue, but their Nofes are flat, which they make flat when they are young, for they effeemed flat Nose to be a great ornament vnto them, and to say truth, it doth not amisse in them, for that according to the proportion of bodie, it beautifieth their faces : their eares are small, their eyes white, their eye browes very great, white teeth in their mouthes, (for they keepe their teeth very cleane, fouring them with small stickes, and thereby make them very smooth, and ship ning like Iuorie) they have little beard, and are at least thirtie yeares of age, before they have any. They have broad sholders, thicke armes, great hands, and long fingers, and let their nailes grow very long, which they keepe very cleane with scraping, for some of them let them grow as long as the joynt of a mans finger, which they efteeme for a great ornament, for that cause thinking themselues to be Gentlemen. The Merchants also that dwell within the Land, vie 20 those long nailes for a great shew, for they keepe them as white as Iuorie, by scraping them and againe they have good vie for them, for that sometimes when they have not a Spoone by them, and that they votice their Purses to weigh Gold, and wanting a Spoone to take it out, for haste they wie their long nailes, and therewith put the Gold into the Scales, and I have feene fome of them at one time, take at least halfe an ounce of small Gold like fand out of their Purses. They haue small bellies, long legs, broad feet, and long toes, little haire vpon their bodies, curled haire vpon their heads, but not fo much curled as the Tawnie Moeres , for theirs is almost like briftels, and not like Wooll. In the palmes of their hands, under their feet, and under their lips, they are very white, their skins are as foft as Veluet, and smooth, which they raze not, they like wife haue a great prime member, whereof they make great account, therein they much fur- to paffe our Countrimen.

As they grow in yeares, they become blacker and blacker, at thirtie yeares of age beeing in their best time, but when they are seventie or eightie yeares old, then their blacknesse beginnes to decay, and their bodies become yellowish, and their skins begin to be rugged, and to wrinkle like Spanis Leather; they exceed all other Moores in Africa, for proportion and flature of bodie. The men are industrious and subtill persons as can be, good Workmen or Labourers, strong

of bodie, strait, and very vpright, ingenious to learne any thing, and readie to conceine it: for any thing what sour they see done before them, they will some imitate and counterfeit; they Their wits are are of a very sharpe fight, and see further then our Netherlanders, for if there be any ships at the 40 Sea, they will fee them fooner then we; they are fubtill Merchants to traffique with all , and euerie day more and more learne of the Netherlanders, fo that in time they will surpasse them, for they have good skill and knowledge in the Merchandizes which we fell them, they are hard of complexion, and have very hot stomackes, for they are able to difgest raw and most strange meates (whereat we wondred) for if they had an Offridge maw, they could not better diffeelt Stomacks and fuch raw meate as they many times eate, as I will further declare, when I speake more of their manner of feeding. They are very enuious and spitefull one against the other, and will beare malice against a man ten yeares together, and when they have the meanes to be revenged, then they will make their malice knowne, and vntill then keepe it fecret.

Superflition.

They are Idolatrous, and very superfittious in their Religion. They have a strong complexion to or fauour of their bodies, much like Oyle of Palme, wherewith they often anoins themselves. They are very curious to keepe their bodies cleane, and often wash and scoure them. They are much troubled with Lice and Fleas. They are not ashamed to shew their naked bodies, but they are very carefull not to let a Fart, if any bodie be by them; they wonder at our Netberlanders, that we it so commonly, for they cannot abide that a man should Fart before them, esteeming it to be a great shame and contempt done vnto them; when they ease themselues, they commonly goe in the morning to the Townes end (where there is a place purposely made for them) that they may not beeseene, as also because men passing by should not bee molested with the small thereof, they also esteeme it a bad thing that men should ease themselves upon the ground, and therefore they make houses which are borne vp about the ground, wherein they ease themselves, 62 and every time they doe it, they wipe; or elfe they goe to the water fide, to eafe themselves in the fand, and when these Prinie-houses are full, they set fire in them , and let them burne to Courtife and ashes; they pisse by Iobs as Hogs doe, and not all at one time; they are very couetous, and much addicted thereunto, and they can begge fo well, and are fo expert therein , that they furpaffe all

Eafements.

the beggers in our Countrey, who although they had fet ten or twelue yeeres ordinarily at the Church doores, in Holland or Zeland; or gone from doore to doore to begge an almes; vet they cannot have their lessons so perfectly as these. And although they are very hard and nigardly, and will give but little, yet when they have gotten any thing by their begging, then they will be somewhat liberall thereof, when it costs them nothing.

They are very lecherous, and much addicted to vncleannesse; especially with yong women, Lechery. whereby they are much subject to the Poxe, and other vicleane dileases, that are gotten thereby : which they make small account of, and are nothing ashamed of them. They are no lesse giuen to drinking; for they are great drunkards, and dainty mouthed, and can eate and drinke Drunkennesse Io of the best. In their feeding, they are very greedy. They cannot endure that any raine should fall and greediypon their bodies, and therefore they shun it. They are very great liers, and not to be credited. They are likewise much inclined to thest, for they will steale like dogs, for their Kings and Lying and Captaines practife it, and they are fo well vied thereunto, that they cannot leaue stealing. stealing. They are very expert and cunning to fish, and to till the land, and in their apparell, and going very proud, they are very flout, proud and curious in all their actions. They are not to be trufted nor credited, for they are no good pay-masters, you wereas good give it, as trust them with any thing. They are of a very good memorie, and will remember a thing long. They are by nature warme and hott, and therefore cannot endure cold, they are not frugall, for whatfoeuer they get, they fpend it prefently : for it grieues them to keepe it,

20 fo that therein they are like to little children, that can keepe nothing. They are excellent Swimmers and Divers in the water, and are so expert therein, that they much surpasse our Coun-

ð. III.

Of their Apparell, Customes within doores, Manner of diet, Merchandising, the vie of Dache ; Wares carried thither.

Lthough their apparell and manner of drefling is not variable, yet they take a great Cutting their pride therein; as first, in cutting their haire, every one of a several fashion, and as finely haire. as he can deuifeit : fome with a halfe moone, fome crofle wife, others with three or foure hornes upon their heads, and every one a feuerall way, so that among fiftie men,

you shall scarce find two or three that are cut alike. On their armes they hang Iron rings , three Rings. or foure voon one arme cut, some round, others flat, which are raced, and markt as we make fairings for children. About their neckes they were a ftring of Beades, of divers colours, which our Netherlanders bring them ; but the Gentlemen weare Rings of gold about their necks, on their feet, they weare many strange wreathes, which they call Fetiffer, (which name they derive from Fetiffer their Idolatry) for when they eate or drinke, then they power meat and drinke vpon them; and first give them to eate and drinke. At their knees also they weare a string of *Venice* beades, 40 with fome gold among them, of divers fashions, much after the manner that our yong maids weare their Corall bracelets about their armes. They weare caps made of Barkes of trees, with a long string hanging at them, which they bind about their heads, after the Turkilo manner, in Read of a hat-band, painted and dyed of divers colours. They also make caps of Reeds, they Caps. likewise haue hats of Straw, as we have, and some of greene Rushes, they also make caps of Dogs

bout them like a girdle, and let it hang downe beneath their knees, like the Portugals Breechese and when they goe out of doores, they take a fathome of Linnen cloth, Sey, or Stuffe, and weare it about their neckes, and croffe vnder their armes likea Cloake, and in their hands they weare 50 an Assagaie or two, and when they goe in this manner in the streets, they have a Boy or a Slave following them, which carrieth a stoole after them, and where they stay, there their slaves sets downe their stooles for them to fit and prate; they are very proud in their going, for they goe Pride. very flowly, and viea long pace as they goe along through the freets, they looke forward, and neuer cast up their eyes, untill some body that is better then themselves, speaketh unto them, and with them they will stand and talke, and make them an answere; but if they be such as are of meaner qualitie then themselves, to them they will make no answere : but with an angry countenance, and dispitefully, saying, hold your peace, speake not to me, esteeming themselves embated, by speaking to a meaner person then themselves in the streets; for there are very great men among them, very proud in speech, and doe much honour and reuerence to strangers, to the end you hould doe the like to them.

and Goats skins; which they spread vpon a blocke of wood, all finely made, they weare at least

two fathome of Linnen about the middle of their bodies, and betweene their legs, and round a-

When they goe to Sea, then they put off their clothes, and taking a little peece of Linnen or cloth, about a handfull broad, tie that about their bodies, and betweene their legs, before their priny members, and when they goe on land againe, then they put it off, and wash them-

felues from head to feet, and anoint their bodies with Oyle of Palme, or fat of beafts. to make them fine ; and betweene their toes put Soape, to keepe them cleane : they also wie to anoine their bodies to keepe them from the biting of Flies. In the morning, when they goe out and meet with any of their friends or acquaintance, they falute each other very fole unly, bidding them good morrow, embracing each other in their armes, & putting forth the two fore-fineers of their right hands, one to the other, they hold each other fast by them, and kinckling them twice or thrice together, at every time bowing their heads, they fay, Auzy, Muzy, which in

Their luft.

monest the

parts. And th s

courtefie. Racing.

is one chiefe

death of fo

many there.

their Language is good morrow. The Portugals in Mina marry Mullato women, halfe white, halfe blacke, because white women cannot live there. These weare their haire short, as the men, weare many Corals, and are In brauely apparelled. But of the Natiue women of these parts. First, I will tell you of their Natures. Complexions, and Conditions: from their youths vpwards, they are given to Lust and vncleannesse, for a great while they goe with their privile members vncouered, as I faid before and as they had no shame at all, so when they begin to weare some thing upon their bodies, they Thrugh you is begin to expresse shamefac trieste, but then begin to be lecherous, which they naturally learne my nameblas. from their youth vpwards: and before the Netherlanders and Portugals dwelt among them and Traffique in that Countrey, the women were not so proud nor curious, as they are now; but that they have learned much of vs, by feeing that we rather delire a handsome, then an euill ta-Gentiles. Rom. uoured wench; and for that cause, they give themselves thereunto, that they might be beloved 2.3. Let Christians read thus of vs; for they effeeme it to be good fortune for them to have carnall copulation with a Neiber-29 with shame lander, and among themselves, brag and boast thereof. In former time, they vie to goe starke especially tra- naked vntill they were very great, as yet they doe among those that dwell within the land, as u hers. Let the Negros themselues have told vs ; but on the Sea side they are growne more shamefac't, by not Heathens be made worfe meanes of fuch as comes out of Europe to Traffique with them. They are also thecuish, but thereby Christians of they have not so much need as the men. They are very proud in their gate and apparell they which alas is curle and fold the haire of their heads, making a hill in the middle of their heads like a Hat, now common fuch as the Datch Gentlewomen vie to weare, and round about the same, they make round in altemore firikes as bigge as a Dollor, which they dreffe and trim to long, till it be as they would have it; and then they anoint it with Palme Oyle, which makes it very much frizled. They have lone Combes with two teeth onely, each tooth being a finger long, which they thrust into their 30 haire and combe it therewith; for they are troubled with Lice : they vietheir combes also for a kind of falutation or reuerence, which they do vnto men; for when they bid one good morrow, and kincke fingers together, they put their combes out of their haire, and put them in againe, which they vie for a kind of reurrence, in ftead of bowing their heads. Vpon their foreheads they cut three or foure slashes in the flesh, about the length of the joint of a mans finger. and also on their cheekes not farre from their eares, which they suifer to swell, and rile vp. about the breadth of a knife, which they couer ouer with painting, and under their eye browes, they also make white strikes, and on their faces they set white spots, which a farre off shew like Pearles. They also race their armes and their breasts with divers kinds of cuts, every morning putting diverscolours vpon them, whereby they shew like blacke sike doublets cut and pinckt, 40 or like a womans Sattin stomacher, they weare eare rings of Copper or Tin, and Copper bracelets about their armes, and some of Iuorie, and vpon their legs also they weare many red and yellow Copper Rings. But a yong maid that is vnmarried, weareth many Iron Rings about her armes, sometimes thirty or forty vpon one arme: a Whore (by them called Etigafou) oftentimes weare Copper Rings upon her legs, with Bels hanging at them, which she goes ringing through the streets. They are well proportioned and membred, much surpassing our women, in Arength and agility of body, both when they are delivered of their children, and otherwise, as I have faid before. They are very wife and diligent in house keeping, good House-wives and Cookes, but not very skilfull to make cl ane & scoure their Copper Kettles & Dishes, to make them thine. They keepe no more Houshold-stuffe then they have need of, you find the women so more at home in their houses, then the men commonly are; for they vie not to goe abroad to prate with their neighbours, they are not over fruitfull: for commonly it is two orthree veers before they are with child, which I thinke proceeds from their hot natures, and the aire of the Countrey, and secondly, because their husbands have so many wives, two, three, foure, five, and Sizne of riches fixe, and some more, et h one as he hath power and abilitie to keepe them; and with them, he lieth according to their manner, every one her turne, and vieth no. one onely, but hath so much to doe with them alle, that it is long before some of them are gotten with child. Their men are diligenter therein then we are, & the first thing they will tell you, is of their wifes and children, for he that among them hach many wives and children, hee is a rich man. The women teach their daughters from their youths vpwards, to bake bread, and to grind Millia, with other Housewivery; whereby it commeth to passe, that they have good skill in house-keeping, because they are brought up the rein from their youths. They are alwaies rubbing their teeth with a certaine kind of wood, where with they make them fo smooth that they shine, as is before faid, as white as luory : and in truth those white teeth make a faire shew in their blacke faces. They

weare a fadome and some a fadome and a halfe of linnen cloth about their bodies, which hangeth from beneath their brefts or their nauel; down to their knees, then they take a piece of red, Apparell and blue or yellow cloth, whereof they make a Girdle, and put it about them, and on it they hang ornaments. their Kniues, Purfes with monie, and some Keies, and although they have but few Chests or Cubboords, yet they hang Keies at their Girdles, because it makes a faire shew. They also hang diners Wifpes of itraw about their Girdles, which they tie full of Beanes, and other Vennce Beades, efterming them to be their Fetiffes, or Saints, some of them take a piece of cloth, others a Mat made of barkes of Trees, others a piece of a Carpet, and weare it about their bodies, and fo every one weares something, and this they doe within the house, but when they goe to Mar-10 ket to buy fomething, then they put off those things, and goe and wash themselves in a Kettle of water from the head to the feet, and then they take another piece of Linnen to put about their bodies and another Girdle, and another fathome or two of Linnen Cloth, and hang it about their bodie, from their brefts downe to their feet like a Gowne, and vpon it weares another thing of Sey or of striped linnen, and that she carries upon her shoulders, and under her arme like a Cloake, and carries a woodden Platter in her hand which she beares vp a high, and so goes to Market, and when she comes home againe from the Market or other places where the hath beene, the puts off those cloathes, and put on worse, for they are more sparing then the men, and therefore they carrie the Purse, and when their Husbands will have any monie, they must come to them for it.

20 them, to earne something, but the women prouide the meate to serue for their daily food , al-

though they eare a part, they buy no more meate every day, then ferueth them for that day, or

much as they need for their House, and with a staffe stampe it, as wee vie to stampe Spice in a

Grocers shop, and that is their manner of threshing, then they fanne it in a woodden dish, till it

be cleane, but fuch as haue flaues make them doe it. This Millia is a faire white Seed, when it is

broken, as hereafter I will shew, ouer night they steepe this Millia with a little Mais in faire

water, and in the morning after they have washt, and made themselves readie, they take the

Millia and lay it +pon a ftone, as Painters doe when they grind their colours, then they takeanother stone about a foot long, and with their hands grind the Millia as small as they can, till in

a manner it be dough, and then it sheweth like baked Buckway Cakes, they temper their dough

fend them to the Ilands of Saint Thomas, or to Angola, others that have not the meanes to have

fuch bread, they goe to Market to buy it, and call it Kangues, when the Fisher-men come out of

the Sea with their fish, then the women carrie it to the Market, where enerie one comes to buy

draught) Dogs, Cats, and filthy stinking Elephants, and Buffolds stefh, wherein there is a thou-

fand Maggets, and many times stinkes like carrion, in such fort that you cannot indure the finel

thereof; there are likewise little Birds as bigge as a Bul-finch, of a grey colour, with red bills,

which very cunningly make their Nests vpon the smallest ends of the branches of trees, thereby

to preserve themselves from Snakes or other venomous beasts. Those they eate alive, feathers

40 that and fielh, fruite, and other things. They wie altogether raw and strange kind of meates,

The women haue the gouernment of their Houses, and the men take care as much as lyes in Their house-

they can eate at a meale. In the evening they goe to their houses that stand without the Towne, Making of and are full of Millia (which is their kind of Corne) where they take a certaine quantitie, as bread

with fresh water and Salt, and then make Rowles thereof as bigge as two fifts, and that they lay vpon a warme harth, whereon it baketh a little, and this is the bread which they vie. The Negroes of the Castle Damina, bake faire bread of Mais, which is almost like our wheaten bread, Raw food and that they cut in Rowles : they can also bake it so hard , that it will keepe two or three monethes fweet and hard, for they furnish their ships and laces with such bread, when they

as handfuls of Graine or Manigette, (and will drinke vp whole Romers full of Aquauite at a Filihy food.

I have beene told by some of the Moores, that the Countrie people dwelling within the Land, eate dried Snakes, and the Boores or Slaues, as also the common people which dwell vp. 50 on the Sea-fide, although they have better provision of meate then thole that dwell further into the Land, yet they are of to hot a nature, that they eat raw Dogs guts, and neuer feethe nor roaft them, which we our felues faw : And there was one of their Boyes left aboord a Nethers landers thip for a pawne for debt, which Boy was to greedie to eate raw meate, that although he had fufficient meate with them in the ship, yet hee would eate the Hens meate out of their Troughes, This Boy made a sticke, and at the end thereof hee draws a naile with the point vp- A greedie Boy. wards, and went and lay by the Hens Cage, and when any of them put out their heads to eate meste, he strooke them in the heads, and killed them, and then her went and shewed the Sailers, that some of the Hens were dead, which he did to the end be might eate their raw guts, and

63 would not flay fo long vntill the guts were made cleane, but tooke them and eate them raw as they came out of the Hens bellies. They eate also great store of old stanking fish, which is dried in the Sunne, but to fay, that they eate fuch kind of raw meates for necessitie and no other, were vntruth; for they also are very daintie, and can eate good meate when they have it. There are

Palme-oile.

women that dwell in the Castle among the Portugals that can dresse meate well, they cate also many Hens, Goats, Oxen, and Hartes, but fuch meate is not eaten by the common people, but those that eate them are Gentlemen, or such as are rich, and are able to buy them; they also eate Their Trees. Inon that Care and Patates. They have three kind of trees, as the Palme-trees, whereof fome are Females which yeeld no wine, but beare Grapes as bigge as Plummes, of an Orange colour, at the one end being some-what blackish : those Grapes they peele to the stones, and thereof they make Oile, which they call Palme Oile, which is verie delicate and good, which they vie to dreffe their meate withall, and make good fawce thereof for their fish, the thickest of this Oile they vie to anoint their bodies withall, to make them cleane, and the women vieit to frizell their haire, the veines are as great as Acornes, and as hard as a frone, at the end thereof having three round holes, they beate them in pieces, and within them find certaine Nuts, like little earthen pellets, much like hazell-nuts, but when you eate them, they tafte of the wood.

and are verie drie. They likewise have many Beanes and Pease, whereof some are like Turkie Beanes of a purple colour, these Beanes are good and fat, which they dresse with Oile of Palme, and it is a very excellent meate and nourisheth well, but the other kind of Beanes and Peafe, they vie not to eate. for they have no great quantitie of them, growing thereabouts. The lugnamis also they vie in many places in flead of bread. Their drinke commonly is nothing but water, but yet in some places they brew a little Mais in water, which beeing fodden together, is almost like a kind of beere, which they also vie much to drinke and call it Poitou, others buy a pot of Palme-wine, and because that will not continue long, therefore foure or five of them goe together, and buya pot or two : a pot of theirs is ten pots of ours, and that they pay for together, which they powre into a great Cabas, which growes upon Trees, whereof fome are halfe as big as a Kilderkin and will hold at least twelue Kans, and then fit downe round about it to drinke, whereof euerie man fendeth his louingest and truest wife a little pot full home to drinke, and the first draught that they drinke, they take it out of the Cabas with a smaller Cabas, and when the first man drinkes. the rest stand up, and taking his Cap or Hat off, lay their hands upon his head, and with a low roice cries, Tantofi, Tantofi; at the first draught, they drinke not the Cabas full out, but leaves little in it, which they throw vpon the ground, faying, 1. OV, as giving their Fetifies that to drinke, and if they have other Fetifies on their armes or feete, they fpit drinke out of their mouthes you them, as if they gaue them drinke also; for they are of opinion, that if they doe it not, or forget to doe it, they should not drinke their wine quietly together, but that their Fe-

tiffes would let them. Naturally they are great Drinkers, and vie no leffe vnfeemelineffe in their

feeding but eate as vomannerly and greedily, as if they were a companie of Hogs: for fitting

vp with their three middlemoft fingers, and gaping, cast it so right into their mouthes, that they

never faile nor cast it beside their mouthes, whereat we wondred much. They are alwayes hun-

grie, and would willingly eate all day long, which shewes that they have very hot mawes, and

although the Countrey is very hot, whereby the heate of the Aire commonly should fill mens stomakes, yet they are hungrie, and wee Netherlanders are not weake stomaked there, but al-

waies have good appetites, whereby I am of opinion, that heate in those Countries makes men

hungrie : but because I am no Doctor of Physicke, I will not intreate thereof. And because they make great account of that drinking together, they are verie earnest and industrious to get some-

thing, and to make prouition of Gold, which having gotten, they cannot be frugall or sparing,

but prefently goe and drinke it with their companions, now one, and then another, euerie one

his turne, and if one gets more then his fellowes, then hee must be liberaller then his fellowes,

that is, when they begin to deale with the Merchants, and to goe aboord the ships, and he that

is poore or hath not much, can hardly beare companie to drinke, because they are not sparing,

to live by, but live vpon that which they got from others by force, which was not much, speci-

ally to get any thing to apparell themselves; for before that time they went all naked, as I said

within a while after, the Portugals began to traffique and deale with the Sauage Inhabitants, they

As I have understood by the Inhabitants of those Countries, before the Portugals came this

Vacinill fee-

Drinking.

Strange hundown vpon the ground to eate, they stay not till they have eaten one morfell vp,but still cramme gerin fo hota in, and they put not their meate into their mouthes, but pull their meate in pieces, and take it

Good fellowthip or prodi-

Their tradings ther to deale with them, they had very little or no kind of Merchandize to traffque withall, or

when they have gotten any thing.

before, much lelle had they any cattle or victuals for their maintenance, but only such as the First simplicity Portugals brought thither, and by that meanes the Countrie was filled and replenished with diners kinds of beafts and Corne, whereby at this day, there is almost all kind of things that are necessarie and needfull for mans suffenance, and otherwise to bee had in those Countries. And

likewise began to know their Merchandize. At the first, in former time they came and brought their Gold vnto the Portugals, and bought of them fuch things as they wanted, as Linnen Cloth, &c. but the people dwelling further

First trading, within Land, durif not venture to come to the Portugals to deale with them, as wondring at

them, it being a fearefull thing vinto them to fee white men apparelled, and they themselves blacke and vnapparelled, (as the like happened vnto our men; for at the first they were afraid to fee Blacke (Moores) and therefore they brought their monie to thole that dwelt on the Sea fide, where the Portugals traffique, and told them what wares they would have, and they went to the Callle, and bought such things as they defired, as Iron, Tinne, Copper Basons, Kniues, Cloth, Linnen, Kettles, Corals; and fuch like wares, and the Merchants that fent them to the Portugals, paid them for their paines, vpon enery Pefo of Gold by them disburfed, fo that if they bestowed many Peloes, they received a good deale of monie for their Factoridge, and he that meanes they got their livings.

But after that, when we began to traffique thither; (the first that went from hence thither First Dutch out of Holland, to deale with the Negroes, beeing called Barent Erickson of Medenblicke) and Trade. found what profit the Portugals did there, we increased our Trade thither, and fent more thins with the faid Barons, as a fit man for st, because he knew the Coast, as having beene there with the Portugals. But having no place youn the Land (as the Portugals had) to carrie our wares ashoare, and to lay it in Ware-houses to traffique with them as time served, and durst not, or else might not goe on Land, we were constrained to flay with our shippes at anchor before their Townes, attending for the Merchants, that came abourd our thips with their Canoes, at which time the Negroes leeing that wee had Merchandize aboord, imboldened themselves to traffique with vs, and brought their Gold aboord our ships, and for that at this present they deale but 20 little with the Portugals, but only with our Countrimen, therefore I will shew in what man-

ner they deale with vs.

In the morning betimes, they come aboord our fhips with their Canoes, or Scures to traffique with vs and the cause why their Merchants came so early aboord, is for that in the morning the wind, which they call Bosons, blowes off from the Land, and then it is calme smooth water, for about noone the wind which they call Som Bretton, begins to blow out of the Sea, and then morning from they row to Land againe: for the people that dwell within the Land, can hardly brooke the land & calme. Seas, for when they are abourd the thip, they can fearer goe or stand, but lie downe and four like Dogges, and are verie Sea-licke ; but their Rowers and Pilots that bring them abourd are hardie enough, and never are ficke, by reason of their daily vine to the Seas. But some of their 30 Merchants when they come aboutd our thips, are to ficke that they cast out all they have within their bodies; and by reason of their beeing so sicke infaire weather; they are so afraid of the wind (when the waves goe any thing high) that they make as much hafte home as they can, and fome of them dare not venture vpon the Seas to goe abourd the ships, but deliver their monie to the Pilots or Factors, telling them what Merchandize they defire to buy, and those Tolken come with the Gold aboord the ships, having a Purse which trangeth about their middles, wherein

they put their Gold, and enery seuerali mans Gold is in a piece of Cloth or Paper by it selfe,

and they can tell which is euerie mans, and what wares hee defireth to have for it, and fome-

times they have twelve or ten mens Gold to beftow, which is called an Englift of Gold, and of some two, three, or foure, and when any of their monies is not waight, then they put it into 40 their Purse, and carrie it to the man agame, for if they should put any thing to it, to make it full waight, the Merchant would not give if them agains, for they weigh their Gold first upon the Land, and know how much it is before they lend it abourd the ship, for they credit not one the other, and when they have bestowed their monie, then we must give them some-what to boot,

When we began to traffique here in the Countrie with two or three thips, as one of Middle- Vadermining burgh, one of Amsterdam, and one of Schiedam, and that all our ships met and lay at anchor and defrauding together to fell our wares, the one ship seeing that the other traff qued more, and vented more Merchants. wares then his fellowes, to find the meanes to get the Merchants aboord their ships, they willed the Pilots (with whom they must hold friendship, for they carrie the Merchants abourd) to 50 bring them abourd their thips, and they would give them something for their labours, and the Pilots accordingly to get something, brought them abourd that ship, which had made them that, offer, for they are verie couetous, which the other ships perceiving, willed the Pilots to bring the Merchants aboord their shippes, and they would takewise give them something : and they made them answere, that if they would give them as much as the other did, they would come abourd their ships, which they promised to doe, and game them more Dache then the other, and by that meanes drive the Merchants, Pilots, and Tolker about their fhips, which the other ships feeing, and thinking that their Merchants wares coft them no more then the others, gaue them more Dache then the others, and by that meanes ftriuing one with the other, they deminished one and the others gaine, and in fine, their gifts grew to luch a rate, that at this day, their Da-

60 che amounteth vnto fixe or feuen per cento. And now it is come to passe, that whereas the Countrie people and Merchants were wont to pay the litridge and brokeridge to the Pilots and Tolken, to carrie them abourd the ships, they fought to the Merchants and Countrie Moores to get them into their Canoes, for greedinesse of Dache, which they got of the Factors for their labours, to bring the Merchants abourd, and

938.

thereby in stead of paying them for going aboard, they give the Merchants much Dache, in repard of the great profit they get thereby.

Many Merchants comming to the Sea fide to buy wares, some of them a hundred or two hundred miles from within the land, bring great flore of gold, & haue divers flaves with them, which they lade with the wares which they buy in the ships, wherof some have twenty, others thirtie. and some more, as they have meanes, and according to the trade that they vie : which Merchants or Morrib countrey people, know the houses or lodgings, where they vie to lie, and waigh their money to their Tolke or Hofte, and tell them what goods or wares they will haue; who comming aboard, commonly bring one of the Merchants with them, for they trust not one the other, and leave the rest with their slaves you the land, which tell them what wares they de-16 fire to haue ; and if it be a Merchant that can speake no Portugall speech, they will prefently tell von and will the Factor not to speake Marif speech voto them, betaufe their Merchant is one that dwels farre within the land; thereby giving you to understand, that they meane to deceiue him . and to beguile him of much money. The poore Merchant being ficke, and lying in the hip spuing like a dogge, in the meane time the Brokers make the march for them, telling the Factors how much ware they define to have for for much gold; for that the wares are commonly fold all at one price: The Tolken makes not many words with the Factors, but fet certains wares before the Merchant, as little as they can to content him for his money, and the price being made with him, he weighes their gold, and takes the wares, and goes on land againe; and the Merchant being gone home, then the Pilots and Tolken come aboard the ships againe, to 20 fetch that which they have coozoned the Merchant off : fo that oftentimes the Merchants are deceived of a third part of their goods by such practifes cothers, while he lookes about, or turnes to fpue, fteale a peece of the Merchants gold, and put it into their Mouthes, Eares, or Noffrels, making the Merchant believe that his money is too light: the Merchant for his part, feeing that by meanes of their thecurry his money will not reach out ; because it is too light , that it may weigh more then it is, blowes in the Balkance, which the Factors oftentimes perceiuing not, and thinking that they have their full waight, are by that meanes deceived, and come frort of their reckoning; so that they have a how fand devices to steale, and to beguile the Merchants. At first they were woont to be very simple in their dealing, and trusted the Netherlanders very White Deuils much, whereat we wondred : for they were of opinion, that white men were Gods, and 30 would not deceive them and then sooks the wares upon their words, without reckoning it after them, whereby they were decemed; for, that if they bought ten fatheme of Linner cloth they found but eight, and by that meanes; loft two fathome, and other things after the rate, which the Factors did to groffely, that the Merchants in the end perceived it, and began to looke better to themselves, and grew to subtill in their reckioning, that if they bought one hundred fathoms of Linnen, they could reckon it to a farhome, and tell whether they had their measure or not; fo that now if you doe them any wrong, by measuring or reckoning, they will not come aboard your (hip any more; and which is more, for any bad looke, or haftie word that you shall give

Wares for thefe parts of

Coozening

them, they will never be friends with you againe. Troubles and warres in the Neiberlands, constrained vs to feek Traffique here also, and to vradertake this voyage, by that meanes to put the Portugalls from it, whitch in the end we did, for Guines, and for that fince the Netberlanders came hither to Traffick with the Negroes, Moores, the Portugalls have best trading, and are wholly decayed. First, we bring them great store of slight Linner cloth, whereof there is very much spent in those Countries, for they apparell themselves therewith, and it is the chiefest thing they vie for that purpose : besides this , we carry them great store of Basons, as little Basons, Barbers Basons, Basons to drinke in, Platters of Copper, flat Basons, great broad Copper pans, at the least two fathome about, and small Poinets without edges : The small Basons they vie to put Oile in, wherwith they amoint themselves, and the greater fort of them they fet in the graues of the dead, & vie them to carrydiuers things in. The Barbers Basons they vie to wash themselues in, & when they cut their haire, platters they vie to lay ouer others to couer them withall, to keepe dust and filth from falling, into their things. The great broad Pans, are by them vied to kill a Goat or a Hogge in, and to make it cleane therein, in stead of a Tub. The Poffenets they vie to dreffe their meat in, which ferueth them to very good purpose, they will not have them with feales, as we vie them here with vs, and many other fuch like Basons of Copper, which our thips bring thither in great quantities, and therewith fill the Countrie fo full; and by meanes thereof, they are fold as good cheape there vato the Negros, as they are bought in Amsterdam and although there are so many of those Basons brought thither, and no ware that weareth to much, as Linnen, yet you fee but few old Copper things there, and therefore you m ift thinke, that there is great flore of people inhabiting further within the land, which vie fo great quantitie of fich things.

We carrie thither great store of Kettles, which they vie to fetch water in, out of their pits and Vaileyes, and some red Copper pots Tinned within, wherein they vie to put water, in flead of a barrell of beare to drinke , earthen pots they vie also to drinke out of. Iron is vied by them to make their weapons, as Aslagaie, cutting Kniues, Poniards, &c. The Aslagaies & Poniards

they yie for the warres. The cutting Kniues, to Till and cut vp the ground, in flead of Spades, and fome to cut wood withall, and to vie about their Building, for they have no other Tooles: They also buy great flore of Red, Blew, Yellow, and Greene Rupinsh cloth, which they vie for Girdles about their middles, to hang their Kniues, Purfes, Poniards, and fuch like things at. They vie white Spanift Serges to weare upon their bodies, instead of Clokes, Rings of Copper and Braffe, which they weare about their armes and feet for a great pride. They also vie Tim things, as Rings for their armes, but not many. They vie many Kniues which wee make with vs in Holland, and call them Docke Meffen. They also vie great store of Venice Beads, of all kinds of colours, but they delire fome colours more then others, which they breake in foure 10 or fine peeces, and then grind them vpon a ftone, as our children grind Cherrie ftones : and then put them vpon strings, made of Barke of trees, ten or twelve together, and therewith Traffique much : Those ground Corals they weare about their neckes, hands and feet. They also vie round Beads, and specially great round Counters, which they hang and plait among their haire, and let them hang ouer their eares. Pins they vie to make Fish-hookes . Horse tailes they vie when they daunce, & also when they sit still, to keep the flies from their bodies; Looking-glasfes, and fmall Copper milke Kans, with many fuch like things. But the chiefest wares that are vetered there, and most vsed among them, is, Linnen, Cloth, Braffe, and Copper things, Basons, Kettles, Kniues, and Corals.

At first we yied many times to deceive them, not onely in measuring of Linnen, but in deli- Their knownering them broken and patcht Basons, and peeced Kettles for their money; rotten Cloth, ledge in our through the which they might have fifted Beanes; Kniues that were fo ruftie, that they could warres, and trihardly without breaking pull them out of their sheathes, with such like wares. But now by all thereof. vie and experience, they have attained to fuch skill in our wares, that they are almost able to furnaffe vs therein. For, first, when they buy any Linnen cloth, they looke if it be not to flight and thin, and whether it be white and broad; for they are very curious to buy white and broad Linnen, and respect not the strength so much as the breadth of the Linnen ; for they yes to hang it about their bodies, specially the women, which defire to haue it hang downe from vnderneath their breafts, to their knees. Secondly, they take Woollen cloth, and hold it vp a-30 gainst the light, to see if it be thin. They draw the Kniues ont of the sheathes, to see if they be not rultie. They looke vpon the Bafons one by one, to fee if they have no holes in them : or whether they be broken, and the least hole that they spie in them, they lay them away, and defire to have others for them; and also if they be but a little foule or greafie, they will none of them : And for quantitie and qualitie make triall of all other wares, as curiously as in Enrope is done.

d. IIII.

What Custome the Merchants pay to their Kings. Their Measures Weights. Scales, Markets: Alfotheir Sabbath, Fetifios and Super Sitions.

Traffique with the Countrey people, and they are placed there, to see that the Customes. Kings lofe not their Rents and Imposts, and that it may be the better paid them, and no deceit vied, they appoint one of their Sons or some one of their neerest friends to be present with them. Those Customers receive the Custome of the fish, which is taken in his precinct, or before his Hauen, and to that end he hath a measure to measure it withall, and if the measure be not full (of any fish what soeuer) then it payeth no Custome, but if their fish bee 50 more then filleth that measure, then he taketh the fifth fish thereof, or as much as he thinketh

He Kings have their Customes dwelling vpon the Sea Coast, where the ships lie to

good to take for his Custome, and that is presently sent to the King of that quarter by his slaues, which every morning come thither to fetch the fish.

Such Merchants as come thither a great way out of the Countrey, pay to the King of the Hauen where they goe to Traffique, the weight of fixe pence in gold, for their passage through his Toll. Countrey, and whether they intend to buy much or little, the passage money is all one, and when they have Traffique with the Factors in the ships, and come to land, the Customer taketh a part of their goods from them, which is commonly a fourth part of that which they have bought, and carrieth it away with him, then the Merchant takes the rest and carrieth it to his lodging, which done, he goethbacke againe to the Customer (whom they call la guarda, 60 within Portugall is the watch) and agree with him, and pay him as little as they can, and so have their goods againe, and if they have bestowed lesse then two ounces of gold vpon wares, then there is no fet Custome to bee paid for it, but they give as much as they can agree vpon for it, with the Customer, and that is the Customers owne profit, in stead of his wages, but whatfoe-

uer they buy aboue the value of two ounces of Gold, then they must pay an English of Gold for custome thereof, those two ounces of Gold they call Benda.

Fines.

Also if they have Holne any thing from any of their Countrie people, they also pay monie for it, as the case requireth. And also when they have laien with another mans Wife, then the King hath a forfeit paid vnto him for it. And when the Countrie people come to Market with their weapons, they must leave their Weapons in some place, or else they must pay a forfeit. which is fixe penie weight in Gold, if they come with any Armes or Weapons to their Sea. townes. And they also that counterfeit falle Gold, with divers other forfeitures, which are all naid to the King, whereof the Customer everie three monethes maketh his account, and payeth to it vnto the King.

Weights and

They make Weights of Copper of divers forts, and have little Copper Scales which are round, and hollow like an Orange peele. A Benda is their greatest weight, which with vs is two nunces; Benda-affa, is halfe a Benda, which is an ounce. Affuwa, is two Pefos and a halte. Eggeba, is two Pesos, or halfe an ounce. Seron, is a Peso and a halfe. Eusanno is a Pelo or a Loot. Quienta, is three quarters of a Pelo, each Pelo is a Loot. Media taba, is a quarter of a Pelo, or a small parcell. Agiraque, is halfe a Pelo, or halfe a Loot, each Pelo is a Loot; fo that their weights are all one with ours for the names, but differ in the pound a Pefo and a halfe, which is a Loot and a halfe, so that their weights are so much lighter then ours. They measure their Cloth by two fathome together, which they cut one from the other, and

call it lectam, and fell their Linnen in that fort among themselues, and those two fathome atter 20 our measure is a storke and three quarters, and they are verie subtill in measuring of their Linnen. and can reckon that so many of our storkes make so many of their fadomes. They cut their Woollen-cloth in pieces not aboue a handfull broad, which they vie in stead of Girdles about their middles, and fell the Cloth in this fort among themselues in this manner, and vie no other kind of measure thereunto. They are not verie subtill nor expert in telling, specially to reckon, for when they have past the number of ten, they rehearse so many words one after the other for one number, that they are fo cumbred, that they cannot tell how to get out of it, and fo fit buz. zing fo long, till at last they have forgotten their number, and are forced to begin to tell againe. but fince they began to deale with the Naberlanders , and were to reckon about the number of ten, for they vie no more among them, they tell till they come to ten, and then take one of 20 their fingers into their hands, and then tell to ten againe, and then take another finger into their hand, and fo proceed till they have both their hands full, which in all maketh an hundred, then they marke that vp, and then begin againe to tell to ten, and vie the same order as before.

Eurrie Towne hath Market daies specially appointed, vpon the which you find more to bee they are kept. bought then upon other daies, and euerie Towne hath his Market upon fuch a day, as the others No Market on haue it not, and so euerie one differeth upon their daies, and when their Market daies come, they their Sabbath. haue two daies Market one after the other, wherein the principall Boores or Countrie people, come from divers places to traffique with the ships. They have their Sunday also, but on that day they doe nothing.

In the morning betimes, affoone as it is day, the Countrie people come with their Sugar to Canes to the Market carrying two or three bundles together vpon their heads, which are bound up like faggots, and being in the Market they vibind them, and so lay them downe vpon the ground, which done, the Inhabitants of that place come to buy them, fome two, others three, and fome more as they have need of them, whereby they have foone fold their Sugar Canes, for they wie many of them to eate, and alloone as they have fold their Sugar Canes, then the women come to the Market with their wares, who bring Oranges, Limons, Bannanas, Backouens, Potatoes, Indianias, Millia, Mais, Rice, Manigette, Hens, Egges, Bread, and fuch like neceffaries, which those that dwell on the Sea-fide have need of, and are fold both wnto the Inhabitants, and to the Netherlanders in the ships, which come thither to buy it. The Inhabitants of the Sea-fide, come also to the Market with their wares, which they buy of the Netherlanders, 25 50 Linnen Cloth, Kniues, ground Corals, Looking-glaffes, Pinnes, arme Rings, and Fish, which their Husbands haue gotten in the Sea, whereof the women buy much, and carrie them to other Townes within the Land, to get some profit by them, so that the fish which is taken in the Sea, is carried at least an hundred or two hundred miles vp into the Land, for a great Present, although many times it stinkes like carrion, and hath a thousand Maggots creeping in it. Those women are verie nimble about their bufineffe, and so earnest therein, that they goe at least fine or fixe miles every day to the places where they have to doe, and are laden like Affes : for at their backes they carrie their children, and on their heads they have a heavie burthen of fruit, or Millia, and so goe laden to the Market, and there she buyeth fish, to carrie home with her, so that oftentimes they come as heavily laden from the Market, as they went thither. These pay no 62 custome to the King, but if they find any Ferifies in the way as they goe (which are their Idolatrous gods) they give them some of their fruit or Millia to eate, which is as much as if they gaue them the tenth part thereof.

Superfti:ion.

Tithes.

Those women goe seven or eight together, and as they passe along the way they are verie merrie and pleatant, for commonly they fing and make a nosse; about noone the Countrie people heein to come to the Market with their Palme-wine, which they carrie in pots, some bringing one some two pots, as they are able, they come armed to the Market, having a hewing Kmile at their Girdles, and two or three Affagayes in their hands, but when they enter into the Market, then they let their armes in a certain place appointed thereunto, and when they haue fold and goelome againe, every man takes his weapons and goes his way, not once changing one with the other, but cuerie man takes his owne, and when the Notherlanders and the Negroes have done traffiquing : when the Countrie people come to the Market with their wine, To looke what the Pilots or Rowers (that carried the Merchants aboord the ships) have gotten, or that was given them for Dache, by the Factors, therewith they buy Palme-wine, and drinkeit vp together, they pay for their Wine either with Gold, or Linnen; but for the most part, they pay for it with Gold, which they weigh verie narrowly, one vnto the other, and when there are many Merchants, and that the Wine is much defired, then it is oftentimes deerer then Spanish

Besides this, the Market folke know enerie one their place, and where to sit to fell their wares, as those with fruit stand in one place, they with Sugar Canes in another place, they with Wood, Water, and Bread by themselves; and those that sell Wine in a place by themselues, but the Palme-wine which is brought thither by Sea, from other places, that is ne-20 uer brought to the Market, for many times when it comes in the Canoes in the euening, when the people have need thereof, afloone as it is brought on Land, the Negroes fland readie vpon the sheare watching for it, and going to the Merchants, enerie one takes a Pot, and carries it away. fo that they have presently fold it, & the Me rehant needs not feare that his Wine will fowre for want of vtterance, for they are so greedie of it, specially for to drinke, that oftentimes they fight and fall together by the eares for it.

They vie no monie nor any kind of Mint, wherewith they pay each other, but when they buy any thing they pay for it with Gold, and that by weight, and it is a verie small parcell that hath not some kind of weight to weigh it withall, and they pay each other with foure square pieces of Gold, weighing a graine or halfe a graine. The cause why they pay in this fort. 30 and have this custome, is by meanes of the Portugals, of the Castle of Myna, which shewed them this way, for before the Portugals came thither, the Negroes knew no fuch thing, but when they bought any thing, they exchanged ware for ware, but the Portugal; cd ming thither had no monie to pay them, when they bought fruits or other victuals to eate, an therefore they defired to pay with Kacrawen, in flead of monie, &cfo it is the custome about the Castle of Myna, that they have great flore of Kacramen, which they vie for paymet more then in other places. In places where the Portugals are not known, the Negros vie not that kind of Mint, but fel their Gold as it commeth out of the Earth, for they know not how to melt or vie their Gold as the Negros do. that deale with the Portugals, and in stead of monie paid one the other in small stones: they vie also small pieces of Iron of a finger length, with a halfe Moone thereon, which they vie in stead of monie, and have no other kind of monie in the Golden Coast of Guinea, then fuch as I faid before, wherewith they pay each other.

Although they are altogether wild, rough, and vnciuill, having neither Scripture nor Bookes, nor any notable Lawes that might be fet downe, or declared to shew the manner of their policie and living, yet when they have past the fix daies of the weeke in labour and paines taking, to get their liuings, the feuenth day they leaue working, and reckon that to bee their day of ease, and abstinence from worke, or their Sunday, which they call Dio Fetissos, which in our Fetissos day. speech should signifie Sunday, but they observe it not vpon our Sunday, nor vpon the Iewes Sab- An Ethnicke bath Day, but hold it vpon Tuefday, the second working day in the weeke; what law or opinion they have to moone them thereunto, I know not, but they hold Tuefday for their Sunday, and that day the Fishermen goe not to the Sea for fish: The women and Countrie people that

50 day bring no Wine to the Market, but all the Wine which that day they draw out of the trees. they deliver it ynto the King, which in the evening hee giveth vnto his Gentlemen, and they drinke it among them. That day they doe no kind of worke, nor traffique with other but fuch as dwell on the Sea-fide, refraine not for all that to goe aboord the shippes, and to buy wares of the Netherlanders. In their Markets they have a fquare place foure foot every way, supported with foure Pillars, and about two cubits high from the ground, flat on the top and coursed close with Reedes, and hanged round about Wilpes or Ferifor of Graw, whereon they lay Millia with Feiffer meate. Palme-oile or water, and gue their god that to eate and drinke to fulfaine him withall, that he should not die for hunger or thirst, thinking that he eateth and drinketh it and lives by it . but

so the Birds of the Aire cate the graine, and drinkes the water, and when it is eaten they anoint the Altar with Oile, and fet moremeate and drinke vpon it, thinking thereby to doe their god

They have also a Priest, who in their speech they call a Feriffero, hee vpontheir Sabbath day The Feriffero, fits vpon aftoole, inche middle of the Market before the Altar or place whereupon they facri- or Prieft.

fice vnto their Fetiffo, then all the men, women and children come and fit round about him. and His preaching. there he speaketh vnto them, & they sit still to heare him but what it is, or what it meaneth that cannot Hearne, nor perceiue, neither can you get it from them, for I haue oftentimes asked them about it, but they will not tell, but are alhamed to declare it. But I have feene this Fetifiers. haue a por with a certaine drink, (wherein there was a Snake) flanding by him, and a Wifpe, and fome women with their little children went to him, which children hee stroaked with colour. or with some of that drinke, and so they went away, which I ghesse to be a kind of Salue against their Fetifo, for they efteeme their Fetifos to be both good and euill. And when their Fetifere hath made an Oration vnto them, then he flands vp and smeareth the Altar with his Wilpe. and drinke out of his pot, and then the people ving certaine words and making a great noise a- Io mong them, clapping their hands together, cry I. on, I. on, and therewith their preaching is done, and so euerie one goes home to his house.

Their Mattins,

Appealing

They hang many straw Wispes upon their heads, and thinke thereby to bee free and safe as long as they weare them, and that their Fetifies can doe them no harme. In the morning betimes when they have washt their bodies cleane, they stroake their faces with white stripes. made of earth like chalke, which they do in honour of their Fetifo, and vie it in stead of praiers in a morning; when they eat any thing they present their Feiss (the straw Wispes which they weare about their legges) the first bit, and also the first draught that they drinke, giving him to drinke, which if they doe not, they thinke they shall have no good lucke that day. for they perswade themselves that their Fetisse would not otherwise suffer them to be quiet. When 20 the Fishermen take but small store of fish, then they thinke that their Fetifo is angrie, and therefore will give them no fish, then they make a great crie among them, and goe to their Fetiliere. and give him Gold to conjure their Feriff, to fend them store of fish. This Conjurer presently goes, and makes all his Wines (two, three or foure, or as many as he hath) put on their best and parell and ornaments, and with them goes howling and crying round about the Towne, firikine themselnes upon their brefts, and clapping their hands flat together, and so making a great firme and noise, goe to the Sea-side, and taking boughes from the trees, thang them about their neckes: those trees they esteeme to be their Fetisson Dustienam, who they thinke send them fish. Then, the Conjurer or he that should be witch the Ferifos, comes with a Drumme, and plaies or founds before the trees, which they esteeme to be good for that purpose, which done hee goes to his 30 Wives vpon the strand, and when they have spoken one vnto the other a good while, he casteth Millia into the Sea for his meate, with other colours, thinking that thereby their god is appeafed, and will let them take fish enough. When the King receiveth not custome enough, to maintaine himselse withall, then he goeth

Confultation with their O- to a tree which he esteemeth to be his Fetife, and facrificeth vnto it, carrying it meat and drinks then the Conjurers come and conjures the tree, to tell them whether there will any Merchants come or not, which to doe they make a heape of ashes, in forme like a Sugar-loafe, and cutting a bough from the tree sticke that in it, then they take a Bason of water and drinke out of it, and therewith sprinkle the bough of the tree, which done they speake each to other, and then againe they sprinkle more vpon it, after that they take some of the ashes, and be-dawbe their fa- 40 ces therewith, end in that manner vie many foolish and vaine Ceremonies, and not long after they shall heare a voice which is the Deuill, that faith something vnto them, and therewith they goe home againe, and bring word what their Ferifo hath faid. They hang many of those

things about their children for diseases, as is said before, as also of their drinke of ieasousie. When any man dieth, they also make a Fetifo, and defire it to bring the bodie into the othe world, and not to trouble it in the way as it goeth, then the next our neerest kinsman killetha Hen, and dreffeth it ready to be fodden, which done, they goe and fit in a corner of their house: and with him take all his Feiisos, and place them in order, as their greatest god in the middle, and the rest of meaner fort by it, then he takes certaine beades, some made of shels, some of Beanes and great Peafe, and others of feathers, mixed with Buttons made of barkes of trees, so and hangs them vpon the Fetifos. After that they take the bloud of the dead Hen, and therewith fpinkle their Fetiffo (for a dead man must offer bloud vnto his god) then hee fetcheth certaine Herbs out of the fields, and hangs them about his necke like a chaine. In the meane time, while the man is in this fort made readie. The Hen is fodden, and being fodden then he brings it, and putting it in a Platter, sets it in the middle of the Fetifor, which done, hee beginneth to coniure, vfing many words, and casteth water or wine of Palme vpon his Fetisso, then he takes two or three of the greene leaves, which he hath about his necke, and rolleth them betweene his hands, making a little bowle or bale thereof, which he takes in the two fore-fingers of both his hands, and thrusts it betweene his legges, twice or thrice one after the other, saying, to his Fetifo, Ancie, which is as much as if he should say, All haile. After this he wringeth the sap out 60 of that ball, and lets it drop vpon his Fetifo; which done he laies the ball vpon the ground, and takes two or three leaues more of the Herbs he hath about his necke, and rolles them in his hands, and having made them in a Ball, thrusts them betweene his legges, speaking certains words as aforesaid, and then lets the sap drop voon his Fetifo, and this he doth vntill such time

as he bath rolled and wrung all the greene Herbs in that fort, which he had about his neck: then he takes all the balls or leaves together in his hand, and thereof maketh a ball as bigge as a matis fift, wherewith he wipeth his face, and that also is a Fetifo, which being done the dead bodie shall refe in peace, and therewith he packeth vp all his trinkets, and laieth them aside untill another time, that some other bodie setteth him a worke. This kind of Superfition they esteeme Amplets. for agreat holineffe for their bodies; for when they goe to warre they hang fuch beades about their neckes, armes and legges, thinking that their Fetife will defend them thereby, and preferue them from killing, and thinke that they need not feare any thing. They effecime the Pitteir alle for a god, for when they goe from one Towne to another, and heare it call, they are

exceeding joyfull and glad, for they fay that it is a Fetifo, which fpeaketh vnto them, faying, Piura Fetifo, that all those that then travell in the way, shall have no hurt, nor need feare any danger, for he will defend them from all men that feeke to moleft them, and wherefoeuer they heare it crie, there they let Millia for him to cate, and pots full of water to drinke, and dare not palle that place without giving it something, whereby in some corners of streets, and in the Woods you shall fee a number of pots; and other meates as Millia, Mais, &c. which they fet there to honour the Feiffe the Peteir, whereby it appeareth that they make great account of Birds and alfo of fome fifthes, as of the Tonny, which they by no meanes will take, but efterme it to be their Feriffo or Sea-god. They take many Sword-fiftes, and curting of the Swords they drie them, Bird and fift . which they alto efteeme for a great Feriffo. Others put their truft in some trees, and when they gods,

defire to know any thing they goe to those trees, where the Deuill oftentimes appeares in forme Tree gods. of a blacke Dogge, or of fuch like things, and many times imulfibly, and maketh answere vno they killed a fuch things as they aske him. So that if you aske them any thing touching their beliefe, and Dutchmon for they give you no answere, which maketh any shew of truth, then they say that their Feriffo said cutting these fo, and willed them to doe it, for they efteeme him for their god, and vie many foolish toyes trees against and vaine shewes when they pray to him, and serue him, thinking that it doth them good, and that they merit much thereby, yet it helpeth them not. But they rather find themselues deceiued, and as they deale with the Deuill, and put their trust in him, so he rewardeth them, and yet they defire not to heare of him, but feare him much.

There are some hils in those Countries, whereon oftentimes it thundereth and lighteneth. 30 and thereby manie times fome Filhermen, or other Moores, are cast away or receive some great Hil-gods. hurt, which causeth them to thinke that their god is angry, and would have some meate and drinke, or wanteth fome other thing, and by that meanes they hold manie hils to be their rods. and fet meate and drinke vpon them to pacifie them withall, and they dare not passe along by them, without going vp and giving them fomething, fearing that if they did it not, they would doe them some hurt, and make each other beleeue such things, and whatsoeuer they beleeue, and once conceine in their heads, it will neuer be extirped, but have as firme an opinion of their Fetifies as possible may be. But when the Netberlanders faw them vse such vaine toves, which were so foolish, and laught and iested at them, they were ashamed, and durst make no more Fe-

tiffes in our presence, but were ashamed of their owne apishnesse. We asked them of their Beliefe, and what opinion they had of divers things; as first, when Opinionsof they died what became of their bodies and foules. They made vs answere, that the bodie is dead, the foules debut they knew not what any refurrection at the latter day meant, as wee doe : but when they parted. die they know that they goe into another World, but they know not whither, and that therein they differ from brute beafts, but they cannot tell you to what place they goe, whither vnder the Earth or vp into Heauen, but when they die, they vie to give the dead bodie fomething to carrie with him, whereby it is to be marked that they believe that there is another life after this, and that there they have need of fuch things as they have here on Earth; for when they lofe any thing, or when any of their friends die, then they thinke that those that are dead came and fetcht it away, and that they had need of it, but they know not what the Soule nor the

Secondly, asking them of their god, they made answere, that hee is blacke like themselues, Of God. and that he was not good, but did them much hurt. Whereunto we faid, that our God is white as we are, that he is good, that he doth vs much good, that he descended downe vpon Earth to faue vs, and how he was put to death by the lewer for our fakes, that when wee die wee goe to dwell with him in Heauen, and that there we neither need meat nor drink, whereat they wondred, and willingly heard vs speake of those things, and faid that we were Gods children, and that he told vs all things, but yet they murmured, faying, why doth not your God tell and give vs all things (as well as he doth to you) and why doth he not also give vs Linnen, Cloth, Iron, Basons, and other kinds of wares; whereunto we made answere, that our God sent vs all those 60 things, and yet that he forgot not them, (although they knew him not) and fent them Gold. Palme-wine, Millia, Mais, Hennes, Oxen, Goats, Bannanas, Iuiamas, and other fruits, to fustaine them withall, but that they denied, or else they could not conceive that such things came from God; but to the contrarie faid that God gaue them no Gold, but that the Earth gaue it them, wherein they digge to find it : that hee gaue them no Millia nor Corne, but that they

ridiculous blindneffe.

fowed it, and reapt it themselves, and that the Earth gave it them; that the trees which they had planted gaue them their fruits, and were first brought thither by the Portugals; that yone heafs came of the old, that the Sea gaue them fith, which they tooke themselves, with many Miferable and other fuch like things, which they would not acknowledge came from God, but from the Earth and the Sea, each according to their natures, but they acknowledge that Raine came from our Saujonr Christ, and that by meanes of our God they had much Gold, for that he meanes of the Raine they found their Gold, and their Fruits and Plants grew, and waxed ripe by meanes of the moufture, and for that we brought them enerie thing readie made to their hands, therefore they thinke that wee find all fuch things , and need but goe into the fields to fetch them, as they doe their Fruits.

Feare of

And when it happened that some of our Hollanders being in their Houses, when it beganne to Raine. Blow, Thunder and Lighten (whereof they are in great feare) went forth through the fireets, not once flunning the Thunder and Lightning, neither did it once hurt them, they wondred therear, for they were afraid that if they should come out of their Houses at that time, that it would not be good for them, for that many times, (when it Thundreth and Lieht. neth there) it hapneth that some of them that are travelling abroad, are carried away by the Deuill, and throwne dead vpon the ground, whereby they are as much afraid thereof, as any man possible can be. And for that they know that our God dwels about in Heauen, when it Thunders and Lightens they point vpwards, and call him Inan Geemain. And once wee had a Neoro aboord our ship, whom we kept prisoner because he brought false Gold, and gaue it out to for good, which Negro everie morning tooke a Tub with water in it, and washt his face therein, which done, he tooke his hands full of water, and cast it over his head, speaking divers words vnto himselfe, and after that spit in the water, and vsed many other Apish toves, which wee feeing, asked him why hee did it, and hee made answere, that hee prayed his Feriflo that it might raine, that so his friends might find much Gold to release him, that hee might one

Circumcifion.

They circumcife their young children, therein following the Mahometical Law, with divers other opinions which they hold thereof, as thinking it will to spit upon the Earth , befides many other Superstitions which they vie, but affirme, that they altogether vie those toves. and only trust in their Feriffes, were an vntruth, for many of them that can speake to Portugall (as having dealt with them and also daily traffique with vs) beginne to leave those foolish toves, and to have some vinderstanding of Gods Word, which they doe by reason that wee mocke and iest at their foolish Ceremonies, and for that they say that wee are Gods Children, therefore they believe much of that which we say vinto them, and begin to know God. but it is without any ground, for they grounded in their owne Superstitions , because they are not otherwife instructed .

Some Smacke of Christianitie.

But the Negros which dwell among the Pertugals, know much of God, and can fpeake of his Comman lements, as I have found some among them, that could tell of the birth of Christ, of the Lords Supper, of his bitter Paffion, and death of his Refurrection, and diners other fuch like points, concerning our Christian faith; specially, one whom I knew well, and that was my good friend : for he could write and read Portugall, and was indifferent well learned in the Scriptures And which is more, when we spake vnto him, and argued vpon some points against the Romis faith, or against the Religion which the Portugals had taught him (for he had dwelt with a Monk in the Calile of Mina) he would dispute the contrary with vs, and shew that it was otherwise set downe in such a Gospel and in such an Epistle of the Apostles, & that it must so be vindentoed: whereby we may perceive, that those among them that have any understanding of the Christian faith, are sharpe witted, and will soone comprehend any thing : but it seemeth, that it hath not pleased God tocall them to the vnderstanding of the Christian faith, and therefore we are much bound to prayle and thanke God, that it hath pleased him to vouchfase vs the knowledge of his holy Word, and to understand and know what belongethernto our faluation.

Of their Houses, Townes, Countrey wayes, Warres, Armes, State of their Kings , Indgements , Lawes , Inflice , Thefts , Promifes , Oathes, and other Rites.

Their houses.

Heir Houles are not very curioully made, but altogether flight, much like to a num- 60 ber of Hog-sties, and I am of opinion, that in many Countreys, there are better Hogfties then their Houses are ; I cannot liken them better to any other thing, then to

Souldiers Cabins in Sconces and Bulwarkes : for a man might fay, that they have taken a paterneby them. To build them first, they take foure Posts or Trees, which they thrust

deepe into the ground, which stand foure square; that done, they lay other Beames or Trees vpon them, and bind them fast together; then they take a number of thin small stickes, and inclose their Houses round about, and those they bind very close together, so that you can hardly thrust your hand in betweene them : then they make Morter of a certaine kind of yellow earth, which they find in the fields, and that they beat very small and thin, fo long till it be like vnto Pot-earth, which they take in their hands, and dawbe it vpon the smal stickes round about their Houses from the foot to the top, where they defire to have it close, and with their hands thrust it in betweene the chinckes of the stickes, that it may hold fast, as if it were betweene Lathes. and when they have made their Houses close in this manner, which is almost halfe a foot thick to in the walles; then they let it fland and die, so hard that it is like vnto stone, and being well

dried then they make an other kind of Morter of Red earth, which is as thin as water, and take a wifee of fraw in their hands, and therewith wash all their house round about within; which ferueth them in stead of Painting, whereof they make great account, and take a great pride to paint their houses in such fort, some with white, some with red, and others with blacke as best liketh them ; for the first thing they shew you when you come into the Countrey is their houses. To couer them, they take two foure square Couerings of Palme tree leaves: they tie fast together, and so close, that they are able to hold out the Raine, which they lav voon their houses for the Roofe thereof, and bind them fast together, and when it is faste cleare Suane-shine weather, then they open the Roofe of their house, like two wings, vnder-propping o it with flickes, and fo let the Sunne shine into their houses, and when atraineth, they let them

fall downe againe close together. Before their house they make a fouresquare hole, like a doore, and make a doore of Reeds, which they open and thut, and bind it too with Withes. The floores are flat and very euen, couered with Red earth, as if they were paued, and in the middle thereof commonly they make a round hole to fet their pot with Palme wine in, when they drinke together; in this fort they make two or three houses close together, which are placed foure square ; and in the middle of them, there is a place wherein the women dreffe their meat, in which houses they dwell together, as the women in the one, the man in the other, for they are asunder one from the other, and make as many as they have need of, and those houses they inclose round about with a pale of Reeds, or ftraw of Mais, a mans height, or as high as the walles of their houses, which are also but a mans height : so that if it were not for the congrue of the 30 house, which standeth paint-house wise, a man could not goe vpright in their houses. Their houses stand altogether in a heape; but because they separate them one from the other by those pales of Straw, by that meanes they shew like streets, and are somewhat separated one from the other. Their streets are so little and narrow, that but one man alone can goe in them, and when it raineth it is very slipperie to goe in their Townes, because the earth is so fattie.

When you will goe into one of their houses, you must goe so long through the streets, till you find a doore open, wherein being entred, you must passe through all the Roomes, till you find the place where you would be. Their houses are not very full of House-hold stuffe, but com-40 monly they have woodden Chefts, which they buy of the Netherlanders, wherein they locke

but when the Sunne shines, it drieth vo againe, and becomes as hard as a stone.

up their things, fo that you fee but little of their House-hold stuffe abroad. The Kings or Governors houses are commonly in the Market places, which are paled alone by themselves, and separated from all the rest, having no other neighbours dwelling by him, but onely his wives and children (for he is commonly better furnished thereof, then the meaner fort of men.) His houle is greater and higher then the reft, and hath many roomes which paffe one into the other, covered over with Reeds, each chamber by it felfe . wherein his men dwell. and his watch flayeth all the day long. In the middle of his house he hath a foure square place all open, but covered over for the Sunne, where in the day time he fitteth, with his Gentlemen that come to speake with him and to passe the time away; at the Kings doore there are alwaies

90 two pots let deepe into the ground, which are full of fresh water, and every day are fild with new water, which I thinke are fet there for their Fetiffes to drinke.

Their Townes that it and upon the Sea-fide are not very faire, but rather filthis places, and stinke like carrions, by reason of the filth which they carry and lay without, not farre from them; and many times, when the wind blowes from the Land, you may fmell the stinke of them, aboue a mile and an halfe into the Sea. The Townes that lie inward to the Land, are richer of Goods and Gold, then the Sea-townes, and fuller of Houses and Men; besides that, they have more Merchants dwelling in them : for, those on the Sea-fide are not fo rich, nor of fo great power, as being for the most part Interpreters, Rowers, Pilots, Servants, Fisher-men,

60 and Slaues to the Inhabitants of the Townes. The King keeps his Court in the neerest Towne, that standeth within the Land whereof he is King, and placeth a Captaine in the Sea-townes which are under his command. The Land-townes are very great, but they have no Gates, Walls, nor Forts, nor any strength to refift the force of Enemies. I have heard some of the Negroes that dwell within the Land, fay, that there are many great Townes within the Land, much and farre exceeding the Hauen or Sea-townes.

Anta.

They wie to reckon the Gold Coast to begin from Cape De tres punctus, to Rio de Volta. This Cane De tres panilas lieth under foure degrees and an halfe; and because it hath three Points or Heads, which reach into the Sea, therefore it is called the Cape De tres punctas; but, for that the Portugals have a Castle there, called Aziem, the Negroes are not suffered to deale with the Hol-

Eastward fine miles lower there lieth a place, called Anta, and there the ships commonly cast foorth their Anchors; for there the Negroes buy much Iron , and are very expert to make Ironworke. Those People traffique much with Palme-wine, whereof they have great store. as of Hens, Goats; and disers Fruits, lugnamas, and Annanasos; and when the time commeth that they draw their Wine out of the Trees, then the Canoes come thither with their Negrees and Merchants, at the least, ten or twentie miles from within the Land to buy Wine, so that it is carried almost all the Coast along, and great traffique made therewith. This Wine they efleeme very good for their men to drinke, because it is not so sweet as the Wine which is farther within the Countrie, which is not mixed with Water, as this Wine is. The other Wine they effective to be good to be drunke by their women because it is not mixed, but is exceeding fweet, and foone makes the women merrie. A mile lower lieth Rio de St. Georgio , and a place. called labbe, and Cama, where the Portugals also have a House: and because this Quarter is very fruitfull, there dwells three or foure Portugals there, which receive the Custome of the Fish. which is taken by the Negroes in the River, and buy great flore of other victuals, which they fend continually to the Castles of Aziem and Mina, to victuall them withall. Before this Ri- 20 uer there is a great Sand, which firetcheth farre into the Sea, whereby you cannot enter into it with any thips, but onely with great Canoes. And a mile lower there lieth a Village, by the Negroes, called Agnaky: by the Portugals, Aldea de Torto; and by the Netherlanders, Comando: but yet it is not Comando, although we call it io; for Comando lieth upon the Hill, where the Kines dwell. They of Edom, Waffa, Comando, and other Townes, come to this Hauen to buy their Wares: there we fell many Venetian Madrigetten, and Corals (for the common people traff que much therewith by grinding and felling them one vnto the other) fmall Copper Basons, and blue Cloth: broad Linnen is well fold there. In this place men fell not any Wares in great quantities, but all in small parcels; & for that there are so many small parcels fold there, therefore it is the worst place of all that Coast for giving of Dachios: and for that their Gold, for the most part, is molten, and cut in final pieces, therefore there is much deceit therein, for they mixe much yellow Copper among it, and many times bring Copper in stead of Gold; and for those two Points it is the worst place to deale in throughout all the Coast. They have the greatest number of Caroes in all the Countrie befides ; for many times they goe to Sea early in the morning. swith fenentie or eightie Canoes, and enter as farre into the Sea as you can well discerne them, and about noone-time they come home againe with their Fish, for there they are very expert in filhing. It is likewise no lesse prouided of Fruits, for there is no place in all the Land, where a man may have greater store, nor better cheape Fruit, then there, especially a kind of Fruit, called, Bannana; and for that cause it is by vs called, the Fruit Market. When you faile somewhat lower, and are North North-east from the high Hill of Communds, there is a place called, 1 Terra pekma. Neere to that is the Castle of Mina, with a Portugall Garrison to prohibite

Terra pequina. Cape Croffe.

Infanin.

place of traffique, where the French men in time past vied much to lie with their ships, and to traffique in the Countrie, and in the yeare 1'590. or 1591. there was a fhip of Deepe fet vpon, by them of the Castle of Mina, whereof most of the men were slaine, and the rest made Slaues; and when we began first to traffique there, in the yeare 1592, there were some of our Hollanders flaine in a Boat at the fame place ; but now the ships begin to traffique there againe, because of the great quantitie of Gold which is brought thither from Foetu, Abrenbon, and Mandenga, and other Townes, which lie aboue two hundred miles within the Countrie, Sailing a mile lower, you come to the chiefe place of Traffique in all the Countrie, called Monre. A mile lower there lieth a place called, Infantin, and two miles farther there lieth a towne called Cormantin, under the King of Foetmi. There the Hollanders fetch their hoops to bind their water veffels withall; for there are the best. Sayling foure miles lower, you come to the high hill of Mango, whereon the Negros offer facrifice to the Deuill , but there is no Traffique. A mile lower there is a Village salled, Biamba, where they keepe good ftore of Cowes, for it is good Pasture ground. The Inhabitants vie great Traff que along the Coast, by felling their Cattle; and because that there , there are many proper women ; divers of the Negroes come from other places of the Countrey thither to buy women, and to fetch flates to ferue their turnes withall; The Countrey people thereabouts are good husbandmen, and fow much Millie, prefix good flore 60 of Palme wine, and bring great number of yong Cattle vp. Three miles lower, there lieth a place called, Bergu, the Village lieth upon a hill, there the French men vied much to Anchor with their thips. Those people speake another Language, and to that place all the people forwards speake one Language. The people are very Ingenious to make all kind of things, special-

Sailing a long mile lower, you come to a place called, Cape Croffo; this Cape or Point is a great

ly of gold, for they can make faire Chaines of gold, with other faire things, as Rings, &c. There they brew a kind of drinke called Pitouw, which is much like small Beere. They have great flore ofHens, and better cheape then in other places: there aliothey take the greene Birds.called Parrots. The Inhabitants in their time vied to buy great flore of Iron, for they have many Smithes, whereby they make faire Armes, but now there comes no more ships thither . they goe with their Canoes to Ackes, which lieth foure miles lower; which is a low land voon the Strand, having a halfe tree made in forme of a Gibet, which they effecte to be their Fetifio. The Portugalls were wont to have a Castle there ; but for some mischiefe that they had done to the Inhabitants, the Negroes tooke their Caffle by force, flew all the Poringall, and brake downe

10 the Caffle. There agains they vie another Language, they are a craftie and fubtle people, and the subtillest of all that Coast, both for Traffique and otherwise. They have very few Canoes to fish or goe to Sea withall; but those they have are very great, for I have seene one that was cut out of a tree, which was five and thirty foot long, and five foot broad, and three foot high, which was as bigge as a Shallop; fo that it would have held thirty men at the leaft. They come not often to buy wares, but obserue certaine dayes in the weeke to that purpose, and then they come with great store of money, bringing the gold as it is found in the hilles. Two miles below that there lieth a place, called Neugo, A mile lower, lieth Temin; And a mile lower then that another place, called Chinks, where the Hollanders begin to place boats to traffique with the

Negroes, which from the yeere one thousand fixe hundred, was first begun to be known vnto vs. They make warre for a small matter, for the Kings are so enuious and angry one against the Their garres other, and so proud, that they cannot endure their equalls; whereupon they challenge one the and Marciall other to the Battell, and to fight together in the field. The King gives warning to the Townes Customes. under his command, to will the Captaines with their men to come to him, to fight against the enemies : their enemies likewife doe the like, and so make preparation to fight one against the other. The Kings of those Townes have certaine men, that are their Souldiers or flaves (which are as much as Souldiers) who every day watch in the Kings house, and are as it were his guard. They are very proud of their offices, and in the streets they goe stately, looking upon themfelues, fome times striking with their armes ouer their heads, and fometimes leaping backeward and forwards, and round about; looking fiercely, as if they would idequouse all the 30 world. They goe to the warres with the King, and if not then, they flay continually with him, to guard his person : and when the time commeth that they must fight, every one prepareth himfelfe thereunto, in the best manner that hee can. First, they paint their faces with colours, some Red, others White, and others Yellow; and also their brefts and the whole bodies with Croffes, Strikes, and Snakes, and many fuch like things; They also take their Beads with them, wherewith they make their Fetifos, and hang them about them, and thinke when they have them about them, that their Fetifoes will defend them, and that they shall not be flaine. They make and wreath a Ring of boughes of trees, as thicke as a mans arme, which they put about their neckes, to beare off the blowes of their Kniues , in flead of Gorgets ; on their heads they weare Caps made of Libards or Crocodiles skins : on their bodies they weare a Cloth Gir-40 dle which they thrust betweene their legges with a peece of Cloth of a handfull broad, to couer

able, to haue shields and Assagaies, they carrie Bowos and sheaues of Arrowes, made of of Date. skins, full of fmal Arrowes with Iron heads at the ends, wherewith they wil shoot most cruelly. The Boyes or Servants carrie the Drums into the warres, whereon they play, others have hornes of Elephants Teeth, wherewith they blow. When all is prepared, and euerie Morinni 50 or Gentleman with his men are readie, they all meet at the Kings Court, and fo goe with their Wives, Children, and all their Houshold together to the Warres, where the battaile should bee fought, and if it be a Warre which concerneth them much, and wherewith they are much moued, and prouoked to ouercome their Enemies, then they burne their owne Houles, and all their Townes, that their Enemies may have no fuch advantage against them, as also because their minds should not be moved to looke and harken home-ward, but rather to give them the better courages to set upon their Enemies. But if it be a Warre of no great importance, and that will be foone ended, then they burne not their Houses nor take not their wines and children with

their prinities withall; for then they weare as few clothes on their backes as they can, that

they may not be cumbred therewith when they fight, in their Girdles they sticke a hewing Knife or a Poniard; in their left hands bearing their shields, which are almost as long and as

broad as themselues, in their right hands they hold their Alagaies, wherewith they fling each at

them, but they leave their Townes, and fend their wives and children to the next place, with whom they have no enmitte, which take all their houshold-stuffe with them, leaving their 63 Houles emptie, without any kind of thing in them, as if they had wholly abandoned their Townes, and when their Warre is ended, then their wives and chridten returne againe to their owne Townes withall their stuffe,

The Soul Jiers on both fides meeting together in the fields, doe the best they can to destroy their enemies, both by casting at each other with their Assagaies, and by blowes. They can cast so

other, some of them haue two, some three, source, or more as they are able, and such as are nor Affagaya kind

France skill

Man-caters.

e xceeding straite, right and sure with their Asagaies, that they will not faile to hit a Stineropiece of monie as bigge as a Groat, the rest shoot with poiloned Arrowes. The Drummes and Hornes are heard to make a great noise when they fight together, and in this Warre whosoe. ner is taken Prisoner they make him a slaue a I his life long, and such as are slaine, their bodies are dreft and eaten as good meate. Their Warres are not fo cruell as they feeme, nor according to the noise and preparation by them made, and their Warre continueth not long, but is some ouer-pait and ended. They also burne each others Houses and Townes, and drine the Inhabitants out of them.

Securitie.

It hapneth oftentimes, that although they have no great controversie with each other, they make peace together, promising not to warre one against the other, and to assure and consistent their promifes, they beleeue no words, but they fend each other a man for a furetie, whom they keepe by them, and this man whom they deliver in this fort for a furetie, is one of the chiefe of their Towne, who being brought to the place where he must remaine by the Kings slaues. he himselfe being brauely dreft, and sitteth voon a slaues sholder, and in that fort is carried to the King, and to him they shew much honour, and yet they watch him narrowly.

They also buy many Peeces, and begin to learne to shoot in them, and have the vinderstanding to know that a long Peece carrieth further then a short, which both the Portugals and wee also teach them. They are very expert in making of Armes, for they make Poniards of an ell long without hilts and foure fingers broad, with two edges, the handle being of wood, with a pummell at the end, they couer the handle ouer with a plate of Gold, or with the skinne of a cer- 20 taine kind of fish which they take, which with them is esteemed as much as Gold is with vs. they make sheathes of Dogs or Goates skinnes, and aboue at the end of the sheathe, in stead of a chape they put a great red shell, as broad as a mans hand, which is in great estimation with them, others that have not the abilitie to buy such shels, make or buy hewing Kniues in faihion like a Gammon of Bacon, broad at the end and narrow before, which cut but on the one fide. and in flead of a red shell, they trimme them with an Apes or a Tygres head, and those they flicke in their Girdles, on the one fide, and weare them as they goe along in the ftreets, and carrietheir Assagaies in their hands, and if they have a servant or a save, they make him beare their Affagay and Shield before them, and they follow them with a staffe in their hands. The Merchants trauell in the Countrie with their Armes, and their fernants or flaues likewife carrie 30 Armes with them, who commonly have Bowes and Arrowes, because they'are Weapons

which are least cumbersome to bee carried, for they can carrie them about their neckes. Their Assagaies are made of divers fashions and of many serts, but for the most part of Iron, at least two foot at both ends, and that part which they hold in their hands is of wood , both the ends are as heavie of Iron one as the other, because they should weigh an even weight, and for that one should not be heavier then the other, for if it should they could not strike nor cast right with them. They are very curious of their Armes, for they will alwaies haue fixe or feuen of those Affagaies in their Houses, which fland in the ground one by the other, with their Shields hanging by them; those Shields they make of woodden hoopes, which they fold one within the other, and so make them foure square, but some-what bowing like a Buckler, and they are commonly fix foot long, and foure foot broad, in the middle they make a croffe of wood, and bind it upon the rest of the hoopes, to hold them the faster together, thereof also they make their handles whereon they beare their Shields : fome of them of the better fort coner their Shields ouer with an Oxe-hide, and put a plate of Iron vpon it two foot long, and a foot broad. They make great account of their Shields, thinking that vnder them they have a great fafeguard for their bodies. They make their Bowes of very hard wood, the stringes are made of the barkes of trees, their Arrowes are of thinne and tuffe wood, the Feathers are made of the haire of a Dogges skinne, wherewith they couer almost halfe their Arrowes, and on the ends they put small Iron heads, which heads when they goe to warre one against the other, they go anoint with poison, which is the myce of certaine greene Herbs, but they must not carrie such poisoned Arrowes but in time of warre, and that vpon paine of a great forfeit, or some other punishment to be inflicted upon them that beare fuch Arrowes about them, their sheafes they make of Goats skinnes, which they hang about their neckes, and put their Arrowes into it. Their Drums are made of hollow trees, which are couered ouer with Buckes skinnes, with woodden pinnes, and ffrike vpon them with woodden flickes made like Spoones or Ladels. Those Drums commonly lie before the Kings Captaines and Guards Houses, and are sometimes twentie footlong, whereon they play when the King makes a Feaft. They also make smaller Drums of hollow trees, which they hang about their neckes, and goe about the Towne, playing on them, those Drums are round aboue, and vnder very narrow like a funnell, no man may vie them; but Gentlemen. They make Hornes of Elephants Teeth, and race them finely with ma- 60 nie stickes in them, and in the middle of the Horne they make a small hole which is foure fquare, and blow at that, but no man may vie them but only the King or the Captaine.

They choole their Kings by the most voices and confents of the common people, for their

Kingdomes are not fucceffue to any of their children or Kinfmen, but when their King is dead, they cheose another to governe them, and to possesse the Kingdome, and hee dwelleth in the deceased Kings Court, and possessed that he sindeth therein, at his first entrie into the Kingdome, he must buy good store of Cowes, and Palme-wine, and bestow a Banket vpon his subiecks, for they make great account of a King that is liberall, and feafteth them, but if their King be conetous, and feeketh to heape vp good store of Gold, they hate him, feeking all the meanes they can to find some cause to drive him out of his Kingdome, and to choose a better according to their minds. As it hapned in my time to the King of Sabe, (who had beene King of Infantin) and was made King of Sabe, whom they draue out of his Kingdome, and taking all his To goods from him, made him goe to Infantin againe, from whence he came, and chose another in his place that pleated them better. And for that cause, the King that will bee well beloued of his jubicets, cuerie three monethes when his Guard or Customers come to pay him that which they have received at the Sea-side, and of the Countrie people for custome, he must make a Banquet, and fpend more then he receiveth at that time, and then he biddeth his Morrinnis (which is as much to fay as a Gentleman or one of his Counfell) and buyeth many Cowes or Oxen, and allo all the Palme, wine in the Countrie, that he can get which is given by him to the common people, who at that time are very merrie and joyfull, finging and playing vpon their Drums. The king of the Cowes are made cleane and fairely painted and hanged full of Feessiges, which done, they are hang'd very orderly in the Kings thamber one under the other, in flead of Pictures, and for a great honour wnto the King, whereby fuch strangers as come to the Kings Court, may

perceine that he is a good King, and for that cause is much esteemed and beloued of his people. Befides this, they hold another Feaft day euerie yeare, as being the day of their Coronation or their Fetisses day, then the King inniteth his Neighbour Kings and Captaines, with all his Gentlemen to a Banquet, and makes a great Feast, and that day he prayeth to his Fetiss, and he himfelfe facrificeth vnto him, which he doth but once a yeare. This Fetiffo is the highest tree in the Towne, which is the Kings Fetiffe, vpon this Festivall day they vie manie Apish Toyes, as Fencing, Drumming, finging and leaping, the women also are verie merrie and dance, and enerie King holdeth his Feat day apart, and they doe it one soone after the other, which they doe in their Summer time.

On their Sunday at night the King makes a Feast, and buyes up all the Palme-wine which is drawne out of the Trees that day, and biddeth his wines and children to Supper, and his chiefest Gentlemen, at which time they are verie merrie, for hee cates but one day in a weeke with his wives and children, and that is voon their Sunday. These women are verie serviceable to the King their Husband, and euerie one of them featheth him to winne his loue, so that he His wines. wanteth no feruice at their hands : euerie one of his wives bath his goods and riches apart by her felfe, and keepeth and feedeth her owne children, and shee that is in fauour with the King,

When the Kings wives go abroad, they leane voon the shoulders of other women that serve them, and are their flaues, and their children are also carried upon the shoulders of other of the Kings flaues, hee himselfe commeth little abroad, but flayeth alwayes in his House, sometime he fitteth at his doore but not often, his House is watcht both day and night by his slaues, which watch armed in his Court, and in his Chamber, and when he goeth out they attend on him and Hie Gnard. goe round about him. In the morning betimes and late in the evening, his flaves blow those Hornes of Elephants Teeth, which make a prettie found for they have the flight to draw their breath in and out as they lift, and can answere one the other when they blow, when the King comes out of his Chamber, his wives stand readie to attend on him, to wash his bodie all over. and then to anoint it with Palme-oile, after that hee eateth some-what, and so fets himselfe downe vpon a stoole, and in his hand hee holdeth a Horse oran Elephants tayle to keepe the Flies from his naked bodie, he is brauely dreft after this manner; his Beard is knotted with golden Corals, and other coffly things, on his armes and legges hee hath Rings of Gold and other

50 faire Beades of Corall, and the like also about his necke, and so hee fitteth all the day talking with one or other, for he wanteth no company to paffe the time away, they have one attending on them, whom they call Viador (which word they have learned of the Portugals), hee is the His Viador, or Kings Treasurer, and keepeth his Gold and other Riches, receiveth and payeth all, and doth all Treasurer. other businesses for the King. This man is next vnto the King, and he commonly hath more gol-

den Rings about his necke, armes and feet, then the King himfelfe. When the Kings children are of fome yeares, if they will have any thing they mult looke to get it, for the King may give them nothing to liue idly vpon, for the common people would murmurre at it, if the King should give iomewhat voto them, he might doe wrong to his Gentlemen, but hee giveth them His children. their Patrimoniall goods when they marrie as their cultome is; and befides, that he give to them

every one a flave to ferue their turnes with all, and they have nothing elfe of their Fathers, whereby it falleth out, that when they waxe old, and feeke not to doe any thing, they are no more respected then another man is. The King keepes them with him to serue him, and when he maketh peace with any other Towne or King, then he imploreth his children, and fends his fonnes

Choice of the King.

fonnes for hoflages, that they may begin to be honored, and thereby attaine to great edite: the renemues of the Fruits, Filh, Wine, and Palme-oile, which the King hath, are furtheren to maintaine the King, and his Wines, and Children. His Millie, whereof he maketh B-ead, is fowed and reaped for him, at other mens charges; whereby he hath a good lite (but yet miterable in respect of ors.) When the King dies he is honorably buried after their manner, and then presently they choofe another, one that is not of the laft Kings kindred; but they choofe a firinge man, whom they thinke good; and by no means they will choole any that in any point held with, or fauoured the laft King. Hauing made him King, they bring him to the Palace, and he taketh the gouernment vpon him, and hath all the treature and goods of the dead King, which he got during the time of his Raigne; and that he holdeth, fo that the dead Kings Children enjoy not a penie; but that which he had when he was chosen King, that they take and part a to more them. as their culfform is.

Lawyers.

They vie no Counfellors nor Attorneyes, but every man must tell his owne tale to the Judge. who fends for the accused partie; after whose answere, the Plaintiffe speaketh againe; and in this fort they are each of them heard to speake foure or fine times, and when the one speaketh the other must hold his peace till he hath done, for they must not interrupt one, the other when they speake, vpon paine of corporall punishment, so that although they bee wild men, and without any civilitie or good behaviour : yet therein they yie a very good and laudible cultome. When the Judge hath heard them fay what they can, according to his owne mind, hee giveth Judgement, which they must stand vnto without appeale. If it bee any thing concerning the King, whereby he is to have any forefeiture or otherwife, the Judge receiveth it, and demandeth it of him that is to pay it, in the Kings name, which he must pay presently without delay, and if he be not able to doe it, he must presently depart from thence to another Towne, or some other Kings Jurisdiction, and there stay till he hath contented his King, & payed his Fine. If it be a controugule which is to be determined among them, and they cannot agree thereon, then they will feeke to kill each other, or challenge their adverse parties to fight with them, appointing a day and place when they will meet with their Armes to end or determine their controuerfie. In themeane time they make their cause knowne to some of their friends, and defire their helpe. (for each of them may have three or foure men to helpe them) and commonly they are of their neerest friends and kindred; and when their appointed day is come, each of them goeth with his companions to the fame place, and when they meet together with their Shields and Affagaies to defend themselues withall, they place themselues orderly in the field one right ouer against the other, the Plaintisse and the Defendant standing in the middle, and so begin to cast and shoot at each other with their Affagaies, and shoot in that fort so long vntill that some of them on both fides are hurt, and fall to the ground. Then they cease their Fight, and so their quarrell endeth. But his fide on whom the dead man is found to be flaine, or that hath loft the victorie, come to the other partie and desire to have the man out of their companie, that was the cause of that Combat, in flead of the dead man that is flaine. And if he runneth away, and getteth to another Towne, they will follow him, and will neuer leave before they have gotten him into their hands, and none of their Kings may give such a man freedome, nor keepe him fecretly in his Towne, but if he can find him in his Towne, he must deliver him to those that seeke after him, and if he doth it not, then they make complaint to their King, and fo, many times one King makes warre vpon another for that cause; when they have found him, he is delivered to the wife the dead man, and shee keepeth him for her Slaue, or else shee fells him to another : but if hee hath any meanes to pacifie the woman, or the friends of that man, and to redeeme himfelfe out of bondage, he may doe it, and goe freely abroad. They are very great controuerfies that are

Their Lawes and execution of Iustice,

ended in this manner, for they are no common men that end their quarrels in such fort. The Plaintiffe certifies the Captaine, who causeth a Drum to be sounded by one of his Slaues, and he goeth round about the Towne with the Drum about his necke, and with him there goeth two boyes more, each with a Cow-bell in their hands, without Clappers, and they ftrike yoon them with slickes made of wood, and when they have gone in this fort round about the Towne (which is a figne vnto the people that Iustice is to be executed) then the Captaine with his Gentlemen comes and fit round together in the Market-place, each man with his Armes, wherewith all the people affemble together, knowing not what the matter is, and goe to the Market-place, where their common affemblies are made, the women standing in one place, the men in another, to heare what the Captaine will fay; and he that is accused is presently taken, and kept prisoner in the Captaines house, and if it be a weightie matter, he is bound ; if otherwife, he is onely kept by the Executioner, and he must not depart from thence before his cause be tried, in the meane time, the Captaine with his Gentlemen fit still in the Market-place, to heare the complaints made against the Prisoner, and send him word by his Slaues what accusa- 60 tions are laid against him, whereunto he must presently, without delay, make answere; otherwife, if he cannot excuse himselfe, he must pay the penaltie which he hath incurred; and if he cannot pay it, he must in the Kings behalfe be fold as a Slaue, towards the payment of his Fine, and euer after, while he liueth, he must be a Slaue : but if he hath done any offence that defer-

ueth death, he may redeeme his life with money, if hee can agree with the King, and content him; which money is divided among the Morinni, which have the one halfe, and the King the other halfe, without giving any to the friends of the dead man. And if it be one that hath incorred the danger of paying a Fine for lying with another mans wife, being accused to have won her thereunto by falle promites or by force, and hath not kept his promite with her; then the King first taketh all his goods from him, as forfeit vnto him; and the woman must pay two or three ounces of gold for a Fine vnto her husband, or as he fauoreth her, and she can agree with him; otherwise he may put her away, and take another wife, and the womans friends goe and burne, or pull downe the mans house that hath done the fact, and doe him all the mischiefe they 10 can, to make him to leave the Towne, that they may heare no more of him. In my time, while Hay there, it hapned that a man came from one Towne to another, to gather vp his debts, which man a yeere before had layne with another mans wife, and the fame woman was then by chance come to the same Market, and seeing him, went straight and complained to the Ane. (which is the Captaine) who prefently caused him to be taken; and their Counsell being affembled, there before them the woman complained that he had forced her, and had not paid her according to his promife: he made aniwere, that he did it with her good-will, and although neither of them both were of that Towne, yet their cause was heard, and as good Iustice vied towards them, as if they had beene Inhabitants of that place, and after long disputation by them made, the Fetiffero (which is the Prieft that conjureth their Fetiffor or gods) came thither with 20 a certaine Drinke in a pot, and let it downe before the Captaine, the woman tooke the pot and drunke thereof, to institute that he had not contented her for the losse of her honour; and if hee would have drunke thereof before the woman drunke, to justifie that he had paid her, and owed her nothing, then he had beene quit from paying any thing; but knowing himselfe to be guiltie, he durit not drinke, but was found guiltie, and was judged to pay a Fine of three Bendaes,

which is fixe ounces of gold.

This Drinke among them is as much as an Oath, and is called Enchimbenou; which they Enchimbenous make of the fame greene herbs whereof they make their Fetifies; and as they fay, it hath fuch to a force, that if a man drinketh it fallely, their Fetifie cauleth lum prefently to die; but if they

drinke it innocently, then their Feriffo fuffereth them to live. By reason of the great hatred and enuie which they beare one vnto the other, they accuse each other, although it bee for a thing that hath beene done ten yeeres before, so that there is no quartell but it is called in queftion. And if a man hath married or bought the fifter of that man that is to pay a Fine vnto the King, and is not able to doe it, then his fifters husband must ioyne with him to doe it, and helpe him to pay his Fine, fo they dwell both under one Iurifliction, and for that they must agree together; for before all things the King must be paid his Fines, by one meanes or other, or else they must goe out of his Countrey, and dwell in another place; and so if he be not able to pay his Fine, then he taketh all his Wines and Children, and goeth to another Towne, and which 40 is more, all the friends they have dwelling in that Towne must also goe with him, and dwell all in that place, vntill they have agreed with, and paid the King his Fine: and when they come againe, then they goe to all their acquaintance and aske them forgineneffe, and feeke and make peace and friendship with them, as they had before; the man going to his friends, and the woman to hers. The cause why their friends also depart and leaue the Towne, is, because they should not bee molested nor troubled by the King for the same. The Fine which they pay for Theft, is fixe ounces of gold, or three Bendaes of their weight; for in that Countrie they are

the Netherlanders, and that they complaine thereof vinto the King, he mult pay a Fine for it, as the cafe requiresh. If much Gold be failined, many times they are fold for Slaues. And all 36 the Fines are the Kings, to maintaine his expences. If it be a cafe wherein any man hath deferred death, and that he cannot pay the King be with his life, then he is nudged to die, and without any more delay, the Executioner, or hee that is appointed to doe it, taketh him, and bindeth his hands behind him, and then couering his sites, leadeth him into a Field, or a Wood, or where he thinkethe helf, chauing no place purposely appointed to doe it in and being there, maketh him kneeled downe, and floope with the head, and taking an Affigaie, steppeth backe, and fitnes him into the bodie, wherewith he failleth downe, then he takes his cutting Kniffs, and cuts off his head, and then hee is dead; for they beleeve not that a man is dead before his head is cut off, and therefore when they put any man to death, they cut off his head sy which does hee cuts his bodie in four quarters, and caffs them into the field, to be educoured by Beatls and Briss. But their friends come and fetch the head, and keepe it for a great Perfent, Beatls and Briss. But their friends come and fetch the lead, and keepe it for a great Perfent,

not put to death for it. But if they steale any thing from the Netherlanders , they pay no Fine,

but onely when they steale one from another. If any man bath fallified Gold, and carried it to

Wealts and Biriss. But their friends come and ferch the head, and keepe it for a great Prefent, feething it in a Kettle, and then each the broth thereof; which done, they take the hear Sull, and hang it by their Fessig. The women at that time make a great noise with crying and howling, and take the quarters, and carrie them into the fields: when the execution is done, there are no Officers by, but onely the Executioner and the Partie that is to be executed; but when it is done, then they come about him, and lament the dead man, as affertial.

K le le le le

For

Lacedemonian Thecaes.

For flealing, I am of opinion, that of all the Nations in the World, they have not their Mafers. They effeeme it a shame to steale one from another, but when they have stolne any thing from the Netherlanders, they effeeme it to be a credit vnto them and bragge thereof, for they esteeme vs to be craftie and subtill men, and when they have stolne any thing from vs, they thinke themselves to be the subtiller and craftier, and seeke to bee honoured for doing so brave

Lead, that is navled without upon the ships, to keepe them from being eaten by Wormes. Lacedemonias, ruftie Nayles, Greafe, Weights (which they hide in their Haire, Mouthes, or Eares) any other fmall matters are exercise of their Theft; yea, although they be neuer so great Merchants, and bestow two or three pound of Gold with you for Merchandize, and haue no need to steale, but 10 if any thing bee taken from them, they make so many words and such a noyse, as if it were a matter worthy of death.

They say that they may steale, and we not : I askt them the cause why; they made answere. that we are rich and had great flore of wares, and brought ships fell vnto them, and tooke great paines and labour to fell it, and were fo long before we fold it, that they thought it fit to helpe s therein, that we might the fooner be rid thereof, that we might fetch others, and that wee were clothed and they went naked, and had nothing upon their bodies, and that therefore it was freer for them then for vs to steale. When they have taken any thing and that you miffe it, you must presently search them all, for they steale very cunningly, and give it one vnto the other, and when they come together they part it among them; when you have found it, and 20 know who stole it, then you must beat him well, be he neuer so great a Merchant, and the rest of the Negroes will laugh at him and mocke him, because hee did his businesse no better ; but when they perceive that their Theft is discouered, then they leape over-boord and getaway. fearing to be beaten, and if you let them goe and beate them not at that time when you take them, then they feare a greater matter and expect more blowes, and that you will intrap them, and therefore they will commonly ever after thunne that thip and goe aboord another : but if you beate them for their labours when they doe it, they will not hate you for it, nor shunne the Ship, but will come the next day againe to deale and traffique with you.

Oathes

In their Promises or Oathes which they make vnto vs, they are vnconstant and full of vntruth, but fuch promifes as they make among themselves, they keepe and observe them well, and will not breake them : when they make any Oathes or Promites, specially, when they will shew it to our Netherlanders. First, they wipe their faces upon the fole of your foot, and then doe the like vpon their shoulders and brests, and vpon all their bodies, speaking thrice each to other, faying, Iau, Iau, Iau, euerie time clapping hands together, and stamping with their feet you the ground, which done, they kiffe their Fetiffe, which they have you their legges and armes: fome for the more affurance of their Promifes and Oathes, will drinke certaine drinke, as I have faid before : but he that should repose much trust therein, should soonest find himselse deceiued, because they are not to be credited further then you see them.

40

Of their Summer and Winter; And of their manner of Tilling and Sowing the Land; Their Corne, Rents, Raines; Beafts and Huntino: Fowles, Trees, and Fruits.

Myfts,

Lthough it is alwayes warme in those Countries, yet they have a difference in the

yeare. In Summer their fields are bare, and in Winter they are full of Corne, and are very greene, so that they have their Haruest in Winter. The Daves and Nights are of one length, or else there is little difference : for the Sunne rifeth and goeth downe there, commonly at fixe of the clocke, but it is rifen at least halfe an houre about the Horizon, before it sheweth it selfe, so that you shall seldome see it cleerely rise and goe downe. The Fruits are there as plentifull and abundant in Winter, as in Summer. When the weather is warmeft, and that the Sunne is about their heads. They effeeme that time to be their Winter, which beginnes in the monethes of April, May, and June ; because as then it raineth and is very foule weather there with Thunder and Lightning, (which the Portugals call, Tranados, and they Agombreton) which foule weather and raine followeth the Sunne, and rifeth vp with his highth, at that time they are most 60 cumbred with raine: but in their Summer they are not fo much troubled with it, but then the Earth dryeth and is hard and vnfruitfull, and therefore they shunne that time to sow their Millie and Mais in, but when that time is gone, to beginne their Husbandrie, they goe into

the Woods or Fields, and there feeke out a good place, which they thinke fit for their

time of the years, and so they account some monethes for their Summer, and some

in Summer and Winter the trees are greene, and some of them have leaves twice a

for their Winter. The difference which they have therein is the weather; for both 50

purpole to fow their Corne in, to ferue to maintaine their Wines and Children.

Their Husbau-No man hath any Land to himselfe which he can or may keepe to his owne wee, for the King drie. hath all the Woods, Fields, and Land in his hands 1.10 that they may neither fow nor plant therein but by his confent and licence, which, when they have obtained, and have a place permitted them to fow their Corne in, then they goe with their flaues and burne the Woods, trees roots and firmbs withail the rubbith downe to the ground: then they goe with their long chonping kniues which they call, Coddon, and fcrape and raze vp the ground with Colon (and all that ferueth them to fatten their ground) about a foot deepe, and let it lye eight or ten dayes, and when all of them have tilled their ground, every man makes readie his feed to fow it with-To all, voon their Sunday, and then they go to their Kings or Gouernors Houfe, of that quarter: for first, they helpe to till his ground, and to fow his Corne, and go all together to his field, and take all the publish out of the Earth and cast is into the middle of the field, and then once againerake the Earth and fow their Corne in the field. They begin upon a Sunday, and first ferue their Governour or King, and when they have done his worke, the Captaine lendeth into the field a great number of Pots with Palme, wine, and a fod Goat, with good flore of other mear, according to the number of Workmen, and there they fit down to gether and make good cheare, and at that time they burne the roots, and fit and fing and make a great noise about them, all in the honour of their Fetilo, to the end that he should let their Corne grow well and prosperously vo-When their Captaines or Kings Land is tilled and fowed, the next day they goe to another 20 mans ground, and doe with it as they did with the Kings ground, and there also make good cheere as they did before, and are merrie together, and so forth-with the rest whome they helpe. The Corne foone groweth vp, and lyeth not long in the ground : when it is as high as a mans head, and beginnes to fprout, then they make a woodden House in the middle of the field: conered oner with Reeds, and therein put their Children to watch the Corne, and to drine away the Birds, wherewith they are much cumbred. They weed not their Corne, but let is

The Millie hath long cares, and is a leed of colour like Hempe-feed, and long like Canaties Millesfeed, it hath no fhels, but groweth in a little huske, and is very white within. This kind of graine they alwayes had, and ferue their turnes therewith before the Bertugals came thither. Is 30 groweth and is ripe in three months, and when it is cut down, it lyetha month after in the fields . 200 sented to dry, and then the eares are cut off and bound in heafes, and fo carryed home to their Houles. They vie the straw to couer their Houses withall. This Millie is a verie excellent graine, buth a good tafte and is wholfome to eate, it is fweet in your mouth, but gnasheth in your teethe which commeth of the flone wherewith they grind it. When they have vied the Land, and their Harueft done, then they fell part of their Corne to other men, which are notiable to fower born difficult's it, and by that meanes get a good quantitie of Gold; they give fome to their King for the rent of his Land, and carrie it home to his House, every one as much as he thinketh good. For there is no certaine fumme appointed for them to pay, but every one giveth according to his abilitie, and the quantitie of ground that he hash vied, and bringeth is vnto the King, fo that hee liath at least fine or fixe Bendas of Gold of them at one time, which they carrie altogether to their King, who welcommeth them, and thanketh them for their Dache or Gift, and for their labours giveth them their bellies full of meate and drinke, and that they pay to the King for the

farme of his Land, and no more. The Corne by the Indians called Mais, by the Portugals or Spaniards, Indian-wheat, and by the Their Mais.

Italians, Turkifh-corne, is a Graine almost knowne throughout all the World, and was brought out of Well India into Saint Thomas Hand, and they of Saint Thomas (after they had built their Caftle) brought it thither for to ferue their necessitie withall, and fowed it there . for before the Portugals came into those Countries, the Indians knew it not, but they fowed it first in that Countrey, and dispersed it abroad among the wild Indians, so that now the Countrey is full so thereof, and at this prefent there is great abundance in Guinea. They vie to mixe it with their Millie, and sometimes take halfe Millie and halfe Mais. The Negroes that dwell among the Portugals, grind it alone without any Millie, and make excellent bread thereof, wherewith they fustaine themselves, and fell it to the Portugals : they know how to bake it in such fort, that it will endure good three or foure monethes. The Children also eate it in flead of bread. which they fet awhile vpon the fire, and then crush the Corne out of the huskes, such as eate much thereof and are not vied vnto it, vie to bee Scurue and Itchie, or elie to bee troubled with great bloud Veines, for it increaseth bloud; it is no lesse nourishing then Corne in the Netherlands , and in a manner taffeth like our Corne.

The people of the West Indies can make Wine of Mais, which they call, Chicka, wherewith they will make themselves drunke, as if it were of Wine made of Grapes, and for that they know, that Corne fodden or fleept in water maketh a kind of drinke, wherewith a man may make himselfe drunke. Therefore they lay this kind of Graine to soake in the water till it is foft, and then they brew thereof, as some of the Negroes in Guinea, which deale with the Portugals, also doe, and call it Poiton.

.az 6:44

This Mais will grow in a movit fatty and hot ground, and beares twice a yeere; it is not

fowed like other Corne, but it is thrust into the ground , as we vie to doe Beanes in our Coun-

trey : it lieth not long in the ground, but foone fpringeth vp , and groweth higher then a mane length about the ground, like to great Reeds that grow in the water, or in drowned land, where with husbandmen vie to couer their shades : euery Reed hath his eares whereon the Come groweth, and notwithstanding, that they are heavy eares, as big as yong Cucumbers and shorne about like the top of a Steeple, yet every Reed hath feven or eight eares vpon it. I have told five hundred and fiftie Graines vpon one Reed, which came of one Graine alone, They are of diuers colours, as White, Blacke, Yellow, Purple, &c. and fometimes you shall have three or Io

foure colours thereof in one care. There are two forts thereof, great and small, the great Graine is stronger then the small. They vie the Reed to couer their houses.

Raine burtfull. They thun the Raine, and effecte it to be very ill and vriwholefome to fall your their raked

954

bodies, which they doe not without great reason, for wee find our selues to bee much troubled therewith, when we tracelt, specially when it raineth much, and maketh great Transdor, as it doth once a veere. In those Countries, which is in Aprill, May, and Inne; at which time there are such Tempetts of Thunder , Lightning, wind, and Raine , that it is incredible, specially the Raine vader the Equinoctiall Line, is so vnwholesome and rotten, that if a man hath beene in the Raine, and is thorow wet, and so lieth downe to sleepe in his Cabin, in his wet clothes, without putting them off, he is in danger to get some sicknesse; for it breedeth Feuers : and againg. if you drie not your wet clothes prefencly in the Sun , but forgetring them, chance to let them 2 hie, they will rot with the force of the water, in fuch fort, that you may plucke them in peeces with your fingers. And they find no leffe vnwhole somenesse therein; for when it begins to Raine, they get them out of the way, and if any drops of water fall vpon their naked bodies. they shiner and shake, as if they had a Fener, and cast their armes over their shoulders to keepe the Raine from them : which they doe not, because the water is cold, for often times it is as warme as if it were fodden : but because of the vnwholesomenesse for their bodies, which they find thereby. And when they have troden in the day time in the water with their feet, at night they make a fire, and lie with their foles of their feet against it, which they doe, to draw the moyfure of the water, which is gotten into their bodies, out againe at their feet : then they

fishing : rheir Great Snakes,

men write) is very vnwholesome, and thereof many and dangerous diseases are ingendred. They have Elephants, Leopards, Tigers, Cats of the Mountaine, Monkies, Foxes, Harts and ted the 6th and Hinds; it is faid, that in this Countrie there are white Elephants; but I could never understand it from the Negros themselves.

anoint their bodies with Palme Oyle, which they vie also for a beautifying to make their bo- 30

dies shine, and that they doe to shunne the Raine water within those Countreys (as many

There are the greatest and most venimous Snakes that euer was seene, there was one in my time taken there (as the Negroes told me) which was thirty foot long, and as much as fixe men could carrie; There is also a beast like a Crocodile, but it never goeth into the water, as the Cro-

codile doth which is called Languad.

Dogges,

There are Spiders as big as the palme of a mans hand, and great flore of them. Camelions and Agtission a great number, but they esteeme not them to be venimous, for they drie many of them & eat them. There are many Dogs & Cats, such as we have, but their Dogs have sharper snowts then ours, and their chaps full of wooll, they cannot barke nor make a noise, they are very faire beafts for colour, as blacke, red, white, and yellow Spaniels, &c. They are also a little smaller footed then ours, so that they are not much vulike the Dogs in our Countrey, but they are vulike to ours in one thing, for when you strike them, they run away, and make no noise, nor once offer to bite you; but when you run away from them, and are afraid of them, they will leape at you, and bite you by the legges : those Dogs they vie for their necessitie, and eate them, and in many places of the Countrey they are brought and driven to the Market like sheepe or hogges, being 50 tied one to the other with strings, they are called Ekia, or Cabra de masto, which is a wild sheepe, it is the first gift which a man of that Countrie gineth when he buyeth his Gentilitie, they make much of our Dogs in these Countries, for when they barke, they thinke they speake; and for that cause esteeme greatly of them.

Carse.

Cats also are there much esteemed, because they take Mice, wherewith the Inhabitans of the Townes are much troubled, they are called Ambaio, they have very faire skins, and are very good Moufers, they vie also to eate them, they were first carried hither out of

Elephants,

If they know where any Elephants are, they vie all the meanes they can to take them, for they eate them also, although they should shinke like a Carrion, and that a thousand Maggots 60 crept out of them. Where they know that they vie often times to come, they make great pits, which they couer ouer with straw and foule leaves of trees, which the Elephant knowing nothing of, goeth that way as he was wont to doe, and falles into the pit, and cannot get

The Negroes hearing that hee is fallen into the pit, run thither with their weapons and finite him into the body with Affagaies, and fo kill him; which done, they leape into the pit, and cut him in quarters, and euery one may go and fetch his part thereof when he will; of the hide they make Itooles to fit on : the taile is given to the King to beat the Flies from his naked body. they make itooles to it on the tane is given to leffe subtilitie they take the Leopards, for they and are much esteemed off there; with no leffe subtilitie they take the Leopards. doe them more hurt then other beafts: and because it is a cruell beaft to spoyle and destroy men, keeping in the way where men should passe along. In every foure cornered way, or at the end of the fireet, they make houles with woodden pales, which are like to Rat traps, wherein they put Hens, Sheepe, and other things which he defireth to eate, where the Leopard comning to eate his prey, is taken with the fall of the trap, and kild with an Aflagaie; they efterme much of the skin, whereof they vie to cut Girdles , and to make Caps. There are no Horses in that Countrey, and when there were some brought vnto them for a great Present; they kild them, and eate them : because their flesh feemed sweet vnto them.

The Oxen and Cowes that are found in that Countrey are not very great; but of bigneffe like Oxen. great Calues : their hornes stand backeward on their heads, they are not milke, for they gitte none; they can hardly bring vp their yong Calues, by reason of the small moy flure that the Cowes give their Calnes, by meanes of the drie Countrey wherein they are and by reason of the

heat of the land.

The Hens and Goats, (which with them are (heepe) that they have there, were brought them thither by the Porragalls of S. Thomas, the Hens profiper and encrease well there, and are for fat with the Millie that groweth there; as if they were Capons; but they are commonly smaller then ours, the Egges which they lay are no greater then Pidgeons Egges. The Dones which Dones they have there, were also brought them thither by the Portugals, and are called Abranama. which is as much to fay , as Birds brought thither vnto them by white men. They are very like to our Pidgeons, but their heads are leffe, like Sea-mewes, there is no great flore off, them in

The Hogs also were brought them by the Portugals, and are called Ebbio; they are very little } Hogges. but very sweet and pleasant to eate, but not so good as the Hogs in Mofambique, where the Hogs flesh is as daintie as Hens flesh : and because it is a very vnwholesome place, they give their 30 ficke men Hogs fielh to eate, in flead of Hens fielh : they have also not long tince gotten fome Geele out of a thip of Helland, which they call Apatra, which are there much eftermed off, be-

cause they are but few.

The Country is full of Monkies, of divers formes, for fome of them have white beards, and Monkies blacke Mustachoes, with speckled skins, their bellies white, and voon their backes they have a broad Tawnie ftroke, with blacke Pawes and a black Tayle, and by vs are called Board men. There are some called white Noses, because no part of them'is white but onely their Nose, there is a third fort, called Boorkers, those thun men very much, and stinke filthily, by nature they are very crafty : the fourth, are very like to the lacken, which are found in the Graine Coast : there: 40 are also many Monkies of diners other fashions, they take the Apes and Monkies with springes How taken which hang upon the trees, where into the Apes and Monkies leape, and are taken by the Negres. Muske Cats are there in great abundance, the Portugals call them Cato degalia, which is Agalia Cats ; the Negroes call them Kankan, those kind of Cats are also found in East India . and in I ana, but they are not fo good as those in Guinea; or of the golden Coast, they are there called Caltory, those Cats are much esteemed of by the Pertugals, whereby they reape great profit, specially by their Agaly or Muske, which they take from them, and make them cleane, and then Musk-cars, it is put into glaffes, and carried into Lifton, it is a kind of beaft much given to bite, and to eate flesh ; because they give them flesh (as Hens, Pidgeons, Goats, and other costly meats) to eate :-They ease themselves in a place apart, and leave it and never lie in it ; it is almost like a Foxe? but their tayles are like other Cats, their skins are speckled like a Leopards skin : the Newsey 50 take many of them in the woods when they are your, and so bring them vo : but because they have no skill there how to vie them, they fell them to ftrangers. The Male Cats are the beft, and yeeld the most Agalia, by reason that the Females pisse in the cod wherearthe Muske

are to rule, so much the coftlier and better their Agalia is. There are Hares also in this Countrey, specially in a place called Akra, in forme like ours, and because that Countrey is low Sandy Ground, therefore they are found more there then in any other part of that Coast : when the Negroes will take them, they goe a great number of them together, to the place where the Hares are, every one taking with him ewo or three cudgels of 60 wood, as long as a mans arme, and there they compare the field round about, and standing about their holes, make fuch a noyle and crying, and clapping their flickes one vpon the other, that the Hares are fo feared therewith , that they leape out of their holes , and are by them kild with those Cudgels, which they cast at them, and by that meanes get many of them. Harts and Harts. Hinds are fometimes found there also, but in some places more then others, they are of the same

groweth, and piffe it out with their water; when you perceive that they seare their bagge,

you must take their Agalia from them, for they doe it to be rid of it: the wilder and worse they

21,200

fashion that ours are in the Low-countreyes, but they have another kind of homes then ours they have no expresse kind of Instruments to take them withall : but when they see them goe to the water to drinke, they strike them into the bodie with an Assagaie and kill them, Homting to take wild beafts is lawfull for any man to wie in those Countreys, if they can take them without punishment for doing it: There are many other kinds of beafts of such several forts, that a man cannot tell what to make them but for that the Natherlanders that vie to Games, date nos goe farre into the Country to take wild beafts, leaft they should be taken and intrapped by the Partneals or their adherents, and made flaues all their lines long : therefore there are many wild beafts that are not knowne by vs.and which the Inhabitants themselues know not, nor can not tell by what names to call them.

Parrors.

The Birds that are found there, are of diners forts, and are little birds like vnto ours; fac. there are blew Parrets, whereof there are great store, which being yong, are taken out of their nefts and made tame, having not flowne abroad, they are better to teach, and to learne to feether but they will not prate fo much as the greene Brafilian Parrots doe. They have also an other kind of groupe Birds, as big as Sparrowes, like the Catalinkins of Well India, but they cannoe speake, Those Birds are called Afterone, and by our Netherlanders, called Parolities. They are taken with Mets, as you vie to take Sparrowes. They keepe much in low Land, where much Corne or Millie groweth; for they eate much thereof. Those Birds are very kind one to the other a for when you put a male and a female in a Cage, they will alwaies fit together without making any poyle. The female is of fusha nature, that when the is coupled with the male, the 20 respecteth him much, and setteth him fir on the right hand, setting her selfe on the left hand; and when he goes to eate, shee followeth him; and so they live together quietly, being almost of the nature of the Turtle-doves. They are of a very faire greene colour, with a spec of stancetewnie voon their Nofes.

There are another kind of Parokeen, which are much like them, being of the fame nature and condition, but are of colour as red as bloud, with a spot of blacke vpon their Noses, and a black Talle, being formewhat greater then the Paratage. There are other Birds not much valike to Gold-finches, all their bodies being yellow, those Birds make not their Nests in the field for feare of Snakes, and other venimous beafts; but make their nefts very craftily vison the branches of high trees , and there lay their eages to keepe themselves from venimous beatle. They to have other small Birds, not much valike to hedge Sparrowes; but they keepe in the Fields a. mong Corne, those Birds they thrust into their mouthes alive, and eate them Feathers Benes and

all: they have flore of Muschen, with many other kind of (mall Burds.

The have a kind of Birds like Eagles, whethylane heads like Turkle-cocks, those Mirds are

The same a sum of a removable eggents, whereast of the Negroos, whereby they are much troubled, and therefore they carry them meatup to the hilles, and call them Fafer of Diegs: which is the Birds of their god, and therefore they doe them no hure, knowing well that they would revence themselves well enough: they lie alwayes in myre and durt, and stinkers ill as a prime, and you many friell them stage off. They have some water Suites, but not many. And Turele-Doues, which have a blacke firoke about their neckes like a crowne. There are many Phefinus, 40 nor much unlike ours for fashion, but have not such feathers, for they are speckled blacke and white, and without long sayles as our haus; they are not of fo good a safe as other common Hens are. Beake-cocks alfo I haus some shere, not much valike our Peake-cockes; but there Pea-cockes. is some difference in the Feathers, for some of them are of other colours. Pitteirs I have feene there, as I faid before, which they efteene for a great Feiffe, and a South-fayer. Cranes also there

Speckled Choures, and gray Sea-mewes are there in great abundance, with divers other kinds of Birds, nor much white ours, but if you marke them well, there is difference betweene them. as some in their feathers, others in their Bils, the third in their feet, and the fourth in their heads, so that there is some difference, although they resemble much ; and because Birds are little taken and those in those Countreyes, for that they have no kind of Instruments to doe it withall. there are great ftore in the Countrey, and by that meanes, both the beafts and the Birds waxe Burning Flies. very bold. There are many Owles and Bats which flie by night, and store of great greene Frogs, and gray Grashoppers, and many great land Crabs, which keepe in the earth, and are of a purple colour, which they effective for a great prefent. When I went by night to walke in the fields, I faw things in the gualle that thine like fire coales, which I tooke vp and tied them in my handhercher, which made it thow with the light of the beaft as if it had burnt; and when I went into the Towne to the Megree, and the weed it them, they wondered thereat, and the next day when I lookt on them, they were small blacke Flies, like Spanish Flies, but were as blacke as Pitch : Flies , Mothes , and Bees are there also to be seene. The Bees make their Hines voon trees. There are great store of blacke Ants, which make holes in the earth, like

field Mice, those Ants doe much hert to the Bees, and cate up there Hony and Waxe.

are many, and Kites also of the fame fashion that our Hellend Kites are. There is a kind of Birds

also there which are like Storkes, but they have not so long red Bils, and make not such a noise.

A brange tree, the supposed tree of Paradise. CHAP.2.S.6.

Bannana, in Brafilia, Pacona; and the tree Paguoner, in Malabar, Patan, &c. is the fruite Bannanas of whereof lebs Hunghen western, and calleth it ledies Figs, this tree hath no branches, the fruit Indian Figers groweth out of the tree, and hash leaves at least a fatherne long, and three spannes broad. Those leaves among the Two ket are vied for Paper, and in other places the Houses are covered therewith, there is no wood vpon the tree, the out-fide (wherewith the tree is covered when it beginneth to waxe old) is like the middle part of a Sine, but opening it within, there is nothing but the leaves, which are zolled up round and close together, it is as high as a man, on the top the leanes begin to fpring out, and rife up an end, and as the young leanes come forth the old wi-

ther away, and begin to drie vertill the tree comes to his growth, and the fruit to perfection: to the leaves in the middle have a very thickeveine, which disideth it in two, and in the middle of the leaves, out of the heart of the tree, there groweth a flowre as bigge as an Estridge Egge, of a ruflet colour, which in time wanteth long like the flalke of a Colewoore, whereon the Figges grow close one by the other, when they are fill in their buskes, they are not much whike great Beanes, & fo grow more and more untill they be a span long, and foure thumbes broad like a Cucumber, they are cut off before they are sipe, and are in that fort hanged up in bunches, which ofrentimes are as much as a man can carrie. It also veeldeth good Trommelie like Milke (when the trea is cut downe) which commette out of the bodie thereof, having hanged three or foure dayes, they are through rine, the tree beares but one bunch at a time, whereon there is at least one hundred Figges and more, and when they cut off the bunch of Figges, the tree also is cut

20 downe to the ground, the root flaving fill in the Earth , which prefently fpringeth vp againe, and within a moneth bath his full growth, and all the yeare long no time excepted. The tree beareth fruit, the fruit is very delicate to eate, you must pull off the huske wherein the fruit lyeth, very delightfull to behold, the colour thereof is whitish and some what yellow, when you bite it, it is fost, as if it were Meale and Butter mixed together, it is mellow in byting, it cooleth the maw, much thereof eaten maketh a man very look and raw in the throate, it maketh women lecherous if they eate much thereof. Some are of opinion, because it is fo delicate a fruit, that it was the fame tree that flood in Paradife, whereof God forbad Adam and Euc to eate. It smels like Roies, and hath a very good smell, but the taste is better. The Portugals

will not cut it through with a Knife, but breake it, by reason of a speciall observation which 30 they have in the cutting thereof, which is, that then it sheweth like a crosse in the middle of the fruit, and therefore they thinke it not good to cut it.

The Bachouens (by vsfo called) are very like the Bannamas, for the condition, and forme is Bachouens or all one, only that the fruit is smaller, shorter, white of colour within and sweeter of taste, and Bannanas de is effeemed to be wholfomer to be eaten then the Bannanas, but there is no fuch great quantitie comes. of them, and for that they were first brought out of the Kingdome of Congo, into other Coun-

tries, they have gotten the name thereof. The Annuas is also a delicate and pleasant fruit for smell, and of the best taste that any fruit Annuas can be, it hath also diners fenerall names, there are two forts, the Male and the Female, the Canarians call it, Anavafa, the Brafilians, Nana; those of Hispaniola, Islama, and the Spaniands in

40 Beafiles, Pines, became one of them found that and the Pines first in Brafiles, it is as great as a Mellon, faire of colour, some-what yellow, greene and carnation, when it begins to bee ripe, the gregneraffe thereof turneth into an Orange colour, it is of a pleasant taste, and hath a fine inell like an Apricocke, fothat it is to be fmelt farre off, when you fee the fruit afatre off, being greene, it thewes like Artichokes, and is eaten with Wine, it is light of difgefture, but eating much thereof it inflametha mans bodie. In Brafita there is three forts thereof, each having fourfull name : first, laisung, the fecond, Boniums; the third, Laisung : but in Gnines there is but one fort. The time when they are in their flowre is in Lent, for then they are helf, it growes halfes fathome about the ground, the branes thereof are not much whike Semper Vincon, when they are eaten, they are cut in round fires, and fopt in Spamfo wine; you cannot eate enough 50 thereof, it is verie hot of nature, and will grow in morth ground, the fops that you take out of the Wine takes like fweet Muske, and if you doe not prefently wipe the Knife wherewith you cut the fruit, but forgetting it let it lye halfe an houre, it will bee eaten in, as if there had

beene frong water laid woon it, being eaten in abundance and without knowledge, it causeth great fickneffe. There are great store of Iniamus growing in Gaines, in great fields, which are fowed and Iniamus. planted like Turnips, the root is the Iniamus, and groweth in the Earth like Earth-nuts, those Iniamus are as great as a yellow root, but thicker and fuller of knots, they are of a Mouse-colour, and within as white as a Turnip, but not fo fweet, being put in a Kettle and fodden with fieth, and then peeled and eaten with Oyle and Pepper, they are a very delicate meate, in ma-

60 ny places it is vied for bread, and is the greatest meate that the Negroes eate. The Battatas are somewhat redder of colour, and in forme almost like Injamus, and taste Butatas. like Earth-nuts, those two kinds of frait are very abundant in Guinca, they are commonly

rosted, or else eaten with a hodge-pot in stead of Parsenips or Turnips. The Palme-wine tree is almost like the Cocos tree, or a Lantor, with dizers others, and are palme-wine of tree.

of three or foure forts, most of them have all one kind of leafe, but in manner of wood they are walke, for this tree is thorter of wood then the reft, the Wine is drawne out of those trees by boring them, from whence there issueth a say like Milke, which is very coole and fresh to drinke, at the first when it is drawne, it is pleasant and sweet, having stood a while, it is as sowre as Vineger, fo that you may vie it in a Sallet, but being drunke iweet and fresh, it causeth a man to void vrine well, whereby in those Countries, there are very few found, that have the difease of the Stone; drinking much thereof a mans head will foone be light, the lightnesse which a man hath in his head thereby, caufeth it not to ake. When it commeth first out of the tree it is fweeter of tafte, then when it hath stood awhile, but yet it is esteemed to bee better when it hath stood awhile, and is some-what setled, then presently to bee drunke, for it standeth seething and bubling, as if it hung ouer the fire and fod, for that if it were put into a Ghaffe and floot vp. without letting any ayre come into it, the force thereof would breake the Ghaffe in pieces, but being a meale tyde olde, it is nothing worth, because it is so sowre, and then it is of another colour verie waterith, therefore it is much mixed with water, and feldome comes pure to the Market, asit is taken out of the tree, which is done partly to increase their Wine, as ale

for that then it is the fweeter to drinke, and hath the tafte of Syder, and the colour of Muff.

when the tree is old, and will yeeld no more Wine at the top, it is cut downe at the foot, and

a fire made at the root thereof, where they fet a pot, whereinto the Wine (by meanes of the

ning betimes an houre before day, the Wine is drawne out and brought to the Market at noone.

heate) runneth, the tree beeing changed, and yeelding no more profit, there groweth another tree out of the roote thereof, but it is halfe a yeare old before it giveth any Wine. In the mor-

958

The Palmitas tree is not much to be feene in Gsines, but for that a Negro in that Countres the wed me fome of the fruit thereof . I thought good to fay fomething of it in this place, it is a tree without branches, on the top of the tree the fruit groweth, and it is almost like the Annanas when it is ripe. It is outwardly of a faire gold colour, and within it hath graines like Pomegranates, they are of a very (weet talte, the other is hard and wnfit to eate.

Of their Gentlemen, and how they are made: Their Dancings, Sports, Difeafes, Cures, Visitations, Mournings, Funerals: and of their Gold.

Ambition of

Here are many Gentlemen in that Countrey, but of small meanes, for affoone as they haue bought their Gentilitie, they are then poorer, and in miferable estate then they were before, and for that they thinke to be men of great account when they are Gentlemen, they feeke much after it, and begin to gather fome wealth from their youths ypwards to obtayne the place of a Gentleman. First, they give three gifts to be made a Gen-

Gifts for it.

Creation.

tleman, the first gift is a Dogge, which they call Cabro de Matto, which is as much to fay, as a Field-sheepe. The second Gift, is a Sheepe or a Goat. The third Gift, is a Cow, with many other things, and then he is made a Gentleman. These Gifts are given among those that are Gentlemen, and are given the one now, the other at another time, as the man that is made a Gentleman can best doe it, and hath the meanes to performe it, and then hee makes the Captaine acquainted with it, which done, he buyeth a Cow, which is carryed and tyed in the Market place, and then it is made knowne to the people, that fuch a man shall bee made a Gentleman at fuch a time, in the meane time all those that are Gentlemen make themselues as fine as they can to goe with him, and to fight and thew many Apish Toyes. The man that is to bee made a Gentleman, makes all things readie, as meate and drinke to entertaynehis Guefts, 30 and to bid them welcome in good fort, he buyeth Hens and many pots of Palme-wine, and fendeth every Gentleman a Hen and a pot of Palme-wine home to his House, to make merrie withall.

When the Feast day comes, the Inhabitants affemble together vpon the Market place, the men (as he mafters) goe and fit on the one fide , having many Instruments, as Drums, Hornes, Bels, and other things with them. The Captaine armeth himfelfe, and with him hath many young Batchelors with Shields and Assagaies, their faces being coloured and their bodies painted with red and yellow Earth, which makes them looke like a company of yong Deuils. The man that is made a Gentleman is accompanied with a number of other Gentlemen, having a 60 Boy behind him which carryeth his stoole to sit vpon when hee goes to speake with any man, and his fellow Gentlemen come to falute him , and wish him good fortune in his new effate, at which time they take a great deale of ftraw in the one hand, and lay it under his feet, which he treadeth vpon (the like also they we when their owne friends come to visit them, and bring

them any Presents, which they vie for a great honour.) The wines of the Gentlemen goe to her, to doe all the honour they can to the wife of the Gentleman that maketh the Feath, and dresse her finely, folding her haire with many golden Fetisos, and Crosses, putting about her neeke a Ring of gold, and in the one hand shee carrieth a Horse-taile, and on her right arme shee hath a Ring of gold, at each end thereof having a round thing like the Lid of a Pot, all made of gold; and being readie, they are placed in order, as their manner is, one after the other; then the Cow is led forth, and then all the Gentlemen in the Towne come and follow them, as it were on Procession, dancing and leaping round about the Towne, and when they come agains into the Market-place, the Cow is bound to a stake, and there they make a great noise with Drummes and Pipes, and the young Bachelors with fencing and leaping, with their Shields 10 and Affagaies, now in one place, then in another, making, as they thinke, great joy about the Gentleman; every man feeking to excell each other, and to get most praise and commen-

CHAP.2. S.7. Merriment, Priviledges, Annual Feafts, Dancing, esc.

The women also make no leffe adoe with singing and dancing, sometimes carrying both the Gentleman and his wife, vpon a stoole; round about the Towne, casting white Meale in their faces, and in that fort make great naftime three dayes together, and every night they are led home to their houses, and watcht by the other Gentlemen. The next day he is fetcht by a great number of people, and great honour done vnto him as before; at which time hee hangs a white Flag out of his houle, which doth fignifie ioy, or open houle. The third day, the Cow is

killed by the Executioner, and quartered, and every man bath a piece of the flesh thereof . that 20 they also may be participants of the Feast: but the man and the woman that maketh the Feast; may not eate of the Cow ; for they make them beleeve, that if they eate any thereof, they shall die within a yeere after. The Feast day being ended, the head of the Cow is carried home to his house, which he hangeth vp, and painteth it with divers colours, hanging many straw Fetifees voon it, which is a figne of his Gentilitie, and a warrant to proue him to be made a Gen-

Then he hath great priniledge, for he may buy Slaues, and doe other things which before he Priniledge might not have done. When he is made a Gentleman he is very proud thereof; for, the first thing that they will tell vnto a Stranger, is, that they are Gentlemen, and that they have many Slaues, esteeming themselues to be great Masters; but it falleth out oftentimes, that after their feasting is done, and he made a Gentleman, that then hee is poorer then he was before, because he disburfed all his money to get it, and then he must goe out to fish againe and doe other things, if he will get his living. This kind of Gentilitie cofts him about eight Bendas, which is a pound of gold; but deducting that which is given for Presents of other men which bring them to him, each man according to his meanes and abilitie, it ftandeth him not in about halfe a pound of gold. Those Gentlemen have a Fellowship among them, and every yeere make a Feast, and then bid their Friends to be merrie with them, and make good cheere; at which time they hang their Annuil Feast. Cowes or Sheepes heads, with Millie firawes, and paint them with white colour, lignifying thereby the remembrance of their Fealt. Besides this , the Gentlemen haue an other Feast among it them, ypon the fixth day of July, at which time they paint their bodies with white and red ftripes, and hang a Garland made of greene boughs and ftraw about their necks, which they weare all that day, that you may know the Gentlemen from the rest, and then also they hang their Cowes and Goats heads full of Fetifoes, as before; in the evening they meet together at a Banket, in the house of the Captaine, where they are very merrie together, eating and drin-

king their heads and bellies full, till they are drunke. They make themselves very fine, especially the women, when they goe to dance, wherein Their danthey take a great pride. They hang many Copper, Tin, and Iuorie Rings about their armes, and cings. on their legs they put Rings with many Bells, that they may found when they dance. Their heads are frizled, and dreffed with a tuft of haire. They wash their bodies faire with water, and then anoint them with Palme-oile, to make them shine. Their teeth also they rub with a hard 50 flicke : then they put a piece of white linnen about their bodies, which hangs from vnderneath

their breafts, downe below their knees; and commonly about evening they aftemble together, and goe to the Market-place to dance there. Others have inftruments whereon they play, as fome Copper Basons, whereon they strike with woodden Stickes. Others have woo Drums, cut out of an hollow Tree, couered ouer with a Goats Skin, and play vpon them. Others have round Blockes, cut very handfomly and evenly, whereon also they firike with woodden Stickes. Others haue Cow-bells. Some haue small Luits, made out of a piece of wood like a Harpe with fixe strings of Reeds , whereon they play with both their hands , euery one having their feuerall Instruments, and each keeping good correspondence with their fellowes Instruments. Others sing, and begin to dance two and two together, leaping and stamping with one of their feet upon the ground, knocking with their fingers, and bowing downe their heads,

and speaking each to other; in their hands carrying Horle-tailes, which they cast sometimes on the one shoulder, then upon the other, using certaine order in their sports, one following the other, and each doing as the other doth. Other women take fraw, which they lee fall to the

ground, and then dancing vigonit , caft it vp againe into the aire with their feet, and catch it as it there h with their hands, lo that they play many apish and childrens sports, thinking that they doe excellent well; but they defire not to be feene by ittangers, because they laugh and ieft at them, and then they are ashamed.

This continuing an houre or an houre and an halfe, every one goes home againe, as having ended their sports. There are houses also among them, wherein young men and maids vie to dance and play. The young Bachelors vie to drinke themselves drunke, and by night runne through the fireets with their Armes and Affagaies, making a great noise with crying and showting. as if a companie of young Deuils ran about the ffreets; and meeting with other companies, with whom having some words, they fight together, wherein they are so earnest one against the other, that they are almost readie to kill each other, and many times cannot leave off. There Io. will not lightly beginne to quarrell, for they are not so hastie, but will indure much, specially of flrangers, before they will quarrell; but if they once beginne, they are not eafily pacified. or mangers, before they wan quarter, out their adverse Parties, and to be revenged, though it thould coft them their lives, and they have very quicke hands to thrust and to strike.

Their wounds

Their bodiesare subied to many ticknesses and diseases, which they esteeme but little and make no account of wounds or hurts. The ficknesses wherewith they are most troubled, are make no account of women of makes. The meaning free tree field and burning Feuers. The didease flower (Clay-dollars, Botches, Wormes, paine in the head, and burning Feuers. The didease they get from foole and filthic women, whereunto they are much addicted, and although they they tingy get minimum and minimum, and a many a many minimum and manger, yet they effection that a more without much danger, yet they effection not of much of them, but palls them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of a much of them, but palls them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of a much of them, but palls them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of a much of them, but palls them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of a much of the minimum and the many and the many and the many and the many are not faint-hearted. à hard complexion, fuffering their wounds to iwell and putrifie, without any meanes of remedie applied thereunto; for they neither haue nor vie any Physicke among them, to ease them in their ficknelle , nor Surgeons or Phylicians to heale their wounds, but fuffer their wounds and difeases to hade their course, vnlesse any of our Surgeons give them any Physicke or Surgerie, For the Pox and Clap-dollers they vie much Salfaparillia, which the Hollanders thips bring them; which Salue they feethe with falt water , and drinke the water for drinke against the Wormes in the Pox, and fuch like diseases, and also against the Wormes that are in their legs, (as I will declare more at large) wherewith also we are much troubled, whereunto they vie no remedie at all, but fuffer their legs to continue to , vntill they heale and waxe better of themselves. For the paine of the head they vie certaine Pap, which they make of greene leaues, and therewith anoint the place where their paine is ; and if they have any swelling about their bodies, which

Barbarous In- breaketh nor out, then they take a knife and true two or three long flathes therein, and fo give the wound a meanes to worke, and to Weale worked grow together againe; which is the cause that they have for much knobd fielh, and fo many flashes in their bodies: but is well to be discerned, whether they be cut and made in their flesh to be beautifie and fer out themselves, or wounds and fores that are healed up againe. They also vieno letting of bloud, but onely make a hole in their bodies with a kinfe to let their bloud come out : when they have any other naturall ficknesses, they will not helpe nor confort one the other; but if any of them be ticke, they will flum him as it were the plague, and spurne the sicke man like a Dog, and not once helpe him with a drop of Oyle or Water, although they have never fo much need ; no, not the Father to the Sonne, but let them lie like Beafts; and die with hunger and fickneffe; fo that they are not skilfull to

They make difference betweene the word Morian and Negro, for they will not be called Morians, but Negroes or Prettoes, (which is as much to fay) as Blacke men; for they fay that Morian is as much to say as Slaue or Captine, and also a man that knowes nothing, or that is halte a Poole; and therefore they will not be called Morians, but Negroes or Pressoes; for if you call them Morians, they will hardly speake vnto you, nor make you any answere. They make the the other Slaues, but in other fort then in Congo or Angola, for there you can lade no ships fall of Slaues : but to the contrarie, they defire much to haue them , and buy them : yet there are both Slanes and Captines; and for that in those Countries they take no great paines, nor 50 need any great number of Slaues, therefore there is no great quantitie of them to be had, to fell them as they doe in other Countries, but onely among them of the Land, that have need of them. Againe, no man may buy or fell them, but such as are of great account and Gentlemen. They are marked with an Iron in their bodies, that if they chance to runne away, they may be knowne againe by their markes.

Such as are blind, or have any other imperfections in their bodies, as being lame or Criples, and by reason thereof cannot get their liuings, the King placeth them with Smiths, to blowe their Bellows; others with those that prefer Palme-oyle, or grind Colours, whereun to such de- 60 formed perfons are fit; or to fuch Occupations and labours wherewith they can helpe themfelues , and get their victuals; fo that there you fee none fuch as begge their victuals, but they are put in some place or other to earne their meate; so that the Inhabitants give no meate one to the other, The Kings of the Townes have many Slaves , which they buy and fell , and get much by clent and to be briefe, in those Countries there are no men to be hired to worke or

goe of any errand for money, but fuch as are Slaues and Captiues, which are to fpend their dayes

Hatred and enuy is much vsed in those Countries, and to whomsoeuer they once beare hatred and enuie, they will hate them cruelly, and doe them all the hurt and villany that they can : on the other fide, they beare a villary long in their minds, and will keepe malice in their hearts feuen or eight yeeres, and when time ferueth them, then show it openly; no lesse hatred and enmy is borne by one Towne vnto an other, speaking all the villany they can, and extolling themselves as much as they may, to have the honour of Traffique, and to the end that the ship should come and Anchor before their Townes, and by that meanes to bring the Countrie Merchantsto Traffique there, wherein they are very diligent : and although one Towne lyeth but three or foure miles one from the other; yet they are as enuious one against the other as possible they can be, and report as hardly of their neighbours as they can imagine; that fo they may get the Netherlanders to Traffique with them : and to that end, they ftrue to flew more friendthip to the Netherlanders, one then the other, to draw vs to affect them, and bring the trade of

Merchandize vnto them. The men commonly live there till they be old, as it feemeth by their faces and outward appa- Old age and rance, and as we concease; but they cannot reckon their owne ages, nor tell how many yeeres the effects, they have lived. When they begin to be old, then they are not well proportioned nor icemely; but looke euill fauouredly, with gray beards, yellow wrinckled skins, like Spanifb Leather,

20 which proceedeth of the anointing of their bodies with PalmeO-yle. They are likewife leane of Lees and Armes, and wholly milhapen, specially olde women, with their long breasts, which then shew and hang your their bodies like old Hogs bladders, they would not willingly be old; because as then they are not esteemed of, but much despised, and not respected, and as from their youths vowards, to the best time of their lives, they still waxe of a fairer blacke colour, so when they are past that time, they begin to decay, and to lose their perfect

In their winter time, they are very fickly, & then commonly there is a great mortalitie among them, by meanes of the vnwholefomeneffe of the aire, which they then endure : and when they die, their friends come to the dead mans house, and weepe and sorrow grienously for him, spea-30 king vnto him, & asking him why he died, with many fuch like foolish Ceremonies, They take

the dead body and lay it on a mat vpon the ground, & wind it in in a woollen, purpolely made in that Country, of colour red, blew, blacke and white. Vader his head they lay a woodden stoole, and couer or dresse his head with a Goats skin, and strew all the body ouer with ashes, and dust of Barkes of trees; they close not his eyes together, they lay his armes downe by his fides. and fo let him lie halfe a day in the aire. If it be a man, his best beloued wife goes and sits downe by the body, and if it be a woman, the man goes and fits downe by her, crying and weeping, hauing in their hands a wispe of straw, or of Barkes of trees, wherewith crying and howling ouer the dead body, he or she wipeth his face, sometimes saying vnto it, Anzy, and making a great noyle; in the meane time, the friends or neighbours come to vilite the dead, and to mone him for his misfortune, others (as the neerest friends) being women, goe round about the house,

finging and beating upon Basons, sometimes comming to the dead body, and goe round about him finging and leaping, and kincking of hands, making a great noyle, and then againe goe round about the house linging and playing upon Basons, which they doe twice or thrice one after the other.

In the meane time, preparation is made for the buriall, and to make good cheere together, after it is ended; to the which end, they dreffe certaine Hens, and a Sheepe, and other meats which Funerall they are accuitomed to este, and while the dead bodie is about the ground, the eldest Morimi of that quarter, goes about from house to house with a Bason, whereon every one must put the value of twelve pence in gold, with the which money they buy a Cow, which Cow is given to a Fetiffero that wieth to coniure their gods, to will him to coniure the Fetiffe, to fuffer the dead

50 body to remaine and reft in peace, and to bring him into the other world, and not to moleft him in the way, with this Cowes blood hee conjureth his Ferifo ; (for a dead man must fmeare his Fetifo with blood) then they bind the dead body vpon a planke, and carry him to the grave finging and leaping : the bodie is carried by men, and the women follow after one by one, about their heads having a Crowne or Garland of ftraw, and a staffe in their hands: the man, if it be a woman, goes next to the dead body crying to the graue, else there goes no man after it, voleffe the dead body chanceth to be borne to another place to be buried; as fornetimes it hapneth that they carry the dead body twenty miles off, from the place where he died, to be buried there : and then many men go armed with the body, to convey it to the buriall : the body 60 is carried to the earth, & the grave-maker maketh a grave about foure foot deepe, and therein he

is laid; ouer the grave there are many flickes of wood aid, close one by the other; the women creepe to and fro ouer the grave, making a great noyle, with howling and crying, and over that, they lay the earth, and place it, and bind it about the same, as if it were a Chest : all his goods, as Apparell, Weapons, Pots, Basons, Tooles, Spades, and such Houshold-stuffe, wherewith he earned

Viaticum.

his living, are carried to the grave, and buried with him, which are fet round about the grave to ferue his turne withall in the other world, as they did when he lived vpon the earth; other of the dead mans friends, bring fome thing also to fet in the graue for a memory, which is the into the graue with the reft of his goods. It he were one that delighted much in drinking, & loud Palme well when he lived : they will let a pot of Palme-wine by him in his grave, because hee should not die for thirst, and what in his life he vied, that is given him, and buried in his grave with him. If it be a woman that died in travell of her child, the child is laid in the mothers right arme, and buried with her : about your the grave, there is a ftraw house made like a Servi chre, wherein all the houshold-stuffe and other things are set. The graue-makers fee, is to have halfe the goods that are fet into the grave, but the friends of the dead content him, and he is paid for it; because they should let the goods stand still vatoucht ; for it is a great credit to the friends 10 of the dead to leave good flore of goods upon the grave with the dead body; which they let fland there follows, till it be cleane confumed, and none of them will ever offer to take any of it away by any meanes whatfocuer. The body being buried, they goe altogether to the Sea-lide.or to some other River, where the women goe in, & Hand up to their middles in waters, and taking vp water in their hands, cast it in their owne faces, and vpon their bodies, and wash their breasts. and all their bodies. Other women in the meane time play vpon Basons, and such like infauments, one of those women take the man or woman, whose husband or wife is dead, and leading them into the water, laid them therein flat vpon their backes, and take them vp againe; which they doe divers times, speaking one vnto the other, and making great complaints. When he or the is well and cleane walnt from the head to the foot, the leadeth them out of the water againe, and puts their clothes upon their bodies again, & then they go together to the dead mans house to make good cheere, and to drink themselves drunk. If it be a man that died that had children the women must not retaine nor keepe any of his goods for the behoofe of the children; but must give all the mans goods (both that which he had to his marriage, and which he got by his labour while he lived) vnto his Brethren, if he hath any living, and must not keepe any thing from them. It he hath no brethren, then the father if he be living, taketh all his fonnes goods, and injoyeth it. If it be a woman that dieth, then the husband must deliver her marriage goods to her brethren, as aforefaid, without keeping any thing thereof for his children, fo that no children in those Countreyes inherite their Fathers good, neither are they their Fathers heires : No more, may the wife inherite any of her husbands goods, but it is all divided among his brethren; but while their wives live, they give her what they thinke good of that which they gaine, fo yong maids and men muit endeaour them felues to get fome thing in their youths, that they may have some thing when they marry and keepe houses.

Kings Fune-

For the Kings death, more forrow is made by fome of the Gentlemen, who in the Kings life ferued him: when he is dead, give him a flave to ferue him, & other men one of their wivesto wait on him, and to dreffe his meat : others bring one of their fonnes to goe with the King into theother world; so that there are a number of people that are appointed to goe with the King to the other world : which are killed, and their heads cut off, but they know nothing thereof, for fuch men and w.men as give them to the King when he is dead; tell not them that they shall be put to death, to goe into the other world with the King; but when the time comes, that the buriall is to be folemnifed, they fend them on some message, or to fetch water, and so following them, strike them through the body with an Affagaie, and kill them in the way : which done, they carry the dead body to the Kings house, whereby they shew what faithfull servants they were vnto their King while he lived : others also doe the like, and those dead bodies are fmeared with blood, and buried with the King in his grave, that they may travell together. If any of his wives loved him intirely, they faffer themselves to be kild with the rest, and are buried with him, that they may raigne together in the other world. The heads of the dead men and women, are fet round about the Sepulchre and graue of the King, for a great brauerie and hono ir vinto him. V pon the graue they fet all kinds of meat and drinke, that they may eate fome thing, and verily believe that they eate and drinke it, and that they live thereby, and for that cause the pots of Palme-wine, and of water, are continually fild vp : all his stuffe, as Armes and Clothes are buried with him, and all his Gentlemen that fegued him, have every one of them their Pictures made of Clay, after the life, and fairely painted, which are fet and placed orderly round about his graue, one by the other fo that their Kings Sepulchers are like houles, and as well flutt as if they itill lived: which Sepulchres are fo much efteemed off, that they are watcht both by night and by day, by ai med men : to the end, that if he defireth to have any thing, they should straight bring it him.

Gold how eficemed and

Gold at this day is as much effected off by them, as it is with vs, (of whom they fay, Gold, is our God) and more too, for they are greedier and earnester to have it then we are, because they 60 marke and fee that the Hollanders take to much paines for it, and give more Merchandise for it in Exchange, then ever the Portugals did. .

For I am of an opinion, that there are few Negroes that dwell on the Sea fide, that know where the Mines are, or that ever faw them, also there was never any Portugall or Netherlander at them, or neere them, but the Mines are well kept, and lookt vnto by the owners thereof; fo I have heard by some Negroes, that each King hath his Mines, and causeth the gold to be digged by his men, and selleth it to other Merchants , and so it passets from one toa-

In what manner the gold is found in Guinea, I know not, but as some Negroes have told me. they finde gold in deepe pits, which they digge up, and that with the water it is driven downe like Sand, at which waters and running iprings, many people fit with spoones in their

hands, and take up the gold, fand and all, and put it into a Bason.

Some peeces are coursed ouer with Chalke, and Earth, wherein they are found, the small gold. which is found in the Sand, they purge and make cleane in cleare running water, but yet they let fome Sand and Gravell remaine among it, it is found in no great quantities, (as they themselues say) but with great paine and labour, for it costs many men their lives, which are fmothered in the Mines; and a man that can find two or three Englishen of gold in a day. hath done well, and hath earned a good dayes hire. The halfe which is found is the labourers, and the other halfe is for the King, or for him that oweth the Mine; This I have been told by fome of the Negroes. Goldby them is called Chika, and some great Merchants that dwell about the Maine, bring the gold aboord the ships to buy wares, as it comes out of the Mine, and that is eftermed to be the best gold , wherein there is left deceit, but the receiver must looke well to it, to blow the fand cleane out of it, and to beat the yeallow earth with the flones out 20 of it, with a hammer, and so he cannot lose by it ineverthelesse, the gold that is brought rough out of the Mine, is efteemed to be better and richer, and more worth in every Marke then

It falleth out oftentimes, that fome gold is more worth then others, which hapneth by meanes of the receivers negligence, and many times as the Mines of gold fall out; for some of them are finer gold then others : and also the deeper that the Mines are digged, the gold falls out to be worfe, and is more mixed with filter, even in the earth it felfe, then the gold that heth

higher in the earth.

CHAP.2.S.6.

nigier in die Caude.
Befides this, meane Merchants bring much molten gold, as Crakawen, arme Rings, Iewels, Falle gold, and other things, wherein there is most fallhood vied: for fuch Negrees as have but small and other things, with vs, are more vied and addicted to the falfifying of gold, then others are, wherein they vie great fubtiltie, but we our felues are oftentimes the cause thereof; for we bring and fell them the matter, and the Instruments which they wie therein; and so deceiue our felues, and make a rod for our owne breeches: but they were wont to fallifie it more then now. For the Portugals hanged up fome for it. They have good knowledge in Gold, and can foone perceiue whether it be good or falfified; but of other lewels, as Pearles, Diamonds, Rubies, Emralds. and such like precious stones, they have no knowledge; but they know fine red Corals wel, which are much efteemed off by them.

Silver allo is well, and too much knowneamong them; because they vie it to falsific Gold withall, and to make it of leffe value then it is. They learned of the Portugals to melt gold. 40 They also have found the meanes to put an edge of gold round about filter, and Red Copper mixed together, letting the false mettle remaine in the middle of the peece, and so when hee that receiveth it, is in hafte, and toucheth it but on the edge thereof, (where it is not fallified) with his Touch-stone, it passeth for good : but such must bee cut in sunder with a hammer. and then the fallifying is perceived, and when they could find no meanes to fallifie the small fine Chika Foeta Gold, so that the receivers had no suspition thereof, and tooke the leffe heed there vnto, wee our selues brought them tooles to doe it withall : for wee brought them Files, and Sawes to fell, so that they filed the yellow Copper, and mingled it among the final gold, that it could hardly be perceived because it was no smal, which was the subtiltest falsifying of gold by them vsed, but when weblew the fand & dust out of it, then the Copper shewed 50 it lelte, whereby it appeareth that the Negroes have many wayes and deules to fallifie gold. but fuch as looke narrowly vnto them, will not be deceived : but to trie their falfifyings, the best way is to touch their gold, and to be warie of deceit, and of receiving bad gold. An other way is to looke speedily vnto the Negroes themselves; To see if they have bad gold or not , for when they bring bad gold, they will be in great feare, with your handling thereof, and when you offer to trie their gold , they will refuseit , and alter their colours , and shake and quiner

The wormes in the legges and bodies, trouble not every one that goeth to those Coun- Troublesome treves, but some are troubled with them, and some not, and they are found in some men long-wormer. fooner then in others, fome have a worme before the Voyage is done, and while they are still 60 vpon the Coalt, some get them while they are vpon the way, others have them after their Voy-

age is full ended, some soure moneths after, some nine moneths after, and some a yeere after they have made a Voyage thither: others have made two or three Voyages thither, and never were troubled with those wormes.

At Bochar in Rafiris there are the like, funpoled to

The Negroes themselves are much troubled with them, specially those that dwel about the caffle of Mina, and it is a thing to be wondered at, for the Negroes that dwel but 25 . miles lower East. ward, are not troubled with wormes as their neighbors are, And another (whereof John Hayeben speaketh in his Itinerario) are troubled therewith, for the Hands of East India, West India, China Brasilia, and other strange Countries are not troubled therwith, nor know not thereof, and which is more; They of the Hand of Saint Thomas, which men efteeme to be the vnwholefomest place in some by drin- the world; and wherein so many men are sicke, and lose their liues, know not what those king badwater wormes meane, but wondred much thereat, when it was shewed them of such as had beene in that place, with the Hollanders in Guinea. The Negroes themselves knew not whereof they are ingendred. as M. Ast. 168. but the greatest prefumption is, that they proceed and breed of the water which men buy of kinjun observed the Negroes. which they take out of Welsor Pits, and it is very likely (as we find by the experience) that they breed of the water ; for in Ormu, or in those parts, the fresh water is fetche vo in pots by diners, eighteene fathome deepe vider the falt water, which those people drinke. because they are there also troubled with wormes, and as some men write: the Indians themselves fay, that they come of the water. Such as have them are in great paine, for some of them can neither goe nor fland; fome neither fit nor lie, others lie wholy in dispaire, as if they were senceleffe, and fomtimes are faine to be bound; fome have them with a feuer, or shaking, as if they had a feuer; some get them on a sulden, others have them before they know it, and have little paine therewith; fo that the wormes flew them felues divers wayes : they appeare with a little Blain, others with a fpot like a Flea-biting, others with a litle fwelling; to that you may often fee the worme betweene the skin and the fleth, others flew themfelues with bloody vains, &c. It must shew it selfe before men vse any remedie for it : neuerthel se, it sheweth it selfemany times too much, and too foon, for it were better that it came not fo foon, nor appeared at all, but fuffered men to be at ease, it will feeke to helpe itselfe, and thrust out his note, which a man must then take hold on, least he creepe in againe : he she weth hi nfelfe in divers places , as in a mans legges, in the fole of the foot, in the armes, knees, buttocks, and commonly in places of mans bodie, where there is much flesh; and some men have them in their privile members, and which is more, in their cods, with great griefe and paine: for those that have them there, indure extreme paine. But it is true, that one man hath leffe paine with them then another, and shal also be fooner healed of them then another: which commeth by the handling or dealing with them, for it is very good, when a man findeth himselfe to be troubled with them, to be quiet, specially being in his legs, and not go much, and to keepe the place warme where they begin to appeare; for thereby they shall indure lesse paine, for they come bester out of a mans flesh with warmth . then with cold and difeate. For some men have little respected themselves when they have had the wormes, so that they appeared with a great swelling, whereby they indured much paine, and were in hazard to loose their legges or their armes. When it comes foorth fo farre, that a man may lay hold on it, then they must draw him out till hee stayeth, and then hee must let it rest till hee beginneth to come forward agains: and as much thereof as is come out of the bodie, must bee woond voon a sticke, or bound close to the hoole, with a thrid that hee creepeth not in againe. When hee commethout every time, he bringeth good flore of matter with him, and a man must every day looke vinto it, and draw him to long, till he be out, but you must not draw him too hard, least he should breake, fo that by reason of the poyson that is in him , the wound will fester : It hapneth oftentimes, that after there is one worme drawne out of a mans body, that there commeth another in the fame place, & hath his iffue out at the fame hole. Some men are foner rid of them then another, for fome are eated in three weeks and leffe time, and fome are three months in healing of them, fome men have more wormes then others, for some have but one worme, and others ten or twelve, as I my felf knew one that had ten wormes, hanging out at his body all at one time; and I have known men that had wormes that hegan to open them telues, and crept in againe, and confumed away, fo that they had no more trouble therewith but the next Voyage after. They are of divers lengths, and greatneffe. Some are of a fathome long, some shorter, as it fals out; in thicknesse they differ much, some are as thicke as great Lute-strings, and like common peare wormes, others like small Lute-strings, and some as small as silke or fine thred, some fay that they are not living, and that they are but bad finowes and no wormes. I have not long fince feene a man that had certaine wormes which shewed themselues, and the Surgeon drew a worme out with one pull, and the worme being drawne out, and held up on high, wrung and writhed it felfe, as if it had beene an Eele and was about five quarters long, and as thicke as a Lute-string, if it were but a finow, it would have no life in it, and therefore they are naturall wormes. The Negroes vie no kind of Surgerie for them, but fuffer them to hau etheir course, and wash the fore with Salt-water, which they fay is very good for it.

Note that our returne backe from Moure, we vie to put off from that place, from whence you must set sayle with a wind from the land, and hold your course as neere by as you can, losing no wind, and yet you shall hardly get aboue S. Thomas, or Rio de Gabon, because of the reame which driueth you East & by North, & East North-east towards the land. To the Bonibes of Fernando Poo. which you must beware off, for he that falleth into that Bombe, will hardly set out, because of the ffreame, and is in danger to be cast away in that place, or else he must have fome flormes or winds out of the North, and so come out Southward, otherwise it is hardly to be done; for there are fome, who having had the wind a little contrary, were fixe or feuen weekes before they could get to Cape Lope Gonfelues. Heere you must note, that the neerer you come to the Equinoctiall line, the wind bloweth the more Southerly, fo that as you paffe vinder the line, the wind bloweth South, and South and by Eaft, and formewhat higher, you must also note, when you fee great flying Fishes, that you me not farre from Saint Thomas, or about He De Principe.

ą. VIII.

The passage from the golden Coast to the Kingdome of Benni, or Rio de Benni, and Rio Floreado : The Citie, Court, Gentry, Apparell : alfo other places adjourning, described.

On that the gold Coaft reacheth no further then from Cape De tres Punitas, to Rio de This was ta-Use that the good contreament no nature institutes to be the Kingdome of Research Lawrence of Arman, and their courfe along by the land, and along by the Rivers of Ric de Ualto, Ric de Ardra, and Ric de Lago. These Rivers were never entred into, because there is nothing to be had in them, but a little quantitie of Elephants Teeth ; fo that the labour to fetch it, is not worth the paines, by meanes of the dangers that a man incurreth by entring into the Rivers, by reason of Sands. Before at the mouth of the River of Forrado, there lieth an Iland, and the River is so indifferent great, that a man may well know it. The land reacheth most (being about forty miles) to Rio de Ardra. This River is much yled to be entred into by the Portugals, and is well knowne, not because of any great commoditie that is therein to be had 30 but becaule of the great number of flaues which are bought there, to carry to other places, 45 to Saint Thomas, and to Brafilia, to labour there, and to refine Sugar : for they are very firong men, and can labour floutly, and commonly are better flaves then those of Gabers, but those that are fold in Angola are much better. In this River there is no speciall thing found, which is of any value, but some Blew, Greene, and Blacke stones, wherewith they grind colours, and for their fairenesse are desired of other Negroes, specially in the golden Coast of Gunea, where they are much esteemed of by them. There both the men and women are starke naked, vistill they be fold for flaues, fo that they are not ashamed to shew themselves one to the other, as they themselves one to the other other. feliues affirme, and by reason proue, saying, that a man more coueteth and delireth a thing that he feeth not , or may not have, then that he feeth or may borrow or have, and for that cause they 40 hide not their privie members. There the Portugals Traffique much with Barkes to buy flaves. and the Inhabitants are better friends with them, then with any other Nation; because they come much there, and for that no other Nations come to buy flaves there, but the Portugals onely. And there are some Portugals dwelling there, which buy much wares and Merchandizes. fuch as there to bee had. From Rio de Ardra, to Rio de Lago, is ten miles, and in that River there is nothing else to buy, and therefore it is not much vied, so that Rio de Ardra, is more vied then Rio de Volta, and Rio de Lago; from Rio de Lago to Rio de Benni, is about twenty miles, , fo that Benni is esteemed to be part of the golden Coast, that is about one hundred miles from Mourre, fo that in two dayes with helpe of the ftreame, a man may

whence they came. The Towne feemeth to be very great, when you enter into it, you goe into a great broad The Citical ftreet, not paued, which feemeth to be feuen or eight times broader then the Warmoes ftreet Bennis in Amsterdam; which goeth right out, and neuer crooketh, and where I was lodged with Mattheus Cornelison, it was at least a quarter of an houres going from the gate, and yet I could not see to the end of the ftreet, but I faw a great high tree, as farre as Lould differne, and I was told the ftreet was as much longer. There I fpake with a Neiberlander, who told me that he had beene as farre as that tree, but faw no end of the freet; but perceived that the houses thereabouts bee much leffe, and some houses that were falling downe : so that it was to be thought that the end thereof was there abouts, that tree was a good halfe mile from the house where I was lodged,

get thither, where as men are wont to be fixe weekes: before they could turne backe againe from

fo that it is thought that that ftreet is a mile long befides the Suburbs. At the gate where I en-60 tred on horfe-backe, I faw a very high Bulwarke, very thicke of earth, with a very deepe Thefe are broad ditch, but it was drie, and full of high trees; I spake with one that had gone along by the Date miles. ditch, a good way, but faw no other then that I faw, and knew not well whither it went round about the Towne or not, that Gate is a reasonable good Gate, made of wood after their manner, which is to be flut, and there alwayes there is watch holden. Without this Gate, there is a Lilli 2

The Gentlemen goe with great Maieftie to the Court, having divers kinds of Mulicke with Their father The Gentlemen got what great them, and are waited on by divers other Negrees, one Launing a Drum whereon he playes, others ons. with other Inflrements; ypon the Horie there is a little woodden Stoole fet, and on the Horie necke they hang a Cow-bell, which rings when the Horfe goes; there goes two Negroes by him, on either fide one, on whom he leaneth. Those Negroes that attend on him, come enery morning to the Gendemans doore, and flay there till be comes out, to wait on him. Their Horfes are very little, not much greater then Calces in our Countrie, which is the caufe that our Hories are to much efteemed of in that Coaft. The King hath many Souldiers which are fulor ynto him, and they have a Generall to command over them, as if he were their Captaine: To This Captaine hath fome Sculdiers under him, and goes alwaies in the middle of them, and they goe round about him, finging and leaping, and making great noise, and ioy. Those Capathey goe round about him, finging and leaping, and making great noise, and ioy. taines are very proud of their Office, and are very flately, and goe exceeding proudly in the streets. Their Swords are broad, which hang about their necke in a leather Girdle which reacheth under their armes: they also vie Shields and Assagaies, as they in the Golden

They cut their Haire diversly, each after the best manner that they can. Their apparell also Apparell is the like, and vie strange customes, not one like vnto another, all finely made of Cotton, ouer the which they commonly weare Holland Cloth. The young Maides and Boyes goe starke naked, untill they marrie, or that the King giueth them licence to put on some Apparell; then 20 they make great ioy, because of the friendship the King therein sheweth vnto them, and then they make their bodies very cleane, and strike it ouer with white Earth, and are very stately, fitting in great glorie and magnificence. Their friends come vnto them, to congratulate them, as if thee were a Bride. They are circumcifed, both Boyes and Girles. They cut three great ftreakes in their bodies on either fide, each streake being three fingers broad, which they doe from their shoulders downe to their wastes, which they thinke to be a great good deed tending to their faluation. They are very confcionable, and will doe no wrong one to the other, neither will take any thing from firangers, for if they doe, they should afterward be put to death, for they lightly judge a man to die for doing any wrong to a stranger, wherein they vie strange Wrong to a Inflice : they bind the Offenders armes behind at his backe, and blind his eyes, then one of the Stranger.

30 Judges comes and lifts him vp with his armes, in fuch manner, that his head lieth almost vpon the ground, then comes the Executioner and cuts off his head; which done, his bodie is quartered, and the quarters cast into the fields to bee denoured by certaine Birds, which Birds they Birds superfittered, and the quarters care into the here's country feare much, and no man dares doe them any hurt, nor chafe them, for there are men purpolely though refpeappointed to give them meat and drinke, which they carrie with great magnificence, but no man may fee it carried, nor bee present, but those that are appointed to doe it; for every man runnes out of the way when they fee those men come to carrie the Birds meate, and they have a place where the Birds come purpofely for it. They respect strangers very much, for when any man meeteth them, they will shun the way for him and step aside, and dare not bee so bold to goe by, vnlesse they be expressely bidden by the partie, and prayed to goe forward, and although 40 they were never fo fore laden, yet they durft not doe it; for if they did, they should be punished for it: They are also very couetous of honour, and willingly defire to be praifed and rewarded

for any friendship they doe. Voon the Hand of Corifco, or about Rio de Angra, in the mouth whereof the Hand of Corifco Rio de Angra lieth. The Iland of Corifco is a bad place to dwell in, for no man dwelleth in it, for there is no Corifco thing to be had in it but fresh Water and Wood, so that the ships that come from the Golden Coaft, and fall vpon it , prouided themselues there, of Water and Wood. Within the River there lieth three other imall Ilands, which also are worth nothing, because they yeeld no profit, and there is nothing abounding in them but Wood. Those Ilands at this day are called (for before they had no names) the Ile De Moucheron, because one Balthasar de Moucheron had by his Moucheron. Factors found them, wherein he caufed a Fort to be made, in the yeere 1600, thinking to dwell

there, and to bring great Traff que from other places thither. But they of Rio de Gabom, vnderstanding that there were Strangers inhabiting in them, fought all the meanes they could to murther them, and to take both the Fort and their Goods from them, which they did, before they had dwelt foure moneths there, (under a Captaine called Edward Hessus) and tooke the Sconcefrom them by force, murthering all the men that were in it, and called it the Iland of Corifee, which name it had of the Portugals, because voon that lland there are many Tempests of thunder and lightning, and great flore of Raine, and therefore it is not good to inhabite in, and there will nothing grow therein but Cucumbers. It is well prouided of fresh Water, excellent faire red Beanes, and Braill wood, so exceeding faire and gliftering, when it is thauen, 60 as any Glasse can be, which is so hard, that without great paine and labour it cannot be cut downe. The Iland is almost a great mile in compasse, but it is a bad anchoring place, when the

From Rio de Angra, to Rio de Gabom, is fifteene miles. The Inhabitants of Rio de Gabom, are not friends with them of Rio de Angra, for they oftentimes make warre one against the other, and LIIII 2

967

966

great Suburbe: when you are in the great Street aforefaid, you fee many great Streets on the fides thereof, which also goe right forth, but you cannot see to the end of them, by reason of their great length, a man might write more of the fituation of this Towne, if he might fee it. as you may the Townes in Holland, which is not permitted there, by one that alwaies goes with you, fome men fay, that he goeth with you, because you should have no harme done vnto you. but yet you must goe no farther then he will let you.

The Houses in this Towne stand in good order, one close and even with the other, as the House fes in Holland frand, fuch Houses as Men of qualitie (which are Gentlemen) or others dwell in haue two or three steps to goe vp, and before, there is, as it were, a Gallerie, where a man may fit drie: which Gallerie euery morning is made cleane by their Slaues, and in it there is a Mat to fored for men to fit on, their Roomes within are foure-fquare, ouer them having a Roofe that is not close in the middle, at the which place, the raine, wind, and light commeth in , and therein they lie and eate their meate; but they have other places befides, as Kitchins and other roomes. The common Houles are not fuch, for they have but one Wall before, wherein there is a woodden Doore, they know not how to make Windowes, but such light and aire as they have, comes in at the roofe of the House.

The Kines Court is very great, within it having many great foure-foure Plaines, which round about them have Galleries, wherein there is alwaies watch kept : I was so farre within that Court, that I passed ouer foure such great Plaines, and wheresoever I looked, still I faw Gates vpon Gates, to goe into other places , and in that fort I went as farre as ever any Netberlander 20 was, which was to the Stable where his best Horses stood, alwaies passing a great long way: it feemeth that the King hath many Souldiers , he also hath many Gentlemen , who when they come to the Court ride vpon Horfes , and fit vpon their Horfes as the women in our Countrie doe, on each fide haning one man , on whom they hold fast ; and the greater their estate is , the more men they have going after them. Some of their men have great Shields, wherewith they keepe the Gentleman from the Sunne ; they goe next to him, except those on whom hee leameth, the rest come after him, playing some on Drums, others vpon Horses and Fluits, some have a hollow Iron whereon they strike. The Horse also is led by a man, and so they ride playing to the Court. Such as are very great Gentlemen have another kind of Muficke, when they ride to the Court, which is like the small Nets wherewith men in our Countries goe to the 30 Fish-market, which Net is filled full of a certaine kind of thing, which they strike vpon with their hands, and make it rattle, in like fort as if their Nets were filled full of great Nuts, and fo a man should firike voon it : those great Gentlemen have many Servants , that goe after them firiking vpon fuch Nets. The King hath very many Slaues, both men and women whereof there are many women Slaues feene, carrying of Water, Injamus, and Palme-wine, which they fay is for the Kings wives. There are also many men Slaves seene in the Towne, that carne Water, Injamus, and Palme-wine, which they fay is for the King; and many carrie Graffe, which is for their Horses; and all this is carried to the Court. The King oftentimes sendethout Presents of Spices, which are carried orderly through the streets, and as the other things aforefaid are carried, to they that carrie them goe one after the other, and by them, there goeth one 40 or two with white Rods, so that every man must step aside and give them place, although hee were a Gentleman. The King hath many Wines, and enery yeere goes twice out of his Court, and visiteth the

ten or twelue Wives at the leaft, whereby in that place you find more Women then Men, They also have severall places in the Towne, where they keepe their Markets; in one place they have their great Market day, called Die de Ferre; and in another place, they hold their 50 little Market, called Ferre: to those places they bring all things to fell, as quicke Dogs, whereof they eate many, roafted Apes, and Monkies, Rats, Parots, Hens, Iniamus, Manigette in bonches, dried Agediffen, Palme-oyle, great Beanes, divers forts of Kankrens, with many other kinds of Fruits, and Beafts, all to eate. They also bring much Wood to burne, Cups to eate and drinke in, and other forts of wooden Dilhes and Cups for the faine purpole, great store of Cotton, whereof they make Clothes to weare upon their bodies. Their Apparell is of the same fathion as theirs of the Golden Coast is, but it is fairer and finelier made; but to shew you the manner thereof it would be over-long. They also bring great store of Iron-worke to fell there, and Instruments to fish withall, others to plow and to till the land withall; and many Weapons, as Assagaies, and Kniues also for the Warre. This Market and Traffique is there very orderly 60 holden, and every one that commeth with fuch Wares or Merchandises to the Market, knowes his place where to ftand, to fell his Wares in the fame, they also fell their Wines as they doe in the Golden Coaft.

Towne, at which time he fleweth all his Power and Magnificence, and all the Brauerie he can.

then he is convoyed and accompanied by all his Wives, which are above fixe hundred in num-

ber but they are not all his wedded Wives. The Gentlemen also have many Wives . as some

have eightie, fome ninetie and more, and there is not the meanest Man among them but hath

The Gentlemen goe with great Maieftse to the Court, having divers kinds of Maficke with Their faffit them, and are waited on by divers other Negrees, one having a Drum whereon he playes, other ons, with other Inflrements; vpon the Horfe there is a little woodden Stoole fet, and on the Horfe necke they hang a Cow-bell, which rings when the Horie goes; there goes two Negroes by him, on either fide one, on whom he leareth. Those Negroes that attend on him, come enery morning to the Genelemans doore, and flay there till he comes cut, to wait on him. Their Horfes are very little, not much greater then Calces in our Countrie, which is the caufe that our Hories are so much esteemed of in that Coast. The King hath many Souldiers which are sub-Cynto him, and they have a Generall to command over them, as it he were their Captaine ; To This Captaine hath some Seuldiers under him, and goes alwaies in the middle of them, and they goe round about him, finging and leaping, and making great noise, and ioy. Those Capathey great noise, and ioy.

taines are very proud of their Office, and are very flately, and goe exceeding proudly in the streets. Their Swords are broad, which hang about their necke in a leather Girdle which reacheth vnder their armes: they also vie Shields and Assagaies, as they in the Golden

They cut their Haire diverily, each after the best manner that they can. Their apparell also Apperell. is the like, and vie strange customes, not one like vnto another, all finely made of Cotton, ouer the which they commonly weare Holland Cloth. The young Maides and Boyes goe starke nathe which they commonly whate common choice is no young meaners and moyes got rather has de, wrill they marrie, or that the King gineth them licence to put on flower Apparell; then 20 they make greating, because of the friending the King thereinsheweth wnto them, and then they make their bodies very cleane, and strike it ouer with white Earth, and are very stately. fitting in great glorie and magnificence. Their friends come vnto them, to congratulate them, as if thee were a Bride. They are circumcifed, both Boyes and Girles. They cut three great ftreakes in their bodies on either fide, each streake being three fingers broad, which they doe from their shoulders downe to their wastes, which they thinke to be a great good deed tending to their faluation. They are very conscionable, and will doe no wrong one to the other, neither will take any thing from frangers, for if they doe, they should afterward be put to death , for they lightly judge a man to die for doing any wrong to a stranger, wherein they vie strange luttice : they bind the Offenders armes behind at his backe, and blind his eyes, then one of the Stranger. 30 Indges comes and lefts him vp with his armes, in such manner, that his head lieth almost vpon

the ground, then comes the Executioner and cuts off his head; which done, his bodie is quartered, and the quarters cast into the fields to bee denoured by certaine Birds, which Birds they Birds superflifeare much , and no man dares doe them any hurt , nor chafe them , for there are men purpolely tiously respeappointed to give them meat and drinke, which they carrie with great magnificence, but no man may fee it carried, nor bee present, but those that are appointed to doe it; for every man runnes out of the way when they fee those men come to carrie the Birds meate, and they haue a place where the Birds come purposely for it. They respect strangers very much, for when any man meeteth them, they will shun the way for him and step aside, and dare not bee so bold to goe by, vnleffe they be expreffely bidden by the partie, and prayed to goe forward, and although 40 they were never fo fore laden, yet they durft not doe it; for if they did, they should be punished

for it : They are also very couetous of honour, and willingly defire to be praifed and rewarded for any friendship they doe.

Von the Hand of Corifeo, or about Rio de Angra, in the mouth whereof the Hand of Corifeo Rio de Angra lieth. The Hand of Corifeo is a bad place to dwell in, for no man dwelleth in it, for there is no- Corifeo, thing to be had in it but fresh Water and Wood, so that the ships that come from the Golden Coalt, and fall upon it, prouided themselves there, of Water and Wood. Within the River there lieth three other small Ilands, which also are worth nothing, because they yeeld no profit, and there is nothing abounding in them but Wood. Those Hands at this day are called (for before they had no names) the Ile De Moncheron, because one Balthasar de Moncheron had by his Mencheron. 50 Factors found them, wherein he caufed a Fort to be made, in the yeere 1600, thinking to dwell

there, and to bring great Traff que from other places thither. But they of Rio de Gabom, vnderstanding that there were Strangers inhabiting in them, fought all the meanes they could to murther them, and to take both the Fort and their Goods from them, which they did, before they had dwelt foure moneths there, (vnder a Captaine called Edward Hessus) and tooke the Sconcefrom them by force, murthering all the men that were in it, and called it the Hand of Corifco, which name it had of the Portugals, because vpon that Iland there are many Tempests of thunder and lightning, and great flore of Raine, and therefore it is not good to inhabite in, and there will nothing grow therein but Cucumbers. It is well prouided of fresh Water, excellent faire red Beanes, and Bratill wood, fo exceeding faire and gliftering, when it is thauen, 60 as any Glaffe can be, which is so hard, that without great paine and labour it cannot be cut downe. The Iland is almost a great mile in compasse, but it is a bad anchoring place, when the

From Rio de Angra, to Rio de Gabom, is fifteene miles. The Inhabitants of Rio de Gabom, are not friends with them of Rio de Angra, for they oftentimes make warre one against the other, and Lilli 3

then againe make peace, fo that the friendship betweene them is very small, they have a Kine among them, but they are not fo mightie as those of Rio de Gabom, but better people to deal withall then those of Gabon, for fince the time that they of Gabon, tooke the Skonce and the goods of Monoberom, and kild the men, they of Rio de Angra would have nothing to doe with them, but were grieued that it was done, but because they feared them of Rio de Gabem, and of Pongo: they durit not withfland them : with those Negroes there is much Traff que to be had. and there are many Teeth to buy, but not to many as in Rio de Gabons, but when you Traffique there you must not stay long with your shallop or boate there, for if you deale not with them for their Teeth in two or three dayes, you shall not deale with them at all, for by reason the few Pinnaffes or shallops come thither to Traffique, therefore the Negros bring all their Teeth 19 thither at the firft, to barter for other Wares. Their fpeech is not like theirs of Gabon, bur for opinion and religion they are almost one, and agree therein.

R. Gabern.

Pongo.

The River of Gabom, lyeth about fifteene miles Southward from Rio de Angra, and eight miles North-ward from Cape De Lopo Gonfalues, and is right under the Equinoctial Line, a. bout fifteene miles from Saint Thomas, and is a great Land well and eatily to bee knowne. At the mouth of the River there lyeth a Sand three or foure fathome deepe, whereon it beateth mightily, with the streame which runneth out of the River into the Sea. This River in the mouth thereof is at least foure miles broad, but when you are about the Hand called Pongo, it is not about two miles broad, on both fides the River there standeth many trees. The Iland lyeth neere to the North, then the South, and a little further there is an Iland wherein there is good 20 prouision to be had, as of Bannanas, Iniamus, and Oranges; about two miles within the River you have eight fathome deepe, good anchor ground. This Coast reacheth North and South, the depth a good way from the Land about a mile or a mile and an halfe; is, twelve and thirteens fathome, and halfe a mile from the Land, it is foure, five, fixe, and feuen fathome, you may goe neere about it, because all along tha: Coast it is good anchor ground, by night you have the wand off from the Land, and by day from the Sea. This River hath three mightie Kings in it, which raigne therein, as one King on the North point, called (atombe, and one vpon the South point, called Gabom, and one in the lland, called Pongo, which hath a monitrous high hill; hee of Pongo is strongest of men, and oftentimes makes warre vpon him of Gabons, he of Caiombo. is a great iriend to him of Pougo, and the Inhabitants of the South point of the River, are great to friends with those of Cape De Lope Gonfalues.

The twelfth of December, we got to Cape Lopo Gonfalues, where we found three ships lying at anchor, two of Zeland, and one of Schiedam. Touching their Religion , they neither know God nor his Commandements, fome of them pray to the Sunne, others to the Moone, others to certainetrees or to the Earth, because they receive food from thence, so that they esteeme it a great fault to fort voon the Ear h, they goe little abroad in the ftreets, but when they goe abroad, they carrie a great broad Knife in their hands : both the men and the women have their bodies pinkt in divers forts, strange to behold, wherein they put certaine Greafe, mixt with colour, they will not drinke before they first put some of it out of the Pot or Kan, and when they eate they vie not to drinke, but when they have dined, then they drinke a great draught of water, or of Palme-wine, or elfe of Malaffe, which is mixed or made of Honey water. In the 40 morning as soone as it is day, they goe to falute their Commander, or Chanepon fo, and to bid him good morrow, and when they come to him they fall downe vpon their knees, and clapping both their hands together, fay, Fino, Fino, Whereby they wish peace, quietneffe, and all good

They are much addicted to Theeuerie, and to steale some-thing, specially from Strangers,

whereof they make no conscience, but thinke they doe well, but they will not steale one from another. The womenalfo are much addicted to Leacherie and Vncleanneffe; specially, with ftrange Nations, whereby they thinke they get great credit, and which is more, the men offer their wives vnto ftrangers that come thither, and the King himfelfe prefenteth and honoureth Strangers with some of his Wines, whereof he hath a great number. They have a filthy custome among them, which is, that the King when any of his Daughters waxe great, hee taketh and keepeth them for his Wines, and the vie of their bodies. The like is done by the Queenes his Incestuous cu- Wines, when their Sonnes beginne to be great, for they lie with them, as well as the King doth with his Daughters. Their apparell is fairer then theirs on the Golden Coast, for they trimme their bodies more; about their middles to hide their Privities. They weare a Mat made of barkes of trees, which is coloured red, with a kind of red wood wherewith they dye it, upon those Mats, they hang some Apes and Monkeyes skinnes, or of other wild beatts, with a Bell in the middle, such as Cowes and Sheepe have about their neckes. They paint their bodies red, with a colour made of red wood, which is verie good. but much lighter then Brafil-wood, oftentimes 60 they make one of their eyes white, the other red or yellow, with a streake or two in their faces, some weare round Beades about their neckes made of barkes, some imall, some great, not much valike the Boxes, which men in Hamborough hang vp to put money in for the poore, but they will not fuffer you to looke what is in them. The men and women also for the most part

gor bare-headed, with their haire thoared and pleated divertly, some of them weare Cans made of the barkes of Cocos or Indian Nut-trees, others weare bunches of feathers made faff to their haire with little Irons, fome of them have holes in their vpper lips , and through their Nofes. wherein they put pieces of Elxen bones, as thicke as a Doller with a stalke, which shutter h the hole, which being thrust in comes out at the Nose, and over their mouthes, which semeth their turnes well and to good purpole, when they are ficke and fall into a fwound, and that men cannot open their hands by force, then they take that bone and crush the sap of some greene herbe through it, wher with they come to themselves again, so that they serve them for two purposes. Some weare Rings in their lips and in the middle part of their Nofes, some thrust small Hornes To or Teeth through them, and weare them fo , which they thinke to bee a great ornament viito them, others boare a hole in their neather lips, and play with their Tongues in the hole; many of their men and women weare Rings in their eares, whereof fome weigh at least a pound weight, fome have flickes thrust through them, of five or fixe fingers long, most of them, specially the men weare a Girdle about their middles made of Buffols skin, with the haire still on it, which meeterh not together before by almost a hand breadth, with a piece thereof sticking out at each end, which is tyed together with a small cord of Threed, youn their belies they carrie a broad Iron Knife, the sheath thereof also being of Iron : some of those Girdles are a hand broad . and fome two or three-handfuls broad. Besides those, they vie another fort of Kniues, with two or three points, which are very fearefull to behold, wherewith they call at a man, and where foe-20 uer they hit they take hold.

They are better armed for weapons then they of Mine, or the Golden Coast, their Armes Armes are Pikes, or Affagaies Bowes, and Arrowes, long Targets made of barkes of Trees. Their Drummes are narrow below and broad aboue, their Pikes are very cunningly made, for they are very curious Workmen in Iron; the women carrie their Husbands Armes for him, and when they will vie them, their Wives give them : they are cruell and fierce against their Enemies and fight one against the other by Land and by Water in Canoes, and when they take any of their Enemies (they were wont in times past to eate them, but now they doe it not) they put them

The women also set themselves out verie faire (as they thinke) and weare many red Copper 20 and Tinne Rings upon their armes and legges, fome one, others two; which many times weigh three or foure pound weight, which are so fast and close about their armes, that men can hardly imagine how they get them on; those Rings also are wome by some men, but more by women. The women weare Aprons made of Rushes, which I have seene them make. Touching their Dyck clothes and fetting forth of their bodies, it is beaffly and vnseemely. They have no leffe vnfeemelinesse in their eating and house-keeping, for they live like beasts, and sleepe vpon Mats hid voon the ground, which they make very cunningly. The chiefe meate they eate is Injamus, Batates, and Bannanas. The Bannanas they vie in stead of bread, when it is well dryed, they alfo eate fish and fiesh, with Roots and Sugar-canes: they lay all their meate in one dish, and fit round about it, and eate like a company of beafts. Their King called, Mani, eateth his meate out of a Tinne Platter, but the rest in woodden Platters, fitting vpon a Mat spread vpon the ground.

The greatest labour the women doe, is to fetch water, to gather fruit, and to dresse their The King. meate : their Houses are finely made of Reeds, and couered ouer with Bannanas leaues, and hereter and cle ner then the Houses in the Golden Coast. The King hath a faire House greater then any in all the Towne, he is called Golipatta, hee is brauely fet out with many Beads made of beanes and shels, which are dyed red, and hanged about his necke, and vpon his armes and legs. they strike their faces with a kind of white colour, they are very much subject to their Kings. and doe him great honour when they are in his prefence : before his House there lyeth an Iron Peece, with certaine Bases which he bought in former time of the Frenchmen. They are verie fubtill to learne how to vse all kind of Armes; specially, our small Gunnes. Their Winter is 50 from April to August, at which time it is exceeding hot, and few cleere daies, and then it raineth mightily with great drops, which fall to hot vpon the flones that they presently dry vp, by which meanes also the waters are thicke and flimie, in the Rivers and also vpon the shoare. There is good fifthing, Oyiters grow on the branches of the Trees, which hang downe into the Oyfters on water. They draw their speech long, so that it is better to learne then theirs in the Golden Trees-Coast. The Cape is low Land, and is well to be knowne, for there is no Land thereabouts. that reacheth fo farre Westerly into the Sea as that doth, it lyeth about a degree Southward from the Equinociall Line. When you are at the Cape, there is a River which lyeth South-east from it. about three miles, whereinto the shallops commonly faile, to barter for some Teeth, which are so there to bee had in the Village, which lyeth about foure miles vpwards within the River : In this River: there are many Sea-horfes, and Crocodiles, fo that it is thought that hee Riner of Nilus toyneth thereunto, and hath an iffue there into the Sea : In this Country there are many cruell and strange beatts, as Elephants, Buffols, Dragons, Snakes, Apes, Monkeyes, which

are very fearefull to behold, and very hurtfull.

CHAP. 2. S. 2.

970

Cruelty of Gahom

Those people are better to be dealt withall, then they of Gabon, and we find not, that they beare any fpight or malice to the Netherlanders, (as they of Gabom have done) in Anno 160r. to a ship called the Palme-tree, and to another, called the Moorein of Delft, as also to a Spanish Barke, who in hort time, one after the other they fell vpon, and taking them, kild all the men paris of Gaines and eate them, with divers other fuch trickes more by them done: but for that it is good for the parts of an and eate them, with duers other fuch trickes more by them done; but for that it is good for the and epiceilly flips in that place to lie and reirefit themfeldues, to fetch water, and to Calke them; therefore of Caps Sirve. or cape and the fire lie most at this place, to make themselves ready, and fit to returne backetagaine. A. Keeling, and bout this Cape there lie many Sands, whereon a ship might soone smite, but behind the bankee Finches lour- there is no feare, the Lead will give a man meanes to find his way well enough.

CHAP. III.

The strange adventures of Andrew Battell of Leigh in Essex, fent by the Portugals prisoner to Angola, who lived there, and in the adiogning Regions , neere eighteene yeeres.

ANDREW BATTELE, his Voyage to the River of Plate, who being taken on the Coast of Brafill, was fent to Angola.

N the yeere 1589, Abraham Cocke of Lime-bonfe, began his Voyage towardshe Riture of Plate, with two Pinnaftes of fittie Tuns a perce: The one was called, the Also-morning; the bother, the Dalphine. We failed from the Riture of Thomses, the twentieth of Aprill; and the fixe and twentieth of the fame moneth, we put into Plinnarish, where we tooke in fome prouision for the Voyage. to Plimmoth, where we tooke in some prouision for the Voyage. The seventh of May we put to Sea, and with foule weather were beaten backe againe into

Santa Cruz

Pinnmoth, where we remained certaine dayes, and then proceeded on our Voyage: and running along the Coast of Spaine, and Barbarie, we put into the Roade of Santia Cruz, and there fet our Light-horse-man together, which we carried in two pieces; Abraham Cocke made great ac-Calmes on the count hereof, thinking that this Boat should have made his Voyage. This done, we put to Sea, and running along the Coast of Gunea, wee were becalmed, because wee wer so neere the Coast.

Heere our men fell ficke of the Scuruie, in fuch fort, that there were very few found. And

mes, where we had some refreshing, wherewith our men recoursed. The people of the Cape de 40

las Palmas made much of vs, faying, that they would trade with vs : but it was but to betray vs.

For they are very trecherous, and were like to have taken our boat, and hurt some of our men.

From this Cape we lay South-welt off , but the Current and the Calmes deceived vs ; fo that

we were driven downe to the Ile of Saint Thome, thinking that we had beene farther off to the

Sea then we were. And being in diffresse for wood and water, we went in on the South end betweene San Tome, and the llands Das Rolas: where we rode very smooth, and with our

Here we had great flore of Plantans and Oranges. We found a Village of Negroes, which are fen: from San Tome, for the Portugals of San Tome do vie, when their flaues be ficke or weake, to

refreshed our selues with the fruit of this Iland, we burned the Village. And running on the East fide of San Tome, we came before the Towne ; but we dust not come neere : for the Caille fhot

fend them thither to get their strength againe. For the Hands are very fruitful; and though there 50 be no fresh water, yet they maintaine themselves with the wine of the Palme trees. Hauing

Coaft of Gui-The Scorbute. being within three or foure Degrees of the Equinoctiall line, we fell with the Cape De las Pal-Casedelas Palmes.

Trecherous people.

Ilbat dat Ro'M. Light-horse-man went on shoare, thinking to have watered : but wee found none in the Iland.

They burne a Village. The Towne of

San Tome. Cape de leje Gonfalucs.

at vs, which hath very good Ordnanee in it. Then we lay East and by South toward the Maine, and in four and twentie hours, we had fight of the Cape De lopo Gonfalues : and being within three Leagues of the faid Cape, we cast about and stood againe toward the Hand of San Tome, and turned up on the West side of the Iland; and comming to a little River, which runneth out of the Mountaines, we went on thore with our Light-horse-man, with fixe or seuen Buts to fill with water. But the Gouernour had imbosked one hundred men of the Hand; and when we were on shore, they came upon vs, and 60 killed one of our men, and hurt another : wherefore we retired to our Boat, and gate aboord.

Some burt.

They depart fro n San

Then Abraham Cocke determined to fetch the Coast of Brafil, and lay West South-west into the Sea : and being some fiftie Leagues off, we fell into a Scull of Dolphins, which did greatly relieue vs : for they did follow our thip all the way, till we fell with the land : which was fome thirtie daves. And running along the Coast of Brafil, till we came to Illha Grande, which standeth in the Degrees Southward of the line; we put in betwixt the lland and the Maine, and fine Degrees halad our thins on thours, and walhed them, and refreshed our felues, and tooke in fresh water, to the South In this Hand are no Inhabitants, but it is very fruitfull. And being heere some twelve dayes, of the line, on there came in a little Pinnaffe, which was bound to the River of Plate, which came in to water, the Co and to get fome refreshment: and presently we went abourd, and tooke the Porengall Merchant Frash. out of the Pinnale, which told . Abraham Cocke, that within two moneths there fhould two Pinnaffer come from the River of Place, from the Towne of Buenes Aieres.

From this Towne there come every yeare foure or fine Caravels to Babia in Brafil, and to An- Babia 10 gold in Africa : which bring great flore of Treasure, which is transported out land out of Peru. into the River of Plate. Then Abraham Cocke defirous to make his Voyage, tooke fome of the Dalphini men into his flap, and fent the Dalphin home againe, which had not it's yet made any The Dalphin Voyage. This Portugal Merchant carried vs to a place in this Hand, where there was a banished man, which had planted great store of Plantans, and told vs , that we might with this fruit The benefit of

goe to the River of Plate : for our bread and victuals were almost all fpent.

With this hard allowance we departed from this Hand, and were fixe and thirty dayes before man, we came to the Ile of Labos Marinos, which is in the mouth of the River of Plate. This Iland Ile de Labor is halfe a mile long, and lath no fresh water; but doth abound with Seales and Sea-morfles : in Marines, fuch fort, that our Light-horfe-man could not get on thouse for them, without we did beat 20 them with our Oares and the lland is coursed with them. Vpon these Seales we lived some Motifics and thirty dayes, lying up and downe in the Riner, and were in great diffresse of victuals. Then we Seekes. determined to run vp to Buenos Aires, and with our Light-horfe-man to take one of the Pinnaf- The Towne of fes that rid at the Towne. And being so high vp the River as the Towne, wee had a mightie frome at South-west, which drauevs backe agains, and we were faine to ride under Isla Verde, Ele verde, that is, the Greene Hand, which is in the mouth of the River on the North fide.

Here we were all discomfoted for lacke of victuals, and gaue over the Voyage, & came to the They returne Northward again, to the He of Sant Schaftian, lying fuft under the Tropicke of Capricorne. There Nerth-ward. we went on shoare to eatch fish, & some went vp into the woods to gather fruit : for we weare Schaffen. all in a manner famished. There was at that time a Canor fraught with Indians, that came from The Towne of 30 the Towns of Spirits Sautio. These Indians landed on the West fide of the Hand, and came Spirits Sautia through the woods, and tooke fine of vs, and carried vs to the River of laneiro. After this mif. The River of

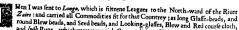
chance, our Captaine Abraham Cocke went to Son, and was never heard of more.

When wee that were taken had remained four moneths in the River of Landing, I and one and force Torner were lent to Angele in Africa to the Citie of Saint Pant, which flandeth in nine De-therstaken grees to the Southward of the Equinoctiall line. Heere I was prefently taken out of the thip, andres Battle and put into prilon, and feat up the River Quenfator Towns of Garrison, which is one hundred and thirtie miles vp the River. And being there two moneths, the Pilot of the Governors to Angela in Pinnafie died : then I was commanded to carrie her downe to the Citie, where I prefently fell The Citie of ficke, and lay eight moneths in a poore effate: for they hated me because I was an English-man, Paul. 40 But being recourred of my fickeneffe, Don John Hurtado do Mendoça, who then was Gouernor, 2nasfa. commanded me to goe to the River of Compo, called Zaire, in a Pinnaffe, is to trade for Elephant's His Pilotage teeth, Wheate, and Oyle of the Palme-tree. The River Zaire is fiftie Leagues from the Citie and fickacite. to the Northward, and is the greatest River in all that Coast. In the mouth of this River is an lephants ceeth Bland, called the Ile De Calabes, which had at that time a Towne in it. Heere we laded our and Oyle of Pinnaffe with Elephants teeth, Wheate, and Oyle of the Palme, and fo returned to the Citie the Palmetree

Buenes Aietes

II.

With trading on the Coaft, offer to escape, imprisonment, exile; escape, and new imprisonment: bis sending to Elambo, and Babia Das Vaccas; Many frange occurrents.



halfe vpon the Coast.

round Blew beads, and Seed beads, and Looking, glaffes, Blew and Red courfe cloth, and Irollo Rugs, which were very rich Commodities. Here wee fold our clothat a Certificotion of Streat rate, for we had for one yard of cloth, three Elephanes teeth, that weighed one hundred clothand inflormed the course when it is not to be compared to the course when it is not to be compa and twenty pound : and we bought great store of Palme-cloth, and Elephants tayles. So in Rugs, rich little time, we laded our Pinnasse. For this Voyage I was very welcome to the Gouernour; Commodities, who promifed me my liberty, if I would ferue him. So I went in his Pinnasse two yeeres and a

A thip of Hallond on that C'maft. Impri onment. Ma Cangero Fort Sixe vec:es miferic.

The River

Then there came a thir of Holland to the Citie, the Merchant of which thip promited to carrie me away. And when they were readie to depart, I went fecretly aboord; but I was bewraved by Portugals, which failed in the ship, and was fetched on shoare by the Sergeants of the Citie, and put in Prilon, and lay with great bolts of Iron two moneths, thinking that the Governour would have put me to death : but at last, I was banished for ever, to the Fort of Mas. Cangane, to ferue in the Conquest of those Parts. Here I lived a most miserable life for the frace of lixe yeeres, without any hope to fee the Sea againe. In this Fort there were Egyptions and Morifcoes, that were banished as my felfe. To one of

thefe Egiptians I brake my muid, and told him, that it were better for vs to venture our lines for our libertie, then to lue in that milerable place. This Egyptian was as willing as my felfe, and told me, he would procure ten of his conforts to goe with vs. So we got three Egyptians, Hefletth from and feuen Paringals. That night, we got the best Canoe that we could find, and went downs the River Coanza; and being as farre downe as Mani Cabech, which is a little Lord in the Province of Elamba, we went on shoare with our twelve Muskets, Powder, and Shot. Heere we funke our Canoe, because they should not know where we went on shoare. We made a little fire in the Wood, and scorehed Gmie Wheat, which we brought from Maffangano to relieue vs.

Affoone as it was night, wee tooke our journey all that night, and the next day without any water at all. The second night, we were not able to goe, and were faine to digge and scrape vp rootes of Trees, and fucke them to maintaine life. The third day, wee met with an old Negre, which was trangiling to Mani Cabech, we bound his hands behind him , and made him leade Mani Cabech. Lake of Ca- vs the way to the Lake of Cafanfa. And transiling all the day in this extreme hot Countrie. we came to the Banfa, or Towne of Mani Cafanfa, which lieth within the Land twelne leagues The Towne of from the Citie of San Paulo. Here we were forced to aske water: but they would give vs none. man (classes, 5) Then we determined to make them flee their houses with our shot: but seeing that we were defrom the Citie sperately bent, they called their Lord Mani Casansa, who gave vs water and faire speeches, deof San Pouls. firing vs to stay all night, onely to betray vs : but we departed presently, and rested that night in the Lake of Cafanfa.

The River dangerous The River Manibangano.

The fourth day at night, we came to the River which is toward the North, and passed it with great danger. For there are fuch abundance of Grocodiles in this River, that no man dare come neere the River fide, where it is deepen. The fift day at night, wee came to the River Dande, and travailed fo farre to the Eastward, that we were right against the Sorras; or Mountaines of Manibangone, which is a Lord thas warreth against the King of Congo, whither wee intended to goe. Here we passed the River, and refted halfe the night. And being two leagues from the River, we met with Negroes, which asked vs, whither we transiled. Wee told them, that we were going to Congo. These Negroes faid, that we were in the wrong way, and that they were Massconges, and would carrie ve to Bambe, where the Duke of Bambe lay.

So wee went some three miles East up into the Land, till wee perceined that we were the wrong way : for we transiled by the Sunne, and would goe no farther that way : and turned backe againe to the Westward, they stood before vs with their Bowes, Arrowes and Darts, readie to floot at vs. But we determining to goe through them , discharged fixe Muskets together, and killed foure; which did amaze them, and made them to retire. But they followed vs foure or fine miles, and hurt two of our companie with their Arrowes. The next day, we came into the borders of Bamba, and travailed all that day. At night, we heard the furge of the Seat The feuenth day in the morning, we faw the Captain of the Citie come after vs with Horsmen. and great flore of Negrees. Hereupon our companie being difmayed, feuen of our faint-hearted Portugals hid themselves in the Thickes. I and the four Egyptians thought to have escaped: but they followed vs to fast, that we were faine to goe into a little Wood. Affoone as the Captaine had ouertaken vs, he discharged a volley of shot into the Wood, which made vs lose one

Thus being all alone, I bethought my felfe, that if the Negroes did take me in the Woods, they would kill me : wherefore, thinking to make a better end among the Portugals and Mul-Hisrefolution, latos, I came prefently out of the Wood with my Musket readie charged, making none account of my life. But the Captaine, thinking that we had beene all twelve together, called to me, and faid, Fellow Souldier, I have the Gouernours pardon, if you will yeeld your felues, you shall have no hurt. I having my Musket readie, answered the Captaine, that I was an Englishmen, and had ferued fixe yeeres at Maffangono, in great milerie; and came in companie with cleuen Portugals and Egyptians, and here am left all alone; and rather then I will be hanged, I will die amongst you. Then the Captaine came neere vnto me, and faid; Deliuer thy Musket to one of the Souldiers, and I protest, as I am a Gentleman, and a Souldier, to faue thy life, for thy refo- 60 He yeeldeth, lute mind. Whereupon I yeelded vp my Musket and my felfe.

They were ta Then the Captaine commanded all the Souldiers and Negroes to fearth the Woods, and to len prifoners, bring them out alive or dead; which was prefently done. Then they carried vs to the Citie of and int again San Paulo: where I, and the three Egyptians lay in Prifon three moneths, with Collars of Iron, to the Citie of San Paulo: where I, and the three Egyptians lay in Prifon three moneths, with Collars of Iron, At and great Bolts vpon our legs, and hardly escaped.

At that time the Gouernour fent foure hundred men, that were banished out of Portugall, vp Foure huninto the Countrey of Elambe. Then I was with Proclamation through the Citie binilhed for dred banished into the Countrey of Elambe. Then I was with Proclamation through the Chite binished for Portugals ener to the Warres, and marched with them to Sowon fo, which is a Lord, that obeyeth the Duke employed in of Bambe: from thence to Samanibansa, and then to Namba Calamba, which is a great Lord, the Warres. who did resist vs : but we burned his Towne, and then he obeyed vs , and brought three thou- Sowons. fand warlike Negroes to vs. From thence to Sollancango a little Lord , that fought very despe- Namta Calamba fand warlike Negroes to vs. From thence to Souantange a title with your transfer to Souantange rately with vs, but was forced to obey: and then to Combrecaianga, where we remayned two Combritaianga, yeares. From this place wee gaue many affaults, and brought many Lords to subjection. Wee were fifteene thouland strong, and marched to the Outeiro, or Mountaine of Ingombe. But first Ing. sia.

CHAP.3.S.2. A fruit good for the Cholicke. Men effeminate.

To we burned all Ingafia, which was his Countrey, and then we came to the chiefe Towne of In. Jagonbe. gombe, which is halfe a dayes iourney to goe vp.

This Lord came vpon vs with more then twentie thousand Bowes, and spoyled many of our men. But with our shot we made a great spoyle among them, whereupon he retyred vp into the Mountaine, and fent one of his Captaines to our Generall; fignifying, that the next day hee would obey him. Thenext day he entred our Campe in great pompe with Drums, Petes, and Pongoes, or Waytes, and was royally received : and he gave great Prefents, and greatly inriched the Generall, and them which marched vp. Vpon the toppe of the Mountaine is a great Plaine, where he hath his chiefe Towne; verie fresh, full of Palme-trees, Sugar-canes, Potatos. and other roots, and great store of Oranges and Limons. Here is a Tree that is called Enverian. that beareth a fruit as big as a Pome-water, and hath a stone in it, present remedie for the Wind Afruit good 20 Cholicke, which was strange to the Portugals. Here is a River of fresh water, that springeth for the Collick out of the Mountaine, and runneth all along the Towne. Wee were here fue dayes, and then

we marched up into the Countrey, and burned and spoyled for the space of fixe weekes; and then returned to Encombe againe with great store of flaues, sheepe and Goates, and great store of Margarite flones, which are currant money in that Land. Here we pitched our Campe a league from this plea fant Mountaine, which remayned twelve monethes : but I was shot in my right legge, and many Portugals and Mullatos, were carryed to the Citie to be cured.

Then the Gouernonr fent a Frigat to the South-ward with fixtie Souldiers, my felfe beeing Sending to Baone of the company, and all kind of Commodities. We turned up to the South-ward till wee his day Daccase. came into twelue degrees. Here we found a faire fandie Bay. The people of this place brought or Babia de vs Cowes and Sheepe, Wheate and Beanes; but we flayed not there, but came to Babia das Vac- Torre. cas, that is, the Bay of Cowes, which the Portugals call, Bahia de Torre, because it hath a rocke like a Towre. Here wee roade on the North-side of the Rocke in a sandie Bay; and bought like a Towne. Here were roate on the Avoidants of the North and a state of the greatflore of Cowes, and Sheepe bigger through must be this beepe, and very fine Copper. Also Store of webought a kind of sweet wood, called Caemgo, which the Portugale elemen much, and great Cowes, great flore of Wheate and Beanes. And having laded our Barke wee first her home: but fiftie of vs. Sheepe, and the composition of the flayed on floare, and made a little Fort with rafters of wood, because the people of this place Catting a sweet 40 are treacherous, and not to to bee trusted. So in seventeene dayes wee had fine hundred head of wood. Cattell : and within tenne dayes the Gouernour fent three shippes and so wee departed to the

In this Bay may any ship ride without danger, for it is a fmooth Coast. Here may any shippe A good Bay that commeth out of the East Indies refresh themselues. For the Portugal's Carracks now of late and fit refrecome along that Coast, to the Citie to water and refresh themselves. These people are called, thing from the Endallanbondos, and have no government among themselves: and therefore they are verie treche- East Indies. Endallabondo, and have no government among themicures and therefore tree are verient trecherous, and those that trade with these people must fland you heri owns guard. They are very
Carel boucht
fimple and of no courage, for thirtie or fortie men may goe boldly yo into the Country, and
for to be egilite fetch downe whole Heards of Cattell. We bought the Cattell for blue glaffe-beads of an inch beads of an long, which are called, Mopindes; and payd fitteene beads for one Cow.

This Province is called, Dombe, and it hath a ridge of high Serras, or Mountaines, that Dombe. firetch from the Serras, or Mountaines of Cambambe, wherein are Mines; and Iye along that Mines of fine Coast South and by West. Here is great store of fine Copper, if they would worke in their Copper. Mines: but they take no more, then they weare for a brauerie. The men of this place weare skinnes about their middles, and beads about their neckes. They carrie Darts of Iron, and Bow and Arrowes in their hands. They are beaftly in their living, for they have men in womens Men effemiapparell, whom they keepe among their wives.

Their women weare a Ring of Copper about their neckes, which weigheth fifteene pound The anyte of at the least, about their armes little Rings of Copper, that reach to their elbowes, about their their momen. middles a cloth of the Infandie Tree, which is neither fpunne nor wouen, on their legs Rings of 60 Copper, that reach to the calues of their legs.

d. III.

Discourrie of the Gagas, Their Warres, Man-eating; Oner-running Countries. His Trade with them, betraying, escape to them, and living with them. withmany strange Adventures. And also the Rites and manner of life observed by the lagges or Gagas, which no Christian could ever know well but

Be nguele.

the Great

Jagge. 1 thinke

gas by false spelling.

The lagger

Campe.

N our fecond Voyage turning vp along the Coast, we came to the Morro, or Cliffe of Benguele, which standeth in twelve degrees of Southerly latitude. Here we fawa righty Cape of men on the Southfide of the river Cona. And being defirous to know what theywere, we went on shore with our Boat; & presently there came a troop of fue hundred men to the water fide. We asked them, Who they were then they told vs, that they * Taber was were the Gagas, or Gindes; that cames from * Serra de Lion, and passed through the Citie of deceived in their originall. Congo; and to translled to the East-ward of the great Citie of Angola, which is called Dongo, The Gagas, a The great Gaga, which was their Generall, came downe to the waters fide to fee vs. For her moft warlike had neuer feene white men before. He asked, wherefore we came we told him, that wee came to trade vpon the Coaft: then he bade vs welcome, and called vs on shoare with our Commowith me, called dities : we laded our ship with slaues in seuen dayes, and bought them so good cheape, that mathem lagges, & ny did not cost one Riall a piece, which were worth in the Citie twelve Millie-revs. their Chiefe

Being readie to depart the great Giaga stayed vs, and defired our Boat to passe his men over the River Cona: for he determined to over-runne the Realme of Benguele, which was on the North-side of the River Cona. So we went with him to his Campe, which was very orderly Gagas for Gis. intrenched with piles of wood. We had Houses provided for vs that night, and many burthers of Palme-wine, Cowes, Goats, and Flowre.

In the morning before day the Generall did firike his Gongo, which is an Inflrument of War that foundeth like a Bell; and prefently made an Oration with a loud voice, that all the Campe Campe.
Their manner might heare, that he would deftroy the Bengmelas, with fuch couragious and vehement speeches, 10 of remoue. as were not to be looked for among the Heathen people : and prefently they were all in arms. Their vaine and marched to the Rivers fide, where he had profited Gingados. And beeing readie with our Boat and Ging ados, the Generall was faine to beate them backe, because of the credit who should be first. We carried ouer eightie men at once; and with our Muskets we beat the enemie off, and landed, but many of them were flaine. By twelve of the clocke all the Geess were ouer.

The Bensuelas flaughter.

Then the Generall commanded all his Drums, Tanales, Petes, Pongos, and all his Instruments of warlike Musicke to strike vp, and gaue the on-set, which was a bloudie day to the Benevelas. These Benguelas presently broke and turned their backes, and a very great number of them were flaine, and were taken Captiues, man, woman and child. The Prince Hombiang mbe was flame, which was Ruler of this Countrey, and more then one hundred of his chiefe Lords, and 40 their heads presented, and throwne at the feet of the great Gaga. The men, women, and children, that were brought in captine aline, and the dead Corpfes that were brought to bee eaten, were The Gegat are frange to behold. For these Gagas are the greatest Canibals and Man-eaters that bee in the Man-caters in World, for they fed chiefly vpon mans flesh, having all the Cattell of that Countrey.

the World.

They fetled themselues in this Countrey, and tooke the spoile of it. Wee had great Trade with these Gagas fine monethes, and gained greatly by them. These Gagas were not contented to flay in this place of Benguela, although they lacked almost nothing. For they had great ftore of Cattell and Wheate, and many other Commodities, but they lacked Wine : for in thefe parts there are no Palme-trees.

The Province

After the fine monethes were expired, they marched toward the Prounce of Bambala, to 2 great Lord, that is called Calican famba, whose Countrey is fine dayes journey up into the Land. In these fine monethes space we made three Voyages to the Citie of San Paul, and comming the fourth time we found them not.

Being loth to returne without Trade, wee determined to goe up into the Landafter them; So we went fifty on shore, and left our ship riding in the Bay of Benguela to stay for vs:and marching two dayes up into the Countrey, we came to a great Lord, which is called Mofericolat and comming to his first Towne, we found it burned to the ground, for the Gagas had passed and taken the spoyle. To this Lord we sent a Negro, which we had bought of the Gagas, and lived with vs, and bid him fay, that he was one of the great Gagas men, and that hee was left to car- 60 rie vs to the Campe. This Lord bade vs welcome for feare of the great Gaga: but hee delayed the time, and would not let vs paffe, till the Gaga was gone out of his Countrey. This Lord Mofaricofat, seeing that the Gagas were cleere of him, began to palter with vs., and would not let vs goe out of his Land, till we had gone to the warres with him; for hee thought himfelfe a

CHAP.3.S.3. Mountaines of filuer. Fall of waters beard thirtie miles.

mightie man having vs with him. For in this place they never faw white man before, nor Gunnes, So we were forced to goe with him, and destroyed all his Enemies, and returned to his Towne againe. Then we delired him, that I e would let vs depart : But he denyed vs . without we would promife him to come againe, and leave a white man with him in pawne.

Thele Portugals and Mulates being defirous to get away from this place, determined to draw lots who should stay : but many of them would not agree to it. At last they confented together that it were fitter to leave me, because I was an Englishman, then any of themselves. Andrew Battell Here I was faine to stay perforce. So they left me a Musket, Powder, and thot; promiting this left with the Lord Mofierigo fat, that within two monethes they would come againe, and bring an hundred Andalambandes 10 men to helpe him in his Warres, and to trade with him : but all was to fluft themselves away. for they feared that he would have taken vs all Captines. Here I remayned with this Lord till the two monethes were expired, and was hardly vied, because the Portugals came not according

The chiefe men of this Towne would have put me to death, and stripped me naked, and were In danger of readie to sut off mine head. But the Lord of the Towne commanded them to flay longer, thinking that the Portugals would come. And after that I was let loofe againe, I went from one

of my life among them, I ranne away, purposing to goe to the Campe of the Gagas. And having travelled all that night, the next day I came to a great Towne, which was cal-20 led, Calbil, which flood in a mightie ouer-growne thicket. Here I was carried into the Fowne Calbilagrest to the Lord Cabil; and all the Towne great and small came to wonder at mee, for in this place Towne. there was never any white man feene. Here were fome of the great Gagas men, which I was glad

to see, and went with these Gages to Calican samba, where the Campe was.

This Towns of the Lord Cabit is very great, and is so ouer-growne with Olicondis Trees. Cedars, and Palmes, that the streets are darkened with them. In the middle of the Towne there is an Image, which is as bigge as a man, and flandeth twelue foot high: and at the foot of the A Giantly I. Image there is a Circle of Elephants Teeth, pitched into the ground. Vpon these Teeth stand Quellage, and great store of dead mens skuls, which are killed in the warres, and offered to this Image. They their idolavie to powre Palme-wine at his feet, and kill Goats, and powre their bloud at his feet, This trous Rutes. 30 Image is called Quefange, and the people haue a great beliefe in him, and iweare by him; and doe Their fixeers belieue when they are fick, that Questingo is offended with them. In many places of this Towne A Meritio or were litle Images, and ouer them great store of Elephants Teeth piled.

The ftreets of this Towne were paled with Palme-canes very orderly. Their Houses were He commeth round like an Hive, and within hanged with fine Mats very curioufly wrought. On the South- to the Campe east end of the Towne was a Mokifo, which had more then three Tunnes of Elephants Teeth of the great

From this Towne of Cafeit, I travelled up into the Country with the Gagas two dayes, and gas, reade also From this Towne of Capital, I transcens up into the country with the Organ works had been considered by the Capital and its Campe, and was welcome to him. A Fightuse look mong the Caniball people, I determined to like, hoping in God, that they would trauell fo faire of Capital and the ao to the West-ward, till we should see the Sea againe; and so I might escape by some ship. These life by M. Hatt-Gagas remay ned four emonethes in this place, with great abundance and plentie of Cattle, well, and my Corne, Wine, and Oyle, and great triumphing, drinking, dancing, and banquetting with mans Pilgrimage 1.9 flesh, which was an heatile spectacle to behold.

At the end of four monethes they marched toward the Serras, or Mountaines of Calbind-At the east of rouse mounts, and have great Copper-mynes, and they tooke the spoyle all the Author, which way as they went. From thence they went to the River Longs, and paffed it, and fetled them- hued fo long felues in the Towne of Calango, and remayned there five or fixe monethes. Then wee arofe, and with them. entred into the Protince of Touds, and came to the River Gonfa, and marched on the South The River fide of the River to a Lord that was called Makellacolonge, neere to the great Citie of Dongo. Calange. Here we passed over mightie high Mountaines, and found it very cold.

Hauing spent fixteene moneths among these Canibals, they marched to the Westward againe, Gonfa River, or and came along the River Gonfa, or Gonza, to a Lord that is called Shillambanfa, Vinkle to the Gunza. King of Angola. Weburned his chiefe Towne, which was after their fashion very sumptious the high ly builded. This place is very pleasant and fruitfull. Heere we found great store of wild Pea-Mountaines. cockes, flying up and downe the Trees, in as great abundance as other Birds. The old Lord Shillambanja Shillamban fa was buried in the middle of the Towne, and had an hundred tame Peacockes kept deftroyed. vpon his Graue: which Peacockes he gaue to his Mokefo, and they were called Angello Mo. Store of wild kefo, that is, The Deuils or Idols Birds, and were accounted as holy things. He had great store The River Cor. of Copper, Cloth, and many other things laid vpon his Graue; which is the order of that area. 60 Countrey.

From this place we marched to the Westward, along the River Coanza, and came right a- taines of filmer. gainst the Serras, or Mountaines of Cambanbe, or Serras de Prata. Here is the great fall of waters heard thirrie ter, that falleth right downe, and maketh a mightie noyfe, that is heard thirtie miles. Wee miles. entred into the Province of Casama, and came to one of the greatest Lords, which was called casama.

Towne to another, shifting for my selfe, within the liberties of this Lord. And beeing in feare

fo well know

Mmmmm

"x .. 53

Cafoch a great The Authors

Warrier; for he had some seuen yeeres before, ouerthrowne the Portugals Campe, and killed eight hundred Portugals, and fortie thousand Negroes; that were on the Portugals side. This Lord did floorly withfrand the Gaess, and had the first day a mightie battaile : but had not the victorie that day. So wee made a Sconse of Trees after their fashion, and remay ned foure moneths in the Warres with them. I was fo highly efteemed with the Great Gaga, because I kil. led many Negroes with my Musket, that I had any thing that I defired of him. He would alfo, when they went out to the Warres, give charge to his men ouer me. By this meanes I have beene often carried away in their armes, and faued my life. Here we were within three daves Iourney of Mallangano, before mentioned, where the Portugels have a Fort : and I fought Io meanes, and got to the Partugals againe with Merchant Negroes, that came to the Campe to

Langere, He obeyed the Great Gaga, and carried vs to a Lord, called Cafoch, which was a great

deare-bought credit. Maffangans He getteth a gaine to the Portugals. Dilcourse of Cabandola, the great lagge. His dependance of the His feueritie.

There were in the Campe of the Gagas, twelue Captains. The first, called Imbe Calandola, their Generall a man of great courage. He warreth all by enchantment, and taketh the Deuils comfell in all his exploits. He is alwaies making of facrifices to the Deuill, and doth know many times what shall happen vnto him. Hee beleeueth that hee shall neuer die but in the Warres. There is no Image among them, but he vieth certaine ceremonies. He hath firaight Lawes to his Souldiers: for, those that are faint-hearted, and turne their backes to the Enemie, are presently condemned and killed for cowards, and their bodies eaten. He vieth enery night to make a warlike Oration.vpon an high Scaffold, which doth encourage his people.

Oranions. Their fortify-

It is the order of these people, wheresoener they pitch their Campe, although they stay but one night in a place, to build their Fort, with such wood or trees as the place yeeldeth; so that the one part of them cutteth downe trees and boughs, and the other part carrieth them. and buildeth a round Circle with twelue Gates. So that every Captaine keepeth his Gate. In the middle of the Fort is the Generals house, intrenched round about, and hee hath many Porters that keepe the Doore. They build their houses very chose together, and have their Bowes . Arrowes, and Darts, standing without their Doores: And when they give alarme, they are sodainly allout of the Fort, Euery companie at their Doores keepe very good watch in the night, playing vpon their Drums and Tauales.

A River haning great to the South af Rabia das Vaccas. They found of this Gold.

Thele Gagas told vs of a River that is to the Southward of the Bay of Vaccas, that hath great to ftore of Gold: and that they gathered up great ftore of graines of Gold upon the Sand, which the fresh water driueth downe in the time of raine. We found some of this Gold in the handles of their Hatchets, which they wie to engrave with Copper, and they called it Copperalio, and Thefe Gagas delight in no Countrie, burwhere there is great flore of Palmares, or Groves

Palme-wine, bow drawne.

of Palmes. For they delight greatly in the Wine, and in the Fruit of the Palme, which serveth to eate and to make Oyle: and they draw their Wine contrarie to the Imbondos. These Palmetrees are fixe or feuen fathoms high, and haue no leaues but in the top: and they haue a deuice to goe up to the top of the Tree, and lay no hands on it, and they draw the Wine in the top of

the tree in a Bottle. But these Gagas cut the Palme-trees downe by the roote, which lie ten dayes before they rence between will give Wine. And then they make a square hole in the top and heart of the Tree, and take out of the hole every morning a quart, and at night a quart. So that every Tree giveth two quarts of Wine a day for the space of sixe and twentie dayes, and then it drieth vp.

being relifted.

Fruges.com/u-

When they fettle themselves in any Countrie, they cut downe as many Palmes as will sense What they doe them Wine for a moneth: and then as many more. So that in a little time they spoile the Countrie. They flay no longer in a place, then it will affoord them maintenance. And then in Harush time they arife, and fettle themselves in the fruitfullest place that they can find; and doe reape their Enemies Corne, and take their Cattell. For they will not fowe, nor plant, nor bring vp any Cattell, more then they take by Warres. When they come into any Countrie that is strong, 50 which they cannot the first day conquer, then their Generall buildeth his Fort, and remayneth fometimes a moneth or two quiet. For he faith, it is as great warres to the Inhabitants to lee him fetled in their Countrey, as though he fought with them euery day. So that many times the Inhabitants come and affault him at his Fort: and these Gagas defend themselves and flesh them on for the space of two or three dayes. And when their Generall mindeth to give the onfet, he will in the night put out some one thousand men: which do emboske themselues about a mile from their Fort. Then in the morning the great Gaga goeth with all his strength out of the Fort, as though he would take their Towne. The Inhabitants comming neere the Fort to defend their Countrey, being betweene them , the Gagas give the watch-word with their Drummes, and then the embosked men arife, fo that very rew escape. And that day their Generall outs- 62 runneth the Countrey.

His attire. Mafe thells, of among the

The great Gaga Calando hath his haire very long, embroydred with many knots full of Banba shels, which are very rich among them, and about his necke a Collar of Maloes, which are also shells, that are found voon that Coast, and are fold among them for the worth or twentie shillings a shell: and about his middle he weareth Landes, which are Beades made of the Offridges Egges. He weareth a Palme cloth about his middle, as fine as Silke. His body is car- Cruellbrauery ned and cut with fundry workes, and enery day anointed with the fat of men. Hee weareth a peece of Copper crosse his nose, two inches long, and in his eares also. His body is alwaies painted red and white. He hath twenty or thirty wines, which followed him when he goeth abroad; and one of them carrieth his Bow and Arrowes, and foure of them carry his Cuppes of They vie this drinke after him. And when hee drinketh, they all kneele downe, and clap their hands and Florida.

Their women weare their haire with high trompes, full of Bamba fhels, and are anointed 10 with Ciuet. They pull out foure of their teeth; two aboue and two below for a brauery : And Foolish Galthose that have not their teeth out, are loathsome to them, and shall neither eate nor drinke with them. They weare great store of Beades about their neckes, armes and legs; about their

middles, Silke cloathes. The women are very fruitfull, but they enion none of their children : For as soone as the wo. Generation of man is delivered of her Childe, it is presently buried quicke; So that there is not one Childe Ageneration brought vp in all this Generation. But when they take any Towne, they keepe the Boyes and without sene-Girles of thirteene or foureteene yeares of age, as their owne children. But the men and wo- ration of Gage. men they kill and eate. These little Boyes they traine up in the warres, and hang a collar about Parizories. their neckes for a digrace, which is neuer taken off till he proueth himfelfe a man, and bring Boyes trayned his enemies head to the Generall: And then it is taken off, and he is a Free-man, and is called vp in the wars. 20 Gonfo, or Souldier. This maketh them all desperate, and forward to be free, and counted men: and so they doe increase. In all this Campe there were but twelve naturall Gagas that were These Gran their Captaines, and foureteene or fifteene women. For it is more then fiftie yeares fince they came from come from Serra de Lion, which was their native Countrey. But their Campe is fixteene thou- Serra Long. fand ftrong, and fometimes more.

When the great Gaga Calandola, undertaketh any great enterprize against the Inhabitants of Hissolemne faany Country, he maketh a facrifice to the Diuell, in the morning before the Sunne rifeth. He Deuill, itteth vpon a stoole, hauing on each side of him a man Witch: then he bath fortie or fiftie women which ftand round about him, holding in each hand a Zenera, or wilde horfes tayle, where Zene. with they doe flourish and fing. Behind them are great flore of Petes, Ponges, and Drummes, which alwaies play. In the midft of them is a great fire; vpon the fire an earthen pot with white powders, where-with the men Witches doe paint him on the forehead, temples, thwart the breast and belly, with long ceremonies and inchanting tearmes. Thus he continueth till funne is downe. Then the Witches bring his Colongula, which is a weapon like an hatchet, and put it into his had, and bid him bee frong againft his enemies: for his Molife is new thing. And prefently the is a Man-child be roughly, which forth-with he killeth. Then are four Burcherly men brought before him ; two whereof, as it happeneth, he prefently firiketh and killeth ; the rices. 40 other two, he commandeth to be killed without the Fort.

Here I was by the men Witches commanded to goe away, because I was a Christian. For then the Diuell doth appeare to them, as they fay. And prefently he commandeth fine Cowes to be killed in the Fort, and fine without the Fort: And likewise as many Goates, and as many Dozges; and the bloud of them is sprinkled in the fire, and their bodies are eaten with great feasting and triumph. And this is vied many times by all the other Captaines of their

When they bury the dead, they make a vault in the ground, and a feate for him to fit. The Buriall of dead hath his haire newly imbroydred, his body washed, and anounted with sweete powders, their dead He hath all his best robes put on, and is brought betweene two men to his grave, and fet in his feate, as though he were aline. He hath two of his wines fet with him, with their armes bro-50 ken, and then they couer the vault on the top. The Inhabitants when they dye, are buried after the same fashion, and have the most part of their goods buried with them. And every moneth there is a meeting of the kindred of the dead man, which mourne and fing dolefull fongs at his grave, for the space of three daies; and kill many Goates, and powre their bloud vpon his graue, and Palme-Wine also; and vie this ceremony as long as any of their kindred be alive. But those that have no kindred think themselves vnhappy men, because they have none to mourne for them when they dye. These people are very kind one to another in their health; but in their sicknesse they doe abhorre one another, and will shun their company.

Mmmmm 2

ò. IIII.

ð. 1111.

His returne to the Portugals : inualions of divers Countries, abule, flight from them, and living in the Woods divers moneths : His strange Boate, and comming to Loango.

Eing departed from the Gagas, I came to Masangano, where the Portugals have a Towne of Garrison. There was at that time a new Gouernor, which was called Signar Islan Castinibes: who brought authority to conquer the Mines or Mountaines of Cambamba; and to performe that service, the King of Spaine had given him seaven yeares custome, of all the Slaues and Goods that were carried thence to the West-Indies.

Salt Mines.

The River Co.

Brafil, or whither focuer : with condition, that he should build three Castles; one in Demba. which are the falt Mines; the other, in Cambamba, which are the Siluer Mines; and the other in Babia das Vaccas, or The Bay of Comes. This Gentleman was so bountifull at his comming that his fame was spread through all Congo, and many Mulatos and Negroes came voluntarily to ferue him. And being some fixe moneths in the Citie, he marched to the Ouraba of Tombe : and there shipped his Souldiers in Pinnasses, and went vp the River Confa, or Coanza, and landed at the Outaba of Songo, fixtie miles from the Sea. This Lord Songo is next to Demba, where the Salt Mines be. In this place there is such store of Salt, that most part of the Countrey are 20 perfect cleere Salt, without any earth or filth in it: and it is some three foot under the earth as it were Ice : and they cut it out in stones of a yard long, and it is carried vp into the Countrey, and is the best commoditie that a man can carry to buy any thing what locuer. Here the Gouernour stayed ten daies, and sent a Pinnasse to Masangano, for all the best

Souldiers that were there. So the Captain of the Caftle fent me down among an hundred Souldi-

ers, and I was very well vied by the Gouernor; and he made me a Sergeant of a Portugall Com-

pany, and then he marched to Machimba; from thence to Cauo, and then to Malombe, a great

flaughter among them. We tooke captines all his Women and Children, and fetled our felues

not like of them as yet; because they yeelded small store of Siluer. This new vp-start Gover-

nour was very cruell to his Souldiers, so that all his voluntary men left him; and by this meanes

Stone-falt. a fpeciall com-The like is in Peloud.

made Sergeant Lord. Here we were foure daies, and many Lords came and obeyed vs. From thence we marof a Portugal ched to a mightie Lord, called Augorkayongo, who flood in the defence of his Countrey, with

more then fixtie thousand men. So we met with him, and had the victory, and made a great to

Seienier Iuande in his Towne, because it was a very pleasant place, and full of Cattle and victuals. And being Continuo dieth, eight daies in this Towne, the Gouernour fickned and dyed, and left a Captaine in his roome

to performe the feruice. After we had beene two moneths in the Countrey of Angophayongo, we marched toward Serras da Prasa. Cambambe, which was but three daies journey, and came right against the Serras da Prasa and paffed the River Coanza, and prefen ly over-ranne the Countrey, and built a Fort hard by the Rivers fide. Here I ferued two yeares. They opened the Silver Mines : but the Portugals did

he could goe no farther. At this time, there came newes by the Issuites, that the Queene of England was dead; and that King lames had made peace with Spaine. Then I made a petition to the Gouernour, who granted me licence to goe into my Countrey : And fo I departed with

England, 1603. the Gouernor and his Traine to the Citie of Saint Paul.

But he left fine hundred Souldiers in the Fort of Cambambe, which they hold still. Then I went with a Portugal Marchant to the Pronince of Banba : and from thence to the Ontero, or The Outers of Citie standing upon a Mountaine of Congo: from thence to Gongon and Batta: and there wee foldour commodities, and returned in fixe moneths to the Citie againe. Then I purposed to haue shipped my selfe for Spaine, and thence homewards. But the Gouernour denyed his word, and commanded me to prouide my felfe within two daies, to goe vp to the Conquest againe. This Gouernour had ferued his three yeares, and the Citizens looked every day for another out of Portugall. So I determined to absent my selfe for ten or twentie daies, till the other Gouernour came, and then to come to the Citie againe. For every Governour that commeth, maketh

Proclamation for all men that be absent, to come with free pardon. The same day at night, I departed from the Citie, with two Negro Boyes that I had , which carried my Musket, and fixe pounds of Powder, and an hundred Bullets, and that little provefion of victuals which I could make. In the morning I was some twentie miles from the Citie, vp along the River Bengo, and there I flayed certaine dayes; and then passed Bengo, and came to the River Dande, which is to the North-ward; purposing to know what newes was in the Citie, for I was neere the high-way of Congo: And one of my Negroes 62 inquired of those that passed, and brought me word; That it was certaine, that the new Gouernour came not that yeare. Now I was put to my shifts, whether I would goe to the Citie againe and be hanged, or to flay and line in the Woods: for I had runne away twice before. So I was forced to line in the Wood a moneth, betwixt the Rivers of Dande and Bengo.

The River Bengo. The River

Then I went to Bengo again, to Mani Kafwea, & paffed ouer the River, and went to the lake, of Ca- The Lake of The Lal fan fa, Here is the greatest flore of wild beatls, that is in any place of Angola. Abou: this lake I staid Cofan fa. ix monethes, & liued only vpon dried fieth, as Buffes, Deere, Mokokes, Impolancas, and Ro-bucks. nx monetnessee made only parties and dryed the flesh, as the Sauages doe, vpon an The manner of and other tree foot from the ground, making vnderneath it a great fire, and laying vpon the field the Sauages greene houghes, which keepe the smoke and heate of the fire downe, and dry it. I made my fire drying of their with two lettle stickes, as the Sauages vie to doe. I had sometimes Guiney Wheate, which my flosh, Negro Boy would get of the Inhabitants for pieces of dryed fielh. This Lake of Calanze doth abound with fifth of fundry forts. I have taken up afifth, that hath skipped out of the water on Io floare, tours foot long, which the Freathen call Sombes Thus after I had lived fixe monethes

with dryed field and fith, and feeing present of my materie, I wrought meanes to get away. In this Lake are many little Hands, shat are full of saces, called Memba; which are as light as He made a Cocke, and as fort. Obthele trees I built oldergade, with a Knife of the Sauages dist badin the Boat with a faihjorner a Boat, nayled, with woodden gags and rayled round about second the Sea should not Knife. wall me spherial with a Blanket that h had. I made a figle; antisprepared three Oates to row with the libid, she of Cafenta is cight miles over, and affects into the River Reggs. So Jentred, The Like of into my Gogado, and my two Negra Boyes, and Towed into the Rines Bengas, and to came Calame talleth downe with the current twelve leagues to the barre, Have I was in great danger, because the inio Bengo. Sea was great; and being ouer the barre, I rewed into the Sea, and shon fayled after the wind 20 along the Coat, which I knew very well, minding to goe to the Kingdome of Large, which is

toward the North : andbeing that pight at Sea, the next day I fay: a Primale come before the wind, which came from the Citie, and was bound to Sen Thome, and thee, came neere to mee. The Mafter was my great friend, for we had beene Mates together, and for pitie fake he tooke. The Matter was my great triend, for we nan been mates together, and to print sate to come years in me in, and fee me ondhoare in the Port of Longo, what I remay need three years, and was well Longo. beloued of the King, became I killed him Deere and Fowles with my Musket,

The very minute and the second of the Province of Engoy, and other Receipt of Loange, with the Sustances and there observed by the King and people.

Romethe Pointeof the Palmer, which is the North-fide of the Rieter Zaire, in the Pointeof and Palmer, which has been proved to Cabenda, wherechany things wit to watter and refresh themselves; and six many fine leagues Northwards. This place is called Riegy, and is the first Presumes. Eagen in the fine the control of the pointer of the fine leagues Northwards. This place is called Engry, and is the first Prounce of hit Prounce place is the River Catongo; a very pleafant place and fruitfull. Here is great store of Elephanes. The River Ca-Teeth : and a Boat of ten tunnes may goe vp the River.

The Mombales have great Trade with them, and passe the Ringer Zaire in the night, be- The Mombales 40 cause then it is calme; and carrie great fore of Elephants Teeth to the Towne of Mani Sonna, and fell them in the Port of Pinda to the Portugals, or any other stranger, that first commeth.

And four eleagues from Cacongo, is the River of Cape, or Longo Leinjes. This Towne of Cape The River of is one of the foure Seases or Lordinips of Longo : and then the Angra, or Guife das Almadias. Caye. In this Gulfe or Bay are great store of Canoes and Fishermen, betaule the Sea is smoother there, Gesam des. Althen voon the Coast. And two leagues North-ward is the Port of Longo. And it is a fandie Bay, "madiat. and a thip may ride within a Musket short of the shoare in source or fine fathomes.

The Towne of Mani Longo is three miles from the waters fide, and Handeth on a great Plaine. This Towne is full of Palme and Planean Trees, and very fresh sand their Houses are builded under the Trees. Their fireets are wide and long, and alwayes cleane swept. The King hath his Houses on the West-side, and before his doore hee hath a Plaint, where hee fitteth, when hee hath any feating or matters of warres to treate of. From this Plaine there goeth a great wide ffreet some Musket shot from the place; and there is a great Market every day, and it doch begin

Here is great store of Palme-clothes of fundry forts, which is their Merchandizes : and great flore of Victuals, Flesh, Hens, Fish, Wine, Oyle and Corne. Here is also very fine Logwood, Fine Logwood which they vie to the withall ; it is the root of the Logwood, which is the bell, and Molangos. Copper. of Copper. Here is likewife great store of Elephants Teeth, but they fell none in the Market Elephants place. The King bath ten great Houses, and is never certaine to be found, but in the afternoone, Teethwhen he commeth to fit. And then be keepeth alwayes one House. The House is very long, 60 and at twelve of the clocke it is full of Noblemen. They fit vpon Carpets vpon the ground. The Houle is alwayes full of people till mid-night. The last King Gembe, neuer vied to speake in the day, but alwayes in the night. But this King speaketh in the day : howbeit bee spendeth most of the day with his Willes. And when the King commeth in, he goeth to the upper end of the

Houle, where hee hath his feate, as it were a Throne. And when the King is let, they clap Mmmmm 3

LIB.VIL

their hands and falute him, faying in their Language ; Byani Pemba, Ampola , Moneya

980

On the South-fide of the Kings Houses he hath a circuit or Village, where his Wines dwell. comme, or wines and in this circuit no man may come in paine of death. He hath in this place one hundred & fiftee Wines and more. And if any man be taken within this Circuit, if he be with a woman, ordoe but speake to her, they be both brought into the Market place, and their heads bee cut off, and their bodies quartered, and lyc one day in the streets. The last King Gymbe, had four hundred children by his women.

Strange cuflores of drin-

Tyrannicall

When the King drinketh he hath a cup of wine brought, and he that bringeth it hath a Bell in his hand, and affoone as he hath delinered the oup to the King, hee turneth his face from the in King, and ringeth the Bell: and then all that be there fall downe voon their faces, and rife me till the King have drunke. And this is very dangerous for any firanger, that knoweth not the falhion: for if any feeth the King drink, he is prefently killed, whatfoeuer he be. There was allow of twelve yeares, which was the Kings Sonne; This Boy chanced to come vnaduifedly when his Father was in drinking : prefently the King commanded he should be well apparelled, & victories prepared. So the youth did car & drinkinfterward the King commanded that he should be cut in quarters, and carryed about the Citie; with Proclamation that he faw the Kine drinke Likewill for his Dyet, when it is dinner time, there is an House of purpose, where hee alwayes eatethand there his Dyet is fet vpon a Benfa, hke a Table : then hee goeth in and hath the doore flux, So when he hath eaten, then he knocketh and commeth out. So that some fee the King eat not so drinke. For it is their Beliefe, that if hee bee seene cating or drinking, hee shall presently dye. And this is an order with all the Kings that now are, or shall succeed, whilese they abolish this

This King is fo honoured, as though hee were a God among them : and is called Sambe and Ponce, that is, God. And they beleeve that he can give them raine, when hee lifteth. So onces graineth here yeare when it is time to raine; which is in December, the people come to begge raine, and bring their gifts to the King : for none come emptie. Then he appointeth the day, and all the Lords farre and neere come to that Feast with all their troupes, as they goe in the warres. And when all the troupes of men be before the King, the greatest Lord commeth forth with his Bow and Arrowes, and sheweth his skill with his weapons, and then he hith a merrie conceit or self, that to he speaketh before the King, and kneekethat his feet, and then the King thanketh him for his lone : and in like manner they doe all. The King fitteth abroad in a great place, and hath a Carpet spread voon the ground, whithis some fifteene fathomes about of fine Enfacks, which are wrought like Veluet, and vpon the Carpet his test, which is a fathome from the ground. Then wrongs and the commandeth his Dembes to Atrike vp, which are Drums, 6 great that they cannot carrie them, and others that are very great. He hash also eight Pongos, which are his Wayters, made of the greatest Elephants Teeth, and are hollowed and scraped light : which play also. And with the Drums and Waytes they make an hellish noyse. After they have sported and shewed the King pleafure, he arifeth and standeth upon his Throne, and taketh a Bow and Arrowes in his hand and filoteth to the Skie, and that day there is great rejoycing, because sometimes they have raine. I was once there when the King gave raine, and it chanced that day to raine mightily, which made the people to have a great beliefe in their folly,

ches, and are brought up in Witchcraft, and alwayes wayte on the King. There is no man that

dare meddle with these Dondar. If they goe to the Market, they may take what they lift, for all

Policie of the Deuill

Some white Here are formerimes borne in this Country wante canalism, wanted by the preferred winto the children borne for their Parents at Neprot. And when any of them are borne, they be preferred winto the children borne for their Parents at Neprot. The forests white as any white man. These are the Kings Windows

Their Mehilio and Checocke.

This King is also a Witch and beleeveth in two Idols, which are in Longo. The one is called, 50 Mobiffo à Longo, the other is called, Checorke. This last is a little blacke Image, and standeth in A Village cas a little house, at a Village that is called, Kinga, which shadeth in the landing place of Long.

This house of Checarge itandeth in the high-way and thou should be landing place of Long. the courtese of the Country. Those that be Crafts-men, as Fishermen, Hunters & Witches do. offer to this Idol, that they may have good lucke. This Checocke doth sometimes in the night comea and haunt fome of his best Beloued: sometimes a man, sometimes a Boy, or a Woman. And then they be franticke for the space of three houres. And whatsoever the franticke Person speaketh, that is the will of Checock- And they make a great Feast and dancing at his house.

men fland in awe of them. The King of Longo hath foure of them.

Mokiffo Gam-

Colour of their children

There is another Mokiffe, which is also in Kinga, and it is called, Gomberi. It is the name of a woman, and is in an house, where an old Wittn dwelleth, and shee is called, Ganga Gombert, which is, the Prieft of Gomberi. Here once a yeare is a Feast made, and Ganga Gomberi speaketh 60 vnder the ground. And this is a common thing every yeare. I have asked the Negroes what it was, and they told me, that it is a strong Mokisso, that is come to abide with Checocke.

The children in this Countrey are borne white, and change their colour in two dayes to a perfect blacke. As for example, the Portugals which dwell in the Kingdome of Congo, have

fametimes children by the Negro Women, and many times the Fathers are deceived . thinking when the child is borne that it is theirs, and within two dayes it proueth the fonne or daughter of a Negro; which the Poringals doe greatly grieve at : for they reloyce when they have a Ma-

late child, thought it be a baffard.

The Towne of Lange standers in the middest of the foure Lordships; and is gouerned by Foure Princes foure Princes, which are the Kings fifters formes. For the Kings formes acuer come to be Kings, in Lamps, rome rinks. White a take the feeding. The first is, Mani Cabage. The third Mani Back, The fourth, Man Cabage. The first is, Mani Cabage. The feeding, and hath his Traine and Court as a Prince. And mc Cap. This Man Cap is next to be King, and hath his Traine and Court as a Prince. And when the King dieth, he commeth presently into the feat of the King. Then Man Bock com-10 meth to Gay : Mani Saleg commeth to Bock, and Mani Cahange commeth to Saleg. And then they pround a mother to goe to Calonges. So there be foure Princes that wait to be Kings, when their turnes come. The adother of these Princes is called, CMani Lombo: and thee is the higheft and chiefe woman imali the Land. Shee maketh shorce of her husband, and when thee is wearie of him, the patteth him away, and taketh another. Her children are greatly honoused : and whofoeuer raffeth by them, kneele downe and clap their hands, which is the curtefie of the Countrie. These Lordships are champaine grounds, and full of Corne, and Fruit. The men in this Kingdome make great flore of Palme-cloth of fundrie forts, very fine and curious. They

and an august and the fire Cape of needle-worke, as they goe in the fireets.

There is a place two leagues from the Towne of Longo, called Longers, where all their Kings Burial of their 20 be buried : and it is compatied round about with Elephants teeth pitched in the ground as it kings.

were a Pale, and it is ten roods in compasse.

There people will fuffer no white man to be buried in their Land. And if any Stranger or No white man Portugal come thither to trade, and chance to die, he is carried in a Boat two miles from the may be baised shoare, and cast into the Sea. There was once a Partugall Gentleman, that came to trade with in Lange. them, and had his house on shoare. This Gentleman died, and was buried some foure monether That yeere it did not raine fo foone as it was wone , which beginneth about December : fo that they lacked raine some two moneths. Then their Mokife told them , that the Christian which was buried, must be taken out of the earth, and cast into the Sea. And so he was taken vo and east into the Sea; and within three dayes it rained : which made them have a great beliefe in 30 the Deuill.

ð. V I.

of the Prounces of Bongo, Calongo, Mayombe, Manikelocke, Motimbas: of the Ape-monfter Pongo, their bunting, Idolasries; and dinersother observations.

O the Eastward of Longers is the Province of Bongo, and it bordereth upon Mocoke, Bongo. the Great Angeca is King. In this place is great ftore of Iron , and Palme-cloth , and Elephant teeth , and great flore of Corne. To the North-east, is the Prouince of Congo, and it is fourteene dayes iourney from the Towne of Longo. This place is full of Mountaines and rockie ground, and full or Woods, and hath great store of Copper. The Elephants in this place doe excell. Here are fo many, that the people of Lange fetch great flore of Elephants teeth, and bring them to the Port of Longo.

To the Northwards of Longo three leagues is, the River Quelle: and on the North fide is, the calone Province of Calongo. This Countrey is alwaies tilled, and full of Corne: and is all plaine and champaine ground, and hath great store of Honie. Here are two little Villages, that shew at Sea like two homocks: which are the markes to know the Port of Longo. And fifteene miles Northward is the River Nombo: but it hath no depth for any Barke to goe in. This Province, toward the East, bordereth upon Bongo; and toward the North, upon Majombe, which is nine-

teene leagues from Longo, along the Coaft. This Prouince of Majombe is all Woods and Groues; so overgrowne, that a man may tra- Majombe, vaile twentie dayes in the shadow without any Sunne or heat. Here is no kind of Corne nor Graine: fo that the people liueth onely vpon Plantanes, and Roots of fundrie forts very good. and Nuts, nor any kind of tame Cattell, nor Hens. But they have great store of Elephants fiesh. which they greatly efteeme; and many kind of wild Bealts; and great store of Fish. Here is a great fandy Bay, two leagues to the Southward of Cape Negro, which is the Port of Mayombe. Cape Negro is

Sometimes the Portugals lade Logwood in this Bay. Here is a great River, called Banna: in in finteenede-Sometimes the Portuguis lade Logwood in this way. First is a great River, cannot be donne. in the Winter it hath no barre, because the generall winds cause a great Sea. But when the Sunne South of the hath his South declination, then a Boat may goe in : for then it is smooth because of the raine. Line, This River is very great and hath many Hands, and people dwelling in them. The Woods are Banna River. so couered with Baboones, Monkies, Apes, and Parrots, that it will feare any man to trausile in them alone. Here are also two kinds of Monsters, which are common in these Woods, and very dangerous.

982

The Posts, or his, which itthey fur prife at He faid . their highth was like a mans bur What the o. 1 hath forgotten m relate: and these papers came to my

hand fince his death, which my often conferences I might have learned, Perhaps he meaneth the Piglers, mentio-A Dog fold for The author was twelve moneths in

Histranaile to Mani Kelech. Mani Seat.

Great Ante o Logwood. Mari Kefocie.

The greateft of thefe two Monsters is called, Pongo, in their Language: and the leffer is called, Engaco. This Pongo is in all proportion like a man, but that he is more like a Gisatt in fin He told me in ture, then a man : for he is very tall, and hath a mants face, hollow eyed, with long haire woon with him, that his browes. His face and eares are without haire, and his hands also. His bodie is full of haire. one of the but not very thicke, and it is of a dunnish colour. He differeth not from a man, but in listegs, Pongostonka a for they have no carre. Hee goeth adwaies upon his legs, and carrieth his hands clasped on the name of his neake, when he goeth upon the ground. They fleepe in the trees, and build shelters his, which is the raine. They feed vpon Fruit that they find in the Woods, and wpon Nuts, for the weare with them. For no kind of floth. They cannot ipeake, and have no understanding more then a bealt. The Peothey hart not ple of the Countrie, when they tradaile in the Woods, make hies where they fleepe in the night; and in the morning, when they asegone, the Pongoes will command as about the fire. till it goethout : for they have no viderstanding to lay the wood together. They goe many cept they look together, and kill many Negroes that transite in the Woods. Many times they fall roon the on them, which Elophants, which come to feed where they be, and so beste them with their clubbed fifte, and pieces of wood, that they will runne roaring away from them. Those Pangees are never taken shipe, because they are so firong, thatten men cannot hold one of them : butyet they take maprof their young ones with poiloned Arrowes. The young Pongo hangeth on his mothers beltheir bignetie he, with his hands fast clasped about here of that, when the Countrie people kill arry of the twice as great, femals, they take the young one, which hangeth fast you his mother. When they dis among fish the Mei, themselnes, they couer the dead with great keapes of boughs and wood which is commonly to found in the Forrests. Tarme.c

The Morembes vie to hunt with their Countrie Dogs, and kill many kinds of little beafts. der Monfter and great flore of Pheafants: But their Dogs be thumbe and cannot barke at all. They have fould be be wooden clappers about their neckes, and tollow them by the rathing of the clappers. The Huntimen haue Petes .. which they whitle their Dogs withall. There Dogs in all this Countrie are very little with prickt cares, and are for the most part red and dunne. The Portugall man Rie Dog, or any other great Dog are greatly esteemed, because they doe barke. I have seene a Dog fold variothe Countrie for thirtie pounds.

In the Towne of Mani Mayombe is a Fetiffo, called Maramba: and it frandeth in an high bafket made like an Hine, and ouer it a great house. This is their house of Religion : for they be- 36 leeue onely in him, and keepe his lawes, and carrie his Reliques alwaies with them. They are for the most part Witches, and vie their witchcraft for hunting and killing of Elephants, and filhing, and helping of ficke and lame men : and to fore-cast journeyes, whether they shall speed well or euill. By this Maramba are all thefts and murthers tried : for in this Countrie they vie sometimes to bewitch one another to death. And when any dieth, their neighbours are brought before Maramba: and if it be a great man that dieth, the whole Towne commeth to sweare. The order is, when they come before Maramba, to kneele and claspe Maramba in their armes, and to fay ; Emeno, eyee bembet Maramba: that is, I come to be tried. O Maramba. And if any of them be guiltie, they fall downe starke dead for euer. And if any of them that Mani Manimbe, Iweare hath killed any manor child before, although it be twentie yeeres past, hee prefently 40 slight. And fo it is for any other matter. From this place as farre as it is to Cape De low Gonfalses, they are all of this fuperitition. I was twelve moneths in this place, and faw many die this Countrie.

These people be circumcifed, as they be through all Angola, except the Kingdome of Congo, All Angola cirfor they are Christians. And those that will be sworne, to Maramba, come to the chiefe Gangas, which are their Priests, or Men-witches; as Boyes of twelve yeeres of age, and men and women. Then the Gangas put them into a darke houle, and there they remaine certaine dayes with very hard diet : after this they are let abroad, and commanded not to freake for certains dayes, what injurie focuer they be offered: fo that they fuffer great penurie before they bee fworne. Laftly, they are brought before Maramba, and have two markes cut you both their 50 shoulders before, like an halfe Moone; and are sworne by the bloud that falleth from them, that they shall be true to him. They are forbidden some one kind of flesh, and some one kind of fish with many other toyes. And if they eate any of this forbidden meate, they prefently ficken and never profeer. They all carrie a relique of Maramba in a little boxe, and hang it about their necks, under their left armes. The Lord of this Province of Mayombe, hath the Enligne or flape of Maramba carried before him, whitherfoeuer he goeth; and when he fitteth downe at is fet before him; and when he drinketh his Palme-wine, the first cup is powred at the foote of the Mokifo, or Idoll; and when he eateth any thing whatfocuer, the first piece he throweth toward his left hand, with enchanting words.

From Cape Negro Northward is a great Lord, called Mani Seat ; which hath the greatest 60 ftore of Elephants teeth of any Lord in the Kingdome of Longo: for, his people practite nothing elie but to kill Elephants. And two of those Negroes will eafily kill an Elephant with their darts. And here is great store of Log wood.

There is another Lord to the Eastward, which is called Mant Kefock, and he is eight dayes

journey from Mayombe. Heere I was with my two Negro Boyes, to buy Elephants haires Twentie thouand tayles; and in a moneth I bought twentie thousand, which I fold to the Portugals for thir- fand Ele and tayles; and in a moneth I bought twentie the diane, which is stayles; and all my charges borne. From this place I fent one of my Negro Boyes to Mani phants tailes.

A Trade a line Reat with a Looking-glade: he did effeeme it much, and fent me foure Elephants teeth, (very North ward of oreat) by his owne men; and defired me to caufe the Portugali, or any other shippe, to come to Cape Negro, the Northward of the Cape Negro, and hee would make fires where his landing place is: For which is about there was never yet any Portugall, or other stranger in that place.

To the North-eaft of Man Kefock, are a kind of little people, called Matimbas; which are South of the no bigger then Boyes of twelue yeares old, but are very thicke, and liue onely vpon flesh, which line. 10 they kill in the Woods with their Bowes and Darts. They pay tribute to Mani Kefock, and The Matimbas bring all their Elephants teeth and tayles to him. They will not enter into any of the Maron- appended ve bos houses, nor will fuffer any to come where they dwell. And if by chance any Maramba, 17 [mal flarure or people of Longo passe where they dwell, they will fortake that place, and go to another. The meys. Women carry Bow and Arrowes as well as the Men. And one of these will walke in the Women vans Woods alone, and kill the Pongos with their poyfoned Arrowes. I have asked the Marombos, Bowes and Arwhether the Eighant sheddeth his teeth or no? And they say no. But sometimes they finde Elephants their teeth in the Woods, but they find their bones also.

When any man is suspected for any offence, he is carried before the King, or before Mani shed their Bomma, which is as it were a ludge vinder the King. And if it be voon matter that hee denv- teeth. 20 eth, and cannot be proued but by their oath; then the suspected person is thus sworne. They haue a kind of roote which they call Imbondo. This roote is very firong, and is scraped into The verme of water. The vertue of this roote is, that if they put too much of it into the water, the person the roote Imthat drinketh it cannot veve vrine sand fo it ftriketh vp into the braine, as shough hee were bondo. drunke, and he falleth downe as though he were dead. And thole that fall are counted as guiltie, that this root and are punished.

In this Countrey notified any account dyeth, but they kill another for him : for they be- teras bitter as legge they doe not of their owne naturall death, but that fome other hath bewitched them to Gall herafted death : And all the leave brought in by the friends of the dead which they ful ped so that ma. it) and one ny times there come fine landred were and women to take the drinke, made of the forelaid root, to try one hun-30 Imbonds. They are brought all to the High-freete or Market place, and there the master of the dred. They Imbonda fitterh with his water, and givesh every one a cup of water by one measure; and they waich have are commanded to walke in a certaine place till they make water, and then they be free : But drunke and are commanded to walke in a certaine paire till tney make wages, und till the year of the that criner vine, preferrly falleth downe, and all the people great and fund fall typonhim made water with their kiniues, and beat and cut him into pieces. But I thinke the Witch that guest the race, defore the commander with their kiniues, and beat and cut him into pieces. But I thinke the Witch that guest the water is partiall, and giveth to him whom he will have to dye the strongest water, but no man which if dizzia can perceive it that flandeth by. And this is done in the Towne of Longo, almost every week nes take them in the yeare.

and presently execute them. See my Relat. 1.7. 6. 20. which I writ from his mouth. Neither may this be ascribed to the verue of the herbe, but to the vice of the Duill, a murtherer and his Inftruments. The Garga or Prick. " And therefore that conjecture 40 feems vn probable. For how could an ordinary tryall of life where are formany to perilous; and therefore curious (more then) ipe-Carors, not perceive this in fo long and frequent experience, which cofts to many their deareft friends their deareft life ? I thinke rather that this was the transcribers conjecture. I remember no such scruple in his Narrations to me, who knowes not the Deuils ambition of Deity, and cruell Misanthropie or man hating? This is his Apith imitation of Dininity, and those Rites prescribed for triall in case of Italouse, Num, 5. In Guines like triall is made by Salt, and also by the Feifferer por. In Remonstra, by a water also in the Merombertial before, and Metambertiall by hot Iton in Angola; the Plough thates in old times with vs: and the tryall of Witches falls in the Early parts by water, &c. were not valike in decirculable superfutions.

VII.

Of the Zebra and Hippopotamus: The Portugals Warres in those parts: The Fishing, Graine, and other things remarkable.

N this Kingdome there is no kind of tame Cattle but Goats; for none other Cattle will lue here. Oxen and Kine have beene brought hither, but they prefently dye: The Hennes in this place doe fo abound, that a man may buy thirtie for the worth of fixe pence in Beads. Heere is store of Pheasants, and great plenty of Partridges, and wilde Fowle. Here is a kind of Fowle that lines in the Land bigger then a Swan, and Plenty of wilde

they are like an Heron, with long legges, and long neckes, and it is white and blacke, and hath Fowle. 63 in her breaft a bare place without Feathers, where the firiketh with her Bill. This is the right Pe-Pelican, and not those Sea Birds which the Portugals call Pelicans, which are white, and as lican. bigge as Geefe, and those abound in this Country also.

Here is also the Zenera or Zebra, which is like an horse; but that his mane, his taile, his strakes The Zenera or of divers colours downe his fixes and legges, doe make a difference. These Zeneras are all wilde, Zetra.

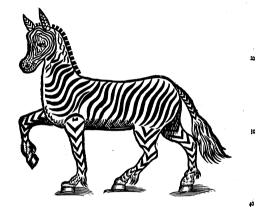
and live in great heards, and will fuffer a man to come within shot of them, and let them shoote three or source times at them before they will runne away.

The Hippopulamus or Ruser Horse. A present remedy for the

984

Moreour, there are great flore of Sea or Ruer Horfes, which feed alway on the Land, and list onely by Graffe, and they be very dangerous in the water. They are the bigged creature in this Countrey, except the Elephan: They have great vertue in the clawes of their left fore-foote, and have four clawes on every foot, like the clawes of an Oxe. The Peringal make Rings of them, and they are a prefent remedy for the Fluxe.

The ZEVERA OF ZEBRA.



The Port-w in Congo.

The Generall of the blacke Campe.

The Portugals make warre against the Negroes in this manner. They have out of Congo a Noble-man, which is knowne to be a good Christian, and of good behaulour. He bringeth out of Congo some one hundred Negroes that are his followers. This Macicongo is made Tandala, or Generall ouer the blacke Campe; and hath authoritie to kill, to put downe Lords, and make Lords, and hath all the cheefe doings with the Negroes. And when any Lord commeth to obey; first he commeth to the Tandala and bringeth his present; as Slaues, Kine, and Goats: Then the Tandala carrieth him before the Portugall Gouernour, and bringeth two Slaves for the Gouernours Page before he goeth in. Then he must have a great gift for the Gouernour; which is fometimes, thirtie or fortie Slaues, befides Cattle. And when he commeth before the Gouer-nout, he kneeleth downe and clappeth his hands, and falleth downe with his face vpon the ground, and then he rifeth and faith; I have beene an enemy, and now I protest to be true, and never more to lift my hand against you. Then the Gouernour calleth a Souldier which hath deferued a reward, and giveth the Lord to him. This Souldier feeth that he have no wrong : and the Lord acknowledgeth him to be his Mafter; and he doth maintaine the Souldier, and maketh him rich. Alfo, in the warres he commandeth his Masters house to be built before his owne : and whatfoeuer he hath taken that day in the warres, he parteth with his Master. So that there is no Portugall Souldier of any account, but he hath his Negro Sona, or Lord.

Their Fishing on the Coast.

They vie vpon this Coaft to Fish with harping Irons, and waite vpon a great Fish that commethonse a day to feed along the shoare, which is like a Grampu. Hee runneth very neere the 60 shoare, and drusel great suks of Fish before him: a and the Negrees runne along the shoare, as fast as they are able to follow him, and strike their starping Irons round about him, and kill great store of Fish, and leaue them vpon the Sand till the Fish shath done feeding; and then they come and gather their Fish vp. This Fish will many times runne himselfe on ground, but they

will prefently shous him off agains, which is as much as four or flue men can doe. They call him Embas, which is in their speech, at Dogge; and will by no means hur or kill any of them. Also, they vie in the Bayes and Riners, where should water is, to Fish with Mars, which A strange kind are maject tong Ressings and they make them of stachanders shough The Mars swim of sinhang with youn the Water, and Jung long Roshes langed vpon one edge of the Mars, and for they draw the Mar in compalle, as we did our Nets. The Rines fearing, the Rushes that hang downe, firing out of the sweets, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water, and falley on the Mar that lyeth, shar on the water and for the share of the shar

out of the wreet, and all other has that yet must be used. All stages, and it growth upon Four forts of they have four forts of come in Longo. The first, is called All stages, and it growth upon Four forts of a flavor as bigge as a Recela, and hath an agre a force long, and is like Hemp-feed. The fecond, is come in Longo.

To called All stages and the call the companion of the companion of the call the companion of the call the cal

a fraw as bigged. This is of great increase; for of one kernell there i prings four or three Can-s, called Mafembala. This is of great increase; for of one kernell there i prings four or three Can, which are tenne foote high, and they beare half ea pint go f. Conne a preces. This graine is as big ac Tares, and very good. Thirdly, they have another that groweth low like Graffe, and is very like Muftard-feed; and this is the best. They have also the great Guiney. Wheate, which they like Muftard-feed i and this is the best. They have also the great Guiney.

call Maj-impota. I his is the leat excemen.

They shaw very good Pedon, formewhat bigger therrours; but they grow not as ours do. For Two fortief the poodes grow on the rootes widermeath the ground; and by their feares they know when Pedon; how they does grow on the rootes vidermeath the ground; and by their feares they know when Pedon; they be ripe. They have another kind of Pedon, which they call Wandor. This is a little tree; they grow, and the fifty types that it is planted; it beareth no fritie but after in beareth fruit Time years, and the fifty types that it is planted; it beareth no fritie but after in beareth fruit Time years,

and then it is cut downe.

20 Their Plantan trees beare fluit but once, and then are cut downe; and out of the root there-

of fpring three or source young ones.

They have great flore of Hony, which hangeth in the Elecandy Trees. They gatherit with Their Hony, an hollow piece of Wood or Cheft, which they hang in the top of the Tree, and only ware it is full, by moake rewarding the laborious Creatures with robbery, exile, death,

If 1S Alicande or Elicondy Tree is very tail, and exceeding great; some as hig at truelue men the follower can fathame, spreading live on Oak; i some of them. are bollow, and from the thereal their state of the follower center place from the there of the fathame, there ere that they are Haphade attentioners of thousand in that the fills Region; particularly the state of the fathame, there ere four et his sound romains at one of those Trees, and theme receiving all their positions of the state o

dranging long threads, and even for that purpole. They dran Wine (as is faud) from the Palme Tree; there is another kind of Palme Tree, which beareth a fruite good for the stomacke, and for the Liuer moit most admirable.

One Creacitie was so bugge and greets, that he denoured an Alibamba, that is, a chained company of eight or time Statues: but the indigatible Iron paid hims his wages, and more there do the marrher of the state of the state

One Creachite was folyege and greety, that he denoured an Alibamba, that is, a chained company of eight or nine Staues: but the indigatible I rough paid bims, his wages, and marrieder du he marriberer, found after in his kelly, I have feete them watch their prey, haling in genner, Man or other Creature into the water. But one Souldher this wraps w fallower water, are which kinfe, tooke his Taker in the hely and flue him.

0			
			CHAP.

986

A report of the Kingdome of Congo, a Region of Affica: Gathered by PHILIPPO PIGAFETTA, out of the Discourses of Master Ep. VY ARD LOPES a Portugall, translated out of Italian into English, by Master ABRAHAM HART VVELL, and here abreviated.

The iourney by Sea from Lisbone to the Kingdome of Congo: Of the Are. Winds, Raines, Temperature thereof.



N the yeare 1,88, when Don Sebastian King of Portugal, embarked himselfe for the Conquest of the Kingdome of Morocco : Edward Lopes borne at Be. ror the Conquert of the and twentie miles diffant from Lisbone, neere von 10 the South shore of the River Tagus) sayled likewise in the moneth of April towards the hauen of Landa, structe in the Kingdome of Congo, in a ship cal-

Patasbe 1. a Brigandineor

a Pinnaffe. The Island of Madera. The Canaries. Ife of S, Az-

the *Etelij*, which blow from fome Northerly point vnto swenrie nine degrees South laritude. For about fixe mothey vie to fee off toward Brafil, to gaine the wind and returne to Cango. all of Eben-

The Port of De las Palmas. course of fry-

led S. Anthony, belonging to an Vncle of his, and charged with divers mar. chandifes for that Kingdome: And it was accompanied with a Parache (which is a finall veffell) whereunto the ship did continually yeeld good guard, and ministred great releefe, conducting and guiding the same with lights in the night time, to the end it should not lose the way, which and guiding net aim within igns in the migrounds of the contract means not the way, which the thippe it felfe did keepe. Hearined at the Island of Masters, belonging one to the King of Portugall, diffant from Lisbore about fixe hundred miles, where he remained fifteen edite; to furnish himselfe with fresh Victuall and Wine; which in great abundance groweth in that Island, yeared in mine opinion the best in the world, whereof they carry abroad great store 10 file of S. As. Island, yea and in mine opinion the per in the world, which of they early across great fore they, into discrst Countries, and especially into England. He prouded there also fundry other Confuses fections and Conference of Sugar, which in that Island are made and wrought both in great fections and contenues or sugar, which in that hands are those than who give both in great quantity, and also fingular excellency. From this Island they departed, leaning all the Case-ries belonging to Cafide, and tooke haven at one of the Islands of Cape Unite, called S. Anthony, without hauing any fight thereof before they were come vpon it; and from thence to another called S. Jacopo, which commandeth all the rest, and hatha Bishop & a Chaplaine in it, that rule and gouerne them : and here they prouided themselves againe of victuals. These Islands of Cape Verde governe them, and next drey promote the state of the state of the weether than the state of the Welf, together with the Cape or Promontorie which he termeth Corne whimmon, or the Illands Macania. ther with the Cape or Frommittee wines in Color of the Reflect, which we commonly call Fortunar. In these subands of Cape Fortunate the Portugate do often *Thefegene- arrive, and in those Countries do Trafficke with fundry marchandifes, as little balles of divercoloured Glasse, and other such things, wherein those people doe greatly delight, and Holland cloath, and Caps and Kniues, and coloured Clothes: In exchange whereof they bring backeagaine, Slaues, Waxe, Hony, with other kind of food, and Cotten-cloth of fundry colours.

Now the shippe called S. Anthony, holding on his course, met with the generall windes. and then turned their Prow and their Sayles, by North, and by North-west on the right hand towards the Kingdome of Congo. And fayling on-wards closely with the halfe shippe, they came in twelne dates and twelue nights, to the Island of S. Elena, not looking for the fame, nor thinking of it. This Island was so called, because on the Feast day of S. Helena, which falleth 50 neths together vpon the third day of May, it was by the Portugals first descried. And as it is very small, so is it (asit were) fingular by it selfe: for being situate in the height of sixteene degrees towards the Antarctike, it containeth in compasse nine miles about, and is farre distant from the firme

From the Island of S. Helena, they made fayle with the same weather, and so within the space of seuenteene daies came to the hauen of Lounda, which is in the Province of Congo, the winds being somewhat more calme then they were afore. This is a very fure and great haven, so called of an Island of the same name, whereof we shall speake hereatter.

There are two courses of sayling from the Island of Cape Verde to Loands; the one of them now declared, which being neuer vied afterwards, was at the first attempted and performed by the same shippe wherein Signer Odoardo went, being then guided by Francisco Mar- 60 tinez the Kings Pilot, a man very greatly experienced in those Seas, and the first that ever conducted veffell by that way : the other is atchieued by pailing along the Coalt of the firme Land ling to Landa.

The file of S.

From the Island of San I acomo, they came to Cape Das Palmas, and from thence direct themfelues to the Illand of San Thomas, which lyeth vnder the Equinoctiall; so called, because it

CHAP.4. S.2. Great Traffique. Christian Churches, Wormes hurtfull.

was discourred upon that day, wherein the Feast of that Apostle is vied to be celebrated. It is diffant from the firme Land, one hundred and eightie miles, right against the River. called Gaban, which is so termed because it is in shape very like to that kind of Vesture, that it is called a Gaban, or a Cloke.

anan, or a close.

The Haven thereof is fore-closed with an Hand that raiseth it selfe in the Channell of the Ri- The Haven of Her, whereinto the Portugals doe fayle with small Barkes from Saint Thomas Hand, carrying S. Thomas. thither fuch things as a faully they carrie to the Coast of Guinea, and from thence carrying backe with them Loorie, Waxe and Honey, Oyle of Palme, and Blacke-moore flaues. Neere to the Iland of Saint Thomas, towards the North lyeth another Hand, called the He of the Prince, diand or same roomate, towards the reacting the miles, being of the fame condition and Trafficke, Prince. that the Ile of Saint Thomas is, although in circuit some-what lesse. This lland of Saint Thomas The Ile of S. is in fastion almost round, and in breadth contayneth fixtie miles, and in compasse one hundred Thomas. and eightie. Very rich it is and of great trafficke, discouered at the first and conquered by the Great trafficke, Portugals, at fuch time as they began the conquest of the Indies. It hath divers Hauens, but the principall and chiefest of all, whereinto the Vessels arriving there, doe with-draw themselves. is in the place, where the Citie standeth.

The Hand breedeth an infinite deale of Sugar, and almost all kinds of victuals. In the Citie Sugar. The lland breedeth an infinite deale of Sugar, and almost all kinds of victuals. In the Citic Churches, there are some Churches, and a Bishop, with many Clerkes and one Chaplain or Priest. There is A Calle. also a Castle, with a Garrison and Artillerie in it, which beate vpon the Hauen, beeing a verie great and a fafe Port, where many thips may ride. But a very strange and admirable thing it is, that when the Portugals did first come thicher, there was no Sugar there planted, but they brought it thither from other Countries : as they did Ginger also, which tooke roote, and grew there in Ginger. most abundant manner. The soyle indeed is moyit, and as it were appropriated to foster the Suwar-cane, which without any other watering, multiplyeth of it felfe, and fructifieth infinitely: the reason whereof is, because the dew falleth there like raine, and moysteneth the Earth.

There are in this Iland abone feuentie Houses or Preffes for making of Sugar, and enery Preffe Seventie hou hath many Cottages about it as though it were a Village, and there may bee about fome three Sugarin. handred persons that are appointed for that kind of worke: They doe every yeare loade about fortie great ships with Sugar. True it is, indeed, that not long agoe the Wormes (as it were a Wormes plague to that Land) have devoured the roots of the Canes, and destroyed the fruits of their Sufall. gar, in such fort as now of the fortie ships, they doe not loade about fine or fixe Vessels with that Merchandize.

The Hand of Saint Thomas holdern Trafficke with the people that dwell in the firme Land. which do vitally refort to the mouthes or entries of their Rivers : The first whereof (to begin withall) is named the Riner of Fernando di Poo, that is to fay, of Fernando Pouldre, who did first The River and discouer the same, and lyeth in five degrees towards our Pole. Right against the mouth of it, ri- lland of Ferdiscouer the same, and lyeth in fine degrees towards our Pote. Right against the mouth of 1, 11 feel and fixe miles distant from it. The second River is made Pote feth an Iland of the same name, lying thirtie and fixe miles distant from it. The second River is made Pote feeth and same name, lying thirtie and fixe miles distant from it. 40 called Bora, that is to fay, Filth: The third, La riviera del Campo. The fourth, de San Benedette.

La Riviera del
and the fifth, that of Angra, which in the mouth of it hath an Iland, called de Corifeo, that is Campo.

to fay, Thunder. All these doe Trafficke the same Merchandizes, which we mentioned before, River, di Sam But to returne to the Voyage of Saint Thomas: departing from thence towards the South, we Benedetia. found the Cape of Lupo Gonzale, which standeth in the altitude of one degree beyond the Equi The He of noctiall towards the Pole Antarctike, one hundred and fine miles diffant from the foresaid Ile. Corifee And from thence they faile with Land winds, creeping still all along the Coast, and enery day The Cape of And from thence they faile with Lain witness, creeping in the same away in the case of the in Latine, Sapie, (in English, I know.) From whence if yee will goe through to the Hauen of Loands, ye must faile the length of one hundred and fourescore miles.

The Kingdome * of Congo in the middle part thereof, is distant from the Equinoctiall neth these towerds the Pole Antarctike (iust where the Citie called Congo doth lye) feuen degrees and two cond chapter thirds : fo that it standeth under the Region which ancient Writers thought to be unhabitable, Books, which and called it Zona Torrida.

The habitation there is exceeding good, the Ayre beyond all credit temperate, the Winter for breuitiealnothing fo rough, but is rather like Autumne in Rome. The people vie no Furres, nor change of tered, and apparell, they come not neere the fire, neither is the cold in the tops of the Mountaynes greating the Plaines that generally in Winter time the Aven is more horselvest longer Parater then that which is in the Plaines : but generally in Winter time, the Ayre is more hot then it is in Summer, by reason of their continual raines, and especially about two houres before and The temperaafter noone, so that it can hardly be endured. The men are blacke, and so are the women, and ture of the 60 fome of them also somewhat inclining to the colour of the wild Oline. Their hayre is blacke Kingdome. and curled, and some also red. The stature of the men is of an indifferent bignesse, and excepting their blacknesse they are very like to the Portugals. The apples of their eyes are of divers p colours, blacke and of the colour of the Sea. Their lips are not thicke, as the Nubians and other Negroes are: and so likewise their countenances are some fat, some leane, and some betweene both, as in our Countries there are, and not as the Negroes of Nubia and Guinea, which are very

Small diffe. sense between their dayes and nights. Their Winter and Summer.

deformed. Their nights and their dayes doe not greatly differ, for in all the whole years we shall not discerne the difference betweene them to bee more then a quarter of an houre,

The Winter in this Countrey (to speake at large) beginneth at the same time, that our iping heere beginneth , that is to fay , when the Sunne entreth into the Nor. therne Signes, in the moneth of March. And at the fame time that wee have our Winter , when the Sunne entreth into the Southerne Signes in the moneth of September. ber, then beginneth their Summer. In their Winter it rayneth five monethes almost continual ly, that is to fay, in Aprill, May, Iune, Iuly and August. Of faire dayes they have but a few. ly, that is to izy, in aprim, may, now, any any angular because the range and an aprim, may, now and because the range falleth for greatly, and the drops of itzer 60 big, as it is a wonder to fee. These waters doe maruellously supple the ground, which is then very dry, by reason of the heate of 10 the Summer past, wherein it neuer rayneth for the space of fixe monethes together, and after the ground is full, and as it were ingorged with water, then do the Rivers swell beyond all credit, and are so replenished with troubled waters, that all the Countrey is surrounded by them.

The winds in

The winds which blow in these Moones through all this Region, are the very selfe-same this Countrey that Callar calleth by a Greeke word Etely, that is to lay, Ordinary enery yeare : whereby are in Winter time meant those wind, that in the Card are noted from the North to the West, and from the North to the North-east. These winds do drive the Cloudes to the huge and high mountaynes, wherewhon they rush with very great violence, and being there stayed of their owne nature, they are afterwards melted into water. So that when it is likely to raine, you hall fee the Cloudes funding (as it were) youn the tops of their highest hils.

The cause of ward.

And hence ariseth the increasing and augmentation of the Rivers that spring in Ethiopia. to increase of and especially of Nilm and others, that discharge themselves into the East and West Ocean. Nilus, and o- And in the Kingdome of Congo and Guines, through which runneth the River Niger, fo called the Ruers in by the ancient Writers; and by the new, termed Senega, you shall fee the faid River increase at Ath open.

The Riner Ni- the very felic-fame time that Nilm doth; but indeed carrieth his waters towards the West. digo, or Serge, rectly against the Ilands of Cape Verde, whereas Nilse runneth by the lle of Merce in Egypt torunnerth West- wards the North, refreshing and watering all those Regions that are full of scorching Heates. and Wilderneifes, and Deferts.

Nilse runneth North-ward

Now. for as much as in the Regions of Congo and Athiopia, it is alwayes woont to raine e-Rotte-water. It seldome rais ry years at a certaine set time, the swelling and ouer-slowing of the Rivers there, is of no great nest in Erre confideration, nor any flrange accident to make account of, But in the Countries, that are tame but onely in diffant and very dry, as in Egypt, where it neuer raineth (fauing onely in Alexandria, and the Alexandria and Territories thereof) it is accounted a manuellous matter, to fee every years to great a quantitie the rains which. there fallere of thicke troubled water come vpon them, from places fo remote, at a certaine let time, withvinhollome. out miffing : which water doth quicken the ground, and ministreth food both to man and

> This is then the cause of the increase of Nilm, and other Rivers in that Climate, whereof the Ancients of olde times made to great doubt, and invented to many Fables and Errours.

But in their Summer, which is our Winner, there blow other winds that are quite opposite 40 Summer time, to the former, even in Diametro, and are noted in the Carde, from the South to the Southeast, which out of all question must needs be cold, because they breathe from the contrarie Pole Ans. arctike, and coole all those Countries, even for all the World as our winds in Summer doe coole our Countries. And whereas, there with them, these winds doe make the Ayre very faire and cleere, fo doe they never come vate vs. but they bring with them great flore of raine.

And certainly, if the breath of thefe winds did not refresh and coole thefe Countries of A. thiopia, and Congo, and other places neere about them, it were not possible for them to endure the heate, considering that even in the night time they are constrayned to hang two coverings Cooling of hot Ouer them to keepe away the heate. The same cooling and refreshing by winds, is common also Regions bythe to the Inhabitants of the Ile of Candie, and of the Hands in Archipelago, and of Cyprus, and of so Afia the leffe, and of Soria, and of Egypt, which doe line (as it were) with this refreshing of the fore-faid winds of the North-weit, and of the West : so that they may well bee called as they are in Greeke, Zephers, quasi Componer, breeders of life.

brecze or

Let it be also remembred, that in the mountaines of Athiopia, and of Congo, and the Regions neere adjoyning, there falleth no Snow, neither is there any at all in the very tops of them, fauing onely towards the Cape of Good Hope, and certaine other hils, which the Portugals call, Sierra Neuada, that is to fay, the Snowie Mountaines. Neither is there any Ice or Snow to bee found in all the Countrey of Congo, which would be better efteemed there then Gold, to mingle No snow nor Ice in Ethicia with their drinkes: So that the Ruers there doe not fwell and increase by melting of Snow, but because the raine doth fall out of the Cloudes for five whole Moones continually together, 60 that is to fay, in Aprill, May, June, July, and August : the first raine sometimes beginning on the fifteenth day, and sometimes after. And this is the cause why the new waters of Nilm, which are so greatly defired and expected by the Inhabitants there, doe arrive sooner or later in). II.

Of she circuit of the Kingdome of Congo, and of the borders and confines thereof; As also of diners bordering Nations: and remarke. able, Rarities therein.

He Kingdome of Congo, is diftinguished by four borders: The first, of the West, which is watered with the Ocean Sea : The fecond, of the North : The third, of the Eaft,

and the last, which is towards the South. . And to beginne with the border lying apon the Sea, the first part of it is in the Bay; The Westerne called Sone delle Vacche, and is fituate in the height of thirteene degrees vpon the Antarchike- border of Gide, and firetchethall along the Coast unto foure degrees and a halfe on the North-fide, netre to The Bay of the Equinoctiall; which space contayneth six hundred and thirtie miles. This Seno delle Vacebe, is Cowes. a Hauen but of a moderate bignesse, and yet a good one, and able to receive any hip that arrineth. It is called Seno delle Vacche, that is to lay, The Bay of Cowes, because thereabouts there are patturing very many Herds of that king of Carele, The Countrey is plaine, and aboundeth wih allmanner of victuals, and there you shall find some kind of Metals to be publikely fold. especially filuer, and it is subject to the King of Angola.

A little more forward lyeth the River Bengleli, where a certaine Lord, beeing subject to the The River King of Angela, doth specially command; and about the said River is a great compasse of, Benglas, Countrey, much like to the former. And a little further runneth the River Songe, fo called by The River the Portugals: wherein you may fayle flue and twentie miles vpwards in a Countrey also like Songa.

Then followeth the River Coanza , which iffueth out of a little Lake , fed by a certaine Ri- The River ner that floweth out of a great Lake, being the chiefe and principall Spring or Head of Nilms. Coarse. whereof in the other part of this Discourse wee shall have occasion to write. Comera, at the mouth of it is two miles broad, and you may fayle with small Barkes vpwards against the

ffreame a bout one hundred miles, but hath no Hauen. And here it is to bee noted, that all this 30 Country which we have here described, was woont to be subject to the King of Congo: but awhile agoe the Gouernour of that Countrey is become the absolute Lord thereof, and professeth himlelfe to be a friend to the King of Congo, but not his Vaffall : and yet fometimes he fendeth

the King some Present, in manner of a tribute. . . Beyond the River Coanza, is the Hauen of Lounds, being in tendegrees, made (as it is faid) The Hand of by a certaine Hand, called Loanda, which fignifieth in that Language, Bald, or Shauen; because it Loanda, is a Countrey without any hils and very low : for, indeed, is fcarce rayleth it felie about the

Sea. This Iland was framed of the fand and durt of the Sea, and of the River Coanza , whole waves meeting together, and the filthy matter finking downe there to the bottome, in continuance of time it grew to be an Iland. It may be about twentie miles long, and one mile broad at the most, and in some places but onely a bow shoot. But it is a maruellous thing, that in such a fandie ground, if you shall digge to the depth of two or three hand-breadthes, you shall find fweet water, the beff in all thoie Countries. Wherein also there is a very ftrange effect, that Strange water when the Ocean ebbeth, this water becommeth somewhat falt, but when it floweth to the top, it is most sweet. A thing that falleth out also in the Hand of Cadis in Spaine, by the report and

This Iland is the Mine of all the Money which the King of Congo spendeth, and all the peo- The money of ple thereabouts. For youn the shoares you shall have certaine women, that vie to dive and ducke Congo. into the Sea, two yards deepe and more, and fill their baskets with fand, and afterwards divide the gravell from certaine small Shel-fishes that are among it, which are called Lumache: and so when these Lumache are severed by themselves, then doe they picke out the Males from the Females, which they may eafily doe, because the Female is more fine then the Male, and greatly. effeemed for her colour, which is very neat, bright and pleasant to the fight. These Lamache doe breed in all the shoares of the Kingdome of Congo, but the best of all are those of Lounda, of Lounda,

because they looke very fine, and of a very bright colour, some gray or ash-coloured, and some of other colours not fo precious. And here you must note that gold and silver and metall is not of any estimation, nor in vie of money in their Countries, but onely their Lumache: fo that neither with gold nor filter, in Nomerall-momaffe or in coine you shall buy any thing there, but with these Lumache you shall buy both gold neyand filuer, or any thing elie,

In this Iland there are feuen or eight Townes, called in that Countrey Language, Libata, the principall whereof is Spirito Sancto; and therein dwelleth the Governour which is fent from Congo, to minister lustice and to gather the treasure of the moneyes of these Lumache. Here Spirito Santo. are also Goates and Sheepe, and Bores in great numbers, which being tame at the first, doe afterwards become wild and line in the Woods. Here groweth also a tree, called Enzanda, which garda.

Nnnnn 2

is a great one and alwayes greene, and endued with a fingular qualitie. For from the boushes of it that forout vowards, there hang downe certaine threeds (as it were) which creeping into the Earth doe take roots, and out from these roots doe rise other trees, and so they multiply, Cloth made of And within the outmost barke thereof, there groweth a certaine kind of Pill like fine Linnen thebarke of a which being beaten and cleanfed, they spread out in length and in breadth, and therewith they cloath their men and women, that are of the baselt fort.

çço

In this Iland they have certaine veffels made of the bodies of Palme-trees, joyned together Their Boats or and framed after the manner of our Boates, with a prow and a sterne, wherein they passe from place to place, both with Oares and Sayles. In these Boates they vie to fish about the Rivers. which are indeed exceeding full of fish, and sometime also they will goe ouer to the firme 10

Shel-fithes growing on

In that part of this Iland, which is towards the maine Land, in certaine low places there srow certaine crees (which when the water of the Ocean ebbeth) discouer themselues: and at the feet thereof you shall find certaine other Shel-fishes cleaning as fast to the trees as may bee . hauing within them a great fish as bigge as a mans hand, and very good meate. The people of the trees.

Ambit smaller. Country know them very well, and call them Ambit smaller, that is to fay, The fish of the Rocke. The fiels of the lefifies, they vie to burne, and thereof make very good Lime to build withall. And being like the corke of barke of the tree, which is called Manghi, they dreffe their Oxe-hides withall, to make their shoee soles the ftronger.

Countries.

To be briefe, this Iland bringeth forth neither Come nor Wine, but there is great flore of vimoney is red Quall brought thither from all parts thereabouts, to fetch away thefe Lamache, For as in all other places all things may be had for money of metall, fo all things here are had for Lumache. Whereby may be noted, that not onely here in this Kingdome of Congo, but also in her Neighbour . Athionia and in Africa, and in the Kingdome of China, and certaine others of the Indies: they wie moneyes of other matter then of metall, that is to fay, neither gold, nor filter, nor copper, norany other mixture tempered of thefe.

Penner mos

For in Ethiopia, their money is Pepper : and in the Kingdome of Tombuto, which is about the River Niver, otherwise called Senega, their money is Cockles or Shel-fish; and among the Azanaghi, their moneyer are Porcellette : and in the Kingdome of Bengala, likewife they vie Percellette, and metall together. In China they have certaine Shel-fishes, called also Percellette, 30 which they vie for their money : and in other places Paper stamped with the Kings Seale, and the barkes of the tree called Gelfomora.

Great flore of Neere to this Iland towards the outward Coast to the Sea, there swimme an innumerable fort of Whales, that looke blacke, and fighting one with another doe kill themselves; which afterwards being by the waves cast vp vpon the shoare, as bigge as a midling Merchants ship; the Negroes to forth with their Boats to fetch them, and to take the Oyle out of them, which being mingled with Pitch they vie to trimme their Veffels withall. Vpon the ridges or backs of their creatures; there grow many Shel-fishes, made like Snailes, Cockles, and Whelkes: whereof Signer Odoar to affirmed, that he had feene great ftore. He was alfo of opinion that Amber commeth not from these fishes. For ouer all the Coast of Congo, where there is an infinite number of them, you shall not find either Ambergriz, or any other Amber, blacke or white in any place.

Villadi Sm

Voon the firme Land directly ouer against the Hand is a Towne, called Villa di San Paulo , altogether inhabited with Portugals, and their Wiues, which they brought with them out of Spaine; and yet it is not fortified. All this Channell is very full of fifth, especially of Sardmaes, and of Anchiones; whereof there is fo great store, that in the Winter time they will of themfelues leape up to Land. Other kinds of most excellent fishes there are, as Soles, and Sturgeons, and Barbelles, and all manner of daintie fish; and great Crabs, in firange abundance, and all very wholfome : to that the greatest part of the people that dwell about the bankes there, doe

The River The River Danie.

Th. River

The River

The River

The River The Oteire of

Into this Channell runneth the River called Bengo, which is a very great one, and navigable 50 vpwards twentie fine miles. This River with that other of Comza, whereof I told you before, do make the Ile of Loanda, because when their waters doe meete together, they leave their fand & filth behind them, and so increase the Iland. There runneth also into itanother great River called Dande, which will receive Vessels of an hundred tunne : and then another Riner called Lemba, which neither hath Hauen, neither doe any ships enter into it. Very neere vnto this there is also another River called Ozone, which issueth out of the same Lake, whence Nilm likewise foringeth, and it hath a Hauen. Next to Ozone, there is another called Loze, without any Hauen : and then another great one with a Hauen called Ambriz, which runneth within foure leagues neere to the Royall Citie of Congo. Last of all, is the River Lelanda, which fignifieth a Trowt fift, and watereth the roots of that great Hill, whereon the Palace of Congo Standeth, 60 called by the Portugals, the Oteiro. This River Lelunda, fpringeth out of the fame Lake, from whence Comza iffueth, and taketh into it by the way another River, that commeth from the great Lake : and when it doth not raine, then you may paffe ouer Lelanda on foot, because it hath fo little ftore of water in it.

Next voto this is the Zaire, a huge River and a large, and indeed the greatest in all the King. The River dome of Congo. The original of this River commeth out of three Lakes : one is the great Lake Zaree from whence Nilus ipringeth; the fecond, is the little Lake about mentioned; and the third, is the second great Lake which Nilus engendreth. And certainly, when you will consider the abundance of water that is in this River, you will fay, that there was no need to have any fewer or leffer springs to make so huge a streame as this carrieth. For in the very mouth of it, which is the onely entrance into it; the River is eight and twentie miles broad, and when it is in the Huge breadth height of his increase he runneth fresh water fortie or fiftie miles into the Sea, and sometimes Zarg. eightie, so that the passengers doe refresh themselves withall, and by the troublesomenesse of the 10 water they know the place where they are. It is naugable vpwards with great Barkes about fire and twentie miles, vntill you come to a certaine straight betweene the Rockes, where it falleth, with fuch a horrible noyfe, that it may be heard almost eight miles. And this place is Catarates called by the Portugals, Cachninera, that is to fay, a Fall, or a Cataract, like to the Cataracts of Nilm. Betweene the mouth of this River, and the fall thereof, there are divers great Hands Certaine L well inhabited with Townes, and Lords obedient to the King of Congo, which for times for the

CHAP.4. S.2. Water falls or Cataracts, Water-borles. Fishes Rovall

great enrastie that is among them, doe warre one against another in certaine Boats, hollowed out of a flocke of a tree, which is of an vnmeasurable bignesse, and these Boats they call Lungo, Boats. The greatest Boates that they have, are made of a certaine tree, called Licondo, which is fo The tree Ligreat, that fixe men cannot compafie it with their armes, and is in length of proportion answerable to the thicknesse, so that one of them will carrie about two hundred persons. They row 20 thefe Boates with their Oares, which are not tyed to any loopes, but they hold them at liberty in their hands, and move the water therewith at pleasure. Every man hath his Oare and his

Bow, and when they fight together they lay downe their Oare and take their Bow, Neither do they vie any other Rudders to turne and gouerne their Boats, but onely their Oares. The first of these llands, which is but a little one, is called, the Ile of Horses, because there The Ile of

are bred and brought up in it great store of those creatures that the Greekes call Hippopotami, that Horses. is to fay Water-horfes. In a certaine Village within this Iland doe the Portugals dwell, having 30 withdrawne themselues thither for their better securitie. They have their Veffels to transport them over the water to the firme Land, upon the South banke of the River, which Land is calthem oper the water to the limit below, you have the drive therein.

The Hauen led the Hauen of Punds, where many this post or fied that arrive therein.

In this River there are living divers kinds of creatures, and namely mightie great Crocodiles.

Crocodiles.

which the Countrey people there, call Caman, and Water-horfes aboue named: And another Water-horfes, kind of creature, that hath (as it were) two hands, and a tayle like a Target, which is called, Ambize Angulo, that is to fay, a Hog-fish, because it is as fat as a Porke. The flesh of it is very Hog-fish. good, and thereof they make Lard, and so keepe it : neither hath it the fauour or taste of a fiss, alchough it be a fish. It never goeth out from the fresh water, but feedeth vpon the graffe that groweth on the bankes, and hath a mouth like the muzzell of an Oxe. There are of these fifthes. 40 that weigh fine hundred pounds apiece.

The fishermen vie to take them in their little Boats, by marking the places where they feed, and then with their hookes and forkes, striking and wounding them, they draw them dead forth of the water : and when they have cut them in pieces, they carrie them to the King. For whofoeuer doth not so, incurreth the penaltie of death', and so doe they likewise that take the Trowt, and the Tench, and another fish called Cacongo, which is shaped after the likenesse of a Salmon, fauing that it is not red : but indeed so fat it is, that it quencheth out the fire whiles it is rofted or broyled. Other fishes also there are that are called Fishes Royall, which are carried Fishes Royall, to the King, vpon very seuere and rigorous punishments.

Beyond this River of Congo, there commeth downe another River, which the Portugals call, Cacongo, a fith La Baia de las Almadias, that is to say, the Gulfe of Barkes, because there are great store of them, Le Baia de las 50 that are made there, by reason of the abundance of Woods and Trees that grow thereabouts, Almadian, which are fit for that vie, and wherewith all the Countries round about doe furnish themselues. At the mouth of this Bay there are three Ilands, one great Ile in the middle of the Channell, which maketh a convenient Hauen for small Vessels, and two other lesse, but none of them in-

A little higher tunneth another streame, not very great, which is called, De las Barreras Rossa. The incredelas of the red Clay-pits, because it showesh from among oceratine Rockes of Hils, whose Earth is Barreras verdwed with a red colour-where allot there is a very high Mannataine, called be the Department of the state of the dyed with a red colour: where also there is a very high Mountaine, called by the Portugals, La Surra Complida, that is to fay, the long Mountaine.

And yet going up a little further, there are two Gulfes of the Sea in the likenesse of a paire 60 of Spectacles, wherein is a good Hauen, called La Baia d'Aluaro Gonzales, that is, The Gulfe Baia d'Aluaro of Aluxo Gonzales. Beyond all these, are certaine hils and shoares, not worth the remem-Gonzeles. brance, vntill you come to the Promontorie, that is called by the Portugals, Capo de Ca Capade Cateterina, which is the border of the Kingdome of Congo towards the Equinoctiall, and is diffant rine. from the Equinoctiall Line two degrees and a halte, which is one hundred and fittie Italian

The Hauen of

Nnnnn 3 Now The Northern

Now from Cape De Caterina on the North fide, beginneth another Border or Coast of the Kinzdome of Congo, which Eastward stretcheth it selfe to the place where the River Viende joyneth with the River Zaire, contayning the space of fixe hundred miles and more. Bevond this Coast of Congo towards the North, and under the Equinoctiall Line upon the Sea shoare. and about two hundred miles within Land, (comprehending in that reckoning the aforefaid Gulfe of Lope Gonzales) the People called the Bramus doe inhabite in a Countrey, that is now The Kingdom called the King Jome of Loango; and the King thereof, Mani Loango, that is to fay, The King of Loango, The Country hath great abundance of Elephants, whole teeth they exchange for Iron, whereof they make their Arrow heads, their Knives, and fuch other inftruments. In this Countrie alfo, they we ue certaine Cloth of the leaves of Palme-trees, in fundrie forts: as we pre

shall tell you in some other place of this narration. The People of The King of Loange is in amitie with the King of Conge, and the report is, that in times naft Longo circum- he was his vasfall. The People are circumcifed after the manner of the Hebrews, like as also the rest of the Nations in those Countries vie to be. Beyond the Kingdome of Loange, are the People called Anzigues, of whom wee shall deliver

vnto you a historie, which in trueth is very strange, and almost incredible, for the beastly and cruell custome that they wie in eating mans flesh; yea, and that of the neerest kinf-folkes they haue. This Countrey towards the Sea on the West, bordereth vpon the People of Anibus; and towards the North, vpon other Nations of Africa, and the Wildernesse of Nubia; and towards the East, upon the second great Lake, from whence the River of Congo springeth, in that Part 20 which is called Anzicana; and from the Kingdome of Congo, it is divided by the River Zaire; wherein there are many Ilands (as before is told you) scattered from the Lake downewards. and some of them belonging to the Dominion of the Anzignes, by which River also they doe traffique with the People of Congo. In this Kingdome of the Anzigues, there are many Mines of Copper; and great quantitie of Sanders, both red and grey: the red is called Tamilla, and the grey (which is the better efteemed) is called Chicongo, whereof they make a powder of a very iweet fmell, and diners medicines. They doe also mingle it with the Oyle of Palme-tree, and fo anounting all their bodies over withall, they preserve themselves in health. But the Portasale vie it being tempered with Vinegar, which they lay vpon their pulses, and so heale the Medicines for French Poxe, which they call in that Language, Chizangua, Some doe affirme, that this grey 30 the French Poxe, Sanders is the very Lignum Aquile, that groweth in India: and Signer Odeards affirmed, Poxe.

Forthekeds that the Persuadi have proved it for the Read-ache, by laying it on the coales, and taking the fmoake of it. The pith and innermost part of the Tree is the best, but the outter part is of no

much Cloth of Silke, whereof wee will discourse more hereafter. The People are subject to a

King that hath other Princes wader him. They are very active and warlike. They are readie to take Armes; and doe fight on foot. Their weapons are different from the weapons of all other

people round about them : for, their Bowes are small and short, made of wood, and wrapped about with Serpents skins of divers colours, and so smoothly wrought, that you would thinke to them to be all one with the wood : and this they doe, both to make the Bowe stronger, and also to hold it the faster. Their Strings are of little woodden twigs like reeds, not hollow within. but found and pliable, and very daintie; fuch as the Canalieros of Portugali doe earrie in their hands to beate their Palfreyes withall. They are of an alh-colour, and of a Lion-tawney. formewhat rending to blacke. They grow in the Countrey of the Anzigues, and also in the Their Arrows, Kingdome of Bengala, through which the River Ganges runneth. Their Arrowes are short and flender, and of a very hard wood, and they carrie them on their Bow-hand. They are so quicke in theoring, that holding eight and twentie Shafts or more in their Bow-hand, they will shoot

and discharge them all, before the first Arrow light on the ground: yea, and sometimes there

They make great store of Linnen of the Palme-tree, both of fundrie forts and colours, and

have beene feene divers front Archers, that have killed birds as they flie in the aire. Other weapons also they make, as Axes and Hatchets, which they vse and frame after a firange manner: for, the handle is shorter by the halfe then the Iron is, and at the lowest end of it there is a pommell, for the faster holding of it in the hand; and all couered ouer with the forefaid skinne of a Serpent. In the vppermoft end of it, is the Iron very bright and shining, fastned to the wood with plates of Copper, in the manner of two nailes, as long as the handle: it hath two edges, the one cutteth like a Hatchet, and maketh a wound after the fashion of an halfe roundell; the other is a Hammer. When they fight with their Enemies, or defend themfelues from their Arrowes, they are so exercised with a wonderfull speed and nimblenesse to manage their weapons, that whirling them round about, as it were in a circle, they keepe all that compasse of the ayre which is before them; so that when the Enemie shooteth, and the 60 Arrow beginne to fall, it lighteth upon the Hatchet, being fo fwiftly and vehemently whirled about, that it breaketh the force of the Arrow, and fo it is repulsed: then doe they hang the Hatchet vpon their shoulder, and begin to shoot themselves. They have also certaine short Dag-

gers, with sheaths of the Serpents skins, made like Kniues with an haft vnto them, which they

wie to weare acroffe. Their Girdles are of divers forts; but the Merr of warre have their Girdles of Elephants skin, three good fingers broad : and because they are at the first two fingers thicke. and very hard to handle handfomely, by the heat of the fire they bow them round, and fo with certaine buttons tye them ouerthwart about them. The men are very active and nimble, and Thenaure of leape up and downe the Mountaines like Goats. Couragious they are and contenne death: the Asques. men of great simplicitie, loy tre, and fidelitie, and fuch as the Portugals doe trust more then V in elotious any other. In so much as Signor Odoardo was wont to say, that if these Anzichi would become madnesse. Christians (being of so great fidelitie, finceritie, loyaltie, and simplicitie, that they will offer themselues to death, for the glorie of the world, and to please their Lords will not sticke to give their owne fielh to bee denoured) then would they with a farte better heart and courage indure martyrdome, for the name of our Redeemer lefus Chrift, and would most honou-

rably maintaine our Faith and Religion, with their good tettimonie, and example against the

Moreover, the faid Signor Odoardo did likewife affirme, that there was no converting with Their metthem, because they were a farage and beaftly people, faring onely in respect that they come and chandite, traffique in Congo, bringing thicher with them Slaues, both of their owne Nation, and also our of Nubia (whereupon they doe border) and linnen Cloth (whereof we will tell you hereafter,) and Elephants teeth: in exchange of which chaffare they recarrie home with them, Sal, and thele Limache, which they vie in stead of money and Coyne; and another greater kind of Lu-20 mache, which come from the lle of Saint Thomas, and which they vie to weare for Brooches to make themselves fine and gallant withall. Other Merchandises, also they carrie backe with them, which are brought out of Portugall, as Silkes, Linnen, and Glasses, and such like. They vie Citeumeison. to circumcife themselves. And another foolish custome they have; both men and women, as well The Amici of the Nobilitie, as of the Commonaltie, even from their childhood, to marke their faces with are circumci-

fundrie dafhes made with a knife, as in due place shall be further shewed vinto vou. They keepe a Shambles of mans fiesh as they doe in these Countries for Beefe and other Vi-Anals. For their Enemies whom they take in the Warres , they eate ; and also their Slaves, at A thombesot they can have a good market for them, they fell: or if they cannot, then they deliver them to mans flesh. the Butchers, to be cut in pieces, and fo fold, to be rofted or boiled. And (that which a maruel-30 lous historie to report) some of them being wearie of their lines, and some of them even for valour of courage, and to flew themselves stout and venturous, thinking it to bee a great honour vnto them, if they runne into voluntarie death, thereby to flew that they have a speciall con- Blind subietempt of this life, will offer themselves to the burcherle, as faithfull subjects to their Princes. Chon, for whose sakes , that they may seeme desirous to doe them notable service, they doe not onely deliver themselves to bee devoured by them, but also their Slaves, when they are fat and well fed, they doe kill and eate them. True it is, that many Nations there are, that feed upon mans fleth, as in the East Endier, and in Brafill, and in other places: but that is onely the fleth of A ftrange their adverfaries and enemies, but to eate the fielh of their owne friends, and fubicets, and kinfl.

folkes, it is without all example in any place of the World, fauing onely in this Nation of the

40 Anzichi.

The or linarie apparell of these people is thus: The common fort goe naked from the girdle Their Apparel vpwards, and without any thing vpon their heads, having their haire truffed up, and corled. The Noblemen are apparelled in Silkes and other Cloth, and weare upon their heads, blue and red, and blacke colours, and Hats and Hoods of Portugall Veluet, and other kinds of Caps vivall in that Countrie. And indeed, they are all defirous to have their apparell handfome and neat, as their abilitie will suffer them. The women are all couered from top to toe, after the manner of Africa. The poorer fort of them doe gird them telues close from the girdle downewards. The Noble women and fuch as are of wealth, doe weare certaine Mantles, which they cast oper their heads, but keepe their faces open and at libertie : and Shooes they have on their feet, but 50 the poore goe bare-foot. They goe very quicke and lightfome. Their flature is comely, and their conditions faire and commendable. Their Language is altogether different from the Lan- Their Language of Congo, and yet the Anzichi will learne the Language or Congo very foone and eafily, Suisebecause it is the plainer Tongue : but the People of Congo doe very hardly learne the Language of the Anzichi. And when I once demanded what their Religion was, it was told mee they were Gentiles, and that was all that I could learne of them.

The East Coast of the Kingdome of Congo, beginneth (as we have told you) at the meeting border of of the River Vumba, and the River of Zaire; and so with a line drawne towards the South in Congo, equall distance from the River Nilus, which lieth on the left hand, it taketh vp a great Mountaine which is very high, and not inhabited in the tops thereof, called the Mountaine of Crystall, fiall. 6 because there is in it great quantitie of Cryffall, both of the Mountaine and of the Cliffe, and of The Mounall forts. And then passing on farther, includeth the Hills that are called Sierras de Sol, that is to taines of the fay, the Hills of the Sunne, because they are exceeding high. And yet it never floweth pon The Mounthem, neither doe they beare any thing, but are very bare and without any trees at all. On the taines of Salleft hand there arise other Hills, called the Hills of Sal-Nitrum, because there is in them great Nitrum.

beaftly cuftom

The Eafterne

flore of that Minerall. And so cutting ouer the River Berbela, that commeth out of the first Lake, there endeth the ancient bound of the Kingdome of Congo on the East.

Thus then the East Coast of this Kingdome is derived from the meeting of the two forefaid Rivers, Vumba and Zaire; vntill you come to the lake Achelunda , and to the Countrie of Malemba; contayning the space of fixe hundred miles. From this line which is drawne in the Easterne Coast of Congo to the River Nilus, and to the two Lakes (whereof mention shall be made in convenient place) there is the space of one hundred and fiftie miles of ground well inhabited, and good ftore of Hills , which doe yeeld fundrie Metals , with much Linnen, and Cloth of the Palme tree.

Joth of the raimetree.

And feeing wee are now come to this point of this discourse, it will be very necessarie to demaking sinkes, clare vinto you the maruellous Arte which the people of this Countrie, and other places thereabouts doe vie in making Clothes of fundrie forts, as Veluets shorne and vishorne. Cloth of Tiffue, Sattins, Taffata, Damaskes, Sarcenets, and fuch like, not of any filken Stuffe, (for they have no knowledge of the Silke-wormes at all, although some of their apparell bee made of Silke that is brought thither from our Countries.) But they weave their Clothes afore-named of the leanes of Palme-trees, which Trees they alwaies keepe under and low to the ground. every yeere cutting them, and watering them, to the end they may grow small and tender againft the new Spring. Out of these leaves, being cleansed and purged after their manner, they draw forth their threeds, which are all very fine and daintie, and all of one evennesse, she uing that those which are longest, are best esteemed : for, of those they weather greatest 20 pieces. These Stuffes they worke of divers fashions, as some with a nappe vpon them like Veluet, on both fides, and other Cloth, called Damaskes, branched with leaves, and fuch other things; and the Broccati, which are called High and Low, and are farre more precious then ours are. This kind of Cloth no man may weare but the King, and such as it pleafeth him. The greatelf pieces are of these Broccati: for they containe in length foure or five spans; and in breadth, three or foure spannes, and are called Incorimbas, by the name of the Countrey where it growthree of four primes, and are cause the remains of the values are called Enfactor, of the fame bignefic, and the Damaskes, Infalse; and the Rain, Marian; and the Zendad; Tangar; and the Ormofine, Enganders of the figure of the figure for of the feet futures they have greater pieces, which are wrough Enganders. by the Anzichi; and are fixe spannes long, and sue spannes broad, wherewith eury man may apparell himselfe according to his abilitie. Besides that, they are very thicke and sound to keep out the water, and yet very light to weare. The Portugals have lately begun to vie them for Tents and Boothes, which doe maniellously result both water and wind.

Coaft.

This Easterne Coast (as it is before fet downe) endeth in the mountaine, called Serras de Plata, that is, the Mountaines of Silver; and there beginneth the fourth and last border of the Kingdome of Congo, towards the South, that is to fay, from the forefaid Mountaine to the Bay of Cowes on the West containing in length the space of soure hundred and fiftie miles. And this Southerne Line doth part the Kingdome of Augola in the middle, and leaueth on the left hand of it the foresaid Mountaines of Silver; and farther beyond them towards the South, the Kingdome of Marama; which is a great Kingdome, very mightie, and absolute of it selfe, and fometimes in amitie, and fometimes at vtter enmitie with the Kingdome of Angola.

The King of

The King of Matama is in Religion a Gentile, and his Kingdome stretcheth towards the South to the River Branagal, and neere to the Mountaines, commonly called the Mountaines of the Moone; and towards the East bordereth on the Westerne bankes of the River Bagamidri, and fo croffeth ouer the River Coari.

This Countrie aboundeth in Vaults of Crystall and other Metals, and all manner of victuall, and good aire. And although the people thereof, and their neighbour borderers doe traffique together: Yet the King of Matama, and the King of Angola, doe oftentimes warre one against the other, as we told you before: And this River Bagamidri divideth the Kingdome of Matapa from the Kingdome of Monomata, which is towards the East, and whereof lobn de Barros doth most largely discourse, in the first Chapter of his tenth Booke.

Of Angola, the Warres betwixt Congo and Angola: their manner of warfare. The present Kingdome of Congo bounded. Of Bamba, one of the fixe Princes of Congo, and the Creatures therein.

Owards the Sea-coaft there are diners Lords, that take upon them the Title of Kings: 60 but indeed they are of very base and slender estate : Neither are there any Ports or Hauens of any account or name in the Rivers there. And now, for a much as we have oftentimes made mention of the Kingdome of Angola, this will bee a very conmenient place for vs to intreat thereof; because it hath beene heretofore said, that the King of

Angela, being in times past but a Gouernour or Deputie vader the King of Congo; although, The King of fince that time he is become a Christian, he made himselfe a free and an absolute Prince, and v- Angola freeth funce that time he is recome and govern-funce that the control of the first state of the ment voder another. And to afterwards in time conquered other Countries thereabouts; infomuch, as he is now growne to be a great Prince, and a rich, and in power little inferiour to the Congo. fince King of Congo himselie; and therefore either payeth tribute, or refuleth to pay tribute vinto him, Congo received euen at his owne good pleafure.

euch at his owne good pleature.

It came to paffe, that Don Giovanni the Second, being King of Portugall, planted the Christian town the SeReligian in the Kinedome of Congo; and the range on, the King of Congo become a Christian. After cond, King of
to which time the Lord of Angola was atmase in amilie, and (as it were) a Validato; the forenamed King Peringul, first
to which time the Lord of Angola was atmase in amilie, and (as it were) a Validato; the remained King Peringul, first
to the Control of Angola was atmase in amilie and control of the William

The Control of Congo Control of Congo Congo Congo

The Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo

The Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo Congo

The Congo Co of Congo, and the People of both Countries did traffique together one with another, and the Lord of fliantie into of Congo, and the company onto the marine must improve vegence rule manager, and to the of this and Angola disselvent year lead from Professios to King of Congo, And by letters from the K. of Congo, Congo, there was a great trade between the Portugals and the People of Angola, at the Hauen of Loanda, where they beamly Slater, and Congo above two they beam of the Congo and the People of Angola, at the Hauen of Loanda, where they beamly Slater, and Congo above the merchandist, each for resulprise all into the International Congo and the Congo and Congo S. Thomas, Whereby it came to paffe, that the traffique was here mited with the traffique of S. Thomas: 5.1 House, receives a series projection to require a their leads and their afterward projection to Condia. And when their retails design in process of the the loss passes from the condia. And when their read began in process of the receiver of the defaulted their plan. Instruct the Angola of the thomselves, and the whole the common called Paulo Diazo P. Nousis, to whom this buffings did Paulo Chica P. Paulo Diazo P. (as it were) of right appartame, w regard of the good deferts of his Ancestors, who sixt discovered of this: first control to this: Traffique. To this Paulo Diaz, did Don Sebastiano King of Portugall grant leave and authori- we Sobstitue tie to conquer, for the space of three and thirtie leagues upwards along the Coast, beginning at the King of Portu-River Coanza towards the South, and within the Land alfo, what focuer hee could get towards all his gall. charges for him and his beires. With him there went many other ships that opened and found out a great correct view amount on which it is the distinct of the control of cause is was the more commodious and nigher to the traffique of Angola. When the trade here began buildeth and thus to emercase, and merchandises were freely carried by the Portugals, and the People of Congo to thouse in An-Cabazo. a place belonging to the Lord of Angola, and distant from the Sea, one bundred and fiftie miles, The Author

30 there to find the true them, it foods to be compared to the contract of the in Barbarie.

When Paulo Diaz understood of this course, he put himselfe in Armes against the King of Angola, Paulo Diaz, in and with fuch a troupe of Portugals as he could gather together, that were to be found in that Countrie, Arms against and with two Gallies and other vessels, which be kept in the River Coanza, be went forward, on both sides of the River conquering, and by force subdued many Lords, and made them his Friends and Sub-40 netts. But the King of Angola perceining that his Vassals had yeelded to the obedience of Paulo Diaz. and that with all prosperous successe he had gained much Land upon him , hee assembled a great Armie to goe against him, and so otterly to destroy him. Whereupow Paulo Diaz requested the King of Congo, to goe agams; vim, analy outers, and before below to defend bimselfe withall, who prefently fent was him for of the king of arde, an Armie of sixtie thousand men, under the conduct of his Consin Don Schastiano Mani-bamba, conse. and another Captaine, with one hundred and twentie Portugall Souldiers, that were in those Countries. and all of his owne pay for the atchieung of this enterprise. This Arme was to some with Paulo Diaz. and so altogether to warre against the King of Angola: but arriving at the shoare, where they were to paffe ouer the River Bengo, within twelve miles of Loanda, and where they should have met with many Barkes to carrie the Campe to the other (boars, parify because the faul Barkes had slacked their comming, and parily because much time would have beene spens in transporting so many men, the whole

Comming, and parity occasify muce view weams above the first part of the property of the following the first part of the the Kingdome of Congo, as we call the Spaniards, those that are naturally horne in Spaine) and the Order of the militarie order of the People of Angola, is almost all one: for both of them doe vinally fight in foot, and druide their Armie into severall troupes, sixting themselves according to the situation of the Field where they doe encampe, and advancing their Ensignes and Banners in such fort as before is remembred. The remones of their Armie are quided and directed by certaine severall sounds and noyses, that proceed from the Captaine General, who goeth into the middest of the Armie and there significath what is to diere doe va-60 be put in execution; that is to say, either that they shall some battell, or else retire, or put on forward, or derstand the turne to the right hand, and to the left hand, or to performe any other warlike action. For by these sene- pleasure of ral founds diffinily delivered from one to another, they doe all understand the commandements of their their Generall, Captaine, as we here among us doe understand the pleasure of our Generall by the sundrie stroakes of the Drum, and the Captaines founds of the Trumpet.

Three kinds of

Thevicof

ments

thefe Inftru-

996.

Three principall founds they have which they ofe in Warre: One which is ottered aloud, by great Rattles, fastned in certaine Wooden Cases, bollowed out of a tree, and conered with Leather, which ther strike with certaine little handles of Iuory. Another is made by a certaine hind of Instrument, fashio. ned like a Pyramis turned upward: for the lower end of it is sharpe, and endeth as it were in a point. and the upper end waxeth broader and broader, like the bottome of a Triangle, in such fort, that beneath they are narrow and like an Angle, and about they are large and wide. This Instrument is made of certaine thinne plates of Iron, which are hollow and emptie within, and very like to a Bell turned up-fide-downe. They make them ring, by firiking them with woodden wands: and oftentimes they doe also cracke them, to the end that the sound should be more harsh, horrible, and warlike: The third Infrument is framed of Elephants teeth, some great, and some small, bollow within, and blowen at a 10 certaine hole which they make on the side of it, in manner of the Fife, and not aloft like the Pipe. These are tempered by them in such fort, that they yeeld as marlike and harmonious Musicke, at the Cornet doth, and so pleasant and incord a noyse, that it moneth and stirreth up their courages, and maketh them not to care for any danger what some of these three semerall sorts of warlike Infruments, there are some bigger, and some lesse. For the Captaine Generall carrieth almaies with him the greater fort, to the end that by them be may gine fignification to the whole Campe what they shall doe. The particular bands and troupes of the Armie bane in like manner their smaller fort, and ene-To Captaine in his senerall Regiment hath also one of the smallest, which they strike with their bands. Whereupon it falleth out, that when they beare the found of the generall Rattle, or Cornet. panas. Proceeding hind of Instrument, enery part of the Army doth presently answere in the same 20 mote, signifying thereby, that they have well understood the good pleasure of the Captaine, and so confequently the under Captaines doe the like. Neither doe they onely ufe thefe Instruments and founds uninerfally, but also when they are in fight and in shirmish; the valiant and couragious Souldiers cobefore the rest, and with this kind of bells, which they strike with their woodden wands, they dance . and encourage their fellowes, and by the note doe signific unto them in what danger they are, and what weapons they bane met withall.

The Military apparell of the better fort, and of the Lords of the Moci-Conghi, is this. On their apparell of the heads they carry a Cap, which is garnished with sundry Plumes of the feathers of the Estridge, of the Peacocke, of the Cocke, and of other kinds of Birds, which make them to feame men of greater stature then ther are, and terrible to looke upon. From the girdle upwards they are all naked, and have banging about to them from their necks, both on the right fide and on the left, even at low at to both their flanker, certaine chaines of Iron, with Kings upon them as byge as a man, little fuger, which they ufe for accretine mi-litarie pempe and brauery. From the girdle downs mards they have breeches of Linnen, or Sendals, which are concred with Cleath, and reach downe to their beeles, but then they are folded againe upwards, and tucked under their girdle. Upon their girdle, which (as we told you) is made with exquifite and curious worke, they doe fasten certaine bells, very like to the instruments that are before named. which in mooning of themselves, and in fighting with their enemies, doe ving and make a noyse, and addecourage unto them, while they are in combate with their adversaries. Upon their legges they bane Their wespons themile their Buskins, after the Portugall fashian. Their Armour we have already declared, that is to far ; Bow and Arrowes, Sword, Dagger and Target : but yet with this causest, that who foeser weareth to a Bow, he weareeh alfo a Dagger, but no Target : for those two weapons may not be worne together. but Sword and Target they may lawfully weare both at once.

The Militure The common Soulders goe all maked from the guide-stead opmards, and have the reif of their ba-apparell of the dies armed with Bow and Arrower, and Daggers. These are they that she first offer the skermish, gaing out before the rest of the Army, as it were seuerally and dispersedly prouding to sight, and receiving the short off, they turne and winds this way, and that way, and doe nimbly leape from one side to another , to the end they may awayd the lighting of their enemies Arrowes. Befides thefe, there are allo certaine quicke and gallant young men, that runne out before the rest, which with the ringing of their bells (as before is said) are as it were comforters of their fellowes, and when they have fought their near (as vejore a jam), then to be even weary, then doth he call them backe with the found of 50 much, that the Captaine thinkesh them to be even weary, then doth he call them backe with the found of one of those instruments aboue mentioned: so that perceising the medley to wax hot, they turn about and retire themselves backe againe, and others succeede in their places, which course is still obserned and kept untill (such time, as both the Armies doe indeed toyne all their maine forces together, and fo fight it out. In the place abone described, there were sundry encounters on the one side, and on the other. And

The Iffue of this battell.

P. Biaz at

his owne home. In this meane while Paulo Diaz, though be could not some his forces with the Armyof his friends that came to succour him, yet set himselfe forwards, and passing over the River stayed at Luiola, be- 60 cause it was a place very strong, and fit to resist the King of Angola. The situation of Luiola is this: The two Rivers, Coanza and Luiola doe some together about one hundred and fine miles from the Sea shore, and a little about the said sorning, these Rivers doe sever themselves, for the space of an Harquebusse shot, so that they make as it were an Iland betweene thems. In which Iland, at the mee.

in the first battailes the people of Congo remained Conquerors: but afterward, when they had divers

times fought together with great loffe on both sides, and victuals began now to faile, and consequently

men waxed ficke and died, the Campe of the King of Congo was diffolued, and enery man returned to

ting of the two Rivers there rifeth a bill, which Paulo Diaz surprized and fortified for his better safetie. And whereas in time spail, there was never any habitation there, now at this prefent it is growne to be a prety Countrey inhabited by the Portugals.

From this place titus furprized by Ranla Diat, and called Luiola, you may faile along the Riner with certaine fmall veticle, even to the Sea, and goe by land without any danger for the fpace of one hundred and here miles. Neere thereunto are the hills, that are called the hills of The hills Cabambe producing infinite flore of Silver : which the faid Diaz doth every day by little and Cabambe little endenour to conquer. And there his are the grand quarrell betweene him and the people of Angolu. For knowing that the Portugals doc effectine greatly of these hills . in regard of the In Silver pits which are there in great abuniance; they doe wie all the force and skill they can to keepe the Portugals from them. They fight alto with them in ditters other places : for the Portugale palling over the Kuer Cames, to continually make in-roades into the Countries that are

inbied to the Kine of Angola.

The weapons of these peoples, are Bowes fixe handfall long, with strings made of the barks The weapons of Trees, Arrowes of Wood, leffe then a mans little finger, and fixe handfuls long. They have of the people Iron heads, made like a booke, and feathers of Birds in the tops of them : and of thefe Arrowes of . ngsla. they vie to carry to the number of fixe or feuen vpon their Bow hand, without any Quiuer at all. Their Daggers are fashioned with a haft after the manner of a Knife, which they weare at their girdle, on their left fide, and hold them aloft in their hands, when they fight with them? 20 By their Militarie actions and proceedings, you may observe their great skill and good order in Their militarie

matter of warre. For in divers batailes that were betweene them and the Portugals, it was actions, plaintly feene how they could chufe their advantages against their enemies, as by affaulting them in the night cime, and in rainy weathen, to the end that their Harquebuffes and Gunnes thould not take fire a and also by dividing their forces into many troopes, to trouble them the more. The King doth not vie to goo to the warre in his owne perion, but fendeth his Captaines in his flead. The people are alto accustomed to five and runne away incontinently, as foone as they lee their Captaine flaine, neither can they be perswaded to flay by any reason or argument, but prefently yeeld vp the field. They are all Foot-men, heither have they any Horfes at all : and therefore the Captaines; if they will not goe on foote, cause themselves to bee 30 carried on the shoulders of their Sianes, after one of the three manners, which we will shew what to you hereafter.

This Nation goeth out to warre, in number almost infinite, and very confusedly : they leane Rudenesse of no man at home that is fit to carry a weapon : they make no preparation of victuals necessarie art military, for the Campe: but fuch as perhaps have any, convey it with them vpon the shoulders of their of and for foul-Semants, and yet they have fundry forts of creatures that might bee managed, and ferue their diers. turnes to draw, and to carry, as in the second part of this Treatife shall be described vnto vous And thereupon it falleth out, that when they come into any Countrey with their whole Army, a: I their food is quickly quite confumed, and then having nothing left to feed upon, they diffolue their hoaft even in the greatest necessitie of profecuting their enterprise, and so are inforced by 40 hunger to returne into their owne Countries.

They are greatly given to Distinction by Birds : If a Bird chance to flye on their left hand, or cry in They are gind fuch manner, as those which make profession to understand the same, do fay, that it fore-showeth ill lucke by Birds. and adversity, or that they may go no further forwards, they will presently turne backe and repaire bome: which custome was also in the old time observed by the ancient Romans, and likewise at this day by sun-

Now if it shall seeme strange to any man, that so few Portugall Souldiers, as Paulo Diaz retai. Why so small a neth there with him, and others of the Portugall Nation, which Traffiche into the Realme, and releeve number, se him with fuccours, being in number but three hundred at the most, accounting their Slaues, and also the with him was Male-contents, the Rebels and Fuguines of Angola, which daily refere ento him, and amount not in able to refer to still to the quantities of fifteene thousand mem. Sould be able to make for gallets are refiltance against that they and contraw of the quantities of fifteene story fabrics to the King of Arryola, which are gathered there toge, of the King of the contract of the contract there toge, of the contract the contract of th ged for the same. For the Armie of the Negroes is all naked, and otterly destinate of all provision and furniture for Armonr of defence: And as for their weapons of offence, they confist onely but of Bowes and Daggers (as I told you.) But our few Portugals that are there, are well lapped in certains lackets that are stuffed and basted with bombaste, and stitched and quilted very soundly, which keepe their Armes very fufe, and their bodies downe-wards as low as their knees : Their beads also are armed with caspes made of the same stuffe, which doe resist the shot of the Arrow, and the stroke of the Dag-

ger : Besides that, they are got with long swords, and some Horsemen there are among them that carry 6c speares for their weapons. Now you must understand that one man on borfe-backe, is of more worth then a hundred Negroes, because the Horsemen doe afright them greatly: and especially of those that doe discharge Gunnes and Peeces of Artillarie against them. , they doe stand continually in an extreame bodily feare. So that these few being well armed, and cunningly and artificially ordered, must needs onercome the other, though they be very many in number. This Kingdome of Angola, is full of peo-

populous, sup- Christians.
posed to hold Thre Kina million of fighting menties of Angola.

A Dogge fold for two huntie Duckets.

The Religion of Antela. The language

The rest of the Kingdome of Angela descri-

Cape Negro I. The blacke

1. The cold Mountaines.

The Moun-

The North

paffe, 1685.

In breadth 600, miles,

The kinedome ple beyond all credite: For every Man taketh as many Wines as he lister b, and so they multiply infi-The kingdome nitely: But they doe not wfe fo to do in the kingdome of Congo, which lineth after the manner of the

This Kingdome also is very rich in Mmes of Silner, and most excellent Copper; and for other kinds of Mestall, there is more in this kingdome then in any other Country of the world what some Unated Ordertal, torse is more on easy, serguines were a way were removed by we work a management. Fruinfull it is all manner of the said, and fundry forts of Castell, and fleecash for great boards of kine. True its 1, that this people due have Degges fifth batter than my other meater: and for that purply they feed and factor them, and then full them and fifth they more their open fundables. It is constitutely affirmed that a great Dog accustomed to the Bull, was fold by exchange for two and twentie Slanes, which after the rate of ten Duckets a poll, were worth in all two hundred and iwentie Duckets: in so high a price and acdred and twen- count doe they hold that Creature.

The Monyes that are vied in Angola, are much different from the Lumache of Congo : for they of The Names to Angola dev of Bead of Glaff, such as creamed by Venice, as biggs as a Nas, and fraise of laffe angola developed Bead of Glaff, such as are made of Venice, as biggs as a Nas, and fraise of laffe angola made, as onely to vie them for money, but also for an ornament of their men and women, to weare about their necks and their armes, and are called in their tangue Anzolos: but when they are threeded upon a fring like a paire of Beads, they call them Mizanga.

The King of Angola is by religion a Gentile, and worshippeth Idols, and so doe all the people in his Kingdome. It is true, that he hath greatly defired to become a Christian, after the example of the Kup of Congo. But because there hath not beene as yet any possibilitie to send Priests unto him, that migh illuminate and instruct him, be remainesh fill in darknesse. The foresaid Signor Odoardo told mee. that in his time the King of Angola fent an Amhassadour to the King of Congo, requesting that he would fend him... some religious person; to insorme him in the Christian Religion: but the Kino of Con-20 had none there that he could spare, and therefore could send him... none. At this day, both these Kings doe Trafficke together, and are in amitie one with another : the King of Angola having now cleered and discharged himselfe for the inverses and slaughters that were committed upon those of Conon. and upon the Portugals at Gabazo.

The language of the people of Angola is all one with the language of the people of Congo, because (as we told you before) they are both but one Kingdome. Onely the difference between them, is, as commonly it is betweene two Nations that border one upon another.

We have fignified vnto you heretofore, that the Bay of Cowes doth divide the Kingdome of 10 Angula in the middeft; and hitherto we have treated but of the one halfe thereof: Now wee will describe voto you the second part of it, which lyeth from the said Bay of Comes towards the South. From this Bay then, to the blacke Cape, called Cape Negro, by the Coaft of the Ocean, they doe reckon two hundred and twenty miles, of fuch Countrey and loyle as the former is , and poffeffed by many Lords that are subject to the King of Angela. From Cape Negre there runneth a line towards the East, through the middest of the Mountaines, that are called, Monti Freddi, that is to fay, The cold Mountaines: which also in some certaine parts of them, that are higher then the rest towards the Equinoctiall, are tearmed by the Portugals, Monti Newofi, or Snowy Mountaines, and so endeth at the rootes of other Mountaines, that are called the Mountaines of Crystall. (Out of these Snowy Mountaines doe spring the waters of the Lake Dumbea Zocobe.) This forefaid line, from the Mountaine of Crystall, taines of Chri- draweth on-wards towards the North through the Mountaines of Silver, till you come to Melemba, where we told you the Kingdome of Congo was divided, and parted the River of Coari in the midit, And this is the Countrey possessed by the King of Angola, whereof I have no more to fay, then is already fer downe, neither of the qualities of his perion, nor of his Court. Beginning therefore at the River Course, and drawing towards the Equinoctial three hun-

dred seventie five miles, you shall finde the River, that they call Las Barreas Vermellias, or the Redde Pits, which are indeed the ragged ruines of certaine Rockes worne by the Sea : and when they fall downe, doe shew themselves to bee of a red colour. From thence by a direct line vpon the North, that which the King possession, is four hundred and fifty miles. And then the faid line dividing it felfe towards the South, passeth by the hills of Crystall (not those that we told you before did belong to Angola, but others that are called by the same name) and so by the Mountaines of Salmire, traverling the River Verbela, at the roots of the Mountaines The South 360 of Silver, it endeth at the Lake Aquelunda, which is the space of five hundred miles. The fourth line runneth along the River County, which iffueth out of the faid Lake, and containeth three The kingdome hundred and fixtie miles. So that the whole Realme now possessed by Don Aluaro, the King of Congo con- of Congo is in compasse, one thousand fixe hundred eightie fine miles. But the breadth thereof tainethin com- beginneth at the mouth of the River Zaire, where the point is, which in the Portugall speech is called, Padraon, and fo cutting the Kingdome of Congo in the middle, and croffing over the 60 Mountaines of the Sunne, and the Mountaines of Crystall, there it endeth, containing the foace of fixe hundred miles, and within one hundred and fiftie miles, neere to the River Nilm. Very true it is indeed, that in ancient time the Predecesors of this Prince did raigne over many other Countries there-abouts, which in procedle of time they have loft : and although they bee

CHAP.4.S.2. The King of Congo his titles. His chiefe Nobles.

now in the government of others, yet doe the Kings of Congo, retaine still to this day the titles The title of now in the government of others, you alware, King of Congo, and of Abundos, and of Mara-Rile or the ma, and of Quizama, and of Angola, and of Cacongo, and of the feuen Kingdomes of Congere King of Conge. Amolaza, and of the Pangelungos, and Lord of the River Zaire, and of the Anziquos. and An-

ziquana, and of Loango. This Kingdome is divided into fixe Provinces, that is to fay, Bamba, Songo, Sundi, Pango, The first Pro-This Kingdome is disided into like Prosinces, that is to key, Dames, Jones, James, Junes, Lange, unince is Bambata, and Pemba. The Prosince of Bamba, (which is the greatest and the richest) is go-ba, and the depermed by Don Sebastian Mani-Bamba, cousin to the King Don Aluaro last deceased, and it is fituated upon the Sea-coalt, from the River Ambrize, untill you come to the River Coanza to-Schallimchiele to wards the South. This Don Schaffian hath under his Dominion many Princes and Lords, and Gouernour of

the name, of the greatest of them are these, Don Antonio (Mani-Bamba, who is Lieutenant and Bamba, and Brother to Don Sebastian, and Mani-Lemba another, and Mani-Danda, and Mani Bengo, and vnderhim. Mani-Loanda, who is Gouernour of the Iland of Loanda, and Mani-Cormba, and Mani-Coanza, and Mani-Carzanzi. All these doe gouerne all the Sea-coast but within Land, for that part which belongeth to Angola, there are another people called the Ambundos, who dwelling on the borders of Angola, are subject to the faid Mani-Bamba, and they are these, Angaza, Chingbengo, Motollo, Chabonda, and many others of bafer condition.

Note, that this word Mani, fignifieth a Prince or a Lord, and the rest of the word is the Mani, what is Note, that this word Mani, fignifieth a Prince or a Lord, and the rest or the word is the fignifieth, name of the Countrey and Lordhip, where the Lord ruleth. As for example, Mani-Bamba The Confines fignifieth the Lord of the Countrey of Bamba, and Mani-Corimba, the Lord of the Countrey of of Bamba 20 Corimba, which is a part of Bamba, and fo likewife of the reft. This Prouince of Bamba confi- The Country neth with Angola on the South, and vpon the East of it towards the Lake Achelunda, lyeth of Quirema neth with Angola on the South, and you the Latt of a Common-wealth, and is disided among a mimber of Lords, who indeed living at their owne libertie, doe neither obey the King of Common of all their owne libertie, doe neither obey the King of Common of all their owne libertie, doe neither obey the King of Common of all their owne libertie, doe neither obey the King of Common of all their owne libertie, doe neither obey the King of Common of all their owne libertie, doe neither obey the King of Common of the Common go, nor the King of Angola.

And tobe short, these Lords of Quizama, after they had a long time quarrelled with Paulo Bamba yeeld-Disc, yet at last they became his subjects, because they would awoyd the yoke of the King of eth for a need 30 Angola, and by their good aid and affiliance, doth Paulo Diez greatly helpe himselfe against the face ware.

Now, the aforefaid Countrey of Bamba, (as we have told you) is the principall Province of cipil Citie of all the Realme of Congo, and indeed the very Key, and the Buckler and the Sword, and the de- Bamba fence thereof, and (as it were) the frontier which opposeth it selfe against all their Enemies. For Mines of silver it refifteth all the repolts and rebeliions of those quarters, and hath very valorous people in it, that are alwayes readie for to fight, so that they doe continually keepe their Aduetiaries of An- Incredible gola in great awe : and if it happen at any time that their King stand in need, they are alwayes numbers of at his command to annoy the other Countries whenfoeuer. When need requireth, he may have flaues yearely in Campe foure hundred thousand men of Warre, and yet that number is but onely the fixt part fold to the Per-40 of the whole Kingdome, though indeed it be the better part and the stronger. The principall One MT. Total Citie of this Prounce lyeth in the Plaine which is betweene the River Loze and Ambrize, and ne which lived is called Panza (which is a common name for every Towne.) There dwelleth the Lord of there, told me the Prouince, and it is distant from the Sea one hundred miles. In this Signorie also doe the hils of 10000, states begin, where the Mines of filuer and other metals are found, and so stretch out towards the parts of Africa Kingdome of Angola. It is very rich, for vpon the Coast of the Sea there, they have great yearely can flore of the Lumache, which are vied for moneyes ouer all the Kingdome of Congo : Belides, yeeld, and that

there is also a greater Trafficke and Market for slaues, that are brought out of Angola, then in any one Portugally had a Name of Name

place else. For there are yearely bought by the Portugals aboue five thousand head of Negroes, in Brass

which afterwards they conueigh away with them, and so sell them into diners parts of the

World. The people of this Prouince, are in Armer the most valiant of all the Kingdome of Congo. They goe armed like the Slauonians, with long and large Swords, that are brought them out of Portugall. There are among them very mightie men, that will cleave a flave in the middeft at one blow, and cut off the head of a Bull at one stroke with one of those Swords. And (that which is more, and will peraduenture seeme incredible) one of these valiant men did beare vpon his arme a certaine Vessell of Wine, which was the fourth part of a Butte, and might weigh about three hundred twentie fine pound, vntill it was cleane emptied. Moreover, they doe carrie Bow and Arrowes, whereat they are very quicke and nimble, and withall their long Targets made of the Dants skinne, whereof wee told you before, when wee made mention of the Certaine crea-

The creatures that are found in this Prouince, are first the Elephants, which do breed ouer all Elephants. the Kingdome of Congo, but principally in the Countrey of Bamba, because it aboundeth in An Elephants Woods, in pastures and in waters.

Signor Odoardo told mee, that hee had oftentimes taken the measure of an Elephants foot in The Elephant the duft, and one of them was in plaine Diameter foure spannes broad. But in these quarters they liveth 150. fay that the Elephants doe live one hundred and fiftie yeares, and that vutill the middle of their years.

rures in Bamba

An Elephants waight,

age they continue still in growing. And to confirme this truth he added, that hee had seene and weighed divers of their Teeth (which are not of horne, as some thinke) and their waightamounted to two hundred pounds apiece, after the rate of twelue ounces to every pound. In the Language of Congo, the Elephants Tooth is called Mene-Manzao, that is to fay, The Tooth of an Elephant.

Their Eares are greater then the greatest Targets that the Tinker vie to weare, in length five fpannes, in thape like an Egge, and towards their fhoulders they grow to be narrower and tharper. With their Bares, and with their Trunke, and with their Tayle, they beat away the Flies

They have in their Tayle, certaine haires or briffles as bigge as Rushes or Broome-sprigs, of a lo shining blacke colour. The older they be, the fairer and stronger they bee, and of great price 2.

Certain haires in the Elephants tayle. very precious, mong them. M. Ichfon gaue me one of thefe tayles with fuch blacke strong haires.

And for the caufe lately rehearfed, many there are, which wayting for the Elephants, when they ascend some steepe and narrow way, doe come behind them, and with very sharpe Knines cut off their Tayles: the poore beaft being not able in those fraites to turne backe to revenge it felfe, nor with his Trunke to reach his Enemie. And this they doe, onely to have those haires. which they fell for two or three flanes a piece. Other light and couragious perfons there are. that truffing much to their fwiftnesse in running, doe lye in a waite, and set upon the soore bealts behind, whiles they are in feeding, and at one blow attempt to cut off their Tayles, and io endenour to faue themselves by running away in a round. For the greatnesse of the beast is such, as out-right it is very fwift, because it maketh very large strides, though indeed but flow, and in the plaine is farre quicker then any luftie Horle : but in turning round it lofeth much time, and

fo the Huntiman elcapeth in fafetie.

In their feeding, they yie to shake and root up the great Trees with the force of their should ders, and firength of their whole backes : But the smaller Frees they take betweene both their Teeth , and to bow them and plucke them downe , that they may feede you the leanes of them: infomucl, as fometimes they breake one of their Teeth with fo doing. And this is the cause why you shall find divers of them in the fields that have lost their Teeth. They chave kness is a fable their meate with their short Teeth, which are not seene as their two long Tuskes are : and they carrie it to heir mouth by their long Snout, or Trunke, which is to them in flead of an arme , and a hand. The tip of their Trunke is fashioned and divided into little shits, and (as it were) fingers, wherewith they will take vp very fmall things, as Nuts, and Strawes, and Berries, and fo reach them to their mouth, as I, Philippo Pigajetta have feene my felte at Lifton.

The Females of these Creatures, doe beare their trood in their wombe for the space of two

yeares and no more : And for as much as the yong Elephant cannot fo quickly he brought vp. (for it groweth very flowly) the Milke is kept from it, and fo it waxed apt to feed of it felfe. And therefore Mother Nature hath prouided that the Elephants are not great with young, but from feuen yeares to feuen yeares.

The Elephants skinne. The manner of taking the Elephants.

Their skinne is hard beyond all credit. For being foure fingers thicke, it cannot be pierced, no not with the shot of an Harq rebuffe. The recule of that Countrey have not the skill to tame these beasts. Whereby they might 40

reaps great commeditie and profit, for carrying their fluffe from place to place for divers other good vies. But yet they take them; by digging certaine deepe Trenches in the places, where they vie to passure, which Trenches are very narrow at the bottome, and broad aboue, to the end the beait may not helpe himfelfe, and leape out when hee is fallen into them. Thefe Trenches they couer with Soldes of Earth, and Graffe, and leaves, because the beast should not see their traine, but paffing ouer them remayne there entrenched. Whereupon the Gentleman beforenamed told me, that he had feene with his owne eyes a very flrange and admirable thing in Coanea; namely, that a young Elephant following his Damme, fell downe by chance into one 50 of their Pits, and after that the could not with all her skill and firength draw him out of it, the buried him therein, and coucred him with Earth, with branches and with boughes, infomuch as the filled the pit up to the top, to the end that the Hunters should not enjoy her Calfe, choosing rather to kill it her felfe, then to leave it to the mercie of the cruell Huntimen. This louing and kind Mother, not fearing the people (that flood round about her, and shouted against her, and threatned her with fundry weapons, and vttered strange clamours and noyfes to affray her, and cail many fires at her) but affuring her felfe in her owne ftrong and valiant nature, did labour and toyle from morning till night, that the might draw her Calte out of the pit : and when thee

as we have told you. The nature of The Elephant is a very gentle beaft, and truffeth greatly in his naturall flrength. Hee feareth 60 the Elephant nothing, nor hurteth any man that doth not trouble him : and haunteth necre to mens houses, without doing any harme at all. If hee efpie men that goe in his walke, hee will not medile with them, valeffe they feeke to moleft him : fauing that fometimes peraduenture he will gent-Iv with his Snout, hoyfe them vpwards into the Avre, whom hee meeteth withall in his way,

found that it was not possible for her to archieue what shee defired, then she couered it in manner

and that is all the hurt he will doe wato them. These Elephants doe greatly delight in waters. For Signor Odoardo afirmed, that in the way betweene Cazanza and Lounda, in a little graffie Valley he had feene about one hundred of them in a company, old and young that followed their Dammes : they vie to goe together in Heards, as Kine, and Camels, and other fuch like gentle Creatures doe, and not alone like Lions and other fich wild beafts.

There are brought into the Countries of the senecicht, some of the Hornes that grow vion the note of the Rhinoceros, that are both of green value and estimation, and also vied for the Rhinoceros, or

There are in the Region of the Antichi, Lions alio, like the Lions that breed in other parts of Lions 10 the World, but they doe not vie to haunt the Region of Bamba : But in Bamba there are verie great flore of Tygres, which are of ithe very fame flaspethat those in Florence art, which Signor Ochordo flaw there, and befinited to be very Tygres indeed. They will not fet vpon any men that Tygres. are white, but onely such as are blacke . And it hatts beene found, that when the white and the blacke have flent together in the hight-time, they have flaine the black to devoure them, and

When they are hungry, they will be so bold as to fetch Cattle, even out of the yards that are about the houses without any feare at all, when they cannot find any victuals abroad in the fields. They are very dangerous and hurtfull to all kinds of Creatures whatfoeuer they bee, and

in that Language they are called, Engai.

They are as herce and cruell heafts as the Lion, and roare as the Lion doth. They are also altogether like the Lion, fauing onely in the colour of their haire; for the Tygre is spotted, but the Lionall of one colour. They yie to take and kall thefe Tygres after ditters manners. For befides that, which hath beene before spoken, they poyson them with Sublimate, or some other of taking the venome, mingled with fiesh which is laid for them. Or else they tye young Goates at certaine tame Tygres, Lines made like fnares, and fastned about the stocke of a Tree, so that when the beast commeth to her prey, the Engine openeth it felfs; and the more the beaft ftriueth withall, the more it is intangled, and so at last is hanged therein.

Signer Odoardo told me, that he had gotten one of them, that was fifteene dayes old, and free A same Tygre. brought it vp with Goats Milke : which being afterwards growne bigger would follow him 30 like a Dogge : and although it were tame, yet it would not willingly fuffer any other to touch it, besides his Master. He would also roare mightily, and when hee was angry, his eyes would looke very terribly and fearefully. But in processe of time this Tygre killed a Dogge, belonging to the house, and also a Zebra, that were very deare to their Mafter, and thereupon, perceiuing how perillous a beaft it was, he fine it with an Harquebuffe flot. Hee reported, moreover; that the Mostacchios of the Tygre are held in that Region to be mortall Poylon : for being gla uen in meates, it procureth a man to die, as it were in a maiheffe : And therefore the King doth punish all those that bring him a Tygres skin without the Mostacchios.

There breedeth likewife in this Country another Creature, which they call a Zebra, commonly found also in certaine Protinces of Barbary and Africa, which although it be altogether The Zeira, 40 made like a great Mule, yet is not a Mule indeed, for it beareth young ones. It hath a most singua lar skin, and peculiar from all other Creatures. For from the ridge of the chin downe towards the belly, it is straked with rowes of three colours, blacke, white, and browne Bay, about the breadth of three fingers a piece, and so meet againe together in a Circle, every row, with his owne colour. So that the necke, and the head; and the Maine (which is not great) and the eares, and all the legs are so interchanged with these colours, and in such manner and order, as with out all faile, if the first strake beginne with white, then followeth the second with blacke, and in the third place, the Bay : and so another course beginning in white, endeth still in Bay. And this rule is generally and infallibly observed over all the bodie. The Tayle is like the Tayle of a Mule, of a Morell colour, but yet it is well coloured, and hath a gliftering gloffe. The feet like the feet of

50 a Mule, and so are the hooses. But touching the rest of her carriage and qualities, she is very luftie and pleasant as a Horse : and specially in going, and in runningsshee is so light and so swife, that it is admirable. Insomuch as in Portugall and in Castite also, it is commonly vsed (as it were for a Prouerbe) as swift as a Zebra, when they will fignific an exceeding quiknesse. These Creatures are all wild, they breed every yeare, and are there in fuch abundance that they are innumerable. If they were made tame, they would ferue to runne and to draw for the warres, and for many other good vies, as well as the best Horses that are.

Necessitic hath taught them to vie men in freed of labouring Cattell. For either they lay The manner themselues all along in certaine Litters (as it were) or else set themselues vpright, with shadowes of the carrying ouer them to keepe them from the Sunne, and so they cause themselves to bee carryed too and of the Meti-60 fro, by their slaues, or by other men that for wages are alwayes readie at Poste-houses to that combipurpose. They that meane to journey with speed, doe take with them many slaues, and when the first number are weary, then doe the second number vndertake the burden, and so successfuely change one after another, as the Tartarians and Persians vie to doe with their Hories; and these men being thus accustomed to these labours, (and so often changing) will goe as fast as any Pofilion gallop. O 0 0 0 0 2

ae I

Hantio

CHAP.4. ...

There are also to be founded this Coste ties of reame other foure-footed beafts, somewhat lesse than Oxen of colour Red, with hornes like Goats homes, which are very smooth and guilting, and inclining to blacke, whereof they make divers pretie knackes, as they doe likewise of the Buffes hornes. They have their heads and their haires, like the heads & haires of Oxen; and their skins are of great estimation ; and therefore they are carried into Portugall, and from thence in. to Germanie-to be drelled, and then they are called Duntes. The King of Congo is very delirone to have fome men that had skill to cleanfel them, and dreffe them, and to make them fit for vie to end he might employ them for Armour of defence. And yet those Nations doe alreadings them for Shields and Targets; and doe finit that they will refult the blow of a weapon, and efpecially the (hot of an Arrow). They kill them with Harquebuses, and with Arrowes. But if they doe efpie the Huntiman, they will det vpon him, and being by nature very fierce, and couragious, they will so knocke him and thumpe him with their feet, and their Muzzle (becanfe they cannot doe him any harme with their hornes) that they will leade him either halfe dead. or starke dead. There is also an infinite number of wild Buffes, that goe wandring about the Defarts, in the Kingdome of the Anzichi; and wild Affes likewife, which the Greeker call

Wild Buffes. Wild Affes.

Empelança.

There are befides thefe, other beafts, called Empalonga: which are in bignesse and shape like Oxen, fauing that they hold their necke and shead aloft, and have their hornes broad and crooked, three hand-breadths long, divided into knots, and tharpe at the ends, whereof they might make very faire Cornets to found withall: and although they line in the Forrests, yet are they 20 not nov fome nor harmefull. The skins of their neckes are vied for shoo-soles, and their fiesh for meate. They might like wife be brought to draw the Plough, and doe good fernice in any other Other fruitfull labour, and tilling of the ground. Moreover, they feed great herds of Kine, and tame Oxen, tame Hoes, and wild Boares, flockes of Steepe and Goats. Signor Odoardo affirmed, that the Goats and the Sheepe doe bring forth two, and three, and foure Lambs or Kids at a time, and

Wolnes,

There are Wolues also which love the Oyle of Palmes, beyond all measure. They will smell this Oyle afarre off, and steale it in the night time out of their houses of straw, and sometimes from those that carrie it by the way, whiles the poore soules doe rell themselves and sleepe. The Oyle (as shall be told you) is made of the Palme-tree; it is thicke and hard, like Butter. And 20 it is a maruell to fee, how thefe Wolnes doe take a Bottle that is full of this liquor betweene their teeth, and focast it on their shoulders, and runne away withall, as our Wolues here doe with a Sheepe. There are very great flore of Foxes, that fleate Hennes as our Foxes doe. And farther in this Countrie of Banda, there is an innumerable quantitie of hunting game, as Stags, fallow Deere, Roe-buckes, and Gazels, whereof he affirmed that he had feene exceeding great herds, as also of Conies and Hares, Because there were no Hunters to kill them.

In the Region of Pembachese are many wild Guet-cars, which the Portugals call Algaria,

and some of these, the people of that Countrie had made tame, that they might entry their

Ciuet, in the smell whereof they doe greatly delight. But this was before the Portugals did

white haires, and exceeding fine, called Incine a but no man may weare there skinnes valefie the

Prince permit him to to doe : for it is held in great estimation, and every Sable is worth a Slave.

Towards the Anxiety they catch Marterns also , wherewith they apparell themselves , as in

due place we will note vnto you. Apes, Monkies, and fuch other kind of beafts, small and great

two, when they have feweft; and never one alone at any time.

Foxes. Hunting

In Pemba, Ci-

In Batta Sables trafficke with those Countries. And in Manhatta there are caught many Sables , with very to

In Anzigua, Marterns. In Sogne, Apes, and Monkies. Adders and Snakes of an huge feantling. The Author dorh nor fet downe the name. In Brafil they call it

of all forts there are many in the Region of Sogne, that lieth voon the River Zaire. Of Adders and Snakes you hall find fome that are fine and twentie Ipanne long, and fine foan broad : and the bellie and the mouth fo large; that they can fwallow and receine into their bellie a whole Stag, or any other creature of that bigneffe. And it is called, great Water adder. It will goe forth of the water up to the Land to prey for his victuals, and then returne into the Rivers againe, and fo it liveth in both the Elements. It will get it felfe 50 vp you the boughs and branches of Trees, and there watch the Cattell that feed thereabouts, which when they are come neere vnto it, presently it will fall upon them, and wind it selfe in many twines about them, and clap his taile on their hinder parts, and to it ftraineth them, and biteth fo many holes in them, that at last it killeth them. And then it draweth them into some Wood, or other folitarie place, where it denoureth them at pleafure, skinne, hornes, hoofes and all. Now it falleth out, that when it is thus full, and (as it were) great with fo monitrous a meale, it becommeth almost drunke, and very sleepie, so that any child may kill it. And in this fort will it remaine full and fatisfied for the fpace of five or fixe dayes together, and then returne againe to prey. These Adders doe change their skinnes in their ordinarie seasons; year and sometimes after they have eaten so monstrously, and the said Sloughs, when they are sound, 60 are gathered vp, and referred for a shew of fo vnmeasurable a Creature. These Adders are also greatly esteemed by the Pagan Negroes, for they doe vie to reast them, and cate them for meate, and make more account of them then they doe of Hennes, or any fuch delicate fielh. They find

great flore of them, when they have occasion to burne their thicke Woods : for there they shall

have them lying on the ground, rofted with the fire. Befides thefe there are Vipers also, well Vipers. knowne vnto that People. Which Vipers are so venemous, that such as are bitten by them. doe die within the space of foure and twentie houres. But the Negroes are acquainted with certaine herbs that will heale their wounds. There are also certaine other Creatures, which being as big as Rams, have wings like Dra- Another

gons, with long tailes, and long chaps, and divers rewes of teeth, and feed vpon raw flesh. Their ftrange Creacolour is blue and greene, their skinne bepainted like scales; and two feet they have, but no ture, more. The Pagan Negroes, doe vie to worthip them as Gods, and at this day you may fee divers of them, that are kept for a wonder. And because they are very rare, the chiefe Lords there doe 10 curioufly preserve them, and fuffer the people to worthip them, which tendeth greatly to their profit, by reason of the gifts and oblations which the people offer vnto them. There are there also to be found Chamelions.

Other Serpents there are that are venemous, that carrie vpon the tippe of their tayle, a certaine little roundell like a Bell, which ringeth as they goe, fo as it may be heard.

Estridges are found in those Parts of Sunds, and of Batta, that are towards the Muzambi. The Estridge The young Estridges doe spring out of their egges, being warmed and disclosed by the eye and heate of the Sonne. Their feathers are vied in stead of Ensignes and Banners in Warre, mingled with some plumes of the Peacocke, and are fashioned in the likenesse of a shadow Peacocks. against the Sunne. And forasmuch as I am fallen into the speech of Peacocks, I must tell you 20 by the way, that in the Parts of Angola, there are Peacocks brought vp privately in a certaine Wood that is compassed about with walls : and the King will not suffer any other bodie to keep those Birds but onely himselfe, because they are for the Royall Ensignes, as I told you before.

There are also Indie-cocks, and Hens, and Geefe, and Duckes of all forts both wild and tame: Fowles of di-Partridges, fo many as children take them with ginnes. Other Birds they have likewise, as Phe-uers forts, fants, which they call Gallienoles . Pigeons, Turtles, and of these small Birds called Becea-fichi, an infinite number. Birds of prey, as Eagles Royall, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, and Sparrow-hawks, and others, great store, which not with standing the people never vie to hawke withall. Birds of the Sea, as Pelicanes (for fo the Portugals doe call them) white and great, which fwimme Birds of the under the water, and have their throats to wide, that they will fwallow a whole fifth at once. Sea. 30 This Bird hath fo good a flowacke, and naturally fo, hot, that it eafily digeffeth the Fifh that it fwalloweth whole, and the skinne of it is so hot, that the people of that Countrie doe vie to weare them, and to warme their cold flomackes withall, and therefore make great reckoning of them. There are many white Herons, and grey Bittours , that feed in the Walhes there , and Other kinds of are called, Royall Birds. Other Fowles there are of the likeneffe of a Crane, with a red bill Fowle, and red feet, as bigge as Storkes, and their feathers for the most part red and white, and some

Flemmings, because they doe much resemble them, and are good meat to eate. They have Parrots of grey colour, great and very talkative : and others of greene colour, but Parrots. they are little ones, and not fo talkatine. They have likewife certaine small little Birds, which 40 they call Birds of Musicke, and yet greater then the Canarie Birds, of feather and bill red : some greene, with their feet and bill onely blacke; fome all white; fome grey or dunne; fome all blacke, and this kind is more sweet in their notes then all the rest afore-named; for you would thinke that they talked in their finging. Others there are of divers colours, but they doe all fing in fundrie forts, so that the chiefe Lords of those Countries, from ancient times to this day, have continually kept them in Cages, and greatly efteemed them for their fong.

darke grey. Goodly Birds they are to looke to , and the people of the Countrie doe call them

Chamelions

ð. IIII. Of the fine other Provinces of Congo, to wit, Sogno, Sundi, Pango, Batta, and Pemba.

His Countrie is bounded with the River Ambrice, towards the North in feuen degrees The fecond and an halfe, and fo trauerfing the River Lelunda, and the River Zaire, it endeth at the Province Sog-Rockes, called Berreuras Vermellias, that is to fay, the Red pits, which are in the Bor- no, and the dea ders of the Kingdome of Lango. In the middeft of this Province there is a certaine fcription ther-Territorie, called by the same name Sogno, where the Gouernour of the Countrie dwelleth. The Sogno the chief chiefe Lords that rule this Prouince, are called Mani-Sogno, that is, Princes of Sogno, and are Towne of this commonly of the bloud Royall. The Prince that governeth there at this day, is called Don Province. Diego Mani-Sogno. He hath under his dominion many other petie Lords, and other Provinces, pos Diego. 65 that in old time were free, and lived by themselves, as the People of Mombala, situate lome-thiefe Goverwhat neere to the Citie of Congo, which are now subject to this government. And on the other nour of Sogno. file of the River Zaire towards the North, is the Province of Palmar, that is to fay, of Palmes, and those that because there is great flore of Palme-trees growing therein. Other Lords there are, that bor- twe vader der vpon the King of Loango, who was sometime subject to the King of Congo; but in processe him.

CHAP.4.\$.4.

of time he became a free Lord, and now profesfeth himselfe to bee in amitie with the King of Compo, but not to be his vallall. The people that are vnder these Lords in those borders, are cal led the Branas : and they reach within the Land, under the Equinc diall line towards the East. to the bounds of Anzicana, all along the Mountaines which divide them from the Anzich voon the North. They are called by the people of Loango, Congreamolal, because they were fish.

In this Countrey of Lawren there are many Elephants, and great store of Iuory, which they dicies of Segno, doe willingly exchange for a little Iron, fo that for the naile of a ship (be it neuer so small) they will give a whole Elephants tooth. The reason thereof, is either because there groweth no Iron in that place, or elie they have not the skill to get it out of the Mines where it groweth : But all to the Iron they can get, they imploy for the heading of their Arrowes, and their other weapons. as we told you when we spake of the Bramas.

The manner of the life of the Inhabi-

They make great store of Cloth of the Palme tres, whereof we made mention before : but these are leser, and yet very fine. They have great abundance of Kine, and of other cattell, before named. They are in Religion Pagans: their apparell after the fashion of the people of Congo: They maintaine warre with their bordering neighbours, which are the Anzichi, and the Inhabitants of Anzienna; and when they enterprise warre against the Anziehi, then they craue ayde of the people of Congo, and fo they remaine halfe in freedome, and halfe in danger of others. They worthip what they lift, and hold the Sunne for the greatest God, as though it were a man, and the Moone next, as though it were a woman. Otherwise every man choofeth to himselfe his owne Idoll, and worshippeth it after his owne pleasure. These people would easily embrace the Christian Religion : For many of them that dwell vpon the borders of Congo, have beene converted to Christendome : and the reft, for want of Priefts, and of fuch as should infruct them in the true Religion, do remaine still in their blindnesse.

The third Pro-

uince Sundi, & Saint Saniones, and beginneth about fortie miles dittant from it, and quite out of the Territorie thereof, and reacheth to the River Zaire, and so over the same to the other fide, where the Cadute or Fall is, which we mentioned before : and then holdeth on vp-wards on both fides towards the North, bordering upon Anzicana, and the Anzichi. Towards the South it goeth along the faid River Zaire, vntill you come to the meeting of it with the River Bancare, and all 10 along the bankes thereof, even to the rootes of the Mountaine of Crystall. In the bounds of the Prouince of Pango, it hath her principall Territorie, where the Gouernor lyeth, who hath his name from the Prouince of Sunds, and is feated about a daies journey neere to the Fall of the River, towards the South.

Sundi, is the necreft of all to the Citie of Congo, called, Citta di San-Saluatore, the Citie of

* x : 88.

The chiefe

Towne of

This Province is the chiefest of all the rest, and (as it were) the Patrimony of all the King. of Sundi, is al- dome of Congo and therefore it is alwaies governed by the Kings eldeft Son, and by those Princes that are to fucceed him. As it fell out in the time of their first Christian King, that was calneaby the heite apparent led Don John: whose eldest sonne, that was Gonernour heere, succeeded him, and was called of the King of Don Alfonfo. And euer fithence, the Kings of Congo have fucceffuely continued this cuftome, to configne this government to those Princes which are to fucceed in the Kingdome: As did the King that now ' is called Don Alwaro, who was in this government before Don Alwaro the King 40 his father died, and was called Mani-Sundi.

In all the kingnoman bath

And heere by the way you must note, that in all the Kingdome of Congo, there is not any dome of congo, person that possesseth any proper goods of his owne, whereof he may dispose, and leave to his heires : but all is the Kings, and he distributeth all Offices, all Goods, and all Lands, to whomfoeuer it pleafeth him; yea, and to this Law, even the Kings owne fonnes are fubiect. So that if of he may dif. any man doe not pay his tribute yearely (as he ought) the King taketh away his Gouernment from him, and giveth it to another. As it happened to the King that now liveth, who at the time that Signor Odoardo was at the Court, being of his owne nature very liberall, and bountiful beyond measure, and one that bestowed much vpon his servants, could not discharge those im-50 politions that the King had laid on him. Whereupon he was by the King deprined of his revenues, of his government, and of his royall fauour; that is to fay, in that language, he was Tombicado, as we will declare more at full in the second part of this Discourse.

The manner of Many Lords there are that are fubicat to the Governour of Sunds. The people doe Trafficke the life of Sun- with their neighbour Countries, felling and bartring divers things. As for example, Salt, and di Inhabitants. Cloathes of fundry colours, brought from the Indees, and from Portugall, and Lumachette, to serue for their Coyne. And for these commodities they doe exchange cloath of Palme Trees, and Iuory, and the skinnes of Sables and Marternes, and certaine girdles wrought of the leaues of Palme trees, which are greatly effeemed in those parts.

There groweth in these Countries great store of Crystall, and divers kinds of Metall : but 60 Iron they low about all the rest; faying, That the other Metals are to no vie: for with Iron they can make Kniues, and Weapons, and Hatchets, and such like Instruments, that are necessary and profitable for the vie of mans nature.

The Prouince of Pango in ancient time was a free Kingdome, that was governed of it felfe,

and bordereth on the North vpon Sunds, on the South vpon Batta, on the West vpon the Coun- The fourth trie of Cango, and on the East vpon the Mountaines of the Sun. The principall Territorie, where Prounce trie of Cango, and on the Lait vpon the mountaines of the Source hath, (viz.) Pango. It islanthe Gouernors dwelling is, hath the same name that the Prouince hath, (viz.) Pango. It islandescription the Gourthors awarding 23, and the Ruser Barbela, and in old time was called, Pangue-lungos: thereof. dern vpon the westerne sade of the contract and changed into Pange. Through the must Pangerhe of this Province runneth the River Berbela, which fetcheth his Originall from the great Lake, chiefe townof (whence the River Nitus alfo taketh his beginning) and from another leffer Lake, called Ache. this Provinces Isorda, and is dischargeth it selfe into Zaire. And although this be the least Countrey of all the Berbela, reft, yet doth it yeeld no leffe tribute then the reft.

This Prouince was conquered after the Countrey of Sund, and made fubiest to the Princes of Comes: and is now all one with it, both in speech and manners; neither is there any diffeon comes and sent and The present Gouernor thereof is called, Don Francesco Mani-Pan- Don Francico. go, and hath remained in the gonernment of this Region for the space of fiftie yeares, and no chiefe Goner-

man euer complained of him. The bounds of Batta are towards the North, the Countrey of Pauge: on the East it taketh The fift Proonite ouer the River Barbols, and reacheth to the Mountaines of the Sunne, and to the foote of wince Batta.

the Mountaines of Sal-Nitre. And on the South from the faid Mountaines, by a line passing & the descripthrough the meeting of the Rivers Barbela and Cacinga, to the Mountaine Brusciato, that is to tion thereof. fay, Scorched.

Within these bounds is Batta contained, and the principall Citie where the Prince dwelleth, Batta, the is likewife called Batta. In ancient time it was called Aphirmbas but afterwards the word chickerouse was corrupted, and it is now called Batta. It was in old time a very strong and a great King of all Batta. dome, and voluntarily of it felfe, without any warre it ioyned it felfe with the Kingdome of Congo, peraduenture because there were some diffention among their Lords : and therefore it hath more preheminence then the reft of the Prouinces of the Kingdome of Congo, in print ledges and liberties. For the Gouernment of Batta is alwaies affigned to one, that is of the The pr blood of the Kings of that Countrey, at their choise and pleafure, having no more respect to one neaccosthe then to another, to that he be of the flockeand blood Royali, neither to the etdeft fonne, nor to Gouerner of the second. Neither yet goeth this Gouernment by inheritance, but the King of Congo (as is Batta 30 told you before) doth dripole it at his owne pleafure to whom he thinketh best, to the end they should not vsurpe it by way of succession, or by rebellion. He dwelleth neerer the King then any other Gouernour or Lord of the Kingdome of Cone, and is the second person therein, neither may any man gaine-say his arguments and reasons as they may any of the rest, for it is neutre may any memory them. Now if the line of the King of Tongo thould chance to faile, fo that the Patry, there were none of that blood to succeed, the succession shall fall vpon the Governour of Battal chiefe Court

He that now gouerneth there, is called, Don Pedro Mani-Batta. Sometimes he eareth at the Kings owne Table, but yet in a baser feat then the Kings seat is, 1588, and that also not fitting, but standing; which is not granted to any other Lord of Congo, no nor to the sonnes of the King himselfe. His Court and his craine, is little leffe then the Court and ny. 40 traine of the King of Congo. For he hath Trumpets and Drums, and other inftruments going before him, as becommeth a Prince.

He doth hold continuall warres with the Pagans that border vpon him , and he is able to gather together about seuentie or eightie thousand fighting men. And because he doth still maintaine warre with the people that are next him, he hath libertie granted wato him to entertaine Harquebusires, that shall be of his owne naturall subjects. For the King of Congo will not suffer The King of any other Gouernor of any other Prouinces, nor any of their children, to have any Harquebu. Congo will not fiers that are borne within their Countrey, but onely the Portugals.

Towards the East of Batta, beyond the Mountaines of the Sunne, and of Sal-Nitre, vpon turall borne the bankes of the East and West of the River Nalus, and in the borders of the Empire of Mo- subject in Conbenbe-Muge there liveth a Nation, which by the people of Congo, are called Giaques, but in their 10,10 have an 50 owne language they are called Agag . Very fierce they are and warlike, much given to fight and The Giaguage pillage, and make continuall inroades into the Countries neere adioyning; and fometimes a. Of these, ice mong the rest into the Province of Batta. So that this Countrey must needs be in continu. Andrew Battell, all Armes, and stand vpon good guard, and maintaine Harquebusiers to defend themselves which lived and warred

The Prince of Batta hath many Lords vinder him : and the naturall people of this Province The conditiare called Monfobos, and their language is well vaderstood by the Inhabitants of Congo. They ons of the are farre more rude and rufticall then the Maci-Congi, and the Slaues that are brought from people of thence, doe prooue more obstinate and stubborne, then those that come from other Coun-

The Prouince of Pemba is feated in the heart and middle of the Kingdome of Congo, compaffed and comprised within the bounds before described, whose Gouernor is called Don Anto- tion thereof. nio Mani-Pemba, fecond fonne to King Don Aluaro, that dead is, and brother to the King that Don Antonio raigneth at this prefent. And for as much as his father did loue him dearely, he affigned vinto chiefe Gouer-

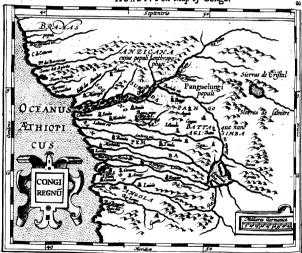
him this Gogernment, because he knew not what better thing to give him, saving the Realma it felfe : which in deed he would willingly have bestowed on him, for that hee was more like vnto him in quality and nature then his eldest fonne was. But it would not be by reason of the law of the Kinedome, which would not have veeled thereinto.

The chiefe

Crie of all connecty is the very Lentre, and middelt of all the State of Congo, and the original of Congo, is future all the ancient Kings, and the Territorie where they were borne, and the chiefe and principal in dis Pronince of Penia all that Empire, is affigued to this Province, whereof we will hereafter deliver you a full information. The Governor of Pemba dwelleth in a Territory of the fame name, fituate at the force of the Corched Mountaine, along the River Loze, which rifeth out of the Lake, and runneth The Courtiers through the Region of Bamba into the Sea. The Courtiers and Lords, and Seruitors belonging &c. dwellfor to the King of Congo, have their goods and possessions, and revenues in this Province; because it is neerest to the Court, and very convenient for the conveighing of their victuals, and their other stuffe vnto the Court. Some of these Lords, in that part specially, that bordereth your the aforefaid Province of Bamba, have much adoe to keepe fight and defend them selves from the people of Quizama, because they are neerest vnto them. For this people (as we told you) did rebell against the King of Congo, and revolted from him, and doe professe that they will be at li-

HONDIVS bis Map of Congo.

bertie, and gouerned of themfelues.



Of the lituation of the Revall Citie of the Kingdome of Congo: Of their first conversion and Warre, thence arising betwixt the Kings two Sonnes.

The Territory of the chiefest Citie in all Congo, containeth in compaffe twentie

Lthough the cluefe and Royall Citie of the Kingdome of Congo be after a fort compreuernment thereof, and the Territorie thereunto belonging, which may in compasse amount to the space of twentie miles about, doth depend wholly of the King of Con-

go himfelfe, we will place it in a feuerall Regiment, and intreat of it by it felfe.

This Civie is called Sun Saluatore, or Saint Sanion, and in times past in that Countrie Lan- The chiefe Ci-guage it was caned passes, which generally indicated about one hundred and fifthe miles from the Sea, vp- Saluatore. on a great and a high Mountaine, being almost all of a Rocke, but yet having a veyne of I- The fituation ron in it, whereof they have great vie in their housing. This Mountaine hath in the toppe of of the Citie, in a great Plaine, very well manured and firmilhed with Houses and Villages, contaying in the Mountin herripoa it circuit about ten miles , where there doeth dwell and hue, the number of one hundred thour flandeth.

The fowle is fruitfull, and the aire fresh, wholsome, and pure : there are great store of Springs, The foyle, the Fa of indifferent good water to drinke, and ac certaine times doe not harme any man: and of all airc, the waters forts of Cartell great abundance. The top of the Mountaine is severed and diffinguished from and the Carall the rest of the Hill which is about it, and therefore the Portugals doe call it, The Othetro, that The Otherro. is to fay, A view, or a Watch-tower, or a Singular heighth, from whence you may take a fight of all the Champaine round about: onely towards the East, and towards the River, it is very

fteepe and rockie. For two causes did the Princes of this Kingdom place this habitation in the foresaid heighth The reason of this Mountaint. First, because it lieth in the very middest, and (as it were) in the Centre of why they built all the Realme, from whence hee may prefently fend aide to any part of his Kingdome, that in this place,

may stand in need of reliefe: and secondly, because it is situated in a Territorie that is by Nature 20 mounted aloft, having a very good aire, and of great fafetie; for it cannot be forced. By the chiefe common high-way that goeth up to the Citie, and looketh towards the Sea, being difant from thence one hundred and fiftie miles (as hath beene told you) which way is very large and competent, though it goe fome what about in compaffe, you shall a cend fine miles from the bottome to the top of the Mountaine. At the foot thereof on the East side there runneth a Ri- Fine miles Her, whereunto the women doe defcend by the space of a miles walke to wash their clothes. from the botuer, whereunto the women doe deicend by the space of a miles wante to want their torne of the In divers other parts thereof there are fundric valleys planted and manured: neither doe they tome of the Hill to the top, fuffer any part of the Countrie thereabouts to be left vntilled or vnufed, became it is the Coun-ARiver at the trie where the Court remaineth.

The Citie is feated in a corner or angle of the hill towards the South-east, which Don Alfon- The particular 6 the first Christian King did compasse about with walls, and gave vnto the Portugals a several smanon of the place for themselues, shut up likewise within walls. Then did he also inclose his owne Pa- Cine. here and the first House with another wall, and in the middle the tween the first two enclosings and the middle the tween the first wo enclosing the first a great face of ground, where the principall Church was built, with a faire Market place Persign. Pet a great pace or ground, where the principan condent was bount, what a last senant place correspondence in the Longings of the Lords, as of the Portugals Inha. The kings Pablications, doe open on the file of the faid Church, For, in the vopermost end of the Market place last, the control of the Court dwell, and behind the Church doeth the Market place runne. The phicipall into a narrow street, where there is also a gate, and beyond that gate many houses towards the Market place, Eaft. Without these walls, (which doe enclose the Kings houses, and the Citie of the Portugals) there are a number of other buildings, erected by divers Lords, every man making his severall an choife of the place which he thinketh most fit and convenient for his dwelling neere vnto the Court. So that the greatnesse of this Citie cannot well be determined of limited. Beyond these

and fundrie Palaces, where every Lord poffesseth (as it were) a whole Towne within himselfe. The circuit of the Portugals Citie containeth about a mile; and the Kings houses as much. The walls are very thicke : the gates are not shut in the night time, neither is there any watch or ward kept therein. And although that Plaine doeth lie very high and aloft, yet is there great abundance of wa- Good flore of

walls also, that thus doe compasse this Citie; there is a great champaine Plaine, full of Villages.

ters in it, so that there is no want thereof. But the Court and the Portugals Citie doe all drinke waters of a certaine Fountaine that fpringeth continually, towards the North, and lieth downe the hill, as farre as a Gunne will shoot : and from hence they doe ferch all their water, and bring it

to the Citie in vessels of Wood, of Earth, and Leather, youn the backes of their Slaues.

All this Plame is very fruitfull, and well manured. It hath Meadowes full of Graffe, and The Plaine Trees that are alwaies greene. It beareth fundrie forts of Graine, but the principall and best of very fruitfull. all is called Luco, which is very like to Mustard-seed, but that it is somewhat bigger. When it is of Grant. grinded with Hand-querns (for so they vse to do) it yeeldeth a very white Meale, whereof they Luce, Miller. make Bread, that is both white, and also of a very good sauour, and wholsome withall : neither doth it give place to our Wheat in any fort, faving that they doe not celebrate the Sacrament with it. Of these Graines there now is great store, ouer all the Kingdome of Congo: but it is not long fince that this Seed was brought thither from that part of the River Nilm, where it 60 falleth into the second Lake. There is also a white kind of Millet, called the Mazza of Congo, White Millet,

that is to lay, The Corne of Congo: and another Graine which they call Maiz, but they make Massa of no account of it, for they give it to their Hogs: neither doe they greatly esteeme of Rice. The Comes. foresaid Maiz they commonly terme by the name of Mazza-Manpuro, that is to say, the Por- Maiz, tugals Corne; for they call a Portugall Manputo.

Diners kinds of Freesbearing fruit.

There are moreover divers and fundric forts of Trees, that beare very great flore of Fruits. infomuch as the greatest part of the people doe feed vpon the Fruits of the Countrie, as Citron. Lymons, and specially Oranges, very full of liquor, which are neither sweet nor sowre, and are ordinarily eaten without any annovance or harme at all. And to flew the fruitfulnefle of this Countrie, the faid Signer Odoardo reported, that he had feene from a kernell of the fruit of a Pome-Citrone, which was left within the rind thereof, there forum vp within the frace of foure daves a pretie tall fprig. Other Fruits there are, which they call Banana, and wee verily thinke to be the Mules of Leypt and Soria, fauing that in thole Countries they grow to be as

The Olyc of

Fewaria.

bigge as Trees; but here they cut them yeerely, to the end they may beare the better. The Fruit is very (weet in fmell, and of good nourishment. In these Plaines there grow likewise sundrie of Paim-trees, kinds of Palme-trees; one that beareth Dates, and another that beareth the Indian Nuts, called Cocoes, because they have within them a certaine shell that is like to an Ape : and thereumon they vie in Spaine to shew their children Coccola, when they would make them afraid. Another Palme-tree there groweth also very like to the former, but of a more strange and singular propertie : for it yeeldeth Oyle, Wine, Vinegar, Fruit and Bread. The Oyle is made of the thell of the fruit, and is of the colour and substance of Butter, sauing that it is somewhat greenish. They yie it, as other people doe vie Oyle and Butter, and it will burne like Oyle. They anoing their bodies withall; and befides, it is very good to eate. They presse it out of the Fruit, as Oyle is pressed out of the Olives, and then they boyle it, and so preserve it. The Bread is made The Bread of of the stone of the fruit it selfe, which is like to an Almond, but somewhat harder : and within an

The fruit of the Palme. The Wine and Vinegar of Palme.

Palme.

the fame is there a certaine kernell or pith, which is good to eate: very wholfome and of good nourithment. The whole Fruit, together with the outter shell is greene; and they vie to eate it both raw and roiled. The Wine is drawen from the top of the Tree, by making an hole therein, from whence there distilleth a liquor like Milke, which at the first is sweet, but afterwards fowre, and in processe of time becommeth very Vinegar, to serue for Sallets. This Wine they drinke cold, and it moueth to vrine very much: fo that in those Countries, there is not a man that is troubled with Grauell or Stone in the bladder. It will make them drunke, that drinke too much of it : but indeed it is of a very good nutriment.

The fruit Cola

There are other Trees, that beare a certaine fruit, called Cola, as big as a Pine-apple, which hath within it other fruits like Cheft-nuts, wherein are foure feuerall shells or skins, of red and a Carnation colour. These they vie to hold in their mouthes, and chaw them, and at last to eate them, for the quenching of their thirst, and better relishing of their water. They comfort and preserue the stomacke, but aboue all other qualities, they are singular good against the diseases andrew Battell of the Liver. And it is faid, that the Liver of a Henne, or of any other like Bird, which is putrified, and stinketh, being sprinkled ouer with the matter of this fruit, returneth into his former estate, and becommeth fresh and sound againe. This food is commonly and generally vsed among them all, and there is very great abundance of it: and therefore it is good cheape. O-Other kinds of ther kinds of wild Palme-trees there are, which yeeld divers fruits that are eaten: and their leaves referred to make Mats, wherewith their houses are covered; and Baskets and Skeps, and fuch other like Instruments that are necessarie for their daily vies. Other Trees there are likewise, called Ogbeghe, which beare a fruit which is like a yellow Plumme, and is very good to Trees called, to eate, and hath a very fweet fmell withall. Of these Trees they cut off the boughs, and plant them fo thicke together, that they touch one another, and fland closely all in a ranke ; fothat when they are growne great, they make a ftrong Fence or wall about their houses, which being asterwards coursed with Mats, it resembleth a handsome Court or Closse, wherein they vie to walke, (as it were) in an Arbour that maketh a great shadow, and defendeth them from the heate of the Sunne. In the middest of these enclosures, they vie to build certaine houses of wood, covered with firaw, and divided into fundrie convenient roomes, all on the ground without any Stories or Sollers about them. These they doe line with very faire and delicate Mats, and furnish them with other ornaments in very handlome manner.

There are to bee found among them many masses and lumpes of stone, which are of such 10 thickneffe and hugeneffe, that you may cut out a whole Church, euen of one whole piece; yea, and of the fame kind of itone, whereof the Obelifco is made, that is erected before Porta del Popolo in Rome. Besides this, there are whole Mountaines of Porphyrie, of Iasper, and of white Marble, and of other fundrie colours, which here in Rome are called, Marbles of Numidia, of Africa, and of Athiopia: certaine Pillars whereof, you may fee in the Chappell of Pope

Other Stone there is, that is speckled with graines or strakes , but among all the rest, that kind is most admirable, which hath in it faire lacynthes, that are good Iewels. For the strakes being dispersed like veynes ouer all the bodie of their Mother-stone, if you shall divide them, 60 and plucke them out as you would picke the kernels out of a Pomegranate, they will fall into graines and little pieces of perfect lacynth. But if you please to make Pillars, or Obeliskes, or other fuch like memorials, of the whole maffe, you shall see them shine and sparkle, full of most faire and goodly Iewels.

There are also other kinds of rare ftones, which make a thew of metall in them, as of Copper, Wantof works and of fundry other colours, that are very fresh, and bright, and imooth, whereof you may make men to build Images, or any other worke of fingular leautic. True it is, indeed, that they want Malons, and Cutters, and Playsterers, and Carpenters, and other such Artificers : for when the Churches, and the walls, and the other fabrickes in those Countries were built, the Workmen were brought

thither out of Portugall. There are also Tamarindes, and Cassia, and Ceders in such multitudes growing all along the Ri- Stoffe for ner of Congo, befides other Trees of an vnmeasurable length and thicknesse, that an infinite number of ships and houses may be bui IJed of them. Their Gardens doe beare all manner of Herbes and housings 10 and Fruits, as Pompions, Melions, Cucumbers, Coleworts, and fuch like, befides other forts Herbs & fruits

that doe not agree with our Climates of Europe.

The King of Portugall, Don Giovanni the second, being desirons to disconer the East Indies, sent The fift trafe forth diners frips by the Coast of Africa to fearch out this Naugation, who having found the Hands of fiese of the Cape Verde, and the He of Saint Thomas, and running all along that Coast, did light upon the River Portugali into Zaite, whereof we bane made mention before, and there they had good Trafficke, and tryed the people to congo bee very courteous and kind, Afterwards bee fent forth (for the same purpose) certaine other Vessels, to entertaine this Trafficke with Corgo, who finding the Trade there to bee so free and profitable, and the people so friendly, left certaine Portugals behind them, to learne the Language, and to Trafficke with them: among whom one was a Maffe-priest. These Portugals conver- Mani Serno, the 20 fing familiarly with the Lord of Sogno, who was Uncle to the King and a man well fricken in yeares, Kings Yncle dwelling at that time in the Port of Praza (which is in the mouth of Zairc) were very well entertained entercayneth

and efficiented by the Prince, and reverenced as though they had beene earthly Gods, and descended the Portuguis. downe from Heaven into those Countries. But the Portugals told them that they were men as them-Selves were, and professors of Christianitie. And when they perceined in kow great estimation the people held them, the forefaid Priest and others began to reason with the Prince touching the Christian Repieces, and to lower wint them the errors of the Pagan Superstition, and by little and little to teach Mani-Sogne, them the Faith which we prosesse, insommend and because the wind the processes as them the Faith which we prosesses, insommend as that which like Portugals spake vinto them, greatly pleased become read and because the processes and the processes are the pro the Prince, and so he became conserted.

With this confidence and good frist, the Prince of Sogno went to the Court, to enforme the King of 20 the true Dollrine of the Christian Portugals, and to encourage him that he would imbrace the Christian Religion which was so manifest and also so wholsome for his soules health. Hereupon the King commanded to call the Pieft to Court, to the end be might himselfe treat with him personally, and understand The King of ded to call the Pieft to fourt, to the ecan a mugo summer; when he when he was fully infor- Come, promi-the truth of that which the Lord of Sogno had declared onto him. Whereof when he was fully infor-fetheo become

med, he converted and promifed that he would become a Christan.

And now the Portugall Ships departed from Congo, and returned into Portugall : and by them did a Christian. the King of Congo write to the King of Portugall, Don Giouann; the fecond, with earnest request. that he would fend him some Priests, with all other Orders and Ceremonics to make him a Christian. to the within gentum your critis, with one was considered to the print field by the grant gentum your the print field that reasons the best and greet to the print greet field that the king the king of full information of all that had suppened, agreeable to his good pleasure. And so the King table order for funding keligious persons, to be first work of me accordingly, with all Ornaments for the Church and distinguished other friends to other fersites, as Crosses and Images: so that he was throughly summined with all things that were not the King of the control of the co cellarie and need all for fuch an action.

In the meane-while, the Prince of Sogno, ceased not day and night to discourse with the Portugall struct him. Priest, whom hee kept in his owne House, and at his owne Table, aswell that hee might learne the Mani Sogno Christian Fanth himselfe, as also instruct the people therein : so that bee began to fanour Christianite Christian Rewith all his power.

At last the ships of Portugall, arrived with the expected provisions (which was in the yeare of our The ships to-Saluation 1 49 1.) and landed in the Port which is in the month of the River Zaire. The Prince of turne from Parity all the Sognowith all shew of familiar 107, accompanied with all his Gentlemen, ranne downe to meete them, and Mani Sorso & entertayned the Portugals in most courteous manner, and so conducted them to their Lodgings. The next historine co-50 day following, according to the direction of the Priest that remayned behind, the Prince caused a kind of terrayneth the Church to be builded, with the bodies and branches of certaine trees, which hee in his owne person, with Portugals. the helpe of his Sernants, most denoutly had felled in the Wood. And when it was concred, they erected buildestra therein three Altars in the worship and rene ence of the most boly Tri itte, and there was baptised him- Chur h, seife and his young Sonne, hamfelfe by the n me of our Sautour, Emanuel, and his childe by the name Mani Sogue & of Anchony, because that Saint is the Protector of the Citie of Libone.

The men and women before this had no proper names greeable to reasonable creatures, but the com- baptized. mon na es of Plants, of Stones, of Birds o d of Beaffs. But the Traces and Lords had their denomination: from the Places and States which they go erned. As for example, the forefaid Prince, which 60 was the first Christian in Congo was called Mani Sogno, that is to fay, The Prince of Sogno, and when hee was christned, was called Emanuel, but at this day they have all in generall such Christian

names as they have learned of the Portugals. After a Masse mas celebrated and sung, one of the Priests that came from Portugall ment up, and

Christian.

an Religion. Mani Sogno rebearfeth the Sermon to his people. got to the

made a briefe Sermon in the Portugall Language, declaring the summe of the new Religion, and faith A sermon con of the Gospell which they had received. This Sermon, the Priest that was left behind, having now leartyping the med the Congo speech, did more at large expound to the Lords that were in the Church for the Church could not possibly hold the minimerable multitude of the people that were there gathered toesther, at the connersion of their Prince : who afterwards came abroad unto them, and rehearsed the whole Sermon, with great lone and charitie, moving and exhorting them to imbrace likewise the true beliefe of the Christian Doctrine.

When this was done, all the Portugals put themselves on their way towards the Court, to baptise the King, who with a most feruent longing attended the same. And the Gouernour of Sogno tooke order that many of his Lords | bould wast open them with Musicke, and finging, and other signes of wonder. 10 full reion sing, besides, divers slaves which he gave them to carrie their single, commanding also the people, tife the King. that they bould prepare all manner of victivall to bee readie in the streets for them. So ereat was the number of people, that ranne and met together to behold them, as the whole Champaigne seemed to bee in a manner coursed with them, and they all did in great kindnesse entertaine and welcome the Portugall Christians, with finging and founding of Trumpets and Cymbals, and other Iustruments of that

are the feet of them that bring tydings of peace? The Courtiers of Congo meet

the Perturals.

The Portugall

Embaffadour

Embaffage.

reidyce at it.

The King

viewe:h the

Prefents fent

vote him by

the King of

among the

Portugals for

ning of the

a Church.

binder the

Pertugall,

And it is an admirable thing to tell you, that all the streets and high-wayes, that reach from the Sea. How beautiful to the Citie of Saint Sautours, being one hundred and fiftie miles, were all cleanfed and swept, and abundantly furnified with all manner of victual and other necessaries for the Portugals. Indeed, ther doe vie in those Countries, when the King or the principall Lords goe abroad, to cleanse their wayes and w make them handsome.

Three dayes iourney from the place whence they departed, they described the Kings Courtiers, that came to meet them, to prefent them with fresh viltuals, and to doe them honour : and so from place to place they encountred other Lords, that for the same purpose were sent by the King to receive the Christians, who were the Messengers and Bringers of fo great a toy. When they were come within three miles neere to the Citie, all the Court came to entertaine and welcome the Portugals, withall mannered pompe and ioyfulnesse; and with Musicke and Singing, as in those Countries is veed upon their solemnes

And so great was the multitude of people, which abounded in the streets, and that there was neither Tree nor Hillocke higher then the rest, but it was loden with the fe that were runne forth and a fembled to The Kine him. to view thefe Strangers, which brought unto them this new Law of their Saluation. The Kine himselfe selfe receiveth attended them at the gate of his Palace, in a Throne of Estate erected upon a high Scaffold, where he did publikely receive them, in such manner and fort as the ancient Kings of that Realme were accustomed to doe, when any Embassadours came onto him, or when his Tributes were payed him, or when any other (uch Royall Ceremonies were performed.

And first of all, the Embasadour declared the Embasage of the King of Portugall, which was expounded and interpreted by the foresaid Priest, that was the principall Author of the connersion of those people. After the Embassage was those delivered, the King raysed himselfe out of his Seate, and dectareth his faining further upon bis feet, did both wish his countenance and peech, here most enden figured, the tracking or the great 107, that he had conceined for the comming of the Christians, and so fate downe agains. And the ioyceth at the, incontinently all the people with shouting, and sounding their Trumpets, and Singing, and other manifel arguments of recogning, did approve the Kings words, and shewed their exceeding good liking of the Embassage. And further in token of obedience, they did three times prostrate themselves upon the ground, and cast up their feet according to the use of those Kingdomes.

Then the King tooke view of all the Presents that were sent him by the King of Portugall, and the Uestments of the Priests, and the Ornaments of the Altar, and the Crosses, and the Tables, wherem were depainted the Images of Saints, and the Streamers, and the Banners, and all the rest, and with incredible attention, caused the meaning of every one of them to be declared unto him, one by one. And so withdrew himselfe, and lodged the Embassadour in a Palace made readie of purpose for him, and all the rest were placed in other Houses of senerall Lords , where they were furnified with all plentie and to Confulration

The day following, the King caused all the Portugals to be assembled together in private: where they deuised of the course that was to be taken for the Christning of the King, and for effecting the full conmersion of the people to the Christian Faith. And after sandry Discourses, it was resolved and concluaing and tot she building of ded, that first of all a Church should bee builded, to the end that the Christining, and other Ceremonies thereunto belonging, might be celebrated therein with the more Solemnitie: and in the meane-while the An infurredi King and Court frould be taught and instructed in the Christian Religion. The King prefently commanded, that withall speed provision should be made of all manner of stuffe necessary for this Building, as on rayled by Timber, Stone, Lime, and Bricke, according to the direction and appointment of the Work-master; and 60 the Douill, to Masons, which for that purpose were brought out of Portugall. progresse of

But the Deuill who never ceaseth to crosse all good and holy proceedings, raysed new diffentions and Christian Reconspiracies, by procuring a rebellion among certaine people of the Anzichi, and of Anzicana, which CHAP.4. S.S. King, Queene, Mani-Sundi, and many Lords christned.

dwell upon both the bankes of the River Line, from the forefaid fals upwards, to the great Lake, and are subject and belonging to the King of Congo. Now this monstrous Riner being restrayned and kept backe by the se falls, doth swell there mightly, and spreadeth it selfe abroad in a very large and deepe channell. In the breadth whereof there are many Hands, some small and some great, so that in some of them, there may be maintayned about thirtie thousand persons. In these llands and in other places adioyning to the Rivers thereabouts, did the people make an insurrection, andrenounced their obedience to the King. and flue the Governours that he had fent thither to rule.

tague the Community needs goe himselfe in person to pacific these broyles : hombeit, he resolved to bee bap- The King tifed before his going, and so was enforced to forbeare the building of the Church of Stone, and withall buildeth in 10 fleed to flead thereof to erect one of Tumber, which Church bee in his owne person with the aduce of halle a church speed, in stead thereof to erect one of 1 inneer, which comments to bee, and therein did receive of timber, the Portugals, did accomplish in such manner and fort as it ought to bee, and therein did receive of timber.

The King and the Sacrament of holy Baptilme, and was named Don Giouanni, and his Wife Donna Eleonora, Ouerne of after the names of the King and Queene of Portugall, and the Church et selfe initialed and dedicated comes christ-

The same day, wherein the King was baptifed, divers other Lords following his example were bapti. The Church fed likewife, having first learned certaine Principles of the Christian Faith. And when all this was Divers Lords done, the King went in person to disperse the turbulent attempts of his Adversaries, against whom bee baptised. found the Prince his Sonne, and the Lord of Batta alreadie fighting with a formall Armie, But at The King gothe arrival of the King, the Enemies yeelded, and submitted themselues to the obedience which before eth in perion against there they performed, and so be returned in triumph to the Citie of Congo, and the Prince his Some with bels, and dif-

him, who presently was desirous to become a Christian, and was christiand by the name of the first Prince comfitteth of Portugall, casted Altonio: and with him also were christned many Gentlemen and Caualieros, and them. other of his Seruants, that came with him out of his Province.

The Kings second Sonne, would not agree to receive the new Religion, many other Lords fanoured christned and bim, who being addited rather to the sensatitie of the sless, then the puritie of the minde, resisted with him with him.

Gospel, which began now to be preached, especially in that Commandement, wherein it is forbidden, that M. mi. Ponto a man [bould have any mo Wives but one. The eldest Brother Don Alfonso, dud with great fermencie, defend Christianitie, and burned all the Gospel

Idols that were within his Province. The fecond Brother (called Mani-Pango, because bee was Goner- Poygamic. nour of the Countrey of Pango) did resist it mightily, and had gotten the greatest part of the principall Lords of Pango to be on his side. For there were diners of the new christned Lords, whose Ladies seeing themselucs seperated, and forlorne of their Husband-Lords by force of the Christian Law, did take it as a great injurie and scorne done unto them, and blashbemed and cursed this new Religion beyond all measure. These Lords umted themselues together with others, and began to plot Trecherie against Don Altonio, hoping that if they could rid him out of the World, the Christian Faith would veterly cease of it Mani-Panco & felfe. And therefore Mani-Pango and bis Complices gave intelligence to his Father, that the Prince his Complices Don Altonio fauoured the Christian Faction, onely to the end that under the colour of his countenance accust. Maniand favor they might rayle an Insurrection & Rebellion against him, & so drive him out of his Kingdom. Father, The King gaue credit to their informations, and deprined his Sonne of the Government wherein hee

was placed: But the Providence of God which reserved him for a greater matter, did relieve him by the good mediation and counsell of his friends, who entreased the King his Father, that hee would not be mogood mediation and counfell of his friends, who entreated the King his Father, that hee would not be morprineth maci-ued to anger, before he had examined the Answeres and Reasons of the Prince his Some. Wherein the Swadi of his Kino was especially perswaded by Mani-Sogno, who (as wee told you) was before christned, and called, government. Don Emanuel, and by good hap was in Court at that prefent. This man (being the ancientest Courtier and Lord of that time, singularly well beloned of the King and all his people) did with sound reasons and Mani-Sogno, and Lord of that time, lingularly well beloned of the King and an ois people) all who female enjoys and mikith inter-dexteritie of wit, procure the King to renoke the fentence, with a special charge, that hee should not pro-cession for his ceed with Such risonr against the Gentiles, for the propagation and exaltation of the Christian Religi- Brother. on. But he being full of fernent charitie, and godly spirit, ceased not (for all that) to admance the Faith of the Gospell, and to put the Commandements of God in execution.

Whereupon his Aduersaries who neuer rested from their former attempt, were continually at the 50 Kinos elbow, and fought by all cunning Shifts and secret denifes, to destroy that which the good Prince had builded, especially when they saw that the Prince of Sogno was departed from Court, and returned into his concernment. So that no bodie being now left to protest and defend the Christian Religion, the The King wa-King began to doubt of the Faith, which with fo great zeale he had before imbraced : and therefore fent wereth in Reto his Some, that he should come agains to the Court, to make account of those Revenues, that he shad lest M. as surgathered within the Countrey of his Gouernment, with a full intent and meaning, indeed, to deprise him, dito eccount, when his accounts should be finished.

But he, in the meane-while, his Father being an old man, did by meanes of a naturall infirmitie de-deprive him. part out of this life, Andhie Mother who alwaies perseuered constant in the Catholike Faith, louing her eldest Sonne most entirely, concealed the Kines death for the space of three dayes being therein aided and The Queine affifted by some of her trustie friends, & gaue it out, that the King had taken such order as no man might Mother tencome unto him to trouvile him. In the meane feafon, for did fecretly fignifie to her Sonne, the death of his deth in al hafte Father, which fee would keepe close till his comming, and charged him without any delay, and in all hafte to ther Sons to freed him to the Court.

Ppppp

This shee did by certaine Runners, that from place to place in convenient distances and iourneyes, ere alwaies readie like Postes, to conues the precepts and commandements of the King over all the Realme Whereupon he presently caused himselfe to be carried poste both day and night, by certaine Slaves according to the vie of that Countrie, and in one day and two nights, with most exquisite diligence, accompli-licat the iourner of two hundred miles, and so arrived at the Citte, before he was expected.

The funerall of King lobn, celebrated by King Alfonfo.

Now together with the death of the King there was also published the succession to the Crowne as Don Alfonio, being then present, who in his owne person did accompanie the corps of his dead Father to the buriall, with all the Lords of the Court, and all the Christian Portugals, which was solemnized after the manner of (bristendome, with service and prayers for the dead, and all this with such sunerall some. as was never scene before among those people. But they which heretofore were adversaries to this new King, doubting of their owne safetie, if they should remaine in the Court, united themselves with Mani-Paneo. who was now departed into the Prouince of his owns Government, and while his father lived was wholly employed in fighting against the Mozombi, and certaine other people that had rebelled a

Mani-Pange, rebellerh against his brother,

Mani-Pango and his forces fet forwards to the besieging of the Citie, with so great a noyse of were like Instruments, and cryes, and showtings, and terrible threatnings, that the poore few, which were in the (tie, as well Christians as others, fainted in their hearts, and failed in their courage, and came and presented themselves before the King, saying, that he had not power enough to resist so powerfull an Ene. mie, and therefore they thought it better for him to grow to some concord and composition, and to when don the new Religion, which he had lately begun to professe, to the end be might not fall into the hands of to to the cruell dester fares. But the King being refelate, and full of religious confiance, represent his treate, diffe, and cilied them differed, and help expire, and willed them, if they had any mind an ediffere to finds born, and got to the Exemis, but to by looked to the A. A. for investigation of the what would plus born, and got to the Exemis, but to by looked for the A. A. for investigation and the first but would plus bim, he did not doubt, but affuredly trust, though not with the poffibilitie or strength of Man , yet with the fanour of God, to vanquish and ouercome that innumerable multitude. And therefore hee would not request them either to toyne with him, or to put their lines in bazard against his adner faries for his fake, but onely they might rest themselves and expect the iffue that should follow thereon.

The King ereacth a Croffe of a great length.

The miracle which the author addes, I haue omitted, light and fine the vision of our Ladie and Saint lames, fighting agianft Mani-

called Saint

King Alfon(e

di patcheth the Portugall Embassadour, his owne into The king commandeth all Idols to bee brought in,

He did presently cause a Crosse to be planted, and erested in the middest of the Market place, richt against the Church, which his Father had builded. This Crosse was of a wonderfull length, for it was Surescore spanne long, and the Crosse-barre in proportion answerable thereunto. The Crosse is to be feene in the same place, wherein it was erected, at the front of the Church, which Church was called Saint Crosses, of the Crosse there planted. This Crosse the last King, that dead is, Don Aluaro, Father to the King that now is, renewed and made another of the same bignesse that the first was of.

Mani-Pango terrified with visions, and not with his brothers forces, ouercome with feare and dancer ranne away, and fell into the Snares and Nets which he himselfe had laid for the Christians; For, lighfwords, as also ting among the foresaid Stakes, he was with one of them thrust into the bodie, and so being surprized with an enill death, he finished his life, as it were in a rage. For you must understand, that the sharpe ends of the faid Stakes, were envenomed with a certaine porson, which taking hold of the blood, and entring somewhat into the flesh, would kill without all cure or remedie. By this victorie and death of his brother, did the King remaine in securitie and libertie.

All things well established, the King Don Alfonso tooke order, that they should presently goe in hand 40 The fratagem with the fabricke of the Principall Church, called Saint Croffes, which was so named of the Croffe that was there planted, (as wee fold you before) and also because upon the Feast day of the boly Crosse, the first stone was laid in the soundation thereof. Moreover, be commanded that the men should bring stones, and the women should fetch sand from the River, for the furthering of this worke. The King would need be the first Porter himselfe, and upon his owne shoulders brought the first basket of stones, which be cast into the foundation, and the Queene ber basket of (and likewise, thereby giving an examof the Church plo to the Lords and the Ladies of the Court to doe the like, and to encourage and hearten the people in so boly an action. And so this fabricke being furthered by so good Work-masters and Workmen, in a very short time was fully finished, and therein were celebrated Masses, and other Dinine Service, with 50 great solemnitie, besides, a number of Lords and others, that were there baptised and christned: so that the multitude of such as came to be partakers of the holy Baptisme abounded so greatly, that there were not Prufts enough to execute that office.

After this the King dispatched away the Portugall Embassadour, who till this time had remained at and another of the Court, by reason of these troubles: and with him be sent also another Embassadour of his owne, called Don Roder:co, and divers others that were of kinne both to himselfe and to his Embassadour, to the end that they should learne, both the Doctrine of the Christians in Portugall, and also their Language, and further declare unto the King all these accidents that hapned.

Moreoner, hee cansed the Lords of all his Proninces to be affembled together, in a place appointed for that purpose, and there publikely signified unto them, that who sever had any Idols, or any thing else 60 that was contrarie to the Christian Religion he should bring them for th and deliner them over to the Lieuthings that are tenants of the Countrie. Otherwise, who seemer did not so, should be burned them selves, without remissions or pardon. Which commanded was incontinently put in execution. And a wonderfull thing it is to be noted, that within leffe then one moneth, all the Idols, and Witcheries and Characters, which they

worldioped and accounted for Gods, were fent and brought onto the Court. Many there were that caried a deution to Dragons with wings, which they nourifhed and fed in their owne prinate houles, &iwing unto ibem for their food, the best and most costly Viands that they had. Others kept Serpents of borrible figures: Some worshipped the greatest Goats they could get; some Tygers, and other most monstrous creatures; yea, the more uncouth and deformed the Beasts were, the more they were bonored. Some beld in veneration certains uncleane Fowles, and Night-birds, as Bats, Owles, and Scriich-Owles, and fuch like. To be bruefe, they did choose for their Gods divers Snakes, and Adders, and Beasts, and Birds, and Herbs, and Trees, and fundry Characters of Wood and of Stone, and the figures of all these thines about rehearsed, as well painted in Colours, as grauen in Wood and in Stone, and in 10 Such other Stuffe. Neither did they onely content themselves with worshipping the faid Creatures. when they were quicke and aline , but also the verie skinnes of them when they were dead, being stuffed

with straw. The act of this their adoration, was performed in dinersforts, all wholly addressed, and directed to ex- Their denomin preffe their humilitie, as by kneeling on their knees, by casting themsclues groueling upon the earth, by worthipping defiling their faces with dust, by making their prayers unto their Idols, in words and in actions, and by of Idols. offering unto them the best part of the substance which they had in their possession. They had moreover, Witches their Witches, which made the foolish people to believe that their Idols could freake, and so decided them: and if anyman being in ficknelle or infirmitie, would recommend bimselfe unto them, and afterwards that man recovered his health, the Witches would per swade, him that the Idoll had beene angry with him.

but now was appeased, and had bealed him. The King caused fire 16 be set unto their Idols, and utterly consumed them. When he had thus done, he affembled all his people together, and in flead of their Idols which before they had in reverence . hee gane them Crucifixes, and Images of Saints, which the Portugals had brought with them, and enionmedeuery Lord, that every one in the Citie of his owne Government and Regiment, Should build a Theking com-Church, and set up Crosses, as he had already shewed unto them by his owne example. And then be told in and eth every Lord to build a them, and the rest of bus people, that he had dispatched an Embasadour into Portugall to fetch Priests, Church, in the that should teach them Religion, and administer the most holy and wholesome Sacraments to enery one Citic of his of them, and bring with them divers images of Christ of the Urrein Mother, and of other Saints to disoner owne govern
of firbute among them. In the meane while, he willed them to be of good comfort, and to remain conflant ment.

in the faith. But they had so lively imprinted the same in their hearts, that they nearer more remembred Imager their former beliefe in falle and lying Idols. He ordained moreoner, that there should be three Churches builded. One in renerence of our Sauis The Kine buil-

our, to give him_ thankes for the victorie which he had granted visto bim, wherein the Kings of Con- deth three go doe lye buried, and whereof the Citie Royall tooke the name, (for as it was told you before, at is called, Churches. S. Sautours.) The second Church, was deducated to the blessed Virgin, the mother of God, called, Our Sautours.) Ladie of Help, in memorie of the succour which he had against his enemies: And the third, was con- The second fecrated to S. Iames : in honour and remembrance of the Miracle which that Saint had wrought by our Lady of 40 fighting in the fauour of the Christians, and shewing himselfe on Horse-backe in the heate of the Helpe.

The third.

Not long after this, the ships arrived from. Portugall, with many men that were skilfull in the holy. The thips re-Scriptures, and diners religious Friers of the Orders of S. Francis, and of S. Dominick, and of S. tume from Austine, with fundry other Priests, who with great charitie and fernency of first, fowed and differ fed Partigal with Authine, with jumpy other Friest, was mus great comme and secondly jump, second was specified by the Kings. Final and dome, who held the faid Priests in so high resurronce, that they was friend them. like Saints. by Priests was released with the faid Priests in so high resurrance, that they was friend as they must be the fireetes. These Priests being arrived into their senerall Proninces, did instruct the people in the

The death of the King Don ALFONSO, and the Succession of Don PIEDRO. How the Hand of S. THOMAS was first inhabited, and of the Bishop that was Cent thither : The Kings linage extinct : Inualion of the lagges : Their Sanage conditions.

Hile these matters were thus in working for the service of God, and that Christiani. King Alfanse tie was now begun and increased with so happy successe, it pleased God to call a- die way to himselfe the King Don Alfonso, who at the time of his death, discoursed of the Christian Religion, with so great confidence and charitie, as it enidently appeared, that the Crosse and Passion, and the true beliefe in our Saulour Iesus Christ, was imprinted in the root of his heart. To Don Piedro, his sonne and successour, he did especially and principally Don Piedro

maintaine and uphold accordingly. In his time, there began to faile into thele quarters a great number of veffels, and the Hand of S. Ppppp 2

recommend the Christian doctrine, which indeed following the example of his father, heeded succeedesh

neth to be m-The King of He of S.Thomay and of

Conte. The entertain-

The le of S. Thomas was inhabited with Portugals, by the Kings commandement. For before those daves The steet of 3. I common was all waste and desert within Land, and inhabited onely vpon the shoare by a few Saylers that came from the Countries adiopning. But when this Iland in processe of time was well peo. pled with Portugals, and other Nations, that came thither by licence of the King, & became to be of great Trafficke, and was Tilled and Sowed, the King fent thither a Bishop, to gouerne the dethene to be Christians that were in that Iland, and those also that were in Congo: which the faid Bishop did accomplish presently upon his arrivall, and afterwards in Congo, where hee tooke possession of his Pattorall charge. When he was come into the Kingdome of Congo, it was a thing incredible to see, with how great toy he was entertained by the King and all his people.

For from the Sea side, even unto the Citie, being the space of one hundred and fiftie miles, he canfed the streetes to be made (most b and trim, and to bee concred all oner with Mats, commanding the 10 ment of the Bishop in Cas. people, that for a certainte space senerally appointed unto them, they should prepare the water an such fort.

that the Bishop should not set his foot open any part of the ground which was not adarned. But it was a far greater wonder, to behold all the Countrey thereabouts, and all the Treet, and all the places that were his ber then the rest, swarming with men and women that ran forth to see the Bishop, as a man that was hely and sent from God, offering unto him, some of them Lambs, some Kids, some Chickins, some Partridges, some Uenison, and some Fish, and other kinds of viltuals in such abundance, that he knew not what to doe withall, but left it behind him; whereby he might well know the great zeale and obedience of these new Christians. And aboue all other things it is to be noted for a memorable matter, that the Bilbop going on his way, there met him an innumerable multitude of men, and women, and gules, and boyes, and perfous of fourescore yeares of age, and aboue, that crossed hims in the streets, and with 20 fingular tokens of true reliefe required the water of holy Baptifine at his hands: neither would ther (uffer him to paffe untill be had given it them: fo that to fatisfie their defires, hee was greatly flaged in his voyage, and was faine to carrie water with him in certaine veffels, and Salt, and other provision nea ceffary for that action.

The Bifhop founderb the Gathedral] Church of S.

And now I will tell you, he arrived at the Citie of Saint Sautours, where he was met by the Priests. and by the King, and by all the Court, and so in procession entred into the Church, and after due thankes giuen to God, he was conducted to his lodging, that was assigned unto him by the King. And then pre-sently he beganne to resorme and reduce to good order, the Church is selfs, and the Friers, and Priess that dwell therein : ordaining the faid Church to be the Cathedrall Church of Saint Croffes; which at that time had belonging unto it eight and twentie Canons, with their Chaplaines, and a Master of the 10 Chappell, with Singers, and Organs, and Bels, and all other furniture meete to execute Dinine fernice. But this Bilhop who ldboureth in the Lords Vineyard, sometimes in Congo, and sometimes in the Ile of Saint Thomas, going and comming continually by ship, the space of twentie daies, and still leaving bebind him his Uscars in the place where he himselfe was absent, at the last dyed, and was buried in the Iland of Saint Thomas. After this Bishop, succeeded another Bishop in Congo, being a Negro, and descended of the blood

Royall, who before had beene fent by King Altonio first into Portugall, and afterwards to Rome,

where be learned the Latine tongue, and the Christian Religion, but being returned into Portugall, and

Francisco, who in like manner lasted but a while: and then was created the fift King, named Don

Faith : and in brufe, fo great a Warriour he was, that in few yeares he conquered all the Countries ad-

ionning. He loued the Portugals very much, so that he for soke the v sual garments of his owne natu-

apparell, as also in the ornaments and furniture of his palace: he was besides very courtecast and libe-

cost would be provide and buy such stuffe as pleased him, and would often say, that Rare things should

not be in the hands of any but onely of Kings. He vied to weare one fuite of apparell but once or

twice, and then he would give it away to his followers. Whereupon the Portugals perceining, that he did

so greatly esteeme cloath of Gold and Arras, and such other costly houshold-stuffe, they brought great

fore thereof out of Portugall, so that at that time, Arras-hangings, and Cloth of Gold, and of Silkes

rall, and would bestow largely, both upon his owne Subjects, and also upon the Portugals. With great 50

landed out of his Ship, to goe and enter upon his Bishopricke of Saint Sauiours, he dyed by the way: 40 whereupon the Kingdome remained without a Paster for the pace of diners yeares. Don Piedro alfe the King aforefaid, dyed likewise without Children; and there succeeded him his Brother, called, Don

The Bishop

Thefecond Bishop dyeth.

Pudro dyeth. increased and Diego, who was next of all the race Royall: A man of basefris courage, and magnificall, and with discretion tie, of a very good disposition, wife in counfell, and about all other quadries, a maintainer of Circitius Tumbiers the Don Diego the fift King.

The King Diego rall Countrey, and attired bimselfe after the Portugall fashion. He was very simptuous, as well in his very fumpru-

and such like Lordly furniture, began to be of great estimation in that Kingdome. In the time of this King, there was a third Bylop of Saint Thomas, and Congo, by Nation a Porthop of S. Tho. twell, who with the visual ceremonies was entertained both by the way, and also in the Court at Saint mas & of congo Saujours. And now every man esteemed him felfe not onely to be as good as the Bishop, but also to be a farre better man then he was ; and therefore would yeeld no obedience to their Prelate. But the King 60 like a good Catholike, and a faithfull, did alwaies maintaine the Bilhops part, and to cut off the etrouble and firret, be first some of these Priests to prigot into Portugal, and abors into the life of Sant Thomas, and some others were away with all their substance of their owne accord.

Also after the death of this King, there started up three Princes at once to challenge the five

CHAP.4. S.6. Portugals flaine and dispersed. An ill Counsellor.

cession. The first was the Kings Sonne, whom few of them fauoured, because they defired to have another, fo that hee was flaine incontinently. The two other that remained were of the blood Royall: one of them was created King by his fauourites and followers, with the good liking of the greater part of the people, but vtterly against the minds of the Portugals, and certaine of the Lords, who aymed and endeauoured to let up the other. In fo much as the forefaid Lords, together with the Portugals, went into the Church to kill the King elected : making this reckoning with themselves, that if they slue him, the other must of necessitie bee made King. But at that very felfe-fame time, those of the contrary faction had flaine the King that was already made by the Portugals, perswading themselves affuredly, that he being dead . there to would be no difficultie for them to obtaine the State for their King, because there was none other left, that by law could challenge the Scepter Royall. And thus in an houre, and in two feuerall places, were these two Kings murthered at once.

In these conspiracies and slaughters, when the people saw that there were no lawfull persons The Portugali left to enjoy the Royall Crowne, they laid all the blame upon the Portugals, who were the flaine and dif causers of all these mischiefes : and thereupon they turned themselues against them, and slue as many of them as they could find: Onely they spared the Priests, and would not touch them, nor

any other that dwelt in other places. Seeing therefore (as before is faid) that there was none of the blood Royall left to be placed Don Hemica in the Government, they made choife of one Don Henrico, Brother to Don Diego the King de- created King. 20 ceased. And this Henrico going to warre against the Anziehi, left behind him in his stead for

Gouernour, under the Title of King, one Don Aluaro, a young man of fine and twenty yeares of age, sonne to his Wife by another Husband. But Don Henrico dyed shortly after the warre King Henrico was ended, and thereupon the faid Don Alvaro was with the common confent of them all ele- dieth, and Don cted King of Congo, and generally obeyed of enery man. And thus failed the Royall stocke of derhandso the ancient Kings of Congo, in the person of Don Hemico.

But Don Almero was a man of good judgement and gournment, and of a milde disposition, the ancient so that he did presently appeale all these tumults in his Kingdome, and caused all the Portugals Kings of Congo that by the laft warres were dispearled ouer all the Countries there-abouts, to be gathered together, as well religious persons as lay men, and by their meanes he was much better confirmed storeth the 30 in the Catholike Faith, then he was before.

Moreover, he yied them very courteoutly, and cleared them of all faults that were laid to their charge, declaring vnto them by gentle difcourfes, that they had not beene the occasion of the former troubles, as every man would confesse and acknowledge; and to that effect hee determined with himfelfe to write a large information touching all these accidents to the King of Portugal, and to the Bilhop of Saint Thomas, which he did accordingly, and dispatched certains Messengers wato them with his letters.

When the Bilton of Saint Thomas understood these newes, he was very glad thereof, and whereas The Bilton of before be doost not adventure to goe into the Kingdome of Congo in the beate of all those troubles, be S. Thomas re-did now presently take ship and sayled thinker, where he imployed bimselfe wholly with all his authoritie, turnethinto did non presents take soip and sayled thinker, where he employed compaye whom when an in amount we,
40 to pacife his former discussions, and to set downer order for all such matters as concerned the worship of The Bishop of
Ond, and the office of his Priest. And a while after he had so dan, he returned to his babitation in the
Stooman diethe
Stooman diethe He of Saint Thomas, where by meanes of sicknesse be finished bis daies. And this was the third time. that those parts remained without a Bishop.

Now it came to passe, that for want of Bishops, the King and the Lords, and the people likewise began King A'uaro itto waxe cold in the Christian Religion, enery man additing himfalfe licentionly to the libertie of the weth licenti-falo, and effectably the King, who was induced thereunto by distort young men of his owne age, that did outly, familiarly connerse with him. Among whom there was one principall man, that was both a Lord, and Francisco Balla his Kinsman, called Don Francisco Bullamatare, that is say, Catch-stone. This man, because he was Matare, an ill ns Kojman, cauca Don Francisco Bullatina are, 1000 m jos, Concorpione. 1000 man, oceanje oce 1000 a great Lord, and wholly estranged from all instructions of Christiantie, walked mordinately after his Councillour O swee pleasure, and did not sticke to defend openly, That it was a very vaine thing to keepe but one to the King. Wife, and therefore it were better to returne to their former ancient cuftome. And fo by his meanes did the Denill open a gase, to the onerthrow and destruction of the Church of Christ in that gullenstere di-Kingdome, which untill that time with fo great paine and transile had beene there established. But eth: and as afterwards the man did so wander and stray out of the way of trush, that he fell from one sinne to ano- they say, carither, and in the end quite relinquished and abandoned all true Religion. Tet at the last, the fand Francisco ed out of his died, and was folemnly buried.

For not long after, there came to rob and spoyle the Kingdome of Congo, certaine Nations What people that live after the manner of the Arabians, and of the ancient Nomades, and are called Giachas. the Giachas Their habitation or dwelling is about the first Lake of the River Nilm, in the Province of the are : Their 60 Empire of Moenemugi. A cruell people they are and a murderous, of a great flature, and horrible conditions, countenance, fed with mans flesh, fierce in battell, & valarous in courage. Their weapons are Pa- Of these, sea uifes or Targets, Darts and Daggers : otherwise they goe all naked. In their fashions and daily Andrew Battell, course of hung, they are very fauage and wilde : They have no King to governe them, and they Chip s. which leade their life in the Forrest under Cabbins and Cottages like Shepheards.

betterknew This them.

Ppppp 3

wince of Ratta The Giachas come to the Royall Citie

This people went wandring up and downe, destroying, and putting to fire and fword, and robbing and spoyling all the Countries that they passed through, till they came to the Realmonf Congo, which they entred on that fide where the Province of Batta lyeth. Those that first came forth to make reliftance against them, they ouerthrew, and then addressed themselves towards the Citie of Congo, where the King remayned at that time in great perplexitie, for this victorie that his enemies had gotten in the Countrey of Batta: yet some comfort he tooke to himselfe. and went out against his Adversaries with such Souldiers as he had, and in the same place where in times past Mani-Pango fought with the King Don Alfonfo, he joyned battell with them. In which encounter the King being halfe discompted, retyred into the Citie, wherein when hee perceived that he could not remayne in good fafetie, being vtterly forfaken of the grace of God Io by reason of his finnes, and not having that confidence in him, that Don Alsonso had, he thought good to leave it for a prey to his Adversaries, and to betake himselfe to an Iland within the Ria uer Zaire, called Ifola del Canallo, that is to fay, The Ile of Horfe; where he continued with cerfing august the faine Portugall Priests, and other principall Lords of his Kingdome. And thus were the Giachi become Lords and Masters of the Citie Royall, and of the whole Realme. For the naturall Inhabitants fled away, and faued themselues in the Mountaynes, and defart places : but the enemies turprite the Citie, and rule burned and wasted, Citie, and Churches, and all, and spared no mans lite, so that having divided themselves into severall Armies, they ruled and governed sometimes in one Province, and sometimes in another over all the Kingdome.

Kingdome. The King, and plagued with

Il: of Horfes.

As for the poore people, they went wandring like Vagabonds over all the Countrey, and perished for hunger and want of necessaries. And for the King with those that followed him, and had faued themfelues in the lland, they also, because the lle was very little, and the multitude great, were oppressed with so terrible a scarsitie of victualls, that the most part of them died by famine and pestilence. For this dearth so increased, and meate arose to so excessive a rate, that for a very imall pittance (God wot) they were faine to give the price of a flave, whom they were wont to fell for ten Crownes at the leaft. So that the Father was of necessitie conflrayned to fell his owne Sonne; and the Brother, his Brother, and fo every man to provide his victualls by all manner of wickednesse. The persons that were fold, for the satisfying of other mens hunger, were bought by the Portugall Merchants, that came from Saint Thomas with their thips laden with victualls. Those that fold them, faid, they were Slaues; and those that were fold, justified and confirmed the same, because they were desirous to be rid of their greedie torment. And by this occasion there was no small quantitie of Slaues, that were borne in Congo. bloud Royall fold you this necessitie, and fent to the Ile of Saint Thomas, and to Portugall, among whom fold for Slaues there were fome of the bloud Royall, and fome others, principall Lords.

to the Portu-

King Aluare £leth into a

deth fuccour

tugall with let-Pri:fts.

The King begood Christi-

By this affliction, the King did manifestly learne and know, that all these great miseries and aduerlities abounded for his misdeeds: and although he was not much punished with hunger, because he was a King, yet he did not escape the cruell infirmitie of the dropsie, that made his legs to fwell exceedingly, which disease was engendred, partly by the aire, and very ill diet, and partly by the moylinesse of the Hand, and so it accompanied him even vntill his death. But in the meane while, being stricken to the heart with these misfortunes and calamities, he converted and turned to God, requiring pardon for his offences, and doing penance for his sinnes : and 40 then was counfelled and adulfed by the Portugals, that he should fend to request succours of the fend th to the King of Portugall, by certaine Embaffadors, that might recount vnto him all the mifchiefs which King of Portu-had lighted vpon him. This embassage was accordingly performed, at the same time that the gall for fuccor.

Don Sebastian King Don Sebastiano began his reigne, who with great speed and kindnesse sent time time that the the King of a Captaine, called Francisco di Gonea, a man well exercifed in divers warres, both in India , and Portugall (ca- alfo in Africa, who lead with him fixe hundred Souldiers, and many Gentlemen Aduenturers, that did accompanie him.

This Captaine, Francisco di Gones, carried with him a commandement from his King, that the Jo Iland of Saint Thomas should prouide him ships and victualls, and what soeuer else was requisite the King, and for this enterprise. And with this prouision he arrived at the last in the He of Horse, where the King of Congo was relident. In whole companie the Portugalls departing from thence, and gathering together all the men of warre in that Countrey, with all speed possible, put themselves Congo. Conwards against their Aduersaries, and fought with them fundrie times in plaine battell, so that wea, after foure at the end of one yeere and a halfe, they restored the King into his former estate. Which victoyeares retur- rie they atchieued indeed by the noyfe and force of their Harquebuffes, for the Giachi are exceen: th into Por- dingly afraid of that weapon.

The Portugall Captaine stayed there for the space of four yeeres, to fertle the King in his Kingdome, and then returned into Portugall with letters of request to his King, that hee would fend ouer fome mee Priests to vphold and maintayne the Christian Religion. And the King be- 60 ing thus established in his former degree, and the Kingdome all in quiet and peace, became a very good Christian, and married the Lady Katharina, who is yet aline; by whom hee had foure daughters, and by certaine Maid-fernants, which he kept, two fonnes and one daughter. And because in those Regions the women doe not succeed : there remayned as Herre of his Kingdome his elder fonne, called also Don Aluaro, who liveth at this day, 1588.

During the time, that the forefald Captaine flayed in Congo, the King of Portugall, Dow Se-ballium valeritanding, that there were in that Kingdome duters Cause and Mines of Silver, of regal fendeth Gold, and other Metals, fent thither two persons that were cunning and skilcull in that Arte, to make search for therein they had ferued the Castilians in the West) to make fearch for them, and to draw in Comparior in e profit thereof. But the King of Congo was by a certaine Portugall, called Francisco Bar. metall Mines. bute, that washis Confessor, and great familiar, perswaded to the contrarie, that he should not Francisco Berbuto, that was us Contenor, and great landing, period him, that thereby peraduenture dethithe King in any care runer choice manes to be into case, might by little and little be taken quite from from making the free enjoying and polletion of his Kingdome, might by little and little be taken quite from making him, and therefore adulfed him that he would cause these skilfull Masters to bee led and guided the search, and 10 by some other wayes, where he knew there were no metall Mines to be found, which he did anoydeth itby by some other wayes, where he knew that do great milchiefe: for, thereupon began the Policie. great trade and trafficke in that Countrie to cease, and the Portugal Merchants did not greatly nienceof not care for venturing thirther, or dwelling there any more. And so consequently, very few Priests suffering the resorted among them. So that as well upon these occasions, as also for other such causes afore rehearsed, metall Mines resorted among them. So that as well upon these occasions, as any out of being utterly extinguished, to be digged the Christian Religion waxed so cold in Congo, that it wanted very little of being utterly extinguished, and melted. toe Corigian Acugion waxen jo come a full to fend new Embassadors into Portugall, with earnest re- Prices resort quest that he might have moe Priests, and such as were skilfull in the holy Scriptures to maintaine the notto save Catholike Faith, which was now almost otterly forgotten in that Realme, onely for want of religious per- foules so much

Cataloide Faith, which was now atmost vitery jurgation in total actumes, over just man of pringings per-ount to make from, that should teach the people and administer the Sacraments. He had now no other answers from item, are operated from the waste that was demanded: but in the meane the king ten 20 but words and promise, that he would have a care of the matter that was demanded: but in the meane the king ten 20 but words and promise, that he would have a care of the matter that was demanded: but in the meane the king ten 20 but words and promise, the waste of the waste that was demanded to the in the meane the king ten 20 but words and promise the king ten 20 but words and the waste of the waste to be a second to b while he presided neither Priests, nor Distinct to be fent for Congo. Whereupon the King of Congo basiadors into nune en gramacaence e estato, su commente per la compania e en compania de la compania del compania de la compania del compania de la compania de la compania de la compania de la compania del go, without any Priests or Religious persons to goe with him.

, without any Priest sor Religious persons to goe with him.

Three veeres after, the King Don Sebastiano dispatched a certaine Bishop (called Don Antonio de returne into gli Qua, being a Castilian borne) principally to the Hand of Saint Thomas: but withall bee gave him consonithous also a commission to visite the Kinodome of Congo: who being arrived at Saint Thomas, fell at larte any Priests. with the Captaine there, and fo failed into Congo; there he stayed eight moneths, and then departed a- Anionio degli gaine, and left behind him in Congo, two Friars, and foure Priests. The Bishop being thus gone, and Oua sent by gaine, and left behind min in Congo, two triars, and joine t respect to the property of the gast, and to the Portugall 30 the King overthrowne in Africa, there was exalted to the fromped Portugal, 100 Henrico the King to the Cardinall, to whom the King of Congo did write, with great instance, and carnest request; that he Bishop of S.

Caraman, to would not be the good persons, and Preachers.

Thomas of Castile, who sent adversisements to the Captaine Conga.

After Don Henrico (ucceeded Phillip King of Castile, who sent adversisements to the Captaine Conga. Saint Thomas, that he was insufted in the Crowne of Porcugall, and Letters also to the King of Dow Schaffien of Saint Thomas, that he was innested in the Crowne of Portugain, and Direct and the K. of Portugain, Congo, to the same effect: and in his Letters prossered to discover unto him the metall Mines, which overshown heretofore bad beene concealed from all the other Kings his Predecessors: and withall sent him discors in Africa, and trials of them; befeeching him especially withall affectionate entreatie, that (as soone as possibly he could) Don Henries be would furnish him with some store of Priests: But Costa, which was sent, died by the way, the Vessell the Cardinall we would prime use mentione force of the contents of the Letters, that were found in a little Cheft, specially the contents of the Letters, that were found in a little Cheft, specially find the many time to the contents of the Letters, that were found in a little Cheft, specially cheft that the cheft specially cheft is specially cheft. which was driven on Landby the waves of the Sea.

After this he made chaife of one Odoardo Lopez a Portugall borne, from whose mouth Piga- dinall fects tooks this prefent report, and put it in writing. This man had dwelt now a good time in those Re- The King of Gongo offeret

The summe of his Embassage was this: That he should present his Letters to the King Don Phi- Spame the dislip, and at large discourse unto him the state, wherein the Kingdome of Congo stood, touching matter course of the Religion, by the reason of the former Warres, and scarsitie of Priests, and thereupon request his Ma- metall Mines iclife to provide him a competent number of Confessors, and Preachers, that might be sufficient to main—in Congo, with taine the Gospell in those remote Countries, being but lately converted to Christianite. Moreoner, Frieth. that he should show unto him the fundrie trials of Metals, which he had made, and many other matters, Consider he

50 which were worthie to be knowne : and withall, that he frould proffer unto him in his name, free and li- the way, and berall trafficke of them, which heretofore was ener denied to his Predeceffors. Touching the Pepe, That his me flage be should likewise on his behalfe his feet, deliuer unto him his Letters, and recount the miserable knowed bylettrouble and detriment that his people had Suffered for the Christian Faith. That he Should recommend found. those poore soules to his Holimeste, and beseech him, as the universall Father of all Christians, to have The Embascompassion upon so many faithfull persons, who because they had no Priests to deliner the holy Faith unto sage of Odoorthem, and to admissife the subspine of our Sacraments, were by little and little falling into enertalfing perdi-tion. And being thus dispatched he departed from the Court, and went about certain services for the King. His embidings wherein he front about eight moneths. So that in Ianuarie, being then Sommer time in Congo, he em- to the Pope. barked himselfe in a Vissell of one hundred Tunne burthen, which was bound with her lading for Lil-

bon. But forced by leakes and winds, the Pilot thought it better to turne his courle, and ta- The Ile of Carking the wind in the poope, to goe and faue themselves in the Hands of Nova Hispania. And b goa. they arrived with much adoe, at a little Hand, called Cubagon; and fituate over against the He of S. of Saint Margarete, where they fish for Pearles. From thence, when they had in some hafte Mergarete.

1018

Odoardo Lopez

flayeth in Ca-

тила, а уезге

and a halfe.

The King of

Don Piedro

Antonio, and

Gaffar Diaza

the fame Embaffage which

misfortune

Conqueft of

England, Odoardo Lopez

changeth his

Lapez goeth to

he was kindly

entertayned

by the Peer

The Vow of Odorrdo Lopez

to erect a Se-

minery, and an

kind of pro-

feffion.

Coago (enderh

amended their thip, and fome-what refreshed themselues , they sayled with a short cut to the firme Land, and tooke Hauen in a Port, called Cumana, or (as it is called by another name) The new kingdome new Kingdome of Granado in the West Indies. This battered and weather-beaten Vessell, was no of Granada in the West Indies fooner arrived in this fafe Harbour, but it funke prefently, While the forefaid Embaffadour endeauoured in this place to recouer his former health, the The ship sunke in the Hauen.

company of thips, which is called La Flotta, that is to fay, The Fleet, and vieth every years to faile from that Coast for Castile, departed from thence, so that he was confrayned to stay for a new Nauie, and so confumed a whole yeare and a halfe without doing any good. In this meane time the King of Congo fent another Embaffadour with the felfe-lame commandements, called Don Piedro Antonio, the fecond person in all his Realm, & with him one Gasparo Diaz, a Portugal, 10

But an infortunate end had this Embaffadour, for he was taken at Sea by Englishmen, and his ship also, which being drawne towards England, when it was neere vnto the Coast, by great misfortune it ranne a-thwart the shoare, and there Don Piedro Antonio , and his Sonne were Portugall, with both drowned: but the Portugall and fome few others with him escaped, and arrived in Spaine. at fuch time as the faid Odowdo was come to the Court, and had entred upon the charge of his

he fent by Lo-There he was courteously entertained by his Catholike Maiestie, to whom he propounded the contents of his Commissions. But divers great accidents there happened. For first, he heard the Dan Piedro 12ken by the Eng- dolorous newes of the Kings death, that fent him on this meffage : and then the King Don Philip was wholly busied about the Conquest of England, so that his businesse went nothing for 20 mistortune drowned, and wards, but was delayed from time to time: neither did he fee any meanes of dispatch but his Sonne with rather he was given to vinderstand, that for that time they could not intend to harken vinte him

Now the foresaid Odoardo, being afflicted with so many advertities, renounced the World Ausro Kingof with all the deceitfull pompe and glorie thereof, and in Madrill apparelled himselse in a grey control dytch course habit, and so went to Rome, to declare to Sixtus Quintus the Pope, the Tenor and Commission of his Embassage, because he would not altogether neglect the good intent and meaning of the King, that had fent him, although hee were now descended into a better life. Hee was kindly welcommed and received by his Holinesse, to whom he discoursed the miserable estate wherein the Christian people of the Realme of Congo did stand, for want of the worthip and feruice of God, and also the small number of Priests, that were there to instruct them in the Do-Etrine of the Gospel, and to deliver vnto them the Sacraments of the Church, especially the multitude in that Countrey, being (as it were) innumerable, that every day relorted together. to be baptifed, instructed, confessed and communicated. Moreouer, he made a vow and resolved in his mind, that with fuch flore of wealth, as God had bleffed him withall in Congo. (which was not very small) he would build a house, wherein for the service of God, there should dwell certaine learned men, and fundry Priests, to instruct the youth of those Countries in all good Languages, and in the Arts Liberall, and in the Doctrine of the Gofpel, and in the Mysteries of our Saluation. Out of which House, as it were out of a holy Schoole, there might come forth from time to time, many learned men and well studyed in the Law of God, that should be able in their owne naturall Countrey Tongue, to awaken and raife againe the Faith of Chrift, which 40 was now alleepe, and dryed up in those Regions: and thereby in processe of time there would fpring up many fruits of blessing, and vigilant foules in the Christian Faith. Hereumohee meant also to adde an Hofpitall, that might be a Recourse and Harbour for Gods poore, which comming and fayling out of strange Countries should have reliefe and entertainement in that Hostelry, and the re be cured and restored of their infirmities and necessities. With this purpose therefore he went to Rome, to obtaine of his Holinesse a Licence to erect this Seminarie and Hospitall, and to befeech him also that he would grant him Jubilies, Indulgences, and other Difpensations, that for such Christian and wholsome workes are requisite, especially to the vie and benefit of those Countries, which are so remote from Christendome. He presented himselfe to the Pope, and deliuered vnto him his Letters of credence, and then declared vnto him at large 50 the Tenor of his Commissions, wherein hee had a gracious audience. But when the Pope did understand that the Kingdome of Congo belonged to the King of Spaine, he remitted that matter wholly vnto him.

The Pope remitteth the whole marret to the King of Spaine.

Of the Court of the King of Congo. Of the apparell of that people before they became Christians and after. Of the Kings Table, and

The ancient apparellof the Manuer of his Court.

Nancient time this King and his Courtiers were apparelled with certaine Cloth King of Cong. and his Court.

The made of the Palme-tree (as wee haue told you before) wherewish at the michael the made of the Palme-tree (as wee haue told you before) wherewish at the michael the made of the Palme-tree (as wee haue told you before) wherewish at the michael the michael the made of the Palme-tree (as wee haue told you before) where with a the michael t them with certaine Girdles made of the same stuffe, very faire and well wrought.

They yield also to hang before them, like an Apron, certaine delicate and daintie skinnes, of little Typres. of Cinet-cats, of Sabels, of Maternes, and of such like creatures for an ornament : and for a more glorious pompe and shew, they did weare vpon their shoulders a certaine Cape like a Hood. Vpon their bare skinne they had a certaine round Garment like a Rotchet, which they call Incutto, reaching downe to their knees, made after the manner of a Net, but the stuffe of it was very fine cloth of the faid Palme-tree, and at the skirts there hung a number of threedtafiels, that made a very gallant shew. These Rotchets were turned vp againe, and tucked vpon their right shoulder, that they might be the more at libertie on that hand. Vpon that shoulder also they had the tayle of a Zebra, fastned with a handle, which they vsed for a kind of

to brauerie, according to the most ancient custome of those parts. On their heads they wore Caps of yellow and red colour, fquare about and very little, fo that they fcarcely couered the tops of The ancient their heads, and worne rather for a pompe and a vanitie, then to keep them either from the Aire apparell of or from the Sunne. The most part of them went vnshod : but the King and some of the great the meaner Lords did weare certaine shooes of the old fashion, such as are to bee feene in the ancient Images fort. of the Romanes, and these were made also of the Wood of the Palme-tree. The poerer fort and common people were apparelled from their middle downewards, after the same manner, but the cloth was courfer; and the rest of their bodie all naked. The women vied three kinds of Trauerfes, or (as it were) Aprons : beneath their Girdle-stead. One was very long and reached to their heeles: the second shorter then that, and the third shorter then both the other, with fringes about them, and every one of these three fastned about their middle, and open before. From

ges about this in, and their of their brests downewards, they had another Garment, like a kind of Doublet or Iacket, that reashed but to their Girdle; and ouer their shoulders a certaine Cloake. All these severall Garments were made of the same cloth of the Palme-tree. They were accustomed to goe with their faces vncouered, and a little Cap on the head, like a mans Cap. The meaner fort of women were apparelled after the same manner, but their cloth was courser. Their Maid-servants; and the haiest kind of women were likewise attyred from the Girdle downeward, and all the rest of the bodie

But after that this Kingdome had received the Christian Faith, the great Lords of the Court Their new kind beganne to apparell themselues after the manner of the Portugals, in wearing Cloakes, Spanish of apparell. Caps, and Tabbards, or wide Iackets of Scarlet, and cloth of Silke, every man according to his wealth and abilitie. Vpon their heads they had Hats, or Caps, and vpon their feet Moyles or Pantoffles, of Veluet and of Leather, and Buskins after the Portugal falhion, and long Rapiers by

The common people, that are notable to make their apparell after that manner doe keeps their old custome. The women also goe after the Portugall fashion, saving that they weare no Cloakes, but vpon their heads they have certaine Veiles, and vpon their Veiles blacke Veluet Caps, garnished with Iewels, and Chaines of Gold about their neckes. But the poorer fort keepe 40 the old fashion : for onely the Ladies of the Court doe bedecke themselves in such manner as we

After the King himselse was converted to the Christian Religion, hee consormed his Court in The Court of a certaine fort after the manner of the King of Portugall. And first, for his service at the Table Congenow inis when he dineth or suppeth openly in publike, there is a Throne of Estate erected with three tateth the then neument or imperation in proceedings and the reupon is placed a Table, with a Chaire of tradi-Crimfon Veluet, adorned with Boffes and Nayles of Gold. He alwayes teedeth alone by himfelfe, neither doth any man euer fit at his Table, but the Princes fland about him with their heads couered. He hath a Cupboord of Plate of Gold and Siluer, and one that taketh affay of

He maintayneth a Guard of the Anziebi, and of other Nations, that keepe about his Palace, 50 furnished with such Weapons as are aboue mentioned : and when it pleaseth him to goe abroad, they found their great Instruments, which may be heard about fine or fixe miles, and so fignifie that the King is going forth. All his Lords doe accompany him, and likewife the Portugals, in whom hee repoleth a singular trust: but very seldome it is that hee goeth out of his Palace.

Twice in a weeke he giveth audience publikely, yet no man speaketh vnto him but his Lords. And because there are none, that have any goods or Lands of their owne, but all belongeth to and Laws of the Crowne, there are but few Suites or Quarrels among them, fauing peraduenture about fome Congo.

They vie no Writing at all in the Congo Tongue. In Cafes Criminall they proceed but flen- No Writing. derly, for they doe very hardly and feldome condemne any man to death. If there be any Riot 60 or Enormitie committed against the Portugals by the Moci-Compbi, (for so are the Inhabitants of the Realme of Congo, called in their owne Language) they are judged by the Lawes of Portugall. And if any milchiefe bee found in any of them, the King confineth the Malefactor into some Desart lland : for he thinketh it to be a greater punishment to banish him in this sort, to the end he may doe penance for his finnes, then at one blow to execute him. And if it so happen,

that those which are thus chassized doe line ten or twelve yeares, the King vieth to pardon

CHAP.4.5.8.

Time measured by the Moone. Muficall Instruments. LIB, VII

them, if they be of any confideration at all, and doth imploy them in the Service of the State. as persons that have beene tamed and well scooled, and accustomed to suffer any hardnesse. In Chill difagreements there is an order, that if a Paringal haue any Suite against a Marie Comp. he goeth to the ludge of Conge: but if a Mosi-Conge doe impleade a Paringal, he citeth him before the Conful, or Judge of the Portugals: for the King hath granted vnto them one of their owne Nation to be Judge in that Countrey: In their bargaines between them and the Portagals, they vie no Writings nor other Instruments of Bils or Bonds, but dispatch their businesse onely by word and witnesse.

Time meafured by the

They keepe no Histories of their ancient Kings, nor any memoriall of the Ages past, became they cannot write. They measure their times generally by the Moones. They know not the lo they cannot write. Iney measure their times generally by the models a lark Room not the hourse of the day nor of disalight; but they wit to lay, is the time of fice a mon law a time a time of such a time inches a time hourses of the day nor of disalight; but they wite to lay, it is the time of fice a mon law a time a time of the day nor of disalight in the proposed. They reckon the disalines of Countries not by miles or by any fuch measure, but by hopewad. the journeyes and trauell of men, that goe from one place to another eyther loden or vinloden.

Touching their affembling together at Feafts, or other meetings of ioy, as for example, when Their manner they are marryed, they fing Verses and Ballads of Loue, and play vpon certaine Lutes that are made after a strange fashion. For in the hollow part and in the necke they are somewhat like Their influer witto our Lutes, but for the flat fide (where wee vie to carue a Rofe, or a Rundle to let the found ments of Megoe inward) that is made not of wood, but of a skinne, as thinne as a Bladder, and the strings are made of haires, which they draw out of the Elephants tayle, and are very firong and bright: and of certaine Threads made of the wood of Palme-tree, which from the bottome of the Inline ment do reach & ascend to the top of the handle, & are tied every one of them to his several ring. For towards the necke or handle of this Lute, there are certaine rings placed fome higher and fome lower, whereat there hang divers plates of Iron and Silver, which are very thinne, and in bignefie different one from another, according to the proportion of the Instrument, These rings doe make a found of fundry tunes, according to the ftriking of the ftrings. For the ftrings when they are stricken, doe cause the rings to shake, and then doe the plates that hang at them, helpe them to vtter a certaine mingled and confused noyse. Those that play vpon this Instrument, doe tune the strings in good proportion, and strike them with their fingers, like a Harpe, but without any quill very cunningly : fo that they make thereby (I cannot tell whether I should call it a melodie or no, but) such a found as pleaseth and delighteth their sences well an

Soeech by In-

Belides all this (which is a thing very admirable) by this Instrument they doe vtter the conceits of their minds, and doe vaderstand one another so plainly, that every thing almost which may be explaned with the Tongue, they can declare with their hand in touching and firiking this Instrument. To the found thereof they doe dance in good measure with their feet, and follow the just time of that Musicke, with clapping the palmes of their hands one against the other. They have also in the Court, Flutes and Pipes, which they found very artificially, and according to the found they dance and moue their feet, as it were in a Morefee, with great grauitie and sobrietie. The common people doe vse little Rattles, and Pipes, and other Instruments,

that make a more harful and rude found, then the Court-Instruments doe.

Their Physics.

In this Word-Instruments doe. In this Kingdome, when any are ficke, they take nothing but natural! Phylicke, as Herbes, and Trees, and the barkes of Trees, and Oyles, and Waters, and Stones, fuch as Mother Nature hath taught them. The Ague is the most common Dilease that raigneth among them; and plagueth them in Winter by reason of the continual raine, that bringeth heat and moysture with it more then in Summer, and belides that the fickneffe which heere wee call the French Difeafe, and Chuangas in the Congo Tongue, is not there fo dangerous and fo hard to be cured, as it is in our Countries.

Their Medicine for an A. Their Medicine for the letting of Their Medi-

They heale the Ague with the poulder of a wood, called Sandale, or Sanders, whereof there is both red and grey, which is the wood of Aguila. This poulder being mingled with the Oyle of the Palme-tree, and having anointed the bodie of the ficke person two or three times with 30 all from the head to the foot, the partie recourreth. When their head aketh, they let bloud in the Temples, with certaine little boxing hornes : first, by cutting the skinne a little, and then applying the Cornets thereunto, which with a lucke of the mouth, will be filled with bloud: other greetes and this manner of letting bloud is vied also in Egypt. And so in any other part of a mans bodie, where there is any griefe, they draw bloud in this fashion and heale it. Likewise they cure the infirmitie, called Chitangas, with the fame Vnction of Sanders : whereof there are two forts, one red (as we told you) and that is called Tanila: the other grey, and is called (bicongo: and this is cine tor the french Poxes, best esteemed, for they will not sticke to give or sell a slave for a piece of it. They purge them-Their Purga felues with certaine barkes of trees, made into powder, and taken in some drinke : and they 60 will worke mightily and strongly. When they take these purgations, they make no great account for going abroad into the Ayre. Their wounds also they commonly cure with the inyce of certaine Herbes, and with the Herbes themselues. d. VIII.

d. VIII.

Of the Countries that are beyond the Kingdome of Congo, towards the Cape of Good-Hope: Of the River Nilus , and of Sofala, Monomotapa , the Amazones, Saint LAVRENCE, and other Æthiopian Countries.



**Confines of Angola, containeth all the reft of the Country Southwards, till of Matains, You come to the River of Brausquil, which springeth out of the Mountaines of R. Braugell, which springeth out of the Moon, and only open the With the River Magnies, and that fringeth out of the Moon, and only open the With the River Magnies, and that fringeth out of the Moon, and open the With the River Magnies, and that fringeth out of the Moon, and open the With the Moon, and the With corne, towards the Pole Antarcticke, and beyond this Tropicke lyeth all the Countrey and Moone. borders of the Cape of Good-Hope, which are not ruled and gouerned by any one King, but by divers and fundry feverall Princes. In the middel betweene that Cape and the Tropicke, are

the faid Mountaines of the Moone, so famous and so greatly renowned among the ancient Writers, who doe affigne them to be the originall head and fpring of the River Nilus: which is ve- Northehead ry falfe and vntrue, as the fituation of the Countrey doth plainly flew, and as we a little here- of Nilus. 20 after will discouer vnto you. This Countrey is full of high and rough Mountaines: it is verie cold, and not habitable: It is frequented and haunted with a few persons that line after the manner of the Arabians, under little Cabbins in the open fieldes, and apparelled with the skins of certaine beafts. It is a sauage and rusticall Nation, without all faith and credite, neither will they fuffer any strangers among them. Their furniture is Bowes and Arrowes. They feed upon fuch fruits as the land breedeth, and also vpon the flesh of beasts.

Among these Mountaines of the Moone, there is a Lake called Gale: a very little one it is, The Lake Gale Among mete anomatines on the successions that see that the state that River, called Camiffa, Camiffa, The and by the Persugals, named, the Sweete River, which at the point of the Cape of Good. Hope, Sweet River, which at the point of the Cape of Good. Hope, Sweet River, which at the point of the Cape of Good. Hope, Sweet River, which at the point of the Cape of Good. Hope, Sweet River, which at the Public Cape. and by the Fortagati, nameu, the South Amer, which are the fall Cape. For the finippes The Fall Cape woydeth it felle into the Sea, in that very place that is termed, The Fall Cape. For the finippes The Cape of 30 of the Indies fayling that way, doe first discouer another greater Cape, which is called, The the Needles, or

Cape of the Needles, and then afterwards this leffer Cape : Whereupon they call it the Falle Agebas, Cape, because it is hid and couered with the true and great Cape. Betweene these two Capes or Promontories, there is the distance of an hundred miles, containing the largenesse and breadth of this famous Cape: which being divided into two points, as it were into two hornes, it maketh a Gulfe, where sometimes the Portugall thips doe take fresh water, in the River that they call the Sweete Risser.

The Inhabitants of this Coast, which dwell betweene these two points, are of colour black. "although the Pole Antarctick in that place be in the elevation of five and thirtie degrees, which "Not perfect is a very strange thing; yea, the rude people that line among the most cold Mountaines of the blacke, 40 Moone are blacke also.

Beyond the Cape or Point of the Needler, there are many competent Harboroughs and Ha-Deyona the Cape of Form of the Faire Bay : and Seno del Lago, the Bay of the Seno dulege, the Pay of the Seno dulege, Lake: For there the Sea maketh a certaine Gulfe, wherein are fundry llands and Ports: and somewhat beyond there runneth into the Sea the River of Saint Christopher, and at the mouth River of Saint thereof there lye three pretie Ilets. And a little further forwards, the Coast runneth all along Christopher. by a Countrey, which the Portugals call, Terra do Natal, the Land of the Nativitie, because it Terra do Natal, was first discouered at Christmas : and soreacheth to the Cape, called Della Pescheria. Between Cape della Pescheria

which Cape and the River Magnice, within the Land is the Kingdome of Buttua, whole Ter-River Magnice ritories are from the roots or bottome of the Mountaines of the Moone, vntill you come to the The lingdom 50 River Magnice towards the North, where the Countrey of Monomotapa standeth, and West- of Burus. wards from the River Brauagul towards the Sea, all along the bankes of the River Magnice. In The kingdome this Kingdome there are many Mines of Gold, and a people that is of the same qualities and R. Brauseal. conditions, that the people of Monomotapa is, as hereafter shall bee shewed vnto you. And so Store of Gold going along the shoares of the Ocean, you come to the River Magnice, which lyeth in the very Mines, entrance of the Kingdome of Sofala, and the Empire of Monopotapa.

The Kingdome of Sofials Engineeth at the Kinger Magnice, which springeth out of the first The original Lake of Nilm, and conveyeth it selfe into the Sea in the middest of the Bay, betweene the of the River Point Pefeberia, and the Cape, called Cape Delle Correnti, situate in three and twentie degrees Magnice. and a halte of the Pole Antarchicke, under the Tropicke of Capricorne. With this River neere Three Rivers 6: vnto the Sea, there ioyne three other notable Rivers, the principall whereof is by the Portu- runne into gels, called Saint Chrystophers, because upon the day of that Saints Feast it was first discovered, Magnie, but by the Inhabitants it is named Nagon. The second tooke the name of one Lorenza Mary. 1. Surer Page. See: that first founds: The Saint Page. The second tooke the name of one Lorenza Mary. 1. Surer Page. 12. Mary 12. Jan 12. Mary 12. Jan 12 gnes, that first found it. These two Rivers doe spring originally from the Mountaines of the Moone, fogreatly renowned among the ancient Writers, but by the people of the Countrey

they are called, Toroa: out of which Mountaines they did thinke, that famous Nilus tooke also his beginning : but they were veterly deceived. For (as wee have already told you) the notout of the first Lake ariseth not out of those Mountaines, but lyeth a great way distant from it : and be-Mountaines of tweene it and them, is there a very great and a luge low plaine. Befules that, the ffreames that the Moon. See the Moon See the Moon see that ther great Rivers; fo that it is not possible for them to passe into the foresaid Lake, much lessinto Nilm, confidering especially that the River Magnice, springeth out of that first Lake, and be a farre different course from the course of Niliss, runneth towards the East, and so invneth in felfe with the two Rivers aforelaid. The third, is called Arroe, and arifeth on another fide out of the Mountaines of the Gold Mines of Monomopata : and in some places of this River to there are found some small pieces of Gold among the Sand.

The Riuer of

These three Rivers enter into the great Magnice, neere vnto the Sea, and all foure together doe make there a great Water, in a very large Channell, and fo dischargeth it selfe into the Ocean. From the mouth of this River all along the Sea Coast, if retcheth the Kingdome of Sofala. vnto the River Cuama, which is so called of a certaine Castle or Fortresse that carrieth the same name, and is possessed by Mahometans and Pagans: but the Portugals call it, The mouthes of Cuama; because at the entry into the Sea, this River divideth it selfe into seven mouthes, where there are fine speciall Hands, belides divers others that lie vp the River, all very full, and well peopled with Pagans. This Cuama commeth out of the fame Lake, and from the fame forings from whence Nilus floweth. And thus the Kingdome of Sofala is comprised within The kingdome the faid two Rivers, Magnice and Cuama, vpon the Sea coast. It is but a small Kingdome, and 20 hath but a few Houles or Townes in it: The chiefe and principall head whereof, is an Iland that lyeth in the River called Sofola, which giveth the name to all the whole Countrey. It is inhabite i by Mahometans, and the King himfelfe is of the fame fect, and yelldeth obedience to the Crowne of Portugall, because he will not be subject to the Empire of Monomotapa. And there-

yoon, the Portugals there doe keepea Fort in the mouth of the River (nama, and doe trade in

are brought from Cambasa, and is the common apparell of those people. The Mahometans that

at this present doe inhabite those Countries, are not naturally borne there, but before the Por-

Arabia Falix. And when the Portugals had conquered that Realme, the Mahometans

The commo- those Countries for Gol., and Iuory, and Amber, which is found vpon that Coast, and good dities of Sofale, flore of Slaues, and initead thereof, they leave behind them Cotton-cloath, and Silkes that cantsof Sofets rugals came into those quarters, they Frafficked thither in small Barkes, from the Coast of 30

flayed there flill, and now they are become neither vtter Pagans, nor holding of the Sect of From the shoares and Coast, that lyeth betweene the two foresaid Rivers of Magnice and The Empire of Cuama, within the Land spreadeth the Empire of Monomorapa, where there is very great flore of Mines of Gold, which is carried from thence into all the Regions there-abouts, and into Sa-Sofola supposed fola, and into the other parts of Africa. And some there be that will say, that Solomons Gold, which he had for the Temple of lerufalem, was brought by Sea out of these Countries. A thing in truth not very vnlikely: For in the Countries of Movemotapa, there doe remaine to this day many ancient buildings of great worke, and fingular Architecture, of Stone, of Lime, and of 40

Timber, the like whereof are not to be feene in all the Prouinces adioyning.

The people of The King of Menometapa main:aineth

full of Gold

T.eft-handed

The Empire of Monomotapa is very great, and for people infinite. They are Gentiles and Pagans, of colour blacke, very couragious in Warre, of a middle stature, and swift of foot. There are many Kings that are valials and fubicets to Monomotapa, who do oftentimes rebell and make warre against him. Their weapons are Bowes and Arrowes, and light Darts. This Emperour many Armies. maintaineth many Armies in feuerall Protinces, dissided into Legions, according to the vie and cultomes of the Romanes. For being fo great a Lord as he is, he must of necessitie be in continuall water, for the maintenance of his effate. And among all the reft of his Souldiers, the most valourous in name, are his Legions of Women, whom he efteemeth very highly and accounteth them as the very finewes and firength of his militarie forces. These Women doe burne their left paps with fire, because they should be no hindrance vnto them in their shooting, after the vie and manner of the ancient Amazones, that are fo greatly celebrated by the Hilloriographers of former prophane memories. For their weapons, they practife Bowes and Arrowes: They are very quicke and fwift, lively and couragious, very cunning in shooting, but especially and about all, venturous and constant in fight. In their battailes they vie a warlike kind of craft and fubtilitie: For they have a custome, to make a shew that they would siye and runne away, as though they were vanquished and discomfitted, but they will divers times turne themselves backe, and vexe their enemies mightily with the shot of their Arrowes. And when they fee their Adversaries so greedy of the victorie, that they begin to disperse and scatter themselves, 60 then will they fuddenly turne againe upon them, and with great courage and hercenefle make a cruell flaughter of them. So that partly with their swiftnesse, and partly with their deceitfull wiles, and other cunning shifts of warre, they are greatly feared in all those parts. They doe enioy by the Kings good favour certaine Countries, where they dwell alone by themfelnes : and

fometimes they choose certaine men at their owne pleasure, with whom they doe keepe company for generations fake : So that if they do bring forth Male-children, they fend them home to their fathers houses: but if they be Female, they referue them to themselves, and breed them in the exercise of warfare.

The Empire of this Monomotapa lyeth (as it were) in an Iland, which is made by the Sea- The fituation coaft, by the River Magnice, by a piece of the Lake from whence Magnice floweth, and by the of the Empire River Chema. It bordereth towards the South, vpon the Lords of the Cape of Good-Hope, of Monemotapa, before mentioned, and Northward upon the Empire of Mohenemugi, as by and by shall be shew-

CHAP.4.5.8.

But now returning to our former purpose, that is to say, to runne forwards vpon the Sea- The kingdome coast, after you have passed over some part of the River Cuama, there is a certaine little King of Angolia. dome voon the Sea, called Angofcia, which taketh the name of certaine Hands there fo called. and lyedirectly against it. It is inhabited with the like people, both Mahometans and Gentiles, as the Kingdome of Sofala is. Merchants they are, and in small Vessels doe Trasficke along that Coast with the same Wares and Commodities, where-with the people of Sofala doe

Trade. A little beyond, fuddenly flarteth up in fight the Kingdome of Mozambique, fituate in The kingdome foureteene degrees and a halfe towards the South, and taketh his name of three llands, that lye of Mozambiaue in the mouth of the Riner Megbincate, where there is a great Hauen and a fafe, and able to re- R. Megbincate, 20 ceine all manner of ships. The Realme is but small, and yet aboundeth in all kind of Victuals. It is the common landing place for all Veffels that fayle from Portugall, and from India into that Countrey. In one of their lles, which is the chiefe and principall, called Mozambique, and The Hand of

giveth name to all the reft; as allo to the whole Kingdome, and the Hauen aforefail , wherein Mozambiauc. there is erected a Fortreffe, guarded with a Garrison of Portugals, whereupon all the other Fortreffes that are on that Coalt doe depend, and from whence they fetch all their provision : all trents trade to the detection of the Armsdau and Fleetes that layle from Portugal to the Indies, if they cannot minh and performe their Voyage, will goe and Winter (Isay) in this lland of Monambique, and those that readel out of India to Europe, are confirmined of needlist to touch at Monambique, to furnish themselves with Victuals: This Iland, when the Portugals discovered India, was the first place 30 where they learned the language of the Indians, and prouided themselues of Pilots to direct

them in their course. The people of this Kingdome are Gentiles: Rusticall and rude they bee, The Inhabiand of colour blacke. They go all naked. They are valiant and strong Archers, and cunning Fish- tants of Meers, with all kind of hookes.

As yougo on forwards vpon the forefaid Coast, there is another Iland, called *Quiloa*, in The kinedome mantitie not great, but in excellency fingular. For it is fituate in a very coole and fresh Ayre of guida. It is replenished with Trees that are alwaies greene, and affordeth all varietie of Victuals. It lyeth at the mouth of the River Coaso, which springeth out of the same Lake from whence Nilus floweth, and fo runneth about fixtie miles in length, till it commeth neere to the Sea. and there it hath a mightie streame, and in the very mouth of it maketh a great Iland, which 40 is peopled with Mahometans and Idolaters, and a little beyond that, towards the Coalt on the West, you may see the said Iland of Quiloa. This Iland is inhabited with Mahometans also, which are of colour some-thing whitish. They are well apparelled, and trimly adorned with Cloath The sland of

of Silke and Cotten: Their Women doe vse ornaments of Gold, and Iewels about their hands Quick, and the and their neckes, and have good store of houshold-stuffe made of Silver. They are not altogen innabiguous ther so blacke as the men are : and in their limbs they are very well proportioned. Their houses thereof. are made of Stone, and Lime, and Timber, very well wrought, and of good Architecture, with Gardens and Orchards, full of Hearbs and fundry Fruits. Of this Iland the whole Kingdome tooke the name, which vpon the Coast extendeth it selfe from Capo Delgado, (the Cape Delicate, that bordereth Mozambique and Quiloa,) and is fituate in nine degrees towards the South. 50 and from thence it runneth out vnto the aforelaid River of Coaso. In old time the Kingdome

of Quiloa was the chiefest of all the Principalities there adioyning, and stood neere to the Sea : but when the Portugals arrived in those Countries, the King trusted so much to himselfe, that he thought he was able with his owne forces not onely to defend himfelie against them. but allo to drive them from those places which they had already surprised. How beit the matter fell The King of out quite contrary. For when it came to Weapons, he was vtterly ouerthrowne and discomfi- 24/104 ouerted by the Portugals, and lossed away. But they tooke and posseled the lland, and enriched throwne by the the down the react footles and booties that they found therein. They ere ded there also driven out of a Fortresse, which was afterward pulled downe by the commandement of the King of Portugall, the liand, because he thought it not necessarie, considering that there were others sufficient enough for 60 that Coast.

And heere we may not leave behind vs the He of Saint Laurence, so called by the Portugals, The comendabecause they did first discouer it vpon that Martyrs feast day. It is so great, that it containeth tion of the Ile because they did first discouer it upon that Martyrs seated ay. It is so great, that it contained of S. Laurente, in length almost a thouland miles, and standeth right ouer against the Coast which wee have Ofis, see the described, beginning directly at the mouthes of the River Magnice, which are in fixe and former lour.

Qqqqq.

The Inhabi-

rants of the

He of Saint

Their Wea-

Laurence.

twentie degrees of the South, and fo going forwards to the North, it endeth right against the mouths of Cuama in the Kingdome of Quilea. Betweene this Iland and the firme Land, there is (as it were) a Channell, which at the entry West-ward, is three hundred and fortie miles broad : in the middeft where it is narrowest, over against the Iland of Mozambiche ; one hundred and seventie miles, and for the rest, it enlargeth it selfe very much towards Indes, and containeth many lles within it. The ships that goe from Spaine into India, or returne from India to Spaine, doe alwaies for the most part passe and layle in, and through this Channell, if by time or weather they be not forced to the contrary. And furely, this Iland deferueth to be inhabited with a better people, because it is furnished with fingular Commodities. For it hath many fafe & fure a better people, because it is surmined with images a as Pulse, and Rice, and other Graine, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, and such like fruit. Elesh of all forts, as Hens, &c, and Venison, as wilde Boare, & Deere, and such like, and all this of a very good tafte and relift, because the soyle is very fat : their Fish also is exceeding good. The Inhabitants are Pagans, with some of the Sect of Mabonnes among them. They are of the colour which the Spaniards call, Mulate, betweene black and white. Very warlike they are, and given to their weapons, which are Bowes and Arrowes, and Darts of very light Wood, firengthned with Iron. whereof they make the heads of their Darts, which are crooked like hookes : and thefe they will cast and throw most slightly and cunningly. They vie also Targets, and Iackes that are made of certaine beafts skinnes, wherewith they faue themselves in fight from the blowes of their enemies.

This Iland is divided among feuerall Princes, that are at enmitte one with another : for they are in continuall Warres, and perfecute one another with Armes. There are divers Mines of Gold, of Siluer, of Copper, of Iron, and of other Metals. The fauage people doe not vie to Lyle out of the Iland, but onely from one lide to the other they goe coafting along the shoares, with certaine Barkes that are made but of one stocke of a Tree, which they hollow for that purpole. The most part of them doe not willingly entertaine ftrangers, neither will they confent that they should Trafficke or converse with them. Netwithstanding, in certaine Ports the Sundry Ilands Portugals doe vie to Trade with the Ilanders, for Amber, Waxe, Silver, Copper, Rice, and fuch sunary manas other things, but they neuer come vpon the Land. In the Channell before mentioned, there are divers Ilands, some greater; and some leste, inhabited with Mahometans. The chiefe of them is a the He of Saint Christopher and then of Sante Spirito : and another, called Magliaglie, and so the reft, as the lies of Comora, Anzoame, Maiotto, and fome other.

The kingdome of Membaza rich in Gold and Siluer, and

The Citie of Mombaza spoy-led as Quilea

The kingdome

linde weigherh commonly 25. or 30, pound. Sec Lee Afer of Egyptian

But let vs returne to the Sea side, and prosecute the Coast of the Kingdome of Quiloa, where we left. Next vnto it, is the Kingdome of Mombaza, in the height of three degrees and a halfe towards the South, which taketh the name from an Iland inhabited with Mahometans, which is also called Mombaza, where there is a faire Citie, with houses that have many Sollers, furnished Pictures, both grauen and painted. The King thereof is a Mahometan, who taking vpon him to relift the Portugals, received the fame successe that hapned to the King of Quilon, fo that the Citie was ranlacked and spoyled by his enemies, who found therein good store of Gold and Silver, and Pearle, and Cloath of Cotton, and of Silke, and of Gold, and such other Commo- 40 dities. This Kingdome lyeth betweene the borders of Queloa, and Melinde, and is inhabited with Pagans and Mahometans, and yeeldeth obedience to the Empire of Mohenemuoi.

A little beyond is the Kingdome of Melinde, which being likewife but a little one, extendoth it selfe upon the Sea Coast, as farre as the River Chimanchi, and lyeth in the height of two degrees and a halfe : and vp the streame of that River, it reacheth to the Lake Calice, the space of one hundred miles within land. Neere vnto the Sea, along the bankes of this River, there is a great deale of Countrey inhabited by Pagans and Mahometans, of colour almost white. Their The tayleofa houles are built after our fashion. But there is one particularitie to be admired, that their Muttons or Sheepe, are twice as great as the Sheep of our Countrey : for they divide them into five quarters, (if a man may fo call them) and reckon the tayle for one, which commonly weigheth 50 fome fine and twentie, or thirtie pound. The Women are white, and fumptuoufly dreffed, after the Arabian fashion, with Cloath of Silke. About their neckes and hands, and armes, and feet, they vie to weare lewels of Gold and Silver: When they go abroad out of their houses, they couer themselves with Taffata, so that they are not knowne but when they list themselves. In this Countrey there is a very good Hauen, which is a landing place for the Vessels that sayle through those Seas. Generally, the people are very kind, true and trustie, and converse with Strangers. They have alwaies entertained and welcomed the Portugals, and have reposed great confidence in them, neither haue they ever offered them any wrong in any respect.

In the Sea betweene these two Capes of Mombaza and Melinde, there are three Iles: the first, is called Monfie; the second, Zanzabar; and the third, Pemba; all inhabited only with Mosems. 60 tans, that are of colour white. These lles abound in all things as the others do, whereof we made mention before. These people are somewhat enclined to Armes: but they are in deed more addicted to dreffe and manure their ground : For there groweth much Sugar, which in small Barks they carrie away to fell into the firme Land, with other fruits of that Country.

Befides these three Realmes last described, Quiola, Melinde, and Mombaza, within the Land is the great Empire of Mohenemugi, towards the West. It bordereth vpon the South, with the The Empire of Kine dome of Mozambique, and with the Empire of Monomotapa to the River Coans, whon the Motentaning, West with the River Nilus, betweene the two Lakes; and vpon the North it ioyneth with the Empire of Prete-Gianni. Towards the Sea, this Emperour standeth in good termes of peace with the forelaid Kings of Quiola, Melinde, and Mombaza, by reason of their trafficke together. and the better to fecure the entercourie and trade by Sea: by meanes whereof they have brought wnto them much cloth of Cotton, and cloth of Silke from divers Countries, and other merchandifes that are well efteemed in these parts: and particularly certaine little balls, that are made in the Kingdome of Cambaia, of a kind of Bitumen or clammie Clay, like vnto Glasse, but that it is (as it were) of a red colour, which they vie to weare about their neckes, like a paire of Beades in flead of Neck-laces. It ferueth them also in flead of Money, for of Gold they make none account. Likewise with the Silkes that are brought vnto them, they doe apparell them-

CHAP.4. S.8. Agagi dreadfull and deuillish. Warlike Amazones.

giue Gold, Siluer, Copper, and Iuorie. But on the other fide towards Monomotapa, there are continuall warres : vea and fometimes so bloudie, that it is hardly discerned who hath gotten the victorie. For in that Border there meet together two of the greatest and most warlike Powers and Forces that are in all those Regions : that is to fay, on the Partie of Monomotapa, there came forth into the field the Amazones, of whom wee told you before; and on the other partie of Mobenemugi are the Giacchi. (as the Moci-Congi doe call them) but in their owne tongue they are called Agagi, who did The Gierha

felues from the girdle downewards. In exchange and barter of all their commodities, they

(as the Moes-Longs doe can them) out at the former of Congo, as you may remember. Neither are these or Again.

And Bas Civils people leffe couragious or strong then the Amazones, but are of a blacke complexion, and prefumptions countenances. They doe vie to marke themselves about the lip vpon their cheekes came from \$5 with certaine lines, which they make with Iron instruments and with fire. Moreover, they erations, Bu that a cuftome to turne their eye. hids backwards: fo that their skin being all blacke, and in they differed that blackfieft flewing the white of their eyes, and those markes in their faces, it is a fitting them therefore as thing to behold them. For it is indeed a very dreadfull and Demiliith fight. They are of bodie great, but deformed, and line like beafts in the field, and feed vpon mans flesh. In fights, they, common flew themfelues exceedingly couragious, and doe veter most horrible showting and crying, of feorge the of purpose to daunt and affright their Enemies. Their weapons are Dates, and Paulies of twee and Paulie Leather that couer all their whole bodie, and so defend themselves therewith. Sometimes they of Ethiopia. will encampe together, and sticke their Pauises in the ground, which are voto them instead a trench. Sometimes they will goe forwards in the battell, and shrowd themselves vader them. and yet annoy their aduerfaries with the shot of their Darts. And thus by warlike policie they doe ordinarily plague their Enemies, by endeanouring with all subtiltie to make them spend their shot in vaine, voon their Targets; and when they see that they have made an end of shoos ting, then doe they renew the battell a fresh, and drining them to flight, make a cruell slaughter of them without all mercie. And this is the manner which they vie against their Energies, and The America, the Amazones. But the Amazones, on the other fide, which are very well acquainted here-40 withall, doe fight against them with other militarie stratagems (as we have about declared) and doe ouercome the forces of their Aduerlaries with their swiftnesse, and great skill in matters of Warre. For, they doe affure themselves, that if they be taken, they shall be devoured: and therefore with doubled courage they fight for life, that they might duercome, and in any case saue their lines from that serce and cruell Nation. And in this sort due they maintaine conti-

times to one of these two Princes, and sometimes to the other. They are men of a farte greater flature then all the rest of the people in those Countries. Towards the Cape of Guarda-Fuy, there are many places inhabited with Mahomeraus, all 2long the Sea-fide, of colour being white. Vpon this shoare there are diners good Flauens, where Many good the ships of sundrie Countries doe trassicke with the foresaid merchandises. The first of these Hauens, places, is called Patee; the second, Brana; the third, Magadoxo; the fourth, Affion; and the last is, the famous Promontorie and Cape of Guarda-Fny: which because it is very great, and The Cape of inteth out a good way into the Sea, is well knowne to all Sailers that come from India, and Guarda ing. 60 from Ormuz, and from Arabia Fælix. It is the place and harbour where the Portugals are wont to attend, and yeerely with their Nauies to watch for the Veffels of the Mahometans, that being laden with precious merchandises, doe faile into those parts without their licence, they be-

ing the Lords of the trafficke and trade for Spicerie, and all other commodities that are brought

mult Warre, alwaies with great mortalitie on both fides. Thele Agast dwell at the beginning of the River Nilm, (where it runneth Northwards out of the Lake,) kpon both the banker of

the River, till it come to a certaine limite, wherein they are bounded; and then Wellwards all

50 which before I had omitted. Betweene the confines of this Mobenemugi, and Prete Gami, there

are fundrie other petie Lords, and people that are of a white colour, and yeeld obsdience lome-

ouer the bankes of the faid Nilus, even to the fecond Lake, and to the borders of the Empire of Prete-Gianni. Touching these Agags, I thought it convenient in this place to a de this.

Qqqqq 2

Diuers Ports coaft towards

shall come to other Townes and Hauens of the Mahometans. The first of them is called Metho and another beyond that, called Barbera. And this is the farthest place wherein you shall find any people with white skins: for here the men beginne to be all blacke. Then there is Ceila, and Dalaca, and Malaca, and Carachin: and all this Coast is called in that Countrie language, Ba. ragiam. The People that inhabite therein are all blacke, valiant in Armes, and apparelled from the girdle downewards with cloth of Cotton: but those that are of the best account among the girdie downewards with Goth of Colokes with Hoods, called Bernuffi, fuch as the them, doeweare upon their shoulders certaine Clokes with Hoods, called Bernuffi, such as the old Romans vied, and were termed Saga Romana. It aboundeth in Gold, and in luorie, and in Metals, and in Victuals of all forts.

That which Abassis, Nilus. &c isomitted.

Then follow the Mouths or Entrances into the red Gulie.

CHAP. V.

The Voyage of Sir FRANCIS ALVAREZ, a Portugall Prieft, made Onto the Court of PRETE IANNI, the great Christian Emperour of Ethiopia.



who translated this Booke, I found it in Mafer Hacklusts

N the Name of Ielus, amen. I, Francis Aluarez, Priest of the Masse, which by effeciall commandement of the King our Lord, Don Emanuel (whom God hath received one his glorie) went with Edward Galuano, a Gentleman of his bonse, and one of 60 his Counsellors; which was Secretarie unto the King Don Alfonio, and unto King Iohn, his Sorne, till his dying day; and by King Don Emanuel mass fent Amballa done routo King Prete launt, hause determined to write all things which bapted onto ared it where L vs in this Voyage, and to deferibe the Countries wherein we were, with the qualities, suftomes, and va-

An Abissine Ambassadour. Christian Monasterie. CHAP.5. S.I.

ges thereof, and how they agree with Christian Religion. Neither doe I here take upon me to reprehend though it fill or approve their cuffernes and v sages, but leave them wholly unto the Readers (which are able to instruct continued veor approve their cuffences and places, but lease them whosey who we accurate which are used to migract communicurves mee to paifs, amend, and correct what sever they shall thinke good. —And because it may seeme some. Young, it now times specking of one Countries, and essentially another, to consonat he same together, I say, that we tections, I also were resident in the second to the spece of since yearest nogether, wherein I sought to know a great with Rampile mere refident in the f. Countries for the space of size speers segether, wherein 1 sought to come a great with Ramsso part of the Countries, Kingdomer, and Syminerics of the fall Prete lanni, and there ressourced and size in the size of the get, some by sight, and some others by the report of credible persons. And ener, as I came to the knowning the size of the size of them, so I put them downe in writing, that is to so, additioning lack things as I saw, as having many pieces from any at this expected, a section of bearing: and therefore I space and trust it now Lord God, and to conscience, that I will not writingly report any vortrash. And ener as I hope and trust in our Lord God, many supplied that my confession shall be true unto my lines end, so likewise shall this my present writing be true : for it and added be that lyeth to his neighbour, lyeth to God.

illustrating it with marginall notes, &c. He that compareth these Relations with those of the Great Mogolf in SirT. Ros, shall find great correwith marginain notes, e.c. is the things of the control of the state o both will bodies rather then infolk; sine our nominants, successed and the state of the prieft lobs, following the valgar errour, growing from the relations of a Prieft lobs in Affa, and by ignorance applied to this Negwo of Ethiopia, as in my Pigrimmer you may fee at large. I efteeme his relations true in those things which he saith he saw: in some others which he had by reis tion of colarging Trauellers, or boatting Abaffines, hee may perhaps sometimes rather mendacia dicere then mentiri. Euen ye: the Law giver is not departed from Iuda, it Melichs posteritie hath ener fince raigned, wily witehad their pias fraudes to make Religion a fiirop

MATTHEW the Ambaffadour of PRETE IANNI, is conducted by the Portugals unto the Hauen of Maczua in the red Sea, and what bapned

Hereas I faid that I went with Edward Galnano (whom God pardon) true it is that The Chapters, I did fo, and he died in Comoran, an Ile of the red Sea, neither tooke his Amballage as they are di any effect, during the time that Lopez Swarez was Captaine generall of the Indies; wided in Ramu-Diego Lopez de Sequeira succeeding Suerez in the gouernment of Indus, effected that fis, are experiently succeeding the sequeira succeeding of Matthew (who was lent guess in the guess in Ambassaour from Prete lami to the King of Portugal) to the Huen of Macras, necre vnto beginnings of Ercoco, being a Port-towne of Prete lami. This Diego Lopez, prepared a goodly and great the lines: Fleet, wherewith we failed into the red Sea, and arrived at the faid fland of Macana on Mun- which method day in the Octaves of Easter, the fixteenth of the moneth of Aprill, in the yeere 1520. which I have reduced Hand we found abandoned and forfaken by the Inhabitants, because that fine or fixe dayes beforme of Parafland we round abandonce and to lake the fore they had knowledge of our comming. This Ile is diffant from the Continent about two graphs l.ftfo 40 Crosbow-shots, whither the Moores of the faid Iland were fled with their goods. Our Fleet many divisions therefore riding betweene the Continent and the lland. The Tuesday following, there came fould make therefore runing overweene use complement and the hand. The anomal pulpowing, intercaine and anomal pulpowing view of Ereces belonged to the Christian and a Moore from the Townson of Ereces belonged to the Christian and was water the luridiction of a great Lord, called Boy. Further and the state of Ereces belonged to the Christians, and was water the further than the things of the line of Ereces that the complement of the transfer of the line of Ereces belonged to the Christians and the state of the Ereces the Ereces the Bookers of Ereces belonged to the Christians and was water the luridiction of a great Lord, called Boy. Further and the Ereces the Er nagasso, being subject vinto Prete lanni; and that the Inhabitants of this He of Maczina, and Maczina of Ercoco, when the Turkes came thither, fled all into the Mountaines; but at this present Mague. they would not flee away, having understood that wee were Christians. Our General having Erroro. heard thus much, gaue thankes to God, that he was come to the happie knowledge of Chriflians; and this procured great fauour vnto Matthew, which before that time was little ac-Barnagoffo.

2. The day following being Wednesday, the Captaine of the said Towne of Ercoco came to of the Aboling. speake with our Generall, and presented foure Oxen vnto him, and the Generall gaue him very courteous and honourable entertainment.

Twentie or foure and twentie miles from this place flandeth a very high Mountaine, with The Monafles a famous Monasterie thereupon, which Matthew oftentimes made mention of, being called the ricos Bifan. Monasterie of Bisan, that is, Of the Vision. The Friars of this Monasterie having knowledge of vs, came seuen of them the Thursday after the Octaves, to visite vs ; whom our Generall and all his people went on shoare to meet, with great ioy and gladnesse: and they seemed to reioyce no lesse; and said, that they had long time looked for Christians, because they had certaine Prophefies in their written Booke, which foretold that Christians should arrive at this Hanen, Propheficis

60 and that a pit should there be digged, after the opening whereof, no more Moores should dwell in that place: with many other Speeches tending to the like purpose. At all these things the Ambasfadour Matthew was present, whom the foresaid Friars did greatly honour, killing his hands and his shoulders, according to their manner; and he, on the other side, tooke great delight in them alio. Their Friars said that they observed then the Feast of Easter , and eight dayes next en-

1027

Faller Rites

fuing, and that during those eight dayes they yied neither to trauell, nor to doe any other work: but to foone as they heard fay that Christians were arrived at that Hauen (a thing which they fo earneftly defired) they craued licence of their Superiour to vindertake this journey for the feruice of God, and that Barnagaffe was likewife informed of our arrivall, but that he would not fet forward out of his house till eight dayes after Easter.

3. Thefe Friars vie to carrie Croffes in their hands, and other people weare them about their neckes, made of blacke wood, and all our companie bought of the same Crosses which they weare about their neckes, because it was a new thing, and not visual amongst vs. While thefe Friars abode with vs, the Generall commanded one Fernando Diaz, which vnderstood

the Arabike Tongue, to goe and view their Monasterie.

Comming of

4. On Tuesday the foure and twentieth of Aprill, Barnagasso came to the Towne of Er- 10 Exemple 60, and gaue vs advertisement of his arrivall. Order was taken, that they should meet one as State observed other in the mid-way. Barngasso came thither first, but he would not come to the place which was prepared for him. The Generall being I ghted, feing that he would not come thither, caufed the preparatives to be carried before neere vnto the place where he flood: which againe, to maintayne his grandure and reputation, would not once ftirre with his people to come vnto the place prepared, lo that the faid Anthonie de Saldanza and Matthew the Ambassadour, were confirained to returne againe, which in the end resolued, that both of them at one instant, should League confire fee forward, that is to lay, the Generall and Barnagaffe, and so they did, meeting together and medby Outh conferring in a large champaine field, as they fate on the ground vpon certaine Carpets. And 20 among many discourses that they had together, giving thankes to God for this their entenuiew. Barnagaffo taking a Crosse of Silver in his hand (which was there readie for the same purpose) faid, that he sware vpon the signe of the Crosse, vpon which our Lord suffered his Passion, in the Name of Prete lanni his Matter, that he would alwaies fauour and aide the people and affaires of the King of Portugals, and also affilt his Captaines which should arrive at that Hauen, or in any other Hauens or Lands, where it lay in him to aide and affift them, and likewife that

people and goods as they should carrie with them. The Generall fivare, on the other part, to doe the like for the Subjects and Affaires of Prete Lami, and of Barnagaffs, there and in energy place where he should find them, and that the rest of the Captaines and Lords of the King of Paragall should doe the like. The Generall gaue vnen Barnagasso a faire Armour, and certaine pieces of cloth of Silke; and Barnagasso gaue vnto the Generall a faire Horse and a Mule : and so they departed glad and contented on either part.

he would take into his protection the Ambassadour Matthew, and other Ambassadours, which

it pleased the Generall to send into the Kingdomes and Dominions of Prete lanni, with all such

This Barnagaffo had in his traine two hundred persons mounted upon Horses and Mules, and two thouland Footmen, Our Gentlemen and Captaines seeing these so good newes which God had fent vs, and that a doore was opened to exalt the Catholike Faith, whereof afore wee had fmall hope of any fuccesse, all men holding this Matthew for no true Ambassadour, but for a falle man and a Counterfeit, whereupon they were onely of opinion to put him on Land, and let him goe his way, when they had feene thefe things (as wee haue faid before) they all rouzed vp 40 themselves, requesting the Generall of his fauour, that hee would suffer them to goe with the faid Matthew to Prete lanni, in that Ambasage; considering that by that which they had seene, it was perfectly knowne that the faid Matthew was a true Ambassadour. And albeit, manyrequested this charge, yet was it granted to Roderigo de Lima : and the Generall appointed certaine that should goe with him, which were thele, George de Bren, Lopez de Gama, Tohn Scolaro Secretarie of the Amballage, John Gon Jaluez Interpretor and Factor of the same Amballage, Emunuel de Mares an Organist, Pedro Lopez, Matter Iohn the Physician, Gaspar Pereira, Stephen Pagliarte, both Kinimen of Don Roderigo, John Fernandez, Lazarus de Andrada Painter, Alfonfo Painter in dif. Menzdez, and my felte, Francis Aluarez Prieft, though vnworthy. All we before mentioned went in the company of Don Roderigo, and likewife, three Portugals accompanied Matthew, 50 of whom, the one was named Magaglianes, another Aluarenga, the third, Diego Fernandez, Pre-

Embaffage.

Roderigo de

Lima, fent to

the Frete in

fents also were prouided. We went to Ercoco, where we were appointed by Barnagaffo, which caused vs to lodge two or three Crosse-bow-shoots, distant from the Towne in a certaine Plaine, which is at the foot of a Mountaine, whither immediately hee fent vs of free gift an Oxe, and Bread and Wine of the Countrie. We stayed there, because in that place they were to prouide vs of Horses and Camels to carrie our goods. This was vpon a Friday, and because in this Countrey they chferue the old and the new Law, we reited the Saturday and the Sunday to keepe both those

Saturday and Sunday Sab-baths.

In this meane space, the Ambassador Manben, dealt very effectually with Don Rodorigo, and 60 with vs all, not to stay with Barnageffo, although hee were a great Lord, but that it was farre better to goe vnto the Monaltery of the Vilion, where wee should have farre better difpatch Whereupon, giuing him to vaderstand, that wee were not to stay with him, hee departed and went his way, neuertheleffe hee gaue vs fourteene Horses and tenne Camels to carrie our

6. We departed out of this Plaine, neere vnto the Towne of Ercoco; on Monday, the thirtieth of Aprill, wee trauelled not about two miles from that place, but that wee rested about noone, Drought, hest, neere vnto a Riuer which was dryed vp, which had no water fauing in certaine small Pits. And barrenneile. because the Countrey through which we were to trauell, was dry and barren, and the heate extreame; each of vs carried with him his Veffels and Bottles of Leather full of water. Voon the bankes of this River grew many trees of divers forts, among which were Sallowes, and trees of bearing the fruit, called Iniuba, with other fruitleffe trees. While we refted by this River, about Giggiole. noone there came a Gentleman vnto vs,named Framasgual, which in our Language signifieth. The Sernant of the Croffe, who in his blacknesse was so faire, that he seemed to be a Gentleman A Gentleman. 10 indeed, and they faid that he was allyed to Barnagasso, that is to say, his Wines Brother. Before he came at vs, he lighted from his Horse, because this is their custome, and they vie it also for a courtefie. The Ambaffadour Matthew, hearing of his comming, faid he was a Thiefe, and came to rob vs, and that we should all betake vs to our Weapons; and Mathew himselfe caught vp Matthew sufpi his Sword, and put on his Head-piece. Framafqual hearing this noyfe, fent to craue leave to cious. come vnto vs. and though he could not obtaine it of Mauben, yet neuertheleffe; he came vnto vs as a man well brought vp and very courteous, and as one that had beene conversant at the Court. This Gentleman had a very good Horse before him, and a faire Mule whereon hee rode, and foure men which went by him on foot.

with his Horsebefore him, accorded our Amballadour, Don Roderigo with his Interpreter, and 20 they rode agreat while conferring and deuiting together. Hee was in his conference and in his aniweres very gentle, and courteous, and the Ambaffadour tooke fingular delight in him. Wee A Carauan, found a Carauan of Camels and people, which came from Ercoco, because they travell not but in Carauans for feare of theeues. Wee lodged all in a Wood where there was water, being an ordinary place for Caravans to lodge in, and the forefaid Framafqual remayned with vs , where we and those of the Carauan kept watch all night for feare of wild beafts. The next morning, Dry Riuers, we departed from this place, alwayes trauelling ouer dry Rivers and Brookes, most huge Mountaines taines standing on both sides of the way, with great Woods and Trees of divers forts, most and Woods. beautifull and tall, the greatest part whereof were without fruit, and among them were some which I my felfe knew, being called Tamarinds, which beare clusters of fruit like vnto Grapes, Tamarinds. which being prefied are somewhat blacke, because they make Wine of them, some quantitie whereof they carrie vnto all their Faires, as they vie to make of Raifins. The Rivers and wayes whereby we paffed, feemed to be high and ragged, which commeth to paffe through the fury of Furious fforms the water of itormes and tempelts mingled with Thunder, which waters hinder not the way, and thunders. according as they told vs, and as we saw our selues in other places like vnto these. The remedie was at the time of these stormes to stay upon the side of some Hill, the space of two hours. vntill the force of these stormes be runne downe. And how great and terrible soeuer these Ri-40 uers became through the foresaid showres, the water is no sooner falne from the faid Moun- Strange suduers became through the forefaid thowres, the water is no 100ner raine from the 1aid adoun-taines, and come into the Plaine, but it is dispersed and soked up, and neuer commeth vinto the showres. Sea : neither could we learne that any River of Ethiopia enter thinto the Red Sea, but that all of them have their ending, as soone as they come to the low and plaine fields.

Vpon these Mountaines and Rockes, are many beatls of divers kinds, as we our selves saw to Many beatls. wit, Elephants, Lions, Tygres, Buffes, Badgers, Ante, Decre without number, and other beafts Ante akind of beaft. of all forts, fauing two, which I neither faw, nor heard to be in those parts, that is to say, Beares, No Beares not and Conies. There are likewife all kind of finging Birds, which may be imagined, and also Par-Gonies. tridges, Quailes, wild Hens, Doues, and Turtles, in such incredible numbers, that they covered the Sunne, of all these sorts which are in our parts, fauing that I saw no Pyes, nor Cuckoes. All along thefe Rivers and Rockes I faw great plentie of fweet Herbes, which I knew not, fa- Store of Bafill 30 uing onely Baill, whereof there was exceeding flore, which yeelded a fragrant and fweet fmell, Hobse and had leaves of divers forts.

8. The time of resting our selves being come, Matthew determined to cause vs a-new to leave the high way, and to travel with him toward the Monasterie of the Vision, through Mountaines and Woods exceeding full of high Trees.

We departed from this Lodging, and trauelled through a more rough and craggie Country, Matthews perand through farre greater and thicker Woods, being our felues on foot, and our Mules before vs, perfendle to which were not able to trauell. The Camels yelled out as though they had beene possessed with lead them Deuils. It feemed, to vs all, that Afaither had brought vs into this way, eyther to make vs way-left lofe our lives or our goods, for in that place we could doe no other but call vpon God to helpe tray to fre-60 vs; and the Woods were to darke and fearefull, that Spirits would have beene afraid to patie melandishing them. We faw many farageand cruell beaffs at noone-dayes, paifing this way and that way, Wildberfts. without being any whit afraid of vs. For all this we went forward, and began to find people of the Countrey, which kept their fields that were fowne with Millet, and came farre off to fow Millet. it vpon there high an i craggie Mountaynes. We law likewise many Herds of goodly Onen, Naked people. and Goats feeding. The faid people which we found there, were all naked, and had in a manner,

7. From this Lodging we departed all together, and the faid Gentleman riding upon his Mule

hold. The men weare a piece of skinne before their Prinities.

no part of their bodies. They were very blacke, and were faid to be Christians. They had their Wives with them, which covered their Privities with a ragge of cloth halfe torne. Thefe was

men weare upon their heads a kind of attyre, made after the fashion of a Crowne, as blacke as Pitch, and their haire bound up in round wreathes like Kandles of Tallow: the blackness. thele attyres, with these Lockes of haire fastned unto them, seemed a very strange thing to he.

Thus tranelling forward through many other Woods which could hardly be passed, and wee

our felues lighting on foot, and valading our Camels there met vs tenne or twelue Friers of the

1031

Of the manner and lituation of the Monasteries, and of their holy Rises, Times, Places, and Things: And first of this of Saint Michael

First, this Monasterie is situate vpon the cragge of a Mountaine, which is very wild, seated at the foot of another huge Mountaine, vpon the which no man can afcend. The Rone of these Rockes is of the colour and graine of the stone. wherewith the wall of the Cities of Portugall are built, and the stones are verie great. All the ground except these stones is covered with many great Woods, and the greatest part are wild Olive Trees, and great flore of Herbs grow among them, and the most part is Bafill. The Trees which were not Oliues, were not knowne of vs, and all of them were without fruit. In certaine narrow Vallies, which belong to this Monasterie, were Groues of Orange-

trees, Limons, Cedars, Vines, and Figs of all forts, as well of those which are found in Portugall, as those of India, and Peaches : there were also Cabbages , Corianders, Cressis, Worme- Orchards. wood, Mirtles, and many other kindes of Herbes fragrant and medicinall: and all was ill The Abasims husbanded, because they are people of no industrie; and the Earth bringeth forth the things The building aforefaid, as it bringeth forth will things, and would bring forth much better, all they should of the Mona 20 plant or fow. The House of the Monasterie seemeth, indeed, to bee a Church-building beeing fterie.

made like vnto ours : it hath about it a circuit like to a Cloyster, and the courring aboue is fastned to the couering of the Church. It hath three gates, as ours have, to wit, one chiefe gate in the fore-front, and one on each fide in the midit. The couering of the Church, and of the circuit is made of wild Reed, which lasteth the life of a man.

The body of the Church is made with Iles, very well wrought, and the Arches are very well flored, it feemeth all to be made like a Vault : It hatha little Quire behind the great Altar, with a Crosse afore it, whereupon hang Curtaines which goe from one fide to another; and likewise, LittleBels there are other Curtaines before the Gates, passing from one Wall to another, and they are of Silke, and the entrie by these Curtaines is at three places, and are fastned against the Wallst and at these three entrances or gates, are little Bels fastned to the Curtaines, about the bignesse of Saint Anthonies Bels; and a man cannot enter in at the gates, but these Bels will ring. There is but one Altar belonging to the whole Church, which standeth in the great Chappell. About the Altar is a Cloath of Goldborne vp with soure pillars, and the Altar toucheth all these sources. Pillars, and the faid Cloath of Gold is hollow like a Vault, it hath his Super-Altare, or confecrated stone, which they call Tabato, and vpon this stone standeth a very great Bason of Copper, and it is flat in the bottome, and is low brimmed, which reacheth vnto all the foure Pillars

40 of the Altar, because the Pillars are set in a square, and in the faid Bason is set another leffer Ba-

fon, and on every fide of this cloth of Gold, that is to fay, behind and on both fides a Curtaine hangeth downe which couereth the whole Altar downe to the ground, fauing that it is open Bels of ftone.

Their Bels are of stone, that is to fay, long and thin stones, hanged up with Cords, and they beat them on the infide with a piece of wood, and they make a very strange found, like to the found of broken Bels when they are heard afarre off. And likewise on Festivall dayes, they take Basons vied Basons, and firike them with certaine small stickes, which make them found very loud. They for Bels. haue likewise Bels of Iron, which are not fully round, but haue two fides like vnto the Jacket of a Muletier, whereof the one part couereth him before, and the other behind; they have a clapper which beateth the same first on the one side, and then on the other, and it maketh a found 30 like vnto a man that diggeth Vines. They have also other Bels ill-fauoure. ly made, which they carrie in their hands when they go on Procession, and ring them altogether voon Festivall dayes, Darke Maron other dayes they vietheir Bels of stone, and of Iron; they ring to Mattens two houres be- tens. fore day, and they say them by heart without light: onely there hangs a Lampe before the Al- for Oyle. tar, wherein they burne Butter, for they have no Ovle.

They fing and fay with a loud and harsh voice, as of one that cryeth, without any art of finging : they fay no Verfes, but their fpeech is as it were in Profe, and yet they are Pfalmes, and They standal on their Holidayes, befides their Pfalmer, they fay Profe, and according to the Feath lois their way in the Profe and alwayes they stand on their feet in the Clurch. They fay not always one Leffon at Church. Profe, and alwayes they stand on their feet in the Church. They fay not aboue one Lesson at their Mattens, with a harsh, disordered and vntuneable voice, and like vnto that wherein wee 60 pronounce the words of the Iewes, in reprefenting the Passion of our Saujour Christ. And although their voice be so harsh, yet they speake it running, as fast as the tongue of a man can Vadeuoutde-

wagge, and a Clerke or a Frier faith the fame; and this Leffon is read before the principall gate, untions. Which being ended on Saturday and Sundayes, they goe on Procession with source or sine cros- Procession. fes, being carryed vpon certainc staues not very high; and they carrie the same in their left Confers and hands, because in their right hand they carrie a Censer, and alwayes there are so many Censers Crosses.

Monasterie of the Vision, among whom, there was foure or fine very aged, and one older then the rest, whom all the rest did reuerence, and kissed his hands; and our selues did the like, be- io Mattherfille. cause Matther told vs that he was their Bishop, but afterward we knew that he was no Bishop. David & Abba. but that he had the Title of David, which fignifieth, a Warden, & that in the Monasterie there was another aboue him, whom they call Abba, which fignifieth a Father, beeing like vnto a Preuinciall, and in regard of their age and drynesse (for they were as dry as a stocke) they seemed to be men of a holy life at the first blatt. The foresaid Friers travelled through the Woods to gather their Millet which they had fowed, as allo to gather up their Roots, which are paved vnto them by such as sow Corne in those Mountaines and Woods. Their apparell was made of dressed Goat-skinnes, others weare apparell made of old yellow Cotton, and went bare-foot. From hence we departed not till our Camels had rested a little : afterward, within the space of halfea mile, we came to the foot of a very rough and cragged Mountaine, vpon the which our Camels 20 could not ascend, and hardly the Mules without their burthens, and heere wee rested our selnes at the foot of a Tree.

Inacceffible Mountaine.

> 9. The next day the Ambassador Matthew commanded his goods to be laden upon the backs of Negroes, to carry them into a small Monasterie, halfe a league distant from vs, called Saint Michael de Ifeo. Here Framafqual departed from vs, and wee came vnto the Monasterie halfe dead, as well for the roughnesse and iteepnesse of the way, as also because of the great heat.

While we aboad there, the faid Matthew came vnto vs with a counter-mand, and faid vnto vs, that he had written vnto the Court of Prete lanni, and to Queene Helena, and to Marke the Patriarke, and that the answere could not bee returned in lesse then fortie dayes, and that without the same we could not depart, because from that place they were to furnish vs. and to 30 haue Mules for vs, and for our goods; neither was he well affured of the performance of this, but faid that Winter began to approach, which lasted about the space of three monethes, wherein we could not travell, and that therefore it was needfull, that wee should provide victuals for our felues : for three monethes in the Winter they travell not in these Countries , to wit. Their Winter from the midft of June to the midft of September, which is their ordinarie Winter. Within 2 from lune to fhort space after our arrivall here, our people as well Portugals as slaves fell so fick, that few or none elcaped vntouched, and many were ficke to the point of death, infomuch that they flood in need often to be let bloud and to be purged. Among the first , Master Iobn our Physician fell ficke, which was all our humane helpe, yet it pleafed God that he recoursed, and from that time forward he laboured for vs with all his power.

Among these, Matthew the Ambassadour fell sicke also, which had many Medicines minifired vnto him, and when he feemed to be very well recoursed and ftrong, he rose vp and commanded his goods to be carryed to a Towne belonging to the Monasterie of the Vision, where Matthew dieth. he yeelded vp his spirit vnto our Lord, which was the foure and twentieth of May, Anno Dom. 1520. and I confessed him, and ministred the Communion vnto him, and he made his will in the Portugall Tongue, but it was also made in the Abassim Tongue, by a Frier of the said Monastery.

We caused the corps to bee buried very honorably in the said Monastery, where wee said Seruice and Masse for him according to our custome, and the Friers did the like according to theirs

The death of Matthew, the Abassine Am-Abassines vn-

therefore mi-

10. Wee determined, to fend to request Barnagaffo, that hee would give vs some meanes to returne into our Countrey, to the end wee might not perish in that place. The Friers vn- on derstanding this, tooke it in very ill part, and calling Don Roderigo aside, perswaded him not to fend thither, praying him to attend the comming of the Provinciall, which would bee within ten dayes, and if he come not, they would furnish vs with necessaries for our journies. And because they are people of small trust themselves, they gave no credit vnto vs, although the Ambaffadour had promifed them to doe fo, but fought to minister an Oath vnto each of vs vpon a Crucifixe, that we would flay during those tenne dayes, and they likewise tooke an Oath to performe that which they had promised.

è. I I.

ther holy Vest. der then the breadth of a piece of Damaske, or of any other piece of Silke from the vpper pare to the neather part; and on the breast before, they have a traverse; and on both sides they sewe a piece of other Cloth of what colour foeuer, although it agree not with the principall; and of the principall Cloth they let a traine hang downe voon the ground. They make this Proceeding in their Circuit, which is like vnto a Cloifter. Which being ended on Saturdayes, and Sundayes, Image of our and Festivall dayes, he which is to say Masse, with two others, enter into the Chappell, and take out an Image of our Ladie, which they have in an old Cell (for in all Churches they have of their

Copes and o as there be Crosses. They weare certaine Copes of Silke, but rudely made, for they be no hree-

Lady, Ancone, Candles.

* Cells) and they put it on a Crozier, turning the face toward the principall gate, and this Image holdeth her hand before her breaft, and they which stand on both fides of it hold lighted Can- to dles in their hands, and then they which are before it beginne to fing in manner of profe, and they goe all crying and dancing as if they were in a Towne-dance. And going before this L. mage with this their fong or profe, they ring their little Bells and Cymbals with the like found and as often as any chanceth to passe before this Image they doe great reperence to it, which feemeth to the beholder to be done with great defire of denotion : and so they carrie in this Feast Croffes and Centers, as they did in their Procession.

When this is ended, which continueth for a long space, they falute the Image, and then they

Gommunion. among the Great vnleauened Cake.

* An order

goe unto a certaine cloiet, which flandeth toward the North; and that part where the Goffel is faid, according to our Maffe, is without the circuit, wherein they make the Hoft, which The manner of they call Corbon, and they carrie Crosses, Censers, and Bells with them, and from hence they ministring the bring a Cake of Wheat-flowre vnleauened, newly made, very white and very faire, of the bignesse and roundnesse of a great Paten, because there are but a few people in this Monasterie: but in other Monasteries and Churches (whereof there be many) they make this Cake greator small according to the number of the people, for all doe communicate, and according to the breadth fo they make the thicknesse, either halfe a finger, or a whole finger, or a thumbe thicke: and they carrie this Cake in the little Bason which is one of them that belong to the Altar co. uered with a cloth, with a Croffe and Cenfer, and a Bell ringing afore them. Behind the Church where that Quire is, which they hold as a Cloifter, no man may fland which is not in holy Orders ", but all of them must stand before the principall gate, where there is another great circuit which all Churches have, but it is not covered, and there may fland any man that lift.

femetimes fo firialy obfer-When they goe in Procession with this Cake, all they which stand in the Church and in the ued, that Saint When they goe in Procession with this Cake, all they which stand in the Church and in the edofas to rewhen they fet it vpon the Altar in the leffer Bason which is set (as I said before) in the greater moue, &c. Bason, and they couer it with a blacke Cloth like vnto a Corporall This Monasterie hath a Chalice of Silver, and likewife in all principall Churches and Monasteries they have Chalices of Silwith the Hoft. uer, and in some they have Chalices of Gold. In the Churches of the poorer people (which they Chalices of Gold, Siluer, call the Churches of the Balgues, that is to fay, of the Husbandmen) they have brazen Chalicis. These vessels are more wide then ours are, but euill made; but they have no couers. They powre Wine of Raiinto the Chalice, wine made of Ranfins in great quantitie; for, as many as receive the Bodie, re-

Cenfing. Bleffing with

croffing. Confectation in the vulgar

they put it in his place. And fuddenly, he which fayeth Maffe, taketh a Cenfer, and cenfeth the ypper part of the Altar, and they goe often about it and cense the same. When they have done these censings, he turneth to the Altar, and bleffeth it very often with the Croffe, and then hee vncouereth the Cake which he had couered in stead of the Sacrament, and taketh it up in both his hands, and 60 lifting up his right hand the Cake remayneth in his left hand, and with his thumbe he maketh fine fignes like prickes, that is to fay, one in the top, another in the midft, another in the bottome, and the other two on both fides; and therewithall he confecrateth it in his owne Lan-No eleuation, guage, with the very words that we vie, and he vieth no eleuation. The very fame he doth over

Hee that is to fay this Masse, beginneth, saying, Halleluia, with a lowd voyce, rather squez- 40

king then finging, and all the companie answere him; and then he holdeth his peace, and begin-

neth to bleffe them with a little Croffe which he carrieth in his hand; and as well they that are

about, as those which are within beginne to sing, vntill a certaine time, when as one of them

two that stand at the Altar take a Booke, and receiveth blessing of him that sayeth Masse, and

the other taketh a Crosse, and a Bell, and goeth ringing the same toward the principall gate,

with his tongue, and afterwards finging returneth backe to the Altar: fuddenly he which fin-

hath received, as many as stand at the Altar doe kiffe the same, a candle is borne with this Booke,

and he which reads the Gospell, readeth it as the Epiffle was read, very hastily, and with as

high a found as his tongue can veter, and his voyce can beare: and returning to the Altar, on

the way he beginneth likewise another song, and those which goe with him follow him: and

when they be come to the Altar, they give the Booke to kiffe to him that fayeth Maffe, and fo

geth the Masse taketh a Booke from the Altar, kissing the same, and giveth it to him which is to say the Gospell, which boweth downe his head, and asketh him blessing; which when hee

where all the people standeth in that circuit; and there he readeth the Epistle running very fast

the Cup, and lifteth it not vp, he fayth over the fame, the very words that wee vse in his owne Tongue, and he courreth it, and taketh the Sacrament of the Bread in his hands, and breaketh it in twaine, and of the part that is in his left hand, hee breaketh a little Morfell of the top of the fame, and the other two pieces hee layeth the one vpon the other. The Priest taketh this little Morfell for hindelfe, and likewise taketh part of the Sacrament of the bloud . and afterwant he taketh the Bason with the couered Sacrament, and giveth it to him which hath said the Gofpell, and likewise he taketh the Chalice with the Sacrament, and giveth it to him which read the Epiffle : and finddenly they give the Communion to the Priests which stand at the Altar, recenting a small piece of Sacrament out of the Bason, which a Deacon holdeth in his right, Deacon and Io hand; and while the Descon gueth the fame, a Sub-Deacon taketh of the bloud in a spoone Sub-deacon.

of Gold, of Silver, or of Copper, according to the abiltie of the Church, and giveth it vnto The Wine adhim which received the Sacrament of the body in very fmall quantitie : and on the other fide, a for Randeth another Priest with a little Vessell of holy Water, and powreth into the palme of his Holy Water. hand, which received the Communion, a litle of that water, wherewith he washeth his mouth. and afterward (walloweth it vp.

This being done, they all goe to the Altar with this Sacrament, before the first Curtaine and in this fort they give the Communion to them which fland there, and afterward to all those of the other Curtaine, and laftly, to the Secular people which fland at the principall gaze, as well men as women, if the Church be fuch that women may bee fuffered to come thither: at the 20 giuing of the Communion, and at all other divine Services all fland vpon their feet: and when Standing they goe to receive the Communion, all of them come with their hands lifted vp before their shoulders, with the palmes of their hands spread abroad before them : and when any man receineth the Sacrament of the bloud, he receiveth of that Holy Water, as I faid before. And also Wathing generally al fuch as are to receive the Communion before the Maffe, vieto wash their hands with water, which is placed in all Churches and Monasteries for this purpose. The Priest which faith the Maffe, and they which flood with him at the Altar (the Communion being ended) returne unto the Altar, and wash the Bason wherein the Sacrament was put with the water remayning in the Vessell, which they say is Holy Water : this Water is put into the Chalice, and he which faid Maffedrinketh it vp all. This done, one of the Ministers of the Altar taketh a Croffe and a 30 facring Bell, and beginning a little Song, goeth to the principall gate where the Epiftle and Gospell were read, and where they ceased to give the Communion, and all they which are in the Church, and without the Church, incline their heads and take their leaues, faying, That this is the bleffing, and that without this no man may depart. On Saturdaies and Sundaies, Nomen mer and Feathuall daies, in all Churches and Monasteries, they vie to give holy Bread. The forme of departmentone Ceremonies which this little Monasterie vieth (which hath not aboue twentie or fine and the bleffing twentie Friers) is observed in all other Monasteries and Churches. The service of the Masie, Short Masie, (except the Processions) is very short, because the Masse in the weeke daies, is ended almost as

12. The manner how they make the Cake aforesaid, is this: The house where they make Manner of man 40 it in all Churches & Monasteries, is placed (as is said before) toward that part where the Gospel king the Cake, is faid without the Church, and the couered circuit, which is as a Cloyiter in all Churches and Monafteries: and they vie the other circuit which is without and not coursed, as a Churchyard. This house is as bigge as the Quire behind the great Altar, and somewhat bigger, and in all Churches and Monafteries they have nothing elfe in that house, but that which serveth for House of our this businesse; to wit, a Staffe to beate the corne out of the eares, and an Instrument to grinde pose foris. the Meale, because they make it very white, as is convenient for such a purpose; because they make not the faid Sacrament with Meale or Wheate, wherein Women have put their hands. They have Earthen Platters, wherein they knead the Meale, and they make the Dow harder Nowomen then we make it, they make a little Ouen like a Still to Still Water, and upon the same a plate may touch the so of Iron, (and some Churches haue it of Brasse, and some others of Bricke) which is round, Meale, with a large compasse, and they put the fire underneath it, and when it is hot, they make it cleane with a course cloath, and then lay a good piece of this Dow vpon it, and spread it abroad with a Woodden Knife, as broad as they will have it, and make it very round, and when the Cake is baked they take it away, lay it aside, and make another after the same fashion; and this fecond Cake after it is likewife ready, they take the former, and lay it thereupon, to wit, that fide which was vppermost they turne downe-ward, and so both these two Cakes are laid together, as they were one Cake, and they doe nothing all the while but turne and toffe them upon this Plate, untill they bee baked beneath and aboue, and on every fide, and so they make as many as they will. In the fame house are also the Raisins where-with they make their The Raising 60 Wine, and the Instrument where-with they presse the same. In these houses also is the Holy Holy Bread-Bread made, which is diffributed on the Saturdaies and Sundaies, and other Feaftinall dayes,

and when their great Feaths are held, as Christmas, Easter, and our Lady of August, they fetch out this Sacrament of Bread with a Vestment, Bels and Crosses, very deuoutly, and before they "Palio. enter into the church ther with, they go once about the circuit, which is like vnto a Cloylter, but

minufired with

In this Monasterie there is a great Kitchin, with all things thereto appertayning, with a great

wife, they give each of them a little fresh fith without Ovle or Sale. Of the felfe lame Dvet

20 times from our house vpon my Mule, and came in the evening to the Monasterie, and for the

most part I went to passe the time with the Friers, and principally at their Festivall times, and

Hearned many things of them concerning their Affaires, Reuenues, Viages, and Customes. An

hundred Friers are commonly in this Monasterie, and the most part of them are yery aged, and

as dry as a flocke, few of them are young. There are also many little children, of eight yeares old and vpward, which they bring vp, and many of them are lame and blind. This Monatterie

made a goodly Procession, all clad in Coper of the faid Cloth of Gold, but made ill fauouredly.

wherefore seeing so many Friers belonged to this Monattery, as they feid, so few weterpleseen

at fo great a Solemnitie : they answered me, that the number was greater then they kooked for,

because they are divided in other Monasteries, Churches, and Faires to earne their living as long

as they be yong : for they cannot be maintayned in the Monastery, but by their owne industrie,

and when they are so old that they cannot travell, they come to end their dayes at this Monaste-

Rogation, or ganging Pre-

1034

when it is not Holy day they go strait into the Church, The Saturday before Ascension day when we vie to fay our Letanies, these Friers made a Procession, and because we were strangers in the Countrey, it feemed a goodly fight vnto vs, and it was on this wife : they tooke Croffes and a confectated stone of the Altar with great reuerence, couered with cloth of Silk, & a Frier which carryed it on his head, was likewife wholly couered with the like cloth of Silke: they carryed also Bookes, Bels, Centers, and holy water, and went into certaine fields fowed with Millet, and there they made their Deuotions, with cryes after the manner of Letanies, and with this Procession they returned vnto the Monasterie. And when weasked them wherefore they did this. they faid, because the Wormes doe eate their Corne, therefore they went to sprinkle them with Sprinkling Wormes with in his apparell from a Deacon and Sub-deacon, fauing a long Stole flit in the midft, fo that hee may thrust his head through it, and behind and before it reacheth downe to the ground. The Holy Water to Friers which say Masse weare their haires long, and the Priess weare it not, but are shorne, and fo they fay Maffe, and are alwayes bare-footed, and no man may come shod into the Church, and

kill them. Bare-footed

a day.

Many Prieffs necessary to Shooes and Churches mile In Fafts, no ca-

> A Fast from day till Chrift-Lay Fast till

The fiftation and forme of

yeare it is faid in the evening because they fast. The Monasterie where we buried Marthew, is distant from this wherein we aboad three miles space of very bad way, & it is called, The Monastery of the Vision of lesus. It is seated upon the point the Monagerie of a Rocke exceeding high, and from enery part as a man looketh downward, there is a Valley Indicated, The which feemeth to be as deepe as Hell. The Church of the Monasterie is very great of bodie, & Dieadul ValDreadul Valor walkes, which are very finely made with their Arches and their Vaults, which feeme to bee made of wood, because they are all painted ouer, so that a man cannot perceive whether the Church be built of stone, or of wood. It hath two walking places in forme of a Cloyster about the bodie of the Church, which are both couered and painted with the Pictures of the Apostles,

Holy Water, and pray to God to take them away. He which faith Masse, hath no other difference to in imitation of for this purpose they alleage that which God said vnto Mofes, Put off thy spoots, for the place where thou standest is holy ground. 13. In this Monasterie of Saint Michael, where we were, we faid Maste enery day not in the

Monasterie, but in the circuit which is like a Cloyster : because in this Countrey they say but one Masse a day in euery Church or Monasterie. The Friers came vnto our Masse with great denotion, as they seemed, and supplyed our want with Censers and Incense, because weehad 20 brought none with vs : and they thinke it an ill thing to fay Maffe without Incense, and they faid that all things feemed well vnto them, fauing that they thought it not commendable for one Priest alone to say Masse, because among them they vie not to say Masse, except they bee three, or five, or fixe, and all these stand at the Altar. Also, they missiked that we went with our shooes into the Church, and much more when we did spit in the Church. But wee excused our felues, faying; That this was the fashion in our Countrey. And so wee said Masse every day untill Trinitie Sunday, and when the Munday after the faid Trinitie Sunday came, then they would fuffer vs to fay no more Masse in the morning, and we marueiling thereat, and not The great fafts well pleased, and having at that instant no Interpreter to learne wherefore they would not suffer which these vs to say Masse, at length we understood, that which by experience afterward we saw, to wit: Religious men that they observe the Old Testament in their fasting; for they fast very straitly in the Lent, which they begin the Munday after the Sunday of Sexage fina, which are ten dayes before our Shrouetide, and so they make their Lent of fiftie dayes, and fay that they take those dayes before, for the Saturdayes on which they doe not fast : and their Fast is to eate at even-tide, andeuery day they receive the Communion, and therefore they fay not Maffe but in the evening, and when Masse is done, they receive the Communion and then goe to supper. And like as they haue thefe fiftie dayes of fast, so they take as many dayes after Easter and Whitsontide, wherein they fast not at all; and when it is not fasting day, they say Masse in the morning, and all those dayes they eate fielh without observing any one of them, and say Masse in the mornings, and strait way goe to dinner because they fast not.

When this time is ended, and Trinitie Sunday past, all the Clerkes and Friers are bound to fail every day saving Saturdayes, Sundayes, and this Fast continueth vntill Christmasse day. And because they fast all, they say Masse at night, alleaging for proofe hereof the Supper of Chrift, how that it was fasting time, and almost night when he confecrated his Bodie. But commonly, the Lay-people as well men as women are bound to fait weekly on Wednesdayes and Fridayes, from Trinitie Sunday vntill Aduent : and from Christmasse day till the Puriscation of the Virgin Marie (which they call the Feaft of Saint Simeon) they fast not at all. The three dayes after the Purification being not Saturday nor Sunday, are an exceeding strait Fast for the Clerkes, Friers, and Lay-people, for they fay that they eate but once in all these three dayes, and they call it the Fast of Ninine. These three dayes being ended, vntill the beginning of Lent, 10 they fast againe as they did before, vntill the Feaft of the holy Trinitie. In the Aduent and all the Lent the Clearkes, the Friers, the Laitie, the men and women, small and great, found and ficke doe all fast. And likewise, from Easter vnto Trinitie Sunday, and from Christmasse vnto the Purification, the Maffe is faid in the morning because there is no Fast, all the rest of the

In this Monaftery is the burial of an Abbot or Prounciall, called Philip, and his works of philip, an Erro. Holineffe were very great : for they fay, that there was once a King or Prete lann; which transcous Saint, dained that they should not keepe the Saturday holy throughout all his Kingdomes and Dominions. And this Philip repaired immediately vnto him with his Brethren and with many Bookes, and shewed him how God had commanded that the Sabbath Day should be oblered, and that wholoeuer observed it not should be stoned. This man disputed this question before all the religious men of Athiopia, and was commended before the King and therefore they take him to bee a Saint, and they observe an Holy-day vnto him every yeare in the moneth of July, which they call the Fascar of Philip, which finisheth the Testament or Memorie of Saint Philip. Holy day to 60 And therefore the Inhabitants of this Countrey and Monasterie are more infected with this bim. lewift Herefie, then any other part of the Dominions of Prete lanni, although all of them bee in part infected : but these are more then any others. I have feene them with mine eyes seethe fish on the Sabbath, and bake bread allo: and on the Sabbath in this Monastery, they make no fire at Difference of all, on the Sunday following, they make readie all things needfull for their Dyet, and I came Rice.

This day I faw feuenteene yong men taken into Orders.

and Patriarkes, and with the florie of albehe OR Tellament, and with Skine Goode of Horre. hacke, which is to be febre in all their Choches And like with there is in the fame a great fried of Arras, wherein is woven a Cravinac jour land in the Apolles, the Patrianes, and Prophets, in all their and every one hath his title or name in Luther; willich flieweeth that the fathe worke was nor Churches. made in those Countries. There are also many ancient Intages, which thatid not woon the Altass, Saints in Arras becaute at is not their faltion; but they attem at the state of the work of the work of the beaute and they bring them not forth but on Holy-dayes.

romacto dine in, where they fare altogether and three and three in a Treen diffr Which is not very deepe, but plaine like vnto a wooden Platter. Their Dyet is very honely, their Brad is made of Mille and de Barley, and of nother Seed which they call Tafe, which is interested in all and blacks. This Bread they made the the seed is made of the seed in the seed of the seed of

wile, mey gue ear of them a sever hear my manus yer or one to the internal paying which they fend for many aged and honorable friers; for owards without hey yet glid sindhine; which They should be come not vato the dining hall. And if any man aske me how Pknow this tamiwer that before years in the come not vato the dining hall. And if any man aske me how Pknow this tamiwer that before years in the come not vato the dining hall. that which I aw when we buried Method the greater part of the Tracytares which we's things, boad in Ethiopia, our Lodging was not farre from the fair Momaker ! What I departed often.

is walled round about, and hath no entric but by two gates which are alwayses thur.

14. This Monafterie is the head of fixe Monafteries, which fland about with fame among these Six other Cele Mountaines, and that which is farthest, is not gast nine and twentie or thirtie miles off, and all subicate this (Mountaines, and that which is favinet, 1900; gait une and twenthe or thirtie miles off, and all live to the of them are tubered and yeld obedience who this Mountainer. In turry one of them there is a Monstlery of 120 June, that is to key, a Warden placed by the Abbbit or Provincially, and this Mountainer which hash a Dawd, that is to key, a Warden is blisble to the Abbbits, "which it is 40 Provincially and the World with place, in a certaine Procession which they made, and in my indgement, the Friers were not a. The Friers boue three hundred, and the greatest part of them were old men. I faw a great circuit, which Friers, melt this Monafterie hath about two places, which are like to Cloyflers, which corrent is open; but old men. atther than the county of the all long pieces fewed one vinto another, to hang round about that circuit; through which they Artifects.

as I have faid before. They carried fiftie Croffes of Silver, small and badly made, and as many as I national octions I may carried that I faw a great Chalice of Gold, and a Spoone of Gold, Yong Fries wherewith they gaue the Communion. And of the three hundred which were affembled in this earne their Monastery, there were very few of mine acquaintance : I enquired of certaine of my friends, living,

Oxenoffered

twiceto, this Eafear of Philip, at which times they received me with great honour. And at this Feath yearely, they kill many Oxen, and at one of them I fave them kill thirtie, and at another eight and twentie, which were offered by the Inhabitants their Neighbours, for denotion vnea this Philip, and they give this fielh raw to all the people, that come to the Fafcar without any bread at all. The Friers cate no kind of flesh.

Friers cate no Wine of Honey, or Mead. nerbeaft of the female fex may come Monastery.

They fent me yearely two great and fat quarters of beefe, with much bread and wine of Ho. ney, which likewise the Friers drinke not in the Monastery, but when they are abroad with ve Partugals, they drinke wine and eate fielh if they be but one alone, but if they be two, they doe it not, for feare the one of the other. This Monastery and all the rest which are subject to it. observe an order, that no women may enter into it, nor shee Mules, nor Kine, nor Hens, nor any to other beaft of the female kind. This I both learned and faw my felfe; for when I came thither a Croffe-bow shoot distant from the Monastery, they came to take my Mule, not suffering meeto come with her to the Monastery, and they fent her to a house of theirs, called Giangargara, where Matthew died. They kill their Kine and Hens, a certaine distance from the Monasterie. I saw box on: Cocke in the Monagery with two bels at his legs, without Hennes, and they faid, that they kept him to crow at the time of their Mattens. If any women come into the house, they know it, for oftentimes I asked certaine children which were brought vp there, whole Sonnes they were, and they named into me, the Friers for their Fathers, and fol know the yong Friers tobe called the Sonnes of all the old Friers.

Of the Husbandry of this Countrey, and how they preserve themselves from wild beasts, and of the Renenues of the Monasterie. Their departure, strange Rivers, Mountaines, Apes : BAENAGASSOES entertainment. Barua. Polygamie, Marriages, Dinorces, Bapti me, and Circumcision. Their Branding, and Burying.

Hele Kriers or thole of other Monasteries, their subjects might very well play the m good Husbandmen, and might cherish vp Trees, Vines, and Orch-yards with their diligence, yet neuerthelese, they do nothing at all, and the soile is good and fir to bring forth every thing, as may be gathered by that which is wild and fatrage, but they till mought elfe but fields of Mill, and keepe swarmes of Bees, and as soone as

night is come, they goe not once out of their houses, because of the wild beafts which arein that Countrey, and they which keepe their Millet, have their houses very high from the ground vpon Trees, where they lodge in the night. There are about this Monastery, and in the Vallies of thele Mountaines, great Heards of Cattell kept by Arabian Moores, which goe fortie or fiftie together with their wives and children, and the Captaine among them is a Christian, because the Cattell which they keepe are Cariffian Gentlemens of the Countrey of Barnagaffo. The Morres receive none other wages for their paines, but the Millie and Butter which they get of the Kine, and therewithall they furtaine themselves, their wives, and their children. Certaine times it chanced vs to lodge neere these Arabians, and they came to know of vs whether wee would buy any Cattell, and offered them vnto vs at a reasonable price. It is reported, that they are all Theeues fauoured by the Lords which are Owners of the Cattell, and that men travell not among them but in great Carauans. The Reuenues of this Monastery of the Vision are very great, as I saw and vndeistood. First,

The Revenues of this Monafterie very

this Mountaine whereon this Monaftery is feated, containeth thirty miles in compasse, whereon they fow much Millet, Barley, Rye, and Tafi, and of all this they pay a portion vato the Monastery, and also for the pasturing of their Cartell. In the Vallies of these Mountains 30 are great Townes, and the most part of them belong vnto the Monastery, and within one or two dayes iourney, there are very many and fundry places which belong voto the Monastery, and they are called, The Gulens of the Monastery, which fignifieth, primiledged places. Don Roderigo the Ambassador and I, on a certaine time trauelled towards the Court , departing from this Monafterie fiue dayes iourney at the least, and came to a certaine peopled place, called Zams, where we rested all Saturday and Sunday in a small Village, where there were to the number of twentie Houses. There they told vs that this place belonged vnto the Monastery of the Vision, and that there were one hundred places all belonging to the Monastery, and therewithall shewed ys many of them, and told vs that these one hundred places payed vnto the Monastery Rent Horfes. euery third yeare, one Horfe apiece, which amount to thirtie foure Horfes euery yeare.

Zema?

And to widerstand the same the better, I enquired of the Alicasia, of the Monastery, which and Ausenia, this ogreeth to fignifieth, The Anditour or Steward of the House, because hee receiveth and disbutfeth all things. And hee told mee that it was true that they payed the faid Horles. And I enquired of him why the Monasterie required so many Horses, considering CHAP.5. S.3. Kine in exchange for Horfes. Squadrons of Abes.

that they yied not to ride; he faid, That they payed not the Horles, but Kine in their fleadthat is to fay, Fiftie Kine for one Horfe; and this tribute of Horfes continued all the time that Fiftie Kine these places were in the Kings hands, which endowed the Monastery with these jurisdis paidinexctions. And afterward the Inhabitants of those Countries compounded with the Monasterie. change, and changed the payment of Horses into so many Kine : besides which, they payed many other tributes of come. This Monaftery hath, about fifteene daies journey diffant within the Kingdome of Tigrimation, a great Territorie, which is fufficient to make a Dakedome, which is called Adetyeste, which payeth yearely fixtie Horses, and infinite tributes and rents. There soe Adetyeste. alwaies vnto this Territorie, aboue one thoufand Friers of this Monasterie because therein are 10 many Churches. Of thele Friers fome be very good, reuerent, and deuout; and other fome as bad and euill conditioned. Besides the tribute of the foresaid Horses, which are payed vnto

the faid Monafterie, are many other places which appertaine onely to the King, which pay tribute of Horses according to their ancient custome; and these are places which frontier vpon the An excellent Countrey of Egypt, from whence come good and stately Hories, and other places of the Arabi- breed of horans, which likewise have good Horses, but not so good as those of Egypt.

From this Monasterie of Saint Michael, we departed the fifteenth of the moneth of June.

fome went on foote, there were also but few people to carrie our goods, and the Oxen being not able to trauell through the Woods and Thickets, because all the way was rocky and craggy: the Gunners with their Skourers were left behind, and the Barrels of Gun-powder; and they 20 had not trauailed past two miles from the Monasterie, but that the Embassadour and we which were in his company ouer-taking them, found all the goods validen, and when we could not learne wherefore they had done so, we caused them to lade them againe. Hauing paffed other Rivers in exthe Mountaines, we found certaine dry Riners, which in Winter time are very great and tervery ful or dry, rible, that is to fay, During the time of the stormes and Thunder; and as soone as the storme and tempeft is ouer, suddenly the Rivers become dry, and on both sides of the faid Rivers are most high and steepe Mountaines, as lauage as the rest which we passed. Along these Brookes are very mightie Forrests of Trees, which are very faire and tall, but fuch as we knew not : ae mong which, vpon the bankes were certaine Palme-trees. Neere one of these Rivers we lodged one night, with very great showers of Raine and Thunder.

17. The day following, we went ouer another high Mountaine, exceeding wilde and fauage, fo that we could not well trauell ouer the fame, neither on our Mules nor on foote. In this Mountaine we found many Bearts of fundry forts, and an infinite number of Apes in fqua- Squadrons of drons, and commonly they are not feene in all the Mountaine, faming onely where there is Apes. some great rupture and hole, and some Caue; and they went not fewer then two or three Their number. hundred together, and where there is any plaine ground above those ruptures, they make forme, and latheir abode, and they leave not any one flone vnremooned, and they digge the earth in fuch fort, bour, that it feemeth to be ploughed. They are very great, and from the middle vowards, are hairie like Lyons, and are as big as Weathers. After we had passed this Mountaine, we lodged in a place at the foote thereof , called Calore. From the Monastery whence we departed vato this Calore. 40 place, is about fixteene or eighteene miles. We paffed a River of running water, which was

The next day we faid our Maffe in the Church of the faid place, which is called Saint Martie chael, and the house with the furniture thereof, are very poore. In this Church were three Pricks. married Priefts, and other three Zagonari, that is to fay, Priefts of the Gospell, and three other must be of necessitie, for with a lester number they cannot fay Mase. This Sunday we departed about the Euening tide, because the people of the Countrey, which were our guides, would haue it so and from thence we began to trausile through plaine Countries, sowed and manured after the manner of Portugall: and the Woods which were betweene these manured places are Woods of all of wilde Olines, exceeding faire without any other Trees. We lodged neere a running Riz wilde Olines. 50 ner, among many good Villages.

18. We came vnto the Towne of Barna, which is about nine miles from the Towne of Barna. Calote, the eighteenth of the moneth of June : this is the chiefe Towne of the Country, and Kingdome of Barnagaffo, where his principall Palaces are; which they call Bete-Negm, that is to fay, The Honfes of the King. The same day that we came thither, Barnagaffo departed before we came into the Towne vnto another. Heere we were exceedingly well lodged, according to the Countrey, and in great houses, very well furnished in the lower part, and about they were flat couered with earth.

The third day after our arrivall there, the Embassadour purposed to visite Barnagasse, who tooke fine of vs with him in his company, all riding vpon Mules, and wee came to the place where he was about Euening; and from the place whence we departed vnto the Towne where Bernagaffo remained, was eleuen miles, or thereabout. Being come thither, we highed before Barnagaffo visihis Palace, neere vnto the Church doore, whereinto we entred and faid our Prayers, according ted His brutish to our manner; which ended, we tooke our way toward his Palace, supposing all of vs that we entertainment should suddenly be admitted to his speach; but they would not suffer vs to enter in, saying, That

Rrrrr 2

he was a fleepe, where flaying a while to speake with him, they tooke no order for vs. but lodged vs irra Goats-coate, wherein hardly we could all fland : for our lodging, in flead of beds. they fent vs two Oxe hides with the haire on them; and for our Supper, they fent vs Bread and

Wine of the Countrey in abundance, and one Sheepe. The day following, wee flayed a great while, looking when they would fend for vstn haue audience. At length, we were fent for , and entring into the first Gate, wee found three men like vnto Porters, having each of them a staffe in their hands, and when we would have entred they would not fuffer vs, faying, that we should give them some Pepper, where they kept vs out for a long while. At length, being entred in at the first Gate, wee came to the fecond, where we found three other Porters, which feemed to be men of more account, who to made vs to stand wayting there aboue halfe an houre vpon a little straw, and the Sunne so scorched vs, that we were almost smothered with heate; and we should have stayed there much longer, had not the Ambassadour sent him word in choler, either to admit him into his presence, or that he would return again wnto his lodging. Then one more honourable then the reft, came in a Amusia. and told vs, that we might come in. The faid Barnagaffo was in a great house in a lower roome,

nagasso. No houses with flories.

dience of Bar- because in those Countries they build no houses with stories; and hee lay vpon a couch, as his manner was, con passed with certaine Curtaines which were very homely : hee had fore even and his wife fate at his head. Here, after due falutations, the Ambassador offered him his physician to cure him: to whom he answered, That he needed no Physician, and that he madeno reckoning of him. Then the Ambassador belought him of his courtese, to furnish him with meanes for the 24 performance of our voyage; Barnagaffo replyed, That he could not give him Mules, and that we must buy them our felues, but that hee would furnish vs with all other things, and would tend a fon of his with vs, which should accompany vs to the court of Prete Ianni, and so he dismifled vs. 19. Being come forth out of the house where Barnagaffo remayned, they easied vs to fit

down vpon certaine Mats firead vpon the ground, whither they brought vsa treen diffi full of Barly meale halfe kneaded into dowe, with an horne of Wine made of honey and because wee were not vied to eate nor to fee fuch kind of meats, wee would not eate thereof, but after that we were vsed thereunto, we ate thereof willingly: and so at that time wee rose without eating of ought at all, and returned to our lodging, and straight-way got to horse-backe two houses before noone; and being about two miles on our way, a man came running after vs. which 39 prayed vs to flay for him, because the Mother of Barnagasso had sent vs meat and that she would take it in ill part, if we accepted not thereof, and io we stayed for him, and they brought vs fine wheaten Loaues very great and good, and one horne of good Wine, which was made of honey. Let no man maruell, in hearing mention of a horne of wine, hecause the great Lords and Press I lensi himselfe, make their Vestels to drinke wine in, of hornes of Oxen: and some hornes there

are that contayne fine and fixe measures. Moreouer, shee fent vs a quantitie of the faid meale in

Barly ground into meale, and they knead it with a little water, and fo they eate it. After we had garen we followed our journey to the Towne of Barna, where we had left our goods, and where we were lodged. In this Countrey, and in all the Kingdomes and Dominions of Prete lanni, they 40 They then the reckon not by Leagues nor Miles: and it you aske them how farre it is to fuch a place, they will ancy mes the second not by Leagues nor Miles: and it you aske them how farre it is to fuch a place, they will diffance of the applications of the applications of the second transfer when the Sunne is there, pointway, possibly ting to the place of the Sunne in the skie; and if you remail fafile. Kine he Day 2003 which is at night; and if the way be long, you shall come thither in one Samvoto the courie bete, that is to tay, wi one weeke. Between thele two Townes is a very goodly Countrey, that is to of the Sunne fay, very, well manured, and Fields of Wheat, of Millet, of Barly, of Chich-pealon, of Lentils, and in :he Heaof many other kinds of graines, which are in that countrey viknown to vs. to wit, Tafe di graa, and Millet - Laburre, and this Tafo di gaza, is a feed very good and delicate among them, and great-Tafédi guza, a Graine ly effeemed, because the Wormes eateth not the same, which is wont to denoure their corne and other Pulle, and it is of long continuance. On both fides of the way, a man may fee aboue fiftie 50

Wild Kine

Rarua.

companie, and we Portugali hunted them with great delight, and flue very many of them : for they of the Country will take no paines, although they receive great damage by them in their Corne, but they know not how to kill them. 20. In this Towne of Boss, where we were, and where afterward we aboad a long time, are three hundred houles, and the greatest part of the Inhabitants are Women; for in this Towness kept, as the Wete, a Court, formany respects. One is, because it is neuer without people belonging to the Court of Prete lanni; and those which come thither, having no Women with them, vie the Women of the Towne as their Concubines. Another is , because here the Court of Barnes 60 gaffo is kept, where for the greatest part of the yeare hee maketh his residence, and continually hath it his flable about three hundred Horles, and as many more, which daily come thither, to dispatch their businesse with Barnagaso, in regard of their affaires and fuites. And few or none of them will bee without their Concubines; and hence it is that heere

great Villages which are very well inhabited, and all of them feated in goodly greene fields. Vp-

on the faid manured grounds, Herds of wild Kinerange vp and downe, fortie, fiftie, and fixtie in a

dowe; faying, that in that Countrey they take it for a good food. This food is made of parched

many light young Women fettle their abode, which after they be growne old, betake themmany light young women lettle then about, there is a great Market enery Tuefday, where Tuefday Mira there is three or foure hundred persons met together, and all the old Women and young Lasses kercarrie Measures in their hands, wherewith they measure in the Market all the Corne and Salt that is fold, and in this fort they earne their living. And moreover, they lodge those that remaine in the Towne, and keep the goods which are left vnfold vntill the next Market day, and all things else in like fort. And because there are many women in this town, those which be rich Poppenie yeed. and have the meanes, take two or three Wives, neither is it forbidden them by the King nor and how purithe Iustice, but onely by the Church; because all such as have about one Wife may not come shed.

Io within the Church, much lefte communicate or receive any Sacraments of the Church, and are held for excommunicate perfons.

During the time we abode in this place, a Coulin of mine and my felfe lodged in the house of a man, whole name was Ababitay, which had three Wives, which were all of our acquain- Ababita, our tance, and our good friends; and he told me that hee had feuen and thirtie children by them, and that no man had forbid him their company, fauing that the Church admitted him not to Wines, and he the Communion. Before our departure he had dismissed two of them, and held himselfe to one themseuch and onely; namely, to her which he had last married, and for all this he was restored to all the Sa- thirty children. craments, and licenfed to come to Church, as though he had neuer had but one Wife. And there-

fore there are many Women in this Towne, because Rich men and Courtiers take two or three, Marriages va-20 or more of them, according to their pleasure. Their marriages are very vnstable, for they will be dinorced for a fmall trifle. I have feene many of their Women married, and my felfe was prefent at a certaine marriage, Rites of mare

made without the Church, which was celebrated on this manner. In a Court before a house, age, was placed a Litter or Couch, and they caused the Bridegroome and the Bride to fit downer thereon, and there came three Priests, which beganne to sing with a loud voyce, Halelnia, and thus finging as it were, certaine verfes, they went thrife about the faid Couch or Litter; afterward they cut off a locke of haire from the Bridegroomes crowne, and as much from the fame place of the Brides head, bathing the faid haires in Wine made of Honey, and the Brides roomes haires they laid upon the head of the Bride, and the Brides haires they laid upon the head of 30 the Bridgtoome, in the same places where they were cut off; and spon the same they cast holy

Water, and afterward they beganne to make a feast, after the manner of marriages, and at night the faid married persons were accompanied home vnto their house. And for the space of one moneth no man entreth into that house, fauing onely one man which is the Bridgeroomes God-father, who remaineth all the moneth with them, and the moneth ended hee departerh home. And if the Bride be a Woman of account, it is fine or fixe moneths before the commetti out of her house, and she weareth continually a blacke veile before her face; and if she be with child before fixe moneths, the layeth off her veile, and if the proueth not with child within fixe moneths space, she layeth it aside.

21 Moreouer, I haue seene Abuna Marco, whom they call their Patriarcke, vie certaine Abuna Marco 40 bleffings in the Church, that is to fay; before the principall gate, where they caused the Bride- the Patriarte, groome and the Bride to fit downe on a Litter, about which he went with Incense and a crosse. and comming vnto the faid couple, he laid his hand vpon their heads, faying, That they should and comming which God commanded in the Goffell, and that they should remember that they weren more two, but which God comtanded in the Goffell, and that they should remember that they weren more two, but whited together in one flesh, and that they ought so to bee in-heart and mind, and they stayed there till Masse was done, where, after they had received the Com-

munion, he gau them his bleffing. This I faw done in a Towne called Dara, which is in the Kingdome of Xoa, Another of the marriages I faw in a Village, being in the Parish of Kongdome of Koa, Chrisholms of Koa, Another of the marriages I faw in a Village, being in the Parish of Kongdome of Xoa. Coquete, being a place in the Kingdome of Barnagasso. And when these marriages are made. they are concluded by contract or covenant in this fort : If thou leave me, or I thee, he which hall so be the cause of this distission, shall pay such or such a penaltie; which penaltie is appointed, according to the qualitie of the persons, either in so much Gold or Siluer, or so many Mules, or so many Kine or Goates, or to many Cloathes, or fo many measures of Corne. And if any man would disorce himselfe, immediatly he seeketh an occasion wherefore he may doe so: and by Disorces these meanes few doe fall into those penalties; and thus they divorce themselves, as well the

And if any observe the order of Matrimony, they be the Priests which cannot be divorced, Priests cannot, and also the Husbandmen which loue their Wiues, because they be a great helpe vnto them in and husbandkeeping of their Cattell, and bringing up their Children, and in digging their fields, and wee- menwillnot ding of their Corne, and because they find all things needfull made ready; when they come bediuorced. 60 home at night, and therefore by reason of these commodities, they continue married as long as A Pardia. they line. And whereas I have faid, that in their contracts they put downe penalties; The first, mountethro Barnagaffe, whom hee knew (whole name was Dari) was divorced from his Wife, and payed Double iniqui-

for a penaltie one hundred ounces of Gold, which are one thou and Pardar, that is to say; One ty, Aduktions thouland duckats, and was married to another, and his Wife married vnto a Gentleman, called and inceftious Rrrrr 3

Aron, brother to the faid Barnagaffo, and both these Brethren had Children by this Woman. whom we our felues knew. These are great Lords, and are Brethren to the Mother of Prete Lanni, whom all of vs did very well know, and we Portugals knew also Romana Orgue a noble Lady, the lifter of Prete lanni, which was married vnto a great and noble young Gentlemans and in our time thee was discorded from this her husband, and was married to a man about fortie yeeres of age, a person of great credit in the Court, whose name was Abucher, and his Father had the Title of Cabeata, which is one of the great Lords that remayne in the Court : thus I hane both icene and knowne many of their disorcements, and I thought good to put downe there, because they fell out among great personages. And whereas I have faid, that Aron tooke to wife the wife of his brother Dori, maruell not awhit thereat, because it is the manner of this Io

Countrey, and feemeth not any ftrange thing, that a brother should lye with his brothers wife.

Scripture abu- for they lay, that the brother rayfeth up feede unto his brother, as was accustomed. 22. Any man may circumcife that lifteth, without any ceremonie; onely they fay, that they Circumcifion. finde it written in their Books, that God commanded them to be circumcifed. And let no man maruell which heareth this, for they circumcife women as well as men, which thing was not vfed in the old Law. They baptize in manner following; menchildren they baptize within fortie dayes, and the female fexe after fixtie, and if they die before, they goe without baptilme. And I often told them, and in fundrie places, that herein they committed a great error, and that they did against the Gospell of our Lord, which faith : That which is borne of the sleft; and that which is borne of the Spirit, is Spirit. Whereunto they answered me very often, hat the faith of the Mother, and the communion which shee received, while shee was with child of them, was sufficient for them. And this Baptisme they minister in the Church as wee doe, but not in the christning Fount, but at the Church-gate with a pot of water, and so they blesse them , and they powre O le as we doe vpon the top of their fore-heads, and vpon their thoulders; neither doe they vie the Sacrament of the Chrisome, nor the Oile of extreme Vnction. Their forme of Baptume is not fo long as that which is vied in the Archbishoprick of Bragança, but seemeth to be about the length of that which is vied in the Church of Rome. At the time when they wil baptize the Infant with this water, one which is there as a God-

father, taketh the Infant out of the hands of the Midwife which beareth the same, and he taketh

hath the pot in his one hand, and fprinckling the water vpon the child with the other hand, hee

washeth it, saying the same words that we vie, to wit : I baptize thee in the Name of the Father,

and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghost. They alwayes minister this Sacrament on the Saturday,

Communion was very dangerous and nothing necessary. And whereas I have faid, that they

powre oile youn the crowne of the childs head, this is because all the Infants are brought to bee

or on the Sunday, and it is done in the morning at the Masse, and all that they baptize, as well

it under both the armes, and so holdeth it hanging downe, and the Priest which baptizeth it

Oile. No Chrisme nor exe eme Vaction.

Not in the Fount.

Rites of Baprifine.

doe then also Males as Females, they cause to receive the Sacrament of the Lords Supper in small quantitie,

communicate, and by force of water they constraine them to swa low it. Touching this point, I faid, that this

the face. doe it.

Their manner

Ali commers

baptized with their heads shauen. And those markes which wee see certaine Negro slaues to have on their noses, and betweene The cause why
their eyes, or on their tye-browes, are not made with fire nor for any token of Christian Reli-40 gion, but onely for a brauery, with a cold Iron; and they fay, that these markes are very beautiwith an Iron in full to beheld. And there are women which are very skilfull in making these markes. And they make them in this firt : they take an head of Garlicke, which is great, cleane washed, and And how they formewhat frale, and they lay it to the eye or to the other part where they will make the marke, and then they cut round about it with a sharpe knife, to wit, about the said head of Garlicke, and then they widen the faid cut, and powre vpon it a little waxe; and vpon the waxe they clapa little dowe, and binde it with a cloth, and so bound, they let it alone for one night, and this marke remayneth as long as the partie lines, which feemeth to be made with fire, because the co- go lour of that marke is blacker then any part of their bodies. When any one dyeth, I have feene them carried, as well perfons of Honour, as them of the

middle and poorest degree, all after one fort. First, at the time of their death, they are not accuflomed to light candles, but after they be dead, they beflow vpon them much centing, and walh them, and then winde their whole bodies in limnen cloth. And if it be a person of Honour, they lay an Oxe-hide ouer the ftreet, spreading it ouer the Litter; and the Priest comming to carry him to the buriall, faith a fhort feruice, and they take him and carry him to the Church , with a Croffe, a Cenfer, and holy Water, running as fall as euer they can, fo that a man cannot our-No fernice for take them : and when they are come to Church, they bring not the dead corps into the fame, but the dead, but threight way fet him downe at the grave, neither fay they any of our feruice for him, that is to the Goipell of the gravity for the dead nor any Delme of Dead, nor of John And when I inquired what it fay, no feruice for the dead, nor any Pfalme of David, nor of Job. And when I inquired what it 60 No Dingeor was which they faid, they answered me, that it was all the whole Gospell of Saint John, which Maffe for the being ended, they put the corps into the grave, but first they cense it and sprinkle it with holy water. Neither fay they any Dirige or Maffe at all for the dead, and much leffe for denotion of any man huing, onely they fay one Maffe a day in every Church, and every body which commeth thither receiveth the Communion.

è. IIII.

Of the lituation of Barua, the chiefe Towns of the Kingdome of Barnagallo, and of their Houses, and of the wild Beasts, and Fowles. Of his Dominion and Government: of their two Winters, Churches, Church-yards, and Priests marriages : their departure to Timei, and qualitie of that place.

His Towne of Barna is a very commodious and pleafant place, and flandeth vpona 23.

Yery high Rocke, on the fide whereof runneth a Ruser. The Kings houles are built vp. Barna deferion the Isial Rocke, very well made, in forme of a Forterfele all the reft of the country bed.

The Rich Rocke, very well made, in forme of a Forterfele all the reft of the country bed.

The Rich Rocke, very well made, in forme of a Forterfele all the reft of the country bed. is mightie champion, manured fields, wherein are exceeding many Townes to bee is inignice champion, maintee vp Cattell, to wit, Oxen, Goates, Sheepe, and many Cattell, fifth. other wild beafts, apt for hunting. Much good fish is in the River, many wild Geefe, and wild wild beafts, Duckes: here are likewise great store of wild beasts of all forts, to wit, wild Oxen, and Hares sowle. in great number, so that every morning we killed twentie or thirtie of them without Dogs, only with Nets. Partridges there are of three forts, which differ not from ours, but in their big- Partridges of ly with Nets. Partridges there are of three forts, which there not from ours, but in the rollow three forts, neffe, and in the colour of their feet and beacks; for they are as big as Capons, and of the colour as big as big as capons, and of the colour as big as big as capons, and of the colour as big as big as big as that ours are of, but their feet and beaks are yellow. There are other like Hennes, but their pons. feet and beaks are red. There are also certaine others, in nature like vnto our Partridges, but have their feet and beaks gray; which although they differ in colour and greatnesse from ours, yet

all of them tafte like ours, fauing that they are more delicate. Turtles there are without num- Turtles darken ber, which in flying darken the Sunne, and are very fat and good, and likewife Hennes, and the Sunne. wild Geele, and infinite numbers of Quailes, and all forts of fowles that may bee named or knowne, as Popingayes, and many other kind of birds vnknowne to vs, both great and small, of infinite forts and colours. There are likewife birds of prey, to wit, royals Eagles, Faulcons, Lenards. Sparrow-hawkes, and great flore of Girfaulcons, and Faulcons for the Rivers, and Cranes, and of all forts that may be named.

In the mountaines are wild Swine, Stags, Roes, beats called Ante, wild Goats, wild Oxen, Wild beatte, Lions, Luzerns, Tygres, Foxes, Wolues, Porcupines, and diuers other forts of knowne and vnknowne beafts, and all wild. If any man shall aske mee how it is possible, that there should be

fo many wild heafts in this Countrey, and fishes in the Rivers, seeing the same is so well peopled: I fay that no man hunteth, nor fisheth, nor hath any engine or way to take them .nei- No hunting ther delight they to feed upon them : and therefore it is a very easie matter to goe on hanting, nor fifthing. and to kill as much game as a man lift, because the beatls and the fowles are not molested by the people: and the wild beaits (as it hath beene told me) hurt no perion, yet the people of the Wildbeafts Countrey stand in great feare of them. At one time onely, at a place called Camarna, a mile di- nothurifull. flant from Barua, while a man flept in the night at the gate of his Oxe-cote, with his little fon. there came a Lion and killed the faid partie, to that no man perceived it, and burt not the child at all, but eat the mans nofe, and opened his heart. The people of this Towne were greatly amazed hereat, faying, this Lion hath begunne to fauour mans flesh, he will doe much mis-40 chiefe, and no man thall et ape him : yet (bleffed be God) it was not perceived that hee did any more harme; and wee at the same time went often on hunting neere the same place, and neuer found any Lions. Wee found indeed Panthers, Ounces ", and Tygres, which we harr not. "Leonze.

24. The authoritie of Barnagaffo is in manner following. By his title hee is called a King : for, Nagas fignifieth, a King ; and Bar, the Sea: and fo Bar-nagas fignifieth King of the Sea. And Barnagas fignified when they give him this government, they give it him with a Crowne of gold vpon his head, fieth, King of and it is given according to the will of Frete Ianni, and lafteth as long as it pleafeth him. For in the Sta. fixe yeeres space while we remayued there, I saw soure Barnagassos. At our comming into the An Officer of Countrey, Dori was Barnagaffo, and he died of his naturall death, whose Crowne was given to tenchanged.

50 his sonne Bidla, a child of ten or twelve yeeres old, which after hee was made Barnagasso, was straightway called to the Court of Prete lanni, whom he deprised of the government, and gave the same to a noble Lord, called Arrax Annubiata. This man held it two yeeres, and then it was taken from him, and he was made the chiefest Lord of the Court, which in their Language is called, Bestude; and he gaue the government of B. mag affo, to another Lord, named Adily, a Bestude. very gentle person, which is now Barnagasso. Vnder his gouernment are many great Lords, which are called Xum, which fignifieth Captaines, and thefe Xum are men of great authoricie. And it is faid, that two governments of this Land was wont to bee the Kingdome of Quene Quentue. Candace, which in her time had no other dominion, and thee was the first Christian that this Land had.

Also there are two other Gouernments, to wit; Deffile, and Confile. These border upon E- pastile and gypt, and these Captomes and Lords remaine upon the Frontiers, and have Trampets carried ne Confia. fore them, which they call Vgardas, which none can haue but fach as are great Lords; and all thefe attend upon Barnagaffs to the warres, when he goeth forth, and wherefoeuer he goeth. He

1042

hath many other Lords under him, which are called Arrazes, which fignifieth Captains ; & one of them we knew, whose name was Arraz Aderao, that is to say, Head of the men at Armes. whereof he had fifteene thousand vnder him, which are called Causs. And I have seene the Arras his habit faid Arraz Aderao twice at the Court, and both those times walking before the gate of the King, without any shirt, and with a cloth of Silke girt from the middle downwards, and a Lions skin vpon his shoulders, and in his right hand a Dagger, and in his left hand a Target, I af. ked why to great a person went on that fashion; it was told me, that that was thought to be the most honourable habite that could be imagined, for him that was Arraz di Caual, that is, Head of the men at Armes. And in the very fame habite there followed after him twentie or thirtie Foot-men with Daggers and Targets, but alwaies the Arraz marched before.

The faid Barnagaffo hath other two, namely, Arraz Tagale, and Arraz lacob, Lords of great 10 Countreyes, which I knew, and many other Xum Captaines, and Lords of other Countreyes. but without any titles of honour ; and so he is Lord of many people, and of many Countreyes. And as well he, as the other Lords are lubie t vnto Prete lanni: and he it is that giveth and taketh away their offices, when he feeth good, and it pleafeth him : and to him they pay the Guibre,, that is to fay, the Tribute of the Countrey. And all these Lordships are towards the parts of Egypt and of Arabia, from whence come the good Horses, cloth of Gold, and Silks, whereof they pay him tribute; that is to fay, all of them pay to Barnagaffo, and he payeth it over against to Prete lami for himselfe, and for the rest every yeere, to wit, one hundred and fiftie Horses, and a great quantitie of Silke, and cloth of Gold. They pay likewife great flore of Cotton- 20 cloth of India, for the customes which are gathered in the Hauen of Ercoco.

24. The people of this Towne of Barna, and their neighbours round about them have a cu-

How they keep their cartell from the wild beafts in the

frome to enclose themselves, ten, twelve, or fifteene of them in a Court all walled and strongly enclosed, which Court hath not past one gate, and herein they shut up their Kine of which they have their Milke and Butter : they shut vp likewise their small cattell, as Seepe, Mules, and Affes; and befides the locking vp of their gate in the night, they make fires allo at the gate, and place men to watch there, for feare of wild beafts which range about their lodgings. And if they should not take this course, no beast of theirs should escape vindeuoured. And of this Towne of Barna, and the other Townes adioyning, are the men which goe to fowe Millet vnto the Mountaines of the Vision, and they goe thither three moneths before the Generall Winter: and 20 the cause why they goe thither, are two: the first is, because they are neere to the Sea, whereby all victuals are transported to Mecca, to Ziden, to Toro, and to all Arabia, and India. And hauing many forts of Corne, they feeke a fit place for the vent thereof. The fecond cause is, for that in this Countrey there are two Winters, divided into rainy stormes; neither do the Cornes grow, but with abundance of water : therefore they depart from Barna, and goe to fowe their Corne in the Mountaines of the Vision, where at that time it is Winter, which lasteth all the time of Februarie, March, and Aprill, and the felfe fame Winter is in another Countrey, which

is vader the government of Barnagaffo, called Lama, diffant from the Mountaines of the Vilion.

at least eight dayes journey. At this very time also it is Winter in another Countrey, which is

quire much raine, therefore these Winters being out of the ordinarie season of the places about

mentioned, they goe to fowe them where it raineth, and fo they make their profit of the two

called Dobas, being thirtie dayes journey from this place. And because these seeds of Millet re- 40

Winter and ftrangely dif-

penied. Two great Churches, one for men and

forefaid Winters.

In this Towne of Barna are two very great and goodly Churches, wherein are many Priefts, the one fast by the other: one is for the men, called Saint Michael; and the other for the women, called, The Church of the Apostles, that is, of Saint Peter, and Saint Paul. They say that the Church belonging to the men was built by a great Lord that was Barnagaffo, who gaue it this priviledge, that no woman should enter therein, faue the wife of Barnagallo with one maide only, and that onely when thee went to receive the Communion ; and yet might thee not enter into the Church, for women come not into the Church, but stand at the gate in the circuit before 50 the Church, and there they receive the Communion with the Lay people; and so likewisedoe the women in the other Church of the Apostles, which receive it in the forme aforesaid before the gate. And in the womens Church I have alwaies feene the wife of Barnagaffo goe to communicate with the other women, not ving the priniledge granted vnto her, to goe to communicate in the Church of the men.

Thefe two Churches have the circuit of their Church-yards, which toucheth one another, and are compassed about with high walls, and they make the Sacrament, that is to say, the Bread, for both of them in one house, and both of them say their Masses at one and the selfe same time, and the Priests that serue in one Church doe serue in the other, that is to say, two parts of the Priests in the Church of the men, and the other part in the Church of the women, and being 60 No Tithes, but thus divided, they fay their Divine Service. Their Churches have no manner of Tithes, onely they have great possessions which belong vinto the Priests, and they cause them to be tilled and manured, the revenues whereof are divided among them, and the Barnagaffo alloweth them what foeuer is needfull in the Churches, that is to fay, Reparations, Ornaments, Waxe, Butter,

Incense, and all things else belonging thereunto. At these Churches are twentie Priests , and Abundance of ten or twelue Friers continually resident, and I never faw Church of Priests where there were Friers. not Friers, Bor Monatherie of Friers, where there were any Priefts, for the Friers are fo many, that they coper the World : both in the Monasteries, the Churches on the waies, and in all Markets.

and lastly, in all places are Friers.

26. The Priests, marrie with one Wife, and observe Matrimonie better then the Laytie. They Priests best obs continue alwaies in House with their Wife and children, and if perhaps their Wife die , they seructs of Mamarrie no more; and likewise if the Priest die, his Wife mairieth not a second Husband, but the trimonie. may become a Nume if the will. And if a married Priest lie with another woman, hee entreth 10 no more into the Church, neither is he partaker of the Reuenues thereof, but becommeth as it Loffe of orders were, a Lay-man, And this I know to bee true, for I faw a Priest accused before the Patriarke. that he had lien with another woman, and I heard him confesse the fault, and straight way the Patriarke, commanded, that he should never carrie Crosse more in his hand, nor come any more

into the Church, but should become a Lay-man. And if any Priest being a Widdower doe marrie againe, he becommeth a Lay-man, as it hapned to Abuquer, whom I mentioned before which being a Widdower was married to Romana Orque, the Sifter of Prete lanni: This man having beene a Priest and principal Chaplaine to Prete lanni, after hee had beene Widower many yeares marryed againe, and Marke the Patriarke digraded him , and made him become a Layman, and he came no more into the Church, but flood at the Church-porch, to receive the Sa-

crament, as the Lay-people does The Priefts Songes for the most part become Priefts; for in this Countrey no Schooles are vied No Schooles to teach children to reade or write, neither are there any Schoolemaiters; and the Priefts teach or Schoole maters.

their children that little which they know, and fo they make them Priefts, being admitted into Orders by Abura Marke, that is no fay, Their Patriarke : for through all Libbopia there is none other, neither Billage nor any bodie elfe that gineth Orders, and Orders are given to thefe No Bifhan Priefts, twice in the yeare, as I will hereafter declare, having my felfe oftentimes beene prefent at their taking of Orders. In all thefe: Countries the Church-yards are enclosed with very

30 firong wals, that beatts may not come and digge up the dead bodies. They vie great reverence Reperence to to their Churches: and no man is so hardy as to rule on horse-backe by a Church, bor lighteth, Churches and walketh on foot, till he be gone a great way beyond the Church, and the Church yards.

27. We aboad in this Towne of Barna, and could not at the first, for many daies space, get Bad people any order for our disparch : yet at the last, we departed the eight and twentieth of lune, 1520. being verieglad and well appayed of our dispatch and the people which carried our stuffe would carrie them but two miles onely from the Towne, faying, that they were not bound to carrie them any farther, because there ended the limits of their Conntrey. Beeing thus in the wide fields in the moneth of Iune, and in the depth of the Winter of these Countries with our faid goods, and induring most huge raines and showres, the Ambassadour with three of vs in his 40 company returned to Barna, to ipeake with Barnagaffo. He alwaies gaue vs good words but bad

deeds, yet at last after foure daies he fent for the law goods.

28. The next day, a Gentleman came this her from Prete Janni, whom Barnagaffo fo highly Barnag intertained, that he forgot vs, and went forth of the Towne to receive him as far as a little hill without the Suburbs, accompanied with much people, and the faid Barnagaffo was naked from thomiddle vpward, As soone as the Gentleman was come thither, he mounted up that little hill about all the reft, and the first speech that hee wied was this : The King greets you well ; at With what rewhich words the whole company bowest downe their heads, touching the ground with one of urrence these which words the whole company powers nowne their nears, touching the ground with one of their hands, which is the honour and reagrence that, they wie in this Country. These words the Ambissisended, the Amhaffage which he broughthum from Prete Immifollowed. After he had ended his ges of Prete speech, Barnagaffo clad himselte in vergerich array, and brought the Gentleman to his Palace, la This is the manner of hearing the meffage which Prete lami fendeth, to wit, abroad withour Manner of doores, and on foot ; and naked from the Girdle vpward, vntill the fame be ended : And if icbe hearing mellian acceptable meflage from Prete Lamis he which teceineth it clotheth himfelfe; but if the mei-

fage bee fent in dispreasure, then her which receive th it abide th still maked, shewing him selfe to bee in difgrace of his Soneraigne, This Barnagafo was Brother to the Mother off Prete lanni. After many delayes, the Ambasador prayed him to lend him twelve Mules: he answered, that he could not lend us them, and that if he would have them he mint buy them; and as we would have bought them of the Countrey people, which willingly would have fold them write vs, his Servants came and threatned them, that if they fold we any they would punish them, and take the Gold from them : for no other money runneth currant in this Countrey. When we fought 60 to buy vs Mules, all the Countrey people refuled to fell vs any , faying, That they were afraid of Bernagaffa, because he himselfe would have the selling of their Mules. The Costome of all

the Realme of Prete lauguis, that there is no other coined money current, but onely Gold, and it coine drough passeth from man to man by waight, and the principall waight is an ounce, which maketh ten all the King-Pardaos, or ten Cruzadas; the next is halfe an ounce; and the least money is a dramme, and ten dome of Free drammes make an ounce; and the value of a dramme is according to a dramme in the Kingdome Land.

1045

of Portmall, or in India. Their Gold differeth in fineneffe three quarters of a Ducate, fo that one Wicked policy ounce of Gold is fometimes worth but feuen Ducates and a halfe. Moreouer, the faid Barnagafhad commanded that none but himselfe and his Officers, should keepe any Waights to weigh Gold withall and who foeuer would buy and fell must come to intreat them for their Wajehre. and by this meanes he and his Factors understood to whose hands the Gold came, which Gold afterward he would take from them at his pleasure, as it was told mee by themselues.

Wicked policie, No money currant, Courts of Inflice. LIBVII

29. In this Towne of Barne, there is a Church of our Ladie, which is great, new, and verie well painted, and notably furnished with many Ornaments, and Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Silke Faire and rich Crimfon and Veluet of Mesca, and red Chamblets. In this Church the Service is the felfe-fame which is vied in the Church of Barna, before mentioned, faning that here it is fomething more to folempe, because Barnagaffo is here resident, and many more Priests, and great numbers of Friers.

The Church is governed by Priests, and one time while I was there, I taw a Procession made as bout the Church in the greatest Circle which is in the Church-yard, wherein were many Priest and Friers, men and women (for in this Church, the women receive the Communion with the Lay-men) in which Procession were the rich Ornaments aforesaid; and they compassed the Church at least thirtie times, finging, as it were, Letanies, and ringing many Basons like vnes

In this Towne is a great Market, as there is at Barna, and likewife, once a weeke, there is a Their manner Market kept in al those places which are head-towns. In these Markets they yee to exchange one of buying and thine for another; namely, to give an Affe for a Cow, and that which is wanting of the worth, is 20 supplyed with two or three measures of Corne or Salt. Moreover, they change Goates for Bread, and for Bread they buy Cloth; and for Cloth, Mules and Kine : but especially they may haue what they will for Salt, for Incense, for Pepper, for Myrrhe, and for small Pearles, all which are things much effeemed and had in price, and make account of them as of Gold . and these runne as currant through all the Kingdomes of Prese lami, and of the Gentiles : for every fmall thing, they change Hens and Capons. To be short, what soeuer a man would buy is herem be had in the Market by exchange, for no money is here currant. Neither wfe they many words in their bargaines, but are soone agreed, whereat we greatly maruelled. The greatest Chapmen in these Markets, are Priests, Priers, and Nunnes. The Friers goe de-

ring. Priefts Friers and Nunnes. chiefe Chapmen. Tchir Habit. Habit,num-

felling in this

Market by ex-

change. Salt precious,

alfo incenfe,

Pepper, &c.

No money

Few words v-

feel in batte-

corrant.

cently apparelled, with their Habit downe to the ground : fome weare yellow apparell of to course Cotton-cloth, others weare Goats-skins dreft like Chamois. The Numnes also weare the like Habit, Moreouer, the Friers weare Cowles, like the Cowles of the Dominion Friers. made of the faid skins or of pellow Cotton-cloth, and also weare their haire long. The Numes Nunnes: their weare neither Cowles nor long haire, but onely a Gowne, and have all their heads fhanen, and hanca chong of Leather tyed firsit about their heads, and when they be old, they weare a certaine attire upon their heads and Veiles over the same. They are not inclosed in Monasteries, but dwell in certaine senerall Townes; and because all the Monasteries are of one order, therefore they are obedient vinto the Monasterie that is next them, from whence they receive their Habit. These Nunnes enter not into the Church, but doe as other women doe. The number of them is very great, and in a manner, as great as the number of the Friers : they fay that some of them are women of a very holy life Againe, some of them have children. The Habit which the Priests weare, is little differing from the Habit of the people, for it is made all of one Cloth, and they are girded like the common people; their difference is, in that they carrie a Croffe alwairs in their hands, and their heads are alwaies shauen. And contrariwise, the Lay-people weare their Lockes long, and the Priests shaue not their Beards, but the Lay-men are thauen vader the chinne, and cut off their Mustaches. There are also certaine other Priests, called Debeteras, which is as much to fay, as Canons, thefe are Priefts of great Churches, asa manismould fay, of Cathedrall, or Collegiate Churches : and these men goe very well apparelled, so that they well declare what manner of men they bee : and these goe not vo and downe the Markets as the rest doe.

Croffes and

30. The flate of this Barnagaffo (although he be a great Lord, and hath the title of a King) is very poore. Whenfoeuer we spake with him, we found him sitting in a Litter coursed with a Quilt, the Testerne was of Cotton-cloth, which they call Basino; it is very good according to that Countrey. There bee some verie deare, and behind the said Litter or Couch, the wall was hanged with foure verie rich Swords, fathned to foure pieces of wood, fathned to the wall, and two great Bookes likewife hanged thereon : before the Litter vpon the ground were spread certaine Mats, on which they fit which come to fee him. They sweepe not their Houses very often. His Wife alwaies fitteth at his elbow upon a Mat, which is layed at his beds head. Also many people and men of account are alwaies before him, which fit vpon the faid Mats. Our against him, right before his Litter, stand alwaies foure Horses, one of which is alwaies fadled, 60 and the reft are onely covered with Coverings, and there they stand eating.

Course of

In all his Houses are two round places inclosed as it were Courts; each circuit hath his gate, and enery gate hath his Porters, with their flanes in their hands. In the gate next vnto him stand the principall Porters, and betweene these two gates is alwayes one of his Alicazi, which

then ifieth an Auditour or Steward of the House; and he it is that mimittreth Inflice when he hath heard both the parties. And if the cause be of great importance, he heareth both the parties till they have made an end of speaking, then he relateth the whole matter to Barnagallo, and hee himselfe decidech the matter : and if it be but a small matter, and the parties agree together, and the faid Alicarigiue fentence thereof, the cause is so ended. Moreouer, their must needs be there present, a man of honour and account, which by his office, is called Mallagana, which fignifieth the Notary of Prete lanni, at all fentences which Barnagaffo or this Alicani gineth. And if any of the parties will appeale to Prets Lanni, or vnto his Auditors, in fuch cales they Appeale. fend vnto him the state of the caule, and by this meanes Prese Lanni vnderstandeth all the comto plaints of his fubicets, as well great as small and all the Lords of the Dominions of Prete Ianni, haueeach of them one Alicani, and one Mallagana, placed by himfelfe, and the Captaines

fibiect to Banagafo have the like.

The great Lords which remaine in the Court of Barnagaffo, and others which come vnto Manner of him for their affaires, come in this manner. Departing from their houses, they ride vpon a Mule, comming to with seauen or eight men on foote, which goe before him vnto the first gate, and there hee him. lighteth , if he be a greater Lord, he rideth with feuen, or eight, or ten Mules, his whole company riding, or with more, according to his quality, and commeth vnto the first gate; and being come thither, they all alight, and then they go to the fecond gate, and if peraduenture they cannot get in, they fit there without, as Bees doe in the Sunne, all in a clufter. All these ho-20 norable persons, weare Sheepe-skinnes about their necks and shoulders, and those which weare Lions, Tygers, or Leopards skinnes, are more honourable, and when they come before Barna-

gaffo, they put them off to honour him, as we put off our hats.

While wee were in this Towne of Barna, on a Market day was a great Proclamation Proclamation made, that Barnagasso would goe to warre against the people of Nubia. The order of this of war against Proclamation was in this wife : One carried a Cloath like a Banner vpon a laudin, and another Nubia, went crying warre against the Nubians, which they say are very farre off in the vtmost Confines of their Countrey, fine daies iourney towards Egypt, and border upon the Countries of Canfila and Daffila, as hath beene before mentioned, being subject to the said Barnagaffo. These people of Nubia, are neither Mobres, Ienes, nor Christians; but they say at sometimes they Nubians, what 30 were Christians, and that through default of cuill Ministers they loft their Faith, and are be- people

come Jufidels, and without Law.

Moreover, they told me, that they had flaine one of Barnagaffo his Sonnes not long before, for which caufe he purposed to goe into those parts, to be auenged of them. And it was told me, that in this Countrey of Nubia, is found abundance of fine Gold, and that upon the Fron- Gold. tiers thereof, are alwaies foure or fine hundred Horfe-men kept, which are excellent men of Armes, and that their Countrey is very fruitfull, and aboundeth with all forts of Victuals and Cattell, and it cannot be otherwise; because it lyeth on both titles of the River of Nilw, which passeth farre many miles space through the midst of the same. The Proclamation said, That within five daies foace. Banagaffo would fet forward, but as yet there was no furniture of 40 Weapons prepared : for in that Countrey there is no great flore of them, faue onely the Cause, Armes. which are the men of Armes, were there present, which carrie a lauelin, a Target, and a Bow, with store of Arrowes, and persons of more honour weare an arming Sword, and a lacke of Male, but not many of them. Vpon this occasion of going to warre, Barnagallo begged a Sword of our Embaffadour, which gaue him his owne fword which he weare in that expedition, which was very faire and good, and this notwiththanding, with great importunitie he begged another, which he knew that he had, being very well garnished, and very rich, saying; That hee had great need thereof. Our Embassadour being not able to shift him off, was forced to buy one for him among his Company, which had a Veluct skabberd, and the Hilts gilded, and fo he gaue it him in exchange for one of his. And in the house where we kept our goods, and where wee 50 lodged, which was without gates: the night following, they robbed vs of two Sallets, and

one head-piece, you may well thinke, that they pilfered the same vpon occasion of this warre. 31. In this Towne we bought Mules for our journey, and Barnagaffo gaue vs three Ca- Their deparmels, and with much paine wee departed from thence, through the great Thunders. Tem- ture, peits, and Raines, which terribly troubled vs; for at this feafon is the tury of Winter, which What time beginneth about the fifteenth of Iune, little more or lesse, (as we have said before) and endeth their Winter beginneth and the fifteenth of September, and at the end thereof is their Summer, as it is with vs : and what enderh. it taketh of the one, it leaueth of the other. During all this Winter-feafon in some of these Countries, they trauaile not, but we notwithstanding proceeded on our journey, because wee knew not the cultome of the Countrey, and much lelle the danger whereinto we thrust our

60 felues. And so we set forward on our journey with part of our goods, because we left the greatest part at Barna with our Factor, and came to a place called Temes, which is in the Countrey Temes. of Maizada, diltant from the Towne of Barna whence we came, about twelve miles, wee Mazada, spent three daies in this journey, by reason of the cruell Winter and huge raines, our goods which we carried, being spoyled with water.

Store of tame

and wilde

Vacleage

beafts and

beafts.

At this place where we arrived, we found a Xuum, that is to fay, A Captaine, whose needs was Prime, and hee was one of Barnagaffo his Brothers, an honourable perfor, and of great worth, who vied as very courteoully. They faid, that he was likewife Brother to the Mother of Prete lanni, and that he had in his Xumeta, or government of the Countrey of Maixada twen tie Townes, and not aboue, becaule it is the least Shire within the Kingdome of Barnagan Description of This town is seated vpon a steepe hill, not of Stone, but all of arable ground, with certaint intal Villages thereon , and vpon three sides a man may see the Champaine Countrey, for fortiers fiftie miles about ; and on the fourth fide, by the space of three miles, beginneth an huge bot. tome or downe-fall, which the ground maketh toward a great River, neere vnto which a man may behold most goodly champaine fields, all manured and fruitfull, wherein are feated about to one hundred Villages; in so much, that I thinke in no part of the world is any Countrey for well inhabited, nor fo full of all forts of Graine, as this is. Neither doe the raines in Wints. any harme thereunto, for this is the best season they can wish for, for at that time the Come groweth best, and becommeth most beautifull. And I thinke there is no Country wherein such abundance of Cattell, as well tame as wilde, may be found, and where a man may card fuch store of Wilde-fowle, as in these champaine fields; but of wilde Beasts there, none other forts but Tygers, Wolues, and Foxes, which also are common in all the Country. They est not many forts of beafts, as Hogges, Hares, Wilde-Geefe, and Ducks, and all because they are not clouen-footed : neither eate they any other kind of Beaft, if it chanceth to dye, before it be eaten; and by this meanes so many beasts doe multiply, which neither are molested nor chafed, because they have no Dogges for this purpose. And when we went on Hunting without Dogges, we caught sometimes twentie Hares in our Nets at a time, in the space of an houre. Partridges ea. and as many Partridges we droue vnto the fnares, as though we had driven Hens into an house. because they are not very wilde, nor much afraid of men, for as much as they see them all the day long; and in this manner we killed as many of them as we would defire. Those kinder Beafts which they eate not of, we fed vpon in fecret, that they should not report any cull

Hares and

Of the infinite number of Locusts, and of the harme which they do, and how we made a Procession, and the Locusts dyed. The incredible burs done by them. Of Ti-GREMANON, MARABON, and of CHARVMA, the Queene of Sheba, and the Eunuch. The rare Buildings and Pillers at Caxumo.

by them.

Foure and

zwentie miles

N this Countrey, and in all the Dominions of Prote Lawn, is a very great and homi-ble plague, which is an innumerable company of Locults, which cate and con-40 time all the Corne and Trees, and the number of these Creatures is so great, as its incredible, and with their malitisade they court the earth, and fifthe ayers infach wife, that it is an hard matter to be able to fee the Sunne. And againe, I fay, that it is an incre-The michiefe dible thing to him which hath not feene it, And if the damage which they doe, were generall through all the Provinces and Realme of Press lanni, they would perifh with famine, and it were impossible to inhabite the same, but one yeare they destroy one Prouince. Sometimes in two or three of those Prouinces; and wheresoeuer they goe, the Countrey remaineth more ruinate and destroyed, then if it had beene set on fire. These Vermine are as great, as a great Graf-A firangefigne hopper, and haue yellow wings. We know of their comming a day before, not because wee of the coming fee them, but we know it by the Sunne, which sheweth his beames of a yellow colour, which is a ligne that they draw neere the Countrey, and the ground becommeth yellow, through the light which reuerberateth from their wings, whereupon the people become fuddenly as dead men, faying ; We are undone, for the Locust's come.

Neither will I omit to declare what I have feene three times, and the first time was in the Towne of Barua, where we remained three yeares; and here, oftentimes we heard fay, Sucha Countrey, or such a Realme is destroyed with Locusts. During our abode in this Towne, we saw the figne of the Sunne, and the shadow of the earth, which was all yellow, whereat the people were halfe dead for forrow. The next day, the number of these Vermine which came, was incredible, which to our judgement, couered foure and twentie miles in compaffe, according 25 we were informed afterward.

compaffe, conered with Locusts.

This plague of God being come vpon ws, the Pricets of this place repaired vnto me, befeeching mee to give them some remedy to chase them away; to whom I answered, That I could tell them none other remedie, faue only to pray devoutly to God, that he would chase them out of the Countrey. And I went my felfe vnto the Embaladour, and told him, that peraduenture it would doe well to goe on Proceffion, and to pray to God to deliver the Country, and that Through the it might be that he would heare vs. for his mercies fake. This motion highly pleafed the Em- prayers of the bailadour.

alladour.

The next day we affembled the people of the Towne, and all the Priefts, and taking a confe-all defroyed crated itone and a Croile, according to our custome, all wee Portugals sung the Letanie, and I and killed. commanded those of the towne to cry vnto God like as we did, faying, in their language . Zin Marina Christos, that is, Oh Lord God have mercy upon vs. And with this our cry, we went through one field, whereas there grew store of Corne, for the space of one mile, vnto a little hill. and there I caused them to take vp a quantity of these Locusts, and made of them a conjugation, Exercising the 10 which I carried with me in writing, which I had made the night before, Requiring them charging Localis, which learned with me in writing, without man times the theory figure to begin to depart transfel of Grishoppers them, and excommunicating them, willing them within hirte house figure to begin to depart transfel of Grishoppers Sea, or toward the Lend of the Moores, or toward the defert Mountaines, and to let the Christians excommunialone; and if they obeyed me not, I called and adjured the Fowles of the Heaven, the Beafts of the field, cared. and all the Tempelts, to Coaster, destroy, and consume their bodies. And for this purpose I tooke a quantitie of these Locusts, and made this Admonition to them which were present, in the name of themselues, and of those which were absent; and so I let them goe, and gaue them libertie. It pletfed God to heare vs Sinners; for as we returned homeward, there came to many of them behind vs, that it feemed they would breake our heads, and our shoulders, they strucke vs so hard, that they seemed to be blowes of itones and of staues, and went from this part toward the Sea. The 20 Men, Women, and Children which stayed in the Towne, were gotten up to the roofes of the houses, praising God, because the Locusts began to depart and fly before vs., and part of them followed after vs. In the meane while, arose a great storme and Thunder toward the Sea, which came right against them, which lasteth three houres, with an exceeding great shower and tem- Incredible peft, which filled all the Riuers, and when the water ceased, it was a dreadfull thing to behold frames of the dead Locusts, which we medured to be aboue two fathomes high vpon the bankes of the dead Locusts.

Rivers, and in some Rivers there were exceeding great Mountaines of them, in such wise, that on the next morning there was not one of them found aliue vpon the ground, The people of the Townesadioyning, hearing heereof, many men came to make inquiry by Diseis cenwhat meanes this thing came to pase. The Countrey people said: These Portugals are holy sures. 30 men, and by the power of God haue chased away, and killed the Locusts. Others laid, (chiefely the Priests and Friers of the places adiopning) that we were Witches, and that by witch-

craft we had chased the said Vermine, and that thereby also, we were not afraid of Lyons, or of any other wilde beafts. Three daies after this acte, comes vnto vs Xuuns or Captaine of a Another expeplace, called Coiberia, with Men, Priests, and Friers, befeeching vs for Gods sake to helpe them, riment. faying, That they were vindone by the Locusts, and this place was a daies iourney distant to-

They came vnto vs at Euentide, and at that instant I and source Portugals departed with them, we trauailed all night, and came thither an houre after day-breake, where wee found all the people of that place gathered together, with many of the places neere adioynthg, and 40 they also were troubled with the Locusts, and suddenly vpon our arguall, we made our Procesfion round about the Towne, which is feated vpon an high hill, from whence wee faw many Villages and Townes all yellow with the multitude of Locusts. Hauing ended our Ceremonies, as in the former place we went to dinner, and the people adjoyning belought vs instantly to goe to them, promiting vnto vs a great rewards. It pleafed God, that as foone as euer we had dined, we faw the ground cleane, so that one Locust appeared not in their fight, to their great admiration. When they faw this, not wholly trufting in the Grace of God received, they befought vstogoe with them to bleffe their fields, for yet they were afraid leaft they would re-

22. At another time while we were in a Towne, called Albuguna, Prete I anni fent vs to Thehurther 10 this Towne, that here we might furnish our selues of victuals, which is in the Kingdome of An. saw done by gote, and is diffant from the Towne of Barna, where wee abode thirtie daies iourney. When Locuits elfewe came hither, I went with the Embaffadour Zaga Zabo (which afterward came into Portugall) where, and fine Genome fer, to a Towne and a Mountaine, called Agoan, and we transited fine daies jour Zigo Zabo, an ney through places wholly waste and destroyed, wherein Millet had beene sowen, which had some failure secretary actions which was feet in our Victorials and use four through the secretary actions which was feet in our Victorials and use four through the secretary actions which was feet in our Victorials and use four through the secretary actions and the secretary actions are secretary actions and the secretary actions actions actions actions actions are secretary actions actions actions action flalkes as great as those which we set in our Vineyards, and we saw them all broken and beaten 149.14 downe, as if a Tempest had beene there, and this the Locusts did. The Trees were without leaues, and the Barkes of them were all denoured, and no Graffe was there to be seene, for they had eaten up all things, and if we had not beene warned and adulfed to carrie victuals with vs. we and our Cattell had perished. This Countrey was all coursed with Local's without wings, Their milchie-60 and they told vs, that those were the seede of them which had eaten up all, and that as soone nous searce. as their wings were growne, they would feeke after the old ones. And the number of them was fo great, that I will not speake of it, because I shall not be beleeved : but this I will say, That I faw Men, Women, and Children, fit as forlorne and dead among these Locusts; and I Hardessepeo-

faid with them, Why stand yee as dead men, and will not kill these Vermine, to be revenged of Ple-

Sifff

the mischiefe of which their fathers and mothers have done vnto you, seeing that those which you shall kill shall neuer be able to doe you more harme? They answered, that they had not the heart to refift the plague which God fent vpon them for their finnes. And all the people of this Countrey departed, wee found all the wayes full of men and women, tratelling on foot with their children in their armes, and vpon their heads, going into other countries where they mishe find food, which was a pitifull thing to behold.

Men driuen by Locusts out of their Habita-

While wee abode in the faid Signorie of Abuguna, in a place called Aquate, at another time came fuch an infinite swarme of Locusts, as it is incredible to declare. They began to come about three of the clocke in the after-noone, and ceased not til night, and as they came they lishabout three of the clocke in the arter-mone, and teach to that by nine of the clocke there ted, and the next day in the morning, they began to depart, so that by nine of the clocke there to was not one of them left, and the Trees remained without leaues. The fame day and houre. there came another Squadron of them, and these lest neither bough nor Tree vnpilled, and so they continued for the space of fine dayes, and they faid, they were the yong ones which went to feeke the old ones, and they did the like, where wee faw them that were without wings. and the compalle which thele Locusts tooke, was nine miles, wherein was neither leaves nor

barke on the Trees. This Country feemed not to bee burnt up, but rather to bee coursed with Snow, by reafon of the whitenesse of the Trees, which were all pilled, so that all the Countrey remayned bare. It pleafed God that the Harueits were alreadie gathered in, butwee could not vinderstand whether they went afterward, for they came from the Sea-coast out of the King- 20 done of Dancali, which belongeth to the Moores, which are continually in warre, neither could

Dancali. we learne where at last they lighted.

Tigremabon.

34. The next day after our comming to this Towne of Timei, before our goods remaining in Barna, were brought thither our Ambassadour, departed with fixe on Horse-backe inhis company, to goe to the Court of Tigremabon, which bath the title of a King, and vnder his Gouernment and Iurifdiction, are many great Lords and Townes. The Ambassadour requested him to give him aide : and while we here stayed two dayes for people to carrie our goods, a Cap-

taine came vnto vs, with many people to carrie the same, and hence wee departed the third of August, with great Thunders and a terrible storme of raine, and trauelled for the space of three miles through manured fields. Then beganne we to descend downward, by a very rough to craggie, and steepe wayes, many miles more, and at evening lodged in a Church-yard, where wee abode in great feare of Tygres, and maruelled much at the Winter and itormes. Departing thence the day next following, wee trauelled through criggie Mountaines full of Woods and Trees without fruit, but very greene and faire, and fuch as wee knew not, and came vnto a Riuer, which because it was Winter, was swollen and very dangerous to rasse, which is callled Marabo: and vpon this River is feated the Towne of Barua, as I have faid before, and it runneth towards Nilus : and this River parteth the Iurifdictions of Barnagaffe, and Tigremabon, and from this River vnto the place where we lodged, are about fixe miles, and albeit the Mountaines be craggie and full of Woods, yet are they inhabited with flore of people, and have many places manured in them.

35. When we were come vinto the River, they which were with vs layed downe our goods, A Captaine of and fuddenly we heard on the other fide the River a great noise of Drums, and of people, Wedeconnoy them, manded what the matter was, it was told vs that it was a Captaine of Tigremahon, which came to carrie our goods. And having passed the River, we found a goodly company which came to meet vs, and they were betweene fix or feuen hundred men. Suddenly we law a great contention fall out betweene these people, and those which come thither with vs : for they which belonged to Tigremahon faid, that they were not bound to take charge of the goods vntil they were past the River : and the others said, that they were not bound to carrie them further then the waters fide. While they were in this contention, because the River was greatly swollen, they agreed all together to transport the goods vpon a raft, and that this should be nothing preindicall so at all, but that, it should remaine free for them as before, and so wee passed the River with our goods. These people travelled so Listily with our stuffe, that we could not stay them back, with

During that little part of the day which remayned, wee travelld over most craggie Mountaines, and faw wilde Hogges in divers Herds, and they were aboue fiftie in a companie, Partridges innumerable, and other fores of Birds of diuers colours most beautifull w behold, which covered the Ground and the Trees : and wee were informed, that in their places were all kinds of rauenous beafts, and it cannot bee otherwise, as it seemeth by the terrible Mountaines.

Fires for feare of beafts.

This night wee lodged abroad in the field in places enuironed with people and many fires, 60 beeing informed, that they made these fires for feare of wild heasts, and here immediately wee found great difference in the People and in the Soyle, and in the Trees, as allo in the qualitie of the Countrey, and in the Traffique of the Inhabitants : and here wee began to trauell ouer certaine Mountains fo exceeding high & craggie, that they feemed to touch the Skies, & in regard

of their heighth they winded a little at the foote, and all of them were porportionably fituate. and they are divided one from the other, and stretch in length a very great way : and all those which are accessible, although there be great danger in trauelling of them, have Chappels buil- Lady-Chapded on the tops of them, and the most part of them are dedicated to our Lady; and on many of pels, the tops of these Hills we saw Chappels, where wee could not imagine how they could ascend vp to build them. We lodged at a place, in the midft of these Mountaynes, called Abafacem. Abafacem. whereon flandeth a Church, dedicated to our Lady, very well builded, with an Ally in the midit, mounted higher then the other two, on both fides, and the windowes thereof aboue the other Allies are under the middle Roofe, and the whole Church is vaulted; and in all this Coun-10 trey wee haue not seene a fairer nor better builded Church then this, which is like vnto those Churches of Badie, fituate betweene the Rivers of Duoro and Minio in Portugall.

Hard by this Church, standeth a mightie, huge, and a goodly Tower, as well for the heighth as the compasse thereof, and for the making of the wall, which seemed to stand as though it would fall; and it is of free stone finely hewed, which seemed well to bee a Princely worke; neither have wee feene any other the like building, and it is enuironed with most beautifull houses, which are very answerable vnto the same, as well in regard of their walls. as of their Roofes and Lodgings, which feeme to have belonged to some great Princes. They say that Queene Candaces dwelt in this place, and that her House was not farre from thence, and this is Candaces, not valike to be true. This Towne, Church, and Tower, are feated in the midft of those crag- Ad. 8.17. 20 gie Mountaynes, in very beautifull and goodly greene fields, all watered with Fountaynes of warer, which fall from the feet of those Mountaynes, and all these Fountaynes are made of free flone. The Graines which here are watered, are Wheat, Barly, Beanes, Chiches, Lentils, Peafon; and all the yeere long they have Garlicke, and exceeding great Leekes, and Mustard-

feede, and Creffes grow about their houses; and on those Rockes grow great store of a kind of herbe, called Crescion, and certaine other kindes of herbes which they feed on. In the faid Church are very many Priefts, very well apparelled, which feeme to be men of vertuous conversation.

36. We lodged in another Towne, which is named, The houses of Saint Michael, because the Church is called Saint Michael; and comming hither, they would give ve no lodging, fay- Saint Michael, 30 ing, that they were priviledged and exempted from fuch kinde of moleflation : and because of the great raine, we lodged in the circuit of the Church as well as we could, and fet vp our Mules in the other circuit, which ferueth for a Church-yard, because there was great store of graffe, which was growne very much, by reason of the winter and the showers, which graffe in Portugall, is called Wild Panick, and it was very long and high, because it was made luftie by reason of Wilde Panike, the dead bodies there buried. In this Countrey they vie not to eate but once a day, that is to fav. at even-tide; certaine moneths of the yeere when they doe fait, and to is the custome throughout Fasting. all the Realme of Prete lanni: and as they refused to give vs lodging, so they were flow to give vs food, in which meane space we were almost dead for hunger. Our Factor seeing this, said, I 40 haue two fodden Hens, if it please you, let vs eate them. The Secretarie and I maruelled much. that he wished vs to eate flesh without bread; howbert, we were compelled to eate them. Afterward they seemed so good wate mee (I thinke by reason of mine extreme hunger) that I

would oftentimes eate the like againe, to wit, bread without flesh, and flesh without bread,

and bread dipped onely in Salt, Water, or Pepper. And thus by reason of these divers forts

of dyet, I forgat that, which at the first I so wondred at. Howbeit, in the evening they brought vs meate after their manner, and wee lodged in the forefaid circuits. And because we would be more cleane, we got neere to the place where they vie to receive the Communion. Here hauing with vs a candle lighted, the Doues began to flie about the fame, which Church Doues when we perceived, we ran to shut the gates, because they could escape none other way, and so running vpon them there escaped not one of them, for we tooke them all, even to the young ones that were in the nest, fo that we filled a facke with them. And this was the cause. that at another time, when after certaine yeeres wee returned thither, they gaue vs lodging, that the second time wee should not take all the Doues of their Church, which by that time

were replenished anew.

The difference of the people of this Countrey from those of Barnagasso, is, that the men weare certaine aprons two spannes long bound about them, and these are of Cloth, or of tanued Lea- Apparelment ther, full of plights, like vnto those which our women weare, which when they stand vp, doe apparelling. couer their fecrets; but when they fit downe, or goe in the wind, they hade nothing. The married women were their aprons much shorter, so that all their secrets are seene. Young maides 60 and other vnmarried women, and fuch as have no Suters weare girdles of Beades about their middles, and about their prinities, which other women weare about their neckes. They weare also many garlands full of Timaquetes , which are a little round kind of fruit of trees, which Timaquetes, a make a none like vnto Lupures. And fuch as can get any small Bells weare them upon their fruit. prinities for a brauerie, and fome weare sheep-skins about their neckes, wherewith they couer Foolish brauer but one part of their bodies, and not the other, because they we are them loose, and bound onely rie,

Court of Prete Baba Baxe. Caxumo.

brought Prefente v.. to \$4loman E. unque leanom. I haue left out the reft of the Legend forme by her, his 70 taile of fh:pson th Indian Sea &c. See my Pilgr.

med by the Altar flone.

The Church.

Pharaos Fig-

about their neckes, with one foot hanging before, and another behind, and with neuer fo little mouing of it, a man may fee from one fide of the bodie to the other, whatfoeuer he lifteth. They wash themselves every day once at the least, and sometimes twice or thrice, and by this meaner they are very cleane, and this manner of attire is for the base people, for the wives of Gentle-The way from men and Lords goe all couered. The way which they travell in this Countrey of Prete Lami Egypt to the is this: he which trauelleth from the red Sea, commeth to Barna; and he which commeth from Egypt, arriveth at Snachen, and fuddenly turneth his backe to the North, and beginneth to tranell Southward, vntill he come to the gates, called Baba Baxe.

27. Caramo, is two dayes journey diffant from the Towne of Saint Michael, alwaies trauelling ouer these rough Mountaines, in which place wee abode at another time eight moneths. Io by the commandement of Prete lanni. This place was in old time, the Citie Chamber, and refi-The Citie of dence of the Queene of Saba, whose proper name was Maqueda, and this was shee which the Queene of brought Camels laden with Gold to Salomon, when he was to build the Temple in Ierssalom. In this Towne is a very noble Church, wherein we found a most ancient Chronicle, written in the Abifine Tongue; in the beginning whereof it was declared, that first it was written in the Hebrew, afterward translated into the Chaldean Tongue, and lastly out of that, into the the Abiffine Language. And it began in this manner: Queene Maqueda hearing of the great and rich building; which Salomon had begun at Ierusalem, determined to goe and visite him, and laded certains constant, and a saturative non segrem or estimative, when more to go e and vyite own, and tack certains (function the folds to fellow you has work, men. And being come never to the Citie of Tetrulation, and hence to saff, a Lake our certaine Bridges, fuddenth infipred by the holy Ghosti, free tighted, and knee-zing down, worshoped the timber of the formally and and side: God forbid, that my feet should touch these sames on which the Sations of the Forellishall suffer.

28. In this very Towne of Caxumo, was also the chiefe residence of Queene Candaces, whose proper name was Indith, and from her sprang the beginning of Christianitie in these parts : and from the place where the faid Queene was borne vnto Caxumo, are two miles; which is a little Towne, being at this time inhabited with people, which by their trade are Carpenters. The Christian Faith beganne here in this manner. Their bookes in the Abissine Tongue say, (as alfo is written with vs, in the Alts of the Apofiles.) And they fay, that the Prophetie was herein fulfilled, wherein it is faid, that Ethiopia Shall Stretch out ber hands onto God. And thus they fay, that they were first converted vnto the Christian Faith, and that the Eunuch returned fuddenly to Ethiopia with ioy, vnto the house of his Ladie and Mistresse, and converted and baptized her with all her houshold; for he declared vnto her all which had hapned vnto him by the way, and so the Queene caused all the people of her Kingdome and Dominions to be baptized, and the Faith began in a Kingdome which is now called Burro, being fituate in the Eastern part of the Kingdome of Barnagasso, which is now divided into two Signiories : and in this Towne of Caxumo, the built an exceeding goodly Church, which was the first, which is faid to Churches na haue beene made in Ethiopia, and it is called Saint Marie of Sion, because that from Sion, the confecrated from of the Altar was fent; for in these Countreves they call the Churches by no other name, but by the Altar-stone, wherein is written the name of the place from whence it

This Church is very large, and hath five allies of fufficient breadth, and very long, made like

a Vault, and about the Vault is a Tarrax, and under the Vault, and on the walls it is rainted. and the Church is built of free stone exceeding faire, and ioyned together: it hath seven Chappels, which are all fituate with their shoulders toward the East, and their Altars very well adorned; it hath a Quire like vnto ours, fauing onely that it is so low, that with the top thereof it reacheth onely to the Vault; and there is another Quire built ouer the Vault, but they vie it not. This Church hath a great compaffe builded with very great free-stones, as big as the stones wherewith we couer graues, which circuit is enuironed with very great walls, and is vicouered, contrarie to the rest of the Churches of this Countrey. And befules this circuit, it hath another as great as the compafe of a Castle or a Towne, within which are goodly houses of one 50 florie, and each of them hath Fountaines, which fend forth their water through the Images of certaine Lions, made of stone of divers colours. Within this great circuit are two faire Palaces made of divers stories high, the one on the right hand, the other on the left, which belong to the Two Governours of the Church; the other houses belong to the Canons and the Friers. Within this great circuit, neere vnto the gate which is next vnto the Church, is a fquare field of ground at this day lying waste, which in times past was full of houses, wherein in each corner is a square Pillar of free-stone, very high, and comingly carued with divers workes, and in the same are in letters graven to bee seene, but not in vinderstands them; neither doth any man know of what Tongue they be, and there are many of these kinds of Epitaphs, and this place is called, Ambacabete, which fignifieth, The honfe of Lions, because in times past Lions 60 were kept bound there.

Before the gate of the great circuit is a great Court, wherein groweth a mightie Tree, which is called, The Fig-tree of Pharas; and from the one end to the other are certaine faire Cifterns made of free-stone, well wrought, and well seated, whereunto the Tree doth some harme, one-

ly where it reacheth vnto them with his roots. Ouer these Cisterns are twelue Seats of stone placed, raifed in order one behind the other, as well wrought as if they were of wood, with Carions works their feet and feats beneath, and they are not made of one entire stone, but of divers pieces : which feats (they faid) ferued for the twelve Auditors or Indges of the Law, which at this day are resident at the Court of Prete lanni. Without this cirtuit are many goodly houses, the like whereof for beautie and greatnesse are not to be seene in all Ethiopia; there are also many goodly Wells of water, adorned with very goodly stones, and likewife in the most part of the houles are antique Images, as of Lions, Dogs, and Birds, and all of them are made of exceeding hard and fine ftone, Behind the backe of this mightie Church, is a Lake of fpringing water at to the foot of a little Hill, where at this day the Market is kept, and about the fame are many Chaires, wrought in such fort as those are which belong to the circuit;

This Towne is fituate vpon the entrance of a faire Medow, betweene two small Hills, and Vaknowne the greatest part of this Medow is replenished with most ancient buildings, wherein are many of Characters. thole Chaires with many Pillars, which have letters on them , whose Language no man vnder. A flately Pilstandeth: but they are very well ingrauen. At the entrance of the faid place are many Ruines of lar. flone, part flanding vp, and part ouerthrowne to the ground, which are very high and goodly. with faire antique-worke, whereof one standeth as yet voright, built your another beeing wrought like voto an Altar-Rone, and as it were carried into the fame : and this which is built vpon the other is exceeding great, being fixtie foure yards * in length, and fixe in breadth, and *64. brachia, 20 three in the flankes, and very fraight and well wrought, all carried with windowes from the the Translacer foot to the top, to wit, one window aboue another, and the top of the faid stone is like vnto an as afterwards halfe Moone, wherein are five nayles in the part which standeth towards the South, nayled into the faid stone in forme of a Crosse, the rust of which nayles running downe in rainy weather along the faid stone, a spanne distance from the faid nayles, seemeth to bee like vnto fresh bloud. This Pillar of stone standing yet so high from the ground toward the South hath the forme of a gate in it, wrought in the very ftone, with a chaine which feemeth to bee lockt, and the ftone vpon which this same is seated, is a fathome thicke, and very square, and this stone is also set upon other great and little stones, wherein I could not discerne how farre this stone entred into them, or whether it went downe into the ground. Neere vnto these are a very great num-30 ber of stones, very faire and well wrought, which (as it seemeth) were brought hither to be

framed in some piece of building, and also those other which were so great, and set vpright, Of these stones, some were fortie fathoms * long , and some thirtie , and in the most part of * Brachie. thele stones, are very mightie letters ingranen, which none of the Countrey is able to reade. And among the stones which he vpon the ground, there are three very great and very fairely wrought, and one of them is broken into three pieces, and every piece is above eight fathoms long , and ten fathoms broad ; neere vnto which, are other stones, whereon these should have

39. Neere vnto this Towne of Caxumo flandeth a little Hill, from whence descendeth a great deale of ground on all fides. A mile diftant from the Citie are two houses builded vader- Houses vader 40 neath the ground, wherein a man cannot enter without light. These houses are not made with the ground, vaults, but are made of very goodly hewen stone, all euen, as well on the sides as ouer the head. and are twelve fathom high, and the faid stones are so well couched together, that they seeme to be all one piece, for the joynts thereof cannot bee discerned. One of these houses is divided into many roomes. At the entrance of the gates are two holes, wherein they put the post wherewith they fasten the gates. In one of the chambers of this house are two great Arches of foure fathoms long, and one and an halfe broad, and as much in heigth, to wit, the hollownesse within, and albeit they lacked their couer, yet feeme they to have had one. They fay that thefe were the Chifts of the treasure of the Queene of Saba. The other house is somewhat broader, Chifts of the and hath but one chamber and a porch, and from one gate to the other is the diffance of a stones Q. of Sabses so cast, and the open field is voon the top of the houses. In our companie were certaine Genoneles treasure. and Catalans, which had beene flaues vnto the Turkes, who fware that they had feene many goodly buildings, but that they neuer faw fuch huge buildings as these of this Towne of Carre mo. And we judged that Prete lanni fent vs hither to solace our selues of set purpose, that we fhould fee these kind of buildings, which are farre greater then I haue written.

In this Towne and in the fields thereof, which are wholly in their feafon fowed with all kind of Corne, when the flormes come with abundance of raine, neither man, woman, nor Seeking of child, of what age soener, stay within the Towne, but goe out to seeke for Gold in the manured Gold after fields, which, they fay, is discouered by the raine, whereof they find great store; and likewise raines. they goe through all the wayes where the water runneth , turning the earth vp with staues. 60 Hauing heard them speake of so much Gold, I purposed to make a Table, like those which I have seene made in the Towne of Foz de roca in Portugall, and at the Bridge of Muzella, and so I began to wash the earth, and to lay it vpon Tables; but I found no Goldat all: I wot not whether it fell fo out, because I knew not how to wash the earth; or else, because I knew not the Gold; or, that there was none at all; but the rame thereof was very great.

1052

Ancienteft Church in Ethiop a. I so. Canons. and as many Friers. Two Nebretie

They fay, that the Church of this Citie is the most ancient Church in all Ethiopia. And it feemeth to be no leffe, for it is more honoured then the reft, and Diuine Seruice is faid therein very felemely after their manner, and there are in it one hundred and fiftie Debeteres or Canons. and as many Friers. And it hath two principall Gouernours, which in their Language are called Nebreti, that is to fay, Masters of instruction, one of which two is ouer the Canons, and the other over the Friers, and thefe two are lodged in the Palaces which are within the circuit of the Church, and the Nebres of the Canons lodgeth in the Palace on the right hand, and this is the greater and more honorable of the two, and hath authoritie to execute juffice, not only you the Canons, but alio vpon the Lay-men of the Countrey, and the Nebret of the Friers executeth inthice you the Friers only, and both of these have Trumpetters in their Courts, and others which play vpon certaine Instruments like vnto Drums, and haue exceeding great Reuenues. Besides these, there is given them daily out of the Countrey a portion of Bread, and a portion of the Countrey-wine, called Mambar, which is given vnto them when Maffe is ended; and they give it vnto them in two parts; to wit, one vnto the Friers, and another to the Canons, and this their portion is so great, that seldome the Friers eate any more then this, for this sufferth

The Canons

them for all the day. And hereof they faile not enery day, except Good-friday; for, on that day they neither eate nor drinke. The Canons receive not their portion in the circuit of the Church, and feldome times they flay in it, fauing onely when they fay Diuine Seruice; 252L to the Nebrets stay not in their Palaces, faue onely when they give audience to the people: and thus they doe because they bee married, and line with their wines and children in their houses, which houses be very good, and are without the circuit of the Church, whereinto women are not suffered to enter, neither may the Lay-people come into the Churches. But there is another very faire Church, whereunto the Lay-people and women repaire to receive the Communion. 40. There is an high Mountaine, and small as well at the bottome as at the top, which

A ftrange

feemeth to reach up to Heauen, which hath three hundred steppes to the top, and upon the fame stands a very holy and faire Chappell , which hath about it a circuit of stone, wrought very well, as high as the breaft of a man, from whence a man would be afraid to looke downs. The circuit of this Church is so broad, that three may walke in it together in a ranke, and is called by the name of Abbot Pantaleon, which was a most denout and holy man, and there lies his 12 bodie; and this Church hath great reuenues, and hath in it fiftie Canons all honourable persons. and well apparelled, and their chiefe Gouernour is called, Nebres. 41. From this Citie of Caxumo Westward men tranell toward Nilus, where there are great

Cities and Lordships: and they say that toward this part is the Citie of Sabaim, of which the

Queene of Saba tooke her name, from whence shee had that blacke wood which shee tent to Sa-

and it is reported to bee a good and large Sigmorie. Toward the North is a Countrey, called

taine, which is great at the bottome, on which is a Plaine of two miles long, full of Woods of

exceeding straight and beautifull Trees, neere vnto which Woods, there is a Monasterie which

hath large reuenues, and great number of Monks, which is called, The Monafterie of Allelniah. and the cause of this name is said to be this, that at the first building thereof, there lived a Frier

of most holy life, which spent the most part of the night in prayers, and having heard the An-

Torrate, all full of Mountaines, toward which within the space of twelue miles, is an high Moun-

the of Savanne 18 functs, where. lomon, to polish the works of the Temple. And from this Towne of Caxumo, vnto the beginof the Queene ning of the Townes of Sabaim, are two dayes iourney; and this Signiorie is lubiect to the of Saba tooke Kingdome of Tieremahon: and the Lord and Captaine of the fame is Coulin to Prete lami;

A Frier, alyer, Monafteric called by that name. And as this Frier was very holy and good, so the report is, that they which live there at this present are as bad and wicked. About this Hill whereon this Monasterie is seated, are Rivers to be seene, which are dried vp, which run not, but in the time of great tempefts & thunders. But now to returne to our voyage, 50 about eight miles diffant from Caxumo, is another Monasterie on a Mountaine, which is called, The Monasterie of Saint Iohn : and fixe miles beyond this is another, which is called, Abba-Gariman, whom they report to have beene King of Grecia, and that forfaking his Kingdome and Gonernment, he came hither to doe penance, and here he ended his life denoutly, and yet, they fay, hee doeth many Miracles, and wee were there present on the day of his solemnitie, where wee faw about three thousand persons, some blind, some lame, and some sicke of the French Poxe.

δ. V I.

Departure from Saint Michael, to a place called Bacinete: Their viliting TIGREMAHON. Of divers Monasteries, and other places in the way which they passed

E departed from the Church of Saint Michael, with the people of the Coun-Anteba. trey, which carried our stuffe, and came to our lodging in a Towne, called Angeba, in a Betenegus, which is an house of the King, wherein before in other Reuerence to

night we had no harme.

places we had oftentimes beene lodged, which no body elfe may vie, but fuch the Kings hou-Noblemen as represent the Kings person, and they wie such reuerence to these houses, that the gates thereof stand alwaies open, and no man dare presume to enter, or to touch them, saue onely when the Gouernour is within, and when he is gone out, they leave the gates open, and the beds whereon they sleepe, and their prouision to make their fire, and their Kitchin. Departing from this place, we trauailed about fitteene miles, and lodged vpon an high Mountaine, which ftandeth neere vnto a great River, called Bacinete, and folikewife is the Towne and Territorie called, whereof the Grand-mother of Prete lanni was then Gouerneffe ; and at the time when we were there, it was taken from her, because she had done wrong vnto the Inhabitants, and 20 Prete lanni beareth as great affection and respect vnto his Subiects, as to his Kinsfolkes, and this Countrey is subject to the Kingdome of Tigremabon, and in every part is very well peopled, and manured in all parts : but especially it is full of fruitfull Mountaines, and Rivers which runne continually towards Nilus. All their habitations are feated and built vpon high places, and out of the way, and this they doe, because of the Trauailers , which take away such things as Provision a-

they have perforce. They which carried our goods for feare of wilde beafts, made a hedge with gainst wilde Favots of Thornes very firong, and lay within the same, and we with our Mules, and that beafts.

30 (Malue, which is compassed with many goodly manured fields, full of Wheate, Barley, and Millet, and Pulse of all forts, the like whereof, so faire and so thicke, we had not seene in any place together. Neere vnto this Towne, is an exceeding high Mountaine, but at the foote not High Mounvery great, for it is as great in a manner at the top as beneath, because it is as steepe as a Wall or taine as steepe fortrelle right vp, all bare without Grasse, or any greene thing; and it is dissided into two A Monasterie, parts, to wit, the two outward fides are sharpe, and the midst is plaine, and on one of those sharpe tops, trauailing up into the same, aboue two miles, there is a Monasterie of Friers of our Ladie, called Abba Mata, and they are men of an holy life. The order of Friers heere, is All Friers of all one, because through the Realme of Prete lanni they are all of one order; namely, of the or- the order of S. der of Saint Anthonie the Hermite, and out of this order is fprung another, which is called Anthony in 40 Eitefarruz, which is taken rather to be an Hebrem, then a Christian order : and they fay, that Ethiopia. oftentimes they burne some of them, because there are many herefies among them; namely, because they will not worthip the Crosses which they themselves make, because all the Priests Theorete Eleand Friers carry Croffes in their hands, and the Laity at their neckes: and the cause why they farms will not

We departed from Bacinete, and transiled fixe miles vnto our lodging, vnto a place called

will not worship them, is, because they say, That Crosse is onely to be worshipped, whereon worship the will not worthing them, is, because they say, a nat Grone is onely to be worthingped, which is, Christ lyed for vs, but that those which they and other men make, are not to be worshipped, seemes the unbecause they are the workes of mens hands: and for other like herefies, which they say, hold, pertitions the and maintaine, they are greatly perfecuted. The place where this Abba Mata is, feemeth to before and this be three miles distant from Malue, I would have gone thither, but I was wished not to goe; for Authorspike though it be but a daies iourney thither, yet I should be driven to spend foure daies in the same, the worst of though it be but a dates fourney theret, yet a mound be driven to open four dates in the rather, and to climbe up thither upon my hands and my feete, for otherwise a man cannot come admittive

In the midft of this Mountaine, which is as flat as a Table, standeth another Church of our Lady, wherein very great denotion is vied; and on another sharpe Mountaine, is another little Other Chur-Church, called Saint Croffes. And beyond these, foure miles and an halfe, there is another Mountaine, like vnto that of Abba Mata, and there is another Monasterie, called Saint lohn. The young Women are much out of order, and if they be twentie, or fine and twentie yeares of age, they have their breafts so long, that they reach downe vnto their waste, and this they take for Long breafts a goodly thing, and they goe naked, and from the girdle vpwards they weare Cordans of Beads losthome, for a brauery. Others more in yeares, weare Sheepe-skinnes tyed about their neckes, which louely. couer but one fide of their bodies : and because this is the custome of their Countrey, a man is Brutishaesse. 60 no more ashamed to shew his secrets, then if yee saw his hands and his feete; and this is vied among the baser fort, for the Gentlewomen are all couered.

Tigremahon, was about two miles distant from this place in a Betenegus, or house of the King. The same day that we came thither, Tigremahon sent for the Embassadour, which went thither with his Company, but when we were come vnto his Palace, it was told vs that he was gone

ø. V I.

tarien to the of the Sunnein foure and

to the Church with his Wife to receive the Communion, and this was about halfe an house nad Many Count two and twentie of the clocke; for about that time they fay Maffe in this Country, except tries confirme it be Saturday or Sunday. And we went to meet him as he came from Church with his Wife who rode vpon two Mules richly furnished, as is requisite for persons of great Estate, and such as are accompanied with menof great Nobilitie.

This Troremator is an old man, of a goodly pretence, and his Wife was wholly covered with Blue Cotten-cloath, and that in fuch fort, that we could fee neither her face, nor any other part swenty boures. of her body. When we came neere vnto him, he prayed me to give him a Croffe which I had in Tigremiben de- my hand, which he kiffed, and gaue vnto his Wife to kiffe, and the not vncouering her face, kif. fed it voon her veile, and he made vs good cheare, and vfed vs with great courtefie. This man to hath a great Court of men and women alwaies with him, and greater furniture then Barnagaf-

Absolute Soueraignty of the Negm.

In this Kingdome Prete lanni placeth and displaceth, when it seemeth good vnto him, and when he pleafeth, with cause or without cause the Kings, and those which are vnder the Kings. and therefore when they are depriued of their government, they make no shew of melaneholy or fadnesse, and if they take it euill, they keepe it fecret. While I was in these parts, I fam great Lords deprined of their States, and they which were placed in their roomes, oftentimes talking and conferring with them as good friends, but God knowes the heart. In this Comerewhatseuer thing happen vnto them, whether prosperitie or adversitie, they say, That God fends it. These Lords which are as Kings , pay tribute vnto Prete lanni, which tribute is in an Hories, in Gold, in Silke, in Imbroidered Cloath, and in Cotton-cloath, according to the abiliatie of the Countries. And these Countries are so greatly inhabited and peopled, that their reuenues must needs be great, and when the Noblemen line in the Townes, they live at the common charges of the poore people.

After the deliuerie of Presents, Tigrematon suddenly tooke order for the carriage of our goods before denyed, and that through all his Dominions they should furnish vs of Bread, Wine, and Flesh, on free cost. Having received this newes upon the ninth of August, we departed, and came to our lodging in certaine small Villages, enclosed as the former, for feare of Tygers. And that night which we lodged there, being about two of the clocke in the night, two men went Two men afgers, and one of them was wounded on the leg. It pleafed God that we heard them cry, and ran out to fuccour them, for otherwife they would have flaine them. In this Country are divers Villages, inhabited by Moores, divided from those of the Christians, who (as they say) pay great tribute of Cloath, of Silke, and of Gold, to the Lords of the Countrey, but they are not put to other troubles which the Christians are put too; and these Moores have no Church at all, for they will not fuffer them to vie any. All these Countries ar fertill, as well in Pasture, as in Wheate, and other Corne.

Saint Georges

Two men af-

Villages of

Tewifh Sabba-

Neere vnto our lodging was a Church of Saint George, very well gouerned, after the manner of our Churches, it was vaulred, and well painted with their pictures ; to wit, with the Apoftles, Patriarks, Noah, and Elias, wherein serue ten Priests, and ten Friers, And till wee came 40 hither, we faw no Church gouerned by Priests, without having Friers with them, but where the Friers be the chiefe, there are no Priefts. Three miles diffant, is the Monasterie of the Holy Ghost, where the Friers were grieued, because it was Saturday, whereon they might not gather fruits to give vnto vs as they defired, and prayed vs to excuse them, and faid; They would give vs such things as they had in the Couert, and so going into the house, they gave vsdryed Garlick & Limons, and at last prepared for vs in the Refectorie, Cabbages cut in manner of a Salet, and mingled with Garlick. Behind the Towne where we lodged, for the space of fix miles, is a Towne called, Agro, wherein Tigremabon hath a Palace, where we were oftentimes lodged, Church out of and here is a Church of our Ladie digged out of a Rock by force of mans hand, very well made, with three Iles or Allies, and with pillers hewed out of the faid Rocke, and the great Chapell, 50 the Vestry, and the Altar, are all likewise of the same Rocke, and the principall Porch, with the Pillers thereof, as though it were made of fundry pieces, it cannot be fairer then it is. In the fides it hath no gate, for on each fide is the mightie and terrible Rocke, and it is very plea-

Angugui.

45. On the thirteenth of August, we departed from this place, where wee rested all Saturday and Sunday, and came to a place, called Angugui, where there is a Church like a Bishoppes See, very great and faire with Allies, and with Pillars of stone very faire and well wrought, and it is called Chercos, that is to fay, Saint Quirico. The place is very faire vpon a very goodly Riuer: the Inhabitants have a priviledge, that none may enter the Towne on horfe-backe, but 60 onely on Mules.

fant to heare them fing Divine Service, for the voyces of them which fing, make a wonderfull

Bellette, where frands a Betenegus, a very good Lodging. The fituation of the place is very pleafant, and hath abundance of good waters, and wee were lodged in the faid Palace. During our abode here, there came vnto vs a great Lord, named Robel, beeing Gouernour of a Province,

named Balgada, wheroftaking his name, he is called Balgada Robel. This Nobleman had with him Balgada. a great train all on horfe-back, and many other Hories and Mules led by hand, which they vie to do for authority and reputation, and there were many Drums in his company: it is faid that he is uo for authority and to put to the Palace where our Ambassador was, he sent to request him to come out and speake with him, because he might not enter into the house in Tieremahons absence. The Ambassador hearing this request, fent him word backe againe, that he had trauelled about fifteene miles, and that if he would fee him or speake with him, he should come into the house, for he would not come forth. Then this Nobleman sent him an Oxe, a Sheepe, a Vessell nouse, for ne would not come forth. I have a flowe, and a Horne full of very good Wine. And fent Honey, white to him word, that he would come and fee him although the penalties were very dangerous, and andhard. that he hoped that he should be pardoned of the penaltie, because Christians were lodged in

As he was come neere vnto the Palace, there fell fuch store of raine, that hee was constrained to enter into it, and there he talked with the Ambassadour and vs, enquiring of the state of our Voyage, and of our Countries, which till that time hehad neuer knowne nor heard off, and then discoursed of the Warres which he made against the Moores, which iowne vpon his Countries toward the Sea-coast, saying, that he neuer ceased to warre with them, and he gaue a very good Mule for a Rapier to one of our company. The Ambassadour seeing his courtese, game him an

And they fay, that his government is very great, and that he hath the best commoditie in all Through all Athinia, to wit, Salt, which goes current in itead of mony, as well in the Kingdomes of Prete Athinia. Salt Ianni, as in the Dominions of the Moores and Gentiles, and they lay, that it paffeth from runneth as a thence as farre as Congo, vpon the West Sea. And this Salt they digge out of Mountaines, as it is principal Merthence as farre as Congo, vpon the west Sea. And this safe they digge out of Mountaints, as the chandize, reported, as it were out of Quarries; the length of energy stone is a handfull and an halfe, the Salt-money. breadth foure fingers, the thickneffe three, and to they carie them in little Carts, and vpon beafts backes, like flort cliffes of Wood. In the place where they digge this Salt, one hundred or one hundred and twentie of these stones are worth a dramme of Gold, which dram (in my indeement) is worth three hundred Reais, which are three quarters of a Ducate in Gold. And as foone as it commeth vnto a certaine Faire which is in our way, in a Towne, called Corcora, a Corcora,

30 dayes iourney diftant from the place where the Salt is digged; fine or fixe from the place make a drammer And so it diminisheth in passing from Faire to Faire. And when it commeth to the Court, fixe or feuen stones onely make a dramme : and I haute also seene them in the Winter time buy five for a dramme. Great bargaines are made with this Salt, and it is very deere in the Court. They fay, by that time it commeth to the Kingdome of Damite, they buy a good flaue Damite. for three or foure itones, and passing farther into the Countries of the Moores, they say, that they may buy a flaue for one stone, and in a manner, waight for waight in Gold. Wee found in this way, three or foure hundred beatts in a company, laden with Sale, and as many more emptie which went to fetch Salt, and they faid that these belonged to Noblemen, which fend thither every yeare for their necessarie expenses in the Court, and or er twentie or thirtie beafts AO laden, which belong to drivers of Mules. Also we met men laden with the faid Salt, who car-

ried the same from Faire to Faire, which valueth, and runneth currant for money. and who foeper hath it, may have by way of trucke, whatfoeuer he needeth. 46. Departing from this Betenegus, we lodged in certaine poore and ill-prouided Villages in

a Countrey, called Banace. And the next day wee departed from thence following our fiteffe, Runke. which was fent before vs. which we found vnladen in the midft of a Medow, which was full of water, and feeing the fame to badly conveyed, wee margelled greatly; and while wee were in this muse, there met vs sue or sixe riding vpon Mules, having tenne or twelve foot-men with them, among whom was a Frier; which comming to the place, caught the Captaine of Tirre. A stout Frier. mahon, who conducted our goods by the haire of the head, and beat him with a Cudgell, wherevpon all of vs ranne to him to know wherefore hee did fo. Our Ambaffadour feeing the Cap-

50 taine fo beaten and hardly handled, falling into Choler with the Frier, tooke him by the breft to flab him, but I know not whether he hurt him or no, and all of vs likewife came vpon his back. The poore Frier began to speake a little Italian, which George de Bren one of our company vnderitood, which if he had not done, it had gone hard with the Frier. When every one was pacified, the Frier faid, that he was come thither by the Commission of Prete lanni, to fee our goods conneyed, and whereas he had beaten him, he did it for the negligence which hee yied in conveyance of them.

The Ambaifadour answered, that it was no time to make any tumult, especially in his prefence, for hee tooke it as if hee had done the fame to his owne person. And thus being pa-

60 cified, the Frier fard, that he would goe to Signior Balgada Robel, which dwelt behind vs, and that from thence he would bring vs Mules and Camels to carrie our stuffe, and that wee should Zago Zabo, the goe before, and thay for him in a betenegue, halfe a daies iournie diftant from this place. This was which Prete the fame Prier which was aire: ward ient by Prete lanni, as his Ambaffador into Portugal withvs. lanni fent into And fo we departed, each man his way, he forward, and we toward the faid Betenegus, and that Portugall.

night we lodged in a little Village, where was a goodly Church, called Saint Ouricus, and that moht we feared leaft we should have beene denoured of Tygres. The day following, wee transla led about two miles, and found the Betenegus which the Frier told vs of, which is in a Town.cal. led Corcora, having good Lodgings, and in that place there is a very faire Church, and here wee flaved all Saturday and Sunday, wayting for the Frier vntill the Munday, Eastward of this place. they fav. there is a faire and rich Monastery, called Nazareth, which hath great Reuenues and many Friers. And West-ward towards the River of Nilm, they say there are many Mines of Siluer, but they know not how to digge it, nor to take any profit of the fame.

Q. VII.
Departure from Corcora, the pleasant Countrey which wee passed through, and of another Forrest: bow the Tyeres fet upon us. Dofario, the Moores of Dobas: Ancona, Angote; Salt, and Iron Money. Other Monasteries and Churches.

A goodly Country,

N Tuefday morning, feeing the Frier came not, wee went forward on our inneney along the banke of a passing goodly River, for the space of sixe miles. through a very pleasant and goodly Countrey, and full of greene Herbs, and 20 Trees fruitfull and fruitlesse, and on both sides were Ridges of Mountaines ex-

ceeding steepe, which are all sowed with Wheat and Barley, and replenished with wild Olive Trees, which thew like yong Olives, for they often cut them, that they may the better fow their Corne. In the midit of this Valley is a passing faire Church of our Ladie, about which are many Houses, Lodgings and Habitations of Priests. There are also infinite abundance of Cyprefle Trees to tall and great, as it is strange to speake of, and many Thickets of Trees of fundry forts which we knew not.

Cypreffes,

A field fowne fame field harueft in Seed-

Neere vnto the principall gate of the Church, was a very goodly and cleere Fountaine, which enuironed the Church, and afterward spread it selfe into a great Champaigne field, which may be watered throughout with the ftreames thereof, and therefore is fowed every moneth of the 32 every moneth, yeare, with all kind of Seeds: as Barley, Millet, Lentils, Fitches, * Beanes, Chiches, Taffo di Guza, which is very good, and withall other Pulle, which are in this Countrey, and at the vetame inftant some Seeds are fowen, others are sprung up in the blade, some are full ripe, some are new out downe, and some threshed, a thing not seene in our parts of Escope. At the head of this Valley, there is a great afcent, and so craggie a Mountaine, that fixtie miles beyond the same, there is none other passage, and it seemeth verie likely to be so, by the great store of people that alwayes paffe that way.

Hauing gotten vp to the top of that Mountaine, wee descended into a goodly Champaigne

Countrey, full of all kind of Cornes, which they fow all the yeare long, as that was which I

Fertilicie.

They lofe each

spake of before, and there is a World of Medowes for pasture. This Champaigne and Valley, 40 may be in length about fixe miles, and in breadth two, and it hath on every fide high Mountaines, and at the foot of every Mountaine are many Townes and Churches to bee feene, howbeit, they be but small, among which there is one, named Saint (rosses, and another Saint lobs, and each of them bath twentie Friers. When we had passed this Valley, we beganne to change the foile, and entred into certaine rough Mountaines not very high, but very fleepe, the greater part whereof we paffed by night, by meanes whereof we lost one another, and the Ambaffadour remained with four onely in his company, and my felfe with fine, and another of our number, with two, and our stuffe was left in these wild places with one man onely, as it pleaseth God. And in that part where I was, we faw a fire, which because it was night, seemed neere vnto vs, but was about three miles diffant from vs. And while wee fought to goe that way , there 50 followed vs such a fort of Tygres, as was wonderfull, and if we entred into any Thicket, they came fo neere vs, that wee might have thrust them through with a Pike, and none but one in our companie had a Pike, the rest had Rapiers. At length wee concluded, to stay in certaine Corne-helds for our more securitie, and here wee tyed our Mules together, and kept watch and

Danger by

ward all night with our naked Rapiers. The next day about noone-tyde, wee met with our Ambassadour in a Towne well-peopled, distant from that where we lodged, aboue fixe miles, and it is called Manadeli, which hath one Towncof one thousand Housholds in it, and the Inhabitants thereof are Moores, Tributaries to Prete lanni, and thou and hou- among them are fifteene or twentie Families of Christians, which dwell there with their wives,

and take vp the Tributes. Whereas I said before, that wee beganne to change the soile of the Countrey, it is to be understood; that unto this time, which is two monethes space since we begin to trauell, it was alwayes Winter, and when wee entred into the Valleyes betweene thefe Mountaines, it was not Winter but very hot at that feafon, and the Countrey is called Dobba, and it was Summer there, and this is one of the Countries, which I spake of before, where I

failet was Winter in Februarie, March and Aprill, contrarie to the other. The like is also from the Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor united Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Monattery of Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Vision vinto the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagaffor Vision vinto the Sea, and Mountaines: and the length of this Territorie is about fifteene dayes sourney, the breadth is vaknowne, because it entreth into the Countrey of the Moores. The generall and common Winterparti-Winter is from the midft of Iune, to the midft of September. There are very goodly Oxen in cular and this Countrey of Dobba; and in fuch multitudes that they cannot well be numbred, they are common. of greater stature then Oxen of any other place. But many miles before wee came to this Towne Manadeli, we met many Christian people in the fields with their Tents set up, which Io faid vnto vs, that they were come thither to gray to God for waterfrom Heauen for their Catle, which dyed for thirst, and to fow their Millet and their Corne, which had indured great want of Great drought water. Their Cry and Prayer was this: Zio Marina Christos, which is, Ob, Christ, bane mercie

Now, to returne to this Towne of Manadeli, I say, that there is Traffique vsedas it were in a great Citie, and there are infinite forts of Merchandize, and a wonderfull number of Merchants, Manadeli, a great Citie, and there he Moores of all Languages, as namely, of Giadra, of Marocco, of Fez, of Bugia, of Town of won-Tunis, of Turkie, of Rumes, that is to fay, White Men of Grecia, * Moores of India, which are Or rather heere as free Denizens of Ormuz, and of Cairo, which from all the Countries about enamed, bring Turkes of C. Merchandize of all forts, While we were here, the Moores of the Towne complayned, faying, necre Conflanthat Prete lanni, had taken from them one thousand ounces of Gold perforce, adding, that Ti- 1. nople, called that Prete lann, had taken from them one chodiand owners of Gold periode, adding, that I we Rome.

20 gremabon alfo, as Lord of the Countrey, fought alfo to draw his maintenance from them, fo that

they were no longer able to hold out. In this Towne every Tuefday is a Market.

48. Affoneas the Frier was arrived, wee departed, and the same evening wee went two miles from thence to a Betenegus , feated on a Hili. The next day wee came to a great Towne Defarlo. 2 inhabited by Christians, and contayning one thouland Families, which is called Dofarfo. And Towne of one there is a Church, wherein are aboue one hundred Priefts and Friers, and as many Nunnes, which thou and haue no Monasterie, but dwell in private houses like Lay-women, fauing, that the Friers dwell Christian alone by themselues in two Courts seperated one from another, wherein are many Cottages of boulholds. little value. And the number of their Priefts, Friers and Monkes is to great, that the rest of the 30 Laytie cannot stand in the Church, for which cause they have set vp a Tent of Silke before the Church, wherein the Lay-people receive the Communion : and heere they vie those Solemni-

ties, which they cannot in the Church, as founding of their Drummes and Cymbals, during the time of ministring the Communion. While we lodged here two nights, the Nunnes came and washed our feet, and after they had washed them, dranke off that water, and washed their faces with part of it, faying, that we were holy Christians of Ierusalem.

In this place, the Malter of the house faid vnto me, that yeare wherein we gather but a smal crop Exceeding of Corne, fufficeth vs for three yeares. And farther he told me, if it were not for the Locusts and plenue. the Tempelts which fometimes doe them harme, they would not fow halfe io much Seed as they doe. We saw great Herds of Oxen comming toward the Towne, and those of our company 40 judged them to be aboue fiftie thousand. The Tongue of this Country differeth from the Tongue of the other Countrey which we had passed, for here beginneth the Tongue of the Kingdome of

Angote, the Towne is called Angotina.

In all this Country they make bread of all forts of Graine, namely, of Wheat, Barley, Mil. of Angere, and ler, Chiches, Peafon, Fisches of divers colours, of Beanes, of Lin-feed, and of Taffo di Aguzza. the Towne of Likewise they make Wine * of these Seeds, but the Wine made of Honey is better then any *Becreor Ale. of the rest. This people after the Frier was come vnto vs gaue vs victuals, and defrayed our charges of this kind of bread, by the commandement of Prete Ianni, but we could eat none of it. but that which was made of Wheate, and they brought vs these their victuals out of due season, that is to fay, (according to their custome) at Euen-tyde, for they eate but once a day, and that in the Euening, and their Dyet is raw flesh, and a certaine sawce made of the Gall of the Cow, which we could not looke vpon, and much leffe teed vpon, but we are that little which our flaues Raw flofts. dreffed for ys, and wheaten bread, and so we continued untill the Frier understanding our Dyet and cuftome, caufed them to fend vs flesh, which was rosted and sodden by our slaves, to wit, Hens, Partridges, Mutton, Beefe, and fuch like.

49. Departing from this Towne, we trauelled through the midft of certaine fields of Millet growing high, and having stalkes as higge as small Canes. Towards the Sea-coast, all the Inhabitants are Moores, called Dobas, and it is no Kingdome, but this Province is divided under foure and twentie Captaines, and fometimes the one halfe is in peace, and the other halfe in warre, and the same time while wee were in those Countries, they were all in a manner at continuall 60 warres : yet we faw twelue of them in the Court of Prete lanni, which came to craue pardon for a new Rebellion moued by them.

And when they came neere the Pauilion of Prete Ianni, which liueth alwayes in the field, Signe of peace euery one of these Captaines carried a great stone upon their heads, laying both their hands upon the same, which Ceremonic is a signe of peace, and of comming to craue mercie. Whom

The Kingdome

Prete lanni curreoutly received, and thewed them good countenance, and they brought with them about one hundred Horses, and faire Mules, which they led in their hands, but they came into the Court on foot, with stones on their heads, where they stayed aboue two moneths with out their diffratch: and they had daily given them Oxen , Sheepe , Honey, and Butter. At length Prete lami fent them aboue three hundred miles from their Countrey; namely, into the Kingdome of Damute, with a very great Guard. As soone as the people of these Captaines vn. deritood, that they were banished into those Countreyes, they role vp in Armes, and made as many moe new Captaines, beginning to make warre and breake the peace.

Cause of the

This warre and contention (they fay) beganne with this Prete Ianni, which now raigneth. more then with his Predecessors, both because these Moores were of ancient time Tributaries in to the former Prete Ianni, and also because the Ancestors of him, which now raigneth hane al-The Pretes ma- waies had fine or fixe wines, the daughters of the Moorifb Kings, his neighbours; and not the daughters of the Pagan Kings, and also one or two wives of the Signiories of the faid People cal. led Dobas. If they were of age, and one of the daughters of the King of Dancali, and another of the King of Adel, and another of the King of Adea. And this present Prese, having promised to take for wife a daughter of the King of Adea, when hee faw that her fore-teeth were very great, he would none of her; neither would he deliuer her to her father, because shee was now become a Christian, but married her vnto a great Lord of his Court : and they fay, that fine that time vntill this prefent day, he would never take wives of this Morifb Kings race; and he married a daughter of a Christian, and would marrie but one wife, saying, that he would live a according to the commandement of the Gofpell, and still he requireth the tribute, which these Moores are bound to pay him : and they, because they payed it not before, in regard of the marriages which they made with his Predecessors, therefore they will not now pay it to him. and hereupon these warres arise.

Deuillifh Law

These Moores of Dobas are very valiant men, and have a Law among them that none of them may marrie, vnleffe he can proue that he hath killed twelve Christians; and for this cause. Weekly Caro- no man trauelleth alone this way but in Carouan , which they call Nagada, and first one great uans to Faires. companie affembleth together, which paffeth that way twife a weeke, for one halfe of them ne, and another come, and none of these companies are fewer then one thousand persons with their Captaine; and these Carouans see from two Faires, to wit, of Manadeli, and Corcors, vo. 14 to Angote; and though they goe in great companies, yet notwithstanding the Moores affault them, and fometimes murther many of them.

co. Departing from hence wee travelled through the faid Plaine along by certaine Moun-

A remarkable

taines, which belong vnto the Christians, all inhabited by these Giannamori: and wee passed ouer certaine Rivers which fall from those Mountaines, hard by which Rivers wee found certaine very shadie places, by reason of the abundance of Willowes which were there, being very pleafant to reft under at mid-day, and fo we refted a little, because it was exceeding hot, and a very cleere day, and this River had not fo much water in it as might drive a Mill, and we flood talking, one part on the one fide of the water, and another part on the other; and while wee were thus reasoning, suddenly we heard a great thunder, and it seemed to be farre off, and they as told vs. that it was so drie, as sometimes it was wont to bee in India. And being thus out of feare of raine or wind, and that the thunder was ceased, wee began to set our stuffe in order, to An exceeding fet forward on our Voyage, and had newly lapped up a Tent wherein we dired, and Mafter loss fudden and pegoing vpward the River about fome bufineffe, began to cry vnto vs, take heed, take heed, and as we turned our felues about, we beheld the water comming as high as a Lance, with exceeding great furie, which carried away part of our goods, and if by good fortune wee had not taken downe our Tent, it had carried the same and vs quite away, and many of vs were constrained to climbe vp into the Willowes. And this furious streame of water came running downe betweene certaine Mountaines, where it had thundred; and it brought downe with it exceeding great flones, and the noise and furie of the water was so great , and the cluttering of the flones of which beat one against another, that the Earth trembled, and the Skie seemed to be readie to Violent things fall. And as it was fudden in comming, so it fuddenly passed away; for we passed the same that very day, and we faw a great number of other exceeding great stones, tumbled vpon those stones which were there before, which came downe with the water from those Mountaines. Departing from hence, wee tooke vp our lodging in certaine poore Cottages; when wee came neere them, we faw our felues constrained to lodge without doores, and that without our supper, and that night about the breake of day, we heard of exceeding great thunders and raines in that

Plaine, as it fell out the day before youn the Mountaines. The River Sac1. Wee departed all from this place for want of food. And thus wee travelled without our stuffe all that day, and came at night vnto a great River, called Sabalette, which endeth the 60 Kingdome of Tigrematon, and is the beginning of the Kingdome of Angote. And in a very high Mountaine Westward, out of which this River springeth, is a Church, called Saint Poter of Angote; and they fay, it is the chiefe of this Realme, and the Church of the Kings, and that when this Kingdome is newly given to any, they goe thither to take possession thereof, and to-

Angote. Saint Peters

ward the Eaft, in another exceeding high Mountaine fixe miles out of the way, there is a very great Monasterie with many Friers, whereof we saw nothing but the high Trees which are about the fame, and here endeth the Countrey of the Moores. And on Saturday, we relied by this River, and on Sunday at night about our first sleepe the Tygres affaulted vs, although wee had Tygres made great fires, to that the greatest part of our Mules brake loose for feare. On Tuelday, defeending downe from the top of the Mountaines, we came into the way where our fluffe was. neere vnto a Church called, Our Ladie, enuironed wholly with shade of most pleasant and stately Trees. (and here by reason of the heate wee rested about noone) which Church hath many Priefts, Friers, and Nuns, and is gouerned by Priefts : and the Towne is called, Corcord, of Ana 10 gote. With much travell we passed that night a very high Mountaine, where fometimes wee were faine to goe on foot, and fometimes we were faine to crawle vpon our hands and feet, and having passed this bad way on the top of the Mountaine, we found certaine other Mountaines. and Hills, which make valleys, where small streames runne; but among the rest there is one Steepe hill.

Hill very great, on both fides full of Paltures, and of Corne-fields, wherein all the yeere long they sowe and reape all kind of seeds; for a: all times when wee walked that way, we found them at that inflant fowing of Corne, and fome newly forquied, and fome in griffe, fome eared, fome ripe, and fome cut downe, and that which I speake of Wheat, is also to be vindentood all kind of Corne and Pulle. In this Countrey they conuay not streames to water the same, because it aboundeth with Rivers, and is as it were a Marish, and all Countreys which are like you 20 to this, or which may bee watered beare fruit as this doth, that is to fay, they are lowed in all

moneths of the yeere, and yeeld their harnest. This Countrey round about is peopled, and full of Villages, because it is exceeding fat and fruitfull, and in enery Towne there is a Church, which hathabout it great flore of Trees.

52. On Wednesday the fift of September, we travelled but a little way, but that we began to descend into a pleasant and wide Valley full of exceeding great Millet, and abundance of Beanes, through the midth whereof passed a great River, the fields on both sides being sowed. And this River is called, The River of Ancona; and in the highest part of this Valley is a beautifull Church, called Saint Marie of Ancona, which hath exceeding great revenues, wherein are Faire Church many Canons, whose head is called Licanate, and besides the Canons there are many Priests and

20 Friers, and in all great Churches from this place forward, which are called the Kings Churches. there are Canons, and their Head is called Licanate. This Church hath two Bells of Iron badly Two Bels of made, and hanging low neere the ground; and in this Countrey weefaw no more but thefe trop two. Wee stayed in this place with Thursday, for on that day here is kept a great Market, which they call Gabeia. In this Towne, and in all the Kingdome of Angote, Iron runneth currant for money, which is in fashion of Bullets, and it cannot be wrought foround in any thing, but they breake them as they have need, and give ten, eleven, and twelve, of them for a dram. which dram amounteth to three quarters of a Ducatin gold. Moreouer, Salt in this place runneth currant for money, as it doth through all the Countrey, and here they glue fixe or feuen Rones of Salt for one piece of this Iron.

Ones of Sair for one piece of this acountry, called, Bigging, which is a very cold Country, In all the by reason of the exceeding high Mountaines which are there, whereupon groweth great flore Kingdome of of that herbe whereof they make ropes, that is to fay, Hompe whereof at one time I brought dayed, graine a certaine quantitie to certaine Genone fer which were here with vs, who told me, that they had and fall runne neuer seene any so good, and that it was better then that of Alicante. The food of these Moun- current for taines is great flore of Barley, and in the Valleys is abundance of Wheat, the fairest that euer Bagging, a cold Thate feene in any place. The Cattell are small of statute, like those which are in the Co.n- Country. trey of Maia, between the Rivers of Mining and Dorius in Portugall. The Lord of this Land Good Whest. is called, Abunaraz; the Countrey is fixe dayes journey in length, and three in breatth. They Small Cantell. fay, that after the Land of Caxumo was converted vnto the Christian Faith, this was the fecond and that the Kings here kept their Court, as the Queenes kept theirs in Caramo, alchough the Strange Mo-50 same be barren by reason of the Mountaines. The buildings which I saw, are these: first, in an nisterice.

high Mountaine there is an exceeding mightie Caue, wherein is builded a very goodly Monasterie and Church of our Ladie, not so much for the greatnesse thereof, as for the goodly proportion which it hath, which is called, Icono Amelaca, which is as much to fay, as, God be praised. The feat of the Countrey where it is builded, is called Acate. It hath poore reuenues, but many Friers and Nuns, the Friers dwell in an Hill aboue the Caue, which Hill is enclosed. They haue but one way to come to their Church. The Nuns dwell beneath in the fide of the Caue, and are not enclosed: they till and digge the fields, and sowe them with Barley and Wheat for the Monasterie affordeth them little sustenance. The faire proportion of this Monasterie cau-60 feth it to be inhabited, because it is builded in this great concautife or caue of the Hill, and it is

made like a croffe, and is well compassed about, and they may goe on Procession round about it, and all the Friers may goe afront in this circuit, if they were more then they bee; before the gate of which Monasterie there is a place enclosed with a wall, as high as the brimme of the Caue, which is not a Church, and here stand the Nens to fay Divine Service, and here likewise

Harnest and

they receive the Communion. This Roome for the Nunnes looked toward the South, because the Church standeth East and West; and toward the right side over this Caue falleth a Brooke made of divers Springs, downe from the Mountayne, which runneth continually, and whente commeth to the top of the Caue, is divided into three branches; and one falleth right vpon the midth thereof, which is a goodly fight; the other two branches runne in Gutters, made by hand, on both fides of the Caue, and joyne themselves toward the place of the Numes, hard vmroa Wall which stoppeth them, and these branches water their Gardens. The body of this Church hath three Gates, one which is principall, and two on the fides, as though it were builded voon a Plaine : and because the mouth of the Caue is great, therefore there is light enough. 53. As we departed from this Monasterie or Church before mentioned, trauelling toward 10

the West two dayes iourney, there is another great and rich Church, made in another Caur.

A tedious journey. A King-Priest. Bountie of a King. LIB. VII

Another Church in a

Alugret his iou: ney full thirber.

wherein, to my judgement, three great Ships with their Masts may stand vp-right, but the entrance is no bigger then the space whereby two Carts may enter with their Ladders, and it is fixe good miles to the top of the Mountayne : and I would needs goe thither, for the defire I had to fee that Church : but furely, I thought, I should have died, the way was so hard and rough : but God affifted me, for it was very coole, and I had with me one of my Slaues; which holpe me to goe, and drew me vpward with a cord, and another behind which led our Mules by hand; lelt they should fall and cast vs backward. I set forward from the bottome of the Mountayne before day, and could not get up to the top before noone. The Woods and Trees, which I law, are of fundrie forts, which I knew not, fauing flore of Broome, whose yellow flowers made a goodly 20 shew, and great store of Hempe to make Ropes withall. The Church which is within this Caue, is as great as a Bishops Sea, and hath goodly Allies well adorned and wrought. and all are The building vaulted; it hath three Chappels exceeding faire and stately adorned. The entrance of this Caue of the Church. is towards the East, and the Chappels are vaulted towards the same entrance, and when you'be paffed the third Chappell, there is no light, and they fay feruice by candle-light. The Church hath two hundred Canons, and there be no Friers, but it hath a Licanate, and very great Reusnues and Possessions, and they live like honorable Gentlemen, by reason of their wealth; and this

As you enter into this Caue, the faid Chappels are right before you : and on the right fide are

The rest are like voto this same, saming that the one hath three and the other hath source steps, all

of them are in the midft of the faid Caue. The greatest is the Tombe of a Patriarke, which

here. The least is a Daughters of the faid King, who, they fay; was aboue fortie yeeres a Prieft

of the Male, which every day did minister the fame, which thing I found written in a Booke of

this Church, wherein the life of this King was recorded. Among other miracles, they fay, that

when he ministred the Communion, the Angels brought him Bread and Wine, and in the be-

ginning of the Booke, the King is painted like a Priest apparelled at the Altar , and it seemeth

came from lerufalem, to vitte the faid King for his holineffe, and after his death was buried 40

Church is called Imbra Christos, that is to fay, The way of Christ.

The flore of Canons and Reuenucs,

two little Chambers finely painted, which, they fay, a King caused to be built, which ended his so life in that place, and caused the same Church to be builded. 'As you enter in on the left hand, Three Tombs: are three most honorable and stately Tombs, neither have I seene the like in all Ethiopia, whereof one is chiefe and very high, and hath fine fteps round about it, and is all ouer-caft with white

Oncofaking, chalke, which was coursed ouer with a great cloth of Gold, and of Veluet of Mecca, to wit,

part thereof of Gold, and part of Veluet, and it was fo large, that on every fide it touched the ground, which cloth the fame day they had layed upon the faid Tombe, because it was a festivall day : and this was the Tombe of that King which dwelt there; whole name was Abraham.

One of a Pa-

The King a

The bountie and bolineife

of Airraham Prete lami. Church, at

that one hand reacheth out of a Window, with an Hoft and with a Chalice of Wine, and after the same fort he is painted in the greatest Chappell. When I came to the top I found a quarrie of the like blacke stones, and the place wherehence they were digged, and I was much aftonied, confidering how fo many of them should bee digged up by them of fo hard a graine, which have no kinde of meanes nor skill to cut and polith so them. In the same Booke was also written, that the faid King neuer tooke money nor Tribute of his Subjects, and if they brought him any, he caused the same to be distributed to the poore, and maintaine himselse of the Reuennes of his Lands, which he caused to be villed. Likewise, that it was reuealed vnto him, that if he would keepe his Kingdom in quiet, all his fonnes should beshut vp, sauing his first borne, as hereafter shall be declared. This day being the day of his Feaft, I was desirous to goe to the faid Church to fee, if that which was told meewere true: Twentic thou- and I faw twentie thousand persons, who all come thither for deuction, and to receme the fand Commu. Communion; and this Feaft waskept vpon the Sunday, and thiey faid Maffe very early, and nicants atone Made being faid, they began to give the Communion in all three Porches of the Church, and it continued vntill the Au Maria, which thing I faw, for I was there from the beginning, and so afterward going to dinner, I returned, and found that it continued untill that houre.

ø. VIII.

A logister i convert d'erip fait VIII l'est d'en la collège Overdanceule Mell i grant Certain l'information de mongre

Of the flately buildings of the Churches which are in the Countries of As ve Asi A. which king I vill's at i a made, and of his Tombe in the Church of Golgota. An Golshap his emerganment.

Dayes journey distant from this Claurch, are such kind of boilding, thingain may should ment; I beleaue, the like are not to be found in all the World, which are Churches all hewen in free Itone out of fote Mountaynes, very well wrought? and the names of the Churches, are thefe : Emanuel, Saint Saniour, Saint Mary, Faire Char-

Holy Croffe; Saint George, Golgota, Bestottiem, Marcinio, and The Marryet And the principal, ches is called Labbella : and they by , that this was the name of a King of this Countier , which Labbella. reigned before Abraban the aforefaid King, about eightie veeres, and vailed the faid building to be erected. His Sepulture is not in the Church of his name, but in that of Galgeta , which is of leffe capacitie, being whofly hewen out of a mayne Rocke, being one hundred and twentied Guesta and fpannes in length, and fixtie in breadth, the Roofe is built voon fine Pillars, two or each fide, he Church and one in the midft, as it were, in a fquare, which Roofe is flat and smooth as the floore be bewenner of neath; on both fides it is well wrought, the Windowes and Gates are most excellently engra- a Rocker Min 20 uen, to cunningly, that no Silver-Imith could make them more faire. The Kings Tombe is like

vnto the Sepulchre of Saint James of Galicia, in Compostella. This Church hath another body ynderneath it, hewen out of stone, as bigge as all the floore about, and of the heighth of a Speare or Launce. The Kings Tombe is directly before the Altar of the voper Church : In the floore whereof is the entrie to goe downe beneath, which is thut with a stone, made like vitto a Graueftone, layed in very euen and closely, but no man goeth into it , because (mee thinkes) the faid ftone cannot be remooued, which ftone is bored through the midft, with a hole that paffeth quite through, of three handfulls wide, wherein the Pilgrimes (which in exceeding great Pilgrimage number come thither for denotion) doe put their hands, and fay, that there are feene many and Miraclesi

30 About this Church is a way like a Cloyfter, but fue fteps lower then the Church, wherein toward the East are three Windowes, which give light to the Charch that is beneath, which Windowes are as high as the floore of the vopper Church, which is higher then that Way or Cloyfter, by as much as the fine steps doe contayne, and if you looke through the said Windowes, you may fee the faid Tombe placed right before the Altar, as I have faid. Before the december the great Chappell is a Tombe hewen out of the fame from which the Church is of, and they fave it is like vnto the Tombe of Christ in Acrasalem; whereunto they doe great honour and reue. The holy see rence : and in the fame flone, on the right hand are two Images carued and engraven out of the pulches refemb fame flone, fo well made that they feelne to have life : one is of Saint Iolin; and the other of bled. Saint Peter, which they fliewed me as a trare thing, and I tooke great delight to behold them, 40 whereunto they doe great reverence.

This Church hath alfo on the left hand a Chappell, made after their manner, which feemeth to be a Church, because it hath Allies. It hath fixe Pillars about it, cut out of the same Rocke; A Chappell, well and finely made; and the middle Ally is very well arched or vaulted. The Gates and Windowes are very well wrought, to wit, the principall Gate, and one fide-gate, for the other ferueth for the great Church. This Chappell is as long as it is broad, to wit, two and fiftie foans euery way; and on the right fide, it hath hard vnto it another small Chappell very high, but narrow, after the manner of a Bell, with very faire Windowes : and the faid small Chappell is sixe and thirtie spannes high, and twelve broad. All the Altars of the faid Churches have their clothes of filke, and their Pillars made out of the faid Rocke. There is about the Church a very 50 great circuit, hewen out of the felfe same Rocke of the Mountayne by force of Majourie, (which is square, and all the walls thereof haue holes in them, as bigge as a Cube, and all thete holes are These Chur-

stopped with small stones, and they are burials, for a man may see that they are but newly stop- cheshauctheir ped. The entrance of the circuit is thirteene spannes deepe beneath the Mountaine, and all portraitures made by force of Masonrie.

55. The Church of Saint Sanioner, is hewen out of a Rocke of a great Mountaine, the body of Saint Sanioners 55. The Church of Saint Samon, is newed out of a Acceptance of the Church is two hundred fpans long, and one hundred and twentie broad, and it hath fine lles, here now of a Ricke. and every He hath seven pillers, which are square, &c.

The open circuit of the Church which is the Cloytter, is all hewen out of the same Rocke, The Cloytter, and is fixtie spans broad in euery part, and in the front of the principall Porch, it is one hun-60 dred fathome wide, and about the Church, where it should be couered, where nine great Arches fland on each fide, they all reach from the top vinto the ground, where the Tombes are on each fide, placed like those in the other Church. The entry to passe into the circuit or Cloyster of The Entries the faid Church, is hewen under the Rocke, the space of eightie spans, wrought artificially, so broad, that ten men may goe fide by fide, and is a Lance high, and it ascendeth by little and lit-

ouer the Church. The description on of the other Churches is for breuitie The excellency of thefe

Churches.

thor went

twice to fee. Great alcent.

which the Au-

1052

A formefield the. This way or entry hath four holes aloft, which give light vito the passage. And on the too of this Mountaine, round about the Church, is a champaine field, wherein they fow Barley. and there are also many dwelling houses.

I take God to witneffe, in whose hands I am, thet all that I have written is most true with out adding any thing thereunto: for having heard report of the margels of these Churches, I would need goe thither twice, to see them and describe them, so goest was my defire tomate

the excellency of them knowne vnto the world.

This place is feated on the fide of a Mountaine, and to go vp to the top thereof is a very great afcent, which I thinke cannot be performed in a day and a halfe, such is the height thereof, and vet notwithflanding, about the fame, there feemeth to be another Mountaine and that the hill re is teburated from the other. And to goe downe from this place into the plane, is about fifteene miles space, and in the way are mightic fields, which feame to continue a good daise in mee and more, all which firetch toward the River Nilm, wherein are as great flore of habitations as in the Towne of Carriero, built exceeding stately with square stones, for here they say, the Kings were wont to have their dwellings : and that the works of thefe Churches cut into the The low will, was made by Giberer, that is to fay, Whate men : for they know well, that themselves can-Their Vantes and not turne their hands to make any fuch worke : and that the first King which caused them to by White men. be made, was called Balibela, which fignifieth a Miracle: because at his birth he was coursed Balleles with Bees, which made him cleane, without doing him any hure and he was the Sonne of the Sifter of a King, which King dyed without heire, and therefore his Nephew was made King, and and that he was a Saint ; and their denotion is fo great, that all Ethiopia hath concourse hither. and here they fee very many miracles.

ferred to the dignity of thefe

This Signiory of Abugana, where these buildings are, before our departure the Prese Iam bestowed voon the Frier, which afterward came with vs as Embassadour into Postugall : and therefore I fay, that I was twice to view these Churches and buildings; and the second time that I came thither, was when the Embassadour came to take possession of the same Lordshin. During whose aboade in that place, there came thither two Calacenes, that is, Messages or Commandements of the King, and they told the faid Embaffadour or Captaine, that the Prete land fent him word, that he should fend him certaine tributes, which his Predeceffour ought to have paied him; which was one hundred and fiftie Oxen for the Plough, thirtie Dogges, thirtie 10 Tonelins, and thirtie Targets. He answered them, that hee would see what goods there remain ned of his Predeceffour, and that he would pay it all very willingly, although he found none

Rude recorle.

Ingabela.

Returning now vato our Voyage, we departed from the Church and faire of Anoma . and to his voyage. having transiled nine miles, we came with our goods to certaine Villages, where they would not ledge vs, faying; That they were places which belonged to the Mother of Prete lami, and were fubicet to no body elfe but to her. And they would have beaten the Frier which guided vs. They batted well a Scruant of his. Leaning our stuffe here, wee came to our lodging at a place called Ingabela, which is great, and replenished with goodly houses, and situate upon a little hill, in the midit of a field, enurroned round about with Mountaines, at the bottome of which Mountaines there are fo many peoples Townes, that I have not feene the like in any place; there are also greatsfore of Pountaines and Brookes, which runne downe on every side, which water a great part of the Countrey, which is called Olaby. And while we were heere, I faw them building a most beautifull Church, wee found heere exceeding great abundance of Hennes, whereof we might have had an infinite number in exchange, of a few Graines of Pepper, fo small account they make of Hennes, and so highly they esteeme of Pepper. In this place were infinite flore of Limons, Citrons, and Orenges. We abode here Saturday and Sunday, on which day the Tygres affailed vs, and we could not fo well defend our felues, but they denoured

56. On Thursday, the source eenth of September, we went with our goods to a dry River, three miles off where the Lord of this Kingdome of Angote had his refidence, which is called Angoteraz. Before we came thither, we saw much people assembled together, and we supposed that they were affembled to carrie our goods : but they came to doe vs small pleasure, for they enclofed vs betweene them, getting vp into three small hils, and we were in the bottome, and vpon enery top of the faid hils, were about two hundred persons affembled, the greatest part with flings to fling stones, the rest flung at vs with their hands, so that the number of the stones was fuch, as it feemed to raine stones, and we stood in great feare of our lives. And all of vs which were in company with the Frier, were aboue fortie persons; to wit, the Captaines which waighted vpon him, with certaine of their Men, an liome of our Slaves; and all faue my felfe, and a young man which was with vs, which was ficke of the Mealels, were very shrewdly 60 froned and wounded : but God of his Grace vouchfafed to preserve him and me. They tooke some of vs also Prisoners, and wee which fled in the Evening, came to our lodging where our fluffe was, without our Suppers.

On Saturday Angoteraz fent for vs to his house, where at our entrance wee found no hinde-

rance at all of guard, but entred freely, and found him with his Wife, and certaine of his familiar friends, and he gaue vs good intertainment as well in countenance as in speach. Foure larres of excellent Wine made of Hony were standing by him, and by every larre was let a Cup of Crystall-Glasse, and so we began to drinke, and his Wife and two other Women in the compa-

On Sunday next wee went to Church, where we found Angoteraz, which came to meete Queflions of vs with great courtefie, and then he beganne to speake of matters concerning our Faith, and Religion. called vnto him two Friers, besides the Interpreter and the Frier that conducted vs ; And his first question was, Where Christ was borne, and which way he went, when he went into Egypt and how many yeares he abode there, and how old he was when our Lady loft him, and found him in the Temple, and where he made of Water, Wine. It pleased God to helpe me, so that I answered him according to the truth, better then I knew. The Interpreter told me, that the Frier which guided vs, informed the other two Friers, that I was a man that vnderstood much. vpon which speaches they fell downe vpon the ground, and whither I would or no, would needs kille my feet, & Angoteraz, embraced me, and killed me on the face, who, as I was informed afterwards, is one of the best, and most learned Priests in all Ethiopia: and at our returne, wee saw Aluarer.

him honoured with the Title of Barnagaffo. Afterward, he defired vs to heare Maile with them. which being ended, he inuited vs to dinner, but the Embaffadour having vinderstood before hand what meate they would fet before vs, thought good to fend for our owne dinner, which Prieft. 20 was certaine fat rofted Hens, and fat Beefe, and fresh Fish.

The house where we dined, was great, and made with earth, which is (as wee haue faid) a Betenegus. Before the bed, whereat Angoteraz fate, many Mats were spread vpon the ground, and he came downe from his bed and fate downe vpon them, where many skins of blacke sheepe were spread, and two great platters of exceeding white wood, with low brims, like those which we vie to picke Wheate in, which they call Ganetus, and they were very faire, great, and large, with a brim of two fingers broad, the greatest was about eighteene spans in compaffe, and the leffer foureteene, and thefe be the Tables of great Lords. And heere wee fate round about with the faid Angoreraz: we had water brought vs, and washed our hands but they brought vs no Towell todry them with, much leffe to fet our bread vpon : but in the faid plat. The dy the No let, of Fitches, and of Taffo. Before we beganne to eate, Angoteraz commanded one to bring of Athionia. him a great piece of the coursest bread, and with his owne hand laying a piece of raw Beefe vp.

indeed fald Grace after our manner, whereat he seemed to take great del ght. Then came there in the Imbandicioni, whereof I dare not in a manner speake, but yet they Imbandicioni are ordinary diffies in that Countrey, and these were their fauces or broaths, wherein were cer- loathome, tain pieces of raw flesh with warme bloud, which in this Country is esteemed for a most delicate delicacies, difh, and none but great personages eate thereof. Thele sauces were brought in certaine little diffies, very finely made of blacke earth, and they strewed upon them certaine crums of bread,

on the lame, he fent it to the poore which flood without the gate, waiting for an almes. Wee

and alwaies powred butter vpon them. We would not tafte at any hand of these their meats, but fed of that, which our Ambassadour had caused to be brought for vs, as I said before. And like as we could not eate of their meats, so neither would they take of ours. But as for their wine in truth it walked about with great furie, and the wife of Angoteraz dined hard by vs. vron fuch a Table as we yied, and we tent vnto her of our meats, and we could not fee whether the tafted thereof, because there was a Curtaine betweene her and vs, but in drinking she brauely seconded vs. After all other diffies, a breaft of Raw Beefe was brought to the board, which we did not once touch, but Angeteraz fed thereof, as if he had eaten Marchpane or Comfits after dinner. After Raw Beefe. we had dined, and given thankes vnto Angoteraz, we returned home vnto our lodging.

57. On Munday morning, we went to take our leaue of Angoteraz, & the Frier led vs through a mightie thicke Wood . To that we knew not whither we went, but wee came to the place 50 where we were floned: and hither he would needs goe to fee Iustice done. We were eight ypon Mules, and fifteene on foote, and comes to our lodging in the house of one of them, which were the principall that made the affault, and we found them all fled vnto a Mountaine neere adjoyning, but there was good prouision for our felues, and for our Mules. This night the Frier returned, and brought with him a couple of Mules, one Oxe, and eight pieces of Cloath, which they had given him, in recompense of the blood which they had shed. And the Justice ysed in this Countrey, is to take the goods of Malefactors; as namely, their Oxen, and their Mules. These places are called . Angua, and Mastano, and belong to the Patriarke Abuna

Heere we began to enter into a pleasant and delectable Countrey, lying among very high Afertile and Mountaines, but infinitely peopled, at the foore thereof, with great Townes, and very Noble populous Churches, which was tilled and fowed with all kind of Corne. Here we faw infinite flore of In- Country. dian Figges, Limons, Orenges, and Citrons, without number, and Pastures with an incredible multitude of Cattle, And because I trauailed another time this way with the forestid Frier,

Ttttt 3

fonnes all fus-

which then was called the Embassadour, and stayed a Saturday and a Sunday, in the house of an honourable Canon, and every day went to Church with him, where wee law very great num-Eight hundred her of Canons, We asked him, how many Canons there were in all; He told vs, about eight hundred. We inquired farther, what revenues they had! He told vs, very little among fo ma. ny : We replyed vnto him, Why are you fo many, feeing your revenue is fo small ! He answe. red vs, that at the beginning when these Churches were first founded, they were not many. but that in processe of time they were increased : because that all the sonnes of the Canons, as many as doe descend of them, become all Canons: and this custome is observed in the Kines Churches : and that the Prete lanni, as often as he buildeth any new Church , fendeth for Canons hither, and so he diminisheth their number, as hee did when he built the Church, called 10 Machen Celacem, when he tooke away two hundred, and that in this fame Signiory there were eight Churches, wherein were about foure thousand Canons: and that if the Prete Lami fould not take them away for the furnishing of these new Churches, and those of his Court, they in eight Chur- should be driven to eate one another.

Foure thou-

Of the exceeding huge Mountaine, whereupon the Sonnes of PRETE IANNI are kept, where we were almost stoned to death : The greatnesse, quard. manner of fending, punishments; Of the PRETES

The hill, by fome called HE foresaid Valley, reacheth vnto a most huge Mountaine, whereon the Sonnes of Prete lammare continually kept, as it were in prison. And they have accorded in their old Bookes, that in the daies of a King of Ethiopia, called Abraham, it was reuealed vnto him one night in a dreame, That if he defired to keepe his

Thus ancient fembed their denifes to Deity, as Abraham, heire hkewi'e, to fecure himfelfe, perhaps

Realme in quiet and obedience, he should shut vp his Sonnes, which were many, in a Mountain. and fuffer none of them to come abroad, fauing him which he would have to be his Succeffor, 10 and that this order should alwaies be observed, as a thing which came from God, otherwise E. thiopia being large and great, some part thereof would fall to infurrection, and would bee disobedient vnto the heire, or elfe perchance would kill him. The King flanding doubtfull concerning this relation, where such a Mountaine might be found; it was againe reuealed vnto him. That he should fend to fearch out all the Countrey, till he found a place where they should finde Goates youn the cragges and cliffes of Rockes, so high, that it should feeme they would fall downe, and that in this place he should shut them vp. Which being done, this Mountaine was found out, which is so huge, that they say a man must spend many daies in compassing the foots

This Mountaine is exceeding freepe, round about from the top to the bottome, fo that it feemeth to be a wall that rifeth vpright, and to a man that looketh vpward, the sky seemeth to rest upon it. It hath onely three entrances or gates, and no more, whereby a man may ascend up to it, and of these I saw one, vpon this occasion. We came from the Sea vpon a time, to goe to the Court, and one of those Servants of Prete launi, whom they call Calacem, was our guide, which was not very well acquainted with the Countrey, and when we fought to lodge in a Village the Inhabitants would not receive vs, because they faid, It belonged to a Sister of Prete I anni, and we were inforced to trauaile forward: the night was farre spent, and this guide began to ride a great pace, and hafted vs forward, faying; That he would bring vs to a good lodging-I caused Lonez de Gama, which had a good Mule, to ride in fight of the said Calacem, and my felfe followed him, and the Embassadour and the rest kept me in fight. And having travailed 2- 50 boue three miles out of our way, toward the Mountaine where the Sonnes of Prete Launi are kept, as foone as we were perceived by the trotting of our horses, in a moment there allembled to great a multitude of the people of all those Townes, that they had almost killed vs with preaching this stones, and we were inforced to duide our selues. The Embassadour stayed behind, and I went forward, because I could not otherwise choose, to a place where it rained stones on all sides, and the night was exceeding darke, and because they should not perceive me, I alighted, and gave

my Mule to a Slaue of mine. It was my chance, that a Warder of this Mountaine, a very honest man, rode next vnto mee, who enquired of me what I was, I told him I was a Gazia Negu, that is to fay, a stranger of the King. This man causing me strait-way to ride neere him , held one of his armes ouer my 60 head, faying vnto me, Ate fra, Ate fra; that is to fay, Feare not, feare not; and brought meinto an Orch-yard neere vnto his house, where stood many long pieces of Timber set vp against certaine Trees, under which he caused me to goe, because they were in manner of a Cabin, where being as I thought in securitie, I caused a Candle to be lighted, and immediatly they beganne to

raine stones, whereupon I suddenly caused it to bee blowne out. This honest man afterward brought me to his house, and gaue me a very good Supper, to wit, rosted Hennes, and Bread and Wine: and on the morning taking me by the hand, he led me to thew me the way whereby they goe vp into the Mountaine and Rockes, which were rent on enery fide, and there flood a verie Penaltie of high gate, which is kept thut, within the which is a very great Garrison of Souldiers. And hee entring the told mee, that if any man should presume to enter, bee should suddenly have his hands and his gate. feet cut off, and his eyes bored out, and that wee were not in fault for comming so neere vnto that gate, but that they which were our guides deferued to be punished.

59. The manner of the fending of the Sonnes of the Prete into this Mountaine, is this : that Manner of 10 whereas all the Prete Lami, the Predeceffors of this Danid were wont to have fue or fixe Wives, fending the and many Sonnes by them, at their death the first-borne did inherit. Others fay, that he inher rited which seemed to be most fit, and of most understanding : and others, hee which had most Followers, and greatest authoritie. Touching this point, I will fay, that which I have heard spoken by many Courtiers of experience and wildome. King Alexander, the Grand-father of this King Alexander prefent King David, dyed without Sonnes , and although hee had Daughters, yet notwithfranding the great men of the Court went vnto this Mountaine, and feacht from thence Nabu his Brother, which was the Father of this David. This Nahu brought with him from the Mountaine a lawfull Sonne of his, which was a very noble and valiant Prince, but he was fomething head-firong and proud. After he was fetled in the Kingdome he had other Wives, and Sonnes, 20 and Daughters, and after his death they would have made his eldelt Sonne King, which came from the Mountaine with his Father, but it was objected, that because he was in proud and ob-

stinate, he would intreat all the people badly.

Others were of opinion, that he could not inherite, being borne in captinitie, where he had no right of fuccession, and so they made this David King, which was the first borne, after his David, the prefather was made King, and was eleuen yeares old. The Patriagke Abunu Mark did tell mee, tent Prete lami that he and Queene Helene made him King, because they had at their commandement, all the succeeded in great Lords of the Court; and fo also it seemeth vnto me, that next after the Title of first borne, the Kingdome. the adherences, friendships, and treasures may doe much. The rest of the sonnes of Nahu, the Brethren of the faid David, which were young, were sent to bee kept in the faid Moun-30 tains with that eldeft Sonne of his, which was brought with him from thence : and fo all the Sonnes of the Prete have beene vied from the time of that King Abraham vnto this prefent day. They fay it is very cold on the top of this Mountaine, and that it is round, and that it The coldnesse cannot be compaffed about in lesse then fafteene dayes. And in my judgement, it appeareth lo and greatness to be. In this part where our way lay we translled almost two dayes, and then we left it, which of this Moune reacheth vnto the Kingdome of Amera; and Bogamidei, which confineth upon Wilm, which taine. Kingdome is very farre from hence.

Vpon this Mountaine are other Mountaines which make certaine Vallies, wherein are very Amera, & Remany Rivers and Fountaines, and Fields which are manured by the Inhabitants. There is also gamidi. 40 a Valley betweene two Mountaines, which is very firong, fo that by no meanes a man can goe out of the fame, because the passage is closed up with exceeding strong gates, and in this Valley which is very great, and bath many Townes and Dwellings in it, they keepethole which are of the Bloud-Royall, and it is but lately fince they have found this meanes to keepe them in the faid Valley, thinking that they be fafer here : but the Kings Grand-children and Nephewes. and such as are almost forgotten are not kept with so great a Guard, notwithstanding, this Mountaine is guarded round about with exceeding great Garrisons, and grand Captaines; and the fourth part of the people which come vnto the Court are of the Captaines and Garrisons of this Mountaine, which have their Lodging separate from all others, neither doe they come to any other, nor others vnto them, because they will not have any bodie else to know the seio crets of the faid Mountaine. And when they come to the Court of the Prete, immediately hee fendeth his mellage to them, and every man with-draweth himfelfe, and all other bufineffe whatforner crafeth, while their Affaires are handled.

60. Touching the flate of these Sons of the Prete, I faw a Frier of thirtie yeares of age, which Secretice on a was brought vnto the presence of the Prese, and about two hundred men with him, who was Frier, and 200, faul to have brought a Letter to Prete Jamii, from those of the Mountaine; and these two hundred men, for a melloye form men were part of the Garrisons of the same. They beat this Frier every beher day, and in like this mountain, fort they beate these men, divided into two parts; and that day when they beate the Frier, they beate the one halfe of them, and alwayes they begun with the Frier, and all the reft were continually prefent, and fall they inquired of the Frier who gauehim that 60 Letter, and for what cause, and whether hee had ever carryed any more Letters, and of what In this Coun-Monaftery be was, and where he was made Frier. The naughtie wretch answered, that fixteene trey they vie yeares past he came out of the Mountaine, and that then the Letter was delivered vnto him, and not to write that he neuer after returned thither, and that he neuer durft deliver the same till now, that the vypon their Deuill had prouoked him thereunto. And this might be true, feeing it is not the manner in this day not Countrey, to put any date unto their Letters, neither of yeare, nor moneth, nor day. The men moneth.

were demanded nought elfe, but how they had let the faid Frier get out.

Manner of beating and crueltie.

1056

The manner of beating them was after this fort, they throw the Malefactor on the ground youn his belly, and bind his hands vnto two flakes, and a cord about both his legs, and two men hold this cord and draw it out strait, and two Ministers of Justice stand by, one at the head, and another at the feet, neither do they alwayes firike them, but betweene whiles, for if they fhould beat them continually, they would die, they lay on fo cruelly. I faw them carrie one away, and before they could couer him with a cloth, he gaue up the ghost; whereof the Prete being informed (because this execution was done before his Tents) he commanded that the dead man should be carryed backe vinto the place where he was beaten, and that they which were heaten, should Saturday and lay their heads upon the feet of the dead corps. This execution lafted a fortnight, wherein this order of beating the Frier, and halfe of the Guard from two dayes, to two dayes neuer ceafed, to faning onely youn Saturday and Sunday, whereon they punish no Malefactors.

Sunday free from executi-Escape of the Pretes Brother. and what fol-

his eves out

doc really.

nor to their

During the time of our abode in this Country, a Brother of the Prete, of fixteene yeares of age, fled out of the Mountaine, and came at length to his Mothers house, which was Queene Helene. and was Wife to the Father of this King. And because no man might receive any that came out of the Mountaine upon paine of life, the Mother would not harbour her Sonne, but tooke him and brought him to Prete lami, who asked him why hee fled away, which answered, became that he was starged for nunger; and that he came thither for nothing elfe, but onely to give him witting thereof, because no bodie else would bring him this message. It was given out, that the Prete apparelled him in rich array, and gaue him much Gold and cloth of Silke, and fenthim backe into the Mountaine. It was also given out through all the Court, that this yong man fled, thinking to escape away with the Portugals. This Nobleman which fled and was sent backe a- 20 gaine into the Mountaine, while we abode with the Ambassadour of Prete Iami. which came into Portugall, in the Countrey of Ludibella, (where the Churches are which are hewen into the Rockes) pailed that way with a Calazen, and with a great traine of people, which conducted him yoon a Mide, and he rode all coursed over with blacke clothes, so that no part of him might be feene, neither could any part of the Mule bee feene, faue her eyes and eares. It was reported that he fled away the fecond time in a Friers Weed with another Frier, and that this Frier his companion discovered him the same day, that they should have departed out of the Countrey of Prete lanni, and so they led him away Priloner with the Frier, neither would they suffer them to speake to any hodie, and two men alwayes went hard by his Mule. Every bodie reported, that hee should bee put to death, or have his eyes put out. I know not what became of him.

We heard reported of another, which would have field out of the Mountaine, and hid hims Prete Jesti had felfe under many boughes and leaves of trees, and certaine Husbandmen which paffed that way. feeing the faid boughes ftirre, went to behold what the matter was, and laid hold on him, and out, for dying the Guard, affoone as they had him in their clutches post ont his eyes, and yet he lineth till this prefent, and is great Vincle to this Prete lanui. It is reported that there are great numbers of the Bloud-Royall in this Mountaine, whom they call Ifraelites, or the Sonnes of Danid, for they are all of the fame Kindred and Blond that Prete lann is of. In the fame Mountaine are many Churches and Monasteries builded having many Priests and Friers in them, and many In-

habitants which never come downe out of that place.

61. The Prete Lormi hath no Kinsfolkes at all, for those which came of the Mothers side, are not taken nor named for his Kinsfolkes, and those of the Fathers fide are shut yo in the faid Moun-This commeth taine, and held as dead men. And although they marrie, and have great flore of children there, yet none of the male-children may come forth, except (as I have faid before) the Prete die with-Ottomen polieie: here civil- out heire : then they fetch out of that place the next of Kindred, and fittelf to governe. Some Is to kill all of the Females come out to be married, but are not esteemed as the Kinswomen, Daughters, or but one as they Sifters of the Prete, but are honoured during the life of their Father or Brother, and as foone as he dyeth, they become like to any other Ladie. All of ve faw a Ladie in the Court, which was the Females of the Daughter of a Prete, which albeit, when thee went abroad, had a Canopie carried ouer her, yet notwithftanding, she had a very simple Traine. We knew also a Sonne of hers, which was go in as meane a cale as any poore foot-man, fo that in a very thort space the fame of his Parentage was extinouished.

Charges of this Royall

This King Danid which now liveth, at our departure had two fonnes, and three daughters, to whom he allotted out great reuenues, which he intended to beliew a pon them, and the place was shewed me, where one of them possessed these remenues : but the report was generall, that as soone as the father should decease, and that one of them was made King, the other should be fent vnto the Mountaine, whither hee should carrie nothing but his person with him, And it was told me, that the third part of the charges which the Preie is at, is spent in the keeping of these Ifraelites, to whom he maketh better allowance, then any of his predecessors have done And befides the great revenues which belong vnto them, he fendeth them much Gold, cloth of 60 Silke, and fine clothes, and much Salt, which runneth for current money in these Kangdomes. And at our comming thither, having presented him with our Pepper, wee vnderstood of a certaintie, that he fent the one halfe thereof vnto them , willing them to reloyce and be merrie, because the King of Portugall, his father, had fent to visite him, and had fent him that Pepper-

Wee underflood also of a suretie, and as eye-witnesses in many places, that Prete lame hath great lands and poffeffions, manured by his owne flaves and Oxen; and that these Slaves are apparelled by the King, and are exempted from other people, and marrie together, and are alwaies Generation of parelled by the King, and are exempled from other people. The whole reuenues of these Poliestons which are about the Mountaine are carried vp stance. into it, the renemes of other places goe vnto the Monasteries , Churches , and the poore . and specially to certaine poore and aged Gentlemen , which in times past have beene in gouernment, and at this prefentare out of authoritie. Twife also hee fent of this Wheat vnto our companie, to wit, once fue hundred burthens in Caxumo, and fue hundred more in Aquate. neither keepeth hee any part of these possessions vnto himselfe, but bestoweth all in manner 10 abouefaid.

Of the end of the Kingdome of Augote, and of the beginning of the Kingdome of Amara, and of divers Lakes; the Church Machan Celacen; Endowments of Churches: Of ABRAHAM, Strange trenches and gates in the entrance to Xoa: and what hapned before the PRETE called for them.

Eturning to bur Voyage, I fay, that wee went along the foot of this Moun-taine by a Rivers fide, and the Country is very goodly and faire, fowed with the third with Mill and other Corne of the Country, but there is very little Wheat.

There are many Villages on both fides of this River, and on the fide of the Mountaine, and at the end of the Valley we left this River, and began to find a wooddie Coun- The Leftites try full of flones, Here are no Mountaines, but certaine small Valles sowed with Wheat and Bar- call this Lake lev. and Pulse of the Country and here endeth the Kingdome of Angote, and the Kingdome of A- Aiths. mara beginneth. In the beginning whereof towards the East, 182 great Lake, whereby we lod-30 ged, which is eight miles long, and three miles broad. It hath a little Iland in the middeft, and a Monatterie of Saint Stephen with many Friers, wherein are many Limons, Oranges, and Citrons, and to paffe ouer to the Monasterie, they vie a raft made of Timber and Amonasterie Bull-rushes, with foure great Gourds, and they make it in this former : They take foure in a Lake. Poles of wood, and lay Bull-rushes vpon them, flanding vpon these Bull-rushes, being very well bound together, and upon these they lay other foure Poles well bound and fastened, and at enery corner there is a great Gourd, and in this manner they paffe over to the Ile. This Lake runneth not but in Winter time, when the water overfloweth, and it iffueth out at Sea-horfes. two places. There are in this Lake certaine great beafts which they call Gomerae, which are Sca.horfes, and also a fish like vnto a Congre, which is very great and long, and hath the most 10 dayed, well 40 mil-shapen head that may be imagined, made after the manner of a Toad, and the skinne vpon tasked fish. the head thereof feemeth to be like the skinne of a Snake, and all the rest of the bodie is smooth

like a Congre, and it is the fattest and most delicate fish that is in the world. There are great ftore of Villages about this Lake, which reach downe to the brinke of the water, and there are fifteene Xinnetes or Captainships, and most pleasant fields of Wheat and Barley. We have seene Many Lakes. many Lakes in these Countreys, but this is the greatest of all that I have seene. The Countrey is very faire and fruitfull.

Wee trauelled from hence aboue fixteene miles, through a Countrey very well fowed with Millet , and replenished with Fountaines. The three and twentieth of September, wee went from thence to a Towne, called Azzel, which is feated upon a small Hill, betweene two Rivers, Azzel 50 and all the field was fowed with Wheat, Millet, and all kind of pulse, and it is a place wherein a great Faire is kept. Beyond one of these Rivers there is a Towne of Moores, rich and of great trafficke, as of Slaues, cloth of Silke, and of all other forts of merchandife, as it is in the Towne of Manadeli vpon the Confines of Tigremahon. These Moores pay great tribute to the Prete, and here the Christians and the Moores are very familiar together, for they bring them water, they wash their cloth, and daily in this place the Christian women keepe companie with the Moores, of which their doing we thought not well. Wee stayed all Saturday and Sunday at the Moores foot of this Towne, where all night our men fought with their Lances against the Tygres, Tygres. which would have carried away our Mules, and flept not a winke. The next day, we travelled through a plaine Countrey, well peopled, and well manured for the space of fixe miles. Then 60 wee alcended up an high Mountaine, without all kind of Rockes and Woods, but was all plow-

ed and fowen, and reited our felues about noon-tide. While I stayed here, ten or twelue men of account, and our Interpreter were with me, and wee began to discourse of the heighth of this Mountaine whereon we flood, and the waste Countrey which we viewed with our eyes. They shewed me the Mountaine where the Sonnes of the Prete are kept, which framed not past

twelve miles from vs. and we might fee the Rocke which was all ragged on every fide which ftretcheth fo farre toward the River Nilus, that wee could not discerne the end thereof, and je was fo high, that the Mountaine where we were, feemed to bee under the foot thereof. Here they informed me particularly of the great Garrisons, which were maintained for the kieping of the Kings Sonnes, and of the abundance of victuals and apparell which they had . They told me moreouer, that this high Mountaine whereon we stood, divided the Countrey where the Millen growes, from that where the Wheate groweth, and that from hence forward we should find no more Millet, but Wheate and Barley.

62. We travelled over the top of this Mountaine, having a plaine way above nine miles, and on enery fide were fields fowed with Wheat and Barley. Here wee found another Lake but not Another Lake. fo great, it might be some three miles long, and two miles abroad. Wee lodged in a field all full Great hurdull of goodly pasture, where we found such a multitude of Flies, which were very great, that we thought they would have killed vs. This field was not fowed, because it was halfe ouer-flowne Want of skill with water, for they know no meanes to condeigh away the water, and cause it to passe downe and industrie. from the Mountaine.

We began afterward to enter into a Countrey, wherein the day time it was very hot, and in

Cold nights.

Nakedneffe.

the night exceeding cold, and we faw the Inhabitants weare about them before their prinities a piece of an Oxe-hide. The women likewise weare a piece of cloth twice as bigge as the mens was, and couered as much as they could therewith, yet the greater part was feene neuertheleffe. the rest of their bodie was all naked. Their haire was divided in two parts, the one hanging downe to their shoulders, and the other to their eares, and they say, that these Lands belong you to the Trumpetters of Prete lanni. A little out of the way is a great Wood of Trees wilkindwine to vs , but exceeding high , neere vnto which there is a Church of many Canons , built by a Rich Church. King that lyes there buried. Haung passed this day ouer very huge Mountaines, we came to our lodging being gotten out of them, at the enterance of a passing goodly field.

The fixe and twentieth of September, in the morning we travelled through the faid Cham? paigne field, descending still for the space of six miles, and came to a faire and mightie Church called Machan Celacen, which fignifieth, The Trinitie, which we faw afterward with Prete In. ni, when he remoued his Fathers bones. This Church hath two great circuits, one compaffed a bout with an high wall of plankes, and the other paled round about, and the paled circuit, contained about two miles in compasse. We went thither very joyfull, thinking to have seene the faid Church, but when we came neere it within a Croffe-bow-shoot, two men came vnto vs to cause vs to light : for this is the custome when any man commeth neere to a Church And when we were come to the gate of this circuit, they would neither fuffer vs to enter, nor yet the Frier Inhospitall ho- that was our guide, and with their fifts they thrust him in the breft, telling him, that he had no authoritie to bring vs in.

This Champaigne field, and the fituation of the Church are very beautifull : for all the Coun-

the yeare here Corne is reaped and fowed, fo that alwayes here is fome Corne ripe, and fome 40

64. After we were passed through these Champions, we travelled in greater fields about thir-

tie fix miles Eastward, where they shewed vs a Church of S. George, wherein the Grandfather

of this Prete Janni lyeth buried. Heere they informed vs. that the ancient Kings which came

out of the Kingdomes of Barnagaffo and Tigremabon, when they had their first beginning, en-

the Countrey of Tigrai, and so through Angote they came into the Kingdome of Amara, but

and here they dwelt a long time, & builded many Churches and houses, endowing the same with

great Revenues, neither is there any foan of ground which belongeth not to the Churches. And

Nabu the Father of this Prete began the Church of Machan Celacen, and his Sonne afterward

larged their Kingdomes through these Countries of the Moores and Gentiles, and passing through 10

trey is manured for the space of ten or twelve miles, neither is there any one spanne of ground.

Goodly coun- which is not manured and full of all kind of Corne, except Millet: and in all monethes of

greene. On both fides of this Church, runneth an exceeding faire River, without any Trees growing on the bankes, and they fetch water out of the same to water the fields, and out of certaine hils adiopning, descend also many Fountaines of water, which water all the Countrey. There are likewise many Houses and Towns, the one separated from the other with their Chur-Churches ches; for wherefoeuer the King hath a Church, there also must be Churches for the Hubandmen

Royall and vulgar, Saint Georges Church. Beginnings o this Kingome All belongs to before they came thit her is the Kingdome of Xoa, wherin are certaine exceeding great trenches,

Taffi'a.

All Churches no Monaste-Priefts ferue the King, and Inflice executed on themfurnished and endowed it. This Realme hath no more the name of a Signiorie, for the title thereof was Amara Taffila, which fignifieth King of Amara, as Xoa Tafila, King of Xoa. And when the bones of this Nahu was removed, into the faid Church of Machan Celacen, at which Translation we Portugals were present. This present Prete finished, and confirmed the Donations made of all this Signiory vnto this Church. There is neuer a Monaftery in all this Kingdome, but all are Churches. The Canons and Priefts of which, and those of the other Churches of the rest of the Kingdomes before spoken of, serue the Prete in all services, saving in war. And in these Countries Iustice is executed universally, upon the Canons, Priests, and Friers. And the Frier which guided vs for the conuciance of our fluife, if he were not obeyed, caused

both Friers and Priests to be beaten. As we trauelled through these mightie Champaine fields. we thought wee passed through a Sea, being not able to see any Mountaine at all. The last of Huge Cham-September, we came to a small Village, where was a Church of our Ladie. Heere toward the paines. East, beginne certaine ragged and strong Mountaines, with certaine Vallies so wonderfull deepe. that a man would thinke they descend downe to Hell, neither would any man easily beleeue how deepe they be. And even as the Mountaines, where the Sonnes of the Prete are kept, are Horrible Val. Graggy from the foote vinto the top, fo these are craggy, for a very great depth, in some places lies, twelve or twelve miles downe; in others fifteene, and in others leffe, about nine miles: and it is faid, that fifteenemiles these Vallies stretch vnto Nilm, which is very fatre from this place toward the West. Wee deepe. 10 knew perfectly, that they firetch vnto the Countries of the Moores, where they bee not fo rough and wilde as they be here. In the bottome of these Vallies, are great Townes and places Great Hairs

manured, and infinite number of great Apes are there, which are hairy on the fore-part of their Apes

65. The first of October, 1520. we travelled still through a plaine Countrey, till we came to these Vallies in which our trauell wee found an infinite number of small Lakes and Fountaines. for the frace of twelve miles, and came to our lodging in a certaine place, where wee were to palle ouer these low bottomes. The third of October, having travelled two miles, we came to certaine gates upon a craggy Rocke, leaving one of them on the right fide; and the other on the left, and it was so narrow, hard by these gates, that with much adoe a Cart could passe upon Gates; see the the paliges which the Mountaine made, and they are flopped vp, where thele Gates are lo like inflated fleright in earry Valley; and paffing through this gate, you deficend downe a Speares length definition and a narrow way, made as freepe as Dart in the middle, to that you can paffe it neither on the designored through a narrow way, made as freepe as Dart in the middle, to that you can paffe it neither on the designored. foote, nor on horse-back, and this way is softeepe and down-right, that a man cannot go downe valefic it be on all foure; and it may eatily bee perceived, that it was made by arte of man, for the fafe keeping of that passage, and after we were passed through this narrow way, wee trauelled for a certaine space, by a way made almost as steepe as a Dart, for the space of six spans, and on both fides are exceeding great downe-fals, and if I had not feene our Mules and people paffe before me, I would have tworne that Goates could not have paffed that way : and fo wee our Mules before vs. as thinking them loft, and wee came after them. This rough way la-30 fteth the space of a Crosse-bow shor, and this place is "called Aquifagi, which signifieth, The Aquifagi, or

death of Affes. They pay Toll there. Many times afterward we paffed by thefe gates, and neuer Death of Affes. came that way, but we found Mules and Oxen dead. Befides this paffage, there are fixe miles more of very bad way, all of Rocke, defending downe-ward. In the midft whereof is a Caue digged into the Rocke, out of the top whereof; water continually droppeth, which continuall dropping, maketh proportions in the stone of divers formes.

At the end of these size miles, we found a great River, which is called Anecheta, wherein, The River of as they fay, is store of great and goodly Fish. Afterward we trauelled fill up the hill for three Anatheta. miles space, vitall we come to a little gate, which when we had passed, we found another Ri-Other Gates. 40 uer, where are certaine other gates, which are not vied. And they which paffe these bottomes

and deep Vallies, come hither to their lodging, because they cannot passe in one day from one end to the other. Heere the Frier which guided vs, vsed such crueltie towards a Xuum or Captaine, A begger on as a man would not have vied to a Moore. This Captaine fent not his men to carrie our fluffe fo horfe-backer. to foone as he should, therefore he destroyeth certaine fields of Beanes, and vtterly speyled them, of which Beanes they live in these Vallies, because here groweth nothing but Millet and Beanes. And because we spake against his doing, he said; That this was the Law of the Countrey, and daily he caused many of them which carried our stuffe to be beaten, and sometimes he tooke away their Mules, Oxen, and pieces of Cloath, faying, That wholoeuer ferued badly,

was fo to be vied.

The fourth of October, we trauelled ft. Il by these bad waies, and came to a River, by which TheRiver of we lodged, which is very great and faire, and is called Gemma, and aboundeth with Fith, as the Gemma Countrey people fay : and these Rivers ioyne together, and fall into Nilue. Wee descended downe this Mountaine for fixe miles space, at the end whereof we found other gates, where we also payed for our passage. From these gates we came to our lodging in a Champaine field, where we found no Vallies nor any thing elfe, but all was plaine & euen ground. The distance between both the gates aforesaid, is about lifteene miles, and here is the diuntion of the Kingdomes of Amara and Xoa. And these gates are called Baba Bassa, which signifiesh, The new Land. In these Baba Bassa Vallie; and rough grounds, are infinite numbers of all forts of Fowles.

ante and rough grounds, are minuted and rough Champaines, not farre diffant from the faid Billibarnos, 60 Rockes and deepe Vallies, and we lodged in the mid-way towards a Monasterie, called Bilibranos, whereof I will speake that which I saw Prete lanni doe three times. The first was, when he came to performe a yearely folemnitie for a Prelate of that Monasterie, which was deceased, Ichee, the sewhose name was Gianes, and was taken for a Saint. His Title was Ichee, and he is the chiefest cond, Prelate Prelate of all Eshiopia, faving the Patriarke Abuna Marke. The fecond time, hee came to the of all Eshiopia,

election of another lebee, whole name was lacob, a man of wonderfull holy life, which fome and next to the Parriarke,

times had beene a Moore. This Ichee was our great friend, and he told vs, that he wasadmonithed in a night by a Vision, that he was not in the right way, and that hee should repaire vnto the Patriarke Abuna Marke, who received him graciously, and made him a Christian, and inflructed him in all points of our Faith, as if he had beene his Sonne. Ichee, in the tongue of Tigrai, signifieth an Abbot, which is vied in the Kingdome of Barnagafo, and Tigremahon. In this Champaine through which we trauailed, were certaine small houses, made almost under-ground and so were the vards likewise round about them, where they keep their Cattel, & they said they builded their houses so low, because of the huge Winds, which are rife in those parts. Here wee faw the people badly apparelled, but such store of Oxen, Mules, and Mares, as it is

Taharun.

67. The Wednelday following, we found a better Countrey, fowed with Wheate and Barley, and in some of these fields wee faw some Corne ripe, some newly cut downe, and other which seemed newly to be sowne. This Countrey is called Tabagun, and is very well peopled with many great Townes, and hath infinite heards of all kinds of Cattell, to wit, of Oxen. Horses, Mules, and Sheepe. In these Countries many are sicke of Agues, vnto whom, as wee Their Physick, perceived, they ministred no remedy, expecting onely the helpe of Nature, and if any man hath paine in his head, they let him bloud in the head; and if he be licke in his breaft, fides. or

shoulders, they seare him with a red-hot Iron, as we vie to seare our Cattell. On Wednesday, to our great comfort, we began to behold a farre off, the Campe and Paullions of Prete Ianni, which feemed to be infinite, and to couer all the fields, and heere we lodged. On Thursday, we made no great journey, From Friday at noone, we rested all Saturday and Sun. 10 day in a little Towne, where there was a new Church , which was not yet painted, (for they paint all their Churches) neither was it very curiously wrought, which was called Auriata, thas is to fay, The Church of the Apostles, and they faid it belonged to the King, vnto whose Tents was some three miles distance : and from this place vnto the Church where Abuna Marke was lodged, is a mile and a halfe, which Abuna Marke is his great Patriarke.

Campe. Adrugaz.

68. There came vnto vs a great Lord, who by his office was called Advagaz, that is to fay, Great Mafter of the Houlhold, who told vs, that the Prete lanni vnderstanding of our comming, had fent him to guard vs, and prouide vs of all things that wee stood in need of, and streight-way willed vs to take Horse and goe with him , and supposing hee would have led vs to the Court, we prepared our felues. He caused vs to goe backe againe, not the same way which we came, but made vs compasse certaine small hils, and turned vs backe againe about three miles, willing vs not to take it in ill part, because Prete lanni came that way whether we went, as indeed hee did : we saw also sixe or seuen men , mounted vpon very goodly Horses, ride skirmishing and playing before vs, having their faces wholly covered, fo that one could not bee difcerned from the other, and many followed after them voon Mules, and wee judged that this Canalcade was made of purpose for our fakes, because the Prete was desirous to see vs, and they led vs on the backe-fide of certaine small hils, where this Gentleman was lodged in his Tent, and caused vs also to be placed hard by him, in another goodly Tent, and saw vs plentifully prouided of all things, which we stood in need of. We were not farre distant from the place, where 40 Prete lanni himfelfe was lodged, the Frier also came and lodged neere vs. On Wednelday, in the morning, they brought vs another goodly great Tent, which was white and round, faving, That Prete lanni fent vs the fame, and that no man might have the like Tent, faving the Prete and the Churches, and that himfelfe lodged in the same when he transiled; and so we stayed vntill Friday, without understanding what we should doe, but were alwaies well prouided of vi-Quals. The Gentleman which guarded vs, and the Frier likewite admonished vs to have a good Eaft, The cause eye vnto our stuffe, because in that Countrey there were many Theeues; and the Frankes, that is. The White men, which were in the Court, gaue vs the like warning, and told vs that there were Captaines, and others like Toll-masters ouer the said Theenes, which payed a Tribute to Prete Ianni, of fuch goods as were stelne.

White round Theeuesallowed. White men. called Franks. as all Europe ans arein the the expeditions of thefe Nations (the most of which were rrankes) to the holy

> How the Embassadour and we were called for by the Commandement of PRETE IANNI, and of the order which we found, and of the State and Maiestie of PRETE IANNI. His conference, allowance, remoue; The Embassadours Audience.

The Portugals

N Friday, the twentieth of October, about three of the clocke, the Frier came 60 vnto vs, and told vs in great hatle, that the Prete lanni had called for vs. The Embaffadour commanded all the goods to be laden, which the Captaine Generall had fent, and charged vs to put our felies in order, which we did in very good fort by the help of God, and many people as well on toote as on horfe-backe, came to

CHAP. S. S. 11, Pretes moueable Citie of white Tents. Feafinal Red Tents. 1071

waite youn vs. with whom we came in good order vnto a Gate, from whence we beheld on all fides, an infinite number of Paulions and Tents, like vnto a Citie, and those which belonged The Pretes to Prete lami, were fet up in a wide field, all White, (as I have fard, it is their generall vie) and moucable ditie before the same was a very faire Red Tent', which they say, is neuer fet up, but on daies of ot white Tenta great Feafts, or of some great audience. Before the faid Red Tent, were two rankes of Ar- The Red Feaches erected, couered with White and Red Cloath of Silke, to wit; one arch couered with shuall Tent. Red, and another with Silke, and they were not covered, but had the Cloath of Silke round about them, as it were a piece of Wood, which supporteth a Crosse; having a Stole wrapped about it : and fo these Arches stood on one front , and were about twentie : their bignesse and to breadth was like vnto the arch of a little Cloyffer, and one ranke was dittant from another.

about a stones cast. Here were an infinite number of people placed together, which to my indgement feemed Fortiethers. to be about fortie thousand persons, and all of them stood in good order on either titles with. sand persons. out ftirring, and the people which were belt apparelled, were next vnto the arches, among whom were certaine Canons and Church-men very honourable, with great hoods on their heads, not like vnto Miters, but with certaine sharpe points on the top, painted with Colours, and were of Cloath of Silke, and Crimzon, and other people in very rich array, before whom flood foure Horfes, to wit, two on the one fide, and two on the other, which were fadled, and richly couered with Embroydered Cloath downe to the ground: the Ar-20 mour which they ware voder the same, was not to bee seene: These Horses had high Thegreat

Crownes vpon their heads, which mounted about their eares, and went downe to the magnificence Bits of their Bridle, with great Plumes of Feathers of fundry Colours, and vnder the of Prete iami faid Horses stood many other good Horses, sadled and couered with Silke and Veluet, and the head of each one was equall, and as it were in order with the people: next vnto these Horses, behind them (because the throng of people was so great) stood many honourable persons, which were apparelled onely from the girdle downe-ward, with very fine and White Cotton cloath. The rest of the people which were basely apparelled , stood betweene them and the reft. It is a Custome, that before the King and great men of Commaundement, there alwaies

20 goe men which carrie Whips, that is, A little staffe with a large Thong of Leather, and when they lash in the Ayre, they make a great noyse, to make the people gine backe. Aboue one hundred of these Fellowes came to meete vs , all apporelled in certaine small lackets of Silke, which made fich a noyle with lashing; that one man could not heare another. The men on Horse-backe, and voon Mules which were with vs, lighted a farre off, and wee were led on Horse-backe yet a great way farther, and lighted within a Crosse-bow shot of the great Tent, and here they which conducted vs, beganne to doe their accustomed reverence, Reverence, and we likewife, because wee were so instructed, which is, to stoope downe with the right how done,

Likewise, in this place, within a Crosse-bow shoote, there met ve at least fixtie men, which 40 were, as it were, Porters with Maces, and they came halte running, for fo they are wont to runne with all Meffages which the Prete lendeth. They were apparelled in white lackets. of good Cloath of Silke, and vpon their shoulders they had certaine skinnes, of Roane or Tawny colour, very hairie, which they faid, were Lyons skinnes, and reached downe to the ground. And voon those skinnes they had certaine Chaines of Gold, rudely wrought, with Iewels fet in them, and likewise other Iewels about their neckes. They weare certaine Silke Girdles of divers Colours, in breadth and making, like to the Girts of Horses, fauing that they were long with Flakes and Taffels downe to the ground, and they went halfe on the one fide, and halfe on the other, and waited vpon ws to the first ranke of the arches, where

But before we came to the faid Arches, there stood four great Lyons, tyed with their Four Lyons. 50 Chaines in the way which wee were to palle, and having passed them in the midst of the Foure Lords, fields: vnder the shadow of the said Arches, stood foure men of Honour, among which, was one of the two greatest Lords which are in the Court of Prete lanni, which is called Betu- The Betudut. dete, that is to fay, The Grand Captaine, and there are two of them, whereof one waiteth on his right hand, and the other on his left. He which waited on his right hand, was (as they faid) in warre against the Moores; and hee that waited on his left hand, was the fame which stood there; the other three were great Personages. When wee came vnto them, we flood a great while without speaking any word, neither we to them, nor they to vs. In the meane while there came an old Prieft, which was (as they fay) the Kinsman and 60 Confessor of Prete lanni, wearing a white Bonet, like vnto a Bernusso, and a great hood of

This man by his Office, is called Cabeata, and is the second person in these Kingdomes; and he came out of the Prete his Tent, from whence we were distant two stones cast. Three

Vannn

of the foure that stayed with vs, went halfe way to meete him, and the Betudete stayed with vs, and when they drew nigh vato vs, the Betudete moued three or foure steppes toward them. and so all fine of them came vnto vs.

The Cabeata being arrived, demaunded of the Ambassadour, what hee would have and whence he came : The Ambassadour answered, That he came from India, and brought an Ambaffage vnto Prete Lanni, from the Grand Captaine and Gouernour of the Indies, vnder the King of Portugall. Herewithall, hee returned to the Prete from whom he came, and returned three times with the very felfe-same Questions and Answeres. To all their demands. the Ambassadour answered after one fort. The fourth time, the Cabeata said, Say what you will, and I will declare the fame to the King. To whom the Ambassadour answered, That He The Ambassa- and his whole Companie killed his Highnesse hands, and greatly thanked God, which had fulfil. 10

m arkable number. dors (peech.

Three, are-

led their holy defires, in injuning (bristians together with Christians, and that they were the first which had performed the same. With this answere, the Cabeata departed hence, and firaishtway returned with another Meffage, and alwaies the forefaid foure Honourable persons went to meete him, in such fort, as we have before already declared, and comming vntovs. he faid. That we were right welcome to Prese Ianni, and that we should go to our lodging and

reft our felues. Policy of State

At this first Audience, he vieth no other words, neither in his Maieflie to bee feene for the better maintaining of his reputation. Then the Ambassadour delivered out by severall parcels, all the Prefents which the Grand Captaine fent vnto his Highnesse, and ouer and belides the same, foure bagges of Pepper, which we brought to defray our charges. All 29 the particulars were forth-with conceyed to the Tent of the Prete, and afterward brought backe againe to the Arches where wee flood, and they hanged up the Cloathes of Arras which we gate them, vpon the Arches : and likewife, enery parcell of the rest of the goods and things; and while they hung vp in the fight of all men, all men were commaunded to keepe filence, and one which is called the Lord Chiefe Iustice of the Court, foake with a lowd voyce, and declared piece by piece, what the things were which the Grand Captaine had fent to Prete Ianni, and willed all men, To give thankes unto the Lord God. for basing caused Christians to meete together, and that if any Man were there that were criened thereat, bee might weepe and bowle; and who some reisyced thereat, might sing. Then all the people that were there affembled, gaue a mightie shoute in manner of praising God, which continued for a great space. This beeing ended, they licensed vs to depart, and brought vs to our lodging; a great Croffe-bow shoote distant from the Tents of the Prete. where our Pauillion, which hee had fent vs, was fet vp, and where the rest of our stuffe

attending the

Silence.

70. In the remosuing of these our goods, we beganne to see by experience, the adule which was given vs concerning the Theeues, for fuddenly on the way, they tooke by force from one of our Servants, foure Basons of Latton, and soure Dishes of Porcellan, and certaine other small things belonging to our Kitchin, and because the Seruant would have defended himselfe, they gave him a great wound on the Legge. The Ambassadour 40 could doe no more, but cause him to be healed, and of these goods could never after recover any whit. As soone as wee were lodged, Prete lanni sent vs three hundred great White Loaues of Wheate, and many larges of Wine of Hony, and tenne Oxen, and the Mefsengers which brought these things, said; That Prete lanni had commaunded, that wee Providen fent should have fiftie Oxen given vs, and as many larres of Wine. The Saturday following, which was the one and twentieth of October, he fent vs great store of Bread and Wine, and many Haggastes of Flesh, of divers forts, which were very well made and dressed, and the like was done upon the Sunday, whereon among other many and fundry Haggaffes, a A calfe whole young Calfe was brought vnto vs, all whole laid in Pafte, fo well dreffed and feafoned, with Spices and Fruits put in the belly thereof, that we could neuer fatisfie our felues with fee- 50

On Munday following, there was a rumour spread through all the Court, that wee had kept backe many bagges of Pepper, which the Grand Captaine had fent vnto the Prete, best merchan-dize in Ethiopia which was vintrue; and because they make exceeding great account of Pepper, and that it is the greatest merchandize that runneth through Ethiopia, therefore the Frier came vnto vs, with a cunning, faying vnto vs, That if the Ambassadour would give all his Prpper to Prete lanni, that he would give order, that our charges should be defrayed during our abode there, and vntill our returne vnto Maczna: and thus they cealed to give vs Victuals, neither were the fiftie Oxen fent vnto vs., nor the Iarres of Wine. Likewife, they for bade all the Frankes in the Court, that they should not speake with vs.

They willed vsallo, not to depart out of our Tent, because it was the Custome, that all they which come vinto this Court, should speake with no man, till they had talked with the King, and that for breaking this order, they had cast in prison a Portugall of Acuena,

which came to foeake with vs on the way with another Franke; laying to their charge, that they came to reveale vnto vs the fecrets of the Court. This Portugall fled on a night with his manacles on his hands from an Emuch, which kept him, and came to our Tent to faue himselfe. The next morning with freed they came to feeke him, but the Ambaffador would not deliver him, but fent his Factor and the Interpreter to fpeake with the Betudete on his behalfe , and to aske him, why hee cast the Portugalls into fetters, and handled them so badly by Emnuchs which were Slaues. The Betndete answered nothing to the purpose, saying : Who sent for you hither ! and added further, That Matthew went not into Portugall by Prete lanni his commandement, nor by the commandement of the Queene Helena. And that if this Slave 10 had put the Portugalls into fetters, the Portugalls likewife might put this Slave againe into fet-

CHAP.S.S.II. Ethiopian sustames. Detayning of Christians.

ters, for fuch is the inflice in those countries. 71. On Tuesday, the foure and twentieth of October, wayting, while the Prets would Remound fend for vs to speake with him, hee departed with all his Court toward the same place from the Court, whence hee came, which was about fixe miles off. In the meane feation the Frier came vnto vs, and wished vs if wee would goe to the place where the King lay, that wee should buy our selues Mules to carry our stuffe, and told the Ambassador, that if hee would buy or sell hee might to doe. The Ambassador answered him . That wee were not come thither to play the Merchants, but onely to ferue God and both the Kings, and to vnite one Christian people with another, and this they did onely to fift out what our jutention and pur-20 pole was. Vntill this present they had forbidden all Christians in the Court to speake with vs. Other their or to come vnto our Tents, and if they came thither they came very fecretly, because the Frier tricks are here

was alwayes with vs as our Guardian.

72. When Lopez Suarez, grand Captaine and Gouernour of India, came with his Fleet to the Hauen of Ziden; in which Fleet I my felfe was, wee found in the fame place fixtie The Hauen of Christian men, which were Slaues vnto the Turker, and they were of divers Nations, who Ziden, neere were part of these which at this present we found in this Court, who say, that they wayted Merca. for the grace of God, to wit, while the Portugalle should come into this Hauen of Ziden, that they might escape away with ve; and because the people of our Fleet could not see on Land. therefore they traved behinde; and few dayes after, fifteene of their white men, with as many 30 more Abifimes of the Countrey of Prote James, which likewife were Slaves, found two Bri-

gandines, and fled away to get vinto our Fleet; and being not able to come vinto the lle of The lle of Che Cameran, they came to the lie of Macras, which is necre vnto Ercoco, a Towne of Prete men Ianni. And comming on land they funke the Brigandines, and came vnto the Court of the The lle of Prete, whom we faw more honorably and courteoutly vied their our felues, till this prefent. Maryan. And they have given them Lands and Slaves which serve them and maintayne them. These are the Frankes, the greatest part whereof were Genouefes, two Casalanians, one of Sio, one a Biscaien, and one an high German, which afterward came all into Portugall, and they call vs Portugalls also Frankes. All other white people, to wit, those of Syria, of Grecia, and 40 of Caire, they call Gibetes. These Frankes prenailed with vs to give foure bags of Pepper, and Eastern Chris foure Chefts covered with leather, for a present to the Prese, which wee carried the thirtieth of flians called October, which was but collusion of the Courtiers for their owne advantage. The Frankes Western Frank which were in the Court came after to our Tent and told vs , that the great men of the Court both in Africa were our enemies, and that this Frier had put into their heads, to countell Prete Lanni to fuf- and Afa, euer fer vs not to returne, nor to depart out of his Kingdome. Because wee reported cuill of the fince the Expe-

Countrey, and that wee would speake much worte when wee were departed out of the same, ditions into and that was alwayes the custome of these Kingdomes, not to furter Strangers to depart wherein the which came into the same. Wee suspected thus much by that which wee had heard, and they Franks were confirmed the farre. For wee knew very well, that John Gomez, and John Prete, Portugalls, first and most, 10 (which were fent hither by Tristan de Acunna, Lord Gouernour of India, together with a beginning at Moore, which yet lineth and dwelleth in Manadeli) were not surfered to depart; because they the Councell threatned to kill them, if they departed : and likewise one Peter de Conillan a Portugall, and frant.

On Tuesday, the last of October, Prete lanni came downe from the Tents where hee lay, stome of Etoward this Circuit where wee aboad; and when hee palled by hee faw our Tent, not fare bispia, not to differ framen his and fent a man to the Ambaffador, to with him to remove his Ton the fare foffer frangers diffant from his, and fent a man to the Ambassador, to with him to remocue his Tent, because to depart. the ayre was bad where the same stood, and yet our Tent stood in the same place which they Christians dehad appointed vs the day before. The Ambassador sent him word, that he had no people to re- tayned. mooue his Tent nor his stuffe, and that if he might have people, he would cause it to be remoo-60 ued, whither soeuer it pleased his Highnesse. This day at evening came a message from the Prete, faying, That if the Ambassador or his companie, had any Crosse of gold or of silver, that hee Crossedeman-

should lend it him , for hee desired to see it. The Ambassador tent him word , that neither hee ded. nor his companie had any, and that one which he had brought with him he had given to Barnagaffo, herewithall the Page departed, but suddenly returned againe, faying, That we should fend him any that we had.

Wee fent him a Woodden Croffe of mine, with a painted Crucifixe, which by the wav I carried in my hand, according to the custome of the Countrey. Immediatly he fent it backe vnto vs. faying; That he tooke great pleature in beholding of it, because he perceived that wee were good Christians.

The Ambassadour sent word vnto the Prete by the faid Page, that he had yet a little Pepper. to defray his owne and his companies charges, which hee defired to bestow vpon his Highnesse. and also foure Chelis to keepe apparell in, and that when it pleased him, he might fend for them. The Page departing with this message, returned suddenly, saying; That the King defined no Pepper nor Chefts, and that the Cloathes which he had given him, were bestowed vpon Churches, and that the Pepper was given to the poore. For fo it had beene told him, that the Grand to Captaine of India had done, in gining all the cloathes fent him by the King of Portugal, vnto Churches. The Ambassadourans wered, That whosever had told him any such thing; had not told the truth, because it was all laid vp together, and kept in safetie. This answere beeins fent, there came another message, saying; That Prete James commanded, that the Ambassadour without all delay, with his whole Company should come vnto him, and it was three houres at least within night. Forthwith we all beganne to put on our best Apparell, to goe whither we were fent for. When we were ready, another came which brought vs word, that wee must not go; and thus we stayed at home in our dumps.

74. On Wednesday the first of November, two houres within night, Prete lami fent for vs by a Page, and having put our felues in order, we went our way, and comming to the gate or entry of the first circuit or hedge, we found Porters, which caused vs to waite there 20 good houre, in the cold and dry winde. From the place where we ftood, we faw many lighted Torches, standing before the other part of the circuit of the hedge, and men held them in their hands. While wee flayed thus in this entry (for they would not fuffer vs to paffe) our men that off two Harquebuffes, and fuddenly there came a word from the King; demanding, why we had not brought many Harquebuffes from the Sea. The Ambaffadour answered, that we came not as Warriors, and that therefore wee brought not the faid Armour with vs; but that we brought onely thele three or foure Harquebuiles, to flew pleafure and pastime, While we waited heere, five principall men came vato vs, among whom was one called Adrugas, to whom we were appointed at our first comming to the Gourt. As soone as they were come with . the word of the Prete, forthwith they did their wonted reuerence, and we in like manner, and began to fer forward, and having gone free or fix paces, but we and they flood fill. They went on the fide of vs, as if they had led vs by the hand, & on the one fide of them, went two men with two Torches lighted in their hands, & two before them on the other fide, and as they guided vs. each of them in his course began to cry with an high voyce, Hurcha, Hiale, Huchia, Abeton, which fignifieth ; Him which you have commanded me (Six) beere I bring unto you. And when one had made an end, another beganne, and so they followed one after another, and vsed this fpeech folong, vntill we heard a voice from within, vttered by divers, which was, Cafacinela, that is to fay, Come yes in?

The Rites of admitring to prefence. Strange Ceremonies of Ten paules.

> We went a little farther, and they began againe to stay, and vetered the foresaid wordsa- 40 gaine, vntill they heard an answere from within, as at the first. They made aboue ten of these paules, from the first entrance vnto the second, and every time when they said within Cafacinelet, because it is the word of the King, they which were our guides, and wee with them, bowed downe our heads and our hands to the ground. And having passed the second entry, they began to make another fong, which was this; Caphan, Hiam, Camba, Afrangues, Abam, which fignifieth; The Frankes which you commanded me bere, I bring them, my Lord. And these he vttered as often as the other words before, and attended an answer from within the hoofe, which was like vnto the former, and so from pause to pause, we came vnto a Bed or Table, before which flood many busning Torches, which we faw in the first entry, and told them to bee eightie on enery fide, in even ranke, and that no man might goe out of the ranke : Those which 50 held them, had before them certaine long Canes in their hands, which went ouer-thwart breafthigh, and the faid Torches flood all equall.

This Bed was placed within the entrance of a great house of earth, whereof we spake before, which is built voon very great Pillers of Cipreffe; the roofe standing voon these Pillers, was Painted with certaine goodly colours, and it was Wainscoted directly downe from the top to the bottome. The couering of the roofe, was of the Graffe of the Countrey, which lasteth (as they say) the life of a man. In the entry of the house, that is to say, at the vpper part thereof, were fine Curtaines prepared, which hung before the faid bed, and the middlemost of them was embroidered with Gold, and the others were of fine Silke. Before these Curtaines, on the floore was laid a great and rich Carpet, and neere vnto it, two great cloaths 60 of shagey Cotton, like Carpets which they call Basutos: all the rest was coursed with painted Mats, to that no part of the bare floore could be seene. And likewise from the one end vnto the other, the whole roome was full of lighted Torches, like those which we had seene while wee were without,

While wee thus flood fill from behind the Curtaines, there came a word from Prete Ianni, Manner of aulaying, abruptly, that he fent not Matthew into Portugall, though it were granted that heement dience. thusber with his Licence, seeing the Kmg of Portugall, had sent him many things, what was become of them, and wherefore were they not brought as the King had sent them? And that those things which the Grand Captaine had (ent him from India, were alreadie delivered? The Ambassadour answered. that if it pleased his Highnesse to vouchsafe to heare him, he would satisfie him in all points; and findern ly he began to say, those things which the Grand Captaine sent him were atreadic presented, and ouer and above that he had given him part of that Pepper which he brought with him for his expenses. Tou. ching the goods fent unto him by the King of Portugall, the cause why they were not brought unto his 10 Maiestie was, because the Ambassadour which brought them, named Edward Galvan, deceased in Camaran, and besides that certaine Portugals deceased in the Ile of Delaca, among whom were the Faltor and Interpreter, that should have delivered the same; and finally, the Grand Captaine, being not able to recover the Hauen of Maczua, through contrary winds, returned into India, and from thence departed home unto Portugall; to the Captaine which succeeded in his place. The King of Portugall not knowing of the death of the faid Edward, but thinking he had beene come to the Court of your Highnesse, gaue no further Commussion, but only to come into the Red Sea to destroy the Moores, and to har-ken after his Ambassadour; which Grand Captaine, doubting that he should bee able to recover no Hamen, as at other times they could not, would not bring the goods which the King of Portugall had fent him which are preserved in India, layed up together, and that hee desired oneh to condust Matthew this 20 ther with him, that if it were his chance to recouer any Hauen on the Coast of the Abiffini, bee might there put him on looser, and afterward feed him those goods. And because it pleased God, that they ar-rined at the seresaid Hassen of Maczua, which is in his Territories, although it bee in the bands of the Moores, the Grand Captaine determined to fend unto him himselfe, Don Roderigo with these goods and Peeces wherewith he had preserved him, and that he should come in company with Matthew, onely to see him, and to learne the way against another time, when it should please him to send the Ambassador of the King of Portugall, and that Matthew was departed out of this life at the Monasteric of the Vision. At the end of this Answere, returned another Message; saying , If three were slaine in Delaca, how efcaped Matthew! Hereunto it was answered, that Matthew efcaped because bee would not firre out of the forp. And the Ambassadour befought him very humbly, to vouchiase to 30 giue him audience, because he should understand the truth, and that likewise, bee would deliner him in writing that which the Grand Captains had fent him by word of mouth, besides the Letters, and that by this meanes he should understand the whole matter. Questions and Answeres passed too and

Bread, Wine and Flesh, and two men which faid, that they had charge to give vs every day our dyet and other necessaries. 75. On Saturday the third of November, the Prete Lami fent for vs, and we went at twen- Jialian and Be. tie foure of the clocke, and comming to the first gate or entrance, while we stayed a while, there bemian and ocame a meffage, that we should shoot off our Peeces, but without Bullets for hurting no bodie, the clockes, and within awhile after they let vecome in and monthly all the first they begin at the 40 and within awhile after, they let vscome in, and we vied the like respite that we did before, hing, the recand comming in betweene the Gates and the Curtaines, where we stood at the first, we saw the koning of 14. place of the Bed very richly trimmed, and decked as before, and all behind and before, was cours as wee red with embroydered cloth, and the people were more richly arrayed, and flood on both fides all of 12- at mid-

fro, without any conclusion, and so they dismissed vs. The next day hee sent vs great store of

in a ranke with their naked Swords and Daggers in their hands, and placed, as though they had day and mid-bin to fight one with another. There were two hundry Trees has laked at bast of the place of bin to fight one with another. There were two hundred Torches lighted on both fides standing in a ranke, as they did the other day, and when wee were come in ; he began to aske vs questions, and fend vs Answeres by the Cabeata, and by a Page called Abdenago, which is Captaine of all the Pages, with these his Messages he carryed his naked Sword in his hand, and the first which he brought was this, How many we were, and how many Harquebuffer wee had brough? and received to the way there came another; demanding, who had laught the Moores to make Hand-gumes, and great to the Moores to make Hand-gumes, and great the Moores the Moores to make Hand-gumes, and great the Moores the Moores to make Hand-gumes, and great the Moores the Mo Ordnance, and whether they shot at the Portugals with them, or the Portugals at them, and who were

most afraid of the Moores or the Portugals?

Each of these Questions came at seuerall times, and we made a seuerall Answere vinto each Dings Que of them. And touching the feare of the great Ordnance, wee faid, that the Portugal were for fitting and Anwell armed in the Faith of Ielus Christ, that they were not afraid of the Morres, and had they feared them, they would not have come fo farre off, without any necessitie to seeke them. Touching the making of Calieuers, and great Ordnance, they faid, that the Moores were men, and that they had wit and understanding as well as any of us.

He lent to enquire whether the Turkes had good Artillery? The Ambassador answered, that 60 their great ordance was as good as ours, but that new were not one whit afraid of them, because wee fought for the faith of less (Briss, and they against the same. Then he demanded who had taught the Turkes to make great Ordnance? Wee answered him as before, to wit, that the Turkes were men, and had understanding and capacitie of men in all persection, saums in the Faith. Then hee fent to know, whether there were any in our company that could play at Rapier and Dagger, for that lent to know, whether there were anym our company to account play as couper, non-be would gladfy for themplay. The Ambassador appointed George in Breu and another tall fellow. Dagger.

Vuuuu 3

to play, which both did very well, and performed as much as was to bee expected, of menex. ercifed and trained up in Armes, and the Prete might very well behold them from behind the Curtaines, and tooke great pleasure at them, as we were informed.

When they had done, the Ambassadour sent to Prete lanni, befeeching him to give him andience, and to understand the message which the Grand Captaine of the King of Portugall had fent vnto him, and that he would dispatch him, that he might returne to their Fleet against the time of their arrivall, and not to put him to any more expenses without profit. An answere was returned, that wee were but newly come thither, and had not feene one third part of his Lands and Dominions, and that we flould take our pleasures: For associate as the Grand Captaine should come to Mac-2112, he would send to speake with him, and then we should depart, and if the said Captaine would build a Fortreffe in Maczua, or in Suachen, or in Zeila, that hee would fee the same forth-with furnifhed 10 all things necessary. And because the Tutkes are many and we sew, when such a Fortresse were builded with on the Red Sea, wee might very well finde out a way whereby wee might paffe to lerusalem. and the Holy Land with an Armie. The Ambaffadour answered, that all thesewerethe very things which the King of Portugall defined, and that still bee befought him to give him Andience, and if hee were minded not to give him audience, that hee might fend him to the Grand Captaines Letters, and all the whole Moffage in writing, which he fent him to deliner by word month. He tooke order that all things should be interpreted and written in the Abissian Tongue. and fent vnto him : which the Ambassadour did, requesting him instantly to give him his difpatch. After this, the Prete Lami fent him word, that Seeing bee had brought bim a paire of Organes, he should send him one to play thereon, and to fing, and so bee did. Then hee defired that we 20 thould dance before him after our manner. When the Dance was done, wee fignified vnto him that we were Christians, & prayed him to give vs leave to fing Masse after our custome, according to the Church of Rome. Suddenly we received an Answere, that He knew well ibat we were Chri-Bians, and that fince the Moores which were wicked and trecherous had their Prayers after their manner; wherefore [bould not we have the same after ours? And that hee would send us all things necessarie thereunto. Afloone as wee were come to our Lodging , they brought vs three hundred great Loques of Bread, and twentie foure larres of Wine, and the Bearer told vs, that there were hirtie larres appointed for vs, but that the Porters on the way had broken fixe of them.

Of the Questions moved to the Ambassadour, by the appointment of PRETE IANNI, at severall times by Interlocutors, and lastly, in prefence : wherein many points of their Religion are opened.

He Sunday following many Questions came vnto our Tent from Prete lanni, to the Ambassadour, and all of them were concerning the Armour which hee vnderftood, that the King of Portugal had fent him, and whether it should bee 40 fent him out of India. The Ambaffadour faid, that the Armour and all things else which the King had sent him, should come the yeare following, and that the Grand Captaine would either fend them or bring them himfelfe, and so hee fent him word, and wrote him his Letters. Then he willed our men to shoot with their Calieuers, within the great hedge, and that certaine of his people should shoot also, and whether any of vs could make Gun-powder? It was told him, that there was none that could make the fame, but that the Grand Captaine would fend men with their Instruments to make Salt-peeter, and that hee would bring Brimftone with him in his shippes. Hee faid that Brimstome might bee found in his Kingdome, so that there were Masters to make Salt-peeter, and that his Armies wanted nothing elfe, but the vie of Artillerie, and men to teach them to make the same, because hee was able to 50 bring vnto the field an infinite number of Harquebuffes, wherewith hee might subdue all the

Moorish Kings about him. And to this purpose a certaine Geneses which lived in the Court, told me, that hee had considered, that more Salt-peeter might be made in their Kingdomes, then in any other place of the World, by reason of the infinite number of Cattell which were there, and that heere bee also Mountaines that yeeld Brimftone. He fent vs word afterward, that he would have vs fhew him how we did put on those white Armours, which the Grand Captaine had fent him. Our men forth-with armed one of the company, where he might well fee him. Then he fent for the Swords and Curaffes, which the Ambaffador and his company had brought, that hee might

77. On Munday at Euening, he fent for me, Francis Aluarez, to bring the Hofts vnto him, which he defired to fee. I brought him eleven of them very well made, not in boxes or pixes, because I knew the great reuerence which they vie to their Hosts, which is one Cake onely-And these Hosts had a Crucifixe vpon them, and therefore I carryed them in a very faire Dilh of Porcellan couered with Taffata. Ibrought him the Surplice, the Chalice, the Altar-Itone, the Ampull; and he viewedall, piece by piece, and willed me to open the Cloth wherein the Alraritone was (which was fewed in a white Cloth) and fo he did : which when hee had feene he willed to be couered. This stone on the upper side was very smooth, square, and well made. and on the nether fide was somewhat vneuen, according to the nature, and proportion of stones. He fent me word, that feeing in Portugall there were fo good Mafons, why had they not polifiedit on that fide alfo; faying, that the things which belonged unto Gods Service, ought to be perfect and not emperfect. The night being come, he sent for me that I should come to his Tent, and willed I should

to come in and io I did. They fet me in the midft thereof, which was all ipread on the ground with exceeding fine Carpets. I food four yards diftant from Prete Janni, which fate behind those Curtaines: he commanded me to apparell my felfe, as if I should fay Masse, which I did. When I was apparelled, he caused me to be asked, Who game vs that apparell, whether they were the Apofle, or some other Saints? I answered him, that the Church had taken it out of the Passion of Christ. bed Massing He willed me to tell him what every one of those pieces signified; and so I beganne with every Apparell. part, to flew him what they fignified, according to the Passion of our Lord. And when I came The Myste ies to the Manipulum, I told him, that it was a little Cord, wherewith they bound the hands of Ie. of it. Thus in. fus Christ. Then comming to the Stole, I told him, that that fignified the great Cord, which deed is hee they cast about his necke to lead him this way and that way, and that the Planet fignified the mystically 2C apparell which they put you him, for to mocke him * withall; Which when I had ended, he mocked, when

faid againe with a very loud voyce, that we were true Christians, because we knew the Passion of Christ so pertectly. And whereas I had said that the Church bad taken this out of the Passion of Preaching was unred into Christ, he demanded, which was that Church! Because we held two head Churches in Chistendome, lesture Velture the first of Constantinople in Greece, and the second of Rome in France. . I answered him, there and body exwas but one Church : and though it were granted, that Constantinople was the head in the be- ereife: as at ginning, jet it ceased now to be because the Head of the Church b is there where Saint Peter was; be _ Rome and in cause Ielus Christ said; Thou are Peter, and upon this Rocke I will build my Church. Ard when S. a Of this see Peter was at Antiochia, the Church was there, because the Head was there, and when hee came to before, all We-Rome hee abode fill there, and there the Head Shall alwayes bee : and this Church ruled by the Holy sterne Chri-

30 Chost hath ordaynedshings necessary to fay Masse. Moreoner, I proned this Church onto him, telling thendome cal-him, that in the Articles of our Faith, which the Apostles made, the Apostle Simon c faith: 1 beleeve the Est From in 4 the bolt Catholike Church. But in the great Creed which was made in the Nicene Councell by the Holy Land three bundred and eighteeme Bilbops, against the Herefie of Arrius, they fay: I beleeue in one Catholike Expeditions and Apostolike Church; and this is the boly Roman Church, wherein Saint Peter fate, upon whom God b Abriefe bl founded his Church, as be faith. And Saint Paul, a chofen Veffell and Dotter of the Gentiles, calleth Popils Faithtt Catholike and Apostolike, e because in it are all the Apostolike powers, which God game to Saint Pe- d This word ter, and to all the rest of the Apostles of binding and loofing. They answered mee, that I gave a good (in) is twice reason for the Church of Rome; but what could I fay for the Church of Conflaminople, which here purinby belonged to Saint Marke, and for the Cherch of Greece, which belonged to Saint John the Patriorke of Alexandria? Hereumo I on wered them, that their realing fremathered mine have

40 triarke of Alexandria? Hereunto I answered them, that their reason strengthened mine, because cont. August. Samt Peterwas Saint Markes Masser, and he sent him into the searce, and so that neither Marke Sem. detemp.
nor Iolin secould plant any Churches, but onely in the name of him which had sent them, which Chip. - 13.1 credet Ecnor lotts: couta plant any controct, was onesy in our name of our nouvo may ten toem, wrote Cour.

Check were tementers of the Head, which feat they for Freachers; to which Head all Matherities were gluen, dissum nonit and many years after, when Saint Ictome, and many other body men had spenared themsslene; they Ecclisian, quite and the standard of the Moreire they might serve God, and that the said Mo. Ditte Gr. of the Moreire they might serve God, and that the said Mo. Ditte Gr. of the Moreire they might serve God, and that the said Mo. Ditte Gr. of the Moreire they might serve God, and that the said Mo. Ditte Gr. of the Moreire they might serve God, and that the said the Moreire they might be said the Moreire they might be said the said that the Moreire they might be said the said the Moreire they might be said to the Moreire they might be said to the Moreire they will be said to the said the Moreire they will be said to the said the Moreire they will be said to the Moreire they will be said to the said the Moreire they will be said to the said the Rome; and how can they make Churches in presuduce of the chiefe Head, if they were not builded, and Dom. 61. Ital. in made by our Lord lesiw Christ? They yeelded hereunto, and the Interpreter said that Prete lamii lo.29. 06. tooke exceeding great pleafure hereat.

Then they asked me whether in Portugall, the Priests were marryed? Itold them, no. They fore then did demanded, whether we held the Councell of Pope Leo & which was made at Nice! I told them, yea, Christisend the and that I had alreadie declared, that the great Creed was made there. They asked me againe, how Apolitics to many Bishops were then with the Pope? I answered that I had alreadie told them that there were three Nations? bundred and eighteene. They replyed againe vnto mee, that it was ordained in this Councell, that Montflerics. Priests might marrie, and if this Councell were sworne and confirmed, wherefore were they not married? g No deepe I told them that I knew nothing elfe of that Councell, but that the Creed was made there, and that stading is lies our Lady might be called the Mother of God.

Afterward, they told me many other things which there were ordained and fwome, which for Leolued Pope Leo brake, and prayed me to tell them what they were : I answered them , that I knew (but was not Cottom use, but that im mine spining it be haddenly early there is a interest titlen of thefe, which cave petining the cottom use, but they might be from of thefe, which be the result of the control of boue one hundred yeares after the Nicene Councell) when that of Chalcedon was held. In the former Syluefter and Islaus were Bishops of Rame, not Callers, or Rulers of the Councell, wherein Paphantius withstood that adulterate inforced cottinency Sec. Ec.bif.l. 1.6.8. Sorom, les . C. 22. c. The Author here confounds divers Councels,

fitable,

Sight of the Hoft

1078 her age is calcuisted) must be younger then Peters A. his Wife, ap-Taceucs

fitable, and that otherwise he should not have beene allowed, and canonized for a Saint as he is. Againe. he asked me concerning the Marriage of Priests, inquiring of me, whether the Apostles were married? I told him, that I never hadread in any Booke, shat the Apostles had Wives; after that, they went in company with lefus, and although Saint Peter had a Daughter, yet be bad her by his wife, before he was an Apolile, and that Saint John the Enangelist was a Virgine : and that I had read . that after the death of Christ, the Aposites preached constantly the Faith in him, and doubted not to doe for the same: And that the Church of Rome, which is the true Church, hath ordained and consistence that after the imitation of the Apostles, no Priest (bould have a wife, to the end they (bould becomere that after the smitation of the exposites, no rings looks a wife, we to core a topy (what does more clears, and more pure in their conference, and floud not be buffed all their times in bringing up their child on, and prouding for their laung. Hereunto answer was returned me, that their Bookes come to *Petronills (as manded, " that they should be married, and that Saint Peter saidenen so.

They caused me to fing Gloria in excelsis, and certaine Verses of the Creede. At this conference, an Interpreter flood continually, and hard by him the Frier, which had conducted vs in our way. This Frier had beene sometimes in Italy, and understood a little Latine. The Prese Ianni caused him to be asked, whether he understood that which I spake. He answered him.vea. the Peter did and that I had faid, Gloria in excelfis, and the Creed, as they fay it.

78. The night that I flayed fo long with the Prete, before morning, the Ambaffadour was robbed in the Tent where wee lodged, and they stole away two Cloakes of cloath, two rich Hats, feuen fine Shirts, &c. In the morning, the Ambassadour willed me and the Secretary to go it, and healing to the Tent of Prete, to complaine and craue Inflice for this robbery, and fo I did. But because 20 the Ambaliadour had taken two Theeues, therefore while we were before the Tent of the Prete, a Woman came crying and crauing Iustice, and faid; That the Ambassadour and his Company, leading about a Sifter (would the last night, by meanes of an Arabian, that knew the language of the Countrey, had taken be more suspi- away her Daughter by force, and led her to their Tent, of whom they had had their pleasure. cious) and the Ana because her Sonne complained for the forcing of his Sifter, they had taken him with the whole tenure A-abian, which had deceived the Maid, and laid to their charge that they were robbed. When they had heard vs and this woman, they made vs both all one answer, that is, that Iuftice should anuquity. Here he done, and to they difimified vs. The fame day, the Frier which was with me before the Prete, are both mex. be done, and to they difimified vs. The fame day, the Frier which was with me before the Prete, bed forever to be done, and to they diffinitely made to the preter bed forever to be done. are both mex.

the night past, came with a rich Tent, but halfe worne, saying; That the Prese had sent vs it to leaue the troth fay Maste in, and that immediatly it should be set up, because the next day was the Feast of the 19 Angell Raphael, and that we should say Masse in it every day, and pray to God for him. This Tent was Embroidered, and of Veluet of Mecca, lined within with very fine Cloath of Chaut. Conning trick. They told me, that foure yeares before the Prete had wonne it in the warre, which he made a-A Tent fonto gainst the King of Adel, who was a Moore, and Lord of Zeils, and Barbers: and the Prete sent vs word, that we should hallow the same before wee said Masse in it, because of the sinnes committed therein by the Moores. The same night it was presently set vp, and on the morrow, we faid Malle therein, and all the Frankes which were in the Court, for fortie yeares space, came thither to heare it, as also many people of the Countrey.

79. The eight of November, the Prete fent for vs, and forthwith we repaired thither, the Ambaffadour would needs carrie the Chefts and bagges of Pepper, which hee had promifed him. 10 When we were come vnto the entry of the first hedge, they held vs with certaine friuolous questions, cocerning the Negroes which we had taken, for the goods which they had stolne from vs : and the demands continued follows, that in the meane while they fent to loofe the faid Negrees, without any conclusion or remedy for the theft, and the Prete fent vs three hundred Loaues, and thirtie Tarres of Wine, and certaine victuals of flesh from his owne Table, and so we returned to our Tent. They fent another time for vs, and when we were come, we flood a great while vpon certaine questions, why we tooke not our way from the Sea coast, toward the Kingdome of Dancate, which is farre the neerer way: and feeing we were Seruants to the King of Portugall, why wee had not Croffes marked in our flesh vpon our shoulder, because such is their cuitome, that all the Servants of the Prete have a croffe marked vpon their right shoulders: 40 They asked rarther: feeing we had given away our Pepper, wherewith we would buy our Vi-

ctuals for our ion rney, &c.

Gifts.

80 The twelfth of Nouember, the Prete fent vs fine very great and goodly Horses to our Tent, praying the Ambassadour to come with foure others of his company vpon the said Horfes, to skirmith before his Tent : and it was very late, and the Ambafirdour was not very well pleased that it was so late and darke : but streight-way there were so many Torches lighted, that it was as light as day. And here they skirmished in such tort, that they delighted the Prete very much, which skirmish being ended, wee returned to our Tent; whither suddenly the Presedent vs three lanes of Wine, much better then any he had lent vs before. The next day, he fent to the Amballadour a Cup of Silver, very curioufly gile, and made after our manner, as 60 well in the foot, as in the Bowle. On the foote were the Apolities grauen, standing vpright, and in the Bowle were certaine Latine letters, containing these words: Hie est calix noni Testamenti: A cloath of Gold for the Altar of our Church, and a Bason and Ewer made of blackwood, with red and white veines, as faire as euer we faw, to powre water vpon our hands, and

fent vs word, that we should fend him all our names in writing. They were suddenly carried tent vs word, that we know, what Raderigo fignified, and what Lima fignified, and likewife signification what was the fignification of all the other names. The cause of this demand was, because in of names, what was the indirection or at the other hands.

this Country they neuer give any proper mane, which hath not fome fignification. The next this Country they neuer give any proper mane, which hath not fome fignification. The next morning in the Tent of the Amballadour, there was another theft committed, for while George Theometry, the control of the country that the country tha de Bress was a fleepe, he had a Cloake stolne that cost him twentie duckats, and from vs alio were stolne certaine bagges of stuffe, neither vse they any diligence to cause these things to bee reflored vnto vs, becaule (as wee haue faid) there is a Captaine of the Theeues, which for the feeting of the Prete his Tents, hath no other reward, but fuch things as they steale. This day 10 the Prete fent vsa Saddle for a Horse, wholly beset with stones of Cornalin, (this Saddle, befides that it was very heavy, was also very badly made) faying, That the Ambassadure for

CHAP.5. S.12. Questions concerning Christ, his Apostles and Euangelists.

ride thereon. 81. The Saturday following, the *Prese* commanded all the Lords and great men of his Court. to goe and heare our Masse, which they also did the Sunday following; but there were farre more on the Saturday; for befides our Maffe, we baptized also: and as farre as we could gather by their gestures, and as the Frankes told vs which we found in this Countrey and the Interpreters which were with vs, they marueiled much, and greatly praifed our feruice; faying, That they could not speake against it, but onely because we gave not the Communion to all those that were prefent at the same, and likewise to those which were baptized. The eighteenth of the said 20 moneth, the Prete fent for me, and moued many questions vnto me, and among others, how many Prophets had prophefied of the comming of Christ. I answered him, that in my indgement all of them had tooken of the fame, to wit; one of his comming, another of his Incarnation, another of his Pathon and Refurrection; all which concerned Chrift, Likewife, how many bookes Saint Paul had made ! I answered him, That it was one Booke onely, divided into many parts, that is to fay, Into many Epittles. Hee asked me likewife, how many Bookes the Euangelists had made ! And I made him the same answer. Also, he asked, whither we had a Booke diui- A strange had made? And I made num the same amount, one assets, which is a state I surfactom, had written, leaded into eight parts, which all the Apolites, being gathered together at Isrufactom, had written, leading to the state of the and that it was not to be found among ft vs. Hee faid, That they observed all the Commande-

20 ments written therein. 83. On a Tuesday, we were sent for wnto the Prete, and it was the nineteenth of Nouember, and being come to the first gate or entry, we stayed a great while, the weather being verie cold, and the night well spent. Then we entred with the like pauses and stayes, as we had vied twice before, and there was a farre greater affembly then before. And the greatest part had their weapons. There were alfo a great number of Candles and Torches light before the gates; fo Admitted to that it feemed as light as day, neither made they vito waite any long while, but that the Ambaffidour and nine of vs Portugals went fuddenly in, even hard wate the first Curtaines : which when we had passed, we found others farre richer, and those also we passed, where wee found certaine rich and great Thrones, courred ouer with rich Tapistry. Before these Thrones, hung 40 other Curtaines of farre greater riches, which they opened on both fides, wee flanding neere

who them. And heere we law the Prete Ismi fitting vpon a skaffold very richly adorned with fixe fleps to accend thereunto. He had vpon his head an high Crowne of Gold and Silver, that The habite fixe fleps to afcend thereunto. He had voor in head an ingli-clowife of Soldier and state, that and flature of is to fay; One piece of Gold, and another piece of Silver, and a Crosse of Silver in his hand. Prete lamb His face was coursed with a piece of Blew Taffata, which was to bee mooued vp and downe. fo that fometimes all his face was seene, and sometimes all conered. On his right hand stood a Page, cloathed in Silke, with a Crosse of Siluer in his hand, whereon certaine Pictures were engrauen, standing vpright, which from the place where we stood, we could not perfectly difcerne : but afterward I had this Croffe in my hand, and faw those Images. The Prese was apparelled with a rich garment, Embroydered with Gold, and his Shirt was of Silke, with wide fleeues, which were like vnto a Surplice. Before him downeward, hee was girded with a rich

cloath of Silke and Gold, like the Rochet of a Bishop spread abroad, and he sate in Maiestie, after the manner that they paint God the Father vpon the wals. Befides the Page which held the Crosse, there stood on each tide another Page in like apparell, each of them holding a naked fword in their hands.

In his age, colour, and stature, he seemeth to be young. Hee is not very blacke, but of the His person decolour of a Chest-nut, or of ruddy Apples, which are not very Tawny, and sheweth a great scribed. grace in his colour and countenance, and is of a meane stature, and is faid to be three and twentie yeares old, and so he seemeth to be. Hee hath a round visage, great eyes, an Hawkes note, and his beard began to bud. In his presence and pompe, he seemeth to be a great Lord, as in ve-

60 ry deed he is. We ftood the space of two speares length from him : que stions and answeres pasfed too and fro, and all by the Cabeata. On every fide of this Throne, flood foure Pages in rich array, every one holding a burning Torch in his hand. When these questions and answers were ended, the Ambassadour deliucred the Grand Captaines Letters to the Cabeata, which were translated into the Abylin tongue, and he presented them to the Prote, who read them very rea-

This thing is now too truly come to paffe.

The Pope be-like is Charch

dily, and when he had read them, he faid : As thefe be the Letters of the Grand Captaine, fo would to God they had beene the Letters of the King of Portugall his Father; howbest, that these Letters were most welcome unto him, and that he game God most hearty thankes, for having granted that prest gift unto hims, to behold that which his Ancestors had never feene, neither did he thinke he stronta have gene bimselfe, and that his defires should be fully accomplished, if the King of Portugall would build Fortresser upon the sle of Maczua, and in the Towne of Suachen; because he doubted greats, that the Turkes our enemies would fortifie in them, which if it came to paffe, they would greatly disturbe both binn. and vs Portugals: and for this purpose he would gine vs all things necessarie, as well people to worke, as Gold and Victuals: and to be short, what some wee should stand in need of: And that in his opinion, besides the building of the said Forts, it was needfull to take the Citie of Zeila, and to build a 10 Fort in the same, because it is a place which aboundeth with all kind of Utetuals: and having taken this Citie, they might make sureworke, that no Viltuals should passe to the Cities of Aden, Zidem. Mecca, and into all Arabia; and vnto Toro and Sucz : which Townes being deprined of these Victure als, [located be in a manner vindome, seeing they cannot have Pilhaels but onely from these parts: that he would binde himself it to finde all kind of Villaels, Gold and People, to diffy a all this charge, and for some Pelect: a did not contains, then see me may not repet be founded to specia may ny thereby here might be founded to specia any ny thereby here might be founded to specia any ny thereby here might be founded to specia any ny thereby here might be founded to specia any ny thereby here might be founded to specia and not contains, then the new the ne bimselfe with Christian Princes, he would spare nothing that he had in the world. And in this discourse of taking these Townes, and making of these Forts, we spent a great time with exceeding great delight of the Prete.

82. The next day, being the twentieth of November, I was called for by the Prete, and a- 20 mong others, he moued these questions; that I should declare unto him the lines of Saint lerome. and Saint Dominicke, and Saint Francis, and of what Countrey they were, and wherefore in the Letters of the Grand Captaine mention was made, that the King of Portugall had builded Churches unto these Saints, in the Townes which he had taken in the Kingdomes of Congo, Benin, and of the Indies. I answered, that Saint Ierome was borne in Sclauonia, and Saint Dominicke in Spaine, and game bum. large information of their orders, referring my settle to the Booke which I had of their inter. Sud-dainly there came an answere, that I should show him the lives of these Saints, seeing that I faid that I had them. After this, they came with another question, whether wee did all things that the Pope commanded vs ! I faid, yea; for fo wee were bound by the Article of our holy Faith, which confessed One boly and Casbolike Church. Hereupon they answered me, that if the 12 Pope would command them any thing which the Apostles had not written, they would not doe it : and likewife if their Abuna or Patriarke would commained them any such thing, they would burne such a Commandement. After this, came another quettion, Why there are not fo many bodies of Saints in Ethiopia, as there be as Icaly, Germany, and France ! I answered him, That in those Prosinces many Emperours had raigned, whose Ministers being Pagans, were very cruell, and that they which were consented to the Fauth of Christ, were fo constant in the fame, that they chuse rather to dye for it, then to worfbip Idols, and that therefore there were fo many Martyrs and Virgins. Touching this point an answer was returned, that I faid the truth, which he greatly delighted to heare to plainly delinered, and asked whether we knew, How long is was fince Ethiopia received the Christian Faith? I fent him word, that I thought, that mithin a short time after the death of Christ, this land an * It was Philip was converted by the Ennuch of the Queene Candaces, which was baptived by the Apostle Saint Philip. An answere was sent me, that by this Eurosch there was no more conserved but the Country of Tigrai, which is in Ethiopia, and that the rest was conserved by force of Armes', as also be proceed. Mail part of E delb in daily converting of divers Kingdomer by the faul force of Armer, and that the first conversion whopse convert of the Queene Canclaces, was ten yearet after the death of Christ, and that from that time unto this

present, it had beene converted by Christians, orc. 84. The next day, the Prete fent for my Booke, which is called, Flos Santtorum, laying; That I should shew them the lines of the faid Saints : I fent him my Booke, which presently they fent me backe againe by two Friers, faying, That the Prete willed them to write the name of every Saint, in the Abifin tongue, and to place the same vpon every figure. The next day, so the faid Friers were with their Booke to translate these lines. I durit not go to speake with the Prete, valeffe I carried with me the Booke of the Kalender, because they asked me the day of euery Saint, and would needs have me tell it them immedia ly. On Saint Kaiberines day, being Sunday, the Prete fent certaine Canons and Priests, which (a Venetian Painter, called Nicholas Brancaleon, which had lived about fortie yeares in this Countrey, and vnderstood the Abifin tongue, was their Interpreter) and that every thing was excellently well handled, faying, That

They come as

one alone faid Masse, and that they gaue not the Communion to all the standers by.

This very day being Sunday, when wee were gone to bed, the Prete sent for vs, and being large come are game into the first Curtaines, he caused vs all to put on our best apparell, and to come into the Press presence of the Press, who sate upon his Throne in the very same fort that he sate before. And 60 here he talked with vs of many matters, and among other things, that the Frankes which were in his Court might depart this Realme, when it pleased them, and the Ambassauour also with his Company, and that one France thould stay behind, called Nicholas Muzza, by whom hee would fend his Letters, which were to be made in Gold, and that therefore he could not write

è. X 11 I.

Of the Progresse of PRETEIANNI. Their Wrestling, Baptisme, Malle passage: of the dangerous Straits comming to Saint GEORGES Church. Many other Questions. The PRETES preparations in his Tranell.

He flue and eventieth of the faid moneth of November, the Prete removed in this order. He mounted on horse-backe with two Pages onely, and passed beforeour Tent, skirmishing and managing of his horse. And suddenly a brute went through the Campe, that the Nague was departed. And every man haft-ned to follow after as fast as they could. He caused fiftie Mules to bee delivered vs, thirtie sine

to carrie our Meale and Wine, and fifteene to carrie our other Stuffe, with certaine flaves. and we were recommended to accretaine Lord, called Aiax Raphael. Aiax is the title of his Lordthin, and Raphael his name, who gaue vs every day an Oxe. Wee departed, and on the Wednelday came vnto the Court, and lodged in a great open field ypon a Raders fide: Eft-soones, there came a very honorable Frier to visit vs, which is the chiefe of the Kings Secretaries, and a great Divine, and also the Nebret of the Friers of Chavamo, and faid, that hee came to visit vs on the 26 behalfe of his Lord.

86. The second of December, Lazarus de Andrada, our Portugall Painter, being neere the Kings Tent, was asked whether he would wraftle; and hee wraftled, mifdoubting no danger at all: and at the first bowt his legge was broken, he brake another Poringals arme. This Wrastler of the Prete, was called Gabmariam, which signifieth, The Servant of Mary, and was a Moore, and is broad-shouldred, and a strong fellow, and workerh cunning with his hand in Silke and Gold. This day came newes from his Grand Betudete, which was in Warre against a King of the Moores, that he had vanquished him; and fent much Gold and slaves, and the heads of certaine great men which he had flaine.

At this time one Master Peter Cordiero a Genoues, had a Sonne borne of his Wife, which was Baptising of a 20 a Negre, who requested me to baptize him within eight dayes, because they baptize not their childe. male children before the end of fortie dayes. I baptized this childe the tenth of December, and thir her repayred great flore of people, and those of the most honourable and principall of the

Court. 87. Departing from this Countrey, we tooke our journey by that way, by which weecame Multitude of unto the Court. And fo great was the throng of people which travelled on all fides, that for people. ten or twelue miles space, the people were so neere one another, that it seemed to bee the Proceffion on Capus Christi day : and icarcely the tenth part are well apparelled. The reit are all clad in skinnes and other base apparell, and carrie all their riches with them, which are onely certaine pots to make Wine in, and Dilhes to drinke in. And if they make no long journey, thele Very peore. do base people, carrie their poore Cottages all whole and covered as they are, and if they goe any About 10000 long journey; they carrie nought but the rafts onely, which are certaine small Poles and the rich Muk in the men cause their Tents to be carryed with them, which are very good and of great price. I speake traine of Prese not of the great Gentlemen and Lords; for with enery one of them is mooned as it were a Citie Few good hor or a good Towne, as namely, their Tents carryed partly vpon flaues backes, and partly vpon les becau'e Mules. We Portugals, and the Frankes have oftentimes confidered the number of their Mules, they cennor and take them to be aboue fiftie thouland. The Horses are but few, for albeit there are very faire shoot them. ones, yet because they know not how to shooe them, they quickly marre their feet; and if the Prete travell any long journey, all the Townes are full of furbated Hories, which are faine to follow foftly after. The Mules of carriage are innumerable, and they ride as well on Male as Female Mules. There are great store of Hacknies which carrie burthens, and yet their feet are not furbated as the Horses be. There are many He-asses more serviceable then Hacknies. They make

88. The Prete feldome travelleth in the high way, neither doth any man know whether hee goeth; but the Altar-flones, that is, their Churches, which are thirteene doe keepe the high Thirteene way, although the Prete goe out of the way, and all the people commeth after in the way, vntill they find a white Tent fet vp, and straite way every man taketh vp his lodging in his place, ches. and many times the Prete comes not to this Tent, but lyeth in Monasteries and other Religious Aouses. In this Tent which is erected, they vie continually to sing and play upon Instruments,

many Oxen also to carrie burthens, and in the plaine and Champaigne Countries, the Camels

60 as though the Prete were there in perion, but not fo cunningly as when he is there prefent. The Altar-stones are carryed with great renerence, and alwayes by Priests that fay Maste, and there Altarestones be foure of them which carrie the same on their shoulders upon a square Table, and foure Priests carried by come behind to change courses in carrying of the same. They are coursed with rich Embroyde- Priests. red Clothes and cloth of Silke, and two Clerkes goe before with a Centor and a Croffe, and ano-

ther goeth ringing with a small Bell, and every man and woman that heareth the same, goeth our of the way : and if hee bee on horse-backe hee strait-way lighteth, and giveth place, that the Church may paffe. Likewise there alwayes goe with the Court foure Lions, each of them led with two Chaines, one before and another behind, and every bodie maketh roome for them. We wayted on the Court till the twentieth of December, and came vnto those terrible Mountaines where the gates are, whereby we passed when we came first into the Country, and there they

After that the Tents of the Prete were erected, ftrait-way they beganne to make a very high Scatfold neere one of his Tents, because the Prete would shew himselfe to his people on Christmas day. And commonly he sheweth himselfe thrice a yeare, that is to say, on Christmas day, to The cause why Prete Jan. on Easter day, and on Holy Rood day in September. And the cause why he thus sheweth himfelte thrice, is, because his Grand-father, whose name was Alexander, was kept three yeares fehimselfe to the cret after his death by his Servants, who governed the Country all the meane-while : for vntill peo; le thrice a that time, none of the people might fee their King, neither was he feene of any, but a few of his Seruants. And at the requeft of the people, the Father of this Danid shewed himselfe these three dayes, and this King also doth the like: They also say, that when he goeth to warre, he al-

wayes gotth open, that all men may fee him, and also when he trauelleth. 80. On Christmas Euening at after-noone, the Prete called for me, and asked mee what Feast kept the day next fellowing? I fent him word, wee kept the Feaft of the Natinitie of Christ. He asked me, what Solemnitie we yied? I answered, that we kept our visall manner, and the folemnitie of three Messes. Hee said, that they did all things like vnto vs., saue that they yied 20 but one Maffe, and willed me to flay one of those three Maffes which I would my felfe. Six of vs went and we prolonged the Mattins with Leffons, Hymnes, Pfalmes and Prophefics, and fear hel all fuch things at wee could best fing and thunder out : and the Prete neuer departed from the gate of his Tent, which was as I have faid, neere wnto our Church : and two Pages neurr cealed to goe and come, and to inquire what it was the which we fung, specially when they perceived vs to change the tune of the Pfalmes, Hymnes, and Responsories. When this was done, and one man confessed, it began to be broad day, and I sent them word, that I would fay Masse, and strait way we began a Procession, with a Crosse carryed up before vs, and an Image of our Law, and two Torches about the Croffe : and wee begannethe Procession neere the Circle within our Tent. Suddenly the Prete lent vnto vs to make our Procession about his Tents, and Tent vs foure hundred great Candles of white Waxe, to carry them lighted before vs. and would have vs beginne our Procession with our Portugals, and the white people, and that his owne people should follow after. When the Procession was ended, which reached a great Circuit, wee began our Aferges, and I went to give Holy Water to Prete lann, which I might eafily fling from our Church, because he was neere vnto vs. There were with him. as I was informed, the Queene his Wife, Queene Helena his Mother, and the Cabeata, with other his familiar friends. In the Tent of our Church stood all the great Nobles and Lords of the Court, which could fland in the roome, and the rest stood without : and from our Altar vinto the Prete his Tent all the way was open, because he desired to see the whole Service of the Masse. 40

90. The Procession, Masse, and Communion being ended, the Ambassadour and all the rest of his company were permitted to goe home vnto their Dinner, and I onely with mine Interpreter was stayed behind. Strait way that old Father, the Kings Schoole-master came vinto mee, and faid, that the Prete Ianni greatly commended our Seruice, but defired to know what reason we had to fuffer the Lay-people to enter into the Church, as well as the Clergie, and that hee wis informed, that women also came into the Church. I answered him that the Church of God was not that up against any Christian, and that if Christ stood alwayes with open armes to receive all that com, vnto him into his glory in Paradife, why should not wee receive them inso the Church, which is the way to paffe into Paradife? and as touching women, although in olu time they entred not into Santa Santorum, yet the merits of our Lady were fuch and to 50 great, that they were fufficient to deferue, that the feminine fexe might enter into the Houle

They fent me word, that they had fourescore and one Bookes of the old and new Testament, and would know whether we had any more or no. I fent them word, that wee had about ten times fourefcore and one Bookes, which were drawne out of the aforefaid Workes, with many and more perfect Expositions. They told mee that they knew well, that wee had more Bookes then they, and therefore he defired me to tell him the names of those which they had not. And fo they held me with Quettions and Answeres untill night, with Messengers that ceased not to trot vp and downe. I stood on my feet leaning vpon a staffe, and Questions came vnto mee not onely from the Prete lanni, but also from his Wife and from his Mother Queene Helena: and I 60 answered them as God affilted me. At length, I became so wearie and hungry, that I could not fland any longer upon my legs, and they gaue mee leaue to depart. I was no fooner gone away, but a Page came running after me, and faid, that the Prete requelted mee very instantly to give him the Canopie that was ouer my head, praying me to pardon him, that he had stayed me so

CHAP.5. S. 13. Craggie and rockie pallages. Feurefull down-fals.

long without meat, and requested me so soone as I had dined, to returne vnto him, because he defired to know other things of me. After I was come to our Tents, and had fearce dired, there camea message vnto mee to pray mee to returne, and so I was constrained to gop thither, and brought them with me which had fung Maffe, and there we fung a Complen, as well as we could And the Prete with the Queene continually shewed exceeding great attentioenesses

The Seruice being ended, he commanded the Tent of the Church to be taken downe, becan fe he meant to depart that night to paffe those bad paffages, which are on these mightie high Moun- Remove at traines whereof we have spoken before, and so hee did : for at mid-night wee heard a great noyle mid-night. of Horles and Mules, and every body faying, The Negus marcheth. And forthwith wee put out 10 felues in order, and followed him. And when we came to the first passage, we were constrayned with Lances to make our way behind and before vs, fo great was the turie and the throng, and the multitude of people which preffed vs behind. Wee traue led till wee over-tooke the Kings Tents, which were pitched in the midft of those great Trenches, which are betweene the Ripers before mentioned : heere wee refted vntill mid-night, and rill the Trete beganne againe to march, and we with him : and before morning, we were gotten out of those ill passages. And we heard afterward, that the same night in those passages there perished very many men, women. Affes, Mules, and laden Oxen : and in this fecond paffage, called Aquiafaghi, as wee have Horrible fand before, it was told mee that a great Lady being voon a Mule, beeing led by two of her Ser- down fals, mants, all of them being tyed together, fell downe from that great height, and were torne in

To pieces before they came to the bottome : fo terrible and fearefull are those Rockes and downefals, that it feemes they goe downe to Hell, to him that beholdetlethem. This was our jour- Offaues notable ney without keeping holy the Odane of Christmas, which in that Countrey is not observed. I served. haue faid before, that the Court stayed in other places fine or fixe dayes in remooning, but at there paffages they stayed three weekes, and the stuffe of the Prefe was about a moneth in paffing, although they paffed enery day.

91. The eight and twentieth of December, 1 , 20. we'drew neere vnto a Church which wee faw before, as we came into the Countrey, but we were not thereat, which is called S. Georges, Saint Georges vinder which they fet up the Paulion of the Prete, and we lodged in our appointed place. The Church. next day very early, the Prete fent to call vs, and fignified vitto vs that wee fliould fee the 20 Church, which is great and all painted round about, the walls and paintings are very connenient, where are many goodly Histories well set forth, and made in due proportions by a Denetian, called Nicholas Brancaleon, of whom we spake before, and here his name is so put downe in writing, although in this Countrey they call him Marconius. The walls which are without the body of the Church, and meet under the conered circuit, which is like a Cloyfler, were all coursed from top to the bottome with whole pieces of Embroydered Cloth, of Vehiets, and o- Riches thereof ther rich Cloth of Silke. When we came into the gate of the open circuit, and were entring in-

to the courred circuit, they caufed the Clothes to be lifted vp, which were hanged over the prin-

cipall gate, which fee med to bee coursed ouer with plates, which at the first bluff wee tooke to

be of Gold, because they told vs fo, but when we came neerer, wee perceived, that they were

40 but plates of Silver, but gilt over, and it was laid fo cunning as well your the gates, as in the Windowes, that it could not be mended, The Cabeata, which is fogreat a Lord, was the man that were with vs and thewed vs energy thing. And the Prete also was present, but enuironed with his Curtaines : yet when we passed by him he might see vs and we him. Whereupon when he faw vs, hee could not containe himfelfe, but needs he must fend to know of vs, what we thought of that Church and of those paintings. We answered him, that they feemed vnto vs to bee things that belonged to a great Lord and King, which answere pleased him not a little. The roofe or courting of this Church is framed vpon thirtie fix Pillars of wood, which are very thicke, and as high as the Masts of Gal-

lies, and couered all ouer with Wainfoot, which are painted, like as all the wals round about. After divers fashions, hoping that I should have beene dispatched, there were fetched out of 50 the Church foure great and rich Canopies, which to foone as I faw them, I greatly wondred at although before I had feene many great and rich ones in India, which doe fhadow those Kings, Fourerich Cabut none of that greatneffeand richneffe, whereat they reioyced that brought them, and ranne nopics of flate, to tell it vnto the Prete, who fuddenly tent for me vnto him, and standing in the gate of his Pauilion with the Frankes, which remay ned in the Court, he willed them agains to be shewed vnto one in their presence, commanding me to view them well, and to tell him what I thought of them. I answered him, that they were exceeding faire, and that I neuer had seene in India, where many of the Kings vie them, neither fairer, nor richer. Then he commanded, that they should be set up on the ground against the Sunne, so that they made a shadow like vnto a Tent, 60 and willed them to tell me, that when he trauelled , and would rest himselfe and his wife toge-

ther, he rested himselfe under the shadow of one of those Canopies, and tooke his repast, and slept under the same. These Canopies might well be of the bignesse of a great Cart-wheele, to that ten men might well stand under the shadow of one of them, & were coursed all overwith Silk. After all these Questions and Answeres, hee sent to know what hee defired most to drinke, whether

Merits of our Lady for women. Bookes of Scripture,

Xxxxx

Diners Wine: Wine of Grapes or of Honey, or of Zasna, which is made of Barley: His trauelling was
The manner of after this manner: he rode vncouered aloft, with a Crowne vpon his head, compaffed with redde Curtaines, very long and high: onely behind him and on both fides, and he was in the midft. They which carryed the faid Custains, were on the outfide of the fame, & bare the fame aloft youn final Speares. Within the faid Curtaines goe fix Pages, which they call Lagameneor, which fignifieth. Pages of the head, because the Mule which the Prese rideth on, hath a very faire ornament about her bridle, which hath in the cheekes of the bridle, two Cordons of Silke with goodly Taffel. and one of these Cordons, one Page holderh on one fide, and another on the other fide, which lead the Mule, as it were by the head : then follow two other Pages likewife, one on the one fide and another on the other side, which lay their hands on the necke of the Mule, and two follow after to in the same manner with their hands upon the buttockes, almost upon the Crouper. Without the Curtaines and before the Prete March twentie of the principall Pages in very good array, and before the faid Pages goe fixe Horses, very faire and richly furnished, each of them being led by foure men, very well apparelled, to wit; two by the head, & two behind, with their hands youn the Crouper, in fuch fort as the Prete his Mule was led. And before thefe Hor-

fes goe fixe Mules, fadled and very well furnished, and every one of them likewise have four men to lead them as the Horses were led. And before the said Mules, goe twentie principall Gentlemen riding vpon other Mules, with their fine Serges about their bodies. And then wes Portugals went before the faid Gentlemen, for this place was appointed vinto vs. Neither may any Footmen or Horsemen, either on horse-backe or vpon Mulesapproach 20 necre him by a great distance, for there bee Curtiers which alwayes runne before vpon horsebacke, and if their Horses be tyred, they light and take others, which cause the people to stand Betudetes with out of the way, to that there is no bodie to be feene in the way. The Betudetes march with their Guard a great diffance out of the way, and one goeth on the one fide, and another on the other. at the least a Caleeuer-shot distance off : and if the way be Champaigne, sometimes they goes mile and an halfe off, according to the qualitie of the Countrey. And if the way bee rockie and first, and so continue any long space, and that it bee necessary that every man must passe that way, the said Besudetes divide themselves a mile and an halfe assumer, and one goeth before. to wit, hee which is on the right hand, and hee on the left hand commeth behind, with each of which Officers may be about fixe thousand persons, and as I said before; with these men alwain 10 goe foure Lions chained with great Chaines, both before and behind. They march also which carrie the Churches and the Altar-stones, whereunto they doe great honour and reuerence. Another thing the Prete carryeth with him whitherfoeuer he goe, for hee neuer ftirreth without it. which are one hundred larres of Wine of Honey, and as many of Wine of Raifins, every one of which larres may containe fixe or feuen draughts of Wine, and they are as blacke as let. and are very smooth and finely made with a couer of Earth, and then stopped vp, and no man dare bee so hardie as to come neere or to take any of them without the Prete his licence. They carrie likewise one hundred Paniers painted ouer and closed, tull of Wheaten bread, and these came after the Prete, not farre distant from him, and they carry them in a ranke, and they came one after another, that is to fay, first a larre, and then a Panier, and behind them came fixe men which are as it were Stewards of the house. And when they are come to the Prete his Paulion, they valade all these things, and carry them in, and afterward he lendeth some part thereof to whom he pleafeth.

d. XIIII.

How the PRETE came to the Church of Machan Celacem, and of the Procession where with they received him & Divers Meffages : Their twelfth Baptifme of the ABYNAS Circumcision, Orders, Confectation of the Church and Translation of NAHV. Diners Questions and Discourses.

He first of Ianuary, 1521. we came vnto a great Church, which when wee came that way first, and passed neere the same, they would not suffer vs to see. The Church is called Machan Celacem, which fignifieth, The Trmitie. Three miles before wee came at the Church, the Prete commanded eight Horfes well furnifhed to be given vnto vs, wherewith we should ride before him skitmishing, managing and turning our Horles far better then they could, whereat he took great delight. When we were come within a mile of the Church, there came forth an infinite multitude of people to receive vs. and 60 there were fo many Croffes, Priests and Friers of divers Monasteries and Churches, that they could not be numbred, and to our judgement they were aboue thirtie thousand. And we thought that the Friers came from farre Countries, because in this Kingdome of Amera, there were no Monasteries, because all the great Churches are the burials of their Kings. There were about

two hundred with Miters, which are made like vnto great and high hoods of Silke. And like- Two hundred wile fixtue foure Canopies of those great ones, which might well be told, because they carried Mitred. them aloft about the people : but they were not fo faire and rich, as those of the Church of Saint George. All these Canopies belonged vnto Churches, where Kings were buried, because at their death they leave the fame vnto them. This great multitude of people affemided, belonged partly to the Churches and Monasteries, and part of them were of the Countrey, which came to tee the Prete, who rid all open, whom they never faw ride fo before,

The Prete having lighted at the Church, and having made his Prayers, returned to his Pania. The Prete rode lion, and straight-way sent for me, and willed that the Ambassadour and his Company should open.

10 goe to their lodging. Heere he demaunded of me, What I thought of this great meeting and entertainment, which was given unto him by this great multitude, and whether the King of Portugall had any such great entertainment, and of so great number of people? And that this people were farre more then they seemed to be, because the most part of them were naked, and therefore appeared not to the beholders so many as they are, and that our people in France are well apparelled, and in order, and seems to be many more then they be; and that I should goe rest me with the Ambasadour, whom I met upon the way. Againe, hee fent me word, that this Church was newly built, and that there was noner any Masse Said in it, and that it was the Custome, that as many as entred thereimo, should Custome of ofgive some offering, and that the Ambassadour should give his Weapons, and I should give my Cap feringin Churwhich I were, and likewise each man should give somewhat.

94. The day following, the Prete fent vs word, that we should come and see the foresaid Description of Church, whither he was gone before. This Church is very great and high, and the Wals are of the Church, white stone, wrought with Iron Chizels, with very goo. ly worke, vpon which they lay no Transames, because they would not beare them, for the stones are not soyned one with another, nor feamed together, but onely laid one vpon another, without any Ligaments or firmenesse : and they feeme very faire, to a man that knoweth not how they are framed within. The chiefe gate is made all of plates, as the gate of the Church of Saint George is, and beweene thele platts are counterfere itones, and lewels fet with very good Pearles, all very well fet in-About the wall of the principall gate, are two Pictures of our Lady: very reverendly, and well made, with two Angels, all grawne with Pentill. They fay, that a certaine Frier drew them 30 very lively, and I my felfe was acquainted with that Free. In this Church are three Iles built upon fixe Columnes, and the faid Columnes are built of pieces of Free-stone, laid one vpon another, and very well wrought: and the circuit without, and couered like a Cloyfter, is built vpon fixe Columnes of Wood, as great as the Maits of Gallies, and very high, and vp-

on the faid Columnes, is Timber laid very flat, which maketh a very thicke Roofe; and doubts Artleffe people leffe, it is a wonderfull thing to thinke, how there people which are without any great wit, were able to let vp thele Pillers of Wood which are so high. About the Church are fixteene Curtaines hanged, running which way so ever you will, and they are as deepe as the whole Curtaines piece is, which are Embroydered Cloathes, very rich and stately, and enery Curtaine is of se-40 uenteene pieces faitned together.

oc. The fourth of lanuary, the Prete lent vs word, that wee should remooue our Tent, and Prete lanui your Church, and should cause it to bee carried a mile and an halte from thence, where they had feth to be bapmade a Poole like a Pond or Lake, fall of Water, wherein they went to baptize themselues vp- uz donce a on twelfth day, because this is their custome to baptize themk lues every yeere, on the same day his abiects. that Christ was baptized. And so the next day being the Vigil, we went and saw a great circuit enclosed with an hedge in a very large field, and they sent to know, whether we would be baptized or no ! I fent them word, that the manner of our Church was to baptize vs once only in our Infancy.

All that night an exceeding great number of Priefts, ceased not to sing, vntill the morning ouer the faid Lake, faying, that they bleffed the faid I ake. About midnight they beganne the baptisme, and they say (which I beleeve also to be true) that the first which was baptized, was the Prete, and nex vnto him the Patriarke, Abuna Marke, and the Queene the Prete his Wife, And the ethree persons had cloathes about their printies, but all the rest were starke naked, as they came into the world: And about the riting of the Sunne, when the baptisme was in the greatest heate, the Presedent for me to come and see him, I went thither, and stayed there till three of the clock, to see how they were baptized, and they placed me at an end of the said Lake, ouer against the Prete, and they were baptized in this manner.

The Lake hat hagreat bottome, and it is plaine, and cut into the ground, very right downe The manner and (quare, and boorded round about, and in the bottome with Plankes, and ouer those Plankes, of the bap 60 it is couered with courle Cotton-cloath, made like a Cerf-cloath. The Water was conneyed tifine of thefe thitherby a little Gutter, fuch as they vie to Water Gardens withall, and rame into the people. Lake through a Paye, at the mouth whereof hung a great Sacke, to straine the Water which ranne into the Like. And at my comming thither, the Water cealed running, because it was already full of Holy Water, whereinto they had cast Orle. This Lake had on the one fide one or fixe freppes, and over against them about fixe yards diffant, was made a little XXXXX 2

enclosure of wood, wherein stood the Prete, which had a Curtaine of blue Sindall before him. being halfe flit in twaine, and through this flit he might fee those that were baptized, for his face was turned toward the Lake: in which stood that old Father, the Schoole-master of the Prete. with whom I had conference on Christmas day at night. This old man was naked as hee came out of his Mothers wombe, and almost dead for cold, because that night was a great Frost, and hee flood in the water vp to the shoulders, for of that depth the Lake was where they entred. which were to be baptized, downe by the faid steps starke naked with their backes toward the Prese, and when they went out, they shewed their fore-parts as well women as men. These people came, neere to the faid Schoole-mafter, and he laid his hand vpon their heads, and thrust people came, neere to the tale water; faying, in his owne Language: I baptize thee in the name of 10 the Father, of the Sonne, and of the Holy Ghost, croffing of them in flead of bleffing. And if they were little children, they went not downe all the faid fleps, but the faid Schoole-mafter came vnto them, and dipped them downe after the manner aforefaid. And as I haue faid, I flood on the other fide ouer against the Prete, fo that when he saw their backes, I saw the fore. parts of those which were baptized.

This Poole or Lake was compassed and couered with Tents of divers colours, so well placed and ordered with fuch flore of boughes, of Orenge-trees, Limons, and Citrons, that it feemed to be an exceeding faire Garden. The great Tilt that hung ouer the faid Lake was very long, and all full of red and blue crosses of Silke, which gaue a great grace thereunto.

TheMhuna

96. The next day after the baptisme, I went to visit the Abuna, whom till then I had nei- 20 ther fooken withall, nor seene, but onely at the Baptisme, beeing almost dead for cold, where I could not speake vnto him. He tooke exceeding pleasure at my visiting of him, and would not let mee kille his hand, but rather would have fallen downe vpon the ground to kiffe my feet, And being set downe vpon a Couch, the beginning of his speech was, that he gaue most heartie thankes to God for our meeting together, and that hee conceined exceeding great pleasure when those things were told him which I had to often spoken vnto Prete Ianni, and especially concerning that Baptilme, in that I had vttered the truth fo freely in his prefence, wherein hee would not beleeue the Abuna himselfe, because he alone was of that opinion, and that if he had me companion or two to helpe to backe him in aelling of the truth, that hee would draw the Prete from many faults and errours, wherein he and all his people were plunged. And while we to were talking of this matter, there came in a white Priest, the Sonne of a Gibete, that is to say, of a white man borne in this Countrey, and he asked me why we were not circumcifed, feeing that Chrift was circumcized : I answered him, that it was true, that Chrift was circumcifed, and that he would haue it so, because he would fulfill the Law which at that time was vsed, because hee would not be accused before the time for breaking of the Law, but that shortly after, hee commanded that Circumcifion should cease. This Priest forth-with replyed, that he was the Sonne of a Franke, and that his Father would not fuffer him to be circumcized, and that when he came to the age of twentie yeares after the death of his Father, on an Enening going to bed vncircumcifed, the next morning he found himselfe circumcifed : and how might this come to raffe. if God would not have Circumcifion: I answered him, that this was a notable deceits for though 40 it were granted that God had not forbid Circumcifion, yet hee was not fo worthy a person, that God would shew this Miracle vpon him, that is to say, of an imperfect man to make him perfect : and that if it were as he had faid, that going to bed whole, he was found the next morning circumcized, it might be the Deuill that had done the fame to doe him dishonour. The Abuna, and as many as were in the house laughed exceedingly at this speech, and tooke great pleafure thereat : and this Priest afterward became an especiall friend to me and to all the Portugals,

Circumcifion

is vied in the

Countrey of

Prete lanni.

After this the Abana caused Wine and Fruits of the Countrey to bee brought in, and would needs make vsa little Banquet, and fent vnto our Tents good store of Bread and Wine and one Oxe, The eighth of Ianuary, the faid Abuna, determined to give Orders, and I went thither to 10 fee the manner which hee vied in giving of the fame; which was in this wife: A white Tent was erected in a great Champaigne field, where were affembled betweene fine and fixe thouland persons to receive Orders. Hither came the About, riding vpon a Mule, and my selfe was in his company with an infinite number of others. And fitting on his Mules backe in the midst of that fo great Assembly, hee made, as it were, a Sermon in the Arabian Tongue, and one of his Priests expounded it in the Abassin Language. I asked my Interpreter, what it was that the Abuna faid : he told me that he faid, that if any man there had two Wives or more, although any of them were dead, he should not become Priest, and if he did take Orders he did curse and excommune him with the

to thoulands at once. A Sermon.

Orders giuen

and came daily to heare my Masse.

curse of God. This speech being ended, hee sate him downe in a Chaire before the said Tent, and three 60 Priests fate downe before him v pon the ground, every man with his Booke, and certaine others which directed this businesse, caused all those which were to take Orders, to set downe on the ground vpon their heeles, and all of them flood in three very long rankes or allies, and enery ranke had one of those Priests which held the Bookes and examined them shortly, so that some

reade not paff two words; and after this man went another Prieft, with a Baforrfull of a white tincture, and with a plate made like vnto Seales dipped in the faid tincture, and with the fame Their manner they made a marke vpon the bare of their right arme, which beeing done, they role from that ders rate place, and went and late downe in the midft of the fields vpon certaine Hillockes of Earth, Prieffs. where they that were examined must stand, and there were very few which went not oner this ther. This Examination being ended, the Abuna went into his Tent and fate in a Chaire, and this Tent had two gates, through which they canfed all the Examinates to paffe, one after another, and as they were prefented before the Abana, comming in at the one gate thrait-waves, he layed his hand youn their heads, and faid certaine words which I understood not; and then pair 10 fed out by the other gate : neither was there any one of them to whom this Ceremonie was not

Then he tooke a Booke in his hand, and read a great while on the fame, holding a little croffe of Iron in his hand, and made many fignes of the Croffe therewith youn the whole Companie This ended, a Priest went out of the gate with a Booke and read, as it might bee, the Epistle of the Gospel, and strait-way the Abuna said a Masse, which continued no longer time, then a man Two bouland might thrice fay ouer the Pfalme of Miserere mei Deus : and firait-way he ministred the Com- three hundred munion to all those Priests which were Massing Priests, and were in number two thousand three fifties in Priests hundred fiftie fixe, for they make these Priefts of the Masse by themselnes, and the Clerkes by themselues another day. And the Abuna told mee, that the Clerkes were ordayned to the de-

20 gree of Deacon, as Saint Stephen was. Yet I faw him make Clerkes and Priefts altogether in one day, and that at oftentimes, because hee made them and gaue them Orders, very often, and None but the alwayes in great numbers, because they come to him out of all the Kingdomes and Territories of Alassa can give the Prete, for there is none that can give Orders but he. They are not registred nor have any Letters of Testimonie or Certificate of their Orders. And because I have spoken of the number of two thouland three hundred fittie fixe, I could not have knowne the lame, vnleffe I had beene told it by him which had the charge to count them, and I thinke he told me true.

97. The next day being the ninth of Ianuarie, the Prese fent for me : When I was come vnto him he faid, that he vinderstood that I had beene to see his Priests consecrated, and asked mee what I thought of them. I answered, that I had seene two things, which though they had bin 20 told me and confirmed by Oath, yet I would never have beleeved them, to wit, the multitude of the Clergie, the Croffes and Miters which were at the receiuing of his Highnesse, and the entertainment which he made them. The second, was this so great and infinite number of Priests. which received Orders altogether, and that he thought that Ceremonie was very well performed; but that the dishon-stie of the Priests wherein they came to take Orders, displeased mee not a little. Strait-way I was answered, that I needed not to maruell at any of these things: for as touching their meeting of him, there were no Priests that came thither, but onely those which belonged to the Churches of his Grand-father and Predecessor, which were builded in those parts,, and that they bare those Miters, Canopies, and Crosses which were left vnto them: and that the Priests which received Orders were but a few, in comparison of the number that 40 they were wont to be, for alwayes they are wont to make fine or fixe thouland, and that now they were fo few, because they knew not of the comming of the Abana, and that I should tell him what dishonestie I had seene: which was contrarie to the Order of the Church: I answered, that it seemed to mee a very dishonest and shamefull thing, that the Priests which were to bee admitted to the ministration of the Masse, and were to receive the bodie of Christ, should come almost all naked, shewing their Prinities: and that Adam and Ene so soone as they sinned saw themselues naked, and when they were to appeare before God did hide themselues : and that

these beeing to receive the Sacrament, which is much more, are not ashamed to shew all their dishonestie, and that I had seene a Frier which was starke blind, which never had eyes, and another which was lame of his right hand, and foure or fine which were lame of their legs, to haue received Orders of Priest-hood, which ought to have beene found, and to have all their limmes 50 found and perfect. Suddenly hee sent me word againe, that he was highly pleased, that I had mar- No Prick ked euery thing particularly to tell him my opinion, that afterward thing omight be amended, faying, that ought obec bee would take arder for the Privile that they hould not never the amended of the control of the blind, lame, or blind, lame, or bee would take order for the Priests, that they should not goe maked, and that touching those which were mayned in lame, I should conferre with Aiaz Raphael, which was present at this giving of Orders. This Aiaz boile Raphael, is that honourable Priest and great Lord, to whom wee were recommended when wee dist Raphael. came first vnto the Court.

The tenth of Ianuarie, the Abuna made Clerkes. These are not examined, because they make them of all Ages, euen children that are carryed in the armes and cannot speake, vntill they bee fifteene yeares old, whiles yet they have no Wives, but if they have Wives they cannot bee Clerkes or Clerkes: and those which take Orders to be Priests of the Male, while they bee Clerkes, may children. take Wines, and so become Priests : for if they become Priests before they take Wines, afterward they may not marry. The men beare the children in their armes, and cannot speake nor goe, because the women may not come within the Church. Their crying seemeth to bee like the crying of so many young Kids, because they are there without their Mothers, and are halfe

Three dip-

Miracles pre-

Xxxxx 3

Infancy and admirted. Manner of making Clerkes.

flarued for hunger : for this Ceremony is not ended vntill night, and they are enforced to continue without eating or lucking, because they must receive the Communion. It is certainely knowne, that these little ones are not able to reade, and the great ones also can reade but little.

And they make them after this fort. The Abana fitting in a Chaire, which is in a Tent placed in a Church, caused these Clerkes to passe along before, and having read a while in a Booke, he pulleth from each of their Temples 2 tuft of haire : then hee readeth 2 Booke, and cauferh them to passe by a second time, and to rouch the Keies wherewith they open the gate of the Tent, and they put a Cloath vpon their heads, and at every one of thefe actions they mult once paffe by : and likewise another they put a blacke Earthen Dish in their hands, in stead of the page by and inservice and the page to free at the Maffe, and at each of the Ceremo to meet they read a little while, which being ended, the Abson fath Maffe. And it is a fearfull thing to behold the danger which these little Infants suffer, which perforce they make to swallow downe the Communion, by powring water downe into their throats, as well because the Host is made of course Dough, as also by reason of their tender age, and the continual mourning

very Babesso

Communion. which they make. In the end, the Abuna prayed me to goe and dine with him at his Tent, and heere hee defired

me to tell him, what I thought of this Ceremony, whereat I was present all the while, and had feene every thing particularly, and faid that the Prete had fent him word to talke with mee concerning this Ceremony : I faid, that his Ceremony liked me very well, But to admit Infante Abelia without new borne unto Orders, and great Lubbers without learning, me thought it unseemely to thrust Alles 20

an dissa three eato the boufe of God. He answered mee, That God had fent him hither to tell the truth, and and weatie that he did nothing, but as He was commaunded, and that the Prete had willed him to make all the Children Clerkes, and that they would learne in time to come, because he was now very old, and then wist not when they (hould have another Abuna, feeing this Countrey beretofore had beene three and with not work they formed name amounts. Admin a from the work of the treating years without an Admin, and that not long fines, they had for two thousing a much of folds Carro, the base on Admin, and by reason of the Warrer between the Soldan and the Turke, they had four more, and yet they had detained the Gold, and that now Gold had caused an to come thirthey had four more, and yet they had detained the Gold, and that now Gold had caused me to come thirthey had four more, and yet they had detained the Gold, and that now Gold had caused me to come thirthey had four more, and yet they had detained the Gold, and that now Gold had caused me to come thirthey had four more, and yet they had detained the Gold, and that now Gold had caused me to come the same of the work of the same to tell them the truth, that this Countrey might speedly be promided of an Abuna, because he was not of any long life. After this, I went many times to fee their Ceremonies, of giving Orders to these Priests and Clerkes, because every day in a manner they received Orders, in great multi- to tules, which came thither daily, and they observed not the Ember-weekes, nor the Lent. And if at any time there were any intermission of giving these Orders, straight-way some would come vnto me, and take acquaintance of me, although I knew them not, befreching mee for Gods fake, to pray the Abana to give them Orders, because they dyed for hunger while they waited there : and I befought him in the Euening, and ftraight-way he commaunded the Tent to bee fet up, to give Orders the next day following. And certainly, I neuer requested him, but immediatly he did the same, for he bare me exceeding good will, and tooke me as if I had

ciriaem affe-

beene his owne Brother. 98. The cause why this Countrey continued three and twentie yeares without an About, they say was this; That in the time of the great Grand-father of this present King, whole name was Criacia, the Father of Alexander, which was the Father of Nahu, the Father of the safety of the saf this present Prete lanni, the Abuna dyed: and the faid Cirracus stayed ten yeares, and would fend for none, faying; That he would take none from Alexandria, and that if none came from Rome, he would have none at all, and that he would rather have all the foules of his peopleto perish, then to receiue an Abuna from the Countrey of Hereticks: and at the end of ten years he dyed, without having of any Abuna; and his Sonne Alexander Rood flifly in the fame purpole, for the space of thirteene yeares. At length the people complained vnto him, faying, That now there were scarce any Priests or Clerkes remaining to serue the Churches, and that if they were decayed, the Churches also would grow to decay; and consequently, the Christian Faith. And the faid Alexander fent for an Abuna to Cairo, where at that time the Patriarke of of Alexandria remained, which fent him two, that the one might succeede the other, and both of them were living while wee were there. And during our aboad there, Abana lacob dyed, which was to fucceed this man who now liueth : who told me, that he came into this Country fiftie five yeares past, and that he was as white and hoary-headed, as he was at that instant, and when he departed out of Cairo he was about fittie, or fine and fiftie yeares old, so that he thinketh he is about one hundred and ten yeares of age. And truly, he that beholdeth and confidereth him well, would take him to be no leffe.

Fewer lewith

And farther he told me, that the Prete which fent for him, was a most Christian Prince, and that the Saturdaies were not kept holy as long as he lived, nor any of these Iewish Ceremonics were observed, and that they did eate Hogges Hesh, and flesh although it the throat were not cut: 60 for all these things belong vnto the old Law: and that it was not long, fince two Frankes came vnto this Court, to wit : one Venetian, called Nicholas Brancaleon; and one Portugall, called Peter de Conillan, which when they came into the Country, before they came into the Court, hegan to fail and keepe the customes of the Countrey, (for as yet in many places, the Saturday was

Peter de Co-

kept holy) and did not eare meates that were forbidden. The Priests and Friers feeing this, which tooke upon them to know the chings continued in the Bible, much better then of any other Bookes; came to complaine to the Frete, faying; What thing is this, that their Frankes which now come from the Kingdomes of France, being both of them of feuerall Countries do observe the ancient cuftomes of the Abyfines how then commaundeth this Abone, which is come from Alexandria, that we should observe those things which are not in our Bookes, and hereupon the Prete Linni forth-with commanded, that they thould again observe the ancient Hereare ocustomes of the Abylines. Abuna reported all thefe things without me; giving many thankes to mitted pro-God for our erruall. This Abana lived in his Tent after this manner, (for I never haw him in Franke, &c. 10 an house but once.) He sitteth continually woon a Conch; courred with a faire Cloath, as the great Lords of this Country we to doe. He hath his Curtaines about the said Conch, and like

wife ouer the same. His apparell is White, that is to say, Made of most pure and fine Cotton Cloath which commeth out of India, where they call it Cacha ! and it is made like a Cardinals The habite of Cloake or Paniell, which's joyned and buttoned together on the break. He hath also a Scapo- Abuna Marke. tall. which is likewife closed before, made of Blew Silke Chambler, and on his head a great . Scaperall. broad Miter made likewise of Blew Silke: Hee is, as I have faid, a very old man, of small stature, and bald : his Beard is very white, but fmall, and long in the midft; for in this Countrey the Church-men shaue not their Beards : he is very gracious in his speech and gestures, as any man may be : he neuer speaketh, but he grueth God thankes. When he goeth forth to the Tent

20 of the Prete, or to give holy Orders, he rideth vpon a goodly Mule, being very well accompanied, as well with men riding upon Mules, as others following him on foote; he carrieth a little Hispompe, Croffe of Situer in his hand, and they carrie three Croffes vpon states on each fide of him, which reach up higher then he is on his Mule. He carrieth with him whither foeuer he goe, two high Canopies which are to be fet on foote, as great as those of the Prete, but not fo rich. Moreouer. foure men goe before him with Whips, which make the people give way on both fides : the ground is couered wherefoeuer hee trauaileth with Children; Young men, Friers, and Priefts, which all runne crying after him. I enquired what they faid, and I was answered: that they faid, May it please your Lordship to make tos Clerkes, and God Grant you a lone life.

99. The twelfth of landary, 1921, was a very great allembly of Clerkes and Priefts in the of the Church.

10 faid Church, and they continued all that night with Singing and Mulicke, and faid, That they Madou Liketin did confecrate the fame, wherein as yet no Maffe had beene faid, but they faid it in another lietle Church which was neere adioynitis, wherein the Father of this Prete was buried, and that Canons. they would remooue and carrie him into this great Church, which he begunne in his life time, and his Sonne had finished, and that they were thirteene yeares fince he deceased, and on a Sunday in the morning, they faid Maffe there. This Church hath now at the first foundation thereof, about foure hundred Canons, with great reneities, but when the number shall increase, as it is fallen out in other Churches; they shall not have sufficient to sustain themselves. The sign teenth of the faid moneth, wee were called for, and they caused vs to goe to the faid Church, where there were gathered together aboue two thouland Priefts, and as many Clerkes, which Two thouland

40 were affembled before the principall Porch of the great Church, and in the circuit which is like Priefts, and as a Cloyster, and the Prete stood compassed in his Currames within a Clozet, which vieth to bee many Clerkes, placed upon the steppes of the principall gate, and all the Clergie stood before him, which faid a long Seruice, with finging, mulicke, dancing, and leaping. Which being ended, he caused all the people, and the Clergie, and vs, to goe forth of the Church, and they placed vs toward the North, willing vs not to stirre from that place: and all the Clergie and people went to the little Church, where the Kings Father was buried, which also was towards the North, and therein Translation of entred as many as could frand. And as we flood heere, an exceeding great Procession in very the Kings body good order, beganne to passe betweene vs and the Church, and they carried the bones of the

dead King to the great Church, and the Patriarke Abuna Marke went in this Proceffon, being Queenes 50 very feeble, and two men held him vp vider the armes, by reason of his old age. Then followed the Queenes, to wit, Queene Helena, the Prete his Mother, and the Queene his Wife, each of them under a blacke Pauilion, in mourning wife, (for before they yfed white Pauilions) and likewife all the people were clad in blacke cloath, weeping and howling with mightie cryes, faying; Abeto, Abeto, that is to fay, Our Lord, Our Lord. And they pronounced the fame with fo abrupt and pitifull a voyce, and with fo great abundance of teares, that they made all the multitude to weepe. The Coffin wherein the bones lay, was carried under a Paurlion of Embroydered cloath of Gold, compassed about with Curtaines of Damaske, and so they entred into the Church by the fide-gate, where we flood, and as many people as the place would hold; and we went to this Ceremony at the Sunne riting, and returned to our lodging at night, by 60 Torch-light.

100. Straight-way we were led into a Tent which was newly fet vp, and was placed on the backe fide of the great Church in that circuit, and it was very long and flat, and all the Roofe was couered with Crosses, made of Silke, like those of the Tent which was placed over the Lake, where they were baptized, and within it was dreffed with exceeding faire Tapiffries, fo

LIB.VII

A royallfeash, that it seemed to be a Hall very well furnished : and here he sent vs word to recreate our selves a little for his fake, refreshing our selues, and discouring of our prinate matters. And while we

thus discoursed a good while, we saw comming in very good order, many larres of Wine, and a great basket of fine Bread, and great flore of meate bonne in great Platters, made of black earth very faire, and excellently wrought, which feemed to be of blacke Amber. The meate was made of divers forts of Flesh, dressed after fundry fashions, somewhat after our manner, among which, were Hennesall whole, great, and fat, fome fodden, and fome roafted and in other Platters came other Hens, which feemed to be Hens indeed, but were onely the skins, in fach fort, that they had taken out the flesh and all the bones, with wonderfull diligence, so that the skinne was not broken in any part, but was perfectly whole, and then mineing the flesh verie to fmall, and mineling it with certaine delirate Spices, they filled the same againe with it, which. as I have faid, was perfectly whole, and wanted nothing but the necke and the feete, from the neather loynt downe-ward, neither could we at any time differne how they could get out the bones, or how they might flay them, and yet could perceine no rupture at all. We fed very well of these Hens, to our contentment, because they were so good and delicate. Then brought they in groffe and fat meate, so handsomly dreft, that wee knew not whether it were sodden or roafled. Afterward certaine White-meates were brought in, in other Platters, and meats of other colours, made partly of fielh stamped, with the sinewes taken out, and part of Birds, and diners Fruits of the Countrey, and in some of them was flore of Butter, in others Hennes suet: of enery one of them we tafted, which feemed vnto vs very good and delicate : and we wondred how it was possible, that they should have so good Cookes in that Countrey. Among the Iarres 20

of the Wine of Raisins, which were all of that Earth like blacke Amber, there was one of Crystall Glasse, with a great Bowle of Crystall, all gilded ouer, and another great Bowle of Siluer, Enamuled all ouer with foure exceeding fine ftones, which feemed to be Saphires fet in the fame, flanding in a square case, beset with many Rubies, and this Bowle was very faire and rich, When we had eaten as much as we thought good, the Prote fent vnto vs, requesting vs to fine and dance, and to recreate our felues after our owne manner. 101. The eight and twentieth of January, he willed vs to come vnto the great Church and

Church fin-

caused vs to be placed before his Curtaines, which were about the place of the steps, which are neere voto the principall gate. Here was an infinite multitude of Clerkes, which, as they did at the moouing of his Fathers bones, did neught elfe but fing, dance, and leape, and in their leaping, did alwaies touch their feete with their hands, first one foote, and then another : and when we had flayed there a good while, he fent to aske vs, whether they fung after this manner in our Countrey! We answered him, no : because our inging was more quiet and plaine, as well in voyces as in body: for we neither danced nor slitted a whit. He replyed! Seeing that our custome was fuch, whether we thought that his was ill done? We fent him word, that the things belonging vnto God, after what manner foeuer they be done, feemed alwaies to be wel done. This ceremonie being ended, they began to goe about the Church with fine and twentie Crosses, and fine and twentie Cenfers, carrying their Croffes in their left hands, as it were Standards, and the Cenfers in their right hands, cafting Incenfe vpon them without any spare. And vpon the steppes where we stood, were two great Latton Basons, gilded and wrought about, full of a kind of Incense, sweeter then that which is brought into these parts; and as often as they passed by, they cast great quantity thereof into the Censers, and they which went about in Procession, were clad in very rich Copes, and Hoods, made after their fashion, and so were they which danced and fung.

102. The nine and twentieth of Ianuary, the Ambaffador and all the Frankes (whereof fome were come to this Court before vs) with all his Company , went to visite the Abuna Marke, because he had not as yet spoken with him. We found him as before, sitting vpon a Couch. The Ambaffadour would have kiffed his hand, but he would not fuffer him, but gave him the Croffe to kiffe, which he alwaies carried in his hand, and so he did to all the reft. As soone as we were 50 fet, the Ambassadour said, that hee was come to visite him in the name of the Grand Captaine, and prayed him to pardon him, that hee came no fooner to him, because they would not fuffer him to vifite any body. The Abuna answered him, that he ought not to marvaile thereat, for it was the cultome of that Court, not to luffer any stranger to goe vnto any mans house, and that this was not by the confent of the Prete, which was a good and godly man, but of the Courtiers which are malicious. The Ambaffadour told him, that the King of Portugall was informed of his bounty and holineffe, by his Brother Matthew, and also by others, and that therefore he befought him to keepe the Prete Ianni constant and immutable in this enterprize, of chasing and destroying of the Moores. The Abuna answered, That he was no Saint, but a poore Sinner, and that Matthew was none of his Brother, but was a Merchant, and his friend, and although hee 60 came with lies, yet was it manifest, that his comming was ordained by God, seeing it turned to fo good ferrice and profite, &c.

CHAP.S.S.IS. The Storie of Peter de Couillan: His life in his youth.

δ. X V.

A Discourse of Peter Covillan: Of the Pretes gifts and presents, and the Pottugals quarrels, and their licence to depart out of the Countrey.

Hereas I haue spoken often in this Booke of Peter de Conillan Portughez , being The Storie of an honourable person, and of great credite with Prete Ianni, and all the Court, Peter Conilland it is convenient that I should declare how he came into this Countrey, and

the cause thereof, as he hath oftentimes told me himselfe. But first I will say, that he is my spirituall sonne, and that I have oftentimes consessed him , because in three and thirtie yeeres while he liued in this Countrey, he told me that he neuer was confessed, because Confession the custome here is not to keepe that secret which is vttered in confession, and that therefore not vied here,

he went into the Church, when he confessed his sinnes vnto God. His beginning was thus : he was borne in the Towne of Conillan in the Kingdome of Portugall, and being a boy, he went into His life in his Castile, and gat into the service of Don Alfonso, Duke of Simile; and when the warre began be- youth. tweene Portugall and Castile, heereturned home with Don Iohn de Gusman, brother to the said Duke, which placed him in the house of Alfonso King of Portugall, who for his valour presently

20 made him a man at Armes, and hee was continually in that warre, and served also abroad in France. After the death of King Alfonso, he was one of the Guard of the King Don lohn his tonne, vntill the time of the treasons, when he fent him into Caftile, because hee spake the Cafilian Tongue very well, to spicout who were those Gentlemen of his Subjects, which practifed there against him. And returning out of Castile, he was sent into Barbarie, where he stayed a time, and learned the Arabian Tongue, and was afterward fent to conclude a Peace with the King of Tremizen: and being returned, he was sent againe to the King Amoli bela gegi, which restored the bones of the Infant Don Fernando. At his returne he found, that the King Don Iohn defiring by all meanes that his ships should find out the Spiceries, had determined to fend by land certaine mento discouer as much as they might. And Alfonso de Paina was cholen for Alfonso de Paina

30 this enterprise, a Citizen of Castle Blanco, a very skilfull man, and very expert in the Arabian

When Peter de Conillan was returned, King John called him vnto him, and told him fecretly, That having alwayes knowne him loyall and his faithfull ferunt, and readie to doe his Maiestie good feruice, feeing he vnderstood the Arabian tongue, he purposed to send him, with another P.co. sente companion, to discouer and learne where Prete lami dwelt, and whether his Territories rea- discouer the ched vnto the Sea, and where the Pepper and Cinamon grew, and other forts of Spicerie, which Spices and ched vnto the Sea, and where the Pepper and Cinamon grew, and other lots of spicene, which Prete lami his were brought vnto the Citie of Venue from the Countries of the Moores; feeing hee had fent Countries. for this purpose one of the House of Monterio, and one Frier Anthony of Lubon Prior of Porta de Ferro, which could not paffe the Citie of Ierusalem, saying, That it was impossible to tra-40 uell this way without vnderstanding the Arabian tongue, and therefore feeing he vnderstood the fame well, hee prayed him to vnder-take this enterprize, to doe him this fo principall feruice, promiting to reward him in such fort, that he should be great in his Kingdome, and all his Posteritie should alwayes live contented. Peter answered him, That he kissed his Maiesties hands for

the great favour which he had done him, but that he was forry, that his wifedome and fufficiencie was not answerable to the great defire he had to serue his Highnesse, and yet neuerthelesse, as his faithfull feruant he accepted this meffage with all his heart. And foin the yeere 1487, the feuenth of May, they were both dispatched in Saint Arren, the His journey.

King Don Emanuel alwayes there prefent, which at that time was but Duke, and they gaue them a Sea-Card, taken out of a generall Map of the World, at the making whereof was the Li-50 centiate Calzadilla, Bishop of Vifeo; and the Doctor Matter Roderigo, inhabitant of Tietre Nere: and the Doctor Mafter Morfes, which at that time was a low : and all this worke was done very fecretly in the house of Peter de Alcazona, and all the forenamed persons shewed the vttermost of their knowledge, as though they should have beene Commanders in the Discouerie, of finding out the Countries from whence the Spices come, and as though one of them should have zone into Ethiopia to difconer the Countrey of Prete lanni, and as though in those Seas there A confusation had beene some knowledge of a passage into our Westerne Seas; because the said Doctors said, for the seeking they had found fome memoriall of that matter. And for the charges of them both, the King ap- out of the pointed foure hundred Cruzadoes, which were given them out of the Treasurie of the Garden of Almarin : and (as I haue faid) the King Emanuel was alwayes present, who at that time was 60 Duke. Besides this, the King gaue them a Letter of credit in all parts of the Leuant, that if they The small be-

fell into any necessitie or peril, they might be succoured and aided thereby. One halfe of these source hundred Cruzadoes, they defired to have in readie money, and the other halfe they gave neits in the to Bartholmew Marchioni a Florentine, to be payed them in Naples.

And having received the Kings bleffing, they departed from Lisbon, and came vnto Barcelona

TOOL

Cairo.

Calicut.

Zeik.

on Corpus Christi day, and thence vnto Naples on Saint Iohns day; when their Bills of Fx change were payed them, by the Sonne of Cosmo de Medices. From Naples they went vato the He of Rhoaes, and here they found two Portugall Knights, the one called Frier Gonfalno, and the other Frier Fernando, in whose house they lodged; and after certaine dayes, they tooke their vovege for Alexandria, in a thip of Bartholmen de Paredez; having first bought many larges of Honey to shew that they were Merchants. When they were come to Alexandria, they both fell grieuously ficke of an ague; and the Cadi tooke all their Honey from them, supposing they would have dyed. But being recovered, they were payed as they would themselves, and having bought fundrie forts of merchandize, they went to Cairo, where they stayed till they found companie of certaine Moores, called Magabrini, of the Kingdome of Fez and Tremizen, which to went to Aden, and in their companie they went by Land to Tor; where taking thip, they failed to Suachen, upon the Coast of the Abylins, and from thence unto Aden. And because it was the time of the Monfons or Motions, when those Seas cannot be failed, they divided them. felues the one from the other, and Alfon fo passed into Ethiopia, and Peter made his choice topoe into India, as the time ferued him for to doc. And they agreed together, to meete at a certaine time in the Citie of Cairo, that they might be able to aductize the King of their difcouerie.

Peter de Conillan, when time ferued, tooke shipping, and failed directly to Cananor, and passed thence to Calcout, and faw the great quantitie of Ginger and Pepper which grow there, and understood, that the Cloues and Cinamon were brought thither from farre Countries. Then he went toward Goa, and palled thence to the Ile of Ormuz, and having informed himfel e of cer- 20 tayne other thing; he came in a ship toward the Red Sea. Hee landed at Zeila, and with cer-The chiefe end tayne Merchants, which were Moores, he trauelled thefe Seas of Ethiopia, which were flewed of Coulday his him at Lisbon in a Sea Chare, to the intent hee should vie all his industrie to discouer them. And voyage, was to he went to faire, that he came vnto the Towne of Cefala, where he learned of the Mariners and certay ne Arabians, that the faid Coast might be failed all along toward the West, and that they knew no end thereof, and that there was a great lie very rich, which was about nine hundred miles in length, which they call, The Ile of the Moone. And having vinderstood these things, be-

mo very olad thereof, he determined to returne vnto Cairo, and to he came backe to Zeila, and

W ercupon he determined to returne into Portugall: but it pleased God, that two leves.

from thence passed to Aden, and then to Tor, and lastly to Carro, where he stayed a great time, wayting for Alfonfo de Paina, and at length, had newes that he was dead.

different the Seas, on the back fide of Ethiopia. Made: Afest, or the He of the Moone. Aden and Tor. P. ina dead.

which went to feeke him, by good lucke found him, and deliuered him Letters from the King of Portugall. One of their lewes was called, Rabbi Abraham, borne in Beggian. The others name was lofeph de Lamego, and was a * Shoo-maker. These having beene before in Perlia and in Bagadet, told the King many great matters, which they had learned concerning the Spiceries, and the riches which were found in the He of Ormuz, wherof the King conceived great pleafure. and commanded them to returne thither agains to see the same themselves; but first, that they should tecke out Peter de Conillan , and Alfonso de Pana, which hee knew were determined to meet together at a time appointed in Carro. The contents of the Kings Letters were , that if all the things given them in commission, were fearched out by them, then they should returne, 40 because her would reward them; but if they were not all discouered, that they should fend him particular information of those things that they had seene, and then should doe their best endeauour to search out the rest, and aboue all things, to discouer the Countrey of Prete launi, and to cause Rabbi Abraham to see the He of Ormuz. For which cause, Peter de Couillan, purposed to advertife the King of all which hee had feene along the Coast of Calicut, touching the Spiceries and of Ormuz, and of the Coait of Ethiopia, and of Cefala, and of the great Iland of the Moone, concluding , that his ships which eraded into Guinea, fayling along the Coast, and feeking the Coast of that Hand, a id of Cefala, might safily enter into their Eatterne Seas, and fall upon this Coast of Calicut, for all along there was Sea: he had vnderstood, and that he would return with Rabbi Abraham to Ormuz, and after his returne he would feeke out Prete Ianni, whole Countrey 50 And with these Letters, he dispatched loseph de Lamego the Iem. And he and the other Iem

going againe to Ormuz, and returning to Aden, hee willed him to goe and carrie newes to the King that hee had feene the He of Ormuz with his owne eyes. And himfelfe palling into Ethiopia, came into the Court of Prete lanni, which at that time was not farre from Zeila. And hauing presented his Letters vinto him , who at that time was called Alexander, hee was very courteoutly entertained, and had great honour done vnto him, and was promifed that he thould speedily be dispatched. But in the meane while, he departed this life, and Nahu his brother succeeded in his flead, which faw him, and made very much of him, but would never give him leane to depart. Afterward Nahu died allo , and his tonne Danid fucceeded him, which raigneth 60 at this prefent, which would not fuffer him to depart, faying, that hee came not thither in his time, and that if his Predeceffors had given him to great Lands and Revenues, he ought to enjoy them, and to lefe none of them : and therefore, feeing they had not given him licence, neither

might be give him leave to depart; and fo he remained itill in the Countrey; and they gave him

Dan d, the pre-

His comming

to Prete Alex-

a wife, with very great riches and poffessions, by whom he had children, whom we also faw. And in our time, when he faw that we would depart, he was exceeding defirous to returne into his Countrey, and went to craue leave of the Prete, and we with him, and were very instant on his behalfe, and befought him very earnestly, yet for all that wee could not obtaine leave. Hee is a man of great spirit and wit, and of his qualitie her hath not the like in all the Court, and can speake all the Languages, as well of the Christians as of the Moores, Geniles, and Abassins: and of all things which hee bath knowne and feene, hee can yeeld as particular account, as if they were present. And therefore he is very gracious with the Prete, and all the Court.

104. Returning to our Voyage, or rather to our Historie; The dayes following, the Secreta-10 ries ceafed not to write the Letters, which were were to carrie with vs to the King and to the Theve of writgrand Captaine, and they bestowed much time and labour in making them: for their manner ting was not in grand Captaine, and they control to mands, answers, and messages, are all done by word these dayer, of mouth. And while we were there, they beganne by little and little to learne to write; and when they wrote, they alwaies held before them the Epiffles of Saint Paul, of Saint Peter, and of Saint James; and those which studied in them, were taken for the most learned and wife among them. They wrote the Letters to the King in three Languages, The Abaffin, the Arabian, and the Portugall; and after the fame manner were the Letters made vnto the Grand Captaine. The Grand Besudese comming vnto vs, which is the Lord that fland eth on his left hand. brought mee a Croffe of Silver, and a passing faire Statfe wrought with inlayd worke, faying, Gifts. that the Preze fent me thefe things in token of the gouernment which he had given mee in the Iles of the red Sea; I gaue his Highnesse thankes in the best manner that I could. There came

another message from the Prete, that he had given order that thirtie Mules should be given vnto vs to carrie our goods. And moreouer, that he had fent thirtie ounces of Gold to the Ambassa- The Prefest dour, and fiftie for his companie; and that George, and those which were with him, had recei- which Prete ued their part; and withall, that he had fent one hundred loads of Meale, and as many hornes of lannifen the Wine of Honey, to ferue vs in our Voyage, and willed that we should not trouble the poore for his part. Husbandmen by the way, because he was enformed, that in our comming to the Court we had wasted the Countrey through which we trauelled, and that certaine Captaines were appointed for vs. which should conduct vs from place to place, enen to the Sea side, to wit, that every one 30 should furnish vs through their Countreyes with all things necessarie: and forthwith they ap-

pointed vs to a sonne of the Cabeara, because we were to trauell a great way through his fathers Territories, which are those where the great Church standeth, wherein the bones of the Prete his father were layd: which Church (as I have faid) hath foure hundred Canons, and ouer the faid Canons there is a sonne of the faid Cabeata, which is a Licanate, that is to fay, The head ouer all the rest of the heads.

105. This day at evening, were thirtie ounces of Gold brought to our Tent for the Ambassadour, and fiftie for vs, and a great Crowne of Gold and Silver which was the Crowne of Prete I and it was not fo faire for the worth thereof as for the bigneffe , and it was in a round Chift lined with Cloth , and without with Leather , and it was presented by Abdenago , the 40 Captaine of the Pages, which faid vnto the Ambaffadour, that the Prete fent that Crowne to the The prefent

King of Portugall, and that he should say unto him, that a Crowne is not wont to be taken from the which Prete Fathers head, but onely for the Sonne: and that he was his Sonne, and that he had taken the same from Janni sent to bis come beads to find it to the King of Portugall, which was his Father, and that he first him the fame the King of as the most pressure thing that he had as that instant, affering him all the savent, spid, and savents must will of Men as of Gold, and Vittuals, which he should stand on need of for his Fortresses and Fleets, and great offers. for the Warres which he would make against the Moores in these parts of the red Sea, enen unto Ie-

The first day of Lent, wee beganne our Voyage, and the sonne of the Cabeata went with vs. through whose Countreyes we were to passe, and Abdenago Captaine of the Pages; for, after- There was a 50 ward we were to passe through his Territories. And we translled the next day, farredistant quarrell-wist one companie from the other, vntill we came to Manadeli, a Towne in the Kingdome of Ti- Bren and the gremehon.

106. Being come to this Towne of Manadel, which is wholly inhabited by Moores, who had wounded are peaceable Tributaries to the Prete: and one Stephen Pagliarie, as it seemeth, fell out with a the Factor. Moore, which strooke out two of his teeth, and certaine of our people comming running this Manadeli. ther at the noise of this garboile, they brake one of our mens heads with a stone. Abdenago tan downe, and caused certaine of these Moores to bee apprehended, which had done the harme : but because it was night, there was nothing else done. The next day he sent vs word to come vnto the place where he held theie two Moores prisoners, and caused vs to fit downe on the Manner of

graffe : and hee sate downe likewise, leaning with his shoulders against his Chaire. And there instice. causing the priloners to be brought, he began after their manner to demand Gold of them. Then he caused them to be stripped and cruelly beaten, demanding how much they would give vs: they began to promise one ounce of Gold, two, and three; but still beating of them, they asked how much they would give ; at length they came to feuen ounces, and herewithall they ceafed

84:44

headed.

A Court cu-

7094

One of the Moores be-

to beat them, and the Gold was given to those that were hurt, and the parties which wereheaten were fent bound to Prete lann. Wee went on still on our Voyage vnto Barna, where wee lodged, when we came into this Countrey. While wee flayed here a long while, there came a Medienger of the Prete, and one of the Moores which were beaten with him, with the head of menenger of the Prese, and one of Prese would needs understand and examine the whole matter concerning those Moores, for the hurt which they had done vnto the Poringals, and that he had caused his head to be cut off which he found to have done the wrong, the which he had sent vs. that we might be addred of the trueth, and might know whether that were it or no: and the other which hee had not found in fault, hee had also sent vs; and that wee might doe with him what we thought good, either kill him, or free him, or make him a Slaue.

107. Two Great men were fent to vs from the Court, which feeing the enmitte and rancour that was betwixt the Ambassadour and Bren, which came from words to blowes, they wish noe what course to take concerning our matter, seeing it is a custome in that Conutrey, that no great personage may goe from the Court without licence, nor come to the Court volesse he called for : therefore the faid Lord stood in doubt, what they should doe concerning vs; because, on are particulars of the Am- the one fide, they durift not leave vs; and on the other fide, to bring vs to the Court in fuch great harsotine am- the one mee, they dant hot leave feared they might incurre some great punishment; yet at length, ful-effe against they chose rather to returne to the Court, although they should suffer some great punishment,

108. These Noblemen having considered that the Monson was past, wherein the grand Captaine was to come for vs, and that they could not patific vs, determined to carrieve shake to the Court: and we fet forward altegether with the Franke, and as we came to the Towneof 20 Bacinete, before mentioned, whither the fame of our falling out was come, all the Countrypeople put themselues in Armes, and would not suffer vs to paste, and such numbers of Frien came downe an hill, with Bowes, Arrowes, and Staues, that they feemed to be flocks of Sheen and here we had a great skirmish, and many of both sides were wounded, howbeit wee best them backe, and made them runne away. The aforefaid Noblemen, while we were lodged here, put the place to the facke, as if they had beene Moores, and tooke away their Barley, Hens, Capons, Sheepe, and whatfoeuer they found in the houses. And departing from hence, we tranelled in two companies; to wit, George de Bren, and all those that were with him; and the Frier, and we with the Ambassadour, and the Lords, Andrugaz and Garneta, and wee cameto Manadeli, where they wounded our men, and here we found the Moore which fled from the Ambassadour, who was nothing at all afraid: and having past two miles beyond this place, we met with Barnagaffo, which came from the Court, and brought order from the Prete, what the faid Lords should doe with vs. Which while we fought to know, we assembled all together in a Corne-field under a great Tree, where the faid Lords were highly rebuked of Barnagaffo, because of our returning without licence, saying, that they should goe to the Court, and receive their punishment there. Then he began to one out voon the Ambassadour, and George de Bres, commanding the Ambassadour to give him the Crowne and the Letters, which he carried vnto the King and the Grand Captaine. The Ambassadour and George de Bren vttered very vnciuil and difhonest speeches one against another : for which cause the Barnaga so committed vs to cer- 40 taine Captaines, to conduct vs feuerally one from the other, in fuch fort as wee came to that place, and so we returned with him toward his Territories. By this time the Winter was begun, which was exceeding terrible and cruell with huge raine. Here the Authour ceaseth to speake any more of his Voyage.

XVI.

Of the time and day when their Lent beginneth in the Countrey of PRETE IANNI: and strange abstinences, and other bodily exercises, with other their holies. of the Troglodites, and Gorailes.

Ethiopian Lent, 109. long and firid.

N the Country of Prete Lami, they beginne their Lent in the Munday after
Sexagefima, which isten dayes before our Shrouetide; and after the day of
the Purification is palt, the Prietts, Firers, and Secular men generally obfere
a great Fail for three dayes, and they fay, they doe fail the penance of the Gr

tie of Ninine. And many Friers eate not aboue once in these three dayes, and then they cate but Herbs without Bread : and they fay, that there are many women, which then will not give fucke to their children pastonce a day. The generall Fast of the Lent is Bread and Water; for although fome would eate Fish, yet they could not have it, because they have not the Sea neere 60 them. In the Rivers there is great abundance of Fish, which are very good, but they know not how to take them. They eate no Milke nor Butter, neither drinke Wine of Grapes, nor of Honey; but their common drinke is of Zauna, which is made of Barley, or of Millet, or of Aguza: for of each of these Grames they make a sewerall Wine, which in taste is like vnto Ale.

There are also many Friers, which for denotions sake eate no breadall the Lent, and others all the yeare, and all their life time.

As I went on a time with the Ambaffadour toward the Court, in a place called Iannamora, a Iannamora, Frier fell into our companie: and because I would pleasure him, I caused him to ride vpon a Mule. and lodged him in my Tent. The first day, I innited him to eate with me, because it was Euen- The fasting tile and supper time, and he excused himselfe, that he had no lust to eate. In the meane space, and abstinence tide and supper time, and he executed immers, which for the Nouices (fixe or feuen of which went with him to receive orders) came with Agricult, which for the Nouices (fixe or feuen of which went with him to receive orders) came with Agriculture. which are Herbs of that Countrey, and gaue him an handfull without Salt, or Oyle, or any o- Lint.

ther mixture, and those he cate alone without Bread or any thing else. Whereof when I had af-10 ked the faid Nouices, they told methat they never yied to eate any bread. When I doubted of this, I caused him diligently to be watched night and day; for, on the day he went on foot by my Mules side like vnto a Lackey, and on the night he slept by my side; and lay on the ground in his apparell, and I alwaies faw him eate Herbs called Agriones and Rabafas, and when they Who hathrecould find none, fometimes he tooke Mallowes and Nettles, and when they passed by any Mo- quired these nasterie, he sent the Nouices to gather some Garden-herb, and if they found none, the Noui- things at your ces brought him Lentiles, to long Heeped in a gourd of water, that they began to grow, and he hands? fed of them : which I would needs tafte of, and found them to be the world meat in the world. This man travelled thirtie dayes with vs vnto the Court, and afterward flayed three weekes with vs in our Tent, and neuer eate any thing else but the things aforesaid. Afterward I saw

20 him in the Towne of Caxumo, where the Prete caused vs to stay eight moneths, and when hee understood that I was there, he came to visite me, and brought me certaine Limons. Hee wore an habite of Leather without fleeues, and his armes were naked; whereas I embraced him . by chance I thruit one of my hands under his arme, and found that hee had about him a girdle of Iron of foure fingers broad, and I led him by the hand into our chamber, and shewed him to Peter Lopez my coufin, and wee faw the faid girdle, which was iowned the one end with the other, with certaine points, as if they had beene to peg in a piece of wood "; and this " Comesaia de girdle was fafined upon his fielh : and the faid Frier tooke it in very ill part, and feemed ficure villens. as though hee had received great wrong, and fuddenly departed, fo that wee neuer could fee him after.

30 After this, we faw many other Friers which worethe like girdles of Iron in the Lent , And we heard fay, that there were others also, which during all the time of Lent, did neuer fit, but Very strange alwaies flood veright. When we heard that there was oppose these in a Cane fixe miles off, we kind of nance, rode thither, and found him in a frame made of wood; of that bignesse, that he only might stand within it. And it looked like an old Chist without a court, and his hips were besime ared with Chalke and Oxe-dung, and where his buttocks stoody he had an open place three singers broad: A frame to he had likewife another open place where his knees touched, and before him hee had a little fland in with-Deske of wood, whereon lay a Booke. His habite was an Haire-cloth, made of the haire of an outfitting. Oxe tayle, and vnderneath the same, vpon his fiesh he wore an Iron girdle like to that aboutfaid, and he shewed vs the same willingly. In another Caus adioyning, dwelt two young little

40. Nouices, which prouided him victuals, which was nothing but Herbs, and for this our vifiration, he became our great friend. These Caues seemed to have beene made in old time to doe the like penance; for there were Graues in them.

In the Towne of Barna, in another Lient, I faw two Friers in the Church of the faid Towne, Supercrossthat is to fav, without the Church gate, which were in the like Tabernacles, one on the one tion, if not fide of the Church, and another on the other fide, which did eate the faid Herbes, and freened super-arroga-Lentiles, and I went to fee them often times , wherewith they feemed highly to be pleafed; tion. Obediand if I went not to them, they fent to visite me, and they wore voon their fieth a Sack-cloth, then sacrifice, and a girdle of Iron. And it was told mee, that one of them was a kiniman of the Prete; and they continued in this persance vntill Easter day, and when Masse was sung, they went out of

so the fame.

Hauing heard report, that in the aforefaid Towns of Caxamo, every. Wednesday and Friday Standing in in the Lent, many Friers, Priefts, and Nuns stood all night in the water vp to the necke, when water like 1860 we could not be periwaded to believe the fame, John Scolaro , my coulin Peter Lopez , and I, this bis Phaswent thither on a Wednesday at night, and were assonied, beholding so great a multitude of rine. them, which were in the water up to the necke, and it was told vs , that they were Canons, and the wives also of Canons, with Friers and Nuns, and there were frats of from made by the waters fide, and where the water was shallow, there was one stone, whereupon they fate yntill the water reached up to their necke, and if the water were more deepe, they layed another

stone there, and so all the faid Lake was full of people, which came from all the Countrey
to round about 1 and in this time of Lent, there are great frosts and cold in the night. And having Frost and cold, talked with Peter de Conillan, concerning this matter, he affured me, that they vied to observe this custome in all the Dominions of the Prete, and also, that there bee many which doe not onely eate no bread all that time, but also went into mighty Forrests, and into certaine mon-

Valleyes for

Heremites.

weake.

Tigrai.

Palmefunday.

Cultome of

Mandy-thurf-

Good-Friday.

Silencia

Penance.

from deepe Valleyes, lying betweene exceeding high Mountaines, where they may finde water, whereas no other people come, and there they doe their Penance all the time of Lent, and Forrests and I was on a time with the Prete, in a Towne called Dara, which is neere those great and deep Trenches (whereof I have fpoken before) into the which, a great River falleth downe head

long from an high Mountaine into a Bottome, and the water of this River, breaking in the Avre, became as white as Snow. As we flood aloft, Peter de Couillan shewed mee a Caue in this Bottome, which we could hardly difcerne, and faid, that in the fame there was a Monke which they held for a Saint, and under this Caue, there feemed to bee a Garden : On the fide of this Bottome, and not farre off, hee shewed mee such another Cane, wherein a white Man was 10 dead, which was knowne to have beene twenty yeeres in that Defart, and that the time of his death was not knowne. Onely when they faw him no more in this Mountaine, they went to fee his lodging or Caue, and they found it closed vp on the infide with a good Wall, fo that none might goe in or out thereat : and the Prete being aduertiled hereof, commanded, that by no meanes it should be opened or touched.

110. The generall fast in Lent, which the most part of the Friers and Nunnes. and the The generall Priests also doe obserue, is to eate once, from two dayes to two dayes, and that alwayes in the faft in lent of night time. They falt not on Sundayes : The like doe many old Women when they are going Friers and out of the world; and so they reported that Queene Helena did, as often as shee failed at any Nugges Queene Heletime in the yeare, that thee did not rate about thrice in the weeke; to wit, on Tueflay, Thurf- 10 na cate but day, and Saturday. In the Kingdome of Tigrai, which is a Kingdome subject to Barnagaffo, thrice in the and in the Kingdome of Tigremahon, every body eateth flesh in the Lent, on Saturday and Sunday, and they kill more Oxen on these two dayes, then in all the yeere beside. And if they will Customes of marry their first or second Wife, they marry them the Thursday before our Shrouetide, for vp. on their marriage they have licence to eate Flesh, Milke, and Butter, for two moneths space, at what time focuer they will. And therefore, that they may eate the fame, they marry Wives. Polygamic, and drinke Wine. In all the other Territories, Kingdomes, and Signiories, they fast all the Lent, at well creat as small, Men as Women, Male-children as Female, without breaking the same in any point,

and fo they doe almost all the Aduent.

On Palme-Sunday they fay their Service after this manner : They beginne to fay Mattin an about Mid-night, and they continue their finging and dancing, carrying painted Images vncouered in their hands, vitill broaddasgrand at the houre of Prime, they all get boughes and hold them in their hands at the Gate, for the Women and Lay-men may not come into the Church. and the Priefts fland finging in the Church, with boughs in their hands, and fing very loud. making oftentimes the figne of the Croffe, with the faid Boughs, and going about without the Church, they come vnto the principall Gate, into which, fixe or feuen of them enter, as we are wont to doe, which they that, and he tlands without which is to fay Maffe, and they fing both within and without the Church, as wee does and then her which frood without, com-Weeke before meth in and sayeth Maffe, and gineth the Communion vnto all. On the holy Weeke or Weeke before Eafter, no Maffe is faid, faue on Thursday and Saturday. And their ordinary custome, 40 which all Noblemen and Gentlemen vie at all times in the yeare, of faluting one another, is: When they meete together once a day, they kille their shoulders, and embrace one another, and one killeth the right shoulder, and the other the left. These salutations are not vied this weeks, but when they doe meete, they speake not one to another, but passe by without rifting up their eyes; and men of any quality, are apparelled all in Blacke or in Blew, and they doe no kind of worke, but all the whole day is spent in great depotions, and singing in the Churches, and alwaves there is no Candle lighted.

On Holy-thursday at Eventide, they make the Maunday, that is to say, the Ceremonic of washing of Feet, and all the people affembleth together vinto the Church, and the chiefe Priest of the Church, fitteth on a Chaire like vnto a Treuit, girded with a Towell, and a great Bason 50 full of water before him , and beginneth to wash the Feet of the Priests; which being done, they beginne to fing, and fing all night, and the Priefts, Friers, and Clerkes goe not out of the Church, neither eate, nor drinke, vntill Saturday after they have faid Maffe,

On Good Friday about noone, they trim up the Churches according to their abilitie and riches, for there be fome Churches which are hanged all with cloth of gold and crimton, and chiefely, they decke vp the principal Gate, because there is the standing place of all the people, and they hang vp a Crucifixe vpon the Cloth, made of printed Paper, and ouer the same is a little Curtaine which covereth it, and they fing all night and alf day, and reade the Paffion; which being done, they vncouer the Crucifixe, and straightway all the people fall profirate on the ground, beating one another with Wandes, and Cuffes, and Riks I with great fury, jowling their heads one against another, and also against the Wall ? and make so bitter mourning, that any heart of Flint would bee mooned to teares with pure denotion. This lamentation and forrow continueth two houres at the leaft. After this , two

Priests goe to every gate of the circuite, which are three, which goe into the Churchvard, and frand at all these gates, one on the one side, and another on the other side, with a little Whip in their hands, which hath five great thongs of Leather vpon it. And all they that were before the principall gate came out through one of these three gates stripped from the waste vp. Whippings ward, and as they paffe, they bow downe their bodies, and thele Prietis with the Whips doe nothing elfe but lay on them as hard as they can, as long as they fland ftill: fome paffe by, and have but few stripes, others stay and receive many : but the old men and old women stand there halfe an houre, vitill the bloud trickle downe their bodies, and fo they lye all night in the Cloy- E-fler Equa fter of the Church. And at mid-night they begin their Songs, which continue vntill the next Eafter day, 10 day at Euening, and then they begin Masse, and all receive the Communion.

On Easter day at mid-night, they begin their Mattens, and before day they make a Procession, and at breake of day they fay Maffe : And they observe this weeke vntill the Munday following, the Apostles Sunday, and so they keepe seventeene dayes holy, that is to say, from the Saturday before Palme-funday, vntill the faid Munday.

111. Vpon a time we were in the Lent at the Courc of Prete lanni, which lay on the borders of a Countrey of Gentiles, called Gorages, a Nation (as they lay) very malicious, and none Gorages. of these will be made flaues, for they had rather die or kill themselues, then serve the Christi- Tropleties ans. The place where the Court lay was out of the Countrey of the faid people: which; as it Caue-dwellers. was told vs, have their Habitations under the ground, that is to fay; they make Caues wherein People living they liue. But the Court was lodged by a goodly River, the chanell whereof ran low in a deepe in Caucavabottom, and on the banks on either file the Countrey all was a most goodly greene Champaigne, but the Earth within a foot deep was a fandie Rock, like the Rocke De glali de Charnache in Portugall. On all places on the tides of this River, were exceeding flore of Houtes digged in the Mountaine, one aboue another : and the biggeft of them had their doore no larger then the mouth of an Hoghead, whereby they might eatily creepe in, and ouer the doore was an hole made where they faitened a Cord, whereby with their hands they climbed vp. In which Houfes abundance of the poore people of the Court were lodged : and they faid, that these Houses were able to receine twentie or thirtie persons with their fluite.

There was also by this River a very strong Towne, which on the fide toward the River was 30 hewen into the mightie Rocke, and toward the Land there was a Ditch cast, fifteene fathomes Towarin a deepe, and fix fathomes broad, and both the ends thereof reached vnto the River : and in this Trench all round about it were Houses digged like to those aforesaid, but in the midst of this circuit which was like a plaine field, there were little Houses made with wals and roofes, wherein at this time Christians dwell, and there is also a good Church. The entry into this Towne is digged under the ground, through this fandie Rocke, all made like a Vault, where a man would not thinke, that any Mule or Oxe could enter in, and yet neuertheleffe they passe well enough.

Not farre from this Towne, going up the River is a great Rocke very fleepe from the top to the bottome, and on the top thereof is a plaine field, and in the mid-way vp this Rocke, there is a Monasterie dedicated to our Ladie, and here they fay, was the Palace of the King of this Monasterie of 40 Countrey of Gorages. This Mountaine or Rocke looketh toward the East, and they goe vp to our Ladic af this Monafterie with a woodden Ladder, which may bee placed and remooued, for they take it cended by a away enery night for feare these people Gorages, when the Court is not there, Afterward they Ladder, and goe vp a paire of staires of stone, and on the lett hand is a Ladder, and offeene Cels of Friers, stone staires, which all have windowes very high over the River. Then there are their Butterie, their dining roome, and Chambers to lay vp their Corne; and turning on right hand, pailing through a darke way, a man commeth vnto a great height, where the principall gate of their Church is, which is not made of the faid Rocke, but it feemeth in ancient time, that there light bin a great Hall with wals about it, which is very lightfome and broad, for it harh many windowes ouer the River; To this place come some small number of Friers. Many people come hither from the Court to receine the Communion, both for the denotion of this place, and also by reason of the fame, 50 which thefe Friers have to be men of good life, and because they suffer many miseries, by reason of the wrongs which these bad Neighbours of theirs, the Gorages doe continually vnto them. And because the Court doth alwayes lodge after one manner, that is to say, all the people of the Court, that part on the left hand which belonged to the great Betweete, lay ouer against these Gorages : and very few dayes passed, wherein we heard not this newes : This night, the Gorages haue flaine fifteen or twenty men of the great Betudete, and no man would fuccour them, because I will have that being in the Lent by reason of the seurre Fait, no man had any courage to fight for weaknot Section.

neffe, and raintneffe of body, neither would they breake the leafon vpon any occasion. On the holy weeke, and Easter day being hard at hand, the Prete fent vs word to prepare 60 our selves to say Masse before his Tent, because he would heare the same. I sent him word, that all should be readie, but that we lacked a Tent, because that which we had before was all broken and spoyled by the raine. He fent vs word, that he would fend vs a Tent, and cause the same to be fet vp, and that as foone as he called for vs, we should come presently with all things necessary to fay Maffe. And it was not pail mid-night, but hee fent for vs , and ilrait-way wee went this

lame tation and beating one another. vpon Good-

Yyyyy 2

ther, and were brought before the gate of the Prete, which wee found in this manner : A great part of the circuit of the hedge was broken and taken away, and from the Tent of the Pretern the Church of holy Crolle, stood aboue fixe thousand Waxe Candles lighted, and all in a ranke, and the distance might bee as farre as a Peece of great Ordnance might shoote : and the breadth from the one fide to the other of them that held thefe Candles, was as farre as one could ffrike a Ball at twice, and all the way was plaine and equall. And there stood about fiftie thoufand persons behind them, which held the Candles, so that they which held the Candles, made as it were, an hedge that could not be broken, holding Canes before them bound all along topes ther, and the Candles fastned vpon them round about the way. Before the Tent of the Press.

The Pretes ha-

rode foure Gentlemen on horse-backe, solacing themselves, and they placed vs next vnto them. 10 In the meane while, came the Prese forth of his Tent, mounted vpon a Mule as blacke as a Crow, and as bigge as a great Horse (whereof they say, he maketh great account : and alwayes when he trauelleth, will have this Mule come after him, and if he ride not voon the same, hee feteth on a Litter which is carryed on mens (houlders) and he came forth clad in an Embrovdered Robe, which reached downe to the ground, and likewise his Mule was couered all ouer. The Sometime car-Prete wore his Crowne on his head, and held a Croffe in his hand, and on both fides of him went ried on mens two other Horses, and they went even with the head of the Mule, but not hard by him. for they went afarre off, and were adorned and couered all ouer with Embroydered Cloth of Gold. and seemed to bee enclosed in Gold, by reason of the great glittering thereof. They had great Crownes voon their heads, which came downe to their very bits, and in the tops thereof were 24 great plumes of Feathers. As soone as the Prete was come forth, those foure Noblemen which rode before, departed away, and were seene no more, and those which came to call vs. As soone as the Prete was past, placed vs after him, so that no bodie else could come there. nor passe the Growned hore raile of the Candles, laung onely twentie Gentlemen, which went a good space before the Prete on foot : and in this order we came to the Church of holy Croffe, where the Maffe of the Refurrection was to be faid : and here alighting and going into the Church, he entred into his Curtaines, and westayed at the gate, out of which great numbers of Church-men immediately comming, were accompanied with a farre greater number then that which was without and they began to make a great procession, placing vs in the end of the same next vnto the first degrees and states of honorable calling : and after the Ptocession was done, as many went into the 19 Church as could ftand therein, and the rest stayed in the fields, and they caused vs also to enter in, placing vs hard by the Curtaines of the Prete.

As foone as Maffe was done, and that they began to give the Communion, the Prete fent vs word, that we should make our selues readie to goe and say Masse, because the Tent was now set vp. and that he would come prefently. We went our way with those which called vs. which brought vs where there was a blacke Tent fet vp, hard by the Tent of the Prete, which when we saw to be blacke, we thought that they had done it to diffrace vs : and suddenly the Ambaffador faid vnto me; Father, yee shall do well not to fay Masie : for this is done to try vs : anfwered: neither doe I meane to say Masse, let vs goehence to our Tents; And this was done at

After our refulall and expostulations, the Prete sent vs word to have patience, because hee would see condigne punishment executed on them which had done the same, and prayed vs to goe into that blacke Tent, because that seeing it was not good to say Masse in, yet it was good enough to dine in: and fo we went into it : And hither was fent vnto vs a royall Dinner, with infinite and excellent viands of fundrie forts of fieth, and excellent Wine both white and red, which were very strong, and of an excellent smell. Peter de Coullas was with vs., and was prefent at all which passed that night. And at Dinner, he told vs, that all this was done of purpose, to trie what estimation we had of Gods matters, and of the Church, and that from henceforth, they would take vs for very good and perfect Christians, All this Lent, we were very well prouided of meat and drinke, and of good store of Fish, and of store of Grapes which were then 19 ripe in that Countrey. As foone as we had dined, That old Father which baptized the peop came vnto vs, and told vs, that the Prete fent vs word, that though wee had faid no Masse that day, yet at least he would have vs fay Maffe the next Sunday, and that he would take order, that we should have a good Tent provided for vs, wherein we should say Masse according to our manner for the foule of his Mother, which was deceased a full yeere past; and that they likewise did say the Tascar, that is to say, The commemoration for the dead, and that we also should say. the fame after our manner.

Maffe for the

d. XVII.

Don Lawis de Manases Letters: King Buanvels death; Their Rices of mourning; Fatigar and Xoa. MAFVDI bis many mifchiefes and death in battell.

60

e. XVII.

N the Sunday, being the Octaue of Eafter, we went thirther, and found a great white and new Tent fet vp; with Cureaines all of filke, below mountaines and the many than the comments of the c milit thereof, after their manner, and it was placed very necre the Tent of the
Prete, and there the Frier, which now commeth Ambaffadour with vs. and o-

ther Priefts, fang a Notherne for the dead with vs, and we fand Maffe, and before we had finished the same, there came vnto vs two packets of Letters, which Don Lewis de Menefer had fent vs, Letters from which was come with a Elect for vs to the Hauen of Marana, and the Letters came by two Marana. wayes, and the Mellengers arrived at one instant. There were also Letters directed to the Prett. wherein he requested him of all favour, that he would disparch vs without delay, that we might be at Maczus the fifteenth of Aprill, because he could stay for ve no longer as well because the mooning of the Sea, which is the fit time to depart out of the Red Sea, would paffe away, as alto because there was great need of his presence in India, Aire it to full out, that the fame day The death of whereon the Letters were delivered, the terme of the fitteenth of Aprill expited. It was allo por Emanuel.

20 written in the faid Letters, that the King Don Emanuel was departed this life. And because it is the fashion of this Countrey, when their friends die; to shaue their heads. Shauing and and not their Beards, and to cloath themselves in blacke apparell, wee beganne to shaue one and. Blacke for thers head, and while wee were doing this, in came they which broughe your driffer; who mourning when they faw this, they fet downe the meate vpon the ground, and ranne to tell it vnto the vied. Prete, which fiddenly fent two Friers vnto vs, to vnderstand what was fallen out. The Ambalfadour could not answere him for the great lamentation which he made, and I told them as well as I could, that the Sunne which gave vs light was darked, that is to lay, that the King Don Emanuel was departed this life, and luddenly all of vs began to make our moane, and the Friers went their way. Immediately at that instant were cryes matle, that all places where Bread, Wine

30 and other Merchandize were fold, and all other Tents of Officers and Judges should be flur ve and this continued for three dayes, in the end whereof this Highmest fent for vs and his first Sale forbidden mestage vnto vs was; who did inherit the Kingdomes of the King his Father? The Ambastadout faid, the Prince Don lobre his Sonne. As foone as he understood this message, they lay, that hee reioyced greatly, and sent vesthis word, Alessa, Alessa that is to say, see no as faul, be sine of said, for yee are among Christians, the Faster was good, the Somewall also be good, and I will write vest bine. At length hee was content, that wee should send some Considers our Factor to the Sea, with a Letter of his owne and ours also, and gaue him a very goodly Mule and rich apparell, and ten ounces of Gold, and with him went two of the Prete as Kinimen.

As for our felues which did folicit him with all importunitie, hee drew vs along for the space Rich gifts. 40 of fixe weekes, and in the end he gaue vs very rich Garments, and to foure of vs he gaue chaines of Gold, with Crosses hanging at them, and every man his Mile: I had one of those Mules which went as though the would flie in the Aire, and that without any hardnesse in the World: and for the rest of the company, four escore ounces of Gol 1, and one hundred Loanes for our sourney which we were to make. Being departed from the Court, we had not trauelled very farre, but the Meffengers returned which wee had fent vnto the Sea, and fignified vnto vs, that Don Don Lewis de-Lewis was departed a good while fince, and though we knew that we could not over-take him, Parted. because the motion of the Sea would not suffer him to stay for vs, yet neuerthelesse were went thither, and found that he had left vs great store of Pepper, and certaine goods for our maintenance, and there were Letters of his directed to the Prete, and vnto vs.

It was determined by the greater part of vs, to fend halfe of the Pepper to the Prete, and that the other halte should remayne for our vie, and that the Factor and I should goe on this melfage. For all this, Don Roderigo would needs goe himfelfe, and would carrie all the P pper, hoping that the Prete would give him some great present, because it is a thing most esteemed, which may be brought into these Countries. And with these our Commodities we departed the first of September, and went faire and foftly with our Mules, and these carriages of our goods, Faigar. and came to the Court about the end of Nouember, and found the Prete in the Kingdome of Fatigar, which is in the vttermost part of the Kingdom e of Adel, vnder which Adel, is Barba- The King of ra and Zeila. This King is greatly efteemed among the Moores, and counted for a Saint, vecaule Adel amortal he maketh continuall warre against the Christians, and is furnished by the Kings of Arabia, and comy one

60 the Lords of Mecca, and by other Kings which are Moores, with Armour. Herfes, and w. attoeuer he will haue, and he on the other fide fendeth them infinite numbers of Abifor flaues, which fle med a he taketh in warre. From the place or field where wee found the Court vnto che first Mart- Saint, towns of Adel, is adayes journey, and from that Maratowne to Zeila, are eight dayes

I-100 Fatiger de-

This Kingdome of Fatiger, for as much as we have feene thereof in our going and commine is for the most part Champaigne, that is to fay, all low hils; wholly manured, and sowed with Wheave, Bartey, and other Seeds, and there are mightie Champaigne fields sowed all ouer with Corne. There are also infinite Herds of Cattell of all fores, to wit, Goates, Sheepe, Oxen. Mares, and Mules. From this Champaigne we faw a far off, a Mountaine higher then all the reft. not of stone, but covered all over with Trees, and also manured, wherein are many Monasteries and Churches enuironed with manured fields; in the top of which Mountaine there is Lake twelve miles in compafe, from whence were brought vnto the Court great flore of the fundry forts, and those very good, and I faw not such store in any other place. Heter green sweet Oranges, Citrons, and Indian Figs, in fach abundance, as it is incredible. Peter de Comilion told to me, that the faid Mountaine was so great, that he travelled eight dayes journey about the foce thereof, and that he tooke measure thereof, and that the Lake on the top of the Mountaine was twelve miles in circuit. When the Cours departed, we travelled two dayes and an halfe, before we came to the foot of this hill, and when we came neere it, it feemed very high, and in enery

A Lake of top of a moun

Partition by

part fruitfull. Many Riners fall downe from the same, wherein is taken great store of fish. We travelled a day and an halfe on the back-fide at the foot of this Mountaine . and leaning the same, we went out of the Kingdome of Faiger , and entred into the Kingdome of Nos. and here we delivered the Pepper to the Prete, and the Letters of Don Lowis, which we had trans lated into the Abifin Tongue, and could not receive any Answere at all. This Voyage which the

Prete made into this Kingdome, grew vpon occasion of making certaine partitions and dinisions, betweene him and two which were his Sifters, by Father and Mother : for Nahu his Father had fine Wines. These partitions were of the Lands and Goods, which remayned by the death of his Mother. Here we flayed foure daies, wherein they cast Lots, what part should fall to each one of them. And Peter de Conillan affured mee, that there were Countries in these portions. which could not bee trauelled about in tendaies journey. When this division was made of the portion, which fell vnto the Prete, he caused the same to be divided in two parts, which he game vnto two of his little Daughters. The hils were conered with Oxen, Goates, Horfes, and Sheepe. The Clothes of Silke and Gold, were likewife divided, whereof there was great dust title, and he gave the greatest part of the Clothes of Silke vneo the Monafteries and Churchi. which belonged to his Mother, in this Territorie. From hence we came to the Towne of Des. where Peter de Conillan shewed the Woods ento va, wherein I faid , that the Friers led fo firm

a life, and where that white man dyod, whose Caue was closed up. A famous war113. This Storie was told use by many, and especially by Rear de Comilian, of a Moore Capriout.

tains, called Mafinds, a man of such courage and valous, that of his great Prowesse after his death. many Songs were made, which are fang even to this day by many people in the Court. They fay, that for the space of twentie face yeares together in the Lent, every years he made in-roads. and foovled the Countrey of Prete Laws, and because in this time, the Fast which is great, taketh away the strength of the people, so that they are not able to fight, therefore hee made inroads without any danger through those Countries, and formetimes hee entred above threefcore miles. And one years he came into the Kingdome of Amers, or into the Kingdome of In., 40 or into the Kingdome of Faiger, and formetimes in one pare, and formetimes in another : and he began to make their in tracks in the life of King and baunder, which was V note to the line for the space of twellee yeares together, who being dead without Sonnes, his Brother Naturalization ded him, which was the Father of this prefene King, and he did the like in his dates. This prefent Prote Janui, began to raigne when he was twelve years of age, & til he grow to be featuren yeares old, Mafudi ceased not to make these in-roads, and warres in the Lene; and they fav. that they were so great, that in one of them he led away nineteene thousand Abiffun Captius, whom hee fent all to the house of Mesos, causing them to bee presented to the Kings of the Moores, where being enforced to become Renegados, they grow to bee very couragious and valiant men, because they get out of the straitnesse of fasting, and enter into the fatnesse, and a 10 bundance of the vices of the Moores. Hee also carryed away a great multitude of all forts of

Nineteene thouland

Cattell.

On the foure and twentieth yeare of his Inuations, when hee entred into the Kingdome of Fatigar, all the people fled vnto a Mountaine, and Mafudi environed them about, and tooke them, and burnt all the Churches and Monasteries therein. I have said before, that through all the Countrey of Prete Ianni, there are certaine called Canas, which are men at Armes, because the Husbandmen in thele Countries goe not to warre. There were many of thele Canas in thele Kingdomes, which together with the Husbandmen were retyred into the faid Mountaine. Mafud tooke them altogether, and put them by themselves, and the poore Husbandmen he dismit fed, fending them away that they might fow the fields with Corne the next yeare, for him and his Horses: and to the men of Armes, he said; Yee Cowards, which eat the bread of your King, and so badly defend his Territories, passe by the sword; and so fine thousand men at Armes were flaine, and he returned with great victorie, and without any impeachment at all.

The Prete being much moued with this Act, and especially at the burning of the Churches

and Monasteries sent Spies into the Kingdome of Adel, to know by what part Masiedi meant to enter; and understood, that he meant to come with great troupes into the Kingdome of Fatiger, in the time of Wheate and Barkey Haruest to destroy them. The Prete having learned. that he came not in the time of Lent, at which time they are forbidden * to fight, refolued to * Cruelie of weir for him by the way, and this he did against the minds of all his great Courtiers, he set for. Superficien. ward with his people and Court onely, without fending for any from farre Countries, because he would not be discourred, and travelled day and night : and on a morning at breake of day, hee fet yn his Paulions, in a Towne where the first Market of the Kingdome of Adel is held, which is a dayes income from the Citie of Adel, where we found him when we carryed him the Pep-IQ per. Here (they fay) is a great passage, which the King of Adol had passed the day before . and was entred three miles into the Countrey of Prete Lami, and was gone out of the way; when it began to be broad day, they faw one another.

CHAR. S. S.17. A fingle Combat. A battell. Vndeferned punishment.

Mafadi, which was a man of great valour, and was never knowne to fice, as the Abillion wie to fing of him; as foone as he faw the Paulton of the Prete, and the red Tents, which are never want to be fet up, but at great Feafts, and entertainments of Princes, Rid unto the King of A del: Sir the Negut of Ethiopia is here in person; and this is the day of our death, doe what you can to fare your felfe, for my part I meane here to die ; and the faid King being fearefull, efca- King of Adel ped with foure others on horse-backe, among whom was the sonne of a Betudete, which then fleeth remayned with the King of Adel, and is now with the Prete in his Court (for they make no 20 great account to run away, and become Moures, and if they will returne againe, they are bapaized anew, and are pardoned for their fault, and become Christians as they were before) and hee

told vs all these things particularly. As soone as the King of Adol was gotten to a fafe place. which was with great freed; the Prote lanni fignified to his Armie, after hee knew that the The Brieff King was fled, that they should receive the Communion, and recommend themselves with betweether God, and after breake-fait, should fet themselves in order; and at nine of the clocke they began to Negus and arrange themselves in battell array, and to march against the Moores, keeping alwayes their Majudi. Tents and Paulions armed.

Mafudi , which was resolved not to fice , and faw death before his eyes , defired to end his dayes with some notorious and honourable action, and therefore spake vnto certaine Christia 30 ans, inquiring of them, whether there were any Knight fo hardie among them , that hee durft fight with him. Hereunto a Frier offered himfelfe, called Gabriel Andrew , which flue him in Mafait flain combat, and strooke off his head, and for this his victorie, he is much honoured in the Court, and by Gabriel dewe our felues were acquainted with him. The rest of the Armie gave the onset voon the Mores, dress a Friet. and discomfited them , which could no way escape , because the Prese his Tents were placed in the principall passage, and another passage which was farre off, and whereby the King of a del fled, was by this time also taken.

After this victorie, the Prote I ami rested in his Tents, and the day following made an insead through the Kingdome of Adel, untill he came to certayne Palaces of the faid King, which he found quite abandoned , the Gates whereof the Prese strooke thrice with his Launce, and Fides petaleus 40 would fuffer no man to enter in or come neere them, because it should not be faid, that hee came with qui cafera thither to rob; for if the King had beene there, or any body elfe, hee would have beene the fift fert. that fhould have entred in, and made them faire warre : and when he found no bedy therein, he would fuffer none to enter into them, and fo returned backe. This battell was in the moneth of July ; and it is faid, that it was on the very fame day , that Lopen Sucres deftroyed and burnt. the Citie of Zeila, at the fack whereof I my felfe was, and the Moores which were taken told Love Saute. vs, that the Captaine of Zeile was gone with the King of Adel, to warre against the Negus of tooke Zeile in Ethiopia. And oftentimes the Prete lent to flew vs foure or fine bundles of Swords, with hiles the peem 1518 of filter, but groffely made, and told vs , that he had won them in the Warre against the Soldan of Adel; and the Tent which he fent vs of embroidered cloth and veluet of Meess, he also wan 50 in the faid Warre, and wished vs to hallow it before we faid Masse therein, because the Marris had committed many finnes in the fame.

The head of this Mafudi was carried for three yeeres space with the Court, even untill our comming thicker, and on every Saturday, Sunday, and other Holy-dayes, which the common people keepe; all the Boyes and Girles did nothing else but fing Verses, made after their manner, in the praise of this Victorie, and at this day their singing passeth throughout all the Court, and I thinke it will continue to the worlds end. Gabriel Andrews, as I have said, is a Frier, and a very honorable Person, and a Gentleman of very great revenue; and besides this worthy Act which he did, he hath done many other; and the report is, that he is very eloquent, and a friend to the Portugalls, and understandeth very well the holy Scriptures, and the things that concerne 60 the Christian Faith, and hath great delight to talke of them, although King Natur caused the tip Gibriel spague of his tongue to be cut off, for his over-much talking.

114. He fent vs word, that he pur posed to write to the Pope of Rome, whom they call, Romes Negus Lique Papas, which fignifieth, King of Rome, and bead of the Pope, and that I should make him the beginning of the Letter, because they are not wont to write, and knew not how they

th mild write to the Pope. I fent him word, that I would make the beginning for him, and that

they should adde the refer which they meant to write, or request at his hands. When wer came

thither, we found all those which they hold most learned and wife with many books; and they

asked me where mine were. I answered, that I had no need of books, but onely to know his

Highnesse purpose, and that we were to bee gouerned according thereunto. Forthwith by 2

chie e man, as well in authoritie as in knowledge, which was there present, and by his office is

called Abucher, which fignifieth, A chiefe Chaplaine; the Prete his intention was delinered

to the Frier, and he told it me, and I fet my felfe to write, and made a briefe Preface; which

forthwith was carried to his Highneffe in my hand-writing. Which having seene, herefret mes

back againe, and forthwith we translated it into his language, and returned it agains unto him, to

their books, for the rest which should be added to these Letters. The Copie of the Letter which

Langade, is written in a Paper by it felte, and beginneth in this manner : Right bappy and holy Fa-

ther, ore. Three dayes they beflowed in making of the other Letter, and about fifteene in ma-

king a little Crofle of gold, which weigheth one hundred Cruzadoes, which also I was to carne

chiefe Inflice beaten three times besides, and within two dayes after, he returned to his office : because they are not ashamed bereof, but rather say, that the Prete meaneth them well and is mondfull of them, and hortly after bestoweth his famour on them, and putteth them in office.

When this chiefe luftice was beaten, there were fixtie Friers in new apparell prefent, which was yellow, after their custome. And when the chiefe Iustice his punishment was ended, they Yellow Friers. tooke an old Frier which feemed to be a man of account, and was Head of the rest, and beat him after the aforesaid manner, but he was not touched to the quicke. After him they tooke another which was aboue fortie yeeres of age, who feemed to be a man of much honour, and they beate him as they did the rest, and this last was twice touched to the quicke. While this was 10 done, I inquired the cause, and what fault the Friers had committed : it was told me, that the last Frier which was beaten, had taken to wife a daughter of a Prete lanni, that is to fay, of Alexander the ynckle of this David, and that he was separated from her, and had taken another fifter of this present Prese, which being very dishonest, and doing what she listed, her husband fearing to put her away, in regard of the Prete, and because also in this Countrey the faults of Womens faults women are not regarded, he forfookethis second wife, and tooke agains the first : and the Prese neglected. having commanded him that he should receive his fifter againe, he would not obey it, but went and became a religious man : and the Prete having committed this cause to the chiefe luftice, to confider whether hee might become a Frier lawfully or no; the Juffice gaue fentence, that hee might lawfully take your him the habite of a religious man, and for this cause, the Justice was 20 punished. The father of the Friers was beaten, because he had given him the habite; and this third man, because he received the same : and immediatly he was enjoyined to leave the same.

and to take againe the lifter of the Prete; and by this meanes wee could not have audience for the space of infteene dayes.

d. XVIII.

Death of Queene HELENA. Tributes of Goiame, and other Provinces. Succours oiwento the Queene of Adea. Apprehension of the two Betudetes and Tigen AHON. their fentence, and the execution. Expedition of the Negus to Adea. Strange Oxen. The PRETES Tent-court, and manner thereof; Places, Courts, and courses of Instice, with other parts thereof described. His Treasuries.

117. Veene Helens had beene dead some eight or nine moneths, which gouerned the greatest part of the Kingdome of Goissee, when as many as came gournment
newly to the Court, went to bewale her in her Pene, which as yet stood of Queene
vpright in the old place, and wee did the like, when were came anew to Helens,
the Court after her death. And the Prote hauing sent winto that Kingdome the grand
Results to receive the Giben, which is the veerely reinbre of the King or this time.

40 Betudete to receive the Gibre, which is the yeerely tribute of the King; at this time the Gibre, or wifaid Betudete came to the Court with the Gibre, which was three thousand fine hundred bute of Goiams Mules, three hundred Horses, and three thousand Baffati, (which are a kind of clothes which great men weare voon their Litters, and they are made of Cotton, shaggie on the one side, like vnto Carpets, but not fo course; and great personages lay them vpon their Beds; and they are of so great price, that one of them is worth an ounce of Gold at the least, and sometimes three er foure ounces, yea and fine ounces) and aboue three hundred Cotton clothes of small value, *One Conie whereof two are worth but a dramme of Gold, and sometimes lesse: and, as wee have faid, an hath zoeco. ounce is worth a Pardos, which is three quarters of a golden Ducat of Parngall, and it was told which fements of Gold.

10 me, that he brought thirtie thousand drachmes of Gold.

I my selfe was at the presenting of this tribute, and saw it all; and it was in this manner. with that The Betweete came on foot naked from the girdle vpward with a cord tyed about his head, like eth. wnto a wreath of a Castilian Carrier, and comming within audience of the Tent of the Prete. he faid three times this word in fhort space , Abeto, Abeto, Abeto, which fignifieth Lord : and Strange cereanswere was made him but twice in his Language, Who art thou? Who art thou? And he faid, monics. I which call, am the least of thy house, which saddles thy Mules, and tyeth up thy Cattell, and doe other bufinesse which thou hast commanded mee, and I bring thee that which then hast intoyned mee : and these words were spoken three times; which being ended , a voice was heard , saying , Come, come forward. And he comming neere did reuerence before the Tent, and passed by. After him 60 came the Horses one after another, all led by the heads by servants. The first thirtie were fadled,

and in very good order, the rest which followed were deare of two drachmes of Gold, and many were not worth one dram 2 piece, and I faw them afterward fold for leffe, and there might be some three thousand of them. After these Hackneys came the Mules in like order, to wit, Ranging thirtie which were fadled, faire, and in good order; the rest were little young Mulets like those Hackneys, and there were Mules and Mulets, of one, of two, and of three yeeres old, and not

Within a while there came a Page, which faid, That the King liked very well of that which I had written, and maruelled much, that it was not taken out of books; commanding, that it should be written in a faire hand, and in two Papers, and that his learned Priests should fluide

to the Pope.

115. At this time the Prete lanni determined to fend an Ambaffadour into Portugall. because that hitherto he had sent none, and he sent for Don Roderigo and me, and told vs. that hee an purposed, to lend a man of his with vs vnto the King of Portugal, to the end, that his defires Zata Zabo Am- might fooner take effect : and asked vs, whether we thought, that Zaga Zabo the Frier. who balladour. alwayes kept vs companie, were fufficient for this Amballage, feeing hee viderflood our language, and had beene before-time in our Countries. We answered him, That he was most fufficient, and was a man which understood vs. and we him. He fent vs word, that wee should take him with ys in our companie. The next day he fent vs againe very honorable apparell, and thurtie ounces of gold, and one hundred loanes of bread for our voyage, and yet wee flayed a good while after : The Prete lent a Meflenger vnto vs, appointing vs to returne vnto the Towns of Charmo, where (as I faid before) we had beene a long time; and here he furnished vs with fine hundred loades of Graine, with one hundred Oxen, and one hundred Sheepe, with one hundred to earthen Pots of Honey, and another hundred of Butter , and fent for the Ambassailour which went with vs, twentie loades of Corne, twentie Oxen, twentie Sheepe, twentie pots of Honey, and as many of Butter.

. 116. While we aboate in the Towne of Charamo, the faid Zaga Zabo was adultrized. that a cestayne little Lordship, which he had, was taken from him : whereupon he prayed me, that I would goe with him to the Court to demand inflice. When we came thither, we found, that his Aduerfarie was Abdenago, Captaine of all the Pages of Prete Ianni, for here is no office but bath an Head about all the reit. And because all Suizes and Answeres are made to the Press by Pages, we had no meanes at all to make the Prese acquainted with our fuite; howbeit, wee were aided by one Aiace, which is a great Lord : and though he were a great friend of Abdemago, yet made he the Prete acquainted with the cause of our comming. Our Indges wereap-Hearing of the Pointed, Aiaz Daragote, and Aiaz Caite, to whom we imparted our requelt; and they appointed vs a time the next day, when the Sunne should be in such a place, shewing vs the place in the skie: and the Proctor of Abdenago was there prefent, and Zaga Zabo the Ambaffadour was there in person. When the day was come, both parties disputed and alleaged greatly for themselves, and they concluded in words, for in their Courts they write nothing at all; and the Judges gave fentence by word of mouth, after this manner; That the Mannor and Lordship, which Zaga Zabo demanded, was a very small thing, and in former times subject to another

great Lordship, whereof Abdenago was Lord, and that it was right, that as the great Winde

patieth ouer all the Earth, fo Abdenago, which was a great Lord, might not be hindred from en- on tring youn this, but that he ought to enter youn this little Signiorie,

When we heard this fentence, we were much amazed, and went to complaine vnto the Prete, which fent vs word to goe to our lodging, and be of good cheere, for all should be well, and that the next day we should repaire to the chiefe Iustice, which should see vs dispatched, and herewithall we departed. The next day we waited upon him at his Tent, who received vs with a cheerfull countenance, faying, That he had a commandement from the Prese to dispatch vs, and that we should stay for him at his Tent; howbeit, wee would need goe with him vntill hee went to speake vnto the Prete. Where, after he was gone in, and had trayed a while, hee came out with two Pages, which led him to the place where offenders are beaten, and there calling two which doe this office, they ftripped him, and throwing him downe vpon the ground, they 60 mi crably bei tyed his hands vnto two posts, and his feet straight, with a thong of Leather, which two men held fast. These ministers of Justice stood one at his head, and another at his feet, smithing him oftentimes, and for the most part on the backe; and when the Prese commanded them to touch him, theftripe pierced vnto the bones, and of thefe fir pes he had onely three. I have feene this

Zagazabe loft

The Lord

Queene of the Moores. Her traine and entertainment. LIB.VII paft, and none of them fauing those which were fadled, were fit to beeridden: and they paffed by as the Betudete and the Hories had done. After the Mules, came the Cloathes called Balluri. and one man could carrie but one of them, they were so weightie. After the Bassui passed, the cloathes made up in Fardles, and one man carried ten of them; and there were about three thoufand men, that carried Baffati, and three thousand men that carried those other Cloathes; and all these were of the Kingdome of Goiame, which are bound to bring the said Gibre. After these cloathes, came ten men, each of them bearing a Charger vpon his head, made like vnto those wherein they doe eate, and were couered with Greene and Red Sindall. After these Chargers, came all the men of the Betudete, which passed by one after another, as hee himselfe had passed. In these Platters was the Gold put, which was commanded to bee borne vnto his Io lodging, with the rest of the tribute, which was done accordingly. In this Procession were spent aboue ten houres, that is to fay, From the morning vntill euening. About fifteene daies before our comming to the Court, thither came a Queene of the Moores. Wife vnto the King of Adea, which was the Sifter of one, which was fent to be the Wife of Prete Ianni, whom he refuled, because two of her fore-teeth were too great, and therefore she

1104

Hertraine

was married vnto a great Lord, which was the Barnagaffo, and is now a Betudete. This Queene came to craue fuccour of the Prete, because a Brother of her Husbands was risen vp against her, and tooke her Kingdome from her. She was well accompanied like a Queene, and brought with her fiftie Moores, which were very Honourable persons, and very well apparelled, riding voon Mules, and one hundred men on foote, and fixe Maids of Honor mounted vpon Mules, and they were people which were not very blacke. She was received with great honour, and was called 20 for within three daies after her comming, and the came before the Tent of the Prete, being her felfe enclosed in a blacke Litter. She changed her apparell twife that day, once in the morning, and againe at euening, and both times the was clad in Embroydered Cloath of Veluet, and in Moorish smocks of India: and the Prete sent her word, that she should take her ease, and put away all forrow, because the should have her whole defire, and that shee should stay for Barnagaso, and Tigremation, at whole comming the should presently depart.

Within eighteene daies after her comming hither, the was againe apparelled after the former manner, and the next day, the foresaid parties arrived at the Court, and each of them brought the Tribute which they are bound to pay vnto the King. And with them came the Cause, that is, The men at Armes of their Kingdomes, with many other Noble-men. They being arrived, 30 the Prete commanded, that the Betweete should first show his tribute of the Kingdome of Goiame. After him the Barnagaffo began to giue his Tribute, which were one hundred and fiftie exceeding faire Horses, and the first day they did nothing else but runne and prance, and the next day he presented great store of Cloath of Silke, and great store of passing tine Cloathes of India. I was not at this presentment, because I felt not my telfe well. When this was done, the next day very early, Tigremahan began to present his Tribute, which were two hundred Horses, fatter, fairer, and better then those of Barnagaffo, because they came from a farther Countrey, yet both of their Horses were of Egyps and Arabia, and all this day, they did nothing else but view Horses. The next day they presented more Cloathes of Silke, then ever I faw together in my 40 life, and the whole day was bestowed in presenting, counting and receiving of the same. The Munday following, about noone, came Balgada Robel, a great Nobleman, subject to Tigrematon, Anhyperbo- to present his Tribute by himselfe, which were thirtie Horses, all of Egypt, great like Elephants, very fat, and a Xumagais, that is, a Gentleman without Title vpon each of them; and

Tributes of

Succours for

118. Of the Cana, that is, The men of Armes which came with Barnagasso and Topremabon, and with the Gentlemen of their Companies, the Prete Ianni appointed, that infreene thousand of them, with a Noble-man named Adrugaz, which is often ipoken of in this Booke, frould goe immediatly into the Kingdome of Adea, and pacific that Kingdome, and that the Queene should follow loft and faire. And forth-with the Queene and Advagaz departed, and it was reported, that they should trauaile through the Countrey of the Prete, thirtie daies iourney, before they could come into the Kingdome of Adea. The next day after, the Queenes departure, the Prete commanded the Grand Betudete to be apprehended, which had brought him tribute from the Kingdome of Goiame. Likewise he caused the other Betudete to be taken, whole Apprehension name is Canha, he caused also Tigremahon to be taken; which being apprehended on a morning 60

eight of these Xumagali had good Curasses like vnto ours, part couered with Veluet, and part

with Cordonan, and their stude gilded. They had also Helmets like ours vpon their heads. Bal-

gada Robel himselfe was one of these eight: the other two and twenty had shirts of Maile, with

long fleenes, which were very well faitned to their bodies : they had thirtie Iauelins, and Ma-

ces of Iron like vnto the workes, and all of them we are Blue wreathes about their heads, with

long haire which waved in the wind.

of greatmen. before day, the Prete departed, and all the Court with him, and we after him. And as the Ambassador of the Prete, and I stood by a Rivers side, watering our Mules, this Betudete that brought the Tribute passed by vs, and said vnto mee, Abba Barqua, which fignifieth, Father gine me your bleffing : I answered him ; Ihezeria Barqua, that is to say, God bleffe you. He

answered with teates, which trickled downe his cheekes : Father, pray to God for me, for at this time I hall end my daies. His prison was a little Chaine, very thinne, of a fathome long, like a A Chaine-pritime [[ball end my dates, Fits priton was a little thin circle about his necke, and himselfe carried his son. Chaine in his hand.

CHAP. S.S.18. A Chaine prison. A killing prison. Hunger and cold.

On a Wednesday, we came to the place where the Tents of the Prese were set vp, and that night it was faid, that the Prete commanded the Betudete to bee brought to his presence, and fo he was brought with two of his Sonnes. When they were come to the gate of the Tent . the Prete fent forth two Pages, to cause him to be brought to the backe-fide of the Tent. because he would speake with him in his owne person, commanding the Guard and his Sonnes to atto tend, and withdrew themselves a little from the gate of the Tent. Here they stayed vntill the morning, when the Prete rid away, and all of vs with him, without any newes at all of the Betudete, whether he were dead or aliue, or what was become of him. His faid two Sonnes, and three others which staved at home, being all great personages, and worthy Warriors, made pittifull moane, and all their Fathers Seruants, which kept an honourable house, like a great King. After this the Prete commanded, that they should not vie any Servant of their Fathers, nor of their owne; and I have feene them riding all alone without any Servant, naked from the Girdle vpward, with a blacke shaggy Sheepe-skinne vpon their shoulders, and clad in blacke Cloath from the Girdle downeward, and all their Mules couered with blacke. Their owne Seruants and their Fathers, were divided all, and walked mourning on foote, and droue their Mules fad-

20 led before them. On a Munday, when we entred into the Kingdome of Oife, there was a commandement, to The kingdome observe the Feast of the Kings, or Twelfe-day, which they call, Tabuchete, on which day they ob- of Oils. ferre their Baptisme, as I have said before. This day very early in the morning, these Sons of the Betudete went from house to house, that is to say, To the Tents of the great persons, as others Chanceand were wont to come vnto them, enquiring newes of their Father, whether he were living or Change, &c. dead, whereof they could learne nothing at all, vntill fifteene daies after, when they were returned, which had conveyed him into the Kingdome of Faiger, into a Mountaine, which is faid to be in the vttermofi Border of the Kingdome of Adel, which is very high, having a deep Valley in the midft thereof, and there is but one entrance thereinto : In this bottome or Valley, A ftrange Val-

30 are all kind of Beafts and Oxen, but the metr which came into it, dye within foure or five daies ley viedfor a of an Ague, and that there they had left him without any man to waite upon him, fauing cer-killing prifos. taine Moores which were to giard him vntill he were dead. This newes increased their griefe more then the first : and men beganne to speake of this death in the Court, that the Prete had The cause of put him vnto the same, because he had lien with the Queene his Mother, and the report went his apprehenfo while shee was aline, and that hee had a Sonne by her, and that the Prete would not put fion, him to death while his mother lived, because hee would not discredite her. And while these rumours went about the Court, Proclamation came forth, that no man should speake of the Betadete, on paine of his life. Suddenly this rumour ceafed; And three moneths after, while wee were neere the Sea fide, in the Territories of Tigremahon, there came a new report, that 40 the Betudete was not dead, and that his Sonnes, by the helpe of the King of Adel, had wrought his escape. Immediatly there came other newes, that the Prese had beheaded twentie Moores, which guarded him, and two of his Servants, because they came to speake with him : and this

119. Alfoon a night, the Prese commanded that Tigreination should be carried away, neither was there any man that could tell, to what place he was conveyed. The next day they fent to lay hold vpon all that hee had in his Tenes, and ceased not three daies together, to carrie, count, and deliuer out course Cloathes, and many Chamblets, and very fine Cloathes of India. We were then in the Court fixe White men of vs, to wat I, and one Porthe all, and foure Genonefes. To each of vs the Prete fent fixe cloathes, to wit, three pieces of Chamblet, and three so cloathes of India, and it was reported within few daies, that the Prete had fent Tieremahon into the Kingdome of Damue; into a wonderfull high Mountaine, which had but one way made By hand into it, and the top theroof was cleatifed, and very cold. Hither they tend men, whom they would speedily ride out of the way. And according as false newes came into the Countries of T gremibon, that the Beinsete was fled To certaine newes came vinto vs, that Tigrema- Tigremahonde Boy was dead in that Mountaine for hunge and cold. At this time also, while wee were at the ed with hunger Court, the other Betudete which was apprehended, was depoted from his Office, and Arrax and cold. Nobiata was made Beindete, which had beene Barnagaffo, and Balonda Robel was made Tigremahon, who came with chiefer Horfes in fuch good order. And there ranne a great brute through all the Court; lamenting the death of the Queene Helena: for they muttered, that Queene Helena 60 fince her death, Both weat and finall went all to wracke, and that while fee lined all were preferred a limented, line and cherified, and that she was the Father and Mother of all men; and that if the Prete went for-

ward on this fastion, all his King dome would speedily come to nought. The Tabuchete or Baptisme being ended, the Ambassadour Bago Zabo, and I, left off the profeet ion of our fuir, because we durit not proceede therein, by reason of the great and weightie

affaires, which we faw to be in hand. The Prete fent for vs, and taking away a Lordship, which Abdenago our adversarie held, and the other which we demanded, he gave them both vnto the Amballadour, and so dispatched vs fully contented. Before wee departed, newes came from Adragaz, which went with the Queene of Adea to succour her Husband, whereby the Prese was aduertized, how the people would not obey her, and that whether foeuer she came, they fled away, and ranne into the Mountaines, and that his Highnesse must send more men. The Prete determined to goe thither in person, and to bring the Queene his Wife vnto a Towne. wherein before we had beene with her, which is called Orgabra, being in the Frontiers of the Kingdome of Adea, and there to leave his Wife, his Children, and all the Court; and fo her Minguoine of Auen, and the Portugals, George de Bren, Diego Fernandez, Alfonfo Mendez, 10 and Aluarenga, and fine or fixe Genoue [es. Vpon their returne, they reported, that whereformer the Prete travelled through the Kingdome of Adea, all the people came to do him homage, as vnto their Lord, and that he would have gone a great deale farther, even vnto Magadare; and that the Country was very fruitfull and full of Woods, so that they could not travell, valent they cut downe the Trees, and so made their way. And that there was infinite store of victuals of all forts, and great herds of all Cattell, which are very bigge, and that in this Kingdome there is a Lake fo great, that it feemeth to be a Sea, and that a man cannot fee from the one fide to the other, wherein there is an Iland, where in times past a Prete Lanni built a Monastery, and

The Pretes Expedition in Succouring the King of Adea. LIB.VII

placed many Monkes in the same, although it were built in the Land of the Moores, which Friers for the most part dyed of the Feauer, sauing a few that remained in a little Monasterie an out of the Ile, by the Lakes fide, which were found aliue, and that the Prese forth-with commanded, that other Churches and Monasteries should bee built, and many Priests and Fries should be left there, and lay-people to inhabite the faid Kingdome, which being pacified, hereturned backe againe to the Towne where he had left the Court. This Kingdome payeth a great number of Oxen for tribute, and we have feene of them in the Court, and they are as biggess without hornes, great Camels, and white as Snow, and without hornes, and have very great and hanging eares. 120. The manner which the Prete observeth in disposing of his Court, is, that alwaies he lodgeth in the fields, for no other place were able to containe his traine; And if there be any

How the Prete high place, thereon they fet wp the Tents of the Prete, the backe parts whereof stand alwain ieladeed in

his Tents.

The hedge with twelve gates.

to the East, and the Gates vnto the West, and they are alwairs foure or fine Tents, all fashed to together one to the other, and these are properly his habitations, enuironed about with certains high Curtaines, which they call Mandekate, being wrought in Checker-wife, divided into black and white, and if you will stay there any long time, they compasse them about with an hedge, which is a good mile about, wherein they make twelue Gates. The principall Gate looketh toward the West, and behind the same a good distance off, are two other Gates, one on the one fide, and another on the other, which serve for the Church of Saint Marie of Sion, which standeth toward the North, and the other serueth for the Church of holy Crosse, which is towards the South. Next vnto these gates, which serue for these Churches, as farre distant from these as the principall Gate is from the Gates aforefaid, are two other Gates on each fide. That towards the South, ferueth to goe to the Tents of the Queene, the Wife of the Prete, and that toward the North, ferueth to goe to the lodgings of the Pages; and at all these Gates, standie uerall Guards. I could not see the rest, for they will suffer no man to goe round about that hedge. This I wot well, that in all places wherefocuer he lodgeth, they make twelue Gates: 20 mong which there is one, that fetueth for the Pages of the Kitchin.

Behind these Tents, the distance of a Cross-bow shot and more, are the Kitchins placed, and the Tents of the Cookes divided into two parts : To wit, the Cookes on the right hand, and the Cookes on the left hand. And when the meates are brought from these Kitchins, they vieto carrie them after this fort, (according as I faw in the Citie of Orgabra, in the Kingdome of Xoa, as I flood upon an hill neere unto the Kitchins; for in other parts the Tents are fet in the Plaines, that no man may fee them.) There passed a Canopie of Red and Blew Crimzon, o as it feemed of fixe whole long pieces fewed together, and they carried this Canopie vpon certaine Canes, which in this Countrey are very good, strong, and so long, that they make lances with them. Vinder this Canopie came the Pages, which carried the meate in certaine great Platters of Wood, which they call Canete, being made like plaine Patens of Wood, wherein we cleanse our Wheate, with a brim two fingers high but they be greater, and in each of them were fet many Dishes of black earth, wherein the meates were put, as Hens, Turtles, and other fmall Birds, and many fruits, and White-meates, which are for the most part made with Milke, and other things. There were also little Pipkins, as blacke as the dishes, with other Viandaan Broth of divers forts. These meats which I speake of, which were carried in these Platters, I fay not that I faw them when they carried them, because I was a farreoff; but I faw them, 60 when they fent them to vs, that they came in the fame Platters, as they were brought from the Kitchin, without any Canopie, and the Pipkins were couered with their heads closed vp Meatshot with Pafte: and these Platters which they sent vs, were full of these Pipkins, which were seething hot. In all meats wherein they may put Ginger and Pepper, they layed on fo much, that

we could not eate of them, because they were so hot. Betweene the Kitchins and the Tents of the Cookes, almost behind the same, is a Church of Saint Andrew, which is called, The Church of the Cookes. No man may repaire vnto the place where the Kitchins are, nor yet behind

nem. 121. Two Crosse-bow shoots distant, before the gates of the Kings Tents, or of the hedge, if Renerence to it be there, a long Tent is fet up, which they call Cacalla, and this is the house of Iustice or Au- the Tents, dience. And betweene this Tent and the Tents of the Prete, no man passeth on Horse-backe.in reverence of the King, and of his Iustice, but all doe light and goe on foot. Into this Tent of

Cacalla, no man entreth : onely thirteene low Chaires of Iron are placed therein. The place To where they fit is couered with Leather; and one of the faid Chaires is very high, reaching as high as the breit of a man , and the other twelue are as low as our stooles. None of the lindees Cours of Inwhich heare the parties fitteth in these Chaires, (they onely stand there for a Ceremonie) for fice. they fit on the ground upon the graffe, if there bee any, as many on the one fide, as on the other. and there they heare the parties which contend, and every one according to his jurifdiction : because (as I haue said) as the Cookes were divided into two parts, so are all others; to wit, on the

left hand, and on the right, and Audience is given after this fort. The Plaintiffe delivereth his Action by word of mouth, and no man speaketh while he hath Manner of done. The Defendant speaketh against him as long as hee will, without any mans disturbance : Suic when the Defendant hath done, the Plaintiffe replyeth if hee will, and the Defendant answe-

20 reth him the second time, if he thinke so good, without any disturbance. When they have done Censure, their Oppositions, and Answeres by themselves, or by their Proctors, there standeth vp a man. which is, as it were, a Reporter; and hee repeateth ouer againe as much as the parties have faid. and at length delivereth his opinion, which of them both hath bell right. Then one of those Judges which fit downe, to wit, he that is the first, doth even fo as the Reporter had done, to wit. he repeateth all that the parties hauefaid, and at length deliuereth, which of them he thinketh to have best reason. And after this manner, doe all the rest which sit and deliver their opinions. and they fland up when they speake, untill they come to the Chiefe luffice, which flandeth up laft, who having heard the opinion of all the reft, gineth his sentence, if there bee no need of proofe : but if they have need of tryall, they give them due and necessary respite. And all is done 30 in words without writing.

Other matters which the Besudetes and the Aire heare, they heare flanding, betaufe they Standing Asstand before the Tents of the Prete, and before this Cacalla, and as foone as they heare the par- dience ties, immediately they goe with that which they fay voso the Prese, and they enter not into his Tent, but onely within the Mandelate or great Cirtaine, and there they fpeake, and then

returns to the parties with the refolution of the Prete, And sometimes they spend a whole day in passing thus too and fro, according to the weightinesseof the causes. 122. A good diffance before the Tent or House of Luttice, on the right hand and on the left, are Two Prifons. two Houses or Tents, as it were Prilons, to keepe men in Chaines; and they are called Mai-

ques Bete, where the Prisoners are kept on both fide, to wit, on the right hand, and on the left. 40 And they are kept after this manner, that according to their fault and caufe, such is their Prison Their manner and their Guards. The Priforser is bound to maintaine the Guards which keepe him, and payeth of imprifes them as long as he is in Prison. And if there be any that hath Fetters on his legger, when they ment, them as ung as no some a recommendation of the Prote, where they have Audience, thefe Warders carrie him Boundes finds or their armes, to wit, two reach their hands one to another, and cause the Prisoner to sit upon him who their armes, which layeth his hands upon their heads, and the reft of the Warders follow him you anache. with their weapons, and forthey goe and come.

There is another kind of Prifeners : for if you will haue a man attached, you are bound to find him, if you will accuse him, and his Guard also to guard him. And this I know, because our Portugals caused certains to bee apprehended, for Mules which were foliae from them , and 50 because they sent meate wnto the Prisoners, and to their Keepers, othey made request to have them let at libertie. I knew another which was a Genonefe, which had Mule stollen from him. and the Thiefeconfessed that he had stollen her, but that the was not in his possession, and that he had not wherewithall to pay for her. They condemned him to bee a flaue, and free was fold. and he was a very couragious fellow.

123. Right over against the Tents of the Prilons , a good distance off, are the Tents of the two Chiefe Iuffices placed, to wit, one on the one fide, and another on the other, and betweene them is a Church, called The Church of the Inities. And ouer against this Church 1, argood way: The Prete case from the same are foure Lions in Chaines, which are alwayes led, which erfocuer the Prese law: inch source goeth. And a good way from the Lions, is another Church, which is called , The Church of the Lions about 65 Christians Market, who fell in the same : for the greatest part bee Marges; especially the princi- with him. pall Merchants of goods, and wares fold by the great; and the Christians fell small wares, as No Christian brend, wine made and black because the state of the christians fell small wares, as No Christian brend, will care of the bread, wine, meale, and flesh; because the Moores are not suffered to sell any kind of victuals; which a Moore neither will any man eat of that which they doe dreffe, nor of the flesh that they doe kill. This killeth or dref-Market must alwayes be right before the Tent of the Prete: the least roome that the compasse sein,



of the Market taketh vp, is a mile and an halfe, and sometimes three miles and more. Although the Court charge as often as it will, yet this Order of placing their Tents is alwayes observed. And from the Tent of the King vnto this Market, the way is free and open, that is to fay, there flandeth no Tent at all, faue onely the two Churches of the two Iustices, and those of the Lions, and that of the Church of the Market. And these are a good way distant from all other

Veltrics.

124. On each fide of both the Churches, flanding on either fide of the Tent of the Prete, there is placed a very faire and goodly Tent, wherein they keep the Vestments of the Churches and another, where they keepe the fire and the flower to make the Corban, that is, the Communion Bread And al other Churches have a Tent after this maner. Before these Churches are set up other great, In Double Tents long and wide Tents, like vnto Hals, & thefe they cal Balagamie, wherin they keep the Apparel, and Captaints Robes, & Treasures of the Prete, & as many of them stand on the one side as on the other, for they are double, as the reft of the Tents of the Officers of the Court are. Thele Tents have their Cantaines which are ouer those that guard them; And the greater part of this people are slaves, which are Eunuches. Behind these Tents of the Wardrobe on the right hand, stand the Tents of the Queene the Wife of the Prete, and of all the women that wait vpon her, and the Tentsof Queene Helena, which was wont to be ferued in very great pompe : but none but women and Eunuches enter thereinto. On the left hand, are the Tents of the Pages : then the Aiazi have their lodging, because they take vp a great roome, for they have many people under them, which are alwayes neere about them : atter the Asazi, lodgeth the Patriarke Abuna Marke, with 2 20 great number of Tents, because an infinite number of people come to bee admitted into Orders.

The Cabeata

to that he occupieth as much roome as were h ficient for a great Towne. On the other fice lodgeth the Cabeata, which in like manner hath a multitude of Tents, and his lodging was wont to be next vnto the Church of Saint Mary, because this Office was wont alwayes to be given to a Frier; but this prefent Cabeata being a Friest, and having a Wife, they place him next the Abuna. Then follow all the Noblemen in their places, and next vnto them the people that are well apparelled, and then the common people, as the Tauerners, and Baken, which felland make Wine, and vie victualling. Then follow the Tents of the women hind toudoe businesse, which they call Amaritas; and these are many, and they have many other Tents Teparated from theirs, wherein the strangers are lodged, which come to fell, to buy, and to trafigue with the Court of the Prete. And hereof there be many richly and well apparelled. Next wato their are lodged all the Carpenters, on the one fide, and on the other, and they take vpa very great roome. The two great Beinderes with their people, the one on the right hand, and the other on the left, doe lastly occupie the space of a Citie; so great a multitude doe they alwayes carrie with them, and are as it were, the Guard of this Court. And alwayes the Tents of the Prete are first fet up, and strait-way enery one knoweth his place, where he ought to fetup his, whether on the right hand or on the left. And the Streets, Markets, and Churches are cafe to bee feene. And this Campe or Lodging of the Prete Janni, extendeth it fefe for the space of

The Preserable

Man er of

124. No great Lord, nor Gouernour of Territories, if hee bee in his Gouernment may come 40 forth, nor sizere to come wnto the Court in any wife, whilefie he be fent for by the Prete and being fent fur he may not deferre his comming for any occasion; and when he removueth hee leauth there neither. Wife, nor Children, nor any goods at all, for he alwayes feareth, that he shall not returne backe againe, because (as I have faid before) the Prese greeth and taketh Govern ments athis pleasure and if he taketh them from any, strait-way that Nobleman which is placed in his roome, taketh from him whatfoeuer hee findeth, and therefore they carrie energy thing away; or fend them into other Territories. And when they come neers the Court with great triumph, they flayat leaft three miles diffance from the Court, where they remayne of tentimes one or two moneths, without farring from thence, so that they seeme to be forgotten, untill it pleafeth the Prese to thinke of them : yet ecale they not, in this meane time, while they flayas forgotten, to enter into the Court, and to talke with other Noblemen, but not with mumph, nor well apparelled, but with two or three men , and naked from the Girdle vpward, and with a theep-skinne on their thoulders, and to they goe, and returne to their Tents, will they have licence to repaire vnto the Court; which being obtayned, they make their entrance with great triumph of Musicke and Drummes, and retyre themselues vinto their place, whichin former time was appointed vnto them.

And when any of them is lodged, hee goeth not out of his house apparelled, as hee did at his comming to the Court, but goeth naked, as I have faid, although he came at his entrance apparelled with great pompe. And at this time all men commonly tay : Now fach an one is not in the King: fassor, because be goeth naked. And if hee hard any fassorable speech from the Prete, in the continuous t continently he commeth forth apparelled, and then the people (ay; Such as one is in his Lords for suone, and the cause is spread abroad, for which he was sent for. For the most part they returne vnto their gouernments, and sometimes not : and if they returne, they are strait-way dispatched : if they be taken from them, they flay them flue, fixe, and feuen yeares, without departing

from the Court, from whence they may not depart without licence. They are wonderfully obedient vnto their King. Before they were not fo greatly accompanied, but now they are as greatly abandoned, and now they ride vpon a Mule with two or three men after them, for the rest which were wont to waite vpon them, belonged to the gouernments which were taken from them, and those are appointed to wait vpon the new Gouernour.

126. If any Gentleman be called forth for the warres (as oftentimes, wee have feene) his en- Honourable try into Court is not forbidden, but prefently he entreth, and p. ffeth along as he commeth, with relpcd of forlmany people. These Gentlemen are not forbidden, that which I have looken of, not to polle diers betweene the Tent of Cacalla, and the Tent of the King neither on horie-backe, nor on Multo because when they come to goe to warre, they enter into that space, even to the Tents of the King, and neere vnto them they make their musters, skirmishing, and ranging themselves in battell array, as they thinke good, that the King may take pleature thereat. And this wee have feene very oftentimes. Thefe Souldiers flay not in Court about two dayes, for fo they becaccustomed, for in two dayes they will assemble one hundred thousand persons together, if they will have so many, and as they come to Court they are speedily dispatched, for there they vie not to give any wages, but every man bringeth his victuals with him, namely, Meale of Barley, The case is and of Chiches, and of Millet parched, which is a good food to go to warre withall : for they find now altered; Oxen and Kine euery whereas they go; and if it be in Wheate Harueft, this is the principall

victuall carryed by those people vnto the warre. 127. All the Pretes Robes of Silke are laid in square Paniers made of wicker, which are The Pretes foure spans long, layed two and two together, and are halie so broad, couered with raw Oxe Carriages. Hiles with the haire on, and at every corner there is a chaine, which commeth over the cover, and hathin the midft a locke of Iron, wherein these Chaines are locked with a little Key. And as these are locked which carrie the Silke, solikewise are those which carrie fine Clothes of India, and they are borne upon mens heads, and are about five thousand or fixe thousand, and betweene every hundred goe certaine Souldiers. And because every yeare the Silkes and embroy. dered Clothes grow to such quantities, as wel of those which are payd for the Tributes of divers Realmes, as of thole which the Prete sometimes cauleth to be bought, and so great numbers are not frent, and cannot be carryed with him in his trauell, therefore every yeare they put them 30 into certaine Caues, which are digged in Mountaines for this, purpole: and one of thele Caues Caues for we saw in our way, when wee came first to Court, which was necre to the gates, called before Treasures.

Badabaie, neere vnto certaine deepe Vallies before-mentioned. At this Caue many Warders are continually, and every paffinger payeth vnto them a certaine Toll, which is appointed for this Guard. After the same manner that the Robes and Clothes of Silke are carryed, fo is the Treasuror likewise carryed in Chests, but somewhat lesser, which are covered with Leather, and locked, as those which carryed the Robes : and ouer the couering, the Chaines, and the Locke, is another raw Oxe-hide put, which is failtned with thongs of the faul Hide, and there it dryeth and becomme h very strong. And these Chests of Treasure are wonderfull many, and alwayes goe with a great Guard, and likewise yearely many of them are put into those Caues, for they 40 cannot carrie fo many with them as doe increase, and multiply every yeare.

This Caue which we faw, was three miles from the house of Peter de Couillan, and hee told vs. * that the Goldin this Cane was sufficient to buy the one baife of the World: for every yeare * Sie perbism vs, 'that the Goats in the Case was just a timmers, and he encuer law them take any out. Tou-quid magnitude they put vnto the fame exceeding grant limmers, and he encuer law them take any out. Tou-quid magnitude they put vnto the fame contains to Gold vs, that often times to tooke out misser squared contains to the c

thereof to give vnto the Churches and Monasteries, as was done three yeeres before our comming thither, when the Prete lent exceeding great Offerings to Ierufalem, of Cloth of Gold and Silke, which he had taken out of those Caues, because of the great store that was therein, And the Offerings were so great, that they covered the wals of the Church of the holy Sepul-And the Untrings were 10 great that they control in the guild. There are many more of the fe kind of then winning then winning Caues made after the ame manner that this is, being all of them in the files of Mountaines, be-against the So cause that have no walled cities or Calife, wherein they may keepe in. It kind of things. The splan has the Calife has no walled cities or Calife, wherein they may keepe in. It kind of things. The splan has the Ambashadour which went vinco laufalem, to carry the forefaid Offerings, is called, Abbas Aze. The more derata, who at this present is chiefe Guardian of the Sisters of Prese lann, and carryed with him floyed.
Nowlled Ca-

aboue fifteene hundred men, with other Gentlemen with Drummes and I have heard of them files nor Gires which were with him, that they alwayes trauelled by the way playing upon their Drummes. in all Ethiopia. from the Citie of Cairo vnto Ierafalem, and in their returne they came running away being halfe destroyed, because the Great Tinke came against the Soldan of Egypt , and against the said Citie of Cairo, whereby they were to paffe.

d. XIX.

Pilgrimage to lerufalem. Of the Countries which border on PRETE IANNI: Moores, Gentiles, Amazones, Cafates, Damute, Goiame, Bagamidri, Nubia. Of SALOMONS Officers.

Pilgrimage to

128. Hile we were in the Towne of Barna, which is the head of the Kingdome of Barnagaffo, there affembled a Caranan to goe to Ierufalem, and they were three hundred thirtie fix Friers and Priefts, and fifteene Nuns. And this was 10 in the Christmas Holy-dayes : for they depart immediately after Twelfe.

tide, and vie to be at Ierufalem the weeke before Easter, travelling fort and faire as their manner is. They began their journey from a Towne diffant from Barna, a dayes journey and an halfe. which is called Emacen, which is a Towne and a Territorie, abounding with all kind of vichials, and there are many Monasteries, and here they began to close vp their Carauan, and it is a place subject vnto the gouernment of Daffila, which is vnder Barnagaffo. When the faid Friers departed, they made a very small journey, and in the Euening tooke vp their Lodging, and prefently fet up the Tents of their Churches, whereof they had three, and began to fay their Houres and Maffes, and receiving the Communion; the next day, about nine of the clocke, they began their Voyage, and they were all laden with victuals, and with Gourds, and Barrachios of wa- 24 ter, and the Tents of their Churches, and the stones of their Altar were carryed vpon Camels: and they trauelled not aboue fixe miles a day. And because I would see their manner of trauelling : I went two dayes journey with this Carauan.

This Carauan, after they had passed Suachen, was affaulted by Arabian Moores, which over-The Pilgrims threw those that were their guides, and tooke the Pilgrimes, and hauing laine the old men, they Panish fold the young men for flaues; and of three hundred thirtie fixe there escaped but fifteen, which went forward on their Voyage. And afterward I faw three of them, which declared vnto me all their mif-hap, and they told me that this out-rage was done vnto them, because they were the Portugals friends, and it is most certaine, that they are very odious vnto their Neighbours for our fakes. Since the Massacre of these friends vntill this instant, no man hath passed in 30 Caravan to Ierufalem, but they goe thither fecretly as Paffengers, and these are accounted for holy men. And because the Inhabitants of Ierufalem are white people, when we came first into this Countrey, they called vs Christians of Ierusalem. There is also another way by Sea, which is gone in a leffer time. They imbarke themselues at the Hauerrof Maczna, and sayle to the Hanen of Tor, which is neere to Mount Smai, and they p fe in five and twentie dayes.

129. The Territorie, Kingdomes and Lordships confining vpon the Kingdomes of Prete Isam, as farre as I can learne, are these. First, beginning at Maczna toward the Red Sea and the Eatt, on that Coast are Arabian Moores, which keepe the Cattle of great Lords that are under the Kingdome of Barnagaffo. And thefe goe thirtie and fortie together with their wives and children, and hauea Christian for their Captaine, and are all Theeues, and rob by the high way, 40 and are fauoured by the Lords whose Cattle they keepe. A little farther, you enter into the Kingdome of Dangati, which is a Kingdome of the Moores, and it hath one Hauen, called Della, and this Hauen is neere vnto the Street of the Red Sea, entring into the Land toward the Abiffins, and this Kingdome stretcheth vnto the borders of the Kingdome of Adel, which belongeth vnto the Lord of Zeila and Barbara: and thefe two Kingdomes meete in the in-land, vpon the Confines of Prete lamis. And there is foure and twentie great Captain-ships or Lord-ships, which are called Dobas.

130. Adel is a very great Kingdome, and stretcheth to the Cape of Guardafui, and in that part, a subject of his gouerneth; and this King of Adel is held for a Saint among the Moores, because hee maketh continuall warre vpon the Christians : and of the spoiles which hee win- 50 neth , hee alwayes fendeth Prefents to the boufe of Mecca , to Caire , and to other Kings: and they returne vnto him in recompence, Armour, Horses, and other things for his ayde. O which King I have spoken in the one hundred and fourteenth Chapter. This Kingdome of Adel bordereth in some part with the Kingdome of Fatigar and Xoa, which Countreyes belong

Ades.

131. In the midst of the Kingdome of Adel, as you passe into the Countrey, beginneth the Kingdome of Adea, which is inhabited with Moores, who are subject to Prete lanni, and this Kingdome Aretcheth vnto Magadaxa.

Lord-ships of

132. Amidft the Kingdome of Adea, as you goe Westward, beginne the Lord-ships of the Gentiles, which are no Kingdomes, & border vpon the Dominions of the Prete. The first of these Lord-ships, or Captain-ships, is called Ganze, and is inhabited with Gentiles and Christians. Next vnto this is a great Lord-ship, almost as bigge as a Kingdome, and they are Gentiles, the flaues of which Countrey are made no great account of. They have no King, but many Lords in divers parts of the Countrey, and this Lord-ship is called, Gamu. And as you passe farther to-

ward the South-west, in the Kingdome, called Gorage. And with this Kingdome of Gorage, and Lord-hips of Ganze and Game, the Kingdomes of Offa and Xon, which belong to Prete lonm, doe confine together.

122. Asyee tranell toward the West, you the faid Frontiers of the Kingdomes of the Prete. especially spon the Kingdome of Xoa, there is a very great Citie and Kingdome, called Damnte, Dannete the flanes of which Kingdome are highly effeemed by the Moores, who will not depart with them for any money. And all Arabia, Persia, and Egypt are full of the Slaves of this Countrey, which become perfect Moores, and great Warriours. The people of this Kingdome are Gentiles. a hough there be many Christians among them. I say thus much, because I have feene many

10 Priefts, Friers, and Nuns conversant in the Court of the Prete, which affored mee that there are many Monasteries, and Religious persons in that Countrey. This King is called, The King of the Centiles. And the moltpart of the Gold which tunneth current in the Dominions of Golden Da. the Prete, is brought out of this Country; for they know better how to digge and refine the mate fame : and great store of victuals is also brought from thence. And when we kept our Lent in the Countrey of Gerage, we had great store of greene and fresh Ginger brought from thence, and Ginger great store of Fish, and plentie of Grapes, which in Leng season were ripe in those parts. And

after Easter we had many great Sheepe and Oxen.

because they will not faffer them to manage Armes.

And I was certified and affored, that on the Frontiers of these Kingdomes of Damme, and Gorage, as you travell toward the South there is a Kingdome governed by women, which may 20 be called Amazones, according as it is recorded and wratten in the Booke of Don Piedro, the In- Amazones the fant of Portugall. But these women (if it bee true) in generall have their Husbands with them all warlise wines the years and line with them: they have no King but a Queene that hath no certaine Husband, of those parts. but suffereth any man to lye with her, and to get her with child, and the eldest Daughter succeedeth in the Kingdome. They fay, that they be very valiant women and great Warriours, and that voon certaine beafts which are very fwift, and like vnto Oxen. They are great Archers, and in their youth they cause their left brest to be dryed up, that it hindernot their shooting. They gather great flore of Gold in this Kingdome, which is first carryed into the Kingdome of Damute, and from thence into many other parts. The Husbands of these women are no Warriours.

30 In the Kingdome of Damute, they fay, there ipringeth a most mighty River, which is contrarie A mightie to Nilm; for the one runneth one way, and the other another. Nilm runneth toward Egypt, but hage Ruser to Nitting for the one runness one way, and the other franch but it is supposed to run well. likely to be the Individuals know not particularly whither this other franch but it is supposed to run well. Zere, which ward wrot the Kingdome of Cong. In the Kingdome of Damust, when the winter approacheth, it field, fyring it is field, fyring to the control of the contr and that they looke for raine, showres, and lightning, although they be not enforced thereunto, out of the same they digge and delue the Earth very well, till the mould be fine, that the water which falleth Lagrangh Ni may wash the same, and the Gold may remayne cleane, and most commonly they seeke it in the bas, of which may wall the tame, and the Good may remay in crease, and more commonly only the fact in the people feeking. Lakes perhaps ong it in De-Gold in the aforefaid manner, in the Towne of Carrino, which is in the Kingdome of Tigrai, mi 40 and they told ne, that they found it for the most part by night.

and they took me, that they took me more part by the property of the Kingdome of Dammer, 114. Transling Westward, and as if were directly West, through this Kingdome of Dammer, of greate state are certaine governments of people, called Cafairs, a Nation very blacke, and of great state. ture; and it is reported that they were descended of the race of the lower, but they have neither Coffeet, a Na. Bookes nor Synagogue. They are very subtile men, and of greater wits then any other people tion supposed that are in these parts. They are Gentiles, and great Warriers, and alwaies are in warre with Iemife enginal. the Prete. They confine with part of Xoz, and Goisme. I was neuer there my felfe; but that which I fay, I heard reported by our Peringals, which were there, when the great Betudete went against them with an Armie; and againe, when the Prete went in person: and they told mee, that these Cafates made great assaults upon them, and chiefly by night, when they came to stay 50 and rob them: on the day-time they retired to the Mountaines and Woods, and namely, into

certaine wonderfull deepe Valleyes, which are among the Mountaines.

135. But leaving the South, and taking the West, another Kingdome lieth somwhat lower, Going belonging to the Prete, called Goiame, a great part whereof belonged to Queene Helena his mo- Ine River Nither. In this Kingdome springeth the River of Nilmi, which in this Countrey is called Gion, and Im otherwise ther. In this Kingdome i pringern the Kiner or Ivans, which in this Countrey is called Connection it is flueth out of two Lakes, which are 6 great, that they feem to be Seas, wherein, as they report, called Ging are Tritons and Mermaids, and some have affored me, that they have seen them. Peter de Coulliss of two great or two greats. told me, that he had beene in this Kingdome, by commandement of Queene Helena, to give or- Likes, in the der for the making of an Altar, in a Church which fire had caused to bee builded in that Terri- Kingdome, torie, wherein shee her selfe was buried, and that this Altar was made of wood, which they fil- Goiane.

60 led full with massie Gold : and the Patriarch Abuna Marke told me, that he did consecrate the Altar flone, which was great, and very heavie, that is to fay, it was all of Gold. We were certaine times vpon the frontier of the laid Kingdome, where we were informed, that this Church had great Guards appointed vnto it, because of the great quantitie of Gold which was in the fame : and all the Gold of this Kingdome of Goiame is fomewhat base. I could not understand, with what People this Kingdome confineth on the farther fide, which lieth in the West, only I Zzzzz 3

heard fay, that there were Defarts full of Mountaines, and that beyond them were certaine leves. I affirme not this, but only deliuer that, which I heard spoken in generall by every bodie.

well of Goiame. Bazımıdri 2 great King-dome 600.

126. At the end of this Kingdome of Goianne beginneth another Kingdome, which is the greatest irrall the Dominions of Prete Lamis, and is called Bagamidri. This runneth along by the bankes of Nilm, and therefore is very great, for it beginneth at the Kingdome of Colume and paffeth along by the Kingdomes of Amara, of Angete, of Tigrai, of Tigremaben, and Barnagallo: and palleth aboue fixe hundred miles in length. Betweene the Kingdonies of Anjoir and Ti-gria, at the end of them, are certaine Lordhips, Weltward toward Wiles, the people whereof are called, Agas, which are partly Courtles, and partly Christians. On the other tide, I know not your whom they doe confine, but I thinke they mult border your this Kingdome of Baga. In midr; in which Kingdome, I was certified by many, that were there themselves, that there is a

Agaos.

Mountaine of Mountaine contayning Silver in great abundance, which they knew not how to get out of the fame, but in this manner, that where they faw any Caue, they filled it with wood, and fet fire on it, as they vie to doe in a Lime-kill, and this fire maketh the Silver to melt, which runneth all into barres, which is a thing almost incredible : neuerthelese; Peter Conillan told me, that I needed not to doubt, but that this was most true. I say, that which I have heard, and know. that this Siluer is in exceeding great reputation, and defired of all men.

Nubia.

137. At the end of this Kingdome of Bagamidri, toward Egypt, dwell certaine Moores, called Belloos, which are Tributaries vnto Frete lanni, and pay great numbers of Hories. Toward the North, thele Belleon border vpon the People called Naby, who by report were fometimes Chri- 20 flyans, and fubicat vnto the Church of Rome. I have oftentimes heard r ported by a Syrien, borne in Trivoli of Syria, whose name was John, and conversed with vs three yeeres in this Countrey of Prete lannt, and afterward went with vs into Poringall, that he had beene in Nubia, and faw there one hundred and fiftie Churches, which to this day have all of them the Images of the Crucifixe, and of our Ladie, and other Images painted vpon walls, and that all this is old and Their eligon ancient works. The Inhabitants are neither Christians, Magnes, nor Invest, but line with a defire to become Christians. All these Churches were builded in certaine old and ancient Fortrefine. les, which are in the Countrey : and looke how many Fortresses there be , so many Churches

While wet abode in this Countrey of Prete Ianni, there came from Nubia, fixe men in forme a

Bishop from Rome, which being dead many yeeres agob; and being not able, by reason of the

Warres of the Mahametans to have another, they were without Priests and Religious men,

and by this meanes the Christian Faith began to be forgotten. These Nubians border upon E

les as there be, so many Captainsh ps be there also.

and the Dominions of thele Nubians are on both fides of the River Nilas : and as many Forttel- 40

This Suachen is that Towne, which standeth on the frontriers of the dominions of Prete land,

and in the beginning of Egypt, and on the frontiers of these Lordships of the Nubians: and hath

betweene it and them the Moores, called Bellow. As you come from this Suachen, and goe along

the Sea-tout toward the He of Maczaa, it is faid, that the Countrey is fo full of Woods, that

a man is not able to travell through them. This is as much as I could learne and know, concer-

138. Salomon is faid to have appointed Officers to his sonne Meilech , when hee sent him

Offices continue in the race of them which then were fent hither, having succeeded from the

there are in them.

Famine of the Word, and mis of Ambaffalors, to crane of him Priefts and Friers to inftruct them in the Faith; but he would fer ble niggat- fend them none, faying vnto them, that be had fest for his Abuna, that is, his Patriarch, from the dife: whereas, because more, while it is the stronger of the which is the stronger of the stronger is not consecuted the boundary of Chie of Alexandria, which is furball to the Moores, and that therefore be tought it not consecuted to the way we waste grave regard for right had river under the way the stronger of the for want of a Priefts are fal- gypt, and this Countrey lieth ouer against Suachen, which is toward the East vpon the red Sea: len from the

fairtfof chift. Salamons Offi

The Prophe-7cm fb reiedion (not to mention their ning the Kingdomes and Dominions of Prete lanni, on every fide of the fame, the greatest part conucrion

prophecied) of defiredion from lerufalem to Ethiopia, to the Saba, his mother. And truth it is, that with this day the fail by that deluge

father vnto the fonne. Which Officers " hee gaue him out of the twelue Tribes, to wit, out of Icw fb Monke possetting so long to large a Soueraign it, as all others rales of the Queene of Sabas sonne and his followers; harded (it seems) by some Politici:n, which to confirme a Soueraignise (perhaps wonne by the sword) would deute dreams of is her nourable descent. And if Saloman had this sonne, how is Christ descended of a legall sonne of Saloman by the line of Nathan, whenas Salamen bis owne line (if he had any) ought to inherit? Neither doe the leville, or Gentile, or Christian Stories or common realent or probabilitie subscribe to this Meilerb tale. And contrarie to lacobs Prophecie, both before and euer since Soiles comming, land bath a Scepter and a Law giner in Ethiopia: ye a, the pertition wall was pulled downe, and had extended it felfe to Cham before last was perivaded to defin the Test of Soon and eye, the figure of the state of Soon and the test of the Soon and is abund to be earnest in rejuting to abbund a left. Once, if this rate were true, they were neither good If refire which nieglected the Temple and legall Rires; nor are good (wiftign to admit fo many of them, Yet is it likely, that forme lew, or lewift Christian have corrupted their Conditionitie by continuance of Circumcifion, which the Eubippians and Arabians have fo many Ages before and fince Christ vied: And also many Ethnick parts of Africa Rill doe and made way to some Statifer to brew this headie liquo of Meikeb, to arrogate Propheticall authoritie and Royall Nobilitie, though with insurie to Christ himselfe the heire of Salaman, and to the myfteries of Chriftianitie. See my Pilg. 1,7.c.a. and 6. 5.4.

whereof, I have heard by others, and the leffer part was seene by my selfe.

each Tribe one Office, asiChamberlaines, Porters, Surveyers, Vihers, Trumpetters, Captaines of his Guard, and other Officers necessarie for a King or Potentate in his Court: and these are much honoured, hecanie they be Gentlemen , and descended of the People of Ifrael: and there be many of every Office, because the sonnes of the Chamberlaines, and all their off-spring carrie the name of that Office, and the like is to be faid of all the posteritie of the rest. And all of them are taken for fuch, fauing the Pages, which were wont to be the fonnes of great Noblemen, and Lords; but now they are not: because (ast haue faid before) when the Prete. finds for any great Nobseman, he fenderch him not word wherefore he fends for him; and when he was ferued by Pages, which were the formes of great Noblemen , they discourred his fecrets : Io and therefore he put them from that Office and vied Piges within his chambers , which were Slavestand the formes of Kings of the Morres, or of the Gentiles, which are daily taken by inroads which the Prese his people make; and if he fee that they be towardly, hee causeth them to be inflitucted, before they be admitted into his prefence; and if they prove diferest and good, he taketh them in , and vieth them for Pages. Indeed hee vieth the fonnes of great Lords for Pages abroad or without doores; as, for Pages for his Bridle, when he rideth, and Pages of the Kitchin; but they come not into his Chambers, as is reported, and as we our felues have feene. Moreoner, all the Canons, which they call Debeteres, defeend of the race of those which came from lerafalem with the forme of Salomon: and therefore they are more honourable then all the rest of the Clergie.

δ. XX.

The Frier Ambassadours Signiories. Their departure and arrival at Ottouz, and after at Goa; at Lisbon. Briefe Notes of Ethiopia, and Letters to the King of Portugall, and the Grand Captaine.

He same day that the Price departed toward the Kingdome of Ades, the Fries his Ambaffadour, and I, departed toward the Lordfhip, which the Prese had given him. One of these Lordships concayneth eightie houses and two Churches, and belonged vitto a little Monasterie, which the faid Frier had before.

The Lordhip which was newly given vnto him, was Array of the Cana, that is, Captaine of the men of Armes, in the Countrey of Abugana, and they may be some eight hundred and more. About mid-Lent, wee came to the place where our people aboad, and wee thought long vntill Easter, when the Portugals were to come for vs. When Easter was past (about which time is the motion of the Sea) and we faw no body some for vs. we remayned very fad, as we had been before. The moneth of Italy being come; when the Prawviderstood, that the Porsugals were not arrived, he gave order to his Ambassadour, and to a Nobleman of Abugana, whose name was Abue Arraz, that they should goe with vs vnto these Lordships, to furnish vs with victualls: 40 and because the Haruest was alreadie ended, hee commanded that wee should have five hundred loades of Corne, one hundred Oxen, and one hundred Sheepe : and that Zaga Zabe his AmbaL fadour should give vs Honey to make vs Wine. And having received those victuals, we returned to Barwa, by the midft of Ianuarie.

140. On Easter Tuesday at mid-night, there came Letters from Don Helter de Salniera. Grand Captayne of India, that he was come for vs, and was at Macana: which Letters being read, we conceived all of vs vnfpeakable ioy. Don Roderigo the Ambaffadour, would have had vsdepart without delay the next morning, but I would not, faying, That if we did fo, they would take vs for no Christians, and that we oughe to stay till the Octaves of Easter; and immediately we dispatched one of our Portugals with a man of the Country, with our Letters, vn.

so to the faid Don Heller, and fent another Letter to Zaga Zabe the Ambaffadour of the Prete, who flayed behinde, that he should come with as great haste as was possible, and travell day and night toward the Sea-fide, to the Towne of Ercoco, because the Fleet was come thither to fetch

141. On Munday, being the Octave after Easter, we departed from Barun, the Barnagallo, and all we Portugals, toward Ercoco. The Barnagaffo, what with his owne and his Gentlemens traine, had one thousand men riding upon Mules, and aboue fixe hundred men on foot ; and wee Dinguil lodged fixe miles from Barna, in a Towne called Dinguil, standing in the midst of a great champaigne field, where every Munday at night great store of people meet together, to goe to the Faire of Ercoco, and they goe as it were in Carauan, for feare of the Arabia s, and of the wilde 6c Beafts of the Countrey. Here two thousand men joyned themselves with vs, which went to

the faid Faire. And they faid, they were but few, because the rest would not goe thicker, for feare they should not finde water to drinke; howbeit, the people that went with Barnagaffe, From Barna to and we our felues, were all prouided and from the Towne of Barna to Ercoco, might bee some Ercoco fine and fine and fortie miles, and we spent a whole weeke in this voyage. And on Saturday morning, fortie miles. we lodged neere the Towne of Erocco, and came not vnto our Ships.

On Tuelday morning, the Barnagaffo with all his Captaines and people, delivered vs to Dan Heter de Siluiera, with exceeding joy and gladnelle, and fent vs for a prefent fiftie Oxen, many Sheepe, Hens, Capons, and Fish, which hee had caused to bee taken, to divide the same among our Ships, On Wednesday morning, came Zaga Zabo, the Ambassadour of Prete Lann, whom we went to meet with vnto Ercoco, to accompanie him; and to Barnagaffo came and deliuered him to the Captaine of the Armie, and so we stayed attending for the motion of the Sea, that is to fay, the time for our departing, which alwayes commeth betweene the foure and twente or fixe and twentie of April, and the third or fourth of May : and if we depart not at this mo. tion, and in this feafon, there commeth none other till the end of August. 142. On the eight and twentieth of April, 1526, the whole Fleet departed, which confi. In

The Portugall Fleet of fine failes. Cameran. Aden

fled of fine Sailes, that is to fay, of three great Galeons, and two Carauels, and wee arrived on the Ile of Camaran. The tenth of May, when wee were over against the Citie of Aden. And when we began to launch into the mayne Sea, from whence the Winter of India began to come against vs full in our faces, and we failed against the same, there began so great a Tempest, that the second night wherein we entred into the same, with extreme darknesse and rage of weather. we loft companie, not knowing what course any of our Consorts held. We failed in this florme untill we came to the Streightof Ormaz; and the eight and twentieth of May, we came to the The Hauen of Mazcare, which belongeth to the Kingdome of Ormuz. Departing from this Hanen, we arrived in the Citie of Ormuz, where the King our Master hath a Fortresse. Here Long Vaz of Saint Paul, being Grand Captaine and Gouernour of the Indies, came forth to receive vs on 2 the Sea-shoure, who embraced vs all; and the next day, after we had heard Masse, we went to Speake with the faid Grand Captaine, and presented vnto him the Letter of Prete Lanni, which We brought for Diego Lopez de Sequeira, which brought vs into the Countrey of Prete lami; which Letter the faid Lopez Vaz did reade, because he was Successor to Drego Lopez de Sequera. Then we presented him a Vesture of filke, having five plates of gold before, and five more behinde, and one voon each houlder, which make swelue in all, every one of them as bigge as the palme of a mans hand, which the Prete lent to Diego Lopez. and the laid Lopez Vaz gaue vuo Don Rodrigo de Liena the Ambasiadour two hundred Pardaos, that is to Gy, two hundred Dacats, and vato the Ambassadour of the Prese other two hundred, and to me one hundred. Des Heider de Silviera stayed but a while in Ormuz, and would needs returne with his Fleet, to wit 17 for the fhips which depart from Zidem to come vnto Din, and fet forth at the time of the motion of the Sea, wherein we came forth; but they winter in Aden, and so goe forward in the voyage : but we flayed here in Ormuz, vntill wee were fure that the Winter was ended.

> A Copie of the Letter which Prete Ianni writ to Don Diego Lopez de Sequiera, which was delivered to Lopez Vaz of Saint Pant, his Successiour in the government of the Indies.

IN the Name of God the Father, which bath beene alwayet , who hath no beginning ; In the Name w It is exemple of women their many national versus amongs, and the Starres was seened and be fore the speciaten Sound, which is the vine him, before the light of the Starres was seened for the soundation of the Ocean Sea was laid, who was concepted as another time in the Firgins wonder, without the Seede of Man, and without Marriages, for after this fort was the understanding of his Office: in the Name of the Holy Ghoft the Comforter, which knoweth all fecrets, what foener they bee, that is to fay, of all the heighths of the Heanen, which is suffayned without any pillars or props, and bath amplifieth the Earth, which before was neither created nor knowne, from the East which the Well, and from the North unto the South. And of thefe three Perfons, none is afore or after another, but it a Trinitie, contayned in one eternall Creator of all things, by one fole Counfell, and one onely Word

These Letters and Ambasages are fent from mee Atani Tingil , that is by interpretation , The 50 Inconfe of the Uirgim (for for as I named at the day of my Christinus but now acted David, the Head of my Kingdomes of the higher and large Ethiopia, the beloned of God, the Piller of the Fath defended of the Stocke of Ivda, the Some of David, the Some of Salomon, the Some of the piller of Sion, the Sonne of the Seeds of lacob, the Sonne of the Hand of Mary, the Sonne of Nahu, according to the flesh; To Diego Lopez de Sequeira, Grand Captaine of the Indies. I have under flood, that albeit you are subielt onto a King, yet neuerthelesse, that you are a Conquerour in all enterprizes, which are committed to you, and are not afraid of the innumerable forces of the Moores, having subdued Fortune, with the Armes of the holy Faith, and that you cannot be vanquifted of any fecret things , being arred with the Truth of the Gospell, and resting your selfe upon the Speare, which carrieth the Bamin of the Crosse, for which cause the Lord he always blossed, which hath sulfilled our toy for the love of an 60

Upon your comming into these parts, you certified vs of the ambassage of the King your Lord, Don Emanuel, and of the Prefents which you have preferred with fo great travell in your flips, having indured great Windes and Stormes, as well by Sea as by Land, wherein you have come from fo farre Countreyes to Subdue the Moores and Pagans, conducting and governing your Ships whither some you thinke good, which is wonderfull to consider : and abone all things , that you have beene two whole recres in Warre upon the Seas, enduring so great travell, taking rest neither day nor night; considering, that the altions of Man, according to the viuall custome, are done in the day-time, as to buy, to fell, to tranell by the way, and the night is made to sleepe, and to take rest, as the Scripture fatth; The day is Psal, to4. v. 20. made for Men to doe their bufinesse, from the morning vnto the evening, and the Lions roaring \$1.22. after their prey, doe feeke their meate at God; and when the Sunne arifeth, they get them away together, and lay them downe in their Dens : and so both Men and Beasts are wont to take

their rests : yet newher sleepe bath ouercome you, nor the night, nor the day, when the Sunne ariseth, for 10 the lone which you beare unto our holy Faith, as Saint Paul faith; Who shall separate vs from the Rom. 3.35. loue of Chrift? Shall tribulation, or anguish, or persecution, or famine, or nakednesse, or perill. lames 1,12, or fword. And the Apofile Saint lames Jath: Bleffed is the man that endureth temptation; for when he is tried he shall receive the Crowne of Life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him. God fulfill your desires, and gue you prosperitie, and bring you safe and sound onto King Don Emanuel, your Lord, and remone the Moores out of your fight, which you have vanquilhed, because they beleeve not in the Faith of our Lord Iesu Christ: and !!essed be your men of Warre allo; for surely, they be Martyrs for our Lord lesus Christs sake, for they die for hunger, for cold, and for heate, for his holy Names (ake. Honorable Sir, when I understood of your comming into our Countries, I greatly reioyced thereat, and afterward understanding of your sudden departure, I was not a

20 little griened. I reioyced also, when I was informed, that you had font an Ambassadour unto mee, and grasfed the Name of God the Father, and of his Sonne Lefus Christ our Lord, especially for the good report of you, which resoundeth on all sides, and because you were desirous to enter in friendship with vs. And because (as I conceine) your good will is such, I wish that you would vouch safe to fulfill the same, in sending us Artificers which can worke in gold and silver, and can make Swords, and Armour of Iron. and Head-pecces; and also Masons to build Houses, and men that are skilfull to plant and trim Vines after your manner, and to dresse Gardens, and are skilfull in all other Artes, which are best and most necessarie for the life of man, and also Worke-men to cast sheets of Lead for the conering of Churches, necessaries for tous use of man, and assure or excessions used in the stand you we concern of a concess, and I'lls. makers for one bonses, for me court them with Grasse, and of the see that du very great need, and for want of them we are alwaise in disquiet. I have built a great Charlet, which is named the Tri-30 mitic, wherein the body of my Father is buried, for his Soule is in the hand of God, and the walls there-

there is no consistent of the control of the contro of these Artiscers, twelue at the least in enery Art : and yet for this you hall never want Crafts-men. And if they will stay with vs, they shall stay, and if they will depart, they shall depart, and I will pay them very bountifull for their paines, &c. This Towne of Zeila is the Hanen, whither all the Veltuals doe come, which are transported into Aden, and so through all Arabia, and other Kingdomes and Countries, which comot be familised but onely with fuch Usenali at come from Zeila and Maczua, which are brought thither from our Kingdomes, and the Kingdomes of the Moores. And if you doe this, are or suggest to the ryom our Longdomes, smaller Rongdomes of the Moores. And of you are tou, which I privade you, yould be rough any flowless the whole Kingdome of Aden, and all that 40 bis, and other Kingdomes a disyning, without more, or the death of any of your people, for taking vic-

tuals from them, they will remaine beseged, and hunger-started. And when you will wage warre against the Moores, acquaint mee with what sever you want; for I will send you great troopes of Horse-men and Archers, Vituals and Gold, and will come my selfe in person, and I and you will defeat the Mootes and Pagans, for the advancement of the holy Christian Faith

and regains for too admonstratory of two toys very source amount.

Father Don Francisco is worth of double remard, because he is an boly man, and of an oppight

conscience, and exceeding bough for the tone of God. Being fully acquainted with his good disposition,

I have given him a Invisuation, a Vrosse, and a Stasse in this hand, which is a signe of authoritie, and have made him an Abbot in our Dominions, and I would wish you to increase his honour, and to make him Bishop of Maczua, and of Zeila, and of all the Hands of the Red Sea, and head of our Countries, 50 because he is sufficient, and descrueth the like, or a greater office, &c.

143. We departed from Ormue, the flete of Lopez Uze of Saint Paul, the Grand Cap-tine, because Don Hellords Situirs was gone toward the Red Sa, to encounter the Ships of Mecca, which wintered in the Citie of Aden, as I faid before : and being come out of the ilreit of Ormuz, we found that the Winter of India was past, and that wee might sayle without any Tempest, and we sailed to a Fortresse of the King our Lord, in the Countrey of Chaul, which chaul, is very pleasant, and aboundeth with Corne, which commeth from Cambaia, and of Oxen, Sheepe, Hennes, and infinite store of Fish, and many fruits of India, and Herbs of Gardens, made by our Portugals. Within few daies after, Don Hell or de Silviera returned, and brought Three rich with him three Ships of Mecca, which he had taken, with great riches of Gold, because as yet thips of Mecca

60 they had not brought their merchandize, and came to buy them in India, and all the Moores taken. which were young and luftie, that were taken in the faid thips, they thrust into the Kings Gallies, felling them at ten Duckets a man, which is the Kings ordinary price. The reft which were old and weake, were likewise fold for ten duckets a piece. Departing from thence, wee came vnto the Citie of Goa, the fine and twentieth of November, on Saint Katherine; Even. Gos,

Cenanac

We leparted from thence, and came to Cananor, where we flayed fixe daies, then wee went to Co. hin, where wee found Antonie Galkano, the Sonne of Edward Galuano, the Ambassadour. Anionic Grad whose benes I brought with me from Camaran, to whom I declared the whole matter, and hee a Carracke. exceedingly reioyced thereat, and would need scome and fetch them from the ship, with all the Priests and Friers of the Citie, and with an infinite number of Waxe-Candles, and so hee was carried to the Monasterie of Saint Antonie. And because the Mariners will not carrieded Corples in their ships, therefore the said Antonie caused a Graue to bee made behind the high Altar, and made as though he had put the Coffin therein, but secretly caused the same to bee car-

ried to his ship, whereof he was Captaine.

Greatheate.

Two Morres

145. Being come to an Anker in the River of Libon, over against the Kings house, incon. 10 tinently came Boars vnto vs to receiue our stuffe, and carried them to Saint Arrem, where we refted fixe daies, and bought vs Mules and apparell, after the manner of Portugall. From hence we departed in a greater heate, then euer I felt in the Countrey of Prete Ianni, or in the Indies. The Ambaladour of Prete lanns with-drew himtelfe out of the way to the Towne of Azinaga being him elfe and all his Company almost smothered with heate. The Kings Commissary conducted me to Ponte de Anonda, where I thought verily that I should have ended my daies for extreame heate, and if I had not beene fuccoured with coole Water, I had prefently beene fifled. While we stayed in this place, Don Roderige came thither, riding as fast as he could, and crying, Helpe, helpe for the lone of God, for the Moores, the Kings Pilots, and my Slaues, are dead for heate. Straight-way foure Mulettiers raune with foure Mules, and brought them thither, whereof one dyed immediatly, and another within two daies after : and so we indured a 18

twell for heat great extremitie of heate. And vpon the death of their two Moores, there was some support on of the plague, but the Kings Commissarie gaue suffeient Testimony of the truth, that is to fay, That they dyed with extreame heate; because that albeit they came out of hot Countries, yet were they not wont to goe clad and shod, but onely with a cloath from the girdle downe. ward : and now in this extreame heat which happened, being cloathed in apparell, they were veterly itified. And truly, all the time that I was in the Indies, and in Ethiopia, I neuer feltio great a heat; and it was told me for a certaintie, that the felfe-fame day, there were very many that dved of heate. The next day we transiled by night, and came to Zarnache, where were

ceiued order from the King, to flay there till he fent for vs.

146. Hauing flayed thirtie dates at Zarnache, with as much pleafure as might be, Diego Le pez de Sequeira, Surueyer of the Nauie, came vnto vs, who was the man that brought vs with his Fleet into the Country of Prete lanni, to fetch vs vnto the Citie of Coimbra, where the King lay. After two daies came many Buthops, the Deane of the Chappell , and fundry Chaplaines. to fetch the Amballadour of Prese Tanne, and all of vs which were with him from his lodging and they brought vs to the Kings Palace, where the faid Ambaffadour prefented to his Highness a Crowne of Gold and Siluer, which was fquare in foure pieces, and enery one was two spannes high, and very rich, which the Prete Lanni lent, and two Letters made in quaternians of Parchment, faid : King Dauid my Lord, fent this Crowne, and thefe Letters to the King your Father, which is in plorie, and fent him word, that neuer fromne was fent by the Sonne onto the Father, but the to they were wont to come from the Father to the Sonne : and that by the figne of this Crowne King Daund himselfe was knowne, loued, feared, and obejed in all his Kingdomes and Signiories, and he being bis Sonne, Sent unto the King his Father the Said Crowne, to affere him, that all his Kingdomes, Signiories, and people, were readie to doe what socuer his Highnesse Should command. And afterward, bassing beene enformed of the death of King Don Emanuel, hee Said; Let the Crowne and Letters, which I fent unto the King Don Emanuel, my Father, be fent unto the King Don Iohn, my Bresher, with other Letters which I will write vnto him.

This being done, the faid Amballadour and I presented two bagges of Embroydered Cloath, with two Letters, and a little Croffe of Gold, which the Prete Ianni had ient to the Popes Holineffe, which things he requested to bee presented vnto him by me, Francis Alvarez, His Ma- 50 iestie receiuing the Croffe, kiffed the same, and afcerward gaue it to Antonie Carmero, together with the Letters, and faid, that he thanked the Divine Maiestie, for that hee had guided in an happy way, the things which were begunne by the King his Lord and Father, and that hee would finish them accordingly, to the honour and glory of our Lord Iefus Christ.

In the yeare 1529, a good Benefice being fallen void in the Arch-bishopricke of Braga, his Maiestie bestowed the same of me, and commanded me to goe and present my selfe to my Lord Arch-bishop, Don Diego de Sonfa, that hee might confirme me in the same: which when I had done, his Lordship asked memany things concerning the Countrey of Prete lanni, which hee

wished me to put downe in writing. When the Prese trautleth with all his Court, the Altar of the confectated flone, whereupon 60 Masse is said, is carried by Priests vpon their shoulders, and the said stones are laid vpon a little beare of Wood, and the Priests are alwaies eight, that is to say, Foure and foure to carrie them by turnes, and before them goeth a Clerke with a center, and a Bell which he ringeth, and eury man remoueth out of the way, and they which are on horfe-backe do light, and doe their re-

In all this Countrey there is no Towne, that hath in it aboue fixteene hundred hou fes, and there are but few that are so bigge. Neither is there any walled Towne or Cassie. Their Villages are without number, and they have an infinite multitude of people. Their Houses are made in a round forme, all of Earth conered with Flagges, or with a certaine kind of Straw. which lafteth a mans life, with yards about them. There are no stone Bridges vpon their Riuers, but Bridges of Wood, They lye commonly vpon Oxe-hides, or in beds made of the thongs of the faid Hides. They have no kind of Table to eate vpon, but feed vpon or the thongs of the latters of wood, which are very broad, without Towels or Napkins. They have Their manner certaine great Platters like Basons of blacke Barth, as bright as blacke Amber, and Vessels like of seeding. In Curs to drinke water, and the Wine of the faid Countrey. Many eate raw flesh, others broyle

it you the coles or burning embers : also there are Countries so destitute of wood, that they broyle their meate vpon fire made with Oxe-dung.

The cause why Nilm ouerfloweth Egypt, is this, that whereas the generall Winter beginneth The cause of in Athiopia, in the midft of Iune, and laiteth untill the midft of September , by reason of the the increase exceeding great raines, which continue there all that feafon; Nilm groweth great and ouer: of Nilm.

Prete, and all his receits and expenses are onely put in writing. The Prete lanni hath two names of bonour, that is to fay, Aregue, which tignifieth an Emperour, and Neguz, a King. Wine of Grapes is made openly but in two places, that is to fay, in the house of Prete lanni,

20 and of Abuna Marke, and if they make it elfe-where, they doe it icretily. The Wine which Small store of they vie at the Communion, is made in this manner. In the Monasteries and Churches they Wine made in keepe Grapes as it were halfe dryed in their Veffries, and fleepe them ten dayes in water, when this Country. they be fwolne, they diy them, and then they presse them in a Wine-presse, and with that Wine

There is infinite plentie of Sugar-canes, but they know not how to boyle and refine the same, Sugarcanes. onely they eate them raw.

There is no Mountaine in the Countrey whereon Snow is feene, neither doth it fnow, al. No fnow is though there be verie great Frosts, and specially in the plaine Countries.

There is exceeding great quantitie of Honey in all this Countrey, and the Bee-hiues are pla-Abundance of 30 ged after par manner, without the principall house, but they let them in the Chambers where Honey. the Hisbandmen remayne, and fet them against the wall, wherein they make a little hole, whereby they goe out into the fields. They also flie about the Chambers, and yet the people will flay within, for they vie to goe in and out. They bring vp great flore of thefe Bees, effecially in the Monasteries, because they are a great foundation of their sustenance. There are also Bees in the Woods and Mountaines, by whom they let wholfome barkes of Trees, and when they be full of Honey, they carrie them home. They gather great Rose of Waxe, and make Waxe.

Candles thereof, because they vie no Tallow-candles. V. They have no Oyle of Olives, but of a certaine kind, which they call Hona, and the Herbe whereof they make it is like vnto little Vine-leaves: this Oyle hath no fmell at all, but is as faire 40 and yellow as Gold. There groweth Flaxe allo, but they know not how to dreffe it to make Flaxe. Cloth thereof. There is great flore of Cotton-wooll, whereof they make Cloth of divers co- Comon-wooll. lours. There is also a certaine Countrey that is to cold, that they are forced to goe apparelled in courfe Cloth like a darke tawnie.

In no Towne where I have beene, have I feene any fhambles of flesh, fauing in the Court ? and in other places no man may kill an Oxe, although it be his owne, without asking licence of the Lord of the Towne.

Touching their ordinarie Inflice, it is not their manner to put any man to death ; but they Their ordinary beat him, according to the qualitie of his fault, and also they put out his eyes, and cut off his majner of fee hands and feete, howbeit, I faw one man burnt, because hee was found to have robbed a field

The common people seldome speake the truth, although an Oath bee ministred water them, valeffe they be bound to sweare by the head of the King. They greatly stand in feare of Excommunication, and if they be commanded to doe any thing which is greatly to their prejudice. they doe it for feare of Excommunication. An Oath is ministred after this manner. They pre to Their manner the Church gate with two Priefts, which carrie Incente and Fire with them : And hee which of mouthing is to sweare, layeth his hand upon the Church gate, and the Priests will him to tell the truth, an Oath, faying, If thou fweare falfly, as the Lion denoureth the fleepe in the Forrest, fo let the Deuill denoure thy foule; and as the Corne is grinded valer the Mil-stone, so let the Deudl grind thy bones; and as the fire burneth the wood, fo let thy foule be burnt in Hellifise. And hee which 6c fweareth, answereth Amen, to each of these Sentences. But if thou shall reil the truth; let thy life be prolonged with bonour, and thy foule goe to Paradile with the Bleffed and free faith, Amen. Which Ceremonie being done, they caufe him to grue like terrimonie.

Whereas I have faid, that they fit not in their Churches, therefore I tell you, that without the gates of the same, there are alwayes placed a great number of woodden Crouches, like those

1117

wherewith lame men doe helpe themselves, and every man taketh his owne, and leaneth voon it vntill Seruice be done. All their Bookes, whichere many, are written in Parchment, for they have no Paper, and the writing is in the Language of Tigia, which is the Abaffine Tongue, that

is the Language of that Countrey wherein they became first Christians. All the Churches haue two Curtanies, one by the high Altar with Bels, and within this Curtaine none doe enter but the Priefts : then there is another Curtaine in the midft of the Church : and none doe enter into the Church, but fuch as have received boly Orders, and many Gentle. men and Honourable persons doe receive Orders, that they may be admitted into the Church.

The greatest part of the Monasteries are seated upon high Mountaines, or in some deepe Val-The greatest part of the momentum are accounted in many of them, they eate no flesh all ley. They have great Renemues and Iurifdictions, and in many of them, they eate no flesh all the yeare long. They eate also very little fish, because they know not how to take them.

No painted

Voon all the wals of the Churches are Pictures of Christ and of our Ladie, and of the Apostles. the Prophets, and Angels, and in every one of them is the Picture of Saint George. They have no graven nor carved Images; neither will they fuffer Christ crucified to bee painted in the wals: because they say they be not worthy to see him in that Passon. All their Friers, Priests . and Noblemen, continually carrie a Crosse in their hand; the people weare Crosses about their neckes. Enery Prieft alwayes carryeth with him a Cornet of Braffe, full of holy water, and whereforuer they goe, the people alwayes pray them to bestow holy water, and their blessing voon them. which they give vnto them, And before they eate; they caft a little holy water vpon their meat. and likewife into the Cup where they drinke.

Their principali Feafts,

The moreable Feafts, as Eafter, the Afcension and Whitfuntide, are kept on the very fame 20 daves and dealons, wherein wee observe them. Touching Christmas, the Circumoison, and Twelfestide, and other Feafts of Saints they likewife agree with was in other Feafts they

When their neth.

Their years and their first moneth-beginneth the fixe and twentieth of August, which is the heading of July 160s. And their years conflict to f twelve monetis, and their moneth of thirtie dayer jambayhearity years spaced they added the shape which they call Pagemen, that is to fay, also ending of the years, and in the large years and on the years. They have Cymbalshike ours, and certaine great Batons; wahne and they ning. Flates they is the Mascall have and certaine (quirelinftuments with ithing-slike the possible they made and the man have that is to lay. Decode history, and they play sport their before the Truce Lower, but fome.

The naturall Hories of the Country are infinite, but are not very good, but are like vice Hackbeies, but those which come from Arabia and Egypt, are very excellent and faire, and the great Lords have Races of these Hories and as soone asthey bee foled, they suffer them not to flicke their Dams about three dayes, whom they will prefently travell on, and taking the Coler from their Dams, they put them to be finkled of Kine, and they become exceeding faire.

Consumption Thefe Letters ::: following were translated into Latine, by Pa. louiss, and reniewed after lifhed by Da mianus a Goes, by Ramusio. That which is in the former

The Letters of David, the Mightie Emperour of Ethiopia, voto Emanuel King, of Portugall, &c. Written in the yeere 152 1. as also to King John and Pope Glement.

IN the name of God the Father, who was from Enerlasting, and bath no beginning, &c. Thisse Letters are sent from me Athani Tingil, To. Emperour of the great and high Ethiopia, and of mightie Kingdomes, Dominions, and Territories, King of Xoz, of Cattate, of Fatigat, of Angote, of Baru, of Baaliganze, of Aden, of Vangue, of Goiame, (where Nilus (pringeth) of Amara, of Baguemeelri, of Ambeaa, of Vagne, of Tigremahon, of Sabaym, from whence came the Queene of Saba, of Bernagaes, and Lord even to the Country of Nubia, bordering open Egypt. 19 omitted, is the Thefe Letters are dissifted onto the most suightie, most excellent, and victorious King, Don Emanuel, fame with that who dwelleth in the things Good, and remayneth fledfast in the Catholike Faith, the Sonne of the Apafiles Peter, and Paul, sine King of Portugall and Algarbi, a lower of Christian, an Burmie, Indee, Chapter and Mangalher of the Moores and Gentiles of Alicia And Gothes, of the Cape of Bloo-nes Speriaus, and of the Lee of the Adomesting of the Rei Sea of Arabis, Periis, and Ormuz, of the frequer India, and of all places, Hands, and Countries adjacent, the destroyer of the Moores, and Stolle Pagans, the Lordiof Fortresses, high Castles and Walls, the Intarger of the Falch of Leftu Christ. Peace brome thee, King Emanuel, who velying open the affifunce of God, destroyeft the Moores, and with thy page, thy Sontakers and Capanines, expellest them in all places the faith leffe Dogs Peace be with 60 the Queins the Wife belowed of left Christ Serment of the Virgine Marie, the Mather of the Sanion of all people. Peace be to the Novemen being now, is it were, in a fresh Garden, amidst the sometimes. Litters, a Tuble furnished with all Dainties. Peace bee unto your Daughters, which are adorted with Princilly Robes, as Palates on with Hangings of Tapistre. Peace unto your Kinsfolkes, the Off-firing

of Saints, of whom faith the Scripture, Bleffed are the Sonnes of Saints, and mightie abroad and at home. Peace be to thy Counfellers, thy Officials, thy Magistrates and Indges. Peace be to the Captaines of thy Castles and Borders, and of all thy defensible places. Peace be unto all Nations, People and Cities, and to all Inhabitants, except Moores and lewes. Peace bee to all Parifies, and to all that are faithfull to Christ, and to thy selfe. Amen.

I was advertised (most worthy King, and my Father) that so soone as the renowne of my Name was brought unto you by Matthew, mine Ambassadour, you presently caused a great number of Arch bilbops, Bilbops, and other Prelats to be affembled, to give thankes unto our Sausour Christ, for the same Amballage, and that the said Matthew was entertained with great bonour and selemnitie.

10 de. But let us omit these matters, and consult betweene our selues, how wee may innade and conquer other Lands of Infidels, I verily will bestow 100000000. drachmes of Gold, and somewithous ands of Souldiers. Yea, I will bestow Wood also, and Iron, and Copper, for the bailding and furnishing of a brewite which Nany, and great plentie of victuals. Ob King, and my Faiber, Emanuel, that one God protect and in theformer fane you, which is the God of Heanen , and alwaies of one Substance , being Subject neither to youth Authors may nor old age. He which brought your message, was called Roderigo de Lima, and was the principall of that Matthew all his good company, and with him came Francis Aluarez, whom for his honest demeanour, his singular Religion, and upright dealing, I could not but most entirely lone, especially, when as being demanded by him, but by as touching the Faith, he arifwered most truly and aptly. Tou on the therefore to exalt him. to call him. Queen Helius, Master, and to grant him authoritie to convert the people of Maczua, of Delaqua, of Zeila, and of &c.

20 all the Hands of the Red Sea, because they are upon the Borders of my Kingdomos, and I have ginen unto him a Crosse and a Staffe, in token of authoritie, and so likewise commend you the same things to be graunted unto him, and let him be created Bishop of the faid Countries and Ilands, for he deserueth So to be, and is meete for the administring of this Function: and God will so mightily bleffe you that you hall ever baue the upper hand of your enemies, and hall constraine them to fall downe before your feete. The same God prolong your daies, and make you partaker of the Kingdome of Heanen in 4 most Honourable place, even as I would wish for mine owne felfe. I have heard with mine eares, many good reports of thee, and with mine eyes I fee those things that I never expected to have feene : God profper all your affaires from good to better, and grant you a place upon the wood of life, where the Saints themselues are placed, Amen.

30 I, like an obedient Sonne, have done those things which you commanded, and will hereafter doe. when sever year Amhassadours shall come, to the end we may musually essist one another. And wono every of your Amhassadours which shall come, as the former did umo Maczua, or Deleca, or to other Hauens within the fireits of the Red Sea, I will gine, and cause to bee given those things which you Italien minimize jieus y vie seen vies, arm gine, anni tanges vie e gunen viesye sinnes proce you. Ball request, according to my carest destre ; that we e mar prosperously bee consingued, both in Compolet, and Actions. For when your Forces soull resort vinto these for fifty, t will there be prefent with my Armies also. And because that upon my Borders there are no Caristians, nor Christian Churches, I will freely also. give unto your subjects those Lands to inhabite, which are next unto the Dominions of the Moores : for it is requifite, that you bring your good beginnings to a happy end. In the meane while, fend mee learned

40 men, and Caruers of Silver and Golden Images, and such as can worke in Copper, Iron; Trime, and Lead: as also Artificers, which may Print Bookes in the Letters of our language for the (burch, and likewife fuch as can beate Gold into thinne Plates, and therewith can gild other Metals. All thefe stall be most honestly intreated in my Court, and when sourt they will depart, I will give them liberal mages for their paines. And I sweare by our Lord lesus Christ, the Some of God, that I will freely dismisse them, when they shall thinke good. And this I doe most considerally demand, because I am not ignorant of your versue, and know right well the goodnesse of your disposition, being also assured of your exceeding loue toward me : and this I know the more certainly, because you so honourably intertained, and dismissed Matthew for my sake. And this is the cause that maketh mee so earnessly to request. Neither let this cause you to bee ashamed, for I will pay for all things to the ottermost. That which a

50 Somne asketh of his Father, ought not to be denyed : you are my Father, and I am your Sonne : let ve therefore be lovned together, as one stone in a wall is so ned to another, so being two, we doe agree mone beart, and in the lone of lefus Christ, who is the had of the world, and they that are with him, are likened unto stones united in a wall. Amen.

TN the Name of God the Father, Almoghtic Creator of Heanen and Earth, of all things withhe and His Lewes to mulible. In the Name of God the Sonne, Christ, who is the Sonne, and Counsell, and Prophet of his low the third Father, In the Name of God the holy Spirit, the Comforter, the living God, equall to the Father and King of Ports. the Son, who spake by the mouth of the Prophets, inspiring the Apostles, that they might gine thankes &all. and glorifie the Trinitie, perfet alwaies in heauen, and in earth, in the fea, and in the deepe. Amen.

60 These Letters and this Messenger are sent from me, the Incense of the Virgine, &c. Now! send my message by Frier Christopher Licanati, being named at his Baptisme, Zaga Zibo, that is to say, The Grace of the Father, who Shall follicite my request unto you. Moreover, vinto the Pope of Rome, I Send Francis Aluarez, to performe obedience in my Name, as it is meete. Renowned King and my Brother, indenous thy selfe to confirme that friendship betweene vs, whereof they Father was the Authour, and send often unto me thy Messengers and Letters, which I greatly desire to see, as comming from

my deare Brother . for it is very consenient, fithens we are both Christians, and fith the wicked Moorre are alwases at concord in their felt. And now I doe protest, that I will not hereafter admit the Ambas. fages of the King of Egypt, nor of other Kings, which have often fent Meffengers unto me, but onele she Ambassadours of your Highresse, whose comming I earneftly desire; for she Moorish Kings e-Reeme not me to be their friend, in regard of our diffention in Religion : but they faine a kind of friend ship, to the end they may more safely and freely exercise Traffique in our Kingdomes, whereby they reape great Commoditie. For they conney mightie summes of Gold, whereof they are most greedy, out of my Dominsons, whereas they are my Enemies, neither doe their Commodities please me any whit. Howben this was to be tolerated, because it hath beene an ancient custome of my Predecessours, I doe not indeed wave warre against them, nor otterly destroy them, but spare them onely in this respect, least they on the centrary (bould violate and cast downe the holy Temple at Ieru'alem, wherein stands the Sepulcine of 10 lefus (brift, which God hath left in the power of the abhommable Moores, and least they should make banocke of all other Christian Churches in Egypt and Syria; and this is the cause why I doe not in nade and conquer them, and it is a great griefe uniome. And I am the more perswaded hereunto, seeing I have no Christian King neere unto me to ayde me, and to comfort my beart. I my selfe (Ob King) can finde no cause of recoycing in the Christian Kings of Europe, when as I beare that they are at difcord and warre among them selves. Be ye all united in one concord; For you ought all to bee conformed together in a certaine league of amitie. And verily, if I had any Christian King bordering upon me, I would not depart for the space of one houre from him : but I know not in the world what to fay or doe, as touching thus matter, when as it seemsth so to be appointed by God. My Lord, send (I pray yen) Mes-Convers often unto me : For in feeing your Letters, I doe ceries behold your countenance, because oreater friendling groweth betweene men farre distant afunder, then betweene those that are neere together, in regard of the mutuall defire which they have. Fer he that hath hidden Treasures, not feeing them with his eyes, be loueth them alwases, and that most vehemently with his heart, as our Lord lesses Christ in his Gospell faith, Where thy Treasure is , there is thy heart; Euen fo nor heart is with thee, seeing thou thy selfe art my Treasure, and thou likewise oughtest to make me thy Treasure, and fincerely to lovne thy heart with mine. Oh Noble Brother, keepe this word : for thou art most wife , and (as I heare) like unto thy Father in wifedome, which when I know, I prefently game thankes unto God. and abandoning forrow, I exceedingly reioyced, and faid; Bleffed bee the wife Sonne of to greats Father, the Sonne of King Emanuel, which fitteth in the Throne of his Kingdomes. My Lord, 30 sections you be not discouraged, because you are strong as your Father was: neither send you any fieble forces against the Macres and Gentiles. For by Gods belog and the indenour of your vertue, you shall easily varquish and destroy them. And say not that your Father left you but meane forces : for they be very great, and God will ener affist you. I have men, Gold and Victuals, like the fands of the Sea, and the Starres of Heaven. Wee two inned together, will destroy all the Sanage and barbarous Moores. Newber doe I request ought else of you then men of skill, which may teach my Souldiers feats of warre. And then (Ob King) art aman of a perfect age. King Salomon at twelve yeares old, undertooke the managing of his Kingdome, and had mightie Forces, and was wifer then his Father. My felfe alfo, when Nahu my Father deceased, was a child but of eleuen yeares old, and being innested into his Throne, I have by the goodnesse of God, attained to greater wealth and strength then he. For in my hand are the 40 Borderers and Nations of my Kingdome : Wherefore bith of vs ought to thanke God for fo great abenefit received. Give care ruto me, my Brother and Lord: for beere in one word I request you, that learned men and Artificers may be fent mee, which can Print Bookes, and make Images, Swords, and all kind of Militarie Weapons: as also cunning Builders, Carpenters, and Physicians, which can both minister Potions, and beale Wounds. I would gladly also have such, as can beate Gold into thinne Plates, and can artificially carne, both Gold and Silver, and also can digge Gold and Silver out of the Mines, and such as have skill in Mining of all other Metals. Moreover, they shall bee welcome unto me, that can make sheets of Lead, and such as can frame Brickes and Tiles of Clay. To be short, all Artificers shall be sermiceable unto me, & especially Gun-founders. Assist me (I beseech you) in these things, as one Brother should assist another, &c.

His Letter to

1120

HAppy and Fortunate Holy Father, who of God art made a Conferuer of Nations, and holdeft the Seat of S. Peter, to thee are given the Keyes of the Kingdome of heaven and what soewer thou shall binde and loofe, shall be bound and loofed in heaven, as Christ bath faid, and Matthew bath so written in his Gospell, I, the King whose Name the Lions honor, and by the Grace of God, Atani Tingil erc. Emperor of great and high Ethiopia, of great Realmes, Inviduelions, and Lands, King of Xoa, of Caffate, of Fatigar, of Angote, of Baru, and of Baaliganze, of Adea, of Vangue, and of Goiame, (where Nilus fpringeth) of Amara, of Bagua Medri, of Amhea, of Vague, of Tigremahon, of Sabaim, (whence was the Queene of Saba) of Barnagaes, and Lord as farre as Nuhia, which is on the Confines of Egypt. All these Prounces are in my power, and many other great and small, which I recken not. Nor 60 have I expressed the said Kingdomes and Provinces by name, induced by pride or any vaine-glorie, but that the great God might be praised therefore, who of his singular bountie, hath given to the Kings my Predecessors, the Empire of so large Kingdomes of Christian Religion, and bath after exalted me with speciall Grace amongit other Kings, that I should continually be at the service of his Religion, and for

this hath made me Lord of Adel, and enemie of the Moores and idolatrous Gentiles. I fend to kille the feet of your Holineffe, as other Christian Kingsmy Brethren are wont to doe, to whom, neither in Power nor in Religion I am inferiour. I in my Kingdomes, am the Pillar of Faith, nor have I neede of na ther water, but place all my confidence and help in God, who hath alway sustained and governed me, from tore my titl, the fact this is common an acquirement of the common acquirement of the common acquirement of the three th the Embley, of movement water to exceed was compress, who geen party were samply, who may be no feel from the time things, some as you play high water five; seefal so be Corfiftian, I ad all of them from the time thin time. Such some flowing in the Faith in the first party of the Christian Faith; in the following the Christian Faith; in the following the Kingdomer, which is enough the Movement of the Christian Faith; in the Movement of the Christian Faith; with a Aller Ewong, from a quantit the Movement, and other Nations, enounce of the Christian Earth, which will not be are the word of God, nor my faithfull exhortations, I girt with my Sword, purfue them. andby little and little, shafe them out of their nest, by the helpe of God which never failed mee, which hath otherwise happined to other (birstians. For if they will extend the Consines of their Kingdomes, they doe is not against Intidels, which they easily they because one of them may helpe and succour ano. ther, being also marueilously furthered by the benediction of your Holinesse, whereof i also am partaker. having found in my Bookes the Letters of Pope Eugenius, which in times past be fent with his bleffing to the King, the Seeds of Iacob, of which bleffing, having received it from hand to hand, I am olad and reiogce. Moreouer, I boldin great veneration the Temple of Ierusalem, whither I often fend due offe-20 rings by our Pilgrims : and much better and richer would I fend, if the wates were not infested with Moores and Infidels, which not onely take away the Presents and Treasures from my Messengers, but binder them also from free passage. And if the way were open, I would come into familiaritie, and commerce with the Church of Rome, as doe other Kings Christian, to whom I am not inferiour; and as they believe, I also confesse one right Faith and Casholike Church, and believe succeeds in the holy Trinitie and in one God; the virginitie of our Ladie, the Virgin Marie, and I hold and observe the Articles of the Faith, as the Apostles have written. At this present, our Lord God, by the hand of the most mighty and (briftian King Emanuel, bath opened the way that we may know each other by Embassic, and (bristrans soyned with Christians to serme God. But his Ambas adours being in our Court, newes came of his death, and that his Soune John (who is my Brother) hath received the Scepter in his Fathers King-20 dome. Whence, as by his Fashers death I was much grieved, so was I marveilously cheered by the happy succession of his Sonne in the Kingdome : insomuch as I bope, that having toyned our Armies and Forces, we shall be able both by Sea and Land to open a way through the Prominces of the wicked Moores, and serves in them with such surie, that we shall chase them out of their Scates and Kingdomes, and Confliction may more commodiously goe to the Temple of Ierusalem, and returns as their pleasure. And Las I carnelly advice to be made parties of the Dissinctone in the Temple of the Apolites, Peter and Paul, fo. I defire to have the holy bleffing of the Vicar of (brift; and without doubt, I bold that your Holinesses the Vicar of Christ; and also that of the Pilgrims, which come from our Regions to Ierusa-Iem, and to Rome, and not without great miracle returne, I heare many things foken of your Holinelle, which can feme incredible pleasure and ioy. Tet should I have much more pleasure, if my Am-40 baffadours could vie a Shorter way, and at all times relate the newes unto mee, as I hope they fall once o Sajanani senan ye a yerer may anna na marini. Seng me before dipe, by the Grace of a Almojthic God, mba keper pon in badh and happungle. Anen. Ligle your boly feste, and humbly intreat your Holinefle to find meyour bioffing. Tour Holinefle fluid receive these by meanes of our Brother Iohn, King of Portugall, of our Ambassador, Francis Alvarez.

CH X P. S. S. 221 The Prete his Letter, to Pope Clement the leventh

Another Letter of his was delivered by the same Aluarez, to the same Pope: desiring him to Dam. & Gorsde fend him Artificers in Glaffe, and Muficall Instruments, &c. Alfo to accord the Christian Kings, Ethiop, maribi that they might take Armes against the Mahumetans, which assist one another, &c. But we have beene already tedious, and therefore omit it : And the Letter of his mother Helena, fent 1509. by Matthew aforesaid, which in Goes aforesaid is to be seene.

Aluarez was receiued by the Pope, Clement the seuenth, at Bolonia, Ianuary 29. 1533. in 50 the prefence of Charles the fifth Emperour, and Martin the Nephew, Counfellour and Ambaffadour of King Iohn of Portugall, and entertained as Ambaffadour of the faid King Danid, in his Name, presenting obedience to the Pope, as more at large in Ramusio appeareth.

Aaaaaa 2

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

A Rutter of Don IOHN of Castro, of the Voyage which the Portugale made from India to Zoez. Dedicated to the most Illustrious Prince, the Infant Don Luxs, and bere abbreuiated: shewing the state of Socatora, and the parts on both fides the red Sea, as they were aboue eightie yeeres fince . with the Hurbours, Ilands, Depths, Shelnes, and other things pertayning to the Historie of the Sea, Land, and People. The original of which is reported to baue beene bought by Sir WALTER RALEIGH, at fixie pounds, and by him caused to be done into English. out of the Portugall.

The sayling from Goa to Socatora, and into the red Sea, as farre as Mazua.

dez to Ethiopia, how that State uaded by the Mostes, and

owne report, granflated, it

He one and thirtieth of December, 1540. * at Sunne rifing, we let faile from the Barre of Gos, the way of the Straights, the wind was off the Land to the East ward. We coasted along the Coatt, bearing but little faile: about ten of the clocke, we came to an anchor at a River, which is called Chapters. The thirteenth of Ianuarie, 1541, in the morning we saw great quantitie of Oze, that growes vpon the Rockes of the Sea, and within a little while wee

Taw a Snake; the Sunne being vp, wee faw Land of the Hand of Socators, in fearch of the which we went, and the Land bare with vs flat South.

Now, after we were at anchor in this part, I asked of the most principall Pilots of the Fleet. how farre they made themselues off the Land the day that they faw it, and I found, the chiefe with smill dif Pilot was ninetie leagues short, when wee faw it; the Pilot of the Galleon Bufora, one huncontents con- dred and odde; and others, eightie : those which made themselves the least, were feuentie tayning also a leagues fhort. In such fort, that my Pilot, which made it fixtie five, was the neerest to the more falling. leagues thort. In such fort, that my Pilot, which made it fixtle five, was the neerest to the ligence of the Land. And I found among them all, a great wondring and a murmuring, how the errour could ligence of the ngence or the peloces would make their reason good, red Sea , then be so great; and either because it was so, or because the Peloces would make their reason good, any other Rut- they all cried out, affirming, that this deceit proceeded, of the way being shorter then the Cards make it. Likewise, the Marish Pilots made good their complaint, affirming, that from Gos to Secutors, there were no more then three hundred leagues.

The Iland of Secures hath in length, twentie leagues, and nine in breadth; it stands in to it, Bermudez twelue degrees and two third parts, on the North fide; the front of the Hand that is opposite to the Septentrionall part, runneth East and Weit, and fornewhat to the North-west and Southeast: the Coast of the Sea is all very cleere without any Rocke, or Shoald, or any other imfeemeth, by the Court of the Seals and the Natigators: the ground in the Road is fand, and in fome plate fame hand pediment that may hinder the Natigators: the ground in the Road is fand, and in fome plate fame hand the time amount of the most cess flories, but in fuch qualitie, that it will not cut the Cables. On this fide the treuerfe winds in or the North wind is fo forcible, and bloweth with fuch a rage, that it raifeth great heapes of English phraic, fand ouer the Hills, and doth drive them beyond their high and craggie tops. In all the circuit which yet of the Iland, there is not any other place or harbour, where any ship may fafely winter. The Coaft of the Sea is very high in enery place, and begirt with very great and high Mountaines, with many Pikes, Piramides, and divers other very faire shewes. In these Coasts of this Iland the tides are contrarie to them of India: for, when the Moone rifeth, and appeareth in the Horizon, it is high floud, which the Mariners call, full Sea; and the Moone beginning to afcend in here and there our Hemilphere, the tide begins to ebbe, till it commeth to the Meridian of this Iland; and being amending the in it, it is dead low water; but the Moone defeending from the Meridian, it begins to flow, by Bagill, which the fame order and degrees that it was fet in the great circle of our Horizon, and being tet, it yer in part was is here full Sea. I made this observation many dayes by the Sea shoare, and found alwaies the fame operation. This lland of Socatora, (if I be not deceived) was called in old time, Dioscorimany mirgi- die. There was in it a Citie, called also Dioscorides, as it appeareth in Prolomie, the fixth Table of nall notes ad- Afia: but, by the manner that he had in cashing it, and the place where he seated it, it appeares 60

Walter Rakigo himselfe, For prolixitie we have omitted the way hitherto. A Snake, Socatora Iland, From Goa to Socatorais 300. leagues, as the Morres account. The Illand of Secators is in length se leagues and nine in breadth. The tides here contrarie to them of India, being alwaies full Sea, when the Moone appeareth here in the Horizon. Dioferidis Infula, in which in times paft was an ancient Citie, called Dioferides. that CHAP, 6.S.I. Socatorians, converted by Saint Thomas the Apostle

that he had entil information of the Trauellers. The Sociatorians doe keepe the Law of the Gofpell; and they were enlightned, and brought to the Faith by the bleffed Apoffle Saint Thomas, converted to as they themselves beare record. In all the circuit of the lland are many Churches, in which the Fauthof there is no Oracle, but the Crosse whereon our Sauiour suffered. They pray in the Chaldean Christ by Saint Tongue, as I was enformed, they want instruction, but they are very delirous of it, and demand Thomas the Awith oreat efficacie the doctrine and customes of the Romish Church, and all of them doe con- pofile. feffe this alone to be good, and is to be kept; they call themselues by our names, as lobn, Peter, witten the Andrew, &c. and the women generally Maries. To confider the manner how this People li- Marten of Artueth, certainly is worth the noting; for, among them they have no King, Governour, Prelate, big ruehere as TO or person to obey, or who may gouerne them; but they line in a manner like the wild beafts, in many Engwithout any order of Iustice, or politique life. In all the lland there is no Citie or great Town, the Journals of burnets of the People dwellerh in Caues, and fome have little Cottages that the but the greatest part of the People dwelleth in Caues, and some haue little Cottages thatche, may read. See feparated the one from the other, living a life more then favage and pastorall. Their food is Finch and o-Fleth and wild Dates, they drinke Milke, and tafte the water very feldome. All of them are therein the 2. very denoted to the Croffe, and for a wonder shall you find one person that doth not weare it a- and 4. Booker. bout his necke; this People is of the best disposition in all these parts, they have their bodies tall and straight, their faces well proportioned, their colour is swarthie, the women are somewhat whiter, and honeftly faire. In all the Countrey there is no manner of weapons, offenfine and defensive, except certaine Swords of dead Iron, very short; the men goe naked, and they 20 couer onely their fecret parts with certaine Cloth, which they call Cambolis, of the which they Cloth called make great quantitie in the Iland. The Countrey is naturally poore, and no other merchandile Camboles. are found then "Verdigreafe, and Sanguis Draconis. But the Verdigreafe is in great abundance, " I thinke he and effected above all. All this Iland is mountainous, and breedeth all fort of Cattell that is in meanth alor our parts, of the which there is great abundance. The Country neither produceth Wheat nor Rice nor any maintenance of this kind. I beleeue, this is not the fault of the ground, but want of Industrie and Arte in the Inhabitants; for the Iland within the land is very fresh, and hath mis merchanmany Valleys and Plaines, very convenient for to receive all benefit that they will bestow on it. dises in this This People nath no manner of Nauigation , neither industrie for to catch the Fish , which by Iland. the Coaits of this Iland is infinite; they have very few Fruit-trees, among the which the Palm-

with the Herbe Basil, and other smelling Herbs. The feuen and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1541, in the morning, we were very little beyond the Mountainer. Citie of Aden, in such fort, that it was to the North-west of vs, the distance might be about The like Alus fixe leagues , the wind was at East, and faire, wee failed West South-west, and wee knew that reg relateth of the Land that wee faw yesterday in the afternoone, and seemed to vs an Iland, was the Moun- Ethiopia. taine of Aden: this Mountaine is very high and faire, on every fide craggie and rough; vpon it The Mounthere arise some very high pikes and sharpe, in all shewes it is very like, and of the making of 40 the Hill of Sintra, which more then any other thing doth make it noble and famous. This Hill descendeth to the Sea, and with great violence, thrusteth within her waves, a very great and long point, and prefently withdrawing it selfe a great space inward to the land, there remaine. made two nookes, as faire as compassed, wherein that which lieth on the East fide, standa fituated the strong Citie of Aden. This Hill in times past, was called Cabubarra,, and was made fa- The simulion ted the ftrong Litte of Aden. Ins run in times part, was knowne for Madeea. This Citie of Aden, of Aden, mous by the Nanigators, and the Citie of Aden was knowne for Madeea. This Citie of Aden, of Aden, Cabbarra. within this three yeeres, is come to the power of the Turker, by Treason which Solman Bassa, Madache Citie, Gouernour of Caire, did to the King of it, which patt in this manner. The Great Tarke making Adenbrought

30 ttees are esteemed, and nourished, as the principall part of their food to maintaine life: the Coun-

trey yeeldeth all manner of Garden-herbs, and medicinable Herbs, the Mountaines are covered

a great Armie, at the request of the King of Cambaya, and of all the Inhabitants of the Straights in subsection of Mecca, for India. Hee fent the Gouernour of Caire, called Solimes Baffa Eunuch, with a great of the Tarte by 50 Armie of Ships and Galleys for India. This Captaine being come to the Port of Aden, the King Ticason Editor and Citizens, fearing the little trueth of the Turker, denied them the entring into the Citie, but Dam, a Goes they prouded them with all necessaries of yectuals and promisons: Soliman, and also the Souldi- Bell in a speciers, not shewing any griefe at this hospitalitie, the King affored himselfe, and with many mesta- all Treatile ges and vilitations of great friendship, which past betweene them both, they came to conclude, called Diessis to meete in the Almirall Galley, that they might intreat together about the Conquelt, which newly he went to make in India. The day of the agreement, the King comming to confult with Soliman Baffa, was taken prisoner, and the Trikes, which for this act were prepared, assulted the gates of the Citie, and being entred, eafily possessed themselves thereof; and the day sollowing, the King was hanged before the gates. The Citie being taking by this Treason, Soli-

60 man leaving a great Garriton within it, made his journey in all hafte toward Dio. On the fide of Africa, beginning at the Cape of Guardafui, in other times, called Aromata: Accounts Proand on the other fide of Afia, from the Promontorie Stagros, or Cape of Fartaque, which is the montorie, fame; all the Sea that is contayned visto the ancient. Citie of the Heroer, which now is called Sozia Promonorie, or Soez, is called the Arabick Gulfe, knowne vulgarly for the Red Sea. The space of Sea that ly- Cape Fartegut eth betweene these two Promontories, and divideth in this place Asia from Africa, may be the Gulfe.

Arabiase figne fumme of riftie eight leagues. And from hence, viz. from these Promontories , the Coast of a uery fide turning to the fetting of the Sunne, doe runne almost in the same distance, till they come to two Cities, that is, Aden in Arabia, and Zeila in Ethiopia, or Abexi; and from thence Ato. 2016, in the Wife the Coasts begin to streighten very much, and every time more running with delart Coasts and little winding, till they meete in the place of the Mouth, with two Piomontories, that is, Poffi-Philidum Pro- dium on the Arabian fide; and another which lyeth on the contrarie fide, that is, of Ethiopia or Abevi, whose name, as well Ancient as Moderne, is not come to my notice; where as farreas these Promontories is the narrowest and streightest passage of the Streight. This streightnesses, of the neighbouring people, and of those which inhabit the Coasts of the Indian Ocean, is called Albabo, which in the Arabian tongue, do fignifie Gates or Mouthes; and in this place and mouth. To the Land doth neighbor to much and the shewes which they make of willingnes to joyne themfelues, are fo knowne, that it feemeth without any doubt, the Sea, much against their wills and perforce, to enterpose it selfe in separating these two parts of the World. For the space which

Gulfes, Lakes, Channels, Mouthes, Ports, Harbours, and Points. LIB. VII

The Streight.

A dba.

broad.

in this place divideth the Land of the Arabians, from the Coast of the Aberi, is about fixe leagues diffance. In this foace there lye fo many Hands, little Hets, and Rocks, that they caufe a double. confidering this ftreightnesse without, that fome time it was stopped, and fo by these streight Sluces and Channels, which are made betweene the one Iland and the other, there entreth fuch a quantitie of Sea, and maketh within fo many and fo great Nookes, fo many Bayes. fo many names of great Gulfes, fo many divertities of Seas, fo many Ports, fo many Ilands, that it feemeth not that we faile in a Sea betweene two Lands, but in the deepest and most tempestuous 20 Lake of the great Ocean. Now returning to the Mouthes of the Streight, which is the intent of our Description, Wee are to note, that in this place the Land of Arabia Aretcheth into the Sea. with a very great and long point, and to for this cause, as because it remayneth out of the Mouth. and a great Nooke from this Point, it feemeth comming from the Sea, that the Land of this Point is fome Iland, very diftant from the firme Land. This Point is the Promontorie, which Ptolomie calleth Possidium.

Against this Point or Promontorie Possidison, little more then a stones cast standeth a little L. let, called the Ilet of the Robones. For Roboan, in the Arabian tongue, is as much as Pilot . the which dwelling here did bring in the Ships that came from the Sea, and from thence directed them to the places of their Countrie that they went vnto. This Iland is round and very flat, the circuit may comprehend the fixt part of a league, from it to the firme Land yee may paffe, the Water being low, but the Tyde beginning once to flow from one quarter flood, it cannot be waded. To the Sea off this little Iland, opposite to the Coast, about one league, standeth an Iland. which hath in length about a league and a halfe, the which on that fide that fronteth the Abexi. See Sir Howie hath a very great Hauen and ture from all Windes, where a great Nauie may well bee harboured of Galleyes, but the other front of the Hand which is opposite, and fronteth the Land of the A. rabian, not onely wanteth a Harbour and Receptacle, but also wanteth a landing place. This Channell is failed well in the middeft North-west and by West, and South-east and by East: through all the Channell is eleuen fathome deepe, we may paffe either neere the Hand, or neere the firme Land, or through the middest it is very cleane in every place without any Flats or 40 Shoulds, or any other inconvenience that may diffurbe ve; the ground is a foft flone, which they call Corall ftone, and icarcely shall yee finde a fandie plot, though you seeke it with great dilithe Channell, gence. Being farre within the Channell, and going to feeke the Roade and Hauen, which may Eaftern winds harbour vs from the Eafterne windes, which in this place are very ftrong, the depth diminishraine in this eth somewhat, but it is no lesse then nine fathome. Besides this Channell of the Arabian, there be many other whereby you may goe into the Streight fafely , and being many, the mention's made of one onely of them, and they called it; the Channell of the Abexin; because from the Hand of the Gates, vnto the Promontorie opposite to Poffulium, which is in the Coasts of Abexin, there may be of distance about fine leagues, in this space there lye fixe Hands very great and high, and feeing them from without the Mouth of the Streight, they put the Sailers in great feare 50 and doubt, thewing that they forbid the passage that way but the truth is, that betweene them, there goe very large Channels and of great depth, whereby without any danger wee may make our way, and also if we will, leaving them all on the right hand, wee may palle betweene them and the Mayne of Aberia

Cap Downter,

other English

Iournalls, of

their voyages

to Moha

Eleuen fa-

The nine and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1 (41. at noone, I tooke the Sunne, and being in his greatell heighth, it rose ouer the Horizon two and fixtie degrees and three quarters, the declination of this day was fifteene degrees, whence it remay noth that the Mouth of the Streight and Pro-The Month of montorie Poffidium, standeth in twelte degrees and one quarter towards the North. The Pilot the Streight of tooke the same heighth, the which being taken vponthe Land, it cannot choose but be of very

rhe Red Sea. twelue degree's one quatrer.

That night, two houres after mid-night, wee fet faile from the Mouth of the Streight. The thirtieth of Ianuarie, 1541, by day, we law the Land of both the Coasts, and wee were neerer the Land of Aberi, then to the Arabian; the Wind blew hard at East South-east, till noone; we failed to the North-west and by West, making the way by a Channell that goeth betweene the first Ilands, and the Coast of the Abexi, the which vntill this day was vnknowne and strange to the Portugals; the distance were went from the Land by this Channell, might bee about foure leagues; an houre after Sunne rife, we faw along the Coast a ranke of Hands, the greatest part of them were low, and as the ranke of Hands, to the Coast stretched North-west, South-raft; the ranke of the Ilands might comprehend about fixtie leagues iourney. Now, failing by this Many little Channell with a prosperous winde, at whatsoever part we cast our eyes, we saw many little I- slands.

lands, as well on the one fide as on the other. By this Channell, which is called of the Aberi, we must not faile by night, and without the Annotations. winde in the Poope, for if the winde change, we cannot come too and againe, nor come to an an- how we are to to chor in any place, till we are so farre ferward as the first of the first Hands, wee shall see to the saleby this Sea-ward nine little Hands, and from thence forward the Sea remay neth free and open, and onely to the Land of vs there be a great quantitie of them 4 and some doe separate themselves from the Coast and the Mayne, about two leagues; but the greatest part of these Hands doe lye along the Coast; the length of this Channell, which inclotest it felte in the three first Ilands, and the Land of Abexs, may be about eight leagues : to make a fafe voyage, it behoueth to goe neerer to the firme Land, then to the Ilands; but about all things, my opinion is, that none doe take

The one and thirtieth by day, we came to a shoald, where were sixe fathom water, and to the Sea of stagainst certaine Ilands, which are called the touen Sisters, there is a Rocke of stone very 20 dangerous, as the Moorifb Pilots told me : fo that the good Naugation in this part is to goe ve- Moorifb Piry neere the firme Land, and in no case goe to the Sea of this shoald. At night wee came to an loss, ancher within a Hauen, which is called Sarbo, in mine fathome and a halfe water, all this day filters. very close to the Coast we saw great quantitie of little Ilands.

it in hand without a Pilot of the Countrey.

The first of Februarie, I went on Land in the Hand, and Port of Sarba, carrying the Pilot with me and the Mafter, that we all might take the Sunne : and in his greatest heighth it was rifen ouer the Horizon one and fixtie degrees fearfe: the declination of this day, was thirteene degrees and fixe and fiftie minutes; whence it remayneth manifest, this lland and the Port of Sarbo, to be in fifteene degrees and leven minutes, towards the North fide.

About soure and twentie leagues hore of Macha, and diftant from the Coaft of the Abexi The descripti 20 foure leagues, in fifteene degrees of heighth, there is a great Archipellago of Ilands, fome of on of the Iland which lye to low, that they rife very helle about the fuperficies of the Sea, and others doe rife and Port of to high, that they feeme to touch the Cloudes, and betweene the one and the other there are fo many Bayes, Ports, Harbours, as no winde can annoy we : all of their want water i except one very high, which the Porsugals call , The Hand of the Whale, because it refemblesh one very much, and there is water, and plentie of Cattell, and here is a great Hauen where Ships may A good Harwinter. Of all thefe, that which is most to the Sed is one that in Arabique is valled Sorbo, bour for thing, where at this present we lye at another. This lland of Sarbo, is of length about a league, and almost halfe a league broade; the Land of it is very low, it hath many Trees but very low and barren, all the Plaine is that of graffe; an enery place we finile the footing of Men and Cattell, 40 but there was onely one Camell feeler for the which occasion, whey called it, The Hand of the Camell; in all the circuit of the lland, we found no water, though we fought it very diligently, except one Well digged in a stone, which according to the appearance of it, was to receive the raine waters. Betweene thefe Hands doe enter many annes of the Sea, Reaches and Channels.

The fourth of Februarie, 1 41. at Summerile, we fet fails from the Port of Sorbo, Februarie the federich, we failed along many Hands, which are diffrant from the firme Land about three or foure leagues; the greatest part of them are very low and flat with the Sea. We went to the Sea of them all about a league, and about even-fong time; we faw to Sea of vsa ranke of Illands very long, which feemed to take fome has leagues diffeace, there was from vs to them about Some foure leagues . all of them lay North well and South east, as farre as I could differen. The Coast which all this day we saw, stretched North-well and by West, and South-east and by East. 30 So that this Channell, wherein this day we failed, hath in breadth about fue leagues, reckoning the space that lyeth betweene the one land and the other : the greatest part of this day I commanded to cast the Lead, and I found alwayes fue and twentie fathome water, and the ground Ozie.

The eight of Februarie, \$541. two houres after the Sunne role , wee fet faile. Moft of this time we failed to the North west, at Sunne fet we were almost entrechinto the Channell , that goeth betweene the Point of Dallagud, which looketh to the firme Land, and an fland, which The Point of is-callen Xamea, but Hauring refrectetischight began to come on, and that many Galleons re- Dallaque. mayned tarre off, and it would bee difficult to hit the Channell; and also considering, how at Xame: Infale. 60 this time the winde was alreadie scarle, we tooke in our failes, and with our fore-failes we went rummore, failing to the South-east; and two houres within night we came to an anchor in fortie fachome water, the ground Olie. All this day wee faw along the Coast many Ilands, fo flat, that they and the Sea feemed to have one superficies. The Coast that shewed it selfe to vs, streetched North-weit and South-east, to a low Point, which is as farre forward as the Hand of Dal-

1125

Li:tleHands

lagua. Doubling this Point, the Land maketh a great Nooke, that entreth ten or twelve leagues into it.

The descriptiland of Daks-This Iland is fine and twentic lengues long, and breadth. The Metropo

The lland of Dallagua is a very low Land, and almost slat with the Sea, without rising in it. Mountayne, Pike, or any other heighth; it hath in length, according to the common opinion, fine and twentie leagues, and twelve in breadth; the fide of this Iland, which is opposite to the South, stretcheth East South-east, and West North-west, that is, all the Coast which I could comprehend with the fight, and along the Coast lye great quantitie of little Hands, all very low, and beare the fame course of the Coast. I onely coasted this side of the Hand seven leagues. and two distant from the Land, and casting many times the Lead, neuer found ground. The Me. tropolitan Citie, is fituated almost in the Point of the Iland, which lyeth on the West fide a In frontier to Abexi, it is called Dallaca, whence the Iland tooke the name, which is to fay in the litan Ciric cal- Arabique tongue, ten leques, and this, because in times past, the Custome-house thereof, yeelded fo much every yeere to the King. Every Arabian leque is worth ten thouland Scrapbins , and e. very Seraphin Arabique two Tangas larmas; in fort that ten Arabian leques, are worth in our money fortie thousand Crazados. The Point of this Hand on the West fide, and opposite to the Above, is diffant from the firme Land about fixe or feuen Leagues, and in this space of Sea, there lye fine Ilands, very flat; the first is distant from this Point one league, it is called Xamos. it hath in compasse two leagues, in it there be some Springs and Wells, and betweene this Iland of Kamoa, and the Westerne Point of Dallagna, is the principall Channell and most current for to goe to Magna. In this Channell there are seuentie fathome water, the Land of this Iland is red: 20 it produceth few Trees, and great abundance of Herbs. The King of it is a Moore, and all the People, he is relident the most part of the yeere in Mague, because of the traffique he hath with the Abexins. This Hand at this present yeeldeth little; for after the riling of Suaquen, Marus,

Wells of wa-Seuentie fathome water. The King of Dallaqua, 2 Moore-The description of the Hand and Portet Эмесиа.

Xamea Infula.

in which are

Springs or

The Citie of Prolomaida.

fomerimes built here.

Aden, and Indaa, it loft the traff que, and with the traff que the reputation. The twelfth, the Nauie of Galleons came into the Port of Magna. Magna is a small Iland, very flat, and in it in old time was built the Citie Ptolomaida, of the wilde beafts. This Iland hath in length about the fift part of a league, and of breadth a Caliuer shot, it lyeth in a great and crooked Nooke, very neere the Point of the Nookethat is on the North-west side. The space of Sea that divideth this Hand from the firme Land, is about a Faucon flot, and in some parts not fo much; in this diffance, to wit, betweene the Iland and the firme Land is the Hauen, in the so which the Sea is not troubled with any weather, and the Current is very little, and all winder come ouer the Land, the depth is eight or nine tarhame water, the ground is Ozie. The entrance of this Port lyeth on the North-east fide, by the middelt of the Channell betweene the Land and the Hand, because that from the Point which turneth to the East North-east, there goeth out a Shoald toward the Land, and the Point of the Nooke caffeth another against the Point of the Iland, for the which they force the Ships to beware of the extremes of the Mouth of the Channell, and to feeke the middeft of it. The Channell is very fireight, it runneth North-eaft and South-west : very neere to this Hand of Macua, toward the South and South-west . Iye other two Ilands, the neerest to the firme Land is somewhat the bigger of them, and that which is more to the Sea, and Iveth toward the South-well, is the leffer, and very round. These three I- a lands stand in a triangle forme, they are all very flat and barren, there is no fpringing water in any of them, onely in Magne are many Cifternes, whereof the Inhabitants doe drinke and line. land are many Betweene these Hands are scattered many Shoalds, but through the middest of them goeth a Charmell where Gallies and rowing Veffels may paffe at a full Sea. This Iland of Macua was a little while fince of the Signiorie of Prefe labor, with all the Coaft, contayned from the Cape of Guardafus to the Citie of Snagnen: but within thefe few yeeres, the King of Dallagua hath vfurped it, and is refident in it the most part of the years, because of the traffique he hath with the Abexines, of whom he bath great quantitie of Gold and Juorie. The ayre is vnhealthfull in the moneths of May and lune, and very vntemperate through great and intollerable calmes, in such fort that as well the King as the Inhabitants, doe avoid it, as d leave it emptie thefe two mo- 50 neths, and goe to Dallagua. The firme Land of the Nooke, wherein standeth this Hand of Magua, till yee come to a place of many Wells of water, called Arquito, by the Sea tide, is very high and mountaynous, but from thence forward, the Sea coast is more open and cleere, and betweene the Hills and the Sea are great Fields and Plaines. There may bee from Arquito to Magua 2 league. Arquito standeth to the South from the Hand : through all these Mountaines and Fields, are great number of wilde beafts of divers kinds, to wit, Elephants, Tygres, Woolues, wilde Boares, Stagges, Elkes, and many other formes of Beatle, not knowne vnto vs; whence, with much reason, it is called Prolomaida of the wilde Beasts. And that Macus and Prolomaida, be one and the felfe same thing, the elevation of the Pole doth testifie in this behalfe.

- Name ta

ģ. 11. 1

Relations of Ethiopia fub Ægypto, and PRESTER FORN: of Niles, and she Abaffine Cuftomes and Neighbours. The canfe and meanes of the decay of that great Empire, never fince recovered. of Marate and Suaquen.

He Preits token, which by anomer name, is calten August on the 20021, it bors of all the The Coffne-Cland of £hibigh and £pript o which is one of the greateff Prounces we know in graphs of & the World. This £afterne Empire beginner at the Capb of Gwardaffi, called in old rissip, fab the the Democratical August and from the fore running along the Red Sea with £1908. the World. This Easterne Empire organization of the first party of the Red Sea with Egypa.

Defert coath, & nor very crooked, it reachest wato the bounds of the rich City of Sasapares on the The Nepton of the Red Sea with Egypa. Northfide it bordereth with the warlike people of the Nubis or Nubians, which lyeth between King of the the Land of the Abexis, and the superjour part of Egypt, called, Thebayda, and from hence running great spaces within the Land, toward that part where the Kingdome and Land of Mani- Premontorie ning great paces within the Lains, toward that part which we kington, and the Lains of Formal Congolych, after it hath taken too it life from part of Laby meren, all the other on the West. Where this fade remayneth for his bounds, and prefently turning 'gagine behind the Springs and Lakes of ferme Empire Miller than developed the congoling and the springs are springs and the springs and the springs are springs are springs and the springs are springs and the springs are springs and the springs are springs are springs and the springs are springs are springs are springs. 20 fide in the Barbarian Gulfe, which at this day is knowne of the Portugals, which doe nauigate the fame on the Coast of Melinde and Magadaxo.

Nilus at this day is knowne by his ancient name; for of the Abexys, Egyptians, Arabians, and Ethiopia pro-Indians, it is called Nil, a thing certainly worth the knowing; the Springs and Lakes whence duerth many this River proceedeth, are in the Confines that separate the Land of the Abexins, or Athiopi- Mines of go ans from the Safres, which inhabit the mayne of the Land, that goeth from Melinde toward Lakes of Nilse. Mosambique, as I vaderitood, by some great Lords, and other persons of Abex 4. Which thing is held of them all for manifest, and well knowne, and hence appeareth, the little knowledge that the Ancients had of his originall. Now, enquiring of thele persons, if it were true, that this River in many places did finke under the Earth, and came out againe many daies iournies thence, 30 I knew there was no such thing : But that through all the Land where it ranne, it shewed it felfe vpon the Superficies thereof, carrying a great depth and breath, without hiding it felfe or flying from the fight of men, as yee reade in Pline, Lib. 5. of the Natural Historie: About the increasings or over-flowings of the River, I asked very often the causes, this beeing a thing so disputed of all the ancient Philosophers, and I came perfectly to know of them the Solution of this doubt, hitherto neuer determined; and so almost iestingly, with certaine simple Questions, And foit dots

I came to know that which io great and proud wits of Philosophers knew not. These principall Lords of Abexy, told me, that in their Country the Winter beganne in the raines falling end of May, and lasted Iune, Iuly, and part of August, but that in August, the Ayre is more plea-fant, the weather milde and tracable, but that in the monethes of Iune and Iuly, for a great moneths. 40 Wonder appeared, the Sunnerso many, and so continuall were the raines which continually fell from Heauen, with the which the fields and low grounds were fo couered and ouer-flowne of the waters, that in these two monethes, they cannot goe nor passe from one place to another. and that this multitude of waters had no other iffue or place where to gather themselves, but only to the Channell of the River Nilus : because toward the Red Sea, there ranne along the Sea very great Mountaines, it was of necessitie, that the River should increase and go out of his owne course, not being able to containe so great abundance and weight of waters in it selfe, and the Riner running with fuch vehement and terrible rage, it is very apparant, that as well in the Egyptian, as in other Lands whereby it passeth, it would goe out of his naturall course, and cause, whereby it passeth great ouer-flowings : and the Territories of Egypt being most plaine , one-50 ceffitie, the ouer-flowings in it would be more copious, and the River would have a larger scope to spread it selse with his waters in every place, the which could not so happen in the high and Mountainous Lands.

Now then, fince it was manifest, that all the inundations of Nilus in Egypt, begin to increase when the Sunne was in the Solffnium Estinal, which is in the moneth of June, the Sunne entring in the beginning of Cancer, but passing by the Signe of Leo, which is in July, the River inerealed in greater abundance, and when it was in the Signe of Virgo, which is in August, where definered the in this moneth the raines begin to asswage in the Aberij, and Winter takes his leaue, the River fame reason of began to decrease by the degrees it had increased, till it come altogether into his Channell, the this oueroccasion remay ned manifest of the increasing of this River, to be the great and continuall raines, flowing. 6> which in the moneths of Iune and Iuly, did fall in the Land of Abexy, or Athiopia, which is all one; Seeing that when these raines ceased in August, the River at that same time did beginne to withdraw himselfe to his accustomed bounds. I was my felfe in Magna, the moneth of lune, and part of July, where I faw great flormes, raines, thundering, and within the Mayne contimaily, we law great blacknesse and cloudinesse, and tempests, and the Abexins faid, that we saw

He Preste lobe, which by another name, is called King of the Abeni, is Lord of all the The Colman

Cape of Botta Elberanza.

1128

but little to that which went within the Land. Likewife, wee haue experience, that the moneths of June and July, is the Winter of Cape Bona Esperanza, and all this Coast wherethe raines are very continuall. In this manner, having refolued my doubt, of the flowings of Nilse. Lasked them if the River made any Hands; they answered mee, that it made many, but one of them was very great, where was built a most rich and great Citie, which by due confideration Merot infulain ought to be the Hand of Meroe, and they told mee, that aswell in this Hand, as through all the Rujer there were great numbers of certaine herce and petiterous beafts, which, without doubt. which is a required were great numbers of certaining deficions to know if it were true, that in a certaine place the Ciric. River fell from fuch a height, that with the great noise of the fall, those that inhabited in the bordering Townes were borne deafe : I found no Hiltorie of this, onely they told mee, that ing to certaine place, which they named, the River did fall of a great Rocke, downe with a great noise and rumour, but that there was no other thing.

As touching the customes and manners of the Abexines, the Lecture that of them might bee made, it would diffurbe the Hifforie of the Rutter, for which caule, I will touch in briefe somethings most worthy to bee knowne; especially, of theruine and lose of this Empire, in our vn-Prefle Ichn, by name Atim Tingill, called after David, raigning in the yeare 1 420 in the

Dauidstyranny, of which some Land of Athiopia, he becameso cruell to his Subjects, and did tyrannize so much over the people, Exaples of the that he fel into an universall hatred of the Abexines; in this time Gradamet, King of Zeila, finding that he tel into an universal nation of the freshiter lobn, to lee what he could find in the minds the time fit, began to attempt warre with Preshiter lobn, to lee what he could find in the minds 20 of the Abexines, & this, not that he was able to take fuch an Enterprize in hand, but either he encouraged himself in the great emmitie the Abexines had with their King, either this warre was fegremaben, and cretly moued by some Lords of the Kingdom, Now, beginning to enter through the Land of the foure kurnagaffoes, in fixe Presbyter, and to take fome Townes, he divided largely the spoiles among his Warriours, among Religion alfo, Pope, which might more infligate his tubicts a gainst him. the minds of his Subicets, and gathering his Armies, and going against the King of Zeila, hee 40 Gratumet our: gaue him battaile, in which the Presbyter Iohn was our crome, because that the Abexines could not abide the Harquebusses, and so fled from them, as from a cruell pestilence. The Presbyter with-drawne after this conflict to the Mountaines with some of his, within a few dayes, hee

Iobn, by means

yeares, &c., you the which he had three hundred Harquebusses, Turkes, which was the greatest strength of his may reade be-fore in Alumer. Armie, and franchized all the Inhabitants of the Townes, where through he passed, and exemn-This humour, ted them of the Taxes and Impositions imposed by Presbyter John, with which liberalities hee it feemeth, in- got the minds of the Abexines, and not onely of the vulgar fort, but also of the most principal his yeares, and Lords of the Kingdome, The Presbyter John, feeing the damage received of the King of Zeila, fent against him his Captaines, which beginning some Skirmilhes, as soone as the Turkes that their Calecuers amone the Abexmes, and did kill fome of them, the feare they tooke of these shots was so great, that prefently they fer themselves in flight. The King of Zeila proud of this victorie, entred withas appeareth by Awarez and in the Land, confident Alreadie in the fauour of Fortune, accompanied with great companies of by Munre, and

Abexines, which followed his partie, and foraging the Land of Athiopia, by that part which

Egermuler, his

Abexines, which followed his partie, and foraging the Land of Athiopia, by that part which

Legates to the flandeth vpoor Magadoxa, and Melinde, to the end that by this way hee might in shorter time might come to a Mountaine, where was the great Treasure of all the Presbyters past, the Presbyter feeing that enery day his Abacines paffed to the Campe of the Moores, determined to come to a battaile, before that fo great Harpyes did make an end of denouring the Land altogether, and

of Harquebul- left this life, in the yeare of our Lord 1 : 39. The King of Zeila obtayning so great a victorie, travelled by great journeyes toward the Davids death. Mountaine, where the Treasure was of the Kings of Abexy, and comming to the foot, affaulting the paces with great furie, not withstanding, they were vnaccessible, and were defended from the top, in the end they entred them, and gained the Mountaine, where was taken the greatest Treasire, that vnto this day we know together in the compasse of the whole Earth Now, vpon the occase of Presbyter Iobin, the Abexines, which continued in the faith and love of their 50 Countrey, elected his eldest Sonne for Presbyter, and King of Abexy, being a yong man of little age, which finding the Realme vsurped by Infidels, and almost irrecoverable (and because there might remaine nothing wherein Fortune might not be contrarie to him, and fauourable to the Moores) it happed that a Brother of his, dealt with fome great men how to get the Kingdome, Since which which was the vtter overthrow of the . Abexines. The matters of Ethiopia, beeing in thele termes, and the infortunate youth contending with his Domesticall and Natiue Countriemen, the King of Zeila came vpon him , but the new Presbyter not being able to refift, with-drew

himselfe to the Mountaine of the lewes. We are to note, that in the inward part of Libiopia, there arifeth a great and most high Hill, which hath but one onely afcending and very difficult, but on the highest top of it lyeth a very 60 plane Countrey, where there are great abundance of Springs, Fruits, Cattell, and Tillages, the Inhabitants of this Mountaine doe observe the Law of Moses, not finding in all the Land of Abexis: any lewes: the Historie and Antiquitie how they have arrived here, and the cause of nener deficending downe, and converting familiarly with the Abexines, is not come to my notice,

though I laboured it much. The new Presbyter receiving of these Iewer friendly entertainment. andreknowledged for their Lord, they defended him from the Moores, and King of Zeila. which despayring of the victorie, and entring the Mountaine, retyred backward. About this time we arrived at Macha with all the Armie : which when it was knowne, it put the Moores in a great feare, and lifted up the decayed hearts of the Abexines, in fort that the Presbyter emboldnedhimselfe to descend from the Mountaine, and seated himselfe with his people in certaine Mountaines towards the Sea and Towne of Magna, where we were arrived, writing many Letters more then pittifull and milerable, and in all of them before the writing, came Our What these Lord less crucified, of the which, having louing Aniweres, and full of hope of fuccour, wee Forthead's per-Io made our journey toward Soez, and being returned againe to Maçua, it was ordayned to fend forced in Ehim fine hundred men with a Captaine. This done, we fet faile, and came directly the way to that reade in India, and to this prefent, I have not knowne what more hapned, or is become of the Presbyter, the following

CHAP. 6. S. 2. Abexines ceremonious. Good Warriors. Nimble Horle-men.

and matters of . Ethiopia. The Abexines are naturally ceremonious men, and full of points of honour. Among them Bermudez, there is no other kind of weapons then Darts, in which they here figured the Lance where with Christ was wounded, and the Croffe whereon he fuffered for Sinners. Some, though very They are efew, weare halfe Swords. They are nimble on Horfe-backe, but badly apparelled, generally they freemed great are lying people and given to Rapine. Among them he is not counted rich, that possession many, Warriours out but he that hath abundance of Cattell, and Camels, and not withflanding, this they effecme the of their owne 20 Gold very much: In their owne Countrey they are weake and cowards, but in a strange Countrey strong and valient, in fort, that it is a Prouerbe in all India, to fay, That the good Laf-ca-

rin, which wee call a Souldier, must be an Abexine; and they are so esteemed in Ballagate, Cambaya, Bengala, and inother places, that they are alwayes Captaines, and principall persons in the Armies. Their attyre is vile and poore: they weare Shirts of linnen cloth, and fomegreat person weareth a Beden, the vulgar goeth naked, and couered with whatsoeuer cloth; they eate per garment, Bolliemses, and raw fiesh, and when they lay it to the fire, they hold it so little at it, that when they eate it, the bloud runneth out of it. In the Land there is no Cities, nor Townes, but they line in the fields in Pauillions or Tents, like the Alarbes,

They doe honour themselves very much of the Queene of Saba, and they fay, she tooke ship-30 ping in the part of Magna; and others affirme, that it was in Suaquen, and carrying great riches with her and lewels of great value, the came to lerufalem to fee King Salomon, giving him great gifts, and returne from thence with child by the King, to her Kingdome. It is an hillorie much talked of among the Abexines, that a Soldan of Babylon, mooning warre against Prefbyter Iohn many yeares agoe, the Presbyter gathered a great multitude of people, with the which he put in practice to turne the River Nilm another way to the Sea , fo that it should not runne through Egypt. The Soldan amazed at 10 great an Enterprize, and feeing that the worke comming to perfection, it would be the ytter ou rethrow of Egypt, he fent ynto him his Embaffadors with great g:fts, by the meanes of the which he obtayned his friendship and peace with the Tresbyter John. and gaue a printledge to the Abexines, that they might passe through all his Countrey, without 40 paying any Tribute, and at this day they pay no Tribute when they goe to visit the holy Sepulchre, and Saint Catherine of Mount Sinai; I asked within the streights of some old learned Moores for this Antiquitie, and they told mee the fame, not digreffing one jot from the

The nineteenth, at Sunne rising, we set faile from the nooke which is beyond Macua, halfe a league and an halfe of water, diffant from the Land about halfe a league : This day the weather was very close, and it rained, and numbring our Armie, I found fixtie foure rowing Veffels. that is , three Galliots, eight small Gallies , and thirtie fine Foysts. By night the wind The Portugal was North-west, it calmed, and blew a little at West, in the second watch it began to raine, Armada. and halfe the morning watch past, wee wayed our Anchors, and went rowing along the shoare 50 till the morning, it rained very hard all this time.

The twentieth, at euening, we were as farre as the Point of the ranke of Ilands on the Northfide, at this time wee might bee from Maqua, about fourteene leagues, the Coaft from Macua hither, ftretcheth North North-west, and South South-east, there is in the distance fourteen legues, in the I lands which we faw on the Sea-fide, we knew that in fome of them there was Cattel and water, with some few and poore dwellings, the distance between them and the firme Land, might be some foure leagues, the names of these Ilands where the Cattell and the Water is, are Harate, Dohull, Damanill, the Land of them is low, and round about it is full of Shealds Harate, Dobull,

By night all the first watch, the wind faire at East, we failed to the North North-west, at 60 the beginning of the fecond watch, wee fell on a fudden in certaine very whitish spots, the which did raife and cast from themselves certaine flames like vnto Lightnings, wondring at the shew of this strange event, presently we tooke in our Sailes, and beleening wee were voon fome Shoalds or Bankes, commanded to cast the Lead : I found twentie fixe fathome water,

to this day, they have deexested, and are now almost vererly

ruin d.

An Iland vnder water to he feared.

now this noveltie making no impression in the Pilots of the Countrey, and seeing how we were by a great depth, wee fet fayles againe.

The one and twentieth when it was day, wee faw at Sea off vs, the low Iland, whereof the Moorill Pilots were afraid.

The two and twentieth when it was day, wee fet fayle: my Pilot tooke the Sunne at the higheft, and found himfelfe in eighteene degrees and an halfe. At this time we were as farre as a Point of fand very long, which the firme land thrust out, doubling this Point, we found the Sen very faire, and we fayled North-west and by West. An houre after noone, we came to an Hauen, called Marate. All the Coaft wee faw this day, firetcheth North North-west, and South South-east, the Land by the Sea fide is very low, and maketh neuer a Hillocke, but within the In Land there arife fo great Mountaines, that they feeme to reach the Clouds,

A Description and Iland of

Marate is an Hand very low : the land thereof is very Defart , and without water, it is hevond Macna, about fixtie fixe leagues ; the Hand hath in compasse a league and an halfe, the figure thereof is rather round then any other, it lieth from the firme land about three leagues, in the fide of this Iland which is opposite to the South-west, and beholdeth the firme land, there is a very good Hauen, free from all winds, and especially from the Easterne winds: for on this fide, the Hand doth cast out two very long points into the Sea, which stretch East and West, and a quarter North-west and South-east: betweene the which the land on both sides doth streighten very much, and makes a very great and hollow bosome, in the mouth and front of which lieth a long Hand, and very flat; and also some Heads of fand, and Shoalds, by reason of which 20 no Sea can come in there: this Hauen hath two entries, one of them goeth on the Eaft fide, and the other on the Well fide, the one and the other very neere the points of the Hand, betweene the which the Hauen is made. The Entrie and Channell which goeth on the East fide, stretcheth North and South, a quarter to the North-west and South-east, the depth is three fathom in the Foure or fine shallowest place, and comming out of this, it encreaseth presently, and within the Hauen wee fathom water, have neere the Shoare foure and five fathome, the ground is mudde. By night, the wind blew at East, and lesse then by day, we rode all night.

The Illands of

Shoalds.

The three and twentieth the Sunne being vp, we let faile from the Iland and Port of Me. Daratata and rate, and found feuen fathome, and fandie ground; at eleuen of the clocke, wee came in fight of two little Ilands, which were farre to the Sea; one of them is called Daratata, and the other, 12 Suggest Chan. Dolcofallar, from which to Suggest is a dayes journey: from noone forward, we fayled Northwest and by West, till Evensong time that we entred the Channell of Suaquen, and entring into it we fayled North-west the space of a league, and presently there wee had ahead of vs certains Shoalds, for which cause wee layled West, and a quarter North-west, and sometimes West, to free our felues from them, and we fayled this way about three leagues, till we faw a great Hand ahead of vs; as foone as we faw it, we went by a tacke toward the Land, and came to an anchor Xabaque Hanen betweene certaine great Shoalds of stone, where there is a good Hauen, called Xabaque, which in 19. degrees is to fay in the Arabian Tongue, a Net. At this time it might bee an houre before Sunne set. This day my Pilot tooke the Sunne in his greatest height, and he found himselfe in nineteene The Shoalds of Suaquen are so many, and so intermingled the one with the other, that no inof the Soilds formation or picture is sufficient, I say not to paste them , but for to understand them, the Hands,

Shoalds, Bankes, Rockes, Channels that are among them are fo many. These Shoalds at the entring, when wee are readie to goe in, have on the Sea fide a Shoald under water, whereupon the Sea breaketh very much, and to the Lindward a little lland, which firetcheth with the Shoald North-east, and South-west, a quarter of the East and West, the distance is about three quarters of a league: as soone as we enter by these Shoalds, the Channell appeareth to vs large and spacious, and the farther wee goe forward, so much more to the Seaward there appeare to Infinite num- vs (uch an infinite number of Ilands very flat, Flats, Heads of fand or ftone, that they have no ber of Hands, number, the which toward the Land are not fo many, though in comparison of any other Sea, 50 Flats, and Heads of fand the fouleft and vinnauigable. The precept which most ought to be kept for to passe between these shoulds, is to take heed that we goe alwaies neerer to them that lie to the Sea, and keeps A precept how our felues the most we can, from the other that are to the Landward. The breadth of the Chanto auoid them. nell that goeth betweene the one and the other, in some places is about halfe a league, in others a quarter, and in others leffe then a Caliuer shot. As touching the depth of water through all this Channell, wee are to note, that in the entrie of it we found fixe fathoms, and from thence Fineleagues of to the Port of Xabaque it abated nothing of this depth, nor exceeding twelve fathoms: from the Shoalds, ele- beginning of their fhoalds to this Hauen , there may be about fine leagues , the length of them may be eight or nine leagues, where there goeth another Channell lurer for thips and great veffels, and wee may likewife paffe thefe Shoalds, leaving them all to the Sea, going very clote 60 with the firme land, and this is the rightest way and most pleasant.

The foure and twentieth, the Sunne being vp, wee fet fayle from the Port of Xabaque, and rowed by fo narrow a Channell, that in the broadest place we could not goe abreast; but one after another, & wherefocuer it widened it might be about a Crof-bow shot, the most we went from

the firme land, might be a Cannon shot, and the least little more then a Cros-bow shot. The Shoalds, Rockes and Bankes, we had on eveny tide, and were all vader water, voon them weet faw manifest signes to auoyd them; For wheresoeuer they lay, the water ouer them did appeare to vs very red, or very greene, and where wee faw none of these colours, it was manifest to be Rednesse of the deepe, and cleereft of the Channell, the water shewing it selfe darke. Now going by this the water Channell, compassed with so many controuersies; at halfe an houre past eleuen, were came to an anchor under the lee of a little low and round Hand, in nineteene degrees. In this height Ptoforme placeth the Mountaine of the Satyres, of the which I found no memorie in the Pilores of Mountaine of the Countrey, but going into the Land about halfe a league, I found the foot of to many kinds the Saryrs. to of Beafts, and flockes of Pianets, forgeat, that it was a wonder, and all the footings came till they fet their feet in the Sea, and the tracke was fo great , that it occupied the greatest part of

the field. I beleeue that Fable fo foread abroad of the Satyres to come from hence, which they fay, inhabite these Hills and Mountaines, and likewise it is to bee noted, that in these foure leagues of Channell that is from Xabaque to this Iland, the water is no lower then two fathoms and an halfe, nor higher then eleuen, and also that the tide in the Iland ariseth nor about halfe a yard. And it begins to flow as foone as the day beginneth to alcend by the Horizon, according to the order of the tides of Socatora.

The fixe and twentieth by Sunne rifing, we departed from this Iland, rowing along 4 Shoald of stone, that ranne betweene vs and the Land almost equidistance from the Coast, and from it 20 to the Land all the Sea was full of Shoalds and Bankes, to the Sea of vs there appeared neither Shoalds nor Flats, or any other impediment. At nine of the clocke, we came to an anchor in a little Iland, compassed with many Flats and Shoalds, where was a good Hauen: this Iland was distant from the other, whence wee parted in the morning, a league and an halfe, and short of

The feuen and twentieth the Sunne vp, wee fet faile from this fecond Hand: two houres within night, we came to an anchor a league and an halfe from the second Iland, in eight and twentie fathome water.

The eight and twentieth by day, we brideled the Oares, and fet faile: at nine of the clocke. wecame to an anchor about two leagues from the Land, in three and twentie fathome water. 20 the ground was a foft fand like oze, or mudde. This morning, wee found some Shoalds voder water at Sea, but vpon them it shewed it selfe very greene or red. Two houres after noone wee fet faile againe, at night wee came to an anchor in feuen and thirtie fathome water, the ground was fand, the place was short of Suaquen, a league and an halfe, hard by an Iland, the Coast runneth North North-west, and South South-east, and all along there runneth a Shoald that entreth into the Sea neere halfe a league, the Land vpon the Sea side differeth in nothing from

The first of March, 1541. by day, we departed this place, which is short of Suaquen, a league and an halfe: hauing doubled a point which the Shoald maketh, being as farre as the place, wee approached the Land, and entring by the Channell inward, we came to an anchor within the 40 Hauen of the Citie of Snaquen.

Suaquen was called in old time, the Port Afri, as wee may fee in Ptolomie his third Table of Description Africa: at this day "it is one of the richeft Cities of the Orient, it is fituated within the Ara. of the Cities bike Gulfe, in the Coast of Athiopia fub Agypto, called now, the Land and Coast of the Aberi. and Portof Among all the famous places, this may be equall or superior to them all in foure things. The first, The Fort of Among at the transits praces that may be equally appeared to the man transit compared to the man. The Fort of in goodness and securities of the Hauten. The second, in the facilities and good seriole for leding 45th and validing of the Ships. The third, in the trassicke with very strange and remote People and Among 1541. and vallading of the Ships. The third, in the trafficke with very strange and remote People and Lands, and of discribe behaviours. The fourth, in the strength of the fittation of the Citie. As since the Twittouching the goodnesse of the Port, and the securitie of it, I will first speake of: Nature made field conjucts. this Port in fuch manner, that the storme of the Sea cannot come into it by any place what for the places euer. Within the Hauen it is fo quiet, and it runneth fo infenfibly, that scarcely yee can per- hauebeene of 50 ceiue to haue any tides; the ground is mudel, the Road hath in all places fine and fast fathon, and greater tode in fome in hath form in this compafe and harbour of the Hauen, may well two humberd thins. In greater to

in some it hath seven, in this compasse and harbour of the Hauen, may well two hundred ships ficke of Suslie, and rowing Vessels without number. Yee may plainly see the ground, and where it appear quo with mareth not, it is so deepe, that at the least it hath ten or twelue fathom water. The ships are laden ay Nations for round about the circumference of the Citie, calting a planke into the Ware-houses of the Mer-Gold, Juorie, chandife, and the Galleys faithing themfelues to the itones and doores of the houses, fer their and rich mere Reak-heads outer the fireers, and by them as he Bridger they are ferred. More than the chandife, Beak-heads ouer the fireets, and by them as by Bridges they are ferued. Now, touching the Traffique and Nauigation that is in it, with People of many forts, and strange and remote Countries : I know not what Citie can compare with it (except it be Lifton,) for, this Citie tradeth

60 in all India intra Gangem, & extra Gangem, that is, Cambaya, Tanagarin, Pegu, Mallagua, and within the Arabike line, in Inda, Cairo, Alexandria, and from all Ethiopia, and the Land of the Abexi it gathereth great abundance and quantitie of Gold, and Iuorie. As touching the strength of the situation of the Citie, there cannot so much bee said that it is not much more, feeing that to come to it, the inconveniences, lets, dangers, and hinderances are fo great, that it

1122

feemeth almost impossible. Seeing that fifteenel agues about the Shoalds, Flats, Ilands, Channels, Rocks, Bankes, and Flats of Sand, and breakings of the Sea, are fo many, that they put the leagues, is en- Saylers in a great doubt, feare and dispaire. The fituation of the Citie is in this manner : in the very midft of this Nooke standeth a most plaine Iland, which is almost levell and even with the Flats, llands, Sea, and it is fo round, that it feemeth a circle. It hath in compasse a quarter of a league, vpon Rocks, Chan- this Iland is the Citie of a Suaquen, built in fuch manner, that in all the compasse of the Iland. nels,Banks,&c. there is not one foot of ground that is not replenished with houses, so that this lland may rather be faid to be full of Houses and Inhabitants, then built and inhabited of people, so that all the Hand is a Citie, and all the Citie an Hand. On two fides this Citie and Hand, doe come within a Bow shot of the firme Land, that is, on the East South-east, and on the South-west side, but Io all the rest is further of the Land : The Road in this Hauen or Nooke, is round about the Citie. from the edge of it to a great Croffe-bow flot of it. We may cast Anchor where wee lift and all this distance bath fixe and seven fathome water, the ground is Mud. This Nooke where this Citie lyeth, as in his Centre, round about it along the shoare hath a great Shoald, so that the deepe is at the edge of the Citie, and a Bow shot round about it on every side, and beyond this distance it is full of Shoalds. In this Nooke Ive other three Ilands on the Land fide, that Iveth to the North-west; the second of them that lye further in, are little, but the other neerest to the Channell, is about the bigneffe of the Citie. Betweene this Iland and the firme Land of the Nooke, on the North fide, there goeth a great Channell very long, in which is feuen fathome water : Along this Channell may a great Nauie lyeat Anchor, without any danger of hurt from 20 the Citie, or feeing more then their Masts. When the morning appeareth in the Horizon, it is full Sea ; and the morning comming on, it beginneth to ebbe till the day comes to our Meridia an, when it is dead low water, and passing from hence to the setting in the Horizon, it beginneth to flow till day shutting in, and being shut in it is full Sea: from dead low water till full Sea againe, the water rifeth not in the Citie more then a quarter of a yard, and along the Coast, the most that it rifeth is a yard and an halfe to be measured, and in some high places leffe then three quarters of a yard. But when I made this observation were new Tides.

The ninth of March, an houre before Sunne set, wee weighed Anchor from before the Citie. and lay at the mouth of the Channell. The tenth, we fet faile from the mouth of the Channell of Sugarner: We lay all night at Anchor, and the Dew was fo great, that it was wonderfull.

ð. III.

Mountaines of Sand on the Coafts of Dradate, Doroo, Fuxaa, Arequea, Farate, Quilfit and Igidid.

THE eleventh, the Winde was at North, and it blew so hard that it was a storme, it raifed along the Sea Coasts great Mountaines of Sand toward heaven, and after they 40 were very high it brake them, and the ayre remained as though it were a great mith or smoake; all this day we lay at an Anchor.

Many Rockes, The twelfth, we went out of this Channell, two leagues beyond Snaquen, and being without we set faile, and being about a league and a halfe from the Coast, we met so many Rocks. Shoalds and Flats, whereon the Sea did breake very much, that wee were forced to take in our Sayles, and to row the space of three houres, till we were free from these Shoalds, and presently we let fayle againe. At Euen, we came to an Anchor within the Banke, entring a very narrow Channell, this Channell is one league beyond the other whence we parted, & three from Suaquen, it is great and spacious within, the ground is very cleane, there can no Sea come in nor doe any hurt.

The thirteenth, we went an houre before day out of the Channell, and to the Sea of vs about 50 a Canon shot, we saw a very long ranke of Shoalds breake, which seemed to beare the same course that the Coast. At eleven of the clock, the wind scanted and blew from the North Northwest, for the which not being able to make any way, we were forced to fasten our selues to the Rockes of the Shoalds, and being here about three houres, at two of the clocke afternoone we fet fayle, the wind was very much fresher, and about North North-east, we sayled North-west, and when we were with the banke of the Land, we tooke in the Sayle, and rowing, we entted a Channell, and well within the banke we harboured. This Channell and place is from Suaquen about feuen leagues, the Channell is very narrow, and windeth in many Crookes, the Coast from Snaquen hither, fretcheth North and South, and North & by West, and South and by East. feuen leagues

The fifteenth, I went a shoare, and observing the order of the flowing and ebbing of the Sea, from Suaquen. I found that after the morning was ouer the Horizon, two houres it was full Sea, and thence it began to ebbe till two houres afternoone, at which time it was dead low water, and prefently it began to flow till the Moone was fet, and two houres after : Now measuring the quantitie, the tide did arife, I found two and twentie cubits.

Oblemation of the Tides. Course of

A Channell

was at North, halfe a league at Sea we cast Anchor. The seventeenth, wee entred into a very good harbour, called Dradate: the Coaft from the Port of Suaquen vnto Dradate, lieth North and by Weft, and South and by East : It is distant ten leagues, the Land ouer the Sea is all very low, and three leagues within the Maine, are great and high Mountaines. The Port of Tradate, with great reason ought to bee placed among the great and famous Ports, it hath elevation of the Pole, nineteene degrees fine fixth parts, and is beyond Sugaren

The fixteenth, we went out of this Channell, that is feven leagues from Suaques, the winde

ten leagues. The mouth and entry hath in bredth, about a small Faulcon shot, and entring within, prefently it beginneth to narrow, and close more and more, but in all his length, the depth 10 of water is twentie fathome, the ground is mud. About a quarter of a league within the Land.

there is a great watering place of Wels, where is the belt and greatest quantitie of water, that Agreat water is knowne in all these Coalts.

The nineteenth, the Sunne being vp, we fet fayle : we journed this day about three leagues and a halfe at Sea off vs wee faw many Shoalds, the Coast stretched these three leagues and a halfe North and South. The twentieth, at Sunne rifing the wind blew at North, and troubled the Sea : wherefore we were forced to feeke harbour within the Shoald, entring by a very narrow and troublesome Channell; after wee were within, the wind came North Northeast, we lay all day at an Anchor. The one and twentieth, we went out of the Shoald, the wind was West North-west faire weather, we sayled to the North, distant from the Land about halfe 20 aleague: an houre after Sunne rifing, we were with a very long and faire point, which Ptolomie

calleth the Promontorie of Diogenes.

Dorso, is a very great and faire Bay, it is fifteene leagues beyond Suaquen, and a halfe: this A Description Bay on the South fide thrusteth a verie large and bare point into the Sea, where there is built of the Bay of a great and round Turret in manner of a Pillar, Ptolomie calleth this Point, the Promontorie of Doros. Diorenes. "Through this Channell, presently at the critrie, there is fixe fathome Water, and Promontoria from hence it goeth diminishing till it come to three, and thence doth not descend; the ground of Discount. is a verie hard lav, the Bay is to great, and maketh fo many Creekes and Nookes, and within it lye fo many Ilands, and the firme Land is cut with fo many Creekes, which doe penetrate fo farre into the Land, that in every place there may be many Veffels hidden, without any no-30 tice of them. A quarter of a league to the Sea of this Bay, there lyeth a Shoald that doth gird

and compafie it in fuch fore at the mouth thereof, that no Sea can come into it, because it is alwaies aboue water, without having any entrance, except the mouth which aboue I have rehearfed. This entry or mouth stretcheth East and by North, and West and by South. A Cannon ABrackish fale that from this Bay, is a Well, of great quantitie of water, but it is very brackish and falt. The Well. two and twentieth, when it was day, wee departed, and made our way Rowing, the Sea feemed to be very full of Rockes, and getting free of fome, we encountred with others; halfe an houre past ten of the clocke, we made ve saft to the stones of them. About Euensong time, we were with the Land, and having doubled a low point, we entred into a very great Bay, which is called Fuxes, there is betweene Doros and Fuxes three leagues and a halfe, the Coast itretch-40 eth North and South, and seemeth to take something of North-West and South-East. The Bay The Description

of Fuxes, is made Noble of famous, by a verie high and sharpe Pike, and in it the Pole of the on of the Bay North doth rife twentie degrees and a quarter. In the entry and mouth of this Bay, there are of Funds. two verie low points : they lye North and by East, and South and by West, the distance is one league and a halfe. No great Sea doth enter heere, and for this cause heere is a good harbour, where there is ten and twelve fathome water, and the ground is mud, every where elfe it diminisheth, till it come to five fathome. Along the Land of the Bay that goeth on the South fide, therelyeth nine little Handson a row, and in other places are some other scattered, all of Nine little them are small, low, and compassed with Shoalds : In this Bay there is not any water, the Land Hands.

is verie dry and barren.

50 The five and twentieth, wee journed along the Coast to the Sea off vs , about a league wee Arequis Harfaw many Rockes; at ten of the clocke we entred into an harbour, verio great, which is called bour twente Arequea. There is betweene the Bay of Faxaa and this Hauen foure leagues, the Coaft run- two leagues Areques. There is between the Bay of range and this travel four reagues, the Court time from Suaques, meth North and South, and taketh something of the North-west and South-east. Areques is The Descript. the frongeft and most defeneeable Hauen that hitherto I haue seene, it is beyond Suequen two on of the Port and twentie leagues. In old time it was called Diofeori, as wee may fee in Ptolomie; in the of creques. midft of the entry and mouth of this Port, lyeth a great lland, which hath in length about a Disferi Port. Croffe-bow shot, and almost as much in breadth, and there runneth from it to the firme Land, on the South fidea Shoald and a Banke, that ioyneth with the Land, in fuch fort, that not any thing can passe ouer it : but from the same lland to the Land on the North fide, which is a-

60 bout a Croffe-bow short distance, there goeth a Channell that hath fifteene fathome water, it runneth North-west and South-east, and both neere the Land, and neere the Iland it is verie shallow and full of Rockes, fo that the way lyeth in the very midst; the Channell hath in length about a Caliuer shot, and presently the Coasts on every side winding, doe make within Bbbbbb 1

1124

a great and very faire Hauen, in which there is no feare of danger. This Port hath in length about one league, and halfe in breadth, it is deep in the midft, and neere the Land full of Shoalds. there is no water in it. The token we have to know when we are as farre as it, is, that the Pike aboutefaid remaineth to the West South-west. Here we agreed to fend all the Armie to Magna. and to goe forward onely with fixteene small Gallies. The thirtieth at noone, we fet fayle from the Port of Arequea, we came to an Anchor in a

Salaguariauen, Hauen, which is called Salagua, beyond Arequea foure leagues, and from Suaquen fixe and from Areques. twentie: the Coast North and South, and taketh somewhat of the North-east and South-west. The Land which is over the Sea, maketh many rilings and hillocks, and behind them there arife great Mountaines: and we are here to note, that the Land by the Sea from Arequea, begin- In neth to make this shew forward, for hitherto it is all very plaine and low, till it reacheth to the Mountaines that are within the Maine. The one and thirtieth, we fet sayle from the Port of Salanus; an houre before Sunne fet, we faltned our felues to a Shoald, that is a league from the shoare, we might goe this day about seventeene leagues, and were beyond Suaquen three and From the Port of Salagna forward, the Coasts doe begin to winde very much, and from Ra-

of thefe feuen- feldoger forward, the space of a league, the Coast runneth very low to the North North-east, and in the end it maketh a point of Sand, where there are thirteene little hillockes or knobs The Pointo? of itone, which as the Moorgh Pilots faid, were Graues, and from this point of the Calmer about two leagues, the Coast runneth to the North North-west, and from thence as farre as this 20 Shoald, which is three and fortie leagues from Suaquen. It is the most famous and named point of all this Coast; because all that doe fayle from Maçua, Suaquen, and other places, to Inda, Alcocer, and to Tore, must of force fetch this point. As touching the Sea that lyeth within these seuenteene leagues, I beleeue there can be no rules or experience to be securely sayled, but that as well the skilfull as the viskilfull, must passe at all adventures, and save themselves by chance, for the Shoalds are so many, and so great, the Sea so sowed enery where with Rockes, the Bankes are so continuall in every place, that it seemeth certainly rather that we may goest on foote, then fayle it; yea, although it be in small Boats, in these spaces which are contained betweene Salaqua and Raseldoner, are three Ilands lying in tryangle, neerer to Raseldone then to Salagua. The greatest of them is called Magargam, it hath in length about two league, 30 the Land of it is verie high, and without water. This Iland beareth with Rafeldosar North and South, the diffance is three leagues. The fecond Hand lyeth much to the Sea, and is called Elmante : : he Land is likewise high, and without water ; but the third Iland is very low, and all of Sand : it lyeth foure leagues from Salagna, toward Rafeldoaer, the name whereof is not yet

Magarcam.

The second of Aprill, 1541. an house before day, we loosed from the Shoald, that is three and fortie leagues beyond Snaquen, and went Rowing along the Coaft, wee entred into a River which is called Farate: there might be from the Shoald whence wee departed to this River, foure leagues, and ferting fayle a league from thence, wee entred into an Hauen very faire, Quiffe Hanen. Which is called Quiffe. All this day we faw not to the Land of vs any Rocke, but to the Sea of the Description which is called Quiffe. vs we did fee a Shoald. Farate is a River very great and faire, the Channell thereof hath of elenation of the Pole one and twentie degrees, and two third parts, that separates two low Points: at the entrance are a small Caliner shot, and from each of them commeth a Shoald toward the mouth of the River, so that the Channell or entry is in the very midit; this River runneth East and West. The Land of every side of the River is very low, without Bush or any Trees of any other kind; in the mouth of the River is thirtie fathomes water, and from thence it diminisheth till it remaineth in eighteene.

ot Quift.

Quilfit, is an Hauen no lefte faire and noble, then very fure and profitable, because being once within, we need to feare no winde or any misfortune. There are at the entrie of this Port two very low Points, which are coafted North-west and South-east, a quater North and South. The 10 diffance is almost a quarter of a league. All the Hauen round about, may comprehend more then three leagues, and wee may lye at Roade in any place of it, and bee fafe. In all this Hauen is twelve fathome water, along the Shoare the Coast is rockie, betweene this part and the River of Farate, which is a great leagues journey, there croffeth a ranke of Mountaynes, one higher

The third, one houre before day, we came out of the Port of Quilfit, and went rowing along the Coast. An houre before Sunne set, we came to an anchor in an Hauen, which is called Rafilgid, which in the Arabian tongue is, The new Head. This day we went about nine leagues, to the Sea of vs, we saw some Shoalds, but fewer then we had seene before. Two leagues from Quilfit there is a very good Hauen, which is called Moamaa, and presently from this Point of the 60 Shrubs, vnto another Point of Sand very long, which is about two leagues, before the Port of Rafilgia, the Coast runneth North and South, and taketh somewhat of the North-west and South-eaft, the diffance is about three leagues and a halfe.

Igided, is a small Hauen, but a very pleasant one, it is beyond Suaquen seuen and fiftie leagues: A description the proportion thereof is like a great Cauldron, and within is fo round, that it feemes a part of the Port of of a Circular: in the mouth and entrie of the Port are two Points; which firetch North and South. Within this Port, onely the Eafterne winde can doe fome hurr, all the ground is very cleane: at the Mouth there is eighteene fathome water, and within thirteene; and halfe a league the agent like a great from it into the Land there is a Well of water, though little abounding, the water of it is very Cauldron. bitterift; the Port hath in compalle a great halfe league. It is a thing to be noted, that as well A Wellof wain this Port, as in all the reft, which I have seene in this Coast, Rivers, or Harbours, none hath any Barre or Banke at the Entrie , but rather the greatest depth is at the Mouthes , rather then to within. In this Port I found certaine Trees, which in the Trunke or Stock refembled the Corke Trees like

Trees, for the Trunkes and Boughes of them were couered with a kind of Barke or Corke, and Corke trees. very different in all the reft, for the leaues of them were very great and large, and wonderfully thicke and greene, having certaine bigge veines that did crolle them, these Trees were with Flowre, and the Flowre in the Bud relembled the Mallow flowre when it is in the Bud, but that this was very white; and after it openeth, the Bud it refembleth the white Cockle. Cutting a little Bough or Leafe of these Trees, there runneth out a great streame of Milke, as if it were the dugge of a Goat. In all this coast I saw no other Trees but these, except a Groue that is a little beyond Magna, hard by the Sea in the marith ground; belides thele Trees, within the Land, there are fome Valleyes where grow some Capers, the leaves of which the Moores Trees of Caoo doe eate. They fay, that they be appropriated to the joynts.

The fourth, from Sunne rifing till eleven of the clocke, the winde blew fo much at Northwest, that it was a great storme; and from eleuen of the clocke, it began to thunder very hard, Thunder and and it hayled with the biggeft drops that euer I faw; with thefe thanders, the Winde ranne very great through all the Points of the Compasse, and at last it remayned North. This day I carried my Hayle. instruments on Land, and found the variation one degree and a quarter to the North-east, and the Port in two and twentie, by many observations.

Notwithstanding, that these operations were made a shoare, and with so much heede in the fetting of the Instrument, that after once placed I neuer stirre it, till the end of all the observations, yet there cannot be but that some error may be in them and some difference , because the 20 great heate and foorchings of the Sunne, did cracke the plate of Juorie in the middeft, and there The exceeding remayned a great Clift as thick as a Portegue of gold, betweene the one halfe and the other.

The fixth, an houre before day, we weighed from the Port of Igidid. All this dayes journey Sunae. might be three leagues and a halfe.

The feuenth, in the morning, the Winde blew fresh at North-west, we rowed to the shoare: and at eight of the clocke, in the morning, wee faitned our felues to certayne stones of a Shoald and a Shelfe, that lyeth before a long Point, which hereafter I will call Starta; we went in this Starta. space about three leagues; but about noone we departed, and set faile, being in no little doubt. because on the one fide and on the other of vs, we saw so many Shelues that it was a wonderfull thing : we were forced to take in our failes, and helpe our felues with the Oare. At Sunne fet we comel, a good 40 came to an anchor in a good Hauen, which is called Comel.

ð. IIII.

A description of the Coast, that is contayned from the Port of Igidid unto Comol, Raselnaxef, Xuarif, Gadenauhi, Xermeelquiman, Gualibo, Tuna, Alcocer, and Toro.

Rom a Point that lyeth two leagues beyond the Port of Igidid, to another, very long come! Hauen 50 Nom a Point that syem two leagues orgonia the Port or 1 gram, to another, very tong town in such and flar, it may be about four leagues: their two Points stretch North-well and two and order South-east, in this space there is a great and famous Nooke, and within it town diedgeres the long Point of the North-welt, is a Hauen to dole on all sides, that no Wind can and shalle. doe it any harme, and it is very deepe. The Point remayneth an Iland, which by reason of the heighth and place where it standeth, without doubt it seemeth to be an Iland, which Ptolomie calleth Starta. But from hence to a great Point , which the Land ouer the Port of Comol doth Starta Infela. thrust out, there may be fine leagues, these two Points stretch North-west and by West, Southeast and by East; betweene them both there is another great and faire Nooke. As touching the description of the Land vpon the Sea coast, we are to note, that from as farre as Igidid, till halfe a league short of the Port of Comol, along the Sea, the Land sheweth all along in small Hills and 60 very close, and behind them there arise within a league distance, very great and high Mountains, raying very high Pikes and sharpe Points, with other very faire shewes, the which the neerer they come to the Port of Comol, so much the neerer they come toward the Sea, and being come to the edge of it, they runne very high, ouer-pearing the Coasts, till they come within halfe a league short of this Port of Comel.

Вывывы з

A description

Comol, is beyond Igidid eleven leagues, and from Suaquen fixtie eight; the Pole in it is eleof the Portof nated two and twentie degrees and an halfe. This Port frandeth in the end of this fecond Nooke. very neere the face of the Point, which the Land that Iyeth on the North-west side, doth thrust out, the which though it be not very great, yet it is very fure and profitable : for toward the Sea fide it hath certaine Shoalds ouer water, which defend it, that no Sea can come into it; the Land which is seene round about it, is very plaine and pleasant, and greatly peopled with Badoic. Now, the Point of the North-west, wherewith the Land ouer this Port and end of the Nooke. commeth out into the Sea, is very long and faire : the Land of it is all low and equall. This Point is the Promontorie Prionoto, if wee looke well to Ptolomie in the third Table of Africa: which because that as farre as it the great Mountaines doe end, which roame along all this In Coast. Three houres after mid-night, we went out of the Port of Comol, and rowing a little

great Shelfe.

Zemorgite I.

taines end.

Ralebaxef

Ealeit.

while, wee all fet faile and went along the Coast; but an houre before morning, some Foysts ftrooke vpon Rocks and Shoalds, for which cause we strooke faile, and made our journey, rowing The eight, at breake of day, we came into a great and faire Bay, of which toward the North

and North-west side, we saw no end, or any Point where it might end. We failed in the broad and high Sea, the Shoalds on every fide were fo many, that it was a wonder wee could make any profit of a large winde, for now going roamour, now by a tacke, fometime out of the way, and fometime in it, there was no way wee could take certayne and quiet About Sunne fet. wee found a very great Shelfe, and faithing our felues to the ftones of it, we tooke harbour. The ninth, 20 being cleere, we fet faile from the Shelfe. We tooke harbour within a very great Shelfe, which is called Xaabiliden : after we were at anchor, we faw to the Sea an Iland, which is called Zemorgete. This Port and Shelfe stretcheth North-east and by East, South-west and by West. From the point of the Cape of the Mountains, to another Point which is beyond it, where are certain great Furres or Whinnes, the Coast runneth North-west and by North, and South-east and by South, The Point of bushes of the distance may be about three leagues & an half, or foure, & presently from this Point, the Coasts of the great nooke, beginne to wind toward the Land inward, drawing toward the fetting of the Sunne, and afterward they turne againe very winding and crooked, making with fo many turnings a great and large circuite, and from hence they wind outward, carrying a great and long front, till they thrust into the Sea a notable and great Point, called Rafelnaxef, which in 2 Point, or the Arabique, is to fay, the dry Cape which Ptolomie doth call. The Promontorie Pentadatilors, & dry Cape. Promontorie we may fee in the third Table of Africa, the Hand of Zemorgete, is diffant from this Point about eight leagues towards the Sunne rifing, and from it, as the Moorsh Pilots told vs, is the first where the land place from whence the Land is seene of both the Coasts, but the Coast of Arabia is a great of both Coaffs deale further from the Hand, this Hand is barren and very high, and hath another fail by it very fmall, the greater Zemorgete, Prolomie doth call Agathon, and maketh no mention of the lef-fer. Now, for a declaration of the shelfe Xaabeliden, wee are to note, that in the end of this great Bosome farre to the Sea, there lyeth a very faire shelfe aboue water, all of it, which maketh a figure like to two armes wide open with their hands, and because of this shew that it representeth, it was called, Xaabeliden; which in Arabian, is to say, The shelfe of the Hands, 40 the Port of this shelfe is on the Land side, for on this side it windeth very much, and stretcheth such armes that keepe and shut up the Hauen from all the winds of the Sea, this Hauen stretcheth with Rafelnaxef, East South-east, and West North-west, the distance is about four leagues.

all the Nauigators, and prefently we failed to the North and by East. At nine of the clocke, wee were as farre as an Iland, which is called, Cornaqua, and wee passed betweene it and the sime Land : this Iland is small and barren, it hath in compasse about halte a league, the distance from 10 it, and the firme Land is about a league and an halfe, the Land of the Iland maketh the figure and shew of a great and mightie Lizard, with his armes stretched out, which is the occasion it is much noted and seene of the Nauigators, and therefore made famous, this Iland of Cornaqua beareth with the Iland Zermogete, North-west and by West, and South-east and by East, the distance is about fixe small leagues, but returning to our way, about halfe an houre past ten, wee were as farre as a very long Point of Sand, entring a great way into the Sea, which is called, Rafelenfe; which in Arabique, is to fay, The Point or Cape of the Nofe. This Point hath not round about it any high Land, but a great or vast field doth begirt it, without feeing in all this space any Tree or any greene thing, and in the very face of the Point, is a great Temple erected, without any other building, and on enery fide of it is a very cleere fandy Coast, in manner of a Bay-Rafelenfe is very famous; all the trouble of their Nauigations, is, till they come to this Point, and whenfoeuer they double or come to ic, they hold themfelues at home and fure. Now profecuting our iourney running along the Coast, the wind was at South-east. At noone my Pilot tooke the Sunne, and found himselfe in twentie foure degrees of height, one fixt part,

The tenth, the Sunne being vp, we fet faile to the North North-east, the wind began to blow

fresher, and the Sea appeared to vs cleere and Nauigable, about halfe a league from the Point, we

faw in the judgement of all, aship vnder faile, and making toward it, after wee were very neere

it, we perceived it was a white Rocke that was in the Sea, which, as wee had notice, deceiveth

at this time we might be beyond Rafelenfe three leagues, whence it remayneth manifelt, this Point to fland in the height of twentie foure degrees; and of this it appeareth, that the Citie of Note the Citie Berenice, was built in this Point of Rafelenfe, for Piclomie doth place it vnder the Tropicke of Brenice. Cancer, by the Sea-fide in this Coast, and in his time they made the greatest declination, almost twentie three degrees fiftie minutes : Likewise, Pime, Lib.6. speaking of Berenice, saith, that in the Solficium at high noone, the Gnomon maketh no shadow, which signifieth, this Citie to be under the Tropicke.

CHAP.6.S.4. Notes of Points, Coasts, Ilands, and the variation.

Halfe an houre before Sunne-set, we were as farre as an Iland, which is called Xuarit, but pass Xuarit Iland. fine forward a quarter of a league, we met certaine shelues of fand, and others of stone. Wee To came to an Anchor betweene them in a good Harbour, which in the Arabique Tongue, is called Cial. In these shelues wee saw so great a quantitie of Foule, as hitherto in no part of this Sea wee haue seene : these shelues and Port of Cial, is beyond Suachen, one hundred and three

From Rafelnaxef, till so farre as the lland Xuarit, there may be betweene sixteene and seven- The coasting teene leagues. The Coast when we have doubled Rafelnaxef, which by another name. I call the from Rafe North-west point of the great Nooke, doth wind very much, and runneth into the Land, and maxes to Xuatit turning outward againe, it thrusteth into the Sea: a verie long Point of Sand, called Rafelenfet: Rafelnaxef shele two Points fretched North-east and South-west, and take almost the whole quarter of Point, North and South, there may be in the diffance about fixe leagues large, and prefently from Ra-20 felenfet, forward the Coast windeth directly to the North-west, till we are as farre as the Iland of Xuart, this diffance is betweene ten and eleven leagues : the Sea that lyeth in this diffance is

in onely three places foule and full of Shoalds, the first is, to the Sea of the Hand of Connaqua, where is seene a great and very faite Shoald, which going ouer water raiseth a great ridge of very great flones, and runneth a great space toward the Land. The second place is in the lland of Yuarit, for from this Iland, as well on the East as on the West-side, there goe great Shoalds and Xuarit Iland, a Flats toward the firme Land, in fuch manner that they feeme to flut vp all the Sea, that lyeth Calceuter floor Flats toward the firme Land, in fuch manner that they feeme to find vo all the Sea, that fyeth her weene the lland and the Land, but the third remayneth manifelt, to bee this part where at in heraothal in breadth all this present we lye at Anchor, called (int; in the which the Sea is so full and thicke, with so most as much. many Shoalds and Flats, that they have no number, neither can yee perceive any part of it, that 30 shewes it selfe free and void of them. The Iland of Xuarit is a Caleeuer-shot in length, and in breadth almost as much, the Land of it is very low, and in the midst of it a great Bush very greene, on the East-fide there is opposite to it a great Rocke like an Iland, this Iland is distant from the firme Land little more then halfe a league.

From Suaguento Raselense, the Countries are inhabited of a people, called Badois, which worthip Mahomet, the one and the other called of the Cosmographers Athiopians. And from Rafelenfe vpward to Soez, and the end of this Sea, the Coasts doe appertaine to the great Region of Egypt, therefore the Inhabitants which doe inhabit betweene them and the River Nilm, Ptolomie will haue them called, Arabique Egypians, Pomponins Mela, and other Authors doe onely Arabique Egypi gue them the name of Arabians, but in these dissifients we must hold with, and follow Prolemie, tians, 40 as Prince of the Cosmographers. These Arabique Egytian; all those that doe inhabit from the Mountaines toward the Sea, are commonly called Badoi, of whose customes and life, wee will

intreat in some other place. treat in some other place.

The eleuenth, we tooke in our sayles, and Rowed along: at nine a clocke of the day we enNooke soute.

Nooke soute. tred into a great Nooke, which is called Gadenauhi, there may be from the part of Giall to this leagues from Nook, about foure leagues: the Coast stretcheth North-west and South-east, and taketh of the Cial. North and South : the Land ouer the Sea, leaving the shape it had, to wit, of a Wall or Trench. it commeth very mountainous and doubled, making so many Mountaines, and so close, that it is a very strange thing. The Port of Gadenaubi, is beyond Suaquen, one hundred & seuen leagues, Variation to and in it the Pole is elevated foure and twentie degrees, and two third parts; being low water, to North-caft so it was one houre after high noone, and flowing from that houre, comming to the Point of full halfe a degree.

Sea, it was one houre after the Moone rose ouer the Horizon, & from that houre the Moone ascending by the Hemisphere, it beganne to ebbe, till the Moone passed the Meridian, about an houre of time, and prefently the Moone descending from hence, going to set under the Horizon, the Tyde began to flow till the Moone was fet, and an houre after it was fet, was full Sea. By night the wind was North-west, two or three houres after mid-night wee departed from Gadenaubi, and profecuting our journey, at the paffing betweene the Shoald which commeth from the North-west Point of the Nocke, and the Hand of Babato : we strucke and were fast Babato. vpon the Shoald, and all being troubled, wee were in the Net, (as they fay) but in this there was neither danger nor hurt, infomuch that we got out of this place, and hit voon the Channell,

60 and went along the shoare, rowing against the North-west winde till it was day. nd went along the moare, rowing against the North-west winder that twas day.

The twelfth, we rowed along the shore, one houre after Sun rife, we anchored in a hauen, which Hauen. is called Xarmeelguman, which in Arabique, is to fay, a cleft or opening of the Mountaines: A description This Port lyeth beyond Gadenauhi a league and a halte. Xarmeelquiman is a small Port, and of he Port of little pompous or proud in quantitie, but in qualitie great and Noble. This Port is from Sua- Xarmeelquiman

1128

we fet fayle going along the shoare, the winds came fresher and larger, that is, at East South east, about noone it blew verie hard, and it came with fo great Gales, that it raised the Sands of the Coast very high, raising them toward the heavens, in io great Whirle-winds, that they A firange chance of the Coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions, in to great visit the Winde chance of the feemed like great imoakes. About Euen-long time the Armie comming together, the Winde chance of the Coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in to great visit the Winde chance of the Coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining them toward the fractions in the Great visit that the coatt very night, raining the coatt very night. calmed altogether to fome thips; and some other that came hard by, or a little behind, or more to the Sea, or to the Land, had the wind to ftrong, that they could beare no fayle. The diffance from those that were in calme, and those that were in the storme, being no more then a stones cast, and presently within a little space, it tooke the shippes that were in calme with their Savles, up to the top, fo that they had the Winde very fruh; and the other that went verie to fwift, remained in calme, and so in short time the one was reuenged of the other. This chanced going close all together, in such fort, that it feemed a thing done for the nonce, and in mockage. Gales of winds In this chance, there came some Gales of East, and East North-east winde very great, and so that forched, hot, that in their forching they made no difference from flames of fire. The Dufts that were railed on the shoare, went sometime to one place, and sometimes to another, as they were drinen and cast with the Winds : many times we saw them make three or foure waies before they were alayed, or did fall in the Sea, with the Counter-winds that tooke them from divers parts. This Mysterie and Chance among hik and high grounds had not been much, nor any new thing to have happened; but so farre from the Coast with the Sea Winds, certainly it ought to be much regarded. When these Counter-winds beganne to take vs, we were as a Port. that is called Xaona, and going on in this fort, now irriking Sayle, now Hoyfing, fometimes ta- 20 king pastime at that which we saw, and other whiles dread and seare, we went almost till Sun fet , when we entred into a Port, called Gualibo , which is to fay in Arabique, The Port of Trouble : we went this day, and a piece of the night patt, about thirteene leagues.

minneth North-west, and by North and South-east, and by South, the distance is about tenne leagues : and from this Red hill, to a Point that lyeth beyond this Port of Gualubo almosta league, the Coast runneth North North-west, and South South-east, the distance is about fixe leagues. In these fixteene leagues the Coast is very cleere, and onely one league beyond the Red hill lyeth a Shoald, diftant from the Land halter a league large. In the length of these Coasts contained in the fixteene leagues, are many faire and tamous Ports, the most that I have seene or 30 thought to fee in fo short a space of way : among which Ports, there is one that is called Xaona, very great, where the Moores and Inhabitants doe fay, A famous Citie of Gemiles was built in times past, which looking well to Ptolomie in his third Table of Africa, was called Nechefia. Along the Sea runne great and infinite Mountaines, very double and close together, and behind farre within the Land, there arise over them great and mightie hils. In all the length of the Coasts where these Mountaines are placed, there are two great Mountaines, not onely more Noble then the other their neighbours : but all those that are in this Coast, the one of is very blacke, and feemeth as though it were findged, and the other is yellow, betweenethem very great and them are certaine heapes of Sand: From the blacke Mountaine inward to the Land, there is 40 an open field, where I faw many Trees very great and high, which tooke a great compaffe with the tops. These Trees were the first I faw in this Coast, that seemed Domesticall and proper,

From Gadenauhi, to a Port that is called, Xacara, (which a very red hill doth beguirt) the Coast

before the Port which is called, Xarmeelquiman. Gualibo, is beyond Suaquen, one hundred and twentie two leagues. This Port is like in fashion and entry, very much to the Port of Xarmeelquiman, in this onely they differ, that the other 40 hath ouer it many Mountaines, that enuiron it, and all the Land round about this, is plaine and vaste. The entry of this Port, is betweene certaine Rockes or Shoalds, whereon the sea breaketh very much, the Channell is deepe and large.

to the Land : for the other, that before I make mention of , which are a little beyond Macria

are like, and of the kind of them that grow in the Marilhes, by the Borders of the Sea, and of

the Rivers, and likewise those which stand in the Port of Karmeelquiman , and the other that

fland in the Port of Igidid are wilde, and fad to the fight, without boughes or fruit, but having leanes they feeme naked and dry. Thefe two Mountaines and Groue, stand about two leagues

The thirteenth of Aprill after Sunne rife, we weighed, and went out of the Port of Gualibo, the wind was North-west very strong, and made the Sea to rise very much, we rowed along the shoare: at ten of the clocke in the morning, wee entred into a Port, which is called Tuna, which is a league and an halfe beyond Gualibo.

Tuna is a small and soule Hauen, it is beyond Suaguen one hundred twentie three leagues and an halfe, the North Pole is elevated in it twentie five deg, and an halfe, the entring of the Hauen is betweene certaine Rockes, and within, the greatest partof it is occupied with a shoald and 60 flones , in such fort , that within there is a small and forrie Harbour, the turning which the point of the Land, that is on the North fide of the Port doth make, there is a good Harbour and Road against the North-west wind, the Land round about it is a very barren sand; on the land of this Port on the North-well fide there are three sharpe Mountaines of stone, made to my thinking, for a knowledge and token that there is an Hamen here.

One houre before Sunne set, we fastned our selves to a Shoald, which stands beyond Tuna a league, the Coast from a Point, which is almost one league beyond Gualibo, runneth with another Point that is beyond this Shoald, a league and a halfe, North North-well, South South-eaft. the distance is foure Leagues.

The fourteenth, we went along the shoare, the Sea rose very bigge, and molested the Rowers Avery faire The fourteenth, we went along use means, the second replacement of the second replacement, but refifting both Winde and Sea, after high noone wee entred into a very faire. Nooke, and in the hidnest corner of it, where it maketh a good Port; wee came to an anchor, tenine legges. This day and night we went about five leagues, and might be beyond Suaquen one hundred and from Suaquen twentie nine leagues, the Coast in theie fixe leagues stretcheth North-west and South-east, the Accest Port to Land ouer the Sea coast, some of it is low and plaine, and some mountainous.

The fifteenth by day, wee were a league short of Aleocer, and making to it, an houre and a The height of halfe after Sunne rile we came to the place, an cast anchor in the Hauen; we might goe the night Alesse. past, and this little of the day about feuen leagues, the Coast in this space runneth North North-

west, and South South-east.

The place of Alescer, noting well Pline in the fixt Booke of his Naturall Historie, and like- A description wife Ptolemie in the third Table of Africa, was called Philoteras, and all the Land that is con- of Alcocer. tayned from it vnto the Citie Arsinoe, and the end of this Sea was knowne by the name of Alescer iome-Enco; this place is so neighbouring to the River Nilms, that the diffance of both may bee betweene fifteene and fixteene dayes journey, fetting your face toward that place where the Sunne 20 fetteth. This is the onely Port in all this Coast, where all the provisions, which the Land of Egypt yeeldeth at this day, doe arrive, which Land is now called Riffs, and from hence all the Riffs, a fruitfull Townes, fituated within the Coasts of the Streight, doe carrie them and prouide themselves. Part of Eppt. The Towne of Alcocer was built in old time two leagues further upon the Sea coafts, but because of the suill discommoditie, and inynthy because the Port was not sufficient for so great a refort, they past it hither; and yet at this day are the old buildings of the ancient Towne seene, and are standing, and is called the old Alcocer, by the which I meane Philoseras. But returning to the description of the new Alescer, as twife I have verified, it hath of elevation of the Pole, fix New Alescer. and twentie degrees and one quarter, toward the North fide, it is beyond Smanen one hundred twentie fix dethirtie fixe Leagues; the Port is a great Bay, and very open to the Easterne winder, which in grees and a this Coast are of great force and trauerse, right against the place lye some shoulds though small, quarier. whereon the Sea breaketh, betweene the which and the shoare the Frigats and Ships harbour, most barren which come to feeke lading: the Towne is very fmall, and more then any other of the World, and miferable barren and miferable. The buildings differ very little from yards to put Cattell in; howfocuer, place in the the walls of the houses are of stone and clay, and others of sods, the tops of which have no coue- world, the ring at alliencept a few Mats or such base things, which defend the Inhabitants from the Sunne, buildings and and from the Raines, if peraduenture the Heauens doe fend them now and then, as it is truth, house that in this place they fall but feldome, and by a great chance. In all the circuit of the Place, It raines fel-Coaft, Fields, Mountaines or Hills, there groweth no manner of Herbe, Graffe, Bufh, Tree, or domein Alesany other thing appeare, except certaine blacke febrehed Mountaines, which make a great number of bare Hillocks, the which carrying this cuill flew and melancholike fight, doe emiron the place from Sea to Sea, and betweene them and the inhabiting, wherefore any wafte place chanceth to be, it is a drie and more then barren fand to the fight, mingled with infinite gravell. The Post is the worst of all that I saw in this Coast, in it for his excellence is not any kinde of Fish to bee found , having through all the Coasts and Strands very great abundance. Neere the Towne are three Wells of water whereof the people drinke, whole water with great diffi- Three Wells

The most expert Moores told me, that the name of Egyps was not known e neere them, but that all the Land from Aleccer, and a great way behind, wnto Alexandria, was called Riffa. In so which, more then any other Countrey of the World, there was great abundance of victuals and prouisions, Cattell, Camels, Horses, without having one foote of unprofitable ground in all that Prouince. I asked them what language or customes they had: they arriwered mee, that they followed the Arabians in all things. I asked them also for the qualitie of the Land : they told, It never raines that it was altogether very plane, and that it never rained in it , and that if at an, time it in Riffs. chanced to raine, it was held for a Wonder, the which God hath prouided for, with ordayning that the River Nilm should twice a yeere exceed his bounds and naturall course, and water the fields. I asked them also if from as fatre as Alcocer, one might sayle by the River to Alexandria: they told me they might, and from farre behind Alcocer toward the Abexi: but that there was along the River many Ilands and Rockes, for the which good Pilots were needfull, or

cultie yee can discerne from that of the Sea. Here is no kinde of Cattell.

60 to fayle by day. I asked them more, what the cause was, that the men of that Countrey inhabited fo great a fituation as Alcocer: they answered mee, They being the necreft Sobarren a Sea-hauen to Nilsus, and Province of Reffa, of all the Coaft, from whence the fruits and pro- Seat as Alester. uifions of the Land were transported. I asked them for what reason the Inhabitants of this place did not couer their houses, and made rooses vnto them : they answered me, that for the Sunne, the defence of Mats was inflicient, and that with raines they were not molefted, but

that against the malignitie and wickednesse of men, they were forced to seeke stronger defences. and therefore ordained to make the wals of flone and clay, and others of fods. I asked them when men there so fierce enemies of theirs were, against the which they armed themselves with so from Bulwarkes. They told me that they were Badois, a peruerse people, void of all good neffe, which many times with fudden affaults and robbings, did moleft the place, and did rob the Droues that came from Nilus with victuals and other prouisions.

The eighteenth of Aprill, in the morning, we faltned our felues to a Shoald, that is beyond Alcocer, about foure leagues, and presently past noone we set faile.

The nineteenth, there tooke vs like a gush of the North North-west wind, faire weather, halfe an houre past eight of the clock, that we tooke Port in an Hand, which is called Suffange-elbahar. to we loft of the way we had gone foure or fine leagues.

The descripti-

Suffange elbabar is to fay in the Arabicke Tongue, a Sea Spunge, this Iland stands beyond AL on of the Hand cocerthirteene leagues, the elevation of the Pole in it is seven and twentie degrees, all the land Suffan elbabar. is sandie without any Trees or Water, the Iland hath in length about two leagues, and leffe then A good Hauen a quarter in breadth, there is a good Hauen with all weathers, but in the firme Land are fo many for all wea- Nookes, Ports, and Harbours, that it is a wonder, the deepest Channell whereby the Sea that is betweene the Iland and the Mayne, is along the firme Land, because on the Ilands side there bee fome Shoalds, in the mouth and entring of this great Port, that is on the North-fide, there are certaine Shoalds aboue water, of the which comming in by day, yee need not feare, and in the other that lyeth on the South-fide, in the very midft of the entry of it, there is a great flone.

The twentieth of Aprill, 1541. at Sunne-let, we might be about fixe leagues beyond the lland Suffance-elbabar, the Coalt in these tixe leagues runneth in this manner, from Suffange-elbabar. to a fandie Point, that is, beyond the Hand a league and an halfe, North North-west, and South South-east, and from this sandie Point forward, the Coasts doe wind inward to the Land. and doe make a great Nooke, within the which doe lye many Hands, Ports, Creekes, Baves, and many other notable Harbours.

The one and twentieth, by day, we were fast by the Land of an Iland, which is called. Xedthe wind was calme, we rowed along the lland on that fide which is opposite to the Land of the Arabian, this is very high and craggie, all of an hard Rock, it bath in length three leagues, and two in breadth, it is beyond Alcocer, twentie leagues, there is no water in it, nor any kind 30 of Trees. The Land of the Iland lyeth betweene both Coasts, there is from it to the firme Land of every fide five leagues, beyond toward the North-west are other three smaller Hands. the Land of them is low, and betweene the one and the other lye fome Shoalds. An houre after Sun rofe, we were voon the Cape or Point of the Hand that lyeth toward the North-fide, and from thence we croffe to the Coast of the Arabian, the wind at this time was calme, wee went rowing, but within a little while it began to blow from the South-caft faire, and prefently weefet faile, and fayled to the North-west. At eleven of the clocke in the morning, we were with the Land of the Stonie Arabia, and prefently wee failed along the shoare : two houres before Sunfer, we came to an Anchor at the Towne of Toro, there may bee from the lland of Xeduam , to Toro twelve leagues, the Hand and Toro Lye North and by West, and South and by East.

A description of the Towne of Tore. Elina, a Towne now called

Elamiticus afbe twentic youd Tere.

Making good confideration, the Towne of Toro, was called in old time Elana, as we may fee in the writing of Ptolomie, Strabo, and other Authors, notwithflanding that in the Elevation of the Pole, and fituation, we find at this prefent a great change and divertitie in these places: because those that write of the Towne Elana, did shew it to bee seated in the inwardest part of a very great Gulfe, called Elanitics of the name of this place, and in the height of twentie nine degrees and one quarter. And now we know that Tore, hath eight and twentie degrees. one fixth part of Elevation of the Pole, and is scated along avery straite and long Coast. The cause of this deceit, if it be true, that these places be both one, might proceed of the euill information that those persons gave which saw it. But that Elana, is the Towne which now is Tore, appeareth, because that from it to Seez, as well by the one Coast as by the other, not onely wee find so no memorie of any Towne; rather the barrennesse of the Countrey, want of waters, and rough and craggie Mountaines, did give vs to vnderstand, that in no time, there could bee any inhabiting, so that having respect to Ptolomie, his placing the Towne Elana, in the Coast of Arabia Petrea, in the place most neighbouring vnto Mount Smai, and not to make any mention of a Towns betweene it and the Citie of the Heroes, which lyeth in the vttermost Coasts, where this Sea endeth, and feeing how in this Coast of Arabia, there is not any Citie, Village, orinhabiting that commeth fo neere the height of Elana as Toro, and iointly with this it is neighbouring to Mount Sinai, and how from Toro to Seez, there is not any inhabiting, it feemeth a just thing we should believe that Elana and Toro be one selfe-same place. This Towne of Toro also feemeth to be the Port which the holy Scripture calleth Ailan, where Salomon King of Inda, 60 commanded the ships to be made, which went to Tarfis, and to Ophir, to lade with Gold and Silver for to make the Temple. For taking away the second Letter from Ailan, the ancient names are almost one thing. Neither stands it with reason it should bee in any other place for the Timber whereof this Armie was made, was brought from the Mount of Libanon, and AnCHAP. 6. S.4. Famous Mount Sinai, The Fountaine of Moles.

IIAI

tilibanon, the which was a manifest thing, that because of the great labour and expences, which of necessitie would be in the carriage, they would direct it to the neerest and fittest Port for so or necessate would be in the lewes possessing the Region of Idumea, and that part of Arabia Petres, which is contayned from Toro to Sorz. Strabo a Capadocian, doth hold that Elans and Ailer, are one felfe-fame thing, and treating of this Citie in another place, hee faith. From the Port of Gaza, there is one thousand two hundred and sixtie furlongs to the Citie of Ailan. which is feated in the Golfe, or inwardest part of the Arabicke Gulie, and these are two, the one is toward Arabia and Gaza, which they call Elanium, of the Citie that stands in it: the other toward the Egyptian fide toward the Citie of the Heroes, and the way from Pelulia to to this Gulfe is very little; This is that which I could take out of ancient Histories. The Citie of Toro is feated upon the Sea-fide, along it a very faire and long itrand, and before wee came at it about a Canon shot, it hath twelue Palme-trees close together very neere the Sea, and from them inward to the Land. There runneth a plaine field till it commeth to the foot of certaine high Hils, thefe Hils are those which come from within the Streight of Ormuz; called in times patt, The Streight The Persian Gulfe, the which hitherto came running along the Coast, very high ouer the Sea, of Ormer. and as farre as Toro, they leave the Sea-coast, and with a great and sudden violence, they returne from hence to the Mayne toward the North-east, as angry and wearied of so continual and long Neighbour-hood with the waters, by there Mountaines is divided the Stonie Arabia, from Arabia Falix. And on the highest tops of them, doe some Christians at this day leade a holy life. 20 bat a little beyond Toro, by the border of the Sea, there beginneth a Mountaine to arife by little

and little, the which thrusting a bigge and high Point into it, it seemeth to them that are in the Towns or Port of it, that it endeth there; and gorth no further, and remayneth, making a shew of three great and mightie Mountaines separate the one from the other. This Towne is small and Christians line very pleasant, and well seated, all the people are Christians and speake Arabicke, it hath a Mo-pasterie of Friers of the Order of Monserva, in the which the Oracle or Image is of the bles-of these Monserva. fed Virgin Saint Katharine of Mount Sinas. The Nation of the Friers is Grecian, the Sea Port of taines. Tore, is not very great but fure from the winds that may doe it hurt. For it hath opposite on the Sea-fide a very long stonie banke, which runneth along the Coast of the Towne, betweene the which and the Land is the Hauen, and here, that is, as farre as the Towne, both the Coafts to are so neighbouring, that the space of Sea that separateth them is about three leagues journey, I being defirous to know some particularities of the Country, tooke notice of the Friers and the

information, they gave me was this.

Touching Mount Smaithey told me that it was thirteen fmal journies into the Land, in which Mount Sinai there might be eighteene leagues; the which Mountaine is very high, the Countrey round about fome it plaine and open, and that in the borders of it there was a great Towne of Christians, in the legence from which no Moore came in, but onely one that gathered the Rents and Duties of the Turkes. Tore, And that on the top of this Mountaine, there was a Monasterie of many Friers, where the bodie of the bleffed Virgin Saint Katharine lay buried. This Virgin, as Anthonie Archbifhon of Florence writeth, was carried away from the Citie of Alexandria by the Angels, and brought to 40 this Mountaine, and buried by them; the Friers told me, that about foure monethes past, this

bleffed and most holy body was carried with great pompe in a triumphant Chariot, all gilt to the Citie of faire, where the Christians of the Citie, which is a great part of the people, did come to receive it with great Procession and Solemnitie, and set it in a Monasterie much honoured; they told me that the occasion of this so great and strange remove, was the many discourtesses which The Alexander the Alarabes did to the Monasterie, and how far to excuse others, they were inforced to redeeme them for money, of the which the Christians of Cairo complayning to the Turke, obtayned of him that they might bring the bodie of this bleffed Virgin to the Citie, which the Friers did withstand, but it availed them nothing. I am in doubt of this so great a chance : for it may bee the Friers did fame thefe newes, for feare left we should goe and take this holy bodie from them, of for they looked for vs with an Armie of ten thousand men; notwithstanding, they affirmed it

very much, shewing great griefe and lorrow for the same. The Friers told me also, how that in the Mountaines, right against the Towne, which I have said before, to divide the Stonie Arabia. from Arabia Falix, there were some Heremites which leade a holy life, and that through this Arabia, there were many Townes of Christians I: asked them where they had notice that the Jewes did passe this Red Sea; to the which they answered me, that they knew no certaine place, but that there was no doubt of being betweene Toro and Soez. And that they croffed from the one Coast to the other, and that two or three leagues before yee come to Seek , in the Arabian Coast, there was that Fountaine which Mofes caused to breake in the Rocke, when he strooke it with his Rod, the Iewes being in great dispaire for thirst. The which at this day the Arabian The Fountain 60 Moores doe call, The Fountaine of Mofes, and that the water thereof was more then any c- of Mofes. ther pleasant and fingular; likewise, I asked them how many leagues there were from Tore to

Cairo by Land, they told me that feuen dayes journey going meanly, and that the right way Cairo feuen But that after the Gallies of the Turkes beeing there, they changed the way about two Land.

Where the to the place where Tore

Cairo at this

leagues higher, and that when they were as farre as Soez, they went toward the Sun fet. Haning had this information of the Friers, I talked with a very honest, learned, and cerious Moore, the which I neuer found in any Moore, and I asked of him, through what place he thought the lewer passed this Sea, he answered me, that that which was in memorie of the people, and likewise paffige of the in some Scriptures; was, that the lewes comming away, fleeing from the Egyptians, arrived 1. lews was. gainst Toro, on the land of the other side and coast that comment from the Abexs, where all the power of the Egyptian come vpon them for to destroy them, and being in so great danger, Moles. ing trom ine their Captaine made prayer vnto God, and presently strooke the Sea with a Rod twelue times. ued right a- and there were prefently opened twelve pathes, whereby all the people of the lewes entred and gainst Toro and arrived to the Land of the other fide, where now stands the Citie of Toro: And the Egyptian 10 paffed this fea, entring after them, the Sea closed vp, and all of them were slaine, whose number was about being the red fixe hundred thousand men. And also that the Leves, comming to the place of Toro, Mose their Captaine did leade them the way to Mount Sinai , where he many times fpake with God. I approued this opinion very much; for if this paffage had beene by Soez, as some will say, what now flandeth need had the Egyptians to enter into the Sea, to the end of perfecuting the lewer, being able to Burth Egyptian goe about the Nooke, and take the foreward of them, especially being Horse-men against Footthem and were men, which shall manifestly be seene in the Picture of Soez hereafter, and although in all these all drowned to things there was a Miracle, we fee alwaies, that in the like chances, there is a flew and manner the number of of reason. Being satisfied with these Histories of the Moore, I asked of him if it was true, that the Christians that were in Cairo, did carrie away from Mount Sinai, the bodie of Saint Kathe- 20 rine, he answered me, that no such thing was come to his notice, neither was it to be beleeved and that it was but foure moneths past since he was in Cairo, which Citie they cal Mecara, where he heard no fuch thing, and that it feemed an inpossible thing to him, that the Christians round about Mount Sings would permit fuch a thing, because all men held this woman for a Saint, and in great reverence. Hee told mee alfo, that before wee came to Soez, by two or three leagues, there was a Fountaine, which God gaue to the leves, by the intercession of Moses, which Prophet they call Mugaa, whose water surpassed greatly all the rest. I asked him for the Towne of Seez, how it was. He answered me, that he was never in it, neither could any person enter, except those that by the Gouernour of Cairo were ordained for the keeping of the Galleys, and that necrer then two leagues none might come to it vnder paine of death.

The two and twentieth of Aprill, a cleere morning, we departed from Toro. The foure and twentieth, we were in nine and twentie degrees feuenteene minutes.

A Description of the Nooke or Bay beyond Toro, and how by it is understood the Gulfe Elaniticus. Of Soez, and of their returne homewards. Of the Badois, and of their customes, and why this Sea is called Red.

Wentie leagues beyond Toro, and fiftie two from Alecer, the Land of Egypt, or Coast that commeth from Abexy, commeth out into the Sea with a very lowe and long Point, from the Coafts winding a great space inward to the Land, running very winding and more then any other crooked, after having made a very great and very faire Nooke, it entreth into the Sea with a mightie and great Point very high , from the which to Soez is three small leagues iourney, these two Points, betweene the which the Nooke is contayned, ilretcheth North-west and by North, and South-east and by South, the distance is fine leagues, the Land by the Sea coast of this Nooke is most high and rough, and therewith it is barren and drie, within the Nooke it is so deepe, that if we come not very neere the shoare, with fiftie fathome we shall take no ground, which ground is a foft fand like Oze. This Nooke vn- 50 doubtedly, I hold to be the Gulte which the Cosmographers doe call Elaniticus. But Strabo a Capadocian, and Ptolomie were deceived in the knowledge and fituation of it: for they placed it the Gulfe Elsin the Coast of stonie Arabia, little more or leste, where now stands the Towne of Toro; and that this is fo, the words of Strabo, which I repeated a little before in the Description of the Towns of Tore, where the Arabicke Gulfe endeth, doe plaintly fay, to end in two Gulfes, one of them which standeth on the Arabian side, called Elanitiess, and the other on Egypt side where flandeth the Citie of the Heroes. Ptolomie doth shew vs plainely the Gulfe Elanticus to be in the Coast of Arabia, where now standeth the Towne of Tore, whereof I cannot but wonder euery time I doe remember how Prolomie was borne in Alexandria, where he wrote his Historie, and dwelt in it all the dayes of his life, which Citie is very neighbouring to these places.

The fixe and twentieth, weighing presently our Grapples, wee set tayle; at eleuen of the clocke of the day we were fast by the shoare, where we found all the Armie , and striking our fayles, wee rowed a little along the shoare, and cast anchor; but two houres before Sunne set we weighed againe, the wind was at North, wee rowed along the Coast, and before Sunne fet CHAP.6. S. 5. The ancient Citie of the Heroes, now Soez. we tooke Hauen behind a Point which the Land of Arabia thrusteth out, where there is good

being and harbour against the North winds: this day we went directly one league and an haife. the point is flort of Soez, three small leagues, it beareth with the North-west point of the great Nooke, which I said to be the Gulfe Elaniticus, East and West: there may be in the distance one league: from hence about halfe a league within the Land, standeth the Fountaine of Moles, of Moles Founleague: from hence about hatte a reague within the which I have spoken alreadie, when I spake of Toro. And now, as soone as we were at anchor, The end of we went on shoare, and we saw the end of this Sea, which seemed to vs alreadie infinite, and this Sea, callikewise the Masts of the Ships, and all things gaue vs great content, and joyntly with it great led byvs he care. By night the wind was at North very hard, we lay all night at anchor till it was day. red Sea, and

The feuen and twentieth in the morning, the wind blew hardat North North-weft, at ten by the Moores, of the clocke we departed from this Point, and made ahead to Soez, and to the end of this Sea, Seez kept by going along rowing, and being about one league from it, I went before with two Catures to fpie the Turke with or view the fituation of Soez, and the place of landing, and wee came thither at three of the Garifons. clocke in the afternoone, where wee faw in the field many troopes of Horse-men, and in the Towns two great bands of Souldiers, they shot at vs many shots out of a Blocke-house. The The Nauis of Armie of the Turke was as followeth; that is, one and fortie great Galleys, and nine great Ships, the Turkes. having scene all these things, we went toward the Land of the Nooke, which is on the West fide, and came to an anchor neere the shoare in five fathome water, the ground was a fost fand.

and very small, a very good harbour for thips: this day at Sunne set we saw the Moone. It is to be held for certaine, Soez to be called in times palt, The Citie of the Heroes, for it dif- Soez in times ferch nothing in heighth, function and confrontings, as we may fee in Ptolomie Tab. 3. Africa, past called especially, See being leated in the vttermost Coasts of the Nooke where this Sea of Mecca enthe littles. deth, in the which the Citie of the Heroes was feated, as it is read in Strabo the feuenteenth Booke, faving these words. The Citie of the Heroes and Cleopatra, which some doe call Arstroe. are in the vetermost bounds or end of the Arabicke Sine, which is toward Egypt. Plinte in the fixth Booke of the Naturall Historie, seemeth to call the Port of Soez, Danas, by reason of the The Port of Trenches, which they opened from Nulss to this Sea; Soez hath of elevation of the Pole. nine Danage and twentie degrees three quarters, and it is the neerest Port and Towne of all the Streight to The Citie of the great Citie of Caire, called anciently Babylonis of Egyps, and from it to the Leuant Sea, Heroet and 30 where is one of the seuen Mouths of Nilus, called Pelusiums, may bee fortie leagues journey, some call Asia.

which place is called Ifthmus, which is to fay, A straight or narrow Land betweene two Seas. nee in the end Touching this way, the words of Strabe in his feuenteenth Book, are thefe. The Ifthmus that light of the Arabike betweene Pelulium and the Extreme, where the Citie of the Herees standeth, is of nine hundred Sine Islamo. furlongs. This is the Port of the red Sea, whither Cleopatra Queene of Egypt commanded the Balylonia of Bships to be carried by land from the River Nilus, after the victorie gotten by Cafar against Antheorem Circ thonie, for to flee in them to the Indians; And likewife Sefoftris King of Egypt, and Darius King Pelusio, one of of Persia, did take in hand to open a Trench vnto the River Nilus, to make the Indian Ocean na- 7. Mouthes of uigable with the Sea Mediterraneum, and none of them finishing the worke, Piolomie made a Nilus. Trench of an hundred foot broad, and thirtie foot deepe, which hauing alreadie almost finished, which the 40 it is faid, he left vnfinished the bringing of it to the Sea, for feare that the water of Nolses would Kings of Egypt

become falt, the water of the Streight mingling it felfe with it. Others doe fay, that taking a mad levell, the Architects and Mafters of the worke, did find, that the Sea of the Streight was three 18thme is the cubits higher then the Land of Egrpe, and feared that all the Land would bee drowned. The space of 40. Authors, are Diodorus Siculus, Planie, Pomponius Mela, Strabo of Capadocia, and many other tweene Seq Cosmographers. Although the Towne of Sonz was in old time great in name, at this day it is and Peluso. fmall enough, and I believe it had alreadie beene etterly loft, if the Turkift Armie had not lyne there. The fituation of it is in this manner, in the front and face of the Land which is opposite Them mer to the South, where this Sea endeth, is opened a Mouth not very great, by the which a Creeke or of the fituation

Arme of the Sea entring a little space into the land, it winderh presently along the coast, toward 50 the fetting of the Sunne, till a little Mountaine doth oppose it felse, which alone rifeth in these parts, from the which to the mouth and entring of the Creek, the Creek and firme Lan I remay. ning on the North fide, and the nooke and end of this Sea on the South fide, and the little Mountaine to the West, all the space that is contained is a very long and narrow Tongue or Point of fand, where the Gallies and Nauie of the Turke lie aground; and the warlike and ancient Town of Soez is fituated, in which appeareth at this day a little Caftle, and without two high and ancient Towers, as ancient Reliques of the great Citie of the Heroes, which was there in times past. But on the Point of fand where the Creeke entreth, there standeth a great and mightie Bulwarke of moderne worke, which defendeth the entrie and mouth of the River, and like wife A mighie Bulscoureth the Coast by the sterne of the Galleys, if wee would land in that place : and besides, warke of mo-

60 there runneth betweene the Galleys and the strand, a Trench with a Ditch cast vp, which maketha shew like a Hill, in such fort that as well by mens worke, as by the situation and nature of the ground, the place is very strong and defensible. Now considering this landing of the place for to enter into it, it feemed to me not to be possible in any place, onely behind the little Mountaine and West side, for here we shall be free from their Arcillerie, and polletting the Mountaine,

1144

it will bee a great meanes to get the victorie: but wee are to note, that along this Strand is shoaly about a Bow shot, and the ground a foft Clay and sticking Sand, which I perceived feeling the ground from within the Foyst, which is very troublesome and prejudiciall to them that are to Land; touching the Antiquities and things I could know of Soez, they were told mee by fome men of the Streight, especially by the Moore that informed mee of the particulars of Tore, and all of them are as followeth, that is, that three leagues from Seez towards Toro. was the Fountaine of Moses, and the Moores and Inhabitants doe confesse, that God gave se vnto the Iemes by a Miracle; and also they have in their memorie, that in this place there was a great Citie in old time, of the which they fay, some buildings are yet to bee seene, they could not tell mee the name of it. They told me also that afore-time, the Kings of Egypt would haue made a Trench from Nilm , where the Citie of Carro Handeth vnto Seez, for to make 10 fitteen leagues these Seas Nauigable, and that they are seene at this day, although the length of time had defaced them and itopped them vp, and that those which trauelled from Tore to Caire of necession tie should passe by them; some told mee that the occasion of this opening was not to joyne the Straight with the River Nilm, but to bring the Water to the Citie that was there. I asked them what Countrey was there betweene Soez and Cairo, they told mee that a very plaine Field, full of Sand and barren without any Water, and that from the one to the other was three dayes journey going at leifure, which was about fifteene leagues, and that in Sees, and round about it, it rained seldome, and when it chanced, it held on much, and that all the yeare the

A description

North wind blew with great force.

From Toro to Soez is eight and twentie leagues Iourney, without any Iland, Banke, or Shoald, 20 of the Sea and that may hinder or doe any harme to the Nauigators, thele eight and twentie leagues, lye in this Land, that go- manner : departing from Toro, through the midft of the Current , yee run about fixteene leagues North-west and by North, and South-east and by South, and hitherto the Coast commethin an equall distance and separation, having from the one to the other, the space of three leagues, but in the end of these fixteene or seventeene leagues, the Lands begin to close very much, and to iowne in such fort, that from Coast to Coast there is but one league, and continueth this narrownesse two leagues, and presently the Land that commeth from the Abexis withdraweth it felfe.making the great and faire Nooke aboue faid; treating of the lituation and place of the Gulfe called Elanticus, the Channell in the middle distance, from the end of the fixteene or feuenteene leagues till as farre as the North-west Point which commeth out of this Nooke. lyeth North North-west South-South-east, the distance is eight leagues, in this place the Lands doe Neighbour very much againe, for the Land of the Arabian thrufting out a verie long and low Point outward, and the Land that commeth from the Abexy, comming forth with another bigge and high Point, at the end of the Nooke on the North-west side, there remayneth from Land to Land one leagues journey or little more, and from these Points to See, and the end of this Red Sea, the Coaft on each fide doe wind, and make another Nooke, which hath in length little more then two leagues and a halfe, and in breadth one and an halfe, where this Sea so celebrated in the holy Scripture, and spoken of by Writers, doth finish and make an end; this Nooke is extended through the midit North and South, and taketh somewhat of the 40 North-west and South-east; the distance is two leagues and an halfe; as touching the Land that commeth along the Coast from Toro to Soez; wee must note, that a Caleeuer-shot beyond Toro on the Arabian shoare, there ariseth a Hill very neere the Sea-side, which is all bespotted with certaine red streakes, which goe from one side to the other of it; giving it a great grace, this Hill runneth still along the Coast about fifteene or fixteene leagues, but it hath not these workes, and red streakes; more then fixe leagues space beyond Toro, and in the end of these fifteene or fixteene leagues, the Hill maketh a great knob and high, and from thence by little and little, the Hill doth for sake the Coast, and goeth into the Land till it come within a league short of Sozz, where it endeth, and there remayneth from this bigge and high knob vnto Seez, betweene the Hill and the Sea, a very plaine and low ground, which in places hath 50 a league in breadth, and in others neerer to Seez, a league and an halfe : By this Hill towards Toro, I saw great heapes of Sand along to the top of the Hill, reaching the highest of it, hauing no fandie places betweene the Hill and the Sea, and likewife, by the Clifts and Breaches many broken Sands were driven; whence I gathered, how great the force and violence is heere of the crosse winds, seeing they snatch and drine the Sand from out of the Sea, and lift it so high; these crosse windes, as I noted, the Sands did lye and were driven, are Wests and West North-wests.

But as touching the description of the Land, that goeth along the Sea, on the Coast of Abexy, from as farre as Toro, wee must note, that there runne certaine great and high Hils or Mountaines very high, and ouer-appearing the Coast of the Sea, the which about feuenteene leagues beyond Toro toward Soez, doe open in the midft, and descend equall with the Field, and presently they rise againe very high and continually along the Sea, till they come a league short of Soez, where they stay and passe no further.

I confidering with great diligence, the fluxes and refluxes of the Sea that Iveth from Toro Therides from to Soez . found them to bee no greater nor smaller then the other of these Coasts of the Toro to Soez all Streight, but after the fame manner. Whence appeareth the fallhood of fome Writers, which ther Ports of faid the pathes were not opened to the lewes through this Sea, but that the Water ebbed for the Sea. much in this place, that it remained all dry, the which the lewes tarrying for, had the paffage free to the other fide.

Confidering also, whereby Sessifre King of Egypt, and afterward Ptolomie could make the Trenches and Channels from Nilss to this Sea, for to make it navigable with the Easterne Sea. I faw it was not possible except by two places, which stand from Toro to Soez. The first, by the 10 Breach which the Hils doe make that runne along the Sea, by the Coast that commeth from debexi, which Breach is feuenteene leagues beyond Toro, and eleuen before yee come to Soez. The fecond by the end of this Sea and Nooke, where the Towne of Soez standeth. For in this place the Hils on both fides doe end, and remaine all on Land and Field very low, without Hillocks or high Hils, or any other impediment. And in this place it feemeth to me more certaine and convenient for to take fo great a worke in hand, then by the breach I fpake of because in this place the Land is very low, and the way shorter, and hath an Hauen heere; and besides these two places, any where else I thought it impossible, because as well on the one Coast as on the other, the Mountaines are fo great and so high, the which are all, or the greatest part of a Rock and hard stone, that it is not in the judgement of men they may be cut, and bring 20 through them a Channell or Trench that might be Nauigable. Whence it must remaine manifeit Soez to be the Port where Cleopatra commanded the Ships to bee brought by Land from Nilse, croffing the Istomes, howfoeuer that a thing of fo much labour and importance, in the which the breuitie was the greatest part of the Nauigation. It was manifest that they would feeke the shortest, neerest, and easiest way they could find of them all. And because this is that

which commeth from Nilus, and the Citie of Capro to Soez. Wee must make no doubt that this Nawy of Cleopatra was brought hither; and likewife the Trenches from Nelse, whereby Cleopatra some they would communicate these Seas, especially considering, how from as farre as Toro, all the manded the Coast of Egypt is waste, and without any Port, except this of Soez, which stands in the vt. ships to bee

most end of this Sea. Confidering also in the dayes we spent betweene Toro and Soez, I saw that the Heaven was from Nilya. very close ouer-cast with very thicke and blacke Clouds, which iteemed contrary to the nature croffing the and condition of Egypt: for in it, as all men affirme, it raineth not, neither doe the Heavens or Iflamia. the Ayre permit any Clouds, nor Vapours, but it may be that the Sea of his owne nature doth rasse here these Vapours, and into the Land the Heauen may be free, and void of them, as we fee in Portugall, that in the Citie of Lifton the daies being cleere and pleasant, and in Smira, which is foure leagues from thence, are great ouer-castings, mists, and shewers. Now this Sea contained from Toro to Soez, is very tempeltuous and fuddame, for whenfoeuer it beginneth to blow from the North, which is the Wind that raineth in this place, though his force be not very great, presently the Sea is raised so high, and proud, that it is a wonder, the Waues being 40 euery where so coupled and like to breake, that they are much to bee seared. And this hapneth not because of the little depth heere, for all this Sea is very deepe, and onely along the Coast that commeth from the Abexi, close with the shoare it is a little shoally. About this

Sea, I faw certaine Sea-foames, which by another name are called, Euill Waters, the greatest that I have seene, for they were of no lesse bignesse then a Target, their colour a whitish dun. Theie Sea-foames doe not palle from Toro downe-ward, as not willing to trouble or occupie a flrange Kingdome, but contenting themselves with their ancient habitation, which is from Toro to Soez. And prefently going out of this place or bounds, there are infinite small ones, and like the other, and they are bred and goe about the Sea; in the daies that I was in this Sea, The end of the contained from Toro to Sorz, I felt by night the greatest colds I can remember to have past, but voyage to Sorz when the Sunne came, the heate was vnfufferable.

The eight and twentieth of April, in the morning we departed from before Soez, toward Maçua. At Sunne set, we were one leagueshort of a sharpe and red Pike, which stands ouer the Sea. This day we went about twentie leagues. By night wee tooke in our Sailes, and ran along the shoare with our fore-sailes onely, the Wind blew hard at North North-west : Two houres within night we came to an Anchor neere the shoare, in three to thome water, the Heauen was very darke, and couered with many thicke and blacke clouds. The nine and twentieth in the morning, we let Sayle. At nine of the clocke in the morning, we entred in Tore, and came to an Anchor, but within a little while we weighed againe, and went to an Hauen about a league from thence, which is called, The Watering of Sulman, where wee tooke in Water, Sulman water 60 digging pits in the Sand, a stones cast from the Sea, in which pits we found much water, though ring.

The thirtieth, in the morning wee departed from the watering of Sulman: halfe an The height of house pair ten, we took Hauen in the first of the three Ilands which fland two degrees to the findabeneath North-west of the Iland of Xedosam, and presently I went a sheare with the P.Jot, and we took flands beneath

the Sunne, and in his greatest height it rose over the Horizon eightit degrees, a little scant. The

declination of this day was feuenteene degrees, fixe and thirtie minuts, whence it followeth this Iland to fland in twentie feuen degrees & two third parts. The first of May, the fun being vo we

fet favle. About Even-fong time we were with a great Iland, which hath in length two leagues.

& thrusteth out a Point very close to the firme Land, where betweene the firme Land and the

Iland, is a fingular good Harbor for al weathers, for all the ships of the world. The second of May.

at Sun set, we came to an Anchor in the Port of Goelma, a Port onely for small Vessels, fafe from

the North, and North-west. Within the Landa little space, is a dry Brook, whereby in Winter

the water of the floods, which descend from the Mountaines doth avoid, where digging a little.

ye finde fresh water, and heere is a Well, though not very plentifull of water. This Port was 10

Robalel Xame is a great Port, wherein may harbour many Shippes, it is very deepe within.

called Goelma, which in Arabique, is to fay, The Port of water, it lyeth to the North North. west of Alcocer, the distance is toure leagues. The fourth of May, we rowed along the shoare : almost Sunne set, we came to an Anchor in a Port, which is called Acallaibe, which standeth beyond X. sears toward the South-east two beyond Xuan. leagues. By night the wind was at North North-welt, we lay all night at Anchor. Acallaibe is a small Port, but very good, betweene Xacara and the blacke Hillocke.

A Description of the Port of A Description of the Port Behe'el Xame.

This place was called Bobale! Xame, because within the Land dwelt a Badoil, very rich, which was called Bobalel, the which came or fent to fell Cattell to the Ships, which did take or come into that Hauen, and Xame, is to fay, Land. And theere wee found an honourable Toombe 20 within a house like a Chappell, where was hanging a Guidon or Ancient of Silke, and many Arrowes or Darts round about the Graue, and about the Wals and Cords a great quantitie of an Arabian. Bulls did hang. At the head of the Graue there was a Table standing vpright, with a great

Epitaph, and about the house, many Waters and Fragrant fraelling things.

Lenquiring of the Moores and Arabians of fuch a thing, I learned that here lay buried a very honourable Arabian, of the Linage of Mahomet, which croffing these Coasts, fell very ficke, and in this Port ended his daies : and they made him this Graue as a man of fo higha Genealogie. Where the Xarifes Inda and great Prelats gave Indulgences, and granted pardons to every one that should visite this house. But the offerings and reverence, which the Portugals did vnto it, was to facke the house, and afterward for to burne it, that no 10 figne was left where it had beene. In this Port wee found great footing of Tygres, and wilde Goats, and other Beafts which came all to the Sea, as though they came to feeke water for to drinke.

A Description

ftomes & life,

The Badon, are wilde or

The many times that I bring to the field the name and memorie of the Badois , and likewife the travelling by their Coasts and Countries, doth binde me to speake some thing of them. Badoil, in good Arabique, fignifieth a man that liveth onely by Cattell : these men, called Badoies, is properly the people of the Troglodithas , Ophiotofagu , of the which Ptolomie , Plinie , Pen. poniss Mela , and other Authors doe write : the which Troglodithas or Badoies , doe line in the Trocledition, or Mountaines, and coafts of the Sea, which are contayned from the coaft of Melinde and Magadoxa, to the Cape of Guardafui, and from thence going inward to the Streight, they doe begirt and occupie all her Coafts, as well on the one fide as on the other, and turning againe outward on the Arabian fide, they runne along the Sea to the Streight of Ormaz, and all these Lands may rather be affirmed to be occupied by them then inhabited.

The Badoies are wilde men, amongst whom is no civill societie, no truth nor civilitie vsed: which is the generall name They worthip Mahomet, and are very bad Moores, about all other People they are given to Stealths and Rapine ; they eate raw fielh, and drinke milke ; their habite is vile and filthy, fagis or sisfagis they are greatly endued with swiftnesse and nimblenesse; they fight on foote and horse-backe, their weapons are Darts, they never have peace with their Neighbours, but continually have They have no warre, and fight with every one.

Those that dwell along the Red Sea, from as farre as Zeila vnto Suaquen, doe fight with the go Abexis; and those from Suaquen to Alcocer, have warre with the Nobis; and those which inhabite from Alcocer to Soez , and end of this Sea , doe moleft continually the Leyptians. But returning by the Arabian fide, by all the Coast of the Sea, that lyeth from Sozz to the Streight of Ormuz, doe contend with the Arabians. Among the Badois there is no King or great Lord, but line in Troopes or Factions; they permit no Towne in their Fields, neither have they any certaine Habitation, for their cultome is to be Vagabonds, from one place to another, with their Cattell. Not onely doe they abhor Lawes and Ordinances , but also the Sutes and Differences that arise among it them, they will not have them judged by any Custome, and they are content that their Xeque doe determine them as he lift; their dwelling is in Caues and Holes, and other fuch like habitations, but the greatest part doe helpe themselves with Tents 60 and Boothes; their colour is very blacke, their language the Arabian, the rest of their Custome

The tenth of May, by day, we weighed anchor from the Port of Igidid, An houre before Sun fet we failned on a Shoald, which flood about foure leagues from Farate toward the South. In this Shoald is an excellent Hauen, and it is fo great, that wee could not differne with our fight the end of it, it lyeth almost East South-east, and West North-west, but it is very crooked and winding. The two and twentieth of May, 1541 by breake of day, we were one league short A great Groups of the great Groue, that standeth source leagues from Maczana, the wind was of the Land. About source leagues from Maczana, the wind was of the Land. About source leagues from Maczana, the wind was of the Land. nine of the clocke it began to blow from the North North-east, a faire gale. We entred at noone from Macrae. into the Port of Maczna, where we were received with great ioy and feast of our Armie. From the day wee entred in Mazzna, which was the two and twentieth of May, to the fitteenth of June, the winds blew alwaies at North, North North-east, and North North-west : but from the fifteenth of lune to the feuenth of July, they blew Eatterly, that is; East. East

to South-eaft, and South-eaft, many times they brought great flormes. The last day of June at They lavae night, we had a ftorme from the South-east of fo much winde, that it droue the Gallions and Marian thirtie they passed great danger of striking a ground. This storme brought much Raine and searcfull two daics. Thunders, and there fell a Thunder-bolt from Heanen vpon a Gallion, and comming downe by the Maff, it raced it all : and likewise the second of July, wee had another Horme from the East very great, which vnfastned many ships, and lasted the most part of the day. From thence to the leventh of July, although we had other flormes, they were but small : From the seventh of July, to the ninth of the same, the Wind came to the Land and brought two stormes from the West, but the wind was not over-much.

The ninth of July, 1541. one houre after Sunnerose, wee fet sayle from Maczua. The ele-20 uenth of July, by breake of day, we were two or three leagues thort of the Point of Dallagua, that I veth on the North-fide, and betweene certaine flat I lands which have some Woods, and doe lye scattered on this side of the Iland; wherefore wee set all Sayles and went aloofe all that wee could to goe betweene two of their Hands, the wind was almost North-west verie faire, we fayled North-east and by North, having doubled a Shoald we came to an Anchor and two hours after noone we fet fayle againe, the wind about North North-east faire, wee fayled along the shoare of the Iland of Dallagna. An houre before Summe set, we were with an of Iland Sand very flat, which is called Dorat Melcuna, from the which to all parts there came out great Darst Melcuna Shoalds: Sunne altogether fet, wee were a league fhort of the Hand of Xamoa, and from the affat lland of

Point of Dallayar, which flands on the West side, and opposite to the first Land of the Astron. 30 natural views of the State of the St faw the mouth of the Streight, and we might be from it three leagues, and we faw all the Armie Ive at Hull, and prefently we fet fayle altogether.

Before we departed from the Arabique Gulie, or Streight of Mecca, which is all one, it will Whether this be just to speake tomething of my opinion, and of that which I have been, bouching the scason Sea of the that monued the ancient men to call all this Sea, the Red Sea: and likewife, whether her colour red or no, and doth differ from the other of the great Ocean, or not. Plime in the fixt Booke of the Nam- the causes rall Historie, Cap. 23. rehearfeth many opinions, whereby the people called this Streight the wherefore they

40 Red Sea. The first is, that it tooke this name of a King that reigned in it, called Eribra, because called it the E. ubros in the Greeke, is to fay, Red. Another opinion was, that of the reflection of the Sunbeames, there grew in this Sea reddish colour. Some held, that of the Sand and Ground that the Red Sea. runneth alongit it. Others also beleeved, that this water was Red of his owne Nature, whereby all this Sea got this name. Of these opinions the Writers chose them that they liked beft. and feemed most certaine. Now the Portugals that have Wavigated this way in times past, affirmed this Sea to be all spotted with certaine red strakes : the cause they attributed vnto it, is this. They faid, the Coast of the Arabian was naturally verie red, and that as in this Countrey there arose many flormes, and did raise great duffs toward the skies, after they were verie high, driven with the force of the Winds, they fell in the Sea, and this Dull being red, it did

50 Dye the water of it, whereby it was called the Red Sea. When I came to Socatora, till I paft all the Coasts of this Sea, and let my selle before Soez, I never lett by day nor night, to consider of these Waters, and viewing the colour and manner of the Countrey that goeth along the shoare : and certainly, I was not so troubled for any thing, as for the bestowing my labour in obtaining the truth of the things, and to fearch out the occasion of them, and that I got of mine owne Industrie, and most clearely haue I seene many times, is as followeth. First, it is false to fay, that the colour of this Sea is Red, for it hath no difference from the colour that all the other Water of the Sea doth shew vs, and to say that the dusts which the winds doe snatch from the Land and drive into the Sea, doe staine the Water where they fall, till now wee faw no such thing, feeing many stormes raife great dusts, and drive them into the Sea, but not to change the 6: colour of the Waves thereof. And to fay that the Land over the Sea Coast is Red, they obser-

wed not well the Coafts and Strands: for generally on the one fide, and on the other, the Land by the Sea is browne, and verie darke, and feemeth footcht: and in some places it shewes blacke, and in others white, and the Sands hath their owne colour, but onely in three places there are certaine pieces of Mountaines which have certaine veines of Red, where Poringals

that is, toward Soes, and the end of this Sea; but the three hils that hew this red colour, are of a verie hard Rocke, and then all the Land round about that we can fee, is of the common and

accustomed colour. But the truth of these things is, that the Water of this Sea taken substantia ally, hath no difference of hiscolour; but in many places of it, the waves thereof came by acci-

Red Corall

CHAP. VII.

Abriefe Relation of the Embassage which the Patriarch Don Ion Ber-MVDE z brought from the Empereur of Ethiopia, Dulgarly called PRESBY-TER IOHN, to the most Christan and zealous of the Fath of CHRIST. Don Iohn, the third of this Name, King of Portugall : Dedicated to the most High and Mightie King of Portugall, Don SEBASTIAN of most bleffed hope, the first of this Name. In the which he reciteth also the death of Don CHRISTOPHER of Gama: and the fucceffes which happened to the Portugals that went in his Companie.

> Printed in Lisbon, in the honfe of FRANCIS CORREA, Printer to the Cardinall the Infant, the veere of I 5 65.

A Letter of the Patriarch Don I o HN BERMYDEZ, to the King our Lord.

Off High and Mightie King, your Highnesse said to me few dates agoe, that you would be glad to know the truth, of what happened to a Captaine and people, which the King your Grand-sather which is in Glorie, gaue unto me for the succour of the Emperour your crama-jancer more us no travers, game wine mt for the juscour of the Limpersus of Ethiopia Onadinguel, challed Presbyter thou, for to anothe the errouser which So he callether the proposal das write of this, information that even in the Name they erre, naming Maniferiji thom Don Paul, he being Don Chrittopher his Broker. And abstrake write, and for foune things to before mend-on the state of the stat in this small writing all that passed. The Lord keepe your person, multiply your young age, and prosper

your Royall estate, Amen.

Don Io HN BERMY DEZ elected Patriarch of the Presbyter, and fent to Rome: Hureturneinto Ethiopia: Arrivall at Maczua; The death of the Negus, entertainment of him and CHRISTOPHBR of Gama, with the Portugall Forces by the Queene Regent.

Faithfull and good Christian, called Onadinguess, being Emperour in the Kingdome of Ethiopia, (vulgarly called Presspeer Islan) and the Patriatch of that Country, by name Abuna Marcos, being at the point of death in the yeere of our Redemption, 1525. The faid Emperour faid to the Patriarch, that he requested him, that according to their custome, he before his death would institute me for his Successour, and Patriarch of that Countriev. And the faid Patriarch did to, ordering me first with all the facred Orders. The which I accepted with fuch condition, that it should bee confirmed by the chiefe Bishop of 50 Rome, successour of Saint Peter, to whom wee all were to give obedience. The said Emperour answered me, that he was well contented : and moreouer he defired me, that for my felie, and for him, and for all his Kingdomes I should goe to Rome, to give the obedience to the holy Father : and from thence should come to Portugall, to conclude an Embassage , that he had fent hither by a man of that Countrey, called Tegazano, in whose company came the Father Francis Zasa Zabothe Aluarez. After many troubles passed in the lourney, I came to Rome, the Pope Paul the third Frietmentiogouerning then in the Apostolike Sea : the which received me with great clemencie and favour, ned in Allere, and confirmed all things as I brought them, and at my request he ratified it all againe, and commanded me to fit in the Chaire of Alexandria, and that I should entitle my selfe Patriarch and Bithon of the Sea.

60 From Rome I departed towards Portugall, where I came, the King your Grand-father of glorious Memorie, being in the Citie of Enora, who reloyced particularly at my comming, to conclude as he defired, the Embaffage which the Tagazano had brought, for hee had beene here twelue yeares, without concluding any thing through meere negligence. For the which the Emperour Onadivguel commanded me, that I should take away his charge of Embassadout, and Zaga Zebbhis should apprehend him, and carrie him a Prisoner with me. And therefore I brought him a letter negligence.

dent to feeme very red, which is caused in this manner. From the Citie of Suaquen vnto Aleacer, which is, one hundred thirtie fixe leagues journey, the Sea is all thicke with Shoalds and Shelues, whose ground is of a stone, called Corall-stone, which groweth in certaine Trees and Clusters, spreading one way, and another way certaine braunches, properly as the Corall doth, and this stone is so like vnto it, that it deceiveth any person that is not very skilfull in the lo growth and nature. The colour of this stone is of two forts; the one wonderfully white, and the other very red. In some places this stone lies couered with very greene Ozies; and in other free from this Herbe, which Slime or Ozies in some places, is very Greene; and in others in maketh a colour very like Orange-tawny. Now we must presuppose, that the water of this Sea is clearer, especially from Suaquen vpward, then ever was any, in fort, that in twentie fathome water ye may fee the ground in many places. This prefuppofed, we are to note, that wherefoeuer that these Shoalds and Shelues did appeare, the water over them was of three colours, that is, Red, Greene, or White, the which proceeded of the ground that was under, as many times I faw by experience; for if the ground of these Shoalds was Sand, it caused that the Sea ouerit appeared white; and the ground where the Corall-stone lay couered with Greene Ozies, the 20 water that couered it did giue a colour greener then the Weeds : but wherefocuer the Shoalds were of red Corall, or of Corall-stone coursed with red Weeds, it made all the Sea that was ouer it seeme very red; and because this red colour comprehended greater spaces in this Sea, then the Greene or the White, because the stone of the Shoalds was the greatest part of red Corall. I beleeue it was the reason whereby it received the name of Red Sea, and not of Greene nor White Sea: Notwithstanding, this Sea doth represent these colours most perfectly. The meanes that I had to obtaine this fecret, was to fasten many times .vpon the Shoalds, where I faw the Sea looke red, and commanded divers to bring me of the flones that lay in the bottome. and the most times it was so shallow, that the Foyst did touch : and other-whiles, that the Mariners went on the Shoalds halfe a league with the water to the breaft, where it happened that al 19 or the greatest part of the stones they pulled vp were of Red Corall, and others couered with weeds like Orange-tawny, and the practile I had where seouer the Sea seemed Greene, & found beneath White Corall, couered with Greene Weeds : and in the White Sea I found a verie white Sand without any thing elfe whereof it might proceede. For fome Saylers giving relation of the Red colour that they faw in this Sea, as of the greater and most compendious of all being ignorant of the cause, or not being willing to offer it, for to increase admiration to their Nauigations and Trauels: and feeing that men do not only know this Sea by the name of Red Sea, but doe beleeue that the waters are naturally red. I have talked many times with Moorish Pilots, and curious persons of Antiquities, which dwelt in some places of this Streight, about the name of this Sea : euery one did fay to me, they knew no other name then the Sea of Mecsa, 40 and they wondred very much at vs, to call it the Red Sca. I asked of the Pilots, if they found fometimes the Sea stained red with the dusts that the winds brought of the Land, they told me, they law no such thing. With all this, I reproue not the opinion of the Portugals, but I affame, that going through this Sea more times then they did, and feeing all the length thereof, and they onely one piece, I neuer faw in the whole, that which they fay to have kene in the

part.
The ninth of August, we entred in the Port of Angedina, and remained there till the one and twentieth of August, that we embarked in Foysts, and going directly to Goa, wee entred ouer the Barre thereof wnder Sayler and our Voyage was ended, and this Booke.

CHAP.

His imprison. Rermudez his ro the King of

from the Emperour, the which I gaue him in Lifton where he was, and he tooke it and kiffed it. and reknowledged it to be true, and by it he acknowledged me for his Patriarch and Superiour. and kiffed my hand, and gaue me his place, without speaking any more words. I commanded to imprison him with two chaines of Iron, on each arme one, after the manner of his Countrey: the which I tooke from him againe within a few daies, because his Highnesse intreated me. The Embaffage which the faid Emperour demainded, was his perpetual friendship and brother-Embstrage from the Negas hood: and therefore he defired him they would marrie their children interchangeably the cna with the other; and that from Portugall a sonne of his should goe to marrie with a daughter of his, and reigne in his Kingdomes after his death, that this alliance betweene the Perturals and them, and also the obedience of the Pope might be greater and endure. And likewise, he sent to to request him, hee would send him some men for to defend himselfe from the King of Zeile which viurped his Kingdomes: and he would fend him great store of riches, for he could verie well doe it. And likewise to fend him some Pioners for to cut a hill whereby already Estate Belale his Predeceffour did bring the River Nilso, to bring it now also that way to annoy Egree.

The King your Grand-father having taken counfell, thought good to grant mee that which I demanded, and commanded to give mee foure hundred and fiftie Caliver-men and Pioners, and that they should dispatch me that I might returne that yeere in company with Don Garcia of Noranya, which then went for Vice-roy of India. I tell fuddenly ficke, and the Phylicians faid of poyfon; as it was full rected the Tegazana caused it to bee given mee. The chiefe Physician which then was, named James Lopez, cored me, and he which now is, Leonard Numes, and no 20 thers, which his Highnesse commanded: for the which ficknesse, I remained that veere in this

Anthonie Fer-

Prefently, the next yeere, being recourred by the goodnesse of God, I went in his Highnes A mie. I carryed also Anthonie Fernandes, and Gafpar Suriano both Armenians borne, which by n.maet.
See Dam à Goet
commandement of Presbyter Iohn, came to leeke mee, to the which his Highuesse did many faof this seg,
uours. We arrived in India safely, at such time as the Vice-roy Don Garcia, was come from Dia, with the Victorie which he had of the Turkes, Anthonie Selueyra, beeing Captaine of that Fortreffe, the which Vice-Roy received vs with great ioy, and shewed me great honear, the Bishop of Gos came to receive me with his trayne in Procession, with Crosse on high, and carryed mee from the Sea-lide vnto the Sea in a Chaire, which the King your Grand-father gaue vnto mee to for that purpose : going next vnto me on the one fide; the Vice-Roy Don Garcia, and on the other, Don John Deca, Captaine of Goa, and re-knowledging me for Patriarch, gaue mee the honour due vnto my dignitie.

Steuben Gama Vice-Roy.

In the meane-while, the Vice-Roy fickned of a Fluxe, whereof hee dyed : and Don Stephen of Gama fucceeded in his flead. The which I prefently requested to dispatch me, and fend me to the Presbyter John with the succour, as his Highnesse had commanded, and he answered me, that he could not doe it, because one hundred thousand Crownes were not sufficient to dispatch mee or more, in hazard of neuer being recovered : and I answered him, that all that was nothing for the Presbyter John, which without miffing it might ipend's Million of Gold or more for he hath Masua. The death of innumerable riches. It was determined, that he in person should transport mee : and presently 40 he commanded a good Natie of Gallies and Gallions, and other thips well furnished, as for fuch a Voyage was necessarie, and many chosen men, of the best that were in India. With the which Armie we came to the Port of Macua in the Red Sea : where we found newes that the Emperour Onadinguel, was dead of his naturall death; of the which we all were very force, and I aboue all, as he whom it touched most.

King Dauid.

I encouraged my felfe, eill there came from Presbyeer Ishn two Friers, good religious men.one of them Prior Prouinciall of many Monasteries, and a great manamone them called Aba Isfeph, which went to Ierufatem, and told ws how the Queene, and a Sonne and Heire of hers did maintaine their estate, and relisted their Enemies. This being knowne, the Governoor Don Ste-Arias Dit; a phen faid vnto me, that I should fend to visit them, as in effect, I prefently fent by one Arias Dit, Mullato Portu- Tawnie man borne in Combra.

In the meane-time, the Gouernour like a good Gentleman, and willing to lofe no time. and beeing a Captaine of a valiant foirit, went with the Gallies that came in the Fleete, to the Port of Suez, for to take or burne the Tarker Gallies, which were in that Flauen, which he could not doe because they were on dry Land.

Being there, tarrying the Gouernours comming, there fled from the Fleet fixtie men in a Skirle and a Boat to the firme Land, the which came to a Port of Land very dry and excelling hot, and being willing to trauell into the Land, they found it fo dry that they dyed for thirft, and being thus pinched with necessitie, one Captaine of the King of Zeila, that was in that Countrey fent to tell them, that he would fend them Meate and Water, and would affure them 60 their lives, so that they would give him their Weapons : and they seeing they had no other remedie, and beeing pinched with need they gave them : with which prefently they flue

At that infant the chiefe Captaine feat a Galley to Arquico, to feeke water, in the which he

fent also a thousand Cotton Webs, for to change for Kine, or Beeues to eate : and they which carryed them going from Arquico by Land, where the Armie was; a Bernagais , called Noro. Captaine of the King of Zella tooke them from them, & fent word presently to the chiefe Captaine, that the King of Zeila his Lord was Lord of all Ethiopia, and had wonne all the Countries of the Presbrter John, therefore that he would make peace with him, and traffique with Commodities his Merchandize in his Countries, in the which there is much Gold, Juorie, Ciuet, Frankincenfe, of Zeile. Myrrhe, and many other Drugges, and Slaues, wherein they might make great profit: and hee also would gine him store of proussion, and would restore the Cowes that hee had taken, and would make amends for the fixtie men that were flaine.

I told the Captaine that hee should not trust the words of Moores, for they were false, and that they faid, was fained, to doe vs some harme; therefore that wee should also vie some flight with them, and it should be this. That he would send him a Present, and with it words of thankfulnesse for the good will that hee thewed vs, whereby he may thinke that he hath deceived vs. and may be affured of vs : for by this flight we shall hinder his deceit. The chiefe Captaine did fo. and commanded the Factor of the Armie to carrie to the Bernagaiz a Barrell of Wine and another thousand of Cotton Webs; the Wine for a Present, and the Webs for to change for Beeues : and that he should tell him from him, that the other Webs, that feeing they were taken in good and lawfull Warre hee should not speake of them, and as touching the men that were flaine, that they deferued not to be reuenged, for as much as they were Rebels and Traytors, and 20 deferued the death they had : and as touching Traffique and Peace, that for the prefent they were in the hely weeke, and could doe no worke, but as foone as the Feaft was paft, wee would doe that which he defired, and would bring our Wares ashoare for to traff que with them.

Hauing taken counfell againe, the chiefe Captaine commanded that the Boates should not go fratagems. ashoare, because no Moore or Blacke-moore might have any meanes to goe thither, and give him warning. And commanded the Souldier to be in a readinesse, the secretest that they could a and that in the Boates, and the other light Veffels that were in the Armie : in the which hee commanded they should make no fire, because they might not be perceived: And commanded Mar. The Kingos im Corres, that at ten of the clocke at night hee should land with fixe hundred men, and posfeffe the passages whereby they might escape, he went and killed some Turkes and Fartaquis, and caste strine. 30 tooke all the Carriage they had, which was but little, for he had no time to take any store. The Bernagais of Zeila, when he saw the King set himselfe to flight, hee likewise fied, and lighted vpon Martin Correa, where being known a Caleeuer-man killed him; and men comming to refcue him were many of them flaine, Foot and Horfe, and the rest faued themselves by flight.

Our men thought good to cut off his head, and fend it for a Prefent to the Queen, wherewith the reioyced very much; thee fent a great man of her Countrey, called Esmacherobel Tigremacan, to the chiefe Captaine, and to me, to give vs thankes. As soone as the Gouernour Don Stephen came, hee gave order presently to dispatch and send Vice-Roy me to the King and Queene, and because they understood alreadie, that the Enterprize was of from Ser,

honour and profit, many did couet it more then before : among the which, one was Don (brifte-40 pher Gama, Brother to the Gouemour : who defired mee very earneftly, that I would give him the charge of all the men that he was to carrie, for he would goe with me. Presently there came . This is hee where I was, Don I ohn of Castro, " Don Manuel of Lima, Don Payo of Noronya, Triftram of which had bin Tayde, and Manuel of Sofa, and I granted their request, and gaue him the command of the men with the Vicefor Don Christopher: of the which they were all contented and fatisfied, and the Governour gave tome of the me thankes for it. And prefently hee commanded to enroll the men that hee gaue mee. So foure Gulfe, and did hundred men, among the which, there went many Gentlemen, and men of account, which write that forbesides the number limited, carryed Seruants, which increased the number and profited very mer Runer.

Beginning to order our departure, there came the Christian Bernagaiz, which had beene there before appoinalreadie, and brought some Camels, Mules, and Asses for to beare the Carriage, and also for ser- ted Capraine. nice and to helpe. I commanded the Bernagaiz, and the Tigremacan, that they should command to bring vs some viocuals and refreshing for all the Armie: which commanded to bring many Beeues, Muttons, Goates, Butter, Honey, Millet, Figges and Quinces, and other things in a-The Gouernour with all the Gentlemen of the Armie came to Arquico , where they reque- and the Pat,

fled me to give them my bleffing: the which I gave them on Gods behalfe, to whom I recommended them, and they went to Sea, and we remay ned on Land very folitarie. And beginning to trauell, within three dayes we came to Debarna. Within a few dayes they vied Schilmatical Barne and Hereticall Ceremonies, differing from the Romane. I fatisfied the best I could, Don Christo-60 pher and his men, and the murmuring ceased, and they concluded how to carrie the Ordnance when they journeyed. They made prefently certaine Carriages like vnto ours : the which, be-

cause in the Countrey there was no Iron, they shod them with certaine old Caleeuers, which brake, because they would ferue for no other vie. I fent to the Queene, who came with all speed possible : whom we went to receive out of the

29

1152

Cities league, with all the men of Portugall in Warlike order, and Ancients displayed with Trumpets, and as well the Kings as of the Captaines. Itay of the King, because wee had Ordnance, whereof the was amazed, being a thing vnaccultomed. The first thing she did, as one that hada reforct voto the things of God, the received my bleffing: and prefently received Dom Christopher with great entertainment and honour, giving him many thankes, that hee would youchfafe to take that Enterprize, and charge to defend her from her Enemies. From thence we went to the Citie, and the next day we heard all Masse, and wee gaue order that Processions should be made, in the which we all went, and the Queene also, with two Infantas her Sisters in-law, and a little Princeffe her Daughter, which the brought with her, defiring all of God with great Denotion and many teares, that he would vouchfafe to heare vs, and give vs the victorie of 10 his Enemies and ours.

ð. II.

Don CHRISTOPHER and the Portugals Warre on the King of Zeila. and having in two Battels prevailed, in the third are overthrowne. A new Captaine appointed. Don CHRISTOPHERS refelution and death. Mountaine of the lewes.

Goranya King

pens by the

nuntiation of

fo different a

Language.

of Zeila.

Eparting from Debarua, we went eight dayes by rough Countries:at the end of which wee come to plane grounds, and very well inhabited, and better then they pait. but in them there dwelt Christians, which for feare did follow the Moore : which as soone as they knew our comming , went presently to Don Christophor , and gaue him obedience. At the end of three dayes, we came to a very pleafant field, and in it a Founcaine

of faire water: in the which we pitcht our Campe round about the Fountaine.

The next day there came a Meffenger to vs from Gorona, King of Zeila; with some of his men in company, and asking for the Captaine of those men, said vnto Don Christopher, that his Some call him King lent to aske him who he was, and from whence hee came, or who gaue him leaue to enter in his Kingdomes with men of warre : for thole Realmes were his, and hee had wonne them by digense cals him his Lance, and of his Gentlemen, with the helpe of his Prophet Mabouse: therefore if wee Martin hip would become Moores, and serue him, hee would entertaine them well, and give them his waverus hapges: And moreouer, Wiues and Goods to live vpon : and if not, that wee should prefently avoid his Countrey, and goe out of it. Don Christopher answered him, that he was a Captaine of the King of Portugall, by whose commandement hee came with those men for to restore the Kingdomes of the Presbyter Iohn, which hee tyrannoully hath viurped, and to take them out of his hands, and give them to whose they were. And with this message he sent him for a Present, a Looking-glaffe, and a paire of Mullets to pull the haire with, and an Egge of Silver of Pegu, fig- 40 nifying, that those things pertayned to him. And to the Messenger hee gaue two Bracelets of Gold, and a very rich Sute of Cloth of Gold, which things the Queene had given to him; and he gaue him alfo a Cypres of Bengala, and a Tinkifb Callock with his ypper Garment : this by my counfell in diffrace of the Goranya, rayfed prefently his Campe, and beganne to march toward the place where we were with one thousand Horsemen, and five thousand foot, and fiftie Turkes Caleeuer-men, and as many Archers.

Don Christopher commanded to place the Queene (who was very fearefull) and the women with all the Carriage in the midit of the Squadron. The Moore when hee faw vs goe vp a Hill (whereon flands the Church of the Ladie of Pitie) wheeled vpon vs to take the height from vs; and he came alreadie to neere vnto vs. that the thot began to fight on both fides. When I faw the go Battle was begun, I called fixe Portugals, and with the Queene and her Sifters in-law I was going afide, and in this I knew the Moorib King, which came necreto his Antient on a Bay Horle, and I thewed him to Peter Deca a Gentleman, and a good that : which that at him and flue his Horse, and burt him in the legge. His men came about him, and set him on another Horse, and tooke him from that place. Our Captaine Don (bristopher was also hurt in his legge; and I commanded the Steward to fet up the Queenes Tent in figne of victorie. The Moore had incironed vs on every fide, when they faw vs fetting vp Tents, and their King hurt, they began to retyre, and goe after their King, which withdrew himfelfe with the paine of the wound toward a Mountaine that was neere to that place to be cured.

At this instant there came to vs a Moore that had been a Christian, Cousin German to the Ber- 60 magaiz, and told vs how the King was hurt in his legge : and how great a fauour. God had done to ve therein, for if it had not beene to he had taken ve all, without doubt, but that God miraculoufly had delivered vs from his hands : and that therefore hee with all his men did returne to vs, and would ferue vs and pay the Tributes that vnto that time they payed to that King: and

that he went presently to his Countrey for to send vs Beeues and Prouision for our Campe: for hee was Captaine and Gouernour of all that Countrey where we were : the which belonged Temporamsto the Presbyter, and he also: and when the King of Zeila conquered it, hee yeelded vnto him. tantur & not and now that he saw him ouer-come, he returned to vs againe, whereby he seemed to be a man illis of Line be that over-commeth.

In the meane while, it pleafed God that Don Christopher healed of his wound; but we fusfered great hunger, for there was very little prouision in the Campe, and the people died with Scarsitie. hunger. Don Christopher went to the Queene, and told her, that the people fuffered great hunger, and that they had need to eate all they found, notwithstanding it was Lent, that it would In be good to kill the Beafts, that they had in the Campe, for to ease : and with this request, they

came both to my Tent, praying me that I would give the people leave to eate fielh in Lent, be- Flesh in Lent, cause of the necessitie there was : and besides, the Queene requested me, that I should give her my Oxen that I had for my carri-ge, to give them to the people, and as foone as her Captaine afore. faid came, thee would fatisfie me, which would flay three dayes; and fo it was for he prefently came with great flore of prouision, viz. Beeues, Sheepe and Goates, Butter, and other prouisions for Lent, and for Eafter, which was alreadie at hand.

As foone as Eafter was paft, the Goranya fent word to Don Christopher, that he would come to fee him, that he should prepare himselfe; which he did as he had faid. He came to feeke vs. with more and better men then before he brought : for, he had aboue two thousand Horse . and on infinite number of foot, and an hundred Turks: for the which, the Queene was in fuch a feare with her Sisters in law, that they knew not what to doe, in such fort that being at Dinner, as foone as they knew the comming of the Moore, they would have left Dinner. Don Christopher being the next day ordering his men, before day, for to fet vpon the Mores; the Queene fent The Queenes for me, and faid to me, that thee faw the great power that the King Goranga brought, and that feare. it was impossible to scape his hands if we stayed, therefore that shee defired me that we should be gone, for flee had to determined , and that in any fort flee would doe it; therefore that flee requested me very earnestly, that I would not let her goe alone, seeing I was her Father, but I should accompanie her, and goe with her. And I, to show her the love that I bare her, and that thee should not thinke that I esteemed not her life, granted her request, and we both interprised 30 the flight. But Don Christopher, which was alreadie warned for that purpose, fent after vs ten

Horse-men, and some Foot-men, crying aloud, and saying, that it was neither service of God, nor the worke of a Father, to goe away and leaue them. Hearing these wordes, Shee by my meanes returned to the Campe weeping and bewayling her selfe. There Don Christopher said vnto me, that as a Father and Prelate, according to the good coftome of the Portugals, he requefted me that I should give him my bletting, and should make him a generall absolution before he entred into the battell. I did so, and granted him a plenarie Indulgence of all his sinnes : which Indulgence. I might doe, because the Pope had granted it me, and was the stile of the Patriarchs of Alexandria. From thence we removed with our Campe, by the breake of day, downe the Hill, and marched till we came to a Plaine; and prefently, with great furie, they affaulted our standings on 40 enery fide. Our men defended themselnes with the Ordnance and Fire-works, wherewith they The second

annoyed them very much and before they came, they had cast a great quantitie of powder in bares. the wayes, whereby they were to come vp; the which, when they were in the heate of the battell, was fet on fire, and it burned them, proceeding vnder their feet, they not knowing from whence it came, they understood not the stratageme. Our men did cast among them cer- Fieriestratataine Balls of wilde fire, and Pots full of powder, wherewith they burned the greatest part of gem. them, and the other retyred with feare, and durft come no more neere vs. The Ordnance killed many of the Horse-men, and of other People, that the Field was all full of them, and the Horses ranne mafter-leffe about the fields. The Turks with their Peeces and their Bowes, killed vs twentie men, and the master Gunner. Our men killed fif eene Turks. The Queene was next to

50 me, embracing a Croffe, and weeping, and faid vnto mee; O Father, what have you gayned in bringing me bither? Wherefore did you not let me goe my way? I laid vnto her: Lady, doe not afflict your felfe; commit your felfe to God, and open your eyes, and you shall fee the great destruction on that is done in your enemies.

At this time the Foot-men began alreadie to flee, and the Horse-men durit not come neere, but skirmished a farre off; and the King faid to his men , that the Portugals were no men , but Deuills, for they fought like Deuills. And with this he retyred himselfe towards the Hill and Thevidorie. left his Campe.

We gathered our Campe, and went forward as fast as wee could, but they fled as fast as they could, and wee could not ouer-take them. But wee found many Abexins on foote and horse-60 backe which returned to vs, which afterward were baptized, and loyall to their King, Of whole returne, the Queene and we all were as glad as of the principall victorie. We came to the campe of the Moores, which we found for laken without any people, but wee found in it all the spaile, for the feare which Saint lames put them in, gaue them no leifure to take any thing away. Wee Great spoile, found it with Tents up, and in them Apparell, House-hold stuffe, Mony, and other riches, and

TORREST

Moores discomfited. Turkish aide. Vusortunate battell. LIB.VII

ftore of pronision, which were very needfull for vs, for it was alreadie very scant. Here wee flayed, and let the people reft two dayes.

pertayning to

This Countrey and all the borders, is called the Prouince of Nazareth, and it is of the Partiarchs, their owne proper with all surifdiction, without the King entermeddling in it by any meanes, neither hath he any Rent thereof. It yeeldeth for the Patriarch three thousand ounces of gold every yeere, the which King Thedru appropriated vnto them, for a certaine offence that he committed against a Patriarch.

From the Campe wee drew toward the Mountaines, where the King Goranya with-drew himselfe, and pitched our Campe in a field, at the foot of the Mountaine, inuironed with the carriages of the Ordnance.

licited.

The Moore fent to Zebide to a Baffa of the great Turke which was there, to aske him fuccour. faving, that he should succour him, and not suffer those Kingdomes to be lost, which were all of the great Turke, and he held them for him, and that in token thereof, hee fent him one hundred thouland Oquies of gold, and twentie thouland for his person. An Oqui is a waight of gold, which in that Countrey is worth as much as ten Crownes or Cruzados in this, and weigheth as much. We with-drew our felues, while we knew what paffed, to a ftrong Mountaine, the which was compafied on euery fide with Rocks and Crags, in fuch fort, that in it there was fearce a way for foot-men. For to carry the Ordnance and other carriage, was needfull to make a new way, the which the Captaines of the Countrey made with their men, and it was fo ffreight, and fo rough, that the Ordnance could not bee carried upon the carriages, but they carried it on their 20 backs with Leauers. Aboue was a Plaine where wee pitched our Campe. From thence the Queene fent through her Provinces, and I also through mine, that they should bring vs store of victualls, and other promitions necessarie, of which we were pretently well promided, and the wounded were well cured. Being there well lodged, Don Christopher faid vnto mee, that wee should remoue to a higher

Hill which was neere from thence, because the Armse might be more safe; and that in the meane while he would goe to a Mountaine, which was neere from thence, inhabited with I ewes . in the which was a Captaine of the Moore with an hundred and fittie Horse, as we were advertifed. And being gone with the Portugals, and some few of the Countrey, for to shew him the wayes; heeleft with vs two Portugall Captaines with his men. As foone as hee came to the m Mountaine, he fet vpon the Moore, and killed fixtie Horfe-men, and tooke thirtie Horfes, the The leves pur- reft fled. The leves, inhabiters of the Mountaine, pursued after the Moores, and taking the The lawts pur-fue the Mostes. passages of the Mountaine, which they knew very well, they killed them almost all, and among them the Captaine, and tooke all the spoile they carried, and the women, which they brought all to Don Christopher, and gaue it him for a present, with the head of the Captain, which they brought alfo; and among other Gentle-women which were there, the wife of the Caprain Moore was very faire, the which Don Christopher tooke for himselfe. And because two of his Captaines did looke too much voon her, he was jealous of them, and tooke away their charges, they being as they faid blameleffe. Don Christopher being in the Mountaine of the lewer, the Moorish King came to seeke vs with

Turks feat to fixe hundred Turks, which the Baffa feat vato him, and two hundred Moores on horse-backe, nide the Moore.

and a great number on foot : and comming to the foot of the Hill where we were, he pitched his Campe. From thence he sent a man of his with a Boxe of pedlarie ware to our Campe, to sell

Beades blef-

Beades and looking glaffes, and to tell Don Christopher that his Master was a Merchant, and came behinde, and would not tarrie three dayes, with very good merchandize that hee brought to fell him. This came to light vpon George of Abreve, and lames of Silva, that remayneth with vs, and kept the entrie of the Mountaine, which tooke away his Beades, and brought them vnto me, and I bleffed them, and gaue them to the women and deuout perions, granting many pardons to them that did pray you them, because that their mockage might relound to the praise of God, and the profit of his fathfull. We fent in all haste to call Don Christopher, which was not come from the Mountaines. Meane while, the Turks in deligible of our men entred the Mountaines. taine, and did vs much hurt. Presently that night after they were entred came Don Christopher, and feat presently for the other Captaines, to take counsell with them what were best to doe; which told him, that it were best to set upon the Moores by night : for when the forces are not equall in strength, the weakest have need to vie some policie; and this is one of the best we can wie with them, for the manner of the Turks is not to fight by night, in so much that come out of their Tents they dare not. And besides, we shall take them on a sudden and unprepared, and we shall ouerthrow them before they can come to themselves : and for the more amazing them, we will affault them on two fides. This counfell feemed not good to Don Christopher, because mutable Fortune was willing to change her course; and God, to make an end of sensualities, 60 which at fuch times, men that are Christians, should not remember. Don Christopher faid, that he would give battell to the Enemies by day, because they should not thinke that he was afraid of them, wherein he premailed, though none liked his counfell.

The vnfortu-

As foone as it was day they went all downe, and before they fet any thing in order (because

CH A P.7 S. 2. Vnfortunate battell. Don Christopher burt. His desperation. 1155

the misfortune was to have fome beginning) by a mischance, a Horse of ours brake loose, and rame towards the Moores Campe, they came out to ketch him, and our men went out to detend him, and in this fort the fight began without any order or government. This skirmish latied a great while; in the which many Moores and Turkes died : and likewife of ours there died tome : amone whom Don Garcia of Noronia was one, The Ancient-bearer of Don Christopher fourth with the Ancient Royall, like a valiant Gentleman, and in his defence flue fome of the Enemies, and wounded them so hercely, that they durit not come neere him, vntill that for weareneffe he could fight no longer , then they flue him. Don Christopher was wounded with a floe Don Christopher in the arme, of the which, although he fuffered great paine, he left not therefore the battell till hurt,

10 very lete, that hee found himselfe almost alone, then hee retyred to the top of the Mountaine with some few that he found about him. Before he retyred, I feeing the spoile of our men faid to the Queene that the thould mount, and goe to the Mountaine; and because thee would not leave some women that had not whereon to ride, I made her mount perforce, and one litter-in-law of bers and fo I fent, them before, and I tooke her daughter behind me.

A Nurse of the Queene, a vertuous woman with two daughters, and other women, tooke a Lamentable barrell of Powder ; faying, God forbid, wee thould bee delivered to the power of Infidels, they and deperate brought it into the Tent; let it on fire and burned themselves. The like did fit cene or fixteene men which came fore wounded from the battell, and could not traueil. I went away with the Girle that I had behind mee where her mother was, which thought thee had loft her alreadie,

and when thee law her thee gaue great thankes to God. Wee went a little farther into the Mountaine, and there we made another stand, tarrying for more men, and for Don Christopher, for whom the Queene was very forrie, and wee all were very fad for his not comming, doubting he was dead or captiue. Being in this doubt, we faw him come hurt, as I faid before, in an arme, with great paine of the wound; for it feemed he had the Bullet within. The Queene commanded me to cure him with a little Balme that the had, for to mitigate his paine; and thee rooke a Vaile from about her head, and tore it, and bound his armetherswith. But he tooke no reft, for he remembred more the loffe and difficuous, then the pains of the wound: and faid that hee had better beene flaine, then to have loft the Kings Standard; and that feeing if semay ned in the power of his Enemies, that her would not live. I answered him, that hee should not vexe 30 himfelfe fo much, for with his life and health hee would recover againe (God willing) that which then hee had loft : for fo wee faw it fall out every day in matters of warre, &c. And as touching the Ancient, in that Countrey they tooke no such regard of it; and that presently they would make such another, having men to fight under it, and a Captaine to governe them : for the men are the true Ancient, and not the figne which they carried,

Wee made him mount, and went from thence, and with all speed wee passed two Rivers so great, that the Foot-men waded to the breafts. Wee travelled till we came to the Riner of the Draw-bridge, which they had told vs, which was so deepe, that it could not be passed but by that Bridge. There Dow Christopher faid to me, that he would not passephe Bridge. but would remaine on this fide the Ruer: and called presently his senants, which moke him downe, and disconsiderate the Ruer. 40 fet him vp a Bed whereon he cast himselfe. He called me, and requested that I would shrine him:

having ended his confession, he laid wnto me, that his will was to remaine there. I faid vnto him. that I would not fuffer it, and commanded those that were there to take the Ben, and to carrie him in it as he was , and he faid that he would kill himfelfe if they carried him from thence. When I law his determination, I faid vnto him , that I would remaine with him; he answered me, that I should not doe it; for I was necessarie for to governe those men, that they might not altogether be loft, and therewith all that Countrie : but that I should leane; him a little Balme

for to drelle him with, and that his Chamberlaine, his Secretarie, and other three Portugals, with which he would goe hide himselfe in a Groue that was there. I could never understand towhat end he remained. From thence I went to the Queene, and defired her to mount, and that we should passe on the 50 other fide the Bridge; for it drew towards day, and our enemies would come: fine answered, that in no wife thee would doe it, nor palle any farther, freing Don Christopher remayined where defolate. But I defired her to mount, faying to her, that not onely thee, but her some, with all his Kingdomes would be loft if we tarried there. And with this the Queene mounted, weeping, and speaking so many dolorous words, as thee could have vetered for her ownedonne, if he had remayned there. Wee commanded all the men to goe with the carriage, and all the people with the greatest haste possible : and before we had passed we heard a rumour of Men, and note of Hories, for the which we made great hatte to goe over, and drew the Bridge after vs.

By this time it was alreadieday, and we beginning to goe up the fide of a Hill on the other fide, 60 we law many Moores about the place where Don Christopher remayned the Querne, when the faw them , was greatly afraid , and faid that wee could not escape. Her men told her that shee should not feare; for shee was alreadie in her owne Countries. Notwithstanding, wee went on with all hafte politible for to lose them out of light : and we travelled all that day, passing many Mountaines and Rivers with great trouble, and heat of the day. There was by those Rivers great

Or Tamerinder, flore of Cassia Fistola, and Indian Dates, whereof our men did eate, for they had no other food. Finally, we came to a River fomewhat big, where the people caught some Fish, which they did eate while the Captaine of that Countrie came with victuals, which prefently brought great ftore: And there we began to reft, for we were alreadie in a fure Countrev.

Wee wanted fortie Portugals: To the rest that remayned, which were few more then three hundred, I made my speech thus, and said vnto them ; that they saw very well that it wasne. numerou, a mane my spectra cans, and a not vitor them, and they new very well that it was ne-ceffaire to give them a Captaine, that might governe them and fight before them, seeing we, knew not what might become of Don Confision, remayning as hee was willing to be left. They answered me, that I should doe what I thought best; for they would hold it for very well Aliente Caldera done, and would obey whom I should command and ordaine. I'declared vnto them, that I ele-Ated for their chiefe Captaine, one Alfonso Caldera, borne in Combra, a discreet and valiane Gentleman: the which all received with a good will, except some Gentlemen, which because they were of Nobler bloud, thought that charge rather belonging vnto them. These murmired fomewhat of that which I did: but did not leave their obedience. I made also a Sergeant, and a Judge , to looke to the Souldiers, that they did no wrong to the people of the Countrey; or

betweene themselues, one to another.

There came to vs John Gonzales , and Aluaro Deniz , which remay ned with Don Christopher, of whom the Queene demanded what was become of Don Christopher: they told vs , how they being hid in the Groue where they remayned, there came a woman fleeing from the Morres, Den chriftopher and came into the same Groue, and the Moore comming after her, found Don Christopher: and 20 asked him who he was, and he told them that he was Don Christopher: whereof they were to ioyfull, that they could not beleeue it: and they called an Eunuch which had beene ours that came there, and asked him if that was Don Christopher, and if he knew him well: and hee faid, it was he without doubt, for he knew him very well. They presented him to their King. which also was very glad to see him. And after demanding some things of him, he said, that if he would become a Moore, that he would doe him much honour. Don Christopher answered him finiling, that he was the feruant of Iefus Christ, whom he would not change for a lying Dog. The King hearing what he faid, commanded to give him a boxe on the eare, and to rul Misrefolution, him by the beard. He defired him with great Oathes and promises that he would write to his. companions, that they should leave Presbyter lobn, and returne to their Countries: and he faid, to that he would doe it. And prefently he wrote a Letter, according to the will of the Moore: the which fent the Eunuch aboue-faid, that he should looke well what Don Christopher did write:

and he did so, therefore Don Christopher wrote that which the Moore commanded, and no other thing: but set two thornes in his name, by the which he signified, that they should looke what they did. With this Letter of Don Christopher, the Gorania sent two Moores of his to

our Campe, and they gaue it to me. The Queene, when shee saw it, remayned almost dead, thinking that Don Christopher had written that Letter of purpose, and that it would somewhat ausile among the Portugale, by whom, wnder God, she trusted to have her Kingdomes restored : and shee tooke very strangely that deed of Don Christopher. But after that we declared vnto her the deuise of the thornes that 40 can dece on was designed to the can be described in the control of the control of the control of the can be in the firme, there was glad, and tooke it in good part; and eury one parided him very much. Finally, the chiefe Captame Alfonjas (**alders**, in his owne name, and in the name of all his companions the **Portugals**, answered to Due Chriftopher, that he flooding use many thanks to the King Gramia for his good will: but that they would not receive of him that fauour, neither did they doubt that they should stand in need of it, rather to the contrarie, they hoped with the helpe of Iefu Christ their God, to finsh the act, whereunto the King of Portugall their Lord had fent them thither, which was, to take or kill him, and deliuer from his tyrannie,

the Kingdomes of Prefbyter Iohn.

This Letter being delivered to Don Christopher, hee carried it to the Moore, and hee shewed him not therefore the worse countenance, for hee thought that Don Christopher had written 50 faithfully, he asked him also wherewith he had cured himselfe, and he said vnto him, that hee could make a certaine Medicine wherewith the wounds were very quickly tured; and the Moore defired him to cure with it his Captaine generall, which was fore wounded: and he cured him with such Medicines, that the Dogge lived but three dayes. For the which, the Moore commanded to give him many stripes and blowes, and said, that hee would command to kill him. Don Christopher answered him, that he could doe him no more hurt then to kill the bodies for the foule God had power ouer it: and that hee was very certaine, that lefus Christ would Don Coriflopher receive his into everlasting life. The Moore commanded that they should carrie him to the place where the other Portugals died , and that there they should cut off his head. The which head of Don Christopher, that King did fend for a Prefent to the Governour of Cairo: and one of his 60 quarters he fent to Inda: another to Aden: and one legge to the Baffa of Zebide, which fent him the fuccour aboue-said. So much doe they esteeme in that Countrey, to ouercome a few

All the rest of the bodie of Don Christopher remay ned there where they killed him : and from

CHAP.7.S.3. A miracle. A Mountaine of Icwes, their Captaine baptifed.

thence certaine Religious men carried it to their Monasterie which was neere to that place, and doe hold it in great reverence with estimation of a Saint : for presently, and many times after, did God flew by manifest Miracles, his labours to bee acceptable and meritorious before Gods Dinine Majeffie, his death precious, and his foule glorified. Prefently, as foone as they cut off Miracles . If ahis head. God shewed a great and manifest Miracle by him : which was, that in the place where ny be in produc they flue him, there fprung vp a Fountaine of running water, which had neuer been teene there, sall of Fai h to they flue nim, there things a a believe them, whole water greath fight to the blind, and cureth ficke persons of other diseases, by the goodnefle and power of God. This Miracle is much like to that which God did in Rome, for his A- let men fee the pottle Saint Paul. The Reliques of the bodie of Don Christopher doe fmell, yeelding so sweet a probatikite of 10 iencof themselves, that it seemeth rather heavenly then of the earth.

From thence the Moorife King went toward a Kingdome, called Dembia: whereby the racles in India. From thence the Moorifo King went toward a kingdome, called Demoia: Whereby the River Nilus paffeth, and maketh a Lake, which hath in length thirtie leagues, and five and an where they are halfe in breadth. In this Lake are many Hands: Asmache of Doaro, called Obitocon, which is uantage nor to fay, Don George, and Afmache of Guidmis, fubiects of King " Gradeus, came with one hun-their inneres, I dred and fiftie Horse-men, and one thousand Foot-men. The Captaine conducted them vinto believe them the Queene, which received them louingly, and asked whence they came; and they faid, that which looke to they came from the Campe of Gorania, and that they departed from him there where they Reme and fukilled Don Christopher, the Moore going towards Dembia. The Queene asked them for the perfition, is-death of Don Christopher: and they told her the manner which wee alreadie knew.

20 Wee comming to the skirt of the Mountaine of the Iemes, their Captaine came to vs with A Huge Lake. wee comming to the skirt of the Mountaine of the reme, their Captaine came to vs with to Gobraliant wictuals and refreshings, and said to the Queene, that shee should come up to the Mountaine it is so, miles for in no place of that Prouince thee could be furer then in that Mountaine; which had no long and ac more then one entrance, and that might eafily be kept, and defended from the Enemies, if they broad. came. This Captaine of the lewes demanded Baptisme : and as soone as we were on the Moun. Supplies from taine, and had pitched our Campe, I baptifed him, his wife, and his children. The Captaine the Negus. Alfonfus Caldera was his God-father: and they named him Don Christopher. From thence Al- by Godiyum is fonfus Caldera went with ninetic Portugals, and fome of the Countrie to forage fome Townes called Chaden which in that Countrey food yet for the Moore: and they killed much people, burned the A Mountaine Townes, and brought great frore of Cattell. Two honest old men feeing this, in the name of all of lower. Townes, and orought great more of the Queene, faying, that they were hers, and were Christian of the people, came to aske mercie of the Queene, faying, that they were hers, and were Christian the leaves based on the Control of the

fine people, same to aske induced and payed their Tributes to the Moore: and like-used wife for need, because they had none to defend them from the lewes of the Mountaine, that did cuill neighbourhood; therefore that it would pleafe her Majestie to foresize them , which

ð. III.

40 Comming of G & AD B v & the yong Negus, his resetting the Patriarch and Pope: their reconciliation and battell with the Moores, in which Go RANIA was Slaine, and after him the King of Aden.

T this time came Arias Diz, which Don Christopher had fent to visite the King; the fonne of Onadino well, and of this Queene, called Orita aureata, and the fonne was called Gradeus. This did not yet follow the Campe with his mother, because he was Gradeus the very young. This meffage brought Arias Diz, that the King would bee with vs young Negative

within two moneths. The two moneths almost past, wee departed from the Mountaine of the 50 lewes, where we were, and went to other Mountaines in another Pronince, whither the King came within eight dayes, accompanied with fiftie Horfe-men and many on Mules: All the Captaines went to receive him a little way off the Campe, with all their men, Portugals, and of the Countrey, and accompanied him into the Campe. Entring into the Campe he went prefently to my Tent, and there hee alighted to take my bleffing. I came to the doore to receive him, which he efteemed greatly : for in that Countrey they hold the Patriarch in that efteeme that here we doe the Pope. From thence he went to fee the Queene his mother, and withdrew himselfe, and mourned three dayes for Don Christopher. He commanded his Tent to be set up in

Some few dayes being past, before we medled in any other thing, I fent to call the Captaine 60 Alfonsus Caldera to my Tent, with the other Captaines and honourable persons of the Portugall Nation in the Armie, and faid vnto them.

My most louing children, and most Christian Portugals, I remember well, that a few dayes agoe, The Patriatch being in Debatua, some of your charities moved with a good zeale, did missible some stees and Cres Speech to montes, which the people of thu Countrey doe vse, differing from the Romane customes. A great Na- the Putualis, tion cannot be cleanfed of all the Cockle and Tares which the Denill foweth in it; enen as a field can-Dddddd 2

The King acknowledged head by this Parriarch: on ly except the they fay the fame with us. Barchen one head may bee cut off to please the o-

His speech to

the News.

not be weeded of all the Weeds and Thornes that grow in it: for if wee seek to weed them cleane, we shall also pull up the Wheate among the Weeds, as Christ faith in the Gospell. It is enough to doe now the principall, which is the abedience an uniting of the boly Mother Church: this is the Fountaine of all the reft from hence depend all the other circumstances. This bath her foundation in the Head, which is the King, As soone as the King shall obey, all the rest will follow born.

Comming to the Kings Tent, I found him with his Mother, whereof I was very glad, and faid

Most louing Son in lefus Christ: You know, that the most Christian King your Father which in ala. rie desired mee that I would goe to Rome, for mee and for himselfe to give the chedience to the chusto Biliop: and if you doe not remember it for your tender age, fee beere a Letter figured by him, which her 10 gaue mee that the chiefe Bijhop hould give me credit, and know that was true which I faid to him on his behalfe: which as I [ay, was to tell him that your Father did acknowlege him to be the Successor of Saint Peter Prince of the Apostles of Christ, and Vicar of his minerfall Church, it is also reason year Should succeed him in knowledge, in vertues, and in the feare of God. Therefore, you conforming your felfe with the will and Ordinance of God, and imitating the vertue and knowledge of your Father, ou to give the obedience to the boly Father the Romane Bishop: for therein shall yee doe that which Gad commandeth, and shall basse for your Friends and Brethren, and helpers in your necessities, the King of Portugall, and all other Kings his Brethren and Friends

To the which hee not regarding what hee faid, like a youth of little age, answered three The Kings An-Tou are not our Father, nor Prelate, but you are Patriarch of the Frankes, and are an Arrian which to have foure Gods: and bence forward we will call you no more Father. I faid unto him againe, that bee lyed , for as much as I was no Arrian , neuther bad foure Gods : but feeing he would not obey the bols Father, that I beld him for excommunicate and accur fed, and that I would stay no longer nor speaks with him, and with this I refe to goe away : and hee answered me that I was the excommunicate and

From thence without any more speaking to him, I went to the Portugals, which stood with out the Tent, and told them what passed, and how the King would not obey the Romane Church. They conceine but that hee was an Hereticke like Nettorius and Dioscorus : therefore, I commanded themm vertue of obedience, and under paine of Excommunication of my part; and in bebasse of the King of Portugall (whose authorisis I had for st) under paine of capitall crime, in no wife they should obey the 39 King, nor follow him, nor dee any thing in his fauour. Alfonius Caldeyra, and all the rest faid, that their Fathers and Grand-fathers were never Rebels to the Church of Rome, nor to their King, neither would they be therfore, that I had no need to lay an Excommunication upon them, but that I bould suspend it, for they without it would doe all that I should command, as obedient children. And from thence they all accompanied me to my Tent, and they went to their Lodgings.

Within a little while the King fent a Captaine of his, to carrie three thousand ounces of Gold to the Portugals, to divide among themselnes and a rich Captaine, and defired them not to leave him, but to helpe him against his Enemies, as they had done thitherto. They answered him, that as for that time they would not receive the favour that hee fent them for the difference betweenehim and mee, nor to the reft, that hee faid they 40 could answere no other thing, but that in all things they would doe that which I should com-

With this answers they tooke counfell, and agreed that the Queene should come with an

Arch-bishop, which I had made, and all his Captaines to my Tent, to aske me pardon, I would An Archbishop command, and give the obedience to the Pope. The Queenecame and defired me in honour of the Virginitie of our bleffed Ladie Virgin, before, in, and after the Conception, that I would goe with her to the Tent of her Sonne, which was very faire, for that which hee had done, and faid to me, that he would aske mee pardon and obey mee in all things. I answered her, that I would not remous from thence, but the way to Portugall with the Portugals my children, and companions. At this Aniwere, the kneeled on her knees before me, weeping, and faid vnto me, that 50 fhee charged me on Gods behalfe, that I should not doe such a thing: but that I should goe with her, for all should be done as I would. I, moved with pitie and compassion, went with her : and comming to the Kings Tent, he came forth to receive vs , and with great humilitie hee tooks my hand and kiffed it, demanding me pardon for that which hee had faid to me. And wee three fitting downe, he faid, that he was contented to obey the chiefe Bilhop : and that the obedience which his Father had green by me was fufficient. But I answered him, that it was not sufficient: but that he particularly should give for himselfe the like obedience, for so was the custome of our Countries, that every King when he newly reigned did tend his Messengers to give particularly for himfelfe the obedience to the Pope wherefoeuer he was : and that feeing he fent not to Rome, as his Father did, that he should give it to mee in the Popes name, for I had commission from his Holinesse, to receive it of him. And besides, he should give a publike Testimonie signed

by him, and fealed in his name, and of all his Kingdomes and Provinces, confessing in it, that the

Truth of the Faith is this : that the Church of God is only one, and his Prelate the Vicar of

Iefus Christ is also one alone, through all the Earth : by whom the Power and Jurisdiction of Ie-

fwere and re-Alustez. wee beleeue foure Gods. because wee hold two Nawhich they following the Entichiam and refice denie ang Gradeus

Popescale and

fterne Christi. ans are called Frankes. You may and, noted before in tures in Christ Monothelite be The Parriarcks

CHAP.7. S.3. Arias Diz, Generall of the Portugals. The Kings flight.

fus Christ extendeth to the other Prelates, and Christian Princes. The which Writing, one of the principallest men of his Kingdome, standing in a high Place or Chaire, should reade with a Posith fault. his hand cleere voice, before all the people that were there with him. He did fo, and comman- or a new Arrided it to be done with folemne Pompe and found of Trumpets.

This being done, within a few dayes, the Captaine Alfonfus Caldegra running a Horse, had a the Creed, to fall; of the which within a few dayes he dyed. Alfon fur Calderra beeing dead, I tooke counfill Papacie. vich some principall men of the Portugals, and we thought it good, to make Arias Dizchiefe Arias Diz chiefe Arias Diz on Captaine, because hewas a discreet and a good Gentleman : which had discharged himselfe wel Diaz, made in tome important matters, which had beene committed to his charge. Especially, because the Capitaine or To King Gradem defired it of me, I fent to call him, and defired him that he would take that charge Generall of

ypon him. Hee tooke it, and promifed to doe in it to the vttermost of his power.

Within a few dayes the King fent me word, that hee would goe through his Countrey with his men, because we could not be there altogether, wherefore hee defired mee to remaine there with his Mother : and I and wered him not, because I vinderstood that he would flye away. The The Kings King fent presently after me the * Azaige of Gallan, that with all reverence and courtefie flight, should fay to me, that the King my Sonne did fend to r. quest me, that I should send him thither " A propi the Captaine Arias Diz with all the Portugals, for to it behooved for the fervice of God: I an- name of a Rufwered him, I would doe it with a good will. There remayned with mee fixe Captaines of the Countrey, with two hundred Horfe, one thousand Targeters, and fine hundred Archers, and fif-

20 tie Harping Irons, with their Hockes all very cunning in Armes. Euery Horleman carryed three forts of weapons. With all this people I came to the skirt of the Mountain, where Goranga was, & caufed to pitch my Tent very neer to the hil, and neer vntoi, all the Campe with Fealts and flowtings, and founding of Trumpets, as they are won; to do 10 Can. ps. The horfemen skirmished, and the Footmen resoyced, and said, We will all dye for the Faith of the Sonne of God. Our men entring into the Mountaine, went prefently to a Towne neere from thence : in the which they found no people, but found fome prouision, especially, Wine made of Honey in many pots of Earth, of the which two heedlelle men old drinke and dyed fuddenly, for the Poyloned Moores had poy foned and left it, for to kill our men. Our people feeing the two men dead, would not drinke of the Wine, but broke the Vestels and spilt the Wine : and returned from

30 thence. With these newes, I sent prefently two Horsemen to the King, that hee should come in all hafte to possesse bimfelfe of that Countrey, before the Morrecame; for I was alreadie going to hinder the comming of the Moore, and to take the passages whereby he was to come. And I sent to the Captaine Arias Diz, by a Portugall, to tell him that I stood in da. ger of encountring with the Moore, that he should prefently come to me. The King doubted the lourney, and would not come : but Arias Diz faid vnto him, that it neither was nor feemed good, the Portugals to bee flaine in his defence, and for to reltore him his Kingdomes, and hee to runne away and haue them. Arias Dez being departed with the Portugals, the King tooke counfeil to goe after him: and fet forward in such have that he ou r-tooke them before night. And altogether trauelled

40 fo much that night, that they came to our Campe before it was day-breake. As some as it was day, I left them which came wearie, and with the people that I had before began to afcend the Mountain before the Moore came, because they having that Mountaine. was a great part of the Victorie. We went by fuch narrow wayes, that wee could goe but two and two, and ly Rockes and rough places, that had any bodie fallen from thence, had beene crusht in a thouland pieces. We came to the top, by Gods affirtance, and came to a Monasterie of Friers, which was on the Mountaine, which was of the Innocation of Saint Paul. The Friers Monaflery. came out to receive vs in Procession, with the Crosse on high, and censing with Censers, and leade vs to the Church to make our Prayers, and gue I hankes to God for the fuccour hee had fent them. Prayers being ended, the Captaines pitched their Campe, and refled. When the King

knew that we were aboue, hee commanded his people to tarrie behind, and hee came with the 50 Portugals, neere to the Ancient of the King of Portugall, I-asing his owne. It might bee an houre before Sun-ferting when he came up, and his men came within night, for all the day was fpent in comming up to the Mountaine. So troubletome it is to afcend.

All the Armie prayed, and did fing Letanics, praying to God that hee would give vs the vi-Ctorie, and to our Ladie, and to all the Saints that they would pray to God for vs. The Religious men did the fame in their Monasteries , and the people in their Townes. At this time there came innumeral le people to joyne them selues with vs , from the Provinces and Countries round about. We faw from the top of the Mountaine, the Moores of Goranga his Campe goe skirmshing in the fields that were beyond the Mountaine, and heard them fay: Before foure 60 dayes be past, yee Shall all be flame, and your King Shall be gelt, and shall be Keeper of the King of Zeila

his wines: and it Patricich that brought you hither, fiall have a tofted stake thrust through bus fundument, that may puffe through his necke, and come out at his head. The Generall of the Abexines The Abbilium asked leane of the King to goe with some people to skirmish with those Moores, and having got Generalishin. ten leaue he was firmen, and went downe with foure hundred Horfemen, with the which af-

Didddd 2

ter having killed many Moores, he went fo farre from his men that the Enemies compaffed him round, and beeing very wearie, and wounded fore, they tooke him, and before they killed him, they cut off his prinie Members, for so doe that people vie, and afterward they killed

The death of this Captaine grieved the King io much, that hee wept publikely, and rent his haire : to the pulling off his Crowne, and hurling it on the ground. In the meane feafon, they came to tell him, that the King of Zeila was come, and pitched his Campe at the foot of the Mountaine, as one that determined to come vp. King Gradem hearing the great noyfe of the Ordnance, which refounded through the Mountaines, tooke so great a feare, that hee determine

The Bernagaiz understanding what the King determined, came in haste to call me at the Monafterie where I was, and shewed mee on the tops of the Mountaine, much people of the bexines in armes, faying to me, that all those were doubtfull, and if they faw that wee fuffered any detriment, or knew that the King did leaue vs, that they all would bee against vs, and would ouerthrow vs. Therefore it behooued me to be present, for to stay the King, and encourage the people : and that might not feeme, that I absented my selfe with distrust. I left prefently the Monasterie, and went with him to the Campe: and the people that were on the Mountaines, when they faw me, made a great showt, and faid; Seeing the Abuna goeth, the Victorie is ours. Comming where the King was, I faluted, and faid vnto him. Hope in the mercy of God, which redeemed us by his precious blond, that hee will give us the Victorie. And flaying no 20 longer, I went prefently where the Portugals were, to whom I faid. Sonnes, commend your felues to the Lord, and doe like your felues. And I commanded them to kneele downe there, and Every one to fay the Lords Prayer fine times, and I did the same, in praise of the fine principall wounds of our God and Redcemer lefus Christ, and I granted them all aplenarie Indulgence, siming the bleffing of God and mine.

The King and his people, when they faw vs fet forward, were amazed at our great and determinate resolution, and stood on a high place, where they discovered all the Campe, for to see what we did. The Moores feeing vs come forwards, refolued to come and meete vs : We going downe the Hill, Goranya the King of Zeila came before his men, mounted on a white Horse, all it a complete Armour, and two Turkes with him on each fide one : and comming neere vnto 10 vs, within Caliuer thot, all three thood side as they came, to gue place for his men to fight. In this space, one Peter of Lyon, which had beene Seruant to Don Christopher, a very low man of stature, but a very good Marke-man, and defirous to reuenge his Masters death, shot at him, Gorania flaine. and strucke him dead from off his Horse. The same day did others to the other two which came with him, and killed them like wife, shooting at them. The Moores, when they faw their King dead, some turned their faces, and some stayed them, in such fort, that they were troubled, and hindered one another, that they neither fought nor fled : our men feeing their diforder and confusion. fet voon them and flue many.

> At this time came in King Gradess his men, and the Moores and Turkes forfooke the Campe and the field: In the which our men found great Riches, Prouifion, and Ordnance, and other 40 weapons and furniture. They found the Tarkes which then came by the way, with Wallets full of Bread and fodden Hennes, and others dead with the bit in their mouthes, and found their purses full of Money of their pay, which they a little before had received. They tooke here the King of Zeila his Sonne; the Queene fled to the Prouince of Dagna. They entred a good way into the Countrey of Dembia, whence they brought also many Silkes and Bedens, and Fotas of Ormuz, and rich Couerlets. The King Gradens feeing the great and miraculous victorie which God had giuen him, commanded a Monasterie to bee built very richly, in the place where the battaile was fought, in praise of the fecret of our Lord lefter (brift,

And because it is not well that the base Spirit of an Abexine do passe without noting which would have gloried of that which he did not, and enjoyed the labour of another; I will tell what 50 Vaine glorious he did, A Captaine of King Gradem, which faw the King of Zeila flaine, went vnto him and cut off his head, and went to prefent it to his King; faying, That he had killed him, because hee should give him the reward that therefore hee deserved, which was very great; for that death, was the principall cause of the victorie vnder God, and of the restoring of those Kingdomes. The King wasvery glad to know who had flaine his enemy, and thanked him heartily, and made him besides Captaine Generall of all his Kingdomes. But the Captaine Arias Diz, which knew the truth, and was present when the Abexine brought the head, and knew besides, that Peter of Lyon had kept the left eare of the Moorsh King (which he cut off when he flue him) faid to the King : I befeech your Highnesse, command to fearch the head how many eares it hath : they looked and found but one alone. Ariar Dez faid, A better Gentleman then that, 60 hath kept the other which wanteth, which killed him, and cut it off, when you all looked from the Mountaine what we did, and that other did counfell you to runne away; and fent prefently to call Peter of Lyon, that he should bring the eare of the Moorif King : Hee came and shewed the eare, which appeared well to be the fellow of the other. And moreover, Peter of Lyon faid,

That the Abexine should shew the weapon wherewith he flue him, and what wounds he gave him, to the which he answered nothing : Then faid Peter of Lyon ; Let them goe seeke the dead bodie, and they shall find that he was slaine with a shot, with which the Abexine cannot shoote: they went to fee, and found it to be true, whereof the King and all his men were much ashamed. and that his Captaine in great difgrace.

We refled there neere two moneths: while we were there, the King fent the newes of the A differtion victorie to his mother, which was a daies journey from the place where we left her; and he fent among the her word, that the should come where we were, that we might all resoyce and give God thanks Portugals about together, and to congratulate mee, because I gaue order to that which was done, and was the their Captain, To cause of that victorie. The Queene comming within a league where we were, the King knew red it, and without telling me any thing, went with his Horlemen to meet her. The way where- The Queenes by the was to come into the Campe, for the space of a Bow shot, was hanged with Curtaines comming and of Silke, and Tefters of the fame, and on the ground rich Couerlets. They gaue meate in abun-entertainment. dance to all that would haue it; and this lafted one whole weeke. The Queenecomming by the way, the came to fee me to my Pent, and asked me, What enill was it the had done to mee. that I being her Father, went not to meet her with her Sonne : I answered, That the fault was not mine, but her Sonnes, which would not take me with him, neither told me any thing.

Hauing past some daies, the King determined to goe and recouer the Prouinces of Mare, Ioa, Countriesre-Gridime and Goiame, which the King of Zeila had in his power, and gaue order to beginne the duced,

20 Warre in the Confines of Ioa, which is a great and rich Kingdome; and faid, that I and his Mother should remaine taking our rest in his Countries. The King departed with all the Armie, as well of Portugals as of his owne men, to a Countrey called the Monasterie of Sion: where there are very tall men of stature, which seeme Giants. These as they were yet under subjecti. Tall men like on of the Moores of Zeila, would not obey King Gradem, although they were his, neither Ginns. would they give him provision for his men. Alfonfus of France seeing their disloyaltie, said to the Captaine Ariss Diz : What doe you Sir : Wherefore do we stay longer on these, but enter the Captaine Arisa Die . White the Captaine Arisa Die . White the Which, and with the small short they They yeels. affaulted them, and peppered them in such fort, that they said, the Portugals were no humane men, for they fought not like men. Finally, they chofe for their best Market to yeeld them-30 felues, and fent to tell the King, that they delinered themselues into his power. And they also requested him, he would command the Portugals, not to take from them their Wives, and their Daughters, nor feale their Goods, for they had heard that they vied fo to doe.

Being there, the King of Aden sent word to the King Gradens, That bee fould not thinke that This was the Design there, the ring of experience would be the real of the control to the real of the control to the real of the real seal of the real Departing from thence, they marched fo long, till they came to a very great River, where they marched to meete the enemy, and to passe the River, they invented a good invention of Leather Boats, which they made in this fort. They killed many Beeues, and with the skinnes li- Leather Boats,

ned the Boats of Wood, in which they paffed the men : the Horfes did swim ouer, for it was 40 not so deepe to hinder the passage. This being done, men went ouer to fasten some Cords on the other fide, for to paffe ouer by them : This they did halfe a league diffant from the Campe of the enemies, and by night that they might not be seene. Hauing passed ouer the Riuer, they Kingos Add fet vpon the Campe of the enemies, of the which they killed many, and among them the King flaine. of Aden. But there dyed also many Christians, and King Gradens was also hurt, and like to haue beene flaine, with the great diforder that hee and his had, because they knew not how to fight by night: for they disperle themselues through the Campe, and could not keepe together. nor helpe themselues, and therefore many of them were slaine. The Moores seeing that their King was flaine, fet themselves to flight; The Portugals followed the chase of the Moores, till they flue themost part of them, and brought backe agains the Kings wife of Aden: and the

to King gaue them great thankes, and praised God highly, for that so great and affigned victorie; and faid, that he would have of all, no more but the Sword and the Horfe of the King of Aden, and that all the rell should bee the Portugals, as well that which they tooke in the pursue, as that which they found in the Campe, which was wonderfully rich, that all the Portugals fhould divide it among themselves brother-like, seeing they had got it; and for himselfe and his, he would have no more, then the peace and reflauration of his Kingdomes, which by the virtue and Armes of Portugall he had recoursed. But as touching the Queene of Aden, called Dinia Ambara, because it were not decent that she should be capture of any man lesse then a King, that Darsa and Bale

he thought good if the would become a Christian, that the should bee the Wife of Aria Diz, guen Aria and that he gaue them for them, both the Kingdomes of Doror and Bale, which had beene hers, Dr. 6c and tooke for himfelte onely Orgere.

d. IIII.

Disgusts betwirt the Negus and the Portugals: ARIAS DIZ his treacherie. Battell betwixt the Abassines and Portugals. Their exile; ARIAS bis death.

Fter the King Gradeus had recourted his Kingdomes, and was in peace, I tarried that he should folemnize and approue more the obedience which he had promised to the chiefe Bishop, and the contor mitie of faithfull Christians, celebrating the Sacraments, 10 and ving the Rites and Ceremonies of the Romane Church. But hee as he promifed it with an enill will, so he let it be forgotten, and did the contrarie. I fent him word, that the next day I would come and visite him : but he made no account of me, nor of my mellage, nor of my comming. Hentalio to the Captaine Arias Diz, that I was come thither, that he should come to receive me with his men, as it was fit, and they had for a cultome. Hee came the next day in the morning with one hundred and fiftie Portugals: which came to take my bleffine.

entertaining and making great offers vnto me : and especially Arias Diz.

The King comming neere where I was, neither hee nor his did make any motion, but were looking out at their Tents and Standings at vs, as in mockage of vs. Arias Diz came to mee. and faid: The cuill will, Sir, which the King beareth you is well icene. And with this began 20 to put forth his Horse, and to skirmish. Some other of the companie, when they saw him feast. Gradeus his in- did even the same. But Manuel of Accunia, Gaffar of Sofa, and Deniz of Lima, which came neere me, faid vnto me : Sir, diffemble with this tawnie Moore; for know yee, that all this which he doth, and sheweth outwardly, is malice and decest: for his heart is as the Kings heart; and he will not flay long without flewing the figne of it in the Colours of our Lord and King; therefore truft him not, but redouble still upon him; for all that he doth and fayth, is also feigned and falle. The same did Lope of Almansa, lames of Abrew, and other honest men. Whereof I remayned much amazed : for I held him for no such man: but Gentlemen, and good men telling it me, made fome impression in me to beleeue it. At this time, wee drew neere where the King was, and difmounted, and I went to the Courtains where he was, and I heard him fay, speaking to to Arias Diz. Marke my Captaine generall, doe not carrie any more in my Kingdomes that Ancient of the King of Portugall: but carrie mine, and leave that. Arias Diz answered him: I will not leave the Colours of the King of Portugall. Then the King commanded a Page of his to take them, and carrie them away from thence, and Arias Diz consented, and fuffered him to carrie them away. But a Portugall Gentleman, called James of Brito, tooke the Colours from the Pages hand : and because he would not let him goe, strooke him with his sword ouer the head, and made him leave them perforce.

When I law that, I returned to my lodging, and all the Portugals with me, and the Traitor Arias Diz alfo. Sending him away with this answere, Arias Diz remayned telling mee by way of counfell. Sir, I know not how well it is to speake hardly, and anger the King Gradeus. 40 for wee are in his Kingdomes, farre from our Countries. At this, many Portugals arole, and faid vnto him, that certainly it appeared, that he was a Traitor to the Crowne of Portugall, and his King; for his words and deeds declared it: therefore that hee was not to bee Captaine of the Portugals.

Hee answered, that he was Captaine of the Emperour of Ethiopia, and not of the King of Portugall: therefore that they could not call him a Traitor for tipeaking in fauour of the teruice of the faid Emperour, to whom he did owe that and much more, for fauours which he had done to him, and marrying him with Dinia Ambar late wife of King Mahomet, and giving the title of his Countries. Whereunto I answered, taying: Areas Diz, I hauenotice, that you have forlaken the Faith of the Baptisme, which you received among the Christians Catholicke, according 50 to the vie of the Romane Church; and were baptifed againe with the Baptifine of the Heretikes and Scismatikes of Alexandria, and have changed the name of Arias into Marke. When he heard me say thus, without any tarrying he rose vp melancholie, and went to his lodging, with some few Portugals that accompanied him.

By this time the King fent me word, that he requested mee that wee would come the next day, because that day it was alreadie late, and there was no time for it. Entring into his Tent, the King did not arife, neither tooke my bleffing, as he was wont, neither gaue mee my feat in my accustomed place, but onely bowed his head a little, and let me stand. I feeing his new and vnaccustomed discourtesse, said vnto him. Not onely, King Gradeus, to the King of Partugall art thou vnthankefull; whose Colours thou didft delpife, with the which, thou refto- 60 redit thy effate : but also to lefus Christ art thou vnreuerent in my person , which doe reprefenthim, thou also wilt bee cast away, and bee accorded and excommunicate, if thou does returne to the Herefies of the Iacobites and Diefeorians of Egypt: the which for their finnes and disobedience which they committed, rebelling against the holy and right Apostol ke

Sea of Rome were loft, and are Captines to the Turkes, and Intidels : and fo shalt thou bee. if thou wilt not amend. Hee answered me, that they of Egypt, and of the Sect of Dioscorus were not Heretikes, but that we were Heretikes that worshipped foure Gods, as the Arrians: and that if I had not beene his God-father, as I was, he would command me to be quartered. And having passed other talke of this qualitie, I returned to my Lodging, where I found many Portugals that tarried for me, to whom I gaue account of what had passed with the King.

Being in the Campe with the Portugals, the King fent me word , that I should not meddle in commanding in the Campe of the Portugals, nor make any alteration in them, for as much as they were delivered to Marke, his Captaine generall; and that by him hee would they should Io be governed, and by no other. I fent him word , that the Portugals were subject to the King of Portugali, who had delivered them vnto mee; and I, at the request of King Gradens, delivered them to a Portugall, called Arias Diz. But the Portugals faid they would not, neither was it their honour to have for their Captaine an Heretike and a Traitor; neither would they fight under any other Colours but of Portugall: and befides , feeing that King Gradens did not maintaine that which he had promised, which was the obedience to the chiefe Bishop of Rome, Succeffor of Saint Peter, that they would not ferue him, but would returne with mee to Portno all.

Peter Straw went with this answere to the King; and faid moreover, that if hee would not obey the Church of Rome, and publikely so proclaime, that we all would leave him, and returne to Portugall, as we faid. Whereunto he answered, that he was King, and Lord of that Coun-20 trey, and that we should not goe out of it, except he were willing; for he would that Marces his Captaine generall should have the command and jurisdiction over the Portugals.

The Portugals determined to die, or defend themselves from the tyrannie of the ingratefull man, and of a Traitor: and they asked me, what means we should have for to give the battell to fo great a number of people. When I faw their determination, I faid vnto them; Sonnes, doe not difmay, for in the greatest tribulations is God, and so will! He be with vs in this. And because our Campe had three entries whereby they might affaille'vs, wee tooke order to fortifie them with some Munition, because when it were so necessarie, wee would fortifie our selues within, and defend our felues as well as we might. The munition that we laid in those entries The Perimelle was pots full of Powder hid, against the enemies did tome in to set them on fire and burne them, affault if 30 as in effect it was done with their great hur: , as prefently I will fay : but before they affinited kings Campe,

vs. between eleuen and twelue at night, our Hori-men went out, and fet vpon the Kings Camp: which fudden teare, and the noise of Trumpets, and Shot, did firch effect, that all of them iet themselves to flight, and had altogether beene overcome, if the number of our men had beene fufficient to have followed them : but because they were but few, they retyred themselves

The King in this burliburly was feeking for a Horfe to flee with the reft : but feeing that our men were retyred, quieted himfelfe : and when it was day, hee commanded we should bee affaulted. Euery one fet in a readinesse, both his and ours, his Targettiers came, before which were the most and the best men that they had, and affaulted vs by the three places which gave 40 entrance where the Powder was, where our men tarried for them; and comming with great Powder Plot furie, and cries, our men fayning weakneffe retyred inward, and gaue them leave to come where the Powder was : comming vnto it they gate fire, wherewith many were burnt and flaine, the reft fled away scalded and findged. When the King faw the loss of his people, and the deceit of the hope which he had, he tare his rich griments that he ware, which among them is a signe of great forrow, and fent presently to call Marke. He came, and having taken counsell between both, they agreed that they could not ouercome the Portugals by warre, without comming into great danger, and want : therefore, they determined to take them by fleight and deceit . in this manner. They fent to tell vs, that he repented him much of his errour, because God had manifestly shewed him, how much he had erred in not accomplessing that which he had promiso fed and fworne vnto me, but that now he would accomplish it; and doe all that I would : and therefore he defired vs we would doe no more harme to his people : to the which we answered. that the cuill we did was not by our wills; but that they had given a cause thereunto, whereof it grieued vs very much: therefore if hee did vs reafon of hunfelfe; ind did accomplish that

which he had promifed to God and to vs, that we would doe that which alwaies we had done. which was to Ierue and loue him as a Father and Lord: but if hee would have any other thing, that we hoped in Iefu Christ, that he feeing our inflice, would defend vafrom his tyrannie, and from the malices of Marke the Traitor. This answere the King imparted to Marke, to the Two fleights which he replied, that to come the fooner to an agreement with them, hee should vie two policies : one was, to command all his Subjects, that none should ferue vs, fior proude vs of any thing 60 necessarie, under paine of having his eyes pulled out for a Traitor; the other, to offer and give vs much money and rewards, not onely promited for hereafter, but prelently, for on the one tide, the necessitie; and on the other, the conetousnesse would ouercome vs.

The King did fo, and fent vs preferrly an affurance with much money for the men, and for mee a great Present of Beeues and Muttons, and other things for prouision, promising mee that

all should bee done at my will, and that against Christ-masse next, which was within source moneths, I should celebrate generall Orders, as before wee had agreed. Besides the affurance of the King. The Bernagaez I faac, did promise that he would be on our side, and fauour vs by himfelfe, and with all his power : and more he laid, and fware that he perceived the King to be very repentant for the wrongs he had done vs. We being about to goe where the King was, CMarke came with the Portugals that were on his fide, and were with him, to accompanie vs, and so we departed altogether, and going by the way, I defired Marke that there might be no discord betweene him and the Portugals, he promifed to to doe. The King shewed to great contentment of our friendship, cleat he came out to receive vs out of the Campe, with all the great men of his Court : and all his men both high and low were very joyfull.

Within a few houres, there came to me Baltafar Montera, Antonie Ferrera, Simon of Andrade. Iames of Brito, Antonie Vaz, and faid to mee, that the treason which they had invented for vs was discouered; for they had bidden them make them readie to goe banished enery one to his Countrey, farre diftant one from another, charging the Lords of those Countries, to keepe them in good lateguard; all by counfell of the Traitor Marke. I went to the Lords of the Countries which carried them, and defired them to intreate them well, the which faid to mee. Father. know you that Marke commanded vs to carrie these men in Irons, and give them other apparell of Slaues, and vie them like Slaues; but for your fake, which are our Father, we will deale better with them. And I went prefently to the King, and faid vnto him : Now Sir, what shall I doe? I fee you doe not fulfill your word, and you fend my Brethren prisoners. The King answered 20 me with a good countenance. Father, there shall no wrong be done to you; but because it is neceffarie for vs to prepare to the Warres, which the Gallas make vpon mee, as you know, in the meane while you shall remayne in the Countrey of the Gaffates, praying to God for mee, and you shall eate the Rent of that Countrey, which will suffice well for you and yours, for the last dayes I being retyred there it fufficed mee and all mine : and I will command to doe you much honor, and to obey you as mine owne Person : and against Christ-masse, if it please God, I comming with health, as I hope, you shall celebrate your Orders, as we have agreed. And as touching thele men, which I command to depart from hence, let it not grieve you, for I doe it to have no mutinie among the reft. In the meane while came Marcos in, and faul to the King, I befeech your Highnesseto send to Alexandra for to serke the Patriarch; he answered him : Blessed bee 12 thou of God, Marke my friend, That is done alreadie.

The Patriarch fent to the the Caffites.

should give me the possession or it, and command the Inhabiters of it that they should acknowledge me for their Lord, and refort to me with the Rents which they accomformed to pay to the King, for fo his Highnelle commanded it. I carried with me all my feruants, free and bond; and I Carried befoles a man of that Countrey called Francisco Mathems, which had been a feruant of the Ambassadour Matthems, which Queene Helena lent to Portugal, in the time of the King Don Manuel, your great Grand-father of glorious memorie, and had beene with the same Ambaffadour in Portugall. I gave him the charge of all my boule, because he was discreet, and had good knowledge. Taking leave of the King, I travelled eight dayes iourney, for it is fo much 40 whence the King remayned, to the Countrey of the Caffates, which lyeth betweene many high A rough coun- and rough Hills, and is inhabited with a very barbarous people. After we lad passed the Mountry and bartaines, we descended to a great Valley, so deepe, that it seemed we descended into Hell, and the barous people. Hills remayned to high that they feemed to reach to Heauen. The Captaine, which carried me, commanded all the principall men of that Country to meet, and faid before me, that the King commanded that they should take mee for their Lord, and to pay mee his Rents, but that they should keepe me well that I went not away from thence , nor returne to the Kings Court , and they promifed fo to doe. ... I was in that Country feuen moneths, in the which the King went to make warre vpon the

The King commanded a Captaine of his to carrie mee to the Countrey of the Gaffates, and

aris or Make ing any thing to his profit. Within a light while Make dyed, and hee commanded him to bee buried in a Church, where the Kings of that Countrey were buried, with great pompe; he and

his hewing to great forrow for his death, as though he had beene their owne Brother, or Father, and so they faid, that in him dyed all their refuge and defence of their Countries. Knowing of the death of Marke, I determined my returne to the Court. And on a day, I commanded to take a Captaine that kept vs, for some fault that I found against him, and commanded to pull him A plot by fear by the haire and to buffet him , and to binde him hand and toot , and commanded my Caliurrring the peo- men to floot off their Peeces neere vnto him, which was fo afraid that hee bepift and berayed ple, to cleape. himfelfe, and defired me for Gods take to loofe him, and he promited me to goe to farre from the place where I was, that he would neuer fee me, nor I him.

Gallas, as he had faid to me, and came from thence wearied, and almost ouer-come without do- 10

I commanded to loofs him, that hee might give newes to the rest, as in effect he did. And I commanded the shot, which were ten or twelve, to shoot off many shots, which resounded among the Hills that they seemed thunder; and by mischance they killed two men of those with the bullets which they shot at randome. Wherewith we skared them in such manner, that they

fled, and unhabited the Countrey where we were : and the Captaines fent to defire me, that I would goe where I lifted, for they promifed me not to hinder my journey. We made fuch hafte on our journey, that about evening Prayer wee had gone a dayes journey, and made an end of comming out of the Mountaines. Two dayes before we came where the King was, we found a Portugall, called Franciscus Magellanes, who came from seeing certaine Lands which the King had given him : for he gave Lands to all the Portugals. And after I told him how I came, he told me of the death of Marke, and how for his death the King had made one James of Figuredo Captaine of the Portugals, which within a few dayes died of a laske; and before his death, hee had made two Captaines together, one for the right hand, another for the left; for hee had or-10 dayned that the Portugals should guard him, and goe alwaies neere vnto him in two Squadrons; of the which he made Captaines, Gafpar of Sofa, and Lope of Almanfa. Which Lope of Almanla because he was a stranger, and of those that favoured the partie of Marke, the Portugals would not that hee should bee their Captaine, and Gaspar of Sosa remayned; wherewith I was very

elad : for this Galar of Sola was my Neplew, and my friend. Wee went all in companie till

wee came neere where the King was, and there wee separated our selues. Hee went to tell the

newes to the Portugals that were with the King. The Portugals, as soone as they knew of my comming, came all to see mee with great ioy. The King also fent presently to visit me by his Page, and sent mee word, that hee was very glad with my fafe arrivall, for he did greatly miffe me. He commanded to give me apparell, and be-20 fides, fine hundred ounces of gold; and I remayned more, because the Portugals defired me then by mine owne good will, because I perceived that he did separate me from him, by reason of the other Patriarch, which was come from Alexandria, and was every day to come to the Court. and he doubted that we should meete, and that we would make some tumult.

The con ming of another Patriarch. The Calide killed. Of the Gallas and other Prouinces, subject and bordering on the Negus, and rarities there obferued. The escape and returne of the Author.

Free the King departed, the Afmache Robel came one day to mee, and faid vnto mee; Father, I being so much yours, as you know, will discouer vnto you a secret that imports you very much; but it shall be, you pleighting your faith vnto me neuer to be-wray me, for if the King doe know it, he will command to cast me to his Lions. Sir, you are to know, that because you are of the obedience of the Church of Rome, the King will not that you be Patriarch of his Countrey, and fent to Alexandria to feeke another Patriarch of his Another Pa obedience, the which is come alreadie, and is in Debarus, on the way toward the Kings Court, triarch, therefore the King will not carrie you with him , because hee will possesse the other with your

40 charge; and befides, becaule hee is much grieued at you, because you made him sweare to obey

Rome, and publikely to proclaime that enery one should obey him. Now see what you will doe, for if you will be gone, I will absent my telfe from hence, that the King may not say, that I was consenting to your going. I thanked him heartily for the warning, and said vnto him, that hee faw, feeing it was fo, how much it behoued me to goe to the Court; therefore that hee should absent himselfe as he said, whilest I departed Going on my journey, I found a Portugall, called Manuel Aluarez, Groome of the Chamber of the King your Grand-father; by whom I fent word to the Captaine Gaffar of Sofa, that I was going to the Court about a matter very impor-tant to them all, whereof I would tell him when I faw him; for he was certaine, that the King would not be pleased with my comming, I requested him, that hee with all the Portugals should so aide me when it were needfull.

The next day comming neere the Campe, I found another Portugall, called Laurence Gonfales, which told me that the King knew my comming alreadie, and commanded they should take me, and carrie me to a Rocke where I might end my life, not being able to come out from thence. The Author And because your Highnesse may know, what Rocke it was where he commanded me to be car-sentenced to a ried; it is thus, That in the Countrey there be certaine high Hills, ouer-pearing the Countrey Rocke. with great aduantage, and all about steepe like a broken Rocke, so that in no wife they may bee ascended, but by very narrow wayes made of hand; and on the top are great Plaines, some of a league and more, and some of seuen or eight leagues, with very good Fields, and Fountaines of good waters on the top, and other dispositions for people to live in them, as in effect there doth, 60 But the wayes are fo dangerous, that none can come in or out from those Rocks, without the consent of them that keepe them. These Rocks serue for Fortresses, and therefore in that Countrey there are no walled Cities. To one of thefe, did King Gradesu command mee to bee carried

by two of his Captaines, to make an end in it, without any hope of comming out. As foone as

the Paring als knew that they carried mee prisoner, they came presently to rescue mee from the

hands of those that carried me.

Order for

both Patri-

archs.

Within a little while, the King came also with his men, and pitched his Campe neere vnto vs. and fent word to Gafpar of Sofa, that he had not done well in taking me from his Captaines. And he fent him word againe, that hee knew no error in his action, feeing hee had delivered his Prelate from the hands of Tyrants, the which for doing good to withankfull persons suffered troubles and injuries. And that his Highnesse knew very well how much hee did owe the Patriarch, and how much fauour God had the wed him for his fake; and how, while he was in the Armie, and they did obey him, God gaue him alwayes the victoria against his enemies; and after we put him from vs, and dealt vncourteoufly with him, were ouer-come of the Gallas, which entred in his Campe, and came to flaughter his men neere to the Kings Tent, having no body to reint them; and his Highmesse saw himselse in such a danger, that he sted from them with great to dishonour. And finally, hee let him vinderstand, that hee and all the other Portugals would not forfake the Patriarch, which was their Father and had brought them from Portugall, and praved for them to God. The King feeing the Portugals resolution, he sent to desire mee to see my selfe with him: I faid I would, and the Portugals laid they would goe with me, and to they did. The King received me with fo great curtefie that I milliked it. I gaue my hand to the King which asked it of me, and promited him not to goe from the Portugals, nor from his Kingdomes without his licence. Of the which hee was contented; and gaue mee for my maintenance fo much Land, that the Rent of it was well worth twentie thousand Cinzados enery yeere, and ordavned that the Patriarch lofeph, which hee had commanded to come from Alexandria, should bee ned that the Patriarch, and I of the Portugals onely; and commanded that Franciscus Matthews, which 20 was my Aduge (as here an Archdeacon) and all the other Oficers which I had, should ferue Iosepb.

Custome of it included in

* Aluarez bath an inft moe to the contrarie. The Gallas. *Suimhas of Zumbas, 2 Generation of or the fame

ane amy, tuoning the rather napper to personal position in in Commercy thoughts mechanic that I should be ablent with all the Personal, and therefore ordayned to place win form part of his king dome out of the Produnce, which is made frequenced, which is called A. some parcor his kingdome out or the Trouthee, which he most requented, which is called A-mars, where then he was tarrying for the Patriatch Iofeph, And to bulle the Partsagds in finanching, he fent them to the Promince of Darro, which neighboureth you the Gallas his enemies, to lye there in Garrison in the frontier. The Prounce of Darro is also neighbour to the Kington the College of the Province of Darro is also neighbour to the Kington to the College of the Province of Darro is also neighbour to the Kington to the College of the Province of Darro is also neighbour to the Kington to the College of the Province of Darro is also neighbour to the Kington to the College of the Province of the Province of Darro is also neighbour to the Kington to the Province of the Province dome of Zeela. But the Captaine Calide was not contented that they were placed there, bewhich fiter the cause he tooke away his luing to give it vato them. And therefore determined to kill them, or to recoyled rom drive them out of the Countrey. This Captaine was a great Lord, and mightie : for besides this the Moneto Promince of Donno, being great and firong, he had also the Promince of Bale, and the Captaine of Hadis for his neighbour and friend. From which Countries hee joyned fenen hundred Horfemen, fixe hundred Archers, and fixe thousand Targetiers. He leuied these men so secretly, that almost hee came one morning before day to fet vpon vs. But howsoener, wee alwayes kept a watch, and his men feared vs, and doubted the fetting vpon vs, they were perceived of our men, and could not give the affault that they would. And became the Calide was knowne by the deuice he wore, our men ordayned that feuen Caliuer-men should have an eye at him particularly. and shoot at him; for he being dead, his men were quickly ouer-come. So they did: and as The Capitaine he came in the fore-front, knowne among the reft, before the battell began he was flaine. 40 With his death some of his men made signes of peace, these were of those Lands which the

The King, to bring the Patriarch Ioseph to peaceable possession in his Countrey, thought it

King had given vs : which fent vs word that they were our fubiects , and would obey vs , and bay vs our Rents as the King commanded, for that Rebellion was not mooued by their will. The reft flood fall without doing any thing, till we fet vpon them, and made them flye, and we flue fome of them. With the which newes the King was very glad, for he alwaies was doubtfulof the Calide, for he was the neerest Heire to the Kingdome by his Mothers fide. I say by his Mothers fide, for by the Father he could not be according to the custome of that Countrey. The custome * Alace of pli- is, that all the male children of the Kings, except the Heires, affoone as they be brought up, they fend them presently to a very great Rocke, which stands in the Province of Amara, and there this troumce, but perhaps in they paffe all their life, and neuer come out from thence, except the King which reigneth de- go parpermaps in alarger fenie, parteth this life without Heires, for then they bring from the Rocke him that is neerest, to come and raigne. The which neither bringeth Wife ' nor Children from thence, if he hathany there, but they remayne vpon the Rocke, and hee marrieth in the Kingdome with another

By the death of the Calide of Doaro, wee rested foure monethes quiet, at the end of the which the King fent vs word, that we should stand vpon our guard, for he had intelligence, that the Gallas determined to come vpon vs on a fudden, for they deried to ouercome vs by whatfoeuer meanes they could: because they had not, nor all the Enemies of Presbyter John any other griefe or annoy, but that which we did vnto them. Thefe Gallas inhabit in the Countries borfoc lled, like, dering to Magadoxo: they are a fierce Nation, they make warre with their Neighbours, and 60 with all people, no more then onely to destroy them, and disinhabit the Countries:in the Countries where they ouercome, they kill all the men, they geld the young men, the old women they kill, the young they keepe for their vie and feruice. It feemeth, that from hence came the Balleta in congo * Suimbas, which came destroying all Guinea, for in their craekie they are like. Hearing the

warning which the King sent vs, we beganne to prepare our selues with things necessarie for the Warre, especially of Powder, for with the principally did we our parts, and supplyed the forces which we wanted. We had great flore of prouision to prouide our selues with Powder, for in the Country there is great flore of Salt-peeter, Brimstone, and many Otiers to make Coales. wherewith we made it very fine, we commanded also to rid the Countrie of the women, and youngmen, and all the people that could not fight ; and the rich Inhabiters fled also with these great and small, with feare of the crueltie of the Gallas.

One day they appeared. They were many without number, and they came not difordered The Galleranlike barbarous people: but close in troupes like Squadrons, and assone as they had ight of ys: proach. 10 they stayed tarrying for the rest, and from thence they came all in one bodie to pitch neere vnto vs. in a distance where our shot could doe them no hurt. We because they were many, and wee few, went not out to receive them : but remayned in our Campe. We were at the most an hundred and fiftie (for the rest were alreadie dead, almost all in the Warres, and some of sicknesses which were not io many, as it feemed they might have beene for our men, that Countrie being hot and fituated vinder the Sunne) and fo returned to India with Manuel of Accounts afficing the King of Zeila was flaine, for they thought that by his death all the contention was ended. Our Campe flood on a Hill, where we maftred the other grounds, and subdued those that did affault vs. There we defended our felues ten or twelue dayes tarying for the King. In which time wee flue many of their men with shot and fire-workes: for they came neere vs without 20 any feare, that we milt no affault of theirs, nor any stroke of ours that weedled not bestow it well

By this time our Powder failed vs, and the King came not; wherefore we were faine to leave the place and goe to feeke him. The Gallas did not follow vs, for peraduenture, they defired alfo to goe from vs, and I doubt not, but that if we had had more forces, that wee had made them retyre in despite of them. By this time the King came, and hearing that the Gullas remayned Lords of the Countrey, he fell in a fwound, without any sence for a great space. And atterward wept like a child, and faid. Great is my finne, feeing it hath done me thus much hurt. Wonder how Hofe not my wits, thinking on the great loile that I receive. As in effect hee loft three great Kingdome s: two of them, Bale and Doaro, as bigge as Caftile and Portugall, and Hadia, alone as bigge as all France. This Kingdome of Hadia reacheth to the borders of Melinde. Lofte of three 30 And in this Countrie is great store of Myrrhe, Incense, and Gumme Aunime. Some Pertugals tolle of the

answered him. Let not your Highnesse grieue, for God can remedie it all, and will remedie it, domes, Bale if you will reconcile your selfe with the Patriarch Don John Bermudez, which is the true Pa. Dogo and He triarch, and not regard the other Schismaticke. Whereunto he gaue no Answere, but set on forward, and faid voto me that we should follow him. And because he held at that time the ware with the Gallas to be vnfortunate; Hee determined to goe and fee some Kingdomes of his Empire, which yet he had not feene, and at his returne to let vpon the Gallas, if yet they were not retyred to their Countries : for they came but to spoile and desiroy, and so returne,

We traueiled toward the South-west from Dogre seuen or eight journies, and came to a Kingdome of Christians, called Oggy, in the which raigned a good man named Frier Wichael, Bro. Oggy, the force 40 ther-in-law to King Gradem, and his Tributarie. Who made vs very welcome, and good enter-and armour tainment to the people. This Kingdome hath fine thousand Horsemen, of the which fixe hundred are great Horse and harnassed, and the rest are light Horsemen, and they ride on the bare Horse. It maketh also ten thousand Footmen : the which fight with Darts which they throw. and the Horsemen with long Speares like ours. The armings for their Horses are of Elkes skins and the nortemen with 10mg operation in the out-fide. He carryeth in his Armie fixe hundred quilted within, and garnished very richly on the out-fide. He carryeth in his Armie fixe hundred Hand-mils, which women doe grind with. This Kingdome hath a Prouince of Gentiles, called GreatSorce-Gorague, which bordereth with Quiloa, and Mangalo. These Gentiles of Gorague are great Wit- rest. ches, and doe dinine in the Inwards, Guts, and Entrailes of the Beafts that they facrifice. They by their Witch-crafts make to appeare that the fire doth not burne in this manner. They kill an Oxe with certaine Ceremonies, and anounted with the Tallow of that Oxe they command 50 to make a great fire, and cause to seeme that they goe into it, and that they fit downe in a chaire, and so fitting at leifure in that fire they divine, and answere to what is demanded of them with-

The Goragues doe pay to their King every yeare for Tribute, two Lions of Gold, and three Gold. Whelpes of Gold and one Ounce of Gold, and certaine Hennes with their Chickens alfo of Abast fo cale Gold: which all waveth as much as eight men can carrie: and this Gold is fine and good. They led. pay him also fixe Buffes laden with bate Silver. They also pay one thouland Beeues aline; and many Lions, Ounces, and Elkes skinnes. In this Countrey is great flore of Ciuet, * Sandalos, * Or Dates, Blacke Wood and Amber. The menof this Prouince lay, that there come to traif que in it Of Eben

60 White men: but they know not of what Nation, if Portugals, or Turkes, or any other wood.

Weltward from the Kingdome of Oggy lyeth the Kingdome of the Gaffates Tributaries also, base been The Gaffates are Gentiles, and vulgarly it is faid that they were leves. They are a barbarous and leves.

1168Strange gates, franger beafts, ftrangest women, more then strange Fowles, LIBVII

euil people, rebellious & quarrelfom. There be many of them in other Provinces of the Empire. hur in every place they are held for Strangers, & different from other people, and abhorred of them. as the lewes are here. In this Kingdome they are Lords, and have no other Nation among them. Ramille Catho but some Christians which separated themselues from the Abexines, at the time they denved Remille Cation blees, if they be the obedience to the Apostolike Sea: which Christians even now doe say and protest to beein not as inmifiele the obedience of the same Sea. The Gaff ates doe possesse in these parts a great and rich Country. of much Gold, and of tome good Commodities, especially of fine Cotton Clothes. Within the Countrey they have spacious and plenteous fields. They say that in this Countrey there is an invisible Wood, and it maketh men inuisible. The King when hee came to this Countrey, commanded to make warre upon the people of the Countrey, and to enter with force of Armes into In their Towne, because they had rebelled fince the death of his Father, and would not pay him his Tributes, nor reknowledge him for their Superiour. The G. fates came at this, and a morning before day affaulted the Campe of the Abexines, and flue many of them. The Portugals were neere the Kings Tent, for they were his Guard: when they heard the cry and flitre . they came being alreadic almost day, and draue the Gaffates out of the Campe killing many of them : and

The Portugals here in their Townes found great riches, wherewith they returned iowfull and rich. They found Bezutos, which are like fine Quilts : and they found Cotton-cloathes very fine like Lawnes : and they found Cypreffes to fine, that a piece of thirtie or fortie yards would be contayined within ones hands. They found also store of Gold in Pots, and Pans, and buried 20 vnder their hearthes in the houses where they make their fire : for there they vie to keepe it hidden as most secret, and they themselves discovered it to our men, because they should not kill them. The King would make no long tarrying there, for his pretence was not to do them much hurt, but onely to threaten them : and because Winter came on wee left that barbarous people quickly, and went the way to Damute, which lyeth almost to the West from these Gaffates. On the West fide bordereth presently with the Gaffates, whereof I spake before, the King-

Goldand

Creftill

Oxen almost

as bigge as E-

huge bornes.

cas not that

Painters pre-

fent with a

fore-head.

Amazons.

horne in the

whichthe

dome of Damute, which standeth vpon the River of Nilm: that River maketh there many turnings and very great. The entrance to this Kingdome is difficult, in respect of the rough and high Rockes that are by the River of Nilus : in the which belides their beeing rough, there are alio made in themat hand certaine passages, in the Rockes broken with the Pick-axe, and shut 10 with gates and kept with men at Armes, in fort that with a little force they refult and defend the entry from their enemies, if against their will they will come in. Thefe Gates, when the Emperour commeth thither, are broken and open freely to all that will passe through them. Damente is a great Kingdome, and hath many subject Prouinces. The principall is of Christians, but some are of Gentiles. In all of them is found great store of Gold and Crystail stone. The Countries are very plenteous and fruitfull, especially those which are neere the River Nilse, the which have more Mountaines and Rivers then the others. They breed many wild and tame beafts, and ftrange Wormes and Serpents very venemous. They breed Oxen, Horses, Buffes, Mules, Affes, Sheepe and other Cattell : the Oxen are greater then ours, fo much that fome of them are almost as bigge as Elephants. They have great hornes, that fome of them doe to hold a Tanker of Wine, and do ferue to carrie in, and to keepe Wine and Water, and as the Tankers Barrels here. I was bold to speake this, because Don Roderick of Lima, brought one of these hornes of this bigneffe to this Kingdome, in the time of the King your Grand-father, when the Embassadour Tagazano, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez came with him. There is found in these Countries a kind of Vnicorne, which is wild and fierce, fashicned like a Horse, and of the bignesse of an Asse. There be in them Elephants, Lions, Ounces, and other beasts, vnknowne here with vs.

There is neere to Damute, a Province of women without men: which doe live after the

manner of the ancient Amazones of Scythia, which in certaine time of the yeere permitted the

of the Queene Griffons. huge fowles,or companie of some men that were their Neighbours, and of the shildren which they bare, they so ftrous fooles &

fent the men-children to their Fathers, and the women they kept with themselues, and brought them vp in their customes and stile. In the same manner doe these of Athiopia, and they burne also their left paps, as those did for to thoot more readily with their Bow, which they vie in cunning and their Warres, and in Hunting. The Queene of these Women knoweth no man, and for that act bragging Na; is worthipped among them for a Goddeffe. They are permitted and preferred, because they lay, that they were infittuted by the Queene of Saba, which went to fee King Salomon. In this Prouince of the Women there be Griffons, which are Fowles to bigge that they kill the Buffe, and fails of Mira carrie them in their clawes as an Eagle carryeth a Rabbet. They lay, that here in certaine Mounclestobeleeue. taines very rough, and defert, there breedeth and liueth the Bird ' Phenix, which is one alone in

God create first and after bring into the Arke all Creatures Male and Female, if this Phenix bee sole? Qui Bauium non odit, and tua carmina Maui. He which beleeueth this Phenix, and thele Griffons, &c. may beleeue Camas Miracles. Which I speake not to difgrace the whole Rorie (which is viefull) but to make the Reader wire where things are tole vpon report, or are aduantagious to Rome or Portugall. Much of this Chapter feemeth to mee Aporpha , but I leave libertie of Faith to the moft licentious Credulities which shall thinke fitter to beleeue then to goe and fee. And yet may Africa hauca Prerogation in Railies, and some seeming In the World, and it is one of the wonders of nature. So doe the Inhabitors of those Countries affirme, that this Bird is there, and they do fee it and know it, and that it is a great and faire Bird There be other Fowles so bigge, that they make a shadow like a Cloud. Voward by Nilm towards the South there bordereth with Damnie, a great Province, called

Couche. This is subject to Damute, and Gentiles doe inhabit it: the Prince of it is called by the name of his Title, Axgagee, that is to fay, Lord of the Riches, as in effect it is fo. The Axgagee maketh when he neederh ten thousand Horsemen, and more then twentie thousand Footmen. He carryeth in his Armie one thousand Hand-mils vied by Women, which doe grind with them the flowre necessary for the people. At the time that wee came to Damute, this Io Prince was in Armes with the King of Damute: wherefore, the King Gradeus said to me, that

as a Prelate and Mediator of Peace, I should fend him word, how his Maiestie was very angrie against him, by reason of his Rebellion and Disobedience, and that hee determined to destroy him by means of the inuincible and more then humane force of the Portugals, which he brought with him for that purpose. I did even so, and sent him word, that he should obey his Emperour. and bring him his Tributes, and fee him, for I did aff re him that his Maiestie would vie clemencie with him. So he did, and came prefently with a great tumme of Gold, and great quantitie of Beeues, and other prouision in abundance for all the Armie : and many Slaves, Mules and Affes, for the necessary service.

The Axgages prouided the Emperours Campe with all things in abundance, without wan-20 ting any thing. And at the last be himselfe came acompanied with many and proper men on Foot and Horle : and he was verie richly attyred. Affoone as hee came to the place where hee might be seene from the Emperours Tent, hee difmounted from his Horse, and put off the rich clothes he had on, and remayning in others of leffeval ie, he cane to the Tent, and tarryed till they commanded him to come in. After that he entred into the first receit of the Tent (for it was divided with certaine Curtaines) and there he cast himselfe on the ground untill the Emperour commanded him to arife, and received him with good words, and commanded him to apparell himfelfe, and commanded to give him some meate, and there heespake with him behind the Curtaines, without admitting him to his perence, till after foure dayes he commanded him to come in where he was.

30 For this honor and courtefie that Gradem shewed to Azgagee, he said vnto him, my Lord, I wil doe you one feruice, that neither I nor my Fore-fathers ever did to your Farher, nor to the other Emperours your Predeceffors, which is to shew you the riches and secrets of my Countries : for with this condition we doe obey you, that you shall not see them but with our will. Finally, he led vs through his Countries to a great River of fixtie fathome breadth, or more, in whole borders there be many venemous Snakes, fo much, that their biting is mortall : but by the goodneffe of God, Nature hath prouided a remedie against that hurt : and it is an Herbe , that groweth in some places of that Country, which is so contrary to the Snakes I spake of , that they Strange herbe, flye from it as from an Enemie, and came not neere him that hath it about him, neither hath their Poylon any strength where it is, either stamped and laid in a Playster, or the inyce of it, 40 We saw one of these Snakes that made an end of eating a Buffe that it had killed, and the King

We saw one of their spaces that made an end or eating a Danie that it had alread, and the range commanded to killit, which had leaves of greate like a great and fat Hogge, which was good for the cold, and other diffeales. There be others allo, which they call, Of the "Baddon, be-" Or Canopie cause it hath a skinne on the head, wherewith it couereth a very precious stone, which they

fay it hath in her head. On the other fide this River is a barren ground and vinhabited, the kind of it is browne, red and dry, as that which wee fee in some parts of Ribateio. This Earth hath two parts of Gold, and one of Earth, for fo it yeeldeth in the melting whereof there bee as ma- Incredible ny workemen in that Countrey, as here there are Smiths, and more, for in that Countrey there quantitie of is more Gold, then here we have Iron. The Lords doe not permit that any Bridge or Boate bee Gold. in the River, that there may no easie passage bee had, and because every one that listeth may not 50 goe ouer to gather the Gold. The meanes to passe that River is this. They have Buffes accustomed to passe ouer, and when they will goe ouer to the other side they put them in before, and

they goe swimming fast by their tailes, and they fill certaine Bellowes which they carrie with that same Earth, and tye them about their neckes, and come againe fast by their tailes as they went. In this manner the paffage is not common to all. And those that doe paffe are bound to try the Gold they bring, in the melting houses of the Azgagee, for they all are his, for to pay

The King Gradeus to certifie himfelfe better of the truth, commanded some of his men to go to the other fide, which went ouer, and brought of the earth, which the others brought, the which being tried yeelded as much as the other, and the men of Gradew faid, that all the ground 60 of that Province was of that qualitie, for they went a great way in it, and found it all to be fo, and they faid that the ground is fo hot, that they could not lay them downe to fleepe vpon it, but that they fought Caues and Slates on which they lay, and also that there were in the Countrey certaine red and great Ants that did bite them, and were so many, that they did not let them fleepe. We thinking that we had reason to wonder at the great quantitie of Gold which

1170

we law, the Angagee of the Countrey faid to King Gradem, that hee should not wonder, for he would shew him yet more: and lead vs downe the River towards the South-west, travelling vea Agolden gli- would have a the end of the which hee shewed vs on the other side the Rivera Mountaine that in places gliffered like the Sunne : and faid vnto vs that all that was Gold.

With these and other entertainments that hee did vnto vs, King Gradeus was so contented. that he determined to make him a Christian : and he defired him he would be one, and that hee would be euer his very great friend. He answered, that with a good will he would be one. The King commanded presently to prepare his Baptisme, and a Bishop Presate of the Monasterie. called Debra Libanus Christned him, which is the head of the Monasteries of Amara, and King Gradess was his God-father; and they named him Andrew. There Andrew told King Grade. , how he had in those parts certaine neighbours which did eu ll neighbour-hood to him, and did ouer-runne his Countries, robbing and killing his Subjects : and requesting him, that seeine God had brought him thither with that Noble people of Portugall, whose tame did feare the people of that Countrey, that he would reuenge him of his enemies which did him great annoy, and they would be warned not to offend his subjects any more. The King granted his request, and commanded his men and the Porsugals to enter into the Countrey of the enemies, and ouerrunne it, warring against it with fire and fword, robbing and destroying their goods, taking the people captine, and killing those which resisted. This they did for a great space of the Countrey. in the which they found great spoyle of rich Iewels, and much Gold which they brought. This being done, King Gradess returned to Damute, where we heard the men of the Countrey fay, 20 that there were things to bee seene of great admiration; io much, that being told to them that faw them not, they feeme Fables, the refore they are not all to be put in writing. But beleeue your Highnesse, that with reason is Africa called the Mother of Monsters; for so it is without doubt, especially in the Countrey within, neere to the River of Nilm, where there are Mountaines, Rivers, and delert places, with great disposition of the Countrey and favour of the ayre. and of the heavens to bring forth and produce what it lifteth. Returning from Damue by the River Nilm, downeward toward the Red Sea, wee came to

the Kingdome of Goiame, which bordereth presently upon Damute, Goiame is also a great Kingdome, plentifull, and fruitfull, and rich. It is inhabited with Christians, subject to Prelbyter lobn : It hath Gold, but not fo much as Damute. In this Kingdome of Goiame there be cer- 13 taine Rivers, in the which, vnder the Sand are found certaine Ipongie stones like our Pumicestone, but that they are heavy and yellow; the which being tryed, are converted in Gold, the the most part of them, fauing some little drosse. In this Kingdome of Gozame is the Catadana of Nilss, whereof Tully maketh mention in the dreame of Scipio, and I will declare to your Highneffe what it is, for it is a great thing, and worthy to be knowne, and it is not all a dreame, as in effect some things that some large tongued mendoe speake of this, and of other things which they never faw, are but dreames.

This Catadupa is a great fall of the River Nilm, from a high Rocke downe. The Rocke is al-

Riner Nulsa, altogether in a deepe Lake, and close betweene great and high hils. The quan-

most halfe a league high, steepe downe, without any slant or hillocke, from thence falleth the

titie of water is great, for it commeth gathering from more then three hundred leagues to that

fall, and it maketh fo great a noyfe, that it feemeth a great Thunder, and amazeth them that

are not accustomed to it: it soundeth so, that three or soure Bow-shot round about, it stunneth

the eares, in such fort, that in all that space there is no other noyse heard, be it neuer so big, but

that : neither can the ayre receive any other but that, which filleth all, fo doth that found drown

all others, as the greater light doth darken the other smaller. That place is called in the Coun-

trey language, Catadhi, which is to fay, a noyle, or a great found, whence it feemeth that Latines did make the name Catadupa. Westward from these two Kingdome, Damute and Goiame,

towards Guinea, are barten grounds, and euill inhabited; and in them inhabite the Gaffates,

the people of that Empire, to the which they neither give their oath, nor owe any subjection, for almost all of it lyeth to the East of Nilm. There is Gold in those Westerne Countries

and other Gentiles very fauage. These are not well knowne, neither haue they dealings with so

Gold ftones. Catadusa, by rhe Ancients placed neerer

The Fals, or

Gaffates.

towards Guinea, but that they fay, that the Gold of the Land within hath sparkes of Sand, as fome that commeth from the Antillas. By the streame of Nilus below Goiame, neere neighbouring is another Kingdome of Abexines ancient Christians, great and good, called Dembia. In this Nilus maketh a great Lake, which hath in length thirtie leagues, and twentie in breadth, wherein are many small Ilands, all inhabited with Monasteries of religious men, of whom I made mention before. And this is not

the fpring whence Nilss proceedeth, for it commeth from farre aboue. A little below therelyeth another Kingdome, called Agaoa, inhabited with Moores and 60 Gentiles mingled together. This hath a King by it felfe, which neither obeyeth the Prefbyter John, nor the Turke. It extendeth to the Borders of Egypt : vnto Dembia the River Nilus runneth, from the South-west to the North-east, and commeth within thirtie or fortie leagues of the Red Sea, almost opposite to Suaquen: and from thence winders to the North-west, till he

commeth into the Mediterranean Sea. In this Nooke determined the King Onadinguell to make a Trench, and turne the River Nilus to the Red Sea, as his Predecessour Ale Belale began to do, Trench intenand therefore fent to demand Pioners of the King your Grand-father. To the West from Dembia lyeth a Province, called Subia Nubia (which now is of the Moores; to the Red Sea.

CHAP.7.S. S. Nilus bis ouerflowing. Equinocation and dissimulation.

and they fay, that sometime it was of Christians, and itseemeth to bee for for in it are some Subia Nubia. Churches found, yet old and ruinated) and prefently joyning with Subia Nubia. More to the West lyeth a Kingdome of Moores, called Amar, and it is very great, where through the Merchants of Carre doe paffe that 20 to lalefa, and to Mandigna, and other parts of Guinea to feeke Gold : and from Amar they carrie Salt, which groweth there in Mines, which is very deere 10 in Guinea, for the great scarcitie there is of it. Before we doe depart from the River Nilve, in thole Countries whereby the River Nilse runneth, in Iuly, August and September, is the force of Winter, and therefore doth that River increase then, and not at other times, and bringeth great flore of water, for it commeth very farre aboue Damnte, more then two hundred leagues and to his entring into Egypt eight hundred, with turnings and windings which it maketh, and paffeth by great Hils, where it gathereth great flore of water from many Rivers of great waters. All men doe not know the inward parts of Africa, especially aboue Nilus, the which, neither the Inhabitors of it doe know, nor have any notice of it all, for it is very great and difficult to search out ; and therefore I digressed a little from my Historie, to give an accompt briefely to your Highnesse of these things I saw, because peraduenture there is not another in this Coun-

20 trey that knoweth them by fight but I, that dwelt in it thirtie yeares or more. And moreouer, if it had not beene that journey that I went with the King Gradeus, although I had beene there as much more, I had knowne no part of the Countries which aboue I have rehearfed. Now I will returne to give an account of my felfe, and of my Companions.

King Gradeus, after he had frent in his vitittaion tenne or twelue moneths, determined to returne toward the Provinces of Simem and Amara, where the Kings and Emperours of that Simem and Countrey do make their abode and continuance, because the Countrey is better then the other, and more secure, and because they are borne and naturall from thence. In Amara and Vedremudro and more recursions because they are contained the contained the control of the hard Rocke, Of the fee

which they say the Angels did make. And indeede, the worke seemeth more then humane. Always. 20 The Traffique of theie Prouitices to Damue, where the Abexines chiefely doe prouide themselues of Gold, is for the most part by Iron, whereof there is great store in them, especially in the Prouince of Tigremacan, which is also a neighbour with these: which Iron is so much worth in Damute, that they giue for it Gold by weight, quantitie for quartitie. I touched this matter here, because I thinke, that the Kingdome of Damute, and the Province of Couche doe confine with Sofalla, and if from Sofalla they have the Iron that they have need of, they will give their Gold also for it. These Provinces lye to the East from Goiame and Dembia; and the Prouince of Bethmariam remaineth to the South-east, where the King satisfied vs our Rents, which by the comming of the Gallas we had loft in Doaro.

The Prouince of Bethmariam is great, and well inhabited, and of great Rent, all the which 40 the King released to vs the Portugals, and the Lands divided among vs according to the qualities of the persons. He that received least for Rent to his part, had more then one thousand crownes a yeare; the Captaine had more then tenne thousand, and I had as much. The King gaue vs this Pronince, because it was a Frontier to the Kingdome of the Gafates that were rifen, because that from hence the Portugals might make in-roades in their Countries, and punish them, Riches of the and bring them to obedience. Finally, our journey being ended, and the King feated in the Pro-Pringle attorning them to occupance. Finally our country oung times, and the lang season in the Live unince of Smem, the Portugals did aske him leave to goe and feethe Lands which he had given them in the Province of Bethmarium. And I demanded also licence to goe to my Countrey of Portugall, as I meant, and he gaue it mee, understanding that of Bethmariam. I asked him this cloaked licence, because I would not breake the oath that I had made vnto him, and because I knew that if I had asked it plainely, he would not have given it me, but rather would have hin-50 dred my comming, or taken away my life, as he desired many daies before.

I was in the Prouince of Bethmariam as long as Winter lasted, which beganne to come on when we retyred our felues; and for to win their fauours and loue of my fubicets, I cherished them all that I could, and did ease the rents that they were bound to pay me, to make them beneuolent and affected, that they should not bewray me when I would go away: for the King had commanded them all, that they should looke to me that I went not out of the Countrey. The fame had the King also commended to Gaspar of Sofa, Captaine of the Portugals, the which Diffimulation for that respect sent many times to visite me : and I for to assure him, made my selfe sieke of the Gout in one of my Legges, I tooke my bed, faying: That I could not go on foote. In the meane

60 featon, Gaspar of Sofa went to the Court, and I had opportunitie to doe what I defired. And allo, becaule I would have no hindrance of them of the Countrey, I sent to call some of the principalleif of them, and faid vinto them, that I was very licke as they faw, and would goe in P. Igrimage to the Monatterie, called Debra Labanus, to commend my felfe to God, and to re- Debra Libanus. queit the religious men there, to pray to God for me; therefore, that I defired them they would

Eccece 3

refort with my Rents to a Servant of mine, with whom I left the charge of my houseand

people.

And because the way to Debarua, directly was by the Countries where the King was, Idetermined to goe by another Countrey distant from thence, and vnhabited, and therefore I commanded to carrie prouision sufficient for my selfe, and seuen or eight persons which I carried with me, whom I most trusted, which I commanded to say by the way, that I went verie sick. and that I went to cure my felre to Debarua, where the Country and Ayres are more health.

Groffing Nim. full. By this way I croffed a Nooke of Num, where I palled it twice, with great trouble. he cause the Coasts of the River were very craggy, and with great danger of not letting me passe through certaine gates that are in them, guarded with armed men. Here I commanded my men that they should say, that a Servant of the King came behind which was knowne, that carried me to Debarns to be cured ; and with this deceit they let vs paffe. At last, with the helpe of God, by the intercession of our Ladie, to whom I commended my selfe, I came safe to Debarna. where certaine Portugals received me which were there, with great ioy and entertainment: the Bernagaez of that Countrey, as soone as he knew that I was there, came to see me, and afked me, laying; What good comming is this, Father, to this Countrey! I answered, that I went very ficke, and that I went to be cured. He faid againe, that he thought I would paffe to the Countries of Franquia, which are neere the Sea; therefore that hee defired me that I would not doe fo, but that I should rest a few daies, and returne vinto the King : I answered, that in no wife would I returne to the King, for he knew very well, and all men did know, how great reafon I had to five from him : but my intention was to dwell in that Countrey, in an hermitage of our Ladie that was there, and end my life there. Seeing that is your will, taid he, I will write to the King, and request him, that he will let you be here, and that I take you to my charge, for to give account of you, that you shall not goe away from hence, and I will fend him word that you are very ficke, therefore trouble not your felfe, for all shall bee done at your will. And faid moreouer, Father, That which I aske you for Gods fake, is, that you will suspend the excommunications, and cease from the curses which you lay voon the King, and voon all this Countrey, because some euill may not come to vs ; and besides, that you incense not the King against you. He fent an honest man of his house to the King, which returned in few daies with the anfwer: And it was, that the King was much mooued against me; especially, because I said that m he was an Hereticke and excommunicate. And the King faid, That if it were not for the Ports. sals fake, that he had commanded me to be flaine. And yet faid more, that I was a Traytor and for fwome, became I had broken my Faith and my Oath that I had fwome to him, not to goe out of his Countries without his licence. To which I answered, that he had given me the same

licence, as it is faid in the former Chapter. Finally, hee commanded that I should abide in De-

barns, and not to go from thence without his speciall commandement; and to the Bernagaez,

taine Venetian Merchants which were there, and had taken in charge fortie odde Portugals,

which were taken captiues in the parts of Ormuz, and the Turker demanded thirtie thousand

crownes : and Micer Suncar came to know of Presbyter loba if hee would ransome them, who

ransomed them, giving the faid price, and other two or three thousand crownes for their expen-

fes. There came also to mee a religious man of the company of Ielus, called Master Gonçalus

the Kings Court, and did informe himselfe in that Countrey what I had done and suffered, to 50

reforme that people to the obedience of the Church of Rome, and gaue a publike testimony and

that he should have a speciall care of me.

Bauger Barna. I was in Debarna more then two yeeres, commending my felfe to God, and faid Masse the

most daies in a Church of our Ladie that was there, where about nine or tenne Portugals that were there accompanied me, which came flying thither with others, from the vnfortunatebat-40 taile in which the Goranya ouercame vs, and tooke Den Christopher. About this time, there came a Venetian, called Micer Simon, which came from Gran Cayrus with a mellage from cer-

Renforme of Portugais.

Concelles a Inwith his companion, which came from India to enquire after me, and the other Portugals, and ricke, whole E. of the estate of that people of Presbyter Ishn, which after I informed him how it was, went to weth in the next Chapter.

De Barua, called elfewhere relation in the Cathedrall Church of Goa. Being in Debarna, tarrying for passage to India, there arrived to the Port of Macua, Anionie Peixoto a Portugall, with two Foylts, whereof he was Captaine : Matter Gonzalno and I determined to goe and visite him, and goe with him fer India, and that I might doe this without hinderance of the Abexines, Ihad a good excuse in this manner. The Church of our Ladie which we had in Debarna, was burnt a few daies before by a difatter, wherefore I defired the Bernagaez which had the charge of me, that he would let me goe to Magna to aske some almes of the Partugals of the Foysts to re-edine the said Church, and that he would lend mee a Mule to ride on, and some men to accompany and guard me. He did it willingly, for hee thought 1 60 was already feated in the Countrey, and had no defire to returne to Portugal, and fent with me a Prieft of his owne Sect and Nation, and fent belides other, fixe or feuen men to accompanie and guard me, charging vs to returne prefently, and that we should not stay. And for more his affurance, there went in our company an Ambailadour of Prefigier John to the Gouernour of In-

dia for whole respect he shought also that the Capaine of the Poysts would not carrie mee, if he delired him the contrary. But Antonie Peixeso the Captaine was very glad to carrie me, and when the Ambassadour faw me embarked, went backe and would not goe with vs. thinking His cleape to that for my fake he flound not be well entertained among the Portugals. There went with me, 6:4 as I faid, Mafter Gongaulus, and those few Portugal's that wer in Debarua. We came to Gos after the passing great Tempest by Sea and wanthof victuals, Francisca, Barreto being Gouernor of India, who received vs with great joy, and commanded me to bee ledged in Saint Paul, with the Fathers of the company of Iesus, which shewed me great loue and honour while I was there, Name; the Pa-Fathers of the company of Jelias, which he wed me great one and nonour wine I was mere, with the which was about nine or ten monetils, tarty in groffinpping for this Kingdome. The Gouernor into the company of the com

which was about mine or ten monetus, rarrying to unipping to this imageome. The Gouernor sory of whom, to commanded the ouer-feer of your Highnelle goods, to proude me of all things necediarie, and fo and of Andrew is an advertised to of all things needlarie in the Country, and for the Voyage. Outstood of the Country of The Patriarch Don John Nunnez came thither I being there, and the Bilhop Don Andrew with weth, their companions.

As foone as the time of shipping came, I went to Cochia, because the ships are wont to depart His returns from thence, and the Gouernor commanded to give me a good lodging in one of them, and pro- home. uision in abundance. Don lobn Menefez the some of the Nayler, came for Captaine of that Voyage, and also another Don lohn Menesez, of whom I received great courteste and entertainement vnto the Hand of Saint Helen, where I remained against his will, contending much about it: There I continued a yeere fusfering some bodily trouble, of hunger and other necessary

20 ries, because that Hand is so distant from humane communication, that there commeth no people, but some fugitiue Slaues which had runne away from some ships that came thither; and it was faid, that they had killed another Chaplaine, with the which mine beganne to be corrupt. and would not serue me. Wherefore destitute of all humane helpe in mine old age and ficknesse. and would not sente me, we nercore dentitute or an number mape in name on age and manuers, I came perforce the next yeere to Portugall, in the flip called Same Pable, wherein Right Moto came for Captaine. I came to Life or in the moneth of August, the yeare 1559. Your Exhaust. reigning, whom God give long lite, with Peace and Grace in this world, and the giby of his Kingdome in the world to come, Amen.

They brought newes of vs hither, as of men cast away; and without doubt, that was a great and inhumane carelefnesse, and was the cause that there was no more good done in the Coun-30 trey. For your Highnesse may believe, that the matters of that Empirewere in such estates that if that small number of Portugals had beene maintained with supplies of men, it might have gotten fuch a postession an au horitie , that King Graden either with his will or without it, would have obeyed the holy Motner Church : and his people with the converfation of ours, and the doctrine of our Preachers, which would have taught freely, had taken the true Christian Religion, and had left the errors of the Alexandrines, which for their finnes are deftroyed, they and their false Doctrine, whereby it hath no vigour for to refift the truth if it were preached and fauoured: for among them there are no proud and stubborne learned men, but there are denout religious men, and very humble, which in good simplicitie desire to serve God, and take very eafily the doctrine of truth, and apply their vinderstandings to it.

ery early the documes at a duch profit beene gotten, that neither Prawith his Gold, nor In- More profit in In 1 emporar trings may use process be used to the process of the dis with his Trafficke, nan intraction: for there is more cone in Danson, and has required, then in Pans, which might have been gotten without the expences which the India maketh, then in the Endowwell and without the expenses which the India maketh, then in the

Of my felfe I gaue also some account in this Treatise, though not much, not to trouble you, as I have faid : for I trauailed many yeares in those Countries, and passed many troubles for the sernice of God and of your Highneffe, wherewith I should have wearied your eares if I had told the or the leffe part of them : For the first time I went to India, I went in company of Lope Surres, Alfonfus of Albarkerke being Gouernour of it, and was there to the time of lames Lopez of

Anjonia of American Commandement I pale to the Prefixer labs of Ethiopia, in company of Dan So Raderick of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from thence with an Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from thence with an Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from thence with an Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from thence with an Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez, which returned from the company of Dan Hepstette of Lyma, and the Carlos of Carlos Redericts of Lyma, and the rather evance-one Annual in the Deginning of Ethiopeus Ambassadour of that Emperour, called Tagassaso, of whom I made mention in the beginning of Ethiopeus August and August and August this worke, in whose gage and hostage I remained in that Countrey: in the which they alwaies this works, in whose gage and money the Emperors taking me for God-father of his some and heire Graders, and before the death of his Patriarch, called Abuna Marcus, he elected mee Patriarch of that Countrey and his Empire, according to his cuitome, and defired me on his be-Partiarenor trace connected and the empire, according to the chiefe Biftop, and to defire him he halfe and mine to goe to Rome, to give the obedience to the chiefe Biftop, and to defire him he would confirme to me that dignitie and Patriarch-ship, and from thence to Portuguil, to doe that which I faid in the beginning of this Booke. Which incrney I made by Land comming to Capro, and to Ierufaiem, and was taked by the Turker and milifed, and almost slaine, but by

6c Gods affiliance I came to Rome, in the time of the hely Father Paul the third, who no: onely approoued my election, but instituted me besides, and confirmed mee Patriarch of Alexandria, produced my election, but instituted me behides, and confirmed mee Patriarch of Alexentria, and gaue me personally the possession of that Seat. And in testimony of the truth of all this, to be bless all the seasons of the truth of all this, to be bless all the seasons of the truth of all this, to be bless all the seasons of the truth of all this, to be bless all the seasons of the truth of all this produced my electrons of the truth of all this, the seasons of the truth of all this produced my electrons of the truth of and gate me personally are possessioned Letters and Authenticall Instruments, which were of another kerse and approued in this kingdome, which I loft with many other things in the battaile where mans,

Don (briftopher was taken, and because I show them not they mocke me : but it is no matter. Geing God knoweth the truth, and knoweth how much I laboured for the restoring of the Faith and Religion of that Countrey. Le forgiue my aduerfaries, and to me he will give himfelfe in reward of my trauails, and to/our Highnesse long life, peace and prosperitie in this life. and in the life to come eternall gloie, Amen.

CHAP. VIII.

Late Changes of State and Religion in Ethiopia, with other remarkable Obsernations.

è. I.

P.far.Thefanruster.Ind.l.z. De Aballmorum reb.N. God,lib. God, 1,2,C, 14

6 seq.

Relations of IOHN NVNNEZ (or NONIVS) BARETUS fent for Patriarke of Ethiopia , and ANDREA OVIBDO his Successor.

Ohn Bermudez * a Spanish Priest had been tent by the Romane Bishop into Abasfia, which Patriarchall dignitie (before this miffion of Nonius) and having beene taken by Tirkih Pirats, yet after divers Adventures, perced into Ethiopia, where by Chadina the Emperour he was well entertained in fliew, to hold the Privals it he fifter to his fuccours in the Ware against the King of Adel: who being flaine, he would acknowledge no other Parriarke to him nor his, but the A-

ing laine, in would acknowledge to the Madfines vinto Bermidez, informuch that it was vulgarly bruted that he had flohe a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: lo that he was forced to a church in that he had ftolne a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: lo that he was forced to a church in the was forced to a chu returne into Europe. Him haue I (being then a Boy) scene at Liston, where hee made an end of

Peter an Abal-

About those times, one Peter an Abassime, a Monke of Saint Antonies Order, with some others of his profession came to Rome, who being of a forward and industrious disposition, learmed the Latine and Italian Tongues, and eafily infinuated himselfe into the favours of many; dealt also with Pope Paul the Third, very earnestly to fend another Patriarke into Ethiopia : as for Bermudez, their wanted not causes of that haired which he had incurred; but for any other, hee should no sooner set foot in Ethiopia, but all men would adhere to him, for saking the Alexandrian and his Abuna. The Pope by Letters commended the businesse to the King of Portugal, to choofe a man fit for this bufineffe, who named thereunto Peter Faber, and writ to the Pope to 40 confirme him; but death tooke him away. The Abaffine continuing his importunate fute:in the yeare 1 5 5 4. Inlime the Third gaue eare hereto, whose Buls were ratified by Paul the Fourth his Succeffor, in whole time Nonim was confecrated at Lisbon, and with him Oniedo, the one Patriarke, the other entitled Bishop of Hierapolis. King Iohn gaue many holy Vestments of Silke and Damake richly and curroutly wrought; Croffes, Chalices, Pyxes, and other Vessels of Gold and Silver to commend the Romane Pietie by this facred fplendour to the Abaffine

Icfuiticall huknowneto

Nonius before his journey to leave behind him Monuments of Iesuiticall Humiliation (the heart makes it Humilitie by the difcreet manner and diuine end, which otherwise in most seruile Offices is as meerely titular as was his Patriarkhip) in this his Patriarchicall dignitic made 50 himfelfe a Seruant to the Societie, wayting on them at Table, yea, (his Epifcopall Ring laid 2-20) fide) was a continuall helper of the Cooke, washed with care and pleasure, the Dishes, Boxes, ficall are cal- Pots, and either Veffels of the Cookerie; besides this, hee was a diligent Hearer of Confessions, not refuling once in the night to goe to a meane Cottage to shrive a Negro Slave. Before he went his Patriarchall Voyage, the King fent to Peter Mascareona, the Vice-Roy, to fend an Ambala coo or or det Orde, faith fage into Ethiopia, to prepare way to the Patriarch, who fent lames Dias with Genzales Rode-

Saint Ang. ell
parium impairumque rerum fua fuique lexarribares difforite. Soint Paulbids men walke in their calling, and forbids inordinatentifle
zaint manne of Confusion. And what inordinate Confusion, how confused Orders are a Patriarch Scullion, a Bishopp
zaint manne of Confusion. And what inordinate Confusion, how confused Orders are a Patriarch Scullion, a Bishopp
zaint and admitted of the Confusion of the Confusion of Sections, and Bishop, and matter braifest King of continuall Copin adamn? Or. Euen as nee which the himleife a Senant of Setting, and a Bithon, and make thrulick king of Kings, yea. Depofer and Tradition. Christ once which this Diffejles feet, yet did not the Apolles ordinarily doe it, but had for their Widowes for this fetting. Let Prentil and Igration with this followers be Evarples of lowfie boilintife; and foul reich humblife. Tome the is humble, which betreth patiently which Odd fends and doth not fend for phantilicke crolley, which betrethe not his ranke to feeke Enemies, bur valuantly holds and fights in his owne file and flanding; which denies himfelte to obey God. and not negleds God to pleafe himfelfer in men-dazzling will worthips, in Muttersand Monflers of needed, thewes, ynmotified mortifications, and perhaps proud humiliations.

CHAP. 8.S.I. Letter of a Lefuite touching Abassines Errors.

ricke a Teluit Priest. Who in the year 1555 arrived at Ercoco, which then belonged to the Aballine. to whom they went thence by Land; and having declared their message, and delivered the Kings Letters, they find his mind altered (for he had written before to King Iohn in that buineffe.) But the whole Difcourfe will better appeare in Roderickes Letter in September, 1566. from Ethiopia to the lesuites in Goa: which (to much as concerneth this purpose) I have here tran-

ON the fifteenth of May, we came to the King of Ethiopia. He was then in his Campe encom-paffed with many Paullons. Beeing certified of our arrivall, hee commanded a Loaging to bee 10 provided where we might bee entertained. The next day wee had accesse. Hee sate in his Tent spread with a faire Carpet, and adorned with filten Hangings on a Bed, the Curtaine opened. Iames approaching delinered him the Kings Letters, which hee commanded to bee read before all the Portugals in the Campe, with a loud voyce. In them the King fignified among it other things, that the next yeare bee would send this her one of his Honshold, and some Religious men besides, samous for life and learning. woma jerusioneer one of on assemble that answered nothing to the purpose : and thus dift issed, wee returned to our Lodgings. Two or three dayes after hee went to see his Grand mother ten dayes iourney thence : and we were left in the open field, not having one man in the Emperours name to provide vis any thing. Tet were we not for sken of God, by whose providence and bountie it came to passe, that a Portugall tooke care of vs, and brought vs to a place whereof he was Lord, three leagues diffant, entertai-20 ned vs at bis House, and commending to his the care of vs, followed after the Emperour, Heere wee fpent almost a moneth, in which time I writ a Booke of the Errours of the Abailines, and the truth of the Romane Faith, to offer it to Claudius at his returne. For hee openly faid, as I learned of a Portugall, neere about him, that hee neyther needed our Dollrine, nor intended to obey the Romane Church. It was also commonly reported, that some of the Chiefe men did openly affirme, that they would more easily subject their neckes to the yoke of Saracens, then exchange their Customes with ours. Which did the more confirme mee, to deliner my mind rather in writing then by word; fo to learne his Answere and vnmaske his opinion folong closely concealed. So soone therefore as hee returned to these parts, wee went to his Campe and were entertained of the Portugali Souldiers. For the Emperour had quite forestien vs. nor cared to know how or where we lined. Now, because I had made my Booke in Portuguse, 3C and it was necessarie to turne it in Chaldee, I petitioned of him by Letters, to assign me two of the best learned Monkes to turne some Dollrines of Christian Faith into the Chaldee Tongne: for I would in

writing flew how undeferuedly the Abali nes reckoned the followers of the Romane Faith among if Heretikes, and affirmed, that they were worse then Malumetans : for so they openly said and reported. And because I knew that they had a Rooke which they called the Adulterie of the Frankes, made zeal And because I know that they had a Rooke which they called the Adulterse of the Frankes, made by the Alexandrine Schifmatikes, wherein the Chaicedon Councell is reproseed, and many fyes are A Booke called the Alexandrine Schifmatikes, wherein the Chaicedon Councell is reproseed, and many fyes are Adulted to the Alexandrine Schifmatikes, wherein the Chaicedon Councell is reproseed, and many fyes are Adulted to the Adulted t forged on vs; I defined of the Emperour that I might have the vse thereof. The Booke hee denyed, the ric of the

Monket be granted; which jet when they had begunne to translate the Booke, whether because they had Franket, that beene so commanded, or esse were astraid of any thing, or for some other unknowne cause, refused to pro- is, of the We-40 ceed in the Enterprise : antill that by the Portugall Capiaines interceffion, they were commanded to fin fleme Church nilb it, affifted therein by a Portugali, an honest man, and well skilled in the Chaldee. When againe, I needed another to transcribe in right Characters that which was translated, he was also desired and obtayned of the Emperour. Tet had be scarsty begunne, when the Emperour in a rage sent to renoke him, and in his name to tell me that I [bould not stay, but send him the Booke as it was, or surcease such busnes. That the thing therefore might be no longer deferred, nor the Emperor have any excuse for his sinne, I shought it necessary to show him the Booke ill written and blotted, appointing thereto a certaine day, which was the twentieth of August. When that day was come, with the Laptaine and senen or eight other

Portugals, I present my selfe before him, and haning saluted him, shew the cause of my commung. He The discourse forbids me to proceed, and discreting his speech to another matter, warily escheweth all the blowes made betwist the for the method that the condition of pasters were sense, warry ejectores at the conver made between 56 at him. The letting other things paffe offered him the Books, which beginning to reade, her conceined Negwandthe for great fur, that be condition but otter his concealed Posson. Then aired t said be for that them less that the said tha mightest make a Booke wherein to declare the vertice of the Faith, and Monkes to translate it into Chaldec, both which I granted. And behold, thou hast done quite otherwise. For neither doit thou explaine the vertise of Fasth, but doest ascribe Errours to them which are free from Errors. Then Considest also have knowne b. w farre this thine Enterprise disagrees with thy condition, which art but a simple Priest. Knowest thou not that thefe things belong to Biscops, and pertaine only to great Prelates? Why hast thou thrust they Sukle into anothers Haruest 21 confessed my selfe a man of small worth, yet to have done nothing descrepant with my condition, seeing I had written those things which are plainly contained in the Booke of the Gospels, und in the Holy Conneels, and which are to be beleeved of a Christian man. Thou

60 obietlest said to many Errors to me and mine, wherevith we are not entangled, I determine not of your Faith, O Emperous, quath I, but I am sure your Abaissues are erroneous, nor doe I fally ascribe any ibing to them. If it plesses you to make tryall, you may command your Monkes and most learned men in your Empire to come hither, and I will make it appeare, that they are so enfoared in the Errours there mentioned, as none stall be able to denie. He replied, that he hated the Quirke: of Disputations, and that it was the custome of Ethnikes to commit their Superflittons to Questions, which Christians, especially

20

An indicio Errou, and

the ancient and also gether forbeare. There had now passed abone one thousand yeares since they professes that Earth : if any part thereof were falle, how chanced that in so many yeares none durst doe as I Jegentral Languered, that God pronoked by bad workes of men often suffered them to fall into entill: torin Aritims that be ought to gue great thankes to God that he fent in the time of his life and Keigne, one to them the way of the fixere Fauls. Then He. The Church of Christ heel beene danded to fine Scan we are inor Halinto one of these from the beginning, from it right and Lower good to be now separated. I al-

better curie

then di pute.

approued.

The Romanes

failed, who foener obey them against the Romane, are Enemies, and water now annaea from their Head. diligent heed that the speech of the Prophet, Nolint intel agree of come agence be not applied to ron. After many words on both fides, the Por ugall Captaine he as the word , I added at last, that I wrote my Booke to that purpofe, that I might know whether his E one was dide, be well dobey the Romane So , and entertaine those Religious and Learned men where the got Forting I fent him. For if hee would not entertaine and bearethem, there was no carfe and frould come to Ethic 11a, which fought nothing but the faluation of the Abassi us. He was a that hee had Learned and Religious men in his Kingdomes, and therefore need a not that one the man be fest from any other placementher man it ener in b.s mind to subject himselfe or his Country to the to and Bottop. For that which Galbar Ma-Partiarch , whom a way bee hath obeyed faithfully, he would acknowledge no Superiour in holy things at all Whereupon, being out of hope to moli fie his objituate mind, having leave I departed. When I went away, looking upon the Portugali Captaine, he highly commended my Learning faing, that hee much maruelled bow beeing fo joung , I could bee so excell in in knowledge. I learned after that hee reas mi Booke thorow, and often had it in his hand, and showed it to his Mother, often to hu Brethren, and a ther Princes of the Empire.

It was also told me that the Abuna knowing what was in it, forbade the reading thereof with a grie-The Abuna can now Curfe. Therefore, the second day after a Messenger was sent to him from the Prete, which in his name might aske leave to reade it which the Abuna denying, the Emperour in a rage gave him man reproachfull and contumelious words, called him Hereside and Mahumetane, which read the Alcorm 10 ned Datorus of the false Prophet Mahumet, and forbade so holy a Booke, and made by such an Authors to be read. He added further, that seeing he came into those Abassine parts to performe the Office of an Abung and Doctor, he frouid freedily answere to those things which a simple Priest opposed. The Abuna denged that hee would enter into any Disputation against me: for he came into Abassia not to dispute but loft the which they neuer that to give Orders. Nothing was more common in mens mouthes, and some Countries favoured our part, had. For this to give Orders. Nothing was more common in mens mouthes, and some Countries favoured our part, has. For that Some contrarie: whereupon the Emperour fends for some Montes in best reputation of Santitue credithe Pri- and Learning, and commanded them to transcribe my Booke very purely. I was much afraid, less then niledges to would have left out some things which I knew the Emperour was disgusted either to heare or see, as those confarmone, the ness which I had written of Pope Leo, and Dioscorus the Patriarke of Alexandria. For the Abalwith time (exof order) and cannot heare his name without horrour. Alfo they reiest the Chalcedon Councell for Errour in Faith. this (not von and fay that it condemned Dioscorus uninstly. Therefore, ener since the time of that Councell (the or mile by Decrees whereof they wholly resett) they have beene duided from the Romane Church.

They follow also the Hereste of Sergius Paulus and Pyrrhus, condemned by the fixt Synode at Con-Pier) b. coule stantinople, and many other Errours. When the time was come that the Emperour should answere me, th: ut this as he had promised, I went to the Court, and sent one to signific to him that I expected an Answere. w re Imperiall Whereto be faid that his Fathers Ambassadour had beene tenne yeares in Portugall, neither could hee dispatch his Affaires in all that space: it is therefore meete that the Ambassadour of the King of Pot-Criese and twall flould patiently waite my Answere. I perceined whither these things tended, nor did I thinkett the Councell fit to flay any longer, but defired leave to depart into India. He cunningly deferred, as a thing vinnete, 50 . knowledged that I fo great a man should so some be gone, specially basing come to treat of Matters so weightie; nor could I fend my time better then in hearing there the Portugals Confessions. But if I were fully Printedges in resoluted to depart, I should yet give him one monethes space to answere: that being past, if I had Africa, equall to the Samane

no Answere, I should dissemble an Answere, as d might poe whither I would.

After thu, on the fourth day of October, the Esperours Mother sent a Seruant to mee, dea Discourse of

the Queene & fring to feake with mee, and to fee the Chalice which I had brought from Goa, a thing much the letute. E Would God magnified amongst them. I went prefently with some Porti gals, all which siee was willing should this water this enter with me. After a faw words, comming to talke of Religion, flee faid, Seeing your Faith one and only, and ours differ nothing but are one and the same, What needed it I pray, to write any thing thereof, and make a causelisse brosle? Whereto I briefely, Whether your Abassines hold the right Truth you 60 may perceive by mr Writings. Thu I affirme to thee, O Empresse, although you had no other Errout, this one, b that you are separated from the Romane Bishop, the Vicar of Christ on Earth, it would be errough and more, unto cternall destruction. She answered, that she and her people were subject to Peter and Paul, the Apostles, and opecially to Christ himfelie. I denged, that be is fullit to Christ which

(ext (quoib 1) that there were foure Patriarchall Sea from the beginning that the R mane by Dunne * Where is it * Statute was preferred before the rest, as the Head Mother, and Motors of all. When others have Looke in my Booke, there Shall you find the Solutions of all asutus words say proposeded. But take 10 goline had done in his name with the King of P itug li, was done by the mif thing of an Arbhan Mode which translated his Letters and vind vitoed on his minde. Occe; he dis the Alexan rian 20

is not subject to his Vicar : when Christ himselfe saith, He which heareth you "heareth me, and he "The Apostles which despiseth you, despiseth me. And if it be true which the Enangelist Iohn from the same were no body Lord relateth, that there shall be One Shepheard, and one Sheepefold, wh. m. did she thinke to be that with this seli-Shenheard? She answered, Saint Peter . If faid I, Peter be that one Shepheard, the same Office must iwallow diato needs agree to them which in order succeed Peter. She answered, neither I nor mine deny obedience to the Komillo Saint Peter: We are now in the same Faith wherein we have beene from the beginning: if that bee not Whitlepoole: right, why did none admonth vs in fo many Ages? Heere I, the Romane Biltop, which is Paltor of the and no marright, why did note admonth visit formany signs: interest, the tromain our op, which is aging of the unit or Christs whole Church of Christ, could not in the yeares passed and into Abassia, by reason of the Mahume owner retours.

tans stopping up the passage. But the way by Sea being now open, he is able to doe it. Shee should take time (0) at 10 10 knowledge that the Common-wealth of Christ where sever it is, is one mysticall body, which in Heaun for, is next hath Christ the Head, in Earth the Vicar of Christ, worch is the Head of all Christians. It may not bee arrogated: hath Unif the Head, in Latin the r war of Louis, made and to be directed thereby. From the time as it the church had the Church began till the yeare 488. it was well in Abalia, and all the Patriarchs of Alexandria, but no Christic thenceforth they fellto ruine. If they would attaine saluation, they ought againe to consome with their be Pastor, nor Lewfull Head, and become one bodie with him: for Christ himselfe bad Said, That there thould be but no Apostles to one Sheepfold in the Church, and one Shepheard : but one body except it were monstrous, could have heare, but the but one Head; whereas the b. dy of Christ is most perfect, and free from all filthinesse. So great a worke to that head. faid the, as that is, to wit, that the rest of the members be igned with the Romane Head, belongs no- this by Phycas. thing to me, nor to thee. It is meete, that other Pairiarchs congregated with the Romane, should delibe- and fine this

thouge one, nor to test. 11 is more to time water fairness work expenses and to the American dispute, put of the put of the forest and the put of the forest and the transfer and transfe the other side said, That they were very ancient which the true Faith teacheth, nor have any noueltie to the Treet in them, and therefore it did rather take away then give offence, what soener is done according to the rule Council The

After some other such like things, followeth in the same Ep file of Gonzalus. A few daies leaute have after, the Emperor removed this Camp to a place a daies journey diffant, and we followed him, When we truth beserve were in a certaine field, three Monkes came to me; one of which was accounted learned, and was very them in lone desirous to see and speake with me about Religion. In the beginning of his speech be confessed, that all things, which our things pleased him, but yet be could not approue that we neither observed the (Saturday) Subbath, in some other one tongs presumed from Swines and Hares flesh, vomiting out other venome, For he affirmed, that the foules Omits with

of the iust departing out of this life, although nothing remaine in them to be purged, are not yet present-quod beaum of ly received in Heavento see God, but are conveyed to earthly Paraduce, there to expell the end of the tente. world. That the Holy Ghoft proceedeth onely from the Father. That the Sonne is equall to the Father "Christianh, in regard of his humane Nature. That onely Mahumetans and Ethnicks after their death, are cast am that good me Hell, to abude there enterlight; but Christians which like the all are there to be termented in the biblioters, for in the historian which like the high are there to be termented in the biblioters, for its Hell, thill the pure them fames; for all which are flyered with the Character of Baptifree, hall at Event and the committeed Christians. It was the historian and the committeed Christians. It was the historian and the committeed Christians. last be saued, and so he construed (brists words, He which shall be beleeve and be baptized, shall be secknowl dged, fauci. But I so consinced bis errors by reasons and Scriptures, that comming neerer, he acknowledged and other mi-40 himselfe satisfied. But lest bus Fellowes which were unlearned should beare, he whispered thus to mee.

then the state of moneth being puft, I went to the Emperour, and defired an answer and leave to depart. Hee answered, I them not to migh: be gone at my pleasure.

As touching the religious men which King Iohn sends me, when they shall come to Mazua, there 1.P. 5. fall be some to receive and condust them to me, I shall willingly heare them discoursing of the Faith. Then of the stations of the stations of the stations. departed I from him and betooke me to my journey. By the way, I vifited form Townes of the Portu-about the babaspared a free min man server on a my many many my many my my men a versa my to to the should be said, here it many of these configuration, trought same of them from Concombent to lamful Wedlock, their boats, the mean, Concombent to lamful Wedlock, their boats, the mean, Concombent first (being Abasitnes in Sett and Nation) instructed in the Roman Dottrine and sense. Sc. Ductors ked to the Faith. Because the Churches of this Region are consecrated to the bolies of Schismatickes, there most ab-50 neither have Altars accommodated to our tes, wee carried an Altar with vs. When I was in one of hominable. these Townes, one came thither to salute me, sent from a principall Abbat, which sixe miles off ruled two great Monasteries; one of Monkes, the other of Nuns. The name is Belivanos, or Plurimanes. Planiment famous in those parts. For from thence proceeds what sour is to bee beleeved in all Abalia, because Monastry vothere is thought to bee the rule of Faith, and for that cause the Abbot himselfe is in great honeur a. ty samous.

mongst all. I thought it meete to vifice these Monasteries, and went together with the Portug 1. my Companions, The Abbot was absent, I brussely viewed the Monasteries. Both they and the Monkes Abssisse much differ from ours. Each of them hath his owne little house separated from others: hee hath his Monket. owne part of ground which he tilleth for his felfe. So are they all dissided in habitation and occupation, that you would thinke you faw not a Monasterie, but a small Village. And although the Moutes

60 dwell on one fide, and the Nuns on the other, yet are they not fo separated, but that many Children are The Nuns. Said to be begotten betwiet them. Their Order or Family is neither Franciscan nor Dominican but to called Teckay Manot. This was the name of the Founder, which with them fignifies b, The Pillar of the Faith. He bath great opinion of fancticie among the Abassines, and is faid to have we ought many Miracles. That is the most famous, that hee flue a Scrpent, esteemed by the Etimicks for a God, and converted the Ethnicks : first to the Faith of Christ, and after that, many of them to this forme of life. Thu much Gonzalus.

for then their er: our would bee found the

of Nice ac-

Alexandrias

in Europe.

Letter of Ala Portugall, to

* Therefore

Claud as had

Exorcifing the

Seas & Winds.

Letthis be a

to the Reader,

to beleeue a Ic-

things to giue

where this Ro-

mish Faith is

as this, or as

any which I

their relation

and fallere'i

1. which lobs

and true Pro-

phethad not. I rehearfe

Baptift, an

heleeue of

him Fairb.

Alfonius of France a Portugall, which had bene Interpreter betwixt the Emperourand this for fus of France Gonzalus, did write to Goa to him, touching a discourse twixt the said Emperour and him. touching the faid hereke of Diofcorus, which he had faid might bee euinced by holy Scripture, and authoritie of Saints and Councels. If your Scripture, faid the Empercur to deemeth of vs. God knowes what ours deemeth of you. I know, quoth I, That the followers of the Romane Faith are esteemed Heretikes of the Abassines, and accounted Nestorians, as if we admitted two persons in Christ, as well as two Natures; for so they had often objected to me with continmely: and after mention of his yearely re-baptizing, contrary to Saint Panls faying: One obicded foure Faith, one Baptisme, he grew very angry, and threatned me with his Sword, but feeing my constancie lie departed. He concludes, I thus thinke Gonzales, that this Emperour will more easily endure 10

Godsto Betmidez.

the youke of Saracens, then of the Romane Bifhop. On the thirtieth of March, 1556. John Nonius Barret, Patriarch of Ethiopia, Andrew Oniedo, Bulhop of Hierapolis, and other lesuites sayled from Lisbon to the East. In the way a great Tempest happened, which (saith our Author) by the Patriarchs Prayers was appealed. For Lettins be a senerall rule taking water in a vessell, and (attired in his holy Vestments) blessing the same, he sprinkling part of it in the Sea, part on the Sailes, Tackling, and other part of the Ship, with a certaine forme of Prayer brought to passe, that the Seas and Winds were quiet. Well; if hee could also fuire left in things neerest haue given found lims to Francis Rodericke, his fellow Ignatian, whose helpe he vied in hearing things nector the confessions of the Pussengers, being a man lame and going on Crouches. So should be haue freed him from that scoffe of the Moores at Mofambike, that his Arguments could not stand 2- 20 gainst Mahomet, himselfe being to lame; nor could they bee right, himselfe being so crooked He answered well, That their Sect was more deformed then he, and wanted both feete and mijo raiti 15
not a brewing, head too. But the Miracle might have cured his bodie and their foules, or done good in Abastia. not a prewing. Their miracles were as readie before Infidels, or those whom they call Heretikes, whose curinot their hu-manis, should be a conserve may examine them, as before Catholikes, whose credultie rather makes then findes manis, should be them. Once, miracles are not for Beleeuers (which mult walke by Faith, not by folk) but for trustancing in T. C.L.L. But he was their particult rather, and come to the Historial Relation. Itruftnortheir Infidels. But let vs leaue their myfficall tales, and come to the Hifforicall Relation. Hauing points, Yete- flayed a moneth at Mofambike, they proceeded to Goa, where discouraged by Gonzalus his Letuen langer and ters, he adulted with others, which thought it meetest that he should stay at Goa till King lobu might haue knowledge, and that Ouredm with fome others of the focietie, meane while should to Lambres against Most, didas great miracles be employed in that Ethiopian bulinetie. This was put in execution : and Nonine aboade at Gas fix years space, which he spent in his daily Massings, Contemplations, hearing Confessions: some times visiting the Kitchin (as before) alway mending his owne cloaths when they were torner fweeping allohis Chamber, and the rest of the house, carrying forth the Dust to the place appointed : often washing Pilgrims feete, and on set daies of Nouices; most observant of all the done by theirs. Lawes of the societie, how tree socuer from any Superiour, but the Pope onely. Hee dved in Falle Prophets hauc, Deut. 13. December, 1 962.

Andrew Onied a Castilian, was appointed by Ignatius, according to the Popes Order, an gions, pretend Adjutor to the former Patriarch whillt hee lived, and his Succeffour after his death : and was with him confectated Bishop of Hierapolis, as before is faid. His Kitchin and Chamber labours. 40 and domesticall other feruices, fetching Water in Earthen Vessels on his shoulder, lying on the extraordinary ground among Beggers and famous humilities, I omit (not entrying those new-coyned vertues to that new Societie; I hold it much better, they were all bufied in the Indian Skulleries and drudgeries, then in European State-affaires. I know bodily exercise is easie to them which love not their ease, and light to such as delight to be magnified, as hath appeared in Pharisees, Essees, in Baals Prielts, Molochs Votaries, Turkish and Ethnicks Regulars; I had not mentioned these Leiuites, that things, but that the lefuits vie to infult and init ilt fo much hereon) I magnifie more both Outethe world may do and others, for what soeuer labours undertaken by the Kings Mission (I quarrell not altogether the Popes Commission) to reduce strayed soules, as were these of Abassia, whither we now eney attained to that repuia- follow him. I am not angry with vertuous defignes, neither in Pope nor Icfurte : yea, in fuch go tion in the Pathings I honour them : neither will I for their takes thinke worfe of that which is a good deede, pacy: dazeling if not altogether well done, materially commendable, if any way fermally defective. When menseyes with they feeke knots in Rushes, and would deforme reformed Christians, let them have Peters, Get thee behind me Sathan : but in converting the Gentiles from peruerie errors, or this Abaffia from uptenaour or humilite, fuch Iemish, Iacobite, Monothelite herefies, I will all it them with my Prayers, and applical their enas is reiched, deuours: and say, Flelb and blood bath not taught them this, but the heavenly Father; and if Christ be truly preached, whether under a pretence or si cerely, I therein ioy, and will ioy. Let them fill come paffe the world to win Protelites if it be not to compaffe the world, and circumuent their conroundation to their haughtie ucrts; yea, as Mofer learned of Iethro to rule Gods people, fo I would fome of ours in Verginia or afring, cree- elfe-where, would follow the Issures to farre as they follow Christ.

In the yeare 1557. on the Ides of Februarie, Ouiedo with fine other Isluites, paffed from God into Ethiopia : Their names were Antonie Fernandes, Andrew Galdanes, Gonzaliu Cardofu, Francis Lopez, Emanuel Fernander. There were beliedes some twentie Poringals : they arraied safe at Arcoco. Had they stayed fine daies longer, they had lost their Voyage, if not themschies.

For on the second of Aprill, the Türkifb Admirall with a great Fleete tooke Mazna, (being Mazna and Erthen in the avd of the King of Zeila) and Ercoco, also the only Port Towne then left to the Prete, cocoraken by fortifying them in fuch fort, that all passage to Christians was prevented. Let vs here insert the Letter of Emanuel Fernandez.

N our Ladie day in March, 1557, we came to Baroa, and the Barnagallo being certified of our Lettet of Ema-comming, came to meet vs., and received vs., especially the Rishop, with signification of honour and melternaudes. comming, came to neces we are consecuted by consecutive to the second will. There was great respectively of the people to fee him, which came with great a dacrite to help his band. In that (title we faged twentie daies, in which happened the commensoration of our Lords Paffi-

10 on ; and the mysteries of that holy weeke, we performed in the most pious manner wee could. On Good. y or, non-so mysteries up tous very weete, we performed in the most prime memore wee could. On Good-Friday we made a pompous Procession (respecting that place) from our Church to theirs. Great was the concomes for people to vs., approuse and applauding the Romano Rues. Wee spen a good dede of time in hearing the Pontugals consossions, and other bolies. Many of their Sermants and (hildren were announted with Chrisme, and confirmed by the Bishop. The Barnagallo came often to visue him and be often, but in vaine, exhorted them to the obedience of the Romane Church. The firing comming on, when the se parts were in feare of the Turke, we went from Baroa to the Emperour, in which wee shent fiftie daies, every where meeting some of Portugall race which needed Sacraments. Eight daies before our arrinall at the Emperours Tent, one of his chiefe men was fent to vs to falute the Bishop in his name, and

Barea,or Barna,

many Mules were brought for carriages. At last came one in the Emperors Name, to charge us that we 20 Should proceed no further without his command, which happened two dates after. When we were a little off from the Camp, the Emperour fent word, and we pitched our Tents, and therein aboade that night. The day following about noone, many of the Royall blood, and others of the chiefe Nobilitie, not a few. preciously attired and well mounted, came to us in our Tents. Two of these were of principall place, to who n was the office com nitted of conneying the Bifton to the Emperour. Meane while the Emperour with his Mother and Breibren ofcended into a high place, whence he might behold us comming. When we were come, the Prete appointed that we should passe on Horse-backe into the first Court (an honorable courtefie, and differing from the Court custome) and before the entrance of the fecond Court, wherein was the Tent Royall, we alighted. At the doore of the Tent on both fides were many men, venerable by Robilitie or age, ravited in goodly order, and leasning on states. Herre we stayed a while. Then came 30 forth two (Itaac the Barnagasso was one) which with lowly bowing of the whole body, saluted the Bilhop,

and (we attending) led him in to the Emperour. He also showed no small signes of honour and loue to him at his comming. After that a few words had paffed, Quiedo produced his Letters from the Viceroy, the Patriarch, and others in India, which were presently read in the presence of all. The Emperour was not a little disturbed therewith, nor was able to conceale his backwardnesse to the Romane Church : but warily, and being well affected to the Portugals, he indenoured as well as he could to hide it, and to seeme well apayed: not so yet, but some enident signes of persidionsnesse appeared. And al-though he nener purposed to relinquish bu errors, yet at the first he well entertained the Bispop, and allowed him and his company large ma intenance. Nor was there any which in word or deed durft wrong us. invespett of the Princes fauour. Set aside his profidie, in the whole Abassine Empire, was not a man,

40 whom the Emperour Claudius did not exceede in prud nec, magnammitie, and other royal versuses. He Commendati-was very gentle and affable to the Bilhop, and alway gase him some bope of reclaiming him. When they on oi claudium began to treat of Religion, Quiedo defired him that he would be prefent at their disputations with them. which amongst the Abaffines were esteemed most learned. He consented and often heard the Bishop arguing matters of Faith with a great troupe of men learned : but in regard of Claudius, all the reft of but failion were mute. He alone both in heat of speaking and eagernesse of wilters, surpassed all which be brought into that contention with him, and with such dexteratie of wet did often defend his errors, that be wrought vs some trouble. And although Outedo alway got the victorie in dispute, the admersaries yet (fuch is the custome of obstructe minds) with laughters and immodest clamors, boasted themselves to basse gotten the better. When therefore the Biliop fam that he presailed nothing by this course of dispu-

50 ting, he gathered in writing the erronious opinions of the Abail nes, and offered the same confuted by reasons and authorities to the Emperors reading. He tooke the same and read it, and as he could, answered in writing to enery thing, fifty averring, that he would never yeeld obedience to the Romane Bilbon, nor decline from his Predece fors fleps in things of Religion, but would hold that Faith which they held; and therefore in vaine did any mortall man indeuour to make him in any fort to relinquish it. Herewithall be began also to shew some tokens of indugnation against the Bishop, and openly to affirme that his presence was distassfull to him, Whereupon less he might prouoke against him and his the fury of an impotent man, hee thought best to yeeld to the time and leaving the Emperor, sought to draw others to the truth. Thus farre

But when Claudius heard that many of the Nobles and others, both Plebeians and Monks were 6: by the Bishop and his Companions brought out of their darknesse to light, he was much moued, the Abbots especially with complaints incenting him. Whereupon he sent for him, and sharply reproued him, commanding him to treat of the mysteries of Faith with the Portugals, and their Posteritie, but with none of his Abassiner. He answering, that he was therefore sent thither, and must obey Godrather then Man, what danger focuer he incurred; so prouoked the Emperor, that Ffffff

(plendour of Col. z. vit. laying this low

> ping to the lowell, and terrifying the

toth whether they were of the Amilebites post ritie. Modesty of a Alamas Empe-

cannot haue their Rofe without such prickles: or any remote religious Storie without fuch vanitic,Other miracles they rel! which I haus omir. ted, as enquiring more ine ftare and Church, then Popish mira. Malafegnetus Emperour. The Gale.

> Oviedos Letter to the Pope.

Hurueft loft for want of labourers.

he resuled him, and forbad him to come any more in his fight : telling him further, that his labour was vaine to impose on him or his the Popes yoake. This was in the yeare 1 5 5 9. In lanuarie. In Februarie following, the Saracens called Malachales inuaded those parts. On Maunday. Malabales: the Thurlday was a battell betwixt them and the Abaffines, in which these were put to flight, and Author doub- the Empercur flaine, his head cut off and fent with ludibrious triumph to the King of Adel. The Captaine of the Saracens, in acknowledgement that this victorie came from God, alighted off his Florfe, and triumphed on an Affe. To Claudius having no iffue, his brother Adamas Segnedus fucceeded, a man of euill qualities, and a cruell enemy to the Romane Faith. He had beene before taken in warre by the Saracens, and carried into Arabia, where denying Christ hee turned Ma. humeran, but being redeemed by Claudius, he returned to the Abaffice Faith. The Bishop went to to gratulate his fucceilion, and received honourable entertainment. But after that, vpon occasion of Converts to the Romane Church, he commanded him to bee brought before him, and fware. that if he proceeded in that kind, it should coft him his life : and then also rent his garment, and laid violent hands on him, at last condemning him to exile with Francis Lopez, in a barren high Mountaine, taking away his Chalice also, to hinder him from faying Masse. There they continued eight moneths, in Caues, lying on the ground, liuing on wilde herbs : this place also being a receptacle of Robbers, whence they fer voon Paffengers. Hence at length he was delinered by intercession of a Noble woman, which comming thither, saw (they say) a glorious light shining about his person and Mansion. He persecuted also the Abassine Converts with death and banishment: file of which being cast to the Lions, found the beatts more mild then the Emperour, who 20 againe fent Andrew and them into exile : where being in danger of starting, at Ouiedos praver hadhern,make (I will not vige your credit) a River (like Iordan) opened her bowels, and yeelded them a hidden the lefuis Sto- treasurie of Filhes. Againe, he was renoked, and againe for like reconcilements to Rome exiled. having before offered with his own hands to take away his life, his fword (by I know not what miracle) falling out of his hand. In this third exile, he adioyned all the Portugals, and that without their wives and children, But a conspiracie being set on foot by Isaac Barnagasso, and others, which exalted Betanc Zarcar, illegitimate sonne of the Emperors elder Brother, this made him fend for the Portugals from their exile. In the first battell Adamas was overthrowne : in the next, he tooke and flue his Corriuall. In the third, another legitimate Brother of Zarear was fet vp, and the Turkes called to help with their Ordnance, which put Adamas to flight. This 12 was in the yeare 1,62. in the next yeare he died. The Empire was now rent into divers factions, some creating the sonne of Adams Emperor.

others that brother of Zarcar, and some looking to other parts. Andrew, which was now Patriarch (Nonine being dead) got him into Tigrai, necre that famous Abbey, called Abba Guarima, and dwelt in Fremona, a small Village, fixteene yeares together, in which he neuer faw Abassine Emperor. For warre had fet all things in such combustion, that although he might reduce some after the Abaf. Abaffines, yet for reconciling that whole State was no opportunitie. Malafeguerus the fonne of Adams raigned but feuenteene yeares (Barnagaffe being dead) the Gale in the meane time, inuading, waiting, cuerthrowing and spoiling all in their way, possessing with victorious armes, aboue one hundred Regions or Shires, the greatest part of the Empire in a short space. The Tinks 40 also from the Sea shoare which they held, made often inroads, slaying and captining many. Onie-

do meane while, was preferued at Fremona.

Sebastian King of Portugall undertianding how things were desperate in Abassia, dealt with the Pope to fend this Bishop to Japan, which by Pins the fifth was granted, in the yeare 1 5 56. The Copie hereof he received the next years from the Islantes of Gos, but excused himselfe in 2 Letter to the Pope, alledging the Impossibilitie of getting thence by Shipping, the Saracens infesting those Seas. But if fine hundred Portugall Souldiers were sent thither from India, which wee long (faith he) expect, and earneftly defire and hope in God to obtaine; there will be no doubt, but not onely the Abaffine Rebels will come to the obedience of the Romane Church, but many Ethnicke people also to the Faith of Christ. For here are in Ethiopia innumerable idelatrone Nations, whom we so may goe to without crossing any Sea, and easily draw to the Faith. We know for certaine, that many of the Kingdome of Damute (which they fay, extendeth from Molambike to Sofala) have come to the Emperour, and defired to become Christians, rejected notwithstanding for private respects, he defiring rather to have them Slaves in condition then in Religion Bretteren. There were also three yeares fince some of the Country called Sinari, which sought to make peace with a certaine Prince, the Emperours Kinsman, with whom they had warres, and offered themselves both to Tribute and Religion, but repelled by hatred and anarice, exceeding Charitie. There are almost innumerable of the neighbouring Ethnicks, whom the Saracen Merchants buy and fell to the Turkes, which all would give their names to Christ, if Conetonfnesse did not permert their Princes. Those fine bundred Portugall Souldiers, before mentioned, might preuent these enils, both with great commodute to the Portu- 60 gall affaires, and strengthning the Indian power. For if the Turkes (which easily they may) doe sirft poffeffe Ethiopia, it is bard to fay, bow much they may thence endanger the Indian bufineffe, being furnified in those places with necessaries for lispping, Iron for Armes, provision for Armet, Slaues for service, and the like. Thus Emperour which persecuted the Romane Faith is dead. His

Sonne which succeeded him is young in indgement weake, and in name rather then in power an Emperour For hee hath the same Aduer faries which conspired against his Father, beeing both Principall in Nabilitie and the most in number. Whereby all things are so confused, and embroyled with (will Dissentions and Forreigne Warres, that nothing were more to bee wished then some refuge of Peace, which the most know to consist in the Romane Fasth. And although the Monkes and many Nobles doe oppnone our Faith, and persecute the Catholikes: yet the Communaltie, so much prompter to truth, as it is selfe tred with humane respects, doth approve the Romane Decrees, as doe also of the chiefe men not a few. We indeanour the Saluation of both by publike and private Preachings and Disputations, with Wri-

tings alfor efelling Writings, not altogether in vaine. For some are connected and more would be, but for An armed tings appreciang re rivings, no accepted from the Truth in base minds. This is the cause that in these planted in the countries of the Truth in base minds. This is the cause that in these planted to feare of parallements, an eagre encourse the ces especially. Religion desires has armed hand, that they which will may come without seare to the Ca- surface the sectholike Tents, and those which have comme may abide constant. I am of opinion, holy Father, that this suits praching Ethiopian bufinesse is very conducent to the enlarging and filender of the Catholike Religion although in Abelia. is be, as other things of weight, intangled with many difficulties. Tea, if I bee not much deceived, no Expedition can now be offered, which can bring greater or nament to the Romane (burch, or greater accesse to the Catholike Affaires. Here where now I am, about two bundred and thirtie Catholikes dwell, divided in two little Townes, which therefore we base lately built, that they which before with loffe of their goods and greater danger of their foules, wandered like Pilgrimes thorow divers parts of Ethic. Dia, might have a fixed Seat, for instruction and (bristian Sacraments. Others not a few else-where,

20 waste the oportunitie to come hisher, etc.

Thus did Oniedo moue the Pope and the King to fuffer him there to abide whiles he lived, ftill wrging that band of fine or fixe hundred Portugall Souldiers to be fent thither. In the yeare 1576. when the Abassone Emperour sent a Messenger into India for that purpose, the Patriarch againe writ to the Pope about it, reckoning many Commodities which thence might redound to flablish there the true Faith. His Miracles, in judgements inflicted on fuch as tooke away his goods in procuring life and death by his Prayers, in chasing a way Grashoppers, &c. 1 omit. He dyed of the Stone in September, 1577. and was buried at Fremona, where the Abassines, as they wie to Saints, often made recourse to his Graue, and offered Wheate, Frankincenie, and other Odours.

And there our Author relates many Miracles to be done, which yet in Iesuiticall Relations of remote parts are now no Miracles, nor rarities, they are so common. His fine Companions Iefuites, are by the Jefuite our Authour also much commended for their Apostolicall life. Anthanie Fernandez was fet ouer the reft, and was the first which passed out of this life : Cardo fus the next, flame by Theenes. Gualdarus was flame by the Turkes. Lopez lived longeft, and dyed in May, 1897, before whose death Melchior Sylains was sent into Abassa, by the Arch-bishoppe of Goa. As for Melchior Carnerus made Bishop at Goa, to succeed Oniced in the Patriarchate of Ashiopia, becaule he came not there, we have also excluded him from hence. Anno, 1560. Fulgentus Frems 2 Teluite tent out of India to vilit Oniedo, was tilken by the Torkes in the Red Sea, and carried to Carrow tenne use or same to the Carrow was unated by the Invited in the Red
Sea, and carried to Carrow tenne is earner after the lagar happened to Antibuse Monifernar and Isluits which
Peter Pare Heistes, which were know years in Capifurie. Abrabam Georgies 15.95. Find betres, henry taken and mattered for conf. find Peths in Massaw, Bur having. Call 59.5. Find betkepter.

ter, being taken and martyred for confessing Jesus in Mazas. But having a Colledge erected at Din, P. Paez, Anno 1603. Anthonie Fernandez two yeares after with Fran. Anthonie de Angelis; Azenedus and Mangonius 1606. Were shipped by Moores at Din, and carried

è. II. Description of the Countries, and the sewerall Regions, Religions, and Abaffine Opinions.

Hat part of Athiopia, which is vnder or necre to Egypt, is called Abassia, namely, so P. Ja. Thes. THE DATE OF ACTION PARK WHICH IS VINET OF METERS OF THE CONTROLL OF THE PARK WHICH IS A THE PARK WHICH IS the first discourse, applying by mile conceit thought from like occur rems the Relations in M. Polo and others touching Preshrer lobn, in the North-east parts of Afas, Cherefore called a Priest because he had the Crosse, as the Westerne Archbishops vied, carryed before him) unto this King; the Abaffines also in Europe, willing by names of neerer found to confirme that fancie, tending as they supposed, to the credit of their Prin . On the East it is bounded with 60 the Red Sea from ten to twentie degrees of North Latitude, ending in Suachen, anciently called Afrix. On the West with high Monntaines rising along, or never the Bankes of Nilus; the North parts extend as farre as Meroe, the South to Ania, thence reaching to Adel, a Kingdome of Moores, whose chiefe Citie is Ara in nine degrees of North Latitude. The whole circuit is fixe hundred, or after others betwixt feuen and eight hundred leagues. The Name Abaffia

feemes derived from Abases, which Strabo fairh is given to inhabited places environed with

IB're Gabriel 2 Portugall. Kingdome.

Danca'i.

John Gabriel, fometimes Generall of the Portugals in Abassia, a man expert in many Languages, hath written, that the Abaffine Empire contayneth by ancient right, fixe and twentie Kingdomes, distributed into fourteene Regions : The first eight lye from Suachen Westward. TL. gras containeth seuenteene Tracts or large Shires, each having a Lieutenant : the Turkes now post-lie the Sea Ports hereof, and the Moores the adiopning Continent, the in-land parts are inhabited promiscuously by Christians and Heathens, blacke, miserable and deformed within and without, in foule, bodie and flate. The next to Tigrai is Dancali, washed on the East by the Red Sea, thence extended Westward in a short and barren Tract of Land, inhabited by Moores. to Angere and the tributarie to the Abaffine. Angere followeth, the fourth Boa, the fifth Amara, the fixth Leca. all

Aucagnerle.

Dahali.

inhabited by Christians. The feuenth, is Abagamedri, very large, contaying feuenteene Trafte. inhabited partly with Christians, partly with Ethnikes, as is also Dambea, having only two Tracts. On the other fide of Dancali, along the Sea Coast runneth Aucaguerle, inhabited by Morres which acknowledge not the Abaffine, abutting on Adel, the chiefe Citie Zeila, fometimes Analites. Next to it is Dahali, extending towards Mombaza, the Inhabitants rarely Christians, partly Mahumetans, tributary to the Negus. Occie is within Land, partly Mahumetane, partly Ethnike, subiectto the Abassine : after which follow Arium, Farigar, (both Chri-(fians) and Zinger, Ethnike. The fixteenth, is Rozanagum inhabited by Christians, not fubicat to the Prete. Hence to the North is Roxa an Ethnike Kingdome, Goma inhabited by Christians and Ethnikes obeying the Abaffine: towards Monomotapa 15 Nerea, both Christian and Ethnike, a large Kingdome : Zetbe only Ethnike, but fubicet to the Emperour : after which are Conche, Mahaola, only Ethnike, and Goroma which hath twentie Tracts of Christians and Gentiles, almost made an Iland by Nilus encompassing, able by the fertilitie to nourish divers Armies (which almost continually infest it for that cause) the Sowers following the Reapers without other Til-

Nores.

Rozanagum.

lage. The three last Kingdomes lye towards Egypt, to wit, Damote, Sua, Iasculum: Sua, the heart and sometime Chiefe Seat of the Empire: Iasculum extends to Caire, inhabited by Mahumetanes, yearely every Lent travelled by Pilgrims to Jerufalem, going in Companies out of Dambea. The names of the Prouinces are Dubane, Xuncho: Daraita, Bora, Calaoa, Aga; (thefe three are inhabited by Christians in name, otherwile Erbnikes, the first of the former by Erbnikes, the

next Saracens; the third Christians) Arima, Arbum, Xancala, Xancera, Suggamo, Bergamo, Aris (which is on the other fide of Nilus) Enara. Of all these Kingdomes, besides Tarrai, Abagamedri, Goroma, and Dambea, scarcely any is subject to the Abaffine. The fame Gabriel recordeth foure principall Rivers in this Abaffine Ethiopia, and as many

But foure Kingdomes the Wegus. Riversand Lakes

huge Lakes. The first River is Taxora, running from the South to the North, but intrapped and now fabied to drunke vp of the thirstie fands before it can pay Tribute to the Sea. It hath neighbouring Mountaines of admirable height, almost inaccelible passage, and fortified scite , inhabited by Itmes, fill observing the Mafairall Ceremonies, dreadfull to the adioyning people. The second River is Oara, running into the Sea of Zeila, richer in waterie treasures then Nilas: but such is the Aballine Superstition, that they refule to drinke of his pleafant waters, because it waterethin the passage the Regions of Mahumetans. (And is not some mens fance of like phrenzie with vs, which refuse our Churches for the lining, Church-yards for their dead; and others not so ficke, our Ceremonies and Rites, for a Popish passage, bee their Antiquitie, Innocencie, and keming profitablenesse neuer so plausible, and nothing lesse then Popish?) The third River is Gabea, which runnes towards Monbaza, and the fourth Rilus. The first Lake, is Aicha in Angost. the second is Dambeababar, that is, the Sea of Dambea, not farre from Gubbai, where now is the Emperours Court, if at any time he leaves his Tents for the Citie: it is about threescore miles long, and fine and twentie broad, admitting Nilss on one fide. It hath many Fifnes, River-horfes, which endanger Sailers; and hath many small Hands therein to which Traytors are confined. The third Lake is Zella, in Occie, the fourth not farre thence Xacala. Antonie Fernandez 2 Iesuite, in a Letter dated 1610. attributes fortie Prouinces to Abassia, but in substance agreeth with Gabriel, whole Tracts are as huge as the others Proninces.

his Letter.

1 deepe openings. In the midft of the Champaigne Plaines, in many places out of the hard Rocke arise Rockie Hils, which in times of warre serue them for Fortresses. The whole Countrey abounds with veines of Metall and Metall-medicines: but the Inhabitants partly by ignorance, and partly for feare of the : arkes Invalion, if such things should bee knowne, suffer them the Earth without digging. Of Plants and Trees is great varietie: but fruits not so pleasant as in Europe. One yet there is very viefull for the Wormes which breed in them by eating raw wormes in the belly by ric of flesh, which would gnaw thorow their entrailes, if they did not preuent that early with

He same Fernandez addeth, that the Abassine soile is for the most part hollow and full of to lye hidden in the Earth. Only they make vie of fo much Iron as they find upon the face of 60 monethly purgations by this Fruit, which both kils the Wormes and emptieth the belly. Pea-

ches, Pomegranates, Indian Figs, Oranges, and Vines are therefeene, but rare and few. Hares. Goats, Harts, Bores, Elephants, Camels, Buffals, Lions, Panthers, Tigres, Rhinocerotes, and other Creatures are there leene, and one so huge that a man sitting on Horse-backe, may passe This seemeth vpright vnder his belly : his shape is like a Camell, but his nature divers, feeding on leaves which to be the cahe reacheth from the tops of Trees with his necke stretched forth. There are many Rivers and melogardalis. Lakes, in all which are Riuer-horses innumerable very hurtfull to their Corne : of great bodies. and a mouth fo wide that they can gape a Cubit and halfe. By night they goe out of the waters Riger-horfes, into the fields to feed; for they line on Herbs : and if the Husbandmen watch not well, in one and their ma night they will destroy their Corne. In the water they are very bold, and assaile men like fierce

10 Dogges, and cruelly teare those which they get. They are so afraid of fire that a little Boy holding a lighted Torch, may fearreaway many thousands of them. There are some which hunt The Torpedo. and kill them for their fleth, which differeth little from Beefe. In these Rivers and Lakes is al- aftrange kind fo found the Torpedo, which if any man hold in his hand, if it flire not, it doth produce no ef- of fifth, fect : but if it moueit felfe neuer fo little, it fo tormenteth the bodie of him which holds it, foct some it is more to refer formers, and a foctor of the body of the wind a certain number that his Asterres, Joints, Sinweeps, & all his Members feel exceeding paine with a certain number neffe ; and as foome as it is let go out of the hand, all that paine and numneffe is allo gone. The Springs and Superfitious Abassone beleeue that it is good to expell Deuils out of humane bodies, as if it Courte of Nidid torment Spirits no lesse them men. They say, if one of these aline bee laid amongst dead Fi. Mywhich iome these, if it there shirrs it else, it makes those which it truches to the reast it has were aline technical. thes, if it thereftirre it lelfe, it makes those which it toucheth to flirre as if they were aline. further from 20 There is great store of this kind in Nolas, in the furthest parts of Gojama, where there is a Meere beyond the or Fenne a without bottome, welling and admirably boyling forth waters continually, whence Line, perhaps, Nitus springeth. It ariseth small and first for a dayes sourney and halfe trendeth Eastward. Then not somely it enters into a Lake as great as any imagined to bee in the World, running thorow the midfl. Bapific serthereof with a swift course, slving all mixture of waters, and theories, in the series in the series and the series are series are series and the series are series and the series are series are series and the series are series are series and the series are series are series are series and the series are series are series are series and the series are series are series are series and the series are series are series are series and the series are series and the series are series are series are series are series and the series are series ar thereof with a swift course, slying all mixture of waters, and throwes it selfe from very high bath published thereof with a livite courte, nying an infactine of waters, and inflowes in terres from very might bath published Rockes, whence having gotten freer feope, it expatiates it felle a while, and shortly is as it two Bookes of were swallowed vp in deepe yauning Gulfes of the Earth, and so strained, that in some places this one River were wantowed by in steeps yearing course on the easiest and to trustined, that in tome places surveyed and many first occur it. But after it hath passed fine dayes to the Easist bends backet its course strained with each according to the West. and sometimes greater, sometimes less. according to the Section 2005 the Section 1, two originals. a man may strate outrit. Due arter is liaus panco une dayes to the Langue being becar is count two originals to the Welf, and sometimes greater, sometimes leste, according to the Season, passet towards one a Livin to the West, and sometimes greater, sometimes sens, accurating to turn occasion, paners coverage one a Leem Egypt. The Abasine report, that it is no hard thing to turne the Rivers course some other way, we lead to be some form of South late. 30 and to sterue Egypt, which I scarsly beleeve.

The Abaffine Aire is most part warme and temperate, but in low Land is exceeding hote, and tude, fittie fue fomewhat vnwholsome. Their Winter is from the end of May to the beginning of September; and then it beginneth in the Red Sea. I have found by exercising the three countries of the second of the seco and then it beginneth in the Red Sea. I have found by experience, that thus Sea from the change flowed, Springer of the Moone to the Full, fourteene dayes together flowes in, and as many through the whole 10 Smile, and Wane ebbeth or runneth out. In Winter it raineth almost every day in thele parts, alway after. Conget the o-Wane ebtern or rumern out, an winter it rame in amore every cay in enter pare, alway after none, and now whose Thunder. From this Ringdome of Danboa where we luc, both Poles thermore have feene, but Antarélike the higher. Neers it are many Stars informe of a Creffe, whence it likes from the control of the hath that name. In this Tract of Heauen appeareth a certaine spot like a Cloud: we suppose it use, being a 40 a part more thinne then others not flarred : let Philosophers examine. About this spot many Like of 1700 a part more cuming their charges and the part of the p Starres finne left then thole winth about the title Fole. The year expansion meter with the person of them thirtie dayer, and those which remayne from August to September, are reckoned by themselves. The Market will be and those which remayne from August to September, are reckoned by themselves. The Market will be an additional which in the Market will be a september and those which remayne from August to September and those which remains the August to September and those which and those which remayne from august to septem eet, sie recounted by themselles. In each the shaffines no way more expirale their toy and icilities then by eating and drinking; and easily on for opinionly Balling to way more capture to the churches, which vitally are compelled with Trees for shade, the same Letthere are many Veffels fet full of their Wine, whichaiter Semice ended, they fucke in form

where are many Vetters let run or then write, which all fally Frayes vitally follow. They meafurably, that first Drunkennesse and then Brabbles, and lastly Frayes vitally follow. They that with the nee. make Wine of Honey tempered with Opium, both pleasant and profitable taken moderately. Wine of Yines israre, and for their Maffe in Vintage time they vie Muft, at other times about, the while of vines many actions and the writ, that edine 1604, her was with the Empercur Red Seas Wine of Raylins. Peter Paex a Jeinte writ, trate anno 1 0 0 4. nee was with the Emperous who defired him to fay Maffe, which hee could not for want of Wine, which no where could could be with the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could see the could not for want of Wine, which no where could not for want of Wine, which no where could not for want of Wine, which no where could not for want of Wine, which no where could not for want of Wine, which no where could not for want of Wine, which no where we want of Wine, which no which was also we want of Wine, which was also we want of Wine, which we want of Wine, which was also we want of Wine, which was

gotten. At what time Rodericke Lima entred Monfia, Danid * reigned, and after hee had held the Adjune good At what time assured structure for the first structure haung ruled almost twentie yeares. His Brother Adamas succeeded called also (Mena, and Series) haung throughnort wenter yeares. The province Seminary indeceded, who leaving his fermer per raigned four years dying in the yeare 1463. Senja Dengel fucceeded, who leaving his fermer per per pare, name, would be called Malae Seguettu, and died. Amo 1596. His Sonne Ismes succeeded, a Succession of thilde, which after feuen yeares was taken by his Subjects, deprined and fint into the King Emperous. dome of Norse, a certaine Coulin German of his vsurping the Scepter, which he (carlly held a * Bewerkin 60 year, being lâneby his Subiects, Anno 1604. Isma was reflored, and in the second year after was Nahu, expelled and slaine inbattell by another of his Vncles Sonnes, call 1 Sacious Paex calls him Sacious of the second year after was Nahu, which is vncles Sonnes, call 1 Sacious Paex calls him Sacious was not present the second year after was Nahu, which presents the second year after the present the second year after the second year after the present the second year.

Numins Fernander, thus writeth of their apparell. The richer fort buy Garment: of the Sara-A cens, and clothe them felues in their fulnons. The rest both men and women court their bodes, destines species Ffffff 2

either with a Skinne or Pelt, or with a cosses Hempen cloth without other arte then the Weauers. When enter with a senate or test, or with off this Cloth from the shoulders to the natill, remayning basse nabed. they doe renerence wany, well part of the competition and Head-tyre. For finer branerie they carle and anome their haire with Butter, which showes in the Sun like Grasse in the morning dew. Less their locks and curles should be disordered, when they goe to bed, each one pitcheth a Forke or Cratch a foote bieb and curies from a oc as for zerou, where of bee reposeth bus necke, and sleepeth with bis head hanging. Dull gnorance They wife to brand markes in their bodies, especially in the face. And on their little fingers they suffer the and likenesse. nailes to grow as long as they will, like Cockes spurres, which also they sometimes cut from Cockes, and fitto their fingers. They colour their hands and feet (which are bare) with the inste of a reddille is to their jungers. I bey colour their courts and seas, wince are every min occupied a readily barke. They chiefly are artissis and lazes, neglecting hunting and filtens, and whereas Weal, In Hempe and Colour might safely be bad, yet the uniform are clothed with undressed felts, each wearing Hempe and Cotton megat equip be toda. Jet toe vauges are civileta wito vauscijiest etit, each weening a Remmer Schme tyech to be bendt and fest. They from Ox-backs without Gullst or "Mattriffes" for Table taby tie great bombes of wood, radely bollowed, without any Naparis. Vejfelt they base of

Little or no

blacke Chalke. Few but Saracens wie Merchandize and in few places: most exercise Hulbandrie, the Gentry follow Armes and the Court. They have no great Cities, but Villages unwalled and unfortified. Their greatest Towns hath scarly one thousand sixe hundred Houses. Their Houses are small, without elerance, without storie, almost without arte, round and courted with Earth and Straw. They write up Letters, nor vie Records in Iudgements, or other Writings, but in their boly things, and Officers of Ac-They vie no Dirges or Deuotions for the dead. They vie Pictures, but not carned nor graven 24

Images. They paint Christ, the Blessed Virgin and other Saints in blacke forme, as Deuils and wick ad men in white: fo they paint Christ and his Apossles at the Maundie blacke, and Indas white; Christin his Passion blacke, Annas, Carphas, Pilate, Herod, and the Jewes white: Michael blacke and the Deuill white. Their failting is rigorous not freeing the Sicke. Some Religious men abstaine wholly from flesh, which is no easie thing farre from the Sea, where they have sew fiftes. They fast Wednesdayes and Fridayes, not talking ought till night, then eating Herbes Fafts, Alumes, without Oyle (which they have not) or Butter, and Bread with Apples.

Their Temples are round and encompassed with a double porch, they neither walke nor talk. nor fpit, nor lat, nor laugh in the Church : nor admit Dogges or other Domesticke creatures into the Church-yard. Horsemen alight and walke on foot before the Church as they passe. The great ! Altar is in the midft, Curtaines being drawne betwixe the doore and it from one fide of the Church to the other, wherein none not in Orders may enter : without may Lay-men fland, which have Crutches to support them if they be ficke or old. Some Churches are only for men, others only for women: in imall Villages they are common to both, but with feuerall Diuffions that they may not fee each other.

Ludonicus Azenedius in his Letter 1 6 0 7. faith, that they confesse not the number and kinds of their finnes, but only fay in generall, I have finned, I have funed. They wie not Confirmation on, nor Extreme Vnction, nor the Communion-Visticum.

Monie Fernandez, 1606. writeth, that in Dembes where hee then was in the Citie of 40 Gorgorts, iome received the Remone Faith, others refuded: that the Emperour that years writ to the Pope to fend thither some Patriarch, and to the King of Spaine for Portugal Forces, to reduce his Empire to the Faith, to which the Princes and Grandes opposed, and must by Armes be forced; but hee feared notwithstanding the mutable inconstance of the Abastines, which care little to hold promife. God open their eyes : of twentie parts of the Empire, feuenteene are almost gone. The next yeare he writeth ; we are here fage Priests of the Societie, fome of vsattend the Emperours Campe, to conferue and encrease our Catholike number. Many commend our Doctrine, but are afraid to proteffe it. They observe levilo Circumcilion, Sabbaths, abstinence from the stell which is to the lewes vncleane, and from Fish without Finnes, nature the state of the state o Rebaptifations, and tradition of Soules from humane feed, and equalitie of Christs humane Nature with the Diuine, with other Abasime errors, I have had often conflicts with their learned men, which yeilded to other things easily: but in the two last opinions were obstinate. They call Diofeorus, Bleffed, condemne Leo with the Chalcedon Councell, with many reproches, and Father on him many lies touching the Natures and operations of Christ. They hold alio, that God doth effect nothing besides the Consecration of things and Miracles when they are done, and thence gather that the Soule is produced of Seed. They circumcife not onely Males, but with a peculiar Rite Females also, Yearely on Twelfth day they renew Baptisme : Apostates returning from Mahametanifme, are also rehaptized, and likewije they which have committed some erroneous crime, or haue married, or haue entred into any Religious Family. On the otherside, they are so rigorous to Infants, that before their appointed day they die without Baptisme. They come to the Eucharist without Contrition or Confession , even the most wicked amongst them. They distolut Marriages when they list : before the day of Judgement they

CHAP. 8. S. 2. Errors, Warres, miseries: Friers lies: lesuites iourneg.

fay, that neither the Soules of the Bleffed are in Heauen, nor of the wicked in Hell : Purgatorie they deny, and the Spirits proceeding from the Sonne. These errors are common to all; some are peculiar to some of them, new Hereses daily springing vp without danger as every man

In his Letters, 1609. In this Erbiopian Empire, every man liveth in manner in Armes, nor is the Emperours life more quiet then of other men. For every yeare, Winter being fearly path, himselfe in person and his Captaines, renew the Warres, sometimes against Rebels, sometimes against neighbouring enemies. It cannot be vttered what confusions have happened these two

against neighbouring statement Emperour began his reigne, three or four chiefe men viur - Ethiopia civill to ping the Royall name, rebelled against him, but were vanquished in battaile. This very yeare, Combustions, the second of his reigne, as many as have attempted the same and comme into the field. Neither of lung time haue things bin quieter. We are also constrained to waue vp and downe with these formes; fometimes flying to the Mountaines, fometimes hiding our felues in fecret Caues, fomtimes we pierce thicke Woods, and vnpaffable places, and fuffer innumerable euils, which we could more patiently endure, if we could gather any harnest to offer to God. This very yeare, when the Emperour was gone against a Rebell, suddaine newes came to the Campe, that the Gala (a lausge Nation of Cafrer, begotten of Deuils, as the vulgar report) were at hand. It is a The Gale, hundred yeares fince these passed from the fields and woods, where they lived by keeping Cattell, and shaking off the Eibspies yoake, have attained such power, that they possesse about the

20 twelfth part of Ethropia, and are a terrour to all. The Emperour went against them, but was ouerthrowne, to the ruine well-neere of the whole Emp re. I fought to comfort him as well as I could, but he gathering his forces, suddainely rushed on the Conquerours, and recouered

One Juan de Baltasar, 2 pretended Abassine, and Knight of the Militarie Order of Saint Antonie, hath written a Booke in Spanish of that Order, founded (as he faith) by the Prete Iohn, in the daies of Saint Bafil, with rules received from him, above feven hundred yeares before any Militarie Order was in the world. I know not whether his Booke (which I haue by me) hath more lies or lines, a man of a leaden braine and brazen face; seconded, if not exceeded by the Morall, Naturall, and Politicall Historie of Ethiopia, the worke of his Scholler Luys d'Ur-

30 reta, a Spanio Frier and lyer; The faid Godgmus enery where through his first Booke confutes him, it is more then enough that wee have named such more then Viopiess , such Legendarie fore-heads ; and though we will not blot Paper with mention of their affertions, yet have their ouerflowing commendations of the Ethiopian Faith, and admiration of their State, made thus many Witpelfes to be multered, sometimes repeating the same things, by more abundant allegations to figuifie and prooue the truth. We will further trouble the Reader with some extracts of Pare Pare, chiefe of the Iesuites in those parts. For Melchior Sylvius a Priest of Goa, sent into Abaffia, confulting with the Abaffine Portugals, which way any lefatte might be fent this into Analys, commany with the Analysis revingus, which was any tent of danger, which salar welse ther, was answered that the Port of Baller ouer against Moba, was freet of danger, which salar welse Page feeking to doe, by the Monfion was preuented, and the next yeare by a Turker, Servant of leagues within 40 the Captaine of Suachen, trading at Diss, named Recomme Aga, was in Armenian habite this the theighnon the conjugated. His icurrey himielfe hath written in a Letter to the leftites at Gas, the foure the Administration of the Confusion of the Con

THE two and two mieto of March we fet Soile, Rezoam Aga few me of his provision twice a day, Letters of P. and landing at Mazin, procured me fauour of the Governour, with licence to goe whether I would Pare. A and landing at Mazin, precise me jasour of 100 consumer, who invested from the few substitutes of the most few points of the most of the whether my Kinfman being dead, I might fucceed in the Inheritance. The Bancan Saranga or Captains of the my Kinfman being dead, I might fucceed in the Inheritance.

my Kuspann being dead, 1 might Jucceed in the Inheritance. Like Banean Saranga or Capainse of the flow how be been continued in the Saracens with mee, with whom, and for Christians of Abollia, I departed on the flow of the Saracens which there of the the departed on the flow of May I was to the ragged hobits for fear of Jack but which there of the two brights with the saracens which there of the two days and the saracens which pace of me, but with our forming be departed. The next day we palled high and cragged Hill, for force of Theeses, and came at night to a Village of Stracens . On Holy-Thursday, we came to certaine Chris Stan Herd men, which supposing mee a Turke, fled but learning that I was a Priest, kiffed my bunds must soy, and refreshed us with fore of Milke in vessels of Scraw, which they fet on burning flores to beate. Breadibes had none, and was, they faid, a rare thing to them. and farre brought. Their wines over. in reast very ones arous, and was, toer justo, a not was a plefting, from killing my bands, others falling at my feete. We went thence our rough Mountaines, troubled also with raine, the way not about

most and wearie, we came at last to the top, and found a plainer path, (for I had not beene able to base descended the like) and 4 Towns of (brittans which brought us their Bookes and Croffes. Here wee mere institled to a poore Cottage, which yet was in good fasjon for vs, a violent raine following, which elfe bad opperfied v. On the tenth of May we came to Barua, where all my Company left me, but one Sa. tacen and a Christian. Another Saracen which dwelt here sent mee a Hen, but the Christian which

Voluciupe the more with me get him away, because the Abastines (for soot) cate not any thing killed by a Turke: and a jor jears of offenes, fon a proces from Diu, without any other things, though faint. Neither would the Gold I had doe me any fertice beere to buy without any other trans Money being stones of Salt. The Bread of my Companions was halfe baked

preme Gouernor in causes clefiafticall. * This feemeth falfly written : for Sequentionin vie of his life, which what it was you shall receive by our informations, as also of Father Abraham, of 10 and Successer. whom you have beard no fame, &c.

Graffe-hop

ged) in Effex, where the De. uill comming into the Church at the

to a Medow swo furlongs fuch a Medow is there ftill. called Lopers, in that Pariff of my natiui.

prompton, one unit one which they bake with patting a bot stone into the Douch, and rolling it cast it into the fire, fo that the out-fide is scorched, the in-fide unbaked. This they carried in their Budgets, but my the pre, ju coat the ont-piece of justice on the eleveth of May, came Iohn Gabriel, the Captaine of the Portugals, haume received my Letters from Mazua, with other Portugals. To give mee better entertainment, they killed a Sheepe, which I taited not, they eating it a little (corched and halfer am after the tainment, inequine a coeffe, would have, and we translled twentie together, yet not without feare of 10 Countries custome. Here I had a Mule, and we translled twentie together, yet not without feare of 10 Theenes, the raine also towards essening dasty molesting us (and we were forced to lye in the open fields) 1 occues, toe rame any towards coming any more than 20, name a week processing in the open picks) best allo exceeding in the afters of an exceeding (Abantaines, and as exceeding coloin betop. O high processing the processing of chiefe Church of the Portugals. We were recisived with great denotion of the people. I went to the Patriarch bonfe, which is conducted and Apple and concredibility from a are all which we have yet feen in Ethiopia, (all of Earth, andround, latte, without diffinit roomes; except those of the King and in Ectiopia, (au of Carto, and roma, unite, mittoni austins; roomes; except tooled the King and
great men which have fenerall roomes, but jet of Earth and Thatched.) The Patriarchs house was
twentie palmes or fluorouser. Here were Melchior Syluius his things, which had carried with him. Secumparific the boly Destinents. Sunday following being Whit funday, I celebrated a dry Maffe and preached. Many came to Confession. The Portugall Captains was sent for to the Court by the new Emperous, to 20 whom I writ, who by writing welcomed me, and licensed me to goe to him, which I purpose at the end of September, which is the end of Winter : for of him depend all the Priests, and all will be Catholikes if be command, as well Clergie as Laitie. The Emperours name is Malac Sequed, aged fifteene peares. On the last of June, Sylunus returned from a worse sourney then that of ours, more craggie and rough, On the cast of tame, Symmus returness you manufactures towards over the overtiender configure and remains of truncite dates, which here goes trunfers the pares to Manine, as the Catholice there. I feather than the Morphish the beauting the confiered time the Morphish the beauting the coften digged up I adde three Worlings the beauting the coften digged up I adde three pieces of the skull, and the saw with eight teeth. On the other fine, send you me, I pray, some Image of she bleffed Virgines Conception, of fine or fixe spannes, for the service of this Temple maning an Image. I have placed the head of Father Francis Lopes in my Bolfter, being yet hairy, for my more wise mem-

While Pacz remained at Fremona, hee translated the Catechisme into the Amaran tongue (which is there counted the most elegant) and made the Children learne it by heart. In this yeere 1603. great mifery happened by Graffe-hoppers, from which, Pace freed the Catholikes, by Letanics and sprinkling the Fields with Holy-water; when as the Fields of Heretikes, feuered onely by a Ditch, were spoyled by them. Yea, a Heretike vsing this facred sprinkling, pers search
feuered onely by a Ditch, were tpoyled by them. 122, a referred with Holy-wapresented feuered onely by a Ditch, were tpoyled by them. 122, a referred with Holy-wapresented feuered is Corne, which to a Catholike neglecting in one Field, was lost, and presented with Holy-wapresented feuered onely by a Ditch, were to poyled by them. 122, a referred feuered another by that conjured aspersion (so neere of kinne are these Locusts to the Deuill, which is faid ' to hate Holy-water, or elle make a quare for other Locusts, worfe then the Agyping rels of rasifed mentioned Apoc. 9.) About the end of September, when hee had thought to have gone to the 10 (I thinke hee Court, newes came, that the Emperours Silters Husband conspired against him, and impussomeanth That ned him, alleadging that he was no Christian, because one of his Guard was an Ethnick, and that his Father was not the King, but one Batims a vulgar person. He being produced and thus accused, flood mute; because (said hee) his Subiects presumed to judge their Soueraigne : Hee was fent into close keeping to Damijeta.

The Viceroy of Tigrai passing by, Pagz went to falute him: who willed him to sit downe on his Carpet, when all the reft flood; and asked why the Portugals did not now as in time past, o threeked and larged in frequent the Red Sea; whether they were afraide of the Turkes. Hee answered, that Turkes rather feared the Portugals, and fled into the Countrey when they approached the Coaft : but this was the true reason that all the ships of India came thither out of Poringal Ports, and most of 30 off Sure I am, their goods appertained to the Portugals.

He went to the Monasterie Conegorum, where he saw their Church, the Altar invironed with a threefold Curtaine, reaching to the wall on both fides, fometime coursed with stone, now with fraw, the Saracens having spoyled the former, and therefore darke : they shewed him 2 Crucifixe painted on a Linnen cloth, as a precious thing, yet artlefly wrought. They fet himon a Carpet, themselues and the Portugals litting on the ground. Ouer against the doore, were ten faire stones, in the midst whereof, they say, the Emperour is inaugurated. A little further are thirteene stones in Pyramide fashion, the greatest whereof is twelve spannes broade, and about fixtie high, with much workemanship, the matter admirable whence it could bee brought hither. The Viceroy forbade his ludges to medale with the Towne of Catholikes, and ap 60 pointed Pare their ludge. The Galla did much mischiefe at this time , and flew the King of Narca, tributary to the Abaffine, whom also they affailted, but were ouerthrowne. After this, the King fent for Pace, who was brought to the King, fitting on a high Throne, and killed his hand, being bidden alfo to be courred, and to fit on the Carpet. After this, followed another

CHAR. 8.8.2. lesuites honors, wicked treasons, warres, wares, superstitions.

day, a diffpute about abolishing the legall Rites, two wills in Christ, and Purgatorie, all which. easy; a unpute acoust anothering the regard to fee their Maffe, but for want of Wine, he could performe Want of Wine onely a dry Office; for which, the King caufed a great Tent to bee erceted, and in it, another of the Vines onely a dry Office; for which, the King canted a state of Hong leffe for his Throne: the Islante preached with great aplaufe; whom the Empresseals desiring that of Hong more comto heare, when the Emperour law him flanding, hee arole from his Throne, and inuited him to to neare, when the Emperous As a mon, make his Sermon out of it, himselfe litting on the Foot-stoole. Another time, when in confe- Iesustes honors rence. Paez called himselfe the Emperour; Subject; no, faid hee, my Father and King: and saue great hopes of the conversion of that Nation, which were dashed by his death, which Paca fronified in his Letter, the thirtieth of Iuly, 1605. Namely, that Zezelazew, whom the Em-10 perour had delivered from exile, and exalted, had conspired together with Eras Athanathem. (the next to the Emperor) who yet made faire shew, and bound himselfe after the Alassine manner, in the bond of excommunication, to fidelitie and loyaltie, which yet he kept not: Zezelazens The Emperont gathered great forces, alleadging against the Emperous, that he for fooke his Religion, and imbra Mala Sessed, braced the Portugal and Roman; and therefore all that were zealous, ought to take armes against ciled also see him. This made some sweare to kill all the Portugals, and the Islante especially. Before the thanks Saued. battell, he wished him present to confesse himselfe to him. In the battell, Anabel which before had for loken him, returned to his Part with his Sonne : but hee suspecting him; False Traito; thou wentest, faid he, and so thou returnest, withall, killing him, which his sonne seeing ranne the Emperour thorow the necke, and thrust him off his Horse, whom Zezelazeus and the Sa-20 racors inspatched. Three daies hee lay dead in the field, naked and subject to contumelies . and

after that, meanely buried. Paez, was all this while in Goyame, whence he was fent for by the Empresse, and kindly entertained, Sazmofius by election succeeded in the Empire foure Moneths, then forfaken, and Immediatelored out of his Narean imprisonment and exile, passing thorow the Galle's Countrey James staine or with great hazard. In the yeere 1607. Sazinofine onercame him in battell, neither was lames a- loft. ny more feene. This Saz inofine was a man of fingular arts and parts for warre and peace. munificent and faithfull, aged fine and thirty yeeres, affected to the Romane faith. A veere and halfe he had to doe with Rebels, fame affecting Sourraignty, which hee brought to Subjection. Much adoe he had also with the Galle (which came to subdue the Agai, which are white Chri- Agai, 30 flians, to fell them to the faracens) whom in foure battels he ouerthrew. After this, followed another rebellion, with forcesse like to the former. Hee fent Zezelazeus prisoner into the Kingdome of Goroma, whence he escaped and was slaine of the Pesants. He sought to vnite the Abaffine Church with the Romane, and writ to the Pope and the King of Spaine. His Letters to the Pope are thefe.

THE Letters of Malategued the Aballine Emperous, let some to the body Pather Bellouge Romes. The reason of with the peace of lefus Christ, which hash loved by, and supplied to from: our flames in this bland, this mane, I and made to a Kingdome and Priefts to God and the Bellow. This peace her with your Habestle, thinke took and the whole Church of Christ, circ. Such is the finite actionise of our Empere by merces pair, that their cultomic of the ball to those flowers that the cultomic flowers to be made flowers flowers. The Ethinck Caller, Christian of although the ball followers flowers that the cultomic microbian and the best of the Christian which these fabricked in final part of the Kingdome, models by sink have incomfined, mifres they country by verying old and young: which their rage country in feming be represented without the safe of the King the Empire, of Portugall. Wherefore we interesting to final vi sinked to be Anciford date our Progenitor. And that my Petition may like me were write, thought good to sinker your Holmift, the Paffer and Casher of all the furthful to kepting formulations. On the Country of the the wire to the King of Spaine, Decemb. 16. as affe did Kins Athanathens.

King of Spaine, Dicemb. 10. as all a deserva arianancies.

The ledities there questheric a friend Der's Graine, their The Analysis weare Amulets of words of the Googlei, happing about their indeks. Antoning their Rebels which arole in Armes against Geseinfun, was such as the farre from Grosson, the Charles of the Company, which the had therefore, the had thereins Rebels in a Wildernells twentid pares, nie pipring off yet his analytic of a Scepter. He had thereins Robels O coalicate thin, of which here are playing, that I limit should be ease followed of difference, and feeme to have robbed my Knaders parietals to Wilders and while hum for long in this milerable.

Aballa.

An Armenian his report of Svssin vs, the Emperour of the Abaxins, by vs onlearly talled Pa Es TBR 10 H is, who came from the faid Emperours Court twelve daies fince.

Mift. From Dealeque to the Kings Court, called Dombia, (a very great Citie) is fine and Ewentie daiss journey by Carravan ; heere goeth from thence yearely ton Carravans, whereof eight are gleat. The Commodities they carrie are all kind of Indian cloathing, and likewife of our English Commodities, (Broad-cloath, Kerseys, Lead, Tinne; likewile, Veluets, Da-

CHAP.I.

maskes, Sattens, Taffitaes, and all other forts of Silke Stuffes. Their measure is about halfe a vard : Cloath, which is worth in Moba foure Rials of eight, is there worth eight Rials, The price of Kerseyes, is halfe the price of Broad-cloath: The Colours they most defire, are

price of Kerleyes, is halfe the price of Broad-closuri. Inc Colours they most denie, are Redis, Green, Violets, Murreys, and other light Colours: Yellowes in no efficience, no Blacks, Veluets of China of all forts are worth ten Raislo feight the halfe yard. Veluets of had are much more worth; but not so profitable to the Merchants, because they are much deter. Sattens of Florence are worth ten Rials; Damaskes of the better fort, worth eight or ten Rials als. Taffitaes three Rials; all colours well fold, excepting Yellowes and Blackes.

The Commodities of that Country, with

The Kings

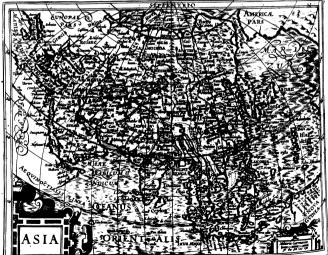
Cinet, great quantitie is tobe had, the price is three Wakias, (which is neere vpon four ounces English, for fiue Rials of eight. Elephants teeth, the Bahar, worth thirtie Rials, to The Bahar is three hundred and fixtie Rottollies of Moha. Waxe one hundred Rottollies. worthone Riall of eight. Gold the Rottolly, worth fixtie Rials, the Rottolly is neere voon fixteene ounces and a halfe. Lead and Tinne in great request. Tinne worth the Rottolly, one Rial, Lead much more worth, because the Tark wil not sufer any to be carried into his Country.

Bezar-stones many are to be had, and little worth : here are many Beasts with one home in their fore-head like a Vnicorne; which horne, they fay, is good against poyson. There are of them which weigh eight pound, some seuen, foure, and three pound: the greatest and fairest worth some foure Rials the piece, and those of a leffer fort worth leffe : among the Turkes and Moores in Arabia, every pound is worth one Riall of eight.

From Grancaire there goeth in August a great Carrauan, and likewise another in Novem- 20 ber. The Commodities they carrie from thence, arg Broad-cloaths, Kerleyes, Veluets, Sattens, Damaskes, and all forts of Silkes, From Carro to Dombia is fiftie daies trauell by Carroun.

First, he fits on a gilt Bed-sted like those of Chma, and there commeth great troops of men daily to falute him ; fome daies two thousand, some daies more, some daies lesse ; but Friday being their day of Fast, there commeth a farre greater quantitie.

HONDIVS bis Map of Afia.





¹⁰PEREGRINATIONS.

AND TRAVELS BY LAND IN-

TO PALESTINA, NATOLIA, SYRIA.

ARABIA, PERSIA, AND OTHER PARTS OF ASIA.

THE EIGHTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The Historie of the first Expedition to Ierusalem, by GODFREY of Bullen , ROBERT of Normandie, and other (briftian Princes: Wristen 10 by ROBERT, whom some call the Englishman , a Manke of Saint R M I G I V S, which mas prefent both at the Councell of

Claremont, and in the faid Expedition : tranflated and abbreniated.



N the years of our Lord 10 p q a great Councell wis colebra- Pererthette ted at Cleremont, in Asserte on the Confines of France, where visited lend in Pape Vrhan the Second was prefent and Prefident with the lim byrelation Billiops and Cardinals: where many French and Groman Billiops and Princes were affembled. Ecclefia fitcell Affires be, and pretended french and princes were affembled. Ecclefia fitcell Affires be, and pretended french and princes were affembled. ing there fet in order, the Lord Popewent furth into a broad ferer (for no House was shir to constains the multicide) and the Pope to fpake thus with persynalise pleasant Rhetoricke shot them... this countails

O yes Marion of the French, O Nation, (as apparent by min. and Councelle my of your marker) beloved and chosen of God, separated from all Nations afreed in fituation of your Region, as in Catholibe Religi-on and Houser of both Church; so you is our Spoots directed, and

our Expertation insended willing to let you have what famoutable cause bath brought us to your Borders. our Exhpertation intermediatiling to tell you know what famouth he could be the brought us to join Borders.

O From the Confines of Intellation and Constitutionally is gricoious report that he Periad and offers come to "Turkewhich our carees, that the Periads," a coup fed Nation of the most party could not a form of the brought has been considered to the Constitute of the Configuration, and with fewer figures and alone as from 60,4 both investigated the had come out the fidurating, or edge presenting to their nicked Rives the Convertee of 60,4 polluting his Marco in the security of the converging Constitution and fleedding that bear did a first the Convertee of 60,4 polluting his Marco in the Edd the converging Constitution and fleedding that bear did for converging we the allient, or in the Configuration for the Edd the Converging Constitution and fleedding that bear did not convergent to the convergence of the a flate and floor at; of others they make tryall whether with one blow they can firthe off the head. What he advoyaing fall I fay of that which may not, cannot, by I sying the expedient, the randframent of moment The Greeke Nation, soft, Empire for the flace of two monethes introduced, they have over-runne and finished. To whom the subset of the Section of the flace of two monethes introduced to the section of the section 60 the resenge and deliner suce belong but to you, whom God has preferred about other Mations in bonour of Tu kife History Armer, courage of hearts, agilitie of bodies, and abilitie to abase enery. Enemy. Let the Exploits of your Predacefors incite your month forrits, the goodnesse and greatnesse of Canalas Magrius, and Lewis his Sonne, with ather your Kings, which have dritroyed the Kingdomerof. Turkes, and in them enlarged the border sof the Church. And abone all, let the holy Sepulchre of our Lord and Santone moone you, which is possessed of impure Nations; and those boly places which are shamefully abused our e-

uerenth defiled by their filthineffe. O most valiant Sculdiers, and the Progeny of innincible Progeni tors, doe not you degenerate, but call to mind the vertues of your Ancestors. And if the deare alletion of Wines and Children stay you, remember what our Lord sayth in the Gospell, Hee that lough Father or Mother more then Mee, is not worthy of Mee. Every one which shall for lake House or Father, or Mother, or Wife, or Children, or Lands for my Name, shall receive a hundred fold and shall possesse eternall life. Take no care for your Lands and Goods, for this your Land is enclosed led with Mountaines and Seas, is to strait for your multitude, and scarsly yeelds sustenance to ber Inha-holy Sepulchre, take away the Land from that wicked people and subdue it into you. That Land was it 10 men to the children of Ifrael, flowing , as faith the Scripture , with Milke and Honey. Icrutalem is the Nanill of the Earth, a Land fertile aboue others, as it were another Paradife. This bath the Redeemer of Mankind made glorious with his comming, adorned with his conversation, consecrated with his Passion, redeemed with his Blond, sealed with his Sepulchre. This Royall Citie placed in the mill Arrivite inter of the World, is now held captime of her Enemies, and is by them which know not God, enthralled to the viewbanc are custome of the Gentiles, She seekes then and describe to bee freed, not ceasing to pray for your suc-mission pec-cour: and that of you chiefly whom God hath helf sixed for Armes, undertake yee this way then so catorum velito-rum, Securide remission of your sumes, being assured of the immarcessible glory of the Heavenly Kingdome.

Thefe and many like words with much Vrbanitie did Pope Urban pronounce, and fo moved immarc. gl.veg. the hearts of all present, that with one voice they cryed, Dens vult, Dens vult; which the Pone 20 hearing with eies lifted to Heauen, he gaue thankes to God, and acknowledged it the worke of God which put it into their minds.

Let therefore this voice (faith he) be your word in your Warres, and when you shall give the on-let a God wils, or on the Enemie, on Gods behalfe this shall be your univerfall out-crie, Deus vult, Deus vult. Ne is God with, on the formet, on was seeing two tome or your variety as one ten. So well not the list God's with, neither his mer compile it that men aged and feels, verying for Warre Hould vanderate this isomer, you women without their Hispands, and Brestoven, or learfull telfimonies: for thefe are more hindrenes, then helps. Let the richebye the poors, and carrie must be men at their charge men fix for Warre, Pright, then helps. Let the richebye the poors, and carrie must be men at their charge men fix for Warre, Pright, then helps. Let the richebye the poors, and carrie must be men at their charge men fix for Warre, Pright. or Clerkes of any order may not goe without their Biftons leane, without which this way would bet me or [cretee] any owner many not get misses now a hope, means, "reasons were now you assume the following of the left filling of the left filling, and the left filling of the left filling mande, had the mandement in the Goffell, Hee which doth not beare his Croffe and come after mee, is not wor-

After this, one of the Cardinals named Gregorie, in the name of all that were profrate on the ground, faid his Confession, and so all knocking their brests obtayined Absolution of those things which they had done amisse, and after their Absolution a Blessing, and after the Blessing licence to returne home. And that it may appeare that this worke was of God and not of Man (as after wee learned) on that very day in which thefe things were faid and done, Fame pres- 40 ched it thorow the World; infomuch that in the Hands of the Sea it was reported, that the lerufalem Voyage was concluded in the Councell. All the Laitie returned home; and Pope Vibane caused the Bulhops to affemble the next day, and confulted with them what course might be taken for fuch a multitude of Pilgrimes, seeing there was not yet amongst them any Prince of Name. And they all chose the Bishop Podiensis, saying, that hee was a man fit for Affaires Diuine and Humane, well skilled both wayes and prouident in his actions. He therefore like another Mojes, received the charge and conduct of the Lords people, with the Popes bleffing and of the whole Councel O how many of divers age and condition received Croffes in that Councel, and vowed the way of the holy Sepulchre: Thence was it divulged abroad, and to the eares of Kings and Princes came this honourable Conftitution of the Councell, It pleafed all and more so then three hundred thousand conceine it in their purpose, and are now eager to fight with the

There was in those dayes one Peter, which had beene an Heremite, much effeemed among them which are skilled in the World, and preferred before Bishops and Abbots in Religious account, because he neither did eate bread nor flesh : yet did hee vie Wine and all other food, and fought the chiefest abitimence in Delicacies. He at that time gathered no small multitude of horse and foot, and made his way thorow Hungaria, being affociated to a Dutch Commander, called Godfrey the Sonne of Enflace Earle of Bullen, but in Office of dignitie hee was a Dutch Leader. He was a man of goodly countenance, tall flature, pleafant speech, worthy behausour, and so milde of disposition, that he seemed more like a Monke s then a Souldier; but when the Bne- 60 mie was at hand hee was a dreadleffe Lion. Hee with his Brethren Enflace and Balanin, and a great Armie patied the way of Hangarie, the way which Charles the Great appointed to his Armie to Conflanftinople. First therefore, Peter the Heremite with his , and a great multitude of Almanes came to Constantinople, and found there a copious band of Lumbards, and many others

affembled from places farre distant. To whom the Emperour denyed entrance into the Cities hispecting much the Christian valour, especially of the French. He granted them yet to buy and fell, but forbade them to pale ouer the Sea, called Saint Georges Arme, till the dreadfull Armie of the French was comne. For there was an infinite number of Twikes which brutifully thirfled for their approach, by whom they must needs be destroyed, if they passed sooner, as afterward it happed. But every company wanting a good Gouernour, guided by an ill head, groweth feeble and is farre from fafetie. Thus they wanting a pradent Prince to rule them, deffroyed the Churches and Palaces of the Citie, spoyling them of their goods and leaden roofes, felling the time to the Greekes. Whereupon the Emperour Alexius beeing angry, commanded them 10 to paffe Saint Georges Arme, which going further, chofe one Rainald for their Leader, not cealing to commit the like out-rages, burning Houses, and robbing Churches. Thus came they to Nicomedia, and thence entred the Land of Romania: and having walked three dayes went beyond Nice, and found a Castle called Exerogorgo emptie of men, but plentifully stored with Corne. Wine, Flesh and all kind of Provisions. The Turkes for seare of the French had gone farre off, but fent their Spies, by whom they were informed, that thefe new Ghefts were Waffers and Spoilers rather then Viers and Possessors, whom therefore they begint with a strait Siege, the belieged having exchanged their former Riots with such want of drinke, that they were faine to supply that want with letting their beasts bloud, to satisfie the Owners thirst ; or effe with their owne Vrine. This was about Michaelmas, when Rainald their Leader to faue his life made 20 close composition with the Turkes and fled to them, leaving such as would not turne Turkes as he did, for love of the World, to be by them turned out of the World by ladibrious and reprochfull deathes, or to hold a title of life with reall captinitie and basest fernitude.

Peter the Heremite was in the Castle Civito aboue Nice, against whom they removied, and by the way encountred with Walter his Generall, whom valiantly fighting they oppreffed with multitudes and flue : and after that, all the Christians they could meet with, they killed or captiued. Peter himfelte being gone to Constantinople, they forced his Castle. The Emperous and the Greekes playd the Greekes, and reloyced hereat, buying their Armes of the needle Souldiers. fo to difarme them.

30 TN the meane-while, God ftirred up two Earles alike in Dignitie, Armes, Courage, Name, The Goods Bloud and Power, Robert and Robert, the Earles of Normandie and Flanders, and with them Booke. Hugo Magnus Brother to Philip the King of France, Stephen Earle Carnotenfis and other inferiour Instactione W. Earles, many both of France, and of the Greater and Leffe Britaine from the North, and from Conquerous the South the Bilhop Podient's and Ramund Earle of Saint Giles (or Tholonfe) which being very and his Sonne rich fold all that he had and vndertooke the Enterprize. And now the West prepareth to en- sully filed lighten the East, and with new raised starres to expell that darknesse, the brightnesse of their Earles and selminds excelling that of their Armes, all refoluing to die, or conquer. They pared the Alperat dome Dukes: divers times and came to Rome (the Citie not being able to lodge them all) where having vifited and fill the 40 the holy places, and commended themselues to the Merits and Prayers of the Apostles and other Earldome of the may praces and commenced to the manages of the contract and 1 paints and 1 pain ders, honestie, their word Dem vult, their Weapons, Courage, Crosses on the fore-head or right superiour to the state of the s boly Sepulchrewith me, and take my things as yours. Are not we also of French blond, and did not our and other Au-Parent come ont of France, and subdue this Landby Armes? Shall our Kinsmen and Brethren goe to thors of this CMarty-dome on Paradic without vi? In all Ages to come a back-fliding consardife will be imputed the called confidence of the distinct of the

50 with thee and you the way of the Sepulchre; the Croftes not beeing fufficient. The Nobles of any fuffiting pulsa, Calabria, and Sicilia, did also the like, insomuch that the Doke of Apulia, Brother to the then side. faid Boamund (both Sonnes of Robert Wischard) was afraid to abide in his Dukedome, being left alone with children and women.

Whiles Boamund provided necessaries, Hugo tooke Sea at Bari, to Dyrrachium, others to Brundustum, or Otranto. The Emperour had commanded his Officers to take all these Pilgrimes and bring them to Constantinople to doe him fealtie, that what they tooke should be his. But when Hago met there Duke Godfrey, he reioyced of his taking, both renewing their old friendship, and difcouring the Emperours fraud : who before had laid ambuthes to kill closely Duke Godfress men as they went to prouide necessaries, which being perceived by his Brother Baldwine, was

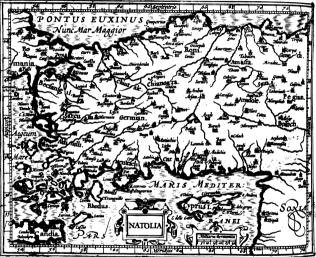
60 with counter-ambush turned on the Imperials, and after another like assault on Godfreyer Tents. The Emperour fruitrated, fought to make peace, and permitted buying of proution. The rest not iong after arrived, and after them Boamund with Tancred his Nephew, and Richard the Son of Marchis, who passed by Bulgaria, and Andrinople, and beeing encountred by the Emperous Forces, in the way ouerthrew them, and after received faire femblance from him, but with no

c Thefedrone I wis, had no

1102 Couenants with the Emperour, Nice besieged, Poyloned Arrowes, LIB, VIII

lelle malice. Homage was in conclusion required by the Emperour, that is, securitie of peace. that he should conduct and provide for them, accompanying them with his presence, and the atfiftance of his people, (wearing to supply their necessitie in Armes and Clothes, and not to hur or confent to the hurt of any Pilgrime. This they fware vnto, fo long to continue as the Emperour kept his Oath. But the Earle of Saint Giles refuled, and would have him and his Citiede. ftroyed. But being perswaded by the reft, he took this Oath, I freere to Alexius the Emperour thes neuer by me nor mine be shall loofe life or bonour or what somer bee now possesses with or uninfity. And the Emperour fware, I Alexius Emperour (weare to Hugo Magnus, Duke Godfrey, and other the Princes of the French bere prefent, never to burt or suffer to bee hart any Pilgrime of the Holy Sepul. chre, and that I will proceed with them in Warlike Affaires , and according to my power will promide 10 them Sufficient Market. This they did forced by necessitie, but hee chose rather to incurre Perjurie then not to remooue the French from his Frontiers.

HONDIVS bis Map of Asia Minor.



A Fter this Confederacie the Emperour commanded in 198 to be prought for transportation of the Armie. Godfrey and Tancred were first transported, went to Nicomedia, and staid three Fter this Confederacie the Emperour commanded thips to be brought for transportation of dayes : and feeing no passage the Duke sent before foure thousand men with Axes and Ploughes and other Iron Inflruments to make way, the way being wayleffe, thorow Hils, Dales and Pracipices. These made way with much labour to Nice, and set woodden Crosses at every turning. They came to Nive the first hof May, and before any proution was brought a Loafe of bread was fold for twentie or thrite pence. But Bommend brought plentie, and on Holy Thurfday they be forged the Citie and helder the thereto their Bogines, Slings, Rammes and the like. The Tintus made valiant relifance, shooting poyloned Arrowes, which killed whom they but lightly

Ours erect high Engines about the Walls, by which they might ouer-fee the men on the Wall, and opposed Turrets of Wood to those of Stone. The fight was hote, and the befieved ready to yeeld when they faw threefcore thousand comming in their Troupes from the Mountaines, two for fight, whiles the thrd might enter the Citie. No Hunger-bitten flomacke is readier to five to a Feast then the Christians to the fight, where having slaine them and returned to the Cirie, they with Slines cast their heads into the Citie, and the next day having thing prepared, entred the Lake on the South-fide of the Citie, which fo afrighted the Turker, that by the Turcopole they fent to the Emperour that they would veeld the Citie to him on composition on to depart with their goods. This was done, and the Torker carryed to Confirmationale, (with 10 purpofe to haue them in better readinelle against the Frankes, after feuen weekes and three daves fiege, no Citie being fo defentible in all Romania.

They departed thence & two daies after came to a bridge, and refreshing themselves there two dayes, they parted themselues being to trauell in a parren Country, the greater band being committed to Hugo Magnus; and with him the Bishop, the Earles of Flanders and Saint Giles and Duke Godfrey: the other to Boamsend. After three dayes march, this later Armie is encountred with three hundred thousand Turker, whereat some Arinking and thinking to flie, Boamand 2 man popular, and Robert of Normandie a flout Warriour, commanded to pitch their Tents : het before this was done, one hundred and fiftie Timber, with payloned Arrowes, began a skirmish turning their backes (according to their custome in their flight to wound the purituers) and were on taken and flaine. There was now no place for flight, the Enemie having possessed the Hills, and the Frankes having broken their Launces in thole wickes bodies, it came to handie frokes, with

Some got to the Christians Tents, and slay the Mother and Childe, whose cry comming to Boamunds eares, he commits the battell to the Norman Earle antifpeedily repaires thither, chafed the Turker, and leaving fome to guard them returnes to the battell. Here hee finds the Chriflians fo tired with labour, thirst and heat, that had not the women brought them water out of the adjoying River many had dyed. Now had burs once turned their backer, but prefently the Norman Earle displaying his Golden Banner, turned his Horse, and redoubled the Military word, Deni valt, Den valt, otherwise that had proued a definally day. But feeing Boamand and the 20 Norman, they recovered their spirits, chaling to diversition to flye. The Tirkes had so befer ours with their multitude, that no way was open but to their Tents : many perished by Tarkelb Arrowes; none was idle, the Souldiers fighting; the Prieffs crying and praying; the women Forty these conveying the flaine to the Tents, the Aire over-flaidowed with a thicke Cloud of fliot; when Saufreck Hugo and Duke Godfrey came flying like prouoked Eagles, to their diffrested Airies with fortie Souldiers Hugo and Dike George came nying has prosened tages; to that distinct units with retrieved the shouldn't felhemen. And now the cries of one fighting, and to kers stying, the ratting of Armors and cracking of Launces, filled the Hils and Valleyes with confused noyles of militing voyces, and refulting ecchoes; and manifold deaths are represented to the life in miferable

foedactes.

The Timbes now looking backe to the Hils, see the Bishoppe Podiensis and Earle Reimind, AO with the rest of the Armie, descending to the on-set as a terrible storme, showing Souldiers, and powring Weapons, and not able further to hold vp head or hears, betooke them to their heeles: which put life into our wounded, to pursue and reuenge their hurts; insomuch, that the Hill is coloured red, the thirstie earth is drunken, & increaseth the Neighbour River with new streames of Persian, Median, Syrian, Saracen, and Turkish bloud, leaving their carkastes like Grasse-hoppers without number on the ground; the Night at last delivering the remnant of these children of darkneffe, from the Christian Zeale which now connerted it selfe into Hymnes and Prayles of the Great Lord of Hofts.

The next day they buried their dead, distinguished by Crosses, the wiser sort giving them the Veneration of veneration of Marryrs, and the most Honourable Sepulture. The spoyle of the Turker clothed their flaine with Silke, the halfe naked Christians, furnished them with Armes, and of beggers suddenly friends, by 50 made them rich. The day after, which was the third of July, they purfued the Turkes which zeoleor inperfled as Birds before the Hawke.

Soliman their Leader (Sonne of that Soliman which had taken all Romania from the Emperour) had after his flight from Nice, procured tenne thousand Arabians to come to his aide: which being comne, hee told them that the vertue of the Frankes was either Dinine or Diabolicall, whom wee, fauth bee, had so conquered (in conceit) that wee had provided Wubes and Halters Compate this tan seconomes, januous, oua jo conquerra UNICONICCI) rota wee toad produced brittes and Halters with eighter to put about their necker, when findedings a penje which farees not death came downs the Moun-eight prouision taines, and entred our Troupes. Alsu, wee were three hundred and three few thoughted, and are at Time hunflaine or fied. This is the fourth day fince, and fill we tremble. And therefore if you will be advised, deed and fixthe 60 get see out of Romania. Thus they fled with him, in all Christian Townes as they passed, mathousand king a cheerefull countenance and femblance of Victorie; and spoyling all that opened to them, Twice so to impourrish the pursuing Frankes by preventing them of provisions, leaving a Defert Coun-

Gggggg 2

Great Rams

Terbu:

Armenia. Celare. Cafar. Antiochia. Militer . 8

common nam to Souldiere or Knishrs: bere giuch comthe prefent.

were created by Abbots, &c. and theretore were many in mitan and other S ories of men.
* Leave not

she Hiftoric

file is not of

The fourth

Thus were they forced to kill most of their Horses, and many to goe on foote; others, to ride on Oxen. Kine, and the great and strong Rams and Dogs of that Country. They passed thence therefore as fast as they could, and entred Lycaonia, a plentifull Country, and came to Iconium a rich Citie. When they went thence, they by countell of the Citizens carried vefful. of water with them, which ferned till the fecond day after, that they came to a River; where having flayed two daies, they went forward to Heraclea. Heere were a great multitude of Tarket, which seeing the Franket approach, fied amaine, and left the Citie to ours, which stayed there foure daies. Then did Baldarin Brother of Godfrey, and Tancred, separate themselues with their troups and went to Tar fiss. Many Turkes were there which went to meete them, but were dispersed, and the next day the Citizens received them into the Citie. Here arose a contention to betwixt Baldwin and Tancred, whether should have rule of the Citie, which Tancred at 1st veelded to Baldwin, whose Armie was the greater. In short time two Cities, Albert and Mannitra, were yeelded to them, and many Caftles. The Turkes were now hidden in their ftrongeft holds.

The greatest part of the French, entred into the Land of the Armenians, eagerly thirsting to make the Land drunken with bloud of Tarker; the whole Land was quiet before them, and the Armenians received them into their Cities. They came to a Castle which seared neither armes nor engines. A Souldier in the Campe, an Armenian, defired to hold that Land of the Princes. in the fealtie of God and the holy Sepulchre; whereto they yeelded, because they knew him Horse men.

caft.flum Publis to be a valiant man. After this, they came to Cafarea of Cappadocia, which voluntarily yeel. 20 ded it felte. Thence they went to a faire City which the Tarres had affreged a little before, three weekes, the Citizens whereof came forth to meete them. Another Knight in the Campe, named Peter de Alpibia, defired this, and obrayned it of the Princes. After this, they came to Cofor, a commo lious and plentifuli City; where they were gently received of the Christian Inhabitants . and flayed thee dayes , furnishing themselues with necessaries, and receiming a bundant refreshing.

Meane while, Ramiundus had intelligence that the Turkes were fled from Antiochia, and had left it weakely manued; who denied thereupon, to concey thither fine hundred Knights', to take the Towre before the reft knew of it. But when they were comme into the Valley next Antiochia, they then perceived that the Tarker were not gone , but fortified the City all they 19 could. They went therefore to the Caffle of the Publicans , fubdued it , and turned thencem the Valley of Rigins, where they flew many Turkes and Saracens: whereupon, the Armenian reioycing, yeelded themselves. They possessed themselves of Rusaand many Castles. The rest filles, may 1.

for the Armie with miferable disafter patient montainous ways, paffable only for Beaths and tempts and the Armie with miferable disafter patient montainous ways, paffable only for Beaths and tempts at the Armie and in the ford a man, and in proof thills a sipring to the Stars, and Hells of deepe Valleyes afrighting the very eye, where way wrater.

The Armie hanging on their necks, forme throwing them the Knights and Elquires carried their Armie hanging on their necks, forme throwing them. way vider-fined of Horse away, to avoide the carriage, all enforced to goe on foote; yea, often bearing the burthens of their Beafts, which could not paffe laden : neither might any fland or fit, by reason of the followers, or turne himselse in those straits, to helpe him which followed. By this vnpassable passage (the embleme of the true and beauenly Pligrimage) they came at last to Marasis, where they were received cheerefully with plentifull refection. Having staid one day, they came the for the Miftegie.1.Thef.\$.21 next day into the Valley in which Anti-chia is feated, chiefe City of Syria; whilome famous Th: Mouke hithiorgotten by Saint Peter Prince of the Apostles : in it, he placed his Episcopall Chaire, and ordered Barnabas and Paul Aposties. But as first our Lord would conquer it with humilitie and preathat an Apoching, to now with sublimitie of Armes. Ours came to the Iron Bridge, where they encountered many Turkes, which prohibited their passage, and made their way by force, and there found a City but the rich spoyles. They pitched their Tents on the Rivers banke, not farre from the City; and the next day prepare to goe to the City, and lay fiege to it in three place. For on one fide the 50 Mountaines prohibit accesse and all militarie Art. On Wedensday, the twelfth Kal. of December, was this fiege begunne, and because the City was not onely the minion of Nature, but Pa-1.6 2.6 Lute, ragon of Art, the Princes consulted to vie more their Arts then Armes.

Mas 33.106.31. Elrst therefore, they made a Bridge for commodious passage over the River, for they found a Copious Vintage, Caues fall of Corne and prouisions, Trees laden with varietie of fruits, which the Armenians within the City made knowne to them. Engines were erected, Turrets of wood, Slings, Hookes, Rammes, Moles, and other deuifes. There were within to many defenders, as might have tryed it in the fild with ours. They builded a Caille, if haply the Turker premailed, for betterlecuritie. The Garifon of Arech having cut off divers of our Victualers, an 60 ambush was laide, and many Turkes slaine, their heads cast (by Engines) into the City; and thenceforwards, our men had freer pallage to the Armenians for prouisions, which readily brought also to fell. Christmas Festivitie was celebrated with i youll folemnity: after which, the Winter with Elementary forces, helped the Enemie to assault vs , and made prouison difficult: famine within; without, Haile, Snow, Ice, Windes , Armies without Armes, but not without

harmes, to them which were without shelter, exposed to their fury, every way pinched, but in resolution, and therefore quickned by these spurres: they agreed that Boamund and the Earle of Flanders, with thirtie thousand choice Horseand Foot, should enter into the Saracens Land. From Ierusalem, Damasco and Aleppo, and other Countries , Persians , Arabians and Medes. had affembled to come to Antiochia, to raife that fiege; but hearing that some of the Christians were entered their Countrey, they rejoyced, securing themselues of victory, and divided their Armie into two, to keepe ours from fleeing any way. The Armies met, thefe trufting in their Famine and multitudes, those in Gods Omnipotence, which gaue them a shamefull ouerthrow, and pur Plenie and them to flight; wherein our Foot mounted their Horles to purfue them. Once; they had beene Famine. Io good Purueyors, to bring thus from farre vnto them fo many Asles, Camels, and other Beafts. laden with Wine, Corne and other prouision, and the bungry be filled with good things: his Name

The meane while the enemie had affaulted ours out of the City in their Tents. and flew many, and but for the River had done more hurt; which disafters together with famine . made fome of ours bethinke themselves of flying. An Affe-loade of Corne was now sold for seven pound, an Egge for twelue pence, a Nut for a peny, and many died of hunger. Yea, the Pillars were shaken : Peter the Hermite and William Carpenter, fled away by night. This William was of royall descent, Vicount of a Castle, called Milidane: no shield, breast-plate or helmet, could endure the strong pushes of his Lance. Tancred hearing of their slight, pursued them . tooke 20 them, and caused them to returne with shame. For Hugo Magnus his take, (whose Kiniman he was) and his former exploits, William, was pardoned, fwearing to doe fo no more, which vet he soone transgressed, and closely sled. In the whole Armie were not found one thousand Horfes fit for feruice. To adde to their forrowes, one Tetigius, a Romanian, vndertooke to bring plentie of prouision from the Emperour by shipping, and left his Oath and Tents in pawne, which he never redeemed. The greatest part of the Armie compelled by famine, sued for leave to depart, which the Princes with teares granted.

In this miferie, a Messenger brought them word of a great Armie of Turkes, which that night would bee at Arech the Caftle aforesaid, purposing to set vpon their Tents vnprepared. This made them dance, which before could not goe, as if they had already conquered, chusing 30 rather to dye by the Sword then hunger. They fent Spies the next day, which returned word. that they never before had feen fo many thousands of them together. Their huge multitude made ours beginne to flee, which Boamand feeing, he brake forth with fuch furie, that the enemy fled towards the Iron bridge; the Pranks lay frankly about them, and now the earth is coursed with carkaffes, the Ayre is filled with clamors, the River is swollen with precipitated bodies, and more were flaine then escaped, which also returned to their Castle, rifled it, and then for sooke it, leaving it to Ours, which there placed a Garrison, returning to the Tents with great ioy and great spoiles. Their fellowes which that day had fought, and got the better of the Citizens, were now filled with double joy. The Armenians and Syrians also now brought prouision to the Campe, and rejoyced with vs. The Tirkes after having ours at advantage, put the horse-40 men to flight, and flue about one thousand foote-men: which they scarfly had done, when the rest of the Armie out of the Campe, reuenged the same with exceeding Vsurie. Dake Godfrer gloriously behaued him elfe with the death of many, whom a Golias of theirs, a big and mightieman, had wel-nigh slaine, had not God and his valour protected him, whom he repaid with A mithie such furie, that lifting up his sword, he claue his breast in the midst, dividing his backebone and froke. entrails passing thorow to his right thigh, his whole head with the right hide of his body falling into the River, the left halfe he fent backe to the Citie. This fight bred in them horror and amazement, for he was one of their Admirals (Amira's.) Euen the Rivers felfe with another amazement, for he was one of their Admirals (Amora s.) Even the Kivers lette with another Armie of carkaffes, flood still to wonder at such a spectacle, nor could the vpper Waters enforce Lordsor Comthe lower (stayed with a new world of Inhabitants) to give them leave to see it, till their swelto ling indignation by force obtained it. In that conflict was flaine the Sonne of Caffianse, the

great King of Antiochia, and twelve Admirals of the King of Babylon, whom he had tent with their bands to ayde the King of Antioche. For that Prouince hath one Metropolitane, twelve Confuls, and one King; and they were gathered out of fo many Proninces as there were Admirals. There were also seuen thousand taken Prisoners : the baggage was without number. And now the Turkes not onely ceafed their clamors and scornes, but many fled closely out of the Citie. The next day the Turkes buried their dead beyond the bridge, which the Christians digged vp againe with diffrace, (for their fashion is to burie with Pals, Bowes and Arrowes, Golden B, zantines, and other things good for bootie) leauing another bootie to the Fowles.

60 TN these vicificudes and entercouse of divertissed Fortunes, came Messengers from the King The fift of Babylon, vpon fafe conduct granted by the Princes. Against their comming the Campe Booke. was fet forth, in goodlieft flew of brauery, Shields hung vp vpon poles for the youth to runne at Quintane, (an exercise on horse-backe) Dice, Chesse, Militarieskirmishes of horse and foote, Running as to expresse their carelesse and fearclesse resolutions, whiles the elder and grauer sort assembled Quintan.

Gggggg 3

with mature aduife and grave countailes, to fecure that fecuritie. The Babylonians approaching, maruelled at this fight, having heard before that they were both familhed and heartlede, and bemattened at time states of the Frances, thus spake; The Admirausiflus of Babylon our Lords sent and friendship to you the Princes of the Frankes, if you will obey his will. In the Court of the King of Perlia our Lord, is a great affembly for your sake, and seven daies the Counsell hath beene prolonged They marnell why you come armed to your Lords Sepulchre, dispossessing their people of their ancient possessions, and (which is unlawfull for Pilgrims) slaying with the Sword. And if you will come here. after with Scrip and Staffe, they will canse you to passe with bonour and plentie, they will make the foot after with here more hard season and the season of the sea veneration you will to the Temple and Sepulchre. But if you contemne this indulgence, and trust in your courage and weapons, we are confident that no humane power is able to force the Babylonians and King of Perlia. Speake now your minds what you like or distile herem. The Princes with common advice answered. It is no maruell if wee come armed to our Lords Sepulchre, and exterminate your people from those Confines, seeing that they which bane before comne with Staffe and Scrip, hanc bene shame fully both [coffed at and flame. The Land is not theirs, though they have long poffeffed it, because it was anciently ours, who for their malice and in instice by ours were dispossessed. But now it is decreed in Heaven, that it shall be rendred to the children which was taken from the Fathers. And let not your Nation olorie that they have conquered the effeminate Greekes, which by Dinine dispensation, the (word of the Frankes hall repay you. It is not of man to onerthrow Kingdomes, but of him by whom 20 Kings reigne. They fay they will frem kindnesse, if we come with Scrip and Staffe : let their merci returne upon themselves; will they, nill they, our powertie shall bee inriched by their store. Nor can any bumane power affright us : for when wee dye, we are borne, and loofing a Temp rall life, wee recourt on Eternall. Therefore tell those which sent you, that the Armes which we have taken in our Countres. we will not lay by when we have conquered lerufalem. For we trust in him which teacheth our hands to fight, and makethour armes as a bow of fleele, that all offences shall be removed and Ierusalem taken.

The Embassadours herewith displasted, by leave entred the Citie. Ours beganne to builda Castle at Machunan, before the gate of the Citie in their buriall place, destroyed their Sepalchres of Stone, which they vied to their structure; being finished, it was committed to Earle Raimund: This straitned their issues, and strengthned ours, which hereby had libertie to forage, 10 and brought in great booties, from a place where was an old ruined Caftle, which also they fortified and commended to Tancred, who intercepted provisions that were brought to the Citie Truce broken. The Citie therefore defired truce, to treat in that time of conditions of yeelding. The last day of which, a famous Wallon Knight, was by them taken and cruelly murthered, whose Wife, by her teares, cries and complaints, exceeded teares, cryes and complaints, having spent that flore in prodigalitie of her forrowes, and now by her miferie varnished with bright lustre of her exceeding beautie, and the deepe impression of Noble bloud, which her impotent nailes scratched from that goodly countenance, and her impacience other whiles so seuerely recalled to theattendance on her great heart, that the abode as a Marble flatue, spake more to commiseration and indignation with not speaking, then the beft speaking Oratorie could have pronounced.

Revenge slept not long. For one Pyrrbus which had three Turrets in his command, sent se-

cretly to Beamund, (with whom he had treated in the truce) to deliuer them all into his hands, and his Sonne for pledge of his fidelitie. Whereupon by night Boamund and the Princes (as had beene agreed with Pyrrbue) closely conveyed the Armie thither, which by day (to deceive the Turkes) they had fent forth to forage. Thus scaled they the wals, (Fulcherius Carnotensis being the first which entred) and after set open the gates to the whole Armie : a Comet that night appearing, the heauenly Messenger of earthly mutations. The Citie was promised to Boumund, if he could make meanes to obtaine it, vpon occasion of Pyrrhus first sending to him.

On the fift of Iune, the Christians entred Antische, Fulcherius and his fellow Scalers instanded 50 the Towers, and killed the sleeping Watches, awaking them to a neuer waking sleep. They which were awaked out of fleepe by this noyle in their houses, ran forth of their doores to see the cause, and presently forth of themselves and seeing together. Death now filleth every street and corner, consoundethallages, sexes, conditions. Some running out of the gates, were encountred by others comming from the Campe, and Caffian the King elcaping into Tancreds iurifdiction in poore diffuite, was there discourred by the Armenians, and his head brought to the Princes, together with his Girdle, which was valued at one hundred and fixtie Byzantines. Many fled to the Caitle, which feemed impregnable, the Mountaine and the Building confpiring to deride affronts. Heereto from a neere Tower Boamand gaue assault, and (wounded) was forced to retire to another Turret, and the rest followed him. Onely one abode in the top, and 60 feeing himfelfe alone, mustered out of himfelfe an Armie of resolute thoughts, out of the wals an Armorie of stones and mortar against his vinderminers, and laden with one thousand Arrowes, seeing Death'importunate, he went forth to meete him, leaping in the midit of his aduerse squadrons with his Sword and Shield, to take vp company to attend him into the other

world. The night followed that bloudy day, but forbad fleepe to both fides, fcare and wearineffe executing that fummons.

The next day, being Friday, whiles some were carrying out the dead, others assaulting the Cafile, there was espied from the Turrets and Wals a Cloud of dust, which some suspected to be the file, there was espectrom the funds and Confiant the General of the King of Persia, with a long Confiantinopolitan Emperor, but proued Corbanan the General of the King of Persia, with a long Corbanan and force oathered Armie of Perlians, Medes, Arabs, Turkes, Azimites, Seracens, Courds, Publicans and divers other Nations. There were three thousand Agulans, which wie none other Armes but Swords armed to point with Iron. Ours being wearied, gaue them leave to prouoke, infult. & ron vp and downe caffing vp their Lances and Swords, and againe catching them. Senfadol, Sonne to King Callian, had sone to Corbanan promising (before in his Fathers name now in his owne) to reigne vinder him, to deliuer him the Castle of Antiochia, and to doe him homage. The Castle was now deliuered. Soone after a ruftie Sword and worle Lance, taken from a poore Franke. were presented to him, with insultation on all hands over that beggerly Nation which thought by fuch Armes to spoile Asia and subdue Persa. And presently fent for his Secretarie to write to the Chalife and to the Soldan, that he now held the French Armie inclosed in the walls of Antiochia, the Castle in his owne possession, and that the cry was more terrible then the Wolfe. And whereas you writ to me viterly to destroy them, be not offended if I fend some of the chiefe bound to you. Their feruice will be viefull, and the French Kings Brother an honourable Captine to Perlia. Ply you your pleasures and get children to resist other Frankes, if need be. As for me, I will not see your face till I have 20 Subjetted all Romania, Syria, and Bulgaria to your fermie. Thus did he fell the skinne of the Beare yet liuing. His Mother fought to diffwade him by Prophecies, Starre-gezings, and other Wifardly Distinations, which all (fliee faid) portended prosperitie and victorie to the Christians. But hee remayned deafe, and resolued to try it out from the Castle, the Tinker still annoyed Ours, and with fuccessions of supplyes had great advantage; the streets were still covered, and Houses as it were roofed anew with Arrowes. But a worle Efiemie, Famine did more harme; the legge of an Afle was fold for fixtie shillings, and the buyer effeemed frugall, the Hides of healts were dreffed for food, the children flarued at the brefts of their Mothers. Many fled away and raised reports that the Citie was loft, or could not long hold out, Earle Stephanus Carnotenfis by this newes caused the Emperour comming to their affiftance to turne backe.

BVt a certaine Priest comforted them with Relation of a Vision of Christ, the Virgine and The Feneral Peter appearing to him and promising relief after thus dayes, which one Peter seconded with Books. afecond Vision of Saint Andrew, shewing him in Saint Peters Church in the Citie, the Launce The Stories of which pierced the field of our Samour, with promise of victory to the Bearers; which they shell emes us went, digged and found it with great ioy, singing 17e Dem, & Glaria in Excellia. All per fullor Visions sently sware not to she, nor desist from the lourney of the holy Sepulchre. By night fire from here neglective the state of the state o the Welt fell from Heauen vpon the Tarker Campe, which cheered Ours and terrified them, as ung the Scripan Enfigne of Divine vengeance by the Frankes. Soone after the Turkes having affailed and were fed with 40 flaine three of ours in a Towre, whiles none of our flarued number could be brought out of their Legends. And Houses to affift them; Boamsond disdayning, caused fire to be set on those Houses to bring them would God Houses to affitt them; Domina a mayning, cause are to be recon time Frontes to bring them the protigo out by force, and such a wind arose with the fire that it burned two thousand Houses and Chur-Sonne would be a such as the protigon of the such as the protigon of the such as the protigon of the such as t

Peter the Heremite and Heluinus were sent to Cortanus, in Ambassage, which they personmed floutly in confidence of the former prefages. The Bishop Podiensis (the Popes Legate) en returneto his ioyned three dayes fail, and they all confessed themselves, observed Processions, and on the third Fathers house, day receined the Sacrament. After which by common counfell the Armie was divided in fixe reft ferusas parts, the first Band committed to Hugo and the Earle of Flanders, the second to Duke Godfres, hash better the third to Robert the Norman, the fourth to the Podam Bilhop, which carryed with him the food.

Launce aforefaid, and a great part of Earle Raimunds forces, the fifth to Tanered, the fixth to Of this Lance, Boamund. The Bishops, Priests, Clerkes and Monkes in their holy Vestments went out with The finder was Bomman. In Distupp, FIFEID, WILLIAM and MODIAS BUTTON MAY FURNISHED WITH ON THE MODEL OF THE MODIAN WITHOUT THE PRESENT CATTYING CORES in their hands, figning the people, and crying, found a decidency for the people, and buffer time inheritance: Exercises to them a Towns of frength from the free uer. of their Enemie, with other Pfalmes. The like was performed by those which were on the Walls and Towers. Corbanan faw them comming forth, and faid, lef them all come out that we may the better take them. By him flood an Aquitaine Renegado, which for his belly had denied his Redeemer, and had told difgracefull reports of the Christian forcelelle famished Forces; by whom he now learned to whom enery Band pertayned. And feeing their Armes and Order, hee cut off the head that had brought him those Tales. Hee gaue also a figne to the Amra of 60 his Treasures , that if hee saw a hre kindled in the head of his Armie , hee should flye with all

When Ours were comne into a certaine Valley, the Bishop of Podium armed, and holding the Launce of our Sauiour erected in his hand, made a Sermon or Speech vnto them, exhorting to courage and charitie, promiting Victorie to the Surviver, Heaven to the Dier, and bleffed them. Then marched they on moderately, the length of their Armie from the River to the Hill exten-

Booke.

Fight and vi-

Au hor into Thickets (oie fraudes) yet

The Cafile yeelded.

twentieth of June, on Saint Peter and Saint Pauls Euen, Hugo Magnus was fent in Ambaffage * Fukh faith to the Emperour to come to take his Citie, which having done, " he died. The other guiltie of he wentto breaking his Oath would not come. France, and after returned.

ding two miles. The Turkes divided themfelues in two Bands thinking to inclose Ours; him a fewenth Band was appointed to encounter that divided Armie out of the Souldiers of Godfrey and the Norman under one Rainald. These met and fought, many beeing slaine on both here When the other fixe Bands were come within Arrow shot, the Turkes shot and the wind retreted their Arrowes on themselves, so that Ours could not find an Enemie, the Turkes flying from the first Band, which presently went to helpe Boamund, which bare the burthen of the fight. If I follow my and Godfrey followed him. Whiles Ours are in the heat of fight a white Armie appeared from the Mountaines, whose Captaines are said to be George, Mauritius, Demetrius, and the Bishon presently cryed, that their promised helpe was comne. Fire was set to the Graffe when the your diference Turkes fied, for a token of flight to the Campe, which yet were fet vpon by the Surians and Ar- 10 menians. There dyed that day one hundred thousand Horsemen, for they would not take painer to number the Footmen which were flaine. The next day fitteene thousand Camels were found Horses, Asses, Mules, Oxen, Sheepe, innumerable, with Gold, Silver, Vestments and other things of price : with which they returned to the Citie, where they were received by the Priests in Procession. The Amna of the Castle seeing his fellowes runne away, asked for one of our Colours, and the Earle of Saint Giles (left to guard the Citie) gaue him his, which hee fet up, but hearing that the Citie was granted to Boamund, he fent for his Ancient, and conenanted with him to fuffer the Castellans to depart with freedome, fo as they which would might be-

> They now confulted of going to the Sepulchre, but were forced to wait till October, by the drought and heate. One Pilet a Knight of Earle Raimunds, procured many to joyne with him. and went into the Saracens Land, The Saracens received him at Talaman : not farre thence hee wonne a Castle of the Saracens. They went to Marra, where many were gathered from Aleph (Aleppo) and other places : they discomfitted the Turkes, but were not able to lay fiege till Octo-The Bishop Podiensis dyed on the first of August, to the Armies great griefe, and was buried in Saint Peters Church. The Earle of Saint Geles went to Albaria, and forced the Citte, 20 commanding to kill all such as would not turne Christians, which cost many their lives, because they had taken it from the Christians, and yfed the same condition. A Bishop was also elected

> come Christians, the rest should have a Conuoy to the Saracens. Himselfe became a Conuert : and after three dayes fast, the Gentiles were baptized. The battell was fought on the eight and 20

Marrabelieged Er gin made nered with Hides to pre-Affailants

uent fire within which the in which also they might hang with ropes, that Iron Engine, which if it had ken, & ftones loofed and

C Vmmer being past, the Christian Souldiers returned from their seuerall abodes to Antioch, and there met together on All-Saints day, beeing now farre more then when they had gone The Christian from thence. For from all parts of the World many worthy Knights and Footmen had followed the steps of the former, the Christian Armie daily increasing. And when they consulted of the way of the Sepulchre. Boamund demanded their couenant touching the Citie. Earle Ramun fail it could not be done by reason of their Oath to Alexim. Hence grew many meetings and ill 04 efeription of greetings. At last the Bishops, Abbots, and more moderate Princes consulted how both might be kept : and it was agreed that both Boamund and Raimund should goe the way of the Sepulchre with the rest, the former fortifying the Castle, the other the Palace of Cassian, and the Tower on Saint Simeons gate.

 And because Antioch hath long detayned vs in the narration, and in the siege, we will speake somewhat of it for their sakes which have not seene it. Threescore and fine Kings are said to haue ruled there. It is enuironed with two Walls, the former of great fquare stones artificially wrought, and therein are diffinguished in order foure hundred and fixele Towers. It is goodly and i pacious contayning foure Hils great and high, on the highest a Cattle, neither fearing forci- 50 might approch ble batterie, or futtle engining. There are three hundred and fixtie Churches in her Territorie, to the walls: & and the Patriarch hath under his Iurisdiction, one hundred fiftie three Bishops. Foure Hils fortifie it on the East. Farfar runneth on the West. Ours besieged it eight monet es and one day, and were in it befieged three weekes of the Parthians, after which they reft d there in quiet foure monethes and eight dayes, which ended, Raimund went to Rugia, and the next day to Albaria, which two Cities he had subdued : the fourth day to Marra.

The Citizens fcorning the paucitie of his Souldiers, came forth to encounter him, but were foone repelled. The next day Boamund adioyned himfelfe to his helpe. Iron Rammes were led /alx, if two made, which being hanged with Ropes, and by the Souldiers hands drawn back might be forced it was called on the Walls, with often pushes to shake downe the Wall. A Tower of wood was crected 60 Aries or a Ram higher then theirs of stone, with three lofts furnished with Militarie Engines , having in the wherewith the two higher armed men with Dikes, Arrowes, Stone, Balls, and Fires: in the lowest were those which forced the wheeles on which the Tower was built. Others filled the Ditch, having applyed a Tortoife to the Wall so to bring thither their Machination. The Citizens had prouided wild-fire, and another Instrument to throw great stones, but in vaine. For William of Mount

Tellul, with his Company in the highest storie, threw downe Mill-stones which brake the roofes of houses, whiles the others digged thorow the Wall. Others set a Ladder to the Wall. which Gulfering dela Twee first alcended, and many other followed him: whom the Citizens no lesse surioully affaulted, and forced fome of them downe with deadly præcipice: whom others vet followed the Priefts also flood by the wooden Tower, calling on the Lord Iefus, to powre bie wrath on the Gentiles which know him not, and the Kingdomes which muched not his Name: and to bee our below in the nedfull time of trouble. The narrownesse of the Wall did not admit assitants to Gulfesie, who laid about like a Lion, and was most laid at, his shield beeing onerated with Arrowes. Darts and Weapons, that a man could not lift it, and hee was now spent and wearie when the to other had digged thorow, and soone chased away the Enemies: which so terrified those on the Wall, that Gufferie now without a shield full of heart and resumed life, made way with his Sword and killed more yet with feare (throwing downe themselves) then with his Weapon. Beamund fignified to the richer Citizens to flye to a Tower, and there they might redeeme their liues, which upon his word they did. Much crueltie was shewed by ours, ransacking not only their houses but their very entrails for Treasure : neither yet was there any of so great a multitude which would confesse the name of Christ. Euery man had what hee could get. And Bosmund of those in the Tower she theold vnseruiceable, the rest he sent to Antiochia to be fold: but when hes could not perswade Raimund to deliner Antuchia to him, hee left him and retur-

The Armie which flayed all this while there was fo pinched with Famine, that (horrible to Famine; thon speake) they cut and eate vp the bodies of the Gentiles. The discord yet continued betwirt the at Antiochia. Earle and Boamand, to the great displeasure of the Armie, Raimand pretending the Oath to the Emperour, and having pure Iustice on his part. This being discoursed at Rugia and Capharda in divers meetings, every one wishing, but not shewing how to effect, concord, they returned to Antioch. But the Norman Earle with all his abode with Raimand, knowing that hee was in the right. These two Earles order their Bands for Cefaria, the King whereof had sent to become Ramunds Vaffall. But when he saw the Armic approaching, hee was troubled and forbade to fell them any thing. The next day he sent to shew them a Foord, whereby they might passe thorow Farfer. a Valley, in which were twentie thousand head of beafts which they tooke:

30 and going to beliege a Caffle therein, it prefently yeelded to them, which Example another Caffle followed. Thence they came to Caphalia a plentifull Citie in a specious and spacious Valley, whole Crezens were all fied. Lauing their Garners and Gardens, and Houles plentifully prepared for thole which as first were filled with wonder and doubt, and after with lubilee. The like allo was doue by a Castleadioyning to that Valley, where they kept their Gandlemas. The King of Camel lent thither to defire conditions of Peace, or rather to buy the fame with Camel The King of Commercial Control imitated his Example. Both their Gifts were received,

but no peace given, except they would become Christians.

A fortnight after they went to an old Caffle called Archae, comparable to famous Cities, in Scite, Walls, Towers, Whiles they continued heere a doubtfull firee, fourteene Souldiers of Archae. 40 Ours, defiring Exploits went towards Tripoli, where they encountred threefcore Turkes with a great bootie of Captines and Cattell, and returned with the spoile to the Campe. Raimund Polet. and Ramund Vicount of Tentoria, with their companies hereby infligated went to Tortola, and making great fires by night, as if the whole Armie were there, fo terrified the Inhabitants that they lefe their Citie in hafte, ftored as it was, to feeke a new Habitation, this beeing indeed a good Hauen for ours. Maraclea a Neighbor Citie also received them. Duke Godfrey hearing of this glorious fuccesse, fet forth from Anisochia with Boamund and the Earle of Flanders, and came to the Citie Licia, where Boamsund parted from them. The Duke and the Earle came to Gibellum. and belieged it : but hearing from Earle Rasmund of his difficulties, and of a battell approching, they agreed on conditions before required with the Prince of that Citie, and hafted thither to to the belieged Castle. Where the Duke seeing their small proficience, went to Tripoli, where fol-

lowed so bloudie a battell that the water which runneth into their Citie stained their Cisterness and then turning afide to the Valley of Defen (where ours had staid before a fortnight) there got three thousand Gamels and innumeral le Sheepe, Kine and Affes, to their great wonder whence they should come in that space. Thus richly laden they returned to the siege, and there kept their Eafter (then the second day of Aprill.) This siege continued three monethes and one day, and then (prevailing nothing) they arose and went to Tripoli, and there established the peace which the King and Citizens had defred. The King delivered three hundred Pilgrims of ours, and gaue fifteene thousand Bizantines and open Market to buy prouision.

He cou nanted alfo to become Christian if they could winne lerufalem, and ouercome the Ba-60 bylonian Warre, and be subject to the King of Isrusalem. Here they staid three dayes, and seeing that Harnell was neere they agreed to take the next way to Ierufalem. On the fourth of May they fet out, and patting certaine fleepe Hils, they came to the Caftle Betelon : the next day to the Citie Zabaris, where they could find no water for themselves and their Horses. The next Zabaris day they came to the River Brain where they refreshed themselves that night. The next night

1200 S.G.orge, Ierusalem taken, Bloudie execution, King Godfrey, LI B. VIII.

was of our Lords Afcension, and they afcended a hill by a narrow way, where they feared har found no enemy. Then came they to Barnth, a Citie feated on the Sea; thence to Sagitta, and after that to Sur, from that to Acra, thence to the Caitle called Caiphas, and fo to Cafarea. In Calarea is Philips house still shewed, and the Chamber of his Daughters which were Propheteiles. Here they kept their Whitiontide, pitching their Tents neere the Citie. Thence they palled to Ramola, which the Saracens for feare had for faken, neere which is the Church of Saine George, where hee lieth buried, for veneration of whom they elected a Bishop, and gaue him Tithe of all their Riches. It was meete that innincible George, the Standard-bearer of their was thould receive that honour. Thence they turned to Ierufalem.

Theninth Booke. Ierufalem be-

5. Georges

A S soone as they saw lernsalem, they wept for ioy, fell downe and worshipped the Sepul.

Chre. On the North side, the Earles of Normandie and Flanders encamped, neare Saint Stephens Church, in the place where he was stoned. On the West Duke Godfrey and Teneral On the South (on Mount Sion) the Earle of Saint Giles. Whiles they refled in their Tentsher ing wearie, fome went to fcoure and fecure the Countrey. On Munday the fourth of lune they beganne the affault, and had that day ended the fiege if they had not wanted Ladders. Another want of Bread succeeded for ten daies space, and then their ships of prouision arrived at longe. The Water of Silve could scarcely suffice the men. The Beafts were driven fixe miles to water. with a great convoy of fixe thousand Souldiers. Pilet and one hundred others, were fent to lethis or lane, and some that went before to search the way, were let upon by seven hundred Turkes and Arabs, where Achardus a good Souldier fold his life deerely; but when the rest came 20 in, the enemies fled. They were now prouided of victual from the thips, but their thirst was to extreame, that they digged holes in the earth, and put the moift Turffes to their mouthes to moisten them; they licked the dewie Marbles, and sewed beasts skins new killed to fetch Water in : and fome rather fasted, so to moderate thirst, then to drinke of that grease Water. To the fiege they addressed woodden Towers and Engines. Duke Godfrer caused his to be applied on the East fide, and the Easte of Saint Giles another.

on the South. On Thursday they fasted, and gave Almes to the poore; and on Friday the twelith of July, they ascended those Towers, and applyed scales to the Walls. Duke Godfin with his Brethren Enstace and Baldnine, played the Lions. Procession was made about the wals with Croffes and Relikes, and Alrars, whiles they fought on the wals. When the houre approached, in which the Saniour of men dyed for men, then did one Letolds first from the Dukes Caftle leap forth, and after him Guicherin, (which had flain a Lion by his ftrength.) The Duke followed his Souldiers, and his other Souldiers him, who challed the enemy from the wals, and purfue them into the Citie with a great flout. Which when Earle Raimend heard, which was labouring to bring his Tower to the Wall, hee called to his men to follow him to the gate neere the Tower of David, and spake to them in the Tower to open; which prefently the Admiravis which kept the Tower, hearing who hee was, did, and committed himselfe and all his vnto him, together with the Tower.

that the bloud reached where ad equerum ge-

But Duke Godfrey fought neither Tower nor Gold, nor spoile, but revenge for the bloud and 40 wrongs of Pilgrims, whereto he neuer had more opportunitie, not then when at Antioche hee claue in funder that Gigantean Gentile. And now he and Guicherius (which cut a Lion in funder) claus humane bodies from the head to the raines, and on the right and left hand thorow Dodechinus in both fides : the throng hindred every mans flight. They which remained, fled to the Temple his Appendixe of Salomon, where they defended themselves the most part of the day; but ours before night to Mar. Scottes, breaking in, shed so much blow, that slaine carkastes were tumbled on the Pauement to and no reciteth out of a letter to Pope in a streame of bloud; armes and hands dismembred stoted in bloud, and were joyned to others Pall alwriven bodies, none being able to discerne; and the slayers themselves were scarsely able to endure those by D. Godfret. hot mists of bloudie vapours. After this vnspeakable slaughter, they grew more indulgent, and many captives of both Sexes were spared. Every corner was fearched for spoile, every man go possessing what he tooke; lerusalem at that time being rich. After this they did goe joyfully to the holy Sepulchre, and gaue thankes to him which had beene there buried : going did I fay: Creeping on their knees and elbowes, watering the Pauement with their teares. This done, they went to their houses, and refreshed themselves with food and sleepe. The next day they went armed to the Temple of Salomon, to make an end of them which had afcended the roofes, where onely Wings were wanting to flye from that which they could no way flee, prefent defruction. Some threw themselves downe headlong; others, offered themselves to servitude. The living Saracens were enioyned to carry out the dead and burie them, and to cleanfe the Citie.

The enemies destroyed, the Citie secured, victorie and glory atchieued, question was of 260 King, and Duke Godfrey was cholen by generall confent, the eighth day after the taking, who more adorned that Royall Dignitie, then it him, and was an Honor to his Honor, by Knightly Armshires cho. bountie, bodily elegance, and excellent manners. The next care was of a Prelate, and Armshires fen Patriarch. phus was chosen on Lammas-day. This ended, Messengers were fent by the Neapolitans to King

CHAP.2. Heroike Act. Popish Indai/me in abuse of Scripture and the Church. 1201

Godfrer, offering themselves to his subjection. (This Neapolis is a Citie of Caria, an Asian Prouince) to whom the King fent Enstace his Brother, and Tancred, to whom they delivered their Citie. The Deuill bestir'd him, and enuying this rising Sunne of Christianitie after folong a night, raifed vp Clement the Admirants of Babylon, and all the East with him against them. He came with pompous preparation to Ascalon. Eustace and Tancred were fent for, and all goe towards Alcalon, a Citie of Palestina, fine and twentie miles from lerufalem. Heere they had all first fortified their Spirits by the Eucharist, and proceeded from the Church towards Afealon. The Patriarch left Peter the Hermite in his place, to ordaine Maffes, Prayers, Proceffions. Neere Acalon they tooke a great bootie of beafts. The next day, the Patriarch curfed all that 10 should goe about to meddle with spoile before the victorie. This was on Friday, on which our

The King passed the River, and pitched his Tents neere the Sea. Himselfe had the first Band or Vantguard, Robert of Normandie the second, Earle Raimund the third, the Earle of Flanders the fourth; Euftace, Tancred, and Guafton de Bebert, the fift. The Foot-men had fet themselves with Arrowes and Darts before the Knights, Men at Armes ", and thus ordered, they marched " Atlifethes. towards the Babylonians. The King was in the left Wing, where was most danger, the Earle of Saint Giles in the right, the reft betwixe them. The Babyloman (whom none durit tell of the former bootie) being told that the Frankes were comme forth to fight, much disdained their paucitie, as a diferace to have so meane so confident enemies. The battell was begun by the Earle Heroike A& of 20 of Normandie and his Band, in that quarter where he efpyed the Admiravis his Standard, and Robert of Normaking way with his Sword thorow the midth of his enemies, by a bloudie passage arrived at mandie. him that held it, whom hee laid dead at the Admiravis his foote, and tooke the Standard, (sith 10000) the Admiravis hardly elcaping to Ascalon with his life, whence he might behold the flaughter of were flaine behis people, which by noone were all put to rout and flaine in all places, even to the gates of the fides 2000, in Citie in incredible numbers. The fpoile was exceeding rich. The Standard, which in the top the gare, innuof a Silver Staffe had a golden Apple, was offered by Earle Robers of Normandie at the holy merablethen Sepulchre, the whole Armie hauing returned and entred into the Citie in triumph. This bat- fear the whole tell was fought the eighth of August. And thus Iern falen, which is faid to have beene built by Armie being Melebisedech, (whom the lewer lay, was the Sonne of Nae) is now open to the Pilgrimes with 100000. horse, 20 praises, which before were received with contumelies. Of these Pilgrimes and Gates, it is faid and 400000. by Ef s; And thy Gates shall be open continually, day and night they shall not be share. And againe, of Footmenthe French Nation, which he brought from the ends of the earth to deliuer it, I will bring thy Children from farre, their Silver and their Goldwith them, in the name of the Lord thy God, and the boly one of Ifrael which hath glorified thee. The Sonnes of thy Pilgrims Shall build thy wals, and their Kings fhall minister to them. These and many things else, we find in the Prophetical Books, which agree to this deliuerance made in our Age.

CHAP. II.

The Acts of the Pilgrimes in their Expedition to Ierusalem, before and after the taking thereof, extracted out of FVLCHERIVS CARNO-TENSIS, which went thither with ROBERT. Earle of Normandie.



N the yeare 1095, when manifold euils in all parts of Europe were encreased, action of those the Faith languilling, Urban the lecond was Pope of Rome, a man excellent in times to ad-life and manners, which alway to the vimott of his wit and strength, endeuo. red about all things to Exalt higher the State of boly Church. And feeing that Church,notto red about all things to Lxait bigher the State of noty Cource. And seeing that the Faith of Christendome was decayed in all, both Clergie and Laitie, and the fine but toful-Secular Princes in continuall warres with each other, fpoiling the goods, capting for power

uing the persons, (whom miserable prisons enforced to vnreasonable redemptions) violating in exemption holy places, burning of Townes and Monasteries, making a mockerie of things Diuine and hu- from Kings and noty places, busining of 10 miles and the Provinces of Romania "were posterfied by the Tarks; Source in them, outer them, mane, paring no men and meaning one them, he called a Councell at Claremont, Herein he decreed the Churches freedome from all Secular Po- (wherein Vr. mer, that Tithes of all which commeth by boubandrie, should bee proper to God, and neither sold nor de- bunus was cald tained; that he which louid take a Billop should be an Out-law, and the takers or spoilers of Cloker, Turkanus, This Monkes and Nuns, Pilgrimes or Merckants, should bee Anashema, as lakeus je Robbers and in-the street in Changes and Ivious, Fuginness or One occasis, possia occ Analoguma, as the suite Robbers and in60 cenduaries. These and other like being ratified by the Councell, he exhorted them, (Not I, but is, the Clergie, is, the Clergie, the Lord) to exterminate the Tutkes out of the Christian Confines. I feake to the present, I fend to the and more speabsent, and Christ commands it. And all that goe thither, if they shall dye in the going by Land, passage cially the Paouer water, or in fight against the Pagans, shall have present remission of their sinnes : which I grant to pacy. This the those which undertake the Voyage, having so great a gift from God. Those that have formerly abused Popith Fifth.

1202 Two-headed Beaft. Many headed Armie. Innumerable sacrifices. LIB. VIII

warres against Christians, let them goe against Infidels, and let them now bee Souldiers which before were Robbers, and let them fight justly against the Barbarians, which they did before against their Brethren, and for an eternall reward, which were before mercenarie for a few shillings, and for a double hanour, which wearied themselves for double detriment of body and soule. Here they are poore, there they Shall be wealthy ; here the Lords enemies, there his friends. Let them not delay, but make Money of that which they have, and the next firing fet forward.

Many present promised to goe, of which was Ademarus, Bishop of Podium, afterward the Popes Legat, which ruled the whole Armie. Thefe things ordered in the Councell, and the bleffing of Absolution being given, they departed home, and divulged what had passed. Trues was every where confirmed by Oath, and many of every profession vowed to goe, the remiss. on of finnes being purchased. O what a goodly fight, and worthy it was to vs all, to fee the Croffes of Silke, or wrought in Gold, or of Cloath which they ware on their lackets, Coates and Garments on their shoulders. Such a worke did Pope Vrban meditate, by which the world after flourished, and restored the Churches Rights. But the Deuili raised vp Guibertus, Bishon peaks like one of Rassenna, an Aduersarie to him, whom the peruersenesse of the Emperour, whiles Gresorie of Vrbans facti- (Hildebrand) held the Seate, supported in his viurpation of the Apostleship. But the better fort on against Gui- acknowledged Gregorie, and after him Vrban, whom by the Emperours ayde, Guibertus forced bertus and the from Rome, till that yeare when the Frankes went to Ierusalemby Rome, Guibertus being in Almaine, Vrban by help of Matildis, obtained the whole Apostolike power, she being then verie norant of Papotent in the Romane Countrey. pall fleights.

Anno 1 0 9 6, some in March, others in Aprill, May, June, July, August, September, and Father of King October, fet forth, as they could make their provisions on this holy Voyage. Peter the Hermite Stepoen, is called Comes Car- went by the way of Hungarie. Raymond Earle of Province, with his Gothes and Gascoines, and notenfis, and is the Bilhop of Podium by Sclauonia, Hugo Magnius and Buamund by Bulgaria. In September. faid to have as Robert Earle of Normandse, Sonne of William King of the English, with a great Armie of Normany Castles mans, and English-men and Britans set forwards, and with him Stephen Earle of Bloise, and Robert Earle of Flanders. The Armies still increased as they passed, and were neuer wnited till they came to Nice. We Westerne Frankes passed thorow Italy, and found Pope Vrban neere to Luca, with whom Robert the Norman had conference, and Earle Stephen, and wee also as many as would; and having his bleffing, we went toyfully to Rome. And when we haden to tred Saint Peters, we found before the Altar Guiberes men, which with their Swords in their hands tooke away the offerings: others ranne along the beames, and threw stones at those which were proftrate at their Prayers, feeking to flay those which were faithfull to Vrban, Vr. bass men held one Tower of the Monasterie, which kept it for him, and withstood the Aduerfaries. Many which went thither with vs. returned home, but we palled thorow Campania and Apulia, and came to Barrum, a good Citie on the Sea. We had thought to have taken thip, but the weather being vnfeafonable, Robert Earle of Normandie was forced to turne afide into Calabria; and winter there. But Robert Earle of Flanders with his troups passed over. Then verie many of the poorer fearing want, fold their Bowes, and taking their Pilgrimes Staues returned home, to their diferace before God and Men.

This Stephen.

facrikedge and In March, 1097. Robert Earle of Normandie, and Stephen of Bloife returned to the Sea, and fmelling per- on the fifth of Aprill, then Eafter-day, fet fayle at the Hauen Brundusjum. There wee faw one haps the Popes ship, (without any cause appearing) sinke almost foure hundred persons of both Sexes drowned : on the dead bodies of which were feene Crosses branded on their flesh, a miraculous token that they departed in Gods mercy. The Horfes and Mules, and much Money was loft. This so appalled many, that they for sooke their Pilgrimage and returned. But we foure daies after arrived at Duraism, and passed the difficult passages of the Bulgarians by Hils and Deferts, till we came to the River Demon, where the Diabolical Torrent drowned many, and many more had done, but for the helpe of the Horfe-men. Wee afcended next day the Hill Bagulat, and came to the River Baldarine, thorow which wee waded, and came the next day to Theffe 50 lonica ; and travelling thorow Macedonia, we came at last to Constantinople : where after much adoe, our men did homage to the Emperour. Then passing Saint Georges Arme, we came to Nice, which the Turkes (who had come out of Persia, about fiftie yeares before) did now polfesse, and all Romania as farre as Nicomedia. The Princes Buamund, Duke Godfrey, and Earle Raimond then in the fiege, came to meete the Earles, Robert and Stephen. Then were many Armies combined in one Armie, wherein were a hundreth thouland armed men, with Corflets and Head-peeces: which they that had skill of the number, effeemed to have fixe hundred thousand men apt for warre, besides those that were vnarmed; to wit, Clergie-men, Monkes, Women and Children. What shall I say more ! If all they which had comne out of their Houses and begun this vowed journey, nad beene here together, without doubt there would have beene 60 fixtie hundred thousand Warriors. But some had returned from Rome, others from Apulia, 0thers from Hungaria, or Sclauonia, many thousands were flaine by the way, and many died, the waies, fields, woods, prefenting many buriall places of Pilgrimes.

Nice being rendred, on the nine and twentieth of June, wee departed into the inner Coun-

CHAP.2. Two buge buge Armies defeated. Miferable siege. Speare tryed by fire. 1202

tries of Romania. On the first of July, we had newes of Turkes approaching, and set downe our baggage by a Fenne or Reedy place, and beheld Soliman which had held Romania with his Amira's of the Countries, aboue thirtie daies journey, being three hundred and fixtie thousand Archers, on horseback. Duke Godfrer, Earle Raimond and Hugo Magnus were absent, to our irrecouerable loffe, both of ours flaine, and of Turkes escaped. For it was late before our Meffengers could bring them the newes, and therefore it was late ere they could come in to our fuccour. The Turkes gave such an on-fet with shouts and shots, that our hearts failed, and we fled, being ig-Turker gaue inch an outer with mouse and moss, and moss, affailed our Tents, and Bloudy battell norant of fush kind of fight. Others had on the other fide the Reeds, affailed our Tents, and Bloudy battell flaine many. But the fore-runners of Duke Godfrey, and Hugo, and Raimond on one fide; and we which fled on the other (whom they thought to returne in refrect of them) made them retire. But we were thronged as sheepe closed in a fold, trembling, encompassed of the enemy, and could go no way. The Confcience of Lecherie, Couetousnesse and Pride, did now trouble many, this feeming to have happed for our sinnes. The cry of Men, Women, Infants, and of the Pagans rufning on vs. filled the Ayre. We confessed our finner, and the Podian Bishop with many other

Priests in white, belought God, crying, finging, praying. Then Robert of Normandie, Earle Stephen Buamund, and the Earle of Flanders, made relitance what they could. God was anpeafed, and wee feeing our fellowes which came last, refuned courage, and out the Turkes to Hight. The battell and our ftraits, lafted from the first hours till the fixth. We marched to An- Strangemarch tischia in Psiidia, thence to Iconium, and could not tell whither to laugh or weepe, to fee many to Iconium, 20 of ours wanting Horses, lading Rams, Goats, Swine, Dogs, with their carriages, the weight whereof galled their backes. A strange confusion was of so many tongues in one Armie, Frankes, Flemmings, Frislanders, Galls, Britons, Sauojards, Loraines, Almaines, Baioarians, Normans,

Scots, English-men, Aquitans, Italians, Apulians, Spaniards, Danes, Greekes, Armensans. Baldwin Brother of Godfrey possessed himselte of Tarfus, and after of Edeffa, the Gouernour whereof had fent to compound with him. In the way neere Samofate we were in danger, but gat fafe to E. Fulcherius deffa, and were received of the Gouernor, whom his Citizens after fifteene daies flue, but Bald- Chaplaine to aeija, and were received of the Country, was spon the Turkes. I Fulcherius Carnotenfis, was Bulawin atter.

Bullet Galifer the Chaplaine of the faid Baldwin. In the moneth of October, the Frankes passed ouer the River Fernus, or Orontes, to Antio- lem

30 chia. Gratian the Amira, of Antiochia fent his Sonne Sanfadoles to the Soldan of Perfia tor aide. Robert cals him The Turkes within the Towne killed many Christian Inhabitants (for feare of conspiring with Caffun & King. the Frankes) Greekes, Syrians, Armenians. The Christians wearied with folong a fiege, afcribed it to their Lecherie, Pride and Rapine, and by common confent put out all the Women, married and others, out of the Tents, which lodged in Tents neere. The Famine was great, and many were flaine daily : all were desolate, and many fled. The reft were pinched with cold, parched with heate, washed with raines, (their Tents being old and worne) lying in open Ayre without any couert but heauen. Earle Stephen returned home. The next day after, was Amiochia taken, deliuered by a Turke, to whom Christ had thrice appeared, and bidden him de-

40 liver the Towne. Gratian the Amira was flaine by an Armenian Peafant. It happened, that Visions in those after the Citie was taken, a Lance was found by a certaine man, which being found in the menandyet ground in Saint Peters Church, he affirmed to bee that wherewith Longinsus pierced the fide of for man of vife our Sauiour. He faid, this was reuealed to him by Saint Andrew the Apostle, thrice appearing on the people pe to him, and shewing the place where he digged and found it. The Podian Bishop would not be rifted. leeue him, but Earle Raimond (to theie two, he declared his Vision) was credulous: and when it was found, all the people reioyced, and one hundred daies after it was holden in great veneration, and gloriously handled by Earle Raimond, which also kept the Lance. But it hapned that the Bishop of Bare and many others doubted, that it was a counterfeit. Whereupon after Triallby fire three dates supplication and fasting, a great fire of wood was made in the field netre the Cattle Lance before Archas, then by them befieged, eight moneths after that Antiochia had beene taken, a indiciall menioged by

bened thon being made on the fire by the Bishops. The finder of the Lance passed voluntarily Monks Roberts and speedily thorow the fire, but was so burned, that in twelve daies after he died, and left the people soriie for the worthip they had done it. But Earle Raimond kept it, till by some accident it was loft.

The Soldan of Persia sent Corbagath with a great Armie, which besieged Edessa three daies, The Armicin and not prevailing against Baldmin, they hasted to Antiochia: and fixtie thousand of them en white of which tring the Citie by the Caftle, much annoyed ours. The Frankes were lad: and a Clergie man flying, our Lordappeared to him, and told him, that At his Mothers request be would belo them.

To another appeared a Brother of his before dead, and told him, that their fellowes which had died 60 in that expedition would take their parts, and fight against the Turkes. The Christians went out of the Citie against Corbagath, which would not leave his Chesse at first, but after was forced to "Malusharie leaue the field, notwithstanding his huge troups esteemed to be fixe hundred & fixtie thousand faith that Cor-Horse and Foot, and ours famished and few, which were erriched with their spoiles. Many of banks, was them wefe flaine, and their Women in the Tents. After Antioch was taken, the Pedian Bi- fline by Robert. shop died, and the Princes wrote to Pope Vrban: To the boly Lord and venerable Pope Vrban, of Mormandie.

Nice taken.

1204

red the King-

dome of Iera-

Buamund, and Raimund Earle of Saint Giles, Godfrey Duke Lotharienfis, Robert Earle of Normandie, Robert Earle of Flanders, and Euitace Earle of Bullon, Greeting and fantifull Sernuces ; and as (bildren to their frittuall Father, true subjection in (brift, &c. They relate the oc. currents of the Warre, and defire him to come in person, and sit in Peters Chaire, whose Vicar hee is, where the name of Christians beganne, and to open to them the Gates of both Iera-

Barg and Mara being taken, Buamund returned to Antioch, and chased thence Earle Remunds men, and possessed the Citie and all the Province. But Earle Raimund and Raters of Nonmandie proceeded towards lerusalem: and in the yeare 1 0 9 c. befieged Archas at the foote of Libanus. Duke Godfrey and the Earle of Flanders followed. In Iune, (to omit the reft) they to came before lerufalem, which on the fifteenth of Iuly, they tooke, and flue about ten thousand men in the Temple, called Salomons : shot also many which were vpon the roofe. Our feete in the Temple (Ufa, ad bafes, forte brachas) were fleeped in bloud. Our men opened their entraile Robert the Nor- to fearch for Byzantines, and after some daies, made a great heape of carkaffes, which they burman was offe- ned to fearch the Ashes: Fine hundred Tierkes which had betaken themselves to the Tower of Danid, agreed with Earle Raimund, and were fent to Afcalon. And now one piece of the Croffe was found, by reuelation made to a Syrian, which was carried to the Temple of the Sepulchre falem, & neuer with Procession. Duke Godfrey was made King : and the King of Babylon, and Lenendaline his fuling it, faith Generall, made haft with great Forces to beliege or fight with the Christians, and came to Af-Maintour, and calon, where the Christians obtained a glorious victorie. Robert of Normandie, and Robert of to Math. Paris: Flanders returned to Conflantinople by shipping; Earle Raimund to Laodicea, where hee left his Wife, going thence to Constantinople, with purpose to returne : Duke Godfrey retained Tancred, and many others with him at Ierufalem.

HONDIVS bis Map of Terra Sancta.



Buamund was meane while at Antioch, and Baldwine at Edeffs, where hee had often fights with the Turkes, in the Confines of Melopotamia. These by mutuall treatie agreed to 90e together to lernfalen; which also they did, and met at Valenum, together with three Bishops, being five and twentie thousand Horse and Foote. But passing thorow the Saracens Countrey, where no provition could be had, our owne being spent, the Horses and Men were miserably pinched. both with famine, and also with cold, and raines continuing foure or fine daies together, by reafon whereof, many which wanted Tents perished. I Fulchering there present, faw many of both Sexes, and very many beafts die with cold. Often allo many were flaine by the Saracens. affiniting vs in that paffages, as likewite in foraging : Yea Knights of Noble defeent having loft. Miltes men at to their Horles, were forced to goe on foote. So difficult is every great deligne : and a great matter it was that ever we got to Ierufilem, which was on the day of the Winter Solftice. We went after to Beibleem, thereto celebrate the Natiuitie where it was accomplished.

O how great a stinke was still about the walls of lerufalem, arising from the fallen, scattered, putrifying carkailes of the Saracens, which made vs to stop our noies! Daybert the Archbithop of Pife, (which had compe with vs) being made Patriarch, wee went thence to Iordan, (the former Armie had washed themselves there, and gathered Palmes at Ierico, according to Washing in the cuitome, in the Garden of Abraham, before the departure of the Earles of Normandie and Indan.

Flanders) some of our Armie staying at Ierusalem, and some of the former going againe with vs. In the years I 1 0 0, on the first day of the years, we cut Palmes at Ierico, and the next day de-20 parted. Our Princes passed by Tyberias, neere the Sea of Galiste, which is there eighteene miles Tibrias. long, and five broad, of fresh water : and thence by Cafarea Philippi, called Paneas, where arile Paneas two Fountaines whence Iordan fpringeth, and paffeth by the S: a of Galilee to the Red Sea. We came to the Callle Balbat, where three hundred men at Armes of the Turkes fet upon vs. and had flaine many, whose Arrowes being spoiled with the raine, they were unarmed, it Baldwins care had not protected them. So passing by Tortosa and Laedicea, Boamund depirted to Antiochia, where he was joyfully received, and held his Kingdome fixe moneths. Then in July following, one Gabriel, an Armenian, offering to render to him the Citie of Militinia, he went this

ther with Imail company, and in the way Danifman, an Amira, with a multitude of Tarker, flue many, runthe refit to flight, and tooke Buamund. Baldown made after them; but in vaine, fauing guamund ra-30 that Gabriel rendred Militinia to him. In the midit of this his profestitie, newes was brought ken. him of his Brothers death in July, the fecond yeare after Irusalem. was taken, and that all Is. King God/19 rulatent expected him to succeede. Griening somewhat at his Brothers death, and more reioycing for the Inheritance, hee let out to one Baldwin his Kiniman the Countrey which hee ceedethheld, and with feuen hundred men at Armes, and feuen hundred Foot-men, on the feuenth of October he fee forth towards tenfalem. pulling by Assischia, Ledicea, Gibeliais. Mara-elia, Tarneja, Archas and Tripoli. The King of Tripole gaue him kind entertainment, and in-telligence of Duchar King of Damafee, and Gibashlable King of Calptus, waiting and waylaying his comming.

Neere to Berito, about fine miles diffance, is a ftrait paffage neere the Sea, which a few hun-40 dreds may make good against one hundred thousand. Heere they waited for vs, and heere wee were in ill-taking, not knowing which way for to escape or get backward or forwards: how lotuer we made a flew of courage, I wished my selfe at Carnote or Orleans. Wee resolved after an ill nights reft, to goe backe the next morning, which we did, they purfuing vs in fuch fort, that we had no place left for flight or hope of fafetie. But God mercifully faued vs with a great miracle, they being fuddenly terrified, and their fh ps flying for feare of vs, and we made great flaughter, and got great spoile. The next day we returned againe, and found the ftreight aforelaid eleere, and palled the same with praises to God. The Amiras of Beruto, Sidon, alto Tyrus, & Achon, made flew of friendfhip to vs. But Tancred which held the Caftle Caiphas was maleuolent to Baldwin, wherefore we entred it not. We came at last to Joppe, where the 50 Frances acknowledged Baldwin for their King, and hafted thence to Ierusalem, where hee was welcomed with Procession of Clergie and Laitie, with Crosses and Candles. Daybers was not

present as one accused, distasted of the people, and held in suspicion. Sixe daies after, Ba'dwin let forth to Ajcalon, whiles we wasted the Countries, divers Saracens had hidden their goods and themselves in holes of the Earth, which being revealed by the Syrians, they were forced out by fire, made in the entries of their dens and flaine, being vivall Robbers and Murtherers of Christians, we passed that way. When our prouisions were spent, we made an in-road into Arabia, and passing by Abrahams Sepulchre foureteene miles from Iernfalem, came into the Valley where Sodom and Gomorrha were destroyed, where is now the great Lake Arfalti, which they call the dead Sa. The length wheteof from Zoaras of A. Dead Sea derabia, is fine hundred and eightie furlongs to the places next to Sodom, the breadth one hundred scribed. and fiftie, fo falt, that neither Beaft nor Bird can drinke thereof, which I Fulcherius descending from my M ile, tasted, and found more bitter then Eliebore. And because nothing lives therein, it is called the Dead Sea. Iord in enters on the North; on the South is no passage out, neither

Riner nor Lake. Neere which Lake or Dead Sea, is a high Mountaine falt also, by places, hard

as a stone, and like Ice; which I consecture, both by the waves washing it, and the showers falling downe, it make the Lake falt; or elle the bottome thereof reacheth vnto the great file Sea, by some munible passage under ground. A man can hardly sinke to the bottom if he would. Hauing compaffed the South fide of the Lake, wee found a Village, which they fay, is Segor, of goodly fituation, and abounding with Dates, whereof we fed pleafantly. Of other things we feldome foundany, (for the Arabs hearing of vs, were fled) except some poore ones, blacke as Soore, which we contemned. There I faw Fruits on the Trees, which when I had broken the skin. I found to be duftie within and blacke.

Thence we passed the Mountaines of Arabia, where the Inhabitants were fled from their Villages, and had hidden themselues in Caues. We came to a fertile Valley, watered out of the 10 Rock of Mofes. Rocke which Mofes stroke with the Rodde, still continuing with such abundance, that Water-Mills are driven therewith, where I Fulcherius watered my Horles. Wee found a Monasterie in the top of the Mountaine, called Saint Aarons, where Mofes and Aaron were wont to fpeak with the Lord : and we reioyced to see places so holy and strange. And because from thence, till neere to Babylon, the Countrey is defert, we proceeded no further, but returned the fame way we came to Ierufalem.

Weakneffe of the Frankes at Ierufalem.

Militibus,

In the years 1101. on Christmas day, in the Church of Saint Marie at Betbleen, by the Patriarch (then reconciled) was Baldwin anointed and crowned King, which Godfrey in reperence to our Lord, there crowned with Thorne, had refused. Baldwin was feared as a good Souldier, but his people were few. Wee had yet no Port but Toppe, neither was the way fafe from thence for Pilgrims; but when we heard of any thips there, we went forth to meete them, which having vifited Ierusalem, some stayed, others returned. Whereby the holy Land of Ierusalem remained emptie of people : nor were there to defend it from the Saracens, if they had dared to affault vs. For we had not then of men at Armes, about three thousand, and so many Foot-men as kept lerufalem, loppe, Ramula and Capphas. Neither durft we fearfely at any time affemble our forces, for feare of loofing our Fortrelles: that it was not without miracle that wee continued among fo many thousand thousands fo strong. Wee durst adventure no expedition, but neere to Ascalon or Arsub. They which came by Sea brought no Horses, and by Land none came at vs ; neither could the Antiochians helpe vs, or wee them. In March, Tancred the Antichts cal Antiparrida. Left Capphus to Baldwin, being sent for to Anticeb to governe that Kingdome, till Buamund 20 A Fleet of Italians and Genusis, that had wintered at Landicea, failed thence to Ioppe, and

came to lernfalem, where on Easter Eeuen was great adoe, because the light which that day

vseth to bee kindled from Heauen at the Lords Sepulchre, was not seene as in former times. But

Eafter light.

Ba'dwin taketh

Milites, Knights,men at Armes. Horlemen. * Milites.

after much Ceremonies and Prayers, on Easter day happened to a Lampe in the Sepulchre, of which the Patriarch had the Key. The Genuss after Easter, forced Assub to yeeld themselves to King Baldwin, who also with their helpe besieged and tooke Casarea Palastina. Ifaw there many Saracens burned for the Bizantines, which they had fwallowed, or hidden in their mouthes, that with a blow on the mouth many pieces flew out of their mouthes; women also had hidden them in places not to be named. Wee went to Ramula, and waited if the Enemie 40 would fight with vs. Seuentie dayes after our departure, wee heard that they fet forth to feeke battell, and Baldwin affembled his people from Ierufalem, Tiberias, Cafarea and Cappha. And because we had but few Knights (or men at Armes) the King warned all that could to make their Esquires Knights: so that all together were two hundred and threescore, and of footmen nine hundred. Against vs were eleuen thousand men at Armes *, and twentie one thousand footmen. We carried the wood of the Lords Croffe which comforted vs, & was carried openly by a venerable Abbot. Baldwin comforted them also, telling them of Heauen open to the dying, glory among Christians to the suruising : but France is farreoff, if we runne away. The Leader with five thousand of the Enemies were flaine : this battell was rought the feuenth of September. The next day we returned to Joppe laden with spoile: encountring fine hundred Saracens, which ha- 50 uing fought and beaten a part of our forces in the battell, with their Armes hafted to loppe, thinking to get the Towne; but not received, they thought vs to be their owne fellowes, suppofing the Christians all slaine, in that errour comming to vs, till they learned the truth to their cost. Two Newes-tellers had also fignified to the loppites, the death of King Baldwin, and defeating of his Armie, whereupon they had fent by Sea to Tancred, yea, the Queene did write a Letter of that import to haften him to their fuccour, who was also fetting forth when the true report by a Meffenger purposely sent, stayd him. Wee went fafe to Ierusalem, and rested eight

In the yeare 11 0 2. the Babylonians were gathered together at Ascalon, to destroy vs vtterly, being twentie thousand Horsemen and ten thousand Foot, besides victuals. These in May laid 60 liege to Ramula. At that time many Frankes were at loppe, waiting a fit wind for their returns * He was also to France. These had comne the yeare before by Romania, and had lost their Horses and all they Duke of Aqui- had, For William, Earle of Poicton , and Stephen Earle of Blois, (which fought now to recour

the credit he had loft in flying from Antiochia) and a Hugo Magnus which had returned from a Reb. Mon. was the credit he had fort in hybig from Antiochia to France, and Earle Raimond returned from Constantinople, where he had made flay, deceived if and Stephen Earle of Burgundie, and many other Noblemen had adio ned to themselues an innumerable number of Horie and Foot, the Armie divided in two. In the Romanian Confines, Soliman the Turke with great forces of Turkes had dispersed them, and almost destroyed them. flaving about one hundred thousand of their Horsemen and Footmen, also some of their women. and some he carryed away. Their Mules, Horses and Beatts of burthen and goods the Turkes About one had gotten. The Earle of Poillow laued only himselfe, getting on foot to Antiochia in lamentable cafe, whom Tancred entertained. They which escaped (for they were disided in many fand men

To Troupes) came to lernfalem, except Hugo Magnus which dyed at Tarfus. Some went by Sea flaine besides and they which had Horses by Land, which also in the way assaulted and tooke Toriofa, where Torius accuse the Earle Raimond to their great difgust, remayned. Baldwin wayted for them at the Streights neere the Emperour Beruto, eighteene dayes: they came to Ierusalem, kept there their Easter, visited the holy places, of const. for dined with King Baldmin in the Temple of Salomon, and now waited pallage at Toppe, when this the ouerth ow newes came that King Baldwin had taken horse to goe against the Babylonians. Stepben of Blois I.10. by his newes came that King Baldwin had taken horle to goe against the Babylonians. Seephen of Blois 1.10. Symbol and Stephen of Burgundie, Gefferie of Vendon and Hugh Lizziniac (brother to Earle Raimond) got the Christians Horfes and followed. But Baldwin improvidently hafting, was in tight of the Enemies before were arena fine his forces could have fight of him, not attending the foot, and having but few Horses. So that, calce, and vitwith two hundred men at Armes, he was encompalled of twentie thouland, where he expected disciplined.
20 but a thouland, against whom they were enforced to fight, committed great slaughter, but lost

the field, the King and some others escaping to Ramula. Where not daring to stay, with five followers he departed, and three dayes after, with one only, hungrie and thirtie escaped to Ar-(sub. The two Stephens of Blois and Burgundie, were flaine. The King durft not adventure by Land, and therefore failed to loppe. Thence hee intreated an old poore Syrian, to carne by bywayes, newes to lernfalem, whither on the third day hee came, and ninetie men at Armes with fome others of the Citie which could get Horses, set out for loppe, whither not without skirmiles and loffe the most came. Also Hugh of Tiberias had before comne with eightie men at Armes. With fuch forces as he had, he fet forth to meete the Enemie then approaching within three miles. Their huge numbers encompating ours, were yet chafed out of the field, leaving

30 their Tents to the Frankes, with Camels, Affes, Money. For the King had then the wood of our Lords Crosse, which is hee had in the former battell carryed, it is not to bee doubted, but God would have thewed mercie to his people, if the King would have gone wifely with his people to the battell, All Winter after they were quiet. Anno 1103, the King belieged Achon, but not able to take it, he waited the Countrey and returned to loppe. Buamund was now restored to libertie and his Antiochian Principalitie, adding also Landicea which Tancred had taken from the Constantinopolitans, giving him recompense for it in his owne Land. King Baldmin in a skirmish was very dangerously wounded neere the heart.

mini was very outgettenly wounted mini was very outget on the King agains belieged Action (or Prolemaids,) affilted by a Fleet of Gennois, b. Rofrate, has of feuentie ships beaked, b and after twentie dayes slege tooke it of great import for the Port, is, the beaks,

Italy, he to get people, the other to complaine of Baldwin to the Pope, who favoured him, but in red with Iron his returne he dyed

Anno 1 105. Earle Raimond dyed in his owne Towne before Tripolis, whom fucceeded his Nephew William Iordan. The King of Caliptus received a great overthrow by Tancred, which then ruled in Antiochia, and loft numbers numberleffe. The King of Babylon e raifed a great e Thatis, as Armie which he lent to Afcalon, against which Baldmin moued from Joppe, and fent to Iernfalem in other places of the flothat they should fast, pray, and make Procession barefoot, which was done, my selfe beeing one. rie, the Exprise The Patriarke went and carryed the Croffe. Our men at Armes were fine hundred, belides other Chabfas Carry Horsemen which had not that Militarie place, and two thousand foot. The Enemie was fifteene being by some 50 thouland, foure thouland were flaine, of which was the Amira of Asalon; the Amira of A. called Babplon. chon was taken. Their Nauie before Ioppe returning to Babylon, (Cairo) was affailed by Tempest, Such a triple

and miferably disperit, whereof fine and twentie thips were taken by vs, beeing full of Sara- Sun and Raincens. On C riftmas Ecuen at Ierufalem, we felt a great Earthquake. Anno 11 0 6.2 Co net appeared tittie dayes decreafing, beginning in February : also three 1611. in Deson-Sunnes, a smaller on each hand of the true, both in quantitie and light; a great white Circle en- fire urroning and in it a Rain-bow of foure colours, the Bow toward the Sunne, and reaching to the

other two Sunnes. In the next moneth, the Starres of Heauen leemed to raine. Hugh of Tibe- had partly poiother two Sunnes. In the next mourem, the Daniel Victorie, with fixefore, chaining four thousand, and fored party corrupted his

Anno 1107. seuentie of ours chased five hundred of theirs, besides one thousand footmen. chiefe follow-Buamund returned out of France with five thousand men at Armes, and threescore thousand desected he refoptmen, without women; provided a Fleet at Brundusjum, failed into Bulgaria, tooke Analon, turned to Acubelieged Duratium a yeare, an forced the Emperour to I weare to protect the Pilgrimes thorow lis, and loome all his Empire, and he alto I ware fealtie to the Emperour d after which, with part of his Ar- after dyed. Hhhhhhh

40 which within the walls harboureth many ships safely. Buamund and Daibers by Sea went to or stems coue-

1208 Tripolis, Berith, Sidon taken. Graffe-hoppers and Earthquakes. LIB. VIII

mie hee returned into Apulia, the greater part according to their Vow, repayring to Ierula. Im by Sea.

Anno 1109. Bertran fonne of Earle Raimund came out of Pronince, and with ninetic thing of the Genuois belieged Tripolis, but (by diffention betwixt him and Iordan his emulous Kintman) to little effect. Baldwin came to the fiege to intreate the Gennois to his affiffance against A scalon, Beruit and Sidon and began to agree the two Earles; but lordan was flaine as hee rode in the night with an Arrow, no man knew how nor whence. Bertran iware fealtie to King Bald. win for his Fathers Inheritance (the cause of their quarrell) and when the Saracens had compounded to furrender the Towne, their lives faued, (which the King had confirmed by Oath) they permitted our chiefe men to enter part of the Towne. Meane-while, I know not how, a fulden to tumult happened amongst the meaner Gennois, who scaled and entred the Towne without the Tripolistaken. Princes knowledge, and put all to the fword, no equitie being able to make restitution of their heads. But in the Kings circuit they escaped.

Berith taken.

Anno 1110. King Baldmin with Bertran tooke Berith after seuentiefine dayes fiege: and after with Tancred patied over Emphrates, where they found the Tarkill forces, which yet refused fight. and with wearisome delayes, caused that they furnished Edessa with victual (the Tarkes having wasted the Countrey and taken the Castles and Husbandmen which served them with food) and departed againe ouer the River, where the Turker tooke and carryed into Persia, many of our footmen. In the meane-while, a Fleet arrived at loppe out of Normay, and the Westerne Sea conducted by that Kings Brother, which with their Sea-feruice ayded the King in the fiege of 20 Siden, which yeelded vpon composition in December.

Trrus.

Anno IIII. Tancred fent to Baldmin, who with Bertran affembled all their forces against the Turkes, which in great multitudes had passed Euphrares out of Persia. They passed by Apamia, which Tancred had taken the yeare before : but the Turkes refuling to fight, they departed. Tancred to Antiochia, the King to lerufalem. Preparation made, hee besieged Tyrus or Sooratoue foure monethes in vaine, his two Towers of wood which he had raifed higher then the walls, beeing disappointed by two which the Citizens had erected on their walls by night, whence they being higher, cast fire into the other and confumed them. And ours which in conceit had divided the prey, returned home with shame. Anno 1112. Tancred dyed.

Great loffe.

Anno 1113. the Turkes passed Euphrates, and committed great spoile over the whole Coun- 10 trey, and in a battell King Baldwin loft his Colours, Tents and goods, twelve hundred footmen, and thirtie of the best men at Armes. The Saracens before subject, tooke Armes against vs. Sichem, which we call Naples, was taken. The Ascalonites came to the Suburbs of Ierusalem, and Spoiled their Haruest : nor could a Messenger passe betwaxt the King and them ; nor durst the Husbandmen reape their Haruest in the Countrey, or exercise other businesses. But our Armie being renewed by Christian Pilgrimes from beyond the Seas, the Turkes departed towards Damalco, and King Baldwin to Achon, where he found the Counteffe of Sicilia, (Wife of Roger the Brother of Robert Guiscard) comne to become his Wife.

Anno 1114, an infinite multitude of Graffe-he ppers, from the parts of Arabia, came into the Countrey of Ierusalem, which in Aprill and May much walted our Corne. Two Earthquakes 40 had happened the yeare before: two also this yeare, one so great in the Region of Antiochia. that many Townes were halfe or wholly ruined, throwing downe their walls, and the Houses, and killing the people : ouerturning the Cattle Trialeth neere to Euphrates, Marifeum with the walls, Houses and people was extinct : a great part of Mamistria fell.

pers & Earth-Gauterus Cith, that the people wits end, cuery day new harchquakes, the forlaken; Lelies v ed,ten:s erected in the

Anno ITIC, in June the Turkes passed the River into Stria, and Doldeguin King of Damasco, knowing that they hated him for the Murther of their former Generall Mandnef, entred league with King Baldwin and Roger Prince of Antiochia, knowing that a three-fold Cord is not easily broken. When Baldwin was comne into those parts, the Turkes hid themselves, whom thinking tanies, Fafts, to have beene gone out of the Countrey, he returned. Meane-while, the Alcalonites had befieged Toppe by Sea and Land, but returned frustrate : againe they fought to take it unprouided, and 50 made a fecond affault ten dayes after with like fucceife. The Turkes spoyling the Countrey of Stria, the Antiochians overthrew them in battell, flue three thousand and tooke many with rich Spoyle, and three hun red thousand Byzantines. This yeare Mamistria was the second time fubuerted by an Earthquake, wherewith also the like happened else-where in the Countrey of Antiochia. This yeare the King built the Caffle Mount Royall within three dayes journey of

Red Sca.

Anno 1116. the King went to the Red Sea, and found the Citie Heli, where the Ifeaelites rested after they had passed the Red Sea : the Inhabitants being Fishermen we'e fled into their Boats. In the end of the yeare the King being fickly and fearing death, put from him Atlanda the Counteffe of Sicilia, whom he had vniuftly marryed, his former Wife still living at Edeffa.

Anno 1117. the faid Counteffe returned into Sicilia. Graffe-hoppers devoured the Vineyards, Corne, Trees of all kind, eating all greene things and the barkes; going forth in Bands like an accurate Armie, some on foot, some flying. In the following moneth lune, the Moone on the thirteenth day of her age was all red and after blacke, and two houres together lost the light,

CHAP, 2. Antiochians fin and punishment. Crosse-superstition. King B. taken. 1200

which happening not in the full we tooke for a figne. In Iuly happened an Earthquake in December, the whole Heauen was fire like bloud, in some places shining white. Pope Paschal died in Januarie after, and King Baldwin in Aprill, and his Wife in Sicil, Alexim the Emperour, and the Patriarke Arnulphu.

In the end of March 1118. Baldwin had spoyled the Citie Pharamia, walking on a day by Pharamia. Nilm, his old greefe renewed, whereof he dyed in the way, being returned as farre as Laria. He Laria. was buried neere to his Brother Godfrer in Golgotha, having reigned eighteene yeares, three King Baldwin monethes. Baldwin Earle of Edelfa his Kinsman was elected in his stead, and was consecrated dyeth, and on Easter day, having comme accidentally to Ierusalem to speake with the King. That yeare the ceedeth. 10 Babylonians came with an Armie of fifteene thouland Horlemen, and twentie thousand foct, to Afcalon, and a great Fleet of ships attended on them by Sea. King Baldwin assembled his owne with the Tripolitan and Antiochian forces, and fate three monethes neere to them, neither fide

adventuring the hazard of battell. Anno 1119. Roger Prince of Amiochia, made an Expedition against the Turkes, and neere to the Towne Arthafium, was flaine with feuen thousand of his people, and of the Turkes not twentie. And no maruell? for they abounding in wealth exceedingly, neither feared God, nor revenenced man: the Prince vied manifold adulteries, dif-herited the Sonne of Boamund, re- Prince Rote mayning in Apulia with his Mother, hee and his lived luxuriously and proudly. King Baldwin Same with fe-

fped better in a battell neere Sardanium, twentie foure miles from Amioch. Our men at Armes uen thousand 20 were feuen hundred, the Turkes twentie thousand. Gazs was their Generall. A certaine Turke Antischung. Spake to a Franke which understood the Persian, saying, Tour God both for saken you, feeing yet neither hold his Law as ye were wont, nor faith and truth among it your selves; This weeknow and have observed, and to morrow shall overcome you. Hereof wee might well indeed bee ashamed when a faithlesse Turke objected our want of faith. The battel followed, long doubtfull; at laft the Turkes fled, fome to Aleppo, tome into Perfia, God delivering the King by vertue of the Croffe carryed by the Bishop of Casara: who after two dayes keeping the field went to Antiochia, the Patriarke the Drawe forth to meet the holy Crolle, the King and Bilhop; & on the day of the Exaltation of the Croffe they entred with the Croffe into Ierufalem reioyeing, the King staying at Antiochia to fet things in order, having that Kigdome added to his other of Ierufalem. On Christmas day 30 he and his Wife were crowned at Beibleem.

Anno 1120, the King remitted Tolls and Imposts, and hearing that the Turkes were comne into Syria, hee very humbly defired of the Patriarke and the Clergie, the Croffe to bee delivered him, faying, that his men should be thereby fortified, and not trusting in his owne or his peoples force, he should obtaine it in stead of many thousands. Heere grew some reasoning betwixt those which went and those which staied, whether the Crosle ought for such a necessitie of Chris-Minitie to be carryed to Antoch, or the Church of lerufalem be deprined of fuch a treature. We Superflition of friantile to be carryed to Indicate, of the Children templatem be confined to the attached the Children faid, Alas wretches, what shall we doe, if God permit the Crosse to bee lost in Warre, as once the Israe-like Exchibit lites lost the Arke of the Conemant? Nilling and willing we did it, with many teares shed for it, Nebulbum, al. and Songs in prayle of it, conveying it out of Towne bare-foote, the King, Patriatch and though made

people, with which the King departed weeping. The Turkes were neere Antrochia, but now by divine apretyred to Calipius : fome skirmishes happened in which many on both sides were slaine or pointment, & wounded, but without battell ours returned to Antiochia, and most of them into Persia: and by Christ inin October we entertained the most glorious Crosse of our Lord into Ierusalem with great toy. Anno 1121, the King fet forth against Tuldequine, King of Damasco, who with the Arabians c ucified, 100,3, his Confederates ipoyled the Countrey neere to Tiberias, tooke the Calile larras and razeo it to- Yet bickin in gether with the Towne.

Anno 1122. the King went to Tripolis against Earle Pontine, which refused to be subject to King Belowin him, as his Father Bertran had beene, and the matter betwixt them was peaceably ended. Hee aken Prioner went also against the Turker which befiged Sardanium, and repelled them. Bleffed therefore bee Venetian Fleet

the Banner of the most holy Croile of our Lord, a present helpe to true beleeuers, under whose 120 faile. protection and confolation, the faithfull without any losse returned home: they being ten Example. thousand, ours but one thousand and two hundred. Meanewhile, Goseline Earle of Edessa, was taken, and his Coulin Galeran, by Amira Balac, and foone after King Baldwin also.

Anno 1123. Henry King of Almaine, was pacified with Pope Calixtur. A great Fleete of Venetians which wintered at Corfu, being one hundred and twentie Saile, besides smaller Velfels, in which were fifteene thousand armed men , Veretians and other Pilgrims, and three hondred Horses. The Kingdome in Baldwins Captinitie was committed to the government of Enflace, which then held Cafarea and Sidon. The Babylonians with a Nauie of nintie Ships, came

60 and belieged loppe : another land Armie was gone to Ascalon. The loppites men and women refifted valuantly : yet, had the fiege continued, so few could not have holden out. But the rumor of the Christian Fleete had scarred away the Enemies, when they had now made a breach in the Wall. Our men were vnited from all places at the Castle Chaco, and marched with the Croffe to Ramath neere Diospolis. Wee at lerufalem made Prayers bare-foot, and Proceffions thorow all the Churches of the Citie, and gaue almes. Ours having received Benediction and

1210 Sea-fight. Strange stratagem. Tyrus taken. Balacs true dreame, LIB. VIII

Absolution of the Patriarke; fought neere Azet or Elder, now called Ibenum, being brought to a small Village. Their Horse-men fled, their Foot were slaine, and their Tents were lett to our men. And of thirtie thouland Babylonians, twelue thouland were flaine by Land and Sea of ours in this fight but ten : after which, the Patriarke returned to Ierusalem with the Croffe of ours in this ingite out that Davids Gate, and with honorable Procession conjuged to the Temple of the Sepulchre. The Generall of the Venetian Fleet came to Achon, which hearing of the defeat, divided his Navie, with one part going towards Joppe, fending the other into the Mayne to make the Saracens beleeue that they were Pilgrimes comming from Cyprus. Meeting with the Fleet of Saracens, they made fuch a llaughter that the Sea for foure miles space was died red : for they flue the men and tooke the fhips. After which they fell wpon ten other ships laden Io with victuall and timbers for Engines, Pepper, Cinamon, and divers Spices, Munition and Money. Some ships they burned on the shoare, the most they brought to Achon. Enstace dyed, and William de Buris succeded in the Protectorship. Baldwin escaped out of his hard Imprilonment. where he and Earle loseline were bound by a strange stratageme. Fiftie Edeffens, making shewas of they were P. dlars or poore Merchants : and waiting an occasion got into the inner gate, where the Captaine or chiefe of the Warders was at Cheffe, to whom they made shew of complaint for fome wrong offered : and feeing oportunitie, fuddenly drew their Swords, and fine him, layd hold on the Launces (or Halberds) there flanding, and laid luftly about them. The clamour brings many to fee the businesse which they were fuddenly sent to tell in another World, about one hundred Turkes being flaine, they flut the Caffle, take out the Captines, erect 20 the Christian Colours. Balae had dreamed that Iofeline had pulled out his eyes, whereupon hee fent to put him to death, and before the Meffengers were arrived, this had happened, Balact beff this came tent to put that to teath, and telescape the control the control that the control the control that to Euphrates, and with two blowne Bladders and helpe of his companions, beeing ignorant of fwimming, gate ouer : where vnder a Tree refting himfelfe almost tattered and started, hee was knowneby a Countriman, which having a Wife, and a little Daughter, and a filly Affe was willing to attend him with his Family. The Earle rode on the Affe, and carryed the poore mans childe crying and vinquiet, till they came through the Enemies Countrey to his owne Caffle Terbexell. Thence (having repaid the poore Armenian) he hasted to Ierusalem where hee offered 20 his Fetters in Mount Caluarie, and with the Croffe & an Armie had returned to Cartageta, but in the way newes came that the King was againe captine, whereupon after much spoile in the Sa-

racens Countries, they parted the prey and departed home. Balae had vindermined the Cafele, erecting timbers in the Mines, and filling the holes with wood, which he fired, and the Earth by that meanes falling, part of the Cattle tell therewith, so that they within were forced to yeeld to mercie. The King Guldran he spared : the rest were hanged, or slayed, or cut asunder in the middle. The King was fent Prifoner to Carra. Anno 112 4. the Patriarke agreed with the Venetians to befiege Tyrus. Balac laid fiege to Ierapa-

Balac flaine.

lis, called Mumbeth, which I of elme hearing (beeing then at Antiochia, hee came with his forces and gaue him battell, in which Balac and three thousand of his men were slaine. Balacs head 40 was fent to Antioch: and his Esquire bringing the newes to the Campe at Tyrus, was knighted by the Earle of Tripolis. Tyrus was yielded on the feuenth of July, and the thirds given to the Venetians in the Citie and Port by composition.

CHAP. III.

A supplement of the Holy Land Storie, gleaned out of the large Historic of WILLIAM Archbishop of Tyrus.

The Kings li-

11.000

He same yeare in the end of August, King Baldwin agreed for his libertie, and returned to Antioch. His ransome was one hundred thousand Michael tes (a principall Coine in those parts) which not knowing how to pay, hee was perlwaded to beliege Halapia, then being in some distresse. The Halapians were assisted by the Saracens beyond Euphrates, whereupon the King returned and went to

ferujatem. But hearing of Burjequines spoiling the Confines of Antioch, affilted by Doldaguine of Damaseus, who had taken Caphardan, and besieged Sardan, and thence remoued to Hafard: he with the Earles of Tropolis and Edessa, came and gaue them battell, and win- 60 ning the field, got enough to redeeme his Daughter which remayned pledge for his ranfome. Hee inuaded the Territorie of Damascus: but being told of the Babylonians comming to Ascalon, (for it was their custome foure times in the yeare to direct forces thither) hee set forth thither and curbed their infolence.

Anno 1126. he made an expedition by Tyberias and Decapolis, and to the Plaines of Medan,

CHAP. 2 Boamund flain. Vinnatural daughter. Greeks inuasion. Speile by poiles, 1251

where the River Dan, betwixt Tybereas and Scythopolis runneth into Icrdan, making up that Icr Dan lorden. name; before which, that which descends into the Sea of Galilee, is called Ior, as some say, though Beda and others be otherwise minded. He encountered with the Damascenes, in a dreadfull and long doubtfull battell, which inclined at last to the Kings part. Hee restored Antiochia to Boamand the yonger, in marriage with his Daughter; against whom, Earle losceline conceined fuch hatred, that he called in Turkes to his aide, and entred the Territories of Antioch with Bounnal Inni-Fire and Sword, in the absence of the Prince. At that time Roger Earle of Sicilia, frustrated of or. his hopes in Africa, with his Fleete wanne Syracufe, flaying all, of all Ages and Sexes.

An. 1127. William an English man, was made Archbishop of Tyrm, being before Prior of the Seto sulchre; who being confecrated by the Patriarch of Ierufalem, would needes against his will. leeke his Pall at Rome, where Pope Honorius much honored him, and fent Giles his Legat with him, to make the Patriarke of Antioch to deliuer his Suffragan Bishops to him, vinder paine of Time. Suipension. The yeere following, Hugo de Paganis, first Matter of the Temple, and some other Religious men, which had beene fent by the King into the West, to excite aides of those Prin- First Temces, returned with many Noble-men. Whereupon all the Eaflerne Christians agreed to befrege plers. Damafeut. Anno 1120. But having loft many in forraging and skirmifhing, the Elements with thunders and raines compelled them to retire home. Boamand was one, which in his returne to his Prouince, found Rodon the Turke, committing spoiles, and in feeking revenge lost himselfe Damestus bea and his life. The King made hafte to fet things there in order, where his Daughter the Prin- ficeed in 20 ces Wife, fent to Sangum the Turke for aide, to hold Antiochia to her felfe. The Meffenger by vaince the way was intercepted, and brought to the King. She prepared to withstand her Father, but in vaine. He returning to lerufalem, fell sicke, and because the Patriarkes house was neerer the

place of the Refurrection, lay there; and taking the habit of Religion, having commended the King dome to Falke his Sonne-in-law, with his little Sonne Baldwin, he died in August, 1121. King Fake. This Fulke had married the Kings eldeft Daughter, Milifend being Earle of Anion, Turon, Oc. 116.14. and had beene at Ierusalem in Pilgrimage and maintained one hundred Horse-men a whole veere at his charge, winning such loue of the King and people, that the King bestowed his Daughter arths charge, whiming having a contention grew for the Papacie, twixt Innocent and fuccellon on him. Honorius dying, a contention grew for the Papacie, twixt Innocent and Peter, called Anacletus, the matter was tried on both files with bloud and flaughter. Innocent

30 obtayning, ordained the Church of Tyre to be subject to Irrafalem, and to have the same place with that Patriarke which before it held with the Antiochian. Great stirre arose about the Earle of loppa; who, being accused by Galterns Cafariensis of treason, was sentenced to acquit him. The Author felfe by combat; but he appeared not, and was therefore condemned: whereupon hee went to peakes against Ascalon, desiring aide of the Enemie, which added fewell to the fire, and inuaded the Christi-Church and ans on that confidence. Peace was concluded, and the Earle after that in Ierufalem, as he was at the two Patriplay, was murthered, and the King suspected as procurer thereof, whereof hee cleered himselfe arises, which by execution of the Malefactor.

Pontius Earle of Tripolis, with all his power, fighting against the Damascens, was taken and flaine, his Armie dispersed, the Bishop taken, and a great multitude killed. The Antiochians had Civil broiles. do deluered their Citie to Raimand, with Boamands daughter to Wife, which the Constantinopolis Earle of Tribis tan milliked, and by great power fought to fubdue all that Principalitie, with Horses, Cha- flaine. riots, Treasures beyond number, and Forces infinite, passing Saint Georges arme, and violently Torset ken by forced Torset, and placed his owne, expelling thence the Antiochian Forces He has forced to the Emperour forced Toffee, and placed his owne, expelling thence the Antiochian Forces. He beliegeth An- of confess, tiochia. Sanguin the Turke takes the advantage to invade the Countrey of Tripolis, and besieged Mount Farand. Both parts fue to the King for aide, who going first against Sanguin, received Earle of Trip. an ouerthrow; the Earle of Tripolis was taken, and almost all the Footmen taken or flaine with all their carriages. The King fled for succour to a Castle vnprouided, out of which whiles his fubiects feeke to deliuer him, Neapolis was taken by other Saracens with cruell execution of all forts. Sanguin put the King to fuch straits before succours could come (which on all hands were

prouided) that he was contented to agree on conditions to refigne the Fortreffe after much Fa-50 mine and death. Antochia was also grieuoully affaulted, but peace was by mediation concluded betwixt the Emperour and the Prince, which did him homage. The Emperour having wintered in Cilicia, the next Spring layeth fiege to Cofarea, affifted Cefarebefie-

with the Prince of Antioch, and Earle of Edeffa to satisfie them, which yet by their negligent ged. labours and diligent play, gaue him fo little latisfaction, that being offered money, he accepted it, and returned to Antioch, where arose a tumult about his demand of a Garrison, which grew to blowes, wounds, deaths, which caused the Emperour to remit his demand, and to returne home. Meane-while, Theodericke Earle of Flanders, the Kings Sonne-in-law came to Iernfalem, with a ftrong Armie. These with the Ierosolymitans besieged a Den of Theeues neere Mount Ga-60 land, being an inaccessible Caue, where a Nest of Adders resided, wayting all opportunities of milchiefe: which while they were doing, the Turkes tooke Teens. The Mafter of the Temple Tenstaken, came vpon them with his forces, and chafed them, but minding the spoyles, the conquered returned and regained the victorie with great flaughter and spoile.

Sanguin fought now to get the Kingdome of Damascus, whereupon they defired the King,

to Rome, and obtayning some glance of Papall light, in his returne hee was poysoned. The Legate returneth to Ierusalem, and dedicates the Temple ingreat solemnitie, and celebratesa Councill with the Patriarke, the Armenian, Median, Persian, Cappadecian Bishops, and reformation was promifed in the things wherein they differt from vs. Amerike an vulcarned man was chosen the Antiochian Patriarke.

Baldwin the Edella taken.

The Emperour makes another Expedition within foure yeares after the former into Cilicia. Death of the and to Edella, with innumerable Treatures and People, where after much labour to little effect. Emperour and the next Spring in hunting a wild Beare, with a Poyloned Arrow hee hurt his hand as hee was shooting, whereof he dyed, Anno 1137, and King Fulke, by like disaduenture followed, in the following of a Hare falling from his Horfe, his braines with the violence thereof, forced out of his nofe and eares. This happened in November 1142.

Baldwin the third faceeded. Sangum the Turke Lord of Nimue (now called Muful) came and belieged Edeffa, the Metropolis of Media called Rages, a Citie better ftored with Merchants then Souldiers, and by vindermining tooke it, neither sparing age or fex; among it the rest. Hugh the Archbishop was flaine, who having horded infinite Treature, to spare it her was prodigall of 20 his life, and fame and it alfo, to a cruell vingratefull Heire. He proceeded to be fiege Calogenbar on the other fide of Euphrates, where one night in his drunkenneile hee was flaine of his feruants; liuing and dying, Sanguine, one of his Sonnes fucceeded at Muful, Neradine, another at Ha. lapia. The Captaine of Bostrum upon discontent with the Damascons came to lerusalem, and offired to yeeld the Citie to the King, who went with an Armie, but too late, the Enemie haning possession before, wherefore after many dangers and loiles he returned. Not long after the Edel Jans (Noradine being elfe-where busied) fend to Earle Infestine, who commeth and fulldenly be-

commeth Mafter of the Citie, which he was not able to hold, Noradine returning with a firone

power, and recouring it with exceeding flaughter of the Citizens and of the Earles Armie. After this, Pope Eugenius fent Preachers to excite men to take the Croffe (among ft them 30 Bernard Abbot of Claronale) which went thorow Kingdomes and Regions, whereby Conrade the Emperour a d Lewis King of France with many Princes embraced the word and figne of the Croffe, which yet did in all that Expedition nothing acceptable to God, our finnes deferring it. As they which were prefent, constantly affrme there were in the Emperours Campe feuen-* Loricatorium, tie thousand . harneffed Horse-men, besides Foot-men, Children, Women, and Horse-men of lighter Armour. And in the Armie of the French as many armed Horfe-men, and a Nauie; able if God had bleffed them to have conquered all the Eafterne Provinces. The Greekes either by command, or corrupted by the Enemie, led ours by unpaffable paffages, fo that their Enemies made fuch flaughter, that of all those thousands of Horse-men, and innumerable Footmen, scarfly numbers flaine the tenth part cleaped. The French followed the Imperials in like fates, the glory of the Frankes an and vertue fometimes dreadfull, being made a mockerie to their Enemies, Famine and Diforder

Incredible

see more of the fein M.Par. pursuing the residue which escaped the Battell which was in Ianuary 1146. Anno 1148. Noradine inuades the Territories of Antiochia, and in Battell Raimundthe Ramund flaine Prince with the firength of those parts were flaine. Raimunds head and right hand were fent to Earle of Edeffa the Calipha of Baldae : all the Countrey was over-runne by martiall furie. The Soldan of Icanium inuides the Countrey of the Earle of Edeffa, takes many Cities and Cailles, and befiegeth the Earle in Turbeffel, and voon conditions departeth. This Earle a voluptuous and diffolute man recovering as the fall of Antiochia, fell foone after into his Enemies hands, which carryed him to Halapia, where tyred with miferie he dyed.

The power of the Frankes confifted in the Kingdome of Ierufalem, the Principalitie of An- 50

The foure

tisch, the Eurldome of Edella, & the Eurledom of Tripolis. After the former mileries in other parts Frances power, happened a differtion twixt the King and his Mother, which dissided the Kingdome betweene Civil Warres, them in civil combustions. The Queene betakes her to lerufalem, whither the King followes with an Armie, and (notwithanding the Patriarkes admonition) beliegeth it, and after that the Citizens had let him in, laid fiege to the Tower where the was, till at last agreement was made on both fides, internal grudges and relikes of faction stil remayning, whiles without as two Mil-Emperour of stones, Noradine and the Soldan of Iconium, ground the State betwirt them to powder. The Confl. his mus. Soldan of Iconium having invaded agains the Country of Edeffa, left milerie should want, the Constantinopolitan fends a great Armie and challengeth the Country which the King yealls to, taking with him the people (which hereupon with their wealth departed) whereof Noradine 60 understanding with great power assailed them, their carriages being sticked with Arrowes like Hedge-hogs, yet they shifted away, the Turkes wanting victuals to follow them. In one yeare

and Coricen. The Earle of Tripol's was murthered by the Affiliars.

did Noradine dispossesses of their new Possessions, a rich Countrey beeing quite lost, and three Archbishoprickes cut off from the Church of Antioch, the Edeffan, the Hierapolitan, CHAP.2. Ascalon taken. Foxe made Goose-beard, Hospitalars Originall. 1212

A huge Armie of Turkes called Hiaroguin, whose Progenitorshad held Ierusalem, made an A huge Armie of Turkes called risaroquin, while Frogundous and here terrificem, made an expedition thither for recoverie of their priftine polletion; where, tyred by the difficultie of Hieroquin expedition thither for recoverie of their prifting of the Christians of the characteristics. the way, they were made an easier conquest to the Sword of the Christians, so that fine thouthe way, they were made an earlier conquerte this was Anno 1152. The King befreged Ascalon Passace veerly tand being liame, the tell which, according to the custome, at Easter was a passage of Pilgrims in of Frankes at great frequencie, which came thither with huge banda of Horse and Foote, the Campe daily Fifter to Jenses great irequence, which would have returned being forbidden, and their Ships being im- falen. ployed in this feruce. Ours with Masts of Ships, made a wooden Tower, and of the other maproyect in this state, engines and Pent-house-promisions for securitie of the approachers. After to five Moneths fiege, and daily killing and wounding on both fides, the Babylonian Fleet came to

their fuccour, Gyrard of Sydon the Admirall of our Fleet, thought to encounter with them, but feeing their multitudes fled; they being feuentie Gallies and other Ships of huge greatnesse and great prouisions, which the Egyption Prince had sent. A peece of the Wall being razed, they which would have entred, were forbidden by the Templers (that being the custome for all men to hold whatfoeuer spoile they got) in hope of gaine, fo that their couetous nesse exposed Ascalus raken. them to the flaughter. And our men fainting were incouraged, and the Citie was yeel jed, on composition to depart with bag and baggage. Absolon was made Bishop by the Patriarke, against the will of the Bilhop of Bethlern, which appealed to the Pope, and by his sentence ex-cluded the former. Noquin a Turke seeing the Ascalonites destitute of sufficient guard, hee Michieles no. 20 (which had vndertooke to guard them into Egypt himselfe) fell vpon them, rifled them, and ucralone.

left them wandring in the Delart. This hapned, Anno 1154.

Anno 1155. was a grieuous famine, and but for the store of Corne which they found in Lib.18. Ascalon, the people had all perished. And the yeere following, the soile about Ascalon, which Famine and hoftilitie had not permitted to be tilled in fiftie yeeres, rendred fixtie-fold increase. Great contention grew betwixt the Patriarke and Hospitalars, about Tithes of their goods, and other their infolencies. The Roman Church not confidering what it granted, gaue cause hereof, free- Roman Church ing the place from iurisdiction of the Patriarke. This place of the Hospitall was given first by blamed by all the Egyptian Calpbas to the Amalitan Merchants of Italia, to build them a house, where they Hospitalise the Egyptian Calipba I to the Samura, of Latin Monkes; and another Nunnerie of Saint Ma-beginning, 30 ry Magdalen : and after that an Holpitall, and an Altar in honor of Saint Iohn Eleymon, or the

Almoner. The maintenance of thefe was yeerly almes which continued till lerufalem was won by the Christians, Gerald being then Master of the Hospitall, to whom Raymund succeeded, which now by Roman privile ge did thus domineere. The Patriarke went a dangerous journey Pope Adrian with others to Rome, where he received bad entertainment, the Cardinals (all but two) following Balaam sonne of Bosor, and going after gifts. The Emperour of Conflantmople at that time by the Popes confent inuaded Apulia.

About this time the Soldan of Egypt flew the Calypha, to make his some Noferedine, Calypha; Egyptian but the fact being knowne, the Countrey was too hot for him, who flying the Egyptian Frying-broiles. pan, fell into the fire of the Frankes, which flew him and tooke No feredine, whom defiring to 40 become a Christian, the Templers fold to the Egyptians for fixtie thousand Egyptian pieces of Cruellbale-

gold, which carried him in an Iron Grate into Egyps, and there cut him in small pieces. The sesse, yeere after, Ranialdus de Castellione Prince of Anisochia invaded Cyprus with hostile Legions, Cyprus inva a Christian neighbour Countrey, alway friendly to vs. He overthrew their Armie, wasted Ci- dec ties. Townes, Monasteries, raufhed Nunnes, obtayned infinite spoiles, which he soone spent as prodigally. The King also brake his league with the Turkes at Paneas, for greedinesse of spoile League broken to pay his debts : which was soone reuenged. Noradine belieged the Towne, which the King which was caused him with an Armie to leaue, but lo, as waiting better opportunitie, which hee soone found, to doe more hurt to the Kings Armie; taking the most of the geeat Men therein, the King hardly escaping, and consequently (in that time) the Kingdome. He againe besiegeth Pa-

50 near, and againe by the King is repelled. After this , the King befieged Cafaren , and with the Cafaren taken. helpe of Theodorick Earle of Flanders , then with his forces present , wanne it : and after that Harenc. He dyed, Anno 1 162. and his brother Amalricus succeeded.

He in his first yeere descended into Fapps, and fought with Dargan the Soldan, and obtai- Baldwins death ned victorie: who, left he should proceed turther, brake the bankes of Nilus then swolne, to o- Amaintensfucuerflow the Countrey. Dargan was soone after slaine. Noradine inuaded the Countrey of Tripolis, but by helpe of Westerne Pilgrims then comme thicher , his Armie was diffipated, himfelfe hardly escaping , with one Legge bare, leaving his Sword behinde. Of these Pilgrims Three Prince Gilbert de Laci, and Robert Manfel were Commanders. To recouer his credit, he befieged Ha- taken. rene, where Boamund the third Prince of Antiochia, Raimund the Earle of Tripolis, and Caliman 6c President of Cilicia and Toros, an Armenian Prince opposing, were discomfitted, and the three

former, with divers other Nobles taken, Anno 1165. Syracon tooke an in expugnable Fort by corruption of the Keepers, called Cauca de Tyrom. He An Affe laden prepared great forces against Sanar the Soldan of Egypt, by authoritie of the Calpba of Baildac, with gold, b. ft earying Water in Bottles thorow the Defart. Amalricus followed him, his whole Armie mee-

ruines remaine ten miles beyond Nilus, (till called Memphis, and therefore this is not the old

Tempest of

The Palace

Memphis) lobar built Cabere, in the yeare after Mahomet 3 5 8. The King and Soldan agreed to goe meete Syracon, which was passed ouer the River before they came. Some remainders they tooke, which told them, that in the Wildern fle fuch a tempest of Sand in manner of Clouds. and a thicke Mift hapned, that they durft not open their mouthes or eyes, and were forced to alight and lye downe, left the Whirle-wind should lift them vp in the ayre, to receive greater fals on the earth. The Sands there, are moueable with the winds like wanes of the Sea, and no leffe dangerous. Many were loft, together with their Camels and prouisions, and many scattered to Tibute paid in the Deferts. Sauar, to hold the King with him in that danger, encreafed the tribute, and by the Buttle gaue larger pay to his followers: to which the Calipba also bound himselfe, Hugo Cafariensis assouth King being therefore sent to him. He and Galfridus came to Cabere, and entred the Palace Casere. passing by darke passages needing lights, (in every of which was a guard) vnto more spacious places open to the Sunne, where they faw Galleries borne vp with Marble Pillars, the Roofes gilled, with carued workes, the pauements diverlified, prefenting a Royall felendor. There were marble fish-ponds, many strange Birds vnknowne in our World, with their prouisons. Then they passed to places as farre exceeding these, as these the vulgar. Heere was admirable varietie of admirable beafts. By many turnings they came to the Palace of this Palace, where The Calipba's were greater Gards, more glorious Courtiers, and fupereminent riches. The Soldan which con- 20 ducted them, twice profitated himielfe with a kind of adoration, and the third time being proftrate, he laid afide his fword from his necke. Prefently the Curtaines embroydered with Gold and Pearle were drawne from about the Throne, where the Cal pha fate in more then Royall habite, arrended with a few Domestickes and Eunuches. The Soldan approached with reverence, and kiffed his feet, and then acquainted him with the affaires of the prefent flate, to which hee

gaue a gentle Answere. And when Ours defired him to confirme it with his hand, his atten-

dants made strange, as a thing vnheard off : but at last the Soldan vrging, he stretched forth his hand, but veiled: to whom Hugo, Sir, Faith feekes not corners, and in faith betwixt Prin-

ces all things ought to bee hare with open finceritie: whereat hee vinwilling, yet finling, gaue him his bare hand, (which the Egyptians much grudged at) putting it into the hand of Ha- 13

go, ving the words of the compact. Hee was as the Lord Hago hath told vs,a young man,

browne, tall, comely, liberall, had innumerable Wines: his name was Elbadech, the Sonne

The division betwixt the Calipba of Baldae, and this hapned by the Schiffne of Hali,

His person. Mehenetan Lee 1,6,c.1.

Carasan. The Authors ftory of Ma-The barrell of the Deferts.

Alexandria

which made himselfe a greater Prophet then Mehemet : those that acknowledge Mehemet the Summi and Sfia. greatest being called Summi, and the followers of Hab, Sfia. In the yeare 286. of Mehemet, arose one Abdalla, of Halis Posteritie, which from Selencia a Citie in the East passed into Afriartie one Annua, it i mais Pottettite, which from sementa a Litter in the Last patter into Assistance, and called himslife Mebeds (the is, make plaine) which built Mebeds, tooke Sielila, made spoiles in Italia, and called himslife Calpha, first of all the followers of Hals: His great Grand-foiles some Ebustennia, by show his Captaine field duing Egypt, built Cabere, which fignifieth to conquering: wherefore heaving Carea in Africa, where four of his Progenitors had dwelche made that the Imperiall Seat, opposing himielie to the Easterne Calipba, as I have more largely shewed in mine Historie of the Eastern Princes & their Acts from Mehemet to this day (1182.) with great diligence, King Amalricus procuring me the Arabian Bookes. But leaving these digressions, a battell was fought betwixt the King and Syracon, very various both getting the better and the worfe, neither partie conquering nor conquered in the whole, but in divers parts of their Armies. Saladine Ner hew of Syracon tooke Hugo Cafariensis. The Bishop of Beiblem, the Kings Chancellor (in which office I increeded) was wounded and loft his baggage. Spracon paffed thence to Alexandria, and the Citizens received him. The King followed : but Syracon leauing the Citie to Salabadone, escaped by night. The King besieged the Citie and put them to 50 great strates. Hugo (then captiue) was vsed as an Instrument of Treatie, and the Citie yeelded to Amalricus, Anno 1 1 67. But Amalricus by Gerbert Master of the Hospitall his meanes (Pelusium beeing promised to the Hospitalers) brake his league and entred Egypt in hostile manner, the Templers refusing to follow, either of enuie to the Hospitalers, or of conscience, which the King violated.

Pelusium was taken, no Age or Sexe spared, and Mahazam Sonne of the Soldon was taken. Sauso sends to Noradon for aide which sent Syracon thicker with an Armie. The King proceeded towards Cabere, but went flowly vpon promife of great fummes from the Soldan, which deceived him. His Navie passing up the River by the arme thereof Carabes, forced Tap-Caro belieged. ns. The King laid his fiege to Cabere, but vpon promile of money removed a mile further. Milo 60 de Planes disturbeth the businesse, but Syracon more, who entring Egypt, the King went to meete him, but miffing returned home. Syracon taking the oportunitie entred Cabere in peace, treacherously flue Sanar, and was by the Calipba made Soldan, foone after dying, and Salabadine

fucceeding. The Easterne Emperour sent in succour of the Holy Land, a strong Fleet of one hun- Lib. 20. dred and office Gallies of Warre, besides other Vessels of service, whereupon, Anno 1 1 60. Amalricus againe entred Egypt, and came to Damiata, which hee belieged in vaine, if it bee not more then vaine, that themselnes forced with fire, famine, raines, returned (so many as were

The yeare following followed a most terrible Earthquake, veterly overthrowing strong Gi- Const fices. ties, involving the Inhabitants in the ruines, filling every place in the Land with laments. Thus fared it with the Cities of Syria, and Phanicia throwne to the ground, and Antiochia in Cale-

fria was quite ouerthrowne; the Walls, Towers, Churches, Houses for ruined, that to this day they 10 cannot be reduced to a meane restauration. Gabul, Laodicea, Nerea called otherwise Halavia. Terrible Cafara, Hanum, Emilla, and many other Cities in that Prouince, Townes without number: fa. Earthquake. red likewife. Tripolis was made a heape of stones, and publike Sepulchre : fearfly any escaping. Tyru loft her Towers. These terrors continued three or foure moneths, thrice or foure times a

day. Palest ma remayned free.

After this Salabadine invadeth the Countrey, taketh Gaza, makes cruell executions and re- Beldwin the turneth into Egypt. Milo the Armenian adioyneth himselfe to Noradine, vexeth the Antio- fourth his Le. chian Territories. Salahadine (poyleth all the Countrey beyond Iordan. Anno 1 1 7 3. Amalri- profice. em dyeth, and his Sonne Baldwm succeeded, whom his Father at nine yeares of age had committed to our Erudition (then Arch-deacon of Tyre) his right arme was flupified and feutleffe.

20 the beginning of an incurable Difeafe, when he was a ftripling proouing a Leprofie. Hee had a Sifter named Sybilla. In the first yeare of his Reigne, William King of Sicilia, fent a Nauje of two hundred thirs against Alexandria, which returned with great loffe and thame. Salabadine the Salatine. Sonne of Nevmend, Brother of Syracon, was called by the Damascens, and made Lord of Damascus, the Sonne of Noradine being differited. Corobedi Lord of Musul, came in his Nephewes behalfe against him, but in vaine, Salabadine winning the rest of the Countrey. After this with behalte game, the entreth the Kingdome, layeth all waste, is encountred and ouerthrowne by the King: Salabadine slying with scarse one hundred Horse, an innumerable company beeing tathe king Saussane uping 178. inuaded the Enemies Countrey, and hardly elcaped the Lord Ken or flaine. The King 1178. inuaded the Enemies Countrey, and hardly elcaped the Lord Constable and others being flaine. In a battell also against Salabadine, ours having gotten the 30 field laden with prey, are spoiled and made a prey to the conquered. The Earle Treconfis and the Brother of King Lewis of France, Peter, and other Nobles with a great power came into Swis

but could not withfland the current of Salabadines victories, which now possessed himselfe of a Castle which the King had lately built neere Iordan, and raced it. Hee makes league with the King and breakes it, and takes divers holds by Sea and Land, annoying the Kingdome. But wea- Lib, 12: rie of bloud I follow this Author no further, who festorie is left vnperfect, as the King then was in state of bodie, committeing the Gouernment of the Kingdome to Guide of Laziniac, on whom before he had bestowed his Sister in Marriage. I will likewise commit you to an Engilo Author and Acts in thefe bufineffes,

If any bee offended, that the date and yeare of each Exploit is not mentioned, it is because the Author

CHAP. IIII.

The Continuation of the Ierusalem Expedition and other Additions, gathered out of MATTHEW PARIS, chiefly relating the Acts of Eng-lish Pilgrimes in that Employment.

Templers beginning and degeneration. Huge slaughters of Christians. SALADINES taking lerufalem and the Holy Land.



Bout the years 1118, the Hospitulers were begunne by Hugo de Paganis, and Godfrey of Saint Omar. These were Knights religious in manner of Canons Regulars, denoting themselues to the service of Christ in Chassitie and Obe- Beginning of dience; to whom King Baldwin gaue a residence in part of his Palace, the Ca- the Templers. nons of the Temple of our Lord gaue the fireet adioyning to build Offices; the

King, Patriarke and Prelates gaue Benefices for their maintenance. Their first profession was, for remission of their sinnes, to secure the wayes for Pilgrimes against Theeues. Nine yeares after, at the Councell of Treca, a rule and white habit was deligned them by

Their poffef-

Pope Honorius: and nine yeares after that their number (being but nine) beganne to increase together with their Poffesions ; after which in the time of Pope Eugenius, they fewed Croffes of red Cloth to their Mantles. In a small time they were so many, that in their Count they have three hundred Knights, belides other Brethren, whose number is almost infinite : and their Posfeilions on this and the otherfide of the Sea are faid to bee fo immenfe, that there is no part of Christendome, which hath not bestowed on them part of their goods, and they are now richer then Kings. And because their abode is neere the Temple, they are called Brethren of the Souldierie of the Temple : and having continued fome time in good order, the humilitie of their protelfion now being neglected, they have withdrawne themselves from the Patriarke their formder. withholding Obedience, and the Churches Tithes, and are become very troublesome to all. 10

Anno 11 46. was a Councell held at Rhemes, and Preachers appointed for the Holy Land

which the Saracens did ouer-runne without refiftance. Conrade the Emperourat the preaching of Bernard tooke the Croffe, and with him an innumerable multitude. In May following, hee beganne his Pilgrimage, leading with him feuentie thousand Horse-men armed, besides light * Loricatorum Horfe-men, * Footmen, Women and Children. Lewis King of France followed him with no leffe an Armie of armed Horfe-men. They went afunder for better provision for themselves a E at Leuioris and their Horfes. Passing Bauaria, the Danow, Austria, Hungarie, and both Pannowias, also the Bulgarian Provinces, Mesia and Dacia; Conrade came into Thrace and to Constantinople: thence This is here (after speech with Manuell the Emperour) passed into and thorow Asia to Licaonia. The Solrepiated for dan of Iconium had hired great forces out of the East. The Guides which the Constantinopolitan 20 or in fe axpe- had given him, with Greekiff fleight, as is faid, through enuie of their Mafter, brought them into difficult paffages, and fo betrayed them, before familhed, to the Turkes expected opportunitie and furie; that of the feuentie thousand armed Horsemen, and Footmen, in manner innumerable. Defeat of the fearfly the tenth part escaped, the rest shared betwixt Famine, the Sword and Captimitie, Conradus escaped to Nice, and so to Constantinople, where he wintered. The next Spring he passed by Sea to Achon, and was received by the King joyfully at Ierusalem.

French Armie. This yeare 1147. Anig Lemn Canal before their particular before a great Nauie of thips which followed him, The Enemie attended to hinder their particular their pa fage ouer the water, which cost many mens lives. Comming to Laedicea, they ascended a high Mountaine, where they were miserably discomfitted by the Turkes. Yet did the King with Elia- 30 nor the Queene hold on their Pilgrimage to Ierusalem, where their case is much condoled. The Emperour and both the Kings agreed to befiege Damafous, which they did : where the Emperour forcing his way at the watering place, itrooke off a Turkes head (which fought luftily) together with the Head-piece, the necke and shoulder armed, with his Sword, dividing the left arme and fide under it from the reft of the bodie. The Citizens terrified, corrupted fome Princes with Bribes, who indecoured to dissolve the siege, which Treason of the Easterne Christians, was odious to those of the West, and caused the Emperour and the French to returne home, abhominating the fellowship of these Easterne Princes, and cooling others Deuotions to this Pil-

This yeare 1147. King Lewis came to Meander with feuentie thousand armed Horsemen.

Conrades

Eafterne trea-

Prince Raiflaine by Affa-

Templers treacherie. Pope Adrian. Papall schisme.

T. Becket murthered for maintayning the Clergies Liberties, againft the Semurthers, &c.

the Prevince of Phanicia, have ten Castles and fortie thousand men or more. These elect their chiefe whom they call. The old man of the Mountaine, at whose word they will attempt any thing. There have beene precifer Saracens then othres foure hundred yeares. Their old man at this time began to embrace Christian Religion, and fent for that purpose a Legate to the King of Ierusalem, which by one of the Templers was slaine, to the hinderance of the businesse till this day. Anno 1154. Adrian an Engl forman was made Pope, borne in the Territorie of Saint to Albans. The same yeare Ascalon was wonne by King Baldmin after a long siege. Pope Adrian dying, 11 co. there grew a digition touching the Papacie, betwixt the English and French, following Alexander, and the Imperials, Octavian : infomuch, that the Archbilhop

After their departure, Anno 1148. Noradine entred the Confines of Antiochia, besieged No. 40 pa, flue Prince Raimand with other Nobles in battell, tooke the Castle Hareng, and spoyled all

the Countrey. Anno 11 5 0. Raimund Earle of Tripolis was flaine by the Affifines; a man deplo-

red as dreadfull to the Saracens: Thele Affifines inhabit the Mountaines neere to Antaradus, in

of Collen comming into England, to receive the Kings Daughter for the Duke of Saxonie to wite, the Alta's whereon he faid Maffe were fubuerted, 1165.

Anno 1171. Thomas Becket was flaine in his Church at Canterburie, on the fifth day of the Natiuitie, by William Tracie, Hugh Marnell, Reginald Fitz Vo fi, and Richard Briton, Courtiers, which had heard fome flomackfull speeches of the King, touching the faid Archbishop, wherevpon King Harry fent to Rome to excuse himselfe. But his Ambassadors could not bee admitted to the Popes prefence. Hee fent others, which on Maundie Thurfday, hearing that the Pope 60 meant to fentence the King of England by name, and to interdict all his Lands, the Ambasiadors to decline the fame, fware that the King should wholly obey the Pope and his Cardinals. The Authors and Fautors were excommunicated. The Church of Canterburie continued after his Funerall, a yeares Funerall of her Holies, the Pauement plucked up, the Wallsbared, the

The King swore in the presence of Albert and Theodiste the Popes Cardinals, that hee was not conscious of Thomas his death: but because he had spoken rashly, and had brought up such had Souldiers (which fo auenged him) hee defired and obtayned absolution, promiting as he was injoyned, To give so much money as should maint ague two bundred Knights, to the defence Bekets murof the Holy Land for one yeare, and that he should permit appeales thenceforth to be made freely, and theras the of the Holy Land for one years, and that he forming perms agreemes isomequication or entmine years, and unce a unce a unce that the cofficient which is his times were brought in construct to the thereties of the Cheroch, flowald be effect of the reached, and that the polificiant taken from the Church of Canterbarie flowald be retired. To this freed made the two Kings, both Father and Sonne, [water in remissioner percursaves. Soone after the uncases of came to Canterburie, 1174, and bare-foot, in manner of a penitent went to the chiefe Church, Reme by apto and with abundance of teares, to the Martyrs Sepulchre, where he continued long proftrate in peales, liberprayer. He there protested his innocency, but because his words gaue occasion of the Bishops ties &c. death, hee defired of the Bilhops prefent absolution, and submitting his bare fiesh to the discipline of Rods, he received three or foure blowes of every religious man, of which a great multi- Monther of retude had affembled. After which he put on his clothes, gaue precious gifts to the Martyr, affig- gall penance. ning further fortie pounds a yeere for lights about the Sepulchre, and continued the rest of that day and the night following in bitternesse of minde, continuing his prayers, vigils and fasts till

brought before a secular Magistrate for any crime, but for Forest and lay fee : that Bilhoprickes and ties. Abbies |bould not be holden aboue a yeere in the Kings hand: that the killer of a Clergie man should be arraigned before the fecular Iudge, in prefence of the Bifton : that Clergie men foould not be compelled

Anno 1177, the Kings of England and France did Sweare to goe together in the service of Chrift crucified to Ierusalem, and to take the Croffe, and to hold firme league. An. 1179. a Coun-Councell cell was helden at Rome against Albigenfos, that Ecclesiasticall persons should not bee compelled to stand to the judgement of Lay-men, that Archbishops v siting Churches should bee content with fortie or fiftie horles, against pluralities, &c. About the same time Pope Alexander writ to Priest John, King of the Indians, the Wing that Philip a Phylician had told him of his defire to be in- This Priest John structed in the Catholike and Apostolike assembline, and that they differted in nothing from the Doctrine was not that of the Apostolike Sea: and that, as Philip had learned of his subjects, he defired to have a Church and in Abasia, not

30 four Apriling Sies and tone, at the pass and the spiral posses a spiral to sale of the course and to the course of the spiral posses of of the spiral the Kingdome, whole government being not prosperous, it was committed to Raimund Earle

In these times, Saladine Soldan of Damasco, having subdued the Saracens in the East, passed over Saladines ex-Iordan, spoiled Crach Castle, burned Neapolis, destroyed Arabia, wasted Gerinum. And Baldwin plous being dead, Baldwin a child of fine yeers old fucceeded, his nephew by his fifter Sybilla: Raimund was Protector. The Clergie and People feeing the flate of the Kingdome vnlikely to continue.

40 fent Embalfadors to Henrie King of England, folemnly offering the Kingdome of Ierufalem, and Henry the fekeyes of the holy Citie and Sepulchre, Heraclins, the Patriarke vnder-tooke the Emballage with condelected the Master of the Hospital, and others, bringing by the way the Letters of Pope Lmins. He found King of Icrathe King at Reading, Anno 1185, whom with his Courtiers they prouoked to teares. They sales. brought vnto him the Keyes of the Natinitie, of the Paffion, of the Refurrection , of the Tower of David, and of the holy Sepulchre, and the Banner of the Kingdome : which all he much honored. The Popes Letter was this. Lucius Episcopus seruns serunorum Dei, Gc. Whereas all thy The Popes Predecessors, aboue other Princes of the Earth, have long since stownshed in glorie of Armer, and Nobi-Letter, like of minde, and the Christian people hath learned to have them Patrons in their adversitie, worthin its of mana, one not profit on purpose one can read to some teams, as even managing, we county
is their records to thee, the three, not of the Kindelme alone, but of the Progenitor's vertice; with a
certaine presumed securitie, when danger, yet a destruction is feared to have over the Constituin people,
that by the arma of Royall Great selfs aide may be yelded to his members, who by his pittle bath great-

ted thee to attayne the height of so great glorie, and hath ordayned thee a Wall inexpugnable against the wicked enemies of his Name. Your Maiestie may further take notice, that Saladine the cruellest persecutor of the holy Name of the Crucified, bath so prevailed in the spirit of furie against the Christians of the Holy Land, that except the courses of his crueltie bee by some obstacles stayed, her hath confidence that Iordan will flow into his mouth, ere.

Hereupon, a Parliament was affembled at London at Clerken-Well, in which the King adjured all his Subjects, in the audience of the Legats, to flew what might bee most expedient for his foule, promiting to performe whatfoever they should aduite. His Parliament adusted that hee 60 should moderately gouerne his Kingdome, and preserve it from birbarous incufions, rather then in his owne person to prouide for the tafetie of the East. As concerning the Kings Sonnes (one of which the Patriarke defired, if the King refused) it seemed vnsitting to determine any thing in their absence. The King with the Patriarke passed the Sea to Roan, and had three dayes conference with the French King, and in their presence many Nobles received the Crosse-

the third day. In the yeere 1176, hee granted the Popes Legat, that no Clergie man (hould bee Clergie-liber-

1218 Sybillas Jutlety, Saladine taketh the King and Ierusalem, LIB.VIII

Both the Kings promifed the speediest helpe, and the Patriarke returned home.

Ba'dwin dieth.

Anno 1186, Baldwin the Child being dead, Sybilla was crowned Queene, as Heire to the former Kings . but was enjoyined to discree folemnely Guido her Husband , with condition woon Oath to receive him for King whomfoeuer the should choose. Guide himselfe also intreated it, that the Kingdome should sustayne no damage for his sake, and returned home. Saladines comming being bruted, thee affembled the Lords Spirituall and Temporall to confult about a Kine . A womans wite and when they granted her to name whom shee liked, all beeing in expectation, shee said ynto Guido there present, My Lord Guido, I choose you for my Hujband, and delivering my selfe with the Kingdome to you, doe publikely protest that you shall be King. Heereat all were amazed that one woman had deluded fo many wife men.

About this time. Saladines Mother in confidence of the Truce passed with great riches from Truce broken. Egypt, into the parts of Damascus, by the borders of Iordan, and was robbed by Reginaldof Castellion. Whereupon Saladine demanded satisfaction and restitution according to couenant: but Reginald returned harth Answere. Saladine glad of the occasion, prepared himselfe for reuenge. In the end of Ianuary, the Kings of England and France tooke the Cioffe.

Anno 118 7. Saladine affembleth Parthans, Bedwines, Turkes, Saracens, Arabians, Medes. and Cordines, with whom and the Egyptians hee inuadeth the Christians. Hee flue the Mafter of the Templars, with threef ore of his Brethren, and befieged Caluaria. The King affembled all the ffrench of his Kingdome, the Earle of Tripolis being chiefe Commander. They fought and Saladine prevailed. The Earle of Tripoles is faid to have throwne away the Kings Stan- 20 dard, and procured the flight. The King was taken with the holy Crosse, and the rest either taken or flaine. The Earle of Tripolis and fome Templers escaped. Saladine made vie of his victorie, fent the King and Captiues to Damasem, tooke Ptolemaids; and after that lerusalem, each man redeeming his libertie at ten Bizantines, a woman at fiue, an infant at one, the rest to bee Ierusalem taken flaues, which had not to pay, of which poorer were fourteene thousand. They entred the Citie and caused in foure corners of the Temple their Superstitions to bee proclamed. Hasting thence he possessed himselie of all the Cities and Townes, but Ascalon and Tyrus, and Crach or Mount Royall. For the redemption of those fourteene thousand, it is to be noted, that Crosles. Chalices. Guildings, and Church-garments were fold by confent.

The Emperour and two Kings take the Croffe, King RICHARD the First his Expedition, his Noble Exploits in Sicil, Cyprus, and the Holy Land. His imprisonment : and the great miseries which b spred to England, generally by that Expedition. No. 1188. at the preaching of the Popes Legate, the Emperour Fredericke tooke the Croffe. The Kings of England and France agreed after much confulcation, to-

" The Author

gether with the Earle of Flanders, to take the Croffe, which the King of England did at the hands of William Archbishop of Tyre, * fent by the Pope for that purpose. of the former
Whereupon both in the Empire and in both Kingdomes, Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, MarStoriequeffes, Earles, Barons, Knights, Gentlemen, and the vulgar did the like. It was also ordered, that all of the French Kingdome should weare Red Crosses, of the English White, of Flanders Greene, all things to remayne in the present State thorow all their States, till fortie dayes after their returne. But the French King entring upon the King of Englands Territories, disturbed Both Letters the Affaires of the Croffe, King Hem, righting himfelfe by Warre. The Emperour Fredericke 10 are in Mat. P.at fent a Letter of Dehance to Saladine, and challenged to himselfe the old feathers of the Romane Eagle, euen vnto Eibiopia and Perfia, which Saladine answered and out-braued, setting forth large. Faith not to be the pullance and numbers of the Saracens, demanding also the three remayning Holds to bee furrendred to him. He delivered King Guido, taking his Oath to forfake the Kingdome, and beof Religion, intrendred to him. He occurred him of Religion, that is, Faith take himself to Sea. But the Clergic of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is take himself to Sea. But the Clergic of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is not to be kept in the perill of Religion, and therfore the King being absolued from bonds, many Pilthat Faith may grims reforted to him, and with the people of the Countrey made a great band. The King with Inc.
Zeale of those the Hospitulers and Templers, Venetians, and Genuois came to Achon, and layd siege to it, which times. Viman continued to the comming of the Kings, Philip and Richard, and then was taken.

The meaner fort of men are so possessed with deposit Zeale , that they stay not the com- 60 & feientia conmings of their Kings and Lords, but flow from the vetermost parts of the Wold to serue

> Saladine came with a great power to raile the fiege, but fruffrated of his hopes, he returned with shame, a Nauie of twelve thousand Danes and Frislanders, comming to the ayde of the

CHAP. 4. S.2. English monies Speat, fariner exactions comiferies, by the H. Land. 1210

Christians, after three dayes weary fight. Meane-while the French King with Earle Richard. against his father King Henrie continued the warre, with much spoile and bloudshed on both against instatuer Aug Jacobse County and The Emperour of Conflantinople, and refigned the Churches of Greekes and Sathe Holy Land vitto him, therein to observe the Greeke holies. The Emperour promised to send vacens conspi-Saladine one hundred Galleyes, and Saladine him the whole Holy Land, on condition to hinder the Westerne Pilgrimes. And if any at Constantinople accepted the Crosse, he was presently imprisoned. About the same time some Northerne Pilgrimes sayling thorow the English Seas, aprinciples and feet forth together from Dortefmouth, which passing by Liebor. green with Laguer in the King of Portugall to helpe him to subject the Citie Syluia, Swearing to Sykataken by were requested by the state of fixtie thousand Inhabitants, spared onely thire help of English

perinte the spone to the sword; dedicating the Mahometan Temple for a Christian Cathedrall King Richard.

our Lady.

King Henrie, wearied with the French and his fonnes actions, died, and left his fonne Richard of treasure his Heire; of whom the Poet, Mira canam, fol occubuit, nox nulla secuta est; and of his Father, and sinke of nis riene : of whom the a fuffecerat Orbis. He left about nine hundred thousand pounds in gold bloud, the land and filter, befides Plate and lewels, and precious stones. At the same time died Geffrie Bishop of called Holy, Ely intestate, of whose goods were confiscate three thousand markes of filter, and two hundred proued. markes of gold, besides other treasures in Plate, Iewels, and Gold. King Richard deposed al- "A marke was most all the Sheriffes from their Offices and their Dependants, to wring great summes by re-eightounces.

20 deeming them. And for regayning of the Holy Land, hee fet almost all things to sale, Donati- Kings sales. ons, Caitles, Mannors, Woods, Townes, Sheriffewicks, and the like. Hugo the Pompous Bishop of Durbam, bought to him and his Church the Kings Towne is eggsifield, with the Wapintike and all appurtenances, and the Earledome of Northumberland, guing ouer and aboue one thoufand markes to be Justice of England, and to redeeme his voyage to the Holy Land. And for fur- Popes praise ther fecuritie, hee with infinite money obtayned of the Apoltolike Sea (which is wanting to by a Monke, none that giveth money frankly) license to remayne, notwithstanding his voluntarie vow. The Christians and Saladine had a bloudy battell, with great losse on both sides. The French

King fent to treat with the King of England, for their meeting in the Holy Expedition, and feany tent of the Countries meanwhile. King Richard having fafted and prayed at Thomas Bec-Surefficion

kets Tombe, vowing to performe to the Cherch those things, for which he had suffered; passing advanced. to Normandie, in the Sea hee vowed to that Saint to erect in his honor a Chappell in the Holy Land, he being his Protector by Sea and Land; which he performed after at Achon, The Bishops Miseries to of Ely and Durham, had chiefe charge of the Kingdome in his absence : the one being chiefe Iu- England by flice (and having the Kings Seale) from the great River to the South, the other to the North : King Richard but this double headed beaft agreed not. The Archbishop of Canterburie interdicted the Lands voyage.

of Earle John, whose appeale the Popes Legate received, and released the Interdict. A tenth of Earle 18000, Whole appear of part of moueable goods, was given for the Holy Land affaires thorow the Kingdome, which in Exactions, flead of almes, vexed the Clergie and Laytie with spoile in the exacting. Likewise the King 40 fayned that he had loft his Seale, and made a new, that all men which would bee fecure . were forced to feeke the new Seale, and many to follow him therefore out of the Land, and to fine

with him at his pleasure. Anno 1190, the Kings of England and France, Sware to each other the Articles of the league (their Earles and Barons did likewife) as also, that if one died in the Expedition, the Surgiuor should have the money and people of the deceased. William an English-man, vowed in his way to lerusalem, that if he arrived lafely at Achon, he would build a Chappell to Saint Thomas the Beckets Hospi-Martyrs honor, with a Church-yard, which he did, and was made there the first Prior. Saladine tall at Athon.

corrupting Commanders with money, burned the Christians Fortifications. King Richard procured his Chancellor, the Bishop of Ely, to be the Popes Legat. 50 The two Kings met at Nizeliac, where in the Church of Saint Denis , King Richard tooke Beginning of

his Scripand Staffe. They came to Lions, and passing the Bridge, it brake, and many were drow- the Kings exned in the Rhofne. Their people were formany that they could not goe together; and therefore pedition, the French King went to Genua, the English to Messana. Here King Richard found many Pilgrims which had spent al their prouision with long stay, whom he adioyned to his own troups. grims which had spent at the 1 possible.

King Richard was requested to visit the Pope, which he refused, objecting to the Cardinall the Remarks species. Ring Richard Was required to the for confectation of a Bilhop, had taken feuen hundred markes, and for The Emptror the Legaritine power of the Bishop of E/3, had taken fifteene hundred marks, and infinit summes drowned. of the Archbishop of Burdeaux, accused by his Clergie. Queene Elenor followed and over-ooke Appairion of her sonne. The same yeere, the Emperour Frederick, betwixt Iconium and Antiochia, was drow- Th. Beeker

60 ned in the River Sapher, falling off his Horfe. The Engish fleet, on holy Thursday, were might live embroyled in the Spansh Seas with a Tempeth, and Thomas of Contribute three times ap hard the Spansh Seas with a Tempeth, and Thomas of Contribute three times ap hard the Spansh Seas with a Tempeth, and Thomas of Contribute three times ap peared visibly, bidding them not to feare, for He and the Martyr Edmund, and Saint Nicholas, rions. were appointed Patrons of the Fleet, and the Tempelt prefently ceafed. Many thips were di- Eugl & men speried, one of which came to Sylvia, and eightie well armed men of the companie, were enter-entertayned tayned by the King of Portugall against the Emperour of Marocco, with good conditions. Ten rocco.

other

1220

other theps came to Lisbon, and divers travelled to Marfiles thence by Land. The Archbifhon of Canterbury, Baldwin, Hubert of Salisburie, came to Tyrus. John, Bilhop of Norwich, went to the Pone, and emptying his purie, was releated of his yow.

Philip, King of France, arrived at Melfana, and was entertayned in the Palace of King Toncred. King Richard comming a few dayes after, was forbidden entrance by the French, fearing that promision would not be procured sufficient for both. The Citizens, were willing to receive him, which the French forbad, alcending the walls armed and keeping the paffaces, Richard called to armes, and by hostile force entred, putting the French to slaughter and slight, which kindled a fire in the French Kings breft, neuer after till himfelfe was extinct, extinguished. King Richard tooke in Calabria the strong Fortrelle, called Lemba Maris, and another betwixt Calabra and Messana, called the Monasterie of the Gressons. The Gristons having slaine many men and horfes of the King, he brake in by force and tooke their Citie. The Citizens gave him

King Eichards acts in the K-ngdome of Sicilia.

pledges, and he fortified there a Castle, called Mategrine. A Councell prounciall was holden at Westminster by the Bishops Legat, little or nothing to the good of the Church. The Church Freedom: ext- of Normandie then obtayned her freedome, King Richard granting that Clergie men should not be attached by Seculars, and matters of Oathes, Marriages, Vluries, &c. should bee tried in the Spirituall Court. Baldwin the Archbishop dying at Achon, bequeathed all which he had to the fuccour of the Holy Land, which Hubert his Executor distributed faithfully. William of E'r meane-while made a ditch about the Tower, and exercised his bought Dignities with immoderate excelle to re-fill his emptied bags, prouing burthenlome to all Churches, both Con- 20 uentuall and Cathedrall, riding thorow England with fifteene hundred horse, with troups of Clergie men and Knights, attended at Table by Noblemens fonnes, whom hee married to his Neeces and Kindred : buying any Land which was to be fold, giving and retayning at pleafure Abbies vacant, by feare or price obtayning enery Castle and Towne, followed with Minstrels and Songs of all forts : none durit murmure against him. His stile was in his Letters . W. Dei gratia, Eliensis Episcopus, D. R. Cancellarius, totisu Anglie Iustitiarius, & Apostolica sedus

Bishop of E.

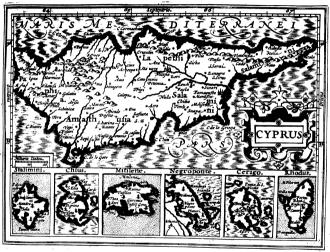
HONDIVS bis Map of Sicilia.



CHAP.4. S.2. K. Richard conquereth Cyprus. Achon taken, French Ensy. 1221

Anno 1191, the French King tooke ship at Messana, in the end of March, and in the beginning of Aprill King Richard followed with thirteene Galleons, * one hundred thips of bur- * Eucen violici ning of Aprill Aing Account to lowed with timeteen Carryon. Curfae the Lord of the Hand, we's un expenwhich called himselfe Emperor, tooke and imprisoned many of King Richards men, wherewhich caree maintain company, notes and imprimite menty of King Krebards men, where you have warred against him, tooke him and his only Daughter and findheed the which land, by me shided by with all the strong places to his slibit cition. He bound the King in filter Fetters and in profession by K.Rishard. with all the strong places to his subicction. He bound the King in silver Fetters, and in prisoned him at Margusto Castle neere Tripolis. The Daughter received Honourable custodie with the two Queenes.

HONDIVS bis Map of Cyprus.



Philip Earle of Flanders going to the Holy Land with the French King , dyed without iffue. 50 The Armie which befriged Achon, was befrieged with Famine, which with a well turnsfled Nathe King Richard relieued, in the way inking a Dromund, a huge thip of Saladines going to aide Achon, and tathe besieged, frighted with Wild-fire, Vessels sal of vnknown Serpents, & fine hundred Souldiers. king a Dro-The Kings divers, whiles it was becalmed, bored many holes therein, fo that the goods hee fa- mand. utd, but drowned three hundred of the men. When the two Kings were now at Achon, they Achon taken. came to capitulation; and Saladine couenanted to render the Croffe (before taken) and fifteene Frinchenute. hundred choice Christian Captines, and seuen thousand Bizantines to saue the lines of the Sara- calum nonanicons, the rell remayning to the Victors. But when the conditions were not kept, two thouland & wam mains, fix hundred Saracens lost their heads. The French King enuying the glorie of all the Christian 91.00.c. Exploits a cribed to the English King, pretended for want of money to returne. Hereupon King 60 Richard offered to communicate for the Service of the Holy Land, one halfe of his gold, filter, victuals, aimes, flips : who yet had fworne, and against the wils of his owne . and to the difguit of the whole Armie, must needs home. Another quarrell arose, the King of France purpoting to deliver Achon, and all what souer they should take to Marchisus of Mount Ferrat , and to make him King of the Holy Land, King Richard standing for Guido. But Meffana had begunne

and an unhappie running at Tile, had made runne on this diffention. Hee left the Duke of Burgundie with one thousand men at Armes in shew to doe service to King Richard, instructed before in Treacherie. Thus fwearing to inuade no mans Land there prefent, he returned; and King Richard repayred the breaches, and ditched and fortified Achon.

The Coast Cities hearing of his approach fled, having no hope of fuccour from Saladine: The Country The Country thus they did in Carphas, in Cafarea, Joppe, Affis, Gaza, Afcalon, fo that all the Region on the King Richard. Sea from Achon to Joppe was taken, yet not without great loffe to the Christians, whom Saladines Armie still attended, wayting all opportunities of mischiefe.

King Richard in a Letter to the Archbilhop of Roan, tels of a Battell and great overthrow ginen Saladine neere Affur, wherein more of the chiefe Saracens were loft, then had beene in one day in fortie to reares before : after which Saladine durft not attempt by open force, but by fecret ambufbes. Hee ouerturned Ascalon, and made it even with the ground, hearing of our comming thither, and wee base hope (horsely to recouser a'l our Lords Inberisance.

King Richard emeth the of 17.146

King Richard being returned, gave the Kingdome of Ierusalem to his Nephew Henrie, with the Wife of Marchifus de Monte Feratio, beeing heire of the Kingdome, now her Sifter the Kingdomes of Queene was dead, Guida confenting, to whom King Richard gaue Coprus, lately gotten by the Sword, for which he did him homage. The faid Marchifius, was a little before murthered at Tyrus by the Affasines.

When Saladine had taken Ierufalem, the Inhabitants had gathered together the Relikes they Treafure of recould find, and put them in foure great Iuorie Chifts, which he (learning what they were com- 20 manded to be carried to Baldach, and given to the Calipha, that the Christians should no longer glory God opened of dead mens bones, and beleene to have them Intercoffors in Heaven, whose bones they watfinged on an Aneto teach the Pro. Earth. But the Prince of Antioch and the Patriarke loth to be deprined of fuch a Treasure, of uenanted by Oath to redeeme them at fiftie two thouland Bizantines, or elfe to returne them. The Prince fealed them vp, and all Christians were deiested, the time being at hand for the pay. ment, King Richard paid the money that they might intercede for him in Heauen, whose bones

he had redeemed on Earth from the hands of Infidels. Combultions hapned, meane-while, in England, by the Chancellors excesses, the iffue where-Chancellors

of was his Deposition, he and his having to exhausted the Kingdomes wealth, that they left not a Girdle striped with Siluer, nor a Ring, or lewell, or any thing of worth to any, nor Treasure 10 to a Iew. The Chancellor sware to the Articles, and to deliver vpall the Castles before his departure. He came to Canterburie, and their tooke the Croffe of Pilgrimage, and laid downe that of his Legantie Office : and getting closely to Doner, thought to have stolne ouer Sea in a Womans Habit. Wayting on the shoare for passage, a Mariner was somewhat homely with him. and found him as arrant a man as himfelfe, by the testimonie of his Breeches. Hee calls in company, and women would needs buy of him his piece of cloth, which hee had taken to cloke his Sexe and businesse: but he viderstanding no English, could say nothing, whereupon they remo-England withued his Muffler, and found a Shaueling whom they dragged contumeliously alongst the Strand, with cryes, buffets, fpittings, and haling him thorow the ffreets, imprisoned him in a Cellar; Who yet escaped by leaving his Oath to the Lord, and his Pledges (and his two Brethren) to an the Lords, and gate over to Normandie.

Richard his captiuitie.

Prelate and

King Richard belieged the Caltle Darum, the next of Christendome towards Babylon, and wanne it. Soone after hee tooke a rich Carouan of Merchants guided by Saladines Souldiers, Caule of King with leven thousand Camels richly laden. The Duke of Austria came about that time to performe his Vow in the Holy Land service, where a quarrell falling out betwirt his Harbengers, and a Normanof King Richards, the King inconfiderately, taking his mans part, caused the Dukes Colours to be cast into a lakes, which the Duke lecking to right, was further wronged with tooffes; whereupon the Duke feeing himfelfe contemned by the King , turning to the King of Kings invoked him with teares to his revenge, which after fell out accordingly. King Richard with his late gotten spoile would have gone and laid siege to Ierufalem, where the feare 50 of his name and comming had alreadie terrified the Inhabitants. But this was hindred by the Duke of Barg. Duke of Burgunde, (enuying that Triumph to King Richard) countelling the Templers, and French to his part. Saladine also with great gifts corrupted the Dake, fending him by night fine Camels laden with Gold, Silver, Silkes, and other Riches. Whereupon the King conumcing him by witnesse, called him Traytour, and heereturned from the King in displeasure to

King Richards alts at Joppe.

* Eightie Knights and fou e hundred Creffebaw-

Newes came that Saladine besieged loppe, and King Richard desired the Duke to affist him in the Enterprize, which he refused and went the same night toward Tyrus, where he fell madde, and dyed miterably. The King hafted to Joppe by Sea, Saladine having already taken the Towne, the Souldiers were vpon deliuery of the Cattle, when King Richard brake in amongst them like 60 a furious Lion, and chafed the Saracens to Ramula. But hearing the next day of the Kings imall numbers they returned, (for only three ships had arrived) Salaadine sent sixtic two thousand to fet vpon the King, which encompaffed his Tents, and award him with their noise. He gate vpon his Horfe attended by eleuen others (they had no more till they had berrowed of the Sa-

racens,) and beyond beliefe fo laid about him, making way for the rest, that they in the Towns also made out, and quited the field of them. This hapned on Lammas day. Salaadine in his rage fent for an old Pritoner, whilome Prince of Antiochia, and asked him, What wouldft thou doe if thou hadfi me in thy power as I now have thee? Hee (adjured to tell the truth) faid, he would cut off his head; which was his owne fentence, and Salaadine himselfe the Executioner. An Heremite told the King he should not winne lerusalem, and gaue him a piece of the true Croffe, as he faid. Whiles the King abode at Joppe, feuen weekes, an infectious Difeafe feifed on His Armie him, and the most of his, deadly to all in manner which had it, except the King. Seeing therefore disested. the French alienated, and readie to returne, his monies spent, his men diminished by warre and

10 fickneffe, his Enemies increasing daily; he determined to returne home for the reparation of his Purse and force, concluding meane-while a Truce with the Pagans for three yeares. By Sea hee was incountred with a terrible Tempest, some drowned, others wracked, few attayning their His returns defired Port. This hapned in Autumne, whereas Salaudine dyed in the Lent following, and had croffed by a defired Port. This hapned in Autumne, whereas Satanane dyed in the Lent tonowing, and had they flaved, had facilitated their Defignes; both by his death and the differntions which followed this hard pafamonest his sonnes and followers. Hereunto was added the Conspiracie of the Earle of Saint face. Giles, and all those Princes by whom he was to passe : which made him purpose to returne by Germanie. He came to Gazara in Selauonia; where fome notice of him being taken, he with his fmall company hafted away at mid-night : but a worfe and darker mid-night hapned. For with one man and a Boy which could fpeake Datch, he trauelled three dayes without eating or drin- K. Bichard 114.

20 king: he came to Gynatia in Anstria, and being suspected by the Boyes change of Byzantines, and ken by the D. after by the Kings Glones which vnawares he had carried under his Girdle, hee was befet and of Austria, and yeelded himfelfe to the Duke, who committed him to strait custodie, and in the yeare 1193. fold to the fold him to the Emperour for threefcore thousand pound of Siluer, Collen weight. Heere hee Milenswhich was againe imprisoned, and a frong Gard fet on him, with whom he made himselfe merrie in came to Engsports, making them drunks, trying of Matteries, in a'l seeming Master of himselfe and his land by this o-hard fortunes. The Emperour would not admit him his presence or speech, and pretended there is every many calumnies against him. At last, by mediation of friends he obtayned a hearing, eloquently cleered him selfe of Imputations, and wonne much respect both of others and the Emperour tion, from the Henry, who after viedhim more familiarly, and demanded one hundred and fortie thousand fifte the last 30 Markes of Silver for his ranfome. This was brought by the Kings Letter, and the Emperours thereof.

Golden Bull into England by William Bithop of Ely aforefaid : and all Bishoppes, Clergie-men. Earles, Barons, Abbots, Priors were affeffed at a fourth part of their Rents, to ransome the King. Alfo they fold for that purpose their Chalices of Gold and Silver. John Bishop of Norwich, thorow all his Diocesse tooke halfe the price of their Chalices and Goods. The Ciffercian Order (free before from all Taxations) gaue all their Wooll to his Redemption. No Church, no Order, no Degree, or Sexe, was passed by, which was not hereto compelled; manifold Tempests, Inundations, and Winter Thunders having thorow that yeare fore-fignified the same, causing also great scarsitie of Corne and Fruits.

King Richard being Prifoner, his Brother I ohn made compact with the French King, and to fought to be crowned in England, but the vertue of the English was more loyall. Philip the French King inuaded Normande with a very great Armie, not sparing Order, Age, Sexe, viing no lesie the Treason of King Richards Subices corrupted by him. He besieged Roan, but by the Earle French perfidie of Leisters Prowesse and the Inhabitants valour, was repelled with shame.

Anno 1194. King Richard hauing paid the greatest part of his Raniome, and given Pledges for the sest, arrived at Sandwich on the Sunday after Saint Georges day. Presently he visited Thomas Beckers Tombe, and was with Fethuall Solemnitie, received soone after at London, He hafled to Saint Edmunds to performe his Denotions; and thence to Nottingham, against those which had conspired with his Brother John, some of whom he suffered to redeeme themselves, foto redeeme his Pledges, and to invade the French which continued spoyling his Land with King Richards

50 fireand fword. The Sunday after Eafter he ware his Crowneat Winchester. His Brother John returne. humbled himfelfe and the King received him to favonr. This was done in Normandie, where he purfued the warre against the French. He procured the Duke of Antiria to bee excommunicated by the Pope, and his Land to be interdicted : whole Land was further smitten with Famine and Pestilence, and the Inaudation of the Danow, which drowned ten thousand men: himselfealto falling off his Horse, his leggewas incurably hure, which beeing cut off, yet the Duke of Aspaine continued and killed him, before beeing penitent, abfolued, and abfoluing King Richards firias death. Pledges.

Anno 1 1 9 5. Pope Celestine writ to Hubert, Archbishop of Canterburie, and to the Bishops Indulgences. of England to preach the Croile, Gining Indulgences to those which undertooke it, the Remission of 6. imposed Penance by the Priest, as his Predecessors had done; namely, that they which with a contrite

bears shall undersake this expedition, and for the Penance of their sinnes; if they depart in the Faith, Shall obtaine full Indulgence of their crimes and life eternall. Alfo their goods and families, after they have taken the Crosse, Shall be under the protection of the Romane Church, and of the Bishops and Prelates. And nothing which they then at their crossing did quietly possesse fould be called in question, but

2224 Epistle from beanen. Crosses in the aire. English Nobles Pilgrims. LI B. VIII.

till their returne or death should remaine quiet : Others which minister of their goods, shall obtaine Indulgence according to the Prelats moderation. Hee exhorted him to be infant in feafon and out of featon, going about the Prouince, King Richard and the French came to agreement, but the Archbishop of Roan interdicted all Normandie, because of a Castle which King Richard therefortised against his will. Anno 1199. King Richard died, and John his Brother succeeded. The same King Richards yeare the Kingdome of France was interdicted by the Popes Legat, for the taking of the Elect of Cambray pritoner, who was freed before the fentence could. Hee came also to the King of England, threatning like interdict, if the Bishop Beluacensis were not delivered, whom yet be-

death. France inter-Attad. Regulations.

Tarerd: 8.

caule he was taken in Armes, he dismissed not without his ransome. Anno 1200. an Epittle from Heauen was fent for the keeping of the Sunday or Lords day. 10 from the ninth houre on Saturday, till Munday Sunne riling, which the Pope, approued, and fent Preachers thorow divers parts of the world, Enflace Abbot of Flay comming from him into England for that cause. (But of visions the Stories of these times are full.)

Councellof

In the years 1214, was holden the great Councell of Lateran, in which after other things, the affaires of the holy Land were propounded. We will and command (they are the words of the Pove) that Patriarchs, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, and others, which have cure of soules, doe preach studiously the word of the Croffe, befeeching by the Father, Sonne and boly Ghost, one onely true and eternall God, Kings, Dukes, Princes, Marquesses, Earles, and Barons, and other Nobles, and the Communalties of Cities, Villages and Townes, that if they goe not personally, they will send a Sufficient number of Warriours with expences for three yeares, for the remission of their sinnes, &c. If 20 any refuse, let them protest to them on our behalfe, that they shall answer this at the dreadfull sudgement of the sust ladge, &c. And we define that all which shall have taken the Cosse, shall be under Saint Peters protection and ours, and under the Arch bishops, Bishops, and Prelats of the Church, and all their goods, &c. as before.

ð. III.

Profecution of the Holy Land Warres : English Nobles croffed : RICHARD Earle of Cornwall his Acts there : WILLIAM DE LONGA SPATA, and other English-men. King or Saint L Ev v 1 s of France his doings and sufferings: Prince

HE truce being expired in the first generall passage after the Councell of Laterane.

the Christian Armie was assembled in Achon , with the three Kings of lerusalers,

Hungarie, and Cyprus, the Dukes of Austria and Morania, and great Forces of the

" Euery Eafter was a generall paffage.

King of Germanie, with many Arch-bilhops, Earles, Gentlemen. The Patriarch of lernfalent, tooke up the Croffe (which had beene hidden till this time, it being before, as some 40 * Incredible rales of the credulous age received. The croffe of Christ was fruitfull and bare many others, or elfe fancie is mad, which beleeued a Syrian before by reuelation, and now another Croffes in the

fay, divided, and the one part lost, as you have heard, and now this other part succeeded) and the Christian Armie in the Vigill of Saint Martin, washed themselves in Iorden, and having visited the holy places, returned to Action. The King of Hungarie some after departed to the great detriment of the holy Land, being requested to the contrary by the Patriarch, But away he went excommunicate with his followers, carrying with him Pilgrimes, Gallies, Horses, Armes. Others cowardly abode in Achon, a finfull Citie, and full of all vicleannelle : the King of lerafalem and Duke of Auftria, Hospitalars, and others, fortified the Cattle of Cafarea. The Templers and Hospitulars of the Duch house, fortified the Castle of the Pilgrimes. In Bebon of Frisland appeared a white Crosse in the ayre towards the North, another toward the South, a third particoloured, in the midft, with the forme of a Crucified man. Other Croffes after 10 appeared, whereby the Prouince of Collen was prouoked to the holy Land feruice. These with the Frilanders prouided three hundred thips, made with great care, which in the way came to Lifton: and their diffention divided them, some staying with William Duke of Holland, in the fiege of Alchaeia a Moorish Castle, where they wan a great battell against the Moores, and sue one of their Kings, after that taking the Castle also.

Anno 1 2 1 8. The Christian Nauie passed from Achon to Damiata, and besieged it, where Daniata befie- after great lose of their owne they tooke a Tower. Saphidine Sonne and Successour of Sagea. Jewidimarared ladine (by the murther of his Bretheren) died, and Coradine his Sonne razed Ierusalem, making the Walls and Turrets rude heapes, and leaving nothing but the Temple and Tower of Daniel Englis Noble. in reuenge of the fiege of Damista. The next passage brought many Pilgrimes from divers parts 60 men in feruice of the world, with the Popes Legat, Ranulph Earle of Chefter, Saer Earle of Winchefter, and of the Crosse. William Earle of Arundell, Robert Fitz Walter, John Constable of Chester, William de Harecourt, Barons, and Oliner the King of England Sonne, with many others. Many loft their lines on both files, and by inundation of the Sea and River, brought new provisions of vnwelcome Fishes

CHAP.4. S.3. Damiata and Taphnis, Constantinople raken Rufull Story. 1225

into their Tents, and did much harme, carrying their workes to the other fide, the water betraving them to the fire. A grieuous disease, for which the Physicians knew no remedie; infested the Campe, (by the description it feemeth the Scorbute) which killed many. Many conflicts on both fides (wept away many. Damiata was in this long fiege affaulted with Sword, Famines Petitlence. Nelsus refuling this yeare to visite a great part of Egypt, made the Soldier to feare a Famine, and in these straits hee offered the true Crosse, which Saladine had taken and all the Kingdome of Ierusalem, and to repaire the ruines of the razed Citie, and restauration of Captines, (onely he would hold Crae and Mount Royall, paying twelve thouland Byzantines veerly tribute, for the Caravans fecuritie which travell to Mecca) if they would leave Damiata.

to The Princes liked it, the Clergie refused, and on the seuenth of November; the Christian Armie Damiara taken tooke it, without refillance, it having beene a buriall place of her Inhabitants, and now flinking like a Graue, the ftreets and houses being strewed with carkasses, eightie thousand had dyed therein during the fiege, befides three thousand which they found yet remaining. The spoyle thereof was very great, and equally shared where theeuery preuented not.

After Damiata taken, the next passage came so many Pilgrimes, that Tathnis Castle was taken, and both tortified. The Soldan tooke the Castle of Cafarea, and did much hure to Achon and Tress. Anno 1222, Philip de Albeneio a flout Souldier , and the Mafter of King Henrie went to the Holy Land. Anno 1224. Baldwin Earle of Flanders returned, and was knowne and acknowledged of many. But his Daughter denyed him to be her Father, and procured him to bee o hanged betwixt two old Dogges.

This Baldwin, with the Venetians, the Duke of Louaine, the Marqueffe of Mount-Ferrat, Si- Strange flory mon de Monifort, and others, intending the Holy Land, by opportunitie of Greeke combustions of Baldwine. at Constantinople, tooke Indera, belieged Constantinople feuentie two daies, and tooke it, (being Greeke broiles. before fire!) on the twelfth of Aprill, 1204. By common confent Baldwin was elected Emper taken by the rour : and the Greekes upon that occasion began another Empire at Trebezond. Baldwin by Vene- Latines. See tian helpe conquered Thrace, and after the Greekes betaking themselves to the King of Bulgaria, for this Krolls in a battell against him and the Scythians he was faid to be llaine, Anno 1206. the Scythians put. Turkis Historit. ting all Thrace to spoyle and sword. Henrie, Baldwines Brother, was chosen to succeed, who ayded by the Marq seffe, now King of Theffaly, expelled those Barbarians, and recorded the Coun-

30 trey, and after eleuen yeares troublesome reigne, died. Peter his Sonne-in-Law succeeded, who was treacheroufly flaine, and Robert his Sonne succeeded; whose Wife a beautifull Ladie in a tumult, was by a Burgundian (to whom she had before beene betrothed) taken in the night, her Rufull report, note and eares cut off, her Mother throwne into the Sea; and her Husband then absent, had his griefe fo present, that he lived not long after, leaving a little Sonne Baldwin, the last Latine Empercur of Constantinople, affianced to John of Brenne, whom Pope Innocent had made King of lerusalem: the Greeks easily recovering in that opportunitie. The first Baldwin thus revived, whether he were a counterfeit or no, is vncertaine. Certaine it is, that our Authour faith, all that were of counfaile to that his hanging, dyed an ill death. The last Baldwin fought by helpe of Frankes and English, (for here he had large gifts) but in vaine to recouer that Empire.

About this time great multitudes tooke the Croffe thorow the world, infomuch that of the Kingdome of England onely, fixtie thouland and more fufficient men, befides women and old Sixty thouland Angaome of Longues and Marker Hobert ethirping, that he (being a Preacher of the Croffe) had 2 might have the formany in his Catalogue. On Mid-fomer night, the Lord appeared in the Frimannent, in crue. Goods, before fied forme and bloudy, to shew (faith our Author) how acceptable that denotion was to him. old men and This was feene neere Vxbridge by a Fish-monger. Peter Bishop of Winchester, and William Bi- women shop of Exeter were two of thele, which spent fine yeares in that Pilgrimage. Friderike the Emperour tooke shipping toward the Holy Land to performe his vow, but returned, pretending ficknesse, so that fortie thousand men which waited his comming that passage, returned frustrate to their homes, and many to their long home. Whereupon Pope Gregorie excommunicated

50 him. He by publike writings purged himfelfe, and great broyles entued. The Romans expelled fecond excomthe Pope out of their Citie to Viterbium, and thence to Perufium, hee having no other weapon municated. of reuenge but excommunication. The same time, the Earle of Tholouse had a great victorie against the Crusado Armie, which the Pope had with like Indulgence to that of the Holy Land. excited to warre against him and the Albigenfes, (which for denying the Papacy were condenned Herniches.) Frederike vet made best speed to the Holy Land, where the Clergie, because the criffidals. Pope had excommunicated him, counfelled him to reconciliation, and would not communicate with him. But the Templers and Hospitalars received him with reverence. The Soldan fent him rich prefents. Pope Gregorie in his ablance raifed warres by Iohn de Brennes, King of Ierufalens, Popes Acts. which out of France and other parts, gathered a great Armie and intraded, helped by the Popes

6c Forces, the Emperours Dominions. The Soldan troubled with civill broiles, reftored to Fredericke all the Holy Land, so that he entred lerufalem, with his Armie, and they purified the Holy Citie, but the Clergie would not communicate with the Emperour. Matter Walter, a Frier Walter, an Eng-Preacher, an English-man, which had done great ferrice for the Croffe, appointed by the Pope lift-man. to that Office, faid Masse: and the Clergie was restored to their Quondam possessions. The

A Turke more Emperour intending to goe to Iordan after the custome, the Templars and Hospitalars treachethis bfull then roully gave intelligence to the Soldan, that he might intrap him : partly enuying his fucceffe. loth any should there have honor but themselves; and partly, because they heard that the Pope had injuded his Territories. The Soldan abhorring fuch perfidie, fent their Letter to Frederiche. and laid open that hellish mysterie. Hence arose grudges, and the Templars and Hospitalas drew the Patriarke into their conspiracie, which published a Letter disfamatorie against him. Pope

ta, v suram pro parno, simoniam pro nullo, &c.

Gregorie exacted tenths for the maintenance of those his warres against the Emperour , thorow England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland, which were rigorously, under paine of Interdiction and Excommunication exacted, not as the twentieth before to the King, but as might beft be for the Popes aduantage, and the people forced to pay it before hand, even for the crops on the ground. The Prelates fold their Omaments and Church plate for expedition, and Stephen the Popes Procurator, having Vourers attending like Rauens, faue that they preyed on the living. All this notwithstanding, the Emperour returning, soone recoursed that which the Pope and his King that this puil- Iohn had taken, and some composition was made betwirt them. Pope Gregorie sent Preachers. fant Emperour and writ to excite men to the holy Warre, and fent others for money to release those vowes. at once main- Nec [ciri poterat in quam aby firm tanta pecunia que per Papales Procuratores colligebatur ell de-tayned fixe as eayned fixe ar merfa. Unde negotium Terra Santia nunquam falix, &c. He after excommunicated him againe, mies in faueral and chofe another Emperour, absoluing his Subiects, perswading them to be faithfull in infidelitie. But the wickednesse of the Roman Church deserved that the Popes authoritie was not receined : he addeth of it, Deposito rubore velut meretrix vulgaris & effrons omnibus venalis & exposi- 20

The Truce betwirt the Emperor and the Soldan expiring, the Pope fent and writ againe, preaching the granting Indulgences as before, and freeing from Viuries, employing the Preaching Friars and Croffe. Minors in this Croffe bufineffe, who by the Popes Mandate, were attended by the Archdeacons and Deanes, which in every place caused the Parishioners, men and women to assemble, not one English Nobles vnder paine of excommunication, being absent. Many Noblemen of England tooke the Crosse. take the croffe. Earle Richard the Kings brother, Earle G. Marshall, Earle John of Cheffer, the Earle of Salisbarie and his brother, and many other honorable personages. Earle Riebard made sale of his woods. Sale of rowes and of what focuser he could for that promition. But the Preachers preaching the fame Induleenis se common, ces to them, which gaue so much money as would beare the charges, hindred mens denotions. 20 that I forbeate For this proued a common and viuall course, to exchange vowes for money. Aboue one hunto tollow the dred Knights Templers were soone after slaine in a battell with the Times, besides other multitudes, Anno 1228.

Many croffed Nobles were affembled at Lions, to goe to the Holy Land, when a Meffenger

from the Pope forbad them to proceed; notwithstanding, that was the place and time appointed

by his Preachers, and that they had fold and pawned their goods and lands for that Expedition. Many returned home discontent : Many held on their way. Anno 1 240. Earle Richard and the

other English Nobles, tooke leave to fet forth on their Holy voyage. That yeare, the Christians Banellof Gaza. not agreeing in the Holy Land, fuftayned great loffe, innumerable being slaine and taken. Earle

Templare

Richard paffed on his way into France, and was by the Popes Legat forbidden to proceed, who answered, that he had prouided his Ships, Moneys, Armes, and detesting the double dealing of the Roman Church, committed himselite to the Sea. The Soldan of Damasco gave the Christians all which they challenged beyond Iordan, to helpe him against the Egyptian. Earle Richard came to Achon a little after Michaelmas, where he was received with all solemne fignifications Earle Rich. his of ioy. The third day after his comming, he caused Proclamation to be made, that no Christian Pilerime should depart home for want of money, for he would entertayne them in his pay. He writ thence of the great Schisme and mischiefe thereon attending, complaying of the Pope: the King of Nauarre and Earle of Britaine, were gone fifteene dayes before his comming : Truce was concluded by him with the Soldan, many Places and Prisoners furrendred vnto him, which he there in his Letter particularly nameth. Further, that he and the Christians fortified Afcalon 50 Castle with two Walls and high Towers, to prevent the worst, if the Saracens should violate the Truce. Hauing received on Saint Georges day all the Prisoners, hee returned homewards and landed at Trapes in Sicilia, and hearing of the captimitie of certaine Bishops, he went to Rome. He canfed also the dispersed bones, of those which had beene slaine in the dismall battell of Gato be buried. The Emperor received him honorably, having married his fifter Izabel, daughter of king lohn. He was welcommed into England by the King his brother, in Februarie, 1242. The French Nobilitie much honored him as their Patron, for deliverie of their priloners. The Pilgrimes departing after Earle Richard, the Templars enuying, scoffed and derided his acts, and brake the Truce which he had made, which the Hospitalars observed, whom therefore the Templars besieged in Achon, chasing also the Dutch Knights, turning the great Reuenuesa- 60 gainst Christians, which were given against Saraceus. This diffention continued betwirt them with great feandall. It happed that the Tartarian Deluge, having then over-flowed the Eafterne World, and ouer-whelmed Perfia, the Chorofinines by them expelled and forced to shift, were entertayned by the Soldan of Babylon , and promifed , if they could drive out the Christians,

CHAP.4. S.2. H. Land taken by Chorolimines. Kings of Eng. and France. 1227

that they should possesse their Countrey, Whose multitudes so terrified the Christians that they confulted to remove all the Inhabitants of Ierufalem to Ioppe, and began in the night to performe it. The Corofinines entring, found certayne Banners, which they erecting, fome Christians cal- chaofininess led backe their fellowes, as if some notable triumph had hapned to the Christians, which returned either into the Citie or Suburbs, where the enemie prefently affaulting them flue feuen thoufand. The yong Men and Maydens they made flaues. They entred the Holy Citie, and flue the Loufslem taold and feeble persons (which had not gone forth, but fled to the Sepulchre for Sanctuarie) and ken. Nunnes. The Christian Souldierie lought to reuenge it, fighting with them a bloudie battell Bloudie till night, losing innumerable, yet killing many more. On Saint Lukes day, with the generall sluggher. 10 power of the Holy Land affembled to the Patriarke, they fought against them, now strengthned with new supplyes from the Soldan, where the best was, that they sold their lines at a deare and bloudie rate, more perithing of the Infidels, but the Christians lofing almost all. The Master of the Templars, and the Matter of the Hospitalars and Dutch knights fell, and but eighteene

Templars and fixteene Hospitalars escaped. The number of the slaine was inestimable on both fides. The whole Land put on irrecoverable confusion. And although Pope Innocent, at the Councell of Lions, feemed zealous of this quartell, vet that other quarrell to the Emperour more possessed him; and the Councell withstood him to his face, taking authoritie to appoint Collectors for that Subfidie, whereof the Roman Court had beene so often, so fraudulent a Disburser. The French King lately sicke, had vowed a Holy King Longs his 20 Land voyage, if he recourred, whom almost all the Nobilitie tollowed. But the Pope profecu-

ting the Emperor, and causing a new to be chosen, little succour could be sent them, so that many despayring, became Apostata's. The Soldan himselfe detested, and openly protested against the Templars and the Pope. The Bishop of Worcester, William & Longa Spata, and many No. W. de Longa bles of England, in imitation of the French, tooke the Crosse. This William imitated Earle Ri- Stata, and may chard, who coveranting with the Pope got great treatures, by dispensing with that Holy gums. Land vow, defired the Pope to grant him fauour in that kind, which hee did, cutting a large thong of anothers hide. The Earle gathered infinite fummes by the Popes grant, taking of one Archdeacon fixe hundred pounds, and William got about one thouland markes. King Henrie with Relikes, the great denotion carried fome of the bloud, fent him from the Holy Land in a Crystall veffell, best Holy Land 30 pretended to be that of Christ, from Paules to Westminster.

Anno 1248, the Earle of Leifter tooke the Croffe to expiate his finne, in marriage of her Earle of Leifter which had vowed chastitie. His wife and many Nobles and Knights, followed the example, crosed, The French King began his journey, first feeking in vaipesto reconcile the Pope to the Emperour. Hee tooke thip and left many behind, which returned and were difpenfed with by the Pope then at Lions, giving him their provisions, and emptying their puries. William Longipate followed with two hundred Horle-men, whom the French King kindly entertayned, and befought the French to lay a fide their wonted enuie to the English.

Anno 1250. King Henrie tooke the Croffe of the Archbishop, and the Archbishop himselfe, Henry the third the Kings brother William de Valentia, and many Courtiers; the Abbot of Burie, and many o_ takes the to ther followed: some being of opinion, that the King did this but for a colour to get money. Fine hundred Knights, and innumerable croffed people met at Bermundfey (having fold or morgaged their Lands and Goods, and involved themselves in voluries for the Holy Land butinesse) to confult of their vowed voyage, intending to to ferue the King of Heauen, howfoeuer their earthly King flood affected. Which to preuent, he procured the Popes Letter by money to suspend their iourney till himfelfe went. The French belieged, and were belieged at Damiata by the Soldan. and Scarsitie, where many perished by Famine and Sword, and many ran to the Enemie and became Apolitaces. The French allo were enuious to the English and Wilkiam Longitat, ha ing ta-English acts. ken fogtunately a rich Carauan with Camels, Mules, Asses, laden with Silkes, Spices, Gold and Silver, and other riches and provisions, slaying and captiving the men; the French quartelled

50 hereat, and tooke his purchase from him, the Earle of Arteis the Kings brother being herein chiefe, which the French King not daring to remedie, hee left him and went to Achan. The French tooke Damiata, and the Soldan offered all the Holy Land and great treasures for the re- Damiats taken flitution. But they chose rather to remove towards Caire, and the Earle of Arreis proudly obiecting to the Templars their pride, and calling W. Long (pat (then returned) tayled commercily English, taying, that the Armie would doe well if it were cleanfed of tayles and tayled (this here spake vpon occasion of wife counfell given him by the former.) William answered, We Shall be this day, where I believe, you will not come neere my Horfes tayle : which also hapned, the Eatle being drowned in flight, and William brougly dying in fight, flanding to it when he had no legs to fland on W. Longforts (they being cut off) to a miracle of refolution, and commending his valiant foule to the Heabeing cut off) to a miracle of refolution, and commending his valiant foule to the Heacommending his valiant foule to the others daring temeritie

and pride. Of all the Armie present, two Templars onely, one Hospitalar, and a base person escaped. The King was behind with the rest of the Armie, who made another as vnfortunate a battell, in which himfelfe was taken, his Armie almost all slaine or taken. The Soldan laboured that none should carrie this newes to Damata, which yet was done by Alexander Giffard, an Al. Giffard.

Mill-ftone

Greater In-

charitie.

English man, having received five wounds in the attempt. But Damiata was delivered in exnaniata ginen change of the King : the Soldan commanding the Christians to bee beheaded which flayed hehind, and their Nauie to be burned.

Soone after, the King of Caffile, tooke the Croffe, having conquered thirteene dayes journey voon the Saracens, thinking it better to get the Holy Land from them then any other. But the rapines and spoiles which the poorer suffayned from the great men, the Roman Church permitting, yeateaching, as often as they would goe to the Holy Land in pilgrimage, our Authour much lamenteth. And for the extortions of France, the French King faith, hee he permission of the Roman Church, gathered a third yeeres tenth of the Clergie, on condition that the Pope, to maintayne his warres against Fredericke, might gather as much more. The Io King would not after permit this, though his owne were gathered by Papall Ministers, that the Pope might hereby learne to how much his share would arise. The Popes Exactor met by

chance on the way a poore Prieft, having a piece of bread given him for sprinkling of holy wa-Base exaction, ter, whom he asked what his Liuing might be worth by the yeere. The Priest (ignorant of Romil fleights) answered, some twentie shillings. Two shillings then, faid the other, must thou give the King, holding him, that begged his living from doore to doore by the throat, and forcing him to fell his Bookes to pay him. The King borrowed money of the Templars and Hospitulars, tent two of his brethren into France, one being flaine, another vanquished, himselfe

refoluing neuer to returne, and living at Actor inglorious. Those two brethren with the Duke Pope accused. of Burgandie, went to the Pope, laying the blame on him, and if hee would not agree with so Fredericke (which alone could remedie these mischiefes) he should no longer abide at Lions, but all France would arife against him. Fredericke by his death, instantly following, cut off those hopes. The Quarrels dyed not, but continued hereditarie to the Pope and his Sonnes. Guide. King Henries brother, came out of the Holy Land beggerly miferable, borrowing horses of the Guide halfe Abbot of Feuersham, which he neither repayed according to his promise, nor acknowledged so

much as with thankes, but scoffed at his messengers sent to demand them.

The French Kings Mother and Brethren fent much money to him by Sea, which with the ship was drowned, he bearing this as his other difasters with admirable patience, beeing herein estee-Devillish ftra. med another lob. At the same time a certain Hungarian Apostata, promised his Master the Soldan tagem of a of Babylon, to prefent him infinite flore of Christian flaues, and make the conquest of Christen- 20 suggling kname dome easie. He therefore having the French, Dutch, and Latine Tongues goeth about preaching. occasioned by saying, that he had in charge from the blessed Virgin to call Shepherds and Herdmen, to whole simplicitie and humilitie it was granted from Heaven to conquer the Holy Land. For the militarie pride of the Frankes was not acceptable. Hee wanne faith by the indiffoluble closeneffeot his band, in which he faid was Our Ladies Charter. Shepherds and Herdmen without acquainting their Mafters and Parents, and without care of provisions followed him, vsing his Inchant-Aformer kna. ment wherewith he had to farre prenailed fortie yeares before (hee was now threefcore yeares old) gathering an infinite number of children together, which followed him finging, whom neither Prayers, Threats, Flatterie, Gifts of Parents or Friends, nor Lockes and Walls could detaine from him. (A certaine Iuggling Fryer Preacher, Robert Buere, is faid to have infatuated in 49 like manner innumerable and delivered them to the fire.) But thefe were now favoured, by the Queene Mother, hoping that they would doe feruice for her Sonne, infomnch, that aboue one hundred thou and of this Rabble were affembled, and carryed a Lambe for their Colours. After this, Theeues, Exiles, Runna-wayes, Excommunicates, and like raskalitie reforted to them with divers Weapons, and now they did openly things volawfull in Politie and Religion, preaching where they came, and at Orleance breaking into open hostility, at Burdeaux, Paris, and other

diforder. Many of them went over to the Holy Land. Anno 1251, the Pope caused solemne preaching in Brabant, Flanders, and the Confines of France, that who focuer would warre against Conrade the Sonne of Fredericke the Emperour, hee should have greater Indulgence then for warring in the Holy Land. For if any should be figured (with the Crosse) against Courade, both he so marked, and his Father and Mother should receive grioft Christis remission of all their finnes : which, the French King fending for reliefe, caused much murmuansthen Turk, ring of the French, imputing to the Popes vnchristian Warres against Christians to enlarge his owne Dominions, this neglect of the French King and Holy Land. And the Queene Morher caused the Lands of all which had taken the Croffe to be feiled, and that if they would warre for the Pope, he should maintaine them.

places, which occasioned their dispersion and confusion. One of their Preachers came into Eng-

land, and was here cut in pieces, his carkaffe being left for the Fowles, having before caused much

Anno 1252, the King caused the Londoners to be affembled to Westminster , to the preaching 60 Croffes croffed of the Croffe, which yet in regard of the Romife extorfions few received. Some Courtiers did, by Popith Ex- whom the King magnified, calling the other base Mercinaries. His reason was; hee had now obtayned of the Pope three yeares tenths of Clergie and Laitie to that purpose, which would amount to about fixe hundred thousand pounds. He was thought to have taken the Crofic or ly for this mony-purpose, which Vow hee then sware to performe both on his brest like a Priest, &

after on the Gofpels killing the Booke like a Lay-man, none being hereby more certaine of his purpoie. Truce was concluded betwist tie French King and Soluan. But foone after, Anno Clergie and 1262, came newes of milerable spoiles there made by the Saracens, Achon beeing only left free Lay Oath, from their furie. Anno 1354, the French King returned home. Anno 1255 Comade being dead. the Crosse was preached against Memfred King of Apulia, Sonne of the Emperour Fredericke. In which case the Pope intageled the King of England, guing that Kingdome to his Sonne Edmund, to the great trouble of this Realme.

and, to the great trouble of this Realme.

Anno 1259. the Templars and Hospitalars at Achon fell to civill Warres, well neere to the Kingdome by ruine of both Orders, and of the poore remaynders in those parts. Anno 1260, King Henrie ha- Crosses when To using sworne to the prouisions of Oxford, repented of his Oath, and obtayined of the Pope Ab- he wants cros-Solution. Anno 1264. Pope Vrban gaue the Kingdome of Sicilia, to Charles the French Kings fee.

Brother, on condition to deprive Memfred thereof, whom Anno 1 267. he flue in battell. other, on condition to deprine Memfred thereot, whom Anno 1207. He lide in batters.

Anno 1269. Saint Lewes lent to speake with Prince Edward of England, and inuited him to Prince Edward.

undertake with him a Pilgrimage to the Holy Land, which he did, King Henrie permitting all Pilgrims, which would to goe with him.

Anno 1271. Prince Edward, and his Brother Edmund; foure Earles; as many Barons, and many Gentlemen, went his vowed Pilgrimage. His Wife Elenor accompanied him, who at A-chon was deligered of a Daughter, calle Joan of Acres. The French King came fafe to Tunis, where his Sonne first, and after himfelfe dyed. The Armie was much endangered, but by meanes 20 of Charles King of Sicilia, was freed, and Tunis made tributarie to Sicilia. Prince Edward had

followed Saint Lewis thither: and when King Charles hafted backe, Prince Edward iware, that Prince Edward if all his company should forfake him, yet he and Fowine (his Horse-keeper) would hold on to A- and the Exests chon and with the English he fet faile thither. But a Tempelt ouertooke the Sicilian at Sea, and at Tuni, when drowned almost all his Armie and Treasure.

Anno 1272. Prince Edward at Abcon, was much respected by the Amira of Joppe, who write often to him by a certaine Affifine. Who faining some secret businesse, the Prince carried all to depart the roome, and whiles he looked out of the Window, with a poyfoned Knife he received two wounds on the arme : The Prince pulled the Knife from him, and killed him with his owne gabbed with a weapon, but A all in the wrefting, wounded his owne hand. This grieued much the Amira, poisoned knife

30 being ignorant of the Affines designe. With much difficultie the Prince was cured of his veno. King Edward

Thus farre we have followed our Author Matthew Paris to the death of King Hourie, which returns and hapned, Anno 1272, and the death in manner of the Christian State in the Holy Land. Hee returned (which we adde out of Thomas Walfingham) 1274. having long in vaine expected the aids of Christians and Tartars at Achon, leaving Souldiers in his pay for defence of the Holy Land. He returned by Sicilus, and received kind entertainment of King Charles, and after of the Pope. His Turneament I omit: wherein the Earle Kabilanensis challenging him, laying hold on the Kings necke, and feeking to plucke him off his Horfe, was by the great strength of Edward rayfed from his owne Horle, and after a hot skirmish, forced to yeeld, that the name which had 40 in this Voyage wanne honour in Africa, encreated it in Afra, might receive further accomplishment in his Europasan returne.

Anno 1292. Achon was taken by the Soldan, the Citizens having fent their vnferusceable persons and relikes with their treasures before to Cyprus. Great slaughter was committed. In the beginning of Edward the Second, the Templars were condemned, imprisoned, and some burned. The Holpitalars planted themselves at Rhodes , and continued till Soliman the Tinke dispost fied them : fince which their residence hath beene at Malia. The Dutch Knights conquered Pruffix. The Acts of the Tartars in the Holy Land you may learne in others. It is more then enough that I have fummed the Acts of almost two hundred yeares, with such expense of Christian Floud and treasure abroad and such convulsions and confusions of Religion and civille 50 Affaires at home as I know not to have beene effected by any one particular cause since the

World flood, the pretence being not the Monarchie of the World, but of a little Region, and that under colour of Religion. I honour the zeale and valorous refolution of our Progenitors, but I pittie the illusions and collusions which hapned to those Worthies by the Popes sleights. and the milice of the old Serpent, which a little to vnmaske, would to the fludious Reader, perhaps be a recreation after thele fields of bloud. Some particulars whereof wee have out of Hificries of that Age delivered : but the full cannot bee delivered , as may appeare by this circumflance, that besides often, folemne, publike, Royall Expeditions , and the private occasionall Pilgrimages to the Holy Land continually; there was every yeare against Easter a generall passage Generale passage

60 being added to thefe, amount aboue conceit; especially, if wee adde the Crusadoes which from this Example awed and tamed Emperors, Kings, Princes, States, Peoples, repugnant to the Popes defignes, howfeeuer otherwife Catholike and Christian. All this bloud was of Christians, bendes the Rivers and Seas of Ethnike, (yet humane) bloud hereby fied, of Turkes, Lappians,

both for denont vifitation of the holy places and fernices in thefe holy Warres : which fummes timpes).

Persians, Chorosmines, Tartars, and so many other Asian and African Nations, not to mention the

Christians, Armenians, Syrians, and all the subjects of the Easterne Empire in this Warre so much interelled, by it weakned, after it irrecoverable, and now Twife. But becket to pass from one extreme to another, and fuddenly to direct the minde from such Martiall Actions and Parfions to fo high fludious contemplations, would rather be exchange of toyle then recreation (in the interim betwirt turbulent Acts on the Stage) I have prefented a Musical Pilgrime, whole in the interim het wise tenthalent Acts on the Stage) have preferred a Mulical Plajtine, whole old English Richmen my perhapitally those former concesses actives, function, would be contained includences; and a whom the Minfired played, the head of the Lindama 1900 Edition, and head to photode, for treading this, which tells the hely water to faire, fought; and for deem bought in the labor Warries, thou myself but the hand of the Lord not only to guide the from their wasts to the but shall there a higher quick, and to make the wideflund (are time way to apply) con-ceived Myderia and quick prophetics, which the myster they can be time thillded. They dracks is reknowned and but the best which we tablely to have been about two bundered years fine: Ser Robert Content rich Librarie man yeelded the Manuferipe, whence it was copied.

Here beginnesh the way that is marked, and made wit Mount Toice from the Land of Engelond varabent lamez in Galis, and from thennes to Rome, and from thenne? to lerufalem and fo againe into Engelond, and the namez of all the Citeez be their maie, and the maner of her governanuce, and name tof her filner that they wee be alle the e waie.

And alfo of our Ladie S. Marie: And of all the Seimez of the Court of Henen, I make this mentanit milde Steuen:
Wich wase I went I schall you selle,
And have be the waie I dide dwelle. Ferf to Plummouth to feewent I, And tandet in the Trade of Bretany, There we refted daies too. Andthrush the Race then did we go To Burdewez to that faire Citee: And there was I daies thre. And fo from themez to Bayon, For fothethat is a faire towne. And from thennez to Petypont St. Ienouhe. The ferst towne of Naueron, sicurly: Vp in a bee hull hit is faire seite, And ther men schall make her tribett, For every pice of Gold trust me well. Thou Schalt fwere upon the Enangele: And there lakkez ferst most thou have, And the lust thy Gold to faue. Wymmencz araie upon there bened, Like to Myterez they ben wheed: A raie Mantell they were upon, And foule wymmen mony con, Then to the Dale of Rounceuale hit is the waie, A derk paffage I der well faie: Witelez. there ben full necessary, Fer in that passage my mouthe was dry. Be youd the hull upon bee, Is a Mynster of our Lades:

We the Name of the Eader that
feters in trans,
And of Union and bloglet Sone,
And of Union and bloglet Sone,
And of the Hely Goff, this bloglet
Transe,
And of or our Ladie S. Marie:
The continuer can be supported to the Control of the Control
Transe,
And also of our Ladie S. Marie: And from thennez to the towns of Keer, Is xxx miles long, and bongary beer . Then to the Gruon in Spayne, That is the last towne certaine. Of the Realme of Naueron: And then into Spayne feare ye fiction, lakkez ben ther of little prife: For there beginneth the Maruedifez. Alle is brasse fluer is none In, And the Grote of Spayne is silver fin.
iii. Score for a Coron schalthon have,
Of the Maruedile of master and knave. Then from the Grune to Sent Dominico Thou hast texn long miles for to go. And from themez to Grunneole, Much pyn men ther theole. Hit fton voon a hall on bry. And lewez ben Lordez of all that contray. Ther most thou tribute make or thou passe, For alle thi gud bothe mor and lasse: Of that tribute they be sull fayn; For thei byeer hit of the King of Spayn. From thennez thou most to Pount Roie. That passage ther hit kepeth a boie: A gudcontrate, and enell win And witelez ther ben bothe gud, and fyn. And fo farther to Pount Paradife. At that passage thou most paie threez. And so for the from thennez to Borkez that citee, A faire soune and a muche sicurly. HonCHAP. S. Relations and Observations of Spaine in old English Rime.

HONDIVS his Map of Spaine.



And from themez to Hospitall de Reyne Topaffe that Riner thon Schalt be fayne. And fo forthe to Sent Antony : And over ther gothe the Maruedy. From thennezenen to the cite of Lyones: Betweene hem ben mony praty towner. In that cite ther Schalt thou paie Passage or thou goe awaie. By younde the Brugge on thi right hand,

To Sent Saluator the waie is liggand, 50 Where H. pottez may thou fe, In the wiche water turnet to vyn at Architriclyne. And mony other reliquez ben there. But the mountez ben wonder be, o fere. Wymmen in that Land vie no vullen, But alle in lether be thei wounden ; And her benedez wonderly ben truft, Standing in her forhemed as a creft.

In rowld clouthez lappet alle be forn 60 Like to the prikke of a N'unicorn. And mer bane doubelettez full febert, Bare legger and light to fters. A Knight, a boie wit out hofe, As Twyer also thei schull not lofe.

A Knaue bere tij. dartez in bis hand; And so theis schull go walkand: Here wyn is theke as any blode. And that wall make men wode. Bedding ther is nothing faire. Mony pilgrimez hit doth avaire : Tabelez vife thei non of to ete, But on the bare flore they make ber fete: And so they sitte alle infere, As in Irlande the fame manere. Then from the citee of Lyonz fo fre, On thi lyft hand the wase schalt thou fee, At that Brugge that I of have fasde, Ouer an heethe to Aftergo is layde. That is a cite and faire is fette. There the gret mountaines togeder be mette : And fo for the to Villa Frank Schalt thon go, A faire contraye, and vinez alfo. The Raspis groeth ther in thi waie. Tf thee lust thou maie asaie. From thennez a deepe dale schalt thou bane, Vp onto the Mount of Faue : He buller, and of the Spanyle fee a cry: That noyfe is full greuofe pardy. Kkkkkk 3

And fo forth even to Sent lamez, Alle wate Pylerimez Suche hauez. And then to Mount noitre Daine. The Prior ther hath muche Chame. And then fo forthe to Luaon. Other Villagez ther be mony con. And then to Sent Jamez that holy place; There maie thou finde full farre grace. On this fide the toune milez too, By a Chappell Schalt thou go: Voon a bull bu flondez on bee, Wher Sent lamez ferst Chalt thon fee. A Mount, loie mony Stonez there ate, And in pilerez of fton of eret aftate: A C.d.iez of pardon there may thou have At that Chappell, and thou bit crane. Then at Sent lamez wit in that place, To telle the pardon bit askes space. Hit is a gret Mynstor, large, and long, Of the holdbegging hit is strong : Glason windowez there are but few, Wit in the Mynftor in nowther rew : Vill. Cardinalez chosen there be, For Confessourez, that is verry, Andbine plaine power fully to here, And penanuce to yet in alle manerd: And to affoyle the of alle thing, That is the Popys graunting. Now of the pardon telle I shall. In what place thou maie it calle : At the Northe fide of that place, There is pardon and muche faire grace. In the Chappell on the rist hand among the gueft, iij. C. daiez of pardon thou hauest. Forthermore at the hee autere A is, daiez alle time in the yere. Vnd r the hee autere lube Sent lame. The table in the Quere telleth the name : As alle the auterez fo by and by, al. daiez to pardon is grantet to the. At the in derrez, beneihe the Quere, Is blenor remillion ones in the yere: And at alle tymes xl. daies. The table written fo bit faies. On the Southe fide behinde the Derre, A grete of flon fyndest thou there: At nine of the Bele the Derre up is fett, And a Bele rongen a gret fet. Ther men maie fe of Sent Jame the leffe, His beed in Gold araised freche: To the wiche Pilgrymez her offering make, For the more Sent lamez fake. And there by a namer there is. Wher Sent lame, and Mafe yuis, A iii . daies ther maie thou have, Of remission, and thou but craue. More paraun is nonzt in that place That in that table munde hafe. Then from thennez to Patr vum. Wher Sent Loudet the ferst toun ing. x.x. myles longs from Sent Jamez, Coron ne vin non men there banez. And then to Pont Wederez went I, L. long miles; that wate is dry :

Iewes and Sarafynez ben there mony on. A plentifull contrave as man maie gon. From thennes a vale faire, and clere. Where wynez groethe of all manere. Unto the town of Corpe Sante, Alle manere fruste at man maie baunt. The See cometh the ber at alle tide, And fifth, and coron on alle fide. Wymmen be araied like to men. Men maie nouze well nouther ben : There thei life vn gudely, Namely men of holy Chirche pardy. And Bugell flesch isthere full rige; In alle that contraie hit is ther lif: And Corpe Sant is the last toun. In Galife, and Stonderb the See upon. Then into Portyngale, and I faire Ouer the River wit gret care : For ther the Spaynyolez wull ye scherche, Whether any Gold be en thi perche. Then thi Maruedile have no takke, The Riol z of Por: vngale maken the lakke. When thou comest to Valence toun, The money of that Lond thou schalt see son. And then fo forth to Priutia, And fro thennez to Ponylyme tchalt thou sa. And then forthe to Porta hauen. A faire Cite, and that is the namen : Oline treez ther Schalt thon finde. Alle the Lond full, that is the kind: And figez felle wit out faile, And alle maner plente of vitaile. The arase of wymmen is wonder to fee, How thei be revelet about the knee. Of fre fch fifth thei have gret ftore, At every place more, and more. Then schalt thou paffe to Colymbria, And to Towreza faire Cite alfo. And io for the to Sent Helena on hee, That is a well faire Citee. And from thennez to Frankeuile. And fo to Lufchebon is xiii.mile. A faire Cite, and a large, Theiber cometh schippez, bulkez, and barge: That is a faire Vninersite, And of vitellez gret plente. And in Luichenon verement Lithe the holy Martur Sent Vincent. Vij. mile ouer the water most thou gon, To a toun that hight Kone. 50 And from Kone to Palmele, A whilde waie hit is some dele. And to Sent O well, that is the waie, To Landauere and Kauerell in the claie. And to Mount Maior a Caftell fre. The chiefe of Portyngale st maie be. A while contraie full of Lyngge, Wit the I rede thou brede brynge. From thennez to R.olez most thou faire, To Effermore, that Land is bare. 60 And fo to Borbe a litell Vilage, And then to Elnez that gud stage : The last roun of Portyngale to the See, That departet Portyngale, and Castell free,

The Iewez hon Lords of that town, And few christien men thereame. Now in to Cathell febull we faire, Oner the Ruser, the land is have, Full of heart hand honger allow and honger allow and hard with Baldelhois we febull hegin, To ester Cathanez mu in. And from thomes to Talevere,

CHAB.S. Relations and Observations of Spaine in old English Rime.

10 Al Luggebon that (it is a fair eriner.
To Parik zi hen mijl thou draw,
And [o to Mercal, that is the more.
To verz Iuliauz foreaste we nonzi,
Al Sent Petro her vittelle an homas.
Martyn Santio a whilde wate u there,
Forestez, and whilde bestez w free:
Brete, and wilder, other bestez mmy on,
and perclex wate his is in gon.
Then to Reyne (o missil thou ya.)

20 Not the Cite of Maret Calitea.
And thes to Kinamare than faire place,
Of catel their places, and that is grace:
The berdee lyn is the felde in Tenez of clothe;
To come to tous the is thomal tothe.
From that Cite miles area, and to,
To Soen that e Kadalayen most though of
Pelgrimate bothe faire, and fre,
That Athylfor is of our Ladue:
Of the Order of Sout Roome the Deltor,

A maruelez fight is in that Tour.
In wildernigle that place is fitte,
In wildernigle that place is fitte,
In wildernigle that place is fitte,
By M.M. mide on cuery flad,
For whilsh defice, no may day abide.
Then from that place to Walkepalatia,
And affer to best even to Aldonies.
And then to Elecampanario,
From themme. 10 Qyyntama afg.
And then to the Cite of Salanica,

40 To Lettalecke, and o Maggaela.

Alle the spicery that I man can mene,
In that load his manie be sone the stard his manie be sone the satellars,
And ever the of spicery the be workent.
The More ben blake as any pikke,
And age the melt maket, no men ship,
Bellrange that Cine, full hose is bee,
That known of coude in that Contre.
Walchamle is a rown full fure,
In Citilities the Stard man en.

on Chilliate the fire gudane.

In Chilliate the fire gudane with the words:

To the fire of Kantelane before the woft:

To the fire of Kantelane before the woft:

To Civyle ground, that is of fre.

I was fe his is to be bild

The future, youre, and phenry, the I have tolde,

You the Hauen all marrer Marchandige.

De he the fireme to mate thou goo,

The

60 The Town of Sent Lucar de Baramedez to.

From a builbut frondelle full bee,

Fross ne Show there muse non be:

Europa that land merc calle but:

The biesset contract that ener was set.

About hit Ylez mony oon, I Chall tham rebenenerichon : For I have be ther, and farn them alle. I schall you telle, how thei hem calle. Porta bit is the ferst place, And Rota a nother Haven, to the See it cale . And Serethieza Cite full faire, But the Sarafanez bit don apaire. That is the unterest Cite of that Lond Toward the Saralanez, I understand. And Cordua on that other fide, Wit Sarafanez muche foro thei abide. Wit in the Se a Cite of fight, The which in that land Calys hight, From the land milez fife. There the Karekkez in Hauen do drive. X X. daież we rested the Yles voon. Wit Karebbez to Jenne to have oun : And for enemyez be the Se were fo ftrong; Therfore we tornet againe be lond, Vnto the Rerme of Arogony: And mony maruelez be the waie faie we. Ferst to Sent Marie de Serrat. Mony a Piloryme is wery ther ate. A defert place, and full of waaste, And mony man bis staf ther hathcast. From thennez thou schalt to Monshow, A faire Cite, and riche I trow. Hullez and vailaiez mony (chalt thou finde) The fight ther of them maketh men blynde. Litell coron, but cragges and flones, And that maketh Pylgrymes wery bones. Faire wymmen and of febull araie, The Caltelanez ar bester I dar well faie : For in Castell thei be araied comely. Wit faire grownez full honestly: And in Aragony thei araied be, In raie cotez full monely. A weddyng I faie in Monthow town, Alle the men and the wymmen then dannfyng in isy C. on a davnce I dar well (aie. From morn to euen all the daie. Ther is but litell mete and drinke. Be cause men lust not for to swinke. Then to Leide the Vniner fite, There is a pleuntuofe (ontre. Tweez harnest ther thei have. And figez full gret, fo God me (aue. Thei be like to a gret Wardon, Blew, and faat, as any Bacon. Ther groeth the Vyn men calle Tribian. Garnadez ar and Oryngez mony an: Unto the come to Sent Pere de Mont. Alle that waie the maie thann baunt. And then to Sent Mari de Mount Serrat. Pylarymez that Mount thei bate. His full hee to clymbe unto. And the wate is straite to and fro. V. Croffes of fton (chalt thou have, The v. loiez of our Lady ther in be grave. A faire Mynftor upon bee. That Chirche is of our Ladye. Mony miraclez, ther han ben wroght, And mony Reliquez theder ben brought.

....

xv.milez vy schalt thou ascende. And as much donward er thou descende. Taward the Cite of Barilon, For foth: that is a faire town: The chef Cite of alle that land, And the gret See is ther even at hond. From thennes thou (chalt to Perpynian, And .: fter to Salio moft thou gan. . And fo forthe then to Narbon, Afaire Cite and well bygon.
And from themes to Tour Sent Denile, Aca from tocare to Tagony, pays.

The last place of Aragony, pays.

Mount Pylerez that is a Vunerfute.

A face place bit is fearly.

And so themes fro to Caltell Ryle, A schrewed town at my denise.

The Dolphyn is Lord of alle the land. And barb them for get to bis bond. And from theunes to Auinion. Is xy, largez, from tome to toun. And begymneth Protince full fre, At the brugge of Aumion Ftelle the. Then of Prouince that fare Contray, Some what thereof I will the fait. In Dominion in that fonding, The Pope hath a first dwellyng: A riole Palys, and well jelichts. Wit Towrez, and syndower full of light. of it tower, an impossing a party of the Amery Controlled a faire, And alle there is full good aire. From that Timer fit to Sulher ment I, Toward Mayie Maddlery Science, Ther Haller Said Marie Magdeleyn, In the frere Prochamez this is certagn. A faire Contraio het is, and a clere, And popul of diserte manere.

At weddyng in that Contre,
Alls the folke of the town there schull be:
And darmee alls the long date, Tong and olde, and make tham gaie. In that Contrate when on is dede, Thei beire weperex for wyn and brede: To cryent, and make gret faire, And rinde bor benedez, and make hom bare: And for att ther facez, and make them blede, And so thes walke thrugh alle the strete. And at the Messe at the sacrynge, Then make thei a foule bowtynge. And gon to the grave, and cryon hyy, Out barrow why woldest thou dye: Men wolde wene at thei were wode. For thei make so foule a lode, Then from that Contraie to Sent Antonce, Ben xxx. longe laigez full sicurlye. A Mynstor there is, a faire Abbay, And there is his barom I dar well faie; In Gold and Silver araied full well, And there is of his owne mantell. To faire well in that Contrain hit is nede, But the Silver of that Contraie is alle the fede. The grote of Prounce is ther alle mailter. The Kingez armez of Prouince but doth ber. Silver bit is, boothe gud, and fme, Like to the armez of Godefrey Boleyne.

xviy, for a coron Schalt thou have. That knoweth well bothe mailter, and knaue From thennez thou Schalt to Port Dawnton. And after that, then to Sent Lyon. Then schalt thou passe a feble waie. Into the Mountanez be my faie. Vnto the Cite of Mount Riall. Hit is coneret with fnew at alle. A longe waie (chalt thou find. To the Mount of Cyneez er thou mynde, Ferst to the soun of Sent Iohan. A whilde wase ther moft thou gan. Alle is frew alletymous of the yere, Wit ze thi witelex I rede the bere. When thou comest to that Mountain Adule the well forth or thou gan.
For and the wond olow, truff me well,
Thou schalt have payne on that hull:
Or thou come to that ather side, For the Mount is bee, large, and vide.
iii. Mountez ther be, that I know well, 20 And wich thei be I schall the tell : That be in the waie to Rome. And mony Pulgrymez, that waiez come. The neft Mount is Mount Bernard, That wais is bothe long and bard. By Sawoie the be maie is right, That is a mery Countrie, and a light: And the Dukez moneh is brasse, Roundez and mitez they be laffe. A nother Mount there is, the name Godarde, And that is better then Mount Bernard : For there men paffe the Lake Luterne, Taward Mount Godard, the waie to letne : And fo to Bellon, and to Millavne. And there ben Tuskennez, that money is tarn. A nother Mount mefte comyn waie, Is thrugh Almayn, as I you faie : The Marchandez waie, men calle hit fo, Out of Engelond to Rome who that wall go. Now then to Cynecz I wall torne agayn, And tell for the my inerney that I bane tayn. To Hespitale Sent Antony, And fo to Pymerole that Cite fre. Then comen the Q waterynez on place, For the Duke of Millayn gonnernance there bafe. And fo forthe to Mount Rigall, Then groeth wyr. tribian in that vale. And from thennez to Sauoune. And fore tenne that reall town. 50 By the River of I nne fchalt thou paffe, To Mount Ros, and Mount Vernage apafe. There greeth the Vernage apon bee, And the DI. Hard is ther gud money. Then Schall thou go to Gooa. And to Salazan that Cite alla. From themnez to Pount Sent Petre, And fo to the town of Luke, wit and chere. And then to Dife that faire Cite. And jo to Florence a nouball Vninerfite. Ther go: be Q ratereyn, and ske the grote, And faire wymmen of mery note. From thennez to Sene, that Silver is gud, And there to chaunge hit the be hoved.

Ard

And thenne to Cattell Sent Laurence:
And for to Sowterez m I ence.
From thenne: to Cattell Sufanne,
And for to Rome that bloffet town.
The Duke of I roye that Encas high
To Rome be come will gret myche.

HONDIVS bis Map of Italy.



After bom callet is Rufe. Hethen hit was, and christen nonoht. 50 Tile Peter and Paule had his bronghe. In Rome was some tyme I wene, CCC. Parifibe Chirchez and seuene: Chapelez ther ben mony alfo, y C. and fife ther too. About the wallez milez is and xl. And Towers a M. and fixty. isy and xx. grete vatez ther be, Principale ouer alle other in that Cite: And in Transeibo ther ben thre. 60 And thre in Leone full ficurly. Thuse partet I from Rome to Venus town After the fest of our Lady Anunciation. And bode there for my passage. To the holy Land I toke my viage.

And fothen forthe to Sent Clerico,

After that nexft to Aquapedant,

And after to Rede Cofer Chait thon go.

Andright to Bolfen left thon be fchent.

From thennex even to Mount Flaftkon.

And (o to Vitcherbe that faire town.

De ciuitate Romana recessi in comitiua Domini Magistri Walteri Meddeford, viq: Venice, et fic ad Terram Sanctam cum Domino Priore Sancti Iobannis London, &c. Then from Venis I schall you telle, Wiche is the waie be water, and bull, From Rome to Tode is lx. mile, Vpon the River of Tibere bit last a while. And from thennez to the Vnmerfite of Perule Is even al. long mile waiez. And thenne to Affile, Sent Fraunceis is there, Is x. mile in a value faire, and ciere. And to Remule the Vniner fite of bonor A man maie see mony a faire tour. Then to the See passe be schall, Unto Venis men do calle. Ferst to Frannkeleyn be the River fre The most to Venis the Cite.

Oftryes

A Land that is nex If Sklaueny.

After that a Cite we faie.

That men callen Dulceny.

And from thennez a litell Bace.

Is a Castell that bight Durace:

And no mo in alle that Lande.

to We faie a Cire bight Valona.

Fully vis C. mile water.

Is but faxty miles and ten.

Ry Abony coost , as we did ea,

Test founde we mony Tlez moo,

The next after hight Sating :

That is from the Cite of Venece,

The hened of the Golfe men calle bit,

Wher Schingez have mony a foule fitt. From that The on our right band,

Tothe Reme of Pyele I understand.

20 A Stif Streme there rennez : thenne,

From Venece what to thou come.

Is ener more Mare Adriaticum.

The grete See of Adrian I wis.

In that Yle a Castell dothe stounde,

That the Grekes hald in her hande :

Full well (erned, and full bonestly.

30 And at the nexit Lond after, at we can faire.

The Grikkez See begynnez there,

That is to face in our Englife,

And a Minster of our Lady,

From that The of Saifyneo.

On our lift hand as we dud go,

A C. milez thennez full trew,

We founde the Tle of Curfew :

A faire Cite as I you telle, And a Cast ell that bight Aungelle.

And from the Cite of Curfew,

Vnto the Ile of Paxiew,

xxx. long miles bit is hold,

40 And the Venyceanez basic bit in bolde.

Bothe these Ylez, and other moo.

VVc (ailet forthe bothe erly and late.

To faile from Paxiew mit Bot or Barre.

The Castell ner standeth in that stage,

The Blake Caftell in our langue.

Then failet we forthe a gret tide,

50 And founde a N'yle on our lift side,

And a Castell of folke full alfa.

That is a Castell of Grekezright.

And founde a nother plensmofe Ile,

That hight Stryualle in that Lund.

There ben holy Monkez duellande.

And nother woman , foule , ne best,

And thei wall agazn there left.

And a N'yle that Gavust broht,

Then failet we forthe a while.

In a Mynster of our Lady,

60 And there thei lif full homestly:

Nis non femenyn gender,

Thei maie not there endure.

Thet men calle Cetolonia:

Forthe on our waie we walk goo.

A C. mile bit is long and large

Tille the He of Dawgate:

Then face we a Toun hight Tyuciye,

The wiche the Venyceanez bald in hande.

Offryes the fynde be the River mony oon, Coricla is the ferst of bem ichen. van, mile hit is between By that freme that runneth Thene. And fo to Cholve thou most go, That is xxv. long milez alfo. From Cholve to Paleilyne be is, v. long milez no thing leffe. And them to Malemoke went I The wich xui; . long mile > by. And them to Venis x. long mile bit is, Alle thic waie I went I wis. And Venis flondes alle in the See, And Yell about hit gret plente:
And Lordez thei hen of duerfez placez,
To telle her Lordfehip I have no space: Rut I dar but fo difery, Hit is a riche Toun of Bicery : And of alle other marchandise also, And right well vi elet ther to. And namely of freche water fifebe, Pike , Eile , Tenche , Carpe , I wis : And of other vitelez mony oon , And namely of freche Storgon. Gud chepe, and gret plense, And femely Burgez on to See. I schipped me ther in a Galias, That laie fast by Sent Nicolas. An' Abbay in that Hauen monthe, From Venis Easte, and somewhat Southe: By estimation as I conthe see. Too milez from that Cite. How that we went , and on what vifez, We were forward mor then thricz. At the last, as Goddez wille vase, Thei analet the faile, and toke the rafe. The ferst Land at we come too, Was a N'yle land, thei faid foo. Wiche at men calle Iftera. And ther in our schippe gon gan: Hem to refresche thes were full sayn, Be cause the wether was vs agayn. What Tounez , and Castellez we sailet by. Of alle that Land telle schall I. Pyrane a Castell, Vmago a Cite, Cite Noue a nother is bee. Parenter also a nother Cite hit is, Vithall a Chapell, and a n' Abbay I wis. Ryne a Cite som what full strong, And Pole a nother, large, and long. Mony mo wit in that Land there be. And Venycyanez Lordez of alle ficurle, Ther ben other mony be name, But these we saw, and by them came. Then failet we forthe full ficurit, Be the parties of Schauony. Ther found we a N'yle that bight Nedo And a nother that hight Kerfo. And a N'yle that Saring hight, There is a n' Abbay of Monkes right. A C. mile from thennez, failet we there. And fore the Yle of Geagere : Wiche is a N'yle large, and longe

And a Castell faire, and stronge.

The Castell of Sent Michell bit is called. A firong place, and well walled. After that, as we duden go, We faie a Town hight Beneto. And on our lift band as we dude faile. Was the Cite Tregora : in a N'vie. And the Cite of Spolita, ther ben thre. Allehard land, and faire to fee. And lex. milez ener ther fro. On our right band as we dud go,____ Ayan that for faide faire Cite. We fair a thing like tille a Tre. Iche man hadde wonder what his was Some faid a Mast , some faide bit Nase. We askede the Schippemen enerichon, And thei faid , bit was a fton. That zought vs wonder for to be. Suche a Ston Rande in the See. But we faw hit fowell wit eyez, That we west well but was no lice. 20 Then we asked what his bisht. Micella they faid full right. Then failet we forthe in our waie, By the cost of Sclauony , I you fair. A N'yle there for fothe we founde, That hight Lilla, on our lift bande. Too Abbaiez in that The was Of Sent George, and Sent Nicolas. Then failet we forthe on our I ornaie. And on our left band a N'vle we faie: And of a Chirche the olde walles. The Mount of Sent Andrew men hit callet.

A litell ther fro as we duden ga, We faie a N'yle bight Boica. Then failet we forthe a gud while, On our lift hand we fair a N'yle, That men callen there Letena. Full of pepull, and of vitelez alfa. And is. Castelles for sootb there bee, Of frute and of wyne grete plente. 40 Another Tle yettewe came by, And alle in the parties of Sclaueny : Curfila men calle bit in that Land, Wit pepull fele, too Castelez strang. A baren Tle then after we founde. And non frute on alle that Lond : Calla men calle bit , thei faie sh'fe, And x, mile about hit is. On our lift band as we failet thefe. We faie a N'yle bight Pelagus : 50 There we fe in our Romence. Where Sent George dude his penaunce. On our lift hand after that. We founde a N'yle boshe faire, and faat: That we callen there Augusta. And after a nother, that hight Milidae And after that a Toune well walled, That Cite Drogonie men called. Faire we faie bit . and failet ther by. OC The chef Cite of alle Sclaueny. And from thennez lx. milez full long. Is a Cite faire, and strong: The wiche Cattera called bit is, And there begynnez Abonnez, A Land

A wounde miracle there was wrooks. Bothe of men, and of befter, Sauc onely Hawkez make there ber neftez. From thennez we failet a certeyn waie, On our lift band a N'yle we faie :

When S. Marke from Alexander was brooks : And was translatet in to Ven ce. The Galier comen be that waier And when the Galiez come zeder thee. The Ile cleued euen in too: And the Galicz token enen the fame waie. So thennez, the fee in to this daie. After that a N'yle we found, That hight Prodo a maget Londe. Then by a nother failet we. That Morrea hight full ficurly : On our lift hand that Lande Stode. Fast ther by our Galuz vode. The Castell of lunke thei fase foo. That longeth the King of Nauerre too. Ten mile be rond the Castell Upon a wonder hee bull, Standeth a Chirche hee on hight. Of Sent Teodete that noble Knight. After that we came full fore. Unto the Cite of Modome. Taward that Cite as we dud oo. On our lift band a mile ther fro, There is a N'yle Sapientia men callez, A strong Ile, and no waller. Upon that Ile the fee I wife, Hit betetb ther on fanz, my fe. Of that Ile , and of that Cite. The Ven ceanez Lordez thei bee. On our lift hand as we dud faile. A wasst Yle we fate fanz foile, That men calls ther Severigo: A Heremite there dwelleth, and no moo. And so to Candy we go failand, And the Land of Morez on our left hand. From the Lond of Modyn xviy, milez water, Is a Cite worthy for to praife: Corona that place is called, A strong Toun, and well walled. Hit Stondeth in the Lond of Morey. And the Venyceanez Lordez thei be. And after that same Lande, We fase a Cite bight Diamande : As a Diamande bit is maked Conoret wit from, and never naked. After in the same Land of Morrea. We faie a Caftell bight Moirema. After in the Same Land a N'ile we Tee. That hight Cherigo in that Contre. In that Ile be Castelez too. And the Venyceanez be Lordoz of theo. A nother He we founde in bast. Hight Cetherigo but bit u waaft. And bestez there be great plente, On the same side as failet me. There is a N'yle y. mile there fro, That men callen there Gnego : As a negge bit is maked, And nonze m-abite, be alle naked.

And was wit the Apostlez like a knaue,

gu, yere there schalt thou have.

And as many lentonez ficurly,

And a nother place is ther by.

Wher Sent Petur fode and fische,

As much pardon is there I mis.

And after that there is a Cite,

There is a Chirche in that flede,

10 Where Sent George was don to dede.

And also there is a nother place,

Of his Palleffy, and madelere,

As I have tolde of now before.

After that the Cite of Roma;

And the Castell of Emus alfa:

Also in that same place,

Is the grave of Cleotas:

Wiche was oon of the too.

In the wiche a Chirche dothe stonde,

20 Where the y. Discipelez were walk and :

And knew him by the brede breaking.

And Sent Lake that other alfo.

And metton wit I befu after his rylyng,

Then the Cite that a Riamathia hight,

That toke lbefu don of the rode tree,

30 And Samuel the Prophete there lithe hee:
In alle these places that he ne met here,

Of Pope Siluefter be graunted there;

vis. vere, and vis lentonez, ther to:

There in is the Mount of Caluery,

VVher for our fake Iehn wolde dy.

There is plenor remission,

AO To alle hem that zeder wull come.

Aljo there fast by is a place,

Or he was laid in his grase :

And at the Sepulcer wit in.

There a place by right nere.

Plenor remission maie thou wynn.

VV here Crist was like a gardenere :

And aperet to Marie Magdaleyne,

After his uprift, as Clerkez fan.

In the worschip of our Ladie, I wis :

There is vij . lentonez, and vij . yere,

50 Nes ft that place a Chapell there is,

VVI ere Crist to bis moder forst

And in a wyndow fast by there,

To wiche in the house of Pilate

Crist was bounden to, and kete:

The preson that Crist was in fent,

At ichon of thele places, hir before.

Is vig lentonez, and vis. yere more.

And the place where thei partyet his vestment.

63 An in the fame Chirche to fete.

Aperet after his uprist :

Is a piler of her flate.

VV bere I be fu Crift anomiet was.

Plenor remission ther maie thou base.

To alle bem that zeder wull go.

Where Lofeph was boron that noble Knight:

Now to the Citee of Ierusalem we wall wind.

Where of the Sepulcer is a Chirche hynde.

As muche pardon thou schalt have there,

Thrugh Sent Peter Praier.

That men callen Leidye:

Wher heled was Eneas

In

48

50

And

At the begynning of this Ile.

Is a thorp that hight Newtoun:

That some tyme was a cite strong. The Castell hight men saie soo,

And on a hull there alle alonen.

Is a Castell stiff, and strong,

Sancta Maria de Fulmaro.

The ferst place bit was then,

Thei myght not well hold hit,

That ener thei of Rodez wan.

But be vi fement, and oud witt.

Wit in but a latell while

Betweene them we failet than. Then failet we for the on our right hand, And come to the Ile of Candy Land. A cite ther was not ferr us fra, That men callex Cananea: And lifty mile that cite fro, Is another that hight Retimo. And from thennez milez fifty, Is the chef cite of alle Candy. And Candy the cite men calles, A faire town, and fron of valles. There orosth alle the Maluely,

Or in any place in heshenefe, And at Modyn alle the Romeney I wis. Another cite is in that Ile. From that cef citte a C. mile. On our lift hand as we did go. Setea men calle it so. That He botthe large and longe, viii. C. mile alle Vmbegange. ity good citeer bit bath full ryue, And castellez xx. and fife: Except Thorpez, and Hamelettez,

That men have in all Christyanty:

And howfer that in the wrner ben fetter iii. M. men there may be raiset. Well bor (et and well harneffet Of houslerez, and of albefterez i. C. M. ate alle yerez. From thise He now wynde we, And telle we forth, on our lorny. Fifty mile we failet, and anon,

From the cite of Candy to Capa S.Ion, That is to faie in Englese. S. Iohanez bessed I wis. Ther is a Chappell, and no moo, The Lordschip of Candy bit longeth too. Spina longa men calle bit, On our lift hand that le was fette. Then (ailet we forthe (o anon. And feie the Ile of Refrenan :

Awast He ftanding in the Sec. And after that, anon face we, An yle that men calle Styppea : And there in be Castellez trea. On our lift hand as we failet thoo, We fam the He of Awgeo: And too Castelez ther in bee, And after an yle bight Nazaree.

Ther is a Castell of lyme and ston, And Knightez of Rodez Lordes bon. The nexst land after that bight Nyfferey, And nexst that the land of Turky. And even over ther agame, The Ile of Rodez is certaine:

xv. mile she See brode is. From Turky to the Ile of Rodez. Then at Rodez thei made them zere. Here dwellyng for ener more. A ftrong town Rodez hit is, The Castell is strong and faire I wis. From Rodez then a C. mile, On our lift band we found an vie. Castell Ruge men calle bit. The rede Castell be my witt. The Knighetez of Rodez be Lordez and theder go And feie we Hez no mo : But too on our lift band, On of the Kyngez of Ciprese land. The Ile of Caprele for so the his hight, There of fer ferr we had a sight: I can not fair of town ne of citer, Hit was fo ferre I myeht not fee : That other was the Ile of Baaf. On our lift band toward last, Of a land we had a fight,

Carmeyn de Surry for fothe hit hight.

The white Frerez were founder ferft there Of our Lady there is a Mynster. Then to Port last when we came, There was mont a blothe mane : And thanked God of his faire Conde. That brought vs fane into that land. And from last we went to Terufalem. And that wase tornet bome agayne. At Ierufalem while I was I went pilgrimagez in mony place: And had the pardon that longeth thertoo As I schall zow or I go. Now at Port Latt I wall begynn, To telle the pardon at is ther inn : The wiche is salled lorpen, And Port lat wit other men. This pardon ferst when but begane, Was of Pope Siluefter that holy mane: At the praior of Conftantyn. That was an Emperour gud, and fyn. And of Sent Elene his moder dere. That fourdibe Crofe as thei fay there: And after the place be of deere, So that pardon confermet hee. To some plenor remission of syn,

And some vy. zerez, and vy. lenton.

Wher Petur reifed thrush Goddes grace,

He was a woman that was ber name :

At Port laff bearan wee.

And so frothe from gre to gre,

At Port laff ther is a place,

From dede to lif to Tabitane,

A Chapell there is of Sent Elene, V bere (che the crofe faire, and fine. The crowne, the naylez were founden there. And the bened of Longeez fore. In that place where they founde were Is plenor remission alle daiez in the yere. In that Chirche a piler is founde. To wiche Crist was bounden, and cronnet. And in the Chirche where Adam hened was fun. Is the middez of the world by resone. Alle thele ben in that Chirche aboute. And ity. Chapelez, ther be wit oute. The ferst of our Lady, and Sent Ion Enangelist. Their of the Aungelez, the sig. of Ion Baptitt: The ing. is of Marie Maydeleyn : Denote placez alle for certain. At alle these placez, to pardon by and by, Is viy. yere, and viy lentonez signely. VVI out the dere of that Mynfler, Is a place lene, and dere: Where Crift him rested for wery, Bering his crofe for to die. There is the riche mannez, place, That let the Lazarer, as Clerkez faiez, Dre for defaute of mete. There in Helle is made his fete. And a waie ther after thou fyndelt fene. Where a man that hight Symeon, VVit the lewez conftramet was, For to bere Criftez crofe. Then Crist tornet him agayn, And to the wymmen thuse gan sayne : VVene on youre felfe, and not on me. And on your childer wher that thei be, A nother place there is at hounde. VV bere our Lady fell don fownande; Seeyngher fon his crofe bere, Taward his deeth, that dud her dere. Alfothere is it stonez white. To the wiche Crift reftet alite : VV at his crose bym selfe to cole. And a non after ther is our Lady stole. At alle the fe placez for fade here. Is vij. lentonez, and vij. yere. And fast by is the house of Pilate, Wher Crift was brought to full late : Bounden, buffetet, and crounet wit thoron, Demed to deeth on the moron. Azannez the despite that he had there, Is fully remission, and plenere. And there is the place, thou maie go in. Wher Crift for yaf Madeleyn her fynn. And also there is Herodez place. Hoder Crist was sende as clerkez facez : From Pilate to Herode in fcornyng, And cladde wit white clothyng. Alfo by a water thou moft ga, That men calle Probatica Pifcina : There is the Temple verement. Where in our Ladywas present : And wedder to lofeph afterward, Azan her wille hit was full hards And after that Crift he was. Presentet in the same place,

To

To that holy man Sent Symeon: A: iche of these places have ye moune vis, vere, and vy. lentonez therto. And Crift was founden in the temple alfo, Diffulyng whilly in his famez, Wit the Doctorez of her Lawez. A (birche there is of Sent Anne, Where our Lady was boron of that weman: Plenor remission is in that place. Bleffed be Ichfu of his grace. After that fone thou fyndelt a gate, Wher Sent Steven was ladd out ate. To be floned to bis deeth: And a non after, a nother stede. The vulden zate called bit is. Where Crift entred Icrufalem I wis. To alle these place who so wald gon, Is viy. lentonez to pardon. Now to the vale of Iolophat fo fre, of faire place there Schalt thou fee: Where Sent Steuen flonet was, And the tour of Cedron is in that place. Alfo a gres pece of the crofe of Ichfu, In that (ame place is , I trow, And ferned there for a trugge mony a daie, That is the voice in that Contraie. A Chirche of our Lady is there alfo, And the grave the febe was in do: The pardon of these too places in fere, Is vis. lensonez, and vis. yere. And there our Lady beriet was, Plenor remission is in that place. In Iofaphat the vale befor faide, Is the place where Chift praied, To his fader befor his lideeth : vij. yere, and vij. lentonez ben in that fede. Then at the & Mount of Olivete. There is a Chirche faire, and swete. At the gardeyn we well begyn, Where Crift was taken, and bounden in. And fall by a place is there. Where Petur Imot of Malkes ere. Also a place there schalt thou see, Where Crift faid to his Apostlez three: Abide bire to bem thefe be faide, Tille I have ben at my fader, and praide. And a place there schalt thou fynde, Where the Apollell Thomas of Lynde, Had a gurdell of our Lady. When (che was boron to heuen on hee. A nother place fast by is fette, Where Crift upon the Citee wept. Also the place is nee by there. Where the Aungele did apere To our Lady wit the palme, and faide to fore: That dai to beauen fche fehuld be bore. A nother place is not ferr ther fra. That men callen there Galelia. The xi. Apostelez were gederet there. And Crist to hem dude apere : At alle these placez bere abouen Is vij. yere, and vij. lentonez to pardon. A nother Chirche is ther by to nemen, Where Ibelu fleed up in to heuen.

What man or woman that cometh there. He bath remission plenere. After that a Chirche of lym, and fton, Of Sent Marie Egiptian : And the Septlere of Sent Pelage. In a nother Chirche maie you fee. And in the Mount of Olivete on biobt. A place there is that Bet hfage hight. And of Sent Ion a Chirche there is. Where the Apostlez made the Crede I wis IQ There is a nother Chirche right bynde, Where Crift the Apostolez kenned The Pater nofter for so praie: Alfo there is in the fame waie, Where our Ladie rest a stage : For wery going on Pilgrimage. There is the Chirche of S. Iame the leffe. To whom Crist apperet the date of Pasch.

And after in the same place, The same beriet be was. 20 To alle these places to for said, Is vis. yere of pardon arased: And vis. lentonez I dar well faie. Paffe we forthe thufe on our waie : To the vale of Siloee, A fare Well there scholt thou fee : Wher our Lady Criftez clothez dude. When he into the Temple present was. There is the well of Siloee. VVbere Crift made a bland man to fee. 30 And a place ther (chalt thou fee, Where Itaias the Prophete fo free, Of the lewez famez he was. And beried in the same place. Alfo a Chapell thou febalt fee there Where the Apostlez bud bem for fere. Also the felde hit is fast by. That was bought for penyes xxx: For the wiche Crist was folde, At ichon of these placez that I have tolde, 40 Is to parden vy .yere, And vis. lentonez also in fire. Of the Mount of Sion I will you telle, Where the lewez both false and felle, Woldhaue raft of the Apofilez wit force, Of our Lady the vere, and the tref coorce: When thei here bare to her grane. Alfo fast by ther schalt thou have. Where Petur wept, and fore can rowe, That be for foke his Lord lefu. 50 A Chirche of Sent Angel is there beside, That was a Palice faire, and wide: And Anna the Bischope that place hade, To the wiche Crist was ferst lade : Examinent, and wit bufferez bete. A nother Chirche ther by was fette, That is of our Lady, and Sent Saluator, And Caiphas place nit was before : Where lewez him bobbed, and dud dishife, 60 And Petur there for foke bim therez. In the Same Chirche is there also. A preson that (rift was in do: And in that same place thou schalt have, The fron that Live on Criftez grane. Where

Tower of Cedron. Mount Olivet. The Well of Silve. LIB. VIII

Where that our Lady abode fo, xiiy, yere in gret whoo: And there fast by sche made a nynde, Out of this word when fche fchuld wynde. There is plenor remission. And there fast by is a place anon, Wherein lon the Fuanvelist. Was chofen dere to lefu Crift : And sange a Messe to our Lady.

10 And fast by is where Sens Mathy, Was chosen to the Apostolez: And ther is our Lady Oratory I wis. Also there is another place. Where Sent Steuen beried was The (ecounde tyme, as clerkez faie ichon, Wit Gamaleel and Abibon. Denote places there Chalt thou frade, And ther Crist his Apostolez taught full hynde: And wher our Lady herd full prechyng, 20 Of her Sone Iefu, henen Kyng. 1 And yet thou may fynde more, Dauid, and Salamon beried there: And other Kingez by hem ben cast, And the Pasche Lambe ther was rast. In ichon of thefe places is vy. yere to pardon, And vis. lentonez there base ve mowne. Alfo there is another place, Where the Pasche Lambe eten was. Wit Ibelu, and his Discolez mfere. 30 And the Sacrament was made there: Plenor remission for sothe ther is. And yet another place I wis, Where Crift to his Apostolez was lowly. We sche here fere, and made theim dry : And where he on the Afcention day, Reproves bem of ber febull faie. Then Schalt thou find there full Sone, The place where the Apostolez ichon, Received there the holy Goft, 40 In the feste of Pentecoit : Plenor remission ther maie then winn: A nother place is yet wit in, Where Crist to Sent Thomas aperet, And to the Apostolez, when the zates were feret: Where more Sent lame beded was . And yethe is there another place. Where Crist aperet to Mariez three, And faid to hem, Auete. vy. yere to pardon be at that place, 50 And vy lenionez full of grace. Then wall we thefe to Beethleem, That is v. mile from Ierusalem. In that wase ther is a place, Where the thre Kyngez berbaret was s And where the sterre aperet to hem. And alfo a Chirche as thei farm. That stondeth in the same stede, Where was boron Elias the Prophete. And the grave of Rachaell; 60 At ichon of these placez, trust me well, Is vy. yere, and vy. lentonez thertoo, To all tham that theder wull goo. Thenn at Bet leem I will begyn, And telle the pardon that is therin.

There is a Chirche of our Lady. Where Crist was boron full ficurly: . And the crache that he late in. Plenor remission there make thou wen. · Allo there is a denome place. Where Christ circumcises was : And where the sterr wayna schet awaie From the Kyngez, when thei his faie.

And the Chapell of Sent Icrome. And the grave that he was in don. Alfo ther by febalt show have, Where the Innocentez were orane. There is a Chirche of Sent Nicolas. Where Paule, and Euftoce beriet was : Theiwere Maydonez full ficurly. Alfo ther is a Chirche of our Lady. Where the Angele cause here, and Iofeph alfo. Into Egipt for to go. Of the Angele a Churche is there, Where the Angele dud apere. To the Schepardez, and to bem faide, That Crist was boron of a Maide, And the Chirche, or elle the grave. Of the vy. Prophets there schalt thou have. And the Mynster of Sabaa That was an Abbas, as thei faa. At iche of the eplace who fe will co, Is vy . yere, and vy . lentonez thertoo. Now here we the pardon of Betany, VVhere Lazare dyether, that is werry: The wiche laie ther iii. daiez deed; And Crift raifet bym up in the fame fede VV here be clepet by mout of the grave, Plenor remission there maie then have There is the house of Symeon that good man In the wiche Marie Mawdelyn came: On ther Thursdaie wit ognement swete, To anount Cristez fete. And there Martha faid thefe word i For fothe and thou baddest be bir Lord. Lazar my brother (chuld not dede be: Thi brother [chall rife, shen faid be. Also there is the honse of Maudelyn VV bere sche was when Martha can farm: Our Lord,our Maister, his cometh bee, And Maudelyn fufter be calleth thee: To iche of these places for saide, Is vy . yere, and vy . lentonez laide. Ther ben pilgrimagez mony mo, But I saw non of alle thoo: And therfor I make non mention. But of the places that I have gon. Then at Flem Iordan I wull take Ther of a mention for to make. There is a Mynster of Sent Ioachim . Fader of our Lady that boly Ungyn. Alfo the bull bit is there, Wher Crift fasted the ground is bare: xl. daiez witouten wyn, Therfor it beight Mount Karantyn : Plenor remission there maie thou have, On the top of the bul thou must bit crane. A place is there the denele temptet Ibefu, And faid if Goddez fone be ibon, Lillil 2

1242 Famous places for Birth, Residence, and Burial of our Forefathers. LIB. VIII.

Thefe Stones into brede brance. At thou maie ete after thi fasting. In other thingez be temptet him alfo: But we wall tale of Ierico: VVhere Crift herbaret was. In the house of Zacceus. Also a place ther by mate be. VV bere Crist made a blynd man to fee. Of Sent Ion Baptift a Myniter ther is: At ichon of these placez I wis, Is vij. yere, and vij. lentonez therto, To alle tham that theder wull go. VV ber Ibelu Crist baptizet was. Is plenor remission in that place. Alfo ther is a wilderneffe hone fome, VV bere is a Mynster of Sent Ierome: And the dede Sec that is there, VV her the v. Citeez drenchet were. For finn that thei dud thanne. And be youd flem Iordan, Is a full defert place, and wan, Of Seat Marie Egiptian. To alle these places who that wall go, Is with vere, and vis. lentonez therto. Of the Huller of Vrie to telle. A while ther for to duelle : Ther is a Mynster faire, and free, In the wiche place groceth a Tree, That went vato Cristez crofe: Thuse in that Lond bit hath the wife. Ther is the house of Symeon, That in the Temple was redy bon, On Candelmes daie Crift to bent Unto his armes, he was present.
There is a Chirche of Seut Ion Baptist,
VV bere our Lady when sche was wit Crist, Salute Elizabet bere Cofin dere, And faid the worder that folo bere : Magnificat anima mea Dominum. And Zacarias place is ther alfo. VV bere he wrote bothe faire, and welle, Benedictus Dominus Deus Ifrael. To alle these placez who that wall go, Is vy. yere, and vy. lentonez therto. Now telle we of the Vale of Mambre, And of the places, that about hit be. Ther wall I telle a litell thing, VV nere was Abrahamez dwellyne: VV per that he faie Childerenthre. And on for alle worschippet he. Paffe not thi Seruant in this bete. I (chall faich water, and waifch thi fete. And Clerkez farn, and don us lere The ferst tokymning of the Trinitie was there, Also there is the Cite of Ebron, VVinere Adem, and Abraham in grane was don. If ac and thei ben beried there. And alle her wifez wit bem in fere. Also fast by there is a place. VVbere that Adam formet was . And there is the Defert wher Ion Baptist, Dud penaunce for Ihe (u Crift. Alfo the Cifterne fee you moune, VVbere that Ioleph Iacob fone,

Wit his brether schuld have be cast in. For dremez that he redde to bem. At schon of the fe placez what at thou be. vy . yere, and vy . lentonez is grannted the. Thus to Nazaret let us winde. And telle of that place so bynde. Some what to fair that is best,

Of that pardon that ever school last. In the beginning thou schalt have a place. Where Sent Steuen ferft beried was : Io After a Castell there schalt thou fee. That bight Abiera in that Citee : Wher our Lady knew he had left her form; A nother Chirche yette fyndest thou fon, Fast ther by thenn Schalt thou banne, The Welle of the Samaritane. And the Cite Nebulofa, or Sichar men bit calle In the wiche the grave fynde thon schall Of loseph, that is to fortolde, That to the limalitez was folde. After that, thou findest thenne, The Cite that bight Sebastiane. There Ion Baptist in preson was don, And after that henedet full fone, There is the Castell of Jehenne. Where the x. Lazarez were Inne. And Crist bem beled of ber schenes, And the Cite of Naym ther by bit is. Crist dud miraclez in that fede, Raised a widow sone from deede. Alfo in the Cane of Galelie. Wit in Nazaret that faire Citee, There is a Chirche full faire fette, Where Gabriel our Lady grets. Also in a while thou schalt finde there, Where Crift to his Moder water dud bere: Also a faire place is fast by. Where the lewez full fritnoufly Ibefu bedlyng wold base don caste t And a myddez bem a wase be past. At ichon of thefe placez befor nemet. Is vy. yere, and vy. lentonez assignet. There is a Hull that hight Tabor, Crist was transfigures there, From his Manhod, to bie Godhede: Plenor remssion is in that stede. There is the Cite that bight Cafarnaum, Where Crist mony miraclez hash don. The See of Galelie forzete we nought, Where Crift mony miracles hath wroght. Alfo the Cite of Tiberiadis, Where Crift calde Mathew Discopull bis. Also there is a nother place, VV here Archifinagog Doughter was VVa Crist raised from the dede, And Crist etye wit Mathew brede. Yet the Hull maie thou kenne, VV bere Crist feede v.m. mene, VVit the brede of lonez fine. 60 A nother Hull yete fyndest thou rine, VV here that sig. m. men were, VVit fenen lonez fede there. Alfo the Cite of Sidonne, VVbere the woman, dud forthe gon:

Aná

CHAP. 5. Damascus. Paul called. Mount Sinai. Moses receiuing the Law. 1243

And to Crist Sche Saide full yare, Bleffed be the wombe that the bare. At iche of these places lene thou me, Is vis. yere, and vis. lentonez grantet the. Then telle we of a nother place, The wiche is called Damace. Beside Damace ther is awate. Wher lefu to Paule can faie : Saule, Saule, why folonest thou me? 10 Alfo a wyndow ther maie thou fee. Where Paule went out when be bym heed: Alfo in the same bonfe is keede, where that Paule cristenet was, Of that boly man Ananias. Alfo a place ther Schat thou funde. Where Sent George the Knight bynde, Faught wit the Dragon for the Maide Sake, And delineret her from wrake. At alle these placez that I bane tolde, 20 Is vig. yere, and vig. lentonez, be thou bolde. Now telle we of the Mount of Synai, A full denote place sicurly. The Cite of Gaza is in that place. Where Sampion flam. and beriet was. In that Mount upon by, Is a Mynster of our Lady : The Mynftor of the Busche men calle hit, Wher in the body of Sent Katheryne was tut. Also behande the bee Autere. 30 Is wher lefu dud apere, In that Chirche to Moifie. When he kept Getro Madan Schepe trulee. In middez of that Hull is a place, Where dud his penaunce the Prophet Helias; In the bre of that Hull, by Clerkez (amez, God yaf to Moifes boothethe Lawez : Written in Tabelez, wit outen miffe, Plenor remission ther hit is. A Garden ther is wit out distannce. 40 Where Onorius dude bis penaunce. A nother Hull alfo is there, To the wiche Aungelez and bere The bleffed body of Sent Kateryne, Schewas a holy Virgyn. Vnder that Hull trust thon me. There rennes be the Rede See. At schon of thefe places, that I have tolde, Is vis. yere, and vis. lentonez, be thou bolde; Thuse from Synai wall I skippe, And telle of the Pilgrmagez of Egipt.
50 These saie I nought, but by beed telle, Written in a Tabull in the Hull: Therfor I telle as I bit fase,
VV ho that cometh thether be maie a faie. In Egipt is a Cite faire. That hight Maffar, or eller Kare : In the wiche mony Chirchez be, And con is of our Lady: / De Columpna calleth bit is, 60 And Sent Barbara beriet ther is. There is a water of gret prife, That cometh out of Paradife: The wiche is callet Nilus,
Men of that Land the fair thate. Alfo ther is a great Garden,

Where that the Bawm groeth in.

Also a Mynster there is sette. Of Sent Anton, and Poul the ferst Heremet: And of Macary, and other mo. Thefe from that Cite let us go. By the pace of iij. daiez Iornay, There is a Contrain in that ware. That men calle Menfelcula : There is a Chirche hight Elmorana. Where is a Chapell of our Lady. There Sche dwellet vu. vere truly. Wit Iesu her sone so dere,
And wit Ioseph her Spouse insere.
In that Chapell on Palme Sondaie, Of alle Cristen I you faie, That duellen in Egipt Lande, Do there her feruse I understande. The Cite of Alexander in Egipt is. Where Sent Kateryne was flagn I wis : And Sent Johan Elemosmere. That holy Patriarke is beriet there. And Sent Mark the Apostell of Crist. Alfo he was Euangelift: There was martired, and to ded don. And after was beriet ther sone : And fo from thennez to Venece translate. At ichon of thez placez and thou go ate. Is vis. yere, and vis. lentonez to pardon, To alle bem that thether wall come. Pilgrimagez ther be no mo. That ever any man dad goe. But now at my yann turning, Hereth of our home comyng. From Ierusalem sothe to sayn, Euen to laff we turnet ayan. Here we schippet alle to geder, In the Galias that brought vs theder. iii. hunderet mile then failet we, Unto the Golf of Satelle: Wiche the Schippe four pardy, Thes were the worst of Crificanty The Pilgrymez bere me gud record For thei tornet vs from bord to bord . And sig. wikker I dar well fair. Wemyght not skape the Golf awais: But op, and don traver fet the See, By alle the Coft of Turky. And on our lift band the Golf was, As we from Laff toke therafe. On Turky fide we faie there, The bee Hull that bight Mount Clere. And under that Hull bit maie be, The chef bened of Synode: That is a token to Schippmen, Whereby theisthe Coffee kenne. And after fully fifty mile waie, Is a Castell, as I you saie, The wiche Mirra callet ic. And Sent Nicolas was boron ther I wis : And Bischop ther was be made, And his last ende there be bade: In his grave he was laid thoo, And after translate to Ballo. That is in the Pole Lander And there be lithe I understande. And xx. mile that Castell fro, Is a Hauen hight Cacabo's L11111 3

Also

St.! 17

AIVAGE

1244 The Authors returne out of the Holy Land. His review of Italy, LIB. VIII

Hit is right depe, and faire of flode, In alle wederez hit is gude : For Schippez therein to take her rest. In alle Turky fide hit is the best. That Hauen sofore, as men faid me, Was some tyme a faire Cite: And was cristenet as men telle, Tille gret vengaunce vpon hem felle. For finn that thei dud in the Tour, Hem to amende thei were never ben. That (ite was drant for the same case, Right as Sodome, and Gomore was. Some windowez, and wallez vet ther be. For I (are bem wit myn ec. From that Hauen of Cacabo, On our right hand as we dud go, exx. mile by Lond I wis, To the Castell Ruge has: We failet therby taward Ierufalem, And come therby hamard again, And xxx. mile from that Castell, Is a strong He trust mewell: The wiche in the langage of that Lande, Is callet the vis. benedez, I understande. What is the cause thei calle hit soo, For viy, poyntez go out ther fro: Alle gret Rochez, and long ther thei be, And ferre in fonder men maie bem fee. For a token men bold bem there, Breaule thei Cobuld by theim faire.

And fixty long mile, and ten, VVc failet to the Ile of Rodez then: And rested ther a litell space, To confort us in that place, And even from Rodez to Venece. As I went I come home, I wis. And come to Padua the Cite faire : There I rested, and toke the aire. And from thennez to Castell Limimia. And fo to Baffayn, ther are Castellez tan From thennez to Bononia full enen. And there we were daiez feuen. And so forthe to Castell Sent Iohan, And then to Mirandula that foule Toun, And even for the so wate Hostia
Muche Marise ther schar thou in ga.
Then so for the to the Toun of Veron,
The Venyceanez be Lordez of ichon. Then so for the to Castell Selucian.
Then so for the to Castell Selucian,
And the Blastard is thi money than.
From that place thou schalt to Trene,
That stony wave most thou heent. And so forthe to the Cite of Merane, VV here wyn is plenty to mony ayne. And then to Mount Sent N.colas, VV ho is him that waie gas : For Montez, and Snow, and ile chere, Failet not there of alle the yere. So draw the don to Nazaret. And whate thi Pike be well feet.

HONDIVS his Map of Germanie.



CHAP.6. S. I. A Myslerie. Englishmen in threefold respect Normans.

And from theunez to Kempton, For fothe that is a gud toun. And then so forthe to Memmyng, There is the Emperous money walking: Like a barre of silver bit is, And lasteth ferre, that maie not myse. Then to the cite of Vime is this waie, And at the Brugge ther most thou paies And fo from Vime to Offelyng Ic And after that to Kipping.

And fo thenn den to Brushull, That muketh men her leggez to pull. And from thennez to Duron. And thenn to Spire that rioll toun. From Spire to Vormez are milez xing, And so to Mence then schalt I wene. And to Bynge a toun upon the Ryene, And to Wefell, and Couclence, there is gud wyn. And fo to Andernak that is thi wate, 20 And then to Bun, I dar well faie. From thennex to Coleyn that faire cite, Ther most show change thi money. And to from thennez to Acon, There be hote bates in that toun. And thenn to Mastrik I therede. And there new money most thou gette. And fo forth even to Difte. That waie is wilde, and hit be myfte.

And so thon schalt to Macheleyn, That is a toun booth gud and fyn: There gothe the money of Brabana And that deceivet mony man. And fo from Mechelyn to Gaunt. Into Flaunderez most thou haunt. And so to Burgez that faire toun, And then to Newport most thou gon.

And after that to Donkerke, And foto Gravenyng moft thou linke. And to Calys a toun full free, Thuse at the See-fide we bee. And for be is the comyn waie, From England to Rome, I will not faie : From England to Rolle; I will not fale:

Netales make of her governaunce,

For to all pilgrymez, bit is no flaunce.

Then praie ne to the Lord of myghtes most, That brought this Pilgryme to Engelond coff. His lif to mayntene to his wille, In his fernice bothe lounde and stille. And when we out of this word (chull wende. The ione of benen be vs fende: That is my praior, and schal be aie, We may be saued at Domessaie: And so to his blis he vs bringe, less that is beuen King: And secur therof, at we maie be, Saie alle Amen for charite.

CHAP. VI.

The Churches Peregrination by this Holy Land way, and warre into myfticall Babylon : or a Mysterie of Papall Iniquity renealed, how the Papall Monarchie in and over Christendome, was advanced in that Age and the following, and principally by this Expedition into the Holy Land.

The Historic of the Normans, and their proceedings. Of V n n n n and Bo n m y n n n s policie, abusing the scale of Christendome in these Warres and of Satans looking after one thouland yeares.

Itherto you have heard the Monke and the Priest Eye-witnesses of this Expedition : the one called Robertus Anglus, the other a follower of Robert the Nortour the ortestate such as English cut enter a follower of Robert the Permans, and after them the Tyriam Archbillop), and an English Monke. Neither let any marvell that in their Peregrinations, dedicated to the English main principally, I omit not the Normin, whole Ethier and Brether neigned here, who for the hope of the English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke that of Ternfalem being offered, who dyed in English Crowne for looke the Eng land: and what shall I more say? What are Englishmen but in triple respect, Normans or North Vid. Cand. Eris. men: From the North parts adiopning came the first Angles, or Saxons: from thence also the Daner, which made the next Conqueste: and from these North parts, the scourge of the World. Omne malam ab Aquilme (ex Scanza infula que erat quasi officina gentum, an velut vagina Natio. V. Gometic. da 60 nem, the parestor mosk part still fusicest to the Crowne of Demmarke) the same Danish people due, Norm. feeling themselves in France, and called Normans, that is, men of the North, after a French civillizing and Christianitie, made their third Conquest under Earle William. This three-fold Cord cannot be eatily broken, nor can any Englashman at this day separate his Norman bloud from the English, and indiffoluble mixture even from the last conquest remayning in the tongue and peo-

1246 The Normans Dominion in Italy, Rob. puissance and Boa. policy, LI B. VIII

mie was English, and as Endmerss and all the Historians of that time testifie, the monie which Actraved his Armie was English, Normandie remayning therefore engaged to King William his Hillery of Nor- Brother, Yes, Boamand also and Tancred were Normans: forcie of which Nation returning from a Terofolymitar pilgrimage, behaued themselves so valiantly at the siege of Salerne, against the Saracers, that Guaimar the Prince fent Legats with them into Normandie, to draw fomead uenturers into his part, where Gifelbert a Nobleman, having flaine William, and fearing the anger of Robert then Earle of Duke of Normandie, embraced the occasion, and with his Brethren Rainulph, Ai clitin, Ofmund and Rodalph, and their followers went into Italie to Prince Pandulph at Capua, Anno Dom. 1017.

ple, the Conquerors vtmoft indeuours being herein conquered. A great part of Earle Roberts Ar-

Regital el S. Normans in Apulia.

Car, Sigen. de

Apulia and Calabria were then subject to the Greeke Empire, which rather tyrannizing then ruling, by the Catagan or Deputie, Melus a principall man perfwaded the Normans to inuade his Country, to to thake of the Greekilb yoke, and fought four times with Bubagan the Catagan in the three first battels winning much, which in the fourth at that fatall place of Canna hee loft againe: the remayning Normans betaking themselves to Pandulfe and Guaimar. After this Maniscou the Catapan fent to Guamar to fend him his Normans, to fight against the Saracens in Sicilia. Lately before (this was, Anno 1039) the fonnes of Tancred (inuited by their Countrimen) had comne thither with three hundred men at Armes, by whole helpe he recoursed Syracuse, and the most part of Sicilia, which after their departure the Saracens next yeare repolfessed. Anno 1041. Ardoinus a Lumbard offended with Maniacus, for taking from hima Horse which he had taken from a Saracen, incited Earle Ranulph a Norman, to affet him in the warre a-

Sonnes of Tancred. Atulia fatre i zidas.

gainst the Catapan , wherein many fights overthrowing the Greekes, matters succeeded so proiperously, that William one of the fonnes of Tancred was made Earle of Afculum, Drogo his Broamongft Norther obtayned Venusia, and the rest of Apulia was shared among it the rest of the Normans. In this Expedition, William, Drogo, Humfrie, Richard, Roger, and Robert the Sonnes of Tancred were renowmed, of whom many Dukes and Kings in lialy after descended. Henry the Emperour confirmed to Drogo Earle of Apulia, and to Ranulph of Auerfa, all which they had gotten. To Dropp Succeeded his Brother Humfrie, 10, 1. who invading the polletions of the Church, which Pope Lee feeking to recouer by battell, was beaten out of the field with exceeding flaughter on both fides, and befieged in a Caftle whither he fled, was taken and forced to receive the Norman 20 into communion.

Robert Wishard Baielard the Sonne of Humfrie, by Robert called Wiscard (brother to the faid Humfrie) was Duke of Apulia expelled from his Countrie of Apulia. He added also Rhegium in Calabria, and Trois in Apulia to his conquests, stiling himselfe Duke of Apulia and Calabria. His brother Richard winning Capna, vexed the confines of Campania, and both molefting the Papall Polieftons were curfed by Pope Nicholas, who yet vpon their Oath of vaffalage to the Church, received them and confirmed the one Prince of Capua, the other Duke of Apulia and Calabria, paying twelve pences yeare on every yoke of Oxen. Auno 1062. Rabert with his brother Roger, warred against the Saracen in Sichia. Richard inuaded a great part of Campania neere to Rome it selfe, and sought to become Patricius; whereupon Henry the Emperout entred Italy, and Richard forsoke 40

Occasion of the Normans entring Greece.

Anno 1078. Nicephorus put downe Michael from the Empire of the East, who came and fought to Robert for ayde, who being compounded with Iordan which had fucceded his Father Richard, went into Greece, and prosperously succeeded. Hence he was called backe by Hildebrand. or Gregorie the Seventh, which before had excommunicated him, to helpe him against Henrie the Empeour, then having taken Rome by force; who hearing of Roberts comming with a strong Armie (leaving Boamsand to pursue his Grecian affaires) went with Clement or Guibert, his new made Pope into Etruria. Thus was hee dreadfull to the Easterne and Westerne Emperours at once. He dyed, Anno 1085. Roger his Sonne fucceeded. This Historie both as of Normans, and as a preamble to the Expedition of the Frankes, is not vnworthy recitall.

* car.Siem de by a former wife: Roger by of Gusimar

the danohrer Prince of Sa-W. Gemetic. how this Dura chie added to Sicilia became

Roger the younger brother faceceding in the Dukedome of Apulia and Calabria, as also in regitation.

Roger the younger brother succeeding in the Duncauome of Dynamic and his Dutchieto

Bodanand was the quarrell of Orban successfor of Gregory against Guibers (who also confirmed his Dutchieto

Confirmed his Dutchieto fonne to Robe him as Vaffall of the Church, the poffetions whereof fuch good fifthing made he in troubled waters, he had even to Tibur and Velitre * gotten into his possession) his brother Boamund * began to thinke of another fuccession, that as Roger had gotten the inheritance of Calabria and Apulia, from the Easterne Empire, he might also obtayne the like in Greece. This was not visknowne to the wifer in those times, as William Malmelbury " our Countriman tellifieth, whose Anno ab incarnatione 1095. Papa Vrbanus secundus, qui prasidebat Apostolico culmini, enasis Al-

pibus venit in Gallias. Admentos caufa ferebatur perspicua, quod violentia Guiberti Roma extru- 60 sus, citra montanas adsui reuerentiam sollicitaret Ecclesias. Illud repositium propositum pon ita vulgaa Kingdome, is batur, quod Boamundi confilio pene totam Europam in Aliacicam Expeditionem moneret, vi in tanto here omitted. nere omitted.

* G. Malm, L4. tumultu omnum prosinciarum facile oberatis avviliaribus, & Vrbanus Romam, & Boamundus IIlyricum & Macedoniam pernaderent. Nam eas terras & quicquid praterea à Dyrchachio ofque in

CHAP. 6. S. I. Pope Vrban, Boa, the Norman abuse the zeale of Christendome. 1247

Theffalonicam protenditur, Guiscar lus pater super Alexium acquiscerat : ideireo illus Boamundus suo inte competere clamitabat, inoge hereditatis Apulæ, quam genitor Rogero filio minori deleganerat. Thus Vrbanes intent was to get Rome from the Autipope Guibert or Clement, whom the Imperisls and some Italians followed; neither had hee any great partaker in Italie but Roger, who fought his owne aduantage.

dufelme Archbishop of Canterburie was by King Rusu dispossified of his revenues, and lined in Exile for acknowledging him, as E admerse his companion in his Italian peregrinations to and

with Pope Frban tellifieth : no Bishop in England then daring to acknowledge either of the Popes without the Kings leaue, who also admitted no Papall power, but by his leaue in this Eadmenn pub-Topes without the kings hader, who have in cates and ouer persons Ecclesiasticall, See Eadgerus Selden. and the Annotations of that learned and industrious Gentleman, Master Selden thereon, and therewith now published.) And Boamund enjoying some Castles by his brothers indulgence, wanne many other, the men of warre following him. Nam adfratrem specie tenus Ducatus pergenerat (Malmelbury addeth toward the end of that Booke) alterum bello meliorem fecuti. Iam vero parui mementi fuit quod paterni propositi seguax, G. ilbertum repellens Vibano validissimė assuu, vero parui mementi fuit quod paterni propositi seguat. Vibano validissimė assuu (seguata vero parui propositi seguata vero propositi seguata vero parui propositi seguata vero propositi seg tialis Comitis & Episcopi Caturicensis Epistola inuitabant. Conciliog, celebrato libens occasionem actepit & in Graciam copias tratecit, subindeg, promouens exercitum modeste Raimundum & Godfridum operiebatur. Quibus venientibus sociatus magnam incitamentum cateris erat, disciplina militaris

20 feientia & virtute nulli fecundus. This Mytherie hath beene little observed of most Authors, and was lesse observed in those see how this times by the zealous Princes of Christendome, whose valour, wealth, denotion, glory and lines agreesh with were engaged to deeply in this quarrell, most of all other deutees availed the Papacie, in abaling his cunning

the power of Princes Christian.

And well might Vrban vie the helpe of Boamund and the Normans in that defigne, which not only forted to that expected effect to tettle him in Rome, then held by Clement his Corrivall. but to a further advancement of the Papacie in after times, then either hee or Boamund could then divineor dreame of. For of the Normans disposition, Henry Huntingdon hath long since giuen testimonie that God had chosen them to extermin the the English, because he saw them eminent a-30 bone all people in the prerogatine of fingular cruelty. For their nature is when they have deietled their enemies to the vimost, that they then depresse them silves, and bring them selves and their Lands into pouertie

and waste: and alwayes the Lords of the Normans, when they have trodden downe their enemies, seeing ther cannot but be doing cruelty, they hostily trample under foot their own Which plainly appeares in Normaudie, England, Apulia, Calabria, Sicilia, and Antiochia, very good Countries which God hath Subiettedto them. Thus our Hiltorian, and thus our Mysterians Frbanus (then for this disposition called Turbanus) and Bosmundus vncharitably feeking their owne, abuled the charitie and deuotion of those degenerated times.

So it was necessary that Mysteries should be carryed in mystie cloudes : which make mee not a little minde that Reuelation not fully reuealed, yet in some imperfect glimpses offering it selte 40 to view, this Historie vnmasking that Mysterie; or if it bee not the just interpretation of the Prophecie (a taske too great for me to determine) yet not vnfit to be waied in the ballance of the Sanctuary together, and to be propounded to wifer confiderations, at left by way of Allegoricall application, if not of Propheticall explication. Saint Iohns mysteriall Reuelation is deliuered in these words. Apoc.9.1. And the fift Angell founded, and I fam a starre fall from Heaven unto the Earth, and to him was given the Key of the bottomlesse pit. ' 2. And hee opened the bottomlesse pit, and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a Furnace, and the Sunne and the arre were darkened by reason of the smike of the pit. 3. And their came out of the smoke Locusts upon the Earth, and unto them was given power as the Scorpions of the Earth have power, &c. 7. And the shapes of the Locusts were like unto Horses prepared unto battell, and on their heads were as it were 60 Crownes like Gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. 8. And they had baire as the baire of

women, and their teeth were as the teeth of a Lion. 9. And they had breft-plates as it were breft-plates of fron, and the found of their wings was as the found of Chariots of many Horfes running to battell. 10. And they had tayles like unto Scorpions, and there were flings in their tayles, and their power was to hurt men fine monethes. 11. And they had a King ouer them which is the Angell of the bottomlesse pit, whose name is in the Hebrew Tongue, Abadeon, but in the Greeke Tongue, bath his name Apoliyon. After the fixt Angel founding, followeth the loofing of the forre Angels bound in the great River Euphrates, for to flay the third part of men. And the number of the armie of the Horsemen were two hundred thou fand thou fund. And thus I faw the Horfes in the Vision , and them that fate on them, bassing brest-plates of Fire and of Iacint, and of Brimftone, and the heads of the Horfes owere as the heads of Lions, and out of their mouthes iffued Fire and Smoke, and Brimstone. By these three was the third part of men killed, by the Fire, and by the Smoke, and by the Brimstone which issued

out of their mouthes. For their power is in their mouth, and in their tayles : for their tayles were like onto Serpents, and had heads, and with them they doe hurs. Divers Interpreters will direct in the former of these Visions, to behold the Popish Clergie,

a Col. 3. 1.

Alfredi Epift. published before The. literatura care.

Gen. 11.

" Priests bad not power to kill, till they had fubicated

in the other the Saracenicall Souldiory: both which agree to our pretent bufinefle, where Panall fuperstition, and Saracenicall crueltie begot in strange copulation such numerous innumerable deaths. As for the Starre it noteth an Ecclefiasticke Angell, or Bishop, as the Revelation it felfe reucaleth . This Starre is not fixed, but faileth from heauen, the care of Heauenly affection beauenty be conversation, and bringing soules by Pattorall vigilancie to the beauenty e lerusalem. b Ephe. 3. 20. and Church of the first borne, whose names are written in heaven; and falleth to the earth, that is to Heb. 13. 22. minde earthly pompe, and fecular glorie, Whose God a is their belly, whose glorie is in their shaine, who minde earthly things. That the Pope hath endently done this, their owne Histories make mention : first by Phocas, obtaining a Monarchie ouer the Church, and fince Hildebrand exalting it ouer Kingdomes, States and Empires, and now at this day exerciting nothing of a Biffup, but 10 e Sanfouins Les the Title, leaving the Cure to his Vicario di Roma c, whiles his Cardinall Confutorie are not * Sac. Cet. R.E. Vigiles Ecclesia, but Consudices Orbis terrarum, & Principes mundi, regum * similes, vers mundi Car. dines, and himfelfe hath turned Pafce ones into Rege, and playes the King, and playes with Kings, making and marring Kings and Emperours, and wearing himfelfe a triple Growne: either detaining (as King Iohns) or depoing and dispoing (as Henries to Robulph) or with the foote striking off, (as Celestine to Henrie the fixt Emperour) or treading also on the Emperours necke. (as Alexander to Fredericke.) All this power is challenged to the Keyes of the Kingdome of beauen, promised to Peter, Math, 16. in the name of the rest of the Apostles, of whom the question had beene asked, which he in their name answered; and that to shut our impenitents. and to admit those which beleeve and repent, by Evangelicall ministry into the house of Gods 20 Church and Family. But neither by word nor Sacraments, publikely, nor prinatly, by teaching, improuing, exhorting, rebuking, doth he either open or thut, or exercise any proper Episcopall Key of the bot- Function : fo that the key of power which he hath, must needs bee this Key of the bottomlesse tombelie pit, pit, whereby Hell is opened, (as here in vision) and Heauen is hidden; both that supercelland kingdome Heauen of glorie, wherein is the Sunne of righteensness; and this inferiour Ecclesia icke heaven of Grace, and of the Church, which as the Aire borroweth her light from that Sunne, or elfe mult needs abide in night and darkneffe. And indeed what are Papall Dispensations and Indulgences, (as we shall anone see) butopening of Hell ! What his Crufados to kill and destroy, Interdicting of kingdomes, excommu-

nicating and depoting of Kings, railing warres, feditions, treasons, prohibiting vulgar reading 30 of Scriptures, and the like, but flutting of heauen ! There, there are the Papall keves for much gloried of, keyes of the bottomleffe pit; yea, the key fingular to open, and not plarally keyes, as having no power to that Hell which once he hath opened. Hence arofe (by this opening of the bottomlesse pit) that Smooth of Ignorance, which bemisted the world (so that in King Alfreds daies not one Priest in England could vinderstand his Latine Service, or translate an E-Mat. Par. in W. piftle out of Latine into English; and if any in the next Ages had his Grammer, he was a wonder to the reft of the Cleigie) caufed by Barbarians, which filled Italy, France, and other Countries of Christendome before, with a Smoake of Confusion and combustion, whereby the Latine Language was loft in vulgar vie, which continued in their Holies : men in that smoake not able to fee what God faid to them in his Word, or they to him in their Prayers. Hence a Smoake of 40 blind zeale afcending as from a furnace : but as the fire of Hell is fire without light, burning and not finning, fuch is eager impetuous zeale without diferetion, which crucified Chrift, and perfecuted Christianitie, & in Papists hath much changed them for Antichrist, and Antichristianitie. A smoake from the bottomlesse pit, is all vabrideled Concupifcence, alway furning from and to Hell ; Bottomleffe in the originall, without just cause of beginning ; Bootlesse in fine, without cauling Iustice in the ending. Pride, Couetoutnesse, Enuy, and other Hellish passions, are a smoother which alcend, but by afcending vanish; which as in the Builders of Babel, feeke a Name, and make as they would build to Heanen, but get no other name but Babel, and after confused cloudie Chymeras (like pillars of imoake in the Aire) vanish to nothing. Out of this imoakie ignorance, and ignorant zeale, and zealous perturbations (the travels 50

and throwes of the bottomleffe pit) came Locusts upon the Earth, the carnall and earthy minded Bishops, Priests, Cardinals, Abbots, Monkes, and innumerable religious Orders of inordinate Religion: thele being wholly superstititious, degenerating into superstition, and turning their heavenly calling into earthly, eate and pompe, and the spirituall service of God, into beggerly, worldly, carnall rites and bodily exercises. Thus have you the Locusts worle then Egyptian, luch to the foule as those in Aluares, and other the former Stories of this Booke mentioned to the bodie, faue that they are limited, and may not (as those) hurt the Graffe and Trees, and greene things, that is, fuch as have a lively Faith in Christ. Neither may they kill hodily , but spiritually torment the Conscience with their Canons, Confessions, Penances, Purgatories, the fecular po- Miracles, Viñons, and (which most concernes our prefent purpose) Pilgrimages, and the like. (0 Their shape is like to Horses, for their courage and wilfulnesse, Kings and Kingdomes being forced and Nubrigenfis to stoop, both to their old Mumpfimus, and to their new Sumpfimus; even the most refractorie or couragious, as William Rufus, and the two first Henries , conquered in Clergie immunities by Anselme and Becket, men of great worth in other kinds, but for this accounted Worthies, emi-

nent in the fanctitie of those times, for this honored and Canonized Saints. These the Crownes on their heads, or as Dunstan, Eadmund, and if there were any more Canterburie Canonizations: and fich Crownes had the heads of Religious Orders, and first Founders and Inuentors of Holies, as Dominicke, Francis, and others, (and now at last Ignatius Loyola) and all the Clergie were crowned with dignitie, in their head ouer-topping Kings, in the meanest Priest exempted from Kings, yea creating his Creator the King of Kings, (that I mention not their shauen crownes. nor the Martyrscrownes which befell Priests or Laitie, dying in this Ierofolymitan Peregrination, or in fight against Christians, against whom the Pope had published his Crusado.)

But theie Crownes were like Gold, not of it, the Pope herein the belt Alchymit, extracting to true Gold out of Leaden Bulls, but diffracting and contracting shewes of Gold, seeming Canonizations, and fanctitie in flew and found of holy Church, rather then true holineffe: yea, the holy name of Church appropriated to their shauen crownes, by Popish Monopoly. Yet were the shewes made faire, and in all their actions they had the faces of men, in resemblance of inst reason and resolution; insomuch, that as when I looke on the Scripture onely, I wonder how there could bee any Papift, so when in Histories and the couries of times, I looke voon the Church, especially after Hildebrand, I as much wonder that all were not Papifts, the smoake had fo taken away the light of the Sunne, and the Pope fet up fo many Night-lights of humane reasons, and Treasons or Traditions in Canon Law and Schoole Divinitie. Yea they had also the haire of Women, in infinuating impressions, and melting raushments of flattering perswali-20 ons, promifed pleafures of Paradile, dazeling pomps in the prefent, and for the future, Merits,

Supererogations, deliveries from Purgatorie, Relikes of Saints Revelations, Miracles & a world of the like; which this Historie of the Holy Land sheweth sufficiently, and a Map of which you may fee in Vrbans elegant Oration, and Boamunds cunning diffimulation. Their teeth were as teeth of Lions, in preying upon Temporal Lands, Liberties, Iurifdictions, and Spirituall deucuring of foules. Their Iron Breaft-plates were their defendite immunities and exemptions, whereby they were hardned and heartned against all contrary powers.

The found of their Wings, was their preaching of Indulgences, thundering Interdictments. and Excommunications, Penances in Confessions, and the like. Their Tailes, were the confequences of their Doctrine and Actions, which promifing fatisfactions to God and Man, yea 30 Merit and Supererogation, the honoring of Saints and Angels, in the fore-part : in the end flung

like a Scorpion, filled the foule of their most denoted with disconsolation, the body with grieyous bodily exercifes in Fastings, Pilgrimages, (as here) selfe-whippings; Ever learning, never comming to the knowledge of the truth ; giving reall possessions, and bequeathing true beggerie to their heires, for deliuerance from a Poeticali Purgatorie; crucifying themselues indued before a painted Crucifixe, buying repentance at a deare rate, and making more irklome way to Hell (if Gods infinite mercy preuented not) then that by which many haue attained Heauen. Their King is the Angell of the bottomleffe pit, (you fee whole Vicar he is indeed) and is named in Hebrew and Greeke, as hardning the lewes, and corrupting Christians; or as reftoring both lewish rites and Gentile superfittions, in both a Destroyer. The five moneths some interpret of this life, some 40 alluding to the Graffe-hoppers Summer feafon; fome to Noahs floud, fo long prenailing over the

Earth; fome to one hundred and fiftie yeares, taking a day prophetically for a yeare, and reckoning from Hildebrand, to Gregorie the Decretalist; some for an indefinite time, some for a thort time : as if they should fay, It is not for you to know the times or the Gasons which the Father Ads 1.7. hath put in his owne power. I have rather fought to lay open their qualities then their durance : as for the time, Time will deliver it.

Now for the other Vision of foure Angels, bound in the great River Euphrates; some vnderfland Emphrates mystically, for the meanes of vpholding and advancing the Meichandize of mysticall Babylon, that is of Rome and her Poperie : Indeed foure hath beene a famous number. for the foure Gospels, for those foure first general! Councels, for the Ecclesia sticke Aristocracie

50 by the foure Patriarchs, (the fift was in manner titular) for the foure Doctors of the Latine Church : also foure hath beene notable in this Papall mysterie and Supremacy; first in the ages thereof, the Child-bood from Boniface to Hildebrand, in a spiritual Monarchy, long growing vp; the Touth from Hildebrand to Boniface the eight, in addition of power, over all powers Royall and Imperiall, with youthfull vigour trampling under tootexhe strongest Aduersaries; the Mans age from thence till Luther, loting somewhat of that King-awing strength, by schissmes amongst themselues, and by Councels*, Kings and Kingdomes better opportunitie and vigi- * As those of lance; but holding up to the upmost their spirituall, till Luther gave beginning to their old de- Constance, Bast, elining age, and this their almost precarian and obnoxious power, which by leave of Kings and &c. io in the States they hold, howfoetter in freming about them. Foure Courles have advanced and vehild Statute of Pre-

them, Excommunications, (to which interdictments of Kingdomes, and deprivations of Kings 266. are annexed) Decretall Lawes and Constitutions to gouerne the Church; Warres by Crusados and Treasons, and Inquisitions against contrary opinions. Foure forts of men have beene their Creatures and Creators; degenerated Monkery of later ages, which undermined the ancient fanctitie and discipline, Canonists which wholly corrupted it; Schoole-men which ad-

mitted the Philosophers to bee Masters in Diuinitie, and Friers which occupied both Churches and Palaces in new and meerely Papall hypocrifies and printledges. And fince, the renemes of Ponerie, as we shall by and by see, are foure, Temporalties, Collations of Benefices, Indulgences,

But I rather like their Interpretation, which apply these foure to the Angels of destruction. which literally haue beene loosed from Euphrates vpon the Christian world, and indeed destroyed the third part of Christian men with bodily death. For presently after Boniface the Pope had obtained his Supremacy of Phocas, Mahomet arose with his new Sect in the East; the one with Locuits. (whereof you have heard) to corrupt the foules; the other with Horses in his Succeffors, to deltroy the bodies of men. And these Angels of destruction have beene many to waies foure. First, in the foure Doctors, Authours of the foure Sects of that irreligious Religion. For Mahamet having taken Mecca, created foure Generals, Ebubezer, Omar, Ofmen. and Als: whom he called, the foure sharpe Swords of God, and commanded them to goe into the foure parts of the world, to kill such as resisted. After Mahumets death, thele foure successively succee-

3,C. 2 S . 2.

* See my Pilz. ded. These may be called four Angels, as the four Dollars of the Mahumetan Lew, (so they are vivally stiled by the Mahumetans) and reckoned Saints in their Kalender; whom they fav Mahomet had prophecied should succeed him, who also fained his Law received from the Angell Gabriel. Their were Authors of foure Setts also, Ali or Hali, of the Sect Imemia: Ofmen of the Sect Baanefia, Homar of the Anefia, Ebubezer of the Melchia. Thefe foure in their fucceeding Generations, haue bin sent out from neere the parts of Euphrates: where before they may be laid to be bound, because that how foeuer Chefroes or fome others at some start, or advantage paffed ouer, and did hurt to the Romane Empire, (then the most flourishing part of the Church) yet did they not continue any long frace, or much prevaile on this fide Euphrates, that being the boundary, as it were appointed of God, betwixt the Roman and the Parthian, and after, betwixt the Roman and Persian Empires. But after the Mahametans had once appeared from Arabia, which Euphrates washeth, they in one Age over-ranne Egypt, Syria, Palestina. Persa. yea ouerwhelmed Africa, quite thorow to the Streights, and all Spane, with many other Coun-*Secubi fu, it tries *, neuer after recourred to the Empire. And as they began with foure Angels in foure Scots, and conquering to the foure Winds: fo there have beene of them foure principall Deluges, each from Euphrates, onerwhelming the world. That we reckon the first, in that Sarace- 10 nicall Age: the second, that of the Turkes, which vnder Belphetb tooke Diogenes the Greeke Emperor presoner, and conquered in manner all the Countrey to Constantinople, the occasion of

this lerofolymitan expedition, and confequently, of killing the third part of men, dwelling in remote Countries which they had not seene, but came to the Holy Land as the publike slaughter place and Shambles of the Christian world: in which it is remarkable, that the two Calpha of Bagdet and Cairo, one on the one fide, the other on the other of Euphrates, otherwise diffenting, contented yet like Herod and Pilate, to kill Christ again in his members, and to perpetrate those butcheries, yee have read of in the former Relations. And let the understanding Reader examine the Roman Stories, and fee if in aboue fixe hundred yeares from Romalus forward, there was so much Ethnicke bloud spilt on both sides, to purchase the Roman Monarchie, as here in 40 much lesse then the third part of that time, was occasioned to be spilt by the Romish Hierarchie: on both tides shall I fay ! Or may I make the question, euen of that which was meerely Chriftian of the Easterne and Westerne beleeuers ! And the third overflowing, was of the Tartars, at first not Mahumetan, yea destroying Bagdet and the Calipba, and enemies to mankind in generall, 1.4c.11 and 12. but after prouing, and still continuing in greatest part Mohumetan. These did almost roote out the Christianitie of the greater Afia, and erected the greatest Empire (not with best bloudshed) that euer was : yea, they not onely ouer-ranne the Christians, as farre as Poland and Ruffis, Hungaria and Germany by themselves, but forced the Chorosmines out of Persia, (which as you have heard gave the fatallest blow to the Christians in the Holy Land) and rooted out the

See of the in this Works in Haiton, M. Polo, &c.

Turkib Kingdome there, and forced them also to inuade the Christians, founding in the Christi- 50 SecT. H. pa.76. an ruines the Aladine Turkifb Kingdome in Natolia, and enforcing over Emphrates the Progenitors of Ottoman, from whom beginneth our fourth Epocha, and that fourth Deluge of the Turkish Nation, which hath deuoured fuch worlds of Christian flesh. The Warres also of these peoples, haue beene principally by Horfes, neither doe I thinke the number expressed of two hundred Millions is any whit hyperbolicall, if we confider the innumerable Armies of innumerable Horse-men, which they have in divers times burthened the World withall. That of the Tarrars alone, if Authors report truly, easily makes credible that incredible number. The later expedition of the Tartars under Tamerlane, how monstrous doth it feeme :

Allo, Their Horses having power in their mouthes and tailes, agrees to the manner of Warre vsed by those Nations, which vsed a conjoyned flight and fight, as before yee have read, that 60 euen then when they feemed to flye, they had Serpert headed tailes, and did flee but in cunning fleight, to returne to greater mischiefe, shooting also as they fled, and wounding their purfuers.

And as the number of foure, so sitteth their foure Doctors, foure Sects foure Deluges; so al-

so have they had foure principall places of residence, neere to Euphrates, Mecca still hallowed in their profane Rites, the feate or Mahomet and his first Successors. After that Dameleus (for lerufalem continued not their Imperiall relidence) and after that Bagdet, to which by a contrary faction was opposed Caire, succeeding herein to Cairagan, as that to Tunis.

Likewife, foure great Nations doe fill observe these Eufratean Angels, the Turkilo (to whom the huge African tracts have fome reference) the Persian, the Tartars (the chiefe of which is now feated in India, the Mogol fuccellor of Tamerlan) and the Indian (in many smaller and specially maritime Kingdomes) depending for their Faith and Scepter of the Arabians, which beginning with Trade proceeded to Conquest. But more then enough of these things. Wherein 10 we fee all plainly agreeing to this warring Religion, as in the former to the Romillo Locusts: in both perhaps rather intimating the danger to Christians by both Angels (the one corporall, the other chiefly spirituall) then their time: both which wee see have continued so long a time. and spread so farre, that they thereby, the Moore aswell as Papist, plead Catholike from See before

Yet if we will weigh the time, when both were likely to doe Christendome most harme and nall. like Samfons Foxes looking contrarie, held a fierie coniunition in their tailes , to fet the World on fire; this Angell of the bottomleffe pit, puts vs in minde of another Angell which came downe from heaven having the key of the bostomicsse pur and a great chaine in his hand. And hee laid hold on the Dragon that old Serpent, and bound him one thousand yeeres. And cash him into the bottomicsse pit.

20 and fint him up and fet a feale upon him, that he should decrine the Nations no more till the thousand pecres (hould be fulfilled, and after that bemust be loofed a tutle stason. This is not a falling starre, Mala, but an Angell which descends; even Christ himselfe (which is called the Angell of the Covenant) Access. and hath the keyes of Hell and Death, which entresh mto the firong mans house and binds bin. (28 Primafius, Andreas Cafarienfis, and other interpreters doe agree) that hee should not feduce the Nations or Church of the Genides, as before in a generall defection and idolatrie. But after that thousand yeeres expired, he should be loosed, not to long as in the Gentile superfictions, nor all fo farre, but exchanging those prophane Idoll names (with greater wrong to Gods holy Angels and Saints) should in holier Names and shewes restore those Heathen Rites, Lights, Images, and other will-worthips of Angels and dead men. Now, for a thousand yeeres after Christ, the state 30 of Christs Church, though it were still after the primitive golden Age somewhat declining, as the Fathers and Eccletiaiticall Histories shew : Yet in subfrantiall and fundamentall points it

continued found, as Bishop lewel in the mayne points of Controuersie hath shewed for sixe hundred yeeres, and Bishop Ufter for the foure Ages following, although these were much See D. Ville more corrupt then those former. Nemo repente fuit turpifimus : and it is true of mysticall Rome de C.E.S. & St. also, that it was not built in one day. But I had rather the Reader should examine this point in Bishop Vfber his learned worke, de Christ. Ecclef. Success. Statu. I am more then enough bufied in our Holy Land pilgrimage.

Cedrenus mentions divers starres fallen, one An. 1032. which made a noise in the fall (cum. Conitio (frago e) and another the next yeare, which in the night made to great a light, that 40 people tought the Sunne had rifen. He mentions also terrible Armies of Locusts, which brought miserable famine over those parts; as it God by visible signes would then warne men to observe these mysticall predictions, when they were to worke their most complete effects. The like is mentioned in the West by Floriacensis and others. An earthquake at Ierusalem destroyed many buildings, and men, continuing fortiedayes. The Temple of the Sepulchre had a little before beene razed by Aziu, whole ionne permitted the reedifying thereof, and prefently there re- Glib. Rodulph. forted innumerable numbers ; first, of the meanest ; after of the meane fort , after of Kings, Prelates, Earles; and laftly, of women both noble and bale. And when some questioned what this might lignifie, it was answered, the comming of Antichrift. Once; from the thoulandth yeere after Chrift, till Hildebrands time, Anno 1073. hapned more frequent and prodigious 50 fignes in Heauen, Locusts, Famines, &c. on earth, then euer we read of, as Glaber and other Historians have recorded.

And for those Hierofolymitan Palgrimages in such numbers, what did they else but make way to these bloudie expeditions, after that Poier the Eremite had received a revelation thereof. Neither is it likely, that this reuelation was from any but the Deuill (fo many superstitious reuelations, then more plainly arguing this looting of Satan) which is a lyar and murtherer from the beginning, and can turne himselfe into an Angel of light, as appeareth by his fore-mentioned vanitie, by the monitrous impietie of his followers, in facrileges and all abuses to God and Men, in almost idolatrie to himselte. Whose attempts at Ierusalem, whatsoeuer lastre they sparkle forth, yet wanted not fome sparke of Hell, in that they were so died in bloud, corrupted with 60 spoiles, corrupting with superstition, and with neglect of their aconomicall and poli italical-

ling. Christ himselfe had faid, the true worshippers would shorthip the Father, not at lerusalem, nor in that Mountayne, but in fprit and truth : for God feekes fuch to worship him. And although Leenie not that a place dignified with holy actions or passions , may bee a Place to the memorie and aff. Chon exciting holinesse, yet for Religion of place to leaue or neglect our place and calling

Mmmmmm

Greg. Nyf. de ji in Religion, is superstitious; and to ascribe fanctitie to the place, is Iewifb. Gregorie Nyssene organ, as a managon, s repetitions; and to active raintite to the place, is temple. Gregorie Niffene quadratie: hath written a whole Epitle against such Hierosophimiten Poligrims, alledging, that it is neither 19th. commanded, nor is God profest, or the boly Ghost any more there then in other places of Christendome: realesse, because more iniquitie is there committed, in no place more nor more abominable : that bim-Glie bad beene there, but in the Churches affaires, and made this benefit thereby to know that their owne were more holy; with other like pallages against that superstitious passage. Which might better be spoken of these Worlds of men, which trauelled nothing from themselues and their vices in this Pilgrimage, as the stories testifie : yea Vitriacus Bishop of Achon, tells of the Christiane which lined at lerufalem, as if they were the worft in all the world. And what else were the Templers, and other their chiefe Warriours, but fuch as were, The neerer the Temple, the further to Sain, Seu, L. from God, verifying that prouerbe, Calam non animum mutant, qui trans mare currunt? The An-Sain Seu, 1.2. from Gou, verity ing that Frederick, before to bee destroyed, for the further propagating Bedin Mar. 13, cients thought that God suffered lernfulem before to bee destroyed, for the further propagating of the Catholike Church, which liveth and walketh by Faith and not by fight : id Domino or-

dinante dipositum, ut legis servitum à libertate sides atg, Eccles colleretur. And sure, just one thousand yeeres after this ruine of the Temple lived Hildebrand, who began the Monarchie of the Church, in the depoling of Kings, which nothing ever fo much effected as this dispoling them first to serue the Crosse, and after the Crosse to serue to depose them. It sauours somewhat of the Deuills loofing, that they which are called Gods, hereby were fo loofed from their charges, and their charges or subjects by Crusados loosed from them, loosed against them. Marabilis firitus, their charges or labeters by trayana touted from thems, touted against them. extravals pressus, (fight Dadechmus Abbas in his Appendix to Marianus Scottu) illus temperis homines impults at slud iter aggredicadum. A meratious spirit (the loofed Dragon, it seemeth) moued the mend of that time. For women vied mans habit and went armed. And he faith, that Peter the Eremite

carried about a Scroll, which he faid, was fallen from Heauen, commanding men hereto. Men, Women, and Children followed him, fo as Kingdomes were void of Gouernours, Cities of Paftors, Streets of Inhabitants. They began their bloudie and difordered out-rages vpon the lewes, and after that vied like hostilitie against the Christians in Humgarie (which had shewed them kindnesse) and other places as they passed, besides their vncleannesse, fornications, and abominations amongst themselves. *Albertus Aquensis addeth; Bishops, Abbots, Monkes, Clergie-men, Nobles, Princes, and all the vulgar, aswell chaste as incestuous, Adulterers, Homicides, Theeues, Perjured, Robbers, and all the kind of Christian profession, and the Womankind led with penance (the fruits of which their Expedition declared) runne together at Peand to with penance time times or which their experience declared) runne cogenies at Pt-ters preaching this way. He tells that Christ appeared in videon to Peter, bidding him curie from the Particke, Letters of one Embedgage, and those Pasts rapse the bearts of the faithfull to parse the body Places of Icrusalem, and to referre the services of the Sants (officia Sanctorum.) For nonly perils and many tentations, the gates of Paradise shall be opened to the Elect and Called. Leonemen ungue. You may know by his Offices of Saints what Christ this was, and what Paradise was now fet open, as alfo by Peter peoples proper fuccefle, which being fortie thousand, and the first that went, after much villanie, persisted by Christian and Tarkib swords before the rest could come, not about three thousand being left. Godscalke Priest, led fifteene thousand with But aboue all, they were so superfittiously denoted to Peter, that what soeuer hee said or did,

nence, Robert the Monke hath before told you.) These are the words of Guibert an eye-witnesse, which neuer faw man fo frequented with multitudes, fo enriched with gifts (which he bestowed on his followers) fo applauded for fanctitie. And which more encreased the wonder (he calls to a manapiri it a miracle) victual being that yeare very deare, yet men fold their goods cheape to buy pro-personapiri uifions deare for that way of God, as it was called. Yea, the men which to day laughed at men umons ocare for that way of God, as it was called. Yea, the men which to day laughed at men persuas, Gods, for this diffracted deuxton, to morrow were fuldenly pofferfed with like inflined, and imitated his like. those whom they had derided. Children, saith he, old Wives, tender Virgins, trembling old Men, denoted themselves to warres and Martyrdome : poore men carrying their small substance 50 in Carts with their little ones, which asked at enery Towne if it were Ierusalem. These and much more shall you read of the generall confused raptures of that Age. Fulcberius hath told you of fixtie hundred thousand, which vnder-tooke the way, most of which repented, or dyed, or were forced to flay. God is not a God of confusion: & qua à Deo sunt , ordinata sunt. Thele confusions preach Babylon, and these raptures, strange instincts, strong, impetuous, mad zeale, reuelations, and all abominations in all places, plainly proclaime that Hell was broken loofe indeed: and the crie of bloud, and exaltation of superstition in Reliques, and the like crie out, that

was held subditine, and they plucked off his Mules haires for Relikes (his hypocriticall absti-

1. Cor. 14.

When I read that Anselme esteemed the Alpha of his times for learning and fanctitie, gane so light credit to receive two haires, brought by a Souldier of Boamunds companie from those 60 parts, with great toy and reuerence, and to keepe them with great veneration, as two of the baires which the bleffed Virgin plucked from her head at the Croffe in the time of the Passion: (two others the Bilhop of Ross received with a long Procession of Monkes, Canons, Prietts, People, with

the greatest honor.) What may we thinke of the vnleamed vulgar ? Yea, his sudgement of Re-

likes Eadmerns describeth, vpon occasion of a Bone, said to be of Prisca the Martyr, given him. whom deliring more, Anselme restrayned, faying, that ber body cannot bee entire so long as this Bone hall be wanting. Wherefore if thou shalt keepe it worthily, and shalt serve the Lady whose it is with what denotion thou canst, thee will accept the gift of thy service as thankefully as if thou shouldest Gerne her whole bodie, Of the Croffe you have alreadie read, vpon what ground it was received (a timerstitious Surians report, as the former on a Souldiers) how observed and served, and confequently how multiplyed. Once, Reuelations caused adoration at Reliques, Crosses, Images, Pilgrimages, and the like; that is, the Deuill was loofed a thouland yeeres after Christ, to Jeduce the Nations as before, to Ethnike isolatrie and superstition, all things fitted to Heathenish splento dor, and himselfe with figures and lying wonders, working effectually in the children of disobedience; Ethnicisme in Rites and worships being restored, but Palliated with Christian names and flowers. A thousand yeeres * had passed after Christ, before the Reall Presence was decreed * Of the ac-

(more before Transubstantion, Eleuation, Adoration, Communion in one kind) before the Car- coffee of Papall dinals grew Kings fellowes, the Election of the Pope being devolved to them; before Cano- power in that dinals grew Kings fellowes, the Election of the Pope being devoted to them, before exemptions of the Clergie Age by Hildenits, and Schoolemen, the illues of Lumbard and Gratian, before exemptions of the Clergie brand decrees, from Kings, before Kings became Subiects to the Pope, before there were any Friars, before &c. See D. religious Orders were to divided, inbdivided, multiplyed; before Indulgences, Iubilees, Cano- VB. vir fup. nizations, legall power of Decretals, Generall Councels of all Christendome called and ordered by the Pope, before marriages wholly prohibited the Clergie, before Saturday made our Ladies

20 day, before Crusado's, Interdictments, Inquisitions, and other carnall and spiritual Monsters of crueltie. A thousand yeeres had passed before this present face of Poperie had once seene the World, or the World it; which after that time of the Deuils loofing by degrees crept in euen the moderne Councell of Trent adding many things, and many things still added occasionally by Papall Conflitutions to Popilh faith. The fmoke from the bottomleffe pit darkned the light of the Sunne to humane eyes : and this Papall Moone is ever in change, the Scriptures, as Cardi- Card. Cuff. Enall Culanus writes, altering their fense also with the practice & interpretation of the Church. 11st. ad B.b. Now indeed was the time when Antichrift was afcended his Throne, which had beene closely conceiued in former and better times; for euen in Pauls time the mysterie of mignitie did alreadie worke, when some preached Christ of enuie and strife, when the Pastors did not naturally care Phil rate 30 for the flate of the Flocke , with a genuine , Fatherly and Pastorly regard; but all fought their

owne and not the things of Christ, and that in Rome: to that whereas charitie feeketh not her owne, 1.com.12. and God is charitte, and he that dwelleth in charitie dwelleth in God and God in bim, the Deuill had 1.100.4. no fitter meane to under-mine the Faith, then by diverting charitie, percerting and subverting it with felfe-love and ambition. Which feedes lay hidden (onely now and then fome motions and foringings, as it were, in the wombe of the Roman Church, by fome proud and wicked Popes teffried both conception and quicknesse) till by Phocas his Mid-wiferie Antichrist was borne. about fixe handred yeeres after Christ, and grew up by degrees to further maturitie, till a thoufand yeeres were expired, and the Deuill was againe loofed in the Sea of Rome. Their thousand years, after some were expired in the thousandth years, when Syluester the Of this loosing

fecond was Pope, who had attayned the Seate by compact with the Denill, according to whose of Satan, see equivocating Oracle he lost it and his life, laying Matte in Ierufalem, a Chappell to called, which D. Phersbook, he vaderstood of the Holy Citie. The common expectation of those times was of the Deails actiff sectof looning and the Worlds end, but seeing no such matter (for this was a mysterie, in which men could not fee Wood for Trees) they fell enery where on worke with building of glorious fabrikes of Monasteries and Churches. Of which Hilaries words descrue memorie : Canete An- Hil cont. Aur. tichristum. Male enim vos parietum amor cepit, male Ecclesiam Dei in tectis adiscissé, veneraminis Artim. male sub his, pacis nomen ingeritis. Anne ambiguum est in his Antichristum est (essure sub liffe. White and Luther, with others of later times, have applyed the looling of Satan to that time. Otho the Emperour gaue eight Cities to this Sylueller in Marca Ancona, for his more Pa-

Others begin these thousand yeeres from Christs Passion, at which time another Conjurer Theophylait, called Bonedict the ninth, was Pope, made at ten or twelve yeeres of age : at which time Authors tell strange reports of denouring Locusts in the East and West, and of a portentuous Dragon, appearing of a mile in length, huge bignetle, dreadfull with horrible scales, hiffing, coldnesse, colours, without legs and feet, as Arnolphus an eye-witnesse testineth, ending in terrible thunders all that day (the Friday feuen-night after Whitfontide) and the next.

Others referre this looking of Satan to Hildebrands time, another famous Sorcerer, fo filled (and therefore depoted) not by Benno alone, but by a whole Synode of Bifhops, Anno 1080. He brought in the dollrines of Denills, forbidding the Clergie marriage (which cauled great tra-60 godies) and appointing Saturday faits. Once; bee evalted the Papacie and Remillo Church to freedome, wealth, temporall Remenue, to rule oner all fecular Rulers, to be Lady of all Christians, from whom the right of this great, ener-dreadfull and venerable, and almost infinite power (they are the * Tiller the words of Onuphrius) hath proceeded. He first depoted the Emperour, and he tooke order for ex-next Pope lialting this Orban the second (the second Turban or Hildebrand) to the Seate. As for the man-while.

Mmmmmm 2

ners of those times how degenerate they were, all the Authors which then writ, yea Tiring the most famous Writer of these Holy Land warres, have delinered them beyond all parallel of all Ages for crueltie, oppression, ignorance, treason, and all abhominations of desolation : and like Pruste like People. Let the Reader lee thefe things more fully handled in Doctor Mores 'earne worke. As for those which begin the Deuils binding at Conflantines time, and lo die g with Bon fice. one thousand and three hundred yeeres after Christ, they doe not well confider that fro Gregorie to Boniface there was more effusion of Christian bloud, then had beene all the times of the ten Primitive Persecutions; not onely by Turkes, Tartars, and civil warres among the Chriftians : but also by occasion of the Warres called Holy , both in the millions which perifhed in them, and other millions by them through Indulgences against Emperours, Kings, Print to ces, States, Albigenfes and all the Opponents whatfoeuer. And what are feuentie to a thoufand, whetherfoeuer of thefe three opinions be followed !

Of the foure meanes which Popes have to get monies : Of the two first, their Temporalties and Collations of Benefices.

4.1. published in Italian, and Latin, and En-Ger Brent.

Rancifeus Soderinus Cardinall of Wolterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20 the Papacies of Alexander, Inline and Leo, could counfell Adrian that reformation of mainters was not the way to extinguish Herefies, rayled against the authoritie of of mainers was not the way to extinguish Hereites, rayled against the authoritie of the Church of Rome; but Crusados, by exciting Princes and People to roote them out; that thus Innecent the third oppressed the Albigens s, and the succeeding Popes the Waldenfes, Picards, Lionists, Arnoldists, Speronists and Palanines: that likewife many German Princes of they might have leave to feife on the States of Luthers favourers, would greedily embrace the condition; and many might bee caused to follow them by indulgences. Neither could any reformation be made without diminishing the Rents of the Church , which having foure Fountaynes, the one Temporall (the Rents of the Ecclesiasticall state) the other three Spirituall, Indulgences, D. henfations, and Collations of Benefices; none of them could be flopped, but that one quarter of the 30 Revenues would be cut off. You fee here the foure Rivers of the Popes Para ite, the foure feete of the Beaft, all which had either their beginning of being, or firength at least to support it about these times. For as for the Temporall Revenues, their originall is derived from the rebellion rayled against Leo Iconom schus, whom for abolishing Images, Pope Gregorie the second excommunicated, ac mex Italie populos Sacramenti (they are the words of Sigmius the Popes Historian) quo se illi obligauerant religione exoluit, & ne es aut tributum darent, aut alia ratione obedirent, in dixit. Thus the People receiled, killed the Emperours Lieutenants and sware subsection to the Pope. Ita Roma, Romanula, Ducatus ad Rom. Pontificem peruents. So did Rome and the Roman Dukedome accrue to the P pe by treaton (or by leafing, for Onuphrius a Papall Antiquarie efleemes it a tale) and having thrived fo well by treason at home, he fared much better by like arts 40 elfewhers : the French by the Popes counfaile enthromizing Pipine , and depofing Chilperite: who with Charles his fonne were not vnthankfull. For to omit Pipmes deuotion, his fonne Charles having lubdued the Lumbards (which still were troublesome to the Popes, not permitting them well concld what they had fo ill gotten) left Apulia and Calabria to the Emperour (which the Normans after turned into another Kingdome) to others other parts, to the Pope unujo muita
Greg. 7, col. 171, he permitteut e Exerciace of Ramenna, Pentapolis, the Perufine Duke ome, the Roman, Tuf-272. see Auer- cane and Campan , inre principatu & ditione sibtretenta; reliqua ipse sibi nomine regni retimuit. The tine, and divers Right, Souereign ie and I refliction referred, made the Pope no absolute Prince : and the ac-Authors, cited knowledging him Patricius Romanus, the making and Inuefliture by Ring and Staffe of Archbishops and Bishops in every Province, yea his choosing the Pope and or ering the Apostolike in * Siech, Coron. Sea, made him an aufolute subiect. And subiects they were till Hildebrand: time, and their aubec flanouites, thoritie, faith Onuphrius, extended not further then matters of Faith. Caterum imperator bus nedicam beresti suberant, ad corum nutum omnia siebant, de cis indicare vel quidquam decernere non audebat Papa &c. Olbo Fis. Romanus. Primus omnium R. Pont. Greg. 7. armis Nortmannorum fretus, opibus Comins a Maibilkgo tritige Aomanus. rrimus omnum K. Pont. Greg. 7, arms Nortmannerum fretus, opibus Comitifle Mahbi-Rom, rezamo dis mulieris per Itali am Poter tiflime confifus, difcordiag, Germanorum Principum bello ciulis labo-Imp. gesta & rantium uflummatus, prater maiorum morem comempta Imperatoris authoritate & potessate, sum unquaminue- filmmum Pontificatum obtinuisset Cesarem ipsum (à quo si non electus, saltem confirmatus fuerat) nio onte C:. non dico excommunicare, sed titam requo Imperios, primere ausus ess. Ret ante ea sacula maudita. Otto Frichma. Nam f. bulus q-e de Arcadio, Angliasso, & Leono semomacho circumferuntur mbil moror. And thus los sisses essentiales. whereas the Popes and the whole Clergie had beene exalted by Princes, they became Princes (0 Vid lib devita of their Princes; and in this Gregorie first imitated David, which cut off Goliabs head with Hem, written his owne fword, as Otho Frifingenfis hath observed. Henrie the fourth King, the third Emperor by one of that of that name, was the labrect of Gregories furie, a man for humilitie, patience, and many vertime, Malmbo. time, Malmib.
1.3. de Reg. Ment. 2, de Reg. Ment. 2, de Reg. Ment. 2, de C. and for valcut

Car. Sizon, de reg. Ital. 1.3.

Sie. l. 4.

tried in fixtie two battels, but so haunted with the euill Genius of the Papacie, vt rem religionis tracture sibi videretur quisquis in illum (you read our Malmesburie) arma produceret. The temporall power of the Pope, was much increased by the great Degacie of Counteffe Mathildis. (as a little before by the gift of Otho to Syluster) and by taking advantages in the Norman and other occasions: which they held with vneuen fortunes, and not so quiet that Rome it selfe could well brooke it (which caused divers of them to live at Autoion for about seventie yeeres) and was not secure to them till the time of Boniface the ninth, a man composed of the worst vices was not secure to them till the time of Boniface the ninth, a man composed of the work vices and best fortunes, as Theodorike à Niem, one of his Courtiers observeth; who first, in also of base lace, 13. 6 (faith he) temporale dominium habuit, quod contigit ex dissensione cinium Romanorum. So Platina, Plat devit P.in 10 Primus papuli Romani vim omnem in Pontificem transfulerit, creatis suo nutu Magistratibus omnibus, Bon.9.

munitag, Sonti Angeli arce, &c. Once, how ever they got this Papall Duchie or temporal Kingdome, they had neuer kept it but by their Spirituall Empire and Monarchie, and that branch especially which lookes to Iernsalem. For the generation of the Popes Temporalties in Italie. (now valued by some about divers Kingdomes) arose out of the corruption and ruine of the Empire, the Emperours being Kings aswell of Italie as Germany, crowned * not only at Aquif. * Sec B.t. and grane or Germanie, but at Milan for Italie, and at Rome for the Empire. But the Empire decaying by the Popes stratagems, by bandying factions against the Emperours, by inciting them to Holy Land Expeditions (to their great weakning) by exciting the World against them for neglect, by taking opportunities in their ablence at home, by feeking to betray them there, by ap-

20 plying and employing the Crusados and Indulgences, (yea, sometimes as before yee haue read of Conrade) greater indulgence against them, or theirs then against Saracens, (most of which Matthem Paris hath delivered of Fredericke the Second) befides, Monies raifed, by Tenths, Lones, Impolitions, and specially by releasing Vowes for Holy Land Expeditions, to maintayne Armies against them; hence the Imperiall Rent, Guelph and Gibelline long and bloudie division, and the Emperour quite deprived of Italio, and so little left him of Germanie, in Germanie also. Thus hath the Pope turned his Keyes into Pick-lockes, into Swords, into Scepters, exerc fing his Spirituall volumited power, Extra anni folifa visa (faith * one) to all parts of the World: yea and * Barer a.

if there should be found out more Worlds, as Democritus dreamed, this Dreamer addes that the v parties. should all be under Papall Iurisdiction. This hath no Hils, Seas, or Rivers for boundaries, but is 20 without Horizon or limitation. And this power hath two Functions to rule; and to pro-

uide against dangers of Wolues; both vicious and hereticall persons, as also Princes either malignant or negligent. For feeing that Princes have original from Elections of the people, and this power is confirmed by mutuall Oathes of Prince and people, and God hath given all power of binding and looling of Oathes to the Pope : therefore Boters concludes all Temporall Princes Subject to the Popes centure, which Ordine ad Denm, in pretence of defence the Church hath raifed fuch Tragedies in the Christian World.

Now for Collations of Benefices, these partly depend of his Temporall Souereigntie, and partly are wrung and extorted from Temporall Sourreignes and Patrones, vnder pretence of their Simoniacall bestowing them. This the pretended quarrell of Gregorie to Henrie, and of his 40 Succeffors to the next Henrie, and all other Christian Princes. Eadmerus was present at the Roman Councell of Pope Urbane, and heard his words excommunicating all Lay-men giving, and all Eccletiafficals taking Inueftitures at their hands, and all which confecrated fuch to inuefted (a custome which had continued many Ages) and all which for preferments of the Church did homage to Lay-men, Dicens nimis execrabile videri, manus que in tantam eminentiam excreuerint, Ead November vt quod nulli Angelorum concessum est, Deum cuncta creantem suo ministerio creent, & eundem ipsum. lib. 2 pro redemptione & salute totius Mundi Summi Dei Patris obtutibus offerant, in hanc ignominiam de- Vid. Selden Antrudi, ut ancilla fiant carum manuum qua die ac nolle obsecunis contagis inquinantur, rapinis & iniusta not ad cond. Sanguinum effusioni additta commaculantur. He addes ; His prasentes summu, bac conspeximus, bis Mahneibu & a

ab uninerfis fiat, fiat, acclamari audinimus. Thus you fee the Reall and Corporeall Prefence (that 50 men may know what benefit accrueth to the Pope by that Doctrine) is made an argument of deuesting Princes of Inuestitures, and making of Prelates: both first confirmed in that Age, the one by Pope Nicholas against Berengarius, the other by Gregorie and Vrban: thus opposing and exalting 2. Thes. 2.4. bimselfe about all that is called God, or that is worshipped, that is over all powers Civill and Ecclefiafficall (called Gods) and ouer God himfelte, whom here he professeth to be created by his creature : a three-fold cord of power, all broken by one blait of the Pope

How fifty King Henry stood for his Inueffitures , and how Henry the Emperour warred and captined the next Pope Paschall for them, Eadmerus, Malmesbury, and others then living tefile, the Pope swearing and starting from his Oath in that case. Neither is it likely that the Popes had thus made all Bithops and Abbots depend upon themselves, without acknowledging 6c homage to their Princes, v furping to eaidently al Ecclefia fical Supremacy, had not the civil combuftions on one tide (as here vnder King Stepben the first King which discontinued them) and exhaustions into the Holy Land on the other side, made the Pope dreadfull, whose breath could thus lead the Westerne World into the East. Thus did the Pope viurpe a Monopoly of the Keyes by Elections, Postulations, Translations, Reservations, Promisions, Vnions, Permutations, Acceffes, Regreffes, Condittories; by Compositions for Palls, Crosier Stanes, Miters, Rings; personali

a The Pope

Vilitations by Bishops and Abbots of the Apostles staires; by making bis Cardinals a (which in this Ape first grew to be Giants and men of renowme, and as I faid, Kings fellows, being before but Bishops. can make his Cardinals rich Prietts, & Deacons,) able to carrie it out in popp and Maiestie as besits the Apostles of Christs Winare and himselfe and by inriching his Kindred Countrymen, Officers, and Fanorites with the best Benefices and Prelacies in every Countrer, (whereof let the Reader informe himlelfe in Matthew Paris, of that Applian tion, both by Babylonian feruitude in his time, as allo of his impoling fummes of money to bee given out of money ore that thele, and if they had it not, to be taken up of the Camfines (Out-landish Papall Viturers, at digoity, and thele, and if they had it not, to be taken up of the Camfines (Out-landish Papall Viturers, at digoity, and I know not what Annuities and Pensamber 1 to the Camfines of the Camfin out, yea, the open and homeleffe falle of these at Rome (read Theed. a Name a Courtier to many falling to him.

Popes, of Arts beyond what Simon or Magin, or the Deuill himselfe had ever heard of, if it could to be Simonie which the Popes did, who for footh could not finne as their flatterers faid) and lafte, by making Lawes in all thefe and other Ecclesiasticall affaires to remayne to all Generations, whereby the Clergie was exempt from Kings, not Kings from their Clergie ; yea, forced out of their Thread and their means and Lands, to maintayne the fubicats of another Soueraigne; usery Monasterie being a Cafile, every Cathedral a spirituall exempt Citie, every Prelate the Popes Captaine, and to whom also they were particularly sworne. Consider this legge of the beast, and consider Monitrum horrendum, informe, conceiued long before, in receiuing Appeales from all parts, but borne in that Smoke from the bostomlesse pie, when Satan was loosed; nor ever could have growne to full age, if Indulaences had not firengthned the Popes, to tread vnder foote all b Aipes and Bafilishes (fo of P. Mexasder, they efteemed gaine-faying Kings and Emperours) nor were Indulgences of any force at all in treading on this kinde before this Expedition, when and whence forung their vnexpected puillance, and 20 thence the Popes, as thall anon appeare.

the Emperors.

Super Aspidem

Befules, the Eafterne Patriarkes which before these warres, held of long time in many Ages no communion with the Popes of Rome, by this meanes became subject to him, Antiochia first. then lerufalem, and after that Constantinople it felfe (Romes Corrivall) being subjected and subdued by these Expeditions from the West; and I know not what Genine, both in the East and West, making the Bishops in seeming most religious, make this a part of their Religion to quarrell with their Kings, (and one with another for superioritie of their Seas) and goe to the Pope for refuge, as is feene in Anselme of Canterburie, Thurstan of Torke, and others; and especially Thomas Becket, whose murder in that quarrell, confirmed to a Martyrdome, and rewarded with an a Canonization, did fuper-exceedingly advance and advantage the Popes power over Kings; furthered by the emulation of the French King against the English, which instigated the Bishop first, after the Pope; lastly, his owne sonnes against him, honouring the new Saint also with perfonall Vilitation, Offering and Pilgrimage. Also Daibert the first Westerne Patriarch of lerafalem, taught his Successors this Lesson, who went to Rome to complaine of his King; William an Englishman, first Lating Archbishop of Tyre, and William the Authour of the Holy Land Hillory. Sectic flories with others must needs fetch their power from Rome and the Easterne Empire beeing before relayed. weakened by the Saracons and Turkes, now engirt on both fides by the Westerne Frankes, the heart and bowels being also by civill diffentions embroyled, it must needs follow that by the fall of her Competitor, Rome must arile, fit alone and reigne as a Queene; Whose ambitious neglects, 40 hath fince betrayed that whole Empire to the Turke.

ð. III.

Of Difpensations.

Vt Temporalties and Benefices were but the hinder legges, of this Babylonical Beaft, for stabilitie; Dispensations and Indulgences were the two fore-legs, more active for prey and putilince. And the seal to now have a sea to be a sea of the season and the season and the season are the season as the season are the season and the season are the season as the season are the season as the season are the season a prey and puissance. And these also now began to bee of vigour and strength in the 50 Church to Papall Monarchicall intents and purposes. As for Dispensations it is true, that there was some vie of them in the ancient Church : it beeing neeeffary that as in the Temporall, so in the Ecclesiasticall Republique, there should be according to conducent circumstances, a qualification of zigid (which differing times may esteeme rigorous) Canons. Euen the Ceremonies of Dinine Law yeelded to the necessitie of Charitie, as in Danids eating the Shewbread, justified by Christ himselfe, who preferres Mercie to Sacrifice. How much more in the milder times of the Gospell, and in the Canons and Constitutions Ecclesiasticall, not given immediately by ministerie of Angels; nor to a Iewish Pinfold, or one compendious people, and that for a fet time till Shilo came; but to a Sea of peoples, by ministery of men, without limitation of time; may the difference of times, manners, and men require a difpenfing by change, or fulpen- 60 tion by conniuence, making the best harmonie of Mercie and Indgement. No man puts new wine into old veffels: nor were later, weaker times fitted to the feueritie of the Ancients, which were both more holy, and by necessitie were forced for want of the Temporall Sword, to whet the Spirituall sharper. Neither can men see all circumstances which may arise, nor are all men or

CHAP.6. \$ 3. Popilh abule of Diffensations furthered by Holy Lind Warre. 1257

times of one constant tenor. Summum in, Summa iniuria: The wringing of the Nose bringeth forth Progett. bloud the farcing of wrath bringeth forth strifes Charitie concreth a multitude of offentes, is weake 10 with them that are weake, and burneth when others are offended, maketh we all things to all : yea; casts 1.00.9. forth the wheate into the Sea to grenent Shipuracke, notwithstanding a promite of delinerance. Hence new Parliaments, Statutes, Edicts; hence later Councels, Synods, Canons.

But what is this to the Popes Non obstante? a plenitude of power to dispense with Oathes. Vowes, and what societ Dinine or Humane, standing in the way of his Monarchie? True it is that about foure hundred yeares before this time, Gregorie Bishop of Antioch did difpente with the Oath of the Armie, which faid, they had fworne not to admit Philippieus their Commander. Eusg. 1 6.c.; 2.

the Oath of the Armie, which land, they had reduced by a this was to present, not to much in main pranifto alledging the Episcopall power of binding and looning; but this was to present, not to much its religione in-Treaton to reduce to, and not feduce from loyaltie & fubication to their Emperor. In these times demintaring first were the Kopes of the kinedom of beauen, pretended by Peter pretended Succeeding to the time denies nearly the the Kings of the earth, with Petra dedie Petre, Petrus Diedoma Rodulpho, feeting up one & pitt- tom. ting down another Emperor at Papall pleafure. Little did Dispensations before auale the Papa-cie (except in enlarging the Phylacteries of his spirituall power, in admitting Appeales, and making himielfe a Bulie-bodie, and Interloper, Magnus Ecclefia ardelio) but now the Cedars of Libanus quaked with feare of fire from the bramble, when Daspensations with the Oathes of Ind.9: Subjects, had deposed Henry the victorious Emperour, by the Ministerie of his owne Sonne: In vaine did that Sonne feeke afterwards to ftop the current in taking the Pope Prifoner : Sero 20 medicina paratur; his Fathers Example might teach him to feare iome, Abfolom, to imitate

And especially Dispensations were brought into request, by the quest of the Holy Land: when large Merit and larger Indulgences, Priniledges, Praniledges attend the Vow, and taking the Croffe on the one fide; and larger fummes fill the Popes Coffers on the other fide by the Popes dilpensing: when some Friars goe before to preach the Crusado and holy Warre; other Friars are fent after with Faculties to dispense for to much money , as the Expedition would coft you, leaving you no leffe merit with a great deale more fafetie, ease and pleasure at home: when the Pope can thus profittute the zeale of Christians, to let and fet it to Farmers and Vn. Nummus at pre dertakers, as to Richard Barle of Cornwall, (whole furnines this way gotten were incredible, me, nutric or-20 able to make way to his Imperiall Election) when the like Dispensations are bestowed as Pa-

pall fauours to repaire the broken state of others: when Daspensations raise vo new Localis from the bottomleffe pie; not only exempting some principall Monasteries from Episcopali Iurisdiction. as the Popes peculiars under Saint Peters immediate protection (and hee thus obliged the chiefe Colledges of the chiefe learned men of those times, to maintayne that power which priniledged them) but Chapters of Cathedrall Churches, whole Orders of Religion , as the Cluniacensian and Ciftercian Congregations; and after that the Orders of Friars in their feuerall swarmes, difpenfing to them, not only Exemptions from Bilhops, but power to build Churches, to receius Confellions, to preach in all places, to be Bilhops in euery Diocelle, and Curaces in euery Parifing

at once Papall Lords by Dilpenfations, and Mendicants by Yow and Profession. Yea, every pet-40 tie Priest might obtayne by his Purse an exemption from Episcopall power. And lastly, new Dispensations, and new Priviledges have hatched a new Ignation Societie of particoloured Leopards, Regular-Secular-Clergie-Lay-Fathers-Friars-all-things-nothing. Thus Dispensations made way to get monies by Sales; Friends by Gifts, Patrons by patro-

nizing (Forts and Armies of Learned men in Abbies, Couents, Colledges, Congregations, Orders) yea, they robbed the Church of her Officers and Labourers; it being now a glorious vertue for Bilhops and Priests to forsake their flockes, and in stead of Spirituall warfare against the Deuill, (by preaching to cast downe, with meaning not carnall, imaginations and enery 2, Cor. 10 4; high thing exalted against the knowledge of God) to imbrace this carnall against the Turks, walking in Concil Sursom. and marring after the flesh : yea, they were dispensed with for non residence, mean-while, and to 3.048.754 and warring after the just exacting were supported that three yeares, no leffe them if they Mat. Paris.

Hen. 1468, 1468, 911. 50 were refident. So Baldmin Archbishop of Canterbury, made a Pilgrimage thorow England and in Constitution. Wales, to winne Pilgrimes for this warre. Pope Gregorie had excommunicated Fredericke the Ot Balden is 1-

Emperour, for not going to the holy warres, as he had vowed : hee went and did glorioufly , as timerarie, Giyou have read alreadie: but the Hospitulars and Templars pursuing the Popes quarrell fought to raldus hath betray him to the Soldan, (a perfidie odious to that Infidell) and in his absence the Pope sets John witten a book de Brenes, to conquer and subiect his Sicilian Dominions. For quarrels of those Templars, and others, he is againe excommunicated; and the third time by Innocent in the Councell of Lions; Omnesa, (laith the Pope therein) qui ei iuramento sidelitatis aliquo modo astricti vel obligati à iuramento buiusmode perpetuo absolumus & liberamus, authoritate Apostolica firmiter & frictim inhi-

60 bendo ne quisquam de cetero sibstanquam Imperatori vel Regi pareat, vel quomodo libet parere intendat. Decernendo quoslibet qui deinceps es, velut Imperatori vel Regi , consilium vel auxilium prastiterint (could the Deuill haue roared lowder against Charitie!) fen fautorem, ipfo facto excommunicationis

To palliate this Dispensation of Oathes, and electing a new Emperour, the Holy Land busi-

ers a clanfe. fignifying not. withflanding, that is notwithflanding any Canon, Prinil dee.&c he would di-

And thus treasonable Dispensations beganne by Hildebrand, grew up to strength and marriritie by this Holy Land buineffe, and both Laitie and Clergie at once were exempt from oaths. * Non obstante vowes, and bonds to God and Men. Hence grew that Non obstante, * so often mentioned by Mathew Paris, for the grieuances whereof the whole Parliament fent Anno 1246. Meffengers or Legats, to Lions to treate with the Pope, and for which that Lincolne Bilhop Robert Groffed (whom the Westerne Church admired for Learning and Sanctitie) both writ to the Pope, and on his death-bed proued him to be Antichrift. He affirmeth also that the King vindertooke to sweare with most solemne Ceremonies of Candle curie, that which hee observed not Law, Promife, in confidence of the Popes Dispensation: yea, falsified his owne, and frustrated his Progenitors Acts and Grants in proteffed imitation of the Popes Non obstante : vowed this Holy Land Expedition, and sware where hee had no meaning to doe any thing, but get money of his people; they might do part whereof might procure Papall Dispensation. Yea, hereby the Popes haue obliged Kings. 20 States, and Kingdomes to them, by dispensing with car hes, with Marriages in degrees forbidden. or having other wives living, to that their Posterities stand obnoxious to the Pope for ferre of illegitimation.

In the first of these the Pope by Temporalises became a temporal! Prince by Treason to his Prince; in the second by Collation of Benefices, hee became vinuerfall Bishop, swallowing the power of all Bulhops and Church-men, and of Princes ouer them, into a Papall Whirle-poole. which he confirmed by Lawes, fitting in Ecclesiam (as it was prophessed of the Man of Some) as representing the whole Church, inuested in her whole power, which voder him as vader court Barnes was no person in Law, but hee answeres all in Law, and is himselfe in his written Decretals, and in his present Consistorie, the speaking Law of the Church : In this third, he is more 20 then Law, cutting afunder the Gordien knot, by Dispensations, if he cannot by Glosses, and quelifying Interpretations vntye it; aboue Law, aboue the Church, aboue God, aboue himfelfe by his Non Obstante, in fulnesse of power difanulling all their acts hindering his acts and prefen purpoles. And whatfoeuer hath beene by former Popes , by Councels , by themselves ordained for reformation, una falfa lachrymala quam vix vi exterferit, one goodly pretence forced to lome shew of equitie, shall with a Dispensing Non Obstante, turne to serve his turne, and bring money

to his Coffers, though purposely denised against it.

Thus dealt he with Commenda: (deutied for the good of the Church, which was commended Hill. Com., Trid. for a time to fome other fi: Rector, till a proper Rector and worthy might be procured) to a lon-

See abundant

testimenies

& Lens.10.

ger time, yea, to terme of life, for the goods, not the good of the Church. Even after Luthers 40 preaching Pope Clement commended to Hyppolitus all the Benefices of the World, Secular and Regular, Dignities and Parionages, Simple and with Cure, being vacant for fixe monethes, to beginne from the first day of his possession, with power to dispose of, and to consert to his vie Guisciard, bift. all the fruits. Yea, this Cardinall de Medicis (which plucked out the eyes of his brother Isline whom his Mistris loued more then him for his eyes (ake) continued to hold the Archbishopricks of Milan in Lumbardie, Capue in the Kingdome of Naples, Strigonium in Hungarie, belides the Bishoprickes of Agria in Hungarie, Mutina, and Ferrara in Italie, places so far distant. Vnions deuifed for the Churches provision in the infufficience of one liuing, by adding some neere one, were firetched to thirtie or fortie wherfoeuer lying, as if the good not of the Church, but of the perfon 50

See Rain, and

Matthew Paris in his time tels that the Pope fent to the Bilhops of Canterbury, Lincolne, and Salifhury, to prouide three hundred Romanes in the Benefices next vacant, giving none other till these were prouided, which never meant to come at any cure but of the money. Yea, when they dyed other Italians succeeded, so that their receits in this kind, far surmounted the Crowne Lands: and after complaints to the Pope, and the fore-mentioned Councell fo zealous of the Holy Land, the case was worse, as it hapned to the Ifraelites by Pharoes Taxe-masters, swelling from fixtie to f uentie thousand Markes. Clement the fixt referred for two Cardinals, which hee had lately made, the Benefices void and to be next void, befides Bishoprickes, and Abbeyes, to the fumme of two thousand Markes, which in the valuations of those times, might one with 60 another be two hundred, forfooth, for these Princepes mundi, consiliaris nostre (lo faith Pope Pins of his Cardinals) & consudices orbis terrarum, successores Apostolorum circa thronum sedentes, Senatores vrbis & Regum similes, veri mundi Cardines, super quos militantis ostium Ecclesia voluendum ac regendum est. Thus Cardinall * Wolfer is faid to have had more Revenues, then all the Bishops and Deanes in England now.

In the Councell of Trent (which pretended to reforme, intended to palliate, if not further H Access Tr.L.o. to pollute with abuses, at least in the greater and Papell part) the Pope could not indure the question of Residence due inre dining, which the Spanis Bishops vrged, and in the question of Dispensations had Adrian a Dominican Friar, to defend his absolute and volumited power; and though he dispensed without cause, the dispensation was to be held for good, alledging that of Saint Paul, that Ministers are defenfers of the mifteries of God, and to them is the defenfation " com- 1.60.4. mitted (his paterne was the Dispenser or Steward, Luc. 16. which is faid to deale wifely, as the "A gloic conmitted (his paterne was the Dispenser or Steward, Luc. 10. which is laid to use which; a the trine to the Pope did in the Master piece of their skill, this whole Councell) and though the Popes dispensation T M., 25 if Dion in divine Law be not of force, yet every one ought to captinate his understanding, and beleeve that he frenches the 10 bath granted it for a lawfull cause, and that it is temeritie to call it in question. Laynez, the Gene-Word, were

rall of the last Locust-brood (the * lefuites) said, that to say the Pope cannot by dispensation disob. concealing or lige him who is obliged before God, is to teach men to preferre their owne conscience before the authoritie cancelling it. of the Church, that it cannot be denyed that Christ had power to dispense in enery Law, nor that the lib 8. Pope is his Vicar, nor that there is the same Tribunall and Consistors of the Principall and the Vicegerent ; fo it must be confessed that the Pope hath the same authoritie : that this is the priviledge of the Church of Rome, which it is herefic to take away, oc. that it belonged not to the Councell to reforme the Court, because the Scholar is not about his Master, nor the Seruant about his Lord. And thus must all men dispense with Romis Dispensations : and thus it comes to passe that the Popes Ex- Thead. Niem. chequor is like unto the Sea, into which all Rivers runne, and yet it runner not over fas one observed New. vn. tr. 6.

20 which ferued long, and well observed the reserved courses in the Popes Court.

Neither is it amisse to heare Sansonino tell the manner of dispensing Dispensations at Rome, in F. Sansonino del his eleuenth Booke, written wholly del Gouerno della Corte Romana. The authoritie of the gende durfi Pope (faith he) as the Head, disperseth it selfe into so many members, that the Courtiers vie to regula grow old before they understand that gournment. There is first, the Colledge of Cardinalis, the Head whereof is the Pope (therefore called Maximus) and the Cardinals members; of which the number is not certayne in our times, how locuer it is found that in former times there were but twelue. These Illustrious Fathers assemble once a weeke, which Assembly is called the Consistorie; in which Senate are appointed Bishops, Archbishops, Metropolitans and Patriarks when the Seas are void, whole election doth not belong to a Chapiter, Citie, Province, Euen in 30 King, or other person: in which case they are chosen by the Pope and this Senate. Here they these the Pope

treat of all things which belong to Worling, to Faith, to Religion, to the peace of Christendome, to the temporall effate of the Church of Rame. In this facred Senate (as the greatest in his plenfure, the Worl.) all Prouinces, all Regulars, and all Kings, haue their Fathers Defenders, which they asin many call Protettors, who propound the caules of their Prouinces, &c.

For the Penitentiarie, he aides, that all the World Ceckes to the Pope for many graces in that mat- of Conte &c. ter, which our Lord lefus Chrift left unto Peter, to wit , of looling and binding in earth whatforuer he will. Now this part being by the Pope referred to himselfe; that other is accustomed to be granted of him, that is, that of looling, to one of the Cardinals, who is called the chiefe Penitentiarie, who for so much as appertuynes to that which is common in the divine Law, and to his Absolution, exerciseth

40 the Inrifuction committed to him by the Pope by many Vicars and Substitutes, called Penitentiaries Note how the lurificitien committed to born by the lope by many lears and adoption, at latest returning, or Penitentiers) disuded theromous all the greatest Charlest of Rome, as Saint Peters in the Vatin Cane Code can, Saint John de Lateran, Saint Maite Major. But the Dispensations which are made touching bus across the saint many control of the saint many contro observation of humane Lawes, he granteth not but in some cases, and by hunsilfe. And by a generall Rome. sofermation of outsine Lawes, be garden as well as the flaires, and basing seems their Demands, if there be any case? For which the Sutor mersteth to be beard, and that which be requireth hath beens accuse and fields? flomed to be granted by the Pope; he writes by authoritie Apostolicall and of his Office, and not by the feerefaigerit Popes mouth but by that generall commission in his Letters of commission from the Popes mouth, hee nummi. affirmes, and his Assertion is believed as in a thing belonging to his Office, and rescribes alway to the Supplication on that fide directed to the Pope in one of the formes, fiat in forma, fiat de speciali, fiat

50 de el prello, with which varietie of wordes he lets the Taxers understand the importance of the Suit : and as the Refeript of the Pentientsarie differs in forme, so the taxes of the payments are altered by the Officers. And in these times the multisude of humane Lawes is so increased, both by the Pope, and by The fruit of Councells, and by Monasteries, that men being in some fort bound, destring their ancient libertie, base and Lawes Ecrecourse by may of Supplication to the Penitentiarie, who having signed the Suppliants Bill with his hand, cesiasticall, they dipatch the Bulls under his Name and Scale. And for that many times hee doth not write backe publike and precisely, requiring some attest ation of the Suppliant, bee appoints ludges by his writing, which taking private. This the teaknowledge of the Caufe, perfect the AE; and herein be appoints others in his place. And this both Offion of the ite face of the Penitentiarie, for the greater commodate of them which come for Expeditions hath four and still law is twentie Defenders of Suppliants , which are called the Proctors of the holy Penitenriarie. Thefe as for the Law of

6. Adnocates declare the Contents of his Suite, and as it were plead the Caufe before the Pentientiarie, of God as in whom they procure to obtaine their Suite, and to get their Buils dispatched. He weeth also to rescribe Hamy the eight whom they procure to obtain their Suite, and to get their Bulls dip atched. He well also to reject to the the Fe is in many Caules apportaining to Luctice, and as it were alway to grant in the one kinde and in the other, too great or here under noted, Diften fations matrimoniall in degrees forbidden by the Law of Man, legitimations the Penitenof Children; D. hen fations in reflect of them, or for want of members due to fuch a are to receive Or traite.

Sac.Cer.Ec.Rom lib.1. f 8 4.3. * He cologia Auglies.

ders or Benefices; allo for incompatabilitie of more Benefices. Diofornions from homicide in Foro Conficientie; for Clerkes in both Courts, with retention of Benefices and Diffensations for more. The line for Simonie for Exile, moreouer from an Oath for the effect of the operation, from falle Oather. commutation of Vones, and Licences from observation of any humane Law, and especially of Recoular from any Chapiter (or Article) of the Lawes of their Rules. He gives Indulgences to places and persons and moreover, infinite Commissions in forme of Law, as namely, the Declaration of the Nulltie or Invaliditie of Marriage, which are called Declaratorie; and in many other things which are knowne to them that practife in the Ecclesiastiche Courts. They doe every day demand the Subscriptions from the Pope of such things as come from his volun-

But for these and the like Officers, the Vice-chancellor, the Audience of the Chamber (as in

of which the Whores of the Citie pay a yeerly Taxation, which they call Tribute) I omit and 20

power in the Temporall State) Treaturer, Aduocate, Proctor, Commissaries, Marshalls (to one

referre the Reader to the Author. The last he mentions is the Vicar of Rome, who hath the same

and given Benefices : his authoritie extends fortie miles out of Rome, in fome cales. The Pope

hath alfo given him all those Pontificalia, which every Ordinarie exercifeth in his Diocese, as to

confecrate places profane, to reconcile fuch as are profaned, to promote to holy Orders, to pu-

Counfellors of were his prime Counfel) the primate dispatches by the Secretarie, the Chamberlan (which hath

tarie and proper liberalitie, as the grants of Benefices and other things, which are also generally commit- of ted to the Great Penstentiarie, and all matters which pertagne to Justice in things Ecclesiasticall thorow all parts of the World, at also in things profane of the temporall patrimonie of the boly Church of Rome, and of any other place of the World which have recourse to the Court of Rome, by reason of the person being Ecclesiasticall, or by Princes sending it, or by consent of the parties. The Pope for the more easte dispatch of Sutors in all these things, bath ordayned two Audiences, in one of which they demand

matters of Grace, in the other those of Inflice.

the Popes Wiesvio di Ro-

Officers and

authoritie which the Pope hath over the Priests in all things, in Rome and in the Diocese, hearing all Clergie cales as Ordinarie; imposeth Penance, conferreth Sacraments, calleth Congre-Pations, vifits Churches and Monasteries, makes Inquisition, correcteth, punisheth, removeth

nish Blasphemies, Vsuries, Periuries, Incests: and in case of corporall punishments to fend them to the Secular Ludges. He hath foure Notaries or publike Scribes, and two Vicars Subflitute. So farre is the Pope degenerated from a Bilhop in any thing but Title, and vling that onely, that 30 through coneton fine fewith fayned words he might make merchandise of men, as turpilucricupidus, a lo-2,Pet.2.3. wer of filtby game (even that of Cortezions hithineffe) yea, of the foules of men, which are reckoned among the Babylonian wares of these Merchants of the earth. And what else are these di-Apoc 18.13. fpenfation; thus ab fed, but for le-fale, which is made more euident (is any thing more impu-Soules fold, whiles their fin dent then a Wilore ?) by their Taxa Camera, a Booke published in print, whereby men may

remaynes.

quenty in hope of Dispentations. finnes being thus made both veniall and venall. Budde A [[e,ii.5.

by a Rom:fb Catholike to his Maicitic, Englishedby

M.C.

know the prices of their Abiolutions for Simonie, Sodomie, Incest, Homicide, and other the though their Mafter and Monster finnes and degenerations of mankind. In which marke also, that being breaches of the Law of Gou, an inferior Penitentiarie by his Booke of Taxation canabfolue, fed with bold- but those crimes against humane Lawes require the chiese Penitentiarie to turne the Law into neffe and fre- a Net, and become a good Sponge-man to exenterate his purse more thorowly. And as Rome by Dispensations is made a Merchants shop, Litium officina capturaruma, improbarum, where are kept perpetuall Marts of Sacriledge, which make finnes not onely Veniall but Venall; and Golden Canons become Lesbian Rules by Papall Leaden Bulls, flexible and pliant according to the price and banke of the Romifo money changers : to by Indulgences hath the beene

indu gent to all her Chapmen (except they wanted money) and hath made them the foundation of the Tower of Babylon; in this, Induigences and Difpensations agreeing that nothing hath more rayled, nothing more razed her gorgeous and glorious Fabriques; Henrie the eight, vpon the one occasion for faking wonted commerce with Rome, and Luiber by the other proudked to open his mouth so wide and loud, that he awakned all Emope to behold her filthy whoredomes. And if any thinke the later times either more Casta, or more Cauta, let him obserue what 10 Names bome, in Nones Home, an vinknowne Supplicant of Rome, hath revealed touching the mysteries of the a Supplication Datarie (the Office where matre is of Benefices are dispatched) where the bestowing of Bene-

fices is deferred, that inquirie may be made of the richest Competitors; each Lluing is charged with a pension of halfe, or a third, or two thirds of the worth, and then by another Ordination by present payment of fine yeeres purchase extinguished. As if the Benefice bee worth three hundred crownes a yeere, a pention is imposed of two hundred, leauing one hundred for the Incumbent; who paying one thousand crownes and a hundred more for Seales and Expedition, buyes repentance at a deare rate. The Regressia and Expellating forbidden by the Councell of Trent, are deluded with Coadintor Sups, fold for a yeeres profit in colour of expediting Bulls, with 60 assurance of future succession: by which and like meanes (you may not call that Simonie which the Pope doth; and it is disputable among it them, whether the Pope can commit that sinne,

although the very name comes from Simon Magus his leeking to contract with Simon Peter)

Paul the fifth is reported to have extracted out of his Lead twentie hundred thouland Scutes, to buy Lands for his Nephew (or fonne) Borgbesius. The truth of which, by the Registers

d. IIII.



cree, appeareth.

of Indulgences.

Hus have we feene the Popes Temporalties, arifing from Cos ip rours, his Collations from the spoile of all Kings and Princ's in pretence of Simonie, to further intentions and extension , penfations, Factors and Bawds for Compenfations, by this

thus finned and kept a Trade, Shop, Mart, Sale, and game of Sinae : Los shew of reason, and yet was the right fore-legge of the beatt, whereor h

whereby he had fecureft holding his prey, wherewith he made thronge t perfaries, was Indulgences. And whereas the River of the Popes Edwas this first compasset the whole Land of Hauila, where there u Gold, and the

(faith the Author) in the Office of Bettus, a publice

good. Of which the Author of the Historie of the Councell of Trens . cl of gaining Money was put in practife, after Pope Viban the fecund had gom : 20 all that Should make war in the Holy Land; imitated by bis Successors, fore . that maintained a Souldiour, if they went not in person. And after, the fane were given, for taking Armes against those that obeyed not the Church of Bos

Christians : and for the most part infinite exactions were made vader those & c greater part were applied to other vies. Thu Pope Leo the temb . 1917. all Christendome, granting it to any which would give Money and extending it his will was , that when the difbur fement was made , they fould be delmared ? torie : giuing alfo power to cate Egges and Woitmeats on falling dones to ch ale and other such like abilities. And although the execution of the enterprise of lar neuther pions nor honest, notwithstanding many of the Granes made by the 30 causes more vinist, and were exercised with more Anarice and Exception. H

Harnest before it was reaped or well foune, gining to diner perfous the Raise and referring some also for his owne Exchequer. The Indulgences of Sam on the Sea, be gaue to Magdalene his Sister, Wife wate Franceichero Cibo, cent the eight; by reason of which marriage, this Leo was cressed Comme yeares. She to make the best of it, committed the care of preaching the land Mozer unto Aremboldus, a Genoa Merchant, (non a Bafton and Merchant fters like unto himfelfe, who armed at nothing but game : which would not a ? bad beene the custome of Saxonie in this cafe) but Dominicans, when " many strange things; and in Tauernes, games, and other things not fit to bea 40 the people fored from their necessarie expences, to purchase the lade gon us

By this meanes Martin Luther an Hermite Frier, first began to James, to (es; and after being pronoked by the Pardoners, be fet banfelfe to finde the feetberootes and foundations of the Dollrine of Indulgences. He put land herein, to be disputed on in Wittenberg, which were accepted : but lot a " trarie in Frankfort of Brandeberg. Luther proceeded to wrate a defence of oppofe; and thefe Writings being gone to Rome, Sylvefter Prierias, . D min Luther : which contestation inforced both the one and the other partie to pa Te ter importance. For the Dollrine of Indulgences bearing not beene well xame effence and causes of them were not well understood. Some thought they were made by Authoritie of the Prelate from Penance, which the Church on a 50 by war of Discipline upon the penitent, (which imposition was all made Shop onely, after delegated to the Penttentiarie Priest, and in conclusion left w's fellor) and that they delinered us not from paying the deb: due to the Infar. that they freed from both. But thefe were divided : fome thicking that ther were given in recompence, others faid, that by reason of mutual partie pat of bers of holy Church the Penance of one might bee communicated to a whe

Compensation. But because it seemed that this was more proper to men or too the authoritie of Prelates, there arose a third opmion. which made them o p ar authoritie was necessary for them) and in part a Compensation. But because 6. Such fort as they could pare much of their Merits to others, there was weed full of the Merits of all those who had more then would serve the wome to n of is committed to the Pope, who when he questo Indulgences, recommende of assigning so much in value out of the Treasure. It being opposed that the Ale this treasure might be diminished; they added the Merits of Circle which a

ders or Benefices; also for incomparabilitie of more Benefices. Abjolutions from homicide in Foro Configurative: for Clerkes in both Courts, with retention of Benefices and Diffensations for more. The line for Simonie for Exile, moreover from an Oath for the effect of the operation, from falle Oathes. commutation of Vowes, and Licences from observation of any humane Law, and especially of Regulars from any Chapiter (or Article) of the Lawes of their Rules. He gives Indulgences to places and persons: and moreover, infinite Commissions in forme of Law, as namely, the Declaration of the Nullitie or Invaliditie of Marriage, which are called Declaratorie: and in many other things which are knowne :o

them that mallife in the Ecclesiasticke Courts. They doe every day demand the Subscriptions from the Pope of such things as come from his voluna tarie and proper liberalisie, as the grants of Benefices and other things, which are also generally commit- of ted to the Great Penstentiarie, and all matters which pertagne to Justice in things Ecclesiasticall therow all parts of the World, at also in things prefame of the temporall pairimonie of the boly Church of Rome, and of any other place of the World which have recomfe to the Court of Rome, by reason of the per fon being Ecclesiasticall, or by Princes Sending it, or by consent of the parties. The Pope for the more easie dispatch of Sutors in all these things, hath orderned two Audiences, in one of which they demand matters of Grace, in the other those of Iustice.

Vicario di Ro-

2.Pet.2.2.

Apoc 18.13. yea is increa-fed with boldneffe and frequency in hope of Dispeniations. finnes being thus made both veniall

his Maieftie,

But for thele and the like Officers, the Vice-chancellor, the Audience of the Chamber (as in Counfellors of were his prime Counfel) the primate difpatches by the Secretarie, the Chamberlan (which hath power in the Temporall State) Treasurer, Aduocate, Proctor, Commissaries, Marshalls (to one of which the Whores of the Citie pay a yeerly Taxation, which they call Tribute) I omit and 20 referre the Reader to the Author. The last he mentions is the Vicar of Rome, who hath the same authoritie which the Pope hath ouer the Priests in all things, in Rome and in the Diocese, hearing all Clergie cales as Ordinarie; imposeth Penance, conferreth Sacraments, calleth Congregations, vifits Churches and Monasteries, makes Inquifition, correcteth, punisheth, removeth and giverh Benefices : his authoritie extends fortie miles out of Rome, in some cases. The Pope hathalio giuen him all those Pontificalia, which every Ordinarie exercifeth in his Diocese. as to confecrate places profane, to reconcile fuch as are profaned, to promote to holy Orders, to punish Blasphemies, Viuries, Periuries, Incents: and in case of corporall punishments to fend them to the Secular Ludges. He hath foure Notaries or publike Scribes, and two Vicars Subflitute. So farres is the Pope degenerated from a Bilinop in any thing but Title, and Ving hat onely, that a through constrolled from the bringle made merchandly of the farther as turbinary desired, and the same of little game (constituted to Cyrtaxus is thinkely yea, of the foods of merchandly of the foods of merchandly of the foods of the population. It is not the foods of the foods of the which are reconstituted to the foods of the foods o ned among the Babrionian wares of their Merchants of the earth. And what elfe are thefe difpensations thus abused, but soule-sale, which is made more enident (is any thing more impudent then a Whore!) by their Taxa Camera, a Booke published in print, whereby men may know the prices of their Abiolutions for Simonie, Sodomie, Incest, Homicide, and other the Mafter and Monfter finnes and degenerations of mankind. In which marke also, that being breaches of the Law of Gou, an inferior Penitentiarie by his Booke of Taxation can absolue, but those crimes against humane Lawes require the chiefe Penitentiarie to turne the Law into a Net, and become a good Sponge-man to exenterate his purse more thorowly.

And as Rome by Difpensations is made a Merchants shop, Litium officina capturaruma, improbarum, where are kept perpetuall Marts of Sacriledge, which make finnes not onely Ventall but Venall; and Golden Canons become Leibian Rules by Papall Leaden Bulls, flexible and pliant according to the price and banke of the Romifo money changers : fo by Indulgences hath the beens indu gent to all her Chapmen (except they wanted money) and hath made them the foundation of the Tower of Babylon; in this, Induigences and Difpensations agreeing that nothing hath more rayled, nothing more razed her gorgeous and glorious Fabriques; Henrie the eight, vpon the one occasion for laking wonted commerce with Rome, and Luther by the other protoked to open his mouth so wide and loud, that he awakned all Emope to behold her filthy whoredomes. And if any thinke the later times either more Casta, or more Casta, let him obserue what Nous bome, in Nous Homo, an viknowne Supplicant of Rome, hath reuealed touching the mysteries of the a Supplication Datarie (the Office where matre s of Benefices are dispatched) where the bestowing of Benefices is deferred, that inquirie may be made of the richeft Competitors; each Lluing is charged with a pension of halfe, or a third, or two thirds of the worth, and then by another Ordination by present payment of fine yeeres purchase extinguished. As if the Benefice bee worth three hundred crownes a yeere, a pension is imposed of two hundred, leauing one hundred for the Incumbent; who paying one thousand crownes and a hundred more for Seales and Expedition, buyes repentance at a deare rate. The Regressus and Expeltatins forbidden by the Councell of Trent, are deluded with Coadinterflips, fold for a yeeres profit in colour of expediting Bulls, with 60 affurance of future succession: by which and like meanes (you may not call that Simonie which the Pope doth; and it is disputable amongst them , whether the Pope can commit that sinne, although the very name comes from Simon Magne his feeking to contract with Simon Peter) Paul the fifth is reported to have extracted out of his Lead twentie hundred thousand Scutes, to buy Lands for his Nephew (or fonne) Borgbefine. The truth of which, by the Registers

(faith the Author) in the Office of Bettus, a publike Notarie, in a particular kept fecret, appeareth.

d. IIII. of indulgences.

rours, his Collations from the spoile of all Kings and Princes of their Inuestitures. in pretence of Simonie, to further intensions and extensions of Simonie; his Dif-

penfations, Factors and Bawds for Compenfations, by this Man of Sinne, which this finned and kept a Trade, Shop, Mart, Sale, and gaine of Sinne : but that which had leaft they of reason, and yet was the right fore-legge of the beast, whereon he had furest standing, whereby he had fecureft holding his prey, wherewith he made strongest fights against his Adwhereas, was Indulgences. And whereas the River of the Popes Eden is parted into foure beads, Gen 2, 10, 12. this first compassed the whole Land of Hauila, where there is Gold, and the Gold of that Land is Historia 1. good, Of which the Author of the Historie of the Councell of Trent, relateth that this manner of gaining Money was put in practife, after Pope Vrban the second had given a plenarie Indulgence to of gaining Groves was pain in practice of the state of the sound was grown a process is installed as the floudd make were in the Holy Land, imitated by his Successor, some of pathot granted it to those that maintained a Souddown; if they went not in perfen. And after, the same Indulgences or Pardons were given, for taking Armes against those that obeyed not the Church of Rome, although they were were given, for taking Armes against those that obeyed not the Church of Rome, although they were Christians; and for the most pars infinite exactions were made under those presences, all which, or the greater part were applied to other vies. Thus Pope Leo the tenth, 1517. Jent an Induigence therew Originall of all Christendome, granting it to any which would give Money and extending it to the dead; for whim. Indulgences. bis will was, that when the difour sement was made, they should be delinered from the paines of Purgaus with usus, using also power to eate Egger and Whitmeats on fasting dates, to chuse themselves a Consessor wire giving also power to eate Egger and Whitmeats on fasting dates, to chuse themselves and above such bits abilister. And although the execution of this enterprise of Leo had some particu-In neither pious nor honest, normitalisanter many of the Grants made by the preceding Popes, had a neither pious nor honest, normitalisanter many of the Grants made by the preceding Popes, had a cultis more winist, and were exercised with more Austrice and Extertions. He distributed part of the time the design of the second se causes more vinuss, and arresease visit a more summer and account party to the Herneth before it mas reaped or well forme, giving to divers perspices the Renemest of laters? Prosinces, and referming from also for his owne Exchequer. The Indusquees of Saxonic, and from thence to the Sea, he gave to Magdalenc his Sister, Wife wate Francelcheto Cibo, Baitard Sonne of Innocent the eight; by reason of which marriage, this Leo was created Cardinall at the age of sourceens yeares, She to make the heft of it, committed the care of preaching the Indulgences, and exacting the yeares, was so mange to cost of 11, communica are care by preasoning two commences, was causing the Morey tout Arenholdus, a Genca Merchant, (now a Billips and Merchant to) who found Minister is the two limitedly, who agained at nothing but game: which would not vie the Hermite Friers (at Italy the world not vie to the Hermite Friers (at Italy the world not be to amplify the value, if the bad betwee the cuit once of Saxonic in this case) but Dominicans, which to amplify the value, if the

bas over the custome of Saxonic in tous cafe) one Dominicans, when is ampujes to value, page many france thing; and in Taurraci, games, and other things not fit to bee named, from the medial case of from the meeting large exposers, to purchafe the Indulgence. The specific part from them need from the meeting large experience for the Martin Luther in Hermite Firer, first began to fleake, third against tole for media. Occasion of Sythic moment Autum Luther in Hermite Firer, first began to fleake this matter, being defirous to change for the medial parts of the fluids this matter, being defirous to change feet between and foundations of the Doltrine of Indulgences. He published music flue Conclusions berein, to be disputed on m Wittenberg, which none accepted : but Iohn Thecel proposed others contrarie in Frankfort of Brandeberg. Luther processed to write in defence of bis, and John Ecchius to route: which confide the magnetic of the control of to make the most of the Prelate from Penance, which the Church in most account time; and continued to forther of Indulgences basing not been well examined in former Ages, the effects and causes of them were not well understood. Some thought to they were nothing but an absolution made by Auborities of the Prelate from Penance, which the Church in most accient time; imposed Doctrine often. 50 by may of Descriptine v pon the penitent, (which imposition was assumed in succeeding Ages by the Bi-dulgences va-

Bop onely, after delegated to the Pententiarie Priest and in conclusion left wholly to the will of the Con- knowne. , or one; , spire accegates to the remaindment rise, and in concention the word per the wat of the Con- months.

fifter) and that they delinered we not from paying the dark due to the Althreet God. Others though, in Direct opinits that they freed we would be considered with the first they freed we, though nothing one of them, that they freed we, though nothing one of them. were given in recompence, others faid, that by reason of mutual participation in charitie of the mem- Effects of the bers of holy Church the Penance of one might bee communicated to another, and free birn. by this opinion of meony control to connect of me industries and the state of authoritie was necessary for them) and in part a Compensation. But because the Prelats lived not in 63 Such fort as they could pare much of their Merits to others, there was made a treasurie in the Church,

full of the Merits of all those who had more then would serve their owne turne: the dispensation whereof is committed to the Pope, who when he giveth Indulgences, recompenseth the debt of the Sinner, by afficing so much in value out of the Treasure. It being opposed that the Merits of Saints being sinite, thu treasure might be diminished; they added the Merits of Christ which are insinite: which caused

another doubt, what needed those drops to this Ocean ; which gave cause to some to make the Treasure to be onely of the Merits of Christ.

The sethings then so uncertaine, and had no other foundation then the Bull of Clement the fixe. made for the lubilee, 1 3 5 0. Wherefore Thecel, Echius, and Prierius, laid for their ground works the Popes Authoritie, and Confent of the Schoolemen, concluding that the Pope not being able to erre in matters of Faith, and himfelfe publishing the Indulgence, it was necessarie to beleeve them. as an Article of Faith. This made Martin to paffe from Indulgences to the Popes Authoritie, &c.

Pope Adrian

After Leos death, Adrian succeeded, who being a Denine, had written in that matter, and though to establish his Doctrine by Apostolicall Decree, that is that an Indulgence being granted to one which ball doe (such a Worke, the Worker obtaineth so much of it as is proportionable to his Worke; thinking to Luthers obiection thus answered, (How a peny could gaine so great Treasure) and yet Induspences remaining in request, seeing he that hath not all, hath his proportionable part. But Cardinall Caietan told him it was better to keepe this secret, lest the Popes grant might seeme to profit nothing, that Indulgences are but absolutions from Penance imposed in confession onely; and if he would restore the autgeness are on appointment permane convergen to constitute worst; and n or woma retire toe displied penticitive Canon, men would fladly feeth Indulgences. This being proposed in the Peniter-tiary Court, Cardinall Poecio, Datarie to Pop Leo, a diligent Minister to finde on Money, (which had counfailed Leo to those Indulgences, and was now cheese Penitentiarie) related to the Pope with the generall affent the impossibilitie; that those Canonicall Penances were gone into disuse, because they could be no longer supported for want of the ancient zeale, whereas now enery one would be a ludge and examine the reasons; and in stead of curing they would kill. At length the Cardinall of Volterra propo- 20 led the way to extinguish Heresies, to bee not by Reformations, but by (Insados, (as is said before,) Hill.C.T.1.8. And in the Councell of Trent, when Indulgences came to bee examined, the Bybop of Modena told between the word from tilling, more consequences were examines, see a good of alcotton total between they would find tillifent, and to require a long time, it being impossible to make that matter plaine, but by determining first whether they be Abfoliations, or compansiation and; and suffrages; or whether they remit the penalties imposed by the Confession only, or all that are due, whether the treat sure be of the Merits of Christ onely, or of the Saints also ; whether they extend to the dead, or though just very low creating conty, or y we commit also motives trey extend to the dead or though the receiver professes nothing; with other difficulties. But to determine that the Church may great them, and that they are profitable to those which worthed receives them, needed no great disfination, and a Decree might be composed without deficulties: and bee with other Frier Bilops was deputed to make a Decree in this sense, adding a provision against the abuses. Thus farre have we gleaned out of that fertile Corne-field. As for that of Clements Iubilee

Tracl.de Iub. Jo.

Pudio so. Indulgence, it is not amulic to recite Iome part, in which case y against to distance if Pauli Mann myfiliate, granted, to chale his Confessor or Confessors, to whom he guest full power to distance if Pauli Indulgence, it is not amiffe to recite fome part, in which every Pilgrime to Rome hath power Man mpli lase granted, to chale his Confeder or Contestors, to whom hee gues full power to absolute all Papal
1945, 1956.

Actif, sat she hee points fles were personally presen: and it he dues in the way seing truly confissed
that he he quite free, and absoluted from all his sames: and movement, were command the Angelo of
Paradist that they carrie the saids into the stry of Paradist, being sully absoluted from. Purgatorie.
Thought 11.6.8.

Thought 11.6.8.

The description of the production of the said of Pain has 9.

When the triumber of the of them for minutes underson running an inner to then Kyast, Many, as were confided, enen without Penance, Diffpening for Money with irrigularities, &c., Yea, Lillion fome Pardoners descended sometime (shirth Gashague) to take for them a supper, a nights load of T. Gash, in Diffe. gung, a draught of Wine or Beere, a game at Tennis, and sometime a venerall Act. Pope Alex. ander the fixt gaue thirtie thousand yeares Indulgence, for the saying of a certaine Prayer to Saint Anne. And Inline his warring Succeffor gave large Indulgences to every man which should kill a French-man, with whom he had Warres. Others to Stations, Rolaries, Croffes, Churches, Images, Graines, Pilgrimages, Prayers, throwing Wood into the Fire to burne Heretickes. and other like parts of Faith and Charitie. But let vs come to the Originall of this finke,

P.Dam.et. ad

Some ascribe their beginning to Pope John, about the yeare 880. which yet is but giving his opinion of them that die in Warre against Insidels, not an Indulgence to any. Petrus Damanus rels of Monks, redeeming Penances with Plalmodies, and felfe-whippings, redeeming a years so penance with a thousand stripes, and fue thousand stripes with once singing the whole Plal-6 a) 500 of the transfer of transfer o Some tell of Gregorie the first, in the time of publike Pestilence, enioyning a publike kind of Penance, the Letanies, and Stations or viliting on fet daies certaine Churches, with prayers for deliuerance, and remission to be given by the Priests, to such as penitently confessed their finnes. These Stations gaue occasion to Bonface the eight, of proclaiming his lubilee every fecular years in imitation of the Secular games, which Clement reduced to fiftie, and Sixtus Quartus to fine and twentie. These Jubilees begunne in Anno 1 3 0 0. haue Indulgence generation, 60 Iewish and Ethnicke imitation, which the other haue little Commerce with, as being void of Roff. at. 18. Commerce. Bilhop Fifter of Rochefter writing against Luther, doth more firly make Indulgence, a Daughter of Purgatorie Family : Quamdiu enim (faith he) nulla fuerat de Purgatorio cura, nemo quesiuis Indulgentias. Nam ex illo pendet omnis Indulgentiam existimatio. Si tollas Purgatorium, quin fum Indulgentijs opus erit? Caperunt igitur Indulgentia pestquam ad Purgatorij

CHAP.6.S.4. Popish Indulgence Daughter of Purgatorie, The We and abuse. 1262

eruciatus aliquandiu trepidatum est. An l'indeed Purgatorie hath beene the gainefullelt site to the Pope, and as a pamefull-gaine-foole Mother, might well procreate this Daughter; both iffuing from conceit, that temporali punishment remaineth to be satisfied, after the sailt of some remitted. Therefore haue they invented that Treasurie of the Merits of Christ and the Saints to bee this way employed, a name fitting the nature, being the best Treasurie, (for external Treasures) which ever the Popehad; in warre to pay Souldiers, warring in his cause, at their owne cofts, in peace to fill his Coffers. But I at vs looke to a purer generation, whereof this is

the corruption and degeneration. When as in the first times of the Church, onely feare of God and Ecclesiasticall Discipline to held men in awe, the Magistrates being Ethnicke; seuere Canons, and sincere Zeale held things in order. And if men transgressed, yet either for intension of their superabundant forrow, or for encouragement and prouocation to Martyrdome, or in danger of death relaxation was made and Indulgence; the Church receining some satisfaction for the external scandall, and beleeuing that God for the merit of his Sonne, and propense mercy was satisfied also in that saerifice of a contrite heart and broken spirit; Ged graciously accepting that Care, feare, clear 1 Cor 7. ring of ones felfe, zeale, indignation, defire, and revenge, (the affects and effects of true repentance) and the Church imitating the mercy of the heavenly Father; as weeter in the incessusous Corinthian. This latisfaction did not by merit redeeme, but in Faith and Penance appeale him, being reconciled in his Sonne ; for he sheweth Mercy (not Merit) to thousands in them. Adulterous him, being reconciled in his sonne; for he ineweth press; in the turne to him. Indulgences commission of Indulg. and

and Dispensations were adulterously commixed to destruction of this both publike and pripate Penance, when men were taught in stead of a Contrite hears, to give a contrite purse; and instead of satisfying God, (to viethat word) that is, appealing and meeting him by repentance, doing what he exacts and expects; or fatistying the Church in bir Sanctions, by externall humiliation, tellifying internall humilitie and converfation; to put over all to a Jubilee and Plenarie Indulgence. Which if they bee good, why doth not the Popes Charitie freely sine phat be freely received? What greater Simonie then fale of Merits, the chiefe graces of the holy Ghoft; yea, of Christs owne Merits? And what shall become of this Treasurie after the last day? Let Bellarmine and Valentianus alledge the communion of Saints, and other Scriptures of fee-

30 ming Supererogation, as Col. 1. 24 and the power of the Keyes, yet doth Valentia confesse their Greg de Valent. nountie, whence followes their inualencie and vanitie. Once ; their Money-valencie and Man- de Indaig, vid. valency, was not begun before by Gregorie the fewenth against the Emperor, as is said, and by Vr. Spil. 15, c. 8. ban heere applied to the Holy Land Warre. Yea, thefe of Vrban did but give occasion to the after Popes, to make them so strong pillars of the Babylonicall Tower, the Indulgences being then but Calnes, which after grew to be Bulls, as appeareth by the various reports of this his Speach, and Act in the Councell of Claremont. I have read feven or eight feverall Orations, written most of them by men of that time, and some professing themselves present, which yet have made it the triall of their wits, what they could, or elfe have added what Vrban at divers times, did fay or write, or other Popes after him : the later composing themselves to their own 40 times, when Indulgences were common and current. You have heard Robertus and Fulcherius Vid Gella Dei

already. Baldricus the Arch-bishop being present, delivers that part of his speech, which looks for France. this way in thele words : Confessis peccatorum suorum ignorantiam, securi de Christo calestems pasciscimini veniam. Guibertus, perorauerat vero excellentiss, omnes qui se ituros vouerant, (in his long Oration I find nothing to this purpole) Beati Petri potestate absoluit, eadem ipsa authoritate Apostolica sirmanit, co. Malmesbury had it of those which heard it in this sense, Ituri habentes per G. Malm. 1.4. Des concessum & beati Petri prinilegium omnium absolutionem criminum, & hac interim latitia laborem Barvaius hath itiners: allemam, babituri post obitum falucis martyrų commercium. Vitriacus Bishop of Acon, Omnibus the la ve. in remissionem omnium peccatorum peregrinationem iniungens. William Archbishop of Tyre thus, Nos ac. bish.ur. autem de misericordia Domini & Beatorum Petri & Pauli authoritate confise fidelibus Christianu qui W.Ty. hist.lt. 50 contra cos arma susceperint, & onus sibi buius peregrinationis assumferint, iniunct as sibi pro sus delictis

panitentias relaxamus. Qui autem ibi in vera panitentia decesferint & peccatorum indulgentiam & fru-Eum aterna mercedis fe non dubitent habituros. M. Paris after them, & more fitted to Indulgences, Not autem de Omnipotentis Dei maxime & BB. App. eius Petri & Pault autboritate corfifi, ex i'a quan nobis (licet indignis) Deus Ingandi até, folsendi consulit potestatem, omnibus qui luborem istum in propries personis subierint & expensis, plenam suorum peccatorum, si veraciter suerint corde contrits Gore confess, veniam indulgemus & in retributione instorum salutic aterna poll cemur augmentum. Thus Matth Prid the later, perhaps from fome later Pones, * which after Vrban had broken the Ice gaue further his very words Indulgence to the spirit of Indulgences, til (like the Frog in the fable) they cracked themselves in arc in Pope funder with (welling. Some you're mention only the ment of the worke, some adde the power Gregories Inof the Keyes in loofing, or abloluing from finne in the Conscience, others absolution from enicy-

ned penances (by the Confesior) the Lift to a plenary Indulgence, yet at most but an absolution granted, and and that from penall Canons, as it were by commutation of penance, in flead of that imposed by fore this in the Ghoftly Father, or Canonical fentence of the Prelate, undertaking in person, or by purion calcium and maintenance of another this peregrination. Vpon this timber they foone after built hay and insuess. Rubble, which hath by Luthers kindling fet Rome on fire.

In following times, this Expedition and Indulgences thereof, were followed by the See of all opinions of fatistying God for former finnes or imputations (as in Henry the Second for Beckets there Mar. Parrier of the expiated by this Warre. Secondly, of freeing of others foules hereby out of Purris and in Re-litions before gatory. Thirdly, of freedome from Oathes, as is before mentioned out of the Councell of Line. Fourthly, of Immunity of persons and goods, as of Priesls to be absent, and yet taking the profits of their Liuings for three yeares present, and to be free from payments; Laymen freed from Collections, Taxations and other publike grieuances. Fiftly, against private Sutes, their perfons and goods after the Croffe received, to be vnder Saint Peters and the Popes protection and the defence of the Church, by speciall Protectors appointed, that till their returne or death certhe defence of the Guardin, of pectal them ynder paine of Excommunication (a good pro- of nilo for Bank-rupts.) Sixtly, the proportion of this Indulgence to the proportion of ayde or countell (concilium vel auxilium) or money that way employed. Seuenthly, the Suffrage and Prayers of the Synod, that this lourney might profit worthily to their faluation. Eightly, power for all whomfoener but Regulars to goe, though vnfit, redeeming, changing, or deferring itby the Popes grant. Likewife, they increased finne by this meanes, Murtherers, Theenes, Adulterers. Bank-rupts, and others lauing the Holy Land for refuge against Law, and for safety of them and theirs, yea, for Merit and Indulgence; that becomming hereby the very finke of finne, confluence of all villaine, the heart and centre of abomination : as appeares in Vitriague And as morally, so also doctrinally, Purgatorie, Merit, Supererogation, Superstitious Pilgri- 20

Hures in Faith and Manners

mages, and the like, tooke further rooting by their Holy Land Expeditions; but especially the ditions, and Popes power hereby increased in and ouer Kings and Kingdomes, thus intermedling, peruerting Pilgrim sges to and preuenting courses of Iustice by his Indulgence-Buls horned with Excommunication; by the Holy Land, imposing this Expedition on Kings as Penance: by exhausting their Treasures, Souldiers and Forces, by bufying them farre off, whiles he and his might take and make opertunitie to add-terate all at home: by pulling with these hornes of Indulgences against Kings themselves; withgreatby Holy out other force, employing the forces of one Princeagainst another, and of their owne subiects

Land warres, apainst their Souereignes. So was King lohn forced to jurrender his Crowne, and take it of the

laus, and other Kings of Sicil; George, King of Bohemia, &c. By this was the Imperiall Eagle 30 plucked and stripped, greater Indulgences being given, that more money might bee gathered to maintayne with Holy Land money, his warre against Fredericke the Emperour; seeding simple M. Paris, p.535. Messengers with Legatine power, which by Commanding, Minacing, Excommunicating, P. etching. Praying, belides, his white white Bull, which might mooue flony hearts (melting out their metall) as to succour the Holy Land, indeed, to ruinate the Emperour. For which cause he had procured a Tenth, of Clergy and Laity in many Kingd mes; and that with strict Inquisition of the value to the Popes best commodite, even of the fruits before the Haruest, present pay to bee made under paine of Interditing and Excommunicating; which made the Prelates fell their Chalices and Church goods, that I mention not the viurers his Chaplen, and Agent Stephen had to byte, flay and deuoure the flocke with further exactions. This was Gregore the Compiler 40

Pope in farme, the French and his owne being armed againsthim: fo Conrade, Memfred Lads

of the Decretals. These moneyes the Pope gaue to lohn de Bresnes, to warre against the Emperour then in the Holy Land, and forced thirher by the Popes Excommunication. He extorted also a fifth of beneficed Forreiners for that purpose. & absolued his Subjects from their Allegeance. And when some expostulated with the King of England, for suffering his Kingdome to be made F4L 701. a prey, He answered, I neyther will nor dare contradict the Lord Pope in any thing: so that hee obtayned a fifth in England : and after that, sent Peter Rubens to new vn-heard of execrable exactions by lyes and canilations. What shall I tell of Rustander, which was fent to gather new Tenths, and to exchange the Kings Vow for the Holy Land, into a Sicilian Expedition against Memfrede, with equall Indulgences? Yea, greater Indulgences are granted to such as would warre against Christians, if the Popes Enemies, as before you have read, then in the Holy Land against the Turkes.

" Spalat. derey. Contrary to Indulgences are Interdictments, as Samfons Foxes having a fierie conjunction in their tayles ; of which Hildebrand is noted first Author; by which, if a Prince offended, his Subiects and whole Dominions were Interdicted, that is in Papall Interpretation, a publike Excommunication was denounced against him and his, and all externall publike Holies suspended. You shall have it in Mat. Paris his words of King loba, who being offended that the Pope had rejected from the Archbishopricke of Canterburie, the Bishop of Norwich, whom the greater and founder part of the Monkes in due folemnity, by the Kings confent had chosen, obtruding one of his Cardinals Stephen Langton upon him, whom he refused : the Pope caused the Bi- 60 shop of Ely and Worcester, to denounce his Interdict, which was also contrary to Papall Priviledges observed. There coased therefore in England all Ecclesiastical Sacraments (except enfession, and housell in danger of death, and Baptisme of children.) The bodies of the dead we carred out of Cities and Villages, and buried likes Dogges in by-wayes, and Ditches without Prayers and Ministerie of the Priests: whereupon divers Bishops for looke his Land and such combustions followed, that

CHAP. 6.S.4. King Iohn Subiected by Papall Indulgences and Interdict.

the Pore excommunicated him (which was denounced by the former Bishops) after which hee absoluted his Subjects from their Alleageance, and prohibited them in paine of Excommunication to anoyd his table, counfell, conference. All which yet were of no great force till the difmall fentence of deposition, nor that but by Indulgences and Crusados.

For the Pope writ to the French King Philip to vindertake the execution, for the remission of all his figner; and expelling the King of England, to hold the Kingdome of England to him and his Suctu process and the second of t King in this Expedition, labouring to remenge the quarrell of the universall Church. Hee ordained also 10 that who seem from the goods, or helps to expugnate that oblimate King they should remanded enter the the cheese of the Courch Course as they which visit the Sepulchre of our Lord) in their goods and

persons and suffrages of soules, (or delinerance of soules out of Purgatory.)

The iffue whereof was, that great prouisions were made on both fides, King Iohn hatting at Barhandowne, threelcore thousand armed men, besides, a strong Nauy at Sea : the French on the otherfide was come to the Sea with his owne and the English, an innumerable Army, when Pandulfus the Popes Legate craftily fent to him to fatisfie the Pope, which he could no way doe but by religning his Crowne and Kingdome, to receive it againe in fee farme of the Pope, doing him homage, and paying him rent: which when the King had granted, Pandulfus fought to periwade the French party to peace, and the English to returne. The French hereupon stormed, inuaded

20 the Earle of Flanders, King lohns Confederate, who now with his forces fuccored him with five hundred thips, which tooke three hundred French thippes richly provided, and burned one hun- Miferable hundred thins, which tooke the monotone many the many through the freezh being roffed in a double fenle, not without great effusion of Christian warres and bloud: the Pope ayming at his owne defigned greatnesse, to vie the French against the Emellib, Christians by and the Subjects against their Prince; as afterward taking the Kings part against his Subjects, Papali proand excommunicating the French, that as in the Fable, he might play with both, and pray on curement.

both; fpending themselves in mutuall emulations.

Yet would not his Subiects obey him, prouiding great forces to inuade France, till the Sentence were releated: whereupon he entertayned Stephen, and the other Bishops falling at their feet with teares, defiring them to have mercy on him, and the Kingdome of England, who King abased to to thereupon abfolued him, fwearing to the conditions propounded : his Defignes against France, his subjects. through that delay prooued frustrate notwithstanding. In the Pope and his Bishops, he found fo little certainty that he sent Embassadors to the King of Morecce, offering vasiallage to him, if he would protect him, which being refused, knowing (faith the Author) that the Pope was about all mortall men ambitions and proud, and an infatiable thirster after money, and waxen, and prone to all Intetdict of fix villanies, for bribes or pramifes, he fent him Treasure, and promises of more, and alway to bee his three moneths Subject, if hee would confound the Archbishop, and excommunicate the Barons whose parts he had before taken; that he might so imprison, disherit and slay them. Innocent was contented to be thus nocent, and released the Interdict, which had continued fixe yeares, three

monethes and fourteene dayes, to the irreparable loffe of the Church in Temporals and Spiritu-40 als. The Pope taking part now with the King, hee had opportunitie to reuenge himfelfe of his Peeres, who hereupon ray fed Civill Warres, and Sware themselves to the French Kings Sonne, England remayning thus on fire, till the death of King John, (which hapned amidft these flames)

to the terrour of his Successors in so daring attempts against the Pope,
And thus you see what Crusadoes and Indulgences could doe in those dayes, in and oner this Interdida; Kingdome: Interdicts can intend and pretend nothing, but rayfing Diffcontents and Rebellions, as if God should impiously be deprived of his worship, and men vncharitably of the meanes of their faluation, for one mans fault, if a fault, if not the Popes only fault as well as tyrannicall punishment. For Gods Law forbids the fathers eating some Grapes to for the children teeth on edge, Eq.18. and the some to be re-the fathers fault, but the soule that some to be re-the fathers fault, but the soule that some to some the soule the Venezuen lately

50 valeritood, and nobly vindicated against the Pope, as King John would have done, if the times had beene answerable. But Indulgences you see heere, were the Executors and Executioners of the Popes fury, even to the subjection of the most vnwilling Kings and Kingdomes . which is the Mafter-piece of Popery in the getting. And for the keeping and mayntayning this Monarchie, Crusadoes and Indulgences stayd not heere, but by the same Innocent (the first Decreer also of Transubstantiation) was extended against the Albigenses, or Waldenses, then reputed Heretikes, (as wee now are by the Papilts) and condemned for those Do-Orines, which they had learned out of the Scriptures against the Papall Pride and Superflition. Other things are ascribed to them, as now to vs by the lesuits, with like Truth and Charity, as out of their owne Authors which best knew, is euident. As Vrbans intent had beene 6c against the Antipope, which his Successors after followed, so Innocent and other Popes disposed

the Cross and Indulgence against those which mayntayned the Truth of the Gospell, and in all likelihood had but for this opposition, ruined the Papacie. He fent Preachers (12yth Matthew wale Paris in whose steps we still milt) unto all the Regions of the West, and entoyned Princes, and other Pet. 22. Christian people for remission of their sinnes, that they should signe themselves with the Cross to root out 4.1213.

Pophift. Fran.

Poplinerius faith, the Waldenfis against the will of all Christian Princes (so did the Apostles against the will of Ethnike Princes, (and Princes called Christians, were now made druste with the Whores cup) fowed their Doctrine, little differing from that which the Protestants now embrace, not only thorow all France, but almost all the Coasts of Europe. For the French, Spaniards, of English, Scots, Italians, Germanes, Bohemians, Saxons, Polonians, Lisbunians, and other Nations, have stiffely defended it to this day. One of Innocents Decrees in the Councell of Lateren which also decreed Transubstantion, is, that if a Temporall Lord being required and warned by Edit.Rev., 1612 the Church, shall negled to purge his Countrey from hereticall filthinesse, the Bishops shall excommunicate him: if he continue so a yeare, let it be signified to the Pope, that he may free his vassals from their alleageance, and expose his Land to bee occupyed of Catholikes, which may

poselle it without contradiction, the Heretikes being rooted out, &c.

Indulgences were preached in this lort, the 1 ext, #jat.94.10.1700 win rije up yo mee againgt 25rds.

15rd the entil deers, or, or the like applyed to the people: Ton fee beloned, bon great the makes of the SEC Differ to retice is, or, Therefore the buly Abbert Dorch; busyon writings, called the gainst them a Christian to Christian.

2. Et. Since. S. Armie, Whoseure therefore but to be scale of the Faith, whoseure is touched with the bosons of Oak;

Armie, Whoseure therefore but to be scale of the Faith, whoseure is tweether with the William and the scale of the Cristian and the scale of the Cristia Indulgences were preached in this fore, the Text, Pfal.94.16.18 ho will rife up for mee against who some will have this great Indulgence, let him come and take the signe of the Crosse, and some him-Celfe to the Christian Souldierie. Some thinke that the Crouched Order of Crucigeri, was then confirmed by this Innocent; many Croffed, and going to or returning from Syria, winning the Popes favour by their Exploits against the Albigenses. I might adde the Orders of Militarie Knights, as Templats, Hospitulars, and others which hence had their originall, and were so potent in wealth and numbers, that they could beard Kings, and had their dependance and priviledges of the Pope.

See Ofber, pag 261. Inquifition be-

Dominicke Author of the Dominicans, preached to convert with the word, and had helpers with the Sword, to expugnate those which his word could not. These were called, Fratres de 10 militia B. Dominici, and they and their wives were a certaine guilde, called the Brethren and Softers of Penance of Saint Domunicke. Likewise, the Office of the Inquisition was instituted by this Innocent , charging the Bilhops in remiffion of their finnes, to receiue his Commiffariet, and to affift them against Heretikes, drawing forth the Spiritual Smord against those which were by the Inquifor the square trees, a maning privace upon manu amount agreement over the square square for the square for the manual square for the square after this Inquitition was delegated to Dominiche, for the Countries of Pronence, who ray fed this Dominican Order, (ordure) whose chiefe care should be against Heretikes: he somewhat verified the Popes Dreame, feeming to flay the Church of Laterane, beeing readie to fall, which the 40 Franciscans apply to Saint Francis. And indeed, had not these in this Age vphold the Lateran Babylon, together with the Schoolemen, a the best of which were Friars, and the Canonists; it is chiefe School- likely the Albigenses, Waldenses, Pooremen of Lions, Inzabbatati, (other names they give them)

Franciscane

* Pet.devin.Li The new Locusts * Supplanted the former Clergie, exercised Penances, VnEtions, Baptismes, and began two Fraternities, wherein they received men and women so generally, that scarsly any were free: the people being vamiling to begge others preach; that the Priests were defrauded of their Tabes and had not to line : the Churches now retayning nothing but a Bell, and old dustic Image: The Friers began at Cottages, and now baue Kings Houses and Palaces cretted, and basing no riches are richer then all rich men, 10 whiles we begge, c. These became acute Schoolemen, Sententraries, Questionists, Summists, Quodlibetifts, and I know not what irrefragable, subtle, Angelical Doctors and Disputants, bringing in Oppositions of Science fully called, lauguifting about Ouestians and firife of mords: these made Daninitie a Linley wolley garment; not as their Master of Sentences, of Fathers and Scriptures; but admitted Arestotle free of the Diminitie Schooles, and ploughed with an Oxe and an

had then ruined it, they then with like Arts, Difpensations, and Reputation doing that, which

fince Luber and Calume the lefuites have laboured.

Affe, their Mifcelan fields. These Dominicans and Franciscans were appointed also, Inquisitores beretice prairietie, and made many bloudy Sacrifices, for their vibloudy Sacrifice, and other Popish Herefies in pretence Sabel, En. 9.1.6. of Heretical prautite: growing into fuch numbers, that Sabelliem numbred of Dominicans, one and 60 twenty Prouinces; twentie foure thousand, one hundred forty three Couents, and in them Fryars entred, fifteene hundred Masters or Doctors of Dininitie, in all twenty fixe thousand, foure hundred and fixtie. Of Franciscans, forty Provinces devided into Warden-ships, Couents, and Places; the persons innumerable, consectured threescore thousand. Yea, the Generall promifed to Pope Pine of bodies able to ferue in his intended war against the Turke, thirty thouCHAP.6. 4. Friers numbers and cumbers. Long and bloudy warres by Crusados. 1267

find Franciscans, thirtie thouland Augustine Friars, the Carmelues more, and other Orders I mention not, nor can I number their Locaits.

leges, odious to the Monkes and Secular Clergie. They were (laitinhe) Counfellors and Meffenseri of great men, Secretaries of our Lord the Pope, getting bereby Secular favour: quarrelling about Psy. 823. group go of Order, that in three or four chundred peeres the Monkes had not so degenerated, as these position foure and twentie yeares after their first Mansions in England, whose buildings now grow Rorall Palaces. They wait on rich men dying, extort Confessions and secret Testaments, commending themselves and their owne Order alone, follocitous to get Priviledges; in the Courts of Kings and great

themselves and their owner of the more, journation to get a timenges, in the courts of a met and great to men, Counfellors, Chamberlans, Treasurers, makers of Marriages, Executors of Papall exactions; in their Preachings bitter or flattering. Renealers of Confessions, Contemners of other Orders, accounting ther Preaconny's onter or justiciting, we nearers by conjeguence, community of others, seeking to be enter- Presonant the Ciftercians Semi-larkes and Rustikes, the blacke Monkes proud and Epicures, seeking to be enter- Presonant tened as Legats or Angels of God in their preaching. And if a man were confessed of his owne Priest. what far they of that I did, ignorant of Theologie, the Decrees, Questions? they are blind Leaders of the blind : come to Vs, we know to disting unto teprie from leprie, know bard, disficult things and the secrets of God: whereupon Noble-men and Ladies entertayned them, contemping their owne Priests and Prelates. And to returne to Indulgences, Thefe were the Popes Publicans, preaching the receiving of the Croffe Pag. 1017. (giving notice of such preaching before hand, and entertayned by the Clerkie in Vestments with Banners and Procession) to all Ages, Sexes, Conditions, to the Sicke and Aged, the next day for money eb-

re folking them from their vowed Pilgrimage. But I am wearie of this flinking linke of hypocrine. which for the World denyed the World, the Flesh for the Flesh, and obeyed to such enor-

mous rebellions. Yet let vs examine the Ind. Igences against the Walderses, in the yeere 1208, innumerable multitudes received the Croffe in their brefts; the Pope writ to King Thilip and all his Princes, to inuade Narbone, Tholonfe, and other parts. The next yeere, from all parts of France, Flan- See tifude ders, Normandie, Agustane, Burgundie, the Bishops, Earles, and Barons, with an infinite num- Christ. Eciles. ber , met at Lions and came to Byterra, where they flue fixtie thousand, promiseuocity Papists State, 10. and Walden fes, by admife of the Popes Legat, who faid, The Lord knoweth who are his : some fay an hundren thouland, not sparing Sexe or Age , burning the dead bodies. Thence they went to

30 Carcaffon, where they i pared onely the mens lives, not leaving them their apparell. Simon Montfort, Earle of Lescester, was made Generall, who tooke Roger the Lord of the Countrey, and all the Countrey with an hundred Cailles, and many others rendred themselves. In the yeer 1210, was a new Expeditihn of these crossed Votaries out of France, England, and Loraine, which tooke Minerbia, where an hundred and fourescore chose rather to burne then turne : entred Tolonge, waiting all, taking Cities and Castles, burning such as would not turne. They tooke Raimund and his Castle of Therme, his Wife and Daughter; he dyed in prison, they with other Ladies in the tre. Loopold Duke of Auftria, Adolph Earle de Monte, William Earle of Inliers went thither out of Almaine. An. 1211. a new Armie from many parts, tooke many Cities and Cafiles, burning and hanging many, committing the conquered Countrey to Simon Montfort. La-40 Mallis was taken, and choile given to turne or burne, three hundred and fiftie choofing this. The

Ladie was cast in a Well and stones throwne on her.

Rainund . Earle of Tholouse had aide of the King of Arragon, and was an hundred thou. * R. Earle of fand throng (Armericanus hath two hundred thouland) but was over-throwne by the Croffes Tolow'e had the and Monifort , and the King of Arragon flane , and the certayne number , faith Paris , of the Countrey of flaine, could not be certainly numbred : fome fay two and thirtie thousand. Hence new croffed Prouces. Date Knights which ferued for Indulgence and spoile, in the yeeres 1214. and 1215. Simon possessing phine, Venium. himselfe of the great Countries of Earle Raimund, by the Popes procurement, and King Philips Ruthen cadare, grant. The Warres continued 1216, 1217, 1218, in which Simon was flaine. The Warres Abig. 65. were profecuted by Amalricus his fonne, and Lewis fonne to King Philip. These tooke Mira-

50 monda and flue Man, Woman and Child. Anno 1219. Toloufe was besieged in vaine, Famine and Mortalitie plaguing the Armie. The Warre continued 1220. 1221. In the yeere 1223, the Pope lent his Legat, a Cardinall, with twentie Bilhops. King Philip died and appointed twentie thousand pounds to helpe Amalriensagainst the Albigenses, which grew now strong in Dalmasia, Bulgaria, Croatia. Anno 1225. King Lewis made an Expedition to beliege Aninion, feuen yeeres excommunicate by the Pope, Bernand, Goff. with an Armie of Crusado's. But Earle Raimund had plowed the grounds and preuented all 2010, prouition, that Sword, Famine and Pellilence diffnayed that huge Armie, wherein the King himfelfedied, and about two and twentie thousand of the Alialants. Loth to wearie you with such bloudie spectacles, esfects of Antiphrasticall Indulgences, this Warre is faid to continue about 60 feuentie yeeres. The Waldenfes encreafed notwithstanding daily, and the Warre, faith Thuanus, Thu Prefet. was of no lefle weight then that against the Saracens (which occasioned this whole discourse) buff.

and they were rather in the end spoiled then connerted or connicted, some remayning close in An Syl. bift. Prouence, some in the Alpes, some in Calabria to our times, and some in Brisaine. The Bohemans also were their iffire, against whom the Pope vied like courses of Indulgences, 24.6 [69]

Nannan 3

one hundred and fiftie thouland at one time croffed under Sigifmund to the war, being out of Ai uers Kinedomes, not to mention the Crusado's by the Cardinals of Winchester and Inlian, with innumerable bloudfhed. But I am loth to lothe and wearie you with fuch cruell Indulgentiall morfells, the Popes feath of mans fiesh to the blinded World. Those Bohemian warres had first originall from Hus his preaching, and that alto against Indulgences preached against the King of Naples: they were long and bloudie, but more long and bloudie have those of this last and worth Age beene from like original, which I leave to other Authors, to reckon the many many hundreths of thousands of Christians, which one neighbour Countrey, yea one little piece of her neighbour Countrey (not to mention others still bleeding, crying, dying) have lost in quarrels. died in the bloud of Religion. Money is the life of merchandife, Sinowes of warre, and vohol- to der of Greatnesse . without which , Peters succession , pasce Oues , I have prayed for the Faith. Constantines supposed donation, and the keyes of the Kongdome of Heasen, had not prevailed to a Papall earthly Monarchie. And Indulgences and Crulado's have heene his best both Mine and Mint for Money : first, in sharing with Kings which tooke the Crosse, and by Papall power imposed Tenths that he might have a Twentieth, as he did to Saint Lewis of France, Secondly. in letting out his Indulgences to Kings at a Rent, whereby at this day fome get more then by fome Kingdomes. Thirdly, by redeeming the Vowes by such meanes as you have now heard of the Friars, one binding to the Vow, another for money loofing, like a blacke and white Denill witching and vinwitching the superstitious vulgar. Fourthly, Kings taking the Croffe to oppresse their Subjects for the charge, with part of the purchase purchasing a Papall Absolution, 20 Fiftly, agreeing with Kings to fleece the Church for the Holy Land, that he might doe as much against the Emperour. Sixtly, letting out these Crusado's to ferme, by which Richard Earle of Cornwall, in Matt. Paris, daily fo enriched himfelfe, how much more the Pope; the Popes preacher (playing the haruest man, to bring into his Barnes or Treasurie) that the same of his money made him to be chosen Emperour. He of one Archdeaconrie reaped fix hundred pounds. William Long hat got by the like gift of the Pope, aboue a thousand marks, Seventhly, giving Indulgences, that is, the money which might be made of them in recompense of friendship, labours, expenses. Eightly, felling Indulgences to Churches, Images, Altars, Graines, Prav. ers, &c. thorow the Christian world. Minthly, by Inbilees, whereof Crusado's were Forerunners and Apparitors. Tenthly, by difpensations the Iano, fifter and wife of this Indulgent 30 Ione, or Pluto rather. Eleventhly, by inftituting Offices; Penitentiaries, Notaries, and I know not what rabble for these purposes and his Exchequer Receits, and then selling those multiply. ed Offices for the greatest fumme. But who can fumme up these Accounts : especially being workes of Darknesse, mystie mysteries, which yet are thus farre revealed, enough to proue the Author the Man of finne, which by his owne verie finne, and supposed pardon of others , hath let the raines of the World loofe to Sinne; and hereby ruled the World holding the raines in his owne hand. Once; his temporall Monarchie, Collations of Benefices, Difpensations had neuer vnder-propped this mysticall Monarchie, had not Crusado's and Indulgences awed Kings,

excited and incited furious Armies, armed furies; depopulated and ruined Kingdomes, and by mayne force bett downe all Opponents abroad, and filled his Coffers at home. But for this of money, Sixtus or Xiffus the fourth, was wont to fay, that hee should never want money folong as he wanted not a Hand and a Pen. And Xiffus the fifth, in five yeeres and a halfe had gathered fine millions of treasure, notwithstanding his magnificent and admirable expenses, in Palaces, Churches, Obeliskes, Conduits, and the like, So much could Friars Minors skill of getting both Papacie and Money. And that you may know of what vse prohibited marriages to Priefts and religious Orders are, you may consider how the Pope may make Armies of their numbers in extremitie; and of their purfes at pleasure make sponges. Pine the fourth leuied at one time of the Religions foure hundred thousand Ducats; and if he would have admitted Refignations of Benefices with Regreffes, as he was aduited, he might that way have made a million. Paul the third maintayned twelve thouland foot and five hundred horse at his pay, 50 under Charles the fift against the Lutherans, and yet raysed his house as you see : Clemens the feuenth hath notwithstanding his captinitie done more for his House. Pine the fift sent source thousand foot and one thousand horse, to aide Charles the ninth against the Protestants. But I haue wearied the Reader in observing the effects of this Pope holy Expedition to Ierusalem. and the Papall advancement thereby. I will adde the vertues of those Holy Land Inhabitants, and then you shall see it the Holy Land indeed, so termed by Antiporalis, Dienum patella operculum, Lettice sutable to the lips of His Holinesse, who may also have that Title for the selfe

CHAP. 6.S. 5. English founders at Acon, Three orders of Regular Knights, 1269

ð. V.

Superstition advanced in and by the Holy Land Expeditions, and the Christians Christianitie in those parts worse then in other. Diners Sects of Christians in the East.

Irit for superstition, this voyage proued a Mart for Reliques, as is before in part ob-The insperiment, this voyage process shall not kengues, as a society approach of the multiplyed Crole, of the Speare, of the Bloud of Christ, following carried by King Howie to Westmuster, of our Ludies haires, &c. Of the Crowne of P2, 721- 110 Thomes, Math. Parie tells, that Baldwin, Emperour of Confinationale before mentioned, fold it to the French King for money , to pay his Armie. Peter the pilgrime Bilhop of Winchester , bequeathed inestimable summes of money to Religious Houses by him founded at Hales, Tikeford, Seleburne, Port mouth: and whereas two Churches had beene dedicated to Saint By English-Th. Becket at Acon, he remoued one of them to a more convenient place, and changed their Order into a more competent, subiect to the Templars, and gaue besides by Will fine hundred marks Pag. 634. toit. But Viriacus, the Bishop of Acon, will best acquaint vs with their conditions, who hauing reckoned the Peeres of that Kingdome, the Earle of Tripolis, Lords of Berith, Sidon, Cas- Peeres of the phas or Porphyria, Cafarea, Mount Royall, of Affar, of Ibelian, with some others; the Prince of Kingdome of 20 Galiles, Lord of Tiberias; Earle of loppe and Afcalon, Ge. tells vs of the flourishing flate of Re- Irrajalim. ligion by the odor of holy and venerable places there, forted and fitting to mens deucuter humours; some choosing to live in the Delart called Quarantena, where our Lord was tempted, li- gumantena. uing Heremiticall liues in petie Cells; others, in imitation of Eliss in Mount Carmell neere Caphas, in Hiues of small Cells, foure miles from Acon: others, in the Defarts of Iordan; others living folitarie in the Defart of Galilee, where Christ preached. In Thabor was a Monastene builded, and in duers other places. Others chose rather to liue in Cities , especially Ierusa-

lem, Nazareth, and Betbleem. Jerusalem was the Mother of the Faith, as Rome is of the faithfull; it flands on a high Hill, lerusalem deis on both fides Mountaynous, abounding with Wheat, Wine, and Oile, and all temporall good 30 things: yet hath but one Fountayne, called Silve, flowing out of Sion, formetimes having little or no Waters. And as it is more holy then any place, fo it hath drawne to it more religious Perfons. Initis a Temple of huge quantitie, whence the Templars haue their name, called Salo- Templars, fo mons Temple. Whatloeuer places (in all that Countrey) our Lord trod on, are effected boly and called of a mons 1 confect we national places (in an ellac Confect of the Conf men, aswell militarie as of other condition, haue beene drawne thither : namely, the Brethren tans. of the Hofpitall of Saint Iohn, the Templars, and the Brethren of the Hofpitall of Saint Marie of the Dutch. The Hoftitalars were from the time of the Surians , having a Latine Church of Saint Hoftitalars. Marie, the Abbot whereof built an Hospitall in honor of Saint John Eleemon. After the Franks Expedition, Gerad the Master, adiopning some others to him tooke a religious habit and white 40 Croffe, whom Agnes the Abbeffe followed. These buried their dead in Acheldama, and whiles Acheldama

they were poore obeyed the Abbot, and payed their Tithes, and called the poore to whom they ministred, their Masters and Lords, but after became as Princes of the Earth. The Templars also Templars. were at first Lions in battell, Lambs at home, Eremites and Monkes in the Church, hauing Banners blacke and white (as mild to Christians, terrible to the Infidels) seuere in their owne societie, obsequious to the Patriarke, beloued for their Religion and humilitie, as the former, infomuch that Dukes and Princes denyed the World and followed them.

And because a threefold Cord is not easily broken, that of the Dutch Knights was added, from a Dutch Knights small beginning increasing into a swelling streame. For one Dutch man with his family dwelling originally at lers saless, many of his Countrey Pilgrimes, which knew not the language, were glad of his 50 entertainment in a small Hospitall by him therefore builded, to which also he added a Chappel in honour of our Lady, and partly procured of his owne goods, partly by almes, to the poore and

ficke Pilgrimes. Some Dutchmen liking the intent, gaue all they had thereto, binding them-felues by vow; and when some of Gentle and Noble bloud had adjoyned themselves, they became both followers of the Holpitulars in their care of the poore, and of the Templars in Mili-The Holy Land also flourished with Regulars, Religious, Anchorites, Monkes, Canons, Nuns, Holy Land Inclosed persons, Virgins, Widower. It was also full of peoples, Genuous, Pifans, Venetians, men fit

for the Sea, and lage Couniels: Frankes, Almans, Britons, Englishmen, leffe ordered or circumspect, more impetuous, more superfluous in Dyet, prodigall in Expenses, deuout in the Church, 6. feruent in Charity, more couragious in Battell, and formidable to the Saracens : which yet for the vanitie of some, are by the Pollans, called the Sonnes of Hemaudius. They which descended of the Conquerors are called Pollans, eyther because they were Pulli, in respect of the Surians, or Colis, Chicbecause their Mothers were most of them Applians, the Army wanting women enough, and pro- kens or young curing from Apulia, the neerest place of the Westerne Church. There are besides in the H ly things.

3. V.

one hundred and fiftie thouland at one time croffed vinder Sigifmund to the war, being out of diuers Kingdomes, not to mention the Crufado's by the Cardinals of Winchefter and lukan, with innumerable bloudshed. But I am loth to lothe and wearie you with such cruell Indulgentiall morfells, the Popes feast of mans flesh to the blinded World. Those Bohemian warres had first originall from Hus his preaching, and that alto against Includences preached against the King of Naples: they were long and bloudie, but more long and bloudie have those of this last and worst Age beene from like original, which I leave to other Authors, to reckon the many many hundreths of thousands of Christians, which one neighbour Countrey, yea one little piece of her neighbour Countrey (not to mention others fill bleeding, crying, dying) haue loft in quarrels. died in the bloud of Religion. Money is the life of merchandife, Sinowes of warre, and vohol- to der of Greatnelle, without which, Peters succession, passe Oues, I have project for the Faith, Constantines supposed donation, and the keyes of the Kingdome of Heaven, had not prevailed to a Papall earthly Monarchie. And Indulgences and Crufado's haue heene his best both Mine and Mint for Money : first, in sharing with Kings which tooke the Croffe, and by Papall power imposed Tenths that he might have a Twentieth, as he did to Saint Lewis of France. Secondly. in letting out his Indulgences to Kings at a Rent, whereby at this day fome get more then by fome Kingdomes. Thirdly, by redeeming the Vowes by fuch meanes as you have now heard of the Friars, one binding to the Vow, another for money loofing, like a blacke and whire Deuill witching and vnwitching the superstitious vulgar. Fourthly, Kings taking the Croffe to oppresse their Subjects for the charge, with part of the purchase purchasing a Papall Absolution. 20 Fiftly, agreeing with Kings to fleece the Church for the Holy Land, that he might doe as much against the Emperour. Sixtly, letting out these Crusado's to ferme, by which Richard Earle of Cornwall, in Matt. Paris, daily so enriched himselfe, how much more the Pope the Popes preacher (playing the haruest man, to bring into his Barnes or Treasurie) that the same of his money made him to be chosen Emperour. He of one Archdeaconrie reaped six hundred pounds. William Lone spar got by the like gift of the Pope, aboue a thousand marks. Scuenthly, guing Indulgences, that is, the money which might be made of them in recompense of friendship, labours, expenses. Eightly, felling Indulgences to Churches, Images, Altars, Graines, Praysee A& and ers, &c. thorow the Christian world. Minthly, by Jubilees, whereof Crufado's were Fore-Mon of The. runners and Apparitors. Tenthly, by dispensations the Iano, fifter and wife of this Indulgent 30 lose, or Plato rather. Eleuenthly, by instituting Offices; Penitentiaries, Notaries, and I know not what rabble for these purposes and his Exchequer Receits, and then selling those multiply. ed Offices for the greatest fumme. But who can fumme up these Accounts ! especially being workes of Darknesse, mystie mysteries, which yet are thus farre renealed, enough to proue the Author the Man of finne, which by his owne verie finne, and supposed pardon of others , hath let the raines of the World loofe to Sinne; and hereby ruled the World holding the raines in his owne hand. Once; his temporall Monarchie, Collations of Benefices, Difpensations had neuer vnder-propped this myfficall Monarchie, had not Crufado's and Indulgences awed Kings.

> But for this of money, Sixins or Xistus the fourth, was wont to fay, that hee should never want money folong as he wanted not a Hand and a Pen. And Xiffus the fifth, in five yeeres and a halfe had gathered fine millions of treasure, notwithstanding his magnificent and admirable expenses, in Palaces, Churches, Obeliskes, Conduits, and the like. So much could Friars Minors skill of getting both Papacie and Money. And that you may know of what yee prohibited marriages to Priefts and religious Orders are, you may confider how the Pope may make Armies of their numbers in extremitie; and of their puries at pleasure make sponges. Pins the fourth leuied at one time of the Religions source hundred thousand Ducats; and if he would have admitted Refignations of Benefices with Regreffes, as he was aduited, he might that way have made a million. Paul the third maintayned twelve thousand foot and five hundred horse at his pay, 50 under Charles the fift against the Lutherans, and yet rayled his house as you see : Clement the feuenth hath notwithstanding his captiuitie done more for his House. Pins the fift sent source thousand foot and one thousand horse, to aide Charles the ninth against the Protestants. But I have wearied the Reader in observing the effects of this Pope holy Expedition to Ierasalema. and the Papall advancement thereby. I will adde the vertues of those Holy Land Inhabitants, and then you shall see it the Holy Land indeed, so termed by Antiphrasis. Disnum patella operculum, Lettice sutable to the lips of His Holinesse, who may also have that Title for the selfe

excited and incited furious Armies, armed furies; depopulated and ruined Kingdomes, and by mayne force bett downe all Opponents abroad, and filled his Coffers at home.

CHAP. 6.S. 5. English founders at Acon, Three orders of Regular Knights, 1269

Superstition advanced in and by the Holy Land Expeditions, and the Christians Christianitie in those parts worse then in other. Diuers Sects of Christians in the East.

Irst for superstition, this voyage proued a Mart for Reliques, as is before in part obferned of the multiplyed Croffe, of the Speare, of the Bloud of Chrift, folemnely carfirmed of the multiplyed Crolle, or the Speare, of the Bloud of Christ, Islemmely car-ferned of the multiplyed Crolle, or the Speare, of the Bloud of Christ, Islemmely car-fer ned by King Henrie to Weitminder o, or our Ladies haires &c. Of the Crowne of P21.731-Chrones, Markh, Perix tells, that Baldain, Emperour of Configurations before mentioned, fold it to the French King for money, to pay his Armie. Peter the pilgrime Bishop of Winchester, bequeathed inestimable summes of money to Religious Houses by him founded at Hales, Tik eford, Seleburne, Port mouth: and whereas two Churches had beene dedicated to Saint By Engligh-Th. Backer at Acon, he remoued one of them to a more convenient place, and changed their Order into a more competent, subject to the Templars, and gaue besides by Will fine hundred marks Pag. 634. to it. But Vitriacus, the Bishop of Acon, will best acquaint vs with their conditions, who hauing reckoned the Peeres of that Kingdome, the Earle of Tripolis, Lords of Berith, Sidon, Cas. Peeres of the phas or Porphyria, Cafarea, Mount Royall, of Affar, of Ibelins, with some others; the Prince of Kingdome of 20 Galilee, Lord of Tiberiae; Earle of loppe and Afcalon, &c. tells ve of the flourishing flate of Re- letigation.

ligion by the odor of holy and venerable places there, forted and fitting to mens deucuter humours; some choosing to live in the Delart called Quarantena, where our Lord was tempted, li- guarantena, uing Heremiticall liues in petie Cells; others, in imitation of Elia in Mount Carnell neere Caiphas, in Hines of small Cells, foure miles from Acon: others, in the Desarts of Iordan; others living folitarie in the Defart of Galilee, where Christ preached. In Thabor was a Monasterie builded, and in duers other places. Others chofe rather to liue in Cities , especially Ierusa-

lem, Nazareth, and Betbleem.

Ierusalem was the Mother of the Faith, as Rome is of the faithfull; it flands on a high Hill. Ierusalem deis on both fides Mountaynous, abounding with Wheat, Wine, and Oile, and all temperall good 30 things: yet hath but one Fountayne, called Silve, flowing out of Sien, sometimes having little or no Waters, And as it is more holy then any place, fo it hath drawne to it more religious Perfons. In it is a Temple of huge quantitie, whence the Templars have their name, called Salo- Templars, fo fons. In it is a Temple of huge quantitie, whence the I emplias haue their name, called Data-acoupter, to mout Temple. What locure places (in all that Countrey) our Lord troot on, are febranded by and called of a conferrated, and for precious Reliques by the faithfull; whence Religious both Clerks and Lay Temple but by atlantage. men, aswell militarie as of other condition, haue beene drawne thither : namely, the Brethren tans. of the Hofpitall of Saint Iohn, the Templars, and the Brethren of the Hofpitall of Saint Marie of the Dutch. The Hofbitalars were from the time of the Surians, having a Latine Church of Saint Hofbitalars. Marie, the Abbot whereof built an Hofpitall in honor of Saint lobn Eleemon. After the Franks Expedition, Gerard the Master, adiovning some others to him tooke a religious habit and white

40 Croffe, whom Agnes the Abbeffe followed. These buried their dead in Acheldama, and whiles Acheldama. they were poore obeyed the Abbot, and payed their Tithes, and called the poore to whom they ministred, their Masters and Lords, but after became as Princes of the Earth. The Templars also Templars. were at first Lions in battell, Lambs at home, Eremites and Monkes in the Church, hauing Banners blacke and white (as mild to Christians, terrible to the Infidels) seuere in their owne societie, obsequious to the Patriarke, beloued for their Religion and humilitie, as the former, infomuch that Dukes and Princes denyed the World and followed them.

And because a threefold Cord is not easily broken, that of the Dutch Knights was added, from a Dutch Knights fmall beginning increasing into a swelling streame. For one Dutch man with his family dwelling original, at lers salem, many of his Countrey Pilgrimes, which knew not the language, were glad of his 50 entertainment in a small Hospitall by him therefore builded, to which also he added a Chappel in honour of our Lady, and partly procured of his owne goods, partly by almes, to the poore and

ficke Pilgrimes. Some Ducemen liking the intent, gaue all they had thereto, binding them-felius by vow; and when fome of Gentle and Noble bloud had adjoyned themfelius, they became both followers of the Holpitulars in their care of the poore, and of the Templars in Mili-

The Holy Land alfo flourished with Regulars, Religious, Anchorites, Monkes, Canons, Nuns, Holy Land Inclosed per sons, Virgins, Widowes. It was also full of peoples, Gennois, Pifans, Venetians, men fit for the Sea, and sage Counsels: Frankes, Almans, Britons, Englishmen, lesse ordered or circumspect, more impetuous, more superfluous in Dyet, prodigall in Expenses, deuout in the Church, feruent in Charity, more couragious in Battell, and formidable to the Saracens : which yet for the vanitie of some, are by the Pollans, called the Sonnes of Hemandus. They which descended of the Conquerors are called Pollans, eyther because they were Pulli, in respect of the Surians, or Coles, Chi: because their Mothers were most of them Applians, the Army wanting women enough, and pro- kens or young curing from Apulia, the neerest place of the Westerne Church. There are besides in the H ly things.

4. V.

The Anthour

doth heape

more fenren.

ture to difeo.

uer heir abo.

then here are

mentioned,to

thew them de-

plorate and do-

ces of Serio-

Land, Greekes, Iacobites, Maronites, Nefterians, Armenians and Georgians, of much femice for husbanding the Earth and other commodities.

But when the Deuill (I ftill follow our Author) had found no rest in the first page Dilgrims; bee found the boufe empire, swept and garnifed (mentille and dwelling securely, abounding with temporall goods) and taking feuen frits worfe then himfelfe (the feuen deadly finnes , for their ingraticude worle) bee entred againe , and the last state was worse then the former. They were proud, high-minded, contumelious, seditious, malicious, sorcerers, sacrilegious, couetous, flouibfull, drunkards, gluttons, adulterous, theenes, robbers, homicides. traitors, men of bloud, disobedient to Parents and Elders, without affection, truce breakers, moncilese: Reproach and lying man-slaughter, and theft, and adulterie ouer-flowed, and bloud tou- Io ched blond. So was the imagination of wisked mens intent to enill at all simes, fo farre was all vertue and religious honessie decayed, that there was scarsly any found which made difference betwixt the holy and prosane, or separated the precious from the vile. All were gone head-long to consultion: from the fole of the foot to the crowne of the head there was no foundnesse : and as was the People, fuch

For when all the World in manner had made it felfe tributarie in Almes, Gifts, Obloria perage : efoccirlly confide- ons, the Pattors fed themselves, minding the Wooll and Milke, not the Soules of the Flocke: ring their fins yea, became examples of Treason, rich by Christs pouertie, proud by his humilitie, gloout o measure rious by his ignominie, fattened and groffe by the patrimonie of him Crucified; howsoeuer Christ had faid, Feede my Sheepe, not, Sheare my Sheepe. They fought their owne, not the 20 things of Christ, became blinde guides of the blinde, dumbe Dogs not able to barke; entring the with manifold Lords House pompoully, wanting the Key of knowledge, polluted with Gebezis leprosie, superfictions, erecting the Chayres of Done-fellers and Money-changers, which our Lord over-threw, in the Churches every-where, faying with Indas, What will you give mee? and I will betray him. to you. All of them loued Gifts and followed Rewards, taking the Keyes from Simon Peter. and delinering them to Simon Mague : manifold wayes luxurious, idle; feeding not with crummes from the Lords Table, but with whole Loaues and delicate Meates, their Whelps which of filthy Concubines they themselves more filthy had procreated.

Regular Or-

The Regulars also infected with the poylon of Riches, and increased with possessions bevond measure, contemned their Superiours, and not onely became irkfome to the Ecclefia- 30 flikes, but enuied and detracted each other to the grievous scandall of Christendome, to contumelies, open hatreds, conflicts, violences, battells. For having begunne to build the Tower of Babel, with divided Tongues, they not onely difagreed among it themselves, but bandying factions procured discords amongst others. And how soeuer many of them as graines of Corne among it Chaffe, and Lillies among it Thornes, as the times gaue leave, observed their rules, and fate not downe in the Charge of peftilence; yet the impietie of the worse pre-uailed, and their iniquitie superabounded, that in contempt of Ecclesiastical Discipline. they received to their Holies those which by name had beene excommunicated : Abbots. Priors . Monkes . their milerable and mercenarie Chaplens , thrust their Sickles into others Haruefts, made vnlawfull marriages, vifited and houselled the ficke for gayne, not for god- 40 linesse; binding and loofing against God and holy Canons, the Scules which belonged not to their charge, admitted the dead to burialls (their Pastors contradicting, and vsurped Parochiall right. Nunnes also leaped out of their Cloysters, frequenting publike Baths with fecular perions. And as any were greater among it the Lay-men, fo much more perniciously corrupted they their wayes: a corrupt Generation, as Lees of the Wine, Cockle of Wheat, and Ruft of Silver.

These Pullani, delicate, wanton, effeminate, more accustomed to Baths then Battells, given to vicleannesse and leacherie, curiously dressed after womens wont, were contemned of the Saracens, and (if they had none of the Westerne people with them) more vilipended then Women. They made league with the Saracens, and quarrelled with themselves, go for light matters raying civill warres, and often borrowing aide of the Infidelle, spending the Treature and Stocke of Christians against Christians. They were deepe Dissemblers, not eafie to bee perceived in their fallacies till they had deceived; iealous mewers up of their wives, that their owne Brethren and neerest Kindred might fearsly have accesse; and keeping them from the Churches, and Sermons, and other things necessarie to their foules, hardly once in the yeere admitting them the Church. The richer fort erceted Altars neere their wives beds, Per miferos Ca. and by fome * wretched Chaplens and vnlearned Sir lobns, procured Maffes to be etaid, that pell. o imperitor they might feeme Christians. And how much closer their wives are kept, fo much more they presbyt runculos- whet their wits with a thousand deuties and infinite plots to finde flarting holes; furnished by the Surians and Saracen women , with forceries , mischiefes , and innumerable abominations. 60 They are ingratefull, and many wayes irkfome to those Pilgrims, which come from remote parts to their aide, with great labours and intolerable expenses, liking better their east and carnall pleafures, then warres with the Saracens. These Pilgrims they entertayne at immoderate charge, defrauding and impouerishing them in buying, and bartering to their owne

exceeding enriching; afflicting them with reproaches and wrongs, and calling them . Sonnes a Before (line of Hornaud, as it were Fooles and Ideots.

There are others, continuing from ancient times vnder divers Lords, Romanes, Greekes, Saracens is falle printed and Christians, called Surians, vnfit for Warre, men for the most part Vnfaithfull, Double-dealing, Surians. Lyers, Inconstant, Fortune-fawners, Traytors, Gift-takers, esteeming Theft and Robbert for nothing, Spyes to the Saracens, imitating their Language and Condition. These shaue not but nourish their beards, as doe the Greekes with great care, attributing thereto much virilitie, 972uitie, authoritie and glorie. Whereupon, when Baldwin Earle of Edessa, having marryed the Daughter of a rich Armenian, suffered his Beard to grow; to extort money from his Father into law, he faid, he had impawned his Beard for a great fimme to certaine Creditors; who gaue him The Westerne law, he laid, he had impawhed his beard to a great the law for the law in the law he had impawhed his beard to a great the law in th engage his Beard againe. These Syrians vie the Tongue and manner of writing of the Saracens fed much shain contracts, and all fauing their Divinitie and Holies, for which they have the Greeke Letter; uing, as in old to that their Laity valerstand not their seruice, as the Greekes doe, whose Rites they wholly pictures ken observe. They obey the Laine Prelates, for seare of the Princes, otherwise not having Greeke Baards of Bishops of their owne, nor would regard their censures, but that our Lay-men in contracts and price. other businesse, would not have to doe with them being excommunicated. For they say amongst themselues, that the Latiner are all excommunicated, and therefore cannot excommunicate. The Surians and Greekes admit not fourth Marriages. Their Priests marry not after their Orders, on against 20 but vie their wives which before they marryed. They account not Sub-deaconfhip in ho- contracts. ly Orders. Their simple Priests confirme with Chrisme, which with the Latines is not lawfull but to Bishops. They keepe Saturday holy, nor esteeme Saturday Fast lawfull but on Ea-

There are also in the Holy Land and the East parts Iacobites, so called of one Iames a Disciple Iacobites of the Patriarke of Alexandria. The le of long time have inhabited the greater part of Asia, fome among the Sardens, and some, as in Nutria, and great part of Asia, possession, possession whole See of this our Countries. They Baptife and circumcife their children, and observe not Auricular Confession: former Abasime fome make Croffes with fire in their cheekes or temples; and they mayntaine but one nature in Relations. tome make crones with me in their checkes of complete, and they make the Saracenicall. Neflorians. There are in the Holy Land, and by themselves in India, Nestorians, especially, in the Country basine, but in of Prelogier & lobn. Thele, with the lacobines, are faid to be more then the Latines and Greekes: Afin India, and befides those which dwell by themselves entyre, there are said to be more of these Christians where the Porand before those which ower by the micros entyre, there are all to be more of their management fibred to the Infidels, there are of Saracons themselvies. They divide the person of Christ; management and before the person of Christ; management king the Virgin Mary Mother of the humane Perfort, & the Son of God another divine Perfort, ther Chr fti-Neffering and this his Herefie were condemned in the Ephefine Councell. They vie the Chaldee ans, called S.

fter Eeuen. They have folemne Service on Saturdayes, eate flesh, and feast it brauely like

About Libernu are some called Maronites, many in number which acknowledged (Maro stians. was their Mafter) but one nature in Chrift. Thefe Monothelites were condemned in the fixth The Tatlart an generall Councel at Constantinople. They vied Sacraments by themselves five hundred yeares, and alteration in after by Amerike Patriark of Antiochia, were reduced to the Roman Faith, whose Traditions they these parts follow : infomuch, that when all the Easterne Prelates except the Latines, vieno Rings, Miters, Maronics. nor Paforall Stanes, nor Bels, (but Boords on which they knocke with a Sticke or Hammer to call the Affembly) the Maronites vie all; and their Patriarke was prefent at the Councell of Laterane, under Innocene the Third. They wie the Chaldee Letter and Saracen Language.

Letter, and leavened Hofts as the Greekes doe.

The Armenians are divided from all other Christians in Rites; having a Primate of their Armenians owne, whom they call Carbelicon, observed by all of them as another Pope. They have Letters and Language proper, and Lyturgies in the vulgar. At Christmasse they fast, and at Twelfday they solemnize our Lords Baptisme, and his Spirituall Nativitie, as they improperly speake.

Lent they fast so strictly, that they not only abstayne from Flesh, Egges, Whit-meates, but also from Fish, Oyle, and Wine, yet fast not but eate fruites, and as often as they please. On fome Fridayes they eate fielh. They mixe no water with Wine in the Sacrament. The Armeminus promised obedience to the Pope, when their King received of Henry the Emperor his Land, and the Crown of the Archbilhop of Menie but retayne their old Rites notwithstanding. There salfo a warhke people dreadfull to the Saracens, called Georgians, of Saint George; whom they haue for their Patrone, and worthip as their Entigne bearer about other Saints, ving the Greeke Georgians. Holies. Their Priefts have round crownes, the Lay-men square : and when they come to Innfadem on Pilgrimage, they enter with Banners displayed and without Tribute : the Saracens torbearing them, left they should after their returne bee revenged on other Saracens. Their noble 6) women vie Armes in Battels, as Amazons.

The Molander are Latine Christians, and observe the Romifo Rites, dwelling amongst the Molander, or African ami Spanish Saracens. Yet some of them divide the Sacrament into seven parts, others Moxembes. into nime, whereas the Romane Church doth it into three. There are other miferable Eafterne people, as Effees of Iemifo descent, and Affasines, and Saducees, and Samaritans.

CHAP. 7. Angell-Deuill, Christ crucified twixt two Theenes, Records.

The Holy Land the re-

They which have best knowne the Holy Land Affaires and Changes, affirme, that no greater plague hath hapned then flagitious and pestiferous men, Sacrilegious Theeues, Robbers, Murderers, Parricides, Periured, Adulterers, Traytors, Pirates, Drunkards, Iesters, Dicers, Players. Impiette and Runnagate Monkes, and Nunnes becomne common Whores, and inch women as leaving their Imputation Runningare atomics, and runnes occume common wheres, and men women as learning their other prise of Husbanis hauer Glower Bawdes, or fuch as have forfaken their Wiles and marryed others, Chiff adome. These Montlers have runne away, and flying to the Holy Land, haue so much more bodily per. netrated there their former euils without flame, as they have beene further from those which knew them; neither tearing God nor respecting men. The easinesse of escaping, and impunitie of finning haue loofed the reines to their Impietie : because that after villanies committed they runne to the Saracens, and deny Christ, or else by ship siye to some llands, or getting to the Io * The Tem- houses of Regulars, * which every where they found, by their permicious libertie of Primiledges, defending the wicked, they escaped without punishment. Some Murderers also condemned to mutilation or death in their owne Countries, by praying or paying obtayned often to bee condemned to perpetuall Exile in the Holy Land; and neuer altering their manners, haue there preyed on Pilgrimes and Strangers, kept Bawdie-houses and Gaming-houses, and Receptacles tor Thecues and Murthers, paying a yeerely Pension to the potent and rich, to patronize them in these exorbitancies; extorting the same with greater summes from Whores and Gamesters.

thew employe

Many also came to the Holy Land, not for Denotion, but Currofitie and Noueltie. Thus you have had a view of the Inhabitants, both Clergie and Laitie, Nature and accefforie : all fiesh corrupting their way, and making it the most vnholy Sinke in the World, not the 20 nauill of the Earth, as some call it, but the Knaue-ill, Slaue-uile, and base confluence of villanie; not the foundation of Religion, but the fundament of the Deuill and of Irreligion, as formerly in other Ages, so worse then all worsts in this, that it was inhabited by these Pullans and Pilgrimes. Neither haue I in this Relation augmented or exagerated, but for breuitie haue fallen farre short of the Authors blacke pitchie colours, wherein hee describeth their Hellish darknesse, And howfoeuer he much commends the first Pilgrimes (as comparatively they deserved) yete-And now occur in mean comments of mir regimes (as comparations) they occur yet use that their righteounifeld was but param menfrates, dyed in a deepe graine of Superfittion, befides their other pollutions which the former Storie hath related. The beft was a Popith pretie, the worst was farre farre worse then Heathenish Impietie (Corruptus optimi pessima) so little good did Religion & Christianity hereby receive even here. And as for the hurt it received in the West, we have declared and proved at large; Religion comming to the West and worst, and that bright Sunne almost set in a darke misty mysticall Cloud, and darknesse from the bottomlesse Pit, principally by this meane and occasion.

Let none traduce me, as if I held it wholly vnlawfull to visit holy places, or to warre against Infidels, or that I enuy the Pope himfelfe, his Temporalties: (howfocuer gotten at first, as you haue heard) or absolutely deny Absolutions, Dispensations, Indulgences: the abuses I taxe, and historically have shewed how by corruptions, confusions, combustions, the face and body of the Church hath beene empayred, weakned, and ficke (so neere to death in so many many members and limines) of the Antichristian or Romish Difease. As Christ is the name not of the Head alone, * 1. Cor. 12.13. but of the whole mysticall body, which is one Seed, one City, one Temple, one Vine, one New man, one 40 Antismiffig. CHRIST: Sois Antichriff both the head & mystical body; the name how soeuer it be most properly due to the Popes in their successions, as the head, yet competible also to the whole body of the Popish Church, which together makes up that mystical Babylon, which thus by the carnall Ierusalem, and Iemish Opinions and Rites, hath so impourished the new, spiritual and heavenly Ierusalem, and her Celestiall Prinsledges, whereof we are children by Regeneration, and enfran-The Pope is all, chifed citizens in manifold Priviledges. Neyther perhaps, did any one stratageme so farre reduce Indus sme, or induce Poperie, or seduce the Christian world, as this Holy Land vnholy degeneration. Christianity, is to line by fush and not by fight, and to have a comerctain beauchy, and the exercise of a spiritual warfare against the World, the sless, the Denill, by the panoply of God, hope of Saluation for a Helmet, Brest-plate of Righteousnesse, Girdle of Sincerity, Greaues of lon Corried the Gospell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euidence and clote zer.

of things not fence, the ground of things hoped for) with perfeuerant Watching and Prayer

zero Chrift.

But the Expeditions first hapned in a tumultuary warring and spoyling Age; were begun for de Antichrift.L1 temporall respects in the first mooners; in many if not most of the followers apprehended to like purpose of spoyle (all being as you have seene, the Souldiers owne, hee could get) which blanched ouer with Honour, Religion, Merit; Once; being the service of two Mastersat once, God and Mammon, (which in true Religion is incompetible) eafuly wonne entertaynment. And if men now will adventure voluntarily to fight any quarrels of any Region or Religion, for fourt fhillings a week, (eight dayes to the weeke) in an Age more composed generally to words then 60 workes: is it any maruell, if so many inducements, in such a mist and smoke could whet so many Sovords and courages in tolor Martiall times, where earthly purchals were the guerdon of the liuing, with Fame, Nouclass, and many many feminal Holies; and Martyrdome was the Crowne of the dead with God, Heaven and Eternitie.

To conclude, Hypocrific was the beginning, Blond was the proceeding, Superfittious Pietie

that is impletie or impious pietie, with impuritie and defolation were the end. This whole that is impreced the Serpents feducing Eue, and was prophefied of Antichrift) not an open profell enmitte against Christ, but in coloured loue of Christ and his patrimonie, a more sub-le deceitfull working, the Deuill transformed into an Angell, that hee might proue the worse Deuill: this Expedition being after the working of Satan with all power, and fignes, and lying wonders, and 2. The Cal untrail decemablenesse of unrighteousnesse, as was foretold of that Sonne of perdition (which hereby and herein he hath proued, if euer by any one course, as is shewed, to the perdation of thouby and thousands of thousands, both bodies and soules) a strange Chymera, beaded like a Lion. and in thew prefenting a Lionlike fortitude, for the honor of that Lion of the Tribe of Iuda: vet and in most of that Linn of the Tripe of man; yet to after the Goats belly of various lufts, tayled like a Dragon, and enuenoming to manifold deaths with the poylon of the old Serpent: in thew kiffing, indeed betraying, with Indas; in thew lif-

ting Christ higher, indeed crucifying him; the Pope in shew crowning these Pilgrims, but with acrowne of Thornes, with manifold externall mileries, void of all internall confolation, his Indulgences notwithstanding; in shew presenting the faces of men, and haire of women, indeed the tailes of Scorpions, which those Locusts had in their tayles. Once; herein was Christ many waves crucified betwint two theeses, in Vrban and Boamund the first Founders; in superstrain and hypocrife, the principall Mouers; in Renelations of Peter the Heremite and others, and Papall Indulgences, the chiefe Confirmers : in the Greekes and Infidels, the one by Treacherie, the other by open Violence, the mayne Confounders, (like two Mill-stones, grinding the Westerne Christians 20 and this whole exploit, to poulder) in exposing Christian bodies to bloudie crueltie, and their foules to crueller inspectie; in confusions and manifold disorders in Families and Commonwealths.

by ablence of Ouer-feers at home, and busing vanitie, nothing, and leffe then nothing (for that was the end) with Seas of bloud and heapes of carkaffes abroad; in abasing the lawfull power of Kings, and exalting (in manner as yee haue heard) the viurped Papall Monarchie; that is, by Excommunications, Interdicts, Treafous, Crufado's, Votifrages Perjuries, abolifling them which are called Gods; and Him by whom Kings reigne, both in this his Ordinance, and in the whole face of his Religion; that the Man of sinne might exalt himselfe abone all that is called God, or that is worshipped; fo that now, and principally hereby, He as God sitteth in the Temple of God, shewing himselfe that he is God. This was then a mysterie hidden from the wife and prudent : but now. 30 and hereby, that Wicked is remealed.

CHAP. VII.

Monuments of Antiquitie, taken out of ancient Records , to testifie the quondam commerce betwixt our Kings and their Subjects, and those Easterne Princes.



Ex Coradino Illustri Soldano Danasci, salutem. De transmissi nobis à Nobilitate Licetz Henri-vestra muneribus per Anselmum de Ienua mallonum Soldani anticom Nobilitate Licetz Henri-De vestra munerouse per Anglizz Cora-dino Soldano guidem à Screntate vestra pre ampliori petimus munere, vi, si quoi terra nostra Damicle.

Christianoi captinatos tenetu, eos liberos & expeditos reddere, & intuitu nostri nobis captinis redimittere velitis : certis datis indicies , quod ad evium liberationem noster eis profust in- mendis. Derso teruentus. Quo intellecto ad condignam vicissitudinem Serenitati vestra merito teneamur. Teste me- Clous. Anno 120

po apud Westmonasterium, Anno Regni nostri duodecimo. An. Dom. 1228. Henricus Rex. &c. Sciatis nos concesssifis de dilecto & fideli nostro Philippo de Albiniaco, quod si de Patentes, Anno eo bumanitus contigerit, antequam iter peregrinationis sua arripuerit versus terram lerusalem., 17. Henrici 50 quicquid ante obitum suum assignauerit, vel legauerit de terra de Periton, quam babet de dono nostro, terri & de terris de Clyneton, Bamton, & Wytton, quas habet de Ballino nostro ad debita sua acquie- Pro Philippe de tanda, vel elecmosnas faciendas, vel ad mercedem militibus & seruentibus suis pro servicio suo

retribuendam, nisi prims terras illas baredibus corum, per voluntatem nostram, vel per pacem red-

diderimus, ratum habemus & stabile vique in tres annos à die obitus sui completos. In cuius &c. Telle Rege april Westmonasterium 14. Iuliy, Anno Regni sui decimo septimo. Rex concessi & licenciami Simonem de Wistlegray, quad peregrini de partibus issia emnes peregre Patentet, dans versus terran terusalem , Santtum Iacobum, & alibi ad portes transfinarinas, in Name insins Si- 19. Henrici monis , que vocatur Gladyghyne saluo & secure transfretare possint. Et mandatum est omnibus Bal-tertij.

liuis & fidelibus Regis, &c. Quod eidem Simoni & hominibus suis in ducendo Peregrinos in Naue 60 pradicta, ficut pradictum est, nullum faciant, nec fiere permittant damnum vel grauamen. Et durant litera v fg, ad festum Santli Michaelis. Teste Rege apud Rading, quinto die Aprilis, Anno

Rexomnibus, ad quos prasentes litera peruenerint, salutem. Sciatis, quod concessimus diletto Pro Olivero de & fidels nostro Olimero de Santto Georgio, quod in auxilium peregrinationis sua, quam fatturus est Santto Georgio.

m Terram Sanctam , inuadiare possit terram suam de Brocton vsque ad terminum trium annorum... a sesso Santte Michaelis, Anno Regni nostri decimo nono. Ita quod ipse cui terram illam inuadianerii. illum teneat vique ad terminum pradictum trium amorum, quicquid de ipfo Olivero interim contingat. In cuius rei testimonium & Teste Rege apud Windesoram vicessmo octavo die Aprilis, Anno Kenzi (us decimo nono.

The Kings Letters to the Prelates, to excite their charitable denotions, for reliefe of the Ho-Spitall of Saint Samson in Constantinople, and the Licence granted to Friar Thomas their Mellenger for one yeere, granted at Windfor, A. Reg. 22. is here omitted.

Domini.

Rex Saladino, focio Thath Nuncij Veteris de Mussa, Salutem. Significauimus predicto Thath quod bene placet nobis , quod ad nos in Angliam veniat , expositurus nobis Nuncium suum, pro quo ta ad nos venistis in Angliam, sicut per literas nostras Patentes, quas es mittimus, plenius es significamus. Et ideo vos seire volumiu, quod bine placet nobis, quod si eum literis nestris praductis ad ipsem personaliter accedere volueritis, id libenter factatis: vel eas per quem volueritis praductis secto vestro transmittatis. Teste Rege apud Kenynton 20. die Iulig, Anno Regni (us 22.

Rex omnibus ad quos &c. falutem. Sciatis , quod concessimus Magistro Militum Templi Ierusa-

Militum Tem- lem quingentas Marcas ad opus suum, reddendas in Anglia vel Hibernia Magistro Militia Templi pli de denarijs Anglicana, ad redemptsonem Multum & Fratrum eiusdem Templi Ierusalem, qui à Saracenis capti peregrinatione predicta. Teste Rege apud Winton, sexto die lung, Anno Regni sui tricesii-

fuerunt in bello inter Castra de Gaftun & Trepejbac in terra Antiochia. Tefte Rege apud Geldeford nem Fratrum. prime die Ianuary, Anno Regns sui vices simo secundo. Patentes, Anno Gerardus de Rodes, qui profetturus est ad Terram Ierusalem de licentia Domini Regis, bubet li-20 32 Hentici teras Domini Regis de protectione, cum bac claussula, quod quietus sit de scéta Comitatuum & Hun-Pio Gerardo de dredorum, & de omnibus placeis & querelis, exceptis placeits de dote, unde in bis babet, asusa noue disseisna, & vitima prasentationis Ecclesiarum, duraturas quamdiu idem Gerardus fuerit in

De Protectio · Robertus de Ver, qui de licentia Regiu peregre profecturus est in Terram Ierusalem, habet literas Resis de protectione Patentes sine clausula, duraturas per triennium. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium 27. luniy , Anno Regni fui tricessimo tertio.

Rex Ademarode Lezignan, salutem. Sciatis, quod dedimus Gulfredo de Lezignan fratri nostro. in auxilium ad faciendam peregrinationem in Terram Santtam , ducentas Marcas , quas nobis debetis 30 pro custodia terra, que fuit Thurstans Dispenser &c. Et ideo vobis mandamus, quatenus pradictas ducentas Marcas prafato Galfredo, vel eius certo Nuncio sine difficultate soluatis. In cuius erc. Testa

The Kings letters to Dalguet the King of

Rege apud Westmonasterium 10. Ianuarij, Anno Regni sus 34. Excellentissimo Principi, Domino Dolgieto, Regi I artarorum Illustri, Edwardus Dei gratia Rex Anglia, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania salutem, & sælices ad vota successus. Celssudinis vestra Nuncios ad celebris memoria Dominum Edwardum imper Regem Anglia, Patrem nostrum, Rotula Rome, qui antequam ad insum venissent, extremum clauserit fati diem, cum literis vestris missos post dici Pa-Anno 1. Edw. 2. tris noftri decessim admissmus : & literas vestras pradictas , & ea que indem Nunci, vestri nobis ex parte vestra per commissam à vobis credentiam retulerunt, audiumus & intelleximus diligenter : de beneuoleusia & amore quos vos & progenitores vestri erga dictum progenitorem nostrum & nobis ba- 40 clenus gessistu, & adbuc geritis, necuon de missione Nunciorum vestrorum, & dilectione & unitate, quas inter vos & nos bine inde crescere cupitis, & augers: Et de eo pracipue, quod amicitiam inter nobiles Antecessores vestros cor genitorem nostrum pradictum habitam memoriter retinetis, prout literarum vestrarum series patefecit: ac aligs rumoribus contentis in eisdem vestris literis & expressis, grates referentes vestra magnificentia Regia skeciales. De pace siguidem ab ortu solis vique ad consinia vitra ma-re Deo propicio per vos falta gaudenna in Domoso, & essientur valde lass. Caterum super eo, quodintelligs vobis datur, quod inter nos, qui discordes suimus citra mare pax & concordia reformatur : Excellentia vestra Regia volumus effe notum, quod inter nos firmiter credimus & feranque, super quibuscung, discordiss & controversis bine inde suscitatis, in breui, mediante Des prasidio, finalem fiers & concordiam atque pacem. Datum apud Northampton decimo fexto die Octobris, Anno Regni 50

Another Letof Tartarie,

Serenissimo Principi ac Domino, Tartarorum Imperatori Potentissimo , Edwardus Dei gratia Rex ter to the King Anglia, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania, falicem regnandi gloriam cum Cilute. Reges & Principes terreni tanto magis dinoscuntur Regi Caelestis gloria complacere, quanto simplices Christi sideles ardentius defendere, & nociuos & perfi dos nituntur viribus debellare. Quibus ex collato fibi dimnitus incumbit officio aqua iustitia libra rempublicam gubernare, & Christ insideles Christianag, sidei contrarios & rebelles impugnare & destruere inxta posse. Hincest quod cum in partibus Asia & Affrica à longissimis retroaltis temporibus multum mualuerit prophana secta & sordida Machometi, circumquay, pullulans & diffundens sua infect a germina nimis late pestem saculo sua contagionis nepharia immittendo: Nos qui, Deo permutente, sumus sceptro Regio insigniti ad tam nefande setta eradica- 60 tionem libenter intenderemus, fi loci distantia, & alia ardua negocia nobis incumbentia boc sieri permitterent quonis modo. Nam tempus ad hoc adest acceptabile, ut accepimus his diebus, maxime cism in libris ipsorum contineri dicatur, infra breue tempus terminari & adnullari debere sectum nephariam Machometi. Vos igitur vestrum laudabile proposium in bac parte continuantes inchesta per vos ad

buiusmodi sectam sordidam à seculo penitius abolendain, velitis perducere ad effectium, Adhee ad vestram accedunt prasentiam Religiosi, bonesti, & literati viri, vi populum vestrum ad sidem Catholicam, sine qua salum sierinemo potest, dinina operante virtute, reducant, & instruant in cadam : As ad sumendum bellum contra detestabilem Machometi sectambabilitent & informent : venerabilis Scilicet frater Willielmus Dei Gratia Lidden Episcopus, ver viique discretus, moribus & scientia preditus, cum sua venerabili comitiua : quem ob bonorem omnipotentis Dei , & fauorem sidei Christiane. vabus quanto affectuosiue possumue, commendamue. Rogantes ex corde quatenus cundem Episcopum in eins Comitinam. Des intuitu, sub cuius imperio cuntta consistunt, gratiose & curialiter admiteinics, eisdem in prosecutione negoci predicti exhibere vos velitis fanorabiles & benionos presa-10 (Episcopo, in hu que vestre magnificentia pro augmentatione state: Catholice eduxert exponenda, sidem. credulam exponendo. Datum apud Langley vitimo die mensi: Nouembris, Anno Reoni

Like Letters of commen lation of the faid Bishop William, to the King of Armenia, and one thers to the Prince Gentis Matalorum in parisborient, are vpon Record, but here for breuitie omitted. Another to the faid King here followeth.

d. Alboinet of the tato ame fuo charissimo, Leoni Dei Gratia Armenorum Regi illustri, Ed- Anno, 1. Edwar. mardus Rex Anglia, &c. Salutem & falices ad vota successus. Literas vestras de credentia per dis-di. 2 cretos viros Theodorum, Cantorem Abbatia de Tresarco, Dominum Baudinium silium Domini de The Kings Lete Negrino, consobrunum vestrum, & Dominum Leonem, Milites, familiares vestros & Nuncios specia- ters to the king

20 let, Super nouis periculis vobis & Regno vestro, cuntisque emsdem Regni Christicelis emergentibus nobis missos recepimus. Et ea qua isdem Nuncis vestri vobis ex parte vestra per credentiam eis commissam exponere voluerum, and uimm & intelleximus diligenter. Super quibus dolemus in intimis, & turbamur. Verum quia clare memorie Dommus Edwardus Rex Anglie, pater roster, viam uniuer a exrnis est ingressus: quamobrem einfiem Regni regimen susceptimus, & Coronacionis nostra solennia celebrari fecimine, non est diu ; dinersaque & ardua ex hijs cansis nobu incumbuni negocia bus diebus : dictorum negociorum requisitionibus ex parte vestra nobis factis annuere non possumus in prasenti. Sed cum temporanobis ad boc adsenerint oportuna, libenter adhibebimus cum Dei prasidio super requisitionibus pradictis consilium qued poterimus bono modo. De xenio siquidem qued vestramuniscentia nobis misse, vestra serenisati grates reserimus speciales: parati semper ad ea fa-30 cienda que vestris viditatibus nouerimus consenire. Datum apud Westmonasterium tertio die Marija, Anno Regni nostri primo.

Edwardus Des Gratia Rev Anglia, de. Religiofo viro, & fibi in Christo chariffimo, frates los hanni de ordine Minorum, Leonis quendam Regis Armenorum ill'aftris filso primogenito, falutem cum deletione fincera. Literas vestras de credentia, &c. ve supra.

Magnifico Principi de potenti, Danid Dei gratia Regi Iurgianorum, Edmardus eadem Dei graAnno sexto Ed
sia Rex Anglie, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania prosperorum incrementa successiumo, cum missi secreda, augmento fides Orthodoxa. Creator & Redemptor bumani generis Iesus Christus, qui omnes vule De conductu Salues sieri, & neminem valt perire, beminem ad suam faltum imaginem, proto parentis Ade pro Epicopie James jert, O. montono vom fedebus, tanto dilecti caritatis affictus, vi pro spins redemprone perpe. Simaticans Justa a permie secchifum fedebus, tanto dilecti caritatis affictus, vi pro spins redemprone perpe. Simaticans 40 ma, de internerato Virginis nafecus viero, noftraque humanitatis industis velamine, tanquam Parkottus, literat

stor optimus oro suis ouibus mortem pati, & suam dare armam non horreret, qui post passionem R gi Dau di fuam, secundum Scripturas, tertia die resurgens à mortuis, discipulis suis se viunm prabuit in mul. Regi Irigiano. tus argumentis, per dies quadragunta apparens eis, & loquens de Regno Dei, & eos fpiritus Sancti tum: er of the virtute perlustrans & sapientia, mist in omnem ludaam, & Samariam, & vique ad vitimum Gootgians, terra, fua refurrettionis gloriam & dottrinam Enangelicam pradicare, ut in omnem terram fonus corum exiret, of in fines orbis terra verba corum credentious panderent. Euntes, inquiens, in mundum universum predicate Euangelium omns creature : Qui credit & baptleatus fuerit (aluus erit : Qui vero non crediderit condemnabitur. Cum igitur vir religi sus & promidus frater Guillermus de Villa Noua, ordinis Minorum Episcopus , prasentum lator, san la sidei Orthodoxa Prosessor 50 Zelator seruidus, de mandato Sansta sedus Apostolica ad partes Tartarorum, & altorum, que sidem

non norunt Carbolicam, una cum nonnullis Co episcopis & fratribus eiusdem ordinis, ut vobis, & ipsis Enangelium Christi, ve bumque salutis annucciet, & transferre proponat : vos regamus & bortamur in Domino Iesu Christo, per vestra salutem anima requirentes, quatenus prafatos Episcopos ca erofque Religiofos & Catholices, esfque adherentes, & adherere volences per loca veltre ditioni subiecta libere, saluo, & secure transire. Verbumque Dei, & sanctum Domini lesu Christi Enangelium predicare audire volentibus per mittentes, ipsis faciatis ob Dinne Maieflatis renerentiam , nostrorumque contemplatione rogaminum securum prastari conductum, mosque malignantium incur su defendi. Datum apud Douarram vicissimo secundo die May, Anno Regni nostri fexto. Tefte Regi.

Eodemmodo mandatum est Imperatori Trapezandarium. Teste Rege, ut supra. Rex potenti viro Imperatori Aquilonari, deposito Geneilitatis errore, lumen verum agnoscere quod est Christus Creator & Redemptor humani generus lesius Christus, qui omnes vult saluos peri, & neminem vult perwe, &c.vt supra. Teste vt supra.

1274 Letters to the Persian Sultan, and to the Emperour of Cathay. LIB. VIII.

Eodem modo mandatum est subscriptis : videlicet; Carpenta Persarum & Medorum Imo.

Imperatori de Cathay. Divers others of Richard the Second, Henry the Eight, &c. collected to this purpose. I have

TO THE READER.

Ike that Scribe which brings out of his Treasurie new and old so have I here done, and so our Auther following. To those elder Stories and Records I bane added this later Voyage to Ierulalem and Constantinople: and He, besides his Trauels, bath added his Studies, the Voyage of his Minds In. dustrie, aswell as of his bodies Peregrimation; as a Learned Argus, seeing with the Eyes of many . Au. Ol thors, and comparing things old and new. Pardon me, that I have here much pruned his sweet Poetrie. bis fare-fet Artquitie, and other fruits of his Learning : I would not have his owne Worke out of request. I present men rather as Trauellers, then as Scholers; and in the Historicall Stage produce them. telling what they have seene; not what they can say, or what other Authors have written : not that I disprone this (for what elfe is my whole Pilgrimage?) his that I hold on here another courfe; where if ear 77 man fould for all, no man could have his part, and where even brenitic is selfe is almost technic (as you (ce) by Multitudes. The other parts of Mafter Sandys are not fimply superfluous , yet are thefe to our present purpose sufficient.

CHAP. VIII.

A Relation of a lourney begunne, Anno Dom. 1610. written by Mafter GEORGE SANDYS, and heere contracted.

His iourney from Venice to Conftantinople, and Observations by the way.

Rom Venice wee departed on the twentieth of August, 1610. in the Lane Defence of London. The Venetions are Lords of this Sea, but not without concention with the Papacie. On Afcention day, the Duke accompanyed with the Clarif-finner of that Signiory, is rowed thither in the Bucentore, a triumphall Galley, 40 richly, and exquittely gilded: aboue a roome (beneath which they row) comprehending the whole length and breadth of the Galley; neere the poopea

throne, the rest accomodated with seares, where he solemnely espouseth the Sea : confirmed by a Ring throwne therein, the Nuptiall Ple'ge and Symboli of subicction. This Ceremonie ceited a beginning from that Sea-battell fought and wonne by the Ueneticas, vinder the conduct of Seballium Zani, against the forces of Fredericke Barbarosa in the quarrell of Pope A. lexander the Third. Who flying his furie in the habit of a Cooke repayred to Venice, and there long lived difguifed in the Monastery of Charitie. Zani returning in triumph with the Emperours Sonne, was met by the Pope, and faluted in this manner : Here take, O Zani, this Ring of Gold, and by giving it to the Sea, oblige it vnto thee. A ceremonie that shall on this day bee se yearely observed, both by thee and thy Successors, that Posteritie may know how you have purchast the Dominion thereof by your valours, and made it subject vnto you, as a Wife to her

We sayled all along in the sight of Dalmatia, at this day Sclaumia, of the Sclaui, a people of Sarmatia. They diffent not from the Greeke Church in their Religion. Throughout the North part of the World their Language is understood and spoken, even from thence almost to the Confines of Tartarie. The men weare halfe-fleeued Gownes of Violet cloth, with Boginets of the same. They noursh onely a locke of haire on the crowne of their heads : the rest all shauen. The women weare theirs not long; and dye them blacke for the most part. Their chiefe Citie 60 is Ragusa (heretofore Epideurus) a Common-wealth of itselfe, famous for Merchandize, and plentie of this ping. Many small llands belong thereunto, but little of the Continent. They pay Tribute to the Twee, fourteene thousand Zecchins yearely: and spend as much more vpon them in gifts and entertainment, sending the Grand Signior every yeare a ship loden with Pitch

CHAP. S.S. I. Venetian Signiories inhabited by Grecians. Fraitfull Valleyes. 1275

for the vse of his Gallies. Whereby they purchase their peace; and a discharge of duties

for the vie of the Salames Empire.

Carfu, the first lland of note that we past by, lyeth in the Issues Sea; stretching East and West in forme of a Bow: foure and fiftie miles long, foure and twentie broad, diffant about twelue from the mayne of Epirm, called formerly Ceregra, adorned with Groues of Oranges, Limons. Pomegranates, Fig-trees, Olives and the like : enriched with excellent Wines and abundance of Honey, Vpon the North-side stands a Citie that takes the name of the Iland, with a Castle frongly feated on a high Rocke, which ioyneth by an Ishmos to the Land, and impregnably strongly seace on a migratocane, which toyoners by an attemos to one Land, and impregnable for their haut ceftified at much in their many repulse. It is the Chaire of an Archeolish by the control of the most by Greciens, as is the whole Hand, and subject to the Venetiens.

Saint Maura lyeth next vnto this, once adioyning to the Continent, and separated by the Libour of the Inhabitants: yet no further removed then by a bridge to bee past into. Called it Lbour or the innantiants: yet no nutter removes then by a cruge to nee pair theo. Called it was formerly Lowedie, of a white Rocke which lyeth before it, toward Cephalmia. On which flood the Temple of Apalo. In this Iland they have a Citie inhabited for the most part by Inser: received by Bainzer the Second; at fuch time as they were expulsed Spaine by King

Ferdinand. Errammen.
Val de Compare, a little beyond prefenteth her rockie Mountaines, contayning in circuit about fifte miles, now inhabited by Exiles and Pirates. Once called Ithaca, fo celebrated for the birth of Visses: Betweene this and the mouth of the Gulph of Lepanto, (once named the OGulph of Corinth) lye certaine little llands, or rather great Rockes, now called Carzolari, here- curislation tofore Echinades, made famous by that memorable Sea-battell there obtayned against the Turke

by Don I ohn of Austria, in the yeare 1571. and fung by a crowned Muse. by Den store in Lengths, in the years 131 and language and white studies in circumfe-We fayled close by Cephelmia, triangular in forme, one bundred and tixtie miles in circumfe-tence: the Mountaynes intermixed with profitable Valleyes, and the Woods with Champian. Vinwatered with Rivers, and poore in Fountaines, but abounding with Wheate, Honey, Co-rents, Manna, Cheefe, Wooll, Turkeyes, excellent Oyle, incomparable (though not long lafting) Muscadines, and Powder for the dying of Scarlet: This growes like a blifter on the lease of the Muticannes, and rowers of the uping a scalar analysis a transfer and the body Oke, a listed furth, ye producing Acornessbeing gathered, they rub out of it a certaine red dut, that conserves hafter a while into wormes, which they kill with Wine when they begin a to quicken. Among the remay harbour, Argelds is the principall, capacious enough for a Nature. The Inhabitants of this lland are Greekes, the Unstates their Sourceignes. Having paff me. In minorization this monate greeners the Continue that observed the Streights, that divide this Hand from the next, (vulgarly called (must del Zons.) on the second of September we entred the Hauen of Zagnibus and saluted the Castle with our

This Iland (nine hundred miles distant from Venice) so called of Zacymbus the Sonne of Pardone, and at this day Zani; contayneth in circuit not past threescore miles. On the South and South-east fides rockie and mountaynous, but plaine in the midt, and vnspeakably fruitfull, producing the best Oyle of the World, and excellent strong Wines, both white and red, which they call Ribolls, But the chiefe riches thereof consistent in Corents, which draweth hither much 40 trafficke (especially from England and Holland, for here they know not what to doe with them:) pranckee (especially from Leaguese and Leaguese), or acre tiney anow now write to one with each of informed that wherea before they were fearce able to free themselues from importunate famine, they now (besides their prinate gettings, amounting to one hundred and fittie thousand Zectives on they now (besides their prinate gettings, amounting to one hundred and fittie thousand Zections) docyeterly pay vnto Saint (Marke fortic eight thousand Dollars for Cultomes and other ranks)

Duties. It is impossible that so little a portion of Earth, so employed, should be more beneficiall, the mountaynous partbeing barren, and the rest comprized within two or three not very ample Valleyes, but those all ouer husbanded like an entyre Garden. They sow little Corne, as employing their grounds to better aduantage : for which they fometimes fuffer , beeing ready to flarue, when the weather continueth for any season tempestuous : and they cannot fetch their prouison, which they have as well of Floth as of Corne, from Morea, being ten leagues diffant, They have Salt-pits of their owne, and store of fresh water, but little or no wood, though cele-To brated for the abundance thereof, by Homer and Figil.

It is here a cultone frieldly oblerued (as also essewhere within the Streights belonging to the

Christians) not to suffer any to trafficke or come ashoare before they have a Pratticke from the Signiors of Health, which will not be granted untill fortie dayes after their arrivall, especially if the flip come from Twels, and bring not a Certificate, that the place from whence they came is free from the infection if fo, perchance their reftraint may be shortned, during which time they have a Guardian fet ouer them. They will not fuffer a Letter to be delivered, if feeled with thred, before it be opened and ayred. If fuch as come to speake with them doe but touch one of the ship, or sometimes but a rope, they shall be forced to ascend, and remayne there for the time 60 limited; it being death to him that shall come ashoare without licence. Notwithstanding, they vpon request will carrie you to the Lazaretto (which is the nature of a Pest-house) there to abide vntill the date be expired. But if any fall ficke amongst them in the meane-season, their Practicke is accordingly prolonged. A great inconvenience to the Merchants, but at Venice intolerable, where when they have Pratticke, they are enforced to vulade at the Lacarette. So

from the mayne of Epirus, called formerly Coreyra, adorned with Groues of Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, Fig-trees, Oliues and the like : enriched with excellent Wines and abundance of E READER. Honey. Vpon the North fide stands a Citie that takes the name of the Iland, with a Castle strongly seated on a high Rocke, which joyneth by an Ishmos to the Land, and impregnably a surie new and old so have I here done, and so our Aufortified. The Turkes have testified as much in their many repulles. It is the Chaire of an Arch-Records I bane a ided this later Voyage to Ierulalem and To bishop, inhabited for the most by Grecians, as is the whole Iland, and subject to the Venetians. bath added his Studies, the Voyage of his Minds In-Saint Maura lyeth next vnto this, once adiopning to the Continent, and separated by the es a Learned Argus, seeing with the Eyes of many Au. Ol on me that I have bere much pruned his sweet Poetrie. s Learning: I would not have his owne Worke out of reas Scholers; and in this Historicall Stage produce them. ay, or what other Authors have written : not that I dif-?) but that I hold on here another course; where if eneert, and where even brevitic it selfe is almost tedious (as after Sandys are not fimply superfluous, yet are these to P. VIII. Vnwatered with Rivers, and poore in Fountaines, but abounding with Wheate', Honey, Counne, Anno Dom. 1610, Written rents, Manna, Cheese, Wooll, Turkeyes, excellent Oyle, incomparable (though not long lasting) Muscadines, and Powder for the dying of Scarlet: This growes like a blifter on the leafe of the RGE SANDYS, and holy Oke, a little shrub, yet producing Acornes: being gathered, they rub out of it a certaine red e contracted. dult, that converteth after a while into wormes, which they kill with Wine when they begin Ordnance.

eto Constantinople, and Observans by the way. the twentieth of August, 1610. in the Little Defence

are Lords of this Sea, but not without contention ention day, the Duke accompanyed with the Clasif. owed thither in the Bucentoro, a triumphall Galley, 40 ed : aboue a roome (beneath which they row) comgth and bread th of the Galley; neere the poopea where he folemnely espoulet h the Sea : confirmed by geand Symbol of Libitation. This Ceremonie renight and won ie by the Venetians, under the con-

of Fredericke Barbaro a in the quarrell of Pope A. in the habit of a Cooke repayred to Venice, and there haritie. Zani returning in triumph with the Empeated in this manner: Here take, O Zani, this Ring of vinto thee. A ceremonie that thall on this day bee 50 50 brated for the abundance thereof, by Homer and Virgil.

cceffors, that I offeritie may know how you have

lours, and made it fubicet vinto you, as a Wife to her

matia, at this day Sclauonia, of the Sclaui, a people of

ke Church in their Rolig in. Throughout the North

ritood and spoken, even from thence almost to the

fre-fleened Gownes of Violet cloth, with Bonnets of

aire on the crowne of their heads : the rest all shaien.

on-wealth of infelfe, famous for Merchandize, and

clong thereunto, but little of the Continent. They

- 17 archine warraly and then the much more ypon

e them blacke for the most part. Their clairfe Citie 60

labour of the Inhabitants: yet no further remoued then by a bridge to bee past into. Called it was formerly Leucadia, of a white Rocke which lyeth before it, toward Cephalonia. On which flood the Temple of Apollo. In this Iland they have a Citie inhabited for the most part by lewes: received by Baiazet the Second; at such time as they were expulsed Spaine by King Val de Compare, a little beyond presenteth her rockie Mountaines, contayning in circuit about fiftie miles, now inhabited by Exiles and Pirates. Once called Ithaca, fo celebrated for the birth of Virles: Betweene this and the mouth of the Gulph of Lepante, (once named the 20 Gulph of Corinth) lye certaine little llands, or rather great Rockes, now called Curzolari, here- currolari tofore Echinades, made famons by that memorable Sea-battell there obtayined against the Turke by Don Ichn of Auftria, in the yeare 1 571. and fung by a crowned Mufe. We fayled close by Cephalenia, triangular in forme, one hundred and fixtie miles in circumference: the Mountaynes intermixed with profitable Valleyes, and the Woods with Champian.

30 to quicken. Among ft her many harbours, Argoftoli is the principall, capacious enough for a Nauie. The Inhabitants of this Iland are Grecians, the Venetians their Souereignes. Hauing paft through the Streights, that divide this Iland from the next, (vulgarly called Canale del Zant.) on the second of September we entred the Hauen of Zacynthus, and saluted the Castle with our This Iland (nine hundred miles distant from Venice) so called of Zacynthus the Sonne of Dardanse, and at this day Zant; contayneth in circuit not past threescore miles. On the South and South-east fides rockie and mountaynous, but plaine in the midst, and vnspeakably fruitfull, producing the best Oyle of the World, and excellent strong Wines, both white and red, which

they call Ribolla. But the chiefe riches thereof confilteth in Corents, which draweth hither much 40 trafficke (especially from England and Holland, for here they know not what to doe with them:) insomuch that wheras before they were scarce able to free themselues from importunate famine, they now (belides their private gettings, amounting to one hundred and fiftie thouland Zec- Store of Cochins) doe yearely pay vnto Saint Marke fortie eight thousand Dollars for Customes and other rante. Duties. It is impossible that so little a portion of Earth, so employed, should be more beneficiall. the mountaynous part being barren, and the rest comprized within two or three not very ample Valleyes, but those all ouer husbanded like an entyre Garden. They sow little Corne, as employing their grounds to better advantage: for which they fometimes fuffer, beeing ready to starue, when the weather continueth for any season tempestuous : and they cannot fetch their

prouition, which they have as well of Fleth as of Corne, from Morea, being ten leagues diftant. They have Salt-pits of their owne, and store of fresh water, but little or no wood, though cele-

It is here a custome strictly observed (as also else-where within the Streights belonging to the

Christians) not to suffer any to trafficke or come ashoare before they have a Pratticke from the Signiors of Health, which will not be granted untill fortie dayes after their arrivall, especially

if the ship come from Turkie, and bring not a Certificate, that the place from whence they came

is free from the infection : if so, perchance their restraint may be shortned, during which time

they have a Guardian fet ouer them. They will not fuffer a Letter to be delivered, if fealed with

thred, before it be opened and ayred. If such as come to speake with them doe but touch one of

the ship, or sometimes but a rope, they shall be forced to ascend, and remayne there for the time

vpon request will carrie you to the Lazaretto (which is the nature of a Pell-house) there to a-

bide vntill the date be expired. But if any fall ficke amongst them in the meane-feafon, their

Practicke is accordingly prolonged. A great inconvenience to the Merchants, but at Venice in-

60 limited; it being death to him that shall come ashoare without licence. Notwithstanding, they

vnder pretence of a vring their goods are opened; their quantitie, qualitie and condition known; redounding much to their detriments. But for that we came from Venice, wee were freed from this milchefe, and prefently fuffered to land.

The Towns, taking or guing a name to the lland, firecheth along betweene the Welf fide of the Hauen and the foot of the Mountayne: perhaps a malie in length, in breach hour narrow, The fitteets varpased, the building low, by tradinof the often Earth-quakes whereunto this L land is miferably subject. Two hapned during my floor abode heere, though of small importance. Although the feate of the Towns be excession to the thing that play qualified by a North, east gale that blowerth from Sea most constantly about the midst of the day.

The Great Turke hath yearely a present of Falcons from the Gouernor (accompanyed, as some of fav, with twelue hundred Zecchins) which he calleth a Tribute: it beeing in his power todi. ftreffe them at his pleasure, by restrayning the reliefe of victuals which they have from Mores and his adiovning Dominions. Whileft wee were here, the Captaine Baffa past by with fixtie Gallies; who yearely about this time fayleth in circuit, to receive Tribute, fuppreffe Pirates, and to doe fome exploit upon the Malteles, Spaniards, and Florentines, with whom they are onely in hostilitie. Divers of their Gallies putting into the Hauen, were courteously entertained for the Venetians endeauour, as much as in them lyes to keepe good quarters with the Tirke nor onely for the reason aforesaid, (which perhaps might extend as farre as their Citie : their Territories though large and fruitfull too narrow to fullayne fo populous a State, if vnreligued from Turkie, and that their paffage into the mid-land Sea were interrupted) not for the loffe they 20 thould fullayne by the cellation of Trafficke with the Mahometans: but knowing him by deare experience too powerfull an Aduerlary for them by Land, and though they are perhaps from enough by Sea, yet should they lose a Nauie, their losse were vnrecouerable, whereas the Tarke within the space of a yeare is able to fet forth another. The Inhabitants of this Iland are in generall Grecians (of whom wee will speake no more

then concernes the particular customes of the place, referring the rest to our relation of that peo-

Murtherers.

ple : in habit they imitate the Italians, but transcend them in their reuenges, and infinitely leffe civill. They will threaten to kill a Merchant that will not buy their Commodities, and make more conscience to breake a Fast, then to commit a Murther. One of them at our beeing heere, pursued a poore Sailer (an Englishman) for offering but to carrie a little bagge of Corents abourd 10 vncustomed, and killed him, running vp a paire of staires for succour. He is weary of his life that hath a difference with any of them, and will walke abroad after day-light. But cowardize is joyned with their crueltie, who dare doe nothing but fodainly, vpon advantages; and are ever prinately armed. Encouraged to Villanies by the remifnesse of their Lawes : for none will lay hands upon an offender, untill fourteene dayes after that hee bee called to the Scale, (an eminent place where one doth stand and publikely cite the offenders:) who in the meane-time hathleifire to make his owne peace, or elfe to abfent himfelfe; if then he appeare not they banish him: and propound a reward according to the greatnesse of the offence, to him that shall either kill or take him alive : and if it be done by one that is banished, his owne banishment (the least reward) is released. The Labourers doe goe into the fields with Swords and Partizans, as if in an Ene- 40 mies Country, bringing home their Wines and Oyles in Hogs-skins, the in-fides turned outward. It is a cultome among it them to innite certaine men vnto their Marriages, whom they call Compeeres. Enery one of these doe bestow a Ring, which the Priest doth put upon the Bride and Bridegroomes fingers, interchangeably shifting them; and so hee doth the Garlands on their heads. Of these they are neuer icalous (an abuse in that kind reputed as detestable a crime, as if committed by a natural Brother;) so that they lightly chuse those for their Comperes that have beene formerly suspected too familiar. The Bridegroome entring the Church, slickes his Dagger in the doore; held available against Inchantments. For heere it is a common practice to bewitch them : made thereby impotent with their Wiues, vntill the Charme be burnt, or otherwife confumed : infomuch that fometimes (as they fay) the Mothers of the betrothed, by way 50 of prepention doe bewitch them themselves, and againe valoof ethem as soone as the Marriage is confummated. The Nuptiall sheets (as in some cases commanded by the Mosaical Law) are publikely showne and preserved by their Parents as a Testimonie of their vincorrupted

There be here two Bifhops, one of the Greekee, and another of the Latines. The Greeke haw divers Churches, the principall that of S. Nicolas, (which guest to the Hauena name, and not far remoued) with a Monaltery of Calaiers; for fo are their Monkes called. On the other fide of the Harbor, vpon the top of the Promontory, they have anotiver far leffe; with a Chappell dedicated to the Vingin Mary, called Madomand & Seeps, reputed effective flow finacles, and much 60 inuocated by Sea-faring men. As the Duke of Venice doth marrie the Sea, fo yearely doth this Bifhop vpon the Twelfe day haptize it: although with leffe flate, yet with no laffe Caremonie. The Prestians here (as in Candy) doe ioyntly celebrate the Greeias Festivals: either to gratifie, or elle to avoid occasions of tumult. As for the Roman Cacholike Bishop, hee hath his Cathedrall Church and residence within the Caffel: where there is a 'Cuent'

of Franciseus. A mile and halfe off, in the tight of the Towns, on the fide of a Mountaine, they have another Monasteric, called the a francistate, where the Latine have their burials, built in Sepathre of the yeter 1550, when vader the ground their were found two Vires; one full of after, and to carre, they other of water, in an ancient Sepathre. Young a Josuar from that coursed the Tombe, was, engraven. M. Ty 1. Gage R 9 a N 2 Ty 1 F TY 1 EF LY 1 A N TO N 1 a was when I have I have they ment the containest the fashes, Ay 3 Max. Ty 1. It being supposed that Gagre was lands in time there buried; peremptorily affirmed by a I raueller their prefers; reporting wathally, that he saw in an interest the Epitaph.

Of Orator; the Prince of Speech the Pride. Tulie, with hie trifts in the Urue abide: Tulie, that of himselfs thus writ; O. Ruese Blest, in that I thy Consul, am become. the orstorum princeps, & glore lingu#

Alle orstorum princeps, & glore lingu#

Romans, igcet has, tunt consuge I ullius vinsi

Fulfing sile, miquam, de fe qui fripieratolum,

O for untatam nitain, me consule, Romann,

Addamant Telelionas in fastim.

The lewer have here a Synagogue, (of whom there are not many) on the form married an English woman, and connerted her to his Religion. They weare a blue rishand show their hars for a disfinition. The foraine Merchants here redden, acefor the most part Anglish, who, by their frequent deaths doe dispresse the aire to be so submisses as is reported who have then purchased interments in gardens: neither suffered by Greeker you. Latinet to be found in Churches. If a Stranger there take a fraught of a Fenetiae, and a Fenetiae shape in Rort, the Master thereof vpon a protestation, will enforce the Stranger to woode, and serve his ownse turne there with, if it be for his benefit, In this sland there are force Willages.

On the fourceasts of September I embarqued in another Englift line, called the Great Exchange, fifth bound for China, and then for Tripolic. With a protectous wind were compiled a part of Mense, more famous by the name of Pelapomofice. Inhaped like a Plantan leafe, and emparted the state of the China of

those moniters, cilled the Dogs of Impiere, that is, infernall Funes, and ministers of his ven3 seance. A filpsofine King of Napise, was wont to fay merrily, that the Harpist had, left the
3 strophades to inhabite at Rome; intimating thereby the auxies of that Clerge. Weekelt on, swophades,
the left hand two Rockes, at this day called the Strianty, where onely live a few Greeke on,
swopen, that receive their furferance of almost from the neighbouring llands. There is no no a
Spring of fresh water, supposed to haire his original in Pedposeness, and to to passe vader the
Sea, in regard of a certaine tree ouer-shadowing a little Lake, the leaves thereof or like vator
those) being often found in this Fountzine, there growing none of that kind in the lland. Wee
thruit betweene Cape Halso and Carige, about the miles distant; none Paphyru, of his excellent Porphyr; but better knowne by the name of Cythura. An lland context at vates of sum.
In the Towner rings two furlongs vp from the Hauen, shood her celebrated I emple (the mott
40 ancient that the Greeness had of that Goddelle,) and therein her Statue in complete armour.
Out of this it is tale, that Papir indee a ripe of Halson, or rather there after enjoyed her in his re-

foyle, inhabited by Gracious, and subsect to the Venetiers.

This is the first of the LEgeon Sea: the largest arms of the Medicarroneums, extending to Mare Legenn. the Hellip Para, and dusting Grover from the Idler Assa. A Sea dangerous and troubletions to sayle through, in regard of the multitude of Rockes, and Ilands, euery where disperied, Insomuch, that a man is proverbially said to sayle in the Legeon Sea, that is, encumbred with difficulties. The Ilands of this Sea were anciently dissided into the Sparades, and Goldates. The Sparades are those that is externed before Grate, and along the coalt of Assa: The Cycluster, so called in that they lie in a circle.

turne from Sparta. The ruines are now to be feene, together with that of Uranias. The Iland

is fixtie miles in compatie; it hath divers Harbours, but those small and vniafe. A delightfull

Amongst the rest of the last named wee sayled by Delos, (now Diles) hend with sharpe Delos, Rockes. The ruines of Apollos Temple are here yet to be seene, affoording faire Pullars of marble to such as will set to them, and other stones of price, both in their nature, and for their work-manship; the whole Iland being now vininhisticed.

Three dayes after our embarkment (as quicke a palinge as ener was heard of) we arrived at Sto., chim. a famous Hand, called formerly Chére. Susfoce and now multi-at contanyment incircus, extending from South wino North; the North and Weft quarters extraordinarie hilly. In the middleft of the Hand is the Mountaine Armis (now Amplia) producing the beft Greek Wines. But 60 the Lenticket tree, which is well-nigh onely proper to Sio, Joth gue it the greatest renowne and endowment. The grow at the South end of the Hand, and on the leafurely afcending hills that neighbour the shoart. In heighth nor much exceeding a man , leaued like a Seruce, and

bearing a red berrie, but changing into blacke as it ripeneth.

In the beginning of August lanch they the rine, from whence the Masticke distilleth vntill Masticke.

the end of September, at which time they gather it. None fuffered to come among fitter during the interim, it being death to have but a pound of new Masticke found in their houles. The wood thereof is excellent for tooth-picks. By reaton of these trees they have the best Honie of the world, which intermingled with water, is not much inferiour intellift to the coffly Sherbets of Configuration of: The lland produceth Corne and Oyle Indifferent plentie. Some Sile they make, and some Cottonshere grow, but short in Worth while of Smirrial, It shill also quarries of excellent Marble, and a certaine greene earth, like the ruft of Braffe, which the Turkes call, Terra Chia: but not that fo reputed of by the ancient Physicians. The coaft, effecially towards the South, is fet with small Watch-towers, which with smoake by day, and fire by night, due gine knowledge vnto one another (and fo to the vp-land) of inspected enemies, to The enuironing Sea being free from contented Rockes, and consequently from penil. On the East fide of the Iland, foure leagues diftant from the Maine of Afia, from that part which was formerly called Ionia, flands the Citie of Sto, having a secure Hauen (though daily decaying, yet with a fomething dangerous entrance, ftreightned on the North fide by the fea-ruined wall of the Mould, incroching neerer the Diamond, which stands on the other side of the Mouth, so called of the shape, rising out of the Sea, and supporting a Lanterne, erected by the Gracie. infomuch that thips of the greatest fize doe anchor in the channell: but ours thrust in, when

English Conful. going afficiare, I was friendly entertayned of the English Confull. The Towne Bretchethalone the bottome of the Hauen, backt on the West with a rockie Mountaine, the building means. the Streets no larger then Allies. Vpon the Caftle hill there is a Bannia, which little declines to from the state of a Temple; paued with faire tables of marble, and supported with Columnes, contayning seuerall roomes, one hotter then another, with Conduits of hot water, and natural Fountaines. On the North fide of the Citie ftands the Caltle , ample , double walled , and enuroned with a deepe ditch : manned and inhabited by Turkes, and well flored with munition. This not many yeeres fince was fodainely scaled in a night by the Florentines, who chooking the Artillerie, and driving the Tarkes into a corner, were now almost masters thereof; when a violent storme of wind, or rather of feare, enforced their companions to Sea, and them to a a violent iterate of wind, or rather of reare, entored their companions to bea, and inem to a composition ywhich was, to depart with enlignes displayed, But the Governous having gotten them most his power, caused their heads to be strucke off, and to be plitted in morter on the Castle wall; where as they yet remay, but not virrenenged, Fav the Captain Fagle wyon his com-ming, strangled the perfidious Governous, either for dissolutioning the Tarke in his breach of promule, or for his negligenous in being 16 Jurprided. Since When, a watch-world curry minute. of the night goeth about the walls, to teffifie their vigilancie. Their Orchards are here enriched with excellent fruits; amongst the rest, with Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Pomgranats, and Figs. Vpon these Figuress they hang a kind of variancery Figger out of whose corruption crease fault wormers are ingended, which By biting the other (as they sky) procure them, to ripe. Partridges here are an ordinaire food; whereoff they have an incredible number, greater then ours, and differing in hue, the beake and feete red, the plume afh-colour. Many of them are kept tame; thefe feeding abroad all day, at night vpon a call returne to their feuerall owners. Solyman the Magnificent, picking a quarrell with the Gouernour for the Geness, for a sulpe-46 ced correspondencie with the great Mafter of Matta, during those warres, and discoury of

his delignes; having besides neglected accustomed presents, with the payment of two years tribute, sent Pial the Captaine Balls to seize on the Iland; who on Easter day in the year

1566. presenting himselfe before Sio, with fourescore Gallies, so terrified the Inhabstants, that

before they were summoned, they quietly surrendred both it and themselues to his disposure. The Gonernour, together with the principall samilies, intending to depart for Italie, hee

number. They are in a manner releast of their thraldome, in that vusensible of it : well meri-

ting the name of Merrie Greekes, when their leafure will tolerate, Neuer Sunday or holiday

fent vnto (onflantinople, and suffered the common people to flay of remone at their liking: So that the whole Iland is now gouerned by Turkes, and defiled with their superfitions: yet have the Christians their Churches, and vnreproued exercise of Religion. Besides impositions vpon to the land, and vpon commodities arising from thence, the Great Tarke receives yeerely for every Christian about the age of fixteene, two hundred Afpers : but the husbandmen are exempted vntill marriage. The Inhabitants for the most part, are Turkes and Grecians; those living in command, and loofely: the other husbanding the earth, and exceeding them infinitely in

paffes over without some publike meeting or other: where intermixed with women, they dance out the day, and with full crownd Cups enlengthen their iollitie. Frequented by forraine Merchants, Natolia affoording great store of Chamolets and Grogerams, made about Angra; and a part brought hither, before such time as the Goats (whose haire they pull, white, long, 60 Turkifb Retels. and (oft) were destroyed by the late Rebels, consisting for the most part of the expulsed Inhabitants of burned Townes; who having loft all that they had, knew not better how to recouer their loffes, then by preying vpon others; and fo ioyned with their vndoers, led by Calender Ogly and Zid Arab: and growne to io fearefull a head, that the Great Tirke (fome fay) had once a thought to have forfaken the Imperiall Citie, they being fiftie thousand, but destitute of

CHAP. S. S. I. English fermice: Cunning mater Diners. Weather Charmers. 1279

Artillerie. After foyled by Mora Baffe the great Pizer, who for that service (but chiefly for the over-throw of lamballin the Baffa of Aleppo, and natural Lord of the rich Valley of Achille) was called by him his Parber and Delinerer. They befreged this Citie; and were by certaine Englis femice. Engles fhips that lay in the Roade, vafriendly faluted. In the end, burnt a part thereof. and tooke a sanfome for fraring the teft. But their principall commoditie is Cotton woodl, which Cotton here growth in great quantitie. With the feeds thereof they doe flow their Fields, as wee nere growett in great quantum virturiare and the transport of the first quantum form. The finlake no bigger than that of Wheate, but rough as Bleaner is the head round and barded, in face and thape of a Medler: hard as a flone; which ripering breaks, and is delicated of a white fofte Bondai internsived with feeds, which they figurate with an influence of the first property of the property of the first property of t so ment. You would thinke it ftrange, that to fmall a fiell should contayine fuch a quantitie ; but admire if you faw them fline it in their thips : enforcing a Sacke as bigge as a Wooll-packe into a roome, at the first too narrow for your arme, when extended by slight enfirmments : so that ofe

they make the very decks to ftretch therewith. Taking with me a Greeke that could speake a little broken English, for my Interpreter: on the twentieth of November, I did put my felie into a Barke, Armado of Simo, a little lland hard by the Rhodes (the Patron a Greeke, as the reft) being laden with Spunges: That night we came to an anchor, under the South-west fide of Maylen. This Iland, not past fetten miles di- Minlin or Lesfrant from the Continent of Phryeis, contayneth eight fcore and eight miles in circuit. The bos. South and West parts Mountaynous and barren, the rest levels and truitfull, producing excel-

On the one and twentieth of September, the Winder grew contrarie : and the Seas (though not rough) too rough to be brooked by fo fmall a veffelt, no bigger, and like in proportion to a Grauef-end Tilt-boate, yet rowing vnder the shelter of the Land, we entred the Gulfe of Calong, they hoping to have found fome purchase about a thip cast there away but a little before divers of them least into the Sea, and draing vinto the bottome, flayed there to long as if it had Cunning Dibeene their habitable element. And without question, they exceed all others in that facultie, uers trayned thereunto from their child-hood, and hee the excellencest amongst them that can best performe it. Infomuch, that although worth nothing, he shall be proffered in marriage the beff endowed, and most beautifull Virgin of their lland. For they generally get their lining by these go downed, and most beautiful if ying to their tank. For they generally get time tuningly their go Spunges, gathered from the files of Rocks about the bottome of the Streights; Sometimes fif—Spunges, teen fathome vinder water. A happie people, that line according to maturized water not much, in that they coust but little. Their appartal no other then linner breaches, our that a funcke

lolegire vnto them with a Towell; putting on formetimes when they goe affiore, long fleeue-lefte Coates of home-from Cotton. Yet their Backs need not enuie their Bellies: Diffee; Olites, Garlicke and Onions being their principall fustenance. Vpon the two and twentieth of September, the winds continuing contrarie, we but a little shortned our journey. Descrying a small Saile that made towards ve; and thinking them to bee

Pirats, we rowed backe by the shoare with all possible speed. In the evening we returned to the place that we fled from. When going alhoafe, one attyred like a woman, lay grouding on the Charmes, 40 Sand, whileft the reft skipt about him in a ring, muttering certayne words, which they would make me beleeue were preualent Charmes to alter the weather to their purpole. On the three and twentieth wee continued weather-bound, remoouing after it grew darke vnto another anchorage ; a custome they held, lest observed by day from Sea or Shoare, they might by night be furprised. We lay in a little Bay, and under a Cliffe, where not one of vs but had his fleepe interrunted by fearfull dreames, he that watched affirming, that he had feene the Devill, fo that in a great difmay we put from shoare about mid-night. But whether it proceeded from the nature of the vaporous place, or that infested by some spirit, I leave to decide. It is reported of a little Rockie Iland hard by, named formerly Ex, and facred vnto Neptane (whereof we have spoken something alreadie) that none could sleepe upon it for being disturbed with apparitions. On the foure and twentieth the Sea grew calme, and wee proceeded on our voyage. To-

On the toureann twenteen the stage of Afia for fresh water, and came that night vnto Tenedes. With the morning they renewed their labour, rowing along the chalkie shoare of the Tenedes. leffer Phrygia. Now against Cape Ianizari (desirous to see those celebrated fields, where once C. Ininciti. flood limm the glorie of Afia, that hath affoorded to rareft wits fo plentifull an argument) with much importunitie and promise of reward (it being a matter of danger) I got them to set mee asheare. When accompanied with two or three of them, we afcended the not high Promontorie, leuell aboue, and crowned with a ruined Citie, whole imperfect walls doe they to the Sea their antiquitie. Wherein are many spacious Vaults and ample Cisternes for the receit of water. The foundation hereof should feeme to have beene laid by Confiantine the Great, who in-6c tending to remove the feate of his Empire, began here to build; which vpon a new refolution he erected at By Lantium. This is that famous Promontorie of Signatur, honoured with the Se- Siesna.

pulchre of Achilles, which Alexander (vifiting it in his Asian expedition) coursed with flowers, and ranne naked about it, as then the custome was in Funerals Macrificing to the ghost of his Kinfman, whom he reputed most happy, that had such a Trumpet as Homer, to refound his ver-

tues. In the Playne beyond vs (for wee durft not ftraggla farther from the shoars) wee beheld where once flood House by him founded, called Troy promisciously of Tros. Afterward feiened to have beene walled about by Neptune and Phubus, in the dayes of Laomedon. Who both nor heard of this glorious Citie, the former taking, the ten weeres warre; and later, finall fubuers. on which befell according to Enfebrus, in the yeers of the World \$784, and second of Abdam government of Ifrael. The ruines at this day not more then consecturally extant.

Thefe Rivers, though now poore in Streames, are not yet fo contemptible, as made by Bell. mins, who perhaps miltaketh others for them , (there being fundrie Ruplets that defound from the Mountaynes) as by all likelihood he hath done the fire of the ancient Troy. For the mines that are now fo perspicuous, and by him related, doe stand foure miles South-west from the a- to forefaid place; described by the Poets, and determined of by Geographers : feated on a hanging Hill, and too neere the namall fration to affoord a Field for such dispersed Encounters such lone Pursuites, interception of Scouts, (then when the Treians had pitched neerer the Name) and executed firatagems, as is declared to have happed betweene the Sea and the Citie. There reliques doe fufficiently declare the greatnesse of the later, and not a little the excellencie. The walls (as Bellonius, but more largely, describeth it) confisting of great square stone, hard blacke. and spongie, in divers places yet standing supported on the inside with Pillars, about two yards diffant one from another, and garnished once with many now ruined Turrets, contagning a condittant one from mount, and sale of the sale of the sale of the second of the sale of the Temple, and two Towers of Marble, that have better refuted the furie of Time; the one on the top of the Hill, and the other necret the Sea in the Valley. From the wall of the Citie, another exten.leth (supported with Buttreffes, partly flanding, and partly throwne downe) well-nigh vnto Ide, and then turning, is faid to reach to the Gulfes of Satelis, about twentie miles diffiant. Halfe a mile off, and Weft off thefe Ruines, opposing Tenedat, are the hot water Baths, hereto-fore adorned, and neighboured with magnificent buildings; the way thither inclosed, as it were, with Sepulchres of Marble (many of the like being about the Citie, both of Greek and Lains, as appeareth by the feuerall Characters. Two Baths there be; the one choked with rubbidee the other yet in vie, though vader a simple couerture. But now the ruines beare not altogether that forme, leftened daily by the Turker, who carried the Pillars and stones vnto Conftantinople, to ge adorne the buildings of the Great Baffas , as they now doe from Cyzicus. This notable remain der of so noble a Citie was once a small Village of the Ilians. For the Ilians, after the destruction on of that famous Himm, often thifting the feate of the new, here fixt it at last, as is faid, by the aduice of an Oracle, contayning one onely contemptible Temple, dedicated to Mouras, at fish time as Alexander came thither, who then offered vp his shield, and tooke downe another (that which he after vsed in his fights) enriching the Temple with gifts, and honouring the Towne with his Name, exempting it from tribute, and determining upon his returne to erect inita fumptuous Temple, to inftitute facred Games, and to make it a great Citie. But Alexander dying, Lyfmachus tooke voon him that care, who immured it with a wall, contayning fortiefurlongs in circuit, yet fuffered it to retayne the name of Alexandria. After it became a Colonie. 40 and an Vningritte of the Romanes, of no meane reputation. Fimbria the Queftor, having in afedition flaine the Conful Valerius Flacens in Bithymia, and making himfelfe Captaine of the Re-Armie, the Citizens refusing to receive him, as a Robber and a Rebell, besieged this Citie, and in eleven dayes tooke it; who boafted, that he in eleven dayes had done that, which Agemenmon with fine hundred faile of thips and the whole Greeke Nation, could hardly accomplish in ten yeeres. To whom an Ilian answered, That they wanted a Heller to defend them. Pieces of ruines, throughout these Playnes, lye every where scattered.

Returning againe to our Barke, hard by on the left hand left we Imbrins, now called Lembro, once facred to Mercurie; and not farre beyond Lemnos, famous for the fabulous fall of Vulcan. Whereupon, and no maruell, he euer after halted. The Greciens there now inhabiting, doe re- 50 late, that he brake his Thigh with a fall from a Horse on the side of a Hill, which at this day beareth his name : the Earth in that place thereupon receining those excellent vertues of curing of Terra Sigillata wounds, stopping of fluxes, expulsing poysons, &cc. now called Terra Sigillata, in that sealed, and there onely gathered. This Hill lyeth South of the ruines of that ancient Hephastia, which gaue a name vnto Unlean, and about three flight-shots removed. Betweene which standeth Sotira, a little Chappell, frequented by the Greeke Coloieres vpon the fixt of August; where they begin their Orifons, and from thence afcend the Mountayne to open the veine from whence they produce it : which they doe with great preparations and folemnities, accompanied with the principall Turkes of the lland. That which covereth it , being removued by the labour of wellnigh fiftie Pioners, the Priefts take out as much as the Cades doth thinke for that yeere fufficient 60 (left the price should abate by reason of the abundance) to whom they deliner it; and then close it vp in futh fort, as the place where they digged it, is not to bee discerned; the veine discourred, this precious Earth, as they fay, doth arife like the cafting vp of Wormes, and that only during a part of that day : io that it is to be supposed that they gather as much as the same will affoord them. Certayne bags thereof are fent to the Great Turke, the rest they fell (of which I have feene many Cups at Constantinople:) but that which is fold to the Merchants, is made intolittle Pellets, and fealed with the Turkih Character: the ceremonies in the gathering hereof were first inducted by the Venetians. And now we entred the Helleftont, so called of Helle, the Daughter of Athamas King of The-

her and Sifter of Phrixin; who, flying the stratagems of their step-mother Ino, was drowned therein. Bounded on the left hand with the Thracian Chersonesis (vulgarly called Saint Georges Arme) a Pennssula pointing to the South-west, whereon stood the Sepulchre of Hecuba, called Cynoffema, flaine by them, and buried in the aforefaid Promontorie. On the right hand . the Ic Helleftons is confined with the leffer Phrygia , duiding Enrope from Afia, in fundrie places not Helleftons. aboue a mile broad, and in length about fortie, (now called the Channell of Conftantinople) and hauing a Current that setteth into the Egenm: a trade-wind blowing either up or downe. which when contrarie to the streame, doth exceedingly incense it. The Mountaynes on each fide are clothed with Pines, from whence much Pitch is extracted. Three leagues about the entrance, and at the narrowest of this Streight, stand Sestos and Abydos; opposite to each other, Sestos and A

formerly famous for the vnfortunate loues of Hero and Leander, drowned in the vncomp. file- bydes, nate Surges, and tung by Musam. Here Xerxes, whole populous Armie drunke Rivers drie, and made Mountaynes circumnauigable, is faid to haue past ouer into Greece, vpon a Bridge of Boats: which when broken by Tempefts, he caufed the Sea to be beaten (as if femible) with three hunand dred ftripes, and Fetters to be throwne therein; forbidding any to farifice voto Neptune. Abydos flands in Afa, which the Milesians first founded, by the permission of Gyes King of

Lidis, vito whom all the Countrey was fubicet. Taken by the Turke in the reigne of Orchanes. Seffer flands in Europe, though neuer great, yet ftrongly built, and once the principall Citie of Chersonesis: afterward defaced, a Cattle was built in the roome thereof. Abidos is leated voon a low levell; and Settos on the fide of a Mountayne, yet descending to the Sea : both bordering the same with their Castles; whereof the former is foure square, the other triangular. These at this day are vulgarly called the Caftles. All ships are suffered to enter, that by their multitude and appointment doe threaten no inuafion; but not to returne without fearch and permiffion. of which we shall speake in the processe of our Journall. A little beyond wee past by the ruines of a Castle, which the Trokifb Carmalals and Gallies still sayling by, salute with their Ordnance, it being the first Fort by them taken in Europe, who call it Zembenic. That night wee came to Callipoly, some twentie miles distant, and thrust into a little Hauen North of the Towne, but only capable of small Vetfels.

Callipoly is a Citie of Chersonesis, seated at the bottome of a Bay; so shallow, that ships doe cillipoli. there viually anchor, as throughout the whole Hellespont. Callipolis maketh a faire shew a-farre off; but entred, is nothing leffe then it promited : a part thereof pofferfing the shoare, and the rest the rifing of the Mountayne : vinwalled, and wishout either Citadell or Fortreile. Along the shoare, there are divers drie stations for Gallies. On the South side of the Citie in a little Playne, are fundrie round Hills; the Sepulchres, as they fay, of certayne Thracian Kings: for fuch was the ancient custome of bariall. The Countrey aboue is Champan, and not barren, but rarely inhabited. Here is a Ferrie for transportation into Afia. Greekes and lemes, together with the Turkes, doe inhabit the Towne, and are admitted their Churches and Synagogues. Here also is a Monafterie of Romifb Friars, of the Order of Saint Augustine; one of them being at this time (but not dwelling in the Couent) the Franke Conful; whose office is to dispatch, and discharge the dues of all Christians ships, not subject to the Grand Signior, and admitted free trading below at the Castles. To his house I repayred, with hope of some refreshment after my wearilome voyage : but hee then from home, I was forced to returne to my water-bed; there being no Innes for entertainment throughout inhospitall Turkie: yet is this Towne well fur- No Innes. nished with all forts of prouision. What is here fold by the Greeks, you may agree for on a 50 price : but the Turks will receive your money, and give you a quantitie for it, according to their

owne arbitrement; but trilly enough, and rather exceeding, then short of your expectation. For two or three Aspers (whereof twentie are neere vpon a shilling) a Butcher will cut off as much Matton (for they divide it not into ioynts) as will well fatisfie three, though hungrie; which they carrie to the Cookes, who make no more adoe, but flicing it into little Gobbets, pricke it on a Prog of Iron, and hang it in a Fornace. Derided and flurted at by divers of the bafer people. at night we returned to our Barke. And departing the next morning, were forthwith met with a contrarie winde, which droue vs to the shelter of a Rocke not farre from the Towne: where we abode all that day, and the night enfuing : they opening and washing part of their Sponges, which laid on the shoare, by the bulke you would have thought to have beene a fraught for a Pin-60 nace; which studed into Sackes, when wet, were bestowed under the side Benches and crosse

Bankes of this little Veffell. On the feuen and twentieth of September, before day wee left the shoare, and after a while entred the Proportice Sea : confined with Thrace on the one fide, and with Bithynia on the other. Having climbed the Mountayns steepe towards the Sea, wee got to the Towne, and

111100

1282 Merrie Greekes. A dranken frey. The Authors entertaynment. LIB.VIII

hought vs some victuals, at night we returned to our Boate, which lay in an obscure Bay, where they from the next day in washing the residue of their Sponges, whilest I and my Interpreter front our times on the top of the Mountayne in the Vineyards, not well pleafed with this their delay, now more affecting their ease then when without the Hellefont : being rid of that feare (for no Pirat dare venter to come within the Caffles) which had quickned their expedition. In the evening we descended, where we found the Patron lying on his backe vpon a Rocke. all Merric Greekes, dropping wet : speechlesse, and strugling with death to our seeming. The Greekes together by the cares, every one with his fellow; fome in the Boate, and fome vpon the Shoare. Amongst the rest there was a blinde man, who had married a yong wife, that would not let him lie with her: and thereupon had vinder-taken this journey to complaine vinto the Patriarch : hee hearing to his brother crie out at the receit of a blow; guided to the place by the noise, and thinking with his staffe to have strucke the striker; laid it on with such a force, that meeting with nothing but Avre, and not able to recouer himselfe, he fell into the Sea : and with much difficultie was preserved from drowning. The clamour increased with their contentions, and anon the Patrone starting up, as if of a sodaine restored to life; like a mad man skips into the Boate, and drawing a Turkil Cymiter, beginneth to lay about him (thinking that his Vellell had beene furprized by Pirats.) when they all leapt into the Sea; and during under water like so many Dive-dappers. ascended without the reach of his furie. Leaping ashoare, hee pursues my Greeke, whom feare had made too nimble for him; mounting a steepe Cliffe, which at another time hee could have hardly ascended. Then turning vpon me onely armed with stones, as God would have it, hee 10 flumbled by the way, and there laid like a stone for two houres together; that which had made them to quarrelfome being now the Peace-maker, having cast the fetters of sleepe voon their diffemperatures. For it beeing proclaimed death to bring Wine vnto Constantinople, and they loth to powre fuch good Liquor into the Sea, had made their bellies the ouer-charged Veffels. When the Patron awaked, and was informed by my Greeke how he had vied me, and withall of my resolution (which was rather to retyre vnto the Towne, and there expect a passage, than to commit my (afetie vnto fuch people) he came vnto me, and kiffed me, as did the reft of his companions, (a testimonie amongit them of good-will and fidelitie) and so enforced mee abourd. The winds the next day blew fresh and fauourable. That night wee came to anchor a little below the feuen Towers : and betimes in the morning arrived at the Custome-house. Then croffing the Hauen I landed at Galata, and so ascended the Vines of Pena; where by Sir Thomas Gloner, Lord Embassador for the King, I was freely entertayned : abiding in his house almost for the space of foure monethes. Of whom without Ingratitude and Detraction I cannot but make an honourable mention.

Conftantinople described, the Turkes Seraglio, Pera; the Turkish Empire and Gonernment : Some Observations of the Turkish Religion.

His Citie by deftinie appointed and by nature feated for Souerzigntie, was first the feat of the Romane Emperors, then of the Greeke, as now in the first the feat of the Romane Emperors. flantine the Sonne of Helena, and loft by Constantine the Sonne of another Helena (2 Gregorie then Bishop, whose first Bishop was a Gregorie to Mahomes the second, in the yeare 1453, with the slaughter of her people, and destruction of her magnificent structures. The like may bee observed of the Romane Emperours, whose first was Angustus, and whose last was Augustulus.

It flands on a Cape of Land neere the entrance of the Bolphorms. In forme triangular, on 50 the East-fide washed with the same, and on the North-side with the Hauen, adioyning on the West to the Continent. Walled with bricke and stone, intermixed order'y, having four eand twentie gates and posternes; whereof fine doe regard the Land, and nineteene the water; being about thirteene miles in circumference. Than this there is hardly in nature a more delicate Oblect, if beheld from the Sea or adiopning Mountaines; the loftie and beautifull Cypreffe Trees so intermixed with the buildings, that it seemeth to present a Citie in a Wood to the pleased beholders. Whole seuen aspiring heads (for on so many hils and no more, they say it is seated) are most of them crowned with magnificent Mosques, all of white Marble, round in forme, and coupled aboue; being finished on the top with gilded Spires , that reflect the beames they re- 60 ceine with a maruellous fplendor; some having two, some foure, some sixe adioyning Turrets, exceeding high, and exceeding slender; Tarrast aloft on the out-fide like the mayne top of a ship, and that in severall places equally distant, from whence the Tasimanni with elated voices (for they vie no Bels) doe congregate the people, pronouncing this Arabicke Sentence, La Illab Il-

CHAP. 8. \$ 2.S. Sophies Temple. The Turkes Seraglio in Constantinople, 1282

lella Mubemet re sul Allah: viz. There is but one God, and Mahomet bis Prophet. No Mosque can have more then one of these Turrets, if not built by an Emperor. But that of Santia Sophia, once s. Sophia. have more then one of these lutrees, in no. outs, by an Emperor not that of Santa Spira, one a Christian Temple, (twife burnt, and happily, in that fo fumpuously re-defined by the Emperor Islamses) exceeded not onely the reit, by whose patterns they were framed, but all other rout Islamses) exceeded not onely the reit, by whose patterns they were framed, but all other Fabrickes what foeuer throughout the whole Vniuerfe. A long labour it were to describe it exactly, and having done, my cies have feene it, would but condemne my defective Relation. The principall part thereof rifeth in an Quall, surrounded with Pillars, admirable for their proporprincipan pare and workmanship. Ouer those others, through which ample Galleries, curiously. paued, and arched aboue, haue their profpect into the Temple, dignified with the prefence of to Christian Emperous at the time of Dinine Seruice, ascended by them on Horse-backe. The

roofe compact, and adorned with Mofaike Painting: an Antique kind of worke, composed of little square pieces of Marble; gilded and coloured according to the place that they are to asfirme in the figure or ground, which fet together, as if embolled, prefent an vnexprellable flatelineste, and are of a maruellous durance: numbred by Pancirollus amongst things that are lost, but divers in Italie at this day excell in that kind, yet make the particles of Clay, gilt, and coloured before they be neiled by the fire. The rest of the Church, though of another proportion, doth invne to this with a certaine harmonie. The fides and floore all flagged with excellent Marble, vaulted vnderneath, and contayning large Cifternes, replenished with water from an Aquæduct. Before the entrance, there is a goodly Portico; where the Christians that visit it vpon curiositie,

Defore the entraines, there is a good you consider the you can remain any only it whom the report and the second was a well as the Tweet, doe leane their floors before they doe enter. Within on the left hand, there is a Pillar coursel with Copper, ever (weating, (I know not why, vnleffe in beeing paft through by fome Conduit) which the Tweet wipe off with their Handkerchers, through a waine list. Superlition periwaded, that it is of facred and fourraigne vertue. The doores are curiously cut through, and plated; the wood of one of them fained to be of the Arke of Noe, and therefore left bare in some places to be killed by the denouter people. Enagriss that lived a thousand yeares fince, affirmeth this Temple to haue beene from Eastvoto West, two hundred and threescore nnce, anometic this I single one hundred and fourescore: and Antonius Menauinus, that in the dayes Sunti, in es of Baianes, it contayined at once fixe and thirtie thouland Turkes. Perhaps the ancient Fabricke Templo (fixes or Basters, it contained a universel this now remayning, was little more then the Chancell. Better distribution then Randing entire, whereof this now remayning, was little more then the Chancell. Better distribution and a second of the contained and the second of the

number equal to the dayes of the yeare: whereas if it hath fine, it hath more by one, then by 40,76. me was differend. Mahomes the Great, vpon the taking of the Citie, threw downe the Altars, defaced the Images, (of admirable workemanship, and infinite in number) converting it into a Mosque. To every one of these principal Mosques belong publike Bagnies, Hospitals, with lodgings for Santons, and Ecclefialticall perions, beeing endowed with competent Reuenues. The inferiour are built for the most part square, many penthousd with open Galleries where they accufrome to pray attimes extraordinarie : there being in all (comprehending Pera, Scutari, and the Buildings that border the Bosphorus) about the number of eight thousand.

But of this Sophia, 15 almost every other Friday frequented by the Sultan, beeing neere vnto the fore-iront of his Serraglio, which possesseth the extremest point of the North-east Angle, where formerly flood the ancient Byzantium; divided from the rest of the Citie by a loftie wall, contayning three miles in circuit; and comprehending goodly Groues of Cyprefies intermixed with Plaines, delicate Gardens, artificiall Fountaines, all varietie of fruit-trees, and what not rare! Luxurie being the Steward, and the Treasure vnexhaustable. The proud Palace of the Twant doth open to the South, having a loftie Gate-house without lights on the out-fide, and or Strayle. ingrauen with Arabicke Characters, fet forth with Gold and Azure all of white Marble. This leadeth into a spacious Court three hundred yards long, and about halfe as wide, on the left fide whereof stands the round of an ancient Chappell, contaying the Armes that were taken from the Grecians, in the subversion of this Citie; and at the far end of this Court a second Gate, 50 hung with Shields and Cymiters, doth leade into another full of tall Cypreffe Trees, leffe large

vet not by much then the former. The Cloysters about it, leaded aboue, and paued with stone, the Roofe supported with Columnes of Marble having Copper Chapters, and Bases. On the left hand the Dinano is kept; where the Baffas of the Port doe administer lustice, on that side confined with humble buildings, beyond which Court on the right hand there is a street of Kitchens; and on the left is the Stable, large enough for fine hundred Horse; where there is now to be feene a Mule fo admirably streakt, and dapled with white and blacke, and in such due pro- Streakt Mule, portion, as if a Painter had done it, not to imitate Nature, but to please the Eye, and expresse it perhaps a Ze-Curiofitie, Out of this fecond Court there is a passage into a third, not by Christians ordinarily feethe former to be entred, furrounded with the Royall Buildings, which though perhaps they come fhort of Bookein As-60 the Italian, for contriuement and finenesse of workmanship, yet not in costly curiousnesse, mat- drew Bastell,

ter, and amplitude. Betweene the East wall (which also serueth for a Wall to the Citie) and the water, a fort of terrible Ordnance are planted, which threat destruction to fuch as by Sea shall attempt a violent entrie or prohibited passage: and without on the North-side stands the Sultans Cabinet, in forme of a fumptuous Sommer House, having a private passage made for the

Ottoman Mo-

adoryning \$\tilde{Jan}\$. This Palace how/focuer enlarged by the Ottomans, was first erected by \$Influms\$, who named it \$Sophia of the Empresse.

Now next to these the Ottomans *Mansfelass* doe require their regard, built all of white Marsher to these the Ottomans *Mansfelass* doe require their regard, built all of white Marsher to the ottomans *Mansfelass* does require their regard, built all of white Marsher to the ottomans *Mansfelass* does not remain the ottomans *Mansfelass* does not a feweral Sustains, with the Tombes of in Chuldren, that either haue dyed before him, or haue after beene strangled by their tryannical Brethren, according to the *Turkylo* piete. The frombes not longer, nor larger then fitting the included bodies, each of one fixer; higher at the head then feet, and compast about *without other ornament then cours of Greene, and Tur-10 than the strains of the s

time, of waxed Linnen, from his Servagio: where he often folaceth himfelfe, with the various Obiects of the Hauen, and from thence takes Barge to passe vnto the delightfull places of the

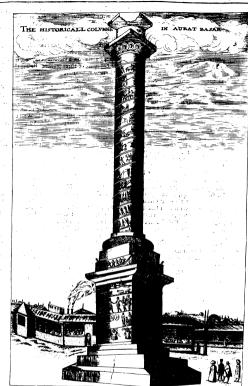
The Tower, Other Serage lies.

the teares of their Off-fpring. The South-east Angle of this Citie is taken up by the seuen Towers, called anciently land cula: employed, as the Tower of London, for a Store-house of the Sultans Treasure, and Munition, being also a Prison for capitall Offenders. We omit to speake of the great mens Serragius. that of the women belonging to the deceasifed Emperours; and that of the Virgins: the Alberges of lanizaries; the feuerall Seminaries of Spachies and Giamoglans: the Befestans (where 6.20 ner forts of Commodities are fold,) Hospitals; Markets of men and women, &c. fince hereafter we are to treate of most of their Orders; the buildings themselves not meriting a particular defcription : converting our Discourse to those few remainders of many Antiquities, whereof the Aquaduct made by the Emperour Valentinian, and retayning his name, doth principally challenge remembrance. This hath his heads neere to the Blacke Sea, not farre from a Village called Domuz-dere, of the abundance of wilde Hogges thereabout, the place being woodie and mountaynous, where many Springs are gathered together, and at fundry places doe iountly fall into great round Cifternes, from thence conueyed to conjoyne with others (amongst which as supposed, is the Brooke Codarius) led sometimes under the Earth, now along the levell then vpon mightie Arches ouer profound Valleyes, from Hill to Hill, for the space wel-nigh of thir- 20 tie miles, vntill arriving at the Citie, and furmounting the fame, it falleth at length as from a head-long Cataract into an ample Cifterne, supported with neere two hundred Pillars of Mar-ble; and is from thence by Conduits conducted vnto their publike vses. This was repayred by Solyman the Great, great-grand-father of this now reigning Achmet: whose wishes and endeauours are faid to have aymed at three things; which were, the re-edifying of Ponte Piccolo, and Ponte Grande, (which croffe two armes of the Sea, and the restoring of this Aquaduct; these he accomplished: but the third, which was the expugnation of Vienna, he could neuer accomplish Not farre from the Temple of Santia Sophia, there is a spacious place surrounded with buildings, like to that of Smith-field; and anciently called the Hopedron, for that there they exhibited their Horle-races, as now Assoiden by the Turkes, a word of like fignification, where the Spatist 40 of the Court play enery Friday at Goocho di Canni; which is no other then Prison Bace vpon Horse-backe, hitting one another with Darts, as the other doe with their hands; which they neuer throw Counter but at the backe of the Flyer, Nor is it the least contentment to the Chriftian to behold the terrible falls that they often get (not rarely coffing them their lines) whilf by the wreathing of their bodies, or a too hastie turne, whey seeke to avoide the Pursuer; and fometimes the Darts not lighting in iest on their naked neckes, and reversed faces. In this place there standeth a stately Hieroglyphicall Obeliske of Theban Marble.

A Brazen Columne and an Obelisk are omitted.

And in Anathofar (that is, the Market of Women) there is an Historicall Columne to bee afcended within, farre surpassing both Tartars, and that of Antoninus, which I have ieee in 50 owne bigness.

And right against the Manson of the Gormone Emperours Embassialor (who onely is suffered to lodge within the Citie) than the the Columne of Confidentiae, about the top whereof, you may reade this Distiction TO OBION PPION PROBLEM COLUMN TO BE ALL BOY BE ALL BOY OF ALL BOY EMPLOYED AS TO BE ALL BOY OF ALL BOY EMPLOYED AS TO BE ALL BOY OF ALL BOY EMPLOYED AS TO BE ALL BOY OF ALL BOY EMPLOYED AS TO BE ALL BOY OF ALL BOY EMPLOYED AS TO BE ALL BOY OF A



but efteening it an egregious folly to erect fuch fumptious Habitations, as if hee were to line for curr. None being about ewo flories high, fome of rough flone, fome of timber, fome of Sume-dryed bricke: their Roofes but rining alittle, courred with fuch Tiles as are layd on the Roofes of curr, one contrary to another; yet fome part of fome of them flat, (those belonging to timen of principal degree planned with flowers and trees of the rareft colours, and productions. Many vaccant places there are in the Cite, and many rowes of buildings, confifting of flops onely, all belonging to the Grand Symm, who lets them our wnto Tradefmen; into which their wines come not : prohibited by Chikebase that women should buy or fell (though now not feldome they doe) or shew themselues publiskely. The streets for the most part are exceeding

Pppppp

Cruelty.

Holy Sepulchre, Crueltie, Terrible fires, Tempefts, Plague, LIB. VIII.

narrow; fome raifed on the fides for more cleanlineffe: many having fleep afcents, in many places bounded with long dead walls, belonging to great mens Serragion; so negligent are they of ex-terior garminings. All the suburbs that this Citie hath, lie without the gate of Advinople, adioy-The Suburbs, ning to the North-west angle thereof, and stretching along the vortermost of the Hatten; where ming to the volument, there standeth a Tombe of principal repute in the Mahomusan de-within a stately Monument, there standeth a Tombe of principal repute in the Mahomusan de-uotion: the Sepulchre of Impe Sultan a Santon of theirs, called vulgarly and ridiculously, the Se-Holy Sepulpulchre of lob. To which the Captaine Baffa doth repaire before he fet forth, and at his returne. there performing appointed orations and ceremonies: and vpon a victorie obtayned, is obliged to vifite the same every morning and evening for the space of three weekes. Before this, in 2 Cyprefle groue, there flandeth a Scaffpld, where the new Sultans are girt with a fword, by the 10 hands of the Mufis their principall Prelate, with divers folemnities.

The Hauen.

Now speake wee of the Hauen, rather denouring then encreased by a little Riuer, called formerly Barbyles, now by the Greekes, Chartariess, and Chay by the Turkes: much frequented by fowle, and rigoroully preferred for the Grand Signiors pleasure, who ordinarily hawkes thereon: infomuch that a fernant of my Lord Embassadors was so beaten, for presuming to shoote there that (hortly after he died (as it is thought) of the blowes. This falleth into the West extent of the Hauen; throughout the world the faireft, the fafeft, the most profitable. So conueniently profound, that the greatest ships may lay their sides to the sides thereof, for the more case reprotound, that the greatest imparaty as you ceit, or discharge of their burthen. The mouth of it is land-lockt by the opposite Asia, opecit, or discharge of their burthen. The mouth of it is land-lockt by the opposite Asia, opening Eastward unto the Thracion Boffborms, which by a long narrow channel if tretching North and South of the Control of the and South, joynes the blacke and white Seas : fo call they the Seas North and South of the Bothorns. So that no wind bloweth, which brings not in some shipping or other, to the furnino porms. So that no wine showers, when some in the intermediate of this Cities having (as hath beene faid before) on the left hand the Easins Sea, with the Lake of Chesis, inhabited about by multitudes of Nations, and entred into by many amigable Rivers; whereby whatfoeuer groweth, or is nourished in those farre distant Countries, is gable Kiners; whereby whattoeuer growsess, or a nonrinea in timer arre alternet countries is easily transported wino it: on the right hand Propositie, and the Mid-land See, (bodredet with Natolia, Syria, Legyp, Africa, Sprine, France, Italia, Greece, and Dalmatis, with their fruichill lands) and without, the great Occase. Informuch as it feemeth by the opportunitie of ranigation to participate with their feuerall commodities, daily brought hither by forminers; feated of it felfe in a Countrey, though not altogether barren, yet not fufficient to fustaine the Inhabi- 10 tants. Moldania and Valachia doe ferue them with Beeues and Muttons ; and as for Fish , the adiouning Seas yeeld flore and variety, as the concaues of the Rockes doe falt, white, pure, and folid, made onely by the labour of the furges. Subject it hath beene to fundrie horrible combu-

Homer were written:) and to divers others, this last, though lesse, may be added, which hapned on the fourteenth of October, in the yeere 1607. in which three thousand houses were burnt to their foundations. Nor is it to be maruelled at : the Citizens themselves not daring to quench the fire that burneth their owne houses, or by pulling some downe to preserve the remaynder : 40 Lange its info- an office that belongeth to the Aga, and his lanizaries; who nothing quicke in their afiftance, doe often for spite or pillage, beate downe such buildings as are farthest remound from danger. So that the mischiefe is not onely wished for the bootie, but prolonged; and not feldome they themselues set the lewer houses on fire; who made warie by the example, are now furnished of arched vaults, for the safeguard of their goods, which are not to bee violated by the slame. The arched vaults, for the lateguard of the goods, which are not to dee violated by the hame. The fall of houles heretofore by terrible and long-lating earthquakes, now by negligence integying, tempels, and the matter that they confift of , is herer also most frequent; many (as hath beene faid) being built of Sun-dried bricke. And although it enioges a delicate aire, and ferent skies, even during the Winter, when the East, the West, or South wind bloweth; yet the boy-

ftions: vnto that which befell in the dayes of Lee, and not long after in the reigne of Bafiliem,

(when amongst other infinite losses that famous Librarie perished, contayning an hundred and twentie thouland volumes; wherein the inward skin of a Dragon the Odyffes and Iliads of

Tempelts.

sterous Tramentana, that from the blacke Sea doth sweepe his blacke substance, heere most vio- 40 lently rages, bringing often with it fuch stormes of inow, that in September I have seene the then flourishing trees fo ouercharged therewith, that their branches haue broken, accompanied with bitter frosts , which dissoluing , resolue therewith the vnfirme matter that suftaynes them. Laftly, the plague (either hapning through the vice of the Clime, or of those misoeleeuers, or hither brought by the many frequenting Nations) for the most part miserably insesteth this Citie, encreased by the superstition of the Mahometans.

Plague.

On the other fide of the Hauen (continually croffed by multitudes of little Boats, called Par-Calasa or Pea. magies, and rowed for the most part by Agpress) Stands the Citie of Galata, so called, as some write of the Gaules, once the mafters thereof, or as others will have it, of Galac, which fignifithe Milk, for that there the Greeke kept their cattell 13 Frea (another name thereot,) which fo fignifieth Bryond, in that on the other fide of the Hauen; but more anciently Corne Byzonium. Infirmely walled, yet great, if you comprehend the suburbs therewith, extending from along the shoare to the vpper tops of the Mountaines, surpassing Constantinople in her loftie buildings built by the Genous ; who bought it of the Greeke Emperours (in their declining efface, poffett of

little more then the regall Citie, and title; for the most part sustayned by forraine contributions) and by them furrendred vato Mahomer the Great, the day after the facking of Conftantinople. At the West end thereof the Grand Signiors Gallies have a drie station : and at the East end right against the point of his Serraglio, called Tophana and Fundacle, lies a number of great Ord-nance vinplanted; most of them the spoyle of Christian Cities and Fortrelles, as may appeare by their inferiptions, and Impreses; and many of them of an incredible greatnesse. Now. right against the mouth of the Hauen, on the other fide of the Boph rus, flands Son-Seutoria

tari, a Towne of Bythinia. Scutari fometimes belonged to Chalcedon, once a tree Citie, and tea- chalcedon.

ted a little below it: fo called of a Brooke, now without a name, that runs into Propontis ; calto led alfo, The Citie of the Blind; because of the foolish Megarians that built it. Famous for the fourthgenerall Councell there holden; and now onely thewing a part of her ruines.

The blacke Sea is distant some fitteene miles from Constantinople, to named of his blacke ef- Blacke Sea.

fects, or for the thicke mills that viually hung ouer it.

Here the Turke prohibiteth forrainers to trafficke, there being no other passage there into but by Rivers : neither this pallage of Bofborns, as some coniecture , hath beene alwayes : but forced by the violence of ftreames that fell into the ouer-charged Euxine. Where it rusheth into the Bolbborns there are two Rockes, that formerly bare the names of Cyanen and Sympligades : which for that fo neere, as many times appearing but as one, they were fayned by the Poets vnstable, and at fundry times to justle each other. Here vpon the top of a Rocke, supposed by of fome to be one of thele, yet too farre removed from a fellow to be to , flands a Pillar of white

marble, called vulgarly, The Pillar of Pompey. Vpon the shoare there is an high Lanterne, large enough at the top, to contayne about threefcore perions, which by night direct th the Sayler

into the entrance of the Boft borns.

The Bolbhorns fetteth with a firong current into Propontis, and is in length, about twentie Bolbhorns. miles : where broadeft, a mile; and in two places, but halfe a mile over, So called, for that Oxen accustomed to fwim from the one side to the other. One of those two fore-mentioned Streights lies before Conflantinople; the other, fine miles about and a halfe, where on Europe fide there stan-

deth a Castle, called formerly Damalis, and now, The Blacke Tower.

The Turkijh Empire is the greatest that is, or perhaps that ever was from the beginning. For 30 first, the European part thereof extendeth westward vnto the Archdukes of Austrias Dominions, Aretching to the Adriatick Sea by the confines of Ragula, bounded on the South with the Mediterraneum; on the East, with Ageum, Propontis, and Pontus, even to Theodofia, a Citie of the Serthian Chersonesiu; and on the North almost to Russia and Polonia; contayning Romania, Bulgaria; Serma, Rascia, the tributarie principalities of Valachia and Moldania; the greater part of Hungary. Bossa, Albania, Macedon, Epirus, all Grecia and Peleponnesus; all the fruitfull Ilands of the Egean Sea: Ragusa payes for her libertie; nor is Candie, Zant, or Cephalania held without Prefents. But what is this, compared to her Afran Territories, within which, all Natolia is comprifed: on three fides embraced with the Locan , Euxine, and Cilician Seas ; contayning the

princip on other bases emurated with the express, assens, and to linear scass; contaying the Prounces of Ponus, Galanta, Strbinia, Physica, Isria, Rombilia, Cilieta, Gapadeira, and the lef-40 tet Armenia, beyond which, Calebir threething Northward to Catais, and bounded on the Eaf-with the Country of the Georgians, whereof the Tarkey 100fffic not a little. A great part is alio contayneth of the greater Armenia: all Syria (in which Calofyria, Phanicia, and Palefine;) Babylonia and Mejopotamia: Arabia felix, which stretchesh out into the South Sea, interpoling the Persian and Arabian Gultes, doe bow to that Soueraigntie: so doe the Inhabitance of Petres, and Deferts; such I meane, as have knowne habitations. In Africa it extendethall along the coasts of the Mediterraneum, even from the red Sea to Acrath, a Citie of Mauritamia (except some few places possess by the Spaniard) wherein is the Countrey of the Tropladites. the miraculously fertile Kingdome of Agypt, Tripoly in Barbarie, the Kingdome of Tunis, and Citie of the Argers with her Territories , with the tributarie Kingdomes of Feffe and Morocco.

to To this adde Cyprus, Rhodes, and all the fertile Ilands of the mid-land Sea, that he East of Cana die. Thus great at this day is the Ottoman Empire : but too great for it are their affumed Titles: as God on earth, Shadow of God, Sole Monarch of the World, King of Kings, Commander of all that can be commanded , Soueraigne of the most noble Families of Persia and Armenia, Posfessor of the holy Cities of Mecha and Ierusalem, Lord of the blacke and white Seas, Sultan of Babylon, and so proceeding with a repetition of their feuerall Kingdomes. Like swelling attributes gaue this now reigning Sultan to our Soueraigne, in a Letter writ lately, which I will inlett for the strangeness: Vnto the most glorious and most mightic King lames, one of the great Lords of the creation of lesus, and most laudable amongst all the Princes of the Nation of Messia, a Indee of all debates and differences of the people of Nazarets, Possesor of great Maiestie, riches, and of glorie,

at about an amoremen of the project of the about the state of the stat ttile more modeft, contayning no more then Sultan Achmet Chan, Sonne to Mahomet Chan most inuincible.



But the barbarous policie whereby this tyrannie is sustayned, doth differ from all other: gui- 40 ded by the heads, and strengthned by the hands of his slaves, who thinke it as great an honour to be fo , as they doe with vs that ferue in the Courts of Princes: the Naturall Turke (tobe fo called a reproach) being rarely employed in command or service: amongst whom there is no Nobilitie of bloud, no knowne parentage, kindred, nor hereditary possessions, but are as it were of the Sultans creation, depending upon him onely for their fuftenance and preferments. Who disposeth, as well of their lines as their fortunes, by no other rule then that of his will; although sometime for forme he vieth the assent of the neuer gain saying Musin. These are the fonnes of Christians (and those the most compleatly furnished by nature) taken in their childhood from their miserable Parents, by a leuie made euery fiue yeeres (or oftner, or seldomer, as occasion requireth) throughout the whole Empire, (excepting certaine priusledged places, 2- 10 mongst which are Sio and Constantinople.) who are bestowed in severall Seminaries, instructed in the Mabometan Religion (changing their names you their circumstifion) stught the vie of their feuerall weapons, and made patient of hunger and labour, with inured abitinence, and contimual exercise. These they call Immelian, who have their faces flauen (the token of serutial), waring long Coats and copped Caps, not valike to our Idiots. The choicest of them for spirit and search as a copped Caps, not valike to our Idiots. The choicest of them for spirit and seature, are after a while received into the Grand Signiors Seraglia, diltinguished by chambers like to those in Hospitals, according to their seniorities; where all are brought vp in the discipline of warre; and not a few, acquainted with the fecrets of State : such as by the excellency of their gifts doe affure the expectation of a future eminency. Those of the first chamber, are the first preferred: yet not in order, but according to the worth of the place, and 60 worthinesse of the person. Of these come the Beglerbegs, (the name fignifying, a Lord of Lords) of whom there be onely two, the one of Greece, and the other of Natolia: who command all the horse-men in those Countries vnder the Generall) the Great Baffas, (whereof some are Generals of Armies, some Vizers of the Port, the rest Vice-royes of Prouinces) the Sanziaks GouerCHAP. S.S. 2. Generals, Viziers, Vice-royes, Gouernors, and other Officers. 1280

nours of Cities , for fo the name fignifieth , with their Territories and Forces , and other Offinonsort cross, for to the term regiment, was their extremely and cross, and other Oncers both of Warre and Peace; with thole of the Court, of principal place and attendance.

Of the other Immofator some come to bee Changles, who goe of Embalics, execute Commandments, and are Parsiants, and vader-Sheriffs; attending the imployment of the Empercent, who mounted on hort-backs, carrie Dablazes (a weapon like a Maior) before him, attion the Courts of Inflice : foliciting also the causes of their Chents. But the Spachies and Initial Spechies ries which are made of their language (the principall came of their inflittation) are the riemes

rie which are mainest their Languinest (the principal contect transmittation) are the frience and disposters of the Tariffed Manacian, the Special area, Horiz, men, we appoint for the special para areas, with Bow, Mafe, Danne, Harquebulle, S. Cymiter: whereof they have the fright part of the content of th and dispolying the want of Spuragravith their large and thaspe Strictions. Their statilities are glasted behind & before, the fast deep and materia and for Capanian [82] for the most gaing pagastrated Leopards, Lions, Tygres, Panthets, and theblee, In Critics when the look, this was the design of Stammell with long hanging liceus, and are distinguished from their pages of the large state of

paid them enery quatter. Of thele there be 3 2000, the one halfe of them are called problemed Some fry who weare red Pendants on their spares, & when in the field hands on the right-hand the sail there are a sancas the other on the left, who are called Stlibtarfy about bearing wellow & white Pendants. The million. other difperfed throughout the whole Empire, to live vporthest particular Tenements for trime of life affigued them, and thereupon to called, to being the policy of this State to credit in the core quered Countries a number of Timmiats, answerable to the greatnelle Bereof ; whereby the principall part of the fouldiery is provided for and the Empire strengthied, both against for-raine invasions, and revolts of the subdued. Of these, as they say, there are vpward of season hundred thousand severy one being to find as many Horfe, as his Farme doth double the yeards

30 make of fixtie Sultanies, ready to be commanded by their feuerall Sanzacete, as they by their Bafat thele beare on their Lances white and red Pendants. But the lanizaries (aname that fignifieth New Souldiery) are those that beare such great sway in Constantinople : insomuch, that the Sultans themselves have beene sometimes subject to their infolencies. They are divided into feuerall Companies under feuerall Captaines, but all commanded by their Aga, a place of high runt; and the third in repute through the Empire: howbeit, their too much love is to him ari affured destruction. These are the Flower of the Turkib Infantry, by whom such worther full victories have been earchieved. They call the Emperour Father, (for none other is there for them to depend on) to whole valour and faith in the time of warre hee committeeh his person. they having their stations about the Royall Pavillion. They ferue with Harquebusses, armed 40 befides with Cymiter, and Hatchets. They weare on their heads a Bonnet of white Felt, with

a flap hanging downe behind to their shoulders; adorned about the browes with a wreathe of Metall gilt, and fet with stones of small value, having a kind of sheathe or socket of the same erected before, wherein such are suffered to sticke Plumes of Feathers as haue behaued themselues extraordinary brauely. They tacke up the skirts of their coats when they fight or march. and carry certaine daies prouifion of victuals about with them, nor is it a cumber, it being no more then a small portion of Rice, and a little Sugar and Hony. When the Emperour is not in the field, the most of them reside with him in the Citie : euer at hand vpon any occasion to secure his person, and are as it were the Pretorian cohorts with the Romanes. They are in number about fortie thousand, whereof the greater part (I meane of those that attend on the Court)

50 haue their being in three large Serraglios, where the Iuniors doe reserence their Seniors, and all obey their seuerall Commanders (as they their Aga) with much filence and humilitie. Many of them that are married (a breach of their first institution) haue their private dwellings; and those that are busied in forraine imployments, are for the most part placed in such Garrison Townes as Joe greatly concerne the lafetie of the Empire; some are appointed to attend on Embaffadours; others, to guard fuch particular Christians as will be at the charge, both about the Citie, and in their Trauels, from incivilities and violences, to whom they are in themselves most faithfull : warv and cruell, in preuenting and reuenging their cangers and injuries, and so patient in bearing abuses, that one of them of late being strucken by an English-man, (whose humorous Iwaggering would permit him neuer to review his Countrey) as they travelled along

through Morea, did not onely not revenge it, nor abandon him to the pillage and outrages of others, in io vnknowne and fauage a Countrey; but conducting him vnto Zant in fafetie, faying, God forbid that the villary of another stould make him betray the charge that was committed to his trust. They are of one Trade or other: The pay that they have from the Grand Signior, is but fine Alpers a day ; yet their eldest Sons as soone as borne, are involled, and received into pension,

Pppppp 3

1288

but his bountie extendeth no further vnto his Progeny, (the rest reputed as naturall Tarker) nor is a lanizarie capable of other preferments then the command, of ten, of twentie, or of an hundred. They have yearely given them two Gownes apeece; the one of Violet cloath, and the other of Stammeil, which they weare in the Citie, carrying in their hands a great tough Reede, fome leuen foote long, tipped with Siluer, the weight whereof is not feldom feldy fuch as diffical them. Who are indeed fo awfull, that Iuftice dare not proceed publikely against them (they being onely to be judged by their Aga) but being privatly attached, are as privatly throwne into the Sea in the night time. But then are they most tumultuous (whereto they doe giue the name of affection) vpon the dangerous ficknesses of their Emperours, and vpon their deaths commit many out-rages. Which is the cause that the great Bassa as well as they can, do 10 conceale it from them, vntill all things be prouided for the prefentment of the next for them to fainte. Whereupon (besides the present larges) they have an Asper a day increase of pension: to that the longer they line, and the more Emperours they out-line, the greater is their al-

But it is to be confidered, that all these before named, are not onely of that tribute of shift. dren. For not a few of them are captiues taken in their child-hood, with divers Renegados, that hane most wickedly quitted their Religion and Countrey, to fight against both, who are to the Christians the most terrible Aduersaries. And withall they have of late infringed their ancient customes, by the admitting of those into these orders that are neither the Sonnes nor Grand-

Tartura. Achingi.

Ouer and aboue these, and besides the auxiliary Tartars, whereof there are lightly threescore thousand (who live on spoile, and serve without pay) that are ever assistant; the Grand Signier hath other Forces, whom they call Achingi, who have nothing but what they can get by foraging, being Hindes of the Countrey, and tyed to serue on Horse-backe, for certaine primiledees that they hold, in number about thirtie or tortie thousand ; but small in value, as are the Azai, who ferue on foote (yet properly belonging to the Gallies) better acquainted with the Snade then Sword : thrust forward with purpose rather to weary, then to variquish the enemy, whose dead bodies doe ferue the lanizaries to fill vp ditches, and to mount the walls of affaulted Fortreffes; besides many voluntaries, who follow the Army in hope to succeede the slaine Spabeis 10 and lanizaries, now nothing curious at such a time to receive those that bee not the Sonnes of Christians into the Order. Such are the Torkift Forces, both in qualitie and proportion, and hee that shall see three hundred thousand of these in an Armie (as he might have done this last Sommer in Bithynia) fo disciplined, so appointed, and so daringly resolute: whose onely reputeconfifts in their valours; and whose deteats are punished in their Commanders as offences, furnished with fuch abundance of great Ordnance (much whereof they cast according to their occasions, carrying with them the Metall vpon the backes of Camels) will not onely not wonder at their victories, but rather how the rest of the yet vnvanquished world hath withstood them. I hast heard a Prince (and he of no finall experience) impute the fundry ouerthrowes given them, by a small number of Christians, to the paucitie of Commanders, and their want of experience. 40 fome one Sanziack having under his conduct five thouland Timariots; and he perhaps but newly crept out of the Sultans Serraglio, exercised onely in speculative conflicts. So that their numbers proue ofcen but cumbers, and the aduantage lose, encountred by the many expert Directors of tew, who are also farre better defensiuely armed. But he that hath bounded the Sea, hath alfolimited their furies. And furely it is to bee hoped, that their greatnesse is not onely at the height, but neere an extreame precipitation : the body being growne too monftrous for the head, the Sultans vnwarlike, and neuer accompanying their Armies in person; the Souldier corrupted with ease and libertie, drowned in prohibited Wine, enfeebled with the continual conuerse of Women, and generally lapsed from their former austeritie of life, and simplicitie of nish. Lastly, in that it hath exceeded the observed period of a Tyrannie, for such is their Empire. Now when they march, the Tartars doe fcoure the Countrey two daies iourney before, then follow the Achingi, after them the Timariots, next those few lemoglans that be, next them the Ianizaries, the Chanfes follow on horfe-backe, (who carrie Bowes and Arrowes, befides their Mases and Cymiters) then comes the Sultan with the Officers of his Court, and Archers of his Guard, who are foot-men: the stipendarie Spaheis marching on either fide of him. An hundred Coaches couered with red, with foure Horles apeece, are drawne after, which carrie the Hichoglans (his Pages) and Eunuchs ; about these the Iemoglans, called Baltagies, are placed. The entertained in the roomes of the flaine, with the Servants of the Spabeis of the Court, and certaine lanix aries Ass-oglans Lepzlers and Denigilers. The lanix aries have the models of Elephants, Boots, Swords of Wood, and the like, borne before them for their Enfignes; and the Royall Standard is no other then a Horse taile tied to the end of a staffe.

fonnes of Christians; a naturall Tarke borne in Constantinople, before neuer knowne, being now a Baffa of the Port. manners. Their valours now meeting on all fides with opposition, haunging of late guen no in- 50 crease to their Dominions, and Empire so got, when it ceased to the concrease, doth begin to dimicarriages of the Army enfue, followed by voluntaries, who goe in hope (as before faid) to bee 60

As for their forces at Sea, they are but small in comparison of what they have beene and com- Sea force. pared to those of particular Christian Princes , but contemptible. Approved by the Florentine. who with fixe thips onely hath kept the bottome of the Streights for their three yeeres walt in despite of them : infomuch as they have not dared to hazard the revenue of Lypr by Sea , but haue fent it ouer Land with a Guard of Souldiers, to their no fmall trouble and expences; the whole Armado comming often in view, yet not so hardie as to aduenture the onset. The Admirall having thought it a fafer course to employ the Pirats of Tanie and Algers in that service, who have many tall ships (the spoile of Christian Merchants) and warlikely appointed: now growne expert in Nauigation, and all kind of Sea-fights, by the wicked instruction of our fue ito time Pirats, and other Renegados. But those Pirats have no heart to such an enterprise, where the victorie would proue to bloudie, and the bootie to worthleffe. The Nauie that is yearly fee forth in the beginning of May, to annoy the Enemie, suppresse Pirats, collect Tribute, and reforme disorders in the Maritime Townes that belong to the Admiraltie, confifts of not abone threefcore Gallies, which are all that can be spared from their other places of imployment, During the Winter the Armado is difperfed, and the Gallies are drawne into their drie flations. In which time the Pirats, both Christian and Mahometan , doe rob on the Agean and Mediterranean Seas vincontrolled, but by the defensive strength of the Assailed. So much the continuous of honors in Families are avoided, that when a Baffa is given (for fo I may terme it) to the Sister or Daughter of a Sultan for an husband, the children begotten on them, doe most rarely rife 20 about the degree of a private Captaine. But more severeare these Tyrants to their owne, who lop all the Branches from the Bole; the vanaturall Brother folemnizing his Fathers funerals, with the flaughter of his Brothers. So fearfull are they of rivalitie, and so damnably politike: making all things lawfull that may fecure the perpetuitie of their Empire. Yet they mourne for those being dead, whom they murdered; honoring them with all dues of buriall, and customa-

rie lamentations. Now if the Ottoman Line should faile, the Crim Tartar is to succeed (both being of one Familie, and of one Religion) as the Turke the Turtar; who hath at this day the ele-Aton of the Tartarian Emperours : but with this limitation, that hee is to bee one of the fonnes of the deceaffed. They are commanded seuen times a day to refort wnto publike Prayers : the first assembling 20 is called Timgil-namas, which is two houres before day : the second Sabab-namas, at day breake; the third Vyle-namas, at noone: the fourth Kyndy-namas, at three of the clocke: the fift Akfloam-names after Sunne-let: the fixth Gbogic-names, two houres within night: and the feuenth

Ginma-nama, at ten of the clocke in the morning : the last also on Fridayes observed by all, at other times but by the more religious. Congregated (as aforefaid) by the chanting of the Priefts from the tops of iteeples: at which times lightly, though they be in the fields, they will foread their upper garments on the earth, and fall to their denotions. Moreouer, I have feene them conioyntly pray in the corners of the streets, before the opening of their shops in the morning. Friday is their Sabbath; and yet they fpend but a part thereof in denotion, and the reft in recrea- Their Sabbath tions: but for that time they observe it so rigorously, that a Turke here lately had his eares nay-40 led to his shop-boord for opening it too timely. Before they pray, they wash all the Organs of their fenfes; their legs to their knees, and their armes to their elbowes : their privities after the purgings of nature; and sometimes all over from top to toe: for which there are houses of office with conduits belonging to every principall Mosque. Where water is wanting, they doe it with dust. At the doore of the Mosque they put off their shooes; and entring, fit crosse legged vpon rewes of Mats, one behind another, the poore and the rich promiscuously. The Priest in a Pulpit before them, not otherwise distinguished in habite but by the folding vp of his Turbant.

When they pray, they turne their faces towards Mecha : first standing vpright, without any Their Prayers. motion of their bodies, holding the palmes of their hands vpward; sometimes they stop their eyes and eares, and oft pull the haire on the fides of their faces : then thrice they bow, as in their falutations; and as often proftrating themselues on the earth, doe kisse it. Doing this sundrie 50 times, they will looke backe vpon no occasion, vntill they come vnto the salutation of Mabomet: at which time they reverse their faces, first over the right shoulder, and then over the left; beleeuing that his comming will be behind them when they are at their deuotions, The Priest doth somtimes reade vnto them some part of the Aleman (holding it, in reverence to the booke, as high as his chin) fometimes fome of their fabulous Legend, intermixing Expositions and Infructions, which they hearken vnto with heedie attention, and fuch fleadie politures of body, as if they were intranced. Their Service is mixed with Songs and Responses: and when all is Lyturgie, done, they stroke downe their faces and beards with lookes of denout granitie. If they finde a

Paper in the streets, they will thrust it in some Creuice of the adjoying wall; imagining that 65 the name of God may be contayned therein, and then propliane to be trod wider foot, or otherwise defiled. They number their often repetition of the Names of God and his Attributes (with other short ejaculations of Prayer and Praise) vpon Beades: some shaking their heads inceffantly, vntill they turne giddie: perhaps in imitation of the supposed trances (but naturally infirmitie) of their Prophet. And they have an Order of Monkes, who are called Dervifes, Monkes,

Royall Stan-

whom I have often feene to dance in their Mofques, on Tuesdayes and Fridayes, many together. to the found of barbarous muficke; dances that confitt of continuall turnings, vitill at a certo the fund of balance of the sand lying along like beafts, are thought to be rapt in spirit wito celestiall convertations. Now the Women are not permitted to come into their Temples (yet haue they fecret places to looke in through Grates) partly for troubling their deuotions. but especially for that they are not circumciled, as are the women of Persia and Libiopia, Nor put especially to, that they are not they be able to answere the Prieft, and promife for themselves. which is for the most part at the age of eight. They are circumcised in the houses of their Parents, at a foftinall meeting, and in the midft of the Affembly, the Child holding vp his fore-fin. ger, in token that he is a Mahometan. As foone as cut, the Priest washeth the wound in water ta and falt, and bindeth it in linnen. Who changeth not his name, but is from thenceforth called a Muffelman, which is, a true Beleeuer. This done, he is carryed vnto the Bannia, where his haire (before that time worne at full length) is shauen, and so kept euer after, all sauing a locke on the top of his crowne; by which they dreame that they shall be assumed by Mahamer into Paradile; then put they on him a white Turbant; and fo returning with Drums and Hoboys, is with great folemnitie conducted to the Mosque, and presented with gifts according to his

The Turkes doe fast one moneth in the yeere, which they call Ramazan: which changeth veerly (fo that in thirteene yeeres they fast one) wherein, they fay, that the Alcoran was delipered vnto Mahomet by the Angell. Observed by all but the Infirme and Travellers: who are 20 to full for as long a time, when so they recouer, or come to the end of their iourney. But they fast but during the day, in the night they feast, and then are all their steeples stucke round with Lamps, which burne till the morning, affording an obiect of great folemnitie. Such as in flead of abitayning from meates, doe abitayne at that time from their Molques, they carrie about in fcorne, and leuerely chaftife; but fuch as then drinke wine, they punish with death. Vpon the discouerie of the new Moone (which they superstitiously gratulate, esteeming him happy that discourreth it first, and by the course thereof doe reckon their yeere) falling out this yeere on the fenenth of December, the feast of the great Byram did begin, which doth continue for three dayes together, observed by them as Easter is with vs. On the first day the Grand Signior riding to Santia Sophia, in all the pompe and glorie of Empire (of which we shall speake hereafter) vp. 30 Deferate im- on his returne we faw a fort of Christians, some of them halfe earth alreadie, crooked with age, and trembling with palifes; who by the throwing away of their Bonnets, and lifting vp of

Granitie.

their fore-tingers, did proffer themselves to become Mahomeians. A fight full of horror and trouble, to fee those desperate wretches that had professed Christ all their life, and had suffered no doubt for his fake much contumely and oppression; now almost dying, to for sake their Redeemer, even then when they were to receive the reward of their patience. To these the Tyrant a little inclined his body, who before not formuch as cast his eye aside, but sate like the adored flatue of an Idoll. For they hold it a great grace, and an act of fingular pietie, to draw many to their Reiigion, presenting them with money, change of rayments, and freeing them from all Tribute and Taxes. Infomuch, that if a Christian have deferued death by their Law, if hee will 40 conuert, they will many times remit his punishment. But they compell no man. During this festivall they exercise themselves with various passimes, but none more in vse, and more barbarous, then their fwinging vp and downe, as Boyes doe in Bell-ropes : for which there bee Callowies (for they beare that forme) of an exceeding height, erected in fundrie places of the Citie; when by two loyning Ropes that are fastned aboue, they will swing themselues as high as the transome: perhaps assected in that it stupistes the senses for a season: the cause that Opium is so much in request, and of their foresaid shaking of their heads, and continued turnings. In regard whereof, they have such as have lost their wits, and natural Idiots, in high veneration, as men rauished in spirit, and taken from themselues, as it were to the fellowship of Angels. These they honour with the Title of Saints, lodge them in their Temples, some of them going almost starke 50 naked; others clothed in shreds of feuerall colours, whose necessities are supplyed by the peoples denotions, who kiffe their Garments as they paffe through the fireets, and bow to their benedictions; yea, many by counterfeiting the Idiot haue avoided puvishment for offences which they have vnwittingly fallen into. Whilft the Byram lasteth, you cannot stirre abroad but you shall be presented by the Deruses and Lanizaries, with tulips and trifles, besprinkling you with fweet water; nor ceasse so to doe, till they have drawne Rewards from you.

The Turkes are incouraged to almes by their Alcoran, as acceptable to God, and meritorious

in it felfe, if given without vaine-glorie, and of goods well gotten, alledging it to be a tempta-

tion of the Deuils, to abstayne from Almes, for feare of impouerishment. Their more publike Almes confift in factifices (if not fewrongfully termed) upon their feltinals, or performance of

vowes : when Sheepe and Oxen are flaine by the Prieft, and divided amongst the Poore, the

Owner not so much as retayning a part thereof. They say, they give much in private: and in

truth, I have seene but few Beggersamongst them. Yet sometimes shall you meet in the streets

with couples chained together by the necke, who beg to fatisfie their Creditors in part, and are

Fooles and

at the yeeres end released of their Bonds, provided that they make satisfaction if they prove afterward able. At their deaths they vitally gine Legacies for the release of Prifoners, the freeing of Bond-flaues, repayring of Bridges, building of Canes for the reliefe of Paffengers : and the great men, to the ered ing of Mosques and Holpitals, which they build not seld me in their life time. But Mahomet the Great, and Solyman the Magnificent, haue in that kind exceeded all others: whose stately and sumptuous structures doe give a principall ornament to the Citie: where the ficke and impotent are prouided for, and the stranger entertayned (for here been Innes) the reuenue of that of Mahomets, amounting to an hundred and fiftie thousand Sultanies. To these therebelong Physicians, Chyrurgions, Apothecaries, the charge thereof committed o vnto their Priefts, who bring vp a certayne number of youths in the Mabimetan Law. and frequently pray for the departed foules of the Founders in the Chappels of their Sepulchres. They extend their charitie to Christians and Iewes, as well as to them of their owne Religion; nay, Birds and Beafts haue a tafte thereof. For many onely to let them loofe, will buy Birds in Cases, and bread to give vnto Dogges; for most have in this Citie no particular owners, being reputed an vocleane Creature, and therefore not fuffered to come into their houses, thinking it neuertheleffe a deed of pietie, to feede and prouide them kennels to litter in, most of them repairing to the Sea fide nightly, where they keep fuch a howling, that if the wind fit South-ward, they may be easily heard to the vpper side of the Citie of Pera.

With the Stoicks they attribute all accidents to destinie, and constellations at birth. Since 20 death can be neither haffned nor avoided, being withall perswaded, that they die bravely that die fighting : and that they shall be rewarded with Paradile that doe fpend their bloud vpon the enemies of their Religion, called Shabids, which is Martyrs, by them. For although they repute murder to be an execrable crime, that cries to Heauen for vengeance, and is neuer forgiuen : vet are they commanded by their law, to extend their profession by violence, and without compaffion to flaughter their Oppofers. But they line with themselues in such exemplary concord, that during the time that I remained among it them (it being aboue three quarters of a yeare) that during the time that I contains a Mahometan, nor breake into ill language; but if they Mahometan offer violence to a Mahometan, nor breake into ill language; but if they fochance to do, a third will reproue him, with, Fie, Muffel-men, fall out! and all is appealed, may in this be He that gues a blow hath many gashes made in his fieth, and is led about for a terror, but the examples to 30 man-shayer is deliuered to the kindred or friends of the slaine, to bee by them put to death with Christians. all exquisite torture.

ð. III.

The Mustie, Cadileschiers, Diuans: Manners and attire of the Turkes. The Sultan described, and his Customes and Court. The Customes of the Greekes. Sir THO: GLOVES.

HE dignitie of the Chaliph among the Turkes, with much abatement, doth now re- The Muffi. maine in the Maftiet (which name doth fighthe An Oracle, or Answerer of doubts)

as Successors to Ebinbecher, Omen and Ozemen; the other being both High-Priess and

Princes; these Patriarchs, as it were, and Sourraignes of their Religion. Throughout the whole Turkib Territories, there is but one, who ever resideth in the Royall Citie, or followes the person of the Emperour. He is equall to the ancient Popes, or rather greater both in repute and authoritie. The Grand Signier doth rife at his approach to falute him, and fets him by him, and gives him much reverence. His life is onely free from the Sword, and his fortunes most rarely tubiect to subversion. The Emperour vndertaketh no high designe without his ap-56 prouement. He hath power to reverse both his sentence, and the sentence of the Divan, if they be not adjudged by him conformable to the Alcoran, but his owne is irreuocable. In matters of difficultie they repaire to him, and his exposition standeth for a Law. To conclude, he is the supreme Indge, and rectifier of allactions, as well Civill as Ecclefiasticall, and an approver of the Inflice of the Militarie. The place is given by the Grand Signiors, to men profoundly learned in their Law, and of knowne integritie. He seldome stirres abroad, and neuer admits of impertinent conversation. Grave is his looke, grave is his behaviour; Highly affecting filence, and most Bare of Beech. For when any come to him for judgement, they deliver him in writing the flate of the question, who in writing briefly returnes his oraculous answer. He commonly weareth a vest of greene, and the greatest Turbant in the Empire : I should not speake much out of com-60 paste, should I say as large in compaste as a bushell. I oft have beene in this mans Serraglio, which is neither great in receit nor beautie, yet answerable to his small dependancie, and infrequencie of Sutors. He keepeth in his housea Seminarie of Boyes, who are instructed in the mysteries of their Law. He is not restrained, nor restaineth himselfe from pluralitie of Women. His incomes are great, his disburfings little, and confequently his wealth infinite; yet he is a bad pay-

whereof, as some say, he hath not so few as a thousand. Next in place to the Mufile, are the Caddlefchiers, that are Iudges of the Armies, (but nor to meddle with the lanifarie) and accompany the Beglerbegs when they goe into the field. Of thele there are onely two; one of the European part of the Empire, and another of the Alian. There are also elected by the Grand Signior, as the Cadies by them, (yet to bee allowed by the other and to kiffe his Veft:) of whom there is one in euery Towne, who befides their foiring! Functions, doe adminster Iustice betweene partie and partie, and punish offenders. Of inferior Priests, there be some particularly appointed to sing at the tops of their steeples, and to congregate the people; some to looke to the Ceremonies, and some to reade and interpret the Alcoran, to There are also other religious Orders, which I omit to speak of, being of their owne taking vp. neither commanded nor commended, and rather to be effeemed Vagabonds then religious perfons, confider we either their life or their habits.

Teffinonic.

Among the Turkilb Commandements, one is that drawne originally from our Saujours. Then that not doe what then wouldit not have done to thee : whereupon for the most part their Civill Inflice is grounded, not difagreeing greatly from the Lawes of Mofes. All euictions there, as elfewhere depend voon Witnesses; yet will not the oath of a Christian or a lew be received against a Turke, as will a Turkes against them, and theirs one against another. But the kindred of Man bomet have their fingle testimonies in equall value with the testimonies of two others : notwithstanding the oath of a Mahometan will not be taken, if impeached for a drinker of Wine, or ear 20 ter of Swines fielh. E iery Baffa keepes a Divan (fo they call the Court of Iuftice) within his Province : but the highest of all, and to which they may appeale from all other, is that, which

The Divar.

is kept foure daies of the weeke in the Grand Signiors Serraglio, from whence no appeale is They were for admitted but to the person of the Muftie. Here the Vazier Bassa of the Port, who are nine in number (or as many as then are not otherwise employed) doe fit in Iustice (where also they four, to whom conful to f matters of State, and that publikely, not excepting against Embassadours Drogs assistant men, lightly alwaies present: so presume they of strong hand) affisted by the Admirall, and *Chancellor, (the * Treasurer in the same roome keeping his Court) where all causes whatsoe Caputain Boffa, ter that are heard, within the space of three daies are determined, the Great Viziers Ballabeine Prefident of the reft. But Briberie, not knowne vntill lately amongst them, hath so corrupted \$ their integritie, that whole causes (if they beare but a colour of right) doe seldome miscarrie where gifts are the Aduocates : yet this is the best of the worst, that they quickly know their fuccesses. But many times when the oppressed subjects can have no Justice, they will in trouve attend the comming forth of the Emperor, and by burning Straw on their heads, or holding vo Torches, prouoke his regard : who brought vnto him by his Mutes, doth receive their petition. which oftentimes turnes to the ruine of some of those great ones. For assurances of Purcha-

Afforances

Punishments,

Now the punishments for offenders, be either Pecuniarie or Corporall. To impose the former, they will torge all the flanders that they can, to eate vpon the leffe circumfpect Christians, but the other are seldome uniustly inflicted. Their formes of putting to death, (besides fuch as are common elfe-where) are impaling vpon stakes, ganching (which is to be let fall from on high vpon hookes, and there to hang vntill they die by the anguish of their wounds, or more miserable famine,) and another invented (but now not here vied) to the terror of mankind, by some deuillish Perillus, who deserved to have first tasted of his owne invention, viz: they twitch the offender about the waste with a Towell, enforcing him to draw up his breath so by often pricking him in the body, vntill they have drawne him within the compasse of a spanne; then tying it hard, they cut him off in the middle, and setting the body on a hot plate of Copper, which feareth the veines, they fo vp-propping him during their cruell pleasure: who not onely retaineth his sense, but the faculties of Discourse, vntill hee be taken downe, and then departeth in an inftant. But little faults are chaftifed by blowes, received on the foles of the feet with a bastinado, by hundred at a time, according to the qualitie of the misdemeanor. A terrible paine that extendeth to all the part of the body, yet haue I feene them taken for money. The Master also in this fort doth correct his Slave ; but Parents their Children with firipes on the belly. The Subalbie is as the Conftable of a Citie, both to fearch out, and pu-

fes, they have no Indentures, no fines and recourries. The omitting of a word cannot frustrate

their estates; nor Quirks of Law prevaile against Conscience, All that they have to shew, is a

little Scedule, called a Hodget or Sigil, onely manifesting the possession of the Seller, as his of

of the place, doth frostrate all after-claimes whatsoever.

whom he bought it, or from whom it descended vnto him, which vnder-written by the Cade 49

It remayneth now that we speake of the persons of the Turkes, their dispositions, manners and fashions. They be generally well complexioned, of good statures, and tull bodies, proportionably compacted. They nourish no haire about them, but a Locke on the crowne, and on their faces onely; esteeming it more cleanly, and to bee the better prepared for their superstitious washings. But their Beards they weare at full length, the marke of their affected grauitie,

and token of freedome, (for flaues have theirs flauen) infomuch that they will fcoffe at fuch Christians as cut, or naturally want them, as if fuffering themselves to be abused against nature. All of them weare on their heads white Shashes and Turbants, the badge of their Religion, as is Their Turthe felding of the one, and fize of the other, of their vocations and qualitie. Shafnes are long bans. Towels of Callico woond about their heads : Turbants are made like great Globes of Callico Shafties. too and thwarted with Rols of the famet having little copped Caps on the top, of Greene or Red Veluet, being onely worne by persons of ranke, and he the greatest that weareth the greatelt, the Mufiles excepted, which ouer-fizes the Emperours. And though many Orders have particular Ornaments appointed for their heads, yet weare they these promiscuously. It is an to especiall fauour in the Timer to Suffer the Christian Tributarie Princes and their chiefest Nobles to weare white heads in the Citie : but in them, what better then an Apostaticall Infinuation ? But to beginne from the skinne, the next that they weare is a Smock of Callico, with ample Callico fleeues, much longer then their Armes : vnder this a paire of Calfouns of the fame , which reach fmockes. to their ancies, the rest naked, and going in Yellow or Red Slip-shooes, picked at the toe, and plated on the fole : over all they weare a halfe-fleeued Coate girt vnto them with a Towell : their necke all bare, and this within doores is their Sommer accourrement. Ouer all when they goe abroad they weare Gownes, some with wide halfe seemes, (which more particularly belong Gownes, to the Greciani, Jothers with long hanging fleenes, and the Gownes buttened before, and a third fort worne by the meaner fort, reaching but a little below the knee, with hanging fleeties not much longer then the arme, and open before; but all of them vngathered in the shoulders. In the Winter they adde to the former, Calfouns of Cloth, which about the small of the legge are fewed to fhort smooth Buskins of Leather without soles, fit for the foote as a Glove for the hand, lining their Gownes with Furre, as they doe their Coats; having then the fleeues for goals ted Waift-coats vnder them) reaching close to their wrifts. They weare no Gloves, At their Girdles they weare long Handkerchers, some of them admirable for value and workmanship. They never alter their fashions, not greatly differing in the great and vulgar, more then in the richnesse. Cloth of Tissue; of Gold and Silver, Veluet, Starlet, Sartin, Damaske, Chamolets, lined with Sables, and other coffly Forres, and with Martins, Squerrils, Foxes and Corry-skins; worne according to their feuerall qualities. But the common weare is Violet Cloth. They re-20 tayne the old Worlds custome in giving change of Garments, which they may apely doe when one Vest fitteth all men, and is of every mans fashion.

The Clergie goe much in Greene, it being Mahomets colour; and his Kinimen in greene Sha. Clergie anire, thes, who are called Emers, which is Lords: the women also weare fomething of Greene on their heads, to be knowne. There lives not a Race of ill-fauoureder people; branded perhaps by God for the finne of their feducing Ancestor, and their owne wicked affirming of heredizary holinesse. But if a Christian out of ignorance weare Greene, hee shall have his clothes torne off from his backe, and perhaps be well beaten. They carrie no Weapons about them in the Citie; Their Knipes onely they thrust under their Girdles great crooked Kniues of a Dagger-like size, in sheathes of Metall; the Hafts and Sheathes of many beeing fet with stones, and some of them Gate. 40 worth fine hundred Sultanies. They beare their bodies vpright, of a flately gate, and elated countenance. In their familiar falutations they lay their hands on their bosomes, and a little decline their bodies: but when they falute a person of great ranke, they bow almost to the ground, and kiffe the hemme of his Garment. The ornaments of their heads they never put off voon any occasion. Some of them perfume their Beards with Amber, and the in-fides of their Turbants : and all of them affect cleanlinesse so religiously, that belides their customarie Lotions, and daily frequenting of the Bannias, they never fo much as make water, but they wash both Cleannesse. their hands and prinities : at which butineffe they fequefter them felues, and couch to the Earths reuiling the Christian whom they see pissing against a wall, and sometimes striking him. This they doe to prevent that any part of either excrement should touch their Garments, esteeming Offices of nait a pollution, and hindering the acceptation of Prayer, who then are to bee most pure in heart ture,

50 and habite.

So flouthfull they be, that they never walke vp and downe for recreation, nor vie any other Sloth. exercise but shooting, wherein they take as little paines as may bee, fitting on Carpets in the shadow, and sending their Slaues for their Arrowes. They also shoote against Earthen wals seuer shootings kept moy ft in shops and private houses for that purpose, standing not aboue sixe paces from the marke, and that with fuch violence, that the Airow passes not seldome through : nay, I have feene their Arrowes shot by our Embassadour through Targets of Steele, pieces of Brasse two inches thicke; and through wood, with an Arrow headed with wood, of eight inches. Their Bowes are for forme and length, not vnlike the Lath of a large Crosse bow, made of the hornes Bowes. 60 of Buffoloes, intermixed with finewes, of admirable workmanthip, and fome of them exquifitely

gilded. Although there bee Wrastlers amongst them, yet they bee such as doe it to delight the people, and do make it their profession; as do those that walke vpon Ropes, wherein the Turkes Wrastlers, are most expert; going about when they have done, to every particular Spectator for his voluntary beneuolence. Of Cards and Dice they are happily ignorant; but at Cheffe they will play all Games,

Ho: fes

ding they anoyde the dishonest hazard of money. The better fort take great delight in their Horses, which are beautifull to the eye, and well ridden for feruice, but quickly iaded if held to a good round trot (for amble they doe not) in an indifferent lourney. But the Turkes doe not lightly ride to fait as to put them vnto evther. Their Sadlles be hard and deepe, though not great, plated behind and before; and some of them with Siluer, as are their massie Stirrops, and the Reines of their Bridles, suted vnto their costly Caparifons. When they ftand in the Stable they feed them for the most part, if not altogether. with Barley; being here of small value, and onely seruing for that purpose. They litter them in their owne dung, field dryed in the Sunne and pulmerated, which keepes their skinnes cleane, to

the day long : a fport that agreeth well with their fedentarie vacancie; wherein notwithflan-

The Turker doe greatly reverence their Parents, (so commanded to doe by their Law) as the

meane perions.

Renerence to Lett hand be-

Inferiour his Superiour, and the young aged, readily guing the prioritie to whom it belongeth (the left hand as they goe in the itreets preferd before the right, in that made Mafters thereby of the Sword of the other, and the chiefest place the farthest from the wall) lining together as if all of a Brother-hood. Yet give they no entertaynment vnto one another, nor come there any into their housesbut vpon speciall occasion, and those but into the publike parts thereof; their women being neuer feene but by the Nurfes and Eunuches which attend on them, Yea, fo iealous Hofpitalitie. they are, that their Sonnes when they come to growth are separated from them. As their houses are meane, fo are their furnitures: hauing nothing on the in-lide but bare white walls, valeffer to be some effectial roome, in the house of some of high qualitie. But the Roofes of many of them are curiously seeled with in-laid wood, adorned with Gold and Azure of an excessive costlineffer the greater part of the floore, and that a little advanced, beeing covered with Tubio Carpets, whereon when they tread they doe put of their flip-shooes. Many of their roomes haue great out windowes, where they fit on Cushions in the heate of the day. They lee vpon Mattrelles, some of Silke, some of stayned Linnen, with Bolsters of the same, and Quilts that are sutable, but much in their clothes, the cause perhaps that they are so louse. Nor shame they thereat, many shall you see sit publikely a lousing themselues in the Sunne; and those mo

They have neither Tables nor stooles in their houses, but sit crosse-leg'd on the stoore at their 30

Sir croffe-

victuals, all in a Ring. In stead of a cloth, they have a Skinne spread before them; but the better fort fit about a round boord, flanding on a foot not patt halfe a foot high, and brimd like a Charger. Their Difhes haue feet like standing Bolls, and are fo fet one vpon another, that you may est of each without the remooning of any. Their most ordinarie food is Pillaw, that is, Rice which lath beene sod with the fat of Mutton. Pottage they vse of sundry kinds, Egges fryed in Ho ney, Tansies, (or something like them) Pasties of sundry Ingredients : the little slesh which they eate is cut into gobbets, and either fod, or tofted in a Furnace. But I thinke there is more in London spent in one day then is in this Citie in twentie. Fish they have in indifferent quantitie. But the Commons doe commonly feed on Herbes, Fruits, Rootes, Onions, Garlicke, a beaftly kind of vnpreffed Cheefe that lyeth in a lumpe; hodge-podges made of Flower, Milke, to and Honey, &c. fo that they live for little or nothing, confidering their fare, and the plentie of all things. They are wayted vpon by their flaues given them, or purchased with their Swords, or Money : of these to have many it is accounted for great Riches. When one hath fed suffici-Meales and ently he rifeth, and another taketh his roome, and so continue to doe vntill all be satisfied. They eate three times a day, but when they feaft they fit all the day long, vnleffe they rife to exonerate Nature, and forth- with returne againe. They abitaine from Hogs-fielh, from bloud, and from what hath dyed of it felfe, vnleffe in cases of necessitie. Their vsuall drinkeis pure water, yet have they fundry Sherbets, (fo call they the Contections which they infuse into it) some made of Sugar and Limons, some of Violets, and the like, (whereof some are mixed with Amber) which the Richer fort diffolue thereinto. The Honey of Sio is excellent for that purpole, 50 and they make another of the juyce of Raifins, of little cost, and most vivally drunke of. Wine is prohibited them by their Alcoran, they plant none, they buy none : but now to that libertie they are growne (the naturall Tim (e excepted) that they will quaffe freely when they come to the house of a Christian : infomuch, as I haue seene but few goe away vuled from the Embassadors Table. Yet the feared disorders that might ensue thereof, haue beene an occasion that diuers times all the Wine in the Citie hath beene staued (except in Embassadors houses) and death hath beene made the penaltie vnto fuch as prefumed to bring any in. They preferre our Beere about all other drinkes. And confidering that Wine is forbidden, that water is with the rawelt (efpecially in this Clime) the deareness of Sherbets, and plentie of Barley (being here fold not for aboue nine pence a bushell) no doubt but it would proue infinitely profitable to such as should 60

bring in the vie thereof amongst them. Although they be destitute of Tauernes, yet have they their Coffa-houses, which something relemble them. There fit they chatting most of the day, and sippe of a drinke called Coffa (of the Berrie that it is made of) in little China diffies, as hot as they can fuffer it : blacke as fooie, and taiting not much visite is (why have discretion, and procureth algoritie: many of the Coffamen keeping beautifull boyes, who ferue as stales to procure them customers. The Turkes are allo incredible takers of Opium, whereof the letter Afra affoordeth them plentie: carrying it a- Ovium. bout them both in peace and in warre; which they fay expelleth all feare, and makes them courasious: but I rather thinke giddy headed, and turbulent dreamers; by them, as should feeme by what hath beene faid, religiously affected. And perhaps for the felfe-same cause they Tobacco raalfo delight in Tobacco; they take it through reeds that haue joyned vnto them great heads of king punished. wood to contayne it, I doubt not but lately taught them, as brought them by the English: and

to were it not sometimes lookt into (for Morat Bassa not long since commanded a Pipe to bee thrust through the nose of a Turke, and so to be led in derision through the Citie,) no question but it would proue a principall commoditie. Neuerthelesse, they will take it in corners, and are fo ignorant therein, that that which in England is not faleable, doth paffe here among it them for most excellent.

They are by their law in generall exhorted to marrie, for the propagation of their Religion: Marriage, and hee ill reputed of, that forbeareth fo to doe vntill the age of fine and twentie. Euery man is allowed foure wines, who are to be of his owne Religion, and as many Concubing flaues as hee is able to keepe, of what Religion forcer. For God (fayth the Alcoran) that is good and gracious, exacteth not of vs what is harsh and burdensome; but permits vs the nightly com-

20 panie of women, well knowing that abitinency in that kind is both grieuous, and impossible. Yet are they to meddle with none but their owne peculiars: the offending woman they Punishment of drowne, and the man they gansh. They buy their wives of their parents, and record the con-Adulterie. tract before the Cadi, which they after folemnize in this manner. Many women are insuted by the mother of the Bride, to accompanie her the night before the marriage day, whereof they frend a great part in feathing; then leade they her into a Bath, where they anoint and bathe her: fo breaking companie they depart vnto their feuerall refts, and in the morning returne to her chamber, where they tricke her in her richest ornaments, tying on her silken Buskins with knots easily not ynknit. The Bridegroom having feasted a number in like manner, in the morning they also repaire to his house, in their best apparell, and gallantly mounted, from whence they

30 fet forward by two and by two, to fetch home the Bride, accompanied with Musike, and conducted by Sagdich, who is the neerest of his kindred; vnto whom the Bride is delivered, with her face close couered. Who set aftride on horse-backe, hath a Canopie carried ouer her, in such fort as no part of her is to bee discerned. So the troope returning in order as they came, after them are carried in Serpets (a kind of baskets) their presents and apparell; then followeth she, and lastly her slaves, if any have beene given her. The Bride-groome standeth at his doore ro receive her, who is honoured by his guefts (yet goe they not in) with fundrie prefents before their departure. If shee be of qualitie, shee is led to the Bride chamber by an Eunuch, where women stand prepared to vndresse her. But the Bride-groome himselse must vntye her Buskins (as amongst the Romanes they did their Girdles) to which hee is fayne to applie his 40 teeth. Now, he is to entertaine his wives with an equal refpect, alike is their diet, alike is

their apparell, alike his beneuolence (for fuch sweet stuffe is contayned in the precepts of their Doctors) visible they consent to give or change turnes; or elfe they may complaine to the Cadi, After the first, and procure a divorcement. But the husband may put away his wife at his pleasure: Who may fish Lanie, marrie vnto another within foure moneths after, prouided thee proue not with child, and then Chalescends. not vntill to long after her delinery. But if he will have her againe, hee must buy her: and if Pag. 237. after the third divorce, another is first to lie with her, as a punishment inflicted for his leuitie: They give him the reverence of a mafter; they are at no time to denie him their embracements, whom he toucheth not againe vntill they have beene at the Bannias. They receive chaftifement from him, and that they hold to be an argument of his affection. They feed apart, and interso meddle not with houshold affaires. All that is required at their hands, is, to content their huf-

bands, to nurse their owne children, and to line peaceably together: which they doe (and which lealousee is strange) with no great icalousie, or enuie. No male accompanies them about twelve yeeres old, except they be Eunuchs: and so strictly are they guarded, as seldome seene to looke out at their doores. They be women of elegant beauties, for the most part ruddie, cleere, and smooth as the polished luorie; being neuer ruffled by the weather, and daily frequenting the Bannias. but withall by the selfe-same meanes they solainly wither. Great eyes they have in principall repute: affected both by the Tinks and the Grecians, as it should feeme, from the beginning. For Mahomet doth promife women with fuch, (nay as big as Egges) in his imaginarie Paradite. And of those the blacker they be, the more amiable : insomuch that they put betweene the eye-lids

60 and the eye a certaine blacke powder with a fine long penfill, made of a minerall brought from the Kingdome of Fez, and called Alcohole; which by the not diffracefully stayning of the lids doth better let forth the whitenesse of the eye; and though it trouble for a time, yet it comforteth the fight, and repelleth ill humours. Into the same hue (but likely they naturally are fo) doe they die their eye-breies, and eye-browes (the later by Arte made high, halie circular, and

Qqqqqq

to meet, if naturally they doe not) so doe they the haire of their heads, as a foyle that maketh the white seems whiter, and more becomming their other perfections. They part it before the midft, and plaite it behind, yet sometimes wearing it disheueled. They paint their nayles with a yellowish red. They weare on the top of their heads a Cap not whike a Sugar-losfe, yet little flat, of paift-boord, and coursed with Cloth of filuer or Tiffue. Their vinder-garments (which within doores are their vppermost) doe little differ from those that bee worne by the men, which wee will prefent to the eye to avoide repetition.



Barbs and

The better fort about the upper part of their armes, and smalls of their legs weare bracelets, and are elsewhere adorned with Tewels. When they goe abroad they weare ouer all long Gowns of violet cloth, or fearlet, tyed close before, the large fleenes hanging ouer their hands a hauing Buskins on their legs, and their heads and faces fo mabbled in fine linnen, that no more is to be seene of them then their eyes : nor that of some, who looke as through the fight of a Beutr. Women kept For they are forbidden by the Alcoran to disclose their beauties vnto any, but vnto their fathers and husbands. They neuer stirre forth, but (and then alwayes in troupes) to pray at the graues, 50 and to the publike Bannias: which for excellency of buildings are next to their Molques. But having in part alreadie described some of their formes, I will a little treate of their vie; which have beene in times past, and are at this present, in such request with these Nations (as once with the Romanes, as may appeare by their regardable ruines) that few but frequent them twice in the weeke, as well for their health, as for delight and cleanlinesse. For the Romackes crudities, proceeding from their viual eating of fruits, and drinking of water, is thereby concocted: which also after exercise and travell rettoreth to the wearied bodie a wonderfull alacritie, The men take them vp in the morning, and in the afternoone the women. But both amongst the Romanes did ordinarily frequent them together: a custome, as they say, continued in Swiferland at thisday, and that amongst the most modest. The men are attended your by men, and the women by women; in the outermost roome they put off their clothes, and hauing Aporns of flayned linnen tyed about their waites, then entring the Baths to what degree of heate that they please, (for severall roomes, and severall parts of them are of severall temperatures, as is the water let in by cocks to wash the sweat and filth of the bodie) the servicors wash them, rub

them, firetch out their ioynts, and cleanse their skins with a piece of rough Grogeram; which done they shaue the heads and bodies of men, or take away the haire with a composition of Rusma (a minerall of Cyprus) and vnsleakt Lime; who returning to the place where they left their clothes, are dryed with fresh linnen; and for all this they pay not about three or foure Afpers : folittle, in that endued with revenues by their Founders. But the women, doe anoint their bodies with an oyntment made of the earth of Chies, which maketh the skin foft, white. and thining; extending that on the face, and freeing it from wrinkles. Much vinaturall and Vinatural luft and thining; sexening true on the race, we steem in the work of the state of the comparison of the state of the comparison of the state of the comparison of the state of the

Now, next to their wines were may inpace of their flaues: for little difference is there made Slanes. betweene them : who are Christians taken in the Warres, or purchased with their Money. Of betweene them a who are Christians rategain the Warres, or purchated with their Money. Of these there is everely Marker in the Christ. Where they are to be fold as Horse is haring: the Sale of them inch being rated according to their faculties, in the product and the sale of them inch being rated according to their faculties, in the product is the sale of them youths and beauties, who are set out in best because a strength of the sale them at their pleasure. But a Christian will not lightly fell her whom he hath layne with . but tien,

give her her libertie. If any of their Slaves will become Mahomet aus, they are discharged of their bondage : but if a Slaue to a Turke, he onely is the better intreated. The Turkes do vie their Bond-women with little leffe refpet then their Wives, and make no difference betweene the connewumen with anter some respect tient their values, and make no difference between the Children begotten both of the one and the other wholes together without ielousle, it being allowed by their irretigious Religion. Notwithstanding, their Wines doe onely receiving 30 as proper vinto them, their Sabbaths benevolence. The old and most deformed, are put to most

The Men-flaues may compell their Mafters before the Cadie, to limit the time of their bon-dage, or fet a price of their redemption, or elfe to fell them vnto another: but whether of the two, they lightly referre to the Slaues election. If they bee onely fit for labour, they will accept of the time; but if skilfull in any craft, of the price; which expired or payed, they may returne into their Countries. But Gally-slaves are seldome released, in regard of their small number, and much employment which they have for them; nor those that are Slaves vnto great ones, to whom the Cadies authoritie extends not. Many of the Children that the Timbes Gelded Eudoe buy (for these Markets doe affoord of all Ages) they castrate, making all smooth as the much 40 backe of the hand, (whereof diners doe dye in the cutting) who supply the vies of Nature with

a Siluer Quill, which they weare in their Turbants. In times past, they did but onely geld them. but being admitted to the free converse of their women, it was observed by some, that they more then befittingly delighted in their focieties.

But others fay, that Selymus the second, having seene a Gelding cover a Mare, brought in an monest them that inhumane custome. The first that ever made Eunuch, was Semiranis. They are heere in great repute with their Maiters, trufted with their States, the Gouernment of their Women and Houses in their absence; having for the most part beene appropried faithfull, wife, and couragious; infomuch as not a few of them have come to fit at the sterne of State, (the second Vizer of the Port being now an Eunuch,) and others to the Gouern-

But now ipeake we of their Funerals. After their death, the Men by the Men, and the Wo. Funerals. men by the Women, are laid out in the midit of the roome. When divers of their Priefts do affemble, and having performed certaine idle ceremonies, as in wrapping their beades about it, and in the often turning it, inuoking God to have mercy on the departed; which done, they wash it. shaue it, and shroud it in Linnen, which they leave votied both at the head and feet. Then lav they the Corfe on a Beere, placing a Turbant at the vpper end, and carrying it to the Graue with the head forward : some of the Deruises going before with Tapers, the Priests after finging, and laftly, his friends and acquaintance. But persons of principall qualitie have their Horses led before them, with Enfignes trailed on the earth, and other rites of that nature; diners of the San-60 tons going before, naming of God, and shaking of their heads, and turning about vntill they fall downe giddy. The fides and bottome of the grane are boorded, and a boord laid ouer the Corfe,

to keepe the earth from it, leaving a sufficient compasse to kneele in. For they are of opinion, that two terrible Angels, called Mongir and Gnanequir, doe prefently repaire vnto the grave, and

put the foule againe into the body, as if (faith the Alcoran) a maniflound put on a fhire mis put the tome against most memory, as it is a factor of the winding pheron in this, and a rating him on his knees, with his head vacoured, (the winding-lines being life vishing for that purpose) demand of him in particular, how he hat he being difficilly the life which into well, the one firstes him on the head with a hander in fall-lines into the captulished when the contribution of the captulished with a hander in fall-lines into the captulished when the captulished with a hander in fall-lines in the captulished with the captulished with a hander in fall-lines in the captulished with a hander in fall-lines in the captulished when the captulished with a hander in the captulished when the captulished with a hander in the captulished with the captulished wi tearing him with an Iron hooke; and fo continue to to there him which the day of hide him A Purgatory fo feared, that in their Mattins they petition God to delight then from the example nations of the blacke Angels, the tortures of the Grane, and the well laimey?" But If he have nations or the blacket angers, the confused the Grant and the trained them in his reply, they vanish away, and twith white Angers, come mether place; that one laying his arme under his head; the other fixth gas 1th free, and they prove the first gas and the same and the same and the grant Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting that the province of the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting that the province of the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting that the province of the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting the great Bagart (white of the Whater) for fitting the great Bagart (white of pulchers without couers , filled within with earth, and fet will varietie of Flowers But the common fort are buried by the high-way fides, and fields of most frequency, addoffing to the Crite, having a frone of white Marble more then a foote broad, and foure foote field, the market of the control of the cont with Tart do Characters, erected at the head, and another at the feete, the grant between lying low like a trough. To these the women flocke every Thursday in multastudes, weeping over their Children, Husbands, Kinsfolkes, and dead Progemeors, often killing the flores, and progenitors their delivery from the aforesaid blacke Torturers : many times lesting bread and merica their graves, (a custome also of the Pagans) for Dogges and Birts to denoure, as well as to relieue the poore, being held an available almes for the deceased. The better fore doe mourne so in white (as for blacke, I never faw it worne by a Tarke) and but for a little feafon. And the Women are not to marry by their law, vntill foure moneths and ten daies after the death of their Husbands. To speake a word or two of their Sciences and Trades : some of them have some little

White and Blacke.

1200

Phylicke.

ence then the grounds of Art. In Aftronomy they have some in-fight; and many there are that wadertake to tell fortunes. These frequently sit in the streetes of the Citie, resorted water fuch as are to take a journey, or goe about any bufineffe of importance. They have good gift in Poetry, wherein they chant their Armours in the Perfian tongue to vile Mulicke; yet are they Poetry, wherein they chant their artificials in the Argent State of the Milkey Feeter of the forbidden for do do by their Law Citterners, Harpes and Recorders, being their phinicial list of fruments. But their lowd Infruments doe rather afright, then delight the hearing. On a time to Grand Signie was perfected to their forme choir festions. Mujkes: but the foolish Mulicians

knowledge in Philosophie. Necessitie hath taught them Physicke, rather had from experis

Pottry. Mulicke.

(whose wit lay onely in the ends of their fingers) spent so much time in vnseasonable tuning that he commanded them to avoid, belike efteeming the the rest to be answerable. They studie not Rhetorick, as fufficiently therein instructed by Nature; nor Logick, fince it serves as well to Liberall Arts. delude as informe, and that wifedome (according to the opinion of the Epicures) may be comprehended in plaine and direct expressions. Some there be amongst them that write Histories,

but few reade them, thinking that none can write of times past truly, fince none date write the

Printing reie. truth of the present. Printing they reiect, perhaps for feare lest the virtuersalitie of learning.

Ced. hould subuert their falle grounded religion and policie, which is better preserved by an ignorant to obedience: Moreover, a number that live by writing would bee vindone, who are for the most part of the Priest-hood. The Tarkish tongue is loftie in found, but poore of it selle in substance. Language, For being originally the Tartarian, who were needle ignorant Pattors, they were confirmyned to borrow their Termes of State and Office from the Perfiam, (vpon whole rumes they erected their Greatnesse) of Religion (being formerly Pagans) from the Arabians; as they did of Maritime Names (together with the skill) from the Greekes and Italians. In Natolia it is most generally spoken. They vie (as the Persians) the Arabique Character. In Paper, writing they leave out the vowels, vnleffe it be in the end of a word, fo that much is contribed in a little roome. They curiously sleeke their Paper, which is thicke, much of it being coloured and dapled like Chamolets, done by a tricke they have in dipping it in the water. They have 50 Painters amongst them, exquisite in their kind, (for they are not to draw by their Law, nor to

also they have nor lesse faire then durable.

Euery one hath some Trade or other, not so much as the Grand Signior excepted. Their Trades are lightly such as serue for their owne vies, neither much supplying forraine Marts, nor frequenting them. A lazy people, that worke but by fits, and more effeeme of their ease then their profit, yet are they excelline conetous. And although they have not the wit to deceine (for they be groffe-headed) yet have they the will, breaking all compacts with the Christians that they find discommodious, to that they feldome will deale with them. But with one another they buy and fell onely for ready Money, wherein the most of their substance confisteth; the occasion that few suites doe happen amongst them. I have spoken sufficiently, at least what I can of this Nation in generall, now convert we to the Perfon and Court of this Sultan.

have the figure of any thing living) yet now many privatly begin to infringe that precept, and

the Grand Signior himselfe hath a fanne, whereon the battels of Hungarie are painted. Colours

He is, in this yeare 1610, about the age of three and twentie, strongly limited, and of a just Sultan deferiflature, yet greatly inclining to be fat : infomuch as iometimes he is ready to chooke as he feeds, bed, and forme doe purposely attend to free him from that danger. His face is full and duly proportigoed, onely his eyes are extraordinary great, by them efteemed (as is faid before) an excellency in heauty. Fleame hath the predominancy in his complexion. He hath a little haire on his yoperlip, but lesse on his chin, of a darksome colour. His aspect is as haughty as his Empire is large. he heginneth already to abstaine from exercise, yet are there pillars with inscriptions in his Sarrathe, betweene which he threw a great Iron Mace, that memorize both his firength and acsinitie. Being on a time rebuked by his Father Mabomes, that he neglected fo much his exer- Cruell policy.

CHAP. 8. S. 2. The Sultans ernell policie. His Acts, Attire, Court. & c.

on cifes and studies, he made his reply: That now he was too old to beginne to learne, intimating thereby, that his life was to determine with his Fathers, whereat the Sultan wept bitterly. For he then had two elder Brothers, of whom the eldeft was firangled in the prefence of his Father vpon a falle fuspition of treaton, and the other by a naturall death did open his way to the Empire. Perhaps the confideration thereof hath made him keeps his younger Brother alive, contrary to their cruell sustome; yet strongly guarded, and kept within his Serragio. For hee is of no bloudy disposition, nor otherwise notoriously vicious, considering the austeritie of that souernment, and immunities of their Religion. Yet is he an varelenting punisher of offences, even His Ads.

in his owne Houshold : having caused eight of his Pages, at my being there, to be throwne into

the Sea for Sodomy (an ordinary crime, if effeemed a crime in that Nation) in the night time. being let to know by the report of a Canon, that his will was fulfilled. Amongst whom, it was given out that the Vice-royes naturall Sonne of Sicilia was one, (a youth lately taken Prifoner. and preferred vnto him) yet but fo faid to be, to dishearten such as should practife his escape. His valour refts yet votried, having made no war but by difputation, nor is it thought that he greatly affects it, despairing of long life in regard of his corpulency. Whereupon he is now building a magnificent Mofque, for the health of his foule, all of white Marble; at the Eaft end, and Southfide of the Hippodrom, where he first broke the Earth, and wrought three houres in person. The like did the Easter, bringing with them presents of Money, and Slaues to further the building.

His occupation (for they are all tyed to have one) is the making of Ruory Rings, which they His occupation weare on their Thumbs when they shoote, whereupon he workes daily. His Turbant is like in 30 shape to a Pompion, but thrice as great. His vnder and vpper garments, are lightly of white His sture. Sattin, or cloath of Silver Tifued with an eye of Greene, and wrought in great branches. Hee

hath not fo few as foure thouland perfors that feede and live within his Serragio, befides Capa. His Course gier, of whom there are five hundred attired like lanizaries, but onely that they want the form ket in the front of their Bonnets, who waite by fifties at every gate. The chiefe Officers of his Court are the Malter (as we may terme him) of the Reputh, the Treasferer, and Steward of his Honfield, his Cup-bearer, the Agas of the Women, the Controlled the Homoglans: who also free reth ha Bargs, and is the principall Gardiner. Divers of these Tempelans are marching before the Grand Signier at solemne thewes, in a vaine oftentation of what they would vadergoe for their Lord, gathering vp the skinne of their Temples to thrust Quils through, and sticke therein Fea-40 there for a greater brauery, fo wearing them to their no small trouble, vntill the place putrifie :

fome when the old breakes out, cutting new holes close to the broken. Yea the Standard-bearers of this Crue, thrust the states sometimes of their Sandards through the skinne and fat of their bellies, resting the lower end on a stirrop of Leather, and so beare them through the Citie, Fiftly. Must he hath borne deafe and dumbe, whereof fome few be his daily companions; the reft are his Pages. It is a wonderfull thing to fee how readily they can apprehend, and relate by fignes, euen matters of great difficultie. Not to speake of the multitude of Ennechs, the Foot-men of his Guard, Cookes, Sherbet-men, (who make the foresaid beurage) Gardiners and Horse- His Women keepers. Relate we now of his Women, wherein we will include those as well without as and Virgins.

And first begin we with his Virgins, of whom there seldome are so few as fine hundred, kept in a Serraglio by themselues, and attended on onely by Women, and Eunuches. They all of them are his Slaues, either taken in the warres, or from their Christian Parents, and are indeed the choifest beauties of the Empire. They are not to be presented to the Emperour, vntill certains moneths be expired after their entrance, in which time they are purged and dieted, according to the custome of the ancient Persians. When it is his pleasure to have one, they stand ranckt in a Gallery, and the prepareth for his bed to whom he giveth his Handkerchiefe, who is delivered to the aforesaid Aga of the Women, (a Negro Eunuch) and conducted by him into the Sultans Serraglio. She that beareth him the first Sonne, is honoured with the Title of Sultana, Sultana But for all his multitude of Women, he hath yet begotten but two Sonnes and three Daughters.

60 though he be that way vnfatiably giuen, (perhaps the caufe that he hath so few) and vseth all forts of foods that may inable performance. He cannot make a free Woman his Concubine, nor haue to doe with her whom he hath freed, wnlesse hee doe marry her, it being well knowne to the wickedly witty Roxolana: who pretending denotion, and defirous for the health, forfooth, Roxalana Rory. of her foule to creek a Temple, with an Hospitall, imparting her mind to the Mufii, was told

by him that it would not be acceptable to God, if built by a Bond-woman. Whereupon the put on a habite of a counterfeit forrow, which possessed the doting Solyman with such a compassion. that he forth-with gaue her her freedome, that the might purfue her intention. But having after a while fent for her by an Eunuch, thee cunningly excused her not comming, as touched in Conscience with the valawfulnesse of the fact; now being free, and therefore not to consent with his pleafure. So he whose soule did abide in her, and not able to line without her, was confirmined to marrie her. The onely marke that thee aymed at, and whereon the grounded her succeeding Tragedies. This also hath married his Concubine, the mother of his younger Sonne, (the being dead by whom hee had the eldeft) who with all the practifes of a politicke Stepdame, endeuours to lettle the fuccession on her owne, adding, as it is thought, the power of 10 Witch-craft to that of her beautie, she being passionately beloued of the Sultan. Yet is the called Cafet Cadoun, which is, the Lady without haire : by Nature her felfe, both graced and fhamed. Now when one Sultan dieth, all his women are carried into another Serraglio, where those remaine that were his predecessors, being there both strictly lookt vnto, and liberally provided for, The Grand Signior not feldome bestowing some of them (as of his Virgins, and the women of his owne Serraglie) vpon his great Baffas and others, which is accounted a princ, all honour. But for his Daughters, Sifters, and Aunts, they have the Baffar given them for their Hutbands: the Sult an faying thus, Here Sifter, I gue thee this man to thy Slave, together with this dagger, that if

be please thee not, thou maist kill him. Their husbands come not vnto them vntill they be called : it Musoanoso: his Sifters and but for speech onely, their shooes which they put off at the doore, are there suffered to remaine: 20 but if to lye with them, they are laid ouer the bed by an Eunuch, a figne for them to approach. out it to tye with them, they are and out the dea by an Edulucia, a night for them to approach, who creep in vnto them at the beds feete. Miljappa and Hadir, (two of the Vietro 1 of the Port) have married this Sultans Sifter, and Necce; and Mahomet Baffa of Cairo, his daughter, a child of fixe yeares old, and he about fiftie, having had prefents fent according to the Turkilo folemnities. who giveth two hundred thouland Sultanies in dowry. Not much in habite doe the Women of the Serraglio differ from other, but that the Fauourite weares the ornament of her head more high, and of a particular falhion, of beaten Gold, and inchaced with Gems; from the top whereof there hangeth a veile that reacheth to her anckles, the rest haue their Bonets more depresed. Entertainment yetrich; with their haire distincted When the Sultan entertainment. When the Sultan entertayneth Embassadours, hee sitteth in a roome of white Marble, gli- 30

firing with Gold and Scones, vpon a low Throne, fpred with curious Carpets, and accommod ted with Culhions of admirable workmanship; the Baffas of the Bench being by, who stand like fo many Statues without speech or motion. It is now a custome that none doe come into his presence without presents, first fastned vpon his Basser, as they say, by a Persian Embassadour; who thereupon sent word to the Sopby his master that hee had conquered Tarkie. The ftranger that approacheth him is led betweene two : a custome obsessed ever fince the first Amurath was flaine by the Seruian Cobelitz, a common Souldier, who in the ouerthrow of Coffma, rifing from among the dead bodies, and reeling with his wounds, made towards the Sultan then taking a view of the flaine, as if hee had something to say; by whom admitted to speech, hee forthwith stabl him with a Dagger, hid under his Casocke for that purpose. They goe back 40 ward from him, and neuer put off their Hats; the shewing of the head being held by the Tarke to bee an opprobrious indecency. Now, when hee goeth abroad, which is lightly enery other Friday (belides at other times vpon other occasions) vnto the Mosque: and when in state, there is not in the world to be seene a greater spectacle of humane glorie, and (if so I may speake) of fublimated manhood. For although (as hath beene last) the Temple of Santia Sophia, which he most viually frenquenteth, is not aboue a stones cast from the out most gate of the Serragia, yet hath he not to few as a thousand Horse (besides the Aschers of his Guard, and other Footmen) in that fhort procession; the way on each fide inclosed, as well within as without, Capagier and lanteuries, in their fearlet Gownes, and particular head-ornaments. The Chaufes ride formoft with their gilded Maces; then the Captaines of the lanizaries with their Aga, next 10 the Chieftaines of the Spachies, after them their Sanziales; those of the foulderie wearing in the fronts of their Bonnets the Feathers of the Birds of Paradife , brought our of Arabia, and by. fome eftermed the Phoenix. Then follow the Baffas and Beglerbegs: after them the Pretorian foot-men, called the Solacchi, whereof there be in number three hundred; these are attired in Calsouns and Smockes of Callico, wearing no more over them then halfe-sleeved Coates of Crimfon Damaske, the skirts tuckt under their girdles : having Plumes of Feathers in the top of their copped Bonnets; bearing Quipers at their backes, with Bowes ready bent in their left hands, and Arrowes in their right, gliding along with a maruellous celeritie. After them feuen or ninegoodly Hories are led, having Capations and Trappings of inethinable value, followed by the abolized Sation gallantly mounted. About whom there runne fortic Pacin (io called m 60 that they are naturally Perfians) in high-crowned brimlesse Caps of beaten Gold, with Coats of Cloath of Gold girt to them, with a girdle called Chochiach; the Pages following in the reare, and other Officers of the Houshold. But what most deserueth admiration amongst so great a concourse of people, is their generall filence : infomuch, as had you but onely eares, you might

suppose (except when they salute him with a fost and short murmur) that men were then folded in fleepe, and the World in mid-night. He that brings him good newes (as vnto others of inferiour condition) receiveth his reward, which they call Muifolooke, But this Sultan to avoid abules in that kind, doth forth-with commit them to Prison, vntill their reports bee found true or false; and then rewards or punisheth accordingly. Although he spends most of his time with his women, yet fometimes he recreates himselfe in hawking, who for that purpose hath(I Hiwking and with ins women, yet to me the received in many thoughout his Dominions: Hawkes; and many of themeuer attendant. Their long-winged Hawkes they whittle not off as wee doe.

but putting a bridle about their nockes, they make them couch to their fifts, and fo galloping to the Brooke, fling them off at the fowle, being reared fodainly by the noyfe of a Drumme that hangs at their Pummels, by vie made cunning in that kind of preying. They carrie them on the right hand. A hardie Hawke is highly effeemed; and they have a kind of them called Shahars, much leffe then a Falcon : yet fo strangely couragious, that nothing flyeth in the Ayre that they will not bind with. They also hawke at the field, for I haue seene them carrie Spaniels with them : yet those in beautie not like vnto ours, but of a bastard Generation. They feed their Hawkes with hard Egges when fielh is wanting, and feldome bestow of them the mewing. Although he affects not hunting, yet entertaynes he a number of Huntimen. Their Dogs they Huntimen. let goe out of flips in pursuit of the Wolfe, the Stagge, the Bore, the Leopard, &c. Those that ferue for that purpose are stickle haired, and not vnlike to the Irish Grey-hounds.

Now the yearely Reuenue which he hath to defray his excessive disbursements, such a World of people depending vpon him, amounts not aboue fifteene Millions of Sultanies, (beides the entertaynment for his Timariots) which is no great matter, confidering the amplitude of his Dominions : being possessed of two Empires, aboue twentie Kingdomes, beside divers rich and populous Cities; together with the Red, molt of the Mid-land, the Agean Euxine, and Proponticke Seas. But it may be imputed to the barbarous wastes of the Twitib Conquetts, who depopulate whole Countries, and neuer re-edifie what they ruine. So that a great part of his Empire is but thinly inhabited, (I except the Cities) and that for the most part by Christians, whose pouertie is their onely fafetie and protectreffe. But his cafuall in-comes doe giue a mayne accellion to his Treasurie : as Taxes, Customes, Spoiles, and Extortions. For as in the Sea the 3c greater filhes doe feed on the leffe, fo doe the Great ones here on their Inferiours , and hee on them all ; being, as afore-faid, the Commander of their lines, and genetall Heire of their fubflances. He hath divers Mines of Gold and Silver within his Dominion, that of Suderocapfain Macedon, having beene as beneficiall vnto him as the largest Citie of his Empire, called anciently Christes: and not voknowne to Philip the Father of Alexander; who had the Gold from thence wherewith he covned his Philips, as also from those of Cranider, from whence he yearely extracted a thousand Talents. He hath onely two forts of Coine, the Sultanie and the Afper. The Sultanie is equal in value to the Venice Zeccene, and fixe score Afters amount to a Sultanie.

called rather After, of the whitenesse thereof, in that confishing of filuer. Constantinople is faid to contayine feven hundred thousand persons : halfe of them Turkes, and the other halfe lewes and Christians, and those for the generall Grecians. But Pera hath three Greens Christians for one Wahomeran : for no lew dwels in Pera, though they have their shops there. We omit to speake of the Iemes vntill we come into Iemrie; and now will bend our discourse to the Grecians: a Nation no leffe feattered then they, but infinitely more populous. For not onely three parts of the Inhabitants of all Greece and Romania are Grecians, but almost all that dwell in the Hands of the Mid-land Sea, Propontis and Ageum. Infinite numbers there are of them both in the Leffe, and the Greater Afia, and in Africa not a few. For (befides divers Colonies by them formerly planted) when Antipater, Perdiccas, Seleucus, Lysimacus, Antigonus, Ptolomie, and the rest of the Successors of Alexander had shared his Empire among them, they endequoured as much as they could to plant their new-got Kingdomes with their Countrey men; whose C Posteritie in part remay neth to this day, though vasfalled to the often changes of forraine Gouernours : fupplyed by the extension of the latter Greeke Empire, who yet retayne whereforener they liue, the r Name, their Religion, and particular Language. A Nation once fo excellent that their Precents and Examples doe full remayne as approved Canons to direct the mind that endeaupureth vertue. Admirable in Arts, and glorious in Armes; famous for government, affectors of freedome, enery way noble; and to whom the rest of the World were reputed Barbarians. But now their knowledge is converted, as I may fay, into affected ignorance, (for they have no Schooles of Learning amongst them) their liber is into contented slavery, having lost their minds with their Empire. Now they delight in eale, in shades, in dancing and drinking and no further for the most part endeauour their profit, then their bellies compell them. They are 60 generally axed by the stranger Christians of perfidiculaese, infomuch, as it is growne into a Prouerbe, Chi fide in Grego, fara intrigo, in them more anciently noted. There be divers rich men of them in Pera, but thote I thinke were descended of the Genoes; who were as hath beene faid, the owners of that Citie. Many of them exercise Merchandize in Veffels called Carmafals, and have of late gotten the vie of the Compalle, yet dare they not adventure into the Ocean. They

are of diuers Trades in Cities, and in the Countrey doe till the Earth (for the European Turky, doe little meddle with Husbandry) and derife their Vines, by them onethy planted. They have a Ceremonic of baptizing of their Wines, which is the reside not that the Invery will not drinks thereof: performed in the memorie, and on that day wherein Christ connected water into wines the Priet in the middle of his Carisions powring described and quantities of water.

Drinkings.

And although the Greekes doe now for the most part imitate the Turkes, (I means heere in Turkie) in fitting at their meate, yet retaine they still that vice of immoderate drinking. They pledge one another in order; and he that cals for wine out of his turne, is reputed vocinit Their Glasses are little, but at every draught emptied; and when they have once drunke hand they observe no Rule, but prouoke one another to excesse. Neuer silent; and ever and anon kife In fing those that fit next them on the cheeke and fore-head ; and so likewise they doe in their falutations after a long absence, and to those to whom they would give an affurance of their good will. Vied of long, as appeareth by the Scriptures, amongst these Easterne Nations. But to kisse their women is an unsufferable wrong; unsessed to betweene the Resurrection and AG. cention: ving also this greeting, that, Our Sautour is rifen. The women for the most part are browne of complexion, but exceedingly wel-fauoured, and excessuely amorous. Their Garments differ little from theirs amongst whom they line. They couer not their faces (the Virgins excepted) valeffe it bee with Painting; vling all the suppliment of a sophisticate beautie. And not without cause, for when they grow old, they most grow contemptible, beeing put m doe the drudgeries of the house, and many times to waite on their children. They are coffly in 20 their attyre, and will complaine to the Patriarke, if their Husbands maintayne them not according to their substances. The Greekes, as the Turkes doe vie little houshold stuffe : and two vpon Mattreiles.

Their lan-

Now the Greetons them Cohes, (except Some few) are ignorant in the ancient Greek, it be, ing called the Lesime Greek, and is a Language peculiar to the Learned. Yet the vulgar Greek doch not differ fo farre from the fame, as the Ireless from the Lesine, corrupted note so much by the mixture of other Tongues, as though a singine wretchlefinelle. In some places they freake it more purely than in others. For the Boyes of Pera will laugh, when they heare the more barbarous Dialede of other maritime Greeness. And there he yet of the Leavaisar that speake is good Greek, chaugh not Grammatically) that they underfland the Learned; and vunderfland on the vulgar. The Litungie is read in the ancient Greeke, with not much more profit perhaps to the nucle people, then the Lesine Scaucio of the Remains Church to the litterate Papils.

The foure Pa-

naps to the time people, then the Lorent section of the America of the Lorentz appear.

They have four Patriarchs: One of Confirminaple, another of Alexandria, the third of largeless, and the fourth of Assisted. He of Constitutionaple bath which his lunification all Peice, lopeningfus, Greeia, Thracia, Daile, Mafia, Macedonia, Epirus, Albania, Dalmaia, llyria, a great part of Polonia, Ruffia, the llands of the Adriatiche Sea, and of the Archipelagus, with Cardis, Rhodes, Coss, almost all the leffer Afia, Calchie, not a few that inhabit about the Fennes of Matis. and Northerne shoare of Euxinus : as Sicilia and Calabria were, vntill they returned vnto the Sea of Rome. Vnder the Patriarch of Alexandria, are those of Egypt and Arabis. The Greekes of Palestine, and of the Countries thereabout, doe obey the Patriarch of Ierusalem, 40 And he of Antioch, who hath his feate in Damafous, (for Antiochia is now defolate) hath fishieft vnto him the Grecians of the leffer Armenia, Celicia, Beritus, Tripoly, Aloppo, and other places of the greater Afia. In all these parts they have the free exercise of their Religion : with publike Temples, and numbers of firong Monasteries. If a Patriarch dye, another is elected by a Synod of Bishops. But the Patriarch of Conflantinople hath the Supremacie of the rest assigned him by the Councell of Chalcedon, as Metropolitan of the Imperiall Citie : whose Dioceffe exceedeth the other fo much, in that most of those Northerne Nations were wonne to Christianitie by the Industry of his Predecesson, and reduced to their Government. So if we doe consider it, the Grecian Religion both in extent and number exceedeth the Romane. And as the Papifts at- 50 tribute an extraordinarie holinesse to Rome, so doe the Greekes vnto Athos, a Mountaine of Masedona; so named of Asbon the Sonne of Neptune, deckt with still-flourishing Trees, and abounding with Fountaines : called also the Holy Mountayne by the Christians. A place from the beginning dedicated to Religion; lying directly West from Lemma : and so high, that though it be feuen hundred furlongs diftant; yet is it faid a little before the fetting of the Sunne, to cast a shadow on that Iland.

This fretcheth our into the Sea, and isoynes vato the Continent by an Ifthmos, about a mile and halfb troat which was cut through by Xerxes, (as hath been: intimated before) and made circummanigable. But time hath left now no imprefficions of his barbarous labour. It is well night hare dayes iourney in length, confidering the difficulties of the way, and halte a dayes oner. The GO thereof refinebleth the forme of a man, fivredeed on his backe from Weft vito Eaft; and formad fearcording to Strade) to the firmilitude of Alexander. This Mountayne is onely inhabited by Greiza Monkes, whom they call Coloirous, vin-intermised with the Laities of whom there are there refiding not fo few as fixe thouland, that line in Monalteries fitrough munited against the lancations of Robberts and Pirats, Of thefe there be in number twentie foure. The

Caloiere

Calciusi weare Gowiese of blacks, of a honely fluffe, with blooks of the fame, and their hare at till length. They never marrie, abfaine from fifth, and often (eipenally during their Lenes) from fift that hath blood in it. They line hardly, feeding on Biftor, Omons, Omos, Herbs, and the fifth at they fifth the deploying Seas. For they all of them labour for their fifthenance, leaving flute. Mosailerits becames it the motings; and imploying the day, fome in tillage, fome in the Vineyards, John in making off Boats, Iomia in fifthing, others at home frinne, wears, two, and doesill the Officis that belong with owners 16 that none but are buffed about one time or another, to the belonds of their particular Couents; and menthey bee that ate onely meete for both Divingfeits. For amongs 16 main, not pat three or four can write or reade, throughout a whole Monatteric inflowuch, that at their Lyungeits, that is read to them fift, which they are to this after. In their Monatterics many excellent Manu-Griphs have been prefetured, but those the day of the Course of the Course

The Patriackosé Conflationole wete hiercofore men in fingular granitie and learning, but now in thing left: rairier chofen for temporal respects, then either for their knowledge or dealer in the patrial of the patrial patr

Four Lents they have in the yeare, and then a datastable sime it is to eate shelt, or fish that hat holoud in it (except six the Lent before Easter, when all fores of fish may bee eaten by the Lattice) but the left she they extend of the may bee eaten by the Lattice; but the left she they extend of the may bee eaten by the Lattice; but the left she they extend on the left she addition of the may be eaten by the but on Saurdayes they teath, in regard that it was the old Subath. They compute the yeare as we doe. They yield no Supremacite to the Remane Papacie, but hold that Church for Schlimaticall. And although many times out of the necessities of their Affaires, and to purchase reliefe, they have treated of a Conciliation; and lometimes it hath beene by their Agents concluded: yet what they have done that been generally received upon their returne, both by the Greaker and those other Nations that profess their Religion. Of their Marriages I have elfe-where fooken, and now conclude wee will with their Rouncals; wherein they retayne not a few of cheir ancient and Heathen Ceremonies. Their lamentaions are the same that they were, and beyond all civilities.

The widnen betimes in the monthing doe meete at appointed places, and then cry out maine"O ly, bearing of their breafts, tearing their haire, their faces and garments. And that the clamour
may be the greater, they hire certaine I en ## women, that have loweder toyoes, ioyning therewith the prayles of the dead, from the houre of his Autiuitie wnto the houre of his disfolution;
and keeping time with the melantholicke Musficke. Nor want they flore of Spectators, partly
drawner thirter to delight their eyes, and partly by itealouse. For then the choice, and prime
woman of the Citie (lithe deceased were or note) doe aff their Obsequeize, with bolomes diplaid, and their haire dif-situated a glad that they have the occasion to manifest their beauties,
which at other times is fectualed from Admiress.

The reason why the **Orecian did burne their dead, was, because that part which was didine in them, should as it were in a fierie Chirico againe re-assemble of Celestiall Habitations, as 60 vato Earth the Earthly returned. They yield to quench the fire with Red Wine, and gathering the bones together to include them in Vinesa as the Vines in Sepülchtes, (which hadnot citely, melfe they were stane in sighting for their Country') exhibiting games, and prizes for the Victors in homour of the deceased. Notwithstanding all were not burnt, but some buried in their apparell, as now being Christians they are: who wile Externer-voction, as inducted by S. **Lamers,

yet

Calaicres.

THE STREET

yet not onely denie the Romane opinion of Purgatorie, but furthermore erroniously maintayne, that neither the soules of the blessed nor damned doe suffer either toy or torment, or shall till the generall Judgement. But enough of the Grecians.

The Germane Emperour, the Kings of England and of France , have heere their Liedger Em haffidours : as the Venetions their Baily, and divers tributarie Princes their Agents. Some meerly employed about State Affaires; others together therewith, about the trafficke of their Nations. But the English onely negotiates for the Merchants, having two in the hundred wpon eneons. But the English of the year of the state of a great proportion of prouision from the Grand Symior. The English Confulling of Lives is in his dipoling and accountable to him; and out of that of Alexandra he has ho final librar, though freue by a French man. Thirt hash to hin forme contention between him and the French about the protection of the Dutch Merchants: but now they doe divide the profits. The English Conful of Alepso is absolute of himselfe, ver hath from hence his redreiles of injuries whole chiefe employment is to protect the perions and goods of our Nation, to labour a reuenge of wrongs, and a restitution of losses. And to gine this no more then his due, for this place none can be more fufficient; expert in their Language. and by a long experience in their natures and practifes: being moreouer of luch a spirit, as not to be danted. And furely, his chiefest fault hath beene his misfortune; in the too violent, charge. able, and successelesse solliciting of the restitution of the Prince of Moldania, (whom adventue hath rather made crafty then honest :) whose house doth harbour both him and his dependents: beeing open also to all of our Nation: a Sanctuary for poore Christian slaues that ferreth sye hither, whom hee causeth to bee conveyed into their Countries, and redeemeth not a few with 20

his money.

d. IIII.

The Holy Land described, the Countrie, Cities, Inhabitants, boly Places, and memorable Rarities of Terufalem. :

* His Tourney mes Coos, Rhodes tie of delight or profit.

Ow are we in the Holy . Land, confined on the North with the Mountaynes of L. banus, and a part of Phanicia : on the East it hath Calofyria and Arabia Petres : on the South the same together with Idumes, the West is bounded, a part with Phanicia, and the rest with the Mid-land Sea. Distant from the Line one and thirtie degrees, exc.3. For leauing tending wnto thirtie three, and something vpward. So that in length from Das (the same with Contamipule in Contamipule in Contamipule in Contamipula in Contamipula in Contaminum Contamipula in Contaminum fortie miles; where broadest not fifty. A Land that flowed with Milke and Honey s in the midden he failed deft as it were of the habitable World, and under a temperate Clime. Adorned with beautiful don he failed dett as it were of the manifector work, and lower producing excellent Waters; and no part emp-

It is for the most part now inhabited by Moores and Arabians . those possessing the Valleyes,

and thefe the Mountaynes. Turkes there be few, but many Greekes, with other Christians, of

Thriftineffe.

Of the lev is

all Sects and Nations, such as impute to the place an adherent holinesse. Here be also some leves, yet inherit they no part of the Land, but in their owne Countrey doe line as Aliens; a people feattered throughout the whole World, and hated by those amongst whom they live; yet inferred as a necessary mischiese: subject to all wrongs and contumelies, which they support with an inuincible patience. Many of them haue I feene abufed; fome of them beaten : yet neuer faw Their patience I lew with an angry countenance. They can subject themselves vnto times, and to what some may advance their profit. In generall they are worldly wife, and thrine wherefoeuer they fet footing. The Turke employes them in Receit of Cultomes, which they by their policies have 50 inhaunced, and in buying and felling with the Christian: beeing himselfe in that kind a Foole and eafily coozened. They are men of indifferent flatures, and the best complexions. Throughout the Turkes Dominions they are allowed their Synagogues: fo are they at Rome, and elicwhere in Italie; whose Receit they justifie as a retayned testimonie of the verity of Scriptures; and as being a meanes of their more speedie conucrions : whereas the offence that they receive from Images, and the loffe of goods vpon their conversions, oppugne all perswafions whatforyou may traide ore. Their Synagogues (for as many as I have feene) are neither faire without, nor adorned think anther, & within more them with Currayne at the vpperend, and certaine tanges (to fare as I could more fully perceive) not lightened by day-light, In the midit flands a Sciffold, like thole belonging to Querefters, in some of our Cathedrall Churches: wherein he stands that reades their Law and sings 60 their Lyturgie : an Office not belonging vnto any in particular, but vnto him (to hee bee free from deformities) that shall at that time purchase it with most money; which redounds to their publike Treasurie. They reade in saunge Tones, and sing in Tunes that have no affinitie with Musicke : ioyning voyces at the seuerall closes. But their fantasticall gestures exceed all Barba-

rifme, continually wearing with their bodies, and often immping vp-right (as is the manner in Dances) by them esteemed an action of zeale, and figure of spiritual elevation. They pray filently, with ridiculous and continual noddings of their heads, not to bee feene and not laught at. During the time of Seruice their heads are veyled in linnen , fringed with knots : in number answerable to the number of their Lawes: which they carrie about with them in proceffion : and rather boaft of then observe. They have it stucke in the lambs of their doores. and covered with glaffe: written by their Cacams, and figned with the names of God, which their Law. they kiffe next their hearts in their goings forth, and in their returnes. They may not print it. but it is to bee written on Parchment , pr-pared of purpole (the Inke of a prescribed compoto fition) not with a Quill, but a Cane. They doe great reuerence to all the names of God, but especially to Iehona; insomuch that they never vie it in their speech. And whereas they handle with great respect the other Bookes of the old Testament , the Booke of Hester (that part that is Canonicall, for the other they allow not of) writ in a long Scroll they let fall on the ground as they reade it , because the name of God is not once mentioned therein ; which they attribute to the witdome of the Writer, in that to be peruled by the Heathen. Their other books are in the Spanish Tongue and Hebrew Character. Although they agree with the Tinke in Circumcifion, detellation of Images, abilinency from Swines-fielh, and diners other Ceremonies:

neuertheleffe, the Tiekes will not fuffer a lew to turne Mabonetan, vnleffe hee first turne a kind Their attite of Christian. As in Religion they differ from others, so doe they in Habite, in Christendome 20 enforcedly, here in Turkie voluntarily. Their vnder-garments differing little from the Turkes in fashion, are of purple cloth; ouer that they weare Gownes of the same colour, with large wide fleeues, and claiped beneath the chin, without band or collar: on their heads high brimleffe Caps of purple, which they move at no time in their falutations. They shave their heads all ouer; not in imitation of the Turke: it being their ancient fashion. Their familiar Speech is Spanile; vet few of them are ignorant in the Hebrew, Turkife, Morifco, vulgar Greeke, and Italian Languages. Their onely itudies are Divinitie and Physicke: their occupations Brocage and Vfurie; yet take they no interest of one another, nor lend but vpon pawnes; which once forfeited, are vnredeemable.

They marrie their daughters at the age of twelve, not affecting the fingle life, as repugnant to focietie, and the law of creation. The Sabbath (their denotions ended) they chiefly employ in nuptiall beneuclencies, as an act of charitie, befitting well the fanctitie of that day. Although no Citie is without them throughout the Grand Signiors Dominions, yet live they with the greatest libertie in Salonica, which is almost altogether inhabited by them, Euery Salonica; male about a certaine age, doth pay for his head an annuall tribute. Although they be gouerned by the Turkib Iuftice; neuerthelesse, if a Iew deserne to die by their law, they will either pri- The Iewe uately make away or falfly accuse him of a crime that is answerable to the other in qualitie, and deferring like punishment. It is no ill turne for the Franks that they will not feed at their Tables. For they eate no flesh, but of their owne killing; in regard of the intrals, which being Diet, dislocated or corrupted, is an abomination vnto them. When so it falls out, though exceeding good (for they kill of the best) they will sell it for a trifle. And as for their Wines, being for the most part planted and gathered by Grecians, they dare not drinke of them, for feare they be baptized : a ceremonie whereof we have spoken alreadie. They sit at their meate, as the Turks doe. They busie in the fields by themselues, having onely a stone set vpright on their Graues, Burials, which once a veere they frequent, burning of incenie, and tearing of their garments. For certaine dayes they fast and mourne for the dead, yea even for such as have beene executed for offences. As did the whole Nation at our being at Conflavinople for two of good account that were impaled your flakes; being taken with a Tawish woman, and that on their Sabbath. It was credibly reported, that a Taw, not long before, did poylon his fonne, whom he knew to be vnrestrainably lasciulous, to preuent the ignominie of a publike punishment, or losse by a chargeso able redemption. The fielh confumed, they dig up the bones of those that are of their families; whereof whole bark-fuls not feldome doe arrive at Iappa, to be conveyed, and againe interred at Iernfalem: imagining that it doth adde delight vnto the foules that did owe them, and that they shall have a quicker dispatch in the generall indgement. To speake a word or two of their Women women. The elder mabble their heads in linnen, with the knots hanging downe behind. Others doe weare high Caps of plate, whereof fome I have seene of beaten Gold. They weare long quilted Waltcoats, with Breeches ynderneath; in Winter of cloth, in Summer of Linnen; and ouer all when they flirre abroad, loofe Gownes of purple flowing from the shoulders. They 60 ded by their husbands. They are good work-women, and can and will doe any thing for pro-

are generally fat, and ranke of the fauours which attend upon fluttith corpulency. For the most part, they are goggle-eyed. They neither shin conversation, nor are too watchfully guarfit, that is to be done by the Art of a woman, and which futes with the fallion of these Countries. Upon injuries received, or violence done to any of their Nation, they will crie out mainly at their windowes, heating their cheekes, and tearing of their garments. Of late they have beene bleft with another Hefter, who by her fauour with the Sultan, preuented their intended

maffacre, and turned his furie vpon their accusers. They are so well skilled in lamentations, the the Greekes doe hire them to crie at their funerals.

But now returne we vnto Gaza. It flands upon a hill furrounded with valleyes; and those againe wel-nigh entironed with hills, most of them planted with all forts of delicate fruits; The building meane both for forme and matter: the belt but low, of rough stone, arched within and flat on the top including a quadrangle: the walls furmounting their roofes, wrought through with not-sheards to catch and strike downe the refreshing winds, having spouts of the same, in colour, shape and fight, resembling great Ordnance. Others couered with mats and hurdles: fome built of mud; amongft all, not any comely or conuenient. Yet there are fome religious left, and some impressions, that testifie a better condition: for divers simple roofes are supported to with goodly Pillars of Parian marble, fome plaine, fome curiously carued. A number broken in pieces doe ferue for thresholds, jambs of doores, and sides of windowes, almost vnto enery beggarly Cottage. On the North-east corner, and fummitie of the hill, are the ruines of huge arches funke low in the earth, and other foundations of a stately building. From whence the last Sanziack conveyed marble Pillars of an incredible bignesse; enforced to faw them alunder ere they could be remoued : which hee employed in adorning a certaine Molque below in the valley. The Castle now being, not worthie that name, is of no importance : wherein lieth the Sanziack (by some termed, a Bassa) a sickly young man, and of no experience, who go-uernes his Province by the aduce of a Moore, His Territories begin at Arista. On the West fide of the Citie, out of fight, and yet within hearing, is the Sea, feuen furlongs off; where they 20 haue a decayed and vnfafe Port, of small availe at this day to the inhabitants. In the valley on the East side of the Citie, are many strugling buildings; beyond which, a hill more eminent then the reft, on the North fide of the way that leadeth to Babylon; faid to be that (and no queftion the same described in Scriptures) to which Samfon carried the gates of the Citie : voon whose top there standeth a Mosque, environed with the Graves and Sepulchres of Mahometaus. In the Plaine betweene that and the Towne, there stand two high Pillars of marble, their tops much worne by the weather : the cause of their erecting voknowne, but of great antiquitie. South of this, and by the way of Agypt, there is a mightie Cifterne, filled onely by the fall of raine, and descended into by large staires of stone: where they wash their clothes, and water their Cattell. The fame day that wee came, wee left the Caranan, and lodged in the Citie, under an Arch

Reason of low

vnto Christians , to withstand the fodging entrance of the infolent Tarker. For they heere doe liue in a subjection to be pitied; not so much as daring to have handsome houses, or to employ Slauery of the their grounds to the most benefit : so dangerous is it to be esteemed wealthy. During our abode here, there came a Captaine with two hundred Spabeis, fent by Morat Balla to raife thirtiethorfand Dollars of the poore and few Inhabitants of this Citie. The Grecians have certaine small Vineyards: but that they have Wine, they dare not be acknowne, which they fecretly prefe in their houses. They burie their Corne vnder ground, and keepe what they are to spend in long veffels of clay; in that it is subject to bee eaten with wormes (as throughout Lorper) and 40 will not last if not fo preferued. In the principall part of the Citie they have an ancient Church, frequented also by the Copties. The Greekijh women (a thing elsewhere vnseene) here court their faces, dying their hands blacke; and are apparelled like the Moores of Cairo. Euery Saturday in this Church-yard upon the Graues of the dead, they keepe a miferable howling; crying of custome, without teares or forrow. The Subaffee would have extorted from vs wel-nigh as much money as wee were mafters of: which wee had hardly anoyded, had not the ficke Sanziack (in that administred vnto by our Physician) quitted vs of all payments. So that there is no trauelling this way for a Franke, without speciall fauour.

in a little Court, together with our Affes. The doore exceeding low, as are all that belong

Saturday

Thrust out of our lodging (as we were about to leave it) by the vncivill Spaheis, who seized on divers of our necessaries : on the eighteenth of March wee returned to the Caraum. Wee 50 payed halfe a Dollar apiece to the place for our Camels: and for their hire from Caire, for those of burthen, fixe Sultanies; for fuch as carried paffengers, eight. Wee gaue them more, two Sultanies apiece to proceed vnto Ierusalem. Here the Caranan divided : not a small part thereof taking the way that leadeth vnto Babylon. The next day wee also dislodged: leaving the lenes behind vs., who were there to celebrate their feltinall. The Captaine of the Carauan departed the night before, taking his way through the mountainous Countrey by Hebron: out of his denotion to visite the granes of the Patriarchs; a place of high effeeme amongst them, and much frequented in their pilgrimages. The ancient Citie (the feat of Danid before he tooke Sion from the lebufites) is veterly ruinated. Hard by there is a little Village, feated in the field of Mechpelah, where frandeth a goodly Temple, erected over the Caue of their buriall , by Helena the 60 mother of Constantine; converted now into a Mosque. Wee past this day through the most pregnant and pleafant valley that ever eye beheld. On the right hand a ridge of high Mountaines, (whereon stands Hebron:) on the left hand the Mediterranean Sea, bordered with continued hills, befet with varietie of fruits: as they are for the most part of this dayes journey. The

Champaine betweene about twentie miles ouer full of flowry hils ascending leafurely, and not much turmounting their ranker valleys, with groues of Olives, and other fruits differfedly adorned. Yet is this wealthy bottome (as are all the reft) for the most part vninhabited, but only for a few small and contemptible Villages, possessed by barbarous Moores; who till no more then will ferue to feed them : the Graffe waite-high, vnmowed, vneaten, and vselesty withering. Perhaps so desolate in that infested by the often recourse of Armies, or masterfull Spabeis: who before they goe into the field (which is feldome vntill the latter end of haruest, left they thould flarue themselves by destroying of the Corne) are billized in these rich pastures, for the benefit of their Horses, lying in Tents besides them; committing many outrages on the adiov-

to ning Townes and diffressed passengers.

Ten miles from Gaza, and neere vnto the Sea, flands Afcalon, now a place of no note; more Afcalon, then that the Tarke doth keepe there a Garrison. Ten miles North of Ascalon along the shoare stands Azotus: and eight miles beyond that Acharon, now places of no reckoning. About two of the Clocke wee pitched by Cane Sedoe; a ruinous thing, hard by a small Village, and not a Cane Sedoe, quarter of a mile from the Sea: the Carauan lying in deepe pattures without controlment of the Villagers. The next day we departed two houses before Sun-rife : descending into an ample valley, and from that into another; having divers Orchards towards the Sea. The Countrev such (but that without trees) as wee past through before. No part so barren, but would proue most profitable, if planted with Vines, and fruits; made more then probable, by those that grow 20 about Gaza. Passing through a spacious field of Oliues, about noone wee pitched on a little hill-

lying East, and within a turlong of Rama, called Ramula by the Moores: which fignifieth Ramula fandy. It is feated in a plaine, on a little riting of the earth, firetching North and South, built of fr. e-stone, the streets narrow, the houses contemptible. Yet are there many goodly ruines, which teffifie farre better building, especially those of the Christian Churches. Here is a Monasterie, much of it standing; founded by Philip the good Duke of Burgundie, in that place where sometimes food the house of Nicodeniu; built for the reliefe and safety of Pilgrims in their passage to lerufalem : and although q itted by the Friers, yet at this day feruing to that purpofe, called

Sion-bonfe, and belonging to the Monatterie of Mount Sion. Joppe was called the Port of Lury; the only one that it had. Then more convenient then now: Joppe. much of it choked with land, and much of it worne with the continual affaults of the waters. Of the City there is no part standing, more then two litle Towers, wherein are certain harquebufes acrosse, for the safe-guard of the harbour. Vnder the cliffe, and opening to the Hauen are certaine spacious Caues, hewen into the rock: some vied for Ware-houses, and others for shelter. The merchandizes here emba qued for Christendome are only Cottens, gathered by certaine Frenchmen, who refide at Rama in the house of Soon. The Westerne Pilgrims doe for the most part arrive Charges of at this place, and are from hence conducted to lerufalem by Attala, a Greeke of Rama; and Dru- Pilgrims. gaman to the Pater-quardian, paying feuen Sultanies a piece for his Mules, his labour, and difcharge of Caphar. The like rate he hath for bringing them backe againe : a great expence to to poore P Igrims for fo fm. Il a journey ; which must be payed although they accept not of his 40 conduct. Yet by this meanes they doe passe securely : hee being in fee with the Arabians that poffesse the Mountames. Now the Carauan did againe divide, the Moores keeping on the way that leadeth to Damafous. Here wee should have payed two Dollars a piece for our heads to a Sheek of the Arabs. But the Sanziack of Gaza had fent voto him that it should be remitted. He came vnto our Tent, and greedily fed on fach viands as we had fet before him. A man of a So call they

tall stature, clothed he was in a Gambalocke of scarlet, buttoned under the chin with a boffe of their Leaders gold. He had not the patience to expect a prefent, but demanded one ; wee gaue him a piece of for the most Sugar, and a paire of Shooes, which he earnefly enquired for, and cheerfully accepted. On the part Santone Sugar, and a parte of Shoote, which the rifing Sunna wee departed. A small remainder of that great ding Comme. Carauan; the Noftraines (fo name they the Christians of the East *) that rode vpon Mules *Pethapsbeand Affes, being gone before. Amongst whom were two Armenian bishops: who footed it most cause most of 30 of the way, but when (alighting themselves) they were mounted by some of their Nation, Be. them are No.

fore wee had gone farre we were flayed by the Arabs, vntill they had taken Caphar of the reft. floriant. The Subaffee of Rama befides had two Med nes vpon every Camell. The day thus wasted did make vs mifdoubt that we should not get that night vnto lerufalem: but the miding of our way (for the Arabs had left vs contrarie to their custome) turned our feare to despaire. Some fixe miles beyond Rama the hills grew bigger and bigger, mixed with fruitfull valleyes. About two miles further wee ascended the higher Mountaines : paying by the way two Medines a head ; but at feuerall places. The passage exceeding difficult; streightned with wood, and as it were paued with broken rockes: which by reason of the raine then falling became no leffe 4. dangerous to our Camels. At length wee came to a small Village, where we first discovered our

erring. Some counfelled to flay, others to proceed; both dangerous alike, the way vicknowne, vnfafe, the inhabitants theeues, as are all the Arabians. Whilest we thus debated, the night itole vpon vs, and bereft vs of the election. The much raine enforced vs to flee for shelter vnto a runous Chappell, where distrust set the watch, which we carefully kept till the morning. Betimes

Reter

cas Doctor of both Lawes. was made one more exact and copicus A. 1619. Out Authors pictures also haue illuftrated thefe Relations but I remit the more curious to his owne Booke, too long for our

wee for looke the Village, descending the way wee had ascended, guided by the chiefe of the Towne, who for a fumme of money had vindertaken our conduct to the top of the Mountaines. hauing hired Affes for our more expedition: yet others croffing vs as wee returned along the Valley, with shewes of violence, would have extorted more money. Our passage for sue houres Valley, with newes of violence, together lay through a narrow freight of the Mountaines; much of our way no other then fuch as feemed to have beene worne by the winters torrent. We past by a ruinous Fort, fested neere a Fountaine, sufficient when it stood, to have made good that passage. In the way wee forang a number of Partridges; others on each fide running on the Rocks; like in colour ynto those of Chios. Ascending by little and little, at length wee attained to the top, which ouertopt and furueyed all the Mountaynes that wee had left behinde vs. From hence to lerufalen 10 toprand furneyed an the mountaying that we way is indifferent even. On each fide round Hils, with ruines on their tops, and Valleyes, fuch as are figured in the most beautifull Land-skips. The soyle, though stonie, not altogether barren, producing both Corne and Oliues about inhabited places. Approaching the North Gare of the Citie, called in times path the Gate of Ephraim, and now of Dannafeus; we onely of all the reft were not permitted to enter. When compating the wall vnto that of the Weft, commanded by the Caffle, we were met by two Franciscan Friers, who faluted and conveyed vs to their Count. Wee entred, as afore-laid, at the west Gate, called the Gate of Iope. On the right hand, and adioyning to the Wall, there standerh a small ill-fortified Castle : yet the onely Fort that belongeth to the Citie; weakely guarded, and not ouer-well flored with Munition: built by the Pifans at fuch time as the Christians inhabited this Citie. Turning on the left hand, 20 Monasterie of and ascending a part of Mount Gibon, we came to the Monasterie of the Franciscans (being now in number betweene thirtie and fortie) who in the yeere 156r. thrust out of that which they had on Mount Sion, had this place affigned them. But of the Founders name I am ignorant: nor is hee much wronged by being forgotten ; fince fo meane a building can give no tame to

The Part-guardian with due complement entertained vs: a reuerent old man, of a voluble tongue, and winning behausour. His name Gaudenius; his Natson, Itag. Eurry third yeare they are remound; and a Succeffor elected by the Pope, from whom they have a part of their exhibition : the rest from the Spaniard and Florentine. Nor is it a little that they get by the refort of the Pilgrims of Christendome. For all that come must repaire to their Couent; other. wife they shall be accused for Spies, and suffer much trouble : the Romane Catholikes rewarding them out of denotion, and the rest out of curtesie : which, if short of their expectations, they will repine at as losers. Wee foure, for eight dayes entertainment bestowed little lesse among them then an hundred Dollers; and yet they told vs wee had hardly payed for what wee had eaten. A costly rate for a monasticall diet. But the Turke is much more fierce vpon them: awavting all advantages that may give a colour to extortion. A little before our comming, a Tarke being denyed by a Friar of fome trifle that hee requested, gaue himselfe such a blow vponthe The femater,

Kinght of the Nois that the bloud guihed forth: and prefently exclayming as if beaten by the other complay
Sepulchre, ned to the Sauciacte; for which Anama they were compelled to part with eight hundred Dollers. Brought much behind hand, as they alledge, with fuch loffes, they vie oft to rehearle 40 them as motives vnto charitie.

The Couent hath also another in-come by the Knights of the Sepulchie; who pay thirtie of those Knigh. Sultanies apiece to the Pater-guardian: who by vertue of his Patent doth give them that dignitie. The Kings of France were Soueraignes of that Order, by whom it was inflituted in the yeere 1099, who granted them divers Immunities. They bare five Croffes Gules, in forme of that which is at this day called the Ierufalens Croffe; reprefenting thereby the flue wounds that violated the Bodie of our Sauiour. None were to bee admitted if of a defamed life, or of these paris, not of the Catholike Religion. They are to bee Gentlemen of Bloud, and of sufficient both in dif-coure and pi-cures; his Sciences. But now they will except against none that bring money, infomuch that at our 10 Books printed being there they admitted of a Romane, by Trade an Apothecarie, late dwelling in Algpo. They take the Sacrament to heare every day a Maffe, if they may conveniently. If warre bee commenced against the Infidels, to serue here in person, or to send other in their steads no lesse serviceable : To oppugne the Persecutors of the Church, to shunne vniust Warres, dishonest Gaine, and private Duells : Lastly, to bee Reconcilers of dissentions, to advance the common good, to defend the Widdow and Orphane, to refrayne from Sweating, Periurie, Blasphemie, Rapine, Vsurie, Sacriledge, Murder, and Drunkennelle: to auoide suspected Places, the companie of infamous Persons; to line chastly, irreproneably, and in Word and Deed to shew themselves worthy of such a Dignitie. This Oath taken, the Pater-guardian layeth his hand vpon his head, as hee kneeleth before the entrance of the Tombe : bidding him to bee Loyall, Valiant, Vertuous, and an vindaunted Sculdier of Christ and that holy Sepulchre. Then gives hee him the Spurs, which hee puts on his heeles; and after that a Sword (the fame, as they fay, which was Godfrojes of Bullein) and bids him vie it in defence of the Church , and himfelfe ; and to the confusion of Infidels : fheathing it

CHAP. 8.S.4. Knights of the holy Sepulcher, Mount Caluarie.

againe, he girts himselfe therewith. Who then arising, and forth-with kneeling close to the Sepulcher, enclining his head upon the same; he is created by receiving three strokes on the shoulour, and by faying thrice, I ordaine thee a Knight of the holy Sepulcher of our Lord lesses Christ, in the Name of the Eather, the Soune, and the Holy Ghost; then kisses he him, and puts about his necke a chaine of Gold, whereat hangeth a lerufalem Croffe: who arifing, kiffes the Sepulcher, and reftoring the aforelaid Ornaments, departeth.

From the top of this Monasterie, furney you may the most part of this Citie: whereof much lies waste; the old buildings (except some few) all ruined, the new contemptible. None exceed two flories : the voder no better then Vaults ; the vpper arched aboue, and standing vpon Ar-In ches, being well confirmed against fire, as having through out no combustible matter : the Roofes flar and covered with Plaister. Inhabited it is by Christians out of their deuotion; and by Tirks, for the benefite received by Christians, otherwise perhaps it would be generally abandoned.

After a little retreshment, the same day we came (which was vpon Maundie-Thursday) we

went vnto the Temple of the Sepulcher, every one carrying with him his P.llow and Carpet. The way from the Monasterie continues in a long descent, (the East side of Gibon) and then a little alcendeth to Mount Caluary. Mount Caluarie a tocky hill, neither high nor ample, was once a place of publicke execution : then without, but now well-nigh within the heart of the Citie, whereupon the Emperour Adrian erected a Fane vnto Venus; but the vertuous Helena (of whom our Countrey may justly glorie) overthrew that receptacle of Paganisme, and built in the Mount Calumy, 20 roome thereof this magnificent Temple, which not onely poffesseth the Mount, but the Garden below, together with a part of the Valley of Careaffes, (fo called, in that they threw thereinto the bodies of the executed) which lay betweene Mount Caluary, and the Wall of the old Citie. The Frontifpice opposing the South, of an excellent structure ; having two joyning doores; the one now walled up, supported with Columnes of Marble, ouer which a transforme ingrauen with Historicall figures; the Walls and Arches crefted, and garnified with Floriery. On the left hand there standeth a Tower, now something runned, (once, as some fly, a Steeple, and deprined by Saladine, of Bels vnsufferable to the Mahometans:) on the right hand, by certaine (teps a little Chappell is afcended, coupled aboue, and fulfained at the corners with pillars of Marble: below through a Wall, which bounds the East fide of the Court, a paire of staires doe mount to the top of the Rocke, (yet no Rocke euident) where is a little Chappell built(as they fay) in the place where Abraham would have facrificed Ifaac ; of much devotion, and kept by the Priest of the Abissimer. This isyneth to the top of the Temple, levell, and (if I forgot not) floored with plaifter. Out of the Temple there arise two ample coupulos; that next the East (courting the East end and Iles of the Chancell) to bee ascended by steps on the out-side : the other, ouer the Church of the Sepulcher, being open in the middle. O who can without forrow, without indignation behold the enemies of Christ to be the Lords of his Sepulcher! Who Let his friende at feathuill times it mounted under a Canopie, to gather Money of Iuch as doe enter: the prostream of the Canopie, to gather Money of Iuch as doe enter: the prostream of the Canopie and the Canopie and

t except he be of some religious Order, who then of what Sect soener, is exempted from pay- for his Secul. 40 ments) wherein is included the Impost due at the gate of the Citie; but the Christians that be cher, Heirit Subject to the Turke, doe pay but a trifle in respect thereof. At other times the doore is sealed for, be unet fablect to the Tunks, doe pay but a trine in respect interior. As once times used to be seated to the started, and not opened without his direction: whereat there hangs there had feuen Cords, which by the Bels that they ring, gue notice to the feuen fleerall Secks of Christians (who have within the Temple continually) of fach as would speake with them, which makes in memory and the second section of the second section section of the second section of the second section of the second section of the second section section of the second section they doe through a little Wicket, and thereat receive the proution that is brought them. Now himfelfewould they doe through a little wicket, and instant exeruse the production to a bought with a two make the foundation even in a place for neuen, much of the Rocke hat heene he wine away, and and parts too low, supplyed with mightic Arches; so that those naturall formes are vetterly denoted that the formed, which would have better fatisfied the beholder, and too much regard hath made them Which is:

The roofe of the Temple is of a high pitch, curiously arched, and supported with great pil- him to permit of Introope of the rempersor and proposed and proposed and functions. After to them, that his fall and functions and functions are the fall and functions and functions are the fall and functions and functions are the fall and functions a we had disposed of our luggage in a part of the North-gallery, belonging to the Latines, the his followers Contessor of the wee gladly might follow him to heaven accepted of; he demaunding first if denotion or curiolitie had possest vs with that desire, So that in their affectifor omitting Pater Nosters, and Aue Maries, wee lost many yeeres Indulgences, which every one and conplace doth plentifully affoord to fuch as affect them, and contented our felues with an Hiltori- veriation, col. place doth plentifully affoord to fuch as affect them, and contented our remes with an artifolical Relation. Which I will not declare in order as flowing, but take them as they lye from the search of the search first entrance of the Temple. Right against the doore, in the midst of the South Ile, and level both the place

code, where by vertue of his death, our Old Men matified & of his Refurection, whereby me line not, but he line in the National Continual Security of the National Sec epentance made the Lords Temple, which the lewift fignified; and to which the Fathers did, and wil men still doe visite their places, by folly peruerred to superflition (as in the forme: Discourse is observed) when Place hath more place then Grace, or religious immitation of those whose holinesse had made the places offer med holy.

Place of anoin- with the pauement, there lyeth a white Marble in forme of a Graues-stone, enuironed with a raile of Brasse, about a foote high: the place (as they say) where leseph of Aramathia, and Nicedomes, anointed the body of our Sauiour with fweete ointments. This they kiffe, and kneele to. rubbing thereupon their Crucifixes, Beades, and Handkerchiefes; yea, whole webs of Linnen. which they carrie into farre Countries, and preserue the same for their shrouding sheetes. Out this there hang feuen Lamps, which burne continually. Against the East end of the stone, there is a little Chappell. Neere the entrance on the right hand, stands the Sepulcher of Godfrer of Bullein: with a Latine Epitaph, thus Englished.

Hic jacet inclitus Godefridus de Buglion qui totam istam terram acquifiuit cultui Christiano, cuus anima requiescat in pace, Amen.

Here lieth the renowned Godfrey of Bullein, who won all this Land to 10 the worthin of Christ, Rest may his foule in peace, Amen.

On the left hand stands his Brother Baldwins, with this inscription.

Rex Balwinus, Iudas al:ar Machabeus, Spes Parriz, vigor Ecclefiz, virius vtriusque: Quein formidabant, cui dona tributa ferebant, Cedar, Ægypti Dan, ac homicida Damascus : Proh dolort in modico clauditur hoc tumulo.

Baldwine the King, another Macabie, The Churches, Countries, frength, hope, both their glory : Whom Cedar, Ægypts Dan, Damascus fraught With Homicides, both fear'd, and tribute brought; O griefe! Within this little Tombe doth lie.

The first and second Kings of Ierusalem. The farre end of this Chappell, called the Chappell of Saint laba, (and of the Anointing, by reason of the stone which it neighboureth) is confined with the foote of Calvarie, where on the left fide of the Altar there is a cleft in the Legend of A. Rocke: in which, they fay, that the head of Adam. was found, as they will haue it, there buried, (others fay in Hebron) that his bones might bee sprinkled with the reall and precious bloud of our Sauiour Iesus Christ; which he knew should bee shed in that holy place, by a propheticall fore-knowledge. Ouer this are the Chappels of Mount Calvarie : A scended on the North fide thereof by twentie steppes; the highest hewne out of the Rocke, as is

Chappelsof

a part of the passage, obscure, and extraordinarily narrow. The sloore of the first Chappell, is checkered with divers coloured Marbles, not to bee trod vpon by feete that are shod. At the 30 Fast end vnder a large arched concaue of the Wall, is the place whereon our Saujour did fuffer, and may affuredly be thought the fame : and if one place bee more holy then another reputed of in the world the most venerable. Hee is void of sence that sees, beleeues, and is not then confounded with his Passions. The Rocke there ariseth halfe a yard higher then the pauement, level aboue in forme of an Altar, ten foote long, and fixe foote broad, flagged with white Marble, as is the Archand Wall that adjoyneth. In the midft is the place wherein the Crosse did stand, lined with Silver, Gile, and Imboffed. This they creepe to, proftrate themselwes thereon, kilfe, is lute, and such as vie them, san étifie therein their Beades and Crucifixes. On either side there standeth a Crosse; that on the right side, in the place where the good Theefe was crucified; and that on the left, where the bad, divided from Christ by the rent of the Rocke, (a figure of his spiri- 40 tuall separation) which cloue asunder in the houre of the Passion. The in-sides doe testifie that

Place of may-

Art had no hand therein : each fide to other being answerably rugged , and there where whatcestable to the Worke-man. That before spoken of, in the Chappell below is a part of this, which reacheth (as they fay) to the Centre. This place belongeth to the Georgians, whose Priests are poore, and accept of Almes. No other Nation say Masse on that Altar : ouer which there hang fortiefixe Lamps, which burne continually. On the selfe-same floore, of the selfe-same forme is that other Chappell, belonging to the Latines, divided onely by a Curtaine, and entred through the former. In the midst of the pauement is a square, inchaced with stones of different colours, where Christ, as they say, was nailed vpon the Crosse. This place is too holy to be trod vpon. They weare the hard stones with their foft knees, and heate them with their 50 feruent kisses; prostrating themselves, and tumbling up and downe with such an over-active zeale, that a faire Greeke Virgine, ere aware, one morning shewed more then intended, whom the Frier that helpt the Priest to say Masse io tooke at the bound, that it ecchoed againe, and diflurbed the mournefull facrifice with a mirthfull clamor; the poore Maid departed with great indignation. Ouer the Altar which is finely fet forth, three and thirtie Lampes are maintined. These two Chappels looking into the Temple, are all that possesse the summit of the Rocke, excepting that of the Immolation of Isae without, and spoken of before, and where they keepe the Altar of Melekifedesh. Opposite to the doore of the Temple, adioyning to the side of the Channell, are certaine Marble Sepulchers, without Titles or Epitaphs. Some twentie paces directly Welt from Mount Calearie, and on that fide that adiogneth to the Tower, a round white Marble, leuell with the pauement, retaineth the memorie (as they fay) of that place, where the bleffed Virgine ftood, and the Disciple whom Christ loued, when from the Crosse hee commended each to other, ouer which there burneth a Lampe. A little on the right hand of this, and towards the West, you passe betweene certaine pillars into that part of the Church, which is called,

CHAP. 8. S.4. Temple of the Sepulcher. Chappels of seuerall Sects.

the Temple of the Refurtection, and of the holy Sepulcher. A flately round, cloyflered below, Temple of the and aboue : and supported with great square pillars, slagged heretofore with white Marble; but Sepulcher. now in many places deprined thereof by the facrilegious Infidels. Much of the neather Cloyffer is divided into fundry Chappels belonging vnto feuerall Nations and Sects, where they exercise the rites of their feuerall Raligions. The first, on the left hand to the Abiffines; the next to the Chappels of Iacobites; the third, to the Coptes, (close to which, on the left fide of another , there is a Caue feuerall Setts. hewne out of the Rocke, with a narrow entrance, the Sepulcher of Ioseph of Aramathia: Itlie fourth, to the Georgians; and the fifth, to the Maronites. The Chappell of the Armenians poffeffeth a great part of the Gallery aboue, and the restlying towards the North, belongeth to the

To Latines, though not employed to religious vies. Now betweene the top of the vpper Gallerie. and extreme of the veright Wall, in feuerall concaues, are Pictures of divers of the Saints in Mofaigue work, full faced, and vnheightned with shaddowes according to the Grecian painting, but much defaced by malice, or continuance. In the midit on the South fide, is the Emperour Conflantines, opposite to his Mothers, the memorable Foundresse. This Round is couered with a Cupolo, fuffained with Rafters of Cedar, all of one piece, open in the midft like the Pantheon at Rome, whereat it receiveth the light that it hath, and that as much as fufficeth. Iust in the midit, and in the view of heaven, stands the glorified Sepulcher, a hundred and eight feet distant from Mount Caluarie; the naturall Rocke furmounting the fole of the Temple, abated by Art. and how ne into the forme of a Chappell, more long then broad, and ending in a Semi-circle, all

20 flagged ouer with white Marble. The hinder part being fomething more eminent then the other, is furrounded with ten small pillars adjoyning to the Wall, and sustaining the Cornish. On the top (which is flat) and in the midt thereof a little Cupolo coursed with Lead, is erected vpon fixe double, but small Corimbian Columnes of polished Porphyre. The other part being lower then this by the height of the Cornish, smooth aboue, and not so garnished on the sides, feruing as a Lobby or Portico to the former, is entred at the East end, (having before the doore a long pauement, erected fomething aboue the floore of the Church included betweene two white Marble walls, not past two foot high) consisting of the selfe-same Rocke, doth contains within a Concaue about three yards (quare, the roofe hewne compasse, all flagged throughout with white Marble. In the midit of the floore there is a flone about a foot high, and a foot and a halfe 30 square; whereon, they say, that the Angell sate, who told the two Maries that our Sauior was ri-

fen. But Saint Maithem faith, he fate vpon the great stone, which he had rolled from the mouth of the Sepulcher ; and which, it is faid, the Empresse caused to bee conveyed to the Church of Saint Saniour, flanding where once flood the Palace of Caiphas. Out of this a paffage through the midft of the Rocke, exceeding not three feet in height, and two in breadth, having a doore of gray flone, with hinges of the same, vndiuided from the naturall, affoordeth a way to creepe through into a second Concaue, about eight foote square, and as much in height, with a compast roofe of the folid Rocke, but lined for the most part with white Marble. On the North-fide a Tombe of the same, which possesset one halfe of the roome, a yard in height, and made in the forme of an Altar: infomuch, as not aboue three can abide there at once; the place no larger then

40 affoordeth a libertie for kneeling. It is faid, that long after the Refurrection, the Tombe remain ned in that forme, wherein it was when our Saujour lay there; when at length, by reason of the denouter Pilgrimes, who continually bore away little peeces thereof, (Relikes whereunto they attributed miraculous effects) it was inclosed within a Grate of Iron. But a fecond inconveniency The Alex. which proceeded from the tapers, haire, & other offerings throwne in byi Vocaries, which defiled the Monument, procured the pious Helena to inclose the same within this Marble Altar, which now belongeth to the Latmes : whereon they onely fay Maffe, yet free for other Christians to exercise their private devotions; being well set forth, and having on the farre side an Anticke and excellent Picture, demonstrating the Resurrection. Ouer it, perpetually burneth a number of Lamps, which have fulled the roofe like the in-fide of a Chimney, and yeelds vnto the roome an immoderate feruour. Thousands of Christians performe their vowes, and offer their teares here

yearly, with all the expressions of forrow, humilitie, affection, and penitence. It is afrozen zeale that will not bee warmed with the fight thereof. And, o that I could recaine the effects that it wrought with an vnfainting perfeuerance! who then did dictate this Hymne to my Redeemer :

Saniour of Mankind, Man, Emmanuel: Who sin-lesse dyed for sinne, who vanquisht Hell, The first fruits of the grave. Whose life did give Light to our darknesse: in whose death we line. Oftrengthen thou my Faith; correct my will, That min: may thine obey : protect me ft ill.

So that the latter Death may not denoure My Soule feal dwith thy Scale. So in the boure When thou who fe Bodie fanttifide this Tombe, Uniustly iudg'd, a gloriom Iudge shalt come To sudge the World with Instice; by that figne I may be knowne, and entertaind for thine.

Witnout, and to the West end of this Chappell, another very small one adiogneth, vsed in common by the Agyptians and Athiopians. Now on the left hand as you passe vnto the Chappell of Chappell of the Apparition, there are two round stones of white Marble in the stone : that next the Sepul- the Apparition cher couering the place where our Samour, and the other where Mary Magdalen stood (as they Refere 2

fay) when he appeared vnto her. On the North-fide, and without the limits of the Temple. flands the Chappell of the Apparition : fo called (as they fay) for that Christin that place did thew himfelfe to his forrowfull Mother, and comforted her, pierced with anguish for his cruell death, and ignominious sufferings. This belongeth to the Latines, which serveth them also for a Velterie: from whence they proceed vnto their pompous Processions. On the East-side there flands three Altars, that in the midft in a Closet by it selfe, dedicated to God and our Lady. That on the right hand is called the Altar of the holy Croffe, whereof a great part was there (as they fay) referred.

Pillar whereto

Bit when Sultan Solyman imprisoned the Friers of Mount Sion, (whom hee kept in durance for the space of foure yeares) the Armenians stole it from thence, and carryed it to Sabastia, Io their principall Citie. That on the left hand in the corner, and neere vnto the entrance, is called the Altar of the Scourging; behind which there is a piece of a Pillar, of that (as they fav) whereunto our Sauiour was bound when they foourged him. This stood on Mount Sien. and there supported the Portico to a Church in the dayes of Saint lerome; when broken by the Saracens, the pieces were recollected, and this part here placed by the Christians. The rest was difributed by Paul the Fourth, vnto the Emperour Ferdinand, Philip King of Spaine, and the Sign norie of Venue; in honour whereof they celebrate the fixt of Aprill. It is (as I remember) about three foot high, of a duskie black-veind Marble, spotted here and there with Red; which they affirme to be the markes of his bloud wherewith it was befprinkled. Before it there is a grate of Iron, infomuch as not to be toucht but by the mediation of a flicke prepared for the purpole; be. 20 ing buttened at the end with Leather, in manner of a Foyle, by which they concey their killee. and bleffetheir lips with the touch of that which hath touched the Relike. Through the aforesaid Vestery, a passage leades into certaine Roomes, heretofore a part of the Colledge of the Knight-Templers : by a generall Councell held in Vienna , in the yeare 1312. this Order was extinguisht, and their Lands for the most part conterred vpon the Knight-Hofpitallers of Saint lohns of Jerusalem, of whom wee shall speake when wee come vnto Malta. The Temples in London belonged vnto them, wherein the Church (built round in imitation of this) divers of their Statues are to be feene, and the positure vsed in their Burials. Here the Francifcans entertayned vs during our abode in the Temple. Returning againe through the Chappel of the Apparition, a little on the left hand there is a concaue in the wall, no bigger then to contayne two persons besides the Altar; which is called the Chappell of the Angels: belonging also to the Latiner, but lent by them to the despised Nestorians, during the celebration of Easter. Winding with the wall along the outward North-alley of the Chancell, at the farre end thereof there is a Grot hewne out of the Rocke, where they fay, that the lewes imprisoned our Sa-

mour, during the time that they were a prouiding things necessary for his crucifying. This is

kept by the Georgians; without other ornament then an vngarnished Altar : ouer which hang-

eth one onely Lampe, which rendreth a dimme light to the Prifon. Vntreading a good part of

the fore-laid Alley, we entred the Ile (there but duftinguished by Pillars) which bordes on the

Templers.

North of the Chancell : and turning on the left hand, where it beginnes to compaffe with the East end thereof, wee pasted by a Chappell contaying an Altar, but of no regard : wherein they 40 fay, the Title was preferred, which was hung over the head of our Saviour : now shewne at Rome in the Church of the holy Croffe of Ierusalem. Next to this in the same wall , and midft of the Semi-circle, there is another, the place where they fay, the Souldiers cast lots for his garments, of which the Armenians have the custodie. A little beyond you are to descend a paire of large staires of thirtiesteps, part of the passage hewne out of the Rocke of Calnary, which leadeth into a Lobby, the roofe supported with foure massie pillars of white Marble, which are ever moist through the darkneffe of the place (being under ground) and fometimes dropping, are faid to Chappellot S. weepe for the forrowfull pation and death of Christ. At the farre end, containing more then halfe of the roome, is the Chappell of Saint Helena: having two great Altars erected by Chriftian Princes in her honour. On the South thereof ftandeth a feate of ftone, ouer-looking a 50 paire of staires which descend into the place of the Invention of the Crosse: where, they say, that the fate whilft the Souldiers removed the rubbidge that had covered it. These staires (eleuen in number) conduct into an obscure vault, a part of the Valley of Carcasses. There threw they our Saujours Croffe, and couered it with the filth of the Citie, when after three hundred yeares, the Empresse Helena trauelling vnto Ierusalem, in the extremitie of her age, to behold those places which Christ had fanctified with his corporall presence, threatned torrure and death to certaine of the principall Jewes, if they would not reueale where their Ancestours had hid it. At last, for footh, they wrested the truth from an old old Iew, one Indas, first almost famished, who brought them to this place. Where after he had petitioned Heauen for the discouery; the earth trembled, and breathed from her Cranies Aromaticke odours. By which miracle confirmed, the Empresse caused the rubbidge to be removed, where they found three crosses, and hard by, the superscription. But when not able to distinguish the right from the other, they say that Macarius, then Bishop of Ierusalem, repairing together with the Empresse vnto the house of a noble woman of this Citie, vncurably difeated, did with the touch of the true

Croile reftore her to health. At fight whereof the lew became a Christian, and was called therewpon Quiriacus. Being after Bishop of Ierusalem, in the Reigne of Iulian the Apostata, hee was crowned with Martyrdome. At which times it was decreed, that no Malefactor should thenceforth fuffer on the Croffe; and that the third of May, should be for euer celebrated in memoriall of that Insention. In this Vault are two Altars, the one where the Croffe of Christ was found. Insention of and the other where the other. Afcending againe by the aforefaid staire into the Temple, on the Crosse. the left hand betweene the entrance, and Mount Calsorie, there is a little Roome which is called the Chappell of the Derision. Where under the Altar is referred a part (as they say) of that Pollar to which Christ was bound, when Pilates Servants crowned him with Thornes, clothed To in an old Purple Robe, placing a Reed in his hand, in stead of a Scepter, and crying, Haile King of the lenes: with other opprobrious Taunts, and Reuilings. This is kept by Abillens. Now nothing remayneth to fpeak of but the Quire, not differing from those in our Cathedrall Churches. The West end openeth voon the Sepulcher: the East ending in a semicircle, together with the Iles.

is couered with a high Cupolo; on each fide stand opposite doores which open into the North & South Alleyes; all ioyntly called the Temple of Golgotha. A partition at the vpper end excludeth the halfe round (behind which their high Altar) which rifeth in the manner of a loftie Screene, all richly gilded (as most of the sides of the Chancel) and adorned with the Pictures of the Saints in Antike habits: flat and full faced, according to the manner of the Grecians, to whom this place is affigned. Towards the West end from each side equally distant there is a little Pit in the Paue-20 ment, which (they fay) is the Nauell of the World, and endeauour to confirme it with that faying Niuell of the of the Scripture, God wrought his Saluation in the midft of the Earth: which they fill with holy Wa- lift to beleeve.

ter. The vniuerfall Fabricke, maintayned by the Greeke Emperors during their Soueraigntie, and then by the Christian Kings of Ierusalem , hath fince beene repayred in the seuerall parcs by their particular Owners. The whole of fo ftrong a conflitution, as rather decayed in beautie

Having visited these places (which bestow their severall Indulgences, and are honoured with particular Oraifons) after Eeuen-fong, and Procession, the Pater-guardian putting off his Pontificall Habit, clothed in a long Vest of Linnen girt close vnto him, first washed the feet of his Washing of fellow Friers, and then of the Pilgrimes: which dryed by others hee kiffed, with all outward feet, flew of humilitie. The next day, being Good-friday, amongst other Solemnities, they carried the Image of Christ on a sheete supported by the foure corners, in Procession, with Banners of Ceremoni the Passion : first, to the place where he was imprisoned, then in order to the other, performing with an Image. at each, their appointed Deuotions. Laying it where they lay he was fixed on the Crosse, the Frier Preacher made ouer it a short and passionate Oration : who acted his part so well, that hee begot teares in others with his owne; and taught them how to be forrowfull. At length they brought it to the to place where they fay, he was imbalmed: where the Pater-guardian anointed the Image with Iweet Oyles, and ftrewed it with Aromaticke Powders , and from thence conveyed it to the Sepulcher. At night the Lights put out, and company removed, they whipped themselves in their Chappell of Mount Calnarie. On Saturday their other Solemnities performed, they carryed the Croffe in Procession, with the Banners of the Buriall, to the afore-faid Chappell: creeping to it, kiffing, and lying groueling ouer it. On Easter day they said solemne feruice before the doore of the Sepulcher. The whole Chappel couered on the out fide with cloth of Tiflue, the gift (as appeareth by the Armes embroydered thereon) of the Florentine. In this they shewed the varietie of their Wardrobe, and concluded with a Triumphant Procession. bearing about the Banners of the Refurrection. Those Ceremonies that are not locall, I willingly omit. At noone wee departed to the Monasterie, having laine on the hard stones for three nights together, and fared as hardly.

The other Christians (excepting such as inhahit within, of each fort a few, and that of the Of these reade Clergie) entred not untill Good-friday. Viz. Grecians, Armenians, Copties, Abissines, Iaco- cuasus, Copties, Abissines, Copties, Abissines, Copties, Abissines, Copties, Abissines, Copties, Copt

60 bites, Georgians, Maronites, and Nestorians.

The Abillens on the Palison Weeke forbeare to lay Malle, putting on mournful! Garments. and countenances sutable. They vie no Extreme vnction, but carrie the dead to the Graue. with the Croffe, the Cenier, and holy Water, and fay Seruice ouer them. To conclude, they iowne with the Copries for the most part in substance of Religion, and in Ceremony; one Priest here ferning both : an Ethiopian, poore, and accompanyed with few of his Nation; who fantaffically clad, doth dance in their Processions with a skipping motion, and distortion of his bodie, not vnlike to our Antickes. To which their Mulicke is answerable; the Instruments no other then Snappers, Gingles, and round-bottomd Drummes, borne vpon the backe of one. and beaten upon by the followers.

The lacobites had two Patriarkes: one refident in the Mountaine Tur, the other in the Monatterie of Gifran, neere vinto the Citie of Mordin, feated (they fay) on fo high a Mountayne that no Bird flyeth over it. But now they have but one Patriarke, and that hee of Gifran; alwayes a Monke of the Order of Saint Anthonie, and named Ignatius; Riling himfelfe the Patriarke of Antioch: who for the more conumiencie is removued to Carmit. They have a Bishop full reliding in Ierufalem, of which the Patriarke is also a Iacobite.

The Georgians differ not much from the Grecians in their opinions : not called (as some write) of Saint George their felected Patrone, but of their Countrey, fo named long before the time wherein hee is supposed to have lived; lying betweene Colchos, Cancasius, the Caspian Sea, and Armedia; heretofore Iberia, and Albania. A warlike people, infested on both sides with the Turkilb and Persian Insolencies. They have a Metropolitan of their owne; some say, the same that is resident in Mount Sma. They say, that they marrie within prohibited degrees, they are divided into eighteene Bishoprickes; and are not here to be distinguished from the Socians, nor they from them, being almost of one Religion : and called Melchnes, heretofore of their Adthey from them. The them the stream Tongue; for that they would not embrace the Herefies of Europher and Diefeorm, but obeyed the Edict of the Emperour, and Councell of to Chalcedon. Their Patriarke is the true Patriarke of Antioch, who abides in Damasco. for that Antioch lyes now wel-nigh desolate. Their Bishop is here poore, so are his ornaments; in their Processions, for State, or in regard of his age, supported on both sides. Their Musicklesse Instruments are Fannes of Braste, hung about with Rings, which they gingle in stops according The Maronites are Christians inhabiting Mount Lybansus, fo called of Marona, a Villege ad-

ioyning, or of Mare their Abbot. They vie the Chaldean Tongue, and Syrian Character in holy matters. A limme they weare of the lacobites, and once fubiect to the Patriarke of Antioch: * See of them, but worine to the Papacie * by lob. Bapeiffa a lefuite, in the dayes of Gregorie the Thirteenth. who fent them a Catechilme printed at Rome in the Arabian Language: 10 that now they doe ione with the Latines. An ignorant people, cally drawne to any Religion, that could not give 20 a reason for their owne : poore in substance, and few in number.

wonne by Ai-

But the Greekes doe here surpasse all the rest in multitude; and the Armenians in brauerie. who in flead of Musicall Inftruments, have Sawcers of Braffe (which they strike against one another) fet about with gingles. All differ in habit, and most in Rites; yet all coniovne (the Latines ex-Fire from Hease cepted) in celebration of that Impostury of fetching fire from the Sepulcher vpon Easter Eeue. rice from Heain Fulderius, with Spectators. All the Lampes within the Church are at that time extinguished; when they often compaffing the Sepulcher in a joynt Procellion, are fore-runne and followed by the people with Sauage clamours (the women whiftling) and franticke behauiours, befitting better the iolemnities of Bacchus; extending their bare armes with vnlighted Tapers. At length the chiefe Bishops approach the doore of the Sepulcher; but the Libiopian Priest first enters (without whom, they fay, the Miracle will not fadge) who after a long flay (meane-while the people hurrying about like mad-men) returnes with the facred flame, supposed at his Prayers to buff out of the Sepulcher; whereat confusedly they fire their Lights; and fnatching them one from another, ftring who should first conney it to their particular Chappels; thrusting the slame amongst their clothes, and into their bosomes, (but swiftly with-drawing it) perswading frangers that it will not burne them : kindling therewith all their Lampes, vnlighted with other fire vntill that day twelue-moneth.

But I had almost forgot the Nestorians, so called of Nestorius, by birth a Germane, who lived 40 in the dayes of Theodofiss, and by him made Bishop of Constantinople. These hated of the rest, in an obscure corner, without Ceremonies or Pontificall habit, full of seeming Zeale and Humility, doe reade the Scriptures, and in both kinds administer the Sacrament, denying the Reall Presence: the Priest (not diffinguished from the rest in habit) breaking the bread, and laying it in the palme of the Communicants hand; they fipping of the Cup, which is held betweene his. They kiffe the Croffe, but pray not before it, nor reuerence they Images. They will not have Marie to be called the Mother of God. Their chiefest Herefie is, that they divide the Divinitie of Christ from his Humanitie. Their Doctrine dispersed throughout all the East, by meanes of Cofro the Perfam King, who enforced all the Christians within his Dominion (out of a mortali haired that he bare to the Emperour Heraclim) eyther to forfake his Empire, or to become Ne go forions; as through a great part of (Main. It is now embraced, but by few; most of that Sect inhabiting about Babylon. Their Patriarkall feate is Muzal in Mesopotamia, seated on the bankes of Tygris: their Patriarke not elected, but the dignitie descending from the Father to the Sonne. For Marriage is generally allowed in their Clergie; and when Widdowers, to marry againe at their pleasure. They have the Scriptures, and execute the Ministerie in the Chaldean Tongue. They allow not of the Councell of Epbefus, nor any that succeeded it. All this while there were no leffe then a thousand Christians, men, women and children, who fed and lodged Eafler Solem- vpon the pauement of the Temple. On Eafler day about one of the clocke in the morning, the Nations and Sects about mentioned, with ioyfull clamours, according to their feuerall cuffomes, circled the Church, and visited the holy places in a solemne Procession; and so for that time con- 60 cluding their Ceremonies, departed.

3. V.

٥. V.

Visiting of Emaus and Bethlehem, and other places: Also other observations of the Ierofolymitan Holies.

Pon Easter Munday wee hired certaine Asses to ride to Emass , accompanied with a Guard, and certaine of the Friers. About the mid-way, at the foot of a hill, there are the ruines of a Monasterie , built by Saint Helena: they say, in that place where

Iesus appeared to the two Disciples. Here the Latines performed certaine deuotions. and tooke of the itones (as generally they did from all fuch like places) preserved as precious. Emans stands seuen miles off, and West of lerusalem. The way thither mountainous, and in ma- Emans ny places as if paued with a continual rocke; yet where there is earth, sufficiently fruitfull. It was feated (for now it is not) vpon the South fide of a hill, ouer-looking a little valley, fruitfull in Fountaines. Honoured with the presence of our Sauiour, who there was knowne by the breaking of bread in the house of Cleophas his Coofin-german, and afterward the fecond Bishop of Ierusalem. In the selfe-same place a Temple was erected by Paula (a Roman Ladie, of whom we shall speake hereafter) whole ruines are yet extant, neere the top of the Mountaine ; vnto which the Arabians would not suffer vs to ascend, who inhabite below in a few poore Cotta-20 ges, vntill we had payed Caphar they demanded. This Citie was burnt in the Iewifb warres, by the commandement of Varus; and vpon the defiruction of Ierufalem, re-edified by the Romanes; who in regard of their victorie, called it Nicopolis. In the yeere 131. throwne downe Nicopolis? by an earth-quike, it was four escore and twelue yeeres after restored by the Emperour Marcus Aurelius; and afterward dignified during the government of the Christians with an Episcopall Sea, being under the Metropolitan of Casarea. Nicephorus, and the Triparitie historic report of a miraculous Fountaine by the high-way fide, where Christ would have departed from the two Disciples: who when he was conversant vpon earth, and wearied with a longer journey, there washed his feet; from thenceforth retayning a curable vertue against all diseases. But relations of that kind, have credite onely in places farre distant. In our returne, wee inclined a little 30 to the left hand, and after a while accended the top of a Mountaine, (whose Westerne valley was the field, they fay, of that battell, when the Sunne and Moone flood still at the commandement of Iosua.) Out of the ruines of an ancient building, a small Mosque is advanced : where they hold that the Prophet Samuel was buried, who had his Sepulchre in Rama on Mount E. abraim : though divers other Townes fo feated, are fo called, which fignifieth High in their Language. But our guides were well practifed in that precept :

Of Streames, Kings, Fashions, Kingdomes askt, thereshowne; Answer to all: th'unknowne relate as knowne.

Atque aliqua ex illis dum regum nomina quærunt Que loca, qui mores, que ue feruntur aque e Omnia responde : nec tantum si qua rogabit. Er que nelciris, ve bene nota refer. Ouid.

Mahometans either deceived with this tradition, or maintayning the report of their profite. would not fuffer vs to enter but at an excessive rate; which wee refused to part with. The next Mountaine vnto this, doth weare on his Crowne, the ruines of a Castle that belonged to the Machabees. Another more humble, and neerer the Citie, presenteth a pile of stones, square, flat, and folid: the Sepulchre, they fay, of the feuen brethren who were tortured to death by Antiochis. whom I rather judge to have beene buried at Moden, the ancient feat of that Fami- Sepulchies. lie; which stands on the vetermost confines of the Mountaines of Indea, where were to be seene feuen Sepulchres of white marble, each bearing a Pyramis on his square; faid by Iosephus to have ferued in his time for Sea-markes. From hence we approached the North-weft fide of the 50 Citie, where in the Vineyards are fundry places of butiall hewen out of the maine rocke; amongst the rest, one called the Sepulchre of the Prophets. The first entrance large, and like the mantle-tree of a chimney, cut curiously on the out-fide : through which we crept into a little square roome, (euery one carrying a light in his hand) the fides cut full of holes (in manner of a Doue-house:) two yards deepe, and three quarters square. Out of that roome wee descended by two streight passages into two other roomes, likewise under ground: yet more spacious, and of better workmanship, but so rounded with the Sepulchres as the former; neighboured with a Vault, which ferues for a Cifterne, and filled with a living Fountaine. A little beyond, vpon the West side of a large square Court, hewen into the rocke some three fathoms deepe, and entred vnder an arch of the tame, there is another manfion for the dead, having a porch like to 6: that of the Prophets: and garnisht without (amongst other figures) with two great clusters of Grapes, in memoriall of those, as they fay, which were brought by the spies into the host of

the Hebrewes. On the left hand you creepe through a difficult descent, which leadeth into faire roomes under the ground, and one within another, benched about with coffins of stone bereatt

of their couers, there being some bones yet remayning in some of them. This is famed to bee

40 who endeauour to bring all remarkable places within the compasse of their processions. The

wife-men

Dead Sea.

Davids Gi-

the houshold Monument of certaine of the Kings of Inda. In which there is nothing more admirable, then is the artificiall contribing of the doores, the hinges and all, of the felfe-fame flone, vnseperated from the rocke without other suppliment. Hitherto (if not further) by all likelihood the old Citie extended. From hence we returned to the Couent. The day following wee rode towards Bethlehem, which stands about fixe miles South from

Irrafalem. Going out from the gate of loppa, and turning on the left hand by the foot of Mount Sion. Aloft on whole vetermost angle stood the Tower of Danid, (whose ruines are yet extant) of a wonderfull strength, and admirable beautie, adorned with shields, and the armes of the mightie. Below on the right hand of the way in our passage, they shewed vs a Fountaine at the Southfide of a square Serraglio; delivered to be that wherein Berfieba bathed. North of Io which, the valley is crossed with a ruinous Aquaduct, which conveyed water vnto the Temple which, the valley is crossed with a lamour requarder, which changed water into the empte of Salamon. Alcanding the opposite Mountaine, we passed through a Countrey, billy and story yet not vetterly fortaken of the Vine, though onely planted by Chnistians, in many places producing Corne, here shadowed with the fig-tree, and there with the Oline. Sundry small Trarets differred about, which ferue for solace as well as for safe-guard. Some two-miles from the Citie, on the left hand, and by the high-way fide, there groweth a Turpentine-tree yet flouri-Turpentine

thing, which is faid to have affoorded a thelter to the Virgin Marie, as thee paffed betweene Rethlebem and Ierasalem. This tradition how ever abfurd, is generally believed by those Christians: a place of high repute in their deuotions. Towards the West about two miles off, on a little Simeons house. hill stands an ancient Tower: which is faid, to have beene the habitation of Simeon, A mile 20 beyond the forefaid Tree, in the midft of the way there is a Cifferne, vast within, and squareat

the mouth; which is called the Cifterne of the Starre. For that (as they fay) the wife-men of the East, there first againe did fee that conducting Starre, which went before them to the place Starre of the of our Saujours nationtie. A little on the right hand there are the small remaynes of an ancient Monasterie, built, they affirme, in that place where the Angell tooke vp Abacuck by the haire of the head, and conveyed him to Babylon. Halfe a mile further, on the left fide of the way. there is another Religious house, but in good repaire, in forme of a Fortresse, and enuironed with high walls, to withfland the infolencies of the Infidels; poffeffed by the Greeke Coloieres, and dedicated to Elsas. Hard by there is a flat rocke, whereon they told vs that the Prophet accu-Romed to sleepe ; and that it beares as yet the impression of his bodie. Indeed there are certaine hollowes in the same, but not by my eyes apprehended to retayne any manly proportion, As farre beyond are the decayes of a Church, which stood (as they say) in the place where the Patriarch Iacob inhabited. About a mile further West of the way, and a little off, standathe Rathels Sepul-

Sepulchre of Rachel, (by the Scripture affirmed to haue beene buried here about) if the entirenelle thereof doe not confute the imputed antiquitie : yet kept perhaps in repaire by heroffforing as a Monument of venerable memorie. The Tombe it felte refembleth a great Trunke, couered with a Cupolo mounted on a square, which hath on each side an ample such suffavned onely by he corners. This is enuironed with a foure-square wall; within which stand two other, little, but of the same proportion; kept, and vied for a place of prayer by the Ma hometans. Below it on the fide of a Mountaine stands the ruines of that Rama, whereof the 48 Prophet: A vojce was beard in Rama, Rachel weeping for her children, &c. From this ridge of the hills, the Dead Sea doth appeare as if neere at hand: but not fo found by the traueller, for that those high declining Mountaines are not to be directly descended. Within halfe a mile

of Bethlehem, leparated from the same by a valley, and a little on the left hand of the way, are the Cifternes of Danid, whereof he to much defired to drinke, and when they brought him of the water, refused it : a large deepe Vault, now out of vse, having onely two small tunnels at the top, by which they draw vp the water. And now wee are come to *Betblebem*, where in a Grot at the East fide of the Citie, employed

Retblehem. for a Stable (the Inne being pettred with strangers) the Virgin fell in trauell, and produced vnto the world a Saujour. In this Caue from the time of Adrian, vinto the raigne of Conftantine, 50 they celebrated the impious lamentation of Adonis (much honoured by the Syrians) who about had his Statue shadowed with a groue of Myrtles: which the vertuous Helena subuerted, and erected thereupon this goodly Temple yet entire, and possess by the Franciscans of Ierusalem, of whomtome few are here continually refident; called Saint Maries of Beiblebem: in forme representing a Crosse the stalke whereof compriseth the bodie; entred at the lower end through

a Portico fullayned with fixteene Pillars. The roofe, in the midt, is lofty, flat, and (if I forget not) of Cedar: the Sides, of the fame fabricke, but much more humble, are vpheld with foure rankes of Pillars (ten in a row) each of one entire marble, white, and in many places beautifully speckled; the largest, and fairest that ever I saw, whose vpper ends doe declare that they have in part beene exquifitely gilded. The walls are flagged with large tables of white 69 marble, wel-nigh to the top; the rest adorned with Mosaique painting, although now greatly defaced. It is both here reported, and recorded by historie, that a Sultan of Egipt allured with their beautie, fet certaine Malons aworke, to take downe those Tables, with intent to haue transported them vnto his Castle of Caro; when a dreadfull serpent issued out of the wall, and

brake in pieces such as were removed : so that terried therewith, he desisted from his enterprise. The three vpper ends of the Croffe, doe end in three Semi-circles, hauing in each an Altar. In the midt he Chancell, roofed with a stately Cupolo, couered without with Lead, and garnished within with Mofaique figures.

This Church is left for the most part desolate, the Altars naked, no Lamps maintained, no Monasterie of Service celebrated, except at times extraordinary : yet are there a tew poore Greeker and Arme - Francians. nians, who inhabite within on the right hand of the entrance, and in the opposite corners. Adjoyning on the left hand, stands the Monastery of the Franciscans, entred through the Church. fufficiently spacious, but of no commendable building; accommodated with divers Gardens, and enuironed with defencible walls; at whole North-west corner a tottered Tower doth challenge regard for the waste received in that places protection. They brought vs into their Chappell, not flightly set forth, and dedicated to Saint Katherine, having Indulgences conferred thereupon from Mount Sina. From which wee descended with Lights in our hands, and then were led by a narrow long entry into a little fquare Caue, supported in the midft with a Pillar of the Rocke. On the left hand, an Altar, and under that a passage into a Vault; wherein, they

fay, that the Infants flaine, by the bloudy Edict of Herod, were buried. Out of this Caue or Innecents Se-Chappell, there are two other entries : in that on the right hand, itands the Sepulcher of Eufe- Pulcher, bins the Confessor, and Disciple vnto Saint Ierome: this directeth into another Grot, wherein are two Tombes, in forme not vilike vinto Altars: the farther contained the body of Paula 2 Paula Sepul-20 Romane Ladie, descended of the ancient families of the Gracchi and Cornely. She built foure cher. Monalteries neare adiopning to this Temple, (whole ruines do yet give testimony of her pietie,) Much diffeone the planted with men; the three other with Virgins, who never past the bounds of their rencewas beone the planted with men; the three other with virgins, who never part the rounds of their wixt the anciCouents but on Sundayes onely, (and then attending on their feuerall Gouerneffes) to performe ent and later the Orafons in the Church, and Caue of the Nationtie : her felfe the Abbeffe of one of them, Monoffaries and to for the foace of twentie yeares did continue. She likewife built an adjoyning Hofpitall and Monkes. for Pilerims, whose ruines declare it to have beene no meane Fabricke. The other Tombe did Thoseliker cut court the body of Saint Ierome, who lived in her time, and in the Monasterie which shee had free from you founded : his bones, together with the bones of Eufebius, were translated to Rome, and shrined and fixed with in the Church of Santa Maria Maggiore; ouer which, Pope Sixtus Quintus hath erected a fump- arts and fanctituous Chappell. Out of this we pait into another Grot, which they call his Cell a wherein hee tie, as Sentinas lay (as they fay) full fiftie yeares and fixe moneths, and there twice translated the Bible. Re- ries of the turning into the aforefeid Chappell of the Innocents, by the other entry we passed into a Vault Nuns and Pilor Chappell, twelve foote wide, fortie long, and fifteene in height : the fides and floore all lined grimes also with faire white Marble; the compaffed roofe adorned with Moste-worke, and Mosaigue Gil- much differed ding, though now much perished. At the vpper end, in an arched Concaue, stands an Altar gar- from the later nished with a Table of the Natinitie. Vnder this a Semi-circle; the sole set forth with stones more degeneof fenerall colours, in the forme of a Starre: and in the midst a Serpentine, there set to vp- himselfe, this

he that trauels through these Countries, will not wonder to see such Caues imployed to like v- are winnesses fes. Neither is it likely, that they that fucceeded those times so neerely, should erre in the place Place of the fo celebrated in their deuotions, and beautified with such cost. On either fide of this Altar in Natiutie, the Corners, there are two equal ascents, which Land on the opposite out-fides of the Chancell, closed with doores of Brasse cut through, through which they passe in their selemne Procession. Now on the South fide, and neere vnto the foote of the staires, you descend by three steps into a leser Grot: separated onely from the former, by three fine Columnes of discoloured Marble, which feeme to support the over-hanging Rocke. On the West fide there is a Manger hewne out in a Concaue, about two foote high from the floore, and a little way hallowed withso in : wherein, they fay, that our New-borne Sauiour was laid by the Virgine ; now flagged about with white Marble, as the Rocke that roofes it; at the left end fuffained with a fhort Serpentine. In the bottome of this Manger, and inft in the middle, a round Serpentine is fet, to denote the place where he lay, which retaineth, as they would make vs beleeue, the effigies of Saint Ierome, miraculous framed by the naturall veines of the stone, in reward of his often and Saint Ierometer affectionate kiffes. But furely, they bee the eyes of Faith that must apprehend it : yet present natural Image

(as they fay) of their Prefents. These places be in the keeping of the Franciscans, and not lesse reuerenced then Caluarie, or 60 the Sepulcher, visited also by the Mahometan Pilgrimes. Where Lamps still burning do expell the naturall darknesse; and give a greater State thereunto, then the light of the day could affoord it. Baldwine the second did honor this place with an Episcopall Sea (being before but a Priorie) adioyning thereunto, together with the Church of Ascalon, many Townes and Villages. In the place where this Citie flood, there are now but a few poore Cottages standing. Most

to an Altar : where the Magi of the East, that were conducted hither by the Starre, disposed.

hold the memory of that place where our Sauiour was borne: the credite whereof I will nei- Noble Paula ther impeach, nor inforce. In this Citie it was, and in a stable; nor is the report by the fite re- and her daughe futed, though under ground, hewne out of the lining Rocke, as is the reft before fooken of. For ter Euflochium

they it in Picture. On the opposite side of this Grot, there is a Bench in the Rocke, not valike Magi.

Tarabi fi lde.

of the few Inhabitants Greekes and Armenians, who get a beggerly living by felling vnto firengers the Models of the Sepulcher, and of the Grot of the Natituitie; cut in wood, or caffin stone, with Crosses, and such like Merchandizes, and in being seruiceable vnto Pilgrims. After dinner we descended a foote into the Valley which lyeth East of the Citie, fruitfull in

Angels apparisson to the Shepheards.

paffurage, where Iacob fed his flocke (at this day called his field) neere the Tower of Adar. but more famous for the Apparition of the Angels, who there brought to the Shepheards the glad-tidings of our Saluation. In the midft of the field, on the felfe-same place, as is supposed. and two miles diffant from Bethlehem, Saint Helena erected a Church, and dedicated it to the Angels: now nothing but ruines. Returning from thence, and turning a little on the left hand, we came to the Village where those Shepheards dwelt, as yet so called : in the midsts whereof there to standeth a Well; the same, as the rumor goeth, that the blessed Virgine desired to drinke of. when the churlish Villagers retusing to draw her vp water, it forth-with miraculously flowed to the brim; greedy to passe through her blessed lips, and satisfie her longing. Of this the Arabe would not fuffer ys to drinke before we had given them Money. Neerer to Betblebem, and at the foote of the hill, are the ruines of a Chappell, where lofeph (as they fay) had his dwelling at fuch time as the Angell commanded him to the into Lgpr. Neere the top, and not farre from the backe of the Monasterie, there is a Caue containing two roomes, one within, another defeended into by a narrow entrance, and in some places supported by Pillars. In this it is faid. that lofeph hid our Saujour and his Mother, whilft he prepared things necessarie for his journey. The flone thereof puluerated, and often washed, of much a little will remaine, and not valike to refined Chalke; which taken in drinke, is said to have a Soueraigne vertue, in restoring Milke 20 both to Women and Cattell, much vied by the Moores themielues for that purpole. Ouer which flood one of the Nunneries built by Paula, now onely shewing the foundation, and wherein the dyed. These places seene, we re-entred the Monasterie, and there reposed our felues the night following.

Each of vs bestowing a piece of Gold on the Vicar, betimes in the morning we departed, ben-

ding our course to the Mountaines of Indea, lying West from Betblebem: neere to which, on the

fide of the opposite hill, we past by a little Village, called (as I take it) Bezer ; inhabited onely

by Christians; mortall(as they fay) to the Mahometans, that attempted to dwell therein, About

two miles further we passed by Bethsiar, seated in a bottome betweene two rocky Mountaines,

once a strong Fort : first built by Rhoboam, and after repaired by the Machabies : famous for fun-

dry fieges; being in the upper way betweene lerafalem and Gaza, where wee faw the ruines of an ample Church; below that, a Fountaine not vnbeholding by Art, whose pleasant Waters are Eunachs Bap, forth-with drunke vp by the earth that produced them. Heere, they fay, that Philip baptized the Eunuch: whereupon it retaineth the name of the Ethiopian Fountaine. And no question. but the adjoyning Temple was erected out of denotion to the honour of the place, and memorie of the fact, Yet feemeth it strange vnto me, that a Chariot should be able to passe those rocky and declining Mountaines, where almost a Horse can hardly keepe footing. Hauing trauelled about a mile and a halfe further, we came to the Caue where John the Baptist is faid to have lived from the age of feuen, vntill fuch time as hee went vnto the Wilderneffe by Jordan, fequented 40 from the abode of men, and feeding on such wilde nourishment as these vninhabited places affoorded. This Caue is feated on the Northerne fide of a defart Mountaine (onely beholding to the Locust tree) hewere out of the precipitating Rocke, so as difficultie to be ascended or descended to : entred at the East corner, and receiving light from a window in the side. At the upper end there is a Bench of the felfe-same Rocke, whereon (as they say) he accustomed to sleepe; of which, who fo breakes a piece off, stands forth-with excommunicate. Ouer this, on a little flat, flands the ruines of a Monasterie, on the South fide naturally walled with the fleepe of the Mountaine: from whence there gulheth a liuing Spring, which entreth the Rocke, and against burfleth forth beneath the mouth of the Caue; A place that would make iolitarinesse delightfull, and stand in comparison with the turbulent pompe of Cities. This ouer-looketh a profound go Valley, on the far fide hem'd with afpiring Mountaines; whereof some are cut (or naturally fs) in degrees like Allies, which would bee elfe vnacceffably fruitfuleffe, whose levels yet beare the thumps of decayed Vines, shadowed not rarely with Oliues and Locusts. And surely I thinke, that all, or most of those Mountaines have beene so husbanded, else could this little Countrey have never fulfained fuch a multitude of people. After wee had fed of fuch provision as was brought vs from the Citie, by other of the Fraternitie that there met vs, wee returned towards Ierusalem, leaving the way of Betblebem on the right hand, and that of Emass on the left. The feated on the fide of a fruitfull hill, well stored with Olives and Vineyards. Hither came the of a Vault or Chappell, lies buried : ouer which a goodly Church was erected, together with a

Zacharisthouse first place of note that wee met with , was there where once stood the dwelling of Zacharis, bleffed Virgine to visite her Cousin Elizabeth. Here died Elizabeth, and here in a Grot on the fide 60 Monasterie; whereof now little standeth but a part of the Wals, which offer to the view some fragments of painting, which thew that the relt have beene exquifice. Beyond, and lower is our Ladies Fountaine, (10 called of the Inhabitants) which maintaineth a little current through

the neighbouring valley. Neere this, in the bottome, and vetermost extent thereof, there standeth a Temple, once sumptuous, now defolate; built by Helena, and dedicated to Saint John Baptist, in the place where Zacharie had another house where the Prophet was borne, in a roome hewen out of the rocke; of principall denotion with those Christians: possest, as the reft, by the beaftly Arabians, who defile it with their Cattell, and employ it to the bafeft of vies. Transcending the leffe steepe hills, and passing through valleys of their Roses voluntarily plenti- Rose ralleys. full: after a while wee came to a Monafterie feated in a streight betweene two rockie Monntaines, enuironed with high walls, and entred by a doore of Iron; where a Bishop of the Georgians hath his residence, who curteously entertayned vs. Within they have a handlome Chap-In pell, at the upper end an Altar, and under that a pit, in which they fay that the Palme did grow (but rather, if any, the Oline, whereof that place hath flore) of which a part of the Croffe) was made : for it was framed (as they report) of foure feuerall woods ; the foot of Cedar, the bole of Cyprelle, the transome of Palme, and the title of Oline. This is called there. Monasterie of ypon the Monasterie of the holy Croffe. Where in stead of Bells they strike on a hollow beame the holy (as the Grecians doe in the Temple of Golgotha) to fummon their affemblies. Betweene this Croffe. and Ierufalem, we faw nothing worth noting, that hath not beene spoken of already.

The day following, wee went to review the remarkable places about the Citie. Paffing by the Castle of the Pifans, on the left hand entring at a little iquare passage, were were shewed a

small Chappell, the doore and windowes rammed up; for that (as they fay) the Muhametans Chappell va-20 became mortally ficke, that, though but by chance did come into it, flanding where floodithe licky to Main Temple of Saint Thomas. From hence wer were brought to the Palace of Annas destroyed by the Seditions in the time of the fiege, where now flandeth a Church dedicated to the bleffed Angels, and belonging to the Armenians, who have their dwellings about it. Within the Court there is an old Olive tree, environed with a low wall; vnto which, it is faid, that they bound our Saujour: Turning on the right hand, wee went out at a Port of Sion. South and not farre from thence, on the midft of the mount is the place, as they fay, where Christ did eate his last Last Supper. Supper; where also after his refurrection, the doores being thut, hee appeared to his Apostles; where they received the holy Ghoft; where Peter converted three thousand; and where as they say also, they held the first Councel, in which the Apostles Creed was decreed. Here Helena 20 built a most sumptuous Temple including therein a Canaculans , where that marble Pillar was preserved that stood before in the Palace of Pilate, to which they syed our Saujour when they whipped him. This Church subuerted by the Saracots, in the selfe-tame place the Franciscans had a Monasterie erected, who in the yeere 1561. were removed by the Turkes . they building

here a Mosque of their owne, into which no Christian is permitted to enter. Yet not in the

respects aforesaid, so reverenced by the Infidels, but in that it is delivered by tradition (and not unlikely) that Danid had there his Sepulchre. Betweene this, and the walls of the Citie, the Danids Se-Franches have their buriall, where lie live English-men, fent (as may bee suspected) vnto their pulchre. long-homes not many yeeres fince, though coloured by the Franciscans, in whose Monasterie murthered they lay, with pretence of Diniue vengeance for the supposed murder of their Drogaman. Se- by Friers. 40 uen they were in all, all aliue and well in one day, fixe dead in the other; the out-liuer becomming a convert to their Religion. Turning a little on the left hand, we came to a small Church, inclosed within a square wall, arched within, with a walke on the rop in manner of a Caue; the habitation of the Armenians, who have of this Church the cuftodie. Heere flourished the proud Palace of Caiphas, in which our Sauiour was buffetted, spit vpon, and so spitefully reuiled. Palace of Here Helena built a faire Church to Saint Peter; but that deffroyed, in the reome thereof this Caipbas. leffe was erected, and dedicated to Saint Sanionr. On the right hand in the Court, they yndertake to shew where the fire was made , by which Peter stood when he denied his Master: Peters Deniall. and at the fide of the Church doore, the chapter of a Pillar, whereon the Cocke crowing did moue him to contrition. At the vpper end of the Church, vpon a large Altar lieth a Stone, that Graue-flore. 50 (as they fay) which was rolled against the mouth of the Sepulchre.

From hence we descended into the valley of Gehinnen , which divideth Mount Sion from the Gehinnen. Mountaine of Offence, so called for that Salomon by the perswafton of his wives there sacrificed to Chamoch and Molech; but now by these Christians called the Mountaine of Ill counsell, where they say, the Pharifes tooke counsell against lesus; whole heighth yet shewes the reliques of no meane buildings. This valley is but streight, now serving for little vie; heretofore most delightfull, planted with Groues and watered with Fountaines; wherein the Hebrews facrificed their children to Molech. On the South fide of this valley, neere where it meeteth with the valley of Iebolaphat, mounted a good heighth, on the fide of the Mountaine is Aceldama, or the field of Aceldama bloud; purchased with the restored reward of Treason, for a buriall place for strangers. In the 60 midft whereof a large square roome was made by the mother of Confamine : the South tide wailed with the naturall rocke; flat at the top, and equall with the vpper levell. Out of which arifeth certaine small Cupolos open in the midst to let downe the dead bodies. Through which we might see the bottome all couered with bones; and certaine Cories but newly let downe : it being now the Sepulchre of the Armenians. A greedy Graue; and great enough to denoure

the dead of a whole Nation. For they fay, (and I beleeue it) that the Earth thereof within the space of eight and fortie houres, will consume the fielh that is laid thereon. The like is said as Flesh denouring Earth. Saint Innocents Church-yard in Paris : and he that fees the multitude of bones, that are there piled about it, the daily burials (it being a generall Receptacle for strangers) and smalnesse of the circuit, may be easily induced to credit. And why might not the Earth be transported from hence, as well as that at Rome in Campo Santto, brought thither in two hundred and feuentie thips by the commandement of the aforesaid Empresse which though changing soyles retayneth her vertue : it being also a place of buriall for Forreiners. In the Rocke about there are divers Sepulchers, and some in vie at this day : having great stones rolled against their mouther according to the ancient custome. Beyond on the point of the Hill, a Caue hewne out of the te Rocke, confifting of feuerall Roomes, is faid to have hidden fixe of the Apostles in the time of Christs Passion; first made without doubt for a Sepulcher; and after feruing for an Hermitage; the Roofe of the larger Roome retayning some shew of gilding. Below, where the Valley of Gehinnon and lehofaphat, like two conjoyning ftreames doe trent to the South, there is a dry Pits where the Priests are faid to have hid the facred fire when the lewer were carried captine into Ba-Valley of Ie- bylon : and feeking it after their returne did find it converted into water. But Nebemiab caufed it to be forinkled on the Altar: when forth-with with the beames of the Sunne it miraculously flamed. This Valley of lebolaphas (so called of that good King) from hence extendeth full North, and then enclineth a little to the West, first presenting (though naturall) no other then a large dry Ditch to the East of the Citie contracted betweene it, and the ouer-pearing Hils of 20 the opposite Olinet. It is faid to be about two miles long, and if it be so, but short ones: Where broadest fruitfull; watered by the Torrent Cedron, which runneth no longer then fedde with showres; losing his intermitted streames in the Lake of Affbaltis. It was also called the Valley of Cedron, and of the King: where the generall Judgement shall be, if the Iewes or Latines may be beleeved; who ground their opinions vpon the Prophefie of loel: which I will not gain-fav. fince some of our Dinines have of late so laboured to approve it. Of the same opinion are the Mahometans, In the wall aboue it, there is a window not farre from the Golden Gate : where they fay that Mahomes that fit whilft Christ doth execute Iuftice. Paffing to the Citie fide of the Valley, at the foot of the Hill, and East of the South-east corner, is the place where the Prophet Efay was fawne in funder by the Commandement of Manaffer his Grand-father by the 30 Mother : and there buried, where there is a little Pauement vied for a place of Prayer by the Mahometans, Close below this stood the Oke Rognel, where now a white Mulbery is cherished. North of it, in a gut of the Hill (aboue which in the wall stood the Tower) was the fish-poole of Silve: contayning not about halfe an Acre of ground, now dry in the bottome : and beyond the Fountayne that fed it : now no other then a little Trench walled in on the fides, full of filthy water: whose vpper part is obscured by a Building (as I take it a Mosque) where once sourtified a Christian Church built by Saint Helena. Deprined of those her salubrious streames; yet held in honour for their former vertues. Paffing along wee came to our Ladies Fountayne (yoon what occasion they so call it, is not worth the relating) in a deepe Caue of the Rocke, delcended into by a large paire of staires, and replenisht with pleasant waters. Here the Valley 40 streightning, and a little beyond no broader then serues for a Channell to the Torrent, on the other fide stands the Sepulcher of Zacharie, who was slaine betweene the Temple and the Altar: all of the naturall Rocke, eighteene foot high, foure square, and beautified with Doricke Columnes of the same vinfeparated stone, sustayning the Cornish, and topt like a pointed Diamond. Close to this there is another in the vpright Rocke; the Front like the side of an open Gallerie, supported with Marble Pillars, now betweene rammed vp with stones. Within a Grot, whitther lames retyred (as they fay) after the Pattion of our Sauiour, with purpofe neuer to have receiued sustenance vntill he had seene him : who in that place appeared vnto him after his Resurrection. In memoriall whereof the Christians erected a Church hard by; whole Ruines are now ruined. A little farther there is a stone Bridge of one Arch, which passes the Torrent In a Rocke 50 at the foot thereof, there are certayne Impreisons : made(as they fay) by our Saujours feet when Molan Pillar, they led him through the water. At the East end of this Bridge, and a little on the North, flands the Pillar of Absolon; which he here erected in his life time, to retayne the memorie of his name, in that his Iffue Male fayled, (but he was not buried therein) being yet entyre and of a goodly Fabricke : rifing in a loftie square; below adorned with halfe Columnes, wrought out of the fides and corners of the Doricke forme : and then changing into a round, a good height higher doth grow to a point in fashon of a Bell : all framed of the growing stone. Against this there lyeth a great heape of stones which increaseth daily. For both lemes and Mahometans passing by, doethrow stones against it : yet execrating Absolon for his Rebellion agamit Danid. Adioyning there is a large square, but lower by far, which hath an entrance like the Frontispice 60 of a Porch cut curiously without; the earth almost reaching to the top of the entrance : having 2 Grot within hewne out of the Rocke : fome fay, a Kingly Sepulcher; perhaps appertayning to the former. A little more North and vp the Torrent, at the foot of Olivet, once flood the Village Geth semani; the place yet fruitfull in Oliues : and hard by the delightfull Garden wherein

our Saujour was betrayed.

They point out the place where he left two of his Disciples, and a little higher the third when he went to pray, and with all the place where he was taken. In this Garden there is also a stone. whereon they fay that our Lady fate, and beheld the Martyrdome of Saint Stenen, who fuffered on the fide of the opposite Hill. Without the laid Garden, in the joyning of two waves. they shewed vs the place, as they will haue it, where Saint Thomas stood, when incredulous forsooth of our Ladies Affumption, she let fall her Girdle to informe his beliefe.

And now we are come to the Sepulcher of the bleffed Virgin, made thus, as it is, by the Mother of Constanting. Before it a Court; the building about ground, a square pile onely, flat at the Sepulchers of ther of Constanton. Detroit a County in Control of Temple. You enter at the South-fide, and the bleffed top, and neatly wrought, like the largest Portico to a Temple. You enter at the South-fide, and the bleffed top, and neatly wrought, like the largest Portico to a Temple. You enter at the South-fide, and the bleffed top, and neatly wrought, like the largest Portico to a Temple. You enter at the South-fide, and the bleffed top, and neatly wrought, like the largest Portico to a Temple. no forth-with defeend by a goodly paire of flaires of fiftie fleps: about the midft of the defeent. Virgh an are two small opposite Chappels; in that on the right hand are the Sepulchers of losebism and

Anna; in that on the left of lofaph: the Parents and Spoule of the Mother of Iefus. Thefe flaires doe leade you into a spacious Church, stretching East and West, walled on each side, and arched about with the natural Rocke. Voon the right hand in the midft there is a little fourre Chappell, framed of the eminent Rocke, but flagged both within and without with white Marble, entred at two doores. At the far fide her Tombe, which taketh up more then the third part of the Room, now in forme of an Altariander which, they fay, that the was decently buryed by the Apostles; and the third day after assumed into Heaven by the Angels. In this there burneth eighteen Lamps continually; partly maintained by the Christians, & partly by the Mahometans.

who have this place in an especiall veneration. Neere the East Semicircle of the Church, there flandeth a great Altar (ouer which the little light that this darke place hath, doth descend by a Cupolo.) neere the Well another, but both vnturnished and by the former a Well of excellent Water. In a Canton of the Wall, right against the North end of the Sepulcher, there is a Clift in the Rock, where the Turkes do affirme, that our Lady did hide her felfe, when perfecuted by the leves: into which I have seene their women to creepe, and give the cold Rocke affectionate kiffes. The opposite Canton is also vsed for an Oratory by the Mahometans, who have the keeping of the whole, and will not fuffer vs to enter of freecost. Remounting the same staires, not farre off on the left hand, towards the East, and not about a stone cast from the Garden of Geth/ameni, a straite passage descendeth into a vast round Caue, all of the natural Rocke, the Turkija wo.
30 Roofe confirmed with Arches of the same, receiving a dimme light from a little hole in the top, mens described.

in times past all ouer curiously painted. The place, they say, where Christ did pray, when in onto the blef-that bloudie agonie he was comforted by the Angels. From hence were bent our courfe to the Citie. High on the Hill, where three wayes meete, and vpon the flat of a Rocke, is the place where Saint Stenen (who bore the first Palme of Martyndome) was stoned to death. The stones thereabout haue a red ruft on them; which, they fay, give testimonie of his bloud-shed. A little aboue, we entred the Citie at the gate of Saint Seam, (where on each fide a Lion Retrograde doth fland) called in times past the Port of the Valley, and of the flocke; for that the Cattell came in at this gate, which were to be facrificed in the Temple, and were fold in the Market place adioyning. On the left hand there is a stone bridge, which passeth at the East end of the

40 North wall into the Court of the Temple of Salomon : the head to the Poole Beibefde , wnder Beibefde neath which it hath a conveyance, called also Probations , for that the Sacrifices were therein washed ere delinered to the Priests. It had fine Portsbuilt thereto by Salomon; in which contiqually lay number of difeafed perfons. For an Angell at certaine feafons troubled the water : and he that could next descend thereinto was perfectly cured. Now a great square profunditie. Greene, and vneuen at the bottome, into which a barren Spring doth drill from betweene the ftones of the North-ward Wall, and stealeth away almost vndiscerned. The place is for a good depth hewne our of the Rocke, confined aboue on the North-fide with a freepe Wall, on the West with high Buildings (perhaps a part of the Castle of Antonia) where are two doores to descend by, now all that are, halfe choked with Rubbidge; and on the South with the Wall of the Court of the Temple : whereof it is fit that fomething bee spoken; although not suffered to 50 enter without the forfeiture of our lives, or renouncing of our Religion.

I will not speake of the former forme, and magnificencie thereof, by facred Pens so exactly salumen Tem-described. First built by Salumen, destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar, re-edified by Zerubabel, (yet ple. fo far short of the first in glory, that those wept to behold it, who had beheld the former) new built or rather sumptuously repayred by Herod the Great; and lastly, veterly subuerted by Titue. The lewes affayed to re-edifie it in the Reigne of Adrian, of whom he flue an infinite number. levelled it with the floore, and threw the Rubbidge into the Valley of lebo faphat, to make it leffe fleepe, and the place leffe defenceable, planting in the Roome thereof a Groue, which hee confetrated vnto Inpiter. Afterward Inlian the Apottata, to disprooue the Prophetic of our Saujour.

60 did licence the lewes to re-build it, furnishing them with mony out of his Treasurie : when loe, a terrible Earth-quake shooke downe what they had begun; and a slame bursting forth, deuoured the Workmen, reported by Amianus Marcellinus a Pagan, and living in those times. But who built this that now standeth, is doubtfull. Some doe attribute it to the Christians; others to a Prince of the Arabians, (which is confirmed by the Christians of these Countries) and hee

the Saracen Omer, next Successior vato Mahomet, Seated it is upon Mount Moria, in the South-Mount Maria att corner of the Citie; without doubt in the very place where Salomons Rood: the more eminent building confifting of an eight fig are round of a blewish stone; adorned with adjoyning Pillars, and Tarraft aboue. In the midit of the feeling Roofe, another veright a pireth, though leffe by far, yet the fame in forme and fubstance with the former, being covered oner with a Cupolo of Lead. To the West of this a long building adicyneth, like the bodie of a Church comnaff about, and no higher then the vinder Tarras of the other, but like it in colour. Now the Court (the same with that of the old Temple) is suff four of quare energy way, about a nights shoot Colden Gate, ouer. In the East Wall, which is also a Wall to the Citie, stands the Golden Gate; 'to called in

that it was gilded) which belonged onely to the Temple, through which Christ paffed twice; To first in triumph, and after a Captine. It is faid that the Emperour Herneline retarming from his Perfen Victory, attempted to have entred thereat in all his glory, but was miraculoufly prohibired, vntill he had put off all his Princely Ornaments; in a simple habite bearing that part of the Croffe of Christ on his shoulders, which he had recovered from the Persians. This Gate is now rammed up by the Traves, to preuent as some say, a Prophese: which is; that the Citie should there be entred by the Christians. A part of the South side, is also melosed with the wall of the Citie. The rest not inferiour in strength, surrounded with a deepe Trench hewne into the Rocke though now much chooked, heretofore inhabited in the bottome hat a freet. In the midf of this out court, there is another; wherein the aforefaid Mosque doth flind, raised some two vards aboue it, and garnished on the sides with little Turters, through which ascended; all paned 20 with white Marble (the spoile of Christian Churches) where the Mahometans, as well as within, doe performe their particular Oraylons. Sundry low buildings there are adjoying to the wall : as I suppose, the Habitation of their Santons. In the midt of that, on the South-fide. there is a handsome Temple couered with Lead; by the Christians called the Church of the Paris fication of the Vargine : now also a Moique. Godfrey of Bullein , with the rest of the Citie tooke this place by affault, and flue within the circuit thereof tenne thouland Sarscens. By him then made a Cathedrall Church : erecting Lodgings about it for the Patriarch and his Canons. Into which there are now but two entrances : that on the West ; and this Gate ouer the head of the Poole Betbefds (called of old the Horle-gate, for that here they left their Horles, it beeing not lawfull to ride any further) refembling the Gate of a Citie. One thing by the way may be no. 30

ted : that whereas our Churches turne to the East. The Temple of Salomon regarded the West, perhaps in respect of Mount Caluarie!" Repaffing the aforelaid Bridge, (feeing we might proceed no farther) on the North-fide of the

freet that ffretcheth to the Well, now in a remote corner, flood the House of Iaachim, wherea goodly Church was built to the honour of Saint Anna, with a Monasterie adjoyning : of which fome part yet remayneth, but polluted with the Mahometan Superfittion. Turning backe, we tooke vp the faid ftreet to the West : not far onward, at the left hand stood the Palace of Pilace, without all question the Castle of Antonia, neere adioyning to the wall of the Temple, where now the Sanziacke hath his Residence; deprined of those lotty Towers, and scarce appearing boue the wals that confine it. On the right hand, at the far end of a ffreet that pointerh to the 40 North, flood the flately Mantion of Herod: of which fome figne there are left, that witnesses perished excellency. Now at the West corner of that of Pilates, where the wall for a space doth turne to the East, there are a paire of high staires which leade to the place of Iustice, and Throne of the Romane Prefident, where the Samour of the World, was by the World condemned. The Raires that they fay then, were called Scala Santa, I have feene at Rome neere Saint lohns in the Lateran; translated thither by Conflamine. Three paire there are in one Front, divided but by wals : the middlemost those : being of white Marble, and eighteene in number ; ascended and worne by the knees of the Suppliants, who descend by the other. At the top there is a little Chappell called Santtum Santtorum, where they never fay Maffe: and vpon this occasion. A holy Father in the Roome adjoyning, having confumed most part of the night in his Deuotions, 50 is faid, an houre before the dawning, to have feene a procession of Angels pale by him, some singing, and others perhaps that had worse voyces, bearing Torches: amongst whom Saint Pe-

Iudgemeut

ter with the Eucharift; who executed there his Pontificall Function : and that done returned. This rumored the day following about the Citie, numbers of people flockt thither; who found the Roome all to bedropt with Torches in confirmation of this Relation. Whereupon decreed it was, that not any (as not worthy) should say Masse on that Altar. Now the way betweene Dolorous way, the place of those staires and Mount Calvarie, is called the Dolorous way: along st which our Sauiour was led to his Passion : in which they say, (and shew where) that hee thrice fell under the weight of his Croffe. And a little beyond there is an ancient Arch that croffeth the ftreet, and Supporteth a ruined Gallerie; in the East-side a two arched window, where Pilate presented 60 Christ to the people. An hundred paces farther, and on the left hand there are the Relikes of a Church, where they fay that the bleffed Virgin flood when her Sonne pailed by, and tell into a trance at the fight of that killing Spectacle. Sixtie fixe paces beyond (where this fireet doth meete with that other which leadeth to Port Ephraim, now called the Gate of Damafeus) they

fay, that they met with Simon of Cyrene, and compelled him to affift our Saujour in the bearing Simon of Cyrene of his burthen. Turning a little on the left hand, they shewed vs where the women wept, and he replyed, Weepe not for me you Daughters of Ierusalem, &c. Then turning againe on the right, we paffed vnder a little arch, neete which a house ascended by certain steps; the place where Veronica dwelt, who gave our Saviour, as they fay, a Napkin as he passed by the doore, to cleanse his face Verenice. from the bloud which trickled from his Thorne-pierst browes; and spittle wherewith they had despitefully defiled him : who returned it agains enriched with his lively counterfeit, now to be feene at Rome vpon Festivall dayes, in Saint Peters Church in the Vatican. Fronting the far end of this ffreet, an ancient Gate which flood in the West wall of the old Citie, yet retists the sub-

10 uerfions of time, called by Nehemia, the old Gate; by the lebufites the Port of Iebus, and the Gate of Judgement; for that the Elders there fate in Juffice : through which the condemned were led to execution vnto Mount Caluarie: then two hundred twentie paces without. and a little on the left hand; though now almost in the heart of the Citie. From hence we ascended the East-fide of Mount Caluarie (eight hundred paces from the Palace of Pilate) and so descended into the Court of the Temple of the Sepulcher. Right against it are the ruines of lofcie buildings, heretofore the Alberges of the Knight Hospitallers of Saint Iohns. Turning to the South we were shewed, where once stood the dwelling of Zebedens, in which James and John Zebedesshon's were borne heretofore a Collegiat Church, but now a Mofque. A little higher wee came to the

Iron Gate, a paffage in times pail betweene the upper Citie, and the neather (which gane way 20 vnto Peter conducted by the Angell) built by Alexander the Great : who having taken Tress. and the Sea-bordering Cities of Phanicia and Palestine, begirt lerufalem with his Armie : when on a fudden the Gates were fet open, Iaddus the High Priest isluing forth, clothed in his Pontificall Habit, and followed with a long trayne in white Rayments : whom Alexander espying, advanced before the rest of the company; and when he drew neere fell profirate before him. For it came vnto his remembrance, how once in Dio a Citie of Macedon, confulting with him-Selie about his Afian Enterprize, he had seene in a Vision one so apparelled, who bid him boldly proceed, and told him that the God whom he ferued would protect his Armie, and make him Lord of the Persian Monarchie. Then hand in hand they entred the Citie, the High Priest con-

ducting him vnto the Temple, where hee facrificed vnto God according to the manner of the 30 Hebrewes: laddus expounding vnto him the Prophefies of Daniel, which foretold of his victories. From thence we proceeded vnto the House of Saint Marke, of which an obscure Church in the cultodie of the Sorians doth retayne the memory. And beyond, we came to the Church of Saint James, standing in the place where he was beheaded; erected by the Spaniards, together Saint James, with an Hospitall, and now possess by the Armenians, This seene, we returned to the Couent.

The day following, wee went out (as before) at the Port of Sion. Turning on the left hand Sion Port. along the wall, wee were shewed the place where Poter wept, when hee had denyed our Saui- Peterspenance, our; dignified once with a Church, and whereof there now remay neth some part of the foundation. Right against it there is a Posterne in the wall, formerly called Port Esquelme; at which they bore forth the filth of the Citie. The foundation of this part of the wall is much more

40 ancient, and much more ftrong then the reft, confifting of blacke ftones of a mightie fize. Not farre beyond, we crossed the Valley of Iebosaphas, and mounted the South end of Mount Olimer, by the way of Bethania. Hauing ascended a good height, on the right hand they shewed vs where Indae hanged himselfe (the stumpe of the Sycamore, as they say, not long since extant) Indaes being buried in a Grot that adioyneth. Neerer the top where Christ cursed the fig-tree; many there growing at this prefent. Descending the East-lide of the Mountaine, a little on the left hand, we came to a defolate Chappell, about which divers ruines; the Houses heretofore of Simon the Leper, From thence we descended vnto the Cattle of Lazarm, (whereof yet there is something extant) the Brother to Marie and Martha : close under which lyes Bethania, (WO Bethania. miles from lerusalem) now a tottered Village, inhabited by Arabians. In it the Vault where

50 Christ raysed Lazarus from death; square and deepe, descended into by certaine steps: About Lazarus are two little Chappels, which have in either of them an Altat : where flood a flately Church erected by Saint Helena: and after that an Abbey, Queene Milifend the Foundreffe. A lierly North of Bethania, we came to the ruines of a Monasterie, now levell with the floore, feated in the place vnto which the penitent Marie retyred from the corrupting vanities of the Citie. South-ward of this, and not far off, flood the House of Martha, honoured likewise with a gratha house Temple, and ruinated alike. Equally distant from both, there is a stone, whereon, they say, that our Saujour fate, when the two Sifters intreated him to restore life to their Brother now folire dayes buryed : the Pilgrime that breakes of a piece thereof, flands excommunicated. A little aboue, there is a Fountayne of excellent water, deepe funke into the Rocke, (by which we re-

65 freshed our selues with proussion brought with vs) called the Fountaine of the Apostles. Now we ascended Mount Olmer againe, by another way more inclining to the North Vpon the right hand, and not far from the top, stood Bethfage, whose very foundations are now confounded: Bet fage. from whence Christ patt vinto lerusalem in triumph vpon an Asses Colt : euery Palme funday by the Pater-guardian Superstitionally imitated.

Puarantena. Dead Sea.

1erdan.

Here looke we backe, and for a while furuey the high mountaine Quarantania, the low Plaine of Iericho, Iordan, and the Dead Sea; which we could not goe to, by reason of our tardy arrivall the Pilgrims returning on the felfe-fame day that wee came vnto Ierufalem. Vndertaken bue once a veere in regard of the charges, then guarded by a Sheck of the Arabians, to reful the wild Arabs, who almost famished on those barren Mountaines (which they dare not husband for feare of furprifall) rob all that passe, if inferiour in strength: yet payed wee towards that conduct two Dollars apiece to the Sanziack. Iordan runneth wel-nigh thirtie miles from Ierufalem; the way thither by Bethania; made long and troublesome by the steepe descents and labyrinthian windings; being to the judgement of the eye, not the fourth of that distance. In this the Pilgrims wash themselves, and bring from thence of the water, soueraigne (as they say) for sundry difeases. A great way on this side the River, there stands a ruined Temple, vpon the wine ding of a crooked channell, for laken by the ftreame, (or then not filled but by inundations) where Christ (as they say) was baptized by John. On the right hand stood Jerico, a Citie of fame (and in the time of the Christians an Episcopall Sea) beautiful in her Palmes , but chiefly proud of her Ballamum, a Plant then onely thought particular vnto lurie, which grew most plentifully in this valley, and on the fides of the Westerne Mountaines which confine it, being about two subits high, growing vpright, and yeerely pruned of her superflucus branches. In the Summer they lanced the rine with a stone, (not to be touched with steele) but not deeper then the inward filme; for otherwise it forthwith perished; from whence those fragrant and precious teares did diftill, which now are onely brought vs from India; but they farre worfe, and gene- 20 rally iophisticated. The bole of this shrub is of least esteeme, the rine of greater, the feed exceeding that, but the liquor of greatest, knowne to be right in the curdling of Milke, and not flavning of garments. Here remayned two Orchards thereof in the dayes of Veftafian; indefence of which, a battell was fought with the lewer that endeauoured to deftroy them. Of fuch repute with the Romanes, that Pompey first, and afterwards Titus did present it in their triumphs as an especiall glorie: now vetterly lost through the barbarous waste and negled of the

Mahometans, Where Ierico stood, there standeth a few poore Cottages inhabited by the Arebians. The valley about ten miles ouer, now producing but a spiny grasse; bordered on the East with the high Arabian Mountaines, on the West with those of Jurie; amongst which, Quarantania the most eminent, in that wildernesse where Christ for fortie dayes was tempted by the 20 Deull, so high, that few dare attempt to ascend to the top; from whence the Tempter shewed him the Kingdomes of the earth; now crowned with a Chappell, which is yet vnruined, There is befides in the fide an Hermitage, with a Cifterne to receive raine-water; and another Grot, wherein the Hermites-were buried. Here Saint Ierome (as they fay) fulfilled his foure

yeeres penance.

cred histories, and so often bleft with the presence of Christ, and apparition of Angels. It is 40 not much leffe then a mile in heighth, ftretching from North to South, and having three heads, Chappell of On the middlemost (and that the highest) there standeth a little Chappell, of an eight square the Ascension. round, at every corner a Pillar, mounted on three degrees, being all of white marble, and of an elegant firefure; within it is not aboue twelve foot over, paned with the naturall rocke, which beareth the impression of a foot-step, they say, of our Samours; the last that he set vpon earth, when from thence he ascended into Heauen: A place in honour inferiour vnto none, frequented by Christians , possest by Mahometans, yet free to both their denotions. Built it was by the mother of Constantine, and covered like the Sepulchre, with a sumptuous Temple (whole ruines yet looke aloft) together with a Monasterie. On the South-fide of which, they shewed Cell of Pelagia, vs the Cell of Palagia; a famous, rich, and beautifull Curtizan of Antioch, who converted by 50 the Bishop of Dimiata, retired hither vnknowne, and here long liued in the habite and penurie of an Hermite, being not till dead, discouered for a woman. Descending, wee were shewed by the way, where our Sauiour taught them the Poter nofter, where hee fore-told of the definiation of Ierusalem, where the Apostles made the Creede, where hee wept ouer the Citie, (2 paued square, now a Mahometan Oratorie) and such like traditions, not much worthy the mentioning. So croffing the valley by the Sepulchre of the bleffed Virgin, we entred the Citie at the gate of Saint Stenen; returning the same way (as the day before) to the Monafterie.

But now returns were to the fummit of Mount Olinet, which ouer-toppeth the neighbouring

Mountaines, whose West side doth give you a full surney of each particular part of the Citie,

bedect with Olines, Almonds, and Fig-trees; heretofore with Palmes: pleafantly rich when

husbanded, and now vpbraiding the barbarous with his neglected pregnancy. So famous infa-

Much of the day, and all the night following we spent in the Church of the Sepulchre: they then concluding the ceremonies and folemnities of that Feshuall. The next day wee prepared for our departure. Wee agreed with certaine Muccermen (fo call they their Muliters) of Alep- 69 po (who had brought a Pertugal hither with his lanizarie, and interpreter then newly come from India) to carrie vs vnto Tripoly, and to defray all charges (our diet excepted) for fixe and twentis Dollars a man, and for halfe so much as if we went but to Acre, greatly to the displeafure of Atala the Drogaman; that would not undertake our concey under a greater fumme:

CHAP. 8. 6.6. Pilgrims marked. Terebynth famous for the death of Golias. 1227

who found a time to effect his malice; yet his little paines wee rewarded with foure Dollars. Carbar and Affe hire about the Countrey had coft vs fixe Sultanies. We gaue money to the Frierfernants, and that not niggardly, confidering our light purses and long journey; whereof the Pater-quardian particularly enquired, left their vow of pouertie they should couetously infringe (or rather perhaps defraud his desire) by retayning what was given, to their private vies: A crime with excommunication punished: yet that lesse feared, I suppose, then detection. They vie to marke the armes of Pilgrims with the names of Iefus, Maria, Ierufalem, Betblebem. the Irrufalem Croffe, and fundry other Characters, done in fuch manner as hath beene declared before. The Pater-guardian would needs thrust vpon vs seuerall Certificates, which returned him In as many Zecchines: he defired that we would make their pouertie knowne, with the disnitie of those sandified places: as a motive to reliefe, and more frequent Pilgrimages.

His returne. Observations of memorable places by the way. Of Mount Carmel. Acon, Sidon, Tyrus of Facardin, Emer of Sidon his Greatneffe.

20 Eauing behind those friendly Italians that accompanied vs from Caro (being now also vpon their returne) on the first of Aprill we departed from lerusalem, in the companie of that Apothecarie (now Knight of the Sepulchre) and the Portugall before mentioned; together with an Alman and a French-man; all bound for Tripoly. Wee returned by the way which we strayed from in our comming; lesse difficult to passe; the Mountaines more pleasant and fruitfull, neere the Citie there are many Sepulchres and places of ruines. here and there dispersed. On the right hand, and in fight, is Silo, of a long time a station for the Shilo Arke of the Conenant, the highest Mountaine of Isry, bearing on the top some fragments of a Citie. North of it on another, the remaynes of that Rama Sophim: (with more likelihood of the truth then the other) which was the habitation of Samuel; whose bones are faid to have 30 beene translated vnto Conflantinople, by the Emperour Arcadius. After four emiles riding wee descended into the valley of Terebinth, famous, though little, for the slaughter of Golias. A Vale of Tete-Bridge here croffeth the Torrent, neere which the ruines of an ancient Monasterie, more worthis the observing for the greatnesse of the stones, then finenesse of the workmanship. Hauing rid foure miles further, they shewed vs Moden, the ancient seate of the Macchabees . toward Meden. the North, and feated on the top of an afpiring hill, which yet supporteth the reliques of a Ci-tie: whereof there something hath beene spoken already. Beyond, by the high-way side there is another Monasterie, not altogether subverted : of late inhabited by some of the Franciscans, who befet one night by the Arabs, and not able to mafter their terrour, quitted it the day following. About a stones cast off, there standeth a Church, now desolate, yet retayning the name 40 of the Prophet Ieremie. But whether here flood that Anathoth or no that challengeth his birth, Ieremie.

I am ignorant. About three miles further, wee passed by a place, called Sereth, where by certaine ruines there standeth a pile like a broken Tower, engrauen with Turkish Characters, voon that fide which regardeth the way; erected as they fay, by an Ottoman Emperour. Now having for a while descended those Mountaines that neighbour the Champaine, we came to the ruines of an ancient building, over-looking the levell: yet no leffe excelling in commodious fituation. then delicacie of prospect. They call it, The house of the Good Thiefe. Perhaps some Abbey Good thiefes erected in that place; or Castle here built to defend this passage. V pon the right hand there boust. flandeth a handsome Mosque, every way open, and supported with Pillars, the roofe flat, and charged on the East end with a Cupolo, heretofore a Christian Chappell. This is ten miles from

Rama, whither we came that night; and wet as we were, tooke vp our lodgings on the ground in the House of Sion: nothing that day befalling, saue the violence done vs by certaine Spabeis. who tooke our Wine from vs; and payments of head-money in fundry places, vnto which we were neither chargeable nor troublefome.

Not vntill noone next day departed we from Rama: travelling through a most fruitfull Val- Rama. lev. The first place we passed by was Lydda, made tamous by Saint Peter, called after Diespolie, Lydda, that is, the Citie of Impiter, destroyed by Cestins; here yet standeth a Christian Temple, built, as they fay, by a King of England to the honour of Saint George, a Cappadocian by birth, aduan- Saint Georges ced in the Warres to the dignitie of a Tribune, who after became a Souldier of Christ; and here Templebuile is faid to have fuffered Martyrdome vnder Diocletian. Others say, that there never was such a by a King of 60 man, and that the storie is no other then an allegorie. The Greeks have the custodie of this Church,

who shew a Scull, which they affirme to be Saint Georges. In the time of the Christians it was the feate of a Suffragan, now hardly a Village. Eight miles from Rama stands the Castle of Angia, built like a Caine, and kept by a small Garrison. A little beyond, the Muccermen would have flaid (which wee would not fuffer, being then the best time of the day for travell) that

Turki3 knarie flauerie.

they might by night have avoided the next Village, with the payments there due: where wee were hardly intreated by the procurement of Attala, who holds correspondencie with the Moores of those quarters. They would not take leffe then foure Dollars a man (when perhaps as many Medeins were but due) and that with much langling. They fought occasion how to trouble vs. beating vs off our Mules, because forfooth, wee did not light to doe homage to a fort of halfe-clad Rafcals; pulling the white Shash from the head of the Portugal (whereby he wel hoped to have past for a Tarke) his Ianizarie looking on. Here detayned they vs vntill two of the clocke the next morning, without meate, without fleepe, couched on the wet earth, and washed with raine; yet expecting worse, and then suffered vs to depart. After a while wee entred a goodly Forrest, full of tall and delightfull Trees, intermixed with fruitfull and flowrie to

Launes. Perhaps the earth affoordeth not the like; it cannot a more pleafant. Having paged this part of the Wood (the rest inclining to the West, and then againe extending to the North) we might discouer a number of stragling Tents, some just in our way, and neere to the skirts of the Forrest. These were Spakeis belonging to the Host of Morat Bassa, then in the Confiner of Persia. They will take (especially from a Christian) what soener they like; and kindly they vie him if he paffe without blowes : nor are their Commanders at all times free from their infolencies. To avoid them, we ftrucke out of the way, and croffed the pregnant champaine to the foote of the Mountaynes, where for that day we repoled our felues : when it grew darks, wee arofe, inclining on the left hand, mingling after a while with a small Carauan of Moores; en-Silent riding, joyned to filence, and to ride without our Hats, left discouered for Christians. The clouds fell 20 downe in freames, and the pitchie night had bereft vs of the conduct of our eyes, had not the

Lightning affoorded a terrible light. And when the raine intermitted, the Aire appeared as if full of sparkles of fire, borne too and fro with the wind, by reason of the infinite swarmes of Shining Flies. Flies that doe shine like Glow-wormes, to a stranger a strange spectacle. In the next Wood we out-stript that Carauan, where the theeuish Arabs had made sundrie fires; to which our footmen drew neere to liften, that we might paffe more fecurely. An houre after mid-night the skie hegan to cleere, when on the other fide of the Wood we fell among it certaine Tents of Spaheis; by whom we past with as little noise as we could, secured by their sounder sleepings. Not fare beyond, through a large Glade betweene two Hils, we leifurely descended for the space of two houres (a Torrent rushing downe on the left hand of vs) when not able longer to keepethe 30 backs of our Mules, we laid vs downe in the bottome vnder a plump of Trees on the farrefide of a Torrent. With the Sunne we arose, and found our selues at the East end, and North side of Mount Carmel.

Mount Cornel firetcheth from East to West, and hath his vetermost Basis washe with the Sea, fleepeft towards the North, and of an indifferent altitude : rich in Olives and Vines when husbanded; and abounding with feuerall forts of Fruits and Herbs, both medicinable and fragrant: now much ouer-growne with Woods and Shrubs of Iweet fauour : celebrated for the Him his house, habitation of Elias, whose house was after his death converted into a Synagogue; where O. racles, it is faid, were given by God; called by Suetonius the God Carmelus, whose words are thele, intreating of Vepasian: In Indea consulting with the Oracle of the God Carmelus, the Oracle 43 as fured him, that what sener he under-tooks should be successfull. Where then was nothing more to be seene then an Altar. From hence proceeded the Order of the Friar Carmelines, as succes-

fors to the children of the Prophets there left by Elias; who had their beginning in the Defarts of Syria, in the yeere 1180. inftituted by Almericus Bishop of Antioch, and said to have received their white habite from our Ladie, whom Albertus the Patriarke of Ierusalem transported fint into Europe. There is yet to be seene the remaynes of their Monasterie, with a Temple dedicated to the bleffed Virgin; under which a little Chappell or Caue, the ancient dwelling of Ehas. This is inherited by an Emer of the Arabians, who after the ancient custome of that Nation doth line in Tents, even during the Winter, although posses of fundrie convenient houses; whose Signiorie firetcheth to the South, and along the Shoare. Within his Precinct stands the 50 Cafile of the Perigrmes, vpon a cape, almost furrounded with the Sea, now called Tortora, built by Raimond Earle of Tolosa for their better securitie, and after fortified by the Templers. Ten miles South of this, flood that famous Cafarea (more anciently called the Tower of Strato, of 2 King of Aradus the Builder fo named, who lived in the dayes of Alexander) in fuch fort re-edified by Herod, that it little declined in magnificencie from the principall Cities of Afia; now

levell with the Floore, the Hauen loft, and fituation abandoned. We passed the Torrent Chisen, which floweth from the Mountaynes of Tabor and Hermon; and gliding by the North skirts of Carmel, dischargeth it selfe into the Sea. Carmel is the South bound to the ample valley of Acre; bounded on the North by those of Saron, on the West it hath the Sea, and it is inclosed on the East with the Mountaines of Galile. In length about 60 fourteene miles, in bredth about halfe as much; the neerer the Sea the more barren. In it there arife two rivolets of living, but pestilent waters, drilling from several! marishes; the first is the River of Belus, called by Plinie Pagida and Palus, and Badas by Simonides; whose fand affoordeth matter for Glasse, becomming tulable with the heate of the Fornace, Strabo reports the

CHAP. 8. 6 6. Glaffe Sand. Memnons Sepulcher. Bleffed Virgins boule.

like of divers places thereabout. And Ioferhus speaking of this, declareth, that adjoyning theremore, there is a pit an hundred cubits in circuite, coursed with Sand like Graffe; and when borne Glaffe fand, away (for there-with they acculomed to Ballace their thips) it forth-with filled again, borne thirherby winds from places adjacent : And moreouer, whatfoeuer Minerall was contained therein, converted into Claffe; and Glaffe there laid, againe into Sand. Neere to this pit flood the Sepulcher of Memon, the Sonne of Tythonin. Having rid seuen or eight miles along the skirts of the hils, we crossed the Valley, and anon pulcher.

that other Rivolet a little aboue, where it falleth into the Road of Acre; where to our comfort. we efpeed the Ship that brought vs to Alexandria, with another of London, called the Eliza- Ship of Landon. both Confert : when entring the Towne, we were kindly entertained by our Country-men. Here flayed we, the reft of our company proceeded vatto Tripely; this being the mid-way betweene it and lerns alets. But our Muccerman would not rest fatisfied with halfe of his hire, according Turbih Muful to our compact, whom we were glad to berid of for twentie Dollers a man: our Oaths being man. bootless against a True Beleener, for so do they tearme themselves.

This Citie was called Ace at the first, a refuge for the Persians in their Agyptian warres : Then Prolomais of Prolomy King of Leppt: Colonia Claudy, of Claudini Cafar, who here planted a Colony: Afterward Acon, and now Acre. Seated on a levell, in forme of a Triangular Shield : on two fides washt with the Sea; the third regarding the Champaifte. The carlade shewes that Acon Secof it on two men wants with the set your time triggrams, one champages a necessaries enterwes that Aca. See of the body hath been eltrong, a double immured, fortified with Bulwarks and Towers; to each King Rabad 20 will add tich, lined with flone, and vinder those duties seerer Posterines. You would thinke by the and his Newall a ditch, lined with itone, and vinder thote divers received the conjugate the conjugate the conjugate and the conjugate the conjugate and the conjugate and the conjugate conjugate and the conjugate conjugate and the conjugate conju with private dwellings; which witneffe a notable defence, and an enequal affaire; or that the race of the Conquerors extended beyond Conquest: the huge Wals and Arches turned topfies turney, and lying like Rockes vpon the foundation. On the South fide lyes the Hauen, no better then a Bay; open to the West, North-west, and South-west winds, the bottome stony, and ill

for their Cables. There are the mines of a Palace, which yet doth acknowledge King Richard for the founder, confirmed likewise by the Passant Lion. An hundred yeares after, it remained with the Christians, and was the last receptacle in the Holy Land, for the Knights Hesbitalers of Saint lobus of Ierusalem, called thereupon Saint Iobn de Aere; to whom a goodly Temple neere the South fide of the Citie was confectated, which now ouer-toppeth the reft of the mines. In a Vault thereof a great maffe of Treasure was hid by the Knights of the Order, which made knowne from time to time vnto their Successors, was fetcht from hence about forty yeares fince by the Gallies of Malta, the Inhabitants abandoning the Towne vpon their landing. In the yeare 1291, befieged by an hundred and fiftie thouland Mahometans, Acre received an vetet Subversion, which the Mamalacks after in some fort repaired, and lost it at last with their name and Empire, vnto the Tinkish Selimins. It is now under the Sanzant of Sapher, and viurped with the reft of that Prouince, by the Emer of Siden. In the Towne there are not about two or three hundred Inhabitants, who dwell heere and there in the patcht-up ruines; onely a new Mosque they have, and a strong iquare Cane (built, where once was the Arsenall for Gallies) in which the Francke Merchants fecurely dispose of themselves and their Commodities; who for the most part bring hither ready Monies, (Dateh Dollers being, as generally throughout Jary the more part of my man and the man and Phomical equipment with Royals of eight, elle-where left by ten Afpers) fraughting their thips with Cottons that grow abundantly in the Countrey adioyning. Here have they a Cades, Refpects of

the principall Officer. The English are much respected by the principall Moores: insomuch, as I Emello. have feene the ftriker stricken by his fellow, a rare example among ft the Mahometans. which I

rather attribut to their policie then humanitie, left by their quitting of the place they should be deprined of their profit, they being the onely men that doe maintaine that trading, Herewija. Wieflling, file they in Breeches of oyled Leather, close to their thighs, their bodies naked and anointed

50 bitants doe nightly house their Goats and Sheepe for feare of Jaccals (in my opinion no other Jaccals, then Foxes) whereof an infinite number doe lurke in the obfcure Vaults, and reedy Marifhes ad-

Foure daies we flaved at Acre; in which time we vainely expected the leifure of the Merchants to have accompanied vs to Nazareth, distant from hence about fifteene miles : who goe by one way and returne by another, for feare of the Arabs. Now a small Village of Galily, fear ted in a little Vale betweene two hils, where are the remaines of a goodly Temple (once the Chaire of an Arch-bishop) erected ouer the house of the blessed Virgine : whereof there is yet Blessed Virgine one roome to be seene, partly hewne out of the living Rocke; amongst those Christians of great gins house, veneration. But the Romanifes relate, that the roome wherein the was borne, was borne by the

according to the ancient vie, who rather fall by confent, then by flight or violence. The Inlia-

ioyning to the Brooke; the Brooke it felfe abounding with Torteffes.

60 Angels (at fuch time as the Countrey was univerfally possessed by the Insidels) over Seas and shores to a Citie of Illyria. But when those people grew niggardly in their Offerings, it was rapt from thence, and fet in the Woods of Picenum; within the polleffions of a Noble Lady, named Lady of Law-Lauretta, frequented by infinite numbers of Pilgrimes. When many miscarrying by the am- retta bushment of Theeues, who lurking in the Woods adjoyning, the bleffed Virgine commanded

picture Christ blacke, like

got much riches, and sumptuous apparell, by the beneuolence of her Votaries, and her charityble miracles. By which meanes the two Brethren grew alto rich, and withall, diffentions about the deution of their purchases. Whereupon it was once more transported by those winged Porters, and fet in the place where as now it standeth, neere to the Adriaticke Sea, and not farre from Ancona, yet retaining the name of Lauretta. In which is her Image (made as they *Itislike,made fay, by Saint Luke) of the bue (though a lew) of a Black amore . This Conclave hath a cover by some Abif- of Marble, vet not touched by the same, included within a magnificent Temple, adorned with Armors and Trophies; and befet with Statues and Tables, reprefenting her miraculous cures and protections : And well hath the beene paid for her labour : her Territories large, her Iewels inc. to Stimable; her apparell much more then Princely, both in cost and varietie; her Cosfers full; of whom, though the Pope be a yearely borrower, yet are they doubly replenished by the first, and latter Spring-tides of denotion. Now at Nazareth, no Christian is suffered to dwell by the Moores that inhabit it. Most of the old Citie seemeth to have stood vpon the hill that adiova neth, which beares the decayes of divers other Churches. Nazareth gave the name of Nazareth tans unto Christians, called here corruptly Noftranes at this prefent.

Vpon the eight of Aprill we went aboord the Trinitie, and hoifed Sailes for Sidon: the winds favourable, and the Seas composed ; but anon they began to wrangle, and wee to suffer. Spoure of water were seene to fall against the Promontorie of Carmel, the tempest increased with the night; and did what it could to make a night of the day that enfued. But the diffemperature and horror is more then the danger, where Mariners be English, who are the absolutest vider hea- 20 uen in their profession; and are by forreiners compared vnto Fishes. About soure of the clocke we came before Siden, the Ship not able to attaine to the Harborage of the Rocke, which is entironed by the Sea, and the onely protection of that rode for ships of good burthen : but some of vs were so sicke, that we defired to be set a shoare in the Skiffe, (a long mile distant) which was performed, but not without perill.

Phonicia is a Prouince of Syria, interpoling the Sea and Galdy, stretching North and South from the River of Valance, to the Castle of the Peregrines , which is on the farre side of Mount Carmel. The chiefe Sea-bordering Cities of Phanicia, are Tripolis, Biblis, Beritus, Sidon, Tyrus, and Prolomass, now called Acre. Tripolis is so called, because it was soyntly built by Tyras, Sides and Aradms. It is seated under Libessus, and commanded by a well-furnished Cittadell, manned with two hundred Janizaries. Before it, there is an ill-neighbouring banke of Sand, which groweth daily both in greatnesse and necrenesse; by which they have a Prophesse, that it shall in processe of time be devoured. The Towne and Territories are governed by a Bassa. Two miles off, and West from it, is the heaven, made by a round piece of Land adioyning to the maineby an Isthmos; the mouth thereof regarding the North. On each fide a Bulwarke kept by an hundred l'anizaries, and planted with Ordnance to defend the entrance. Hither of late the Grand Alexandretts, or Signior hath removed the Scale, which was before at Alexandretta, a Towne in the furtheft extents of the Streights, beyond the River Oromes, most contagiously seated by reason of the Marishes and loftie bordering Mountaines (towards the North, being part of Taurus) whichde- 40 prine it of the rarifying Sunne, for no small part of the day rinsomuch , that not many forreiners escape that there linger any season, who goe not a shoare before the Surme bee high mounted, and returne againe ere too low declining: Notwithstanding, the Merchants doe offergreat fimmes of Money to haue it reftored vnto that place, as more convenient for their Trafick with Aleppo, (the principall Mart of that part of Afia for Silkes, and fundry other Commodities) from thence but three daies journey, being eight from Tripoly: which the Turke will not as yet affent to, for that divers ships have beene taken out of that Rode by Pirats, there being no Forts for protection, nor no fit place to erect them on. A thing vivall it is betweene Tripoly and Aleppo, as betweene Aleppo and Babylon, to make tame Doues the speedy transporters of their Letters; which they wran about their Legges like Ieffes, trained thereunto at fuch time as they go haue young ones, by bearing them from them in open Cages. A Fowle of a notable memory. Sider is at this day contracted within narrow limits, and onely shewes the foundations of her greatnesse; lying Eastward of this that standeth, and over-shadowed with Olives. There is nothing left of Antiquitie, but the supposed Sepulcher of the Patriarke Zebulon, included within a little Chappellamongst these ruines, and held (especially by the Iewes) in great veneration. The Towne now being, is not worth our Description; the Walls neither faire nor of force; the Hauen decayed, when at best but seruing for Gallies. At the end of the Peir, stands a paltry Blocke-house, furnished with sutable Artillery. The Mosque, the Bannia, and Cane for Mer-

chants, the onely buildings of note. The Inhabitants are of fundry Nations and Religions, governed by a fuccession of Princes, 60 Emers of Sides, whom they call Emers : descended, as they say, from the Druses, the remainder of those French men which were brought into these parts by Godfrey of Bullen, who driven into the Mountaines aboue, and defending themselves by the advantage of the place, could never be vtterly destroyed by the Saracens. At length they affoorded them peace, and libertie of Religion; conditio-

nally that they wrote the white Turbant, and paid fuch duties as the naturall fubicet. But in tract of time they fell from the knowledge of Christ : nor throughly embracing the other, are indeede of neither. As for this Emer, he was neuer knowne to pray, nor euer feene in a Mosque. His name is Faccardine, small of stature, but great in courage and atchieuements: about the age of forty, fubtile as a Foxe, and not a little inclining to the Tyrant. He neuer commenceth battell. nor executeth any notable designe, without the confent of his "mother. To his Towne hee hath nor executeth any notable deligne, without the comient of his institute. When Morat Baffa fed skilfull in added a kingly Segnioury, what by his (word, and what by his Stratagems. When Morat Baffa fed skilfull in blacke Arts. (now principall Vizier) came first to his government of Damasco, he made him his, by his free entertainment and bounty: which hath converted to his no small advantage, of whom he made 10 vie in his contention with Freche the Emer of Balbee; by his authority ftrangled. After that he pickt a quartel with lefest Emer of Tripoly, and disposses him of "Barut, with the territories be- "Olim Remitte

longing thereunto, together with Gazer, about twelve miles beyond it; a place by fituation inuincible: This 1/6pp hated of his people for his excessue tyranny, got to bee made Seidar of Damafeo (which is Generall of the Souldiery) and by that power intended a reuenge. But in the meane feafon Faceardane lackt Tripoly it felfe, and forced the Emer to flie in a Venecian (hippe vnto Cyprus: where againe he imbarqued in a French-man, and landed at the Castle of the Parsgrines , and there by Achmes the Arabian (formerly mentioned) entertained, hee repayred to Damafeo, entred on his charge, converting his whole firength vpon the Sidonian, now in the field: and soyned with Ali Bassa his confederate. In a plaine some eight miles short of Damasco. the 20 armies met; the Damascens are foiled, and purfued to the gates of the City: The Conquerors lodge in the fuburbs, who are removed by the force of an hundred and fifty thousand Sultanie. This battel was fought about the midft of November in the yere of our Lord 1606. Three months after a Peace is concluded among ft them. But the fommer following, Morat the Great Vizier having overthrowne Ale Baffa of Alepse, that valiant rebell (who in three maine battels with flood his whole forces; having fet vp an order of Sedgmen in opposition of the lanizaries) they fought by manifold complaints to incense him against the Emer of Sidon, as confederate with the traytor; which they vrged with gifts, received and loft : for the old Baffa mindfull of the friendly offices done him by the Emer (corrupted also, as is thought, with great summes of money) not only not molesteth , but declareth him a good subject. Having till of late held good 30 correspondency with the City and Garrison of Damases, they had made him Sanziack of Sapher. Now, when according to the gouernement of Turkie, which once in 2 or 3 yeeres doth vie to remove the Governours of Cities and Provinces; and that another was fent by the Damafcens to fucceede him, he refused to refigne it; notwithftanding tendring to the Testador or Treafurer the revenue of that Sanziacky; this was the first occasion of their quarrell. Hee got from the improvident Peafants the Caltle of Eliffe, which he hath ftrongly fortified, and made the receptacle of Treasure : And the Castle of Banies from the Shecke that ought it, by a wile (which standeth on a hill by it selfe, and is indeede by pature inuincible.) For the Emer in peaceable manner, pitching his tents not farre from the wall, was kindely visited and entertained by the Sheek : when delirous to fee it, he conducted him vp, having not about twenty or thirty in 40 his company, but those privately armed; leaving order that the rest should ascend by twoes and by threes, and so surprited it without bloud-thed, planting the inhabitants in other places within his Dominions, and strengthning this with a Garrison. Out of the Rock whereon it is mounted arifeth one of the two heads of lorden. His Signiory stretcheth from the River of Canis (which they call Celp) to the foote of mount Carmel. In which the places of principall note, are Gazir, Barnt, Sidon, Tyrus, Acre, Saffet (which was Tyberias) Diar, Camer, Elliffe, Banias, the two heads of lorden, the lake Semochonthis (now called Houle) and fea of Tyberias, with the hot bath adjoyning: Nazareth, Cana, and mount Tabor, Saffet is his principall City, in which there abide a number of lewes, who affect the place, in that lacab had his being thereabout before his go-

ing downe into Egypt. ing downe into Legypt.

The Grand Signier doth often threaten his subuersion, which he puts off with 2 iest, that hee

His intelliknowes he will not this yeare trouble him, whose displeasure is not so much prounked by his general incroching, as by the reuealed intelligence which he holds with the Florentine; whom he suffers florentine. to harbour within his Hauen of Tyrus, (yet excusing it as a place lying waste, and not to be defended) to come ashoare for fresh-water, buyes of him vinderhand his prizes, and furnisheth him with necessaries. But designes of a higher nature have been treated of betweene them, as is well knowne to certaine Merchants imployed in that buineffe. And I am verily perfwaded, that if the occasion were laid hold of, and freely pursued by the Christians, it would terribly shake, if not veterly confound the Ottoman Empire. It is faid for a certainty that the Turke will turne his whole forces upon him the next Sommer : And therefore more willingly condescends to a

60 Peace with the Persian. But the Emer is not much terrified with the rumor (although he seekes to divert the tempest by continuance of gifts, the favour of his friends, and professed integritie:) His strength. for he not a little prelumeth of inuincible forts, well stored for a long warre; and aduantage of the mountaines: having belides forty thousand expert souldiers in continuall pay; part of them Moores, and part of them Christians : and if the worlt should fall out, hath the sea to friend, and

Inflice.

Injuffice.

the Florentine. And in fuch an exigent intendeth, as is thought, to make for Christendome, and there to purchase some Signorie; for the opinion is that he hath a male of Treature, gathered by wiles and extortions, as well from the Sobiect, as from the Forreiner. Hee hath covered of late a number of counterfeit Dutch Dollers, which he thrusteth away in payments, and offers in exchange to the Merchant : fo that no new Dutch Dollers, though neuer fo good, will how goe currant in Sidon. He hath the fift part of the increase of all things. The Christians and Ionic doe pay for their heads two Dollers apiece yearely, and head money he hath for all the Correll within his Dominions. A feuere Iusticer, re-edifies ruinous, and replants depopulated places too firong for his Neighbours, and able to maintaynea defensive warie with the Turke but the it is to be inspected that his people would fall from him in regard of his tyrannie. Now as for In the Merchants, (who are for the most part English) they are entertay ned with all courtefie and freedome; they may trauell without danger with their Purfes in their hands, paying for custome by three in the hundred. Yet these are but Traines to allure them, and difguise his voraditier for if a Factor dye, as if the Owner, and hee his Heire, bee will feize on the goods belonging to his Principals, and feeme to doe them a fasour in admitting of a Redempsion winder the value, on the they doe but labour for his Harueft, and reape for his Garners. For fach, and fach-like eatings they generally intend to forfake his Countrey. The Merchandizes appropriate to this place are Coctons, and Silkes, which here are made in the Mulbery Groves, in indifferent quantitie. O. ther Commodities (which are many, and not course) they fetch from Damasco : two daves journey from hence; interpoled with the Snow-topt Mountaynes of Antilibanus, fo exceeding 20 cold, that a Moore at our being here, returning from thence in the company of an Entitle Merchant, perished by the way : the heate then excessive great in the Valleyes on both sides

Customes. Inflice, Iniustice. Rare and charitable Hospitalitie. LIB, VIII.

Antilihannu 1

Damascus. fter Bidduloh the next Chapter.

Damafous is feated in a Plaine enuironed with Hils, and watered with the River Chrofings descending with a great murmure from the Mountaynes; but after awhile having entred the plaine becommeth more gentle; feruing the Citie fo abundantly, that few houses are without their Fountaines, and by little Rivolets let into their Orchards : then which the habitable earth affoordeth not more delicate for excellencie of fruits, and their varieties : yet fubied to both the extreames of weather; rich in Trades, and celebrated for excellent Artizans. We were defirous to have feene it, but were aduifed not aduenture, because of the lawlesse Spabers there then residing in great numbers. The people about Sidon are greatly given to the nourishing of Cattel, 40 (having not with standing not many) infomuch as Beefe and Veale are feldome here to bee had but when by chance they doe breake their legges or otherwise miscarrie. They fother them in the Winter (for they cut no graffe) with flow, and the leaves of Trees, whereof many doe flow rith continually.

Our thin returning to Alexandria, and chrying with her two of our fellow Pilgrimes on the fine and twentieth of Aprill we returned also towards Acre by Land in the company of diners Enolifh Merchants: the Champaine betweene the Sea and the Mountaynes fruitfull though parrow; and crossed with many little Risolets. After five miles riding weecame to a small solitarie Mosque not far from the Sea; erected, as they say, over the Widdowes house that entertained Elian; close by it are the foundations of Sarena. It was the Seate-of a Bishop, and subject your 46 Tyrus. Right against it, and high mounted on the Mountayne, there is a handsome new Towns now called Sarapanta. Beyond on the left hand of the way are a number of Caues cut out of the Rocke, the Habitations, as I suppose, of men in the Golden Age, and before the foundation of Cities. Thefe are mentioned in the Booke of Iofus, and called Mearab, (which is the Caues of the Sidonians, and afterward called the Caues of Tyrns, a place then mexpugnable, and maintayned by the Christians, vntill in the yeare 1167. it was by the corrupted Souldiers delinered to the Saracens. Wee croffed a little Valley deuided by the River Elmberns (now called Casmeir) which de-

Palayrus.

Rare Hofbi-

intricate Channell : guiltie of the death of the Emperour Fredericke Barbaroffa, who falling from 50 his Horse as hee pursued the Infidels, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour was drowned therein, and buried at Tyres. On the other-fide of the Valley stands an ancient Cane, whole Port doth beare the pourtrayture of a Chalice. Fine miles beyond wee came to a Village feated on a little Hill in the midft of a Plaine, the same by all likelihood that was formerly called Palatyrus, or old Tyrus. Forget I must not the custome observed by the Inhabitants hereabout, who retayne the old Worlds Hospitalitie. Be the Passenger Christian or whatsoeuer, they will house him, prepare him extraordinary fare, and looke to his Mule, without taking of one Afper. But the precise Mahometans will neither eate nor drinke with a Christian : onely minister to his wants; and when he hath done, breake the earthen Difhes wherein he hath fed, as defiled. Nowe through this Towne there paffes a ruinous Aquadult, extending a great way towards the South, 60 and through the Champaine, feeming often to climbe aboue his beginning, and from hence proceedeth directly West vnto Tyras, which standeth about two miles and a halfe below it.

riues his originall from Lybansus, and glideth along with a speedie course through a strangely

Tyrus was faid to be built by Tyrus, the feuenth Sonne of Inphet: re-edified by Phanix, made a Colony of the Sidonians, and after the Metropolis of Phanicia. The Citie was confectated to Hercules, whose Priest was Sichens. The Citizens famous for fundry excellencies, and forreine Plantations.

But in the yeare 1289, it was fubdued by the Agyptian Mahometans, and from them by the Ottoman Selymus. But this once famous Tyrus, is now no other then an heape of Ruines; vet haue they a reuerent respect, and doe instruct the pensiue beholder with their exemplarie fruitie. It hath two Harbours, that on the North-fide the faireft, and best throughout all the Lenant. (which the Curfours enter at their pleasure) the other choaked with the decayes of the Citie. The Emer of Sidon hath given it with the adiacent Territories, to his Brother for a possession. comprehending fixe miles of the Continent in length; two in breadth, and in some places three. To A leuell naturally fertill, but now neglected: watered with pleasant Springs; heretofore aboun-

ding with Sugar-canes, and all varietie of fruit Trees. We pasted by certaine Cifternes, some mile and better distant from the Citie : which are called Salomons by the Christians of this Countrey. I know not why, vnlesse these were they salomons CL which he mentions in the Canticles. Square they are and large; replenished with living waters. sternes. in times past conveyed by the Aquaduct into the aforesaid Orchards : but now vieleffe and ruined . they shed their waters into the Valley below , making it plashie in sundry places : where the Aire doth suffer with the continual croking of Frogs. Within night, wee came vnto certayne Tents that were pitched in those Marishes, belonging to the Emers Brothers Seruants, who there pastured their Horses. Where by a Moletto the Master of his Horse (whose bitter 20 he had marryed) we were courteously entertayned. The next morning after two or three houres riding, we afcended the Mountaynes of Saron, high and woodie; which firetch with intermitted Saton. Vallies, vnto the Sea of Galilie, and here have their white Cliffes washt with the surges; called Cano Rianco by the Mariner: frequented (though for laken by men) with Leopards, Bores, Jaccals, and fuch like fauge Inhabitants. This paffage is both dangerous and difficult neighboured by the precinitating Cliffe, and made by the labour of man : yet recompensing the trouble with fragrant Sauours, Bayes, Rolemary, Marioram, Hylope, and the like there growing in abundance. They fay, that of late a Thiefe purfued on all fides, and desperate of his safetie, (for rarely are offences here pardoned) leapt from the top into the Sea, and fwum vnto Tyrus, which is fenen miles diffant : who for the frangeneffe of the fact was forginen by the Emer. A little beyond

we passed by a ruinous Fort, called Scandarone, of Alexander the builder; heere built to defend Scandarone this passage : much of the foundation ouer-growne with Oziers and Weeds, being nourished by a Spring that falleth from thence into the Sea. A Moore not long fince was heere affailed by a A Leopard. Leopard, that soulkt in the aforesaid Thicket; and immping vpon him, ouerthrew him from his Asse; but the beast hauing wet his feet, and mist of his hold, retyred as ashamed without further violence : within a day or two after he drew company together to have hunted him , but found him dead of a wound received of a Bore. The higher Mountaynes now comming thort of the Sea, doe leave a narrow levell betweene. Vpon the left hand on a high round Hill, wee faw two folitarie Pillars, to which fome of vsrid, in hope to haue seene something of Antiquities where we found divers others laid along, with the halfe buried foundation of an ample building. A mile beyond we came to a Fort maintayned by a small Garrison of Moores, to prohibit that passage if need should require, and to secure the Traueller from Theeues;a place heretofore ynpas-

fable by reason of their out-rages. The Souldiers acquainted with our Merchants, freely entertayned vs. and made vs good cheere according to their manner of Diet: requited with a Prefent of a little Tobacco, by them greedily affected. They also remitted our Caphar, ving to take Tobacco foure Dollers apiece of the stranger Christians. From hence ascending the more eminent part of the Rockie and naked Mountaynes, which heere againe thrust into the Sea, (called in times past, the Tyrian Ladder) by a long and steepe descent we descended into the Valley of Acre. Divers little hils being here and there dispersed, crowned with Ruines (the Couerts for Theeues) and many Villages on the skirts of the bordering Mountaynes. Ere yet night, wereso entred Acre.

Now is our Author shaping his course for England; and we have a further Asian Discourse to make. Thankfull to him for his paines (which have eafed vs of further fearch in the many many Holy Land Pilgrimes, which I have in divers Languages) wee will feeke a new Pilgrime to be our Guide, both in Syrus, and in the parts adjoyning. And loe, lerufatem to pleafeth vs, that once againe we will travell thither with Mafter Biddulph, following him from Constantinople to Aleppo, and thence by Land to Ierufalem, the Nauill and Centre of many our Pilgrimes and Pil-

Tttttt

CHAP.

Tyrus.

Part of a Letter of Master WILLIAM BIDDVLPH from Aleppo.

* The former, part of this Letter is omitted : the later alio pruned in fome things to preuent gated our mourning. And (as my dutie was) I appointed one day to bee kept holy, which wee tedious repetitions, of those things which you have had in others. Fame of Q. Elizabeth.



He * dolefull and lamentable beginning of your last Letter made mee exceeding forrowfull; for therein you acquainted me with the death of bleffed Queene E. lizabeth, of late and famous memory; at the hearing whereof, not onely I and our English Nation mourned, but many other Christians who were never in Christendome, but borne and brought vp in Heathen Countries, wept to heare of her death, and faid, the was the most famous Queene that euer they heard or read of fince the World beganne. But the ending of your Letter comforted vs againe, and miti-

fpent in Prayer, and Preaching, and Thanksgiuing vnto God for the happie aduancement of so Noble, Wife, Learned, and Religious a King ouer vs. And in figne of 10y, we feafted and triumphed in fuch fort, that the very Heathen people were partakers with vs of our iov. After my departure from Constantinople, the first place wee touched at, was the two Castles at the Helle! pont, about two hundred and twentie miles distant from Constantinople, where the order is for all thips to flay three dayes, to the end that if any flaues be run away from their Masters, or Theenes haue ftolne away any thing, they may thither be purfued in three dayes, before the fhips paffe: 20 That is, goods And then at three dayes end, the thip must be searched for goods, contra bando, and the Grand Signiors Passe showed for all the Passengers in the ship; and then (their visual duties payed) they may fet faile and away. Yet if the Master of the ship pay extraordinarily, they may more speedily bee diffratched : and many give very liberally (when they have a good winde) rather than they will be stayed many houres. From thence we came to Chios, where we stayed a few dayes. From Chios wee fet fayle with a very good wind, which brought vs amongst the fiftie three lles in the Arches, called Cyclades, or Sporades: And then, by a contrary wind, wee were driven ties in the Arcoes, cause Openates, on openates. This orthing of contrary winds, were were driven to Samps, which is an Ile before Isnia, ouer against Epbeliu, where we anchored untill wee had a good wind, and then Ispled by Andrea, and le, one of the Cycladar, and had a very good wind an orthing week of the Cycladar, and had a very good wind an orthing week of the Cycladar, and had a very good wind an orthing week of the Cycladar, and had a very good wind an orthing week of the Cycladar, and had a very good wind an orthing week of the Cycladar, and then Isple week of the Cycladar, and the Cycladar, and the Cycladar and the Cyc Caria, where we were becalmed, It is called the Carpathian Sea of Carpathus, an Ile in the middeft betwixt Rhodes and Crees. From Rhodes we came to Cyprus, a famous and fruitfull Ilandin the Sea Carpathium, betweene Cilicia and Syria, which was once conquered by Richard the First King of England. In this Ile, Venus was greatly honoured. There is still a Citie therein called Paphia, built by Paphu, who dedicated it to Venus. But the chiefest Cities in Cyprus are Famegufta and Nicofia. There is great store of Cotton-wooll growing in this Iland, and exceeding good Wine made here, and the best Dimetey, with other good Commodities. From hence French Gentleman (who came in our ship from Constantinople,) imbarked himselfe for lopes, with a purpole to goe to Ierufalem. Ioppa is not two dayes fayling from Cyprus with a good 42

of the Signiorie of Venice, but now it is inhabited by Greekes, and gouerned by Turkes. But our ship from Cypras went to Tripoly in Syria, a Citie on the mayne Land of Syria, neere vnto Mount Lybanus, which is a Mountayne of three dayes journey in length, reaching from Tripoly neere to Damascus. Whilest our ship stayed in the Roade at Tripoly. I and some others road up to Mount Lybanu, to fee the Cedar Trees there, and lodged the first night at the Bishops house of Eden, who vied vs very kindly. It is but a little Village, and called by the Turkes, An-Eden not the chora, but most viually by the Christians there dwelling, it is called Eden, not the Garden of Eden, (which place is vnknowne vnto this day) but because it is a pleasant place, resembling in fome fort the Garden of Eden, (as the simple Inhabitants thereof suppose) therefore it is called go Eden. This Bishop was borne in the same Parish, but brought vp at Rome : his name was Francifcus Amyra, by whom I vnderstood, that the Pope of Rome many yeeres fince, sent vnto the Christians inhabiting Mount Lybanus, to perswade them to embrace the Romifb Religion, and yeeld themsclues to the Church of Rome, making large promises vnto them if they would so doe: whereof they deliberated long, but in the end yeelded, vpon condition they might have he bertie to vie their owne Lyturgie, and Ceremonies, and Lents (for they strictly observe source Lents in the yeere) and other Customes. Euer fince which time, the Pope bath and doth maintayne some of their Children at Rome. These Christians which dwell upon Mount Lybanus, are called Maronites, they are very simple and ignorant people, yet civill, kinde, and courteous to Strangers. There are also many Turkes dwelling on the same Mountayne, and an Emeer or great 60 Lord, called Emser Vfeph, who governeth all the reft, both Christians and Turkes, beeing himfelfe a Mahometan, yet one who holdeth the gouernment of Mount Lybanus, in delpight of the Great Turke, and hath done a long time.

wind : and lopps is but thirtie miles from lerufalem by Land. Cyprus was vnder the gouernment

CHAP. Q. Wel-comming. Good entertainment. Feaft and feafting

From Eden we rode ten miles further vp the Mountayne, to fee certayne Cedar Trees, where Cedars were we law foure and twentie tall Cedar Trees growing together, as bigge as the grearest Oakes, plentifull in with divers rowes of branches one over another, firetching straight out, as though they were but now very kept by Art. Although we read of great store of Cedars which have growne on Mount Lyba- rare. nut, yet now there are very few, for we faw none but thefe foure and twentie, neither heard of any other but in one place more. At these Cedars many Nostranes met vs, and led vs to their Villages. From these Cedars wee returned toward Tripoly, another way, descending by the fide of the Mount towards a Village of the Maronincal Christians, called Hatcheeth. where (as we were descending downe the side of the Mountaine) all the men, women * The We-In and children, came out of their Houles to behold vs : And when we were yet farre off riding to- fleme Chris wards them, they gaue a joyfull shout altogether joyntly, to expresse their joy for our comming. Signage for wards treath, they gade and the women with Chaffing diffuse or coles burnt Incente in our way, called thorow and their Casses, that is, their Church-men (with blue Shashes about their heads) made crofuer since the

fes with their fingers towards vs (as their manner is in figne of welcome) and bliffed vs, giving Hierofelmitan God thankes that he had brought Christian Frankes, " of fuch far Countries as they understood Expeditionally we were of, to come to visit them. So soone as we were dismounted from our Horses, the chiefe Sheb, with all the rest of their ancientest men, came and brought vs to the chiese house of the Parish, called the Towns-house or man.

Church-house, and there spread Carpets and Table-clothes on the ground (as their manner is) 20 and made vs all fit downe; and every one that was able, brought Flaskets of fuch good cheere as they had, to welcome vs, which was many Bottles or Ingeffers of exceeding good Wine, with Oliues, Sallets, Egges, and fuch like things, as on the fudden they had readie, and fet them before vs; and both by the cheerefulnesse of their countenances, gestures of their bodies, and prefents of fuch prefent things as they had, expressed their gladnesse for our comming; and would also haue prepared Hens, Kids, and other good cheere, but we would not suffer them. This was about eleuen or twelue of the clocke. They would have had vs continue with them all night, and with great importunitie craued it; but we understanding that the Patriarch was but three miles off, at a Village called Sharry, we went to falute him, who hearing of our comming (al. beit he were at a Feath amongst all his Neighbours) came to meete vs, and saluted vs, and brought 30 vs all in amongst his Neighbours into a Roome foure square, and round about belet with Carpets

and Table-clothes on the ground, and fuch cheere as the feafon of the yeere did affoord, fet there. on, and made vs all fit down, and conferred with vs of our Country, and many other matters, fauing matters of Religion, for the poore man had no Latine, and little Learning in any other Langnage; only he had the Stracte, (which was his natural Language) with the Turkish and Arebun Tongue. After wee had spent one houre with him, we left him with his Neighbours at Sharry, where we found him, for he could not conveniently come from them : for their manner is, when they fealt, to fit from mid-day vntill mid-night, and sometimes all night, neuer altogether rifing from their good cheere, but now and then one by Inter-courses, as occasion requireth, returning againe speedily. Yet hee sent with vs three men to bring vs to his owne house, neere 40 vnto a Village (foure miles distant from Sbarry) called Boloza, but vulgarly Blonza, from whence we descended downe the fide of another part of the Mountayne, and in the middle of the descending of this Mountayne was the Patriarkes house, called Kanobeen Kadischa Mir-iam, in the Striacke Tongue, but in Latine, Conobium Santta Maria; that is, The Monasterie of Saint Marie. Ouer against the Patriarkes house is an high steepie Mountayne, from whence the water runneth downe into a deepe Valley betwixt the Patriarkes House and the Hill, and in the fall, the water maketh an exceeding great noyfe, like vnto that Catadapa in Ethiopia, where the fall

o dinarie Eccho thereabout. One side of the Patriarkes house is a naturall Rocke, the other of hewen stones and squared Timber: a very strong House, but not very large, nor specious to behold. So are also many of their Houses, in most of their Villages, built against a Rocke, as a Wall vnto one side of it, especially Emeer Uleph his House, the greatest part thereof being hewed out of the linely Rocke, and Tharis, Lord the passage or descending vnto it so narrow and dangerous, that it is counted inmincible, which together maketh him to hold out against the Turke, and to domineere in this Mountayne, will he, nill he. It is a most intricate Mountayne with Hils and Valleyes, Woods and Rivers, and fruitfuil Pastures, Oliues, Vines, and Fig-trees, Goates, Sheepe, and other Cattle. It is also exceeding

of Nilus maketh fuch a noyle, that the people are made deafe therewith that dwell neere it.

This place is forme-what like vnto it in fall, but not in effect : for this water beeing not fo great

as Nilas, maketh not the like noyle, neither worketh the like effect. There is also an extraor-

having Snow on the top all the yeere long. 60 At this Monastery of Saint Marie (which is the Patriarkes House) weelodged all night, and both on Saturday at Evening Prayer, and on Sunday at Morning Prayer, we both heard and faw the manner of their Seruice in the Syriacke Tongue, both read and fung very reuerently, with Confessions, Prayers, Thankefgiuings, the Plalmes of David sung, and Chapters both out of the Old Testament, and the new distinctly read. It reioyced me greatly to see their Order : and I

Garden.

Rhede.

Cyprus.

Set formes of More and Anti- ancient Christians called Nezarine, the Antiquirie of wing former Prayers in Churches, and also the necessitie thereof, that the people might have something to say Amen vnto, beeing read in their Mother Tongue, that they may learne to pray prinately, by those Prayers which they daily heare read publikely. This is too much neglected in England. God grant reformation thereof.

But foure Pari-

There is no place in all the World, but foure Parishes or Villages on this Mountaine, where netronic flat they speake the Sprincke Tongue naturally at this day. And these are these foure Villages, world which which I named before; at all which places wee had kind entertainment, vie. First, Edon, called speake Spriack, by the Turkes, Anchora. Secondly, Hatsbeeth. Thirdly, Sharry. Fourthly, Boloza, called vulgarly Blouza. And these people are called Nostranes, quasi Nazaritans, as it were Nazarites, 10 and none but they. But more generally they are called Maronites, but this name is common to them with others. There are dwelling on one fide of Mount Lybanus, towards the foot of the Mountayne (and

Mount Libs Druftes.

in some other places in that Countrey) a kind of Christians, called Drusses, who came into the Countrey with King Baldwine , and Godfrey of Bullen, when they conquered that Countrey. (whose Predecessors or Ancestors are thought to have beene Frenchmen) and afterwards when the Saracens recoured it againe, these men (whom they now call Drusses) fled into the Monntaynes to faue themscluss; and there dwelling long, in the end their Posteritie forgat all Christianitie, yet vsed still Baptisme, & retained still the names of Christians, whom the Tarcomen call Rafties, that is, Infidels, because they eate Swines flesh, which is forbidden by the Turkes Law. 20

Tweemanny.

These Turcomanny are kind, and simple people, dwelling alwayes in the fields, following their flockes, borne and brought up, living and dying in Tents, and when their flockes and heards remooue, then all their men, women and children remoue with their houshold-stuffe, and houses too, which are but Tents made to remooue, after the manner of the ancient I fraelites : & where they find good parture, there they pitch their Tents; the men following their flocks of sheepe and heards of Cattle, the women keepe their Tents, and spend their time in spinning, or carding, or knitting, or fome houshold huswiferie, not spending their time in gossipping and gadding abroad from place to place, and from house to house, trom Ale-house to Wine-tauerne, as many idle Hus-Lanigaries, are wines in England doe, Yet fometimes are these simple soules abused by Lanizaries, who in translling by them, take from them perforce victuals for themselues and for their horses, and give them 30 nothing but forestripes, if they but murmure against them. But when Christian Merchants passe by them, they will (of their owne accord) kindly present them.

We returned from Mount Lybonu to Tripoly, by such an intricate way, that if we had not had a Guide with vs. wee should have lost our selues. Neere vnto Tripoly there is a Plaine at least one A Mountayne mile in length, full of Oliue-trees and Fig-trees. At the foot of this Mountayne, neere vnto

Tripoly, there is a fandie Mount which hath arisen (in the memorie of some olde men there yet living) where there was none before; and it groweth still bigger and bigger, and there is a Prophelie of it, that in time it shall ouer-whelme the Towne. Tripoly hath the Etimologie (as some (av) of two Greeks words, viz. 2016 and words, because the Citie hath bin thrice built. First, on a Rockie Iland, where it was ouer-whelmed with water. Secondly, on the Marine neere vnto the 40 Sea, where it was often facked by Confares. And now thirdly, a mile from the Sea, where it is annoved with fand. Our ship being not readie to set faile at our returne from the Mount, but flaying partly to dispatch their businesse, and partly for a good wind; we trauelled by Land two dayes journey, to fee Tyrus and Sidon, hard by the Sea. And at Sidon we faw the Tombe of Za. bulon, the Sonne of Iacob, held in great estimation and reverent account at this present day.

Tyrus is now called (by the Turkes) Sur, because there beginneth the Land of Syria, which they call Sur; Tyrus is destroyed, and no such Citie now standing, onely the name of the place

remayneth, and the place is still knowne where it stood. Eight miles from Tyrus towards the East, is the Citie Sarepta, of the Sidonians, where the Prophet Elias raifed the Wildowes Sonne from death to life. We faw also Baruta, where sometimes was a great Trade for Merchants, but 50 from thence they removed it to Damafous, and from Damafous to Tripoly, and of late, from Tripoly to Sidon. Toppa is not far from these parts, oftentimes Barkes come from the one to the other. At our returne we went abroad, and prefently fet faile for Scanderone, (as it is now called Bottome and by Turkes:) otherwise called Alexandretta by the Christians, which is the very bottome and border of all vtmoft border of all the Streights. The Aire is very corrupt, and infecteth the bodies , and corrupteth the bloud of such as continue there many dayes, partly by reason of the dregs of the Sea, which are driven thither : and partly by reason of two high Mountaynes which keepe away the Sunne from it a great part of the day. And it is very dangerous for strangers to come on thoare, before the Sunne be two houres high, and have dryed vp the vapours of the ground, or to flay on sheare after Sun-setting. The water also neere vnto the Towne are very vnholsome, comming 60 from a Moorish ground; but at the Fountayne, a mile off, there is exceeding good water to drink. It is far more healthfull to sleepe about then on the shoare. Scanderone is in Cilicia, and Cilicia is the Countrey Caramonia, (as it is now called) in the leffer Asia, and is divided into two parts, viz. Torcher and Campestris. It hath on the Eaft, the Hill Amanus: on the North, Taurus: on the Weit, Pamphilia: on the South, the Cicilian Sea.

Scanderone is the Port for Aleppo, where all our Merchants land their goods, and fend them vp to Aleppo vpon Camels. The Carauans viually make three dayes journey betwirt Scarderone and Aleppo. Whiles our Camels were preparing, wee tooke boat and went to an ancient Towne by the Sca fide, called at this day By as, but of old, Tarfus, a Citie in Cilicia, where Saint Tarfus in Cilicia Paul was borne, mentioned Act. 22.3. which Towne is arched about (as many of their Cities are) to keepe away the heat of the Sunne, which Arches they call Bazars. At the Gardens neere Tarfus (and likewise at other Gardens within three miles of Scanderone) wee saw erest flore of Silke-wormes, which at the first bee but little graines like vnto Mustard seed : but by the bearing of them in womens bosomes, they doe gather an heat, whereby they come vnto Silkeworms. to life, and so proue wormes; they keepe them in Tents made of reeds with one loft ouer another full of them, and feed them with leaves of Mulberie trees; these wormes (by naturall inftine) doe fast often, (as some report) every third day.

Here we flayed certaine dayes to auoyd the infection of Scanderone. The Mountaines which obscure Scanderone, and make it more vnhealthfull, I take to be a part of Taurus, which is a great and famous Mountaine, beginning at the Indian Sea, and rifing into the North, paffeth by Affa vnto Maotis, bordering vpon many Countries, and is called by many names. Sometimes it is called Caucasu, which is the highest Hill in all Asia, which parteth India from Scythia, and is part of the Hill Tauru. Sometimes it is called Amonu, which Hill perteth Syrue from Cilicia.

And fometimes it is called by other names, according vnto the Sea coafts along which it extendeth. About Scanderone there are many rauenous beafts, about the bignesse of a Foxe. commonly called there lackalles, engendred (as they fay) of a Fox and a Wolfe, which in the night make a great crying, and come to the graues, and if there have beene any Corfe buried the day before, (if the graue be not well filled, with many great stones upon it) many of them toge-

ther, with their feet, doe scrape up the earth, and pull up the corps and eate it. At our returne from Tharfus, Edward Rofe our Factor marine, prouided vs horses to ride to Edward Rofe

Aleppo, and a lanizarie, called Parauan Bafran with two limmoglans to guard vs, with necesfarie victuals for our felues to spend by the way, for there are no Innes nor Victualing-houses in that Countrey, but trauellers take victuals for themselves, and provender for their Horses with them. Our Merchants and Passengers making haste to be gone from this contagious and pestife-30 rous place Seanderone (which one very well called , The bane of Francks) left their goods with the Factor marine to be fent after them , because the Malines and Muchremen (as they call the Maline are Carriers) were not yet come downe with their Carriers to carrie them vp: but we met them at the Fountaine of files neere vnto Scanderone, About eight miles from Scanderone, we came to a Muchremen fer Towne called Bylan, where there lieth buried an English Gentleman, named Hemie Morison, who Horses to hire, Towne called Bylan, where there need barred an array with his brother Mafter Phines Merifon, Blan: died there comming downe from Aleppo, in companie with his brother Mafter Phines Merifon, Blan: who left his Armes in that Country with these Verses under written.

To thee deere Henry Morison The Brother Phines here left alone:

Hath left this fading memorie, For Monuments, and all must die,

From Bylan wee came to the Plaine of Antisch, and went ouer the River Orontes by Boate, felues, where which River parteth Aniochia and Syria. Anioch Plaine is very long and large, at least ten may feath him miles in length. We lodged the first night at Amiochia in Pisidia, an ancient Towne about five selfe with the and twentie miles from Seanderone, mentioned Ad. 11.26. where the Disciples were first cal- rarities and led Christians. Here we lodged in an house, but on the bare ground, having nothing to sleepe on, varieties of or to couer vs, but what wee brought with vs, viz. a Pillow, and a Quilt at the most, and that many Kingwas lodging for a Lord.

This Antioch hath beene, as a famous, so an exceeding strong Towne, situated by the Sea, Antiochia in and almost compassed (at the least on both sides) with exceeding high and strong Rockes. The Pistale Inhabitants at this day are Greekes, but vinder the government of the Turke, but for matters of Religion, ordered and ruled by their Patriarchs, for the Greekes have foure Patriarchs to this 50 present day, viz. The Patriarch of Antioch, the Patriarch of Ierusalem, the Patriarch of Alexandria, the Patriarch of Conftantinople, who ruleth all the reft . Yet as the lewes, fo also the Greeks to this day are without a King, and both they, and their Patriarchs are but flaves to the great Tierke.

And although their Patriarch of Constantinople be counted their chiefe Patriarch: vet I have knowen one Milefins (a learned man indeed) who was first Patriarch of Conftantinople, preferred to the place by Mafter Edward Barton, an English Gentleman , and Lord Ambaffadour for Mafter Barton, Queene Elizabeth of famous memorie, who for his wisedome, good government, policie, and Before him Christian carriage, hath left an immortall fame behind him in those Countries, to this prefent Master Hareday, and lieth buried at an Iland of the Greekes, within twelve miles of Conffantinople, called ballador. 60 Bartons Hand to this day. After whose death, this good man Milefins was by the Greekes dif- Bartons Hand,

placed from being Patriarch of Constantinople: (which they durst not doe whiles Master Barton was lining) because, being a man of knowledge, he laboured to reforme the Greekes from many of their superstitious customes. Whereupon (presently after the death of Master Barton) they faid, their Patriarch was an English-man, and no Greeke, and therefore manzulled him, that is, Tttttt

fous trauels are in a large volume by them

diffeleced him. Yet bearing fome reverence towards him for his learning, they made him Patria arch of Alexandria. And being there Patriarch, hee excommunicated the Patriarch of Anise. chia, because he accepted of reliefe at the Popes hand, and made him come to Alexandria, to humble himfelfe vnto him, and acknowledge his fault before he would fuffer him to execute his

The Exglish with the Great

he placed many other Arch-bishops both at Salonica, (of old called The falonica) and elsewhere. 6 Sir Job. Aires. 2. Sir Thomas Ree now Lieger there for his Maicftie.

Achilles.

Sanballat. Nebe.4.1.

little Pasties. diff made Egges and Herbs.

Master Henry Lello (a learned, wise, and religious English Gentleman, sometime Student in Oxford and afterwards at the Innes of the Court) fucceeded Mafter Barton in his place, and in many things exceeded him, especially in his religious carriage and unspotted life: and had not the times beene more troublefome in his Regiment, then in the time of his Predeceffor Maffee Barton; he would every way have gone beyond him. Hee first of all reformed his familie, and to Turke name beene, 1. Ma. afterwards fo ordered himselfe in his whole carriage, that he credited our Countrey : and after ten yeeres gouernement of the English Nation there, hee returned into his Countrey with 2. Mafter Bar- the teares of many, and with generall good report of all Nations there dwelling or foining 1027. 3.Sir Hear. ning ; and is worthily by his excellent Maieftie rewarded with Knighthood for his good fer-Lelle. 4.Sir uice. If Milefins had lived, this good Gentleman would have restored him to Constantinople, 25

> In the Mountaines betwixt Scanderone and Aleppo, there are dwelling a certaine kind of peole, called at this day Coords, comming of the race of the ancient Parthians, who worthin the Deuill, and alledge for their reason in so doing, that God is a good man, and will doe no man harme, but that the Deuill is bad, and must bee pleased, left hee hurt them. There was one of an our Carriers a Muccreman and Malim, named Abdel Phat, who was faid to be of that Race and Religion. There is also, although not in the direct way, (yet for fafety and pleasantnesse of the way, it is sometimes taken in the way to Aleppo) an ancient Citie called Achilles, where one Afan Basham ruleth like a King (paying duties to the Turker) successively from his Predecessors. comming of the house of Sanballat, who hindred the building of the Temple of Jerusalem, who is called to this day, Eben Sumbolac, that is, The some of Sanballit: and all his kinred call one another. Ammiocli, that is, Brother Ammonite; for they account themselves of the race of the Ammonites. This Alban Balbam is now old, and (for the most part) referreth all matters of eouernement to his Kiniman V feph Bege, that is, Lord Iofeph.

> The second night, in our trauell from Scanderone, we lodged at a place called, The Gardens, in 20 the open fields, having the ground to our Bed, a flone to our Pillow (as Iacob in his travell had) and the Skie to our courring. And many poore Trauellers in these parts (who come ynprous ded) have nothing but the aire for their supper, except they can meet with the fruits of Trees, or Herbs of the fields. Wee met in some places with Villages of Tents, where our denicarie Parauan Balbam (being partly feared and partly loued amongst them) brought vnto vs from them. Bread and Water often times. Their Bread is made all in Cakes, after the ancient manner, as Abraham entertayned Angels with hearth Cakes. At one place we had also presented to vs very good (weet Goats milke, and also good sowre milke, turned by Art, which is the most common dish in those hot Countries.

> The day following, we came about noone to a Village, called Hanadan, eight miles on this 40 fide Aleppo, ouer against which Village, on the right hand, on the top of the hill, there is (as the Iemes report) the Sepulchre of the Prophet Ieremie. At this Village Hanadan there are many Pigeon houses, whereof the poore people make much profit, bringing them to Aleppo to sell. At this Village we dined with Musinelons, Sambouses, and a Mucclebite. And after dinner, we flept an houre or two (as the custome of the Countrey is) and then rode forwards towards A-Leppo, whither we came by fine of the Clocke, and were kindly entertayned at Cane Bargol by the worshipfull Richard Colthurst Esquire, Consull for the English Nation there.

> Aram Sobab, some thinke to have beene that Citie which is now called Alepso. And of this Aram Sobab I find mention made, 2. Sam. 8. 3, 4, 5. And also in the title of the fixtie Pfalme, where mention is made of the falt Valley which is but halfe a dayes journey from Alepso, which 50 is a very great Plaine, without graffe growing on it, the very fand whereof is good Salt naturally: after raine, being dried againe by the Sunne, they gather it. There is also a little lland or Mountaine in the midft thereof, plaine on the top, which yeeldeth the best Salt. Some lemes there dwelling, doe also say, that Aleppo was the Citie Sephernaim: but I thinke it to be a better Citie, which fome fay, was called Apollonius : but I know no reason for it except it were built by one of that name. How focuer, it should feeme this Citie Aleppo hath often changed her name, and that, if it were not Aram Sobah, yet to be built not farre from the place where Aram Sothe flood. But the Turkes (changing the names of all places where they come) call Aleppo at this day, Halep, which fignifieth Milke, because it yeeldeth great store of Milke.

Aleppo is inhabited by Turkes, Moores, Arabians, lewes, Greekes, Armenians, Chelfalines, No. 60 frances, and people of fundry other Nations. The Turkes come of Magon the fonne of lapheth. The Moores are more ancient dwellers in Aleppo then Turkes, and more forward and zealous in Mahometisme then Turkes: yea all the Church-men amongst the Turkes are Moores (whom the Turkes count a base people in regard of themselves, and call them Toti.) Yet their Church-

men they have in great reverence; and not onely their , but they reverence Church-men of all Turkes reve-Nations, and call them holy Men, Saints, and men of God. I my felfe have had great experience hereof, both in the place of my abode at Aleppo, and in my journey towards lenglates, and in other places. In Aleppo, as I have walked in the streetes, both Tarkes and Moores, and other Nations, would very reuerently falute me after the manner of their Country: yea, their very Souldiers, as I have walked in the Fields, with many other of our Nation, without a Innefarie to mard vs. though they have beene many hundreds together, yet have they not offered either me or any of my companie wrong, for my fake, but have faid one to another, Hadab Caffier: that is. This is a Church-man, and therefore take beede what you doe unto him, for he is a good man. 10 cre. At lernfalem many ftrangers of fundry Nations understanding that I was an English Prea-

cher, came and kiffed my hand, and called me the English Patriarke. Yea, in all my ten yeeres Trauels, I neuer received, neither was offered wrong by any Nation but mine owne Countrev. men, and by them chiefly whom it chiefly concerned to proced me from wrongs : yet haue I found them most forward to offer me wrong, onely for doing my dutie, and following the order of our Church of England : knowing that I had none of the Reverend Fathers of our Church to defend me. So would it be in England, if we had not the Reverend Fathers in God the Lord Bishops of our Church to protect vs. All other Nations, both Heathen and Christian. goe before vs herein, in reverencing and providing for their Church-men. The Turkes honour Mad and fortheir Muffie (which is their chiefe Ruler in Ecclefialticall matters, next vider the Grand Signi- life Gooding

20 or) as an Angelli : The Nostranes, Greekes, Armenians, Chelfalines, and Christians of all other Sheb Boubec. Nations, performe double honour vnto them : onely in England, where there is a more learned Sheb Maham Ministerie (I speake by experience) then in any Nation in the world, they are least of all regarmet a naked
Sentence. ded : Which maketh our Aduerfaries, the Papilts, fay, (as I have heard some of them speake in . Cotonicus per my hearing, many thousand miles from England) that it wee our selves were perswaded of the 455. Br. Hutos eruth of our Religion, wee would reuerence our Church-men as they doe, and not fcorne them & Sm. mentioand contemne them as we doe.

They also account fooles, dumbe men, and mad men, Santones, that is, Saints. And whatfoeuer fuch mad men fay or doe, though they take any thing out of their house, or firike them, other day he and wound them, yet they take it in good part, and fay, that they shall have good lucke after washerh his 30 it. And when such mad men die, they Canonize them for Saints, and erect stately Monuments nakedbody at ouer their graues, as wee have here many examples, especially of one (who being mad) went the Fournaine ouer their graues, as we can see was Sheb Bonbac, at whose death they bestowed great cost on his Can and prefunerall, and erected an house over his grave, where (to this day) there are Lampes burning sently the wamight and day, and many idle fellowes (whom they call Darmifes) there maintained to looke traintenanted with health separation of the contraction of the separation of the sep they take to themselves, and there is no weeke but many come out of the Citie of Aleppo and and carried to ficke folkes by other places, to offer. For this Sepulchre is built on an Hill, three miles from Aleppo, betweene the Morre, His the Kings Garden and the Fountaine of Fishes. If any be ficke, or in danger, they vow that if Cell is like they recour or escape, they will offer so much money, or this or that good thing to Sheh Roy. Vukansshop, they recourse steape, they will one to much money, a case of the good state good stilling to over down.

**Description is also fich another Ballain Saint Mappy ex luting, whom they call Shob Mass when bely hammer a Santone, who goethalwaies naked, with a Spit on his shoulders; and as the gooth side of the santone state of thorow the fireeres, the Shop-keepers will offer him their Rings; and if hee thrust his Spit tended with thorow their Rings, they take it for a favour and figne of good fucceffe: The like account they Darwiet, which make, if hee take any thing from their Shop-boards, or box them or any of their house; yea, begalmes, and they are yet more mad vpon this mad man then fo, for both men and women will come vnto Bather Beafts him, and kiffe his hand, or any other part, fometimes his thighs, and aske him counfell, for fire fomethey hold that mad mens foules are in Heauen talking with God, and that hee rewealeth fecrets times he somewnto them. In regard whereof, the Balbawes themselues oftentimes, and chiefe Captaines will times they come vnto him with some present, and kille some part of his naked body, and aske him when some officers and some present, and kille some part of his naked body, and aske him when deficome vite on mwith some peters, and what fuccesse they shall have in warre: And looke women defi-to ther they shall goe to battell or not, and what successe they shall have in warre: And looke ring sine, loss whatfoeuer he faith, they hold it for an Oracle. Not long fince, the Turkes had a victorie against his generall the Christians; and at their returne, they reported that this naked Santone, Sheb Mahammer member of Aleppo, was feene naked in the field, fighting against their enemies, and that by his helpe they (which is alouer-came them, although hee were not neere them by many thouland miles. Whereby you and depart may fee how the Deuill doth delude them still, as hee did their Fore-fathers at the first by Ma-joytull. He

homets Machiqueilian deuices. Their Darnifes also they have in such reputation, that oftentimes great Bashames, when they eyes raw, and Their Darwife also they nate in tuen reputation, that the triber of goods, or both, to avoide danger, with his Spit are in disfauour with the King, and feare either loffe of life, or goods, or both, to avoide danger, with his Spit with the King, and feare either loffe of life, or goods, or both, to avoide danger, with his Spit with the will turne Darwifes , and then they account themselves priviledged persons from the rigour of 60 their Law. The witnesse of a Darusse ord a Church-man, will passe better then any mans say, the witnesse besides, yea, better then Sheresses whom they account of Mahomets kindred, and they purpose, &c. are knowne from others by their greene Shashes, which no man elle may weare: for greene they A first floor account Mahomess colour, and if they see any Christian wearing a garment of that colour, they socke vpon superstituon. will cut it from his backe, and beate him, and aske him how he dare prefume to weare Maho-

mers colour, and whether hee bee Kin to God or not? This I have knowne put in practife vpon Christians (not acquainted with the cultomes of the Countrey) fince my comming: one tor having but greene Shooe-strings, had his Shoots taken away. A nother wearing greene Breeches vnder his Gowne (being elpied) had his Breeches cut off, and he reuiled and beaten.

The Tarker haue no Printing amongst them, but all their Law and their Religion's written in the Morifer tongue, that is, the Advice's tongue, and he is accounted a Learned man amongst in the Morifer tongue, that is, the Advice's tengue, and he is a secounted a Learned man amongst them, that can speake it. Some few amongst them haut the Italians tongue; and many (especially in that can speake it. Some few amongst them haut the Italians tongue; and many (especially in maje there are as many Greeians and Hebrers as Tarket. The poore, amongst the Montre and Darket as Meppa, beg oftentimes in the threes; as Italians and for the lake of Syntans Fift, who was (as they say) a Whore of Chantie, and would protitute her selfe to any man Bace. Places (as they say) as Whore of Chantie, and would protitute her selfe to any man Bace.

Diet of the Turkes.

Syntana Fiffa.

The Diet of the Tarkes is not fumptious, for the most common dish is Pilaw, which is good saugry meate made of Rice, and small morsels of Mutton boyled therein, and sometimes rotted Buckones, (that is, small bits or morfels of flesh.) Their more costly fare is Samboufes and Muclebites. Samboules are made of Paste, like a great round Pastie, with varietie of Herbes and meates therein, not minced, but in Buckones. A Muclebite is a dish made of Egs and Herbes. Their smaller Sambonses are more common, not so big as a mans hand, like a square Pastie. with minced meate therein. They have also varietie of Helloway, that is, sweet meates compounded in fuch fort, as are not to be feene elsewhere. The poorer fort feede on Herbes and Fruits of the 20 Trees. Their most common drinke is Coffa, which is a blacke kinde of drinke, made of a kind of Pulselike Pease, called Coasa; which being grownd in the Mill, and boiled in water, they drinke it as hot as they can fuffer it ; which they finde to agree very well with them against their crudities, and feeding on Herbes and raw meates. Other compounded drinkes they have. called Sherbet, made of Water and Sugar, or Hony, with Snow therein to make it coole: for although the Countrey bee hot, yet they keepe Snow all the yeere long to coole their drinke. It is accounted a great curtefie amongst them to give vnto their friends when they come to visit them , a Fin ion or Sculella of Coffa, which is more holesome then toothsome, for it causeth good concoction, and driueth away drowfineffe. Some of them will also drinke Berfb or Opism, which maketh them forget themselves, and talke idlely of Castles in the Ayre, as though they faw Visions, and heard Reuelations. Their Coffs houses are more common then Ale-houfes in England; but they vie not fo much to fit in the houses , as on Benches on both fides the freets, neere vnto a Coffa house, every man with his Fin-ion full; which being smoaking hot, they vie to put it to their Noses and Eares, and then sup it off by leasure, being full of idleand Ale-house talke, whiles they are amongst themselves drinking of it; if there be any newes, it is talked off there. They have also excellent good fountaine waters in most places of that Countrey, which is a common drinke among it them, especially in Summer time, and in their trauels at all times of the yeere.

Water lighte

home, and have found their water lighter then ours by foure ounces in the pound; and the lighter the water is, the more pleasant it is to drinke, and goe h downe more delectably, as if it were Milke rather then water. In great Cities where the Fountaines are either fame off, or not so plentifull, there are certaine poore men, which goe about the streetes from morning to night, with a Beares skinne full of water, fewed vp and fastned about his shoulders like a Tinkers Budget, with a Bole of Braffe in his hand, and offereth water freely to them that paffe by, Salurations except they give them any thing in curtefie, (fome feldome times.) The greatoft part of them are very curteous people amongst themselues, saluting one another at their meetings, with their hand on their breft (for they neuer vncouer their head) with these words : Salam Alike Sultanum: that is, Peace bee vnto you Sir. Whereunto the other replyeth, Alekem Salam: that is, 50 Peace be to you also. And sometimes thus: Elph Marhabba sanum. Or in Twelfh, thus: Hofb Geldanos, Sophi Geldanos: that is, Welcome my deare friend. And in the Morning, Subalkier Sultanum, that is, Good morrow Sir : and in the Euening , thus , Mifalker Sultanum , that is, Good euen Sir. And when friends and acquaintance meete, who have not feene one another many dayes before, they falute one another in Turkish, thus : Neder halen? that is, how doe you! In Arabiche, thus, Ilb balac Seedi? that is, How doe you Sir! And Ilb babrac? that is, how doth thy Gate? (meaning all within his Gate) and so proceed by particulars, to aske how doth thy Childe, Slaue, Horfe, Cat, Dog, Affe, &c. and euery thing in the houfe, except his Wife; for that is held a very vinkinde question, and not sviall amongst them, And if a man come to their houses, and at the doore enquire of the Children for their Father, they will answer him : but if 60 he enquire for the Mother, they will throw stones at him and reuile him.

Some of our Merchants have weighed their water and ours in England, when they have come 40

Their women (as hath beene flewed before) haue little libertre to come abroade, except it be on the Eeue before their Sabbath (which is Thurflay) to weepe at the graues of the dead, for to the Eeuer or to the Earts to wait themselluses (as the vie of the Country is.) And when they come abroad, they are alwayes masked; for it is accounted a finane for a Woman to bee feen bare-faced; yea, they are fo icalous and furpicious ouer them, that Eathers will not fuffer their own 80 nones, after they come to fourtherne yeers of age; to fee their Mothers.

These beet heir common distations on et oanother. Their more special l'aluntations to great Personages are these. When a man commeth to disture the great Tanke, air Grand Signing himselfes (into whole preference few are admitted except Ambassadurs and great Personages) they are led between two by the armes, for fear-ost a flab, by which meanes one of their Grand Signines to was once killed, and when they returne, they goe backupards; for it is accounted a difference to turne their backe parts to a great Man. In lake mannet they falute their Bassawas, and other long erest Man (but not led by the armes) but with their hands on the brook by dowing downecther heads to kille the skirt of his Garment, pronouncing these words, Olike hourd amnes Seeds, that is, God prolong your dayet sir. And to long as they taked with a Bassawa, they thand with their hands on their breit Madenshike, and bow low at their departure, and goe backward. They never their heads with the properties of the properties of

among it them, 10.137, which nates makes a market is also as assessing the properties of the They call one another-dipartity, and not absorpt sit of the start names, but fornetime by their fathers Calling, Trade, or Degree : as Bleen Sidten, that is, The foather of King: Elsen Trees, The Names, fonne of a Taylor, And fornetment by their fathers qualities, as Elsen Sidran, that is, The foame

of a Drunkard. And sometimes by their Marks, as Colar via, clust is, A man without earles 1 Cmps
20 Sepher, that is, Sepher with the thin beard. And sometimes by their Scaure, as Tome 11, that is,
A tall man is giver regial, that is, A little man, And sometimes by their Offices, as Lafger, that
is, A Secretarie: Nike, that is, A Clerke, &c. And sometimes by their Offices, as Lafger, that
is, A niked man ior. One who was of a humour to weare no cloaties but be treeches. But their
common word of curteir either to strangers, or such whose names they know not, or whom
they purpose to reverence, it Schilder, that is, Gentleman, And there is no man amongst them
or any degree, will refuse to aniwere to any of these rames. But if Nature huse marked there
either with goggle eyes, bunch backs, lame legs, or any other information of edeformitie, as they
are knowned by it, so they are sometimes of the submissions wras buried, at their returns are called
I Hogier, that is, Pligitm as, Height Tabas, Height Abademies 'En, which is counted a word of great
grace and credit amongst them. And the windelfue of an Hogie, will be etaken before any ocher.

There are allo many e **Freibeaut Schaller up a Height Schaler and the structure. The test are allo many e **Freibeaut Schaler and the windelfue of an Hogie, will be taken before any ocher.

There are allo many e **Freibeaut Schaler and the structure of the schaler and the structure.

There are allo many e **Freibeaut Schaler and the structure of the schaler and the schaler and the schaler and the structure of the schaler and the schaler

Kings at this day, vst. Danden and Aborifhe; the one their lawfull King, the other an Viurper; and fome follow the one, and some the other, and are bitter enemies one to another; yet have I teldome heard of any great warres betwise them, for they feldome meet. They never come into any walled Townes or Cities, for feare of treason : but line in Tents, and are here to day and many hundred miles off within few dayes after. They are a base, beggarly, and roguish people, wandering yo and downe, and living by fpoile, which they account no finne, because they are Mahomets countrimen, and hee allowed them libertie to line by theft. Yet their Kings-doe no 40 great harme, but take Toll or Tribute of the Carauans as they passeby , which if they pay willingly, they paffe quietly, and are not robbed, but a little exacted vpon. One of their Kings hath often times pitched his Tents neere vato the Citie of Aleppo, and many Merchants being defirous to fee them and their order, tooke occasion to present him with some small Present or other, which he tooke very kindly, and admitted them to his Table, and gaue them a Fent to lodge in all night : on the morrow for breake-fast one of them made him a minsed Pie, and set it before him hot as it came out of the Quen: And when he faw it cut vo and opened, and perceiued imoke to come out of it, he shrunke backe, fearing it had beene some engine to defiroy him, and that the fire would follow after the smoake. But when hee perceived no fire followed the fmoake, he was content to talte of it, and highly commended it, as the daintieft dish that eyer he

50 taffed of in his life.

The G. Archara Kings neuer keepe any money in their purfes, but spend it as fast as they finde it, and when they want, with their Sword they seeke a new purchase. Some are Souldiers, fighting faithfully on any fide that will give them pay. Some of the toguille Archara Race follow netther of their Kings, but wander from place to place in Caues and Rocke, and liue by their Sword, not onely robbing, but killing fach as they can our-roome. Others of them (of a better minde) folgomer in Cities of Trade and Traffique, and make themselluss ferturns to any Nation that will fet them on worke, and well reward them. Some of them are Horse-keepers, some Bastlages, that is, Potters, and some voner-cookes in Kitchins, and are very ferunceable. But for them off part their Lodgings are on some Dunghill or other, or odde corner of the Citie, with 50 fome filly from our their heads. Their wives weare Rings in the Noise, either of filler ob briffs, faithed to the middle griftle of their Nois, and colour their Lips blue with Indies, and sawyes bare-lessed and hart-footed, with Plates or Rings of braffs above their ankles, and

bracelets of braffe about their hands. They are people which can and doe endure great hardneffe

and miserie, both for Diet and Lodging. Their Women are skilfull in mourning and crying by

Art, and therefore they are hired to crie at the Funerals of Turks and Moores oftentimes, tearing their haire, and making all their face blue with Indico. There are here fpoken fo many fethe state of the s themselues) speaking their owne language. And here are of most Nations in the World some. who either come with their Merchandrie to fell or buy commodities, or fojourne here as firm gers, or elie have accesse and recesse to this Citie as Travellers. But of all Christian languages, the Italian tongue is most vied, and therewithall a man may travell furthest. But of all the O. rientall Tongues, these foure are most spoken in these parts, Arabicke, Turkish, Armenian, and Persian . or Agimesco. Besides all these Mabometans (which I have alreadie named) there are many sewes in Confrantinople, Aleppo, Damascus, Babylon, Grand Cairo, and enery great Citic and In Place of Merchandife, throughout all the Turkes Dominions, who are knowne by their Hars: five they were accustomed to weare red Hats without brimmes at my first comming: But lately (the head Vizier being their enemie) they are conftrayned to weare Hats of blue cloth, because red was accounted too flately, and Princehke a colour for them to weare. They are of more vile account in the fight of Turkes then Christians; infomuch that if a low would turne Turke, he must first turne Christian before they will admit him to bee a Turke. Yea, it is a word of reproach amonght the Times, and a visual proteflation amongh them, when they are fallly accused of any crime, to cleare themselves they vie to protest in this manner, If this bee true, then God great may die a lew. And the Iewes in like cases vie to say, if this benor a falfe accusation; then God grant I may die a Christian, praying better for themselves then they beleeve, and as all of them must be 20 that shall bee faued. And the poore Christians fojourning and dwelling in these parts, doe have them very vncharitably and irreligiously : (in that we reade Rom. 11. many Arguments prouing that they shall be concerted againe) for on Good Friday in many places (especially at Zante) they throw stones at them, infomuch that they dare not come out of their houses all that day and yet are scarse in safetie in their houses, for they vie to throw stones at their windowes and doores, and on the roofe of their houses. On Thuriday about noone, the Irmes begin to keepe within doores, and continue there with their doores thut vntill Saturday about noone, for if they come forth before that time they are fire to be floned, but after noone on Eafter Eue if they come abroad, they may paffe as quietly as euer they did. And some ignorant Christians refuse to eate of their meat or bread : their reason is, because the lower refuse to eate or drinke with \$0 Christians to this day, or to eate any meate that Christians kill. But it is not vnufuall amongst Christians of better knowledge, to eate of the Immer meat, which ordinarily they buy of them: for the Lewes to this day eate not of the hinder part of any beaft, but onely of the former parts, and fell the hinder quarters of their Beefe, Mutton, Kids, Goats, &c., to Christians,
They observe still all their old Ceremonies and Feaths, Sacrifices onely excepted, Yet some of

them have confessed, that their Physicians kill some Christian Patient or other, whom they have under their hands at that time, in stead of a Sacrifice. If a man die without Children, thenext Brother taketh his Wife, and raifeth vp feed vnto his Brother; and they still marrie in their owne Kindred. Many of them are rich Merchants: some of them Drogomen, and some Brokers, Most of them are very craftie and deceitfull people. They have no Beggers among ft them, but many 40 Theeues, and some who steale for necessitie, because they dare not begge. All matters of controuersie betwixt themselves, are brought before their Cakens to decide, who is their chiefe Churchman. Most of the lewes can reade Hebrew, but few of them speake it, except it be in two places in Turkie, and that is at Salonica, formerly called Theffalonica, a Citie in Macedonia, by the Gulfe Thermaics ; and at Safetta in the Holy Land , neere vnto the Sea of Galile : Which two places

are as it were Vniuerfities, or Schooles of learning amongst them.

Amongst all the forts of Christians, there is amongst the Maronites an ancient companie of Christians, called vulgarly Nostranes, quali Nazaritans, of the Sect of the Nazarites, more civil and harmeleffe people then any of the reft. Their Countrey is Mount Lybanus (as I wrote vnto you heretofore) but many of them dwell at Aleppo, whereof some of them are Cassifer, that is, 50 Church-men; some of them are Cookes, and servants vnto English Merchants and others; some Artificers: All of them live somewhat poorely, but they are more honest and true in their conuerlation then any of the rest, especially at their first comming from Mount Lybanus to dwell in Aleppo; and many, during their continuance there, if they bee not corrupted by other wicked Nations there dwelling : in whom I observed more by experience then I heard of them, or noted in them when I was among ft them at Mount Lybanus. And especially for the manner of their marriage, and how they honour the fame.

They buy their wives of their Fathers (as others there dwelling, doe) but never fee them vntill they come to be married, nor then neither vntill the marriage be folemnized betwixt them: for there is a partition in the place where they meet to be married, and the Man and his Friends 60 stand on the one side, and the yong Woman and her Friends on the other side, where they may heare, but not fee one another, vntill the Caffies bid the yong Man put his hand thorow an hole in the wall, and take his Wife by the hand. And whiles they have hand in hand, the Mother of the Maid commeth with some sharpe instrument made for the purpose, and all to be pricketh the

new married manshand, and maketh it bleed. And if hee let her hand goe when hee feeleth his hand finart, they hold it for a figne that hee will not loue her: But if hee hold fast (notwithflanding the fmart) and wring her hard by the hand untill thee crie, rather then hee will once fhrinke, then he is counted a louing man, and her friends are glad that they have bestowed her on him. And how they honour Marriage aboue others, I oblerued by the naming of their first man-child. For as amongst yes the women, when they are married, lose their Surnames, and are firmamed by the husbands furname, and children likewife; fo among it them the father lofeth his name, and is called by the name of his eldest sonne, in this manner. I have knowne a No. frane, whole name was Mon-fe, that is, Mofes, who having a man-child, named him Ufoph, To that is, Iofeph, and then was the father no more called Monfe, Mofes, but Abon Ufeph, that is, The father of Loseph. Another whose name was Useph, named his eldest sonne Pher-iolla, after

CHAP. 9. First-borne sonne in great esteeme. Women of hoht behaviour.

which he was no more called Useph, but Abon Phor-iolla, The father of Phor-iolla. Another man called Inbruel, that is . Gabriel, his sonne at the time of Baptisme being named Monse, hee alwaies after was called Abon Monfe, that is, The father of Mofes: fuch an honour doe they ac-

count it to be the father of a man-child.

Their Nostranes reuerence their Cassises greatly, and kisse their hand wheresoeuer they meet Lyturgie readthem : yet are most of them altogether vulcarned, having onely the knowledge of the Strine Tongue, wherein their Lyturgie is read. They keepe their Feaths at the fame time as wee doe, viz. Christmasse, Easter, and Whitsuntide: and at Christmasse on the Twelfth day in the mor-20 ning, called Epiphanie, their young men haue a custome (betimes in the morning) to leape naked into the water : I could never heare any reason of their so doing, but Uzansa de prease, The custome of their Countrey. And though it bee then very cold, yet they perswade themselues, and others, that then it is hotter then at any other time, and that the water then hath an extraordinarie vertue to wash away their sinnes. On Munday in Easter weeke and Whitsun weeke, thele Nostranes goe with their Cassifes to the graves of the dead , and there kneele downe . and burne incense, and pray at every grave.

The Chelfalines are Christians, dwelling upon the borders of Persia, betweene Mesopotamia and Perlia, at a place called Chelfa. These bring Silke to Aleppo to sell. They are plaine dealing people. If a man pay them money, and (by ouer-reckoning himfelfe) give them more then 20 their due, though there be but one piece ouer, to foone as they perceine it, though it bee many dayes after, they will bring it backe againe, and restore it, and thinke they shall never returne fafely into their Countrey, if they should not make restitution thereof. These people perswade themielues, and report vnto others, that they dwell in that place which was called Eden, whereinto Adam was put to keepe it and dreffe it.

The Greekes in Aleppo are very poore, for they are there (for the most part) but Brokers or Eden. Baftages, that is, Porters; and many of their women as light as water, maintayning their hufbands, themselves, and their families, by prostituting their bodies to others. And their owne husbands are oftentimes their Pandars or procurers to bring them Customers. But the Greekes that line at Configntinople, are many of them great Merchants, and very rich; but exceeding 40 proud, and sumptuous in apparell, euen the basest of them, and especially their women, who though they be but Coblers wives, or poore Artificers wives, yet they goe in Gownes of Sattin, Coblers wives and Taffata, yea, of Cloth of filter and gold, adorned with Precious ftones, and many Gemmes, in Sattin and Iewels about their neckes and hands. They care not how they pinch their bellies, so that Gownes. they may have fine apparell on their backes. And at the time of their Marriage, the women

condition with their husbands to find them decent apparell, and convenient diet, and bring them before their Patriarch of Confiaminople to confirme it; which, if it be not performed accordingly, if they complaine to their Patriarch, they are discoved preferrly, and thee taketh an of one Sophia, other man to her husband, better able to maintayne her: and hee may marrie another woman which for bre-

And both at Constantinople, Aleppo, and other places of Turkey, where there is trafficking and ted. 50 trading of Merchants, it is no rare matter for Popish Christians of fundry other Countries, to Cut Cabine, (as they call it) that is, to take any woman of that Countrey where they following. (Turkilb women onely excepted, for it is death for a Christian to meddle with them) and when they have bought them, and enrolled them in the Cadies Booke, to vie them as wives follow as they following in that Countrey, and maintaying them gallantly, to the confaming of their wealth, diminishing of their health, and endangering of their owne fooles. And when they depart out of that Countrey, they shake off these their sweet-hearts, and leave them to shift for themselves and their children. And this they account no finne, or at leastwife such a finne as may be washed away, with a little holy water. And these are the vertues which many Christians 60 learne by foiourning long in Heathen Countries.

Euery Balban who hath gouernement over others in a Citie or Countrey, tyrannifeth over those which are vider their regiment; and sometimes strangleth, sometimes beheadeth, and fometimes puts vnto terrible tortures those who offend. Yea, oftentimes without offence; onely because they are rich and have faire houses, the Bashaw will lay to their charge, such things as

Tomer Goned

on good Fris

he himselfe knoweth to be vntrue, and put them to death that hee may seize vpon his goods There was a Sheriffe or a Green-head in Aleppo, whom they account Mahomets kindred, who offending the Balban, and brauing him in termes, as though he durft not punish him, hee caused one of his Officers to goe with him home, and when he came before his owne doore, openly in the street to breake both his legs and armes, and therelet him lie, and no man durst find fault or giue him food; or Physician, or Chirurgion come to him; or wife or servants take him into house, but there he lay all day, and should so have continued vntill hee had died for hunger, or Dogs eaten him, had not his friends given money to the Balham to have his throat cut, to rid him out of his paine, And this is a common punishment amongst them. And sometimes for small offences, they will lay a man downe on his backe, and hoyfe vp his feet, and with a cudgell give to them three hundred or foure hundred blowes on the foles of their feet, whereby many are lamed And some they set on a sharpe stake naked, which commeth from his fundament up to his mouth, if he find not fauour to have his throat cut fooner. And fome are ganched in this manner: they are drawne up by a rope fastned about their armes, to the top of a Gazouke or Gibber full of hookes, and let downwards againe, and on what part foeuer any hooke taketh hold, by that they hang, vitill they die for hunger. And some in like fort are drawne ouer a Gibbet. and they being compassed about the naked waste with a small cord, the cord is drawne by two men to make them draw vp their breath, and still pulled straighter and straighter, vntill they be fo narrow in the waste, that they may easily be cut off by the middle at one blow, and then the vpper part is let downe on a hot grid-iron, and there feared vp, to keepe them in fenfe and fee- 20 ling of paine fo long as is possible, and the neather part is throwne to the Dogs, &c.

They, whom they call Frances or Free-men, live in greater fecuritie amongst them then their owne People, by reason that they are governed by Consuls, of their owne Nation, and those Confuls also are backed by Amballadours, for the same Nations which are alwaies Liegers at Confrantinople; and when their Confuls abroad are offered wrong, they write vnto the Ambassadours, how, and by whom they are wronged: and then the Ambassa fadour procureth from the Great Turke, commandements to the Balbar of Alepso to redreffe their wrongs, and punish such as offend them. Otherwise there were no dwelling for Franchs amongst them, but they should be vied like slaves by every slave. And notwithstanding, their Confuls and Ambassadours to, yet they are oftentimes abused by Tarkes, both in 10 words and deeds. In words they reuile them, as the Lyptians did the Ifractices, and call them Goners, that is, Infidels; and Copec, that is, Dog; and Conzier, that is, Hog; and by many other odious and reproachfull names. And though they firike them, yet dare they not firike againeleft they lose their hand, or be worle yied. They also oftentimes make Auenias of them, that is, falle accusations, and suborne falle witnesses to confirme it to be true; and no Christians word will be taken against a Turke, for they account vs Infidels, and call themselves Musselmen, that

This miferie abroad will make vs loue our owne Countrie the better when we come thither. And that is the best lesson which I have learned in my travels, Mundi contemptum, that is, The contempt of the world. And Saint Pauls leffon, Phil. 4.1 1. In whatfoeuer flate I am, there- 40 with to be content. Oh how happie are you in England, if you knew your owne happinefie! But as the prodigall fonne, vntill he was pinched with penurie abroad, neuer considered the plentie of his fathers house: So many in England know not their owne felicitie, because they doe not know the miseries of others. But if they were here in this Heathen Countrie, they would know what it is to liue in a Christian Common-wealth, under the government of a godly King, who ruleth by Law and not by luit; where there is plentie and peace, and preaching of the Gospel, and many other godly bleffings, which others want. And Go D long continue his mercies to our noble King lamer, and his whole Realmes, and give vs grace as farre to excell other Nations in thankfulnesse as we doe in happinesse. And thus for present I commend you to the most gracious protection of the Almightie IB H O V A H, beseeching him, (if it be his will) to send vs 50 a joyfull meeting, both in this world, and in the world to come. Amen.

Part of another Letter of Master WILLIAM BIDDVLPH, from Ierufalem.

Orshipfull and my singular good friend, I being now (by the prouidence of Go D) at Ierusalem, Captus amore sui, raptus bonore loci, for the loue I beare to you, and delight I conceiue in this famous place, where our fweet Saujour Christ vouchfated once his blessed bodily prefence; I could not but remember you with some falutation from hence, having such choice 60 of Mellengers (by reason of the great concourse of people vnto this place at this present, from fundry places of Christendome) to transport my Letters vnto you: Nothing doubting but that as my former Letters (which I have heretofore written vnto you both from Aleppo, and other . places) concerning my former voyages, and fuch things as (by diligent observation) I noted in

my trauels, were acceptable vnto you; so that this shall be much more acceptable, both in segard of the Place from whence it came, as also of the matter subject herein contayned; beeing my Voyage from Aleppo in Syria Comagena, to Ierufalem, vndertaken this present yeere 1600. not moved as Pilgrims with any superstitious devotion to see Relikes, or worship such places as they account holy but as Trauellers and Merchants, occasioned by Dearth and Sicknes, Pettilence and Famine in the Citie where we foiourne : which two are such fellow-like companions . that the Gracuous diftinguish them but by one Letter, calling the Peftilence angule, and the Famine ande: By reason whereof all Trafficke was hindred, and those Merchants whom they call Frankes, or Freemen, either remoued to other places; or fuch as flayed in the Citie, caufed their gates to bee

to thut vp. and came not abroad vntill Sol entred into Lee, which is viually the twelith or thir- The Plague teenth day of luly, at which time the Plague still ceaseth in this place, though it bee neuer so ceaseth by ingreat, and all that are then ficke, amend; and tuch as then come abroad, need not feare any dan. Heavens ger. The Turkes, Moores, Arabians, and other Mahometans, neuer remoue for feare of any ficknesse, nor refuse any mans company infected therewith; for they say, euery mans fortune is written in his fore-head, and that they shall not dye before their time; not knowing what it is to tempt God, and to refuse ordinary meanes. But in this interim, from the beginning of this ficknesse (which was in March) vntill the expected and vndoubted end, when the Sunne entreth into Lee, we whose names are subscribed (for causes aboue mentioned) tooke our Vovage from Alenso towards Ierufalem, having Letters of commendation, from Clariffimo Imo the "O Venice Conful, and fundry others of the chiefe Italian Merchants, to their Padres at Ierufalem.,

for our kind viage there, with libertie of conscience. Anna Dam. 1600. The ninth of March, after Dinner we fet forth, garded with Imizaries. and accompanied with fundty English, Italian, and French Merchants, who in kindnesse rode with vs feuen or eight miles, to bring vs on the way, and then returned to Aleppo. But most of our English Merchants brought, vs to Cane Toman, ten miles from Aleppo, where we made merry Cone Toman with fuch good cheere as we brought with vs. For there was nothing to be had for money but

Goates Milke, whereof we had as much as we would. Here we purposed to have slept all night. but having no other Beds but the hard ground, with Lacobs Pillow (a good hard from) under our heads, vnaccustomed to such Downe Beds, we could not sleepe, but spent the time in honest 20 mirth vntill it was past mid-night, and then our friends tooke their leane of vs. and returned towards Alepso, and we proceeded in our journey towards Ierusalem. The night beging darke. towards rueppe, and whereuith, our lanicarie, Byram Balbaw, willed vs euery one to take a match lighted in our hands, and to whirle it about, that the fire might be seene the further, to terrifie the Theenes, left they should surprize vs on the sudden. And when wee came to suspicious places (as Caues, Rockes, Barnes, or odde Cottages in the way) our Invitarie vied to ride before; and as Fowlers beate voon Bushes for Birds, so hee (with his Launce) would strike and beate voon fuch places, left wild Arabs (which lye lurking in fuch places) should steale voon vs on the fudden. When the day appeared, our way was pleasant and comfortable vnto vs. vntill we came to a Village called Saracope, whither we came about moone, the tenth of March, And Saracopes
40 because our Seifenars or Sumptor Horses (which carryed prouision for Man and Horse, as the cu-

flome of the Countrey is) were tyred, and we our felues also (for want of fleepe the night paft) wearied and hungry, wee were conftrayned to lodge there all night on the hard ground by our Horse heeles, in an old Cane distant from Care Toman eight and twentie miles. The eleventh of March, bettines in the norming wee departed from Seasope, and came bettines in the after-none to a fine Village called Marab, where there is a very faire new Marab, Cane builded by Amab (commonly called Marab), where there is a very faire new Marab, Cane builded by Amab (commonly called Marab), Childree, sometimes Definator, that is, Treaturer of Aleppo, and afterwards of Damasione, who for the refuge of Trauellers, and their proceeding against Theouse, built a fattery frong Cane like wino Mance of their

Leaden Hall in London, or rather the Exchange in London, where there are faire vpper Koomes Canes, for great men in their Travels, and the neather Roomes are for ordinary Travellers and their To Hories, but in hot weather the best make choise to sleepe on the ground in low Roomes, rather then in their Chambers. The Founder hereofalso ordayned that all Travellers that way should have their entertaynment there of his cost. Hee alloweth them Bread, Pillaw, and Mutton, which our Invitaries accepted off; but we fcoming reliefe from the Turkes without money, fent vato the Village, where (befides our owne promition which wee brought with vs) wee had also other good things for money. Marrab is distant from Saracoope, foure and twentie miles.

The tweltth of March was a very raynie day, yet we trauelled all the forenoone, vntill wee Latinize. came to a Village, called Laemine, which affarre off made thew of a very faire Village; but when we came thither, wee found it so ruinous, that there was not one house able to throude vs from To the extremitie of the showre : the Inhabitants thereof having forfaken it, and fled into the Mountaynes to dwell, for feare of the Januaries of Damaseus, who travelling that way vied to take from them, not onely victuals for themselves, & Provender for their Horses without mony, but whatfoener things elfe they found in their houses, Onely there was a little Church or Chap- Wretel el pel in good preparation, wherinto (for a little mony) we obtay ned leave to enter, our felues with flauerre our horses & carriage, & there we brought out our victuals, & refreshed our sekies, and baited our

horfes, and refted vntill it left rayning. After the showre, while our Horfes were preparing, we Miferable Po- walked into the fields neere vinto the Church, & faw many poore people gathering Mallows and three leafed graffe, and asked them what they did with it and they answered, that it was all their food; and that they boyled it, and did eate it then wee tooke picte on them, and gauethem bread, which they received very soyfully, and bleffed God that there was bread in the World and faid, they had not feene any bread the space of many moneths. The showre ceasing, wee role from this Chappell and Village of Lacke money (I thould have faid Lacmin, but might fav. lacke men and money too) and rode forward vntill wee came vnto a Village or Towne called Trabs, where (because it was neere night) we defired to lodge, but could not bee admitted into any house for any money, whereupon our chiefe Ianizarie, Byram Basham went into an house, lo any house for any money, whereupon our child out of the house, that weemight bring in our Horses, and lodge there our felues. But when we faw what pittifull lamentation they made, we intreared out lenix arie either to pelwade them for money, or to let them alone. And vnderslanding that there was a faire Citie in our way, ten miles off, wee fue, with our language, beging well horsed, rode thither, and left our carriage with the rest of our company at Tyaba, to come to vs betimes in the morning. This Citie is now commonly called Aman, but of olde it was called Hamath, 2. Kmes 17.

Here we lodged in a faire Cane, but on the cold ground, and vpon the hard ftones, and thouse

our selves well provided for, that wee had an house over our heads to keepe vsdry. Hamaib is

from Marah, about fine and thirtie miles. On the fourteenth of March wee travelled from 20

Hemfe.

Hamath, upleafant way, & a short dayes journey, to a fine Towne called vulgarly Hemsebut formerly Hus, diftant from Hamath, but twentie miles. This is faid to have beene the City where lob dwelt, and is to this day called by the Christians inhabiting in those borders, lob; Citie. And there is a frutfull Valley neere vnto it, called the Valley of Hus, and a Castle not farreoff, in the way to Tripoly, called Has Castle to this day. But I make some doubt whether lob weree-

man bordered vpon Arabia Falix, and not neere Syria, where this Citie called Hus flandeth. On the fifteenth day of March, we went from Has towards Damafens, which is foure dayes Iourney off, and all the way (vntill we came within ten shiles of 'Danafens') is a Defart, vn-inhabited, and a Theeuish way ; onely there are erected in the way certayne Canes to lodge in 10 But if they bring not prouition with them both for man and horfe, and fome Quit or Pillow to fleepe on, the hard stones must be their Bed, and the Airecheir Suppers for some of their Cans are nothing but stone wals to keepe out Thereues. In Cities they have very stately Cahes, but not for Travellers, but for themselves to dwell in; for every rich man calleth his house a Case. But the Canes that fland in high wayes, are in Charitie erected by great men, for the protesti-

uer at place, for lob is faid to have dwelt amongst the Edomites, or wicked Idamans: and Ida-

on of Trauellers; but most of them are very badly kept, and are worse than Stables. Our first daves Iourney from Has was a very vncomfortable and dangerous Delart : wee faw no House all the way vntil we came vnto a Village called Haffie, where we lodged in an old Calife diffart from Hartwo and twentie miles.

The fixteenth of March, from Hellia, we rode to an ancient Christian Towne called Characteristics rab. where our promition being fpent, we made supply thereof, and bought Bread and Wine of the Christians there dwelling. It is inhabited by Greeker and Tinker , but governed by Tinker only. There is but one Church in the Towne, which is dedicated to Saint Nicholas, by the Christians who first builded it. But both Christians and Turkes pray therein : the Christians on the one fide or He of the Church, and the Turker on the other. But the Christians are over-ruled by the Turkes, and constrained to find them Oyle to their Lampes in the Church For the Turkes not only burne Lampes in their Churches every night, but during the whole time of their Lent they befet the battlements of their Steeples round about with Lampes. But when their Lent is ended, they burne Lampes in their Steeples onely once a week, and that is on Thursday at night, which is the Eene before their Sabbath. After wee had refreshed our selues heere, halfe the day 10 being not yet spent, we roade from hence to a poore Village called Nebecke, or (as they pronounce it Nebbleb, where we lodged in an old Cane, dittant from Heffin fenen and twenter miles. And understanding at this place, that the way that wee were to passe on the morrow, was full of Arabs, and that two dayes before, many men were found in the way killed by them, we feared to goe any further. Yet meeting with company contraine to expectation, March the feuenteenth we went forwards, and faw no house non-company all the day long besides our felues, vntill we came to a Village called forifer, where wee fodged in a very flately new Cane, built by Synan Balban; and not altogether finished. This Canedoth farre exceed that at Marrab, (before mentioned) for hereunto is adioyned a fairenew Church and a Bazar, that is a Market place where Trauellers may buy many good things. Heere is also meate for Trauellers, and Prouender for their Horses to be had of the Founders both, And in the middle of this Cane, there is a fairelarge Fountayne of water, of hewed flones fours square p wherein there is exceeding good water for Trauellers to danke, and Chambers for their Lodging : but if they will have any Beds, they must bring them with them, or sleepe on the hard ground, as most men that travel that way are wont to doe.

CHAP. Q. Theenish wayes. Damascus described. Holy places there.

The eighteenth of March, from Coiffy, wee had not much more then twentie miles to Da- Dangerous moleus. The first ten miles was a Desart, and dangerous way, and we hardly escaped dangers for way. an Araban Horseman seeing vs come; stood as a Spie in our way, to view our strength, and marked energy one of vs very narrowly, and what weapons we had; and then rode up an high Mountayne, as fast as if it had beene plaine ground, to acquaint his companions what a prey hee had found for them. Whereupon our lanie, arie cast aside his vpper garment, being a Gamberlooke, and bad vs all make readie our Wespons, and hee himfelte rode before vs with his Launce on his fhoulders, expecting their comming upon vs suddenly: but they having espeed from the top of the Mountayne) fittie lanizaries of Damafens at the leaft, with their limmoglans comming after To ys, came not, and so by the providence of God wee escaped their hands. The other part of our way to Damafens, was a pleasant Plaine of tenne miles in length, having many fruitfull Villages, fine Rivers, and pleafant Gardens thereon. At our entrance into this Plaine or Valley, riding downe an Hill, we beheld the prospect of Damaseus ten miles off, whither we came about two of the clocke in the afternoone, and tooke vp our Lodging in the middle of the Citie, at a Cane called in Morifco, Cane Nebbe, that is, The Cane of the Prophet; but by the Turkes; Cane Haramin, where we hired three Chambers for our money, and our Seruants bought our meare, and dressed it themselves, as they did also all the rest of the way where wee could get any thing. To this end we tooke a Cooke with vs, and other Servants from Aleppo, to dreffe our meate, and to looke to our Horses. Heere we met with Frenchmen, and other Christians, staying for company

At Damafous many Jewish Merchants, and Greekes, and others, knew some of vs. and came to falute vs, and present vs with such good things as they had, both Wine, and Bread, and Kiddes. and Fruit, &c. and lent vs very good Beds with sheets and other furniture, which refreshed well our wearied bodies.

The nineteenth and twentieth of March, wee stayed at Damascus to rest our selves, and

Damafons is a most ancient Citie, and as Efay spake of it in his time, The head of Aram is Damasons, 1/a,7.8. so Damasons is the chiefest Citie of Syria to this day. The situation thereof is most pleasant, being built on a plaine ground, strongly walled about, and a strong Castle there-

30 in, with many fine Rivers running on every fide of it, especially Abanab, and Pharper, mentioned, 2. Kings 5. which now are divided into many heads. The Tarkes fay, that their Prophet The pleasant Mahomet was once at Damascon, and that when he saw the pleasant fituation of it, and beheld fituation. the flately prospect of it, excelling all others that ever hee faw before; refused to enter into the Citie, left the pleasantnesse thereof should raussh him, and moue him there to settle an Earthly Paradife, and hinder his defire of the heauenly Paradife. It hath also many pleasant Orchards. and Gardens round about the Citie, and some wayes for the space of a mile, and more about the Citie there are many Orchards, and great varietie of fruits : some called Adams Apples, and A. dams Figs, and fundrie other ftrange Fruits. Damafous is called by the Turkes, Sham, and they call it, the Garden of Turkie, because there is no place in all the Turkes Dominions, especially 40 in Stria, that yeeldeth fuch abundance of Fruit. Here we stayed two dayes and three nights to

reft our felues, and fee the Citie. And having a Greeke to our Guide, he shewed vs first a stately Store of fruit, Muskia, or Turkish Church erected in the place where the Temple of Rymmon stood, mentioned, 2. Kings c. And two other memorable matters, mentioned, Alls 9.25.viz. the place where the Disciples let downe Paul in the night through the wall in a Basket, whereof the Christians there dwelling keepe an exact memoriall; taking vpon them to demonstrate the very place of the wall; which we not beleeuing, they confirmed it with this reason, that Damascan was * nes * Damascan was uer ouercome; and that there have beene Christians dwelling there ever fince the time of Paul, wonne from and therefore might keepe a memoriall of the very place: But to let the place paffe, the thing it the Christians felfe we know to be true. He shewed vs also the house of Ananias , which is vnder the ground by the Saratess

50 whereinto we were led, downe a paire of staires from the street, as it were into a Celler; and the doore being villocked, we entred with Candels into the place, where we faw two darke Chambers, where a man cannot fee to reade in the day time without Candels, here they fay, he lived in secret for feare of the lewes. Many Christians comming thither to see that place, with a coale write their names on the wall, and there are so many names there alreadie, that there is scarce roome for any other to fet his name. Some of them report Damafeus to bee built in the place where Kain killed his Brother Abel. And some say it is neere it, and offered to bring vito the place; but we refuted.

They take whon them also at Damaseus, to demonstrate the place where Saint George was bu- Saint George. ried, to they doe likewife at Aleppo, but I thinke the one to bee as true as the other. There is a 60 fine Towne neere vnto Damafeus, about two or three miles diffant on the fide of an hill, called Salbia, from whence a man may behold the prospect of the Citie of Damaseus most pleasantly, Salbia,

with the Gardens and pleafant places about it. At Damasem we met many thouland Turkes , going on Pilgrimage towards Mecha in Ara- Pilgrimage to bia, to vilit Mahomets Sepulchre, as they vivally doe every yeere about their Byram time; for Meiba. V auuuu 2

Hasia.

Catifey.

Excellent

they hold, that who foever once in his life time shall not goe on Pilgeimage to Mecha, to fee the Sepulchre of their Prophet, shall neuer enter into Paradise. And therefore some of them goe thicher often in their life time, partly for denotion, and partly to buy Merchandife. For there are brought thither at that time of the yeere, great flore of Commodities from India, Perfia. and other places; and none may buy or fell there but Mahometans. And it is forbidden to all Christians upon paine of death, to come neere Mecha within fine miles : partly, lest they should marre their Markets; but chiefly, left they should fee their folly or rather madneffe in worfhipping an Iron Sepulchre; after the fight whereof, many of their old men (which thinks neuer to come thither againe) vie to pull out both their eyes, after they have feene fo holy a fight. And who focuer (fay they) dyeth in his Pilgrimage thither, or returning from thence, is time to got In to Heaven prefently. And they that have beene there but once, are alwaissafter called Hoges, that is, Pilerims : and are called by that name in this manner. If his name before were Makemet, he is at his returne called Hogie Mahomet. If before Muftapha, hee is al waies after called Hogie Mustapha, &c. And they that have beene often at Mecha and returne againe, are called Great Hogies. And every yeere when the Caravan of Pilgrims returne from Moche, hee that hath beene there oftneit, is called, The great Hogie: and is greatly honored of them all, for hee rideth before them all in more flately apparell then they, with Flowers and Garlands about his Horse, and when they come neere any great Citie, the chiefest men in the Citie ride forth to meet him, and bring him into the Citie with great folemnitie: They fallly affirme, that this An Angell-de- their Temple at Mecha in Arabia, was built by Abraham, and they prepare themselves with 20

greater care togoe to worthip there, then many Christians doe when they come to the Lords Supper, for they disburden their hearts of all hatred and malice, and reconcile themselves one to another, &c. Otherwise they hold that all their labour is lost, and that they shall bee neuer awhit the better for their Pilgrimage. But if they forgiue one another, and repent them for their former finnes, they thinke there to obtaine full remission of all their sinnes, and that at their returne they are pure and without fpot. March twentie one, we departed from the Citie of Damafons, and about five or fix miles from

the Citie, paffed by a Village called Daria; neere vnto which, we law a great multi; ude of men. women, and children on their knees, in the high way : and by that time they had ended their denotion, we drew so neere as to falute them; and asking what they were, it was told vs, that 30 they were all Christians of fundry Nations , viz. Armemans, Grackes , Chelfalines , Nostranes, and fundry others, who went to lerufalens, to vitit and worthip the holy places there. We asked further, what they meant to fall on their knees in that place : they answered vs , that it was Place of Pauls the place where " Paul swas converted, and that it was their custome when they travelled that convertion. way, to fall on their knees, and pray wnto God to convert them. They were in number at the * Mueto furor leaft foure or fine hundred people, there was a Greeke Patriarke, and an Armenian Bishopin Saun, norrest companie. Many of them knew vs, (having feene vs in Aleppo) and faluted vs by our names. Weerode a while in companie together, and lodged all together that night at a Cane, called Saff , diffant from Damafens fix and twentie miles.

March twentie two, we rode before the rest of the companie. Our way that we trauelled all 40

A abia Petras, this day, was exceeding bad, rockie, waterish, and barren, called Arabia Petres, where our Hories oftentimes stucke fast in the puddles and myrie places, and somtimes ready to breake their owne legs, and their Riders necks, among Rocks and Stones, it was neither pleafant going on foot, nor riding this way, for there was no path nor even ground, but huge stones and Rocks so neere together, that our Horses could goe but a foot-pace, and oftentimes met with such Marishes and Quagmires, that wee were constrained to goe farre about before wee could find better waies to passe ouer. It is also exceeding cold in this place alwaies (in respect of other places in that Countrey) for there are neither Trees nor Houles, nor high Hils to keep away the violence and

Ill way.

force of the Windes. The Carauans that travell vivally that way betwixt Damafeus and Egypt, fay, that this dayes journey troubleth them more then all the reft, and that they never palleby 50 that way, but they leave two or three of their Camels behind them, some missortune or other befalling vnto them. Wee faw also in fundry places this way, the carkasses of many dead Camels, which haue miscarried amongst the Rocks. It is also a very theeuish way, full of wilde Arabs: yet (by the providence of God) we came fafely that day to Conetra, where we lodged in a good Cane, distant from Saffa eight and twentie miles.

In a Bazar (like vnto a Cloitter) adioyning to the Cane, wee tooke pleasure to walke vp and downe some few turnes, which the Turkes beholding, wondred at vs : (for it is not their cufrome in those hot Countries, to walke vp and downe as wee doe in cold Countries, but to sit ftill on the ground like bruite Beafts) and one of them came vnto vs, and asked vs what wee meant to walke vp and downe in fuch fort, and whether wee were out of our way, or out of 60 our wits. If your way (faid hee) lyeth toward the vpper end of the Cloifter, why come you downewards ! And if at the nether end, why goe you backe againe ! It feemed no leffe strange vnto them, to see a Christian with a cut Doublet: and they called him foole, and asked him what he meant to make holes in his Coate : for they neither cut nor pinke any of their Garments,

but wearing them all plaine, sparing for no cost, to guard them with lace of filter and gold, if they be able. And fuch as weare long haire on their heads, the Turkes call Slouens, and ac- Lone haire. count them sauage Beasts; for they themselves weare no haire on their heads at all, but shaue them every weeke once, and keepe them warme with a Turbant of white Shath, made of cotton Wooll, which they neuer vncouer in their falutations to any man, but bow their heads. with their hands on their breafts. But if a man haue a faire long beard, they reuerence him, and Long beards: fay hee is a wife man, and an honorable personage. But if they have no beards at all, they call them (if they be yong) Bardasses, that is, Sodomitical Boyes. But it they be men growne, and haue no beards, they call them fooles, and men of no credit; and fome of them refule to buy

To or fell with fuch, and fay, they have no wit, and that they will not believe them, &c. The three and twentieth of March, we had a more pleasant way; for the first ten miles wee

rode thorow the fields, and a very pleasant Parke. But when we came out of this Parke or For- Pleasant Park. rest, we were somewhat troubled, partly by reason of the bad way, and partly by bad people in the way. The people did more trouble vs then the way; for there fate among it the Rocks. in our way, many Turkes and Arabs, with Maces of Iron, and other weapons, who staved vs. and demanded Caphar or toll money; we were glad to give them content, that we might paffe cashar. cuftofafely by them. But the Carauan of Christians, who came after vs, though they were many mers. hundreds, yet some of them being not able, some not willing to pay so much money as they demanded, were shrewdly beaten with their Iron Maces. There was a lefuit in their company,

20 who escaped not without stripes, whereat (as I have heard) he rejoyced, and counted it merito- Much good do rious, in that he fuffered fuch mifery in to holy a voyage. And in my hearing at Iernfalem, one him with fuch of his companions told him, that he merited much to luftaine such travell and labour, and be at Merits. to great coit and charges, and fuffer fo many ftripes for Christs fake : but I know, had it not beene more for loue of his purse then for loue of Christ, he might have escaped without stripes. yea, with these kind speeches, Marhabbah lanum, that is , Welcome my friend or sweet-heart. At another place in my Trauels. I heard a Frier bragging of his good workes, and faying, that hee Friar Merita had done so many good workes, that if he should kill three men, his good workes would make monger. fatisfaction, and merit remission for them all. Here I may fitly take occasion to teach those that purpose to travell into Tierker, how to behave themselves. If they bee set vpon by Theeves. An admoniti-30 they may defend themselves in their travels, if they be strong enough; but if they be polling on for Travel

officers (as thele were) they must not bee contradicted. But neither in their Cities, nor in their lers. trauels may they strike againe, though they be abused and beaten by any man (except they bee Theeres and Robbers) for if they doe, they shall either bee put to death, or have their hand cut off. Neither if a man receive a box on the eare at any of their hands, must be give one bad word. or looke frowningly upon him that fmote him : for then hee will strike him againe, and fay, Base thral-What, Goure? Doit thou curse me, and wish that the Deuil had me ? but hee must kisse his beard, dome. or the skirt of his Garment, and fmile vpon him, and then he will let him paffe.

At the foot of this Mountayne there is an old Cane, where viually Trauellers lodge : but it being not yet noone, we resolved to travell eighteene miles further, to the Sea of Galile. At the 40 foot of this flony Hill, hard by this Cane, there runneth a pleasant River, which divideth Strie from Galile. And ouer this River there is a faire Bridge, the one end whereof is out of the Hon ly Land, the other in it. This River is called Iordan , the head whereof commeth from Mount Lybanus, and maketh three Seas. The first, is the waters of Maron, which we left on our right hand, about ten miles off. The other, on the left hand, which lay in our way as wee should trauell. The second, is the Sea of Galile or Tiberias, or Lake of Genezereth. The third, is the Sea of Sodome , called Mare mortuum , where the River Iordan endeth. The Bridge that croffeth this River Jordan at the entrance into the Holy Land, is called Jacobs Bridge; for two causes. Jacobs Bridge; First, it is said, that there lacob met his brother Efan. Secondly, that there lacob wrestled with an Argell.

50 The first part of Canaan called Galile, beginneth at this Bridge, and to this day it is a very pleafant and fruitfull Countrey. After wee were entred into Galile, about two miles from the Bridge , our lanifaris asked vs whither wee would goe vp to a Mountayne , and fo to Sapbetta neere vnto Mount Carmel, which is a place of leaning for Iewes; or keepe the lower way, and goe by the Sea of Galile, which is the pleasanter way : and thereof we made choise : and tooke

Saphetea in our way afterwards.

About seuen miles from Iacobs Bridge, our Guide brought vs to a Well, adorned with marble Pillars, and couered with stone, which hee faid to have beene the Pit whereinto lofeph was put, lofe in Pit. when his Brethren fold him to the Islamalites. But it feemed to vs incredible : first, because that was a drie Pit, and this is full of fweet water. Againe, Iacob dwelt at Hebron twilue milesbe-6c yond lernfalem, and his Sonnes kept Sheepe in Sheebem. And that drie Pit whereinto they put

I feeb was at Dothan (which we faw afterwards) and this Pit which they shewed ys with marble Piliars, was in Galile; not neere Dothan nor Shechem where Iosephs Brethren kept their Fathers Sheepe. But by others of better judgement, we understood that this also was called logephs Pir, or Well, because it was built by one Tofeph, not Tofeph the some of Tacob, but some other. But the

ignorant people which trauell that way, are apt to beleeve any thing that is told them. About ten miles from this Well, we came to a Cane, called by the Moores Minium, but by the Turke. Millia, hard by the Sea of Galile, where we lodged all night, having travelled that day by computation fixe and thirtie miles.

Saphetta a Iewish Vniuersitie. Mourning with Timbrels. LIB. VIII

The four and twentieth of March we rode along by the Sea of Galile, which Iob. 6.1. is called by two names, viz. the Sea of Galile or Tiberias. Galile, because it is in Galile : and Tiberias because the Citie Tiberias was built by it, and Bethsaids an other ancient Citie; of both which we faw fome ruinous walls. And it is faid in that Chapter (loh.6.1.) that Iefus went oper-the Sea of Galile: and in an other place, that he went beyond the Lake. And, Lake 9. 10. it is faid. that he went into a folitarie place, neere vnto a Citie, called Bethfaida, which place of lobn. I to learned to vnderstand better by seeing it, then euer I could before by reading of it. For, seeing that Tiberias and Bethfaids were both Cities on the fame fide of the Sea, and Christ went from

Tiberies and Bethfeids.

Tiberias to, or neere vnto Bethfaida ; I gather thereby, that our Sauiour Christ went not ouer the length or breadth of that Sea; but over some Arme, Bosome, or Reach thereof, viz. so farre as Tiberias was diftant from Bethfida; which is also confirmed in that it is faid elsewhere, A great multitude followed him on foot thither; which they could not have done, if hee had gone quite over the Sea, to the other fide among the Gergefens, which is out of the Holy Land. And therefore this Sea of Galile, is also called the Lake of Genefereth, because the Countrey of the Gergesen is Genefareth. on the other fide the Lake, from whence the Swine ran head-long into the Sea and were choaked therein : and as that place was out of the Holy Land; fo the people which then inhabited 20 it, were as farre from holineffe, when they requelted our Sautour Christ to depart out of their Coalts. And such like holy people inhabit there still, viz. wild Arabs and Turks, oc. Wee saw alio (neere vnto this Sea) the place where that Towne (mentioned, Ich. 2.1.) called Cana of Gable flood, where our Saujour Christ at a marriage turned Water into Wine; in place whereof there

cloieth it felfe into a narrower compasse, carrying but the breadth of an ordinarie River virtillit come to Sodome, where it endeth, which is called Mare Moriums, that is, The dead Sea. After we had rode about feuen miles by the Sea of Galile, we left it on our left hand, and afcended yp a Mountayne on the right hand. This Mountayne was not very fteepie, but excee. 30 ding pleafant and fertile, for (being the Spring-time) it was so beset with such varietie of flowers among the greene graffe, that they feemed to fleere in our faces, and to langh and fing (as the Plalmiff (peaketh) as wee went, Pfal. 65. 12. This is faid to bee that Mountayne, mentioned Job. 6.0. where our Saujour Christ wrought a miracle, in feeding five thousand men with five Barley loaues, and two Fishes.

flandeth now a poore Village, inhabited by Turks. This Sea of Galile is (by computation) in

length eight leagues, and in breadth fine leagues, and enery league is three miles, and then it en-

When we came to the top of the Mountayne, we faw Suphetta on the right hand, a Vnints Saperina a tem. if Vinnerfine. fitie of the lewes, where they fpeake Hebrew, and have their Synagogues there. The Citie Saphetra is fituated on a very high Hill with three tops, and so the Citie hath three parts; one part is inhabited by leves, the other two by Turks. We asked fome leves, whom we knew formerly to have beene Merchants of Aleps, what they meant to leave their Trade and to live there: They 40 answered, they were now old and came thither to die, that they might be neerer to Heauen. The Iemes have here more libertie then in any part of the Holy Land. They dare not come to lerafalem, for feare left the Christians there dwelling, stone them. Whiles we were at Saphetta, many Turkes departed from thence towards Mecha in Arabia. And the same morning they went, we faw many women playing with Timbrels, as they went along the street, and made a yelling or fhriking noise as though they cryed. We asked what they meant in so doing ! It was answered vs, that they mourned for the departure of their Husbands, who were gone that morning on Pilgrimage to Mecha, and they feared that they should never see them againe, because it was a long way and dangerous, and many died there every yeere.

All the way which we trauelled this day, was very plealant; and all the Ground both Hils 50 and Dales very fruitfull, according as it is described by Moses, Dens. 8, 7,8, and Dens. 11, 10, 11. And we came that day, about two of the clocke in the afternoone to a Village, called in the Arabick tongue I-nel Tyger, that is (by interpretation) The Merchants Eye, wherein there are two very faire Callles for Trauellers to lodge in from danger of wild Arabs, which abound in those parts : we tooke vp our lodging in the neerest Castle, which is the fairest.

I nel Treer.

After we had refreshed our selues, and slept a while : being hard by Mount Tabor , wee defired to ascend to the top of it, and tooke Ally (one of our lanisaries) and rode towards the Mountaine. But understanding that it was very dangerous, by reason of wild Arabs, which lodged in Caues, and Rocks, and Bushes, about the Mountaine, wee hired some of the principall drabs to goe with vs, and guard vs from the rest. And as wee went, wee beheld the prospect of the 60 Mountaine to be very pleasant, somewhat steepie, but not very high (in respect of some other Mountaines thereabout) nor very large, but a comely round Mountaine, befet with Trees and thicke Bushes, which at that time of the yeere flourished greene : wee rode so farre as wee could for steepinesse, and then left some of our Servants at the foot of the Mountaine to keepe our

Horfes, and tooke vpon vs to clamber vp on foot, which wee should never have beene able to haue done, had there not beene very high Graffe, Sprigs, and Bulhes to hold by. One or our Arabi went vp before vs, as fast as if it had beene even ground, but we came very showly after. which he perceiuing, would looke backe, and often vie their words to cheere vs, Gel gel, gel, that is, Come, come, come; and fometimes thele, Ish balac Seeadi, How doe you Matters. Wee were almost all out of breath, and one of our companie cried, For the lone of God let v: returne, for I can goeno further; Ob, I shall die, I shall die. Whereupon, one of vs being neerer the top then he himselfe supposed (tocheere the rest) faid, Come cheerefully, I am on the top; which fomewhat heartned the rest; otherwise they had all gone downe againe. Being on the top, we Topof Tabor.

Io refted a while to take breath; and then we walked vp and downe the top of the Mount . and faw onely one house, or rather low Cottage vninhabited, having onely two darke roomes in it, meete for Foxes or laccals to lodge in, and faw no figne of any other Tauerne or Tabeinack: Onely we vinderstood, that (many yeeres fince) there was a Monasterie there inhabited by Powe remembed, that many retres may be the wish should with hem, and let the sink Friers, but being moletted by the Arabe, tooke away the holinefie with them, and let the Mountaine behind them; yet fall they call this Mount Taber, in Italian, Monte Sonto, that is, the Holy Mountaine : as if there were some inherent holinesse in the Mountaine. And two dayes after we had beene there, came a Lefuit and two Friers with a yong Gentleman of Paris in France, who was a Protestant, and some other companie with them, who had a defire to as Conference cend to the top of this holy Mountaine, and went all together vntill they were wearie, which fuite and a 20 was at the foot of the Mountaine, and in the heate of the day : wherefore the French Gentleman Proteffint,

faid, he would flay for them there until they returned, but was himselfe already wearie, and would goe no higher; the Iefuit and Friers reproued him, and called him foole, and told him he Merit monwould got no lingue; I the folia and riess sproces unit, and called the folia do not make Meit the do not know what he might merit by going to the top of that holy Montaine. Merit (faid gen, did be Gentleman) what may I merit? Thou maieft merit (faid they) fiftie yeeres pardon. The Gentleman, to breake a ieit withthem, asked them whether hee might merit fiftie veeres pardon for the time past, or for the time to come : If (faid he) for the time past, I am not so old (for he was but twentie two yeeres of age) if for the time to come, he did not thinke hee should line fo long. They answered him, if he did not line folong, he might give the yeares which remaisned, to his friends. Yet could they not perswade him to goe vp any higher. When we had seene

30 enough this Mount, returned against to the Caftle, with good stomacks to our Supper, and wearied bodies, defiring reft. Tabor is distant from Galile not much aboue twentie miles. The fine and twentieth of March, being the feaft of the Annunciation of the Virgin Mary. not me and overesteed on anon-configure over the communication of the Vision of our Church of England, the first day of the yeers 1601, we traubled our very pleafant fields all the way, the fields of Bafan, not farre from the Hount Mount Bafan,

Basan, where there was exceeding good Pasture, and fat Cattell : onely wee wanted good water to drinke, and our Wine was spent , and the day exceeding hot. Wee faw in our way some Gibagis Tower.

remnants of tha: old Tower or Fortrelle, mentioned 2. King! 5.24. where Gebasi the Servant of Elifha, over-tooke Naman , and tooke of him two Talents of filter, and two change of Garments. We faw also many other places worthy observation, but (for want of a good Guide) we 40 knew not the names thereof, for the Turkes inhabiting thole Countries, have given new names to most places. This was the pleasantest daies journey we had in our whole travell. I never faw more fertill ground and pleasant fields, and so much together, all the whole day, from Mount Tabor, to a Village called vulgarly *Ienine*, but of old *En-gamius*, whereof wee reade, *loft*. 15:34. En-gamius Neere vnto this Village is the place where *Label* beheaded *Sifera*, mentioned *Indg*. 4.21. Engannim is distant from Mount Taber twentie two miles. It is a very pleasant place, having fine Gardens, and Orchards, and Waters about it. We stayed here all the day (the fix and twentieth of March) because (the Twees Romadan, which is their Lent, being ended) on this day beganne Torth Bran their Feast called Byram; and our Ianifarie was loth to travell on that day, being their Feast day, and so much the rather, because his name also was Byram.

50 The feuen and twentieth of March , riding from En-gamins , wee were endangered twice : First, by certaine Themes dwelling neere vnto En-gamim, who made vs pay Caphar, or pole money twice, once at En-gannins. And when we departed from thence, they purfued vs with Bowes and Arrowes, and other weapons : we withflood them long in parley; at length enery man prepared his instruments of death ready for battell. Our lamfaries Kinsman, Fatolla, had Double Kna, his Musket ready, and being about to give fire, was flayed by our lanifarie, who faw not onely ucrie. thele Arabs present very desperate, with their Bowes and Arrowes ready drawne, but mestengers also sent to raise vp all the whole rabblement thereabout vpon vs; hee told vs, wee were best give them content, or elie we were all but dead men : wherefore, to avoide further danger,

we gaue them their owne defire, vpon condition, they would purfue vs no firther nor fuffer any 6. of their companie to moleft vs : the chiefest of them answered , Stopherlo , Stopherlo , that is, God forbid, God forbid, we should doe you any harme, if you pay vs what we demand; which we did with all speede, and rode away from them, being glad we were rid of them.

About ten miles from them, wee rode through a Wood (a very fit place to harbour Theenes, Dangerous who had killed certaine men trauelling that way the day before, and tooke away both aman Wood,

and Horie from the Carauan which followed after; and a woman alforiding on an Affe with their carriage) and (as our Guide told vs) he neuer trauelled that way but he law fome men kiland the houses stand very thin, scattered, and dispersed, here one, and there two or three together ; there is not one faire ffreet in all lerufalem as Re now is.

CHAP. 9. Letters of commendations, Good entertaymment. Admonition.

After they had thus narrowly fearched all our carriage, even to our cases of Bottles, we were Enternavnadmitted into the Monaftery ; at the entrance wherinto, met vs Mafter Timberley, and Mafter mentwith the Boreel, and then Signior Franciscus Manniebu, the Padre Guardian of the Monasterie, and all the Friend reft in order, and bade vs welcome, and led vs into a faire Parlour, and fet good cheere before vs. and serued vs themselues. After Supper we delivered them our Letters which wee had brought from the Venice Confull of Aleppo, and other Italian Merchants there, in our behalfe. Which when they had read, the Guardian faid, our custome is, when strangers come to vs, to call them

Io the first night to Masse, and to Confession, and to give every man a Candle to hold in his hand at Maffe time; and at night to wash their feet and to bring them to bed, and to many other ceremonies, during the whole time of their continuance there. But as for vs , they vinderstood by their Letters what we were; and told vs that we were for highly commended by their Patrons and Benefactors, the Fevice Confull, and Merchants of Alippo, that if they thould their av shalls the fauour which was required at their hands, they thould themselves like without doorses, and fuffer vs to rule and dominiere at our pleafures. And that therefore they would not vrge vs to any thing against our consciences, but give free libertie both of persons and consciences, agif wee were in England, or in our owne houses elfewhere; and so much the rather, because they vnderflood our Merchants were rich, and hoped to gaine by vs. In regard whereof, although it were

20 Lent, wherein they eate no flesh, yet offered vs Hens , Egges, Milke: any thing that was there to be had for money, they requested vs to command it. And during the time of our continuance there, he commanded one Padre Aurelio to attend vpon vs, and see that wee wanted nothing; and another of his brethren, one Padre Angelo, to be our guide abroad, and to flew vs all ancient Monuments and places worth feeing, either in the Citie, or out of the Citie.

Thefe kind speeches being vsed, they brought vs to our chambers where wee should lodge all night, and prounded for every man feverally a good neat Bed with faire sheets, and all things very wholfome and handfome, where wee flept fweetly, and refreshed our wearied bodies all that night very comfortably.

But although they dealt thus kindly with vs (at the inflance of their Benefactors) in giving 30 vs libertie of conscience, yet they deale not so with others. For some I doe know who have beene there, and made no confcience to doe as they have done. Wherefore , I admonish those An admoniwho have a defire to travell to Ierusalem hereafter, to take heed to themselves, that they make tion to such not hipwracke of conscience; for if they come not well commended, or well moneyed, or levelen, both, there is no being for them, except they partake with them in their idolatrous services. True it is, that the Turkes give libertie of conscience vnto all that come thicher : but they give not entertaynment voto any Christians in their houses. And the Greeke Patriarchs are poore, and not able to protect fuch as come vnto them for refuge. Thele Padres, though they bee Papifts, yet have they rich Benefactors; and want nothing, and (for the most part) very kind and curreous to ftrangers in all things, libertie of confcience onely excepted, wherein they feeke to 40 make others like vnto themselves, and to seduce them from their Faith, and to winne them to

the Church of Rome : and offer vnto them who have money in their puries to make them Knights of the Sepulcher; but no good English Subject will accept of that order of Knighthood; for at the receiving thereof, they I weare to bee true to the Pope, and to the King of Spaine, and to other things, which no man can doe with a good conscience. And this kindnesse and libertie of conscience, which wee found amongst them, wee imputed not so much to the men, as to our owne money: for it cost vs chare, viz, one hundred Duckets for our entertaynment.

After wee had refted one night in lerufalem, the first day wee walked about the Citie our felues without our guide, onely to view the Citie, wee found it exceeding hot, and hotter then 50 it is viually at Midfummer in England: It feemed ftrange vinto mee, how it should once bee so cold, that Peter should creepe to the fire, and now (at the same season) so hot that wee could not indure the heate of the Sunne. But after I had beene there a few dayes, the very place refolued that doubt : for there fall great deawes, and before the Sunne haue dried it vp, it is cold, and in the night feafon (about that time of the yeere) fomewhat cold, as I felt by experience when I flept in the fields all night. And Peter having watched with Christ in the night, might well be cold in the morning, before the heat of the Sunne had expelled cold.

But here wee will breake off, having with Master Sandys bis eyes curiously viewed Ierusalems Holies in the former Chapter.

Ind: and therefore bade vs all charge our Peeces, and shoot off when he bade vs, though we faw no bodie, left the wilde Arabs should fet vpon vs on the fodaine, lying in ambush, which were also did in a place most dangerous, to daunt the enemies before wee taw each other. But before wee came vinto the most dangerous place, there ouertooke vs many Tierkes well armed, who dwelt in Ierusalem, and were glad of our companie thither. And shortly after wee had dischar. ged every man his piece, we law a great companie of Arabs on an high Mountaine neere vino our way, yet out of the reach of our thot, who perceiving vs to bee too ftrong for them, durft not fer vpon vs. And to (by the providence of God) wee came that night to an ancient and to famous Citie, (fituated in a fruitfull valley betwixt two Mountaines) called Sycher, a Citie in Samaria, mentioned, John 4. Neere whereunto wee faw Jacobs Well, where our Saujour Christ Pleasant water asked water of the woman of Samaria. Wee came thither in good time, for wee were exceeding thirltie, and dranke thereof liberally and freely. The water thereof goeth downevery pleafantly, like vnto Milke. From Iacobs Well we went into the Citie, and lodged in a very ancient and stately Cane, but very badly kept. It had beene better for vs to haue slept by Id. cobs Well, as others did; for here we flept on the hard ftones neere vnto a Chappell in the middle of the Cane, vnder two or three great Fig-trees and Mulberrie-trees, where we were force fafe from theeues, for we had some things stollen from vs in the night, whiles wee slept under the Trees on faire broad stones, whereunto we ascended by a faire stone paire of staires, sixe or 20 feuen steps from the ground. Sychar is distant from En-gannim, feuen and twentie miles. The nine and twentieth of March, wee departed from Samaria to Ierusalem, and met many

Souldiers in feuerall companies by the way, who knowing our lanzarie, and other Turkes in our companie, let vs passe by them quietly, and gaue vs the falam aliek, that is, peace be unto you. The first part of this dayes sourney was somewhat pleasant; but , the neerer we came to lerusalem. the more barren and tedious our way was. About ten of the Clocke we came to a great Forrest. or Wilderneffe full of Trees and Mountaines. When wee were on the top of this Mountaine, we faw the maine Sea on our right hand, and small Ships fayling towards Joppa. About three or foure of the clocke, we came to a ruinous Village called Beere, but of old (as it is reported) Beer freba, which in former times was a great Citie: And it is faid to be the place where lofens to and Mary comming from Ierufalem (the feast being ended) missed the Child Iesu, and sought him forrowing; and returning to Ierufalem, found him in the Temple amidft the Doctors, herring them and poling them. Our purpole was to lodge here all night, being all of vs wearie and hungrie, and all our prouision spent. But finding nothing here to be had for money, either for Man or Horse; and vinderstanding that lerisfales was but ten miles off, wee went on in our wav somewhat faintly, fine or fixe miles, and then beholding the prospect of the Citie, wee were somewhat cheered and reuiued, and solaced our selues with singing of Psalmes, vntill wee came neere vnto the Citie. Many Greekes dwelling in Ierusalem, seeing vs afarre off, came to meet vs, supposing their Patriarch had beene in our companie, who came two or three

Beere.

We dismounted from our Horses at the West gate of the Citie, called Ioppa gate, or the Castle gate; which is a very strong gate of Iron, with thirteene Peeces of Brasse-ordnance planted on the wall about the gate. Wee stayed in the porch of the gate, and might not be admitted into the Citie, vntill wee were fearched by an Officer (as the manner is.) In the meane time there came to vs two Italian Friers , viz. Padre Angele, and Padre Anrelio, and kissed our hands , and Master Timber- bade vs welcome, and told vs, that two other Englishmen were at their house, viz. Master Tim-

tey bath publi- berley, and Master Borell. When we were fearched without the gate by a Turkith Officer, and delivered up our weapons of his Voyage. to the Porter to keepe for vs in the gate-house vntill our returne (because no Christian may enter into Ierusalem with weapons) these two Padres led vs to their Monasterie; at the gate 50 whereof wee were fearched againe by another Tarkifb Officer before wee might enter into the house. For the office of the former Searcher at the gate of the Citie was onely to receive the weapons of all Christians, and deliuer them fafe to them againe at their departure. But this Searcher went further and fearched all our carriage, which he caused to be opened, to see whether we had any Gun-powder, or any other engins there. For they are very suspicious of all Christians, fearing, left for denotion to the place, they should worke treation; therefore they fuffer not Christians to enter into the Citie weaponed, lest they make insurrection against them when they are many together, and conquer the Citie, as heretofore they have done. To this end also is the Citie walled about with strong walls, and fortified with foure strong gates, and a Castle, (but by Sultan Solyman) and every gate well planted with Ordnance for feare of Chri- 69 ftians. And partly for hope have they environed this Citie with fuch ftrong walls, that Chris stians for denotion to the place, might come and build within the walls, and bee subject to the Turke. For though their walls be large and ftrong, yet there is great roome within the walls to build more houles then are there, for there are fields of Corne within the walls of the Citie;

*If any think it

ill that a Chri-

ftian Ambaffa-

dor should ac-

company the

Turke in this wirre against

they may

Christendom:

please to ve-

derft ind, that his intents

feruice to the

Christians, if occationswere

offered for

peace: as also

he did in deli-

ueric of the

were to doe

CH A P. 9.

CHAP. X.

The lourney of ED WAND BARTON Esquire, ber Maiesties Ambassador with the Grand Signior, otherwise called the Great Turke, in Conftantinople, S v ET A H * MAHVMET CHAN. Written by Sir Thomas GLOVER then Secretarie to the Ambaffador, and fince employed in that Honoura.

ble Function by his Mareflie, to SVLTAN ACHMET. Two Letters are also inserted, written from Agria, by the faid Ambaffador BARTON.

Irft, the Ambaffador well mounted, and his two spare Horses, with a Coach with foure Horses ; next before him his Chanfes, and an Enterpreter, with three Isnizaries: and before the Chanfes, and Innizaries, his men, (beeing twelne in number) in Liueries rode before him, and foure Gentlemen next after him: and foure Coaches with the Christian Captines (being three and twentie in number) the Family of Signior Crotiky, the Emperour his late Ambassador in Constant, noble, which hee redeemed from the Great Turke, and had licence to carrie them a long with

him, and to fend them into their owne Countrey, allowing and giving him the foure Coaches, with two Horfes in each Coach, and a man to tend on every Coach. Laftly, thirtie fixe Camels for carriage of prouision, and to every fixe Camels, two men to attend on them, to lade and Emperors Ser- ynlade as occasion serued (which in Turkish, are called Denedailers) of them there were twelness all wayting on the Camels: More the Chanfes man and another Turke, called Mahomet, who was recommended to the Ambaffadour to be his Lackey, to runne by his Horse vntill wee cametomentioned,&c

Now on Friday being the fecond day of July, 1596, the faid Ambaffador parted his house (which is in the Vines of Pera,) and tooke his lourney, having to accompany him that first day, Mafter I ohn Sander fon Merchant (who was by him left an Agent or Logotenent vntil his returne) Ionas Aldrich Merchant, and lobs Field a Physician : who brought him that day voto a place. called Aquadulce, and there pitched their Tents, remayning there that night, and the next day enfuing. On Sunday morning at Sunne riling, we departed from Aquadulce, and came to Posts Piccolo, about mid-day, which is some fifteene miles diffant from Aquadulce, and there we pitched our Tents. On Munday, before the breake of the day, parted thence about ten of the clocke in the morning, and arrived at Ponte Grande, which is about twelve miles diffant; where having pitched our Pauillions the Ambastadour sent his Chaus, and the Drogue-men, with the Grand Signior, his Commission to the Cady of the faid Towne, for his allowance of pros who fent him five Sheepe, two hundred Loaves of Bread, five Meatres of Wine, one loaded Hav. with twentie Kylowes of Barley.

On Tuesday, before day, we parted Ponte Grande, and by Sun-rising wee came to a small Yil- 40 lage, called Combergafi, where the Ambastador his people broke their fast, and after an homes flay parted thence, and came to a Towne, called Celebria, about eleuen a clocke, which is some ten miles diffant from our last Lodging. There also the Ambassadour sent his Commission to the Cady of the faid Towne, who fent him three Sheepe, two hundred Loques of Bread, ten Meaters of Wine, one loade of Hay, and twentie Kyllowes of Barley, wee pitched our Tents 2 quarter of a mile distant from the Towne; and an houre within the night, the Moone being vp,

The twentieth, wee were to passe through a great Wood, betwixt two Mountaynes that day, and in the night to keepe watch. These men are Bulghars, beeing appointed by the Grand Signior, to guard all Travellers (I meane of the Campe) that come that way, for which so feruice the faid Bulgharians pay no Tribute to the Turke. Then wee came to a Village, called Seruia, which is at the entrance betweene those two Mountaynes, and no other passage but one that goeth to Wallachia, all the Countrey else within these Mountaynes, beeing as it were enuironed with mightiesteepe, woodie hils, as though they were wals of strong Cities; this was the passage that Islins Cafar passing out of Sernia, lost so many thousand men before he could game it; for this passage is as though it were hewenor cut out betwixt these two Mountaynes. At the mouth or rather the entrance on the North-fide, it is fortified with a mightie great wall from Mountayne to Mountayne, and a firong Caffle in the midft, with a great Gate to paste thorow, there is yet to be seene part of the wals, or rather fragments: the wals adjoyning to the Gate are maruellous loofe, and shake, readie to fall: some two houres before night, we came to the foot of the M untayne, and therepitched our Tents a mile from a Towne, called Erchpnia; being from Tartarb fardgi eight and twentie miles, this day and nights travell was all betwixt thele

The fine and twentieth, we came to the mouth or entrance of a strong passage beeing tenne miles long betwixttwo Mountaynes, the way winding in and out, as it were, hewen, or cut

out of the Mountaynes, on both fides verie loftie; this place is of a wonderfull strength for resifling of the Enemies: Now little after mid-day, we came to pitch our Tents towards the end of the laid passage, by a faire River side.

The fixe and twentieth, passing along the River side, on the high way, wee found two men most miserably put to death, having each of them a stake thrust in at his Fundament, through his bodie, and to out by his necke; the stake being set vp right on end : the cause was for killing ns soate, and a second and second and second a lantzarie, they being Christians. The Grand Signist passing by, caused them so to suffer. The eight and twentieth, we came to a Towne, called Neesa, and a little before our com- Neesa.

ming to the same, we saw two men staked as afore-said, who were Transituation, came purpose-Id ly to spie and view the Campe : also at this Townes end, there were of Christians heads flead. and flopt full of Hay hanged on posts by strings, so the number of three hundred which sour moneths before were slaine by Turtes, while Makomes Bassa, at Bassa. From the entrance of the fraight passage to this place are ten miles, and from Sofpa to this place all high Mountaynes, the magni panege o may and a cetaman-jana man organ o may be can angui oromey nest, toc-kie and troublefone to trauell: thefe Mountaynes part Sersia and Schassnia, this Citie is fu-tuated in a verie delectable Valley, having towards the Weft-fide a faire Plaine, that firetcheth is felfe towards Albania and Macedonia, here we refted all that day and night.

The third of August, were came to spread our Tents close by the mayne Campe , halfe 4 mile diffant from Belgrade, which is a maruellous great Plaine adioyning to the Citie, and above the midft of the Campe, the Grand Signus his Paullion is alwayes placed; and now hard by his 20 Paullion by force of hands was raifed a small Hill, vpon which was growne a Haw-thorne, cut artificially spreading, which made a manuellous good shadow: every Evening the Great Taske would ascend into it to view his Campe, and to be seene of his people, being a custome amongft the Turker, his Souldiers in the Wars to fee their King, once in foure and twentie houres.

HONDIVE bis Map of Hungarie.



Ahraham Baffa Chiefe Vizier.

The fenenth, the Ambassador went to the chiefe Vizier, Abraham Bassa, about the Captines he had in his charge, and inconference with him prefently, the faid flaves were fent for, and beeing brought before the Baffa, in the prefence of the Ambaffador and other Viziers, and great perfo. nages, their deliuerance being pronounced, to be fent by the Ambassador into their Countrey, it was granted by them all; whereupon the faid flaues kiffing the Baffa his feet, as the manner of Christians de. the Turtes is for fuch a grace; and the Ambassador also giving them thankes, tooke his leave and fo departed, carrying his Captines along with him to his Pauillion.

The thirteenth, about Quandi, the Ambassador with his company departed from Belgrads. riding by the South-west end of the Castle, came to the River Lana, neere where it entreth inm the Danubinnes, to paffe the bridge purposely made for the Grand Signior, his Armie to passe the to fame, which bridge is artificially builded vpon fortie fine great Boats made for that purpose like Lighters, but much broader, deeper and flat bottomed, the length of the same bridge is some one hundred paces, the breadth betwixt the Rayles fortie foot: for space of eight dayes the Armie was going ouer, in such fort; as a man could not passe for the continual press of the people.

Bridge of paffing.

Next morning, the Grand Signior parted thence, and some two houres after, the Ambastador followed : now the ordinarie riding of the Great Turke, was in this manner (not speaking of the whole Armie, which went before and followed him, but only of those that attended on his owne person) before him rides one thousand of the brauest and best armed Horsemen, every one with his Lance. Next them fome three hundred Chanfersthen one hundred Foot-men next before him, with Bowes & Arrowes; then followes his Youths, all for the most part at mans state (called Iehoelans) about some three hundred clothed in Gownes of Brocada, of Gold and Silver, all of 20 one fashion, and a Cap on their heads, made in manner of a French-hood, of course red cleath: in the midit among it them, are fortie or fiftie men riding on Camels, Horses and Mules, who play on Drummes, Fifes, and many other forts of Instruments, continually all the way along after these follow some fortie Coaches; then his ordinary Servants, as Stable-men, Kitcheners and fuch like: this day travelling till about eleven of the clock, we came and ipread our Tents, as neere the Grand Signiors Paulition as we could and close by the Danabium : whence we came to

this place, is about some nine miles.

The next morning, the Grand Signior departed from Slanconie, and about ten of the clocke came to foread his Pauillion under the fide of an hill, close on the other fide of the Danubium. some seuen males from the Towne aforesaid; all alongst this Hill full of Vineyards, where the Souldiers gathering and spilling Grapes, were complayned of; whereupon, fixe of them being taken, were langed on Trees in the Vineyards, and after, a ftrict commandement given not to cake any thing perforce from any man, vpon paine of death: here the Ambafador was fentive to the Bafa, and readie to depart, the Bafa willed the Ambafador, that the next morning, is the Grand Signier (hould paffe along on his way, hee flould bee ready to falute him, for hee kid; that he asked for him, and marvelled her could not fee him. V pon this, taking his leave, departed; and so went to the Great Hodgig his Tent, and after while to his owne Tents. The next morning, perceiving the Great Tweet departure, the Ambassador with his men about him all on Horse-backe salute his Highnesse according to their manner, bowing, at several times, and the 40 Grand Signier beholding the Ambassador with his retingerable did bow himselfe vinto them very kindly, and so past on his way, for that the Grand Signer, ypon the newes aforesaid, was defirous to fee the Ambassadour, which was cause that the Bassa willed the Ambassadour to doe as

The fine and twentieth, the Grand Signier parted this place (in the morning early) the rather to haften towards Hamen, not that hee himfelre in perfon would goe, but being neere the way to narran rowaits 12 at use, not that her pinneure in person wound goe, but being here in with the Agria, whereto he went to the his fielege, might velot any cacian fred more factor; the Ambassaco allo followed him with his retifies, finding (as Before) all plaine Champing grounds, fall of Graffe, and Hay: The Grand Strings willing of see his whole Armie, gane order that they flooded all through together that day, that the might have full view of them, which was go they have a find the continued of the strings and the strings armie.

Hags Armie. done accordingly, and a gipt almost varietable, overfiperading a Plaine, further then any man could discerne. The Ambassador, to have a full view of them, mounted a small Hill, about the midft of that Plaine, somewhat higher then the reft strom whence beholding them with great wonder, round about fo farre as could not be difcerned; the Plaine was ouer-fpread (as aforemain their faid) with people and carriages. And about Quind, we came to forced our Paulitons near ruture week.

- winated I counce for that there was a pabody dwelling in the fame, we did not demand the name, there we being from the place wee came, some two due this carried this way wee faw many reliques there or of Caftles and Townes, which by their warres, afore-time, and now, have beene, and are de-

Belgrade, hetherto newes were bruited, that Maximillian was vider Vatia, where hee kept long Countell, yet hitherto (though he had full power of the Emperor) makes no show nor figne to

meete the great Turke, or succour Agria. The same night the lansfaries built and entred their Trenches, placing good flore of Artillarie therein; having Abraham Baffa the Vifere, and Af-(an Bassa the Begierbie of Grecia, to their guard, and began to beate the East part of the Castie: Jan Daya the Degard Mahomet Baffa, the North part, the Baffa of Natolia and Caramania, the West part. The thirteenth, the Hungarians fet their Suburbs on fire, which were very well fenced with a high Wall, yet diffructing their forces, fearing that the Turkes once entring the fame, should make a Fortresse of offence, fired the same, and fled vnto the Castle : Now the Tarket perceiung them to be gone vp into the Cattle, scaled the out wals of this Towne, and tooke such pilledges as the fire had left there: The chiefelt of the Inhabitants of this Citie, fled tooke near principle Countries thereabouts, before the Grand Signior his approaching to the faid fiege, and the rest retyred themselues into the Castle, as aforesaid, with as much goods as they could. The fourer eenth, the Tinkes entred, and burned and spoyled the rest of the Suburbs, with a great Church, but were foone repelled, and the Church, with the rest, for that time was well defended. The same day Cigalla was appointed out Skire, with a troope of light Horse-men, to see that no fuccour should come to the Castle.

The twentieth, Turker giving fire to a Mine, it proved contrarie to their mindes, the force comming forth, and not into the Castle: After which, the defendants perceiving it tooke courage, and affaulted the Trenches of the venturers, whom they found enprounded of defence; flew many, and taking fome of them and their Banners, retired into the Cafile with their prey, and 20 there jet the Banners upon the wals, to terrifie the Tarker. The two and twentieth at night,

the Turkes filled the Catile Ditches with Wood and Hay, but because they were not ready or denifed to couer the same with earth, as it ought to be; the defendants seeing it, presently with Wild-fire confumed it; so for that time fruitrated their defire, yet continuing their batterie, made foure feuerall places of the Castle wals assultable. The three and twentieth, by night had they prouided fufficient wood, and other matter to fill the Ditches; in the meane time, the Berthey produced tometent hither to the fiege, without order from the Grand Signior or the chiefelt Baffa, and word being brought, the Emperour was strong in those parts, if pardon had not beene Potten for him, he had loft his head; yet prefently was fent backe againe from whence he came, vpon his owne proper coff and charges, and that was his penaltie for the offence-

The foure and twentieth, the Tarke giving fire to a Mine, had made a great breach, and thereunon gaue a generall affault, which indured most fearefully on both sides, for the space of an houres yet at last the Turkes were beaten backe. After a little rest made, began a new affanlt, which continued two hours; in the which, the Tierker got the better, gayning the wals and the Artillery on the fame, which prelently they turned vpon the Cafile. The twentie fine, the Tarks gaue an affault vpon the inner part of the Castle, but repulled with a great slaughter. The twentie lixe, the Turks attempting to vindermine the Gallle, and prefently thereupon, to give a generall affault : but the Christians having by some meanes knowledge thereof, to hinder the Tunkes they should not give fire thereunto, and to have more time themselves to countermine theirs, went and cast great quantitie of vnbeaten come on that side the wall, so that the Tarks could not wel stand 40 to come night to dig or bring powder, so for that day the affault was deferred. The eight & twentieth, in the morning, first fired a Mine which cast vp the Castle wall, the breadth of two Carts. and prefently ypon the same, gaue a new assault; but because the lansaries was not backed, this affault tookeno effect, but about two houres after, refreshing themselves, and gathering more ffrength, about mid-day began the affault afresh, which indused till night ; but because of the great raine that at the instant fell, they prenailed not, though on both sides many slaine, and the Cattle put in great icopardie. On Wednessay the nine and twentieth, and Thursday the thirtieth, still skirmishing for all it rained,

The first of October, as before faid, continually skirmishing, it chanced that an English-man a Trumpeter, fled out of the Caftle, and being taken by the Turkes, was brought to the Grand 50 Signior, and being examined, aduited him of the weake estate thereof : according to whose report, in the morning being Saturday the second of October, it was rendred vpon condition they might depart with Bag and Baggage : which was granted. The third, being licenced to depart according to the Grand Signior his promise, voider the charge of the Beglerbie of Natolia. At their departure forth of the Castle, they were spoyled of their goods carried with them, and most of them flaine by the Spabies, lans faries of Hatman, and other Turks, not without suspicion of the Grand Stonior his knowledge, because he vied no feuere punishment for the breaking of his commandement, and his owne promife. There were in number about one thousand Souldiers . and as many more men, women, and children Inhabitants, which were faued and kept to remaine Subich's there: the chiefe Captaines were kept and promifed their libertie. The chiefe was Honger, 6c Signior Paulo: The Coronell Gulielmo Trocks, lohannes Incobus Comes Atarne Bahemo, lohannes

Kinskye de Tetan; and Count Rugero Italiano.

A Letter written by Master Edward Barton Ambassador, to Master Sanderson: inscribed Al Molso Mag. Sig. Gio. Sander fon, &c.

Thefe two let- T ters written by the Ambaffador his owne hands, I baue for his fake and theirs interted, giuen me by Mafter

Onine friend, I have written twice unto you, as well from Bellograd as also Solnok, of what in amy voyage hitherto had paffed, but my Letters were intercepted and torne, brought unio my band. agame, and being of no great importance, I will no more reply them, but admife you of the Grand Signiagame, and peng of no great only the superied the twelfth of September, and the lette same night be made but trenches and hatteres in six severall places; the Vice-Roy in one place, the Beglerbie of Grecia in another, the Beglerbie of Natolia in the third, the lanifaries in the fourth, leffer Baffa En. to nuch in the fifth, Mahemed Bassa Gera in the fixt; Cigal Ogli was Captame oner the light Horse men, to Coure the coasts on all fides, that no succour should come, and to learne admice of the Emperoure

The thirteenth, the Inhabitants fet all their Suburbs on fire, which might be little leffe then Gallata. which though they were well defenced with a firing wall, yet the defendants being few in number. and distrusting to their owne strangth , left the desence of them, and retired them selucs within the Castle. The fixteenth, the landaries offered a generall shirmsh, even under the Gate of the Caftle, where on both files many were laine, but the Hungars keeping them felues close within the walt, and the landa-ries treed, some retired. The sewenteenth, eighteenth, and mineteenth, they intended to undernime the Cafile, and the twentieth, put fire thereto, but not succeeding to their mindes (though they valiantly at- 20 sensoled to enter the breach) they gave comrage to the defendants to make if we to mutual damage. The foure and twentieth, the affailants having made another breach, valiantly ent ed the fame, but not being seconded with fresh forces, were repelled, yet two Boures after, in the same day, taking on them better conrage, and more valiantly seconded, gane a new asfault, when by chance, a woman in the Castle set. sing, by chance, fire on a Barrell of Powder, and the Souldiers of the Castle thinking it was a Mine fired in the Caftle, for feare thereof vettring themselmes, game the Turkes courage to enter a small but firms Bassion, builded for defence of a weaks part of the Castle, which they valiantly even to the last defeaded; and ener after, with myning and counter-myning, continual affaults and skirmilbus on both parti-fichting, to the extreame left of the defendants. The first of October, an English Trampetter of caped out and fled to the Vice-Roy , requiring life and libertie , and declaring the weakenife of the Caffe, " mas brongle befare the Grand Signior, to whom likewife be made like relation; according to whose reports, the next day being Saturday the second of October, the Castle was rendered, with compati that d toe Souldiers flound fafely retire whether best they lest, and the Inhabitants to remaine continual this bitants, and waters of their former possessions; the latter of which promises was observed, but the sirst wa ornans, non-normal y source programs, see more of more of prompts we soften some of the soften source of the softe Christian Turke Signior doth within fine dates determine to goe toward: Buda uncertaine upon what defigne. From Solnok I fent my Drogueman to Buda with the Emperours Ambassador his familie, and in Buda I re- th Beligior: now leafed fine other, with all which companie, confifting of fewer and twentie, I received Letters from my Drogueman, and the Gentleman in Buda releafed; that they departed from Peft the thrittenth o December toward the Emperous Court, God Send mee a good answer speedily. And I pray you feed G:llant a rich this aduce for England; Commonding me to lu. Field, and Dollor Sette Cotte, and Matter Peter Gallant, with Sign. Ant. Peron, and the French Secretaire: this fift of October, 1596. Perma a rich

Your affured. E. BARTON.

Part of another Letter written likewise by the said Ambassadour from Agria, to Mafter Sandy the English Confull at Aleppo.

Thinke that at your residence with me, you rimember how that the Grand Signior had made me grant I of the libertie of all the Emperours Ambalfadors his family, which now he hath performed and I have feut them bymy Drogueman une the Emperour , enen twentie eight perfons of which number dinert were Gentlemen of account, so that I hope my feruice therein shall be gracefull to bis bighnesse, and acceptable to his Maieflie, and of delight to you and the reft my good friends, whom I could not leave vnadmifed thereof, at alike of the Manfulling of the Balla, and fucceffe of Abraham Balla, late high Treafuper , now Baffa of that place, to whom, as to my very good friends , I will earneftly commend you, and the reft of my Countriemen and friends &c.

The Polish Ambassadour departed from Agria, having with him three Innifaries, and two Girles, which the lanifaries tooke at Agria the fame day, the Ambalfadonr having occasion to goe to the Baffa, at his returne his Chaufes carried him through the Citie of Agria, which was

burned and spoyled to the ground, and lying a mile beyond the Towne, vpon a great Plaine, the poore Christians that were licenced to depart out of the Cafile, lay all slaine there scattered. Returning back, we faw under the Castle wals of Christians that were slaine at the siege a great number heaped vp together close to the wall, about two fathome high, all naked frying in the Sunne, belides in divers other places many more. Comming along to our Pavillion, wee faw with certaine Ianifaries fine women and children, the one of fine yeeres, and the other fucking the mothers breft; thole women and children the Lunifaries made purchase of, at rendring vo of the Citie, and the Caltle of Agria. The Girle of fine yeeres of age, the Ambassadour bought for ten Chekines ; Here the Grand Signior stayed till the Castle was againe repaired.

CHAP. 10. Dangerous battell to the Turke, difmall to the Christians.

The tenth, came newes that Christians were within three daies journey of the Campe, wherypon Gieffer Baffa, and the Beglerbie of Grecia, were fent to view the Christians Campe; who more ventrous then wife, entring the clawes of the Christians, were wholly discomfitted, & most of their retinue flaine, and parfued to the Turk campe; for which cause they were both deposed. Yet Affan Baffa was preferred to the Beglerbie of Grecia, which fine daies before was taken from him, Now Cigalla was made General together with Affan Baffa, and appointed to go on the Chriflians: but Agria wals being already repaired, the Grand Signior retolued himselfe to go in person. and departed from Agria on the fourteenth, travelling all that day, till about Quindie, then came to spread his Tents or Pauilions. Next morning proceeding on his journey, about ten of the clocke hee came in fight of the Christians, and within halfe an houre after, began to skirmish 20 with them, they being intrenched neere to their Campe, by two old Churches or Chappels vpon a great Plaine, neere to a long puddle or Mare ground, of fome foure miles long, all alongst a fmall banke or hill, in breadth some seven or eight Rods; and beyond this, voon this hill or banke aforefaid, had the Christians incamped themselves. About mid-day, at the approaching of the Grand Signior, they skirmished freshly, and some Turkes intrenched themselves neere vnto one of these Churches aforesaid, these continuing all day skirmishing, as aforesaid, where both fides flewed great valour, but small bloud fhed, in respect of fuch infinite forces as were there.especially of Turkes. The Ianifaries in particular, brauely entred the Christians Trenches, but not being seconded, were most of them put to the Sword; and the Christians perceiuing no feconds, valiantly marched forwards, and gained the Twkes Trenches, put them to flight with 30 fome flaughter. Now the night approaching, and raine withall, the Grand Signior retired with his Pauilions, some mile off : the Ambassadour also with his companie, seeking to plant themfelues for that night, not finding his carriages, was confrained to rest in the open field without any Tent, or ought elfe ouer his head, and neither meat nor drinke. The Ambaffador was faine to fend two of his Ianifaries to feeke for fomewhat for him and his Companie as also for their Hora fes; at length they brought some twelue Okes of Bisket, whereof some part wee cate, and the rest gaue our Horses: also Beniamin Bulbop having formerly vnder Agria bought a Daichman. Slave to the Turks, who riding all day with vs, and being ill at eafe, the same night he dyed with

40 dreadfull day to the Turkes, but most vnfortunate to the Christians : In the morning newes being brought, that the Christians had for faken the Torkes Trenches, and retired to their owner the Turkib Horse-men that seeing, assaulted them valiantly, and though they found good incounter, yet repulsed the Christians. Now againe, when the Christians had fet their forces in good order, they brought their maine campe forth, and soone repelled the Turks, where the poore lanisaries, being Foot-men, were all put to the Sword, some two thousand persons, the Christians feeing the Turkes flie, followed in braue Martiall manner : The Foot-men Harquebufes, be- Turkes flee, fore them the light Artillerie, and after them the Horse-men in warlike manner, whose approaching fo terrified the Twker, that without respect of their Emperour, and their livings depending on him, they fled in most shamefull wife, so that the Christians without resistance, approached even nigh the Pavilions of the Grand Signiar. At which time I leave to the world, to confi-50 der what fright the Grand Signior was in, leeing all his Armie flie; yet incouraged by some about him of his chiefe Officers, caused his Banners Imperiall, to march forwards upon the Christians; and he with his Bow and Arrowes shot thrice, and a some say, sine three Christians. Now the Tartars, for feare of the Harquebuses, gathered themselves about the Grand Signior his Pavillion, and houering a little off, and Hafan Baffa who had the charge of the reward (left the Christians Horse should affault the Grand Signior on the backe fide) approaching with all the Grecian light horsemen, who taking the right fide of the Christians, were al ready on the face encountred with those who incironed the Grand Signior , and on the other side, by the Tartars, were on the sudden so frighted, that the Horle-men for sking the Artillerie and guard of the Foot-men, fled 60 without order, and being parfued, many of them were flaine; but the poore footmen foone incompassed by the troopes of Turkes Horse-men, were all most cruelly without blow offering or shew of refillance, put to the Sword; many of the Horse-men by benefit of the night, escaped to the

The fixteenth, when after a troublefome night, approached the day, that bloudy day, that

Mountaynes of Arria. The fewenteenth in the morning, there came to the Ambassadors Pauillion, two great Chauses

1260

efteeme as

CHAP. XI.

The Transls and Adventures of Captaine IOHN SMITH in divers parts of the world, begun about the veere 1596.

His Trauels thorow France, Italie, and on the Sea coafts of Europe, Africa, and Alia: His entertaymment and exploits in the Emperours wartes against the Luckes his fubtile Stratagems , walorens Combats, Applaufe, Adnancement, Honour.

N his youth, when France and Netherlands had eaught him coloide Morie and France ches when Armes; with fuch rudiments of Wiferen Hill sended veeters in this Man-triall Schoole could attayed who if he was declaring to fee the Worth Man dit tries is the learn Defortune against the Turke. Opportunitie casing him into the companie of the Lord Deforme French Gallants well attended, fayning to him they were denoted that company con way; ouerperswaded him in the Low Commies, to goe with them into France; zen him of his

with such ill weather as winter affoordeth, in the darke night they arrived in the broad shallow Clothes, with the in weather as wither another, and darker night accompanied him, namely his and Money, French Gallants; which, liking well his apparell, and thinking him better furnished with mos ney then themselves, plotted with the Master of the ship, who conneyed them and his Trunks ashoare; and left him aboord till the Boat could returne, which was not till next day towards evening. The reason he alleaged was, the Sea was so high he could come no sooner: And that his pretended French Lord was gone to Amient, where they would flay his comming. Which treacherous villanie, when divers other Souldiers Paffengers had vnderstood, they had like to have flaine the Mafter: and had they knowne how, would have runne away with the ship,

One of the Soudiers, called Corrisoner, compationating fits intuite, afficient him this great twittens, the Soudiers and the Corrisoner, compationating fits intuite, afficient him this great twittens, Lord Deprese, was onely the fonce of a poore Lawyer of Mericais in Bas Britishins, and his at I load From tendants Carriel, La Nelso, and Monferes, there younged Provinces, assurant chaesers as luminelfer; and if he would accompanie him, he would bring him to their friends, and in the interim supplie his wants. Thus translling by Diep, Codobeck, Honflen, Pount Rodemer in Normandie, they Die came to Caen in Bas Normande. Where both the Noble Corrianner, and many of his friends ta kindly welcommed him, and brought them to Mortaine, where hee found their friends, as hee Care. had promited him, but to small purpose. Yet the bruit occasioned the Ladie Columber, the Baron Larlban, the Lord Shafe, and divers other honourable perions to supplie his wants , and to give him kind entertainment with them, to recreate himselfe as long as he would, But such pleasures little futed with his poore effate : and his reftleffe spirit could never find content to receive such Heemen Carnoble fauours as he could neither deserue, nor requite. Whereupon, wandring from Port to Port, FR, & wounds to find some Man of Warre, he spent that he had, and in a Forrest, neere dead with griefe, a rich him in fight. Farmer found him by a faire fountaine vnder a tree. This kind Pefant relieued him againe to his Theeues fall content, to follow his intent. Not long after, as he palled through a great Groue of trees be- tisfaction to twixt Pounter on and Dinan in Brittaigne, it was his chance to meet Curfell, more miferable then the true man. himselfe. Without any word they both drew, and in a short time Carfell fell to the ground : Earle of Plager. where from an old ruinated Towne the Inhabitants feeing them, were fatisfied, when they Saint Male where, from an old runated I owne the Inhabitants leeing them, were tatished, when they sain missail, so heard Curfell confesse what formerly had passed; and that in the dividing what they had stolne Lambelle. Saint Missail,

in France) with his two brethren had beene brought vp in England; by whom he was better refurmished then euer. When they had shewed him Saint Malo, Mount Saint Michael, Lambai, Rebell, Saint Brienx, Lanion, and their owne faire Castle of Tunkadeck Guigan, and divers other places gordeaux. in Brittaigne, and their Commall; taking his leaue he tooke his way to Rener, the Brettons chiefe Emiss.

Citie; and so to Nantes, Portiers, Rechell, and Bordeaux. The rumour of the strength of Bayon Lister in Beam. in Biskay caused him to see it : And from thence tooke his way from Leskar in Bearn , and Pow Carcaston. 60 in the Kingdome of Nauarre to Tolonfe , Vizers , and Carcaffen in Gafcoigne; Narbonne, Mont - Nathonne pellier, Ny smes, and Poundegale, in Langedock, and through the Countrey of Aumion by Arles, Marcelle in to Mer felles in Prouence.

from him they fell by the cares among themselves: but for his part hee excused himselfe to be Pricks, Laguer, innocent, as well of the one as of the other. In regard of his hurt, Smith was glad to bee for places of need rid, directing his course to an heliourable Lord, the Earle of Plager: who (during the Warres in Brittaigns.

encamped themselves: which he did, taking foure lanizaries, his owne two Chanfes, two Speheir, and his owne men. Now milling one of his lanizaries, his fellow not having feene him all that day, riding along at the entrance of the Christians Campe, found the faid Innizarie flaine, whom the Ambassador she wed the Chanses, & so past along; the foresaid Chanses shewed the Ambassadour what place they had chosen for their Armie; which, if they had kept themschies within that compasse, and let the Turkes assault them still as they began, and they but to defend themselues, in small time would have wearied the Turkes, and done them great damage; and little hurt to themselves: for onely but at two muddy watery places (by the forefaid old Chappels) could the Turkes come neere them to doe any great harme : for hardly could a Horfe to valle, for being layed in, to that no possibilitie was for the Christians to haue any great repulse But passing those places, assaulting and skirmishing with the Turkes was their ouerthrow. Thus thele Changes led the Ambassador from the one end to the other, which is about two miles long, and a very great Plaine, and Woo is at the end thereof. There was all their Ordnance left behind them, and much Armour which the Christians that fled cast away, to goe with more speed when the Turkes pursued them so neere. When they came to the end thereof, some which fled, being opertaken lay flayne, both Horie-men and Foot-men. There was left great flore of wheat Meale, Bread, Butter, Cheefe, Bacon, Saufages, Beefe, and other prouition. Now, the Amhaffador returned to his Pauillion, bringing thefe two Chanfes with him to dinner; which done they tooke their leave and departed. After this conquest, the Grand Signior rested in his Paull- 20 lions there three dayes. The nineteenth, the Grand Signior rayled his whole Armie, bending his course homewards.

arriving at Constantinople on Sunday, being the twelfth of D:cemb. 1596. at which time he was received with great pompe, and before his entrance, the An baffadour, being placed by the chiefe Vizere, that when the Grand Signior came, hee went and fainted him, as the manner amongst them is, and kiffed his hand; which done he returned to his Horfe. The Agent aforefaid, with a fresh Horse, and a troope of more then twelve met; having met him foure miles off from Confluence timople, and about midday came to his owne house in the Vines of Pera, God be thanked, and his holy and bleffed Name, for this, and our preferuation in fo dangerous a Voyage, and for all other his infinite goodnesse towards vs. be praised for euermore. Amen.

The Ambassador reported to Master Iohn Sanderson, that the Hodice or Schoole-master of the

Great Turke, encouraged bim in this extremitie to get upon his Horfe, wrapping him felfe in Mahomets Flag, and to take these three . Arrowes, and shoot them toward the Christians Campe vine these Flag and these words following, Bifmilla Rohmane Roheim; which hee did. Cigallogli encouraged the Turkes to range masses wereta passement Dilithia kommittee university were over the Lighting it evertaged the luttes in Armenticant times a span the Chiffinen then bulged in platings, and not thom to light. After which forms Chigh-tine the last span to the last span to the plate of Firsh Advirad) come to the Turke, who embrated themes a well find him, Span, he adjusted not only his places given by the Kingdom.

The Reader may informe himfelie more fully of this Battel, and the Christians spoile through greedinesse of spoile, in Knolles, or other Writers of the Twith Sorie. This our Author hathal fo written his Voyage, from thence fent by the Ambassador into Poland, also from Constantinople 40 to Tripolis in Syria, 1601. from Constantinople to Aleppo, 1602. into England, 1603. and agains from Constantinople to England, 1604. But I feare my Reader will bee wearie of Turkie: from whence yet yee may not, shall not depart, till yee have beene made spectators of a Tragicall Comedie, and a Comicall Tragedie (Comicall, I hope to vs if the finnes of Christendome preuent not, to the Turkes a Tragedie) the most dismall that ever yet befell the Ottomans. In the first, the same man is both Author and Actor; in the next, you have a Choragus, to whom wee owe much for this, for former his learned and honourable seruices, both full of Raritie and Varietie, the parents of Wonder and Delight.

CHAP.



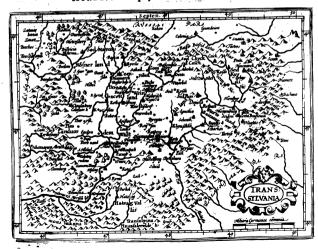
There embarking himlelfe for Italie, the thip was inforced to Toulon; and putting against Sea, ill weather fo grew vpon them , they anchored close aboord the shoare, under the little le so or Saint Morie against Rice in Sauey. Here the inhumane Foroincials with gabble of Pigina of durer Nations going to Rome, hourely curfed him not onely for a Hugonot, but fild, his Nation were all Pirats; rayling on his dread Sourraigne Quene Elizabeth, and that they never should have faire weather so long as he was abourd them. There disputations grew to that Enterraymed were no Inhabitants. The next morning hee sipied two finish more ridely them, put in by a Studger the florme; which exched him aboord, well refreided him, and fo kindly vied him, that hee Chiparanc. this former discourse: what for pitie and for lose of the Honourable Earle of Player, this Noble Britton his neighbour, Captaine La Roshe of Saint Malo, regarded and entertayned him. With 50 the next faire wind they layled along by the coast of Cuffee, and Sardinis, and crofting the Golffee of Time, pailed by Cape Buna, to the lle of Lumpada, a leaving the coast of Barbare till they came at Cape Rofate, and to along by the African shoare for Alexardria in Egypt. Thee having delivered their fraught, they went to Seanderone; and after keeping their course by ()press, and the coast of Asia; tayling by Rhodes, the Archipelagus, Candin, and the coast of Gracia, and the Ile Cephalonia; they lay to and againe a few dayes, betwixt the lle of Corfu, and the Cape of Otranto in the Kingdome of Naples, in the entrance of the Adrianche Sea, till they mette with an Argofie of Venice, which it feemes, the Captaine defired to fpeake with : whole vntoward answer was such as flue them a man. Whereupon presently the Britton gave them his broad fide, then his flearne, and his other broad fide allo; and continued his chafe Peeces till hee gave lo many broad fides one after another , that the Argofies Sayles and tackling were fo tome that shee stood to her defence, and made shot for shot. Twice in one houre and halfe the Brittons boorded her, yet they cleered them selves. But clapping her aboord againe, the Argosies fired him, with much danger to them both, but was prefently quenched. This rather augmen-

Smiths Travels in Italie and Stiria. CHAP.11. S.I.

red the Brettons rage, then abated his courage; and having re-accommodated himfelfe againe. he shot her to betweene wind and water, that shee was ready to finke : then they yeelded. The Brettons loft fifteene men, fhee twentie, besides diners hurt: the rest went to worke on all bands : fome to ftop the leakes, others to guard the prifoners, which were chayned; the reft to Argofe taken nands; tome to trop tite reases, others to guard the principles, and the stayined the relief of the rifle her. The Silkes, Veluets, Cloth of gold, and Tiffue; Peafters, Chickines, and Sultanies, and rifled by a they ynloaded in foure and twentie houres in wonderfull flore: whereof having fufficient; and this of Brite try ymozacu in toute and the off with all her companie, with as much good Merchandize as would have fraughted fuch another Britton. To repaire his defects he flood for the coaft of Calabria; but hearing there were fixe or lenen

Galleys at Melina, he departed thence for Malta: but the winde comming faire, hee kept his course along the coast of the Kingdome of Sicilia, by Sardinia and Corfice, till hee came to the course atong the coast of the hinguistics of the house, with five hundred Chickenes, and a smith feron little Box which he had, worth neere as much more. Here he embarqued himselfe for Layone, shoare at Antibeing glad to have such an oportunitie and meanes to better his experience, by the view of I. be in Pienoes. talie: and haung paffed Tufcante, Octorbo and many other Cities, as Rome, and Saint Peters Pa_ Legate, or Litrimonie, he went downe the River Tyber, to Cimita Vecha: where hee embarqued himselfe to trimonie, he went downe the titler 1907, to human seems which are consistent immers to faithe his eye with the faire Citie of Naples, and her Kingdomes Nobilitie; returning by Gana, Rome, and Senne, he palled by that admired Citie of Florence, the Cities and Countries of Boles. Rome. nia Ferrara, Mantas, Padus, and Venice: whose Gulfe he passed from Malamaco, and the A. Siema. 20 driatiche Sea for Ragoura, spending sometime to see the barren broken Coaft of Athania and Fluence, &c. dristicte Sea for Asgonta, personing touching the Mayne of poore Selasonia, by Tublismo, till hee came Dalmatia, to Capo de Ifria, trau-ling the Mayne of poore Selasonia, by Tublismo, till hee came Selasonia, to Grate. In Stiria, the Seat of Ferdinando an Arch-duke of Austria, (now Emperour of Al-Grate United Section 1). maine) where hee met an English and an Irish lesuite: who acquainted him with many braue Plana Gentlemen of good qualitie : elpecially with the Lord Ebersbaught, to whom hee gaue experiments of such conclusions, as he projected to undertake thee preferred him to Baron Kitell, Gements of ment concumons, as he protected to vince and the Earle of Meldritch, with whom going to Vienna in Austria, hee made him Captaine of two hundred and fiftie Souldiers, vinder ing to riema in right, net made min appraise to two majores and affect Soudiers, which whole Regiments how he spent his time, this initing Discourie will declare, as it is written in Booke intitude, The Warres of Translituous, Wallach; and Moldania, written by Francisco Feringra a Learned Italian, Secretarie to Sigismundus Bather the Prince.

HONDIVS bis Map of Transiluania.



Extracts of Captaine Smiths Transpluanian Acts, out of Fr. Fer. his Storie.

Fter the losse of Caniza, the Turkes with twentie thousand besieged the strong Towns of Olim-A Fier the lefte of Caniza, the I takes with twents item of officers to firm I town of Olim-pach, so firstly, as they were cut off from all intelligence and hope of success, tall I ohn Smith of English Gentleman, acquainted Baron Kizell, Generall of the Arch-Dukes Artillerie, that he had taught the Generall his worthy Friend, such a Rule, that bee would undertake to make him know any tango interdent and bane bis Answer; would they bring him but to some place, where he might make the slave of a Torch seme to the Towne. Kizell instanced with this strange innention; Smith made to it fo plaine, that forth-with he gave him Guides, who in the darke night brought him to a Munitaine. where he flewed three Torches equi-distant from each other, which plainly appearing to the Towns. the Gouernour presently apprehended: and answered againe with three other fires in like manner, each thus knowing the others being and intent. Smith, though diffant seven miles, signified to him these words.
On Thursday at night I will charge on the East, at the Alarme sally you: Eberspaught answe-Speech by Torches. red he would. And thus it was done, First, be writ bis Meffage, as briefe you fee, as could be : then dissided the Alphabet in two parts thus: A B C D E F G H I K L with one Light, the other Letters following with two, M N O P Q R S T V W X Y Z. The first part from A to L is A good ftrafignified by hewing and hiding one Linke so oft as there is Letters from A to that Letter, you meane: the other part from M to L, is mentioned by two Lights in like mauner; the end of a word is figni. 20 field by Bewing of three Lights, ever flaying your Light at that Letter, you meane, till the other may write it in a Paper, and answere by his signall, which is one Light. It is done, beginning to account the Letters, by the Lights enery time from A or M : by this meanes, also the other returned his An-(were , thereby each underst anding other. The Guides all this time, bauing well viewed the Campe, returned to Kizell, who doubting of his power, being but twentie thou and, was animated by the Guide. which related that the Turkes were fo divided by the River in two parts, that they could not eafily fecond Another fire each other. To which Smith added this conclusion, that two or three thousand pieces of Match, fustened

to divers small Lines of two hundred fathome in length, beeing armed with Powder, might allbee fired and firetobed at one instant, before the Alarme, vom the Plaine of Eyfmburge, supported betweene two stanes, at each Lines end: in that manner, would seeme as if they were so many Musketiers: which 30 was so put in practice, as being descouered by the Turkes, they prepared to encounter these false fires, thinking there had bin some great Armie, whilf Kizell with his Forces entred the Turkes quarter. They now ranne up and downe as men amazed , and it was not long ere Eberspaught was pill mell with them in their Trenches : in which distracted confusion , a third part of the Turkes that befieed that fide sowards Konbrucke mere flaine, many of the rest drawned, and field the other part of the Armie was so bused to restit the false fire, that Kizell before the morning had put in two thousand good Souldiers into the Towne, and with small lesse was retyred: the Garrison was also well relieved with that which they found in the Turkes Quarter: Which caused the Turkes to rayle their Siege, and returne to Ganiza, and Kizell with much bonour was received at Kerment : and occasioned the Author a good reward and preferment, to bee Captaine of two bundred and fiftie Soul- 40 diers, under the conduct of Colonell Meldrich.

A generall Rumour of a general Peace, now spread it selfe all ouer the face of those tormented 250. Souldiers. Countries: but the Turke intended no fuch matter, but levied Souldiers from all parts be could, and the Emperour also by the efficience of the Christian Princes, provided three Armies : the one led by the Arch-dale Matthias, the Emperours Brother, and his Lieftenant Duke Mercurie to defend low Hungariesthe second by Ferdinando the Arch-duke of Stiria and the Duke of Mantua his Leiftenant to tegaine Caniza: the third by Don Gonfago Governour of high Hungarie to ione with Balta, to make an

absolute Conquest of Transiluania. The fiege of

Duke Mercurie with an Armie of thirtie thousand (whereof neere ten thousand were French) befieged Stolewiserburg, otherwise called Alba Regalis, a place so strong by art and nature that it was 40 thought impregnable. There hapened many a bloudie fally, strange stratagems and valiant Exploits on bothsides by seucrall Nations; but in briefe, Earle Meldritch by the information of three or source Christians escaped out of the Towne. Captaine Smith tooke occasion upon the great Assemblies, thronging together at enery Alarme, to put in practice the sierie Dragons, which hee had demonstrated him and the Earle Von Sults at Comora, which he thus performed. After hee had prepared fortie or fiftie Earthen round bellied Pots prepared, with mixtures, Powder and Bullets, as experiences had taught him, (though with exceeding danger) he so fits placed them in lines, graduated on neere as they could to these
Altembles, and other places of advantage, that at mid-night open the Alarme, it was a stareful fight to fee the short flaming course of their flight in the Ayre : but presently after the fall, the lamentable noyfe of the miserable flaughtered Turkes was most terrible; besides, they fired that strong Sub- 60 wrbe, at the Port of Buda, in two or three places, which fo troubled the Turkes to quench, that had there beene any meanes to have affaulted them, they could hardly have refifted the fire and their Enemies.

This Citie being taken by the incredible Adventures of the Duke, the Earle Roleworme with the other Colonelland Captaines, which had beene in possession of the Turkes, more then fiftie yeares: the Turke fent presents Asan Bassa with theescore thousand, if it were possible to re-gaine it : the Duke under flanding this, with twentie thou fand met him: where fine or fixe thou fand were flaine, with the A Battell, and Baffa of Buda, and foure or fine Zanzackes.

Date Mercurie dusiding his Armie, Sent the Earle Meldrich (of whose Company was Captaine Smith in this encounter) to affist the Lord Bafta, Generall for the Emperor Roduiph, against Spoil mundus Bathur, the Prince of Transil. 12112 : who was beyond all mens beliefe, newly resurned from Polonia : and established in his Estate: the Earle neither finding pay, nor such regard as he expected, perforaded bie Troupes rather to ferne the Prince og ainst the Turkes, then Balta against the Prince. The Smildiers worns out with these paylesse Tranels, upon hope to make Bootic of what they could get from the

Sommers were not write rough purying a remain, symmony as money around you promisely from the to Turke, were easily perfunded to fullow him whereforem: especially to before to regume or rangingle Fathers Country then pliffedly the Turkes, which (they hard) mornishfanding those Warres, were rub and varsported. The Prince glad of so there as Commander, and so was expert and ancient Soulders, much him (compermative of his Armie, game him all necessaries else bee could, and what Soulders, much him (compermative of his Armie, game him all necessaries else bee could, and what freedome they de fired to ransacke the Turkes.

The Earle basine made many incursions into the Land of Zarkain, amongst the rockie Mountaines. where the people were some Turkes, some Tartars, some Iewes, but most Banditos, Renegadoes, and such like which sometives be forced into the Plaines of Regall : where is a Citie, not only of men and Regalbefleged. proving, more poments one person one entering the temperature as a court, not only of mentand Festifications, frong of it felfe; but so enterioned with C. Mountainer, and the pelgage so difficult that in all those warres, no attempt had been made upon it to any purpose. Having faithfeed implisse with the less than the statement of the pelgages, among it which be had many a sharpe encounter: at last, with eight thous land to see that the pelgages among it which be had many a sharpe encounter: at last, with eight thous land.

be pitched his Came before it. The Inhabitants scorning so small a number, sallied in such abundance, that about one bunder it and fiftie were flatne on both fides, and the Turkes chafed fo neere the Ports, that

the Towers (mall first and Ordnance caused the Earle to retyre.

The next der Zachell Movzes, Linetenant Generall to the Prince, came with foure thousand Foote and Horse, and foure and twente Peeces of Ordnance, but in regard of the situation of the place, they did more feare then hurt them : till they had frent neere a moneth in raising their Mounts and Batteriers which flow proceeding the furkes daily derided, and as fearing least they bould depart ere they affaulted the Citie fent this challenge to any Captaine in their Armie: That to delight the Ladies who did long Three fingle to fee some Courtlike afterme, the Lord Turbashaw did defie any Captaine that had the command of a comban, 30 Companie, which durst cumbat with him for his head. The matter being discussed, was accepted. But The fift onely Companie, would dan't connect a vindertaging, that it was denided by lots, and the lot fell upon Captaine with Lances. Smith, before hoken of. Truccheing taken for that time, the Rampiers all befet with faire Dames, Mannetof and men in Armes, the Christians in Batalia; Turbashaw, with a voice of Hoboyes entred the field, well Turbashas enmounted and armed : on his Itoniders were fixed two pairs of great wings, richly garnifeed with gold, trance. filmer, and precious stones, a lamitance before bim, bearing but Launce; on each side, another leading bis flater, and precious fracts, a militain defect course, watering the amounts of course flates were considered in Hosficiphote (single flags due forfers milit invite work of Trampas (only a Page damp his Lance) (.5 milbences, paffing by him, with a currense falute, tooks but ground with flock good flaces[6], that at the formed of the charge be paffed the Turke thorous the fight of the Manner, Jack, that, and all, that the field dead to the black militain ground, where all ghting, unbracing his Helmet, he took off his head, leasing the Turkes his body, and 10 fo returned without any hart at all. The head he presented to the Lord Moyzes the Generall, who bindly

accepted it, and with soy to the whole Armie, he was generally welcome. The death of this Captaine, fo swelled in the heart of one Grualgo his vowed friend, as rather inta. The second sed with madnesse then choller he directed a particular Challenge to the Conquerour to regaine his friends combat twist ged with meaning to the two with his Horfe and Armour for advantage: which, according to his defire, was also with Pithe next day undertaken, as before. V pon the found of the Trumpets their Launces flew in pieces, upon fools acleere piffage, but that the Turke was neere unborfed : their Pistols were the next, which marked Smith upon the Placket; but the next shot, the Turke was so wounded in the left arme, that not able to Grando flainc, rule his Horse, and defend himselfe, he was throwne to the ground, and so bruised with the fall that he lost his bead, as his friend before him, with his Horse and Armour; but his bodie and his rich apparell was on fent backe to the Towne.

Enery day the Turkes made some sallies, but few skirmishes would they indure to any purpose, our workes and approaches being not yet advanced to that beight, and effect as necessitie required. To delude time, Smith with many incontradictable perswading reasons, obtained leave, that the Ladies might know he was not fo much enamored with their Servants heads, but if any Turke of their ranke would come to the place of Combat to redeeme them, hee should have his a so upon the like conditions, if they could winne it. The Challenge presently was accepted by Bony Molgro. The next day both the Champions en- Third combat tring the field, as before, each discharging their Pistols, having no Launces, but such martiall weapons with Battle as the Defendant had appointed, no burt was done. Their Rattle-axes were the next, whole piercing bils Axes. made sometimes the one, sometimes the other, to have scarce sence to keepe their Saddles: especially the

60 Christian received such a wound, that he lost his Battle-axe, and failed not much to have fallen after c. Smith enis whereat the Supposing conquering Turke had a great show from the Rampiers. The Turke prosecu- dangered. ted his advantage to the ottermost of his power : yet the other, what by the readinesse of his Horse, and Driwes his bis indocument and dextertie in such a businesse beyond all mens expectation, by Gods assistance, not onely businesses, anoyded the Turkes violent blowes, but having drawne bis Faulchion, pierced the Turke so under the Melyro.

Smith made

Cullets through backe and body, that although be alighted from his Horse, bee flood not long ere beeloft hu bead as the rest bad done. This good successe gave such incouragement to the Armie, that with a guard of sixe thousand three

frare Horses, before each, a Turkes head upon Launces, bee was conduited to the Generals Panillons with his presents. Moyles received both him and them with as much respect as the occasion deserved. mitto the projectis. MONICES received with our most lotten with an inner cripic in a we considered project in the control three in the state of the control three control three control three inner control three most benefit and the control three co dible trouble and danger was affaulted, and at last taken perforce, where the Earle remembring his Fathers death, canfed all be could find beare Armes to be put to the Sword, and their heads to bee fet vom

thers death, canjed an we come june vente street or they had ferned the Christians when they tooks it. In mates, roma neons toe mais must journe journe mais must journe jo fund prisoners (most women and children) be returned to Esenberge, not farre from the Princes Pallace, where bee incamped. The Prince comming to view the Armie, presented with the Prisoners. and fixe and thirtie Ensignes (after his accustomed manner, bassing given thankes to God) be was acquainted what fernice Smith had done at Olimpach, Stolewisenberge, and Regall; for which, with oreat bonor and folemnitie, he gaue him three Turkes heads in a Shield for Armes, with an oath ener to weare

filamia bonobonor and folements, be gaue time torte 1 titles beats in a source for a tono, more more to the terms in bis filtere in gold, and three bundred Duckett speerly for a period.

Smith. During all this time, Balta and the Prince being capitulating of a peace, the Emperonr bedruifed new forces for Balta to immade Transiliania; which caufed the Prince to condescend to the Articles.

propounded bim : which when Moyles understood, then in field with the whole Armie (that bated the 20 Bloudiebattell Germans as il as Turkes) be game battell to Balta. Betwixt them in fixe or fenen houres, more then of Christians. fixe or fenenthousand on both sides were staine. Moyles thus overthrowne fled to the Turkes, and bie Gattered Troopes, Come one way, Some another. The Prince excused himselfe of this unexpelled accident, made composition for his dispersed Troopes, jeelded himselfe to Balla; and all his Countres and Subsects to the Emperours obedience.

Balta thu possessed of Transiluania, drew all the Christians of those old Regiments of Sigismundus, Data the popular of Limituans, orew as no Cotterns of topic on Argentess of Shimmonds, of whose greatenife and true affection, be made mile fusiones, under the conduct of Rodoll Woyand of Walachia, forced out by Iercmy, put in by the Turke. In this Armie of their is thousand, Contact Walachia, forced out by Iercmy, put in by the Turke. In this Armie of their thousand, Contact Sainties for the force bed before) and many forced to make the contact backing the fame places the bad before) bed among forced to make the contact of the contact backing the fame places the bad before bed and proposed to many forced to the contact of the c they could draw Prince leterny to battaile; where (as it is recorded) two thousand on both sides, lay

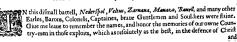
the Vapued of WalachyBloudic battell

Adad in the fields; but Icremy fled, and Rodol bad the vittorie, and thereby againe his Sonerasynte. Meldrich not long after with thirteene thou fand, was fent against the stragling escaped Troper of Ieremy, which unning with some Tartars sorraged the frontiers towards Moldauia; but when they heard twixt the two Vayseds. Thirtie thouis was the Crimme Tartar and his two fornes, with thirtie thou fand, and that Icremy which had escaped, lay with fifteene thou land in Ambus lado for him, about Langanow, bee retired towards Rotenton, a fand Tariars. frong Garison for Rodoll : But they were so invisoned with these bellish numbers, that they could make

no great bille for the million with them Secutes and Forragers: Tet by getting through a wood in a theck.
Fog, meeting two thousand leaden with pillage, and two or three bundred Horse and Cattell, the most 40 them were flaine or taken prisoners, who told Meldrich where Ieremy lay, expelting the Crimme Tertar. Meldrich intending to make by him his passage by force, was admised of a pretie stratagem by Captaine Smith, which presently so accommodated two or three hundred Trunkes, with wild-five vo-A memorable on the beads of Launces, cherging the enemie in the night, gase free to the Tranker, which blatted forth Juch James and parties, amazing not onely the Horfe but also the Foot, that by the meanes of this flaming incounter, their owne Horses turned tailes with such furie, as by their violence enerthrew Icremy and his Armie, without any loffe at all to Meldrich. But of this victorie they not long triumphed; for, being within three leagues of Rotenton, in the Valley of Vereft Horne; the Tartar with fortie thou and had to befet him, that they were forced to fight with this matchlesse number, where neere jorcie inoujana naa jo vejet tum, itua veej vee e jorcie hundred escaped, but the rest were all staine 50 thirtie thousand were staine. The Earle, with some sisteene hundred escaped, but the rest were all staine 50 "taken primers: as the Historicat large will plainly shew, the times, place, chiefe Commanders, with the manner and order of their battels, and fights, to which I referre you.

ð. II.

Diners valiant English-men in this battell. Captaine Smith taken, fold, sentinto Turkie, and ouer the Black Sea to Tartaria. His admirable escape and other trauels in divers parts of Christendome.



and his Gospell ended their daies, Batchelor, Hardwicke, Thomas Milemay, Robert Mullynax, Englishmen Thomas Bistop, Roger Compton, George Dausson, Nicholas Williams, and one lobn the Scot. These staine. all did what men could doe, and when they could doe no more, left there their martyred bodies. in tellimonie of their Martiall minds, onely Enfigne Carlton, and Sergeant Robinson escaped. Ensigne Carlton in tellimonie of ten diarctain minus, onely Emilgine Journal, and original Resonate decaped. Enging effection But Smith amongst the flughtered dead bodies, with toyle and wounds lay groung, till being and Sergenton Groud by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and perceiving by his Armour and habit, that his found by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and the pillagers that he was able to line, and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line, and the pillagers that he was able to line, and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line, and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was able to line and the pillagers that he was abl they yied him till his wounds were cured, and at Axopolis they were all brought into the Market place and stripped, that the Merchants might see their limbs and wounds, (who had Ser-

10 mans vpon purpole to try their strengths) and there fold like beasts. Smith fell to the share of Captain units youn purpose to try ener in reasons and there is no state containing the first the time marker of spains bold, the first him forth-with to Antimospelis, and to for Configuration to his first Missain bold, this for a slaue. By twentie and twentie chained by the necke, they marched in Fyle to this great Citie, where they were delinered to their fenerall Masters, and he to his young Charatea

This Noble Gentlewoman tooke fometimes occasion to shew him to some friends, or rather to fpeake with him, and because she could speake Indian, would fame her selfe sicke when shee should goe to the Barias, or weepe ouer the graves, to know how Bogall tooke him Prisoner, and if he were, as Bogall writ to her, a Bobenian Lord conquered by his hand, with many more which he had with him, whom hee would prefent her ere long, whose ransomes should adorne 20 her with the glory of his Conquests. But when shee heard him protest he knew no such matter, nor had euer seene Bogall till hee bought him at Axopolis, and that hee was an Enolift-man, onely by his adventures made a Captaine in those Countries : to try the truth. shee found meanes to find out many which could speak English, French, Datch, and Italian; to whom he relating the most part of those former passages, (which they honestly reported to her) shee tooke as it seemed, much compassion on him, But having no vie for him, least her mother should fell him, the fent him to her Brother the Tymer Balbam of Nalbris, in the Country of Cambra in Tartaria.

But let vs remember his passing notes in the speculative course from Constantinople, by Sander, How he was Pelses, Pannafamufa, Laffrila, to Varna, an ancient Citie voon the blacke Sea, where having little fenting Tat-30 more libertie then his eies judgement, he might fee the Townes with their fhort Towers, in a teria. most excellent plaine, pleasant, and fertile Countrey, full of Villages, and dispersed fairs buildings, as well in Sagonia as Romania. But from Varna, nothing but the blacke Sea, till he came Varna, to the two Capes of Taur and Pergillo, which are two muddy Promontories, at the entrance of the Straight Niger, which hath a very deepe Channell, and as he consectured, ten leagues long, and three broad. At the entrance of the Difabachi Sea, are a great many of high blacke Rocks A defeript on each fide the Channell to ones thinking, which they faid were onely Trees, Weedes, and of the Difese Muds, throwne from the in-land Countries by the invandations, and by the violence of the Currant cast there by the Eddy of which as they sayled, they saw many without fight of Land, feeming like high Rockes on low llands, which are onely great flats of Ofie Quagtimes, where

40 infinite heapes of Trees doe flicke; and by their waight, time, and multitudes, though the boughes for, the bodies they fay, have made many of those Ofic Elats firme Land in many places: Thus sayling this Diffabachi Sea, till hee came betwixt Sufact and Caratte, onely two visible Townes appeared at the entrance of the River Brusgo. In fixe or feuen daies fayle, hee faw foure or five, feeming firong Castles of stone, with flat tops and Battlements about them: but arriving at Cambria, he was according to their custome, well vied. The Caffle was of a large cambrial circomference, ten or twelve foote thicke in the foundation. Some fixe foote from it a Palizado. and then a ditch round about, fortie foot broad, full of water: on the one fide of it a Towne all of low flat houses, but no great matter as it seemed; yet it keeps all that Country in admirable awe and subjection. Three daies he rested there, then it was two daies journey to Nalbrui, the

ID Timore habitation, a place not of much leffe strength then Cambria, where sometimes resideth this Tymor Nalbrits, Brother to the Ladie Tragabig zamdo. To her vnkind Brother this kind Ladie writ so much for his good vsage, that hee half esuspected as much as she intended. For she told him, he should there but soiourne to learne the language: and what it was to be a Torke, till time made her Master of her selfe. But the Tymor her Brother diuerted, and percerted all this to the worft of crueltie : for within an houre after his arrivall, bee caused his Drugman to ftrip Shanise of him naked, and shaue his head and beard as bare as his hand, a great Ring of Iron with a long Slaues, and stake bowing like a Sickle about his neck, and a coate made of Vigrayes haire, much like Haire-hard viage. cloath, guarded about with a piece of an undressed skinne. There were many other Christian

Slaues, but more then two hundred Forfados, and he being the laft, was Slaue of Slaues to them all. Among those slauish fortunes, there was no great choise, for the best was so bad, a Dog could hardly have lived to indure: and yet for all their paines and labour, no more regarded then a Beaft. The Tymor and his friends fed vpou P. llow, which is boyled Rice and Garnancis, with little birs of Mutton or Buckones, which is to rieces of Horfe, Vlgry, or any Beaft. Sambofes and Muselbits are great dainties, and yet but round mes full of all forts of flesh chopped, with

varietie of Hearbs. Their best drinke is Coffa, made of a Graine, called Coassa, boyled with water and Sherberke, which is onely Hony and Water. Mares Milke, or the Milke of any Brod they hold restorative; but all the Comminaltie drinke pure Water. Their Bread is made of this Coand, which is a kind of blacke Wheate, and Cuscus a small white Seed like Millet in Bukars. Our common victuall, was the Intrals and Offall of Horses and Vigryes; of this cut in small pieces, they will fill a great Cauldron; which being boyled, and with Cuscus put in great bowlee in the manner of Chafing-dishes, they sit about it on the ground; after they have raked it through as oft as they please with their fowle fifts, the remainder was for the Christian Slaues. Some of this broth they would temper with Cufcon, like Butter for Fritters, and putting the fire off from the hearth, powre there a bowle full, then couer it with coales till it be baked, which fined to with the remainder of the broath, and small pieces of flesh, was an extraordinary daintie. The better fort are attired like Turkes, but the plaine Tartar weareth halfe a blacke Sheepes ekinne

No housesbut mourable

ouer his backe, two of the legges tyed about his necke, the other two about his middle; with another ouer his belly, and his legges tyed in like manner behind him: then two skinnes more made like a paire of Bases, serue him for Breeches, with a little Cap close to his skull of course blacke Felt, and they vie exceeding much of this Felt for Carpets, for Bedding, for Coates, and Idols. Their houses are much worse then your Irish: but the In-land Countrey hath none but Cartsand Tents, which they ever remove from Countrey to Countrey, as they fee occasion, driuing with them infinite troups of blacke Sheepe, Cattle, and Vigryes, eating vp all beforethem as they goe.

The Terrers of .

For the Tariars of Nags, they have neither Towne nor House, Corne nor Drinke, but Fieth and Milke; and line all in Hordias, three or foure thousand of them in a company, all lining in great Carts, fifteene or fixteene foot broad, which is couered ouer with small Rods, wratled together in the forme of a Birds-neil turned upwards, and with the Aihes of bones, tempered with Oyle, and a Clay they have, & Camels haire, they loome them fo wel, that no weather wil pierce them, and yet they are very light. Each Hordia hath a Murfe, which they obey as King. Their gods are infinite, but the Crimme Tartar and the Tauricks, obey Murtifalla Mahomets chiefe Prophet, One thousand or two shousand of those glittering white Cares drawne with Camels. Deere, Bulls, and Vlgryes, they bring round in a Ring, where they intellisheir Campe, and the Murfe with his chiefe Alliances are placed in the midfl: They doe much hurt when they get any \$9 Strees, which are great Boats, wied your the Edie 3 River we call Voles, to them that dwell as the Country of Poresion; and would doe much more; were seast for the Majoness Garilons that there inhabite.

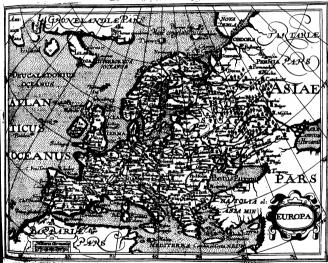
All the hope he had ever to be delivered from this thraldome, was onely the lone of Trage-An un copp on man ener to negetimers from this industries, who therefore of Trage-bers and the weight of the second of the hard views from the host of the chart of manifest with force Chariftang, which shad because there long Slauris, they could not find how to make any effect, by any reason or possibilities, Burg Goel beyond Mann expectation or imagination, below the his Sugnature when they leads thanke of helps, as it should to him. In this maisrable clians, he became A.T prafter and Grange in a great field, more than a league from the Tymous house. The Balls as he oft yied to vifite his grounds, wifted him, and tooke occasion fo to beate, fourneand 40 remit him that Swith forgetting all reason, beare out his braines with his bat : and leeing his effate could not be wrong than it was he cloathed himselfe in his cloathes, hid his body under the Straw, filled his Knapfacke with Corne, thut the doores, mounted his Horfe, and sanne into the Defart at all adventure: Two or three dates thus fearefully wandring he knew not whither, and well it was bee mee not any to aske the way. Thus heing cuentas one taking leaue of this miferable would, God did direct him to their great way or Cultragan as they call it, which dork croffe thele large Territories, and is generally knowne among them by thele markes.

In care year, a sancties, and a guestiany a nature a sound in it formany bolts with broad and, as there are ware a guestian to the figure painted our it, that demonstrates to what a part has way leaderly, as the which pointers to wards the firment country, is marked to white part has way leaderly, as that which pointers to wards the firment country, is marked to with a last blaces at towards the China, the picture of the Sunne; if towards the Georgians and Paffa, a blacke man full of white ipots ; it towards Mufcour, the figure of a Croffe; if towards the habitation of any other Prince, the figure whereby his Standard is knowne. To his dying spirits thus God added some comfort in this melancholy journey, wherein if shee had met any of that viki generation, they had made him their Slaue, or fent him backe againe to his Mafter. Sixteene daies he trauelled in this feare and torment after that eroffe, till hee arrived at Axopolis, vpon the River Don, a Garrison of the Muscouits. The Governor atter due examination of those hard events, tooke off his Irons, and so kindly vsed him, that he thought himselfe

The most he could learne of these wild Countries was this, that the Countries of Cambris is 60 The most be could learne of these wild Countries was this, that the could rom many pla-on of Combride, two dayes lourney from the head of the great River Brusps, which springest from many pla-two dayes lourney from the head of the great River Brusps, which springest from many places of the Mountaynes of Inagachi, that toyne themselves together in the Poole Kerkas, which they account for the head, and falleth into the Sea Diffabach : which receiveth allo the River Don, or Touch. Don, and all the Rivers that fall from the great Countrey of the Circaff, the Caitaches, the TauCHAP. II. Smiths flight, and state of the places twixt Tartaria and Transiluania, 1260

ricaces, Pricopes, Cumania, Coffunka, and the Crymme, through which Sea hee fayled, and vo the River Bruapo to Nalbrits, and thence through the Deferts of Circassi to Exopolis, as is related. where he stayed with the Gouernour, till the Conuoy went to Coragnam, then with his Certifeate how he found him, and had examined him, with his friendly Letters he fent him by Znmalacke to Corasman, whose Gouernor in like manner so kindly vied him, that by this means, he went with the lafe conduct to Letch & Donka, in Cologosk, and thence to Birniske, & Newgrade, in Seberja, by Kesachica vpon the River Niger, in the Confines of Littuania. From whence with as much kindnesse he was conveyed in like manner by Coroskie, Duberoske, Duzibell. Dro. A faire shund hebus, and Offroge in Volonia. Shaflaw and Laxes in Podolia, Halico and Collonia in Polonia, and in fine after a To to Hermonstat in Transiluania. In all his life he feldome met with more respect, mirth, content and entertay mment, and not any Gouernour where he came, but gaue him somewhat as a Present besides his charges, seeing themselues subiect to the like calamitie. And because our Authour hath fo thorowly trauelled Europe, I have here presented Honding his Map of Europe.

HONDIVS bis Map of Europe.



Through those poore continually forraged Countries there is no passage, but with the Cara- His Observation mans or Convoyes; for they are Countries rather to bee pittied then enuyed, and it is a wonder tions inhis any should make Warres for them. The Villages are here and there a few Houses of streight Lourney to Firre-trees, laid heads and points about one another made fast by notches at the ends, more then and through a mans height, and with broad split boards pinned together with woodden pinnes thatched for the midfl of 60 couerture: in ten Villages you shall scarce find ten Iron Nayles, except it bee in some extraordi- Europe. narie mans House. For their Townes, Exopolis, Lech, and Donka have Rampiers made of that woodden walled-fashion, double, and betwixt them Earth and Stones, but so latched with croffe Timber, they are very strong against any thing but fire, and about thema deepe Ditch, and a Pallizado of young Firre-trees, but most of the rest have only a great Ditch cast about Уууууу

them, and the Ditches Earth is all their Rampier, and the toppe on it round, well enuironed with Palizadoes; Some haue fome few small Peeces of small Ordnance and Slings, Curriours and Muskets; but their generallest Weapons are the Russe Bow and Arrowes. In their waves you shall find pruements over Bogges, only of young Firre-trees laid crosse over one another for two or three houres lourney, or as the passage requires, and yet in two dayes trauell. you shall scarce see fixe Habitations. Notwithsanding, to see how their Lords, Gouernours, and Captaines are ciuslized, well attyred and accoustred with sewels, Sables, Horses, and after their manner with curious Furniture, it is wonderfull; but they are all Lords or Slaves, which makes them fo fabiect to every Inuation.

1370

In Transilnania he found so many good friends, that but to see and reioyce himselfe after all to those Encounters to see his Native Country, he would ever hardly have left them , though the Miracle of Vertue, their Prince was absent. Being thus glutted with content, and neere drowned with ioy; he palled high Hungaria, By-filecke, Tocka, Caffonia, and Vnaderawa, by Vlmitch
Spilmundi Ic. in Morania, to Prague in Bobernia. at last he found the most generous Prince Sigifmundae with his Colonell at Lipswicke in Misenland, who gave him his passe, intimating the service hee had done. and the honours he had received with fifteene hundred Duckets of Gold to repaire his loffes. With this he spent sometime, to visit the faire Cities and Countries of Dresden in Saxonie, Mandabourge, and Brunswicke Castle in Hesten, Wittenberge, Vime and Minikm in Bauaria, Ausburge andher Vniuerfitie, Hanna, Franck ford, Mets, the Palatinate, Wormes, Spire, and Strawburo Patting the Cardinalthip to Nancey in Loraine, and the Kingdome of France, by Paris to Orle- 20 ance, he went downe the River of Leper, to Angers, and imbarked himselfe at Nanis in Britania for Bilbon in Birkame, to see Burges, Valiodolid, Squeriall, Madrill, Toledo, Cordua, Cuede Ryall. Simil, (herges, Cules, and Saint Lucars in Spaine.

Then vinderstanding that the Warres of Mully Shash and Mully Sedan, the two Brothers in Barbarie of Fezand Moroco (to which hee was animated by fome friends) were concluded in peace, he in barked himfelfe for England with one thousand Duckets in his Purse, which after with a great deale more hee employed, in fearching more dangers in the Weft Indies, and the withnowne parts of vnciuilized America, where how he discourred and inhabited Virginia, how hee was taken Prisoner by Pombatan, their Emperor 1607. and deliuered, how hee tooke the King of Pashabegb, Prisoner in single Combate, and the King of Pamavake Prisoner in the 30 middeft of his Armie, and brought thirtie of their pettie Kings, and all their people in subiection to the English: How fince hee hath searched, and caused a new England, and was taken Prifoner by French Pirats, and efcaped : You shall after heare in fitter place.

CHAP. XII.

The death of SVETAN OSMAN, and the setting up of M v-S T A B A his Vncle, according to the Relation presented to His Maistie.

He Grand Signiar Sultan Ofman discontented since his disgrace in Poland, as soone as he came to Constantinople, pretended a lourney vpon the Emir de Saida, who was reported to be in Rebellion, having taken Armes to other ends. But being diverted from this purpose by the great instance of the Uzziers, and that it would not so well serve his secret Designes, because hee must then keepe an Armie on soote; hee gaue out that hee would vinte Meche, the Tombe of

To make this Voyage the more secure, in appearance, hee seemed content to accept of any Treatie with the Polacks, even to conditions both of diladuantage and dishonour; for his estates in Hampario, he re-enforced the Frontiers with divers troupes, and though hee were much troubled at the league betweene the Emperour of Germanie and Bethlem Gabor, yet he diffembled it fo, as that he would not displease the Transiluanian, but rather offered new succours, and forbearance of his Tribute. From the Incursions of the Coffacks, hee hoped to affure himselse, by the treatie of the Poles, and in occasion of breach, he had the Tartars readie to requite them (it Being both their trades to line vpon spoile and robberie) and for more securitie hecappointed twentie Gallies to keepe the Blacke Sea. The common people and *Viziers* that loved reit, and knew not the Defigne, were much troubled and discontent at this lourney, who made many Re- 60 monstrances to him of the inconvenience and danger to leave the feat of his Empire to the trust of a Deputie, in a time when Betblem Gabor was newly reconciled to the Germane Emperour, and therefore not to be trufted, and the Polacks newly reconciled to him, and therefore to bee mistrusted. Diners other reasons were made to him, many Petitions deliuered from the Churchmen, Lawyers, and from all Estates. But meiancholike Reuenge had wholly possession, so that by no meanes he could be perswaded to desift. The Souldierie passed so farre, as to threatten publikely, and to protest, they would not follow, but rather set vp another King in his abfence that should stay among them. In conclusion, carried by his owne fate to destruction; the feuenth of May, having first commanded away all his Gallies to the Lenant, and thereby dispofed away many of his Souldiers, he began to passe over his Tents and Pavilions to Asia side with languages must great quantities of Treasure: The lanieuries and Spabees, who had also fecret Intelligence voon tinic. the King, his owne words and actions betraying some further Designe then a Pilgrimage (for he made preparations to carrie away all his Iewels and Treasure, even defacing his Palace, and

CHAP. 12. Spanies and Ianizaries rebellion. Vizier flaine in May. 1622.

to taking from Churches, and his Wardrobes, whatfoeuer could be converted to Bullion) fuddenly met at the Hopodrome in the Citie vpon a word given; and from thence ranne to the Seraplio in tumult, but without Armes, and there according to their barbarous mutinies cryed out for the King (hauing first taken order to stop the passage of any thing vpon the water) who appearing to them, asked what this inolencie meant, and what they pretended. They then by the mouth of a multitude (for they had no head but that of the Montter) demanded first that hee should not proceed in his purpose to goe to Mecha, nor into Asia, but that he must abide in the Citie. Seconder, they would have delivered to their furie the Great Vizier De-lauir Baffa, the Hoia, or Confesior of the King, the Calbariaga Gouernour of the women, the Tefterdar, or Treasurer, the Cadde Leskar, or Chiefe Iustice, and some others, as Enemies to the State, and consenting to

20 this Voyage, which they pretended would be the ruine of the Empire. The first a fitter a little diffrate, the King granted vnto them; promiting to give over his lourney, but they not content. exacted it in writing. To the fecond, he replyed, that it was dishonour to him to have his Seruants fo vied without order of Iuftice : but perswaded them to have patience to flay vntill Saturday, the next Dinan, or publike Councell, where they should all appeare, and if they were found culpable, they should receive punishment; not meaning to performe any of this. but to get time and allay their pefent furie. These fellowes not content with this moderate anfwere, vndertooke to know that they were guiltie, and therefore that they needed no other witnesse, tryals, nor ludge, but themselves, and with extreme clamour, called to have them delivered. But the King retuling to give them any other fatisfaction , and they voprepared for To force, returned into the Citie, which now was all its feare, every house and shop thut vp, expeet ng a generall facke. But they followed the way of their owne hatred, and first went vnto the houte of the Hoia, which they brake and pillaged: but not finding him, they proceeded to the Great Viziers, who made some detence, and (they being vnarmed) beate him off; and so they

separated being now Euening, but yet kept a Guard in some parts of the Towne. This night the King made an attempt to fend ouer to Afia fide, but was prevented; and to fortifie and defend his Seraglio, which is walled ftrongly about, and hath al way in it of household Servants about three thousand, but it seemes no man would arme in his cause. For the next morning, the Mutiners affembled againe, and taking their Armes, went first to the Mufti, or Arch-priest among them, and forced him and divers others to accompany them to the Court. 40 where they anew demanded these men, but with more instance and furie. In the meane time

the Hoia, Caddee Leskar, and Tefterdar fled, and were yet neuer heard off. The Vizzer retyred to the King, and perswaded him earnestly to goe ouer in person in his owne Boates (which from his Garden he might eafily doe) to Afia, and there to take Horie, and he would fecure him from all perills but the King would not mooue, bidding him flay confident and affured that hee would punish these Rebels.

The wife old man feeing this constancie or obstinacie, desired leave to shift for himsefe, which he either tooke or obtayned, and fo got away to the Hermitage of a Saint renowmed amongst them, who (like himfelfe) betrayed him to a Captaine of the Innizaries; yet did him the fauour Saint Knauer as not to deliuer him to the multitude, but carried him backe to the Kings House. At this time

50 it was disputed in the Seraglio, about the deliverie of these Officers, the Emperour refusing, the Rebels clamouring and threatning; infomuch, as he began to feare they would breake in, and in their rage doe worle then was yet pretended. Whereupen, whether by the Kings order, or by his owne confent (willing to bee the Peace-offering) the Vizier went out to them, and with a good affurednesse demanded what they tought of him, and wherein he had offended: But they answered him with their Swords, and suddenly cut him in pieces.

The Emperour feeing their turie so out-ragious, had now more cause to doubt, and retyred himselfe then too late, when hee had lost his braue Counsellor; would have fled into Asia, and could not, but conneyed himselfe into a private place, prepared by his Bustengi Bassa, or chiefe Grand Signia Gardiner. The Rebels continue without in their madnesse, asking for the King, and for more slight-60 Sacrinces. But the Servants protefting they knew not where he was, they faid, they must have

a King, and if he would not appeare, they would make another; and having awhile attended, they resolved to enter the Palace (but first tooke a generall Oath not to facke the Imperiall Throne, which they call d their house and their honour) and thereseeking for the King, not able to find him, they extorted by confession the Castariaga, and sue him, and then they demanded

for Muflafa, Vncle to Ofman, by him formerly deposed, a man esteemed rather holy (that is franticke) then wife, and indeed fitter for a Cell, then a Scepter. The King the first day of this tranticke) their wife, and insect in the low of the many of this timult had put Majdafa into a Vault with two Negro women, without bread or draike, in which effact these new Electors found him almost naked, and halfe pined. At first fight, hee thought they had beene the Messengers of death : but that feare passed ouer, he begged of them a Cup of water. Whom they tooke, and inftantly proclaimed their Emperour, which hee was a Cup of water. Whom trey roose, and intransy procustive uses Emperous, which need was loth to accept, wit pudebas and incoming; How writable are the Effects of the greated Princel Dearm dies videt writens incomes, bear vide dues frejoint reguentem. He that was now in the lawes of electh, tasked, thatted, and dying for thirft, is become the Emperour, and may drinke Gold, or

They as yet not knowing what was become of Ofman, and loth to trust Mailable in the They as yet not knowing were weaponed to of theme, and not the contracted in the Palace, carried him in triumph to the old Seragia, and there left him, departing to the facks of the Visiars houte, and lo in the Euening to their Rendenous, where they kept both goodguard, and good order in the Citie, from fires and other Infolencies. Sultan Ofman amazed with these newes, fo foone as they had left the Court, came out and called to Councell in the night, Hazeis newes, to toome as they man tere the court, same out and cause of counters in the right, Hazers Balle, late Frieer in the Pelife Warre, and the Aga of the lanicaries, both initialitial to him, and demanded their addice; first, basing fent to the old Seragle, to practife the women there, to ftrangle Mastafa; but some taking his part, a new vprore beganne in the house betweene that Sexe : and the Souldiers that kept watch, taking the Alarum, entred in, and refcued him. and from thence removed him to the Chambers of the lanizaries, where they guarded him for that 20 night, in an ill Lodging. All this while Ofmen confults what course to take. These two his friends, and some others, tell him, that the case was desperate, and could not bee cured but by a desperate remedie. And they agreed that the Aga should goe and perswade with the Mosti, and that the King in the morning should suddenly present himselfe to the Souldiers at their owne doore, and make experience, what his Presence, his submittion, and his beneuolence promited could worke, to moue them to Loyaltie, or compatition; which counfell early in the morning they put in practice. The King accompanied with the Mofti, (who neuer confented to his depoing, though he fauoured the Souldiers against the Vizier) with Huzem Baffs, and about twelve Horic-men, went directly to the laure avier Colledge where Muftafa was kept, and there in tione-men, were unterly to this season as Coursely what except was kept, and titler in tears made them an Orstion, offering great recompence treeting of his error; and finally, in- 10 moded them by the metric of his Father and all his Ancestors to have some pitte vpon their true moded. Master. The multitude (tam proma in mifer scor diams, quam immodica semitia fuerat) now knew not what to doe; a filent murmure rame among them, and they were halfe converted : But the Aga of the lanizaries, thinking to merit of the King, and beginning to plead vnfeafonably for him, with fome harsh words of vpbraidure, V: uaura Maris omni flatu venti turbida, anew moued their furie, so that they cryed out Treason, and fell vpon him and Huzein Beffa, and cut them into pieces, euery man taking a part of their fielh to fatisfie their reuenge. The Moftis would speake, but is withdrawne by some, for respect to his place, and with difficultieisconueved away. Now the poore Ofman fees his friends slaine, and knowes not which way to conuert himselfe, but binding up his eyes with a Napkin , expects death as the last of their furie; 40 But they carrie him first before Mail of a and accuse him as the diffurber of the Peace of the Empire, and demand fentence against him, user suffy flows quiffyer fagtisms die obseitants. The foraken Prince pleades for life, and the new King knowes not how to condemne, but nots and agrees to all that is propounded. At last, they consult with themselues, and put him vpon an Horse (an infolent Spates changing Turbants with him) and fent him away Prifore to the se-uen Towers vader good guard, and then returned to their new Master, and placed him in the Se-

Muftafa en-

his decayed bodie.

The Souldiers thinke all is done, and (onely facking the houses of Huzzin Bassa, and some others their conceiued Enemies) returne in quiet to their feuerall Lodgings, and haue no further 10 malice. But the new Vizier Daon: Baffe, made by Mustafa, knew well, it Ofman lived, that this storme might passe ouer, and hee would as easily and by the same meanes returne to his Eflare, so he fell from it. Tulgue ve mes oft, vising, now messe computem. Therefore hee confident with fome few interselled in Manhafuse preferment, and thereby obnoxious to Ofman, to fearth with fome few interselled in Manhafuse preferment, and thereby obnoxious to Ofman, how many of the Royall bloud were left aline, and refolued if there remayned two, to make an end of Ofmen. Two of his Brothers were found, the one about twelue, the other about feuen yeares of age : and thereupon the Vicier went himlelfe to the Prifon with a packe of Hangmen, and gaue order to strangle the vnfortunate Prince : who now having had no rest in two nights, and thinking himselse secure for a season, was newly falne assepe : but awaked by the comming of these Messengers, asked what newes, saying, hee did not like their sudden 60 intrusion. They at first stood amazed, and the King made flew to defend himselfe; but a ftrong Knaue ftrooke him on the head with a Battle-axe, and the rest leaping vpon him, strangled him with much adoe. Thus one of the greatest Monarkes in the World is first affronted by mutined troupes, his owne flattes, almost vnarmed , and few in number , no man taking vp a

raglie and Imperial Throne, where he hath need to have good Broths and nourithment to reffore

CHAP. 12. Turks loffe in Poland, Infeafonable remedy. Degenerate lanizaries, 1272

Sword to defend him: and they who began this madnesse, not meaning to hurt him, by the increase of their owne furie, which hath no bounds, depose him against their owne purpose. and at last expose his life again ft their will, to the counfels of other men, whom they equally hate. And now they mourne for their dead King, as freshly as they raged vnreatonably, knowing they have flayned their honour, being the first of their Emperours they ever betrayed, and that they haue fet up another that irrall likelihood they must change for dilabilitie : Nonnunquans talit documenta fors maiora, quam fragili loco ftarent superbi.

This is the last act of the fite of Sultan Ofman : but his intents and great defignes, which drew woon him this fatall blow, I suppose will not be vieworthy the communication, the Practices. To Reasons, Secrets, and Counfels of all Actions being the Soule of Historie, and res gesta but the hare carkalle; and Lam perswaded, as many Ages have not produced so thrange an Example of the incertaintie of humane greatnesse; so in the disposition thereof, and in the wayes leading thereunto, there is seene endently the wonderfull providence of God, in confounding of the counsels of the worldly wife, who had laid a foundation of new greatnesse, whereby he aspired the univerfall Monarchie, ambitious of the honour of Traian, in whole time the decayed Empire was faid, Primum mouere lacertos, & fenettutem Impery, quasi reddita inuentute reniniscere. And laftly, the world may fee voon how weake foundations this Monarchie was at first builded, but it is now shaken and corrupted; how their Kings are subject to the rage of a few Slaues, how Anarchie hath prepared it an easie prey to any able hand, that would attempt it. From the Inua-

20 fion of Poland, all these changes took their beginning. Sultan Ofman advanced to the Throne in his youth, full of heate and bloud, being of a great and haughtie spirit, very couragious, strong of bodie, and a mortall hater of Christians, enuions of the glory of his Ancestors, and ambitious to rayle his name about any of theirs, had projected in himfelfe the Conquest of the Remaynes of Ofmantambia the bordering Europe. But to fo great defignes he had one vice that relitted all hope of profperi- tion. tie, which was extreme Auarice, and he fell into the latter times and decrepit age, Vbs vires luxu His anarice & corrumpebantur, contraveterem disciplinam & mstituta maiorum, apud quos virtute quam pecunia res voscionable military melius fletit. His fift enterprize was that of Poland, moduled by the Incursions of the attempts 2-Coffacts, which yet he vadertooke of his owne head, without the counfell of any his Viziers gainst Poland.

(who in a Monarchie growne to the height by eafe and wealth, and perhaps, longa dominatione 30 inertes, are ever corrupt and lazie) and against the liking of all the Souldiers, who now contrarie to their Institution being marryed, and Fathers of a Family entred into Trades, receiving nothing in Warre more then in Peace, prater pericula & labores, are not eafily drawne from their owne Chimneies. This action he thought fo easie, as he had disposed of his Conquest, and deuided the line Lions skinne. But being met youn the Borders with a poore Armie in comparison. he was first arrested at Chotyn a little Fortresse, which he was faine to leave behind him vintaken. And then feeking to advance into the plaine Countrey, by forcing the Trenches of the Chancellor of Poland, opposed against him, he could never procure his larizaries to fight, though en- larizaries pergaging his person once or twice beyond the regard of his qualitie, and his owne Troupes readie uerse

to mutinie against him, or to forfake him, he was at last entorced to rayse shamefully his Campe. 40 and to accept of any Treatie to faue his outward honour. In this attempt he loft aboue one hundred thousand Hories for want of Fodder, and fourescore thousand men for want of fighting 1 for they would rather dye, running, or pillaging, or eating, then in the face of the Enemie. For this diferace he conceived to inward and rooted an indignation against the Ianizaries and fo inflaly, that he often lamented himselse, and complayed hee was no King, that was subject to his owne flaues, vpon whom he spent great Treatures, and yet they would neither fight in Warre; nor obey in Peace, without exacting new bounties and Priviledges. Delauir Baffa a man of Delauir Baffa great wit and courage, lately called from the Easterne parts, where hee had long governed with honour, who came in, though late, yet in a very braue and Warlike Equipage, aboue all other his Captaines, was fuddenly made Great Vizier, the former Huzein Balla being in the fame dil-

50 grace, common with the Souldier, though not in the fame fault. This man was never bred at Court, but had lived many yeares in Action, and so had neither Faction nor Dependance heere, but flood vpon himfelfe and his owne merit : And beeing now vnlooked for, and advanced to this high dignitie, he wrought upon the Kings discontent, and nourished it: and in conclusion, brake with him, that it was true, he was no Emperour, nor could be fafely aliue, while the Isnizaries had the power which they lately vierped. Informing him, that they were corrupted from their ancient Institution, and were lazie Cowards, given over to Ease and Lust, Es animo per libidines corrupto, nibil honestum inerat. But if his Mai-flie would pull up his spirits, and follow his aduice, hee would prouide him a new Souldicury about Damas-

em, and from the Coords, of men euer bred in the Frontier, Hardneffe, and Warre, of The Coords, great Courage and Experience, and that of them hee should erect a new Militia , that should wholy depend of him, entertayning onely fortie thousand in pay, which should alway be his Guard, and that in the distribution of every Province, he should constitute that the Beghler-begh in his Government should trayne some of the Inhabitants , who in all occasions of making a great Armie, should be in readinesse, and hereby hee should spare infinite Treasures spent

Yyyyyy 3

Vnaduifed.

ypon these Drones that eate up his Estate; And with men of new spirits and hopes, hee should be enabled to doe greater matters, then any of his Ancestors: but withall he defired the King to communicate this counsell to no man, nor to trust his life vpon anothers secrecie. Delanir Basta neuer reuealing himselfe to any but the King, who extremely pleased with this aduice, that flattered his owne humour, conferred, and remitted all to the Viziers direction, who was a true Souldier, and a very wife man, able by his credit in Afia, to performe all hee had undertaken: for he was exceedingly beloued in those parts, very rich, and had kept Damasess, whereof he was Gauernour, for himselse in the last Rebellion. Vpon this conclusion betweene them, it was first agreed, that the King should pretend to goe in person against the Emir de Zaida, who was moued to take Armes really to affift in the defigne : but they vied it , to colour the departure of so the Emperor; which when it was well weighed, it was found, that then the Army of the lastaries must be kept together, which could not agree with their ends. Hereupon the journey of Mecha was disulged, that the King might, under the shadow of an holy pilgrimage, goe out with a fimal trayne, and disperse those who were suspected to him. And for this preparation was made, but somwhat too grossy by melting of all the Plate, Saddles, furniture of house, Lamps of Churches, and what focuer could more easily be conneyed away in metal, with all the lewels and treafurie. This gaue the first suspicion, which was confirmed by divers vnaduised words let fall from the King of disdayne against the cowardize of the lanzaries, and that he would shortly find himfelfe foldiers that should whip them; & lastly, dismissing all his houshold, except some few cless. the discontented observed and betrayed him. Delawir Bassa kept his owne secret, and in the meane time prepared by his triends in Afra 10000. about Damafens, 10000. from the Coords, befoles those 20 in readinesse of the Emir de Zaida, and all vpon pretence of defending the borders of Persia, who having intelligence of some change in those parts; And gave order that all these should meet the King at Dama (cut, where he would prefently cut off his Guard, and flay there, whill he had regulated his new Armie, and discipline, and then to returne triumphant to Constantinople, and vtterly root out the order of lanizaries, Spaheis, and Timariots, and to exauctorate all their Captaines and Officers to fettle a new gouernment, and to change the name of the Citie. And thefe things fucceeding. he then resolved with his new Souldiers to attempt the recourrie of his honour in Christendome: in the meane time to hold a dissembled frienship there in all parts. Certainely, this was a braue and well-grounded deligne, and of great confequence for renewing of this decayed Empire, languishing under the infolencies of lazie slaues, it God had not destroyed it : It being very true, that the Turkijh Emperour flands at the deuotion of his owne troops for peace er warre, life or death, and is in effect nothing but the Steward or Treasurer of his lantaries. If this proiect had taken effect, what events it might have produced by a Civill Warre, is not easie to judge. For doubtlesse, the Souldiourie here would have set vp another King, and maintayned him as well as they could, and this European part had beene in danger to have beene torne away by the diuison. Besides, Delanir Bassa having the King and the Treasurie in his posfession, and his owne credit so great, and his inclination, velle imperare, once discourred, it may well be thought that he had some ends of his owne to share a part of this mightie estate : If on the other fide, the Vizier had proued true and faithfull, the reformation and new erection of the 40 Discipline of Warre, and the encrease of Treasure consequent to the dismission of the old Militia, would have beene fearefull to all Christendome : But, Ubi est fapiene? Ubi difquifiter fatuli buisu? Nonne infatuanit Dena sapientiam mundi buisu? Perdam sapientiam sapientum, & vanams reddam intelligentiam intelligentium. It is a great question whether is the wifer wish, that these Counsels had succeeded or not : for either diussion and subuertion, or a new prosperitie and enlargement of their Dominion had necessarily followed.

Some observations upon this occasion, will not be very impertinent to those that desire to know as well the disposition and vse, as the things themselves. First, in the purpose of the Souldier, not at all to violate or burt the King, much leffe to depofe and murther him; but onely to take away those about him, whom they thought affifunts in this protect; yet the faire once on foot, they proceeded by multiplife light, so, to the outermost of outrage, against many innocents in that businesses, though otherwise observations, and against the Throne and life of their owne Emperour, vbi furor ingruat innocentes ac noxios iuxta cadere. Secondly, in the degrees, that yet the King had not faine thus low, if first bee had not lost that awe and reservence which alway attendeth upon Maiestie, by unseemely offices, done by him in the streets and Tanernes, apprehending many Souldiers for pettie faults, like a Constable, making his person common, cheape, and despised among them which were wont onely to be seene and feared, as somewhat supra humanitatem. And this he did also in hatred and disdayne of those that had in the Warre forfaten him. And now in this last att, if his owne obstinacie had no: plunged him into destruction, but that he bad softned them by a seasonable yeelding to time, he had presuayled onely by time. Thirdly, in the order, That thefe Mutmers basing no bead, or direction, kept that reglement, that they tooke outh in their fu- 60 rie, in hot bloud, in the Kings gard, not to dishonour, spoyle, nor jacke the Imperial Throne, neither committed nor suffered any insolence nor violence in the Citie to the Neutrals, but rather proclaymed peace and inflice. Fourthly, in the confequents, that at the third dayes end, all was at quiet, and all men in their trade, as if no such thing had happed; Onely the languaries suffered no Dinan nor Councell,

CHAP. 12. Ofmans dreame. Mustafa's interpretation. Ottomans extinguished, 1275

omili they had received a Donatine, as Guerdon of their iniquitie, in which also the infinite walle of omin they man recemen a sometiment, which must of necessitie be exceedingly exhausted by three changes in four e yeares, and by the late Warres in Persia and Poland! For every lanizarie in the Crite, absent as prefint, whose roll is about fortie thousand, receive sime and twentie Chequins gold, besides Spaheis. ar pressure, and other orders at enery alteration, which amounts in all neere to two millions. And now lamoglans, and other orders at energ attention, which commons in an order to two missions. And now they followed all twomy, thus have rafted the finesh of profession antimetres, hand ignari fumma feelera incept cum periculo, perage cum præmio, they have taken fisch a head at cannot fafety be fuffered on, incept cum periculo, perage cum præmio, they have taken fisch a head at cannot fafety be fuffered on, incept cum practice. incipicum pericum, present cum presento, per como securio presento a como presento presento per del presento per como pe 10 night, that he thought to ride a Camell, and being mounted, be could not force him to goe by faire meanes

min, that he thought to rate a f. ameri, and versa moments, we want not yet earns to give of just manded as first place and that the bad affected in a regar to bads of the bed said said for, and left the bad as first bed bad with the bed? said first and left the bad the bad with the Kingf, had Who next day trendled at this fancy, fout to a learned Man, familiar with him, for the Kongi nana. Problems and remove an ion party, for the member of manifest with them to the third that the exemple hindful as que opinion in a menter of that configurance, but perfended O timan to fend to the Multis. He also crased perden, but within faid, there was none for the member of the multistance of the mu fit to interpreteit, as Muttafa the Kings Uncle, and now Emperour, who is esteemed a boly man that pe to mer preten, as mutans use Ange, o me, one a one amperor, one a ejecemes a corp sine, the hash Visions, and Angel like speculations, in spare terme, between a man dan and a Toole. The King repayers to Multala, who briefly tells him, The Cancil signifies his Empire: his riching, abusic in Ring repayres to multitue, muo orespose au toma, son toman plantines and tome arrange, assigness generiment: bit adjection, bit disposition is the unificial of the bodes, the result of the subsicial: the bead remaying on bit band, onely a bare Tule; and that bee flowed flority die within few moneths, the bead remaying on bit band, onely a bare Tule; and that bee flowed flority die within few moneths,

to come temporary but the empire name of Emperous flouid accompanie him to his Grave.

20 and loft his Knydemus, but the empire name of Emperous flouid accompanie him to his Grave.

A second of leffe configuence in the Vizier Delauit Baffa, from whom the Lord Ambaffador habetwitt the explaining appropriate the second of the sec tion many reason in the present estate of their ownse asserts, of existly the Treaty of Poland yet depen-tions many reason in the resson to the state of their ownse asserts, of existly the Treaty of Poland yet depen-ding. To which the Balla replied very graussy. Then the Ambassador orging the source of some tumult, collected from the licentious peeches rumoured in the Towne, and he was bold to deale plainely, fincerely, and friendly, That if any such thing should happen, the fault would bee imputed to the Bassa, as being ana premay, 1 na 19 na 1 fadon, who per waded him against that which was his owne counfell, he gaue him a finall answere, that

there was no remedie, he durst not hazard himselse to oppose the King sresolution: but assured him, hee would fo order the matter, as this journey should not proceed fo farre as was expected. The Ambassador concluded for himselfe, desiring then that he would leave him a particular recommendation to the Chimacham or Deputie as bis friend. To which hee fodabily replied , Trouble not your felfe, nor feare : I will never remove fo farre, but that I will leave one of my legs in this Citie to ferne you: which the poore will never remove to jarre, ou some a reason was a mile to the control of the whole and entire, you have the power man fulfilled for being munthered in few days of fire, one of bit legal whole and entire, you have being the this postome, the most public place of the Civic. Lastis, on things yet to come, and so probably to be sufficient the Souldhours in Alia, who have now less their bapes, will now six downe by this af-

40 from, but rather will attempt some renenge, for the death of that King who was their Martyr; or that Some great Bassacs farre remoned from Court, will apprehend this occasion , not to obey an Usurper, fet op by treason; And upon this colour ground their owne ambitions, or that all every where will fall in combustion and intestine Warre; For I dare not hope, that God will open the eyes of Christian Princes to fee the littleneffe of their owne uncivill quarrels , while this mighte Monarchie inviteth them to concord, and to divide it as a profituted forle.

On Saturday evening, the first of June following, the Capiaga or Maior Domo of the Ser- The continuaraglio, having received a secret order to remove the brethren of Ofman from their lodgings, and tion of the in the night to strangle them: as he was performing his command, ayded with a few of his storie, pre-Confices to carrie away the Princes, they cried out: the Pages running to the noise, and en- Kings Maiestie couraged by the Casliaraga, who had some suspicion, without further examination kill the Ca- from the same

50 piaga, now almost every order having rifen against their owne head. That night they sent se- perso cretly to the lanizaries and Spaneis, to informe them what they had done, and in the morning The capitage. early hanged his bodie in the Hippotrome for a publike spectacle. The Souldiers returned in furie to Court, in fauour of the Pages, and demanded inflice against those that had consented to this wicked order; which had made an end of all the Ottoman race, onely this Mullafa being left aliue, who is fo holy a Saint, that he will not people the world with finners, nor indure any women about him. The innocent King protests he knowes nothing of this purpose: and if his command were procured, it was gotten by subreption, and he is easily believed. But his mother another Linia, and the new Vizier, Daont Baffa, who had her daughter to wife, were 60 vehemently suspected. It was a day of Diuan or Councell: But these Souldiers would suffer

none, vntill they had an account of this Treason. The Vizier denies all; the mother is a woman, and hidden in the house: yet it is very likely, they both were guilty to vphold and secure their owne authoritie. It being rumoured, that the Visier determined to place subdititionsly, in the roome of the elder Prince, his owne Sonne, and very like him, and so to gouerne Mastafa for a

graded.

1276

rime, and by his remoue, to oftablish himselfe and his Race for euer. But now somewhat must Deen Baffa de- bedone to appeale the people; Therefore Daont Baffa is degraded from his Office, and one Huzem Balla newly arrived from the Government of Cairo, advanced to his place, with promile of further examination. Since, the furie once ouer, there hath beene nogreat fearch nor dife-Niw Vicin fe- nery made. I thinke the Sultans Chequines have quieted the matter. This new Vizier, a man here without friends, yet very rich, of a stubborne and obstinate nature, reported inft in his waves, but peremptorie and inflexible; Audax, ferox, & prout animum intendit prants aut indufring eadem vi : one from whom all men may expect much good, or much ill; Begins his gouernment roughly, vndertakes to punish infolencies early, and protesteth a retormation, or to bee 2 Sacrifice. A man fit for thefe times that are desperate : For the worlt will be, that hee must ar IQ last endure their furie. In the meane time he procures a little awe, and bath restored the face of Inflice ivet I am perswaded it cannot last long, the Ghost of Ofman will not bee at rest, vntill there are tome Pwentalin made vnto him. The nature of this Vizier is vnsupportable; But if he prevaile, and once fettle, he will anew change the King, and lay an Obligation vpon the Brethren of Ofman; For he will neuer thinke himfelfe fecure vnder a man gouerned by an infolene woman, Dominandi auda: And what affurance can he haue in that Prince, Cui non indicium, non edium est nisimulta & iussa? And though I cannot fore-fee the particulars, and where the Sore will breake out, yet I am fure the whole body is ficke; and Princes of Christendome shall have breath three yeares, before they shall have cause to feare this State, whose present King is Mentir most, and the next in expectation, a Child, whit for action, and all the great men and Soul 20 diers decayed, mutined and corrupted.

And now tyred with this Tragicall fight and contemplation, we will commend you to other Pilgrims. who shall quide you thorow the Desarts, to the tops of the holy Mountains, Oreh and Sinai, and after those Holies, recreate your eyes with an admirable Spectacle of the Mamalukes, fine feates of Activitie. that profit and pleasure may conclude this Booke.

CHAP. XIII.

Mount Sinai, Oreb, and the adiopning parts of Arabia, described out of the source lournals of BREIDENBACH, BAVMGARTEN, BELLONIVS, and CHRISTOPHER FURER of Haimendorf.

* / for flor Futor. Parriarch of the Greekes.

HE nine and twentieth of October, 1 5 6 5. we ioyned our sches to the Carauan, having before obtained Letters commendatorie from the Patriarch of the Greekes, which dwelleth at Carro to the Friers of Mount Sinas. They tell of this Patriarch, that he for proofe of his Religion in contention with a Iem, be- 40 fore the Bassa fine and thirtie yeares before, drunke a draught of poylon without harme, which the lew doing, dyed. At this time, he was one hundred and three weares old. I had with me three Pilgrims. November the third, we departed from Cairo, and

Darius Dike

on the fift, came to the shoare of the Red Sea, two miles from which in times past Sues flourished. The next day, we saw at the right hand of the Red Sea, that ditch which lyeth betwixt it and Nilm, which Darim, and after Ptolomam made thirtie foote deepe, one hundred foote broad, seuen and thirtie miles in length, and there coased, finding the Red Sea higher three cubits, then the Land of Agypt. The Region is defart, and not inhabited, wherein they vie Camels dung for want of Wood. The Water of the Red Sea, is of the colour that other Seas are of. But the Land adiopning, is Red and Mountainous, whence it is called the Red Sea, or from the Sun- 50 This Parking beames reflected on that Sea from those Mountaines. Cartins latch, from a King called Erythrus, (which fignifieth Red.) Here first we saw the place where the Ifraelises had passed thorow that Sea on dry Land. After that, we saw Mara, where Meses by catting in a piece of wood, made wash in (and the water sweete, which fill so continueth, saving that from the neighbour Sea, it is somewhat to natice Sal. brackith: and here our Camels dranke, which in frue dates they here first did, which is the more DECKIN : and here our Cames dranke, which is the decked by the property of the hundred pounds; others, four hundred pounds; others, Ik y Author whereof here is great flore, both Red and White. On the feauenth of Nouember, after midor har name of night, was an Ecliple of the Sunne, and our Ethiopian Companions continued (as long as it continued) beating Basons. The next day, we went tortie Italian miles : and the day after for looke 60 the Red Sea, declining on the left hand towards the Mountaines. The tenth, we left the Carauan, which went the right-hand way toward Thore. Wee went towards the left hand, and ina Valley faw that Tree which is called Spina Christi, or Gam Arabike, whereof they fay Christs Crowne of Thornes was made. The eleuenth, we faw the tops of Mount Smat, and admired the

Monasterie of S. Katharine. Mount Sinai.

height thereof. The twelfth, we faw a Viper or Afpe, whitish and skaly on the belly, on the height thereon. The twenty, on the hacke white and spotted, with two little hornes on the fore-head. The thirteenth, we came to the Monasterie of Saint Katharine in a narrow Valley, at the foot of Mount Sinai, built of square 5. Katharine. the Monatorie of Salut Annual of the Emperour Luftinian, strong, high, and compassed with pleaant Gardens. The length of it, is one hundred twentie fine paces. In it we faw the Sepulche ant Gardens. The conjugator is, in one numerous weather me paces. In the state the Sepulcher of Saint Katherine; after that wee flav a Chappell built on that place, where they fly was the Bish in which find God appeared to Mofe. It hach fifteene Temples, twenty flue Chappels, and duers little Cels, in which Greeke Calogeri doe keepe. In the adioyning Valley is a Hill of maruellous afpect, as if it were all burnt and couered with Ashes, where (they say) Moles kent leto three theepe. Neere the Monastery, before Mount Sines, is the place in Mount Horeb, in which

God commanded Mofes to goe into Egype to deliner the Ifraelites.

The foureteenth of Nouember, by a wayleffe and broken way, (which the Monkes by steps Mount Sind or flaires, such as they are, haue indeuoured to make better) wee ascended Mount Simi. And Bellmina calleth or flaires, fuch as they are, naue independent to make occur; the flaires, fuch as they are, naue independent to make occur; when we had paffed the two gates, which in old times were flux, we came to three Temples or Horeb. So Baum-When we had paned the trop Back, the fecond of Saint Marina, the third of Elias the Prophet. Hereb, So Brant Chappels; one of Saint Barbara, the fecond of Saint Marina, the third of Elias the Prophet. Round about are some houses, whilome the Monkes dwellings. In Elias his Temple, behind the deed all these Altar, is a Caue, in which (they fay) the Prophet lay hid, when hee fled from Ielabel. On the hils are part of left hand, beneath the top of the Mountaine, is the place where Mofes defired to fee God. On Sines, which yet the top of Mount Sinai, towards the East is a little Temple; and on the left hand a Chappell. zaritoriu is the top of Mount Sines, towards the Lattisa little Lempie; and on the Lett nand a Chappell.

guento the
20 Heere entred, our Monke-guide faid prayers in Greeke, and we fung the Decalogue, Lettle Prayer

higher top, er and Creed in German Rithmes. And this is the place where God gaue to Mofes the Tables which some for of the Law, written with the finger of God. There is a Chappell in which the Mahametane denotion to of the Law, written with the inger of God. There is a Charpen in which the region of the Law, written with the inger of God. There is a Charpen in which Mofer after his fecond fortie daies' that Saint Refaft, received the Tables of the Law. After thele fights, wee descended the Hill, where comming to a certaine Cifterne, we refreshed our selues with meat. And going a little lower, we law abroken and hollow Rocke on the left hand, wherein lobn the Agypitan Hermite lived with abroken and nonow Nocke on the lett hand, which have a state of isha great aufteritie, and writ the Booke, called Scala Paradiff. It cannot bee entred but creepings the Harmitewithin on the right hand, is a stone as it were a bed, and another against it like a feat; about, a hole whereby light descendeth, sufficient to reade by. Descending hence on the left hand, in a 30 certaine Valley is the Temple of Saint John Baptift, with a Garden, Vineyard, and little house.

Against it is another Temple of Saint Anne; and on the left hand, on the top of the Rocke, is a Caue couered with Rone, in which two Brethren of a King comming to fee the place, fetled

After this we ascended another Hill, whence besides many Regions the Red Sea may be seene. Sines. In the Valley thereof is Pantaleons Temple, & an Hermitage. Hence with great labour we descended into a Valley, by a broken and dangerous way, ouer against Saint Katharines Mount, where in is the Monasterie of fortie Fathers and divers houses, sometimes the habitations of Hermits. There is a Church of Saint Onophrius, and a pleasant Garden, with various and excellent fruits. Having lien all night in this Monasterie, the next morning, with farre greater labour and dan- Monastery of ger then before, we climbed the high and inaccessible hill of Saint Katherine: on the top where - Saint Katherine f is a sharpe Rocke, whereon toward the East is built a low Chappell, fifteene foote long, and higher then Si-

ten broad, in the midft whereof is a Monument, in which fometime the body of Saint Kaiba- nai and Horeb: ten broad, in the midit whereor is a Monument, in which sometime the boys of Saint Adjos-me was kept. Heere our Monke faul his prayers, and we fung Veni Santii Aprituu in our vulgar by Smei videor tongue. This Mountaine of Saint Kathorine is farre higher then the other two, Horeband Sinds, the ringing which both feeme hillocks, not hils to this. In the top we looked to the Red Sea, and Thora, Dr. that hill, bescending neere the Nets of Horeb, we saw the Rocke which being stricken with Moles his Rod, files the high powred forth water like a Fountaine. In the former part are yet feene twelve rifts or clerts, and as many behind, but leffe perspicuous: but the former part doth full so lively represent the tokens of the miracle, as if water had but lately gushed thence. That former part is twelve cu- Authors then bits, the whole thicknesse fiftie two foot. On the left hand of the Valley, is the Temple of the and this of S. Holy Apottle, with a notable Garden, and against it another of Saint George, with a flourishing highest good

Garden. Betwist this Temple and the Monastery of Saint Katharines, is a round Caue cut in-to the Rocke, fine and thirtie foote large, in which they say Acron made the golden Caste. The last night we abode in Saint Katharines Monasterie : and the fixteenth of November departing, passed by Raphidim, the elementh Mansion of the Israelites, and thence by divers places of their two yeares Peregrination, where the Tabernacle and Arke were made.

The eighteenth we came to Thora, which Citie is on the shoare of the Red Sea of no lustre; Tora the Hauen small, in which thips laden with Spices out of Arabia, Abastia, and India, refort. In this Citie wee faw a Mermaids skinne taken there many yeares before, which in the lower Mermaids 60 part ends Fish-fashion: of the upper part, onely the Nauill and Breatts remaine, the armes and head being loft. The Inhabitants are most Christians, line like the Greeker, and performe their Holies in the Arabicke tongue. No Iew may enter this Citie, nor goe to Mount Sinai, the Chriflians having primiledge (as we were told) to kill them. I faw there one lew which farmed the Customes of the Christians. The twentieth of November, having the wonted teltimonie of

Bed Sea. Camels. Corall.

For the better understanding of these Relations, and for addition of things heere omitted. I haue thought good to give you Bellonins, which almost twentie yeares before had made the same to Voyage, and Breidenbachim, then Chamberlaine, and after Deane of Mentz, which Anno 1482. had travelled out of the Holy Land to Sinai, and thence to Egypt; and lattly, Marin Bannear. ten. a German Knight, whose peregrination hapned Anno 1 507. I have also here added for further Illustration, the Map of the I fraelites percerination in the Defait, here after mentioned

HONDIVS his Map of the Ifraclites peregrination in the Defart.



Bellonius in company of the Lord of Funet, attended with twentie Innie Tier for his Guard, went from Cairo 1, 3, 4,7 *. Their prouisions were water of Nilus, a Camels load of Bisket, and many Muttons killed, and the flesh shred (the bones being taken out) into small gol bits, and boyled with Onions and Suet till all the liquor was confumed, then feafoned with Salt and Spices, and put vp in Veffels: which continued so fresh, that fifteene daies after being heated with Onions, they feemed as fresh as if they had beene first drested. It was in September when

CHAP.13. Plants and habitations of Sinai Defart. Sinai prospect and holies. 1279

the nights were very cold, and the day exceeding hot, for which cause they trauelled much by might, and in three lourneys came to the Well of Sueze, in a Cattle a mile and halte from the Towne, the water of which is brackish. They have there a huge Cisterne for rayne-water. which feldome happeneth, but then with great vehemence, so that once or twice a veere it is which remome happeneds, and the water is drawne by a wheele turned with Oxen; whon the Deco W.F. of filled. The Well is deep, and the water is drawne by a wheele are two ropes with many Pitchers fastned, which emptie themselues into a Citterne vn - Suc. demeath; a thing viuall in Egyptian Gardens. By the way as we travelled grew Ambrefia, Sena, Rofe of Ierico, Colocynthis, Acacia *, a peculiar kind of Genifta, and many other vnknowne * Sima Christia. plants. Beyond Suez. we entred a wide Plaine all greene with Sena, growing of it felfe. Wee or Gummi plants. Devoin Size we control a whole from the Egyptian, white and red: Capars as high as Capars. To found Viners, and Cameleons differing from the Egyptian, white and red: Capars as high as organd vipes, and Camereous untering from the Egyptan, white and red. Capars as high as dwarfe Fig-trees, the Capars as big as Egges and the feed biting like Pepper; the leaues continue greene perpetually, the Wooll is mer then Silke, and whiter then Cotton. The first Village which after Suez we encountred in our way toward Sinai was called Pharagon, not having Pharagon. about three or foure houses builded, the people dwelling under Palm-trees, (for it sellomeral.

neth) or vnder Rockes in Caues. Here were Pomgranats, Oliues, Figs, Peares, and other Trees dwellers. profitable by fruit and shade, The Cattell and Fowles are there much lesse then in Egypt. The ascent of the Mountaine is by hand-made steps for Camels; for Hories can very hardly sina;

paffe: which when we had a feended, we had two miles to paffe betwixt round hills, here and there dispersed, of differing quantitie, before wee came at the Monasterie of Saint Katharme; 20 and although we began to altern the Hill at breake of day, it was after-noone before wee came thither. The Monkes are Christian Maronites, which observe the Greeke Rites, of ditters Monkes or Nations, Sprians, Greeker, and Arabians. Pilgrims haue no place of entertaynment but the Mo- Calmin. natterie, which is fit ace at the foot of Mount Horeb, watered by a Spring thence flowing cleere, fweet, coole, and excellent. It is walled with high walls against enemies, and hath also a Mosqued for Arabs and Turkes. In the vallies are pleasant Gardens, where Vines, Pulie, Herbs, and fruitfull Trees grow, especially Almends. Mount Sings when the Sunne rifeth, ouer-shadoweth Height of Horeb, which is from it a mile and halfe; and on the top of Sinai yee may view ouer Horeb the Sinai, Region beyond full of Rockes and Hills, vnto the Easterne Plaine where Ierufalem standeth 1 to the Weft, nothing but Arabia Deferta; and North-weft, the Region washed by the Medi-10 terranean Sea (but not the Sea it felfe) fine dayes journey thence. Southward are eafily difcer-

ned both the shoares of the Red Sea extended like an English Bow, and the Athropian Defarts and Mountaines, where stands the Monasterie of Saint Macarins, and Saint Anionie. When wee came to the top wee found it hardstone of Iron colour, yet not without plants : for 46. Plant find bring feriphinm, which beareth the Worme-leed, Panax afternin, Conjea, and Espatrinm, Ardenn groweth about the Mountaine. In height it expells, Octa and Ida, but feemes lower then Olympus. The Plaine on the top is not much greater then that of the greatest Pyramis. that is, foure paces, but a little lower much larger, and is ascended with great difficultie. It is not fo cold as the Alpes, nor fo hot as the low Plaines of Europe. We lay all night in S. Katharines Monaferrie, and the next day were flowed the pentile receptaced of S. Kathariner bones, had dolbted of ging in the Church, which is adorned with goodly Pictures and Relicks. The Rock which Mofer the truth. thrucke with his Rod is a folia thone, right vp.of colour and q altitle like Thebanek, Stone, of which Obelisks that Pompoj P Pillar in Alexandria were made, then which no Stone more refitta Iron,

But the Legend of Saint Katharine is better knowne by Deane Breidenbach, a man fee- Breidenbachs ming more denout then Bellomins, who with the Earle of Solms, and Philip de Bichen a Ger-lourney. man Knight, full vilited lernfalem, and the holy places of Paleflina; and thence passed toge- Anno 1483. ther to Sinai, aboue fixtie yeeres before. Their journey was by Gazera, where they faw a Gaza. have Fig-tree which bare figs feuentimes in the yeere. Thence wee departed (fayth he) on the ninth of September. On the eleventh, wee passed a fandy Plaine, so large that we could see no end, but the Sea on the West. At last, wee came into Cawath or Cades, where wee had raine, Which there is feldome. Now were wee come into a true Defart, veterly without all figne of habitation. We faw knokes fometimes, but they arose of fands moved with the wind. On the twelfth, we came to Gayon: on the thirteenth to the Brook Wadalar, where was flore of Coloquintida. On the fourteenth, to Magare and Gebelbelel, where we faw nor man, nor heaft, nor bird. but Offriches. The fifteenth, into a very cold Defart, the earth white like Chalke, and the fand likeburnt Lime, called Mynichene. The fixteenth, wee could fee no end toward the East, and Dreames of a it is faid to reach without habitation two moneths journey, yea as some thinke, to the torrid burning Zone, Zone which continueth to the terrestriall Paradile: that day we came to Alberok, The scuen- and earthly teenth to Mefmar , to the foot of the Hill Caleb which feemeth made by have. The eight teenth, we transled the Salt Land, where the deaw, hills, vellies, itones, and fand, are like

Salt. The nineteenth, we came to mountaynous places, and law Mount Sinai and Horeb on the left hand, and the Red Sea on the right, foure dayes journey diffant. The way was rockie and pracipitious. The twentieth, the Spina Christs with their fent refreshed vs, but the Mountaines were rockie and barren, of colour betwixt blacke and red, and the stones in the Sun shine feemed as if anoyated with Oyle. There we faw a great beatt bigger then a Camell, and our

No:e.

Guide faid it was an Vnicorne: and there we faw a Shepheard with his flocke, which fremed to vs a maruellous fight. At euen, wee stayed at a place called Scholie. This comfort wee had from our Ladie and S. Katharine, that after mid-night we faw a Star brighter then the reft, to a. Dui ament ips file from the South, which we called S. Katharines Star, and directed vs before day standing oner Mount Sinai. On the one and twentieth, we faw Mount Sinai, higher then the other Mountayns. and came to Abalbaroch, a Plain every way environed with hils, where Mofes kept lethroes theen, The two and twentieth, wee came to another Plaine of the Red Sand, and the Hils were red reaching to the Roots of Sinai. Wee had a very bad way, and entred the Monasterie of Saint Katharine, at the Root of Mount Sinai The foure and twentieth of September, taking victuals with vs for two dayes, wee ascended to

Horeb, and there faw the Fountayne, which when the Monkes were once leaving the place for

Miracle of our Todes, Serpents and noylome Creatures molefting them, they were by the bleffed Virgin com-

Indulgences.

Ladie, or ramanded to flay, and doubting whether it might be an illusion, as they were praying, this Founther a Monk's tayne for any up amongst them, and still continueth : and here is our Ladies Chappell. We pasfed higher to an Arch of stone, which they say, no lew can passe. Then comming to the toppe of that Hill wee came to the Plaine whence Horeb rifeth without conjunction of any other Hill. where are three Chappels within one wall, of Marina, Elizeus and Elias : in each of which is feuen yeares Indulgence, and as many Lents. On the top of Horeb is a little faire Chappell thut with an Iron doore, where the Decalogue in two Tables was given; wee put off our shooes to The specialists of the Caue where he fasted fortied ayes. Ouer it a Moschee, where the Moon daily re- 20 fort in honour of Moles. There is a great Cifterne, called Moles Well. This Mountayne rifeth round, and is not coherent to other Mountaynes, and from the Monasterie to the top thereof are about feven thousand steps ascending, besides those which are gone on plaine ground. In the former Chappell is plenarie Remission of all tinnes. Hauing refreshed our selues with food we descended towards the West, a dangerous way, and

came to the Monastery of fortie Saints, and after a little rest ascended Sinai by a harder way, by

of Elim and Sin. Alfo a place in which they faid was a Monastery, the Bels whereof might be

heard at all Canonicall houres, but the house no man could find. In the descent we came to Saint

was, good for the falling ficknesse: After much labour wee came to the Monasterie of fortie

Saints which the Pagans had martyred, and now there are but two Monkes of Saint Katharines

which keepe there. The Edifices are of Mudde and Reeds, except the Church and the Wall encompassing. In their Garden is a Chappell in the Caue where Onophrius lived an Anchorite. Here we did eate, and then compassed Oreb, to returne to Saint Katharines Monasterie. Wee found at the foot of the Mount, the Rocke of Oreb, where Mofer smote twice and water flowed. On

the fixteenth of September, we confessed our selves, and prepared to see the Relikes of Saint

Katharine, and the Tombe being opened, kiffed the fame, and rubbed our Iewels. The Tombe

was in the right fide of the Quire, and therein the head, two hands and fome other members,

the rest dispersed thorow the World. Neare to it is the Chappell where the burning Bulh 50 grew. In both these places is plenary parton, as also many Chappels thereabouts haue great Indugence. In the twelve Pillars of the Church are many Relikes, and their Pictures hanging by.

Breaches, Rockes, Ouer-hanging Stones, Precipices, Steepes and exceeding heate of the Suns refreshed in the way by two Springs. After much sweat wee came to the toppe on the fine and twentieth of September, even to the holy place where the Angels had brought from Alexan-dris, the bodie of the glorious Virgin and Martyr Kasharine, in which place it lay three hundred yeares guarded by Angels, till it was renealed to a certaine Abbot, that it should be thence transhereof in J. di lated to the Monasterie where now it is. We with much ioy kissed the place, and measured our cafro [up. page bodies in the place, which is a stonie Plaine, still having the Impression of a humanebodie, not made by Arte, but formed by the touch of that facred bodie. The Red Sea feemed but three leagues diffant, being two dayes Journey. We might thence fee the Deferts of Thebaida, where nui now called Anthonic and the old Heremites lived, and divers barren Hands in the Red Sea, and the Deferts

Monastery im. Katharines Well, and cut twigs of that kind (they said) whereof Moses burning-not-burned-Bush 40

S. S'atherines

Plenary par-

Manns.

There is also a Moskee. The Monkes of Saint Katharines, are of Saint Basils Order: they vie Brazen Rings in stead of Bels: they are Proprietaries, buy, fell, worke with their hands, contentions continually, abstinent in dyet, vie rough Garments : in their Garden is the place where the Golden Calfe was made, the Stone against which Moses brake the Tables, the Water of Cursing which Moses made the people drinke, and we saw a Calfe of Stone standing on the toppe of a Hill therein, which they faid (and what can bee faid which some Fooles will not beleeue?) that if any went up, hee could not find it, whereupon fome fay, that the Deuill carryed the Molten Calfe thither. In this 60 Valley and the others adjoyning to Smai, is found Manna only in August and September, which the Monkes gather and fell to Strangers. It fals toward day like Dew or Frost on the grasse and leaues, and beeing gathered runnes together like Pitch, and at the heate of the Sunne or Fire is melted, tasteth like Honey, and cleanes to the Teeth. The Abbot of that Monasterie is constrai-

ned to give food to one hundred Arabs daily. All Nations may be received into their Order, but neuro grand Armenians; but beeing received must observe the Greeke Rites. The seven and twentieth of September wee departed. The first of October, wee came to the common way which leades from Gazeia to Cairo, and by another way to Thor, where the Indian flips arrive which leades from Oraces, because they passe by Mountaynes and Rockes of Load-stone which Tale of Load would attract them. Wee came to the place in the Red Sea, where the Ifraelites passed on dry somes. Land. Next day going along by the shoare, we came to the imperfect workes, whereby the Red Sea should have beene conveyed to Nilus.

Mortimu à Baumgarten, the fift of October, 1507, departed from Carro, and came on the In tenth to the Ditch, and the other passage. There are seene still to this day; * as Orosius also te- *Nolste Writhiseth the foot-prints of Chariots and Horsemen on the shoare, which howsoeuer by any conter hath menfifieth the foot-prints of Chariots and rioriemen on the moare, which now locuer by any conmen, roote record and light, we ascended Horeb by almost feuen thousand staires of stone, be- Orosias, it hash in the right by Machine Ingle, Neere to the Church where Moses received the Tables (the Moungrowne into tayne and others adioyning fill shine like to molten Copper) is a Moschee of Saracens over the the Authors tayne and others adjoying the limit have been a Caue, which Caue the Saracens fill vie to get Prophets, Prophete beand account the issue there generated, holy. Descending from Horeb, by the West we came to a Valley twixt it and Sinai, in which was the Monastery of the forty Saints, where having fed we Sacra accrimate ascende Sinai with great danger, with wounded hands, sliding feete by the loosenesse of the

of flones, creeping knees, breathlesse brests; the Monkes our Guides scarsly able to discerne the true Mountayne amongft fo many Hill-tops, * of like femblance. The way beeing marked out by *This sheweth certaine stones set by Pilgrimes, brought vs at last to the top, where a fresh Spring refreshed vs. thereason of certaine itones fet by Pilgrimes, brought vs at last to the top, where a riem Spring refreshed vs. Furrers, affir-Theore returned to the Monafterie of the fortie Monkes, and compating Horeb we came to the Rocke in the Root of Horeb, which Mofes imote twice : a square stone, with one sharpe point Katherints to fall to the earth, with twelve marks according to the number of the twelve Tribes. A little off is bee a higher the place where Dathan and Abron were swallowed: by night we got to S. Katharines, so wea- hill then Sinai, the place where Dathan and Dathaw Well wand on our feet. In our returne, we were often let on by which is but to the, that the next day we could learly stand on our feet. In our returne, we were often let on by the highest too ho man, wearied with the Camels hard pace, and more with of said, where-Andre, which mue is insection to man, wearen with the cannot are pace, all more with of Sanighere-Famine (which made vs formetime halfe alleepe, and dreaming of victuals; reaching to receive of aremany 30 them, fall off our bealts) we got at laft to Caire. There we fave a Lingb, speckled white and tops, higher then any bealt I had euer fenen, the necke fo long, that it exceeds a mans armset wice Combopratals, fretched out, the head of a Cubit, the breft high, the backe low, eyes pleasing, eating any thing which was giuen it. We faw also an Indian Oxe of a shorter bodie and greater head then ours. with great blunt knottie Hornes: The Mamalakes are of fuch authoritie, that they doe what they lift to any Saracen, turne him out of his house, and dwell in it as long as they please. No Mamalakes 17-Saracen may ride or beare Armes in the Citie, but are flaues to thefe flaues, giue way, rife, kiffe rannie. their knees and feet, (their hands as a great great bountie.) Their mad Men and Penitents are effeemed Saints, and may goe into any house and eate, drinke, yea, lye with the woman freely, and that Iffue forgotten is efteemed holy: they are honoured whiles they live, and when they togre dead hatte Monuments and Temples, and to touch or bury them is a matter of effeeme. One wee faw fitting as naked as hee was borne on the Sands, and heard him commended for that Beaffly Saint. hemedled not carnally with Women or Boyes, but Female Affes or Mules.

Of the Manulades her reported, that Tongolondinus the Soldon entertayned him in his Pa. Tongolondinus lac, thewed him his houle of women, whereof thirtie fine were there prefer, dallying and rel. his Winess. Ring, exceeding fregramt. The next day thewed him a great fight, where almost fixtue thouland Mamalakes were affembled, standing with great reverence and silence all in white and like habit. The Soldan also with a large blacke beard horned or mitted Diademe in a Summer open Roome and white Raiment : not farre from him his Pope (whom they call Calipha) Socienus late, Socienus the abrowne man, and beneath him the Turkeh Embaffador. Beneath the Caffle was a large Plaine Calipha. so prepared before to that purpose, in the middelt whereof were three heapes of Sand, firste paces diffant, and in each a Speare erected with a marke to shoote at, and the like ouer against them, with space betweene for fixe Horses to runne abreit. Heere did the yonger Manualukes gallantly adorned, upon their Horses running and careere, yeeld strange experiments of their skill, not one miffing the marke, first, with casting Darts, and after with their Arrowes, as they ran : and laftly, trying their flaues. Others after this, in the like Race of their running Horses, that with like dexteritie divers Arrowes backwards and forward. Others in the midit of their Race alighted three times, and (their Horses Hill running) mounted againe, and hit the Marke nevertheleffe. Others did het the fame, flanding on their Horles thus swiftly running. Others three times vnbent their Bowes, and thrice againe bent them whiles their Horfes ran, and miffed not the Marke : neither did others, which amidft their Race, lighted downe on either fide, and againe mounted themfelues: no, nor they which in their fwifteft course leaped and turned themtelues backwards on their Horles, and then (their Horles still running) turned themselves forwards. There were, which whiles their Horfe ranne, vingit their Saddles thrice, at each time

shooting, and then againe gerding their Saddles, and never missing the Marke. Some fitting in

their Saddles, leaped backwards out of them, and turning over their heads, fetled themselves againe in their Saddles and shot, as the former, three times. Others laid themselves backwards on their running Horles, and taking their tayles, put them into their mouthes, and vet forgot not their ayme in shooting. Some after every shot drew out their Swords, and flourished themabout their heads, and againe sheathed them. Others sitting betwirt three Swordson the right fide, and as many on the left, thinly clothed, that without great care enery motion would make way for death, yet before and behind them touched the Marke. One flood you two Horfee running very (wiftly, his feet loofe, and shot also at once three Arrowes before, and againe three behind him. Another fitting on a Horse neither bridled nor sadled, as hee came at enery Marke arole and stood upon his feete, and on both hands hitting the Marke, fate downe againe 10 three times. A third fitting on the bare Horfe, when hee came to the Marke lay vpon his backe and lifted vp his legges, and yet miffed not his shoot. After all this they rame with like swiftneffe (for all these things, which, where is the Vaulter that can doe on his Imaginarie Horse standing fill? these did running) and with their states carryed away those Markes, as triumphing ouer their innocent Enemie. One of them was killed with a fall, and two forewounded in these their Feats of Activitie. They had an old grave man which was their Teacher. If I have long detayned thee in this Spectacle, remember that the Race of Mamalukes should not

bee forgotten, the rather, because their name is now razed out of the World; and this may feeme an Epitaph on their Sepulchre, after whom none perhaps are left able to doe the like, nor in all Franciscus Modius his Triumphall Pandects tobe

paralelled.

The end of the eighth Booke.



"PEREGRINATIONS. AND DISCOVERIES BY LAND OF

ASSYRIA, ARMENIA, PERSIA, INDIA,

ARABIA, AND OTHER IN-LAND COVNTRIES OF ASIA, BY

Englishmen and Others; Moderne

and Ancient.

THE NINTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Abriefe Compendium of the Historie of Sir ANTHONY SHER-LEYS Travels into Perfia: And employed thence Ambaffadour to the Christian Princes; * penned by bim/elfe, and recommended to his Brother Sir ROBERT SHERLEY. fince that fent on like Ambassage by the King of Persia.

The Caufes of his going to Persia, and strange Accidents in the way.

Nmy first yeares, my friends bestowed on me those Learnings way, he stuwhich were fit for a Gentlemans ornament, without directing dious may them to an Occupation, and when they were fit for agible reade the Authings, they bestowed them and me on my Princes Service, in thor himfelie, which I ran many courses, of divers Fortunes, according to have extracted the condition of the Warres, in which, as I was most exercifed, fo was I most subject to accidents : With what opinion I carryed my felfe (fince the causes of good or ill must be in my felte, and that a thing without my felte) I leave it to them to fpeake; my places yet in authoritie, in those occasions were cuer of the best; in which, if I committed errour it was contrarie to my will, and a weaknesse in my judgement; which not-

withstanding, I euer industriated my selfe to make perfect, correcting my owne ouer-sights by the most vertuous Examples I could make choice of : Among t which, as there was not a Subject of more worthineste and vertue, for such Examples to grow from , then the ever-lining in honour and condigne estimation, the Earle of Esfex: as my reuerence and regard to instare Earle of Esfex. 60 Qualities was exceeding; to I defired (as much as my humilitie might antwere, with fu.b aneminencie) to make him the patterne of my civill life, and from him to draw a worthy modell of all my actions. And as my true loue to him, did transforme mee from my many imperfections, to be, as it were, an imitator of his vertues; so his affection was such to mee, that hee was not onely contented, I should doe so; but in the true Noblenesse of his minde gaue mee liberally Zzzzzz 2

pertayne rather to his minde then bodies trauels, in discourses of caules, &c. are left out not for want of worth, but of roome:

* This Sum

his own words, but miny things which